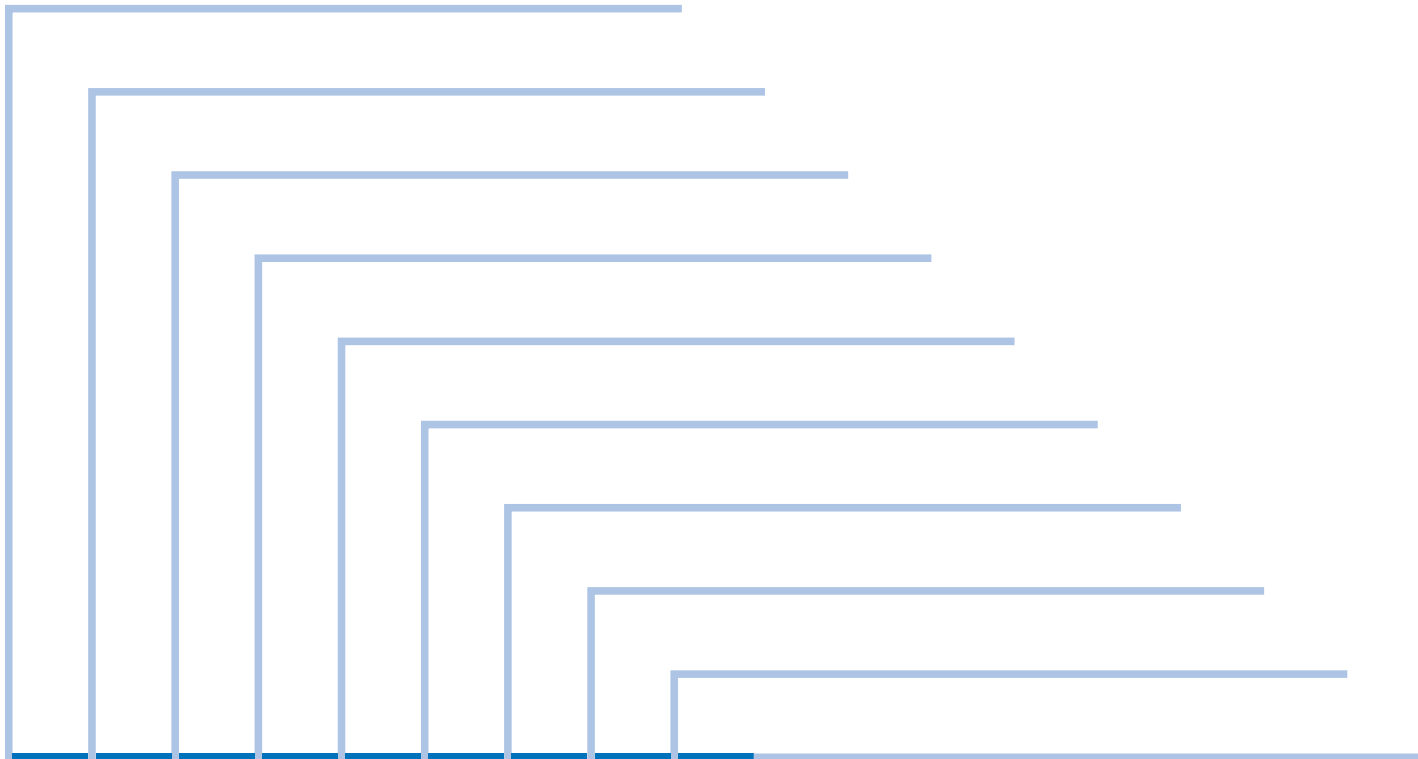




imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2200 Series

Service Manual



Application

This manual has been issued by Canon Inc. for qualified persons to learn technical theory, installation, maintenance, and repair of products. This manual covers all localities where the products are sold. For this reason, there may be information in this manual that does not apply to your locality.

Corrections

This manual may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors due to improvements or changes in products. When changes occur in applicable products or in the contents of this manual, Canon will release technical information as the need arises. In the event of major changes in the contents of this manual over a long or short period, Canon will issue a new edition of this manual.

The following paragraph does not apply to any countries where such provisions are inconsistent with local law.

Trademarks

The product names and company names used in this manual are the registered trademarks of the individual companies.

Copyright

This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied, reproduced or translated into another language, in whole or in part, without the consent of Canon Inc.
















© CANON INC. 2012

Caution



Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

Explanation of Symbols

The following symbols are used throughout this Service Manual.

Symbols	Explanation	Symbols	Explanation
	Check.		Remove the claw.
	Check visually.		Insert the claw.
	Check the noise.		Use the bundled part.
	Disconnect the connector.		Push the part.
	Connect the connector.		Plug the power cable.
	Remove the cable/wire from the cable guide or wire saddle.		Turn on the power.
	Set the cable/wire to the cable guide or wire saddle.		
	Remove the screw.		
	Tighten the screw.		

The following rules apply throughout this Service Manual:

- Each chapter contains sections explaining the purpose of specific functions and the relationship between electrical and mechanical systems with reference to the timing of operation.
 In the diagrams,  represents the path of mechanical drive; where a signal name accompanies the symbol, the arrow  indicates the direction of the electric signal. The expression "turn on the power" means flipping on the power switch, closing the front door, and closing the delivery unit door, which results in supplying the machine with power.
- In the digital circuits, '1' is used to indicate that the voltage level of a given signal is "High", while '0' is used to indicate "Low". (The voltage value, however, differs from circuit to circuit.) In addition, the asterisk (*) as in "DRMD*" indicates that the DRMD signal goes on when '0'.
 In practically all cases, the internal mechanisms of a microprocessor cannot be checked in the field. Therefore, the operations of the microprocessors used in the machines are not discussed: they are explained in terms of from sensors to the input of the DC controller PCB and from the output of the DC controller PCB to the loads.

The descriptions in this Service Manual are subject to change without notice for product improvement or other purposes, and major changes will be communicated in the form of Service Information bulletins.
 All service persons are expected to have a good understanding of the contents of this Service Manual and all relevant Service Information bulletins and be able to identify and isolate faults in the machine.

Contents

Safety Precautions

CDRH Act	0-6
Laser Safety	0-6
Handling of Laser System	0-6
Turn power switch ON	0-7
Safety of Toner	0-7
About Toner	0-7
Toner on Clothing or Skin	0-7
Notes When Handling a Lithium Battery	0-7
Notes Before it Works Serving	0-7
Points to Note at Cleaning	0-7

Features/Specifications

Product Lineup	1-2
Host Machine	1-2
Model Type	1-2
Options	1-3
Pickup/Delivery/Image Reading System Options	1-3
Function Expansion System Options	1-4
Features	1-5
Product Features	1-5
Service Features	1-5
Improved Upgrading Operability	1-5
Applying New Connectors	1-5
Realization of Breaker-less Machine	1-6
Specifications	1-8
Specifications	1-8
Weight and Size	1-9
Productivity (Print Speed)	1-9
Paper Type	1-9
Pickup	1-10

Parts Name	1-19
External View	1-19
Cross Section View	1-20
Operation	1-21
Power Switch	1-21
Types of Power Switches	1-21
Points to Note on Turning ON/OFF the Power Switch	1-21
Control Panel	1-22
Control Panel	1-22
Main Menu	1-22
Difference of Main Menu	1-23
Settings/Registration Menu	1-23
Difference of Settings/Registration	1-24
Service mode	1-24
Service Mode Menu	1-24
Description of Service Mode Items	1-25
Enhanced I/O Information	1-25
The description of error code/alarm code is displayed	1-26
Classification of COPIER > OPTION > BODY	1-27
Security Support	1-27
Switching the Screen Display (Level 1 <->2)	1-28
Specifications of User Messages Related to Consumable Parts	1-28

Process/Operation

Basic Configuration	2-2
Functional Configuration	2-2
Basic Sequence	2-3
A4 single-sided 2 prints full color	2-3
A4 single-sided 2 prints Bk color	2-5
Main Controller	2-6
Overview	2-6
Features	2-6
Specifications/ Configuration	2-6
Flash model and HDD model	2-10
Boot Sequence	2-12
Shutdown Sequence	2-12
Controls	2-13

Flow of Image Data	2-13	Consumable Parts.....	2-47
Security.....	2-15	List of Periodical Service Works	2-47
Setting the Management on the Hard Disk	2-15	Actions at Parts Replacement.....	2-47
Installation procedure of the HDD	2-16	Disassembly/Assembly - Laser Control System	2-48
The procedure to disable the HDD license transfer.....	2-16	Cleaning the Dustproof Glass	2-48
Delete Old Data.....	2-17	Removing the Laser Scanner Unit.....	2-49
Security features(encryption key and certificate, password protection)	2-19	Removing the Main Drive Unit.....	2-51
HDD Encryption Kit (Optional).....	2-28	Installing the Main Drive Unit	2-55
Service Tasks	2-29	Image Formation System	2-58
Actions at Parts Replacement.....	2-29	Overview	2-58
Periodically Replaced Parts.....	2-29	Overview.....	2-58
Consumable Parts.....	2-29	Specifications.....	2-58
Service Notes.....	2-29	Parts Configuration.....	2-59
Disassembly/Assembly- Main Controller system	2-30	Print Process.....	2-59
Removing the Controller Cover	2-30	Controls	2-61
Removing the Main Controller PCB 1	2-31	Overview.....	2-61
Removing the Main Controller 2	2-31	Primary Charging	2-61
Removing the DC Controller PCB.....	2-32	Drum Unit (Developing/Drum).....	2-63
Removing the Controller Box	2-33	Transfer/Separation.....	2-67
HDD	2-35	Drum Cleaning	2-71
<Preparation>	2-36	Image Stabilization Control.....	2-73
<Procedure>	2-36	Toner Supply Assembly	2-84
Laser Exposure System.....	2-38	Waste Toner Feeding Area.....	2-87
Overview	2-38	Other Controls.....	2-90
Overview.....	2-38	Service Tasks	2-90
1-Polygon 4-Laser Method	2-39	Periodically Replaced Parts.....	2-90
Specification	2-40	Consumable Parts.....	2-90
Various Controls.....	2-41	List of Periodical Service Works	2-90
Overview.....	2-41	Disassembly/Assembly - Image Formation System	2-91
Laser ON/OFF control.....	2-41	Removing the Waste Toner Container.....	2-91
Horizontal scanning synchronous control	2-42	Removing the Drum Unit.....	2-91
Vertical Scanning Synchronous Control	2-43	Removing the ITB Unit	2-93
Image Mask Control.....	2-44	Removing the Front Cover	2-95
Laser scanner motor control.....	2-44	Removing the Toner Bottle Mount (CL)	2-96
APC(Auto Power Control) Control.....	2-45	Removing the Toner Bottle Mount (Bk).....	2-100
Dustproof shutter control.....	2-45	Removing the Hopper Unit (CL).....	2-104
Servicing	2-47	Removing the Hopper Unit (Bk).....	2-105
Periodically Replaced Parts.....	2-47		

Removing the Waste Toner Feed Assembly -----	2-107	JAM Detection -----	2-146
Removing the Registration Patch Sensor -----	2-108	Service Tasks -----	2-146
Fixing System -----	2-110	Periodically replacement parts -----	2-146
Overview -----	2-110	Consumables -----	2-146
Features -----	2-110	Periodically Service -----	2-146
Specifications -----	2-111	Disassembly/Assembly - Pickup Feed System -----	2-147
Major Components -----	2-111	Opening the Right Lower Cover Fully -----	2-147
Controls -----	2-112	Cleaning the Pre-registration Guide -----	2-147
Overview of Fixing Temperature Control -----	2-112	Cleaning the Registration Roller -----	2-148
Standby Temperature Control -----	2-113	Cleaning the Pre-secondary Transfer Outer Guide -----	2-148
Print Temperature Control -----	2-114	Cleaning Duplex Feed Lower Roller -----	2-149
Down Sequence Control -----	2-116	Removing the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit -----	2-149
Film Unit Engagement/Disengagement Control -----	2-117	Removing the Cassette 1 Pickup Roller -----	2-151
Fixing Arch Control -----	2-118	Removing the Cassette 1 Pickup Unit -----	2-152
Fixing Assembly Detection -----	2-120	Removing the Cassette 2 Pickup Unit -----	2-154
Protection function -----	2-120	Removing the Cassette 2 Pickup Roller -----	2-155
Service Tasks -----	2-122	Removing the Cassette 2 Feed Roller -----	2-156
Periodically Replaced Parts -----	2-122	Removing the Cassette 2 Separation Roller -----	2-156
Consumable Parts -----	2-122	Removing the Pickup Assembly Idler Gear -----	2-157
List of Periodical Service Works -----	2-122	Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller -----	2-157
Actions at Parts Replacement -----	2-122	Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad -----	2-159
Disassembly/Assembly - Fixing System -----	2-123	Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller -----	2-160
Removing the Fixing Assembly -----	2-123	Removing the Right Door Unit -----	2-161
Removing the Fixing Drive Unit -----	2-125	Document Exposure -----	2-164
Pickup Feed System -----	2-129	Overview -----	2-164
Overview -----	2-129	Features -----	2-164
Features -----	2-129	Specifications (Reader) -----	2-164
Specification -----	2-129	External View -----	2-164
Parts Configuration -----	2-130	Cross Section -----	2-164
Paper path -----	2-133	Major Electrical Parts -----	2-165
Various Controls -----	2-134	Scanner Unit -----	2-165
Overview -----	2-134	LED lamp unit -----	2-166
Cassette Pickup Assembly -----	2-134	Controls -----	2-167
Paper Size Detection / Cassette Presence Detection -----	2-135	Enlargement/Reduction -----	2-167
Paper Level /Presence Detection -----	2-140	Detecting the Size of Originals -----	2-167
Multi-Purpose Tray Pickup Assembly -----	2-142	IDirt Sensor Control -----	2-168
Fixing/Registration Assembly -----	2-144	Service Tasks -----	2-169
Duplex / Delivery Assembly -----	2-145		

Periodically replacement parts -----	2-169	Outline -----	2-192
Consumables -----	2-169	When SMS Cannot Be Accessed -----	2-193
Periodically Service -----	2-169	How to Deal with a Message "Certificate Error" That Appears at the Time of Access -----	2-194
External Auxiliary System -----	2-170	Installing an MEAP Application -----	2-194
Controls -----	2-170	Outline -----	2-194
Software counter -----	2-170	Procedure to install applications -----	2-195
Fan -----	2-170	Resource Information -----	2-197
Power Supply Control -----	2-173	MEAP Specifications -----	2-198
Power supply distribution inside the printer -----	2-173	What is MEAP Specifications (MEAP Spec Version)? -----	2-198
Quick Startup -----	2-173	MEAP Application Management -----	2-201
Energy Saving Function -----	2-174	Outline -----	2-201
Service Tasks -----	2-177	Starting, Stopping, or Uninstalling the MEAP Application -----	2-201
Actions at Parts Replacement -----	2-177	Managing the License File -----	2-203
Periodically Replaced Parts -----	2-177	Other License File Management Functions -----	2-207
Consumable Parts -----	2-177	Enhanced System Application Management -----	2-209
Service Notes -----	2-177	Outline -----	2-209
Service Tasks -----	2-178	About Login Service -----	2-209
Actions at Parts Replacement -----	2-178	Default Authentication overview -----	2-209
Periodically Replaced Parts -----	2-178	SSO-H (Single Sign-On-H) overview -----	2-209
Consumable Parts -----	2-178	Local device authentication -----	2-214
Service Notes -----	2-178	Server authentication (Active Directory authentication) -----	2-214
MEAP -----	2-179	Server Authentication (LDAP Authentication) -----	2-217
Changes -----	2-179	Server authentication and local device authentication -----	2-217
LDAP Authentication (SSO-H Server Authentication) -----	2-179	Steps to Change Login Services -----	2-218
Message Display by USB Driver Setting Change -----	2-180	Login Service Installation Procedure -----	2-219
Authentication Information Sharing Function -----	2-180	Login Service Uninstallation Procedure -----	2-220
MEAP Application Setting Information Management and Log Management -----	2-180	System Application Management -----	2-220
Function Supporting Deep Sleep Mode -----	2-182	Password authentication -----	2-220
Preparation for Using SSO-H -----	2-182	RLS Authentication -----	2-221
Outline -----	2-182	Setting the method to login to SMS -----	2-223
Server authentication management -----	2-182	Outline -----	2-223
PC Environment of Administrator Users and General Users -----	2-183	Initial Display Languages of SMS -----	2-226
Preparation for Using SMS -----	2-184	MEAP Application System Information -----	2-226
Preparation of PC for Accessing SMS -----	2-184	Outline -----	2-226
Settings on the Device Side -----	2-185	Checking the System Information -----	2-226
How to Check the Serial Number -----	2-192	Display of System Information Details -----	2-227
Login to SMS -----	2-192	Printing the System Information of a MEAP Application -----	2-227

Content of MEAP system information	2-228	Service Mode Menu Transmission Function	2-262
MEAP Application Information	2-228	Service cautions	2-263
Outline	2-228	E-RDS Setup	2-264
Procedure to Check MEAP Application Information	2-228	Confirmation and preparation in advance	2-264
Check License	2-229	Steps to E-RDS settings	2-265
Outline	2-229	Steps to Service Call button settings	2-267
Procedure to Check the License File	2-229	Steps to Service Browser settings	2-271
Changing SMS Login Password	2-230	Initializing E-RDS settings	2-272
Outline	2-230	FAQ	2-272
Procedure to Change the SMS Login Password	2-230	Troubleshooting	2-274
MEAP Application Setting Information Management and Log		Error code and strings	2-278
Management	2-230	Updater	2-281
Outline	2-230	Functional Overview	2-281
Advantages Obtained When Using the Services	2-231	Overview	2-281
MEAP Application Setting Information Management	2-231	System Configuration	2-283
MEAP Application Log Management	2-232	List of Functions	2-283
Maintenance	2-233	Distribution Flow	2-284
Backup of the MEAP Application Area and Recovery of the Backup Data Using		Limitations and Cautions	2-285
SST	2-233	Limitations	2-285
Procedure for backing up the MEAP application area using SST	2-234	Cautions	2-285
Procedures to Restore Backup Data	2-236	Preparation	2-286
Formatting and Replacing the HDD	2-237	Overview of Preparation	2-286
MEAP Safe Mode (level 2)	2-239	Setting Sales Company's HQ	2-286
Collection of MEAP Console Logs	2-241	Network Settings	2-287
Using USB Devices	2-246	Enabling UGW Link	2-290
Integrated Authentication Function	2-251	Enabling [Update Firmware] Button of User Mode	2-290
Points to Note When Enabling the [Quick Startup Settings for Main Power]		Enabling [Install Application/Options] Button of User Mode	2-291
Setting	2-253	Enabling [Manual Update] Button of User Mode (Remote UI)	2-291
Remedy to Be Performed When the Device Has Become Unable to Be		System Management Operations	2-292
Logged in	2-254	Various Setting	2-292
Reference material	2-257	Displaying Logs	2-294
Option for exclusive individual measure	2-259	Maintenance	2-297
Embedded RDS	2-261	Upgrading Updater	2-297
Product Overview	2-261	Formatting Hard Disk	2-297
Overview	2-261	How to Replace Controller Boards	2-297
Features and benefits	2-261	How to Replace Devices	2-297
Major Functions	2-261	FAQ	2-298
Limitations	2-262	FAQ on Installing Firmware	2-298

FAQ on Installing MEAP Application/System Option	2-299
FAQ on General Matters of Updater	2-300
DCM	2-301
DCM	2-301
Overview	2-301
Service mode setting values that can be backed up by DCM	2-306
Import/export by service mode (external)	2-316
Import/export by service mode (internal)	2-321

Consumable Parts and Cleaning Parts

Consumable Parts and Cleaning Parts	3-2
Drum Unit	3-2
Cleaning Parts	3-3

Parts Replacement and Cleaning

List of Parts	4-2
List of Cover	4-2
List of Main Unit	4-5
Unit Layout	4-5
Solenoid	4-9
Motor	4-12
Fan	4-15
Sensor	4-16
Heater / Other	4-21
Switch	4-22
PCBs	4-25
Connector	4-30
Disassembly/Assembly- Main Controller system	4-38
Removing the Controller Cover	4-38
Removing the Main Controller PCB 1	4-39
Removing the Main Controller 2	4-39
Removing the DC Controller PCB	4-40
Removing the Controller Box	4-41
HDD	4-43
<Preparation>	4-44
<Procedure>	4-44
Disassembly/Assembly - Laser Control System	4-46

Cleaning the Dustproof Glass	4-46
Removing the Laser Scanner Unit	4-47
Removing the Main Drive Unit	4-49
Installing the Main Drive Unit	4-53
Disassembly/Assembly - Image Formation System	4-56
Removing the Waste Toner Container	4-56
Removing the Drum Unit	4-56
Removing the ITB Unit	4-58
Removing the Front Cover	4-60
Removing the Toner Bottle Mount (CL)	4-61
Removing the Toner Bottle Mount (Bk)	4-65
Removing the Hopper Unit (CL)	4-69
Removing the Hopper Unit (Bk)	4-70
Removing the Waste Toner Feed Assembly	4-72
Removing the Registration Patch Sensor	4-73
Disassembly/Assembly - Fixing System	4-75
Removing the Fixing Assembly	4-75
Removing the Fixing Drive Unit	4-77
Disassembly/Assembly - Pickup Feed System	4-81
Opening the Right Lower Cover Fully	4-81
Cleaning the Pre-registration Guide	4-81
Cleaning the Registration Roller	4-82
Cleaning the Pre-secondary Transfer Outer Guide	4-82
Cleaning Duplex Feed Lower Roller	4-83
Removing the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit	4-83
Removing the Cassette 1 Pickup Roller	4-85
Removing the Cassette 1 Pickup Unit	4-86
Removing the Cassette 2 Pickup Unit	4-88
Removing the Cassette 2 Pickup Roller	4-89
Removing the Cassette 2 Feed Roller	4-90
Removing the Cassette 2 Separation Roller	4-90
Removing the Pickup Assembly Idler Gear	4-91
Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller	4-91
Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad	4-93
Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller	4-94
Removing the Right Door Unit	4-95

Disassembly/Assembly - External Auxiliary System -----	4-98
Removing the Control Panel -----	4-98
Preparation -----	4-98
Procedure -----	4-98
Removing the Low-voltage Power Supply Unit -----	4-101
Removing the ADF + Reader Unit -----	4-101
Disassembly/Assembly - Document Exposure -----	4-106
Removing the Reader Controller PCB -----	4-106
Removing the Reader Scanner Unit -----	4-108

Adjustment

Main Controller -----	5-2
HDD -----	5-2
Main controller PCB 1 -----	5-2
Main controller PCB 2 -----	5-3
DC controller PCB -----	5-3
Pickup Feed System -----	5-4
Method of Setting Special Paper -----	5-4
Method of Setting 8K and 16K (Chinese Paper) -----	5-4
Document Exposure System -----	5-5
Service mode backup -----	5-5
Measurement during Main Controller PCB 2 Replacement and After	
RAM Clear: -----	5-5
After Replacing the Scanner Unit (Reader side) -----	5-7
After Replacing the Scanner Unit -----	5-8

Troubleshooting

Initial Check -----	6-2
Initial check items list -----	6-2
Test Print -----	6-3
Overview -----	6-3
Steps to select the test print TYPE -----	6-3
How to use the test print -----	6-4
16 gradations (TYPE=4) -----	6-4
Full half tone (TYPE=5) -----	6-5
Grid (TYPE=6) -----	6-6

MCYBk horizontal stripe (TYPE=10) -----	6-7
64-gradations (TYPE=12) -----	6-8
Full color 16-gradations (TYPE=14) -----	6-9
Troubleshooting Items -----	6-10
Troubleshooting Items List -----	6-10
Image Failure -----	6-10
Dots image in whole -----	6-10
White dots/spots image in whole -----	6-11
Solid image on the 2nd side and magenta spots on the trailing edge of paper--	
6-12 -----	
Trace of Upstream Brush -----	6-13
Same color fogging -----	6-14
Different colors fogging -----	6-15
Actions to be taken when water drop marks appear on the 2nd side -----	6-16
Actions to be taken when image smear due to condensation occurred -----	6-17
Roller trace on transparency -----	6-17
Image distortion -----	6-18
The paper wrinkle has occurred when passing through the Buffer Pass Unit.---	
6-19 -----	
Operation failure -----	6-19
Abnormal noise during pickup from Cassette 2 -----	6-19
Second Delivery Tray full detection error -----	6-20
Document falling from Inner Finisher -----	6-20
Waste toner leak -----	6-21
Alignment error in Inner Finisher -----	6-22
JAM "0d91" during the PG print -----	6-22
Paper curled when delivered from the External Finisher -----	6-22
Version upgrade -----	6-23
Overview -----	6-23
Overview of Version Upgrade -----	6-23
Download mode -----	6-24
Writing System Software -----	6-24
System Software Configuration -----	6-24
Note on download process -----	6-25
Version Upgrade via SST -----	6-25
Overview -----	6-25
Registering System Software -----	6-26
Connection -----	6-27

Downloading System Software (Assist mode) -----	6-29	Basic Flowchart -----	6-98
Downloading System Software (in single mode) -----	6-30	Prerequisite -----	6-99
Formatting HDD -----	6-32	Operation -----	6-99
Backup -----	6-33	Boot System Error Diagnosis -----	6-99
Optional language support -----	6-36	Controller System Error Diagnosis -----	6-101
Version Upgrade using USB Memory Storage Device -----	6-39	Restrictions -----	6-103
Relation between SST and USB memory storage device -----	6-39	Debug log -----	6-104
Registering System Software -----	6-40	Scope of Application -----	6-104
Connection -----	6-43	Purpose -----	6-104
Upgrading System Software -----	6-45	Overview -----	6-104
Selecting System Software -----	6-46	Function Overview -----	6-104
Downloading/ Writing System Software (Automatic) -----	6-46	Storing System Information -----	6-104
Formatting FLASH PCB or HDD -----	6-48	Storage Method of System Information -----	6-104
Backup/ Restore -----	6-50	Description of Log to be Collected -----	6-105
Other menus -----	6-51	Operation to Save System Information -----	6-105
Version Upgrade via CDS -----	6-52	Collecting System Information -----	6-107
Overview -----	6-52	Collection Destination -----	6-107
Preparation -----	6-53	Collection Method -----	6-107
a. UGW-linked Download and Update (Full-remote Update) -----	6-58	Measures against Frequent Debug Log Collection -----	6-107
b. UGW-linked Download (Remote Distribution Update) -----	6-58	Collecting Debug Log (USB memory device) -----	6-107
c. Manual Download and Update (On-site Update from Service Mode) -----	6-60	Manual Saving by Holding Down the Counter + 1.2.3 -----	6-107
Deleting Firmware Distribution Schedule -----	6-65	DBG-LOG Screen -----	6-109
Updating Downloaded Firmware (Applying Firmware) -----	6-66	Function -----	6-109
Deleting Downloaded Firmware -----	6-67	LOG2USB -----	6-109
Troubleshooting on Firmware Installation -----	6-69	Function -----	6-109
Information required for Reports -----	6-70	LOG2SRVR -----	6-110
Debug Logs -----	6-71	Function -----	6-110
Error Messages -----	6-72	LOG-TRIG -----	6-111
Error Code -----	6-77	Function -----	6-111
How to read an error code -----	6-77	HIT-STS -----	6-112
List of Error Codes Likely to Be Displayed -----	6-78	HIT-STS2 -----	6-112
Error Code -----	6-82	DEFAULT -----	6-112
Error Codes When Using the UGW-linked Function -----	6-94	Function -----	6-112
Error Codes Not Included in the Error Code List and Remedy for Them -----	6-95	SYSLOG -----	6-112
Controller Self Diagnosis -----	6-96	LOG-DEL -----	6-113
Introduction -----	6-96	An Example of Automatic Log Collection Setting -----	6-113
Overview -----	6-96	Uploading Data by SST -----	6-114
Layout Drawing -----	6-97		

Preconditions:	6-114
Saving a Log of Key Operations	6-117
Overview	6-117
Usage Method	6-117

Error Code

Overview	7-2
Outline	7-2
Outline	7-2
Location code	7-2
Location code	7-2
Points to Note When Clearing MN-CON	7-2
Points to Note When Clearing HDD	7-2
Error Code	7-3
Error Code Details	7-3
Jam Code	7-110
image RUNNER ADVANCE C2200	7-110
DADF	7-111
Inner Finisher-F1	7-112
Buffer Pass Unit-K1	7-112
Staple / Booklet Finisher-M1	7-113
Alarm Code	7-115
Alarm Code	7-115

Service Mode

Overview	8-2
Service Mode Menu	8-2
Service mode item explanations	8-2
I/O information enhancement	8-3
Display of Error Code/Alarm Code description	8-3
COPIER > OPTION > BODY, Item Segmentation	8-4
Security features	8-4
Related service modes	8-4
Switching Screen (Level 1 < - > 2)	8-5
Language switch	8-6
Back-up of service mode	8-6

The data output of the service data print	8-7
Overview	8-7
Service Prints and Data File Names That Support File Output	8-7
How to Move Service Print Files to a USB Memory Device	8-7
How to Move Service Print Files to a PC using the SST	8-9

COPIER	8-10
DISPLAY	8-10
VERSION	8-10
USER	8-26
ACC-STS	8-26
ANALOG	8-28
HV-STS	8-29
CCD	8-30
DPOT	8-32
DENS	8-33
MISC	8-37
HT-C	8-37
IO	8-43
DCON > P001 to P016	8-43
RCON > P001 to P009	8-46
FEEDER > P001 to P010	8-47
Inner Finisher-F1(SORTER>P001 to P056)	8-48
Staple Finisher-M1/Booklet Finisher-M1(SORTER>P001 to P056)	8-49
ADJUST	8-52
ADJ-XY	8-52
CCD	8-53
IMG-REG	8-57
DENS	8-59
BLANK	8-63
V-CONT	8-63
PASCAL	8-65
COLOR	8-66
HV-PRI	8-71
HV-TR	8-73
FEED-ADJ	8-88
MISC	8-91
FUNCTION	8-92
INSTALL	8-92

CCD	8-95
CLEANING	8-95
PANEL	8-96
PART-CHK	8-96
CLEAR	8-97
MISC-R	8-100
MISC-P	8-101
SYSTEM	8-102
DBG-LOG	8-103
OPTION	8-105
FNC-SW	8-105
DSPLY-SW	8-114
IMAG-FIX	8-118
IMG-TR	8-121
IMG-DEV	8-122
IMG-LSR	8-123
IMG-RDR	8-124
IMG-MCON	8-125
IMG-SPD	8-130
CLEANING	8-131
ENV-SET	8-131
FEED-SW	8-132
NETWORK	8-133
CUSTOM	8-140
USER	8-143
CST	8-155
ACC	8-158
INT-FACE	8-161
LCNS-TR	8-162
TEST	8-171
PG	8-171
NETWORK	8-173
COUNTER	8-174
TOTAL	8-174
PICK-UP	8-175
FEEDER	8-175
JAM	8-175
MISC	8-176

JOB	8-176
DRBL-1	8-177
DRBL-2	8-179
T-CNTR	8-180
V-CNTR	8-180
V2-CNTR	8-181
LF	8-181
FEEDER	8-182
DISPLAY	8-182
ADJUST	8-182
FUNCTION	8-183
SORTER	8-185
ADJUST	8-185
FUNCTION	8-189
OPTION	8-189
BOARD	8-191
OPTION	8-191

Installation

How to Check this Installation Procedure	9-2
Description on the parts included in the package	9-2
When Using the Parts Included in the Package	9-2
Symbols in the Illustration	9-2
Checking before Installation:	9-2
Checking Power Supply	9-2
Checking the Installation Environment	9-2
Points to Note Before Installation	9-2
Checking Installation Space	9-3
Checking the Contents	9-4
Table of Options Combination:	9-5
Combination of the Options installing to the Right Side of the Host Machine	9-5
Unpacking	9-6
Installation Procedure	9-8
Installing the Toner Container	9-8
Scanner Installation	9-9

Setting the Environment Heater Switch -----	9-9	Machine -----	9-23
Turning ON the Power -----	9-10	Points to Note at Installation -----	9-23
Turning OFF the Main Power -----	9-10	Unpacking -----	9-23
Installing the Others -----	9-10	Installation Procedure_Printer Model (for Europe) -----	9-25
Securing the Host Machine -----	9-11	Installing the Toner Container -----	9-25
Affixing the Label -----	9-12	Turning ON the Power -----	9-26
Setting the Cassette -----	9-12	Turning OFF the Main Power -----	9-26
Auto Gradation Adjustment -----	9-13	Installing the Others -----	9-26
Image Position Adjustment -----	9-13	Securing the Host Machine -----	9-27
Margin Adjustment (1st side;) -----	9-13	Setting the Cassette -----	9-28
Margin Adjustment (2nd side) -----	9-15	Auto Gradation Adjustment -----	9-29
Multi-purpose Tray Margin Adjustment (1st side: mechanical adjustment) -----	9-16	Image Position Adjustment -----	9-29
Multi-purpose Tray Margin Adjustment (2nd side) -----	9-16	Margin Adjustment (1st side;) -----	9-29
Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side) -----	9-16	Margin Adjustment (2nd side) -----	9-31
Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (2nd side) -----	9-17	Multi-purpose Tray Margin Adjustment (1st side: mechanical adjustment) -----	9-31
Checking the Network Connection -----	9-17	Multi-purpose Tray Margin Adjustment (2nd side) -----	9-31
Overview -----	9-17	Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side) -----	9-32
Checking the Network Connection -----	9-17	Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (2nd side) -----	9-32
Operation Procedure Using Ping -----	9-18	Checking the Network Connection -----	9-33
Checking by the Remote Host Address -----	9-18	Overview -----	9-33
Network Troubleshooting -----	9-18	Checking the Network Connection -----	9-33
Checking Connection of the Network Cable -----	9-18	Operation Procedure Using Ping -----	9-33
Operation Procedure Using Ping -----	9-18	Checking by the Remote Host Address -----	9-33
Checking the Network Setting of the Host Machine -----	9-18	Network Troubleshooting -----	9-34
Checking Network Function on the Main Controller -----	9-19	Checking Connection of the Network Cable -----	9-34
How to Check this Installation Procedure -----	9-20	Operation Procedure Using Ping -----	9-34
Description on the parts included in the package -----	9-20	Checking the Network Setting of the Host Machine -----	9-34
When Using the Parts Included in the Package -----	9-20	Checking Network Function on the Main Controller -----	9-34
Symbols in the Illustration -----	9-20	When Relocating the Machine -----	9-35
Checking before Installation -----	9-20	Printer Cover-D2 -----	9-36
Checking Power Supply -----	9-20	Points to Note at Installation -----	9-36
Checking the Installation Environment -----	9-20	Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-36
Points to Note Before Installation -----	9-21	Checking Components -----	9-36
Checking Installation Space -----	9-21	Installation Procedure -----	9-37
Checking the Contents -----	9-22	Platen Cover Type S -----	9-45
Table of Options Combination: -----	9-23	Points to Note at Installation -----	9-45
Combination of the Options installing to the Right Side of the Host		Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power -----	9-45

Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-45	Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	9-68
Checking the Contents -----	9-45	Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-68
Installation Procedure-----	9-46	Installation Procedure-----	9-69
Inner 2way Tray-F1 -----	9-50	When Installing the USB Keyboard -----	9-70
Points to Note at Installation -----	9-50	Stamp Unit-B1 -----	9-71
Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	9-50	Points to Note at Installation -----	9-71
Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-50	Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-71
Checking the contents -----	9-50	Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	9-71
Installation procedure-----	9-51	Checking the contents -----	9-71
Checking after Installation -----	9-53	Installation procedure-----	9-72
Copy Tray-J1 -----	9-54	Operation Check -----	9-73
Points to Note at Installation -----	9-54	Voice Operation Kit-C2 -----	9-74
Checking the contents -----	9-54	Points to Note when Installing -----	9-74
Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	9-54	Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	9-74
Installation procedure-----	9-54	Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	9-74
Checking after Installation -----	9-55	Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-74
Card Reader-F1/Copy Card Reader Attachment-B3 -----	9-56	Checking the Contents -----	9-74
Points to Note at Installation -----	9-56	Installation Procedure-----	9-75
Checking the Contents -----	9-56	Checking after Installation -----	9-81
Copy Card Reader-F1 -----	9-56	Operation Check -----	9-81
Copy Card Reader Attachment-B3-----	9-56	When Starting to Use-----	9-81
Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	9-57	When Stopping to Use -----	9-81
Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-57	USB Device Port-E2/Multimedia Reader/Writer-A2 -----	9-82
Installation Procedure-----	9-57	Points to Note at Installation -----	9-82
Removing the Covers-----	9-57	Check Item when Turning OFF the Main Power -----	9-82
Installing the Card Reader-----	9-59	Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-82
Checking after Installation -----	9-63	Checking the Contents -----	9-82
Reader Heater Unit-J1 Installation Procedure-----	9-64	USB Device Port-E2 -----	9-82
Checking the Contents -----	9-64	Multimedia Reader/Writer-A2-----	9-83
Points to Note Before Installation -----	9-64	Installation Procedure -----	9-84
Turning Main Power OFF -----	9-64	Installing the USB Device Port -----	9-84
Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-64	Installing the Card Reader-----	9-89
Installation Procedure-----	9-65	Installing the Multimedia Reader/Writer-A2 -----	9-91
Utility Tray-A2 -----	9-68	Operation Check [Multimedia Reader/Writer-A2-----	9-93
Checking the Contents -----	9-68	Writing Check-----	9-93
Points to Note when Installing -----	9-68	Reading Check-----	9-95
		Memory Media Removal-----	9-96

Voice Guidance Kit-F2 -----	9-97	TYPE-1: 2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2 Installation Procedure -----	9-115
Points to Note when Installing -----	9-97	Points to note before installation -----	9-115
Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	9-97	Checking the Contents -----	9-115
Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-97	2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2 -----	9-115
Checking the Contents -----	9-97	Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	9-116
Installation Procedure-----	9-98	Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-116
Checking the Settings -----	9-103	Installation Procedure-----	9-117
Operation Check -----	9-103	Removing the Covers-----	9-117
When Using -----	9-103	Installing the HDD -----	9-118
When Stopping to Use -----	9-103	Installing the Covers -----	9-119
Document Scan Lock-Kit-----	104	Setting after Installation -----	9-122
Points to Note at Installation -----	104	Checking after Installation -----	9-122
Installation Outline Drawing -----	104	TYPE-2: HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3 Installation Procedure: 9-123	
Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	104	Points to Note at Installation -----	9-123
Checking the Contents -----	104	Points to Note when Unpacking HDD Data Encryption & Mirroring Kit ---	9-123
Installation Procedure-----	105	Checking the Contents -----	9-124
Checking after Installation -----	106	HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3-----	9-124
Serial Intreface KIT-K1/Copy Control Interface KIT-A1-----	107	Setting Before Turning OFF the Power-----	9-124
Points to Note at Installation -----	107	Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	9-124
Installation Outline Drawing -----	107	Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-124
Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	107	Installation Procedure-----	9-125
Checking the Contents -----	107	Removing the Covers-----	9-125
Serial Intreface KIT-K1 -----	107	Installing the HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3-----	9-125
Copy Control Interface KIT-A1 -----	107	Installing the Covers -----	9-128
Installation Procedure-----	108	Setting after Installation -----	9-130
When Installing the Serial Interface Kit-K1 -----	109	Checking after Installation -----	9-130
When Installing the Copy Control Interface Kit-A1 -----	110	After Installing the Encryption Kit -----	9-131
After Installation -----	111	TYPE-3: Removable HDD Kit-AE1 Installation Procedure ----	9-132
Combination of HDD Options -----	9-112	Points to Note at Installation -----	9-132
Points to Note Regarding Data Backup/Export-----	9-112	Checking the Contents -----	9-132
Making a Backup of the Data (reference only) -----	9-113	Removable HDD Kit-AE1 -----	9-132
Procedure for Import/Export ALL of User Settings -----	9-113	Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power-----	9-133
Backup of MEAP Application -----	9-114	Installation Outline Drawing -----	9-133
Stop of MEAP Applications, Disabling, Download of Disabled License Files and Uninstallation-----	9-114	Installation Procedure-----	9-133
User Authentication Information Registered by SSO-H (Single Sign-ON Hybrit) 9-114		Removing the Covers-----	9-133
		Installing the Removable HDD Kit-----	9-134

Installing the Covers	9-139
Installing the Removable HDD	9-142
Checking after Installation	9-142
TYPE-4: Removable HDD Kit-AE1/HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3	
Installation Procedure.....	9-143
Points to Note at Installation	9-143
Points to Note when Unpacking HDD Data Encryption & Mirroring Kit ---	9-143
Checking the Contents	9-144
Removable HDD Kit-AE1.....	9-144
Checking the Contents	9-144
HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3.....	9-144
Setting Before Turning OFF the Power.....	9-145
Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power.....	9-145
Installation Outline Drawing	9-145
Installation Procedure.....	9-145
Removing the Covers.....	9-145
Installing the Removable HDD Kit.....	9-147
Installing the Covers	9-153
Installing the Removable HDD	9-156
Setting after Installation/After Installing the Encryption Kit.....	9-157
Checking after Installation	9-157

General Circuit Diagram(5/18).....	X
General Circuit Diagram(6/18).....	XI
General Circuit Diagram(7/18).....	XII
General Circuit Diagram(8/18).....	XIII
General Circuit Diagram(9/18).....	XIV
General Circuit Diagram(10/18).....	XV
General Circuit Diagram(11/18).....	XVI
General Circuit Diagram(12/18).....	XVII
General Circuit Diagram(13/18).....	XVIII
General Circuit Diagram(14/18).....	XIX
General Circuit Diagram(15/18).....	XX
General Circuit Diagram(16/18).....	XXI
General Circuit Diagram(17/18).....	XXII
General Circuit Diagram(18/18).....	XXIII
Backup Data.....	XXIV
Detail of HDD partition.....	XXXI
Soft counter specifications.....	XXXII
Soft counter specifications.....	XXXII

Appendix

Service Tools	II
Special Tools.....	II
Solvents and Oils	III
General Timing Chart	IV
General Timing Chart.....	IV
A4 single-sided 2 prints full color	IV
A4 single-sided 2 prints Bk color.....	V
General Circuit Diagram.....	VI
General Circuit Diagram(1/18).....	VI
General Circuit Diagram(2/18).....	VII
General Circuit Diagram(3/18).....	VIII
General Circuit Diagram(4/18).....	IX

Safety Precautions

- CDRH Act
- Laser Safety
- Handling of Laser System
- Turn power switch ON
- Points to Note About Turning Off the Main Power Switch
- Safety of Toner
- Notes When Handling a Lithium Battery
- Notes Before it Works Serving
- Points to Note at Cleaning



imageRUNNER ADVANCE
C2200 Series

CDRH Act

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health of the US Food and Drug Administration put into force regulations concerning laser products on August 2, 1976. These regulations apply to laser products manufactured on and after August 1, 1976, and the sale of laser products not certified under the regulations is banned within the United States. The label shown here indicates compliance with the CDRH regulations, and its attachment is required on all laser products that are sold in the United States.

CANON INC.
30-2, SHIMOMARUKO, 3-CHOME, OHTA-KU, TOKYO, JAPAN

MANUFACTURED:

THIS PRODUCT CONFORMS WITH DHHS RADIATION
PERFORMANCE STANDARD 21CFR CHAPTER 1
SUBCHAPTER J.



F-0-16

A different description may be used for a different product.

Laser Safety

Laser beam radiation may pose a danger to the human body. A laser scanner mounted on the machine is sealed with the protection housing and external cover to prevent the laser beam from leaking to the outside. The laser beam never leaks out of the scanner as far as users operate the machine normally.

Handling of Laser System

When servicing the area around the laser assembly, be sure to turn off the main power. The machine's covers that can reflect laser light are identified by means of a warning label (Figure). If you must detach a cover showing the label, be sure to take extra caution during the work.

↑
! DANGER - Invisible laser radiation when open and interlocks defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.
CAUTION - CLASS 3B INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN AND INTERLOCKS DEFEATED. AVOID EXPOSURE TO THE BEAM.
ATTENTION - RAYONNEMENT LASER INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 3B EN CAS D'OUVERTURE OU LORSQUE LE CONTACT DE SECURITE EST DEVEROUILLE. EVITEZ L'EXPOSITION AU FAISCEAU.

VORSICHT - UNSICHTBARE LASERSTRAHLUNG KLASSE 3B, WENN ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET UND SICHERHEITSVERRIEGELUNGEN ÜBERBRÜCKT. NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.
PRECAUCIÓN - RADIACIÓN LASER INVISIBLE DE CLASE 3B PRESENTE AL ABRIR Y CUANDO ESTÁN NEUTRALIZADOS LOS BLOQUES DE SEGURIDAD. EVITE LA EXPOSICIÓN AL HAZ.
VARNING - KLASS 3B OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD OCH SPÄRRAR ÄR URKOPPLADE. STRÅLEN ÄR FARLIG.
VAROITUS - LUOKAN 3B NÄKYMÄTTÖMÄLLE LASER-SÄTEILYÄ AVATTUNA JA SUOLALUKITUKSET POISTETTUNA. VÄLTÄ ALTISTUMISTA SÄTEELLE.

注意 - 当打开或联锁装置失效时, 会有不可见的3B类激光辐射, 请避免接触激光束。
注意 - 打开机器盖板或联锁装置时3B级不可见激光束射出, 应避免照射。
注意 - 알리거나 인터락 고장의 경우 등급 3B 비가시 레이저 방사선이 방출됩니다. 광선에 노출을 피하십시오。
注意 - ここを開き、インターロックを解除するとクラス3B不可見レーザー放射が出来ます。ビームに身をさらさないこと。

↑
! DANGER - Invisible laser radiation when open and interlocks defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.
CAUTION - CLASS 3B INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN AND INTERLOCKS DEFEATED. AVOID EXPOSURE TO THE BEAM.
ATTENTION - RAYONNEMENT LASER INVISIBLE DE CLASSE 3B EN CAS D'OUVERTURE OU LORSQUE LE CONTACT DE SECURITE EST DEVEROUILLE. EVITEZ L'EXPOSITION AU FAISCEAU.

VORSICHT - UNSICHTBARE LASERSTRAHLUNG KLASSE 3B, WENN ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET UND SICHERHEITSVERRIEGELUNGEN ÜBERBRÜCKT. NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.
PRECAUCIÓN - RADIACIÓN LASER INVISIBLE DE CLASE 3B PRESENTE AL ABRIR Y CUANDO ESTÁN NEUTRALIZADOS LOS BLOQUES DE SEGURIDAD. EVITE LA EXPOSICIÓN AL HAZ.
VARNING - KLASS 3B OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING NÄR DENNA DEL ÄR ÖPPNAD OCH SPÄRRAR ÄR URKOPPLADE. STRÅLEN ÄR FARLIG.
VAROITUS - LUOKAN 3B NÄKYMÄTTÖMÄLLE LASER-SÄTEILYÄ AVATTUNA JA SUOLALUKITUKSET POISTETTUNA. VÄLTÄ ALTISTUMISTA SÄTEELLE.

注意 - 当打开或联锁装置失效时, 会有不可见的3B类激光辐射, 请避免接触激光束。
注意 - 打开机器盖板或联锁装置时3B级不可见激光束射出, 应避免照射。
注意 - 알리거나 인터락 고장의 경우 등급 3B 비가시 레이저 방사선이 방출됩니다. 광선에 노출을 피하십시오。
注意 - ここを開き、インターロックを解除するとクラス3B不可見レーザー放射が出来ます。ビームに身をさらさないこと。

F-0-17

Turn power switch ON

The machine is equipped with 2 power switches: main power switch and control panel power switch.

The machine goes on when the main power switch is turned on (i.e., other than in low power mode, sleep mode).

CAUTION:

Do not turn off the main power switch while the progress bar is indicated, during which access is made to the HDD. If deprived of power, the HDD can suffer a fault (E602).

Safety of Toner

About Toner

The machine's toner is a non-toxic material made of plastic, iron, and small amounts of dye.

CAUTION:

Do not throw toner into fire. It may cause explosion.

Toner on Clothing or Skin

- If your clothing or skin has come into contact with toner, wipe it off with tissue; then, wash it off with water.
- Do not use warm water, which will cause the toner to jell and fuse permanently with the fibers of the cloth.
- Toner is easy to react with plastic material, avoid contact with plastic.

Notes When Handling a Lithium Battery

CAUTION:

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE.
DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

The following warnings are given to comply with Safety Principles (EN60950).

CAUTION:

Wenn mit dem falschen Typ ausgewechselt, besteht Explosionsgefahr.
Gebrauchte Batterien gemäß der Anleitung beseitigen.

警告
如果更換不正確之電池型式會有爆炸的風險
請依製造商說明書處理用過之電池

Notes Before it Works Serving

CAUTION:

At servicing, be sure to turn OFF the power source according to the specified steps and disconnect the power plug.

Points to Note at Cleaning

CAUTION:

When performing cleaning using organic solvent such as alcohol, be sure to check that the component of solvent is vaporized completely before assembling.

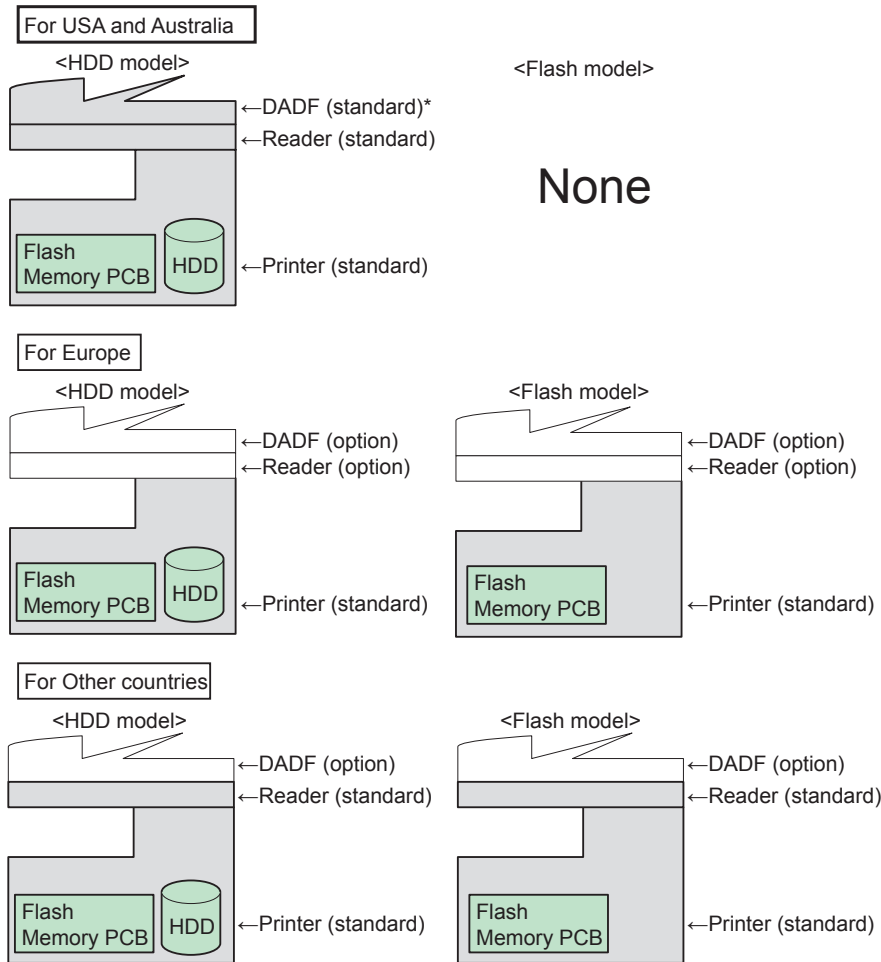


Features/ Specifications

- Product Lineup
- Features
- Specifications
- Parts Name

Product Lineup

Host Machine



F-1-1

Model Type

	C2230	C2225	C2220
Print speed (BW/Color)	30ppm	25ppm	20ppm
Positioning	Cost-prioritized Standard-office model Target mode: iRC3380/2880 series, iRC3100 series		

T-1-1

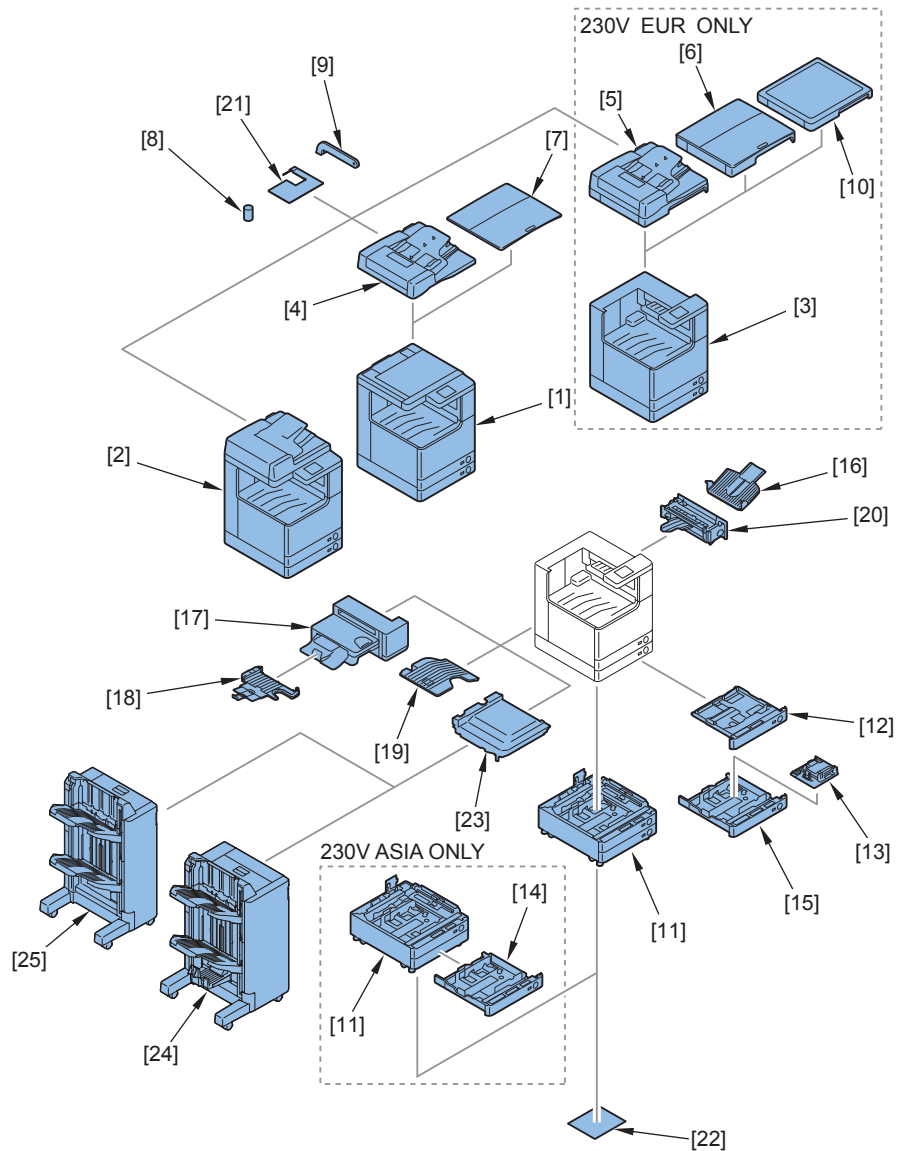
imageRUNNER ADVANCE C 22 30
A B

A: Product category (9x: Production model, 5x: Office model, 2x: Standard-office model)

B: Print speed (Unit: ppm; print per minutes)

Options

Pickup/Delivery/Image Reading System Options

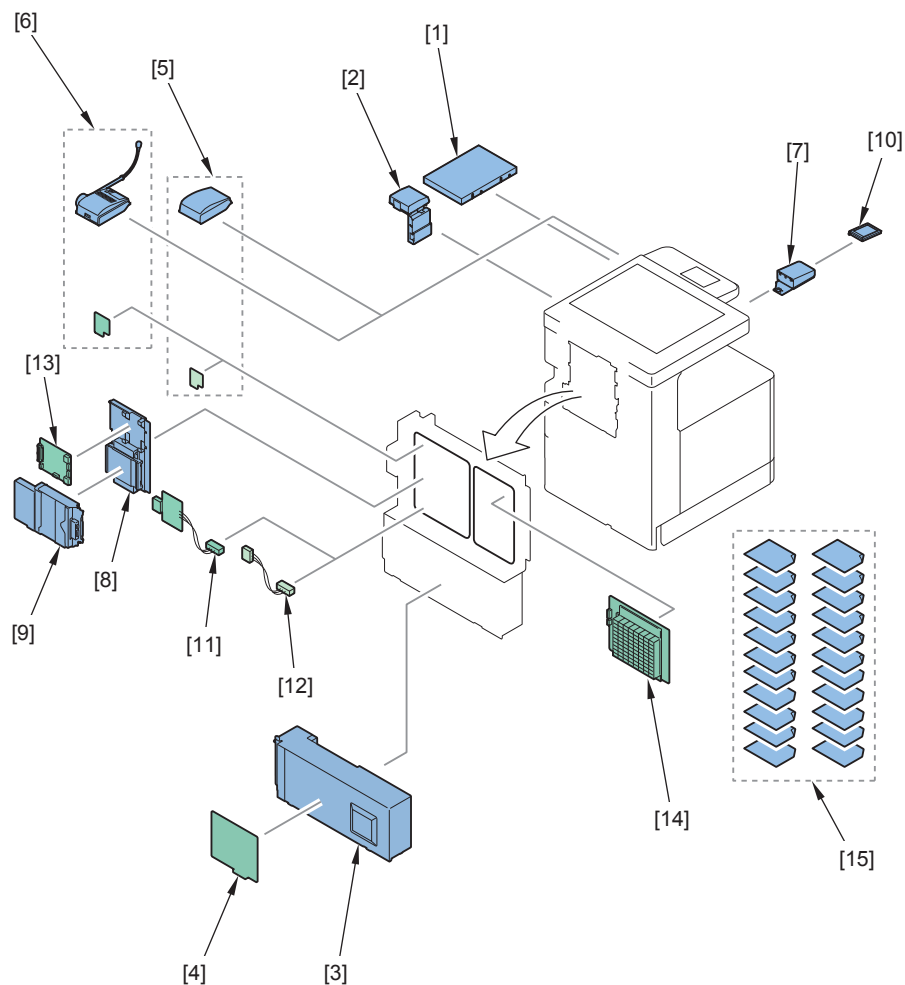


F-1-2

No.	name	Condition
[1]	imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2230/2225/2220	FLASH model
[2]	imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2230/2225/2220	HDD model
[3]	imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2230/2225/2220	For Europe
[4]	DADF-AJ1	
[5]	Color Image Reader Unit-G1	
[6]	Color Image Reader Unit-G2	
[7]	Platen Cover Type S	
[8]	Stamp Unit-B1	
[9]	ADF Access Handle-A1	
[10]	Printer Cover-D2	
[11]	Cassette Feeding Unit-AF1	
[12]	FL Cassette-AN1	
[13]	FL Cassette-AM1	
[14]	Cassette Module-X1	For ASIA
[15]	Envelope Feeder Attachment-D1	
[16]	Copy Tray-J1	Expansion Delivery Kit-C1 is required
[17]	Inner Finisher-F1	Expansion Delivery Kit-C1 is required Cannot be installed with Inner 2-way Tray-F1.
[18]	Inner Finisher Additional Tray-A1	
[19]	Inner 2way Tray-F1	Expansion Delivery Kit-C1 is required Cannot be installed with Inner Finisher-C1.
[20]	3 Way Unit-C1	USA,AUS: Standard Others: Option
[21]	Reader Heater Unit-J1	
[22]	Cassette Heater Unit-37	
[23]	Buffer Pass Unit-K1	
[24]	Booklet Finisher-M1	
[25]	Staple Finisher-M1	

T-1-2

Function Expansion System Options



F-1-3

No.	name	Condition
[1]	Utility Tray-A2	
[2]	Card Reader-F1 Copy Card Reader Attachment Kit-B3	
[3]	Super G3 FAX Board-AH1	1-line Fax Board is required.
[4]	Super G3 2nd Line FAX Board-AH1	1-line Fax Board is required.
[5]	Voice Guidance Kit-F2	
[6]	Voice Operation Kit-C2	
[7]	USB Device Port-E2	
[8]	2.5inch/80GB HDD-E1	For FLASH model, Optional HDD (2.5 inch/160GB) E1 is required.
[9]	Removable HDD Kit-AE1	
[10]	Multimedia Reader/Writer-A2	USB Device Port-B2 is required.
[11]	Serial Interface Kit-K1	Cannot be installed with Control Interface Kit-A1
[12]	Control Interface Kit-A1	Cannot be installed with Serial Interface Kit-K1.
[13]	HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3	
[14]	Image Analysis Board-A1	
[15]	PCL Printer Kit-AG1 PS Expansion Kit-AG1 Direct Print Expansion Kit (for PDF/XPS)-H1 Barcode Printing Kit-D1 Color Universal Send Kit-R1 Universal Send Advanced Feature Set-E1 Universal Send Security Feature Set-D1 Universal Send Digital User Signature Kit-C1 Remote Operation Kit-B1 HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3 Encrypted Secure Print Software-D1 Secure Watermark-B1 Document Scan Lock Kit-A1 ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM KIT-B1 Web Access Software-H1 eM Controller-C1, 230V Remote FAX Kit-A1	

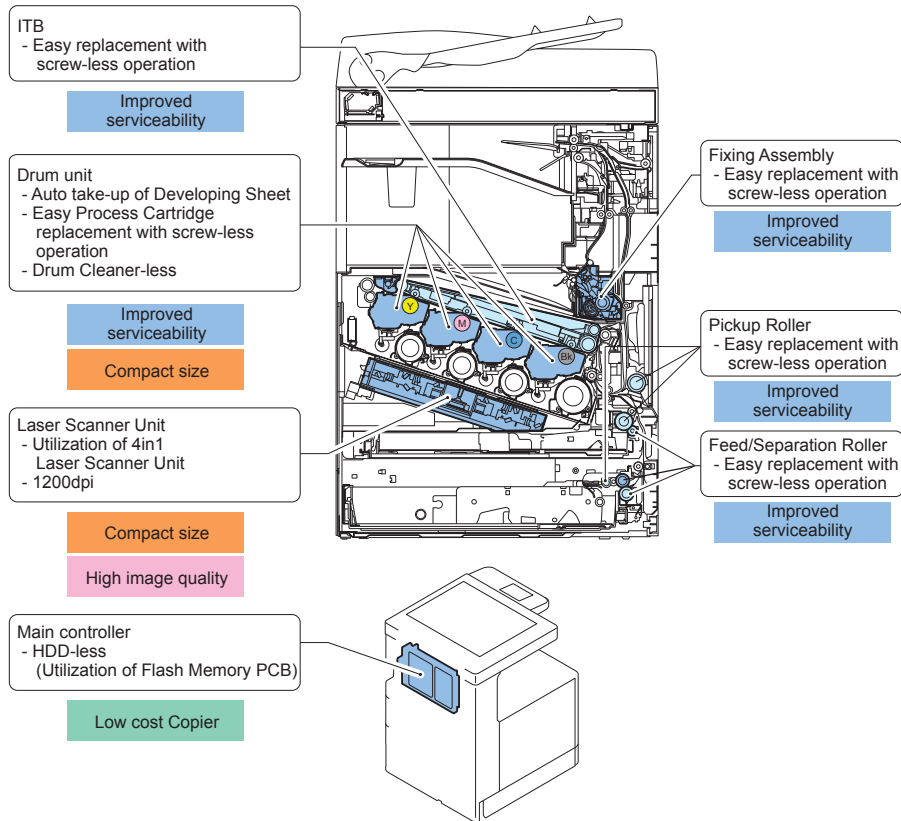
T-1-3

NOTE:

There are combinations to install No. 1, 2, 5, and 6. (Only No. 2 can be connected as a single unit. Only one of other products can be connected.)

Features

Product Features



F-1-4

Service Features

Improved Upgrading Operability

The options can be upgraded through the host machine.

The version upgrading can be executed by any of the three methods; by using SST (Service Support Tool), via a USB memory using SST, and via Internet using CDS (Contents Display System).

Since only the difference can be upgraded, work time is reduced.

Applying New Connectors

A new connector is introduced to prevent the occurrence of a communication error due to the causes listed below.

- Loose/removed connector due to vibration during transportation
- Half-inserted connector at the time of servicing



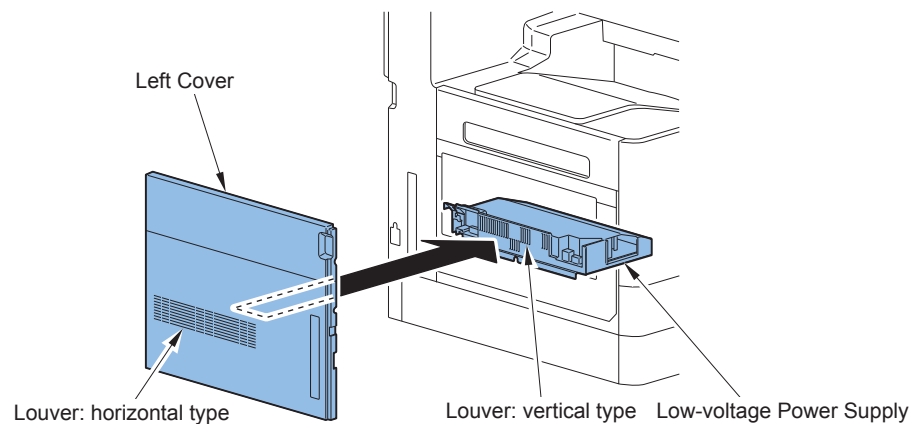
DC Controller Connectors

F-1-5

Realization of Breaker-less Machine

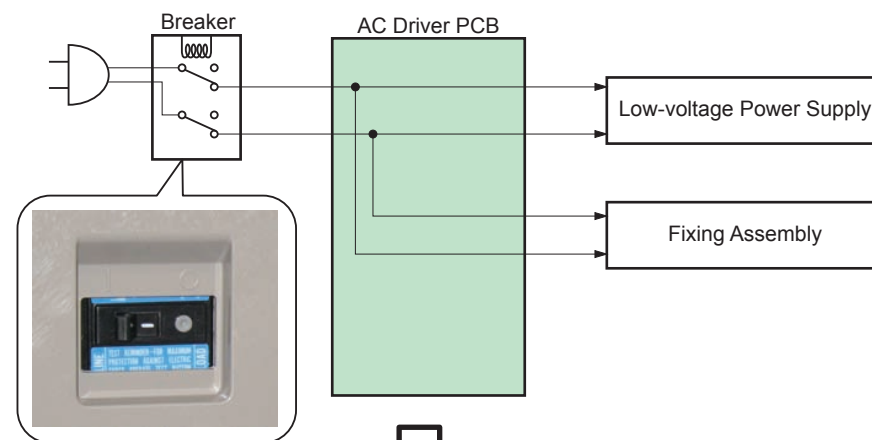
To reduce costs, a breaker is discontinued. At the same time, the following two measures are executed to prevent leakage of electricity.

- To prevent foreign matters from entering the power supply, the Power Supply Cover is added, and the direction of the Louver on the Power Supply Cover and the Left Cover is changed.
- Fuses (4 in total) are provided in both lines in the AC Driver PCB. This makes a safety measure for blowout of a fuse in the case of overload, short-circuit or short-circuit between the AC line and the grounding (host machine).
- Double insulation measures are provided between the AC line and the host machine to enhance insulating performance.

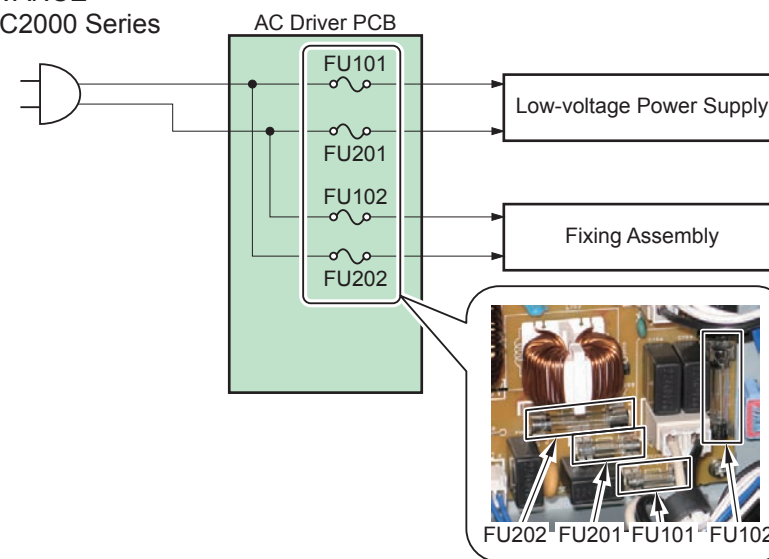


F-1-6

- Conventional model



- iR ADVANCE C2200/C2000 Series



F-1-7

To replace major parts, a simple replacement procedure in which fixing screws do not have to be removed is introduced. This improved serviceability and enabled a user to execute replacement, which reduced a number of service calls.

Target parts are listed below.

- Drum Unit
- ITB Unit
- Pickup/Separation Roller (Cassette 1)
- Pickup/Delivery/Separation Roller (Cassette 2)
- Pickup Roller (Multi-purpose Tray)

Specifications

Specifications

Machine installation method	Desktop
Photosensitive medium	OPC
Exposure method	Laser exposure
Charging method	Roller charging
Developing method	Dry, 2-component development
Transfer method	Intermediate Belt transfer (Primary transfer: Roller transfer, Secondary transfer: Roller transfer)
Separation method	Curvature separation + Static Eliminator
Pickup method	Cassette 1: Simple Separation Roller method (Pickup Roller + Separation Roller) Cassette 2: Separation Roller method (Pickup Roller + Delivery Roller + Separation Roller) Multi-purpose Tray: Separation Pad method (Pickup Roller + Separation Pad)
Fixing method	On-demand fixing (Aluminum heater + 24mm diameter elastic film)
Delivery method	Face-down
Drum cleaning method	Cleaner-less method
Transfer cleaning method	Cleaning Blade
Toner type	Non-magnetic negative toner
Toner supplying method	Toner Container method
Toner level detection function	Yes
Leading edge image margin	4.0+1.5/-1.0mm
Left edge image margin	2.5+/-1.5mm
Leading edge non-image width	4.0+1.5/-1.0mm
Left edge non-image width	2.5+/-1.5mm
Warm-up time	At power-on: 30 sec. or less (iR ADVANCE C2230/C2225/C2220: 34 sec. or less) At recovery from sleep mode: 10 sec. or less
Image gradations	256 gradations
Print resolution	600No600dpi (Full speed), 1200No1200dpi (Half speed)
Paper type (Cassette 1)	Thin paper (60 to 64g/m ²), Plain paper 1 (65 to 82g/m ²), Plain paper 2 (83 to 99g/m ²), Plain paper 3 (100 to 105g/m ²), Thick paper 1 (106 to 120g/m ²), Bond paper, Recycled paper, Pre-punched paper

Paper type (Cassette 2)	Thin paper (60 to 64g/m ²), Plain paper 1 (65 to 82g/m ²), Plain paper 2 (83 to 99g/m ²), Plain paper 3 (100 to 105g/m ²), Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120g/m ²), Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163g/m ²), Transparency, Envelope, Bond paper, Recycled paper, Pre-punched paper
Paper type (Multi-purpose Tray)	Thin paper (60 to 64g/m ²), Plain paper 1 (65 to 82g/m ²), Plain paper 2 (83 to 99g/m ²), Plain paper 3 (100 to 105g/m ²), Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120g/m ²), Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163g/m ²), Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220g/m ²), Transparency, Recycled paper, Color paper, Pre-punched paper, Tracing paper, Coated paper, Labels, Bond paper, Postcard, Envelope
Paper size (Cassette 1 250 Sheets)	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, LDR, LGL, LTR, LTRR, EXE, 8K, 16K, STMTR
Paper size (Cassette 1 520 Sheets)	A3, B4, A4, B5, LDR, LTR, EXE, 8K, 16K, STMT
Paper size (Cassette 2)	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, LDR, LGL, LTR, LTRR, EXE, STMTR, 12"x18", 8K, 16K
Paper size (Multi-purpose Tray)	305x457mm (12"x18"), 320x450mm (SRA3), A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5, A5R, LDR, LGL, LTR, LTRR, EXE, 8K, 16K, STMT, STMTR, Postcard, Envelope, Custom size (99x140mm minimum to 320x457mm maximum)
Pickup capacity	Cassette 1: 250 / 520 sheets (80g/m ²), Cassette 2: 550 sheets (80g/m ²), Multi-purpose Tray: 100 sheets (80g/m ²)
Duplex method	Through-pass duplex
Memory capacity	Main Controller PCB 1: 1GB Main Controller PCB 2: 1GB
FLASH memory	4GB
HDD capacity	For USA, Australia: STD: 80GB For Other aria HDD Model: 80GB Flash Model: None(Option: 80GB)
Operation noise	70dB or less (During printing)
Ozone volume	Maximum: 3.0 mg/h or less (RAL UZ-122:2006)
Rated power supply	AC120V/15A ,AC230V/10A
Maximum power consumption	1.5kW or less
Power consumption during copy	666W or less
Power consumption during standby	105W
Dimensions (WxDxH)	iR ADVANCE C2230/C2225/C2220 (Flash Model): Approx. 565mm (Width) x Approx. 650mm (Depth) x Approx. 791mm (Height) iR ADVANCE C2230/C2225/C2220 (HDD Model): Approx. 565mm (Width) x Approx. 680mm (Depth) x Approx. 928mm (Height)
Weight	iR ADVANCE C2230/C2225/C2220 (Flash Model Main body + Reader): Approx. 77kg iR ADVANCE C2230/C2225/C2220 (HDD Model Main body + Reader + DADF + HDD): Approx. 87kg

T-1-4

Weight and Size

Product name	Width (mm)	Depth (mm)	Height (mm)	Weight: Approx. (kg)
iR ADVANCE C2230/C2225/C2220 (Flash Model)	565	650	790	77
iR ADVANCE C2230/C2225/C2220 (HDD Model)	565	680	928	87
2-cassette Pedestal-AF1	562	650	251	27.5
Inner Finisher-F1	602	540	234	12.5
Buffer Pass Unit-K1				6.5
Booklet Finisher-M1	671	656	1097	75
Staple Finisher-M1	559	647	1097	46

T-1-5

Productivity (Print Speed)

Size	Mode	Type	Paper weight (g/m ²)	imageRUNNER ADVANCE					
				C2230		C2225		C2220	
				Cassette	Multi-purpose Tray	Cassette	Multi-purpose Tray	Cassette	Multi-purpose Tray
				Color, B/W	Color, B/W	Color, B/W	Color, B/W	Color, B/W	Color, B/W
A4	1-sided	Plain paper	60-105	30.0	30.0	25.0	25.0	20.0	20.0
		Heavy paper	106-163	12.0	12.0	12.0	12.0	12.0	12.0
			164-220	-	12.0	-	12.0	-	12.0
	2-sided	Plain paper	60-105	30.0	30.0	25.0	25.0	20.0	20.0
		Heavy paper	106-120	12.0	12.0	12.0	12.0	12.0	12.0
A3	1-sided	Plain paper	60-105	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0
		Heavy paper	106-163	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5
			164-220	-	7.5	-	7.5	-	7.5
	2-sided	Plain paper	60-105	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0
		Heavy paper	106-120	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5	7.5

T-1-6

Paper Type

Following shows the types of usable papers.

See the table below for the custom paper size.

Type	Feeding direction (mm)	Width direction (mm)
Custom paper size 1-1	139.7 to 181.9	99.0 to 139.6
Custom paper size 1-2	182.0 to 420.0	
Custom paper size 1-3	420.1 to 457.2	
Custom paper size 2-1	139.7 to 181.9	139.7 to 147.9
Custom paper size 2-2	182.0 to 420.0	
Custom paper size 2-3	420.1 to 457.2	
Custom paper size 3-1	182.0 to 209.9	148.0 to 297.0
Custom paper size 3-2	210.0 to 279.2	
Custom paper size 3-3	279.3 to 432.0	
Custom paper size 4-1	139.7 to 181.9	297.1 to 304.8
Custom paper size 4-2	182.0 to 420.0	
Custom paper size 4-3	420.1 to 457.2	
Custom paper size 5-1	139.7 to 181.9	304.9 to 330.0
Custom paper size 5-1	182.0 to 420.0	
Custom paper size 5-1	420.1 to 457.2	
Custom paper size 6	457.3 to 1200	99.0 to 320.0

T-1-7

Pickup

Paper Type	Size	Feeding direction (mm)	Width direction (mm)	Pickup position (* Setting is necessary)						Auto Duplex	2-Side Setting
				Multi	CST1(250)	CST1(520)	CST2	CST3	CST4		
Recycled paper (64 to 82g/m2)	A3	420.0	297.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Color paper (64 to 82g/m2)	B4	364.0	257.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Plain paper1 (65 to 82g/m2)	A4R	297.0	210.0	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Plain paper2 (83 to 99g/m2)	A4	210.0	297.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Plain paper3 (100 to 105g/m2)	B5R	257.0	182.0	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Thin paper (60 to 64g/m2)	B5	182.0	257.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	A5	148.0	210.0	Yes		-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	A5R	210.0	148.0	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	11x17	431.8	279.4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	LGL	355.6	215.9	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	LTR	215.9	279.4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	LTRR	279.4	215.9	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	STMTR	215.9	139.7	Yes		-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	STMT	139.7	215.9	Yes		-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	SRA3	450.0	320.0	Yes		-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	12x18	457.2	304.8	Yes		-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	EXEC	184.1	266.7	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	EXEC-R	266.7	184.1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	OFFICIO	317.5	215.9	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	E-OFFICIO	320.0	220.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	B-OFFICIO	355.0	216.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	M-OFFICIO	341.0	216.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	A-OFFICIO	340.0	220.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	A-LTR	220.0	280.0	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	A-LTRR	280.0	220.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	GLTR-R	266.7	203.2	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	GLTR	203.2	266.7	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	GLGL	330.2	203.2	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	AFLS	337.0	206.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	FLS	330.2	215.9	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	13x19	482.6	330.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8	390.0	270.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	K16	195.0	270.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	K16R	270.0	195.0	-	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
	F4A	342.9	215.9	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	Custom paper size1-1, 1-2, 1-3, 2-1, 3-1, 4-1, 5-1, 5-2, 5-3			Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	Custom paper size 2-2, 2-3, 3-3, 4-2, 4-3			Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*	Yes
	Custom paper size3-2	182.0 to 420.0	148.0 to 297.0	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*	Yes
	Custom paper size6	457.3 to 1200	99 to 320.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*

Paper Type	Size	Feeding direction (mm)	Width direction (mm)	Pickup position (* Setting is necessary)						Auto Duplex	2-Side Setting
				Multi	CST1(250)	CST1(520)	CST2	CST3	CST4		
Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120g/m2)	A3	420.0	297.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	B4	364.0	257.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	A4R	297.0	210.0	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	A4	210.0	297.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	B5R	257.0	182.0	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	B5	182.0	257.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	A5	148.0	210.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	A5R	210.0	148.0	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	11x17	431.8	279.4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	LGL	355.6	215.9	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	LTR	215.9	279.4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	LTRR	279.4	215.9	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	STMTR	215.9	139.7	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	STMT	139.7	215.9	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	SRA3	450.0	320.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	12x18	457.2	304.8	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	EXEC	184.1	266.7	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	EXEC-R	266.7	184.1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	OFFICIO	317.5	215.9	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	E-OFFICIO	320.0	220.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	B-OFFICIO	355.0	216.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	M-OFFICIO	341.0	216.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	A-OFFICIO	340.0	220.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	A-LTR	220.0	280.0	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	A-LTRR	280.0	220.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	GLTR-R	266.7	203.2	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	GLTR	203.2	266.7	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	GLGL	330.2	203.2	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	AFLS	337.0	206.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	FLS	330.2	215.9	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	13x19	482.6	330.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8	390.0	270.0	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	K16	195.0	270.0	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
K16R	270.0	195.0	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	
F4A	342.9	215.9	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	
Custom paper size1-1, 1-2, 1-3, 2-1, 3-1, 4-1, 5-1, 5-2, 5-3			Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	
Custom paper size 2-2, 2-3, 3-3, 4-2, 4-3			Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	
Custom paper size3-2	182.0 to 420.0	148.0 to 297.0	Yes	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	
Custom paper size6	457.3 to 1200	99 to 320.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	

Paper Type	Size	Feeding direction (mm)	Width direction (mm)	Pickup position (* Setting is necessary)						Auto Duplex	2-Side Setting
				Multi	CST1(250)	CST1(520)	CST2	CST3	CST4		
Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163g/m2)	A3	420.0	297.0	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	B4	364.0	257.0	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	A4R	297.0	210.0	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	A4	210.0	297.0	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	B5R	257.0	182.0	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	B5	182.0	257.0	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	A5	148.0	210.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	A5R	210.0	148.0	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	11x17	431.8	279.4	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	LGL	355.6	215.9	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	LTR	215.9	279.4	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	LTRR	279.4	215.9	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	STMTR	215.9	139.7	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	STMT	139.7	215.9	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	SRA3	450.0	320.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	12x18	457.2	304.8	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	EXEC	184.1	266.7	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	EXEC-R	266.7	184.1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	OFFICIO	317.5	215.9	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	E-OFFICIO	320.0	220.0	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	B-OFFICIO	355.0	216.0	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	M-OFFICIO	341.0	216.0	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	A-OFFICIO	340.0	220.0	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	A-LTR	220.0	280.0	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	A-LTRR	280.0	220.0	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	GLTR-R	266.7	203.2	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	GLTR	203.2	266.7	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	GLGL	330.2	203.2	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	AFLS	337.0	206.0	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	FLS	330.2	215.9	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-
	13x19	482.6	330.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8	390.0	270.0	Yes*	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	Yes*
	K16	195.0	270.0	Yes*	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	Yes*
K16R	270.0	195.0	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-	
F4A	342.9	215.9	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	-	
Custom paper size1-1, 1-2, 1-3, 2-1, 3-1, 4-1, 5-1, 5-2, 5-3			Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	
Custom paper size 2-2, 2-3, 3-2, 3-3, 4-2, 4-3			Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	
Custom paper size6	457.3 to 1200	99 to 320.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*	

Paper Type	Size	Feeding direction (mm)	Width direction (mm)	Pickup position (* Setting is necessary)						Auto Duplex	2-Side Setting
				Multi	CST1(250)	CST1(520)	CST2	CST3	CST4		
Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220g/m2)	A3	420.0	297.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	B4	364.0	257.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	A4R	297.0	210.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	A4	210.0	297.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	B5R	257.0	182.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	B5	182.0	257.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	A5	148.0	210.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	A5R	210.0	148.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	11x17	431.8	279.4	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	LGL	355.6	215.9	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	LTR	215.9	279.4	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	LTRR	279.4	215.9	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	STMTR	215.9	139.7	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	STMT	139.7	215.9	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	SRA3	450.0	320.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	12x18	457.2	304.8	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	EXEC	184.1	266.7	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	EXEC-R	266.7	184.1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	OFFICIO	317.5	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	E-OFFICIO	320.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B-OFFICIO	355.0	216.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	M-OFFICIO	341.0	216.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-OFFICIO	340.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-LTR	220.0	280.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-LTRR	280.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLTR-R	266.7	203.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLTR	203.2	266.7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLGL	330.2	203.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	AFLS	337.0	206.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	FLS	330.2	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	13x19	482.6	330.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8	390.0	270.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	K16	195.0	270.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
K16R	270.0	195.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
F4A	342.9	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Custom paper size1-1, 1-2, 1-3, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 3-1, 3-2, 3-3, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 5-1, 5-2, 5-3			Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	
Custom paper size6	457.3 to 1200	99 to 320.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	

Paper Type	Size	Feeding direction (mm)	Width direction (mm)	Pickup position (* Setting is necessary)					Auto Duplex	2-Side Setting	
				Multi	CST1(250)	CST1(520)	CST2	CST3			CST4
Tracing (64 to 99g/m2)	A3	420.0	297.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B4	364.0	257.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A4R	297.0	210.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A4	210.0	297.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B5R	257.0	182.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B5	182.0	257.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5	148.0	210.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5R	210.0	148.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	11x17	431.8	279.4	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	LGL	355.6	215.9	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	LTR	215.9	279.4	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	LTRR	279.4	215.9	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	STMTR	215.9	139.7	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	STMT	139.7	215.9	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	SRA3	450.0	320.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	12x18	457.2	304.8	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	EXEC	184.1	266.7	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	EXEC-R	266.7	184.1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	OFFICIO	317.5	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	E-OFFICIO	320.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B-OFFICIO	355.0	216.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	M-OFFICIO	341.0	216.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-OFFICIO	340.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-LTR	220.0	280.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-LTRR	280.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLTR-R	266.7	203.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLTR	203.2	266.7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLGL	330.2	203.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	AFLS	337.0	206.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	FLS	330.2	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	13x19	482.6	330.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8	390.0	270.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K16	195.0	270.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
K16R	270.0	195.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
F4A	342.9	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Custom paper size1-1, 1-2, 1-3, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 3-1, 3-2, 3-3, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 5-1, 5-2, 5-3			Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Custom paper size6	457.3 to 1200	99 to 320.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	

Paper Type	Size	Feeding direction (mm)	Width direction (mm)	Pickup position (* Setting is necessary)						Auto Duplex	2-Side Setting
				Multi	CST1(250)	CST1(520)	CST2	CST3	CST4		
1-Side Coated Paper 1 (100 to 163g/m ²)	A3	420.0	297.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	B4	364.0	257.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
1-Side Coated Paper 2 (164 to 220g/m ²)	A4R	297.0	210.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	A4	210.0	297.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
Duplex Coated Paper 1 (100 to 163g/m ²)	B5R	257.0	182.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	B5	182.0	257.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
Duplex Coated Paper 2 (164 to 220g/m ²)	A5	148.0	210.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	A5R	210.0	148.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	11x17	431.8	279.4	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	LGL	355.6	215.9	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	LTR	215.9	279.4	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	LTRR	279.4	215.9	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	STMTR	215.9	139.7	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	STMT	139.7	215.9	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	SRA3	450.0	320.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	12x18	457.2	304.8	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	EXEC	184.1	266.7	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	EXEC-R	266.7	184.1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	OFFICIO	317.5	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	E-OFFICIO	320.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B-OFFICIO	355.0	216.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	M-OFFICIO	341.0	216.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-OFFICIO	340.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-LTR	220.0	280.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-LTRR	280.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLTR-R	266.7	203.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLTR	203.2	266.7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLGL	330.2	203.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	AFLS	337.0	206.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	FLS	330.2	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	13x19	482.6	330.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8	390.0	270.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	K16	195.0	270.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
K16R	270.0	195.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
F4A	342.9	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Custom paper size1-1, 1-2, 1-3, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 3-1, 3-2, 3-3, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 5-1, 5-2, 5-3				Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
Custom paper size6	457.3 to 1200	99 to 320.0		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Paper Type	Size	Feeding direction (mm)	Width direction (mm)	Pickup position (* Setting is necessary)					Auto Duplex	2-Side Setting	
				Multi	CST1(250)	CST1(520)	CST2	CST3			CST4
Labels	A3	420.0	297.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B4	364.0	257.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A4R	297.0	210.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A4	210.0	297.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B5R	257.0	182.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B5	182.0	257.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5	148.0	210.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A5R	210.0	148.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	11x17	431.8	279.4	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	LGL	355.6	215.9	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	LTR	215.9	279.4	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	LTRR	279.4	215.9	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	STMTR	215.9	139.7	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	STMT	139.7	215.9	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	SRA3	450.0	320.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	12x18	457.2	304.8	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	EXEC	184.1	266.7	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	EXEC-R	266.7	184.1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	OFFICIO	317.5	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	E-OFFICIO	320.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	B-OFFICIO	355.0	216.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	M-OFFICIO	341.0	216.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-OFFICIO	340.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-LTR	220.0	280.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	A-LTRR	280.0	220.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLTR-R	266.7	203.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLTR	203.2	266.7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	GLGL	330.2	203.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	AFLS	337.0	206.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	FLS	330.2	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	13x19	482.6	330.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8	390.0	270.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K16	195.0	270.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
K16R	270.0	195.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
F4A	342.9	215.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Custom paper size1-1, 1-2, 1-3, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 3-1, 3-2, 3-3, 4-1, 4-2, 4-3, 5-1, 5-2, 5-3			Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Custom paper size6	457.3 to 1200	99 to 320.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	

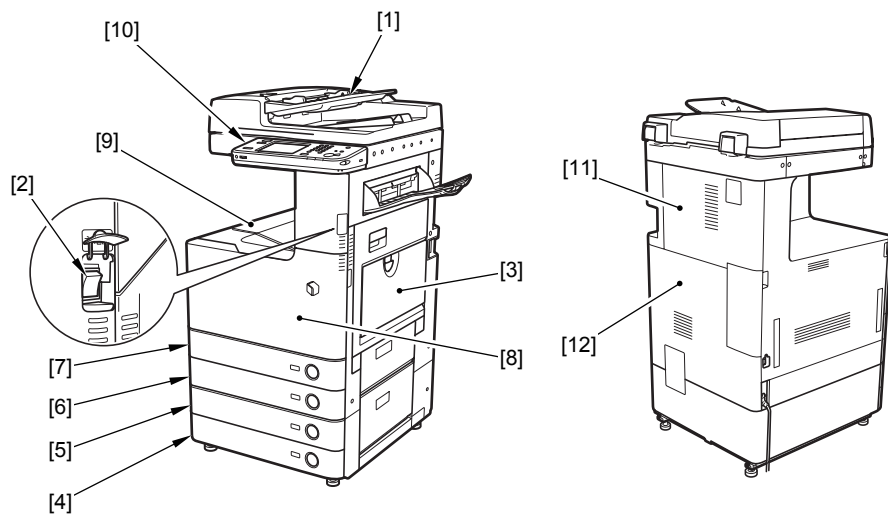
Paper Type	Size	Feeding direction (mm)	Width direction (mm)	Pickup position (* Setting is necessary)						Auto Duplex	2-Side Setting
				Multi	CST1(250)	CST1(520)	CST2	CST3	CST4		
Pre-Punched paper	A3	420.0	297.0	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	B4	364.0	257.0	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	A4R	297.0	210.0	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	A4	210.0	297.0	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	B5R	257.0	182.0	Yes*	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	B5	182.0	257.0	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	A5	148.0	210.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	A5R	210.0	148.0	Yes*	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	11x17	431.8	279.4	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	LGL	355.6	215.9	Yes*	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	LTR	215.9	279.4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	LTRR	279.4	215.9	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	STMTR	215.9	139.7	Yes*	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	STMT	139.7	215.9	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	SRA3	450.0	320.0	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*
	12x18	457.2	304.8	Yes*	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	EXEC	184.1	266.7	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	EXEC-R	266.7	184.1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	OFFICIO	317.5	215.9	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	E-OFFICIO	320.0	220.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	B-OFFICIO	355.0	216.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	M-OFFICIO	341.0	216.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	A-OFFICIO	340.0	220.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	A-LTR	220.0	280.0	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	A-LTRR	280.0	220.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	GLTR-R	266.7	203.2	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	GLTR	203.2	266.7	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	GLGL	330.2	203.2	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	AFLS	337.0	206.0	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	FLS	330.2	215.9	-	Yes*	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-
	13x19	482.6	330.2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	K8	390.0	270.0	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
	K16	195.0	270.0	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
K16R	270.0	195.0	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	
F4A	342.9	215.9	-	-	-	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	
Custom paper size1-1, 1-2, 1-3, 2-1, 3-1, 4-1, 5-1, 5-2, 5-2	-	-	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*	
Custom paper size 2-2, 2-3, 3-3, 4-2, 4-3	-	-	Yes*	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes*	
Custom paper size3-2	182.0 to 420.0	148.0 to 297.0	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	-	
Custom paper size6	457.3 to 1200	99 to 320.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
OHP	A4	210.0	297.0	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-
	LTR	215.9	279.4	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-

Paper Type	Size	Feeding direction (mm)	Width direction (mm)	Pickup position (* Setting is necessary)						Auto Duplex	2-Side Setting
				Multi	CST1(250)	CST1(520)	CST2	CST3	CST4		
Bond	LTR	215.9	279.4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	LTRR	279.4	215.9	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	EXEC	184.1	266.7	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*	Yes*
Postcard	Postcard	148.0	100.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	Reply Postcard	200.0	148.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	4 on 1 Postcard	200.0	296.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
Tab paper	A4	210.0	297.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	LTR	215.9	279.4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Envelope (ShortEdgeFeed)	COM10	241.3	104.7	Yes	-	-	Yes	-	-	-	Yes
	Monarch	190.5	98.4	Yes	-	-	Yes	-	-	-	Yes
	ISO-C5	229.0	162.0	Yes	-	-	Yes	-	-	-	Yes
	ISO-B5	250.0	176.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	DL	220.0	110.0	Yes	-	-	Yes	-	-	-	Yes
Envelope (LongEdgeFeed)	COM10	104.7	241.3	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	Monarch	98.4	190.5	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	ISO-C5	162.0	229.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes
	ISO-B5	176.0	250.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	DL	110.0	220.0	Yes	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes

T-1-8

Parts Name

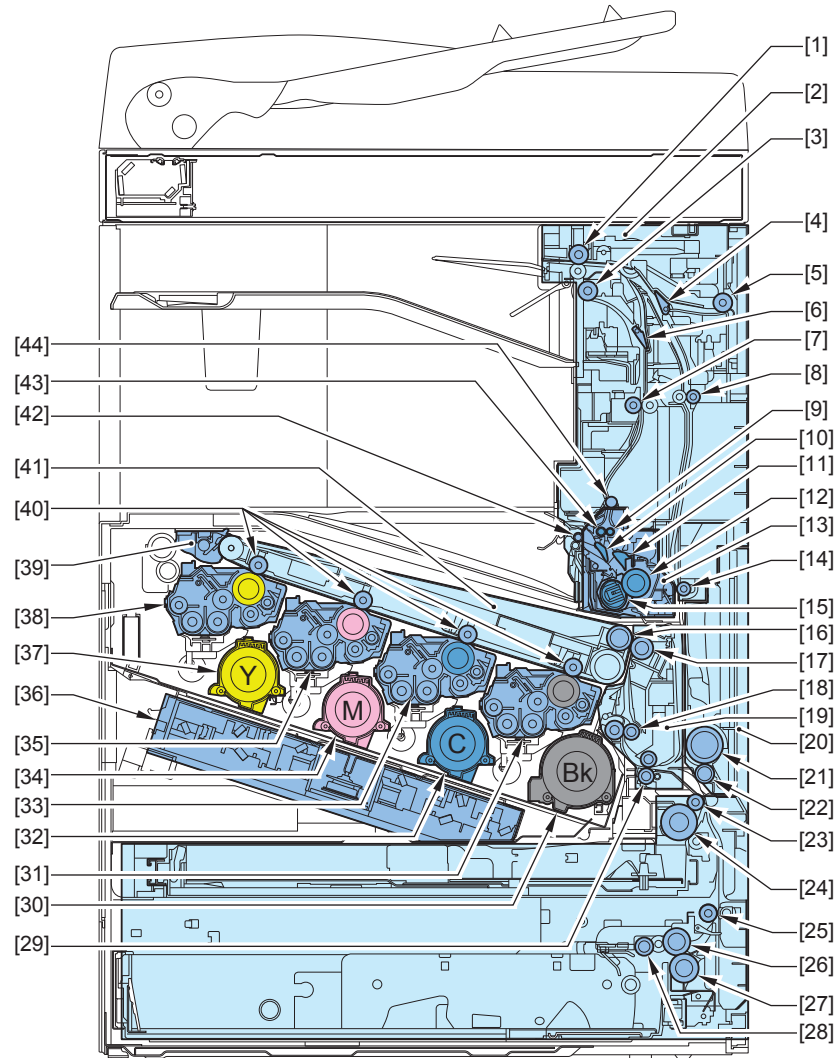
External View



F-1-8

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| [1] DADF | [7] Cassette 1 |
| [2] Main Power Switch | [8] Front Cover |
| [3] Multi-purpose Tray | [9] First Delivery Tray |
| [4] Cassette 4 | [10] Control Panel |
| [5] Cassette 3 | [11] Rear Upper Cover |
| [6] Cassette 2 | [12] Rear Cover |

Cross Section View



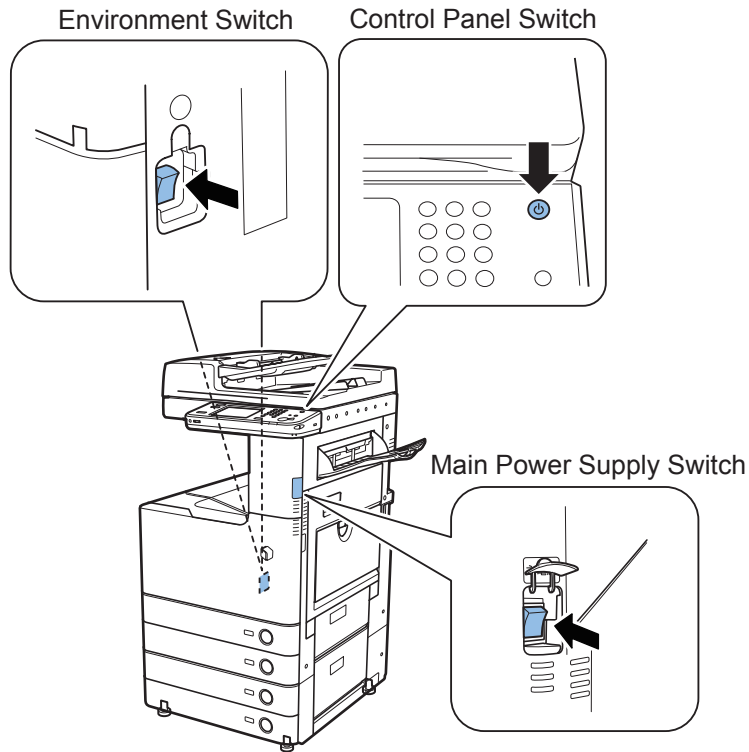
- | | | |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| [1] Reverse Roller | [16] Secondary Transfer Inner Roller | [31] Drum Unit (Bk) |
| [2] Duplex/Delivery Unit | [17] Secondary Transfer Outer Roller | [32] Toner Container (C) |
| [3] Second Delivery Roller | [18] Registration Roller | [33] Drum Unit (C) |
| [4] Third Delivery Flapper | [19] Registration Unit | [34] Toner Container (M) |
| [5] Third Delivery Roller | [20] Multi-purpose Delivery Unit | [35] Drum Unit (M) |
| [6] Second Delivery Inlet Flapper | [21] Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller | [36] Laser Scanner Unit |
| [7] Second / Third Delivery Inlet Roller | [22] Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad | [37] Toner Container (Y) |
| [8] Duplex Feed Upper Roller | [23] Cassette 1 Vertical Path Roller | [38] Drum Unit (Y) |
| [9] Fixing Delivery Upper Roller | [24] Cassette 1 Pickup Roller | [39] ITB Cleaner Unit |
| [10] Fixing Flapper | [25] Cassette 2 Vertical Path Roller | [40] Primary Transfer Roller |
| [11] Fixing Separation Guide | [26] Cassette 2 Feed Roller | [41] ITB Unit |
| [12] Pressure Roller | [27] Cassette 2 Separation Roller | [42] First Delivery Roller |
| [13] Fixing Assembly | [28] Cassette 2 Pickup Roller | [43] Fixing Delivery Lower Roller |
| [14] Duplex Feed Lower Roller | [29] Multi-purpose Tray/Duplex Merging Roller | [44] Fixing Rear Roller |
| [15] Fixing Film Unit | [30] Toner Container (Bk) | |

F-1-9

Operation

Power Switch

Types of Power Switches



F-1-10

This machine has the Main Power Switch, the Control Panel Power Switch and the Environment Heater Switch.

[1] Main Power Switch

This switch is used to turn OFF/ON the Main Power Switch.

[2] Control Panel Power Switch

This switch is used to enter the energy saver mode or recover to the normal mode.

[3] Environment Heater Switch

This switch is used to supply or shut power to the Reader Heater or Cassette Heater.

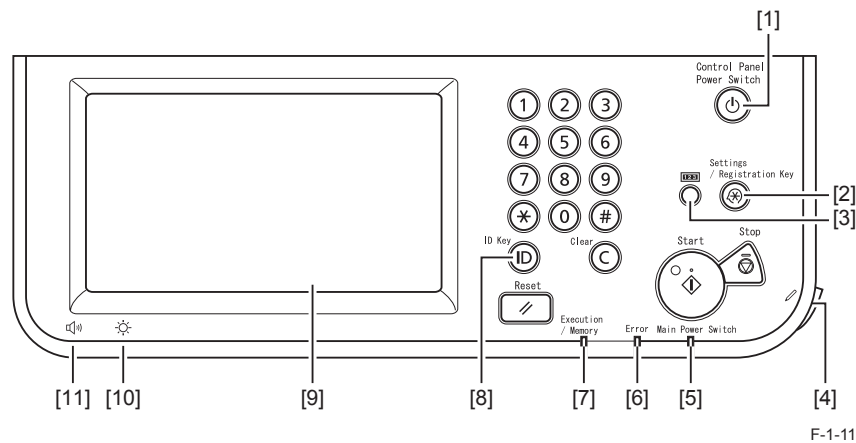
Points to Note on Turning ON/OFF the Power Switch

- Be sure to turn OFF the Main Power Switch when turning off the power.
(There is no need to perform the shutdown sequence which has been performed with the conventional machines.)
- After turning OFF the power (after turning OFF the Main Power Switch), do not turn ON the Main Power Switch unless the screen disappears.
- Do not turn OFF the power during downloading.

Control Panel

Control Panel

iR ADVANCE C2200 series

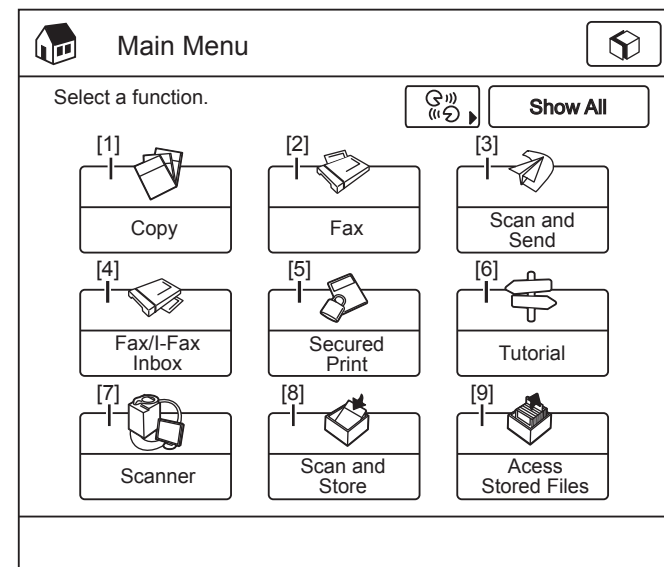


F-1-11

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| [1] Control Panel Power Switch | [8] ID (Authentication) Key |
| [2] Settings/Registration Key | [9] Touch Panel Display |
| [3] Check Counter Key | [10] Screen Brightness Adjustment Dial |
| [4] Operation Pen | [11] Fax Volume Adjustment Key |
| [5] Main Power Lamp | |
| [6] Error Lamp | |
| [7] Execute/Memory Lamp | |

Main Menu

iR ADVANCE C2200 series



F-1-12

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| [1] Copy | [6] Introduction to Useful Features |
| [2] Fax | [7] Remote Scanner |
| [3] Scan and Send | [8] Scan and Save |
| [4] Fax/I-Fax Inbox | [9] Access Stored Files |
| [5] Secured Print | |

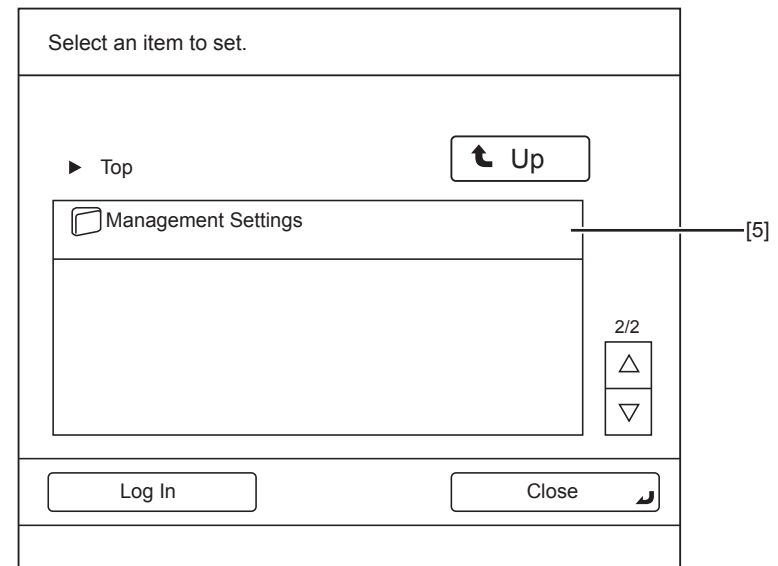
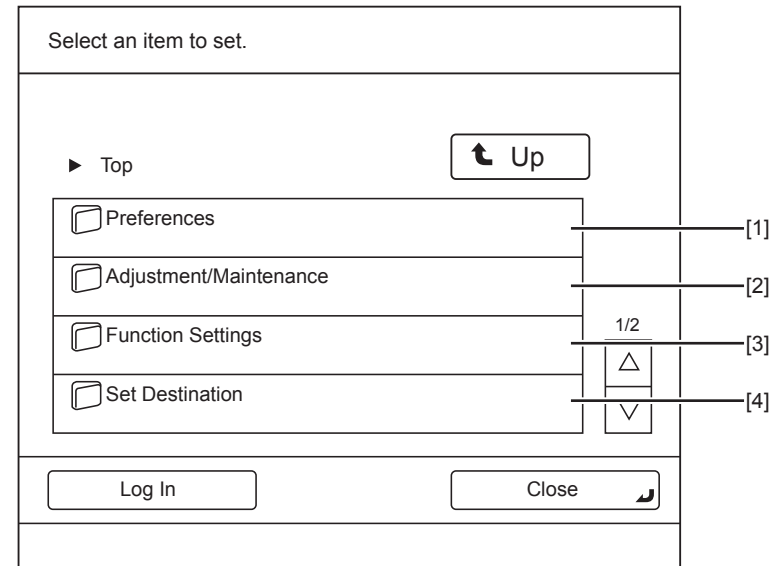
Difference of Main Menu

iRC 3380/2880 series	iR ADVANCE C2200 series
Copy	Copy
Send/Fax	Scan and Send/Fax
Mail Box	Scan and Save
	Access Stored Files
	Fax/I-Fax Inbox
Menu Switch Key	-----
Print	Secured Print
Remote Scanner	Remote Scanner
(Easy NAVI)	Introduction to Useful Features

T-1-9

Settings/Registration Menu

iR ADVANCE C2200 series



F-1-13

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| [1] Preferences | [4] Set Destination |
| [2] Adjustment/Maintenance | [5] Management Settings |
| [3] Function Settings | |

■ Difference of Settings/Registration

iRC 3380/2880 series	iR ADVANCE C2200 series
Common Settings	Preferences
Timer Setting	
Adjustment/Cleaning	Adjustment/Maintenance
System Settings	Management Settings
Output Report	Function Settings
Copy Settings	
Send/Receive Settings	
Mail Box Settings	
Printer Settings	
Address Book Settings	Set Destination

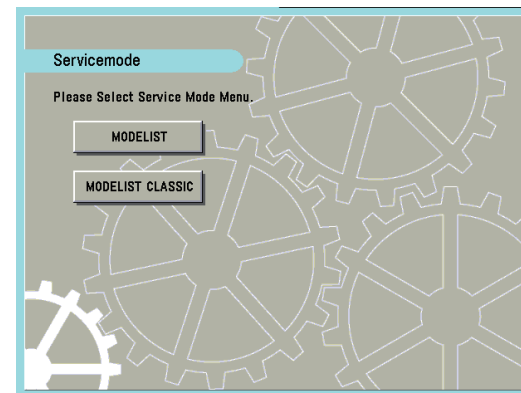
T-1-10

● Service mode

It is possible to see each item of service mode so that those who access to service mode can understand how to use them.

Following shows the points which have been added or changed from the existing machines.

■ Service Mode Menu



F-1-14

"MODELIST" :

This is a new mode which has been added with this machine.

In this mode, functions for referring to each item in service mode, etc. are available.

Those new features to be described later are enabled with the MODELIST.

"MODELIST CLASSIC" :

This is the mode which is similar to the existing machines.

Those new features to be described later are disabled with the MODELIST CLASSIC.

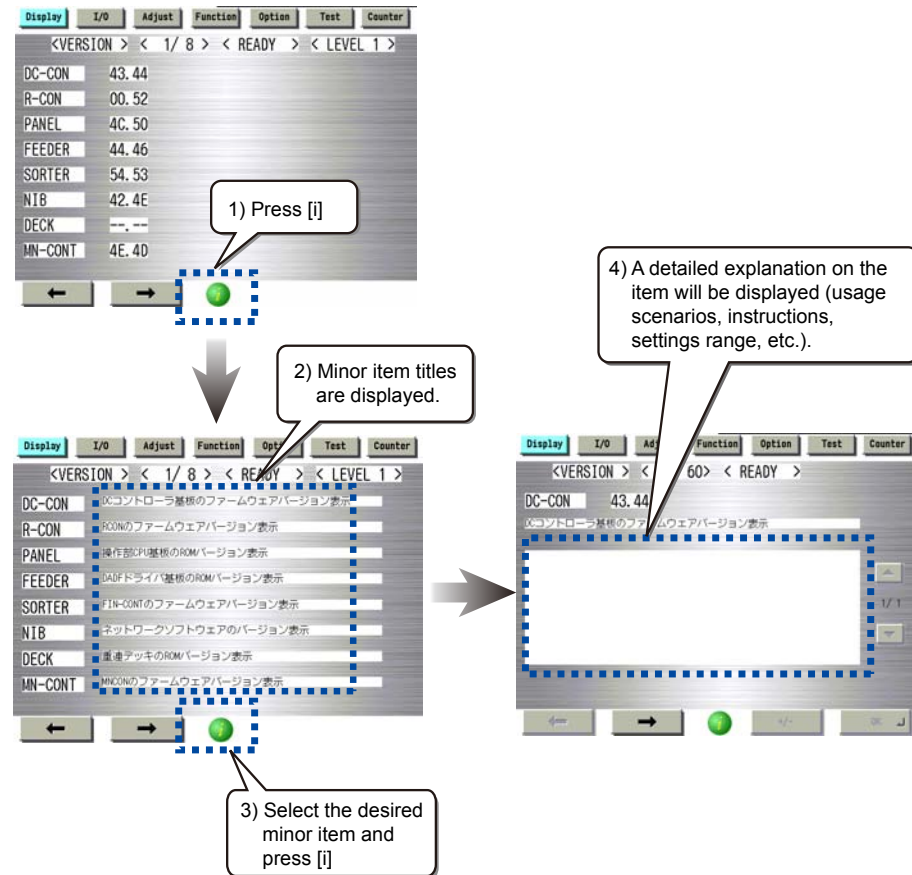
By pressing [MODELIST] or [MODELIST CLASSIC] button, it moves to the initial screen of each mode.

Description of Service Mode Items

The description of the initial screen, the main items, the intermediate items and the sub items can be displayed.

After selecting any item of the initial screen, main item, the intermediate item or the sub item, pressing "I" (Information Button) displays the description of the selected item (hereinafter referred to as the service mode contents).

e.g.) COPIER > DISPLAY > Version screen

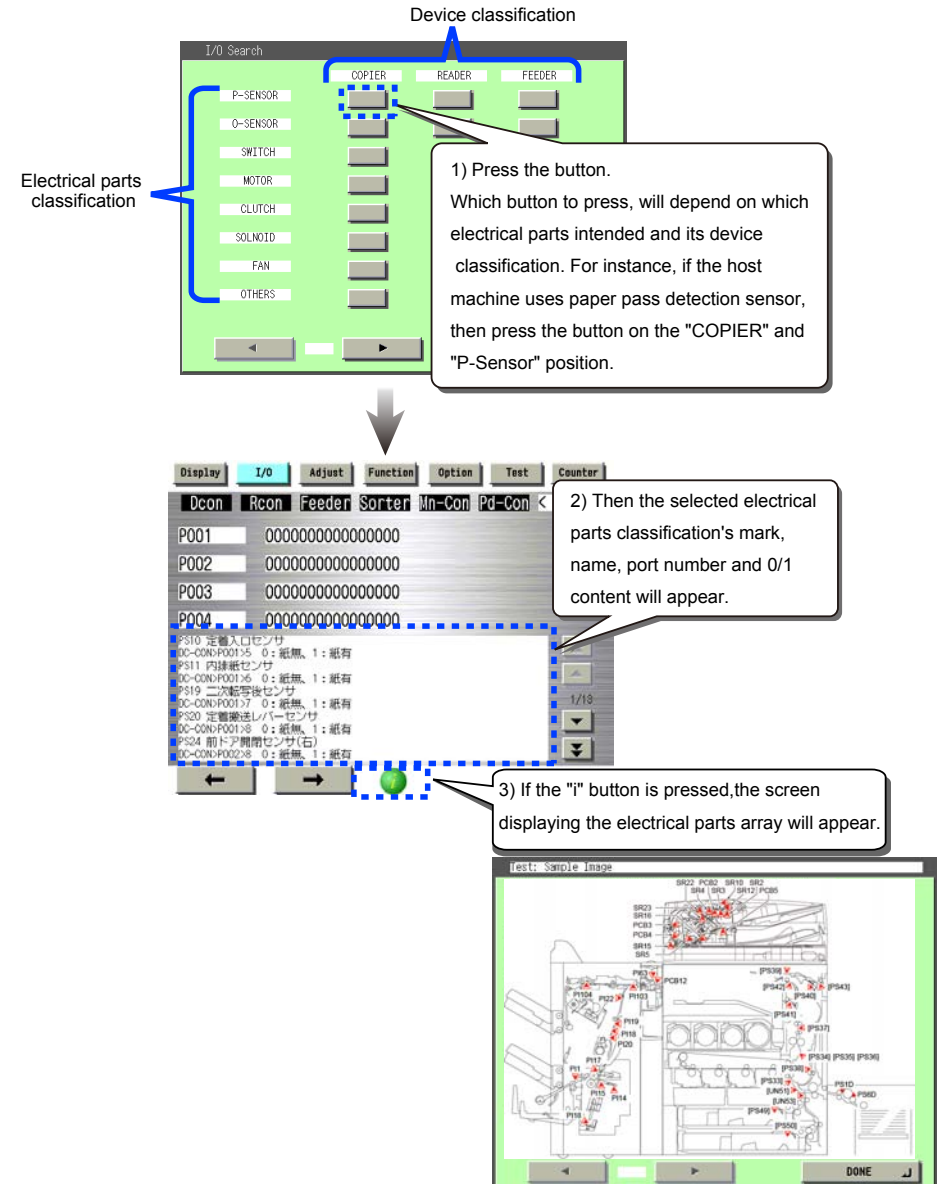


F-1-15

- Displayed language of the service mode contents can be selected from J/E/F/I/G/S.
- The service mode contents can be upgraded with the SST (just like the other system software).

Enhanced I/O Information

This is the mode to check signal's input/output state of electrical parts (e.g. sensor, motor, fan) in use. In the mode COPIER > I/O, it becomes easier to find the target electrical part. In addition, input/output state of signal can be checked on the screen.



The description of error code/alarm code is displayed

Description of each code is available on the error code/alarm code log screen.

Error Code: COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR

Display I/O Adjust Function Option Test Counter

< ERR > < 2/ 7 > < READY > < LEVEL 1 >

No.	DATE	TIME1	TIME2	CODE	DTL	L	P
09	0102	0304	050	E804-0003			
10	----	----	---				
11	0102	0304	050				
12	0102	0304	050				
13	0102	0304	050				
14	0102	0304	0506	E0748	4910	00	00
15	0102	0304	0506	E0804	0002	00	00
16	0102	0304	0506	E0804	0003	00	00

【タイトル】
→次吸気ファンエラー
【推定原因】
→次吸気ファンで異常を検知した場合

1 / 1

DONE ↓

Alarm Code: COPIER > DISPLAY > ALARM-2

Display I/O Adjust Function Option Test Counter

< ALARM-2 > < 2/ 7 > < READY > < LEVEL 1 >

No.	DATE	TIME1	TIME2	CODE	DTL	CNTR
09	0308	1345	160			
10	0308	1345	160			
11	0308	1345	160			
12	0308	1345	160			
13	0308	1345	160			
14	0308	1345	1600	040046	0000	0
15	0308	1345	1600	040047	0000	0
16	0308	1345	1600	040048	0000	0

ALARM CODE : 000004-0048

上段デッキ右分離ファンコネクタ抜け
動作：上段デッキを使用しない/リフトを下限位置まで下げる
解除方法：電源OFF/ONで解除

1 / 1

DONE ↓

Classification of COPIER > OPTION > BODY

It has been difficult to find target item because the existing machine has so many items in COPIER > OPTION > BODY (items relating to specifications of the machine).

With this machine, however, the entire items in BODY are classified into 15 categories according to the purpose so that the target item can be found more quickly.

Sub item classification	Sub item code	Description
Switch function	FNC-SW	Language, Cassette, paper configuration, NAVI/DA connection, count-up specification, original size detection, dust detection level
Switch display/display timing	DSPLY-SW	Items relating to UI display
Image-related (Fixing)	IMG-FIX	Items relating to fixing
Image-related (Transfer)	IMG-TR	Primary transfer, Secondary transfer, ITB
Image-related (Developing)	IMG-DEV	Items relating to developing
Image-related (Laser/latent image)	IMG-LSR	Items relating to the laser and latent image
Image-related (Reader/ADF)	IMG-RDR	Images relating to Reader and ADF
Image-related (Controller, Others)	IMG-MCON	Items relating to MN-CON image as well as any image other than MN-CON
Image quality/copy speed	IMG-SPD	Down sequence
Cleaning	CLEANING	Cleaning of Charging Assembly, Drum, Transfer Roller, ITB, etc.
Preferences	ENV-SET	Temperature/Humidify, Environment Heater/Condensation/Log retrieval
Feeding (Pickup/delivery)	FEED-SW	Stacking performance, fine adjustment of motor speed, delivery function, etc.
Noise reduction	SOUND	Items relating to the noise
Network	NETWORK	Network settings, IFAX, SEND, E-RDS, etc.
Custom	CUSTOM	For individual measures

T-1-11

Security Support

A password can be specified to prevent an unauthorized access to the service mode.

- Related service mode
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > PSWD-SW (Level 1)

Setting password when the screen is switched to the service mode

<Setting range>

0: No password [Default]

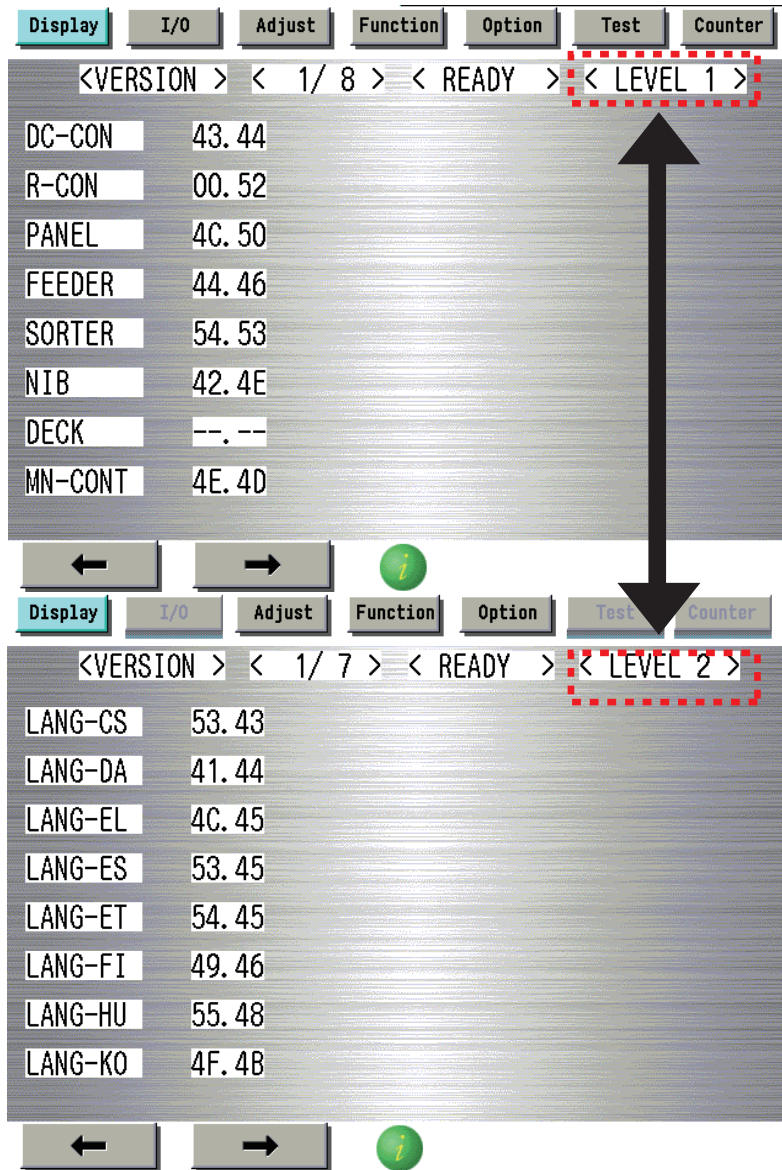
1: For service engineer

2: For system administrator + service engineer

Switching the Screen Display (Level 1 <->2)

Switching of screens between Level 1 and Level 2 becomes easier.

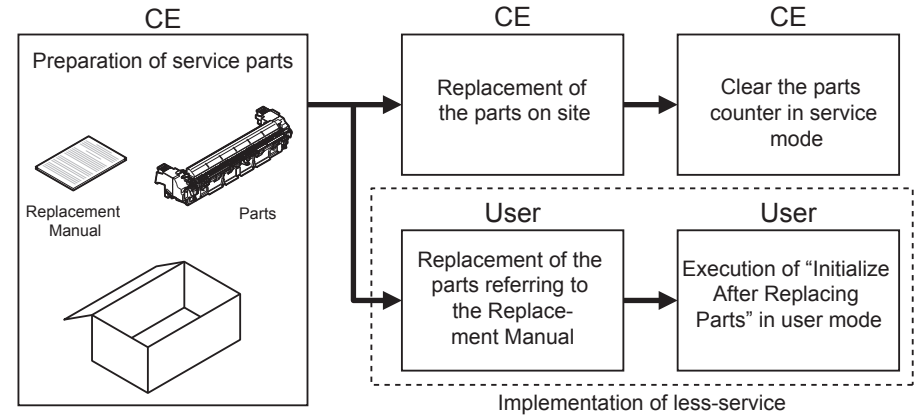
By pressing <LEVEL 1> at the upper right of the screen while Level 1 screen is displayed, the screen is switched to Level 2 screen.



F-1-16

Specifications of User Messages Related to Consumable Parts

This machine displays life warning messages, which prompt a user to replace consumable parts, and the part counter initialization menu on the UI screen as part of measures for "service-less" operation.



Parts name	Life warning message	Method to display the part counter initialization menu	Place of menu on UI	Points to note
ITB Unit	None	Set the service mode (COPIER>OPTION>DSPLY-SW>ITB-DSP) to 1.	Adjustment/ Maintenance > Initialize After Replacing Parts > ITB	The ITB needs to be disengaged by executing the ITB replacement mode before part replacement. (See *3.)
Fixing Assembly	None (See *1.)	Set the service mode (COPIER>OPTION>DSPLY-SW>FXU-DSP) to 1.	Adjustment/ Maintenance > Initialize After Replacing Parts > Fixing Unit	
Pickup Roller/ Separation Pad (Multi-purpose Tray)	None	Set the service mode (COPIER>OPTION>DSPLY-SW>PUMF-DSP) to 1.	Adjustment/ Maintenance > Initialize After Replacing Parts > Ppr. Feed Roller & Separation Pad of MP Tray	
Pickup Roller/ Separation Roller (Cassette 1)	None	Set the service mode (COPIER>OPTION>DSPLY-SW>PUC1-DSP) to 1.	Adjustment/ Maintenance > Initialize After Replacing Parts > Cassette 1 Pickup Roller & Separation Roller	

Parts name	Life warning message	Method to display the part counter initialization menu	Place of menu on UI	Points to note
Pickup Roller (Cassettes 2 to 4)	None	Set the service mode (COPIER>OPTION>DSPLY-SW>PUC2-DSP to PUC4-DSP) to 1.	Adjustment/ Maintenance > Initialize After Replacing Parts > Cassettes 2 to 4 Pickup Roller	
Waste Toner Container	Displayed	None	None	
Drum Unit	None (See *2.)	None (The counter is automatically cleared.)	None	The ITB needs to be disengaged by executing the ITB replacement mode before part replacement. (See *3.)

T-1-12

- *1: The life warning of the target part is displayed in the Control Panel by setting the service mode (COPIER>OPTION>DSPLY-SW>FXMSG-SW) (Level 2) to 1.
- *2: The life warning of the target part is displayed in the Control Panel by setting the service mode (COPIER>OPTION>USER>P-CRG-LF) (Level 2) to 1.
- *3: To use the ITB replacement mode, set the service mode (COPIER>OPTION>DSPLY-SW>ITB-DSP) (Level 1) to 1.
Since this operation makes the ITB replacement mode appear in the menu on UI, pressing the "Start" button starts ITB disengagement operation.

2

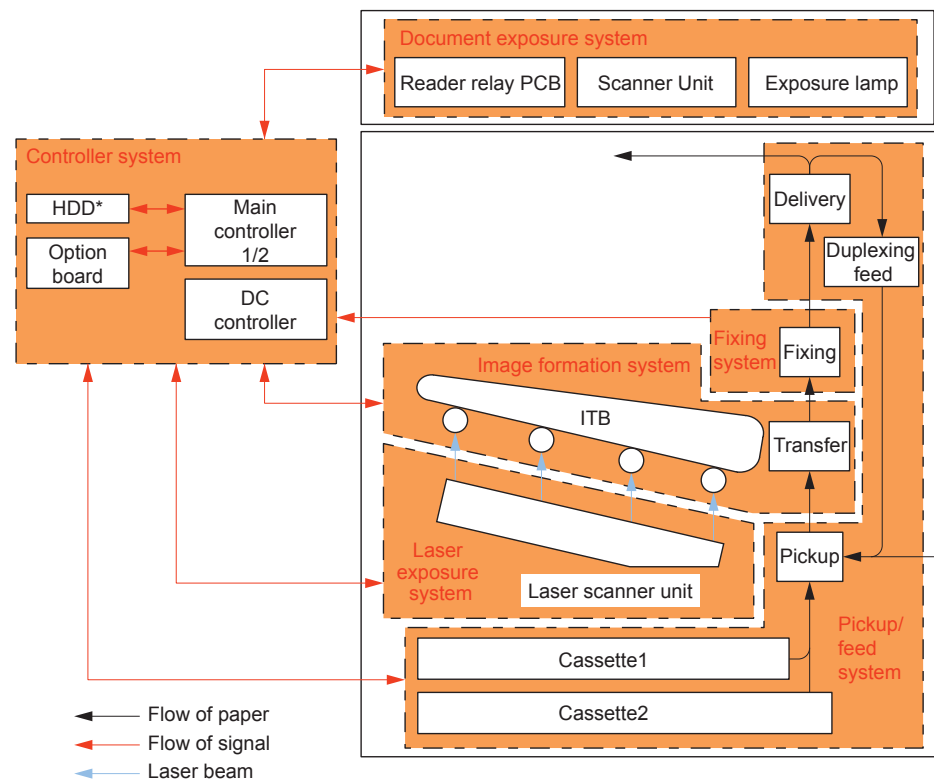
Process/Operation

- Basic Configuration
- Main Controller
- Laser Exposure System
- Image Formation System
- Fixing System
- Pickup Feed System
- Document Exposure
- External Auxiliary System
- MEAP
- Embedded RDS
- Updater
- DCM

Basic Configuration

Functional Configuration

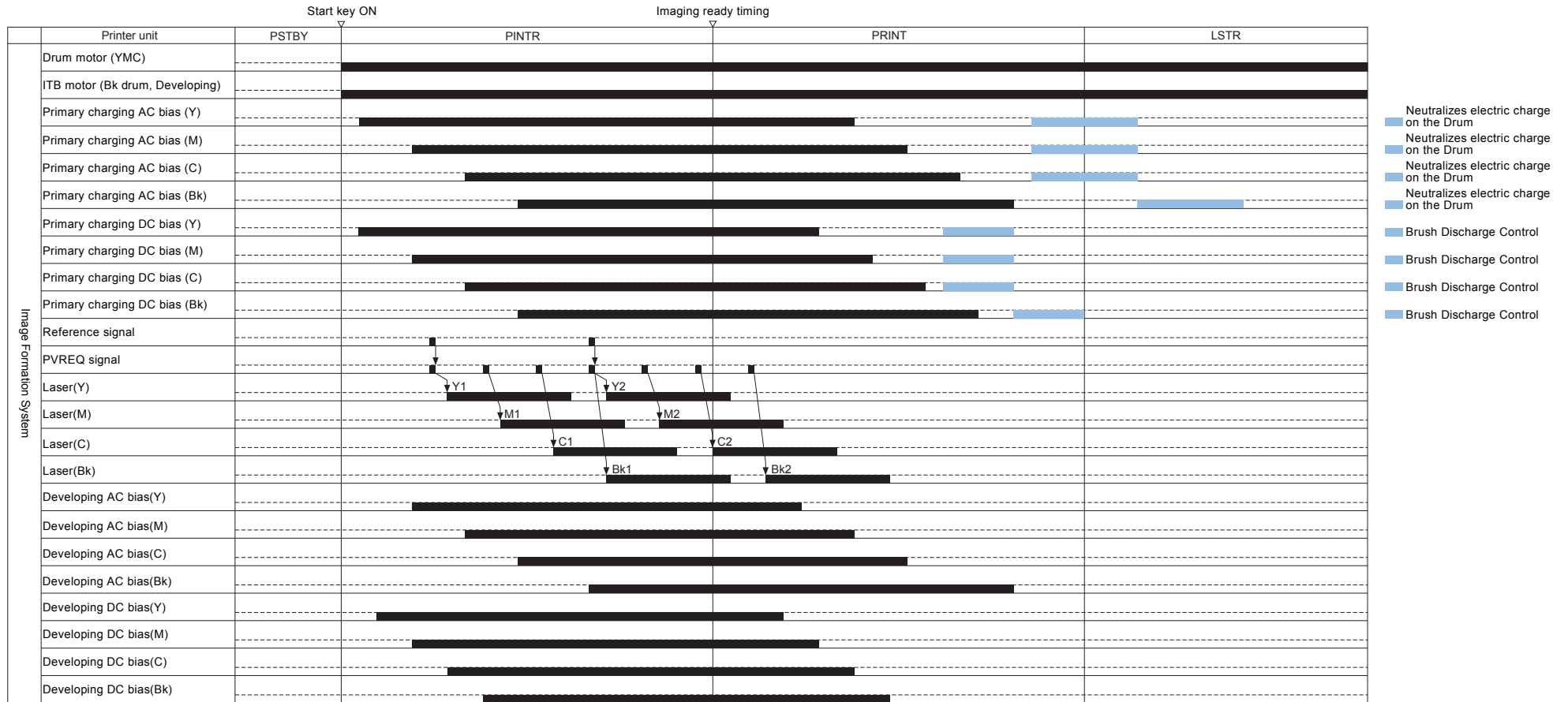
The machine may broadly be divided into the following functional system blocks; document exposure system block, controller system block, laser exposure system block, image formation system block, fixing system block and pickup/feed system block.



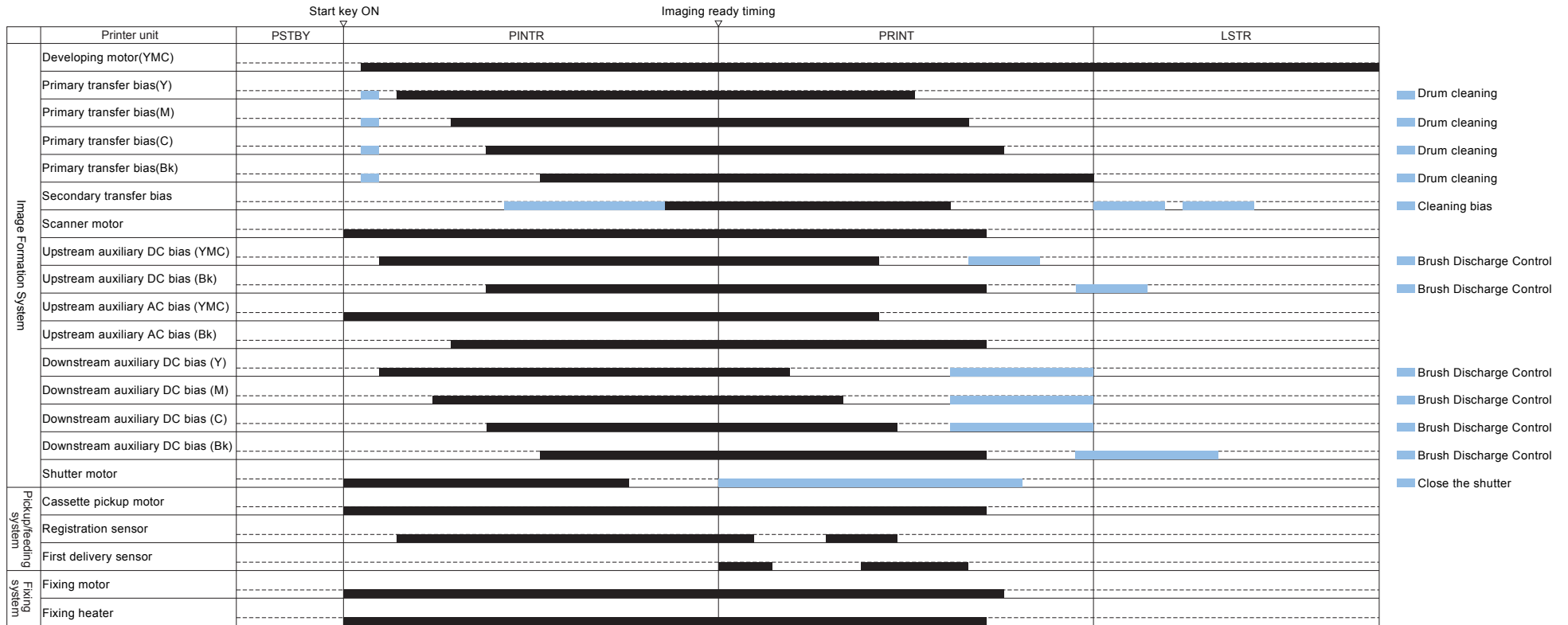
F-2-1

Basic Sequence

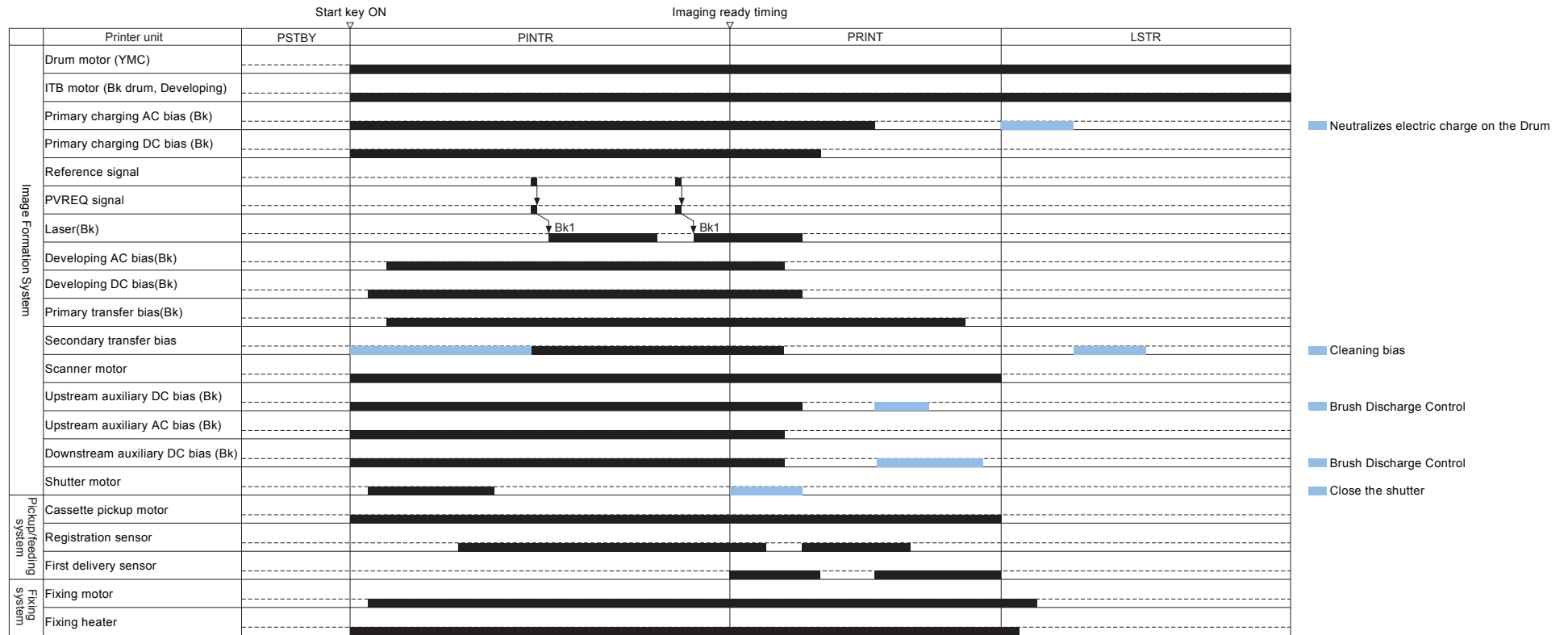
A4 single-sided 2 prints full color



F-2-2



■ A4 single-sided 2 prints Bk color



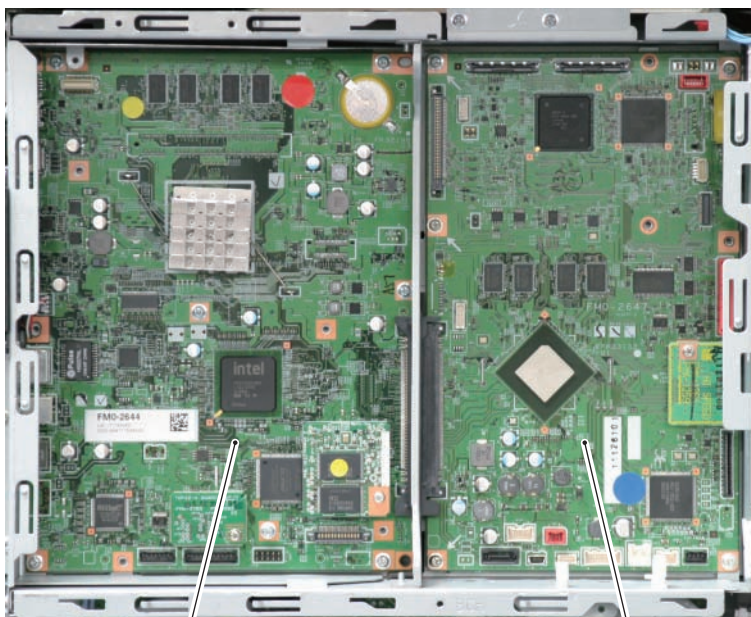
F-2-4

Main Controller

Overview

■ Features

Introduction of the new controller enables high speed PDL processing, high image quality and high functionality.



Main Controller PCB 1

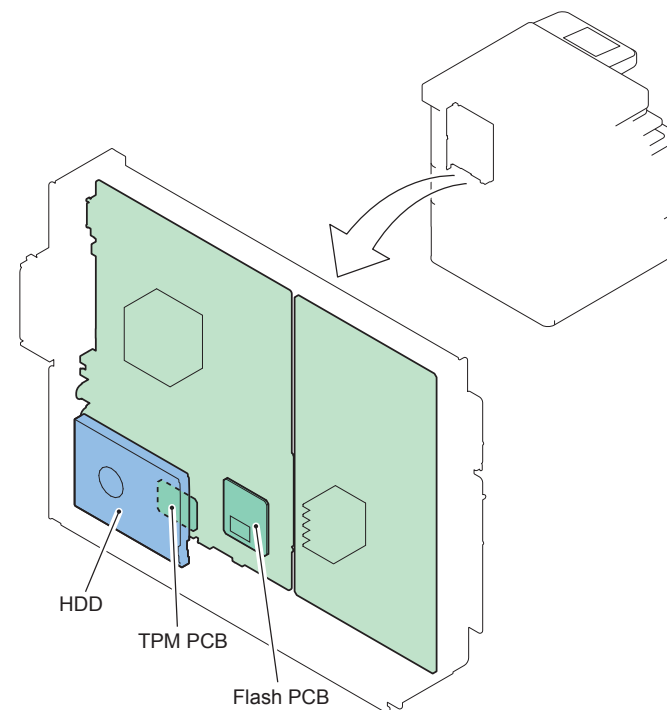
Main Controller PCB 2

F-2-5

Main Controller PCB 1 controls the entire system. Main Controller PCB 2 controls image processing.

■ Specifications/ Configuration

● PCBs



HDD

TPM PCB

Flash PCB

Parts name	Functions, specifications and features ^{F-2-6}
Main Controller PCB 1	CPU: 1.36 GHz, Controls the entire system. Various controls (memory, Control Panel, electric power, voice), I/F Boards (PCI, USB (host)), RTC
Flash PCB	Retains the system data, image data and preference data. (The HDD model retains the image data and preference data in the HDD.)
TPM PCB	Generates and stores the encryption key. Management Settings > Data Management > TPM Settings; this function is enabled when the TPM setting is set "On" (default: Off)
Main Controller PCB 2	CPU: 400 MHz, Controls image. Image processing (color space conversion, enlargement/reduction, rotation, composition, compression, rasterizing, resolution conversion, image binarization), delay memory control between Drums, HDD control, I/F Boards (reader, Fax, USB (device))
HDD (HDD model or installing an HDD as an option)	2.5 inch SATA I/F Standard: 160 GB (80GB usable area) Only 1 option board can be installed. Inbox data, address list, security information (password, certificate). Op. (for the flash memory model only): Option HDD (2.5inch / 160GB)

T-2-1

• Memory Devices

Main Controller PCB 1

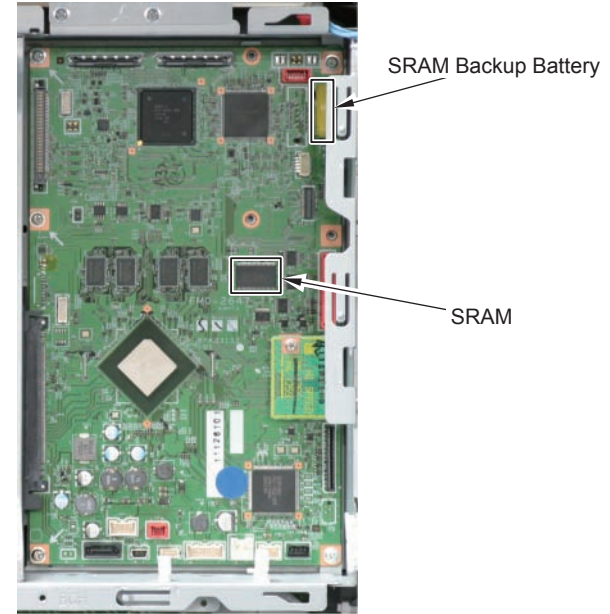


F-2-7

Parts name	Functions, specifications and features
Lithium battery (BAT1)	For RTC Life: approx. 10 years

T-2-2

Main Controller PCB 2



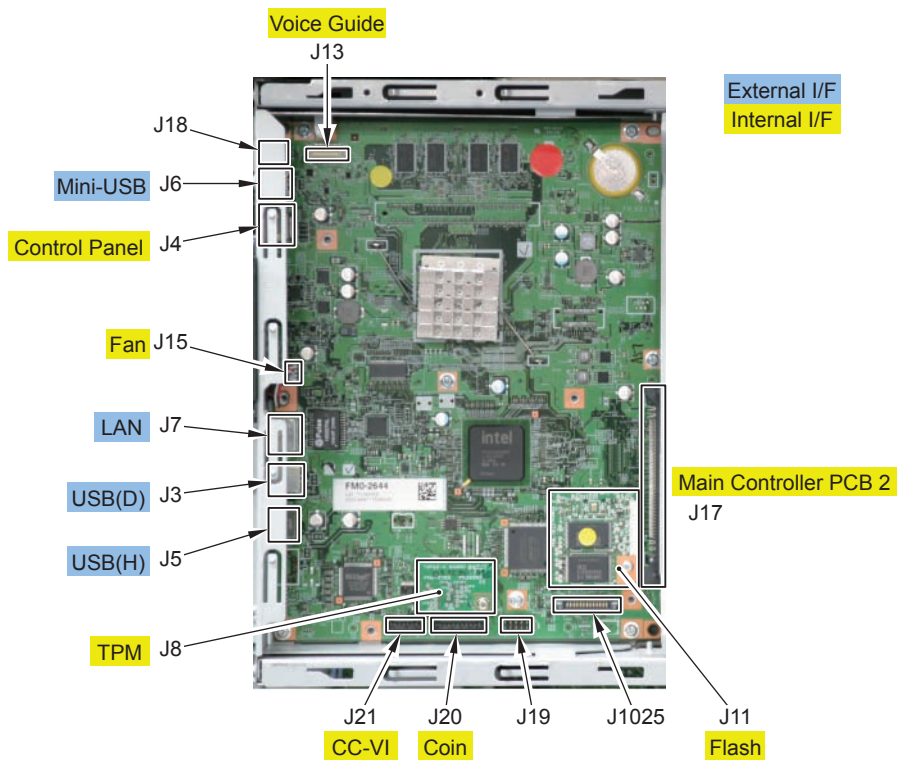
F-2-8

Parts name	Functions, specifications and features
SRAM	16 Mbit Retains data in the Settings/Registration mode/service mode and the image data management information in the HDD.
Lithium battery (BAT1)	For SRAM backup. Life: approx. 10 years

T-2-3

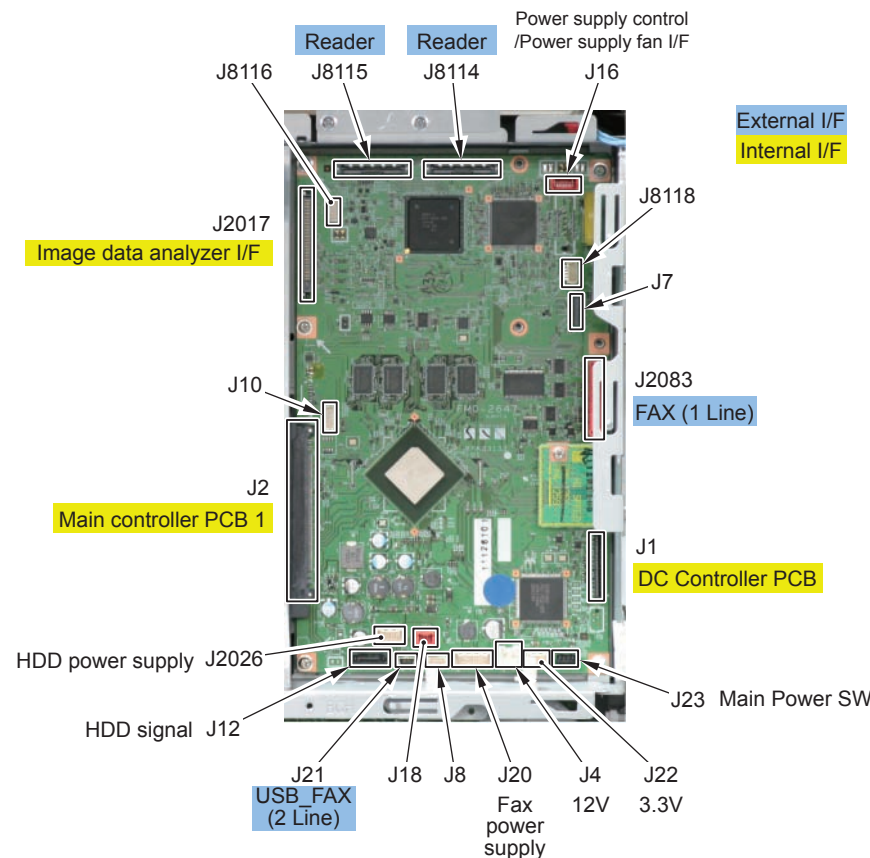
I/F, Connector

Main Controller PCB 1



F-2-9

Main Controller PCB 2



F-2-10

No.	Functions and specifications	No.	Functions and specifications
J3	USB I/F	J13	Voice I/F (Op.)
J4	Control Panel I/F	J15	Fan I/F
J5	USB I/F (Host) ^{*1} For MEAP, For USB Keyboard (Op.)	J17	Main Controller PCB 2 I/F
J6	Mini-USB I/F (Op.) Connects USB Device Port-B2.	J18	
J7	LAN I/F (1000BASE-T / 100BASE-TX / 10BASE-T)	J19	
J8	TPM PCB I/F	J20	I/F for Copy Control Interface Kit-A1 (Op.)
J11	Flash PCB I/F	J21	I/F for Card Reader, I/F for Serial Interface Kit-K1 (all assigned as Op.)

*1 There is also a port on the Control Panel.

T-2-4

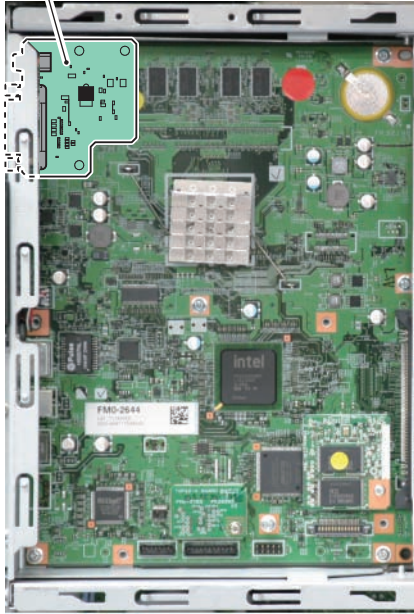
No.	Functions and specifications	No.	Functions and specifications
J1	DC Controller PCB	J2017	Image Data Analyzer PCB
J2	Main Controller PCB 1 I/F	J2026	HDD power supply
J4	12V	J2083	Fax I/F 1-line for fax Super G3 Fax Board-AH1
J12	HDD signal	J8114	Reader I/F
J16	Power Supply Fan I/F	J8115	Reader I/F
J20	Fax power supply	J8116	
J21	Fax-USB I/F 2-line for fax Super G3 2nd Line FAX Board-AH1	J8118	
J22	3.3V		
J23	Main Power Switch		

T-2-5

• Function Expansion Options

Main Controller PCB 1

Voice Guidance PCB



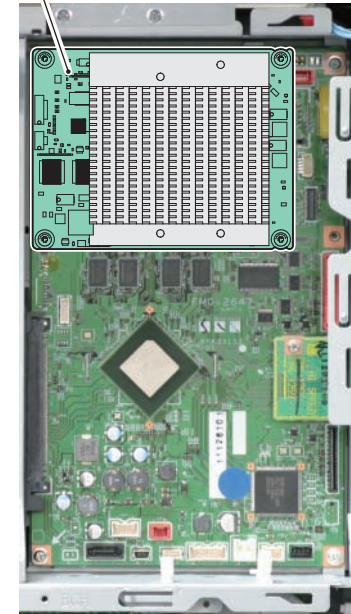
F-2-11

Name	Functions, specifications and features
Voice Recognition PCB	Product name: Voice Operation Kit-C2, Voice Guidance Kit-F2
Voice Guidance PCB	

T-2-6

Main Controller PCB 2

Image Data Analyzer PCB



F-2-12

Name	Functions, specifications and features
Image Data Analyzer PCB	Product name: Image Data Analyzer PCB-A1 Scan protection for output original (Copy/SEND/Inbox)

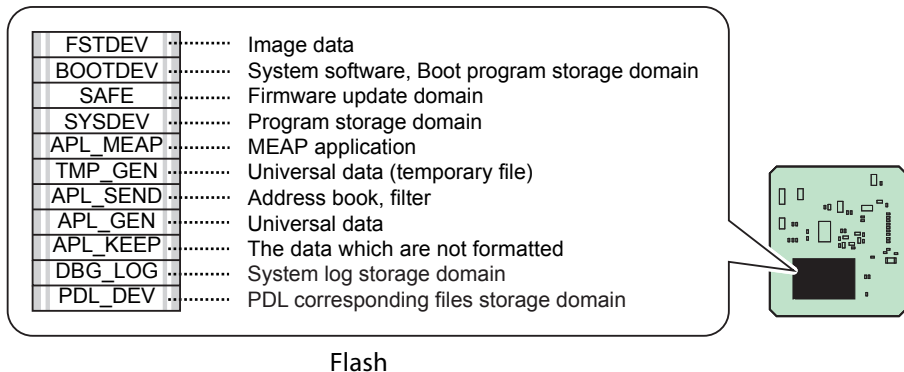
T-2-7

Flash model and HDD model

The partition and usage pattern differ between the flash memory model and the HDD model.

Flash model(a configuration consists of the flash memory only)

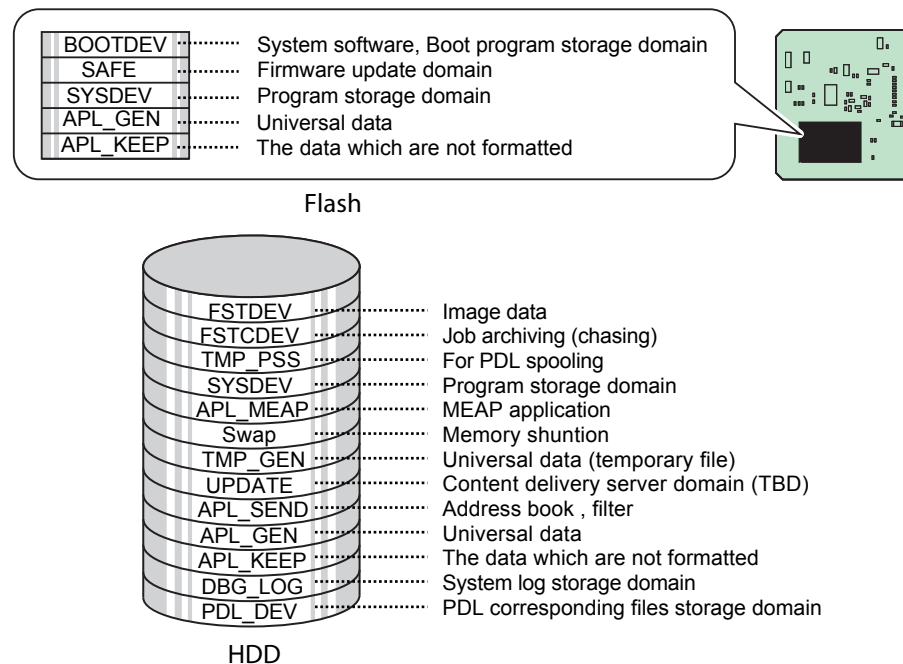
The 4GB flash memory is used. All the data of the system/image/other data is stored in the flash memory.



F-2-13

HDD model

The 80GB HDD is used together with the 4GB flash memory. The system data is stored in the flash memory while the image/other data is stored in the HDD.



F-2-14

Difference in specifications of respective applications when installing the HDD option

The following table shows the applications to which the specification is changed when installing the HDD option.

Those without change of specifications are indicated with “-“while those with change of specifications are indicated with the “description of changed specifications”.

Refer to the Service Manuals and User’s Guide for details.

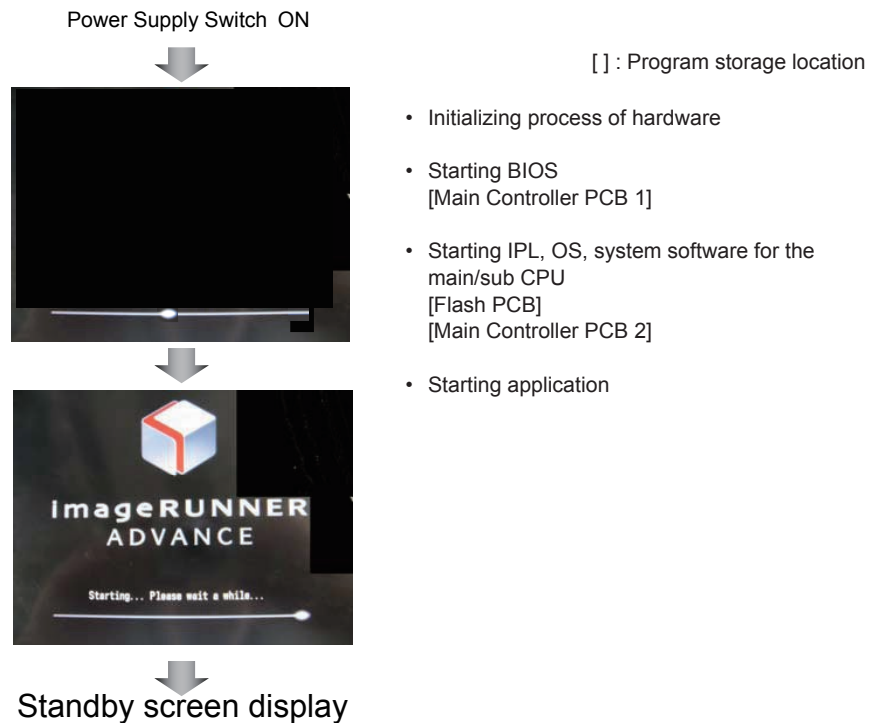
	Installation of HDD option
COPY	The number of sorting pages is increased, the number of reservation jobs is increased
PDL print	The types of PDLs are increased, the number of sorting pages at the device side is increased
FAX	-
Scan and Store	The specification for network (Advanced Box Client) is added
Scan and Send	The types of transmission documents are increased
FAX/I-FAX Inbox	-
Remote Scanner	-
Secured Print	The specification for secured print is added
Workflow Composer	Setting available
Shortcut for Setting/Registration	-
User Mode	The number of items are increased according to functions increase
Service Mode	-
Others UI	The security options are added such as the job archive, ACQ, etc. The browser-related function is added.
MEAP	The number of applications is increased.
RUI	-

T-2-8

NOTE

For the flash memory only, you can install the HDD option or removed the installed HDD. As for the(original) HDD model, you can remove the HDD to make it as a flash memory model.

■ Boot Sequence



NOTE:

Due to the high speed startup, the progress bar and the active PCB are not synchronized.

For this reason, the progress bar cannot be utilized for troubleshooting.

See the following error code list for the troubleshooting.

Related error codes (major error codes):

Error codes	Error description
E602	HDD error
0001	HDD detection error Unable to find the startup partition (BOOTDEV) at startup.
0002	File system error on the HDD
E604	Memory failure (Main Controller PCB 1)
1024	Insufficient capacity of DDR2-SDRAM (1 GB required)
E613	Memory failure (Main Controller PCB 2)
1024	Insufficient capacity of DDR2-SDRAM (M0, M1) (1 GB required)
E614	Flash error
0001	Flash PCB detection error Unable to recognize the Flash PCB. The Flash PCB is not formatted.
0002	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
E748	Board error (Flash PCB)
2010	Unable to find the IPL (Initial Program Loader).
2011	Unable to find the OS.

T-2-9

■ Shutdown Sequence

Before shutting OFF the power supply, it is necessary to perform the HDD completion process (for the HDD models only. Purpose: to prevent damage on the HDD) and execute the fixing disengagement operation. This sequential process is called "shutdown sequence". The shutdown sequence has been manually executed with the legacy (existing) models (by holding down the power supply switch on the Control Panel for a specific duration).

When the Main Power Switch is turned OFF with this equipment, Main Controller PCB 1 detects this operation to start/execute the shutdown sequence automatically.

Note that the maximum shutdown time with this equipment is 110 seconds.

NOTE:

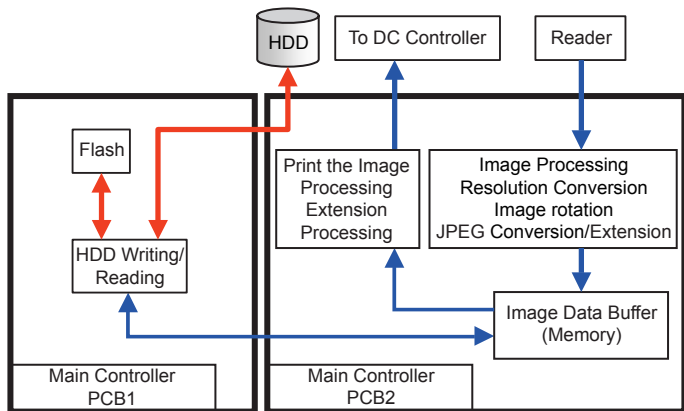
When the power supply is stopped without advance shutdown of the equipment, or the complete deletion process of the HDD (deletion of the primary file) failed to be completed within the shutdown time (max. 110 sec.), data matching is checked at startup. In such a case, startup takes up to 80 seconds. The progress bar is displayed during the data checking.

Controls

Flow of Image Data

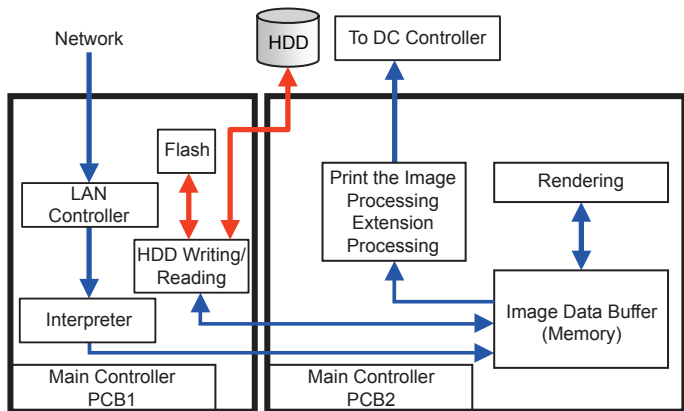
Red line....If there is HDD, the data goes in HDD. If there is not HDD, the data goes in Flash memory.

- Copy



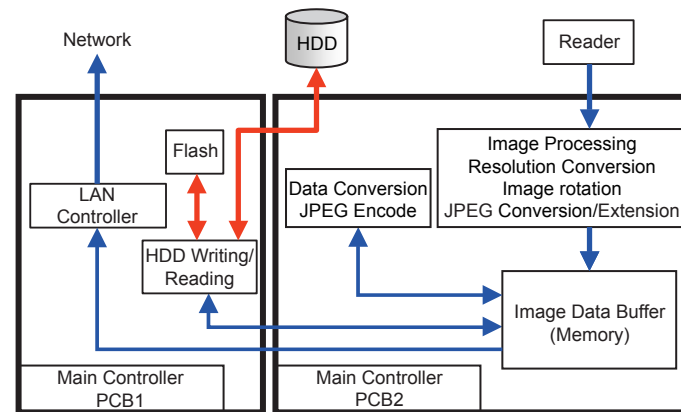
F-2-15

- Print



F-2-16

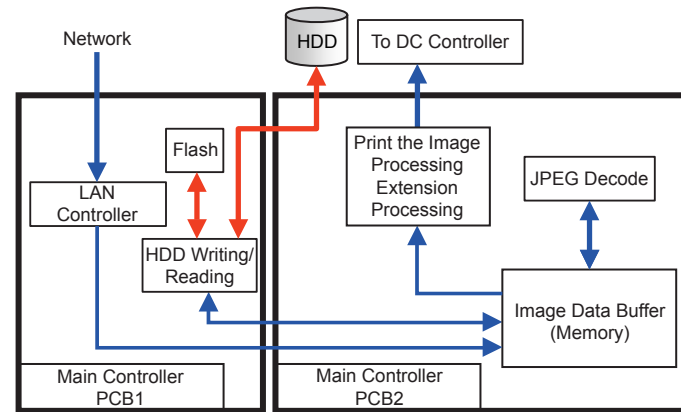
- SEND



F-2-17

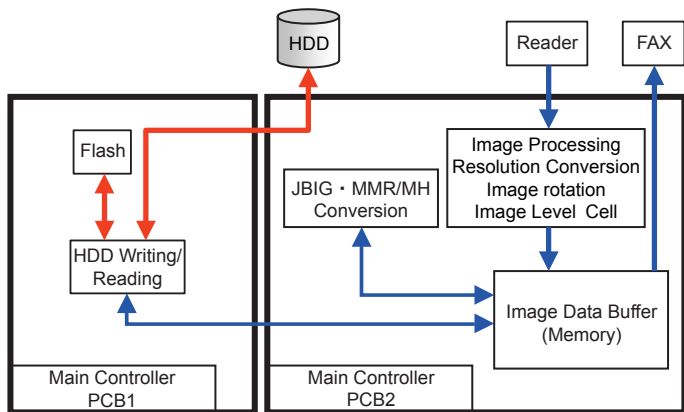
*Same as Remote FAX.

- Network(Advanced Box / Space Client)



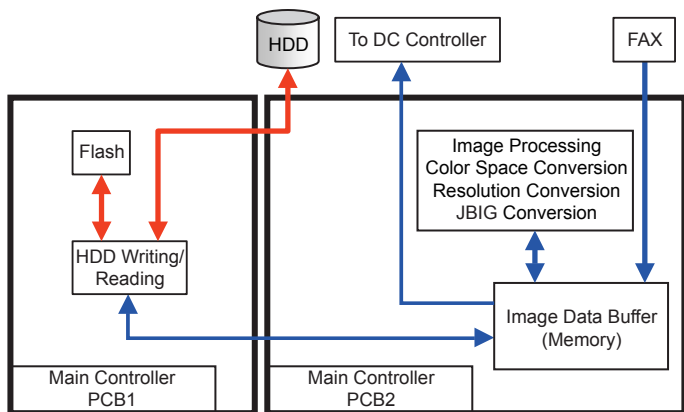
F-2-18

• Fax SEND



F-2-19

• Fax Recieve



F-2-20

Security

■ Setting the Management on the Hard Disk

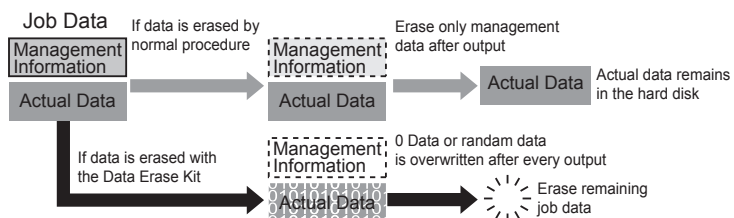
In addition to the document data to be accumulated by FAX function, the registration information of the Address Book and the password information of the System Box and the Address Book are saved in the HDD of the host machine. Therefore, data management in the HDD needs to be executed under a tight security measure.

The host machine has functions such as data encryption and data deletion and the data is managed which prevents data leak to the outside so that the data is maintained safely and confidentially.

● HDD Data Erase

The host machine saves the job data by dividing it into the management information area and the actual data area at the time of copy, transmission/reception or print output. While the management information is automatically deleted after job completion, the actual data is left in the HDD.

Overwriting 0-data or random data can completely delete the actual data left in the HDD of the host machine. This procedure is effective to prevent data leak to the outside when the HDD is replaced or disposed.



F-2-21

Enabling the Data Erase Kit can completely delete the unnecessary data or the deleted data in the HDD. For data deletion in the HDD, deletion timing and deletion mode can be selected. The following shows the data to be completely deleted from the HDD:

- Temporary image data generated at the time of scanning.
- Residual data after deleting a file in Fax/I-Fax Inbox(Fax Box/System Box).
- Fax/I-Fax sent/received data
- Spool data
- Data temporarily saved as print data

● Initializing All Data/Settings

Initializing the saved file and the registration information

This function enables to delete (initialize) the data such as the file saved in the host machine, the registration information of the Address Book and the job log information*

Caution:

This "Initialize All Data/Settings" setting is equipped without adding Data Erase Kit and executed voluntarily by a user when the machine is disposed. The effect is different from complete deletion of the job data and the user management information is deleted as well; therefore, take note not to explain this function to the user.

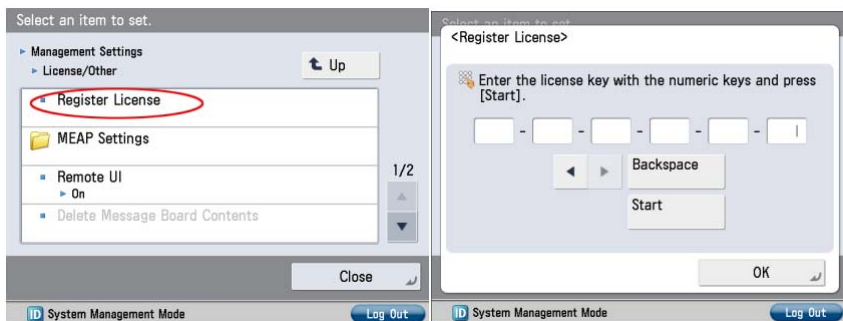
*The details are to be explained in the TPM section.

■ Installation procedure of the HDD

The iR-ADV C2200 series has the flash memory model and the HDD model respectively. To upgrade a flash memory model to a HDD model, the license registration is required in addition to physical installation. (not available in Europe)

The service technician is to execute installation as a field operation.

- (1) The service technician shuts down a flash memory model of iR-ADV C2200 series to turn OFF the power.
- (2) The service technician installs a HDD to the flash memory model by following the installation procedure of the HDD.
- (3) Turn ON the power to start the iR-ADV C2200 machine.
- (4) The service technician enters the license with an administrator privilege for Settings/Registration (this process creates a partition and executes format reservation).



F-2-22

- (5) Then, the service technician restarts the iR-ADV C2200 machine.
- (6) At the time of restarting the machine, the iR-ADV C2200 machine executes reserved initialization, and then duplicates the necessary data from the flash memory.
- (7) After duplication to the HDD, the iR-ADV C2200 machine is started as a HDD model.
- (8) The user or the service technician checks the operation for the HDD model (See "Check Device Configuration").
- (9) The service technician deletes the data left in the flash memory by executing "Delete Old Data", which is to be described in the next page.

*In the case of failure in setup of HDD, an error code (E602) is displayed and the machine is stopped. When the machine can be started by the flash memory, an error code is displayed after the machine is started.

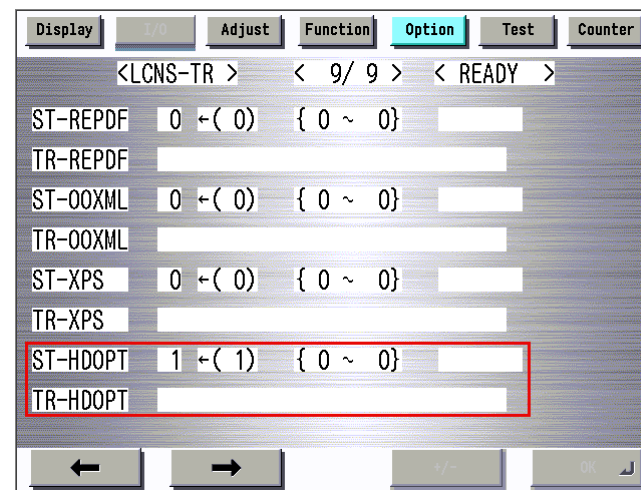
*In the case that the power is disconnected during setup of the HDD, the setup procedure is resumed from the first step.

■ The procedure to disable the HDD license transfer

For transferring the HDD license in the case of replacing a device, this function is used to disable the license and move the HDD option to the other device.

Caution: This function is available only with the original flash memory model after the HDD installation. For field operation, this is just for transferring the HDD license by device replacement. Note that removing a HDD will not make a flash memory model.

- (1) Get in service mode level 2 to display the following service mode:
Copier > Option > LCNS-TR



F-2-23

- (2) The license is disabled by executing the function to disable the HDD license transfer (set 0 for ST-HDOPT). During the process to transfer the HDD license, reservation for initializing data area in the flash memory and SRAM is executed.
 - The data area in flash memory is initialized so that the setting value, adjustment value and document are set as those at the time of factory shipment.
 - As for SRAM, the application area is cleared and set to the data at the time of factory shipment.
 - When there is no license for complete deletion process at data initialization in the flash memory, complete deletion process is not executed.
 - Such data is processed at the time of restarting the machine, which makes the starting time by approximately 1 minute longer (on average).
 - The HDD is not recognized at the time of reboot. Remove the HDD, after power supply OFF.

- Before disabling the HDD license transfer, the license depending on HDD such as Secure print or PS must be disabled.

■ Delete Old Data

Background

This function is used after upgrading a flash memory model to a HDD model.

In the case of upgrading a flash memory model to a HDD model with imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2200 series, there is a mechanism to transfer the user data to the HDD side by the data migration function.

In consideration of power disconnection during data transfer or cancelling of model switching at the time of data migration, the data should be copied rather than data transfer.

In the case of installing a HDD Encryption Kit or Data Erase Kit, the data in the flash memory is not encrypted but left in the flash memory; therefore, this function is necessary to delete the data.

Function overview

When this function is executed, the machine basically executes the same operation as "Initialize All Data/Settings" (such as auto rebooting, processing at startup, complete deletion, clearing).

The following shows the difference:

- SRAM is not deleted.
- The job information in the machine is deleted for the flash memory side only.
- The MEAP application information is deleted for the flash memory side only.

Caution:

In the case of returning a machine due to expiry of the lease period after upgrading the machine, or in the case of disposing the machine, do not execute "Delete Old Data" but execute the normal "Initialize All Data/Settings".

The data to be deleted:

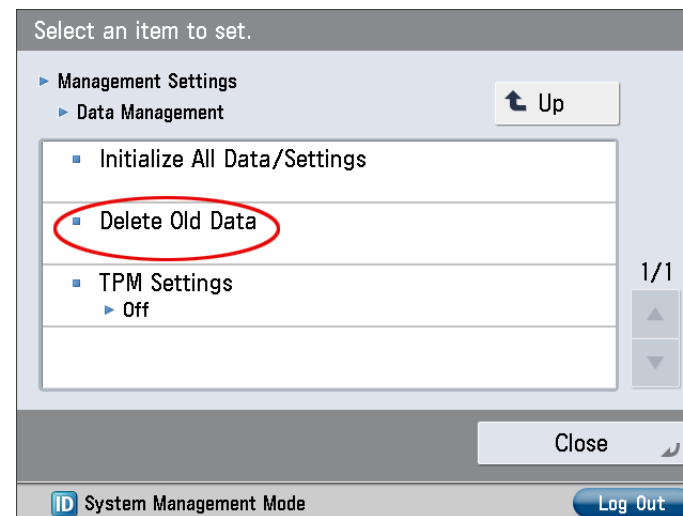
- Image data
- Address Book
- Temporary data
- The font and profile installed by the user

The data not to be deleted:

- Adjustment value at the factory
- Program and library at the time of factory shipment
- System data(such as the pre-installed font data, etc)

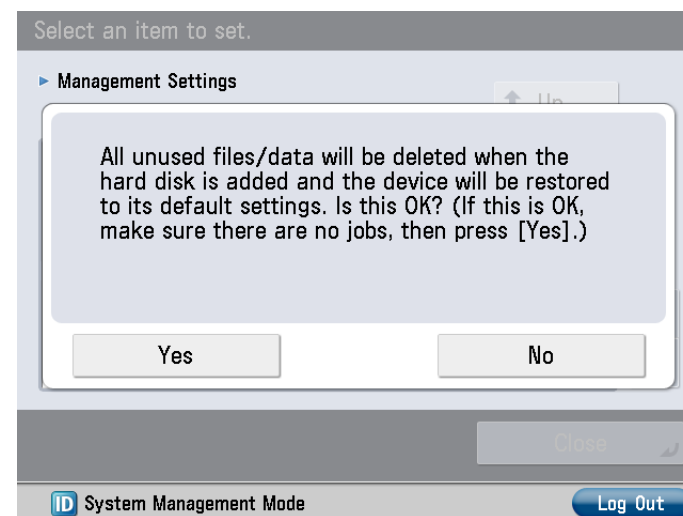
Operation

1. Select the following: Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Delete Old Data



F-2-24

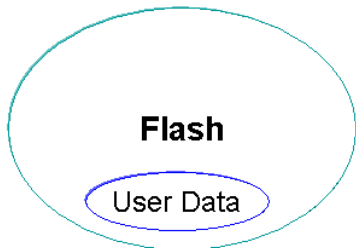
2. Select "Yes".



F-2-25

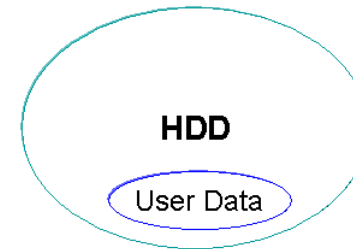
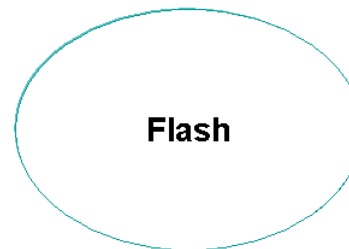
Basic concept for "Delete Old Data"

1.Using the flash memory



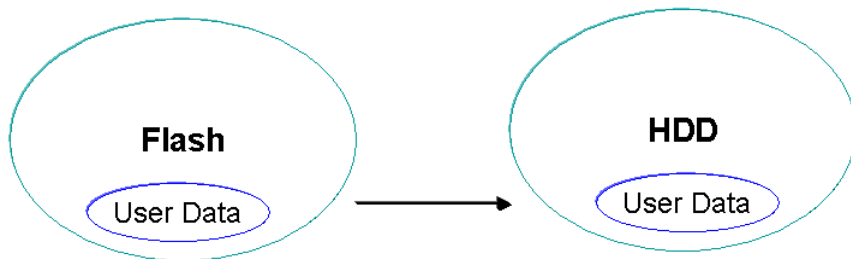
F-2-26

4.Using the HDD



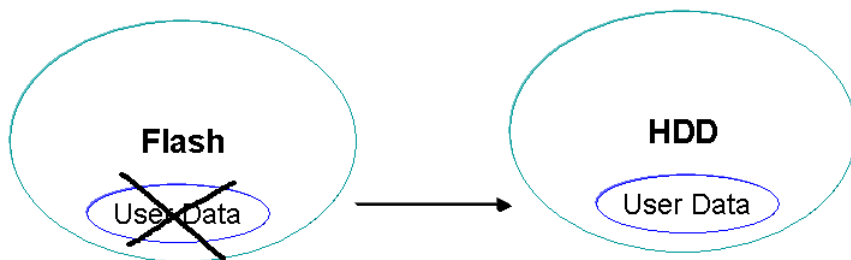
F-2-29

2.At the time of increasing a HDD or license registration



F-2-27

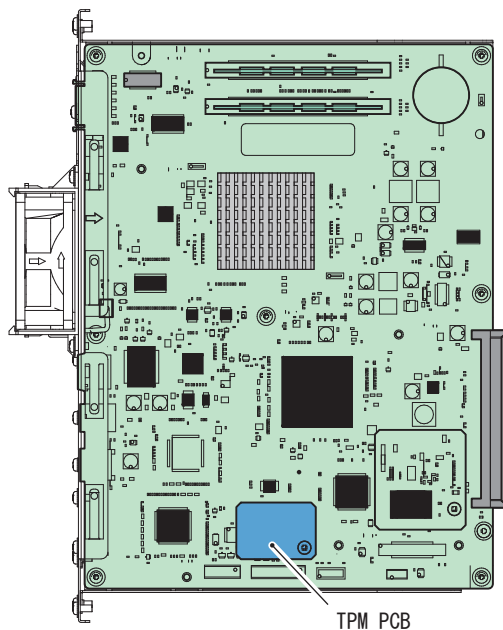
3."Delete Old Data" in user mode



F-2-28

■ Security features(encryption key and certificate, password protection)

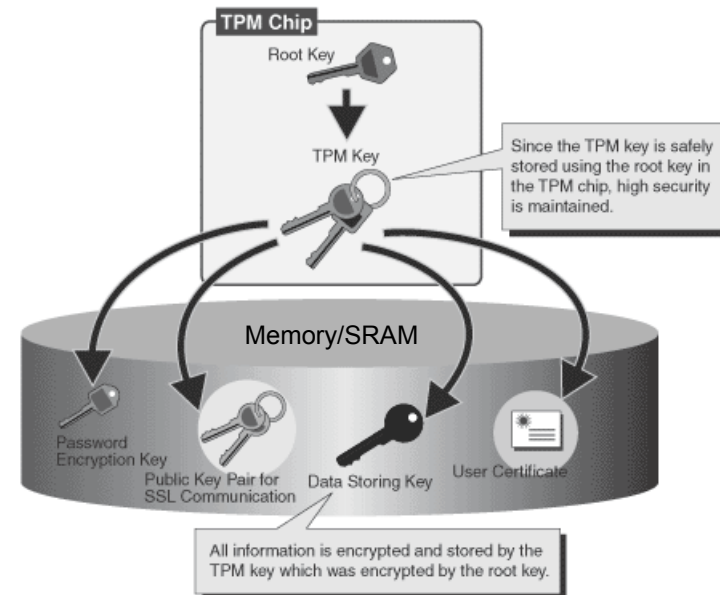
On the Main Controller PCB 1 of the main body, "TPM PCB" is equipped. TPM stands for Trusted Platform Module, and is the chip name which generates and stores the encryption key and has the encryption calculation function for the public key.



F-2-30

TPM PCB can protect the security information(password, certificate and encryption key) stored in the Flash and SRAM. Set / registered / saved data other than the security information is not protected.

To encrypt or decode the security information, use the TPM key installed in the chip.



F-2-31

It is extremely difficult from the outside to take out the TPM key installed in the chip. Therefore, even the following cases occur, the security information in the main body can be protected securely.

- HDD or Main Controller PCB is taken out
- System of the main body is intruded through the network

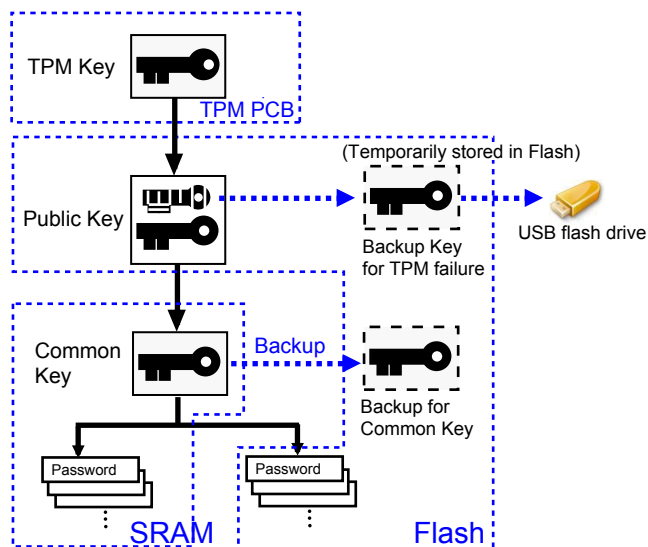
To enable this function, setting is required in Settings / Registration mode.

Management Settings > Data Management > TPM Settings -> On (default: OFF)

• Configuration of Security Information

The security functionality behaves differently depending on the TPM setting on the UI. This machine provides the two types of TPM settings. See the figure below for the security information flow in each setting.

- When the TPM setting is ON

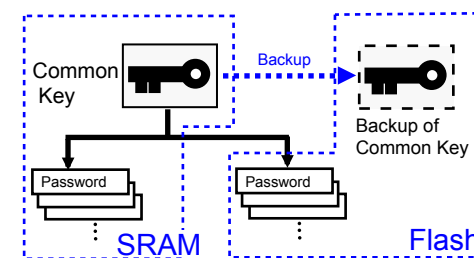


F-2-32

When the TPM setting is ON, the TPM key is enabled to secure information with the three keys. Therefore, the security information held in each machine is safely protected. The security information in this setting can be accessed by the three keys and multiple passwords stored in the SRAM and Flash. Each data is stored in the specified location (enclosed with blue dots in the figure above). Since the data in the upper layer are linked to those in the lower layer, security information is activated only when data in all the layers are linked. For the backup purpose, the backup key is temporarily stored also in the Flash to be prepared for a TPM failure (only for the initial failure after the TPM setting is ON). This key can be backed up using the USB flash drive. Once backed up, the backup key is deleted from the Flash. The common key information is stored in the Flash as well as the SRAM. The common key stored in the SRAM is cleared when the main controller PCB 2 (SRAM) is replaced or after MN-CON clear. However, the common key stored in the Flash automatically restores that in the SRAM so that the security information is decodable even after servicing. Note that the security information is not decodable correctly in case the Flash is failed or formatted because the public key information stored in the Flash is cleared. If this occurs, execute "Initialize All Data / Settings" in user mode to set the TPM setting to OFF. This will maintain the password

information in the SRAM even after the password information is initialized.

- When the TPM setting is OFF:



F-2-33

When the TPM setting is OFF, the TPM key is disabled. Thus, the security information is protected only by the common key. Under this setting, the security information held in this machine is protected at the level equivalent to the conventional machines. The security functionality in this setting is configured by the common key and multiple passwords stored in the SRAM and Flash. When the TPM setting is set to OFF, the security information is protected by the common key and multiple passwords stored in SRAM and Flash. The common key information is stored in the Flash as well as the SRAM. The common key stored in the SRAM is cleared when the main controller PCB 2 (SRAM) is replaced or after MN-CON clear. Since the common key stored in the Flash will automatically restore the common key in the SRAM, the security information is decodable correctly even after servicing. Unlike the case that the TPM setting is set to ON, the password information stored in the Flash is initialized when the Flash is replaced or formatted. However, the password information is maintained in the SRAM.

TPM Setting for Security Information

The security information can be protected with or without TPM by switching between TPM settings in Setting / Registration mode.

- When the TPM setting is ON The security functionality is enabled in 4 levels (TPM key, public key, common key and password).
- When the TPM setting is OFF The security functionality is enabled in 2 levels (common key and password).

• Preparation before Installing TPM

Before installing TPM, ask the user to back up data. Follow the steps below to back up data.

1) From Remote UI, execute Setting / Registration > Management Setting > Data Management > Import / Export. The following data types should be backed up.

- Address book (see *1)
- Device settings (transfer settings, address book, frequently-used Send functions) (see *2)
- Setting / Registration
- Printer settings can be exported
- Favorites stored in the web browser (only when the web browser is enabled) (see *3)

*1 Each of address books can be exported. If the address book is seen as a part of device settings, this step can be disregarded.

*2 Among settings in the main menu, only "Frequently-used Setting" under "Scan and Send" can be backed up.

*3 These are available only in the specific models or configurations.

2) Select "Export" from Custom Menu of the Remote UI to back up "Custom Menu Setting Information".

• Before / after introduction

The setting needs to be specified in Settings / Registration mode ("TPM setting" is set OFF at the time of shipment from the factory)

1. Enable the feature
2. Backup the TPM key
3. Restore the TPM key
4. Disable the feature

Basically the user should perform this work

Caution:

To set "ON" for TPM setting, be sure to instruct the following points to the user.

- Be sure to backup the TPM key immediately after selecting "ON"
- Keep the password at the time of backup
- Be sure not to lose the USB memory that has saved the backup file of TPM key.

In the case of replacing the TPM PCB due to failure, it is necessary to restore the TPM key after replacement.

Unless restoration is implemented, security information (password, certificate and encryption key) cannot be used.

If restore work could not be performed due to lost of USB memory, etc., it is necessary to first execute [Initialize All Data / Settings] to enable the TPM feature again. This is due to security issue to keep the setup/register data unchanged.

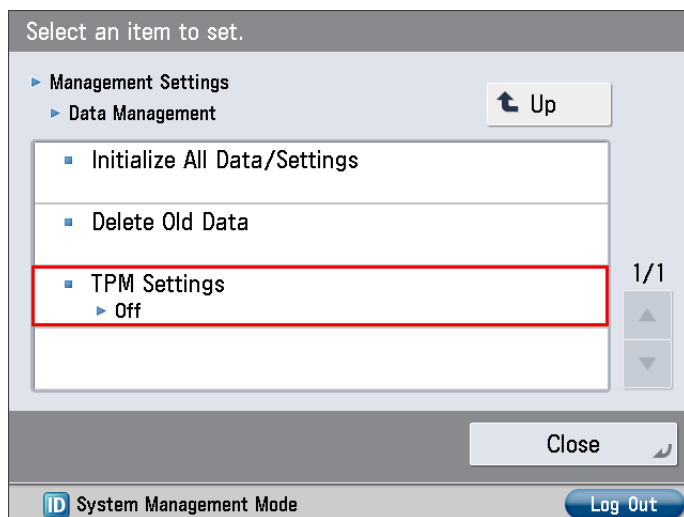
1. Enable the feature

Setting of "system management encryption number"

Recommend the user (administrator) to set up the system management encryption number in advance.

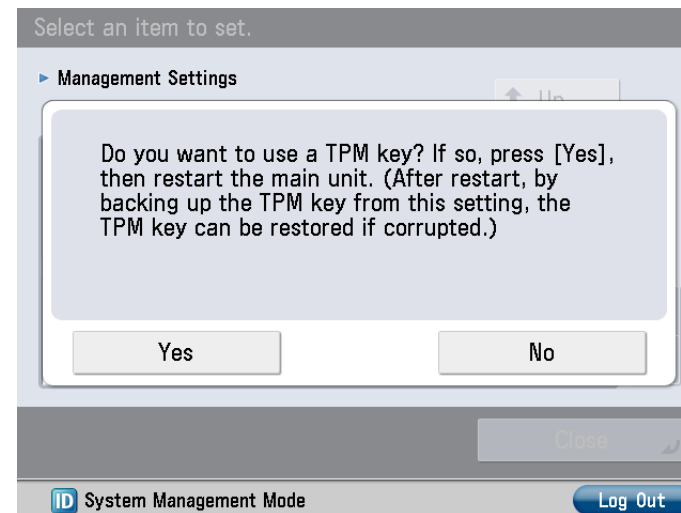
Backup of TPM key is performed after selecting "ON" for TPM settings, however, backup is available only once. Therefore, it is efficient to set the system management encryption number as a mean to avoid incidents, such as when backup file is obtained by anyone other than the administrator, etc.

1) Select the following: Management Settings > Data Management > TPM Setting; and select "ON" for TPM setting.



F-2-34

2) Click "Yes", and then reboot this machine.



F-2-35

Encryption / decoding feature of security information is enabled after rebooting the machine.

2. Backup of TPM key

Only the USB memory (supported system file: FAT32) can be used as the device for saving backup file of TPM key.

Data size of this file is several MB.



F-2-36

1) Connect the USB memory to the main unit.

There are two USB I/F (host): one at the side of the control panel and the other at the side of main controller PCB 1.

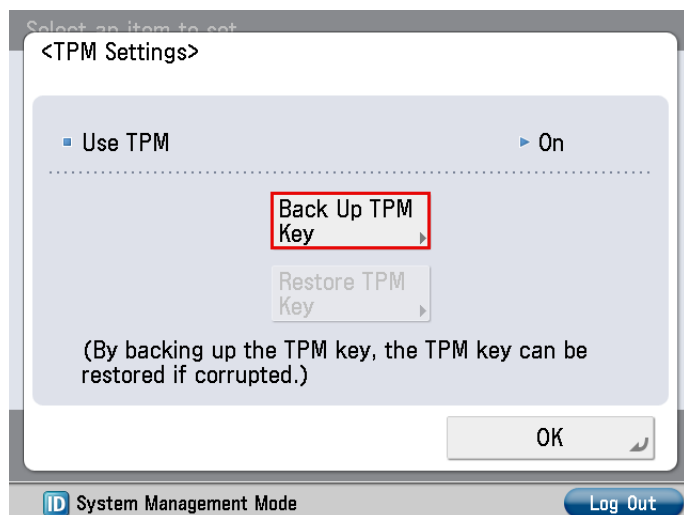
Caution:

Be sure to connect only one USB memory, otherwise, a message indicating backup failure is shown if performing backup while 2 or more USB memories are connected.

NOTE:

The USB memory can save multiple backup files for TPM key.

2) Select the following: Management setting > Data Management > TPM setting; and click [Backup TPM key].



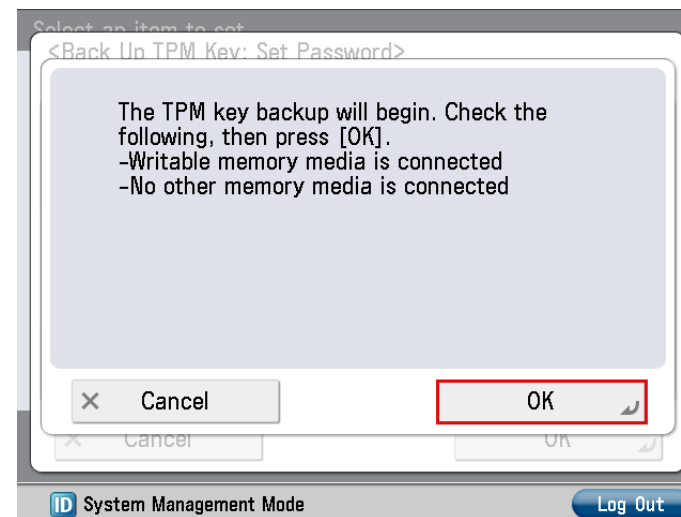
F-2-37

3) Click [Password] to enter the password (4 to 12-digit), and then enter the password to confirm the entry.



F-2-38

4) Click [OK] to start backup of TPM key.



F-2-39

5) Once the backup completion screen is shown, click [OK] and remove the USB memory.

Caution:**Cause of backup failure**

In the case of the following, a message is shown indicating backup failure and its cause. Be sure to perform appropriate remedy.

- USB memory is not connected
- 2 or more USB memories are connected
- Memory capacity of USB memory is insufficient
- Connected USB memory is read-only (writing is prohibited)
- There is no key

Caution:**Storage of USB memory**

Be sure to instruct the following points to the user.

- The USB memory should be securely kept/managed.
- Do not put the backup file of TPM key stored in the USB memory to any location accessible by general public, such as on the server.

NOTE: Backup file name of TPM key
Serial No. is automatically given as the backup file name.

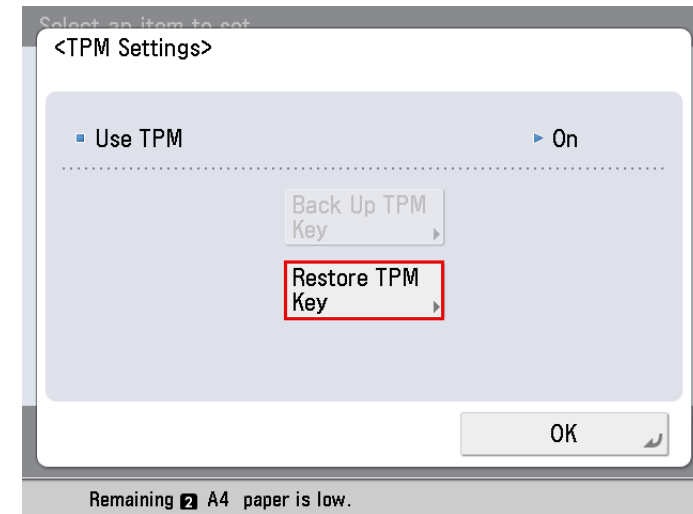
3. Restore of TPM Key

Procedure is about the same as the backup work.

Difference between restore work and backup work:

Rebooting is necessary (turn OFF and then ON the main power) after completion of restore work.

- 1) Connect the USB memory that saves TPM key.
- 2) Select the following: Management setting > Data management > TPM setting; and click [Restore TPM key].



F-2-40

- 3) Enter the password that has been specified at backup work.
- 4) Once the screen to confirm restore start is shown, click [OK] to start restore.
- 5) Once the restore completion screen is shown, click [OK] and remove the USB memory, and turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.

Caution:**Cause of restore failure**

In the case of the following, a message is shown indicating restore failure and its cause.

Be sure to perform appropriate remedy.

- USB memory is not connected.
- 2 or more USB memories are connected.
- Connected USB memory is with security feature.
- There is no TPM key in the USB memory.
- The TPM key in the USB memory is not appropriate for the target machine.
- Mismatched entry password
- [Initialize All Data /Setting] is executed after obtaining backup of TPM key.
- The SRAM (main controller PCB 1) or the Flash is faulty.

Caution: Points to note when disabling functionality

To disable the use of TPM, all data and settings should be initialized. If this is executed, user information saved in the HDD/ SRAM is totally cleared. Ensure to back up the data before disabling TPM settings.

List of data to be cleared

- Data saved in Inbox (Fax Box/ System Box)
- Destination data registered in Address Book
- Read mode registered using Send function
- Mode memory registered using Copy/ Box function
- MEAP applications and their license files
- Data saved using MEAP applications
- Password for MEAP SMS (Service Management Service)
(The password is returned to default if any change is made.)
- User authentication information registered by local device authentication via SSO-H (Single Sign-On H)
- Unsent documents (documents for scheduled transmission and reserved transmission)
- Job logs
- Contents set in Setting / Registration
- Image-composite registration form
- Registered transfer settings
- Key pair and server certificate registered in Management Setting (Setting/ Registration) > [Device Management] > [Certificate Settings]

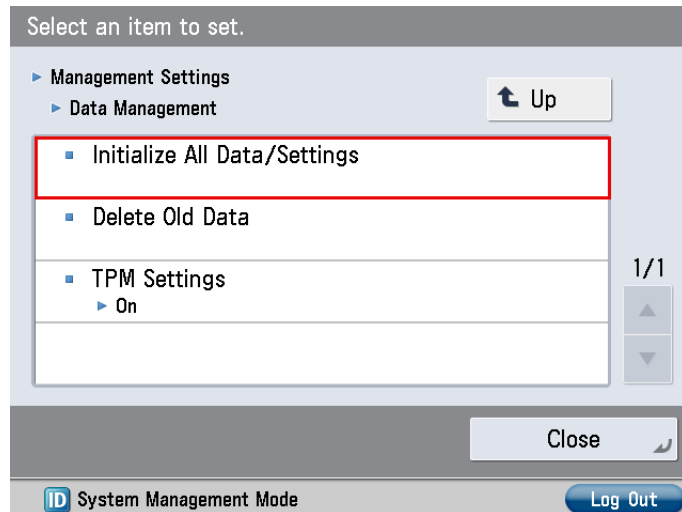
Steps of data restoration after recovery

The restoration process triggers Setting/ Registration > Management Setting > Data Management > Import/ Export > Import/ Export Setting/ Registration on the UI.

The data listed below cannot be restored, thus should be set again.

4. Disable the feature

To set "OFF" for the TPM setting, execute [Initialize All Data / Settings].



F-2-41

- Related Error Code

Error Code	Error title, description, remedy	
E746	Error in encryption	
0031	Engine ID error	
	Description	Hardware error
	Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power 2. Replace the TPM PCB
0032	Engine ID error	
	Description	TPM key mismatch
	Remedy	Format the system Use SST or USB memory to format the HDD, and then execute downloading of the system software. See Chapter 6 Upgrading for details. For reference, the method using USB memory is shown below: 1. Prepare USB memory in which the system software was registered
0033	Engine ID error	
	Description	Mismatched data in the TPM
	Remedy	Recovery is available if backup of the TPM has been executed 1. Connect the USB memory in which the TPM key is saved 2. Management Settings > Data Management > TPM Settings; click [Restore TPM key] 3. Enter the password that was specified at the time of backup work 4. Once the restore completion screen is displayed, click [OK] and remove the USB memory, and then turn OFF and ON the main power switch. When backup of the TPM key is not executed System format is necessary Use SST or USB memory to format the HDD, and then download the system software
0034	TPM auto recovery error	
	Description	An error occurs when clearing the HDD while the TPM setting is ON
	Remedy	The symptom is recovered by turning OFF and then ON the power

T-2-10

- Data to be encrypted / decoded(reference)

Flash model

Type	Application/feature	Security information	Saving destination
Password/encryption number	FAX Box	Password for FAX Box	Flash
	Send	Password for File destination in Address Book	Flash
		Password of LDAP server	SRAM
		Password of POP3 server	SRAM
		Password of Adobe ES Rights Management server	SRAM
		Password for address (destination) registration	SRAM
	UI	Password for Service Mode	SRAM
	Network	Password for IPP authentication	SRAM
		Password for FTP authentication	SRAM
		User name and password of Proxy authentication client	SRAM
		Login password of NetWare print server	SRAM
		Policy common key for IPSec	SRAM
		User name and password for PEAP/TTLS authentication	SRAM
	Others	Login user information of device	Flash
Password for FAX reception		SRAM	
Department management data (including administrator password)		SRAM	
Encryption key	MIB	Authentication key and encryption key for SNMPv3	SRAM
Others	User preference data	Key bundle information (password)	

T-2-11

HDD model

Type	Application/feature	Security information	Saving destination	
Password/encryption number	FAX Box	Password for FAX Box	HDD	
	Send	Send	Password for File destination in Address Book	HDD
			Password of LDAP server	SRAM
			Password of POP3 server	SRAM
			Password of Adobe ES Rights Management server	SRAM
			Password for address (destination) registration	SRAM
	UI	Password for Service Mode	SRAM	
	Network		Password for IPP authentication	SRAM
			Password for FTP authentication	SRAM
			User name and password of Proxy authentication client	SRAM
			Login password of NetWare print server	SRAM
			Policy common key for IPSec	SRAM
	Others		User name and password for PEAP/TLS authentication	SRAM
			Login user information of device	HDD
			Password for FAX reception	SRAM
	Department management data (including administrator password)	SRAM		
Encryption key	MIB	Authentication key and encryption key for SNMPv3	SRAM	
Certificate/Secret Key	SSL, AMS	Device key pair	HDD	
	Signature SEND	User key pair	HDD	
Others	User preference data	Key bundle information (password)	HDD	

T-2-12

■ HDD Encryption Kit (Optional)

This option enables to generate the encryption key inside the encryption board and to encrypt the whole HDD including the system software. Performing encryption can protect the temporary image data generated at copying or printing, the registration information of the Address Book and the password information from leakage of confidential information by theft of the HDD.

Mirroring function is built in the HDD Encryption Kit - C3, however, the HDD for mirroring cannot be installed with the imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2200 series. Since mirroring is not available, the following explains the encryption function of the HDD.

Caution:

There is no need to reinstall the system in the case of installing the HDD Encryption Kit. This is because the system is not deleted but stored in the flash memory.

● HDD encryption function

Temporary image data such as scanned image or PDL data is written in the HDD of the host machine on an as-needed basis. In normal operation, only the management information is deleted after printing is complete or the file is deleted; therefore, the image or the user file information remain in the HDD as they are (without modification). In this case, HDD encryption function prevents an original image being restored from pulling out the HDD and analyzing in disk editor.

● Data encryption mechanism

The encryption board receives signals transmitted from the controller board, and encrypts and saves them in the HDD.

The encryption board receives the encrypted data saved in the HDD to decode and send them to the controller.

● Conditions for Encryption Board operation

The encryption board has the function to recognize and authenticate the host machine. An error is triggered if a second-hand HDD encryption/ mirroring board is installed to the other machine.

● Compatibility among Device, Encryption Board and HDD

E602-2000 error may occur if the unmatched authentication information is found between the controller and the HDD encryption board and the encryption board is mounted. The device, the encryption board and HDD can be connected in 4 use cases.

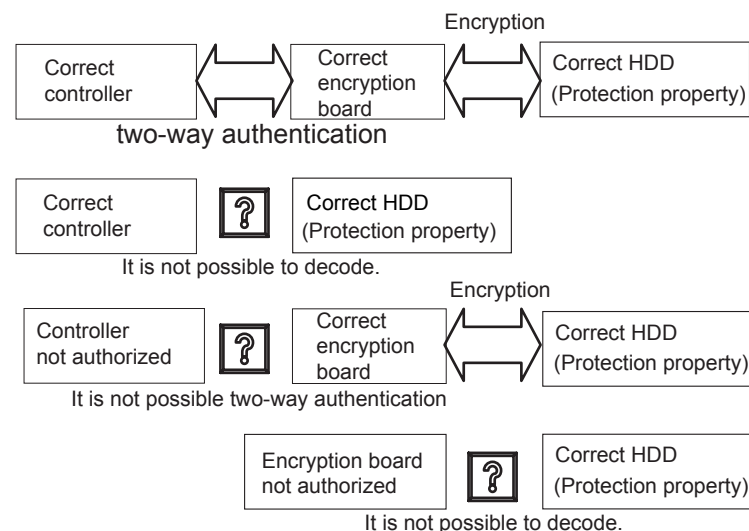
The following shows the statuses for each use case.

Case 1: Normally operated

Case 2: HDD-related error occurs because the system on the HDD cannot be read (other than E602-2000 error)

Case 3: E602-2000 is triggered by failure in mutual authentication

Case 4: Unable to decode properly due to unmatched key for the encryption board



F-2-42

● Actions against Troubles - Overview

Servicing	User data	Recovery	Action
HDD replacement	cleared	Replace HDDs	1) Format the HDD
Encryption board replacement	cleared	Install HDD encryption Kit	1) Replace encryption board 2) Initialize Encryption Board 3) Format the HDD
Main controller 2 replacement (SRAM)	cleared	Clear the key for HDD data encryption kit	1) Initialize the encryption board 2) Format the HDD
Main controller 1 replacement	not cleared	N/A	N/A

Servicing	User data	Recovery	Action
Main controller clear	Information held in SRAM cleared	After MN-CON clear process is done	MN-CON clear does not clear authentication information; no work is required specifically for HDD encryption kit

T-2-13

- Relevant Error Codes

E602 and detailed codes

E code	Description	Cause	Detection Timing	Actions
E602 -2000	Authentication Error	Error in authentication between the host machine and the encryption board	Start-up	Check connections between the encryption board and the HDD and between the encryption board and the main controller 2. This error may be triggered after replacement of the encryption board or the main controller 2. At any rate, this error disables accesses to HDD data. When no problem is found in connections, use SST to execute Key Clear > Format .
	Failure in Encryption Board	Error in recognition of the encryption board		
	Device Error	Failure in the encryption board		

T-2-14

Service Tasks

- Actions at Parts Replacement

Reference to the section 5.

- Periodically Replaced Parts

None.

- Consumable Parts

None.

- Service Notes

None.

Disassembly/Assembly- Main Controller system -

Removing the Controller Cover

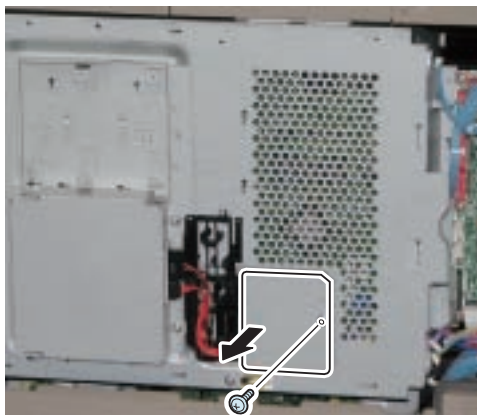
Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.

Procedure

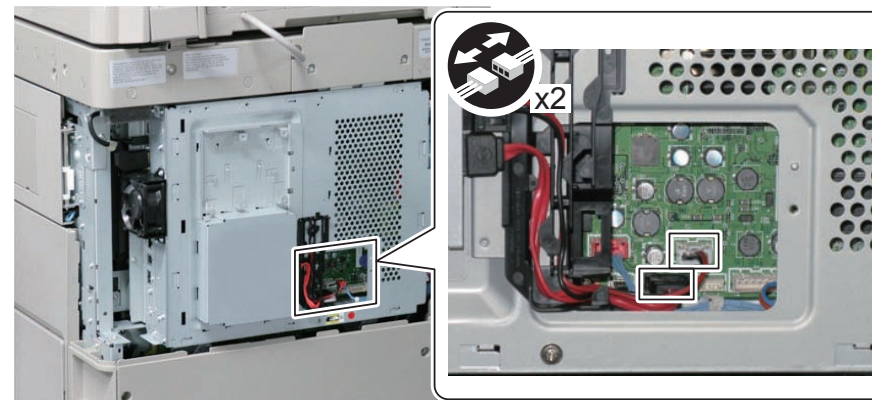
NOTE:
The following describes the procedure for the HDD model. For the models without the HDD, start from step 2.

- 1) Remove the small Cover.
- 1 Screw



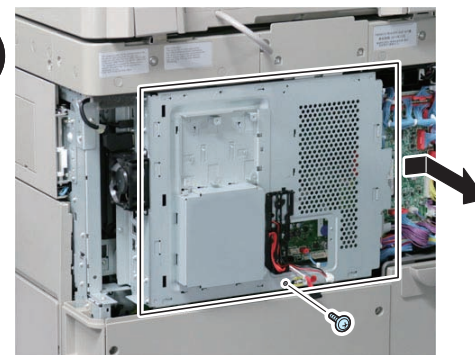
F-2-43

- 2) Remove the HDD Power Cable when the HDD is installed.
- 2 Connectors



F-2-44

- 3) Remove the Controller Cover in the direction of the arrow.
- 1 Screw



F-2-45

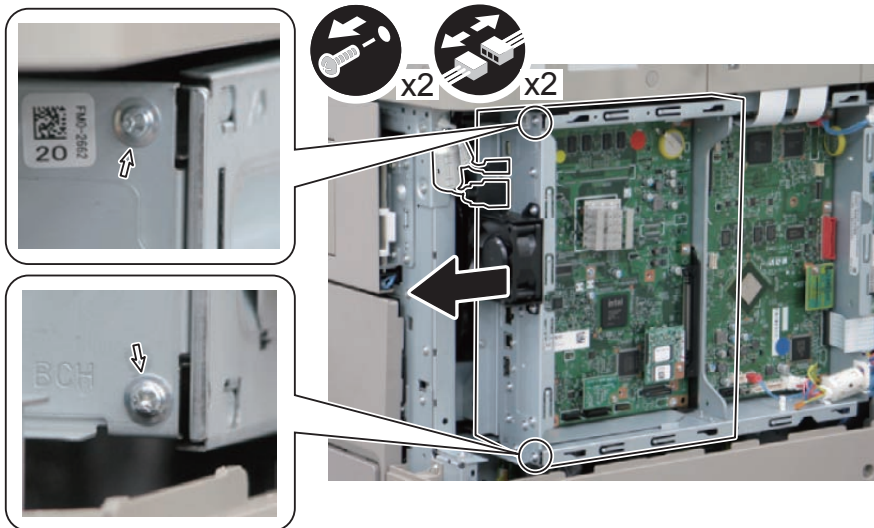
Removing the Main Controller PCB 1

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
- 3) Remove the Controller Cover.

Procedure

- 1) Disconnect the Control Panel Communication Cable and Remove Main Controller 1 in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-46

Removing the Main Controller 2

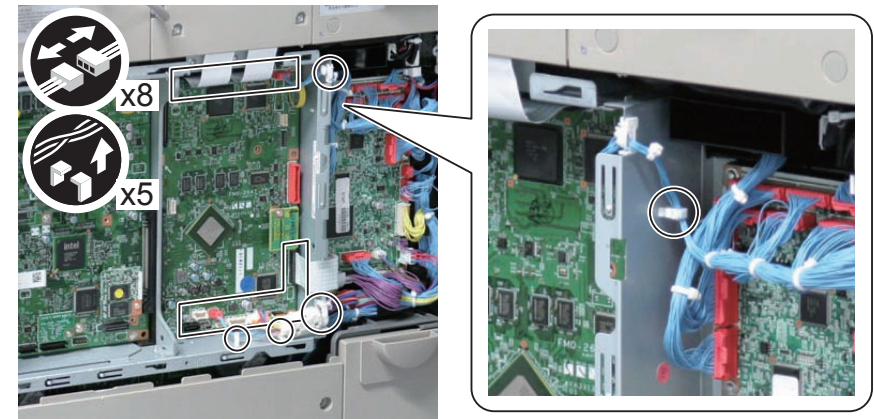
- 1) Backup of the Forwarding Settings and Service Mode setting values (MN-CON) Use the Remote UI.
Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export
Target data:
 - Forwarding Settings
 - Service Mode setting values (MN-CON)
Only when ON is selected in COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT, the service mode setting values can be backed up and restored from the RUI.

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
- 3) Remove the Controller Cover.

Procedure

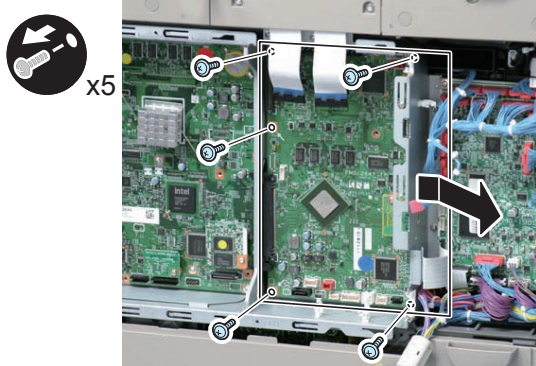
- 1) Remove the 5 Connectors, 3 Flat Cables, Edge Saddle and Wire Saddle.
 - 5 Connectors
 - 3 Flat cables
 - Wire Saddle
 - Edge Saddle



F-2-47

2) Remove Main Controller PCB 2 in the direction of the arrow.

- 5 Screws



F-2-48

- 1) After installing the parts, turn ON the main power switch.
- 2) Restoring the backup data
Use the Remote UI.
Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export
- 3) TPM key information
If the TPM key information in the SRAM of the HDD or the Main Controller PCB 2 is lost, the key information in the SRAM is automatically recovered from the backup of the common key in the HDD. Then the internal state of TPM setting key changes to "ON". However, the display on the UI remains "OFF", therefore the TPM setting needs to be manually changed to "ON".
- 4) When the user generates and adds the encryption key, certificate and/or CA certificate, request the user to generate them again.

Removing the DC Controller PCB

Preparation

At replacement:

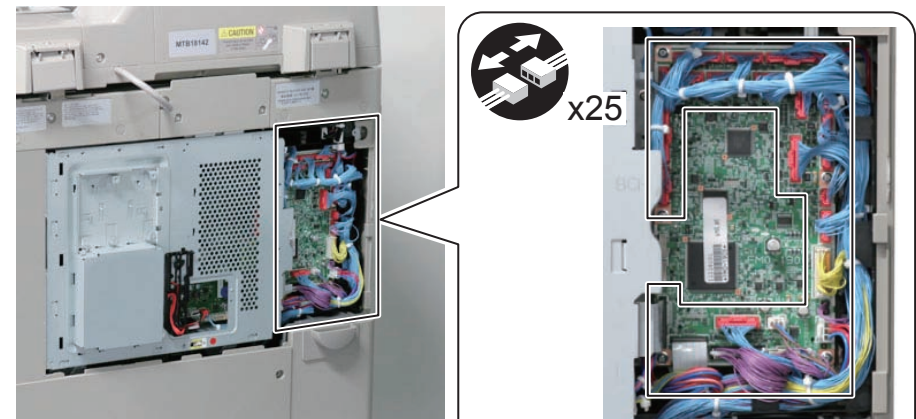
Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, execute the following service mode to perform backup of the DC Controller PCB SRAM:
COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DSRAMBUP (LEVEL2)
"ACTIVE" is displayed and then "OK!" is displayed about 2 minutes later.
Turn OFF the main power when the above work is complete.

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.

Procedure

- 1) Disconnect all of the Connectors on the DC Controller PCB.

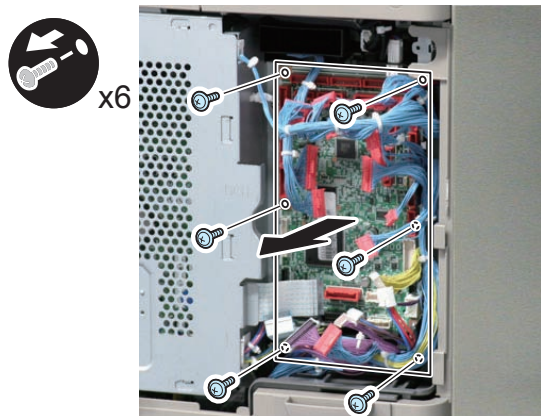
- 22 Connectors
- 3 Flat Cables



F-2-49

2) Remove the DC Controller PCB.

- 6 Screws



F-2-50

After replacement:

Turn ON the power and execute the following service mode to restore DC Controller PCB SRAM.

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DSRAMRES (LEVEL2)

“ACTIVE” is displayed at execution and then “OK!” is displayed about 2 minutes later. Restoration is complete.

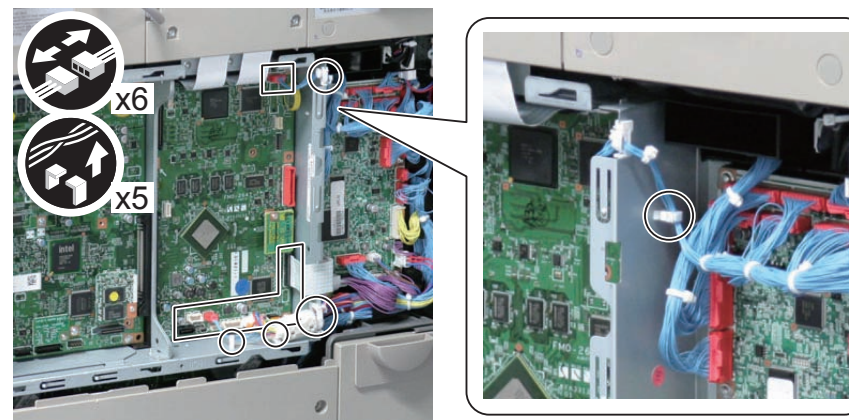
Removing the Controller Box

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
- 3) Remove the Controller Cover.

Procedure

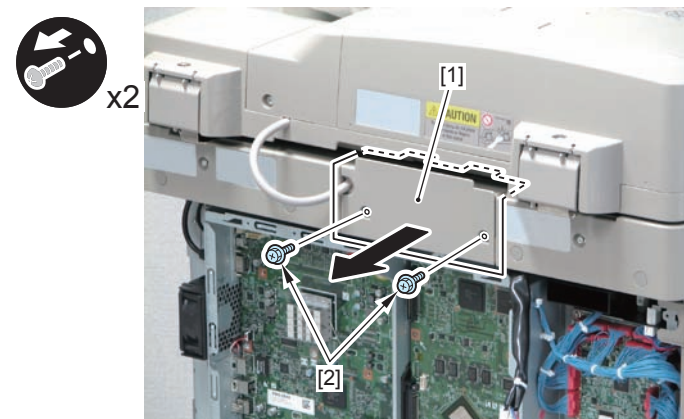
- 1) Remove the 5 Connectors, 3 Flat Cables and 2 Wire Saddles.
 - Wire Saddle
 - Edge Saddle



F-2-51

2) Remove the Reader Cable Cover [1].

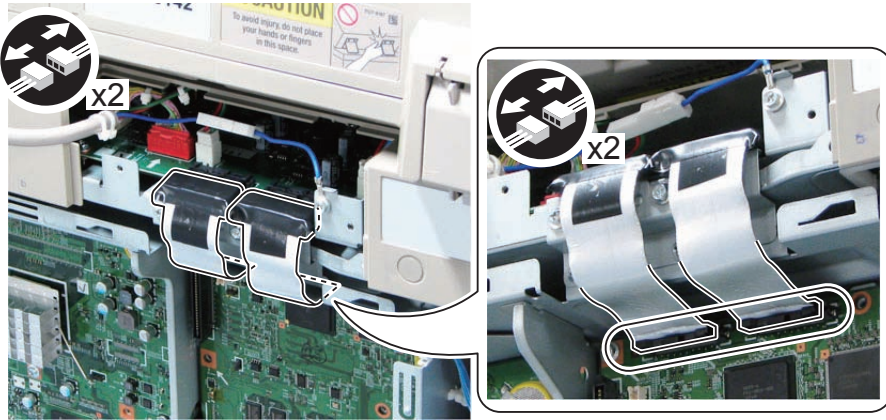
- 2 Screws [2]



F-2-52

3) Remove the 2 Flat Cables.

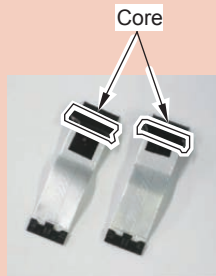
- 2 Flat Cables



F-2-53

CAUTION: Correct direction of the Flexible Cable

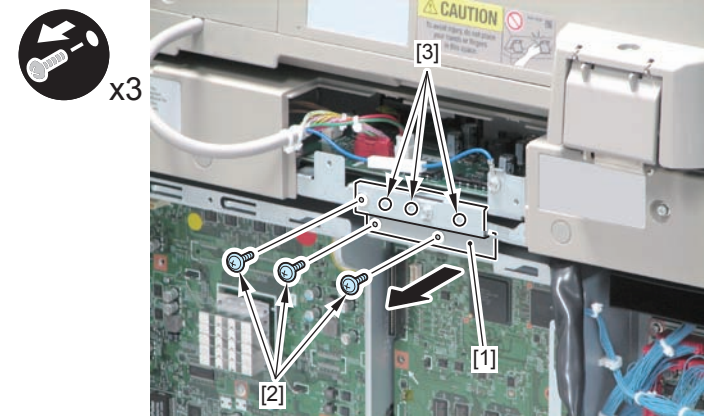
- There is a correct direction to connect the Flexible Cable.
- When connecting a Flexible Cable, connect the core end to the reader.



F-2-54

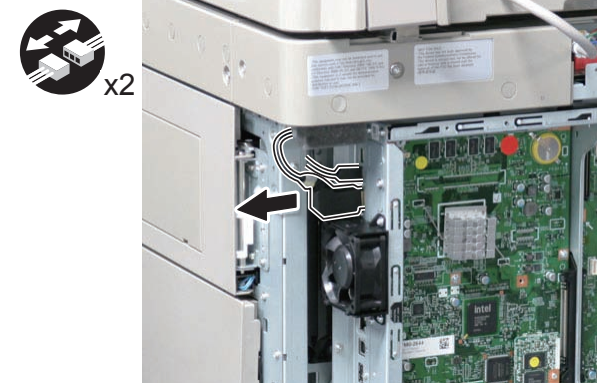
4) Remove the Reader Grounding Plate [1].

- 3 Screws [2]
- 3 Bosses [3]



F-2-55

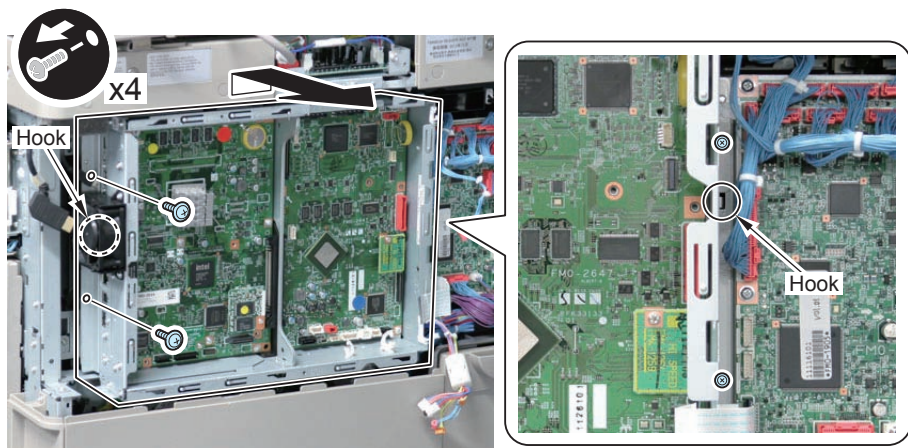
5) Disconnect the Control Panel Communication Cable.



F-2-56

6) Remove the Controller Box in the direction of the arrow.

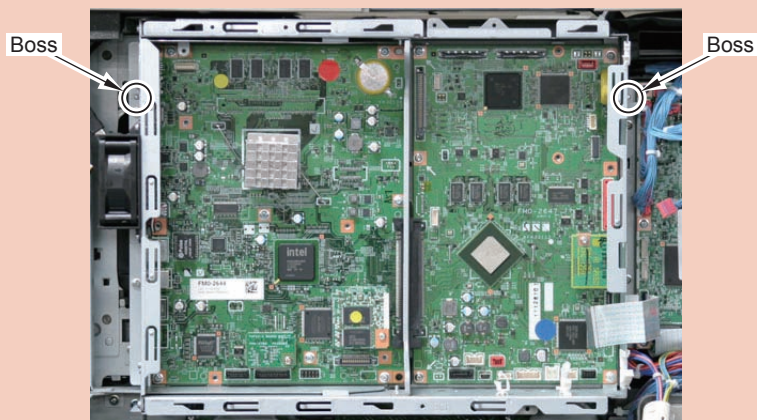
- 4 Screws
- 2 Hooks



F-2-57

CAUTION:

Be sure to fit the 2 bosses when installing the Controller Box.



F-2-58

HDD

<Procedure of parts replacement>

1. Before Replacing

Perform the following operations. Be sure to get an approval from the user beforehand.

Refer to "Back Up" row for data back up.

	Back Up	Restore/ Resetting	Object Item	Remarks
Export of settings	Remote UI Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Export	Remote UI Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import	Settings/Registration Basic Information Box Settings Department ID Management Settings Main Menu Settings Favorite Settings Address Book Forwarding Settings Quick Menu Settings Paper Type Management Settings Web Access Settings Service Mode Settings	When exporting "Service Mode Settings", select Copier > Option > USER > SMD-EXPT > 1. SMD-EXPT cannot be exported, therefore the settings need to be made every time the HDD is replaced.
Backup of MEAP	SST (Meapback)	SST (Meapback)	MEAP application(SMS) User authentication information registered in the Local Device Authentication user authentication system of SSO-H (Single Sign-On H)	Meapback.bin can be restored after replacement or initialization of the HDD. [CAUTION] When the following service mode is executed, Meapback.bin cannot be restored. COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE > 3* *MEAP 3:HDD model 6:Flash model COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR

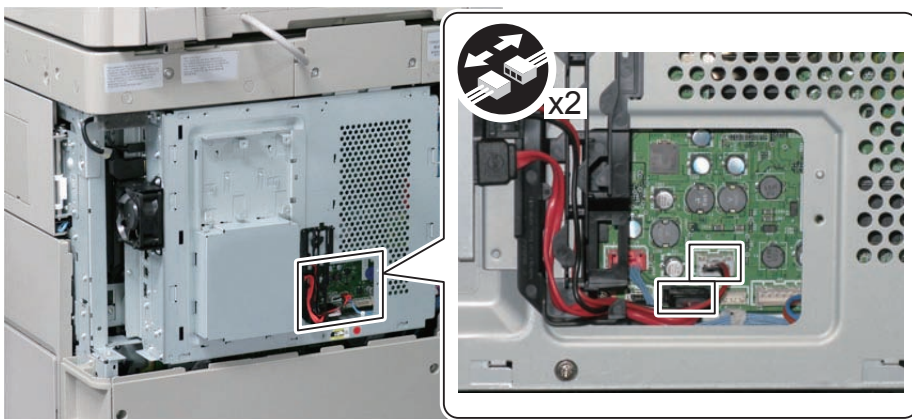
T-2-15

<Preparation>

- 1) Remove the 2 screws securing the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Rear Upper sub Covers.
- 3) Remove the cover of the Controller Box Cover.

<Procedure>

- 1 Remove the small cover of the Controller Box Cover.
 - 1 Screw
- 2 Remove the Signal Cable and the Power Cable with the HDD Cable Holder.
 - 2 Connectors



F-2-59

- 3 Remove the HDD Unit.
 - 2 Screw
- 4 Remove the HDD.
 - 4 Screw

<Actions after Parts Replacement>

- 1) HDD format
 - 1-1) Enter download mode.
 - 1-2) Connect the USB memory storage device to the USB port.
 - 1-3) Press the key on the control panel.

[4] - [1] - [0]: Execute format/ any key other than [0]: Return to the menu screen
- 22) Initializing the key, certificate and CA certificate
(Lv.2) COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CA-KEY
- 33) Turning OFF and ON the main power switch
- 44) Restoring the backup data
Refer to "Restore/Resetting" row for data restore by a list of "<Procedure of adjustment>"
- 55) Resetting/registering the data
While referring to the list of set/registered data which was printed before replacement, reset/register the data.
- 66) When the user generates and adds the encryption key, certificate and/or CA certificate, request the user to generate them again.
- 77) Executing "Auto Adjust Gradation (Full Adjust)"
Settings/Registration mode: Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Auto Adjust Gradation

When using the Card Reader and imageWARE Accounting Manager

Card ID used for imageWARE Accounting Manager is stored in the HDD, so NSA collection control is not enabled after the HDD replacement. After the HDD is replaced, reinstall the card ID from imageWARE Accounting Manager using the following procedures.

- 1) Go to COPIER > FUNCTION> INSTALL > CARD and enter the numerical value of the leading card which is used for Department ID. Then, press "OK" button.(e.g.: If No.1 to No.1000 cards are used for Department ID, enter "1" of the leading card.)
- 2) After turning OFF and ON the main power switch, perform the following operations from Settings/Registration mode.
In Management Settings > User Management > Department ID Management > Page Totals, be sure that "ID00000001" to "ID00001000" are created.
Set the following: Preferences > Network > TCP / IP Settings > IPv4 Settings> IP Address Settings > IP Address, Gateway Address, Subnet Mask
In Management Settings > User Management> System Manager Information Settings> System Manager ID and System PIN, register any number for them. Then, turn OFF and ON the main power switch.
If "System Manager ID" and "System PIN" are not registered, "card registration to device" cannot be executed for the imageWARE Accounting Manager setting operation.
- 3) Download the card ID from imageWARE Accounting Manager to the Main Body again.
- 4) After downloading is completed, go to Management Settings > User Management > Department ID Management > Page Totals. Be sure that only the downloaded card ID is displayed.
- 5) Print using the user card registered from imageWARE Accounting Manager. Be sure that the card information used for the target devices of imageWARE Accounting Manager is collected.

CAUTION:Points to Caution when Using the System Software-installed HDD

When using the HDD which was installed the system software of the other achine (different serial number), be sure to format the HDD after the installation. If the HDD is not formatted, the operation cannot be guaranteed.

Laser Exposure System

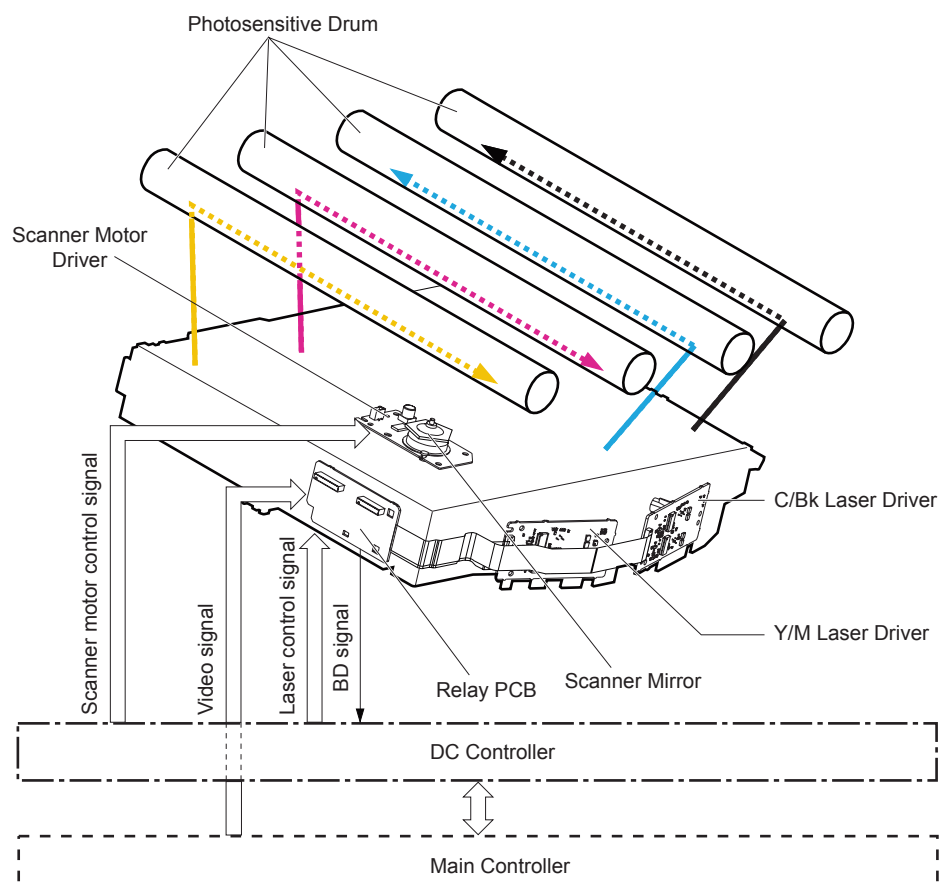
Overview

Overview

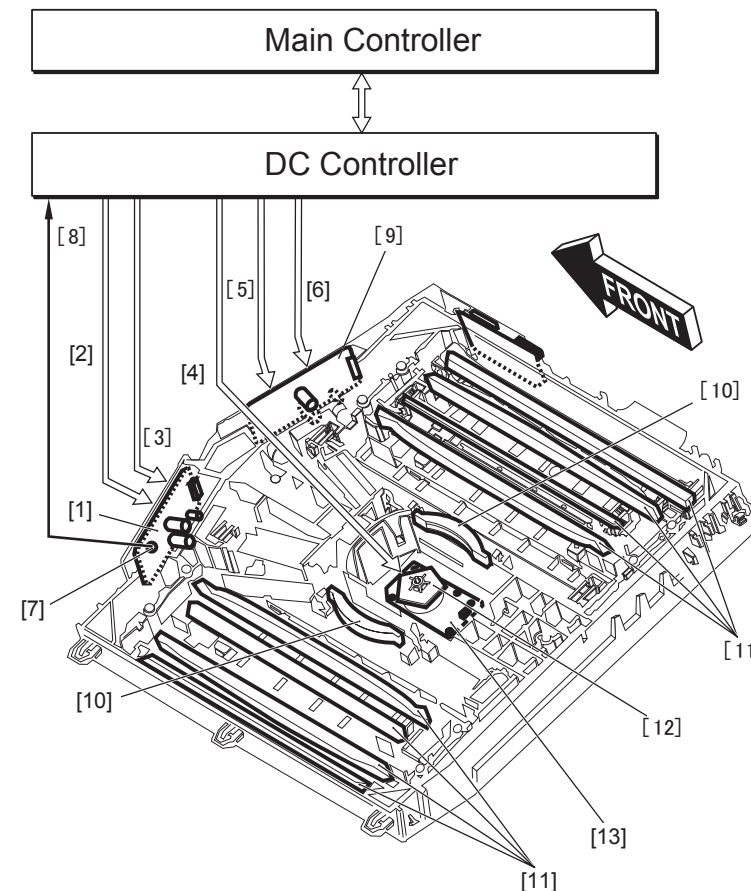
Laser exposure system forms the electrostatic latent image on the photosensitive drum by the laser exposure.

This system is composed of the laser assembly and the scanner motor assembly that are unified as the laser scanner unit.

In this machine, 1-polygon 4-laser method is adopted for the purpose of downsizing.



F-2-60



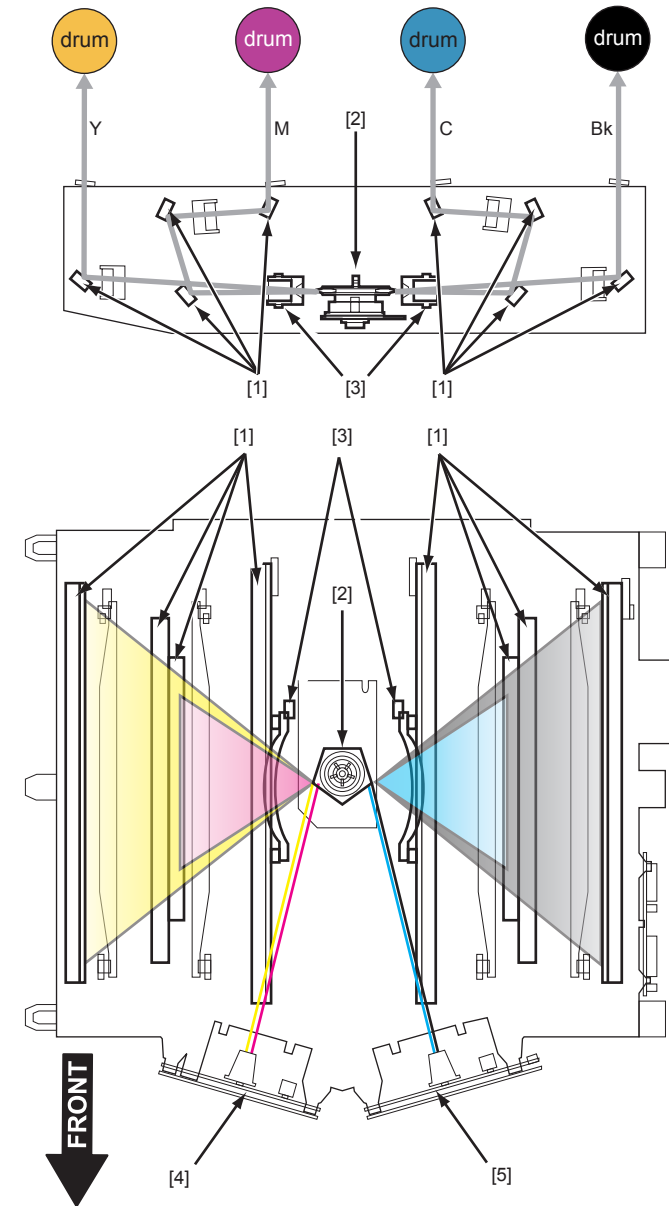
F-2-61

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| [1] C/Bk Laser Driver | [8] BD signal |
| [2] C/Bk video signal | [9] Y/M Laser Driver |
| [3] C/Bk laser control signal | [10] Imaging Lens |
| [4] Scanner motor control signal | [11] Reflection Mirror |
| [5] Y/M video signal | [12] Polygon Mirrors |
| [6] Y/M laser control signal | [13] Scanner Motor Driver |
| [7] BD Circuit | |

■ 1-Polygon 4-Laser Method

This method uses 1 scanner motor (polygon motor) and 4 laser diodes to execute laser scanning. This method allows to emit the 4 lasers on the multi-facet mirror on one scanner motor contributing to space-saving.

Following is the outline of the laser scanner unit.



- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| [1] Reflection Mirror | [4] Y/M Laser Driver |
| [2] Polygon Mirror | [5] C/Bk Laser Driver |
| [3] Imaging Lens | |

F-2-62

■ Specification

Item	Description
Wavelength	780 to 800nm
Laser type	Red color laser (non-visible light)
Laser output	7mW
Number of laser scanner unit	1
Number of laser light	imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2200 : 1 beam for each color
Resolution	600dpi/1200dpi
Motor type	Brushless motor
Number of motor rotation	Approx.38268rpm(1/1-speed,1/2-speed)
Number of scanner mirror facet	5 facet (phi 40)

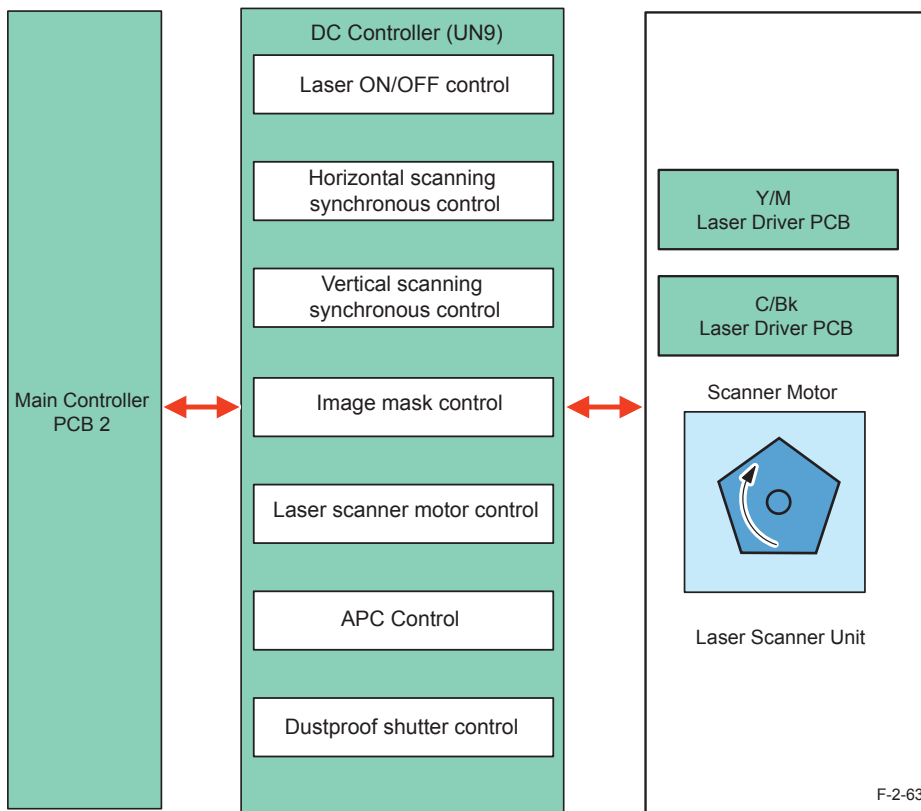
T-2-16

Various Controls

Overview

Item	Operation description
Laser ON / OFF control	Laser light is turned ON / OFF according to the combination of laser control signal
Horizontal scanning synchronous control	To align the writing start position in horizontal scanning direction.
Vertical scanning synchronous control	To align the writing start position in vertical scanning direction.
Image Mask Control	This control prevents the laser beam from being emitted in non-image area to avoid the secondary transfer outer roller from getting dirt.
Laser Scanner Motor Control	To rotate the scanner mirror by the specified speed.
APC control	To make the laser light per 1 line consistent amount
BD correction control	To correct the gap BD timing gap due to the angle variation of Scanner Mirror.
Dustproof shutter control	To prevent the laser light from being emitted to the machine inside.

T-2-17



F-2-63

Laser ON/OFF control

Purpose

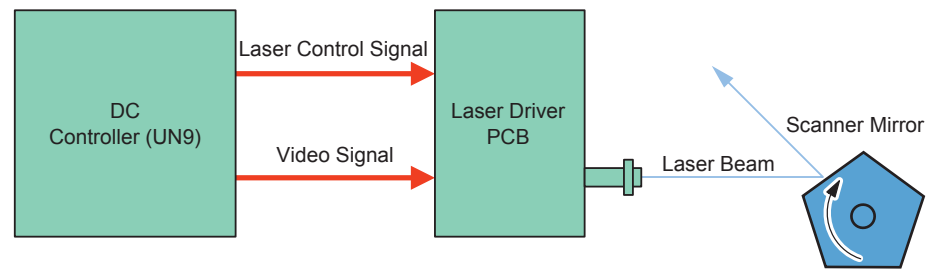
Laser light is turned ON / OFF according to the combination of laser control signal.

Execution timing

After the power ON

Control detail

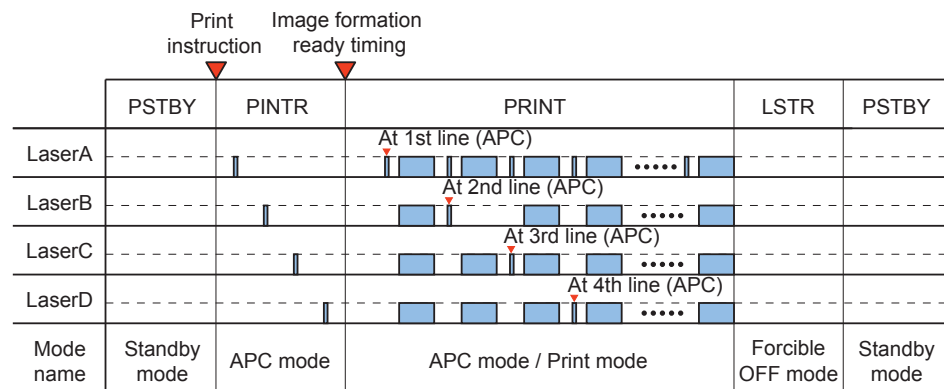
DC Controller switches the 4 modes (forcible OFF mode, APC mode, Print mode and standby mode) according to the laser control signal.



F-2-64

Mode	Laser status	Remark
Forcible OFF mode	OFF	Light intensity setting decided on APC is cleared.
APC mode	ON	Laser light intensity adjustment
Print mode	ON / OFF	Laser is emitted according to the video signal.
Standby mode	OFF	Host machine is in standby status.

T-2-18



F-2-65

■ Horizontal scanning synchronous control

● Purpose

To align the writing start position in horizontal scanning direction.

● Execution timing

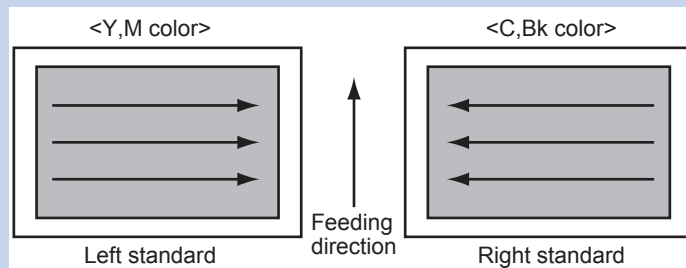
Per 1 line

● Control detail

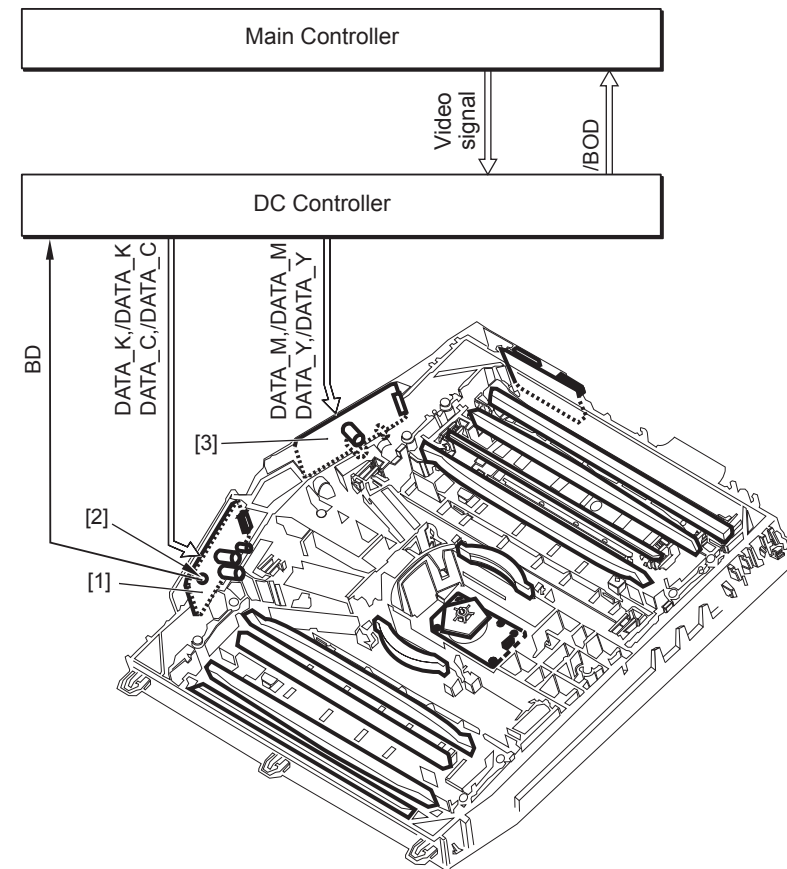
- 1) DC controller forcibly emits the laser diode of Bk laser driver circuit in non-image area.
- 2) There is the BD circuit on the scanning light path of the laser beam and laser beam is emitted to the BD circuit and then, is sent to the DC controller as a parallel synchronous signal (/BD1).
- 3) DC controller sends /BD1 signal as a horizontal scanning synchronous signal (/BD0) to the main controller.
- 4) When the main controller inputs /BD0 signal, the video signal per 1 line of each color (DATA_Y, DATA_M, DATA_C, DATA_K) is outputted to the DC controller after the specified time. According to this, each laser driver emits the laser beam from the specified position per 1 line.

NOTE:

- Since /BD signal is the horizontal scanning synchronous signal of Bk line, Bk color is used as a standard of horizontal scanning for each color.
- Horizontal scanning direction of this machine of left standard (left to right) for Y color and M color, and right standard (right to left) for C color and Bk color.



F-2-66



- [1] C/Bk Laser Driver
- [2] BD Sensor
- [3] Y/M Laser Driver

F-2-67

■ Vertical Scanning Synchronous Control

● Purpose

This is to align the writing start position in vertical scanning direction.

● Execution timing

Per color, Per printing

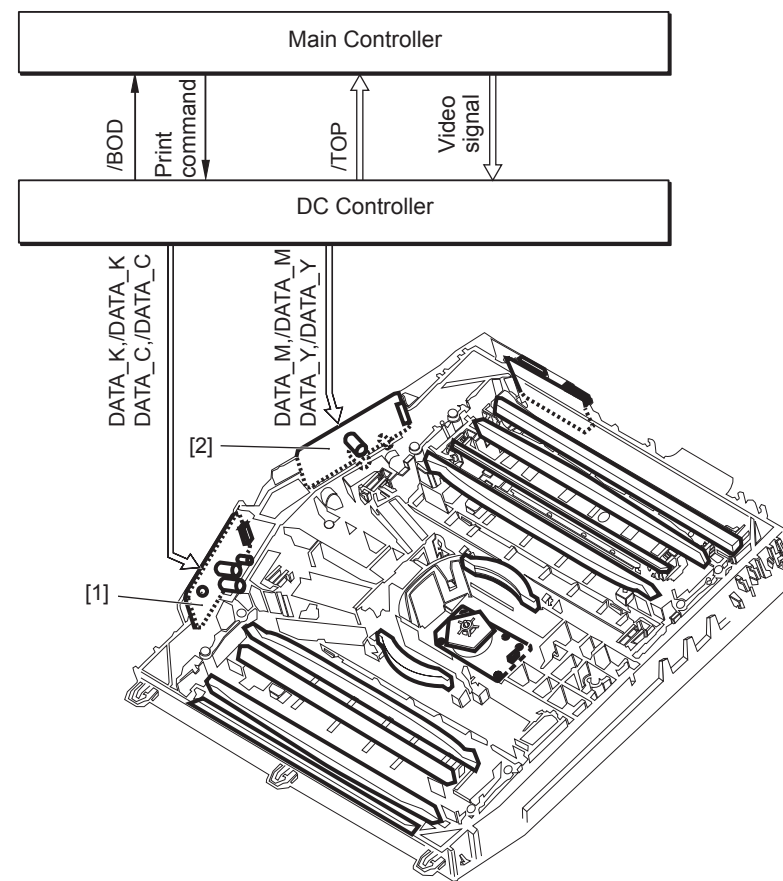
● Control detail

- 1) When the DC controller receives a print command, it creates the vertical synchronous signal (/TOP) based on the inner timer and sends the signal to the main controller.
- 2) After receiving /TOP signal, the main controller counts the horizontal scanning synchronous signal (/BD0) and outputs the video signal for 1 page of each color (DATA_Y, DATA_M, DATA_C, DATA_K) to the DC controller in the specified number of times of horizontal scanning.

As a result, the laser driver of each color emits the laser beam from the specified position for 1 page.

NOTE :

If the process speed is decelerated due to the print mode, interval of TOP signal in continuous printing gets longer according to the slowdown level.



- [1] C/Bk Laser Driver
[2] Y/M Laser Driver

F-2-68

■ Image Mask Control

● Purpose

This control prevents the laser beam from being emitted in non-image area to avoid the secondary transfer outer roller from getting dirt.

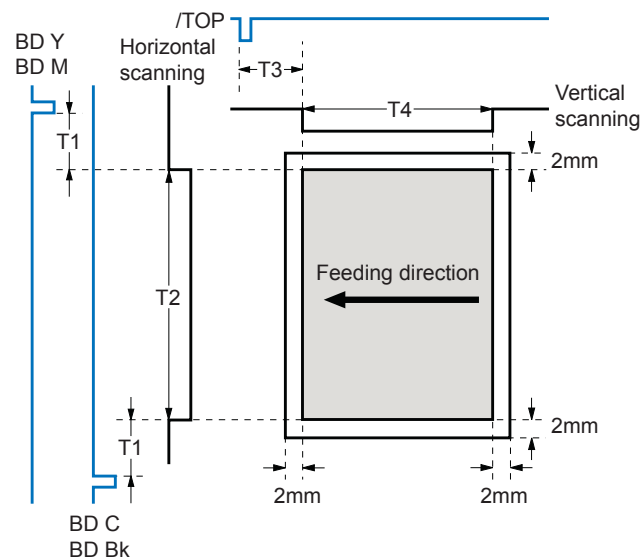
Image mask control is executed for horizontal scanning and vertical scanning respectively.


● Execution timing

At Power ON, Per printing

Type	Control contents	Mask width
Horizontal scanning	Based on the paper size specified by a user, image mask is executed in horizontal scanning direction (BD signal of each color is used as a standard.).	2mm
Vertical scanning	Based on the paper size specified by a user, image mask is executed in vertical scanning direction (TOP signal is used as a standard.).	2mm

T-2-19



-  is image mask disable area (image written available) .
- T1、T2、T4 are differ by paper size.
- T3 is differ by feeding control.

F-2-69

■ Laser scanner motor control

● Purpose

This is to rotate the scanner mirror by the specified speed.

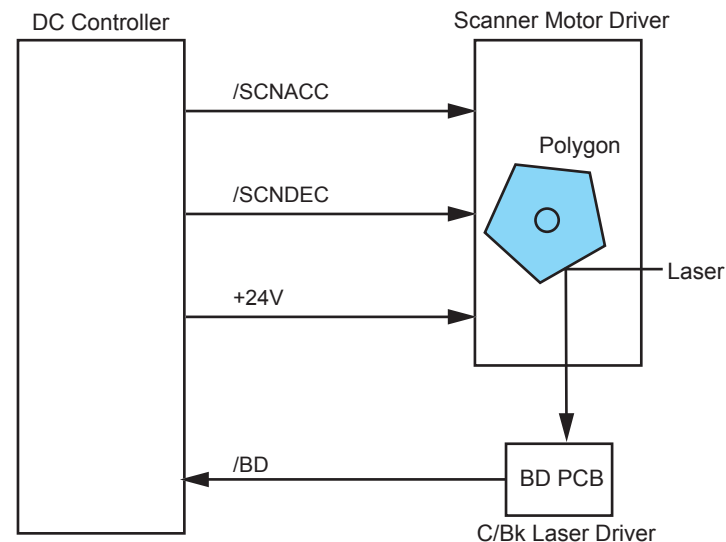
● Execution timing

At power ON, Per printing

● Control detail

DC controller outputs the acceleration signal (/SCNACC) and the deceleration signal (/SCNDEC) to the scanner motor to turn the polygon mirror. The rotation speed of the scanner motor is detected by the input timing of BD signal and the DC controller controls the rotation speed of the scanner motor based on the input timing of the BD signal.

If the process speed is changed due to the print mode, the rotation speed of the scanner motor is also changed according to the process speed.



F-2-70

■ APC(Auto Power Control) Control

● Purpose

This is to make the laser light for 1 line consistent amount.

● Execution timing

Per 1 line. (before print writing)

● Control detail

- 1)DC Controller outputs the laser control signal to the Laser Driver IC on the Laser Driver PCB.
- 2)APC mode is specified to the Laser Driver IC and it forcibly emits the laser diode of each color. At the same time, each laser driver IC monitors the laser diode(LD) on the photo diode (PD) and adjusts the output of laser diode until the light intensity becomes consistent amount.

■ Dustproof shutter control

● Purpose

This is to prevent the residue toner from sticking to the dust-prevention glass. Or to prevent the laser light from emitting to the machine inside when the front cover / right cover is opened.

● Execution timing

After Power ON

● Execution time

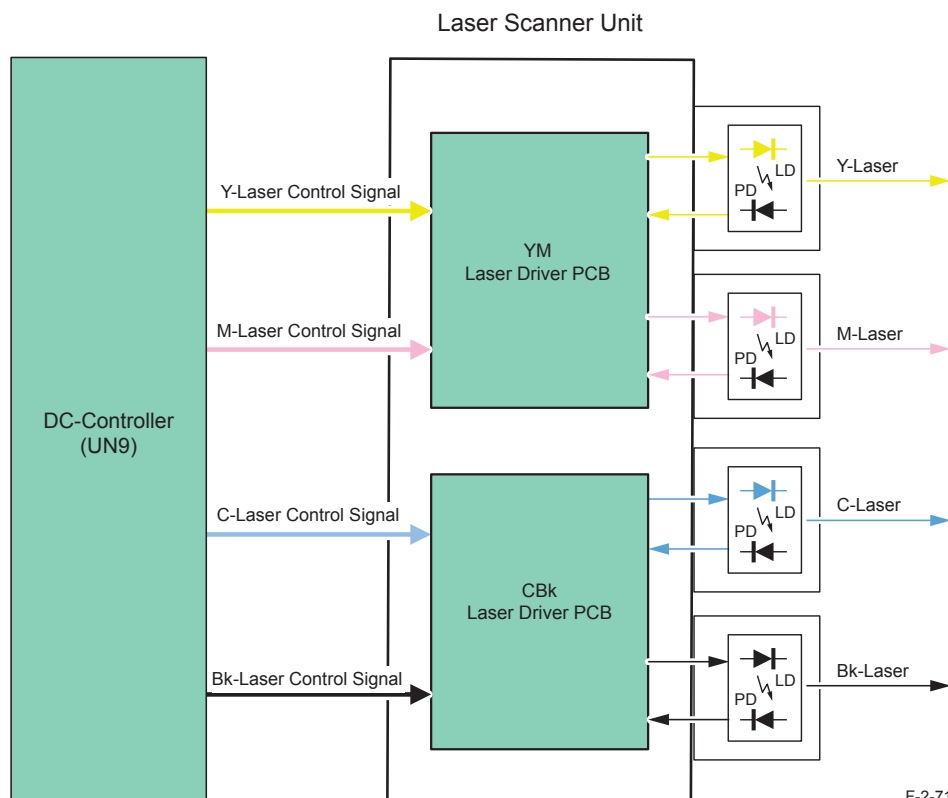
Approx. 3s (at power-ON), approx. 1s (when scanner motor is started or cover is opened)

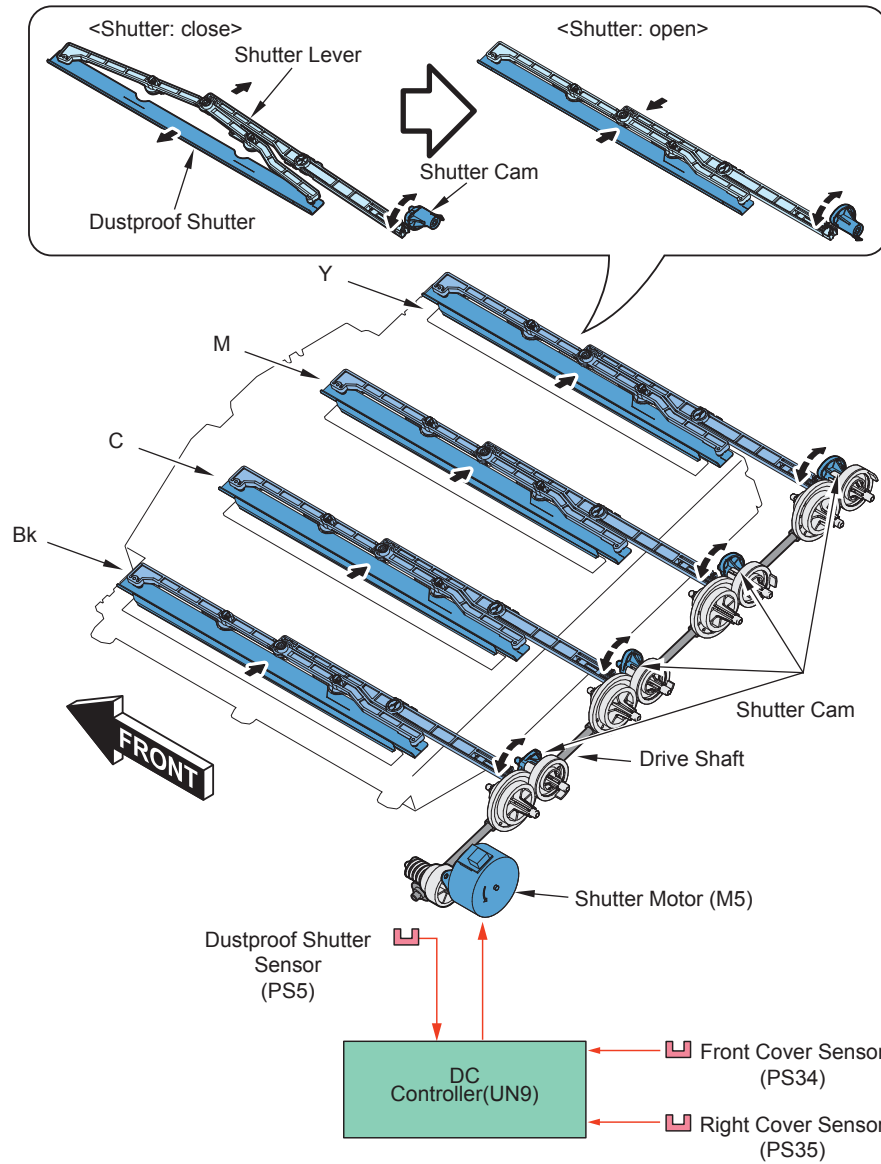
● Control detail

While the Laser Scanner Motor is operating, the Laser Shutter is opened. During other period, the laser shutter is closed.

Also, the Front Cover Sensor (PS34) or the Right Cover Sensor (PS35) works together and it stops the output signal of laser driver. At the same time, if the Front Cover or Right Cover is opened, the Shutter is closed and the laser light path is forcibly blocked.

Those operations are controlled by the DC Controller.





F-2-72

● Servicing

■ Periodically Replaced Parts

There is no part that required periodical replacement.

■ Consumable Parts

There is no consumable part.

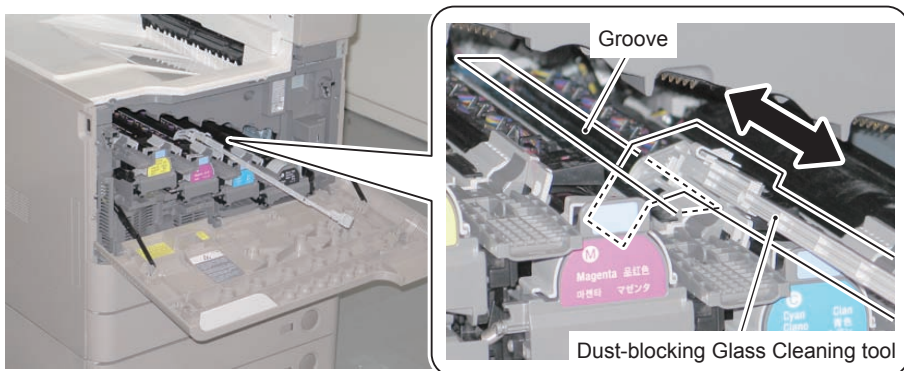
■ List of Periodical Service Works

Part name: Dustproof Glass

Estimated life: every 50000 sheets

Actions:

1. Execute the following service mode to open the Dustproof Shutter.
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > SHT-OPEN
2. Pull out the Drum Unit.
3. Clean the glass with the Dustproof Glass cleaning tool stored at back of the Front Cover.



F-2-73

■ Actions at Parts Replacement

No.

Disassembly/Assembly - Laser Control System -

Cleaning the Dustproof Glass

Preparation

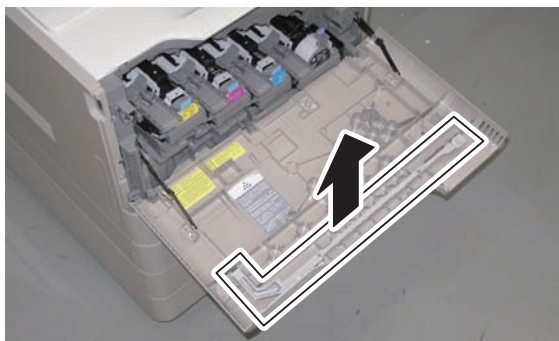
- 1) Open the shutter of the Dustproof Glass.
Service Mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > SHT-OPEN
- 2) Pull out the Drum Unit.

Procedure

NOTE:

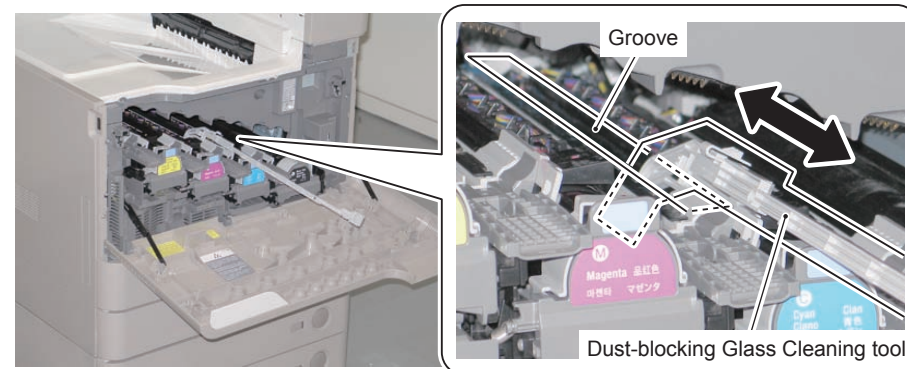
In this procedure, procedure for (C) is described. Be sure to perform the same procedure for (Bk), (M), and (Y).

- 1) Remove the Dustproof Glass cleaning tool from the Front Cover.



F-2-74

- 2) Insert the Dustproof Glass cleaning tool into the groove, and clean the Dustproof Glass.



F-2-75

CAUTION:

When pulling the Dustproof Glass cleaning tool out, be sure to pull it out while pushing the lever toward right direction.

If it is pulled out abruptly, it may come in contact with the ITB.

Removing the Laser Scanner Unit

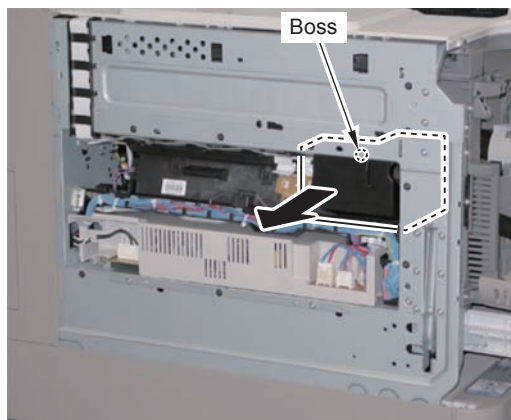
Preparation

1) Remove the Left Cover.

Procedure

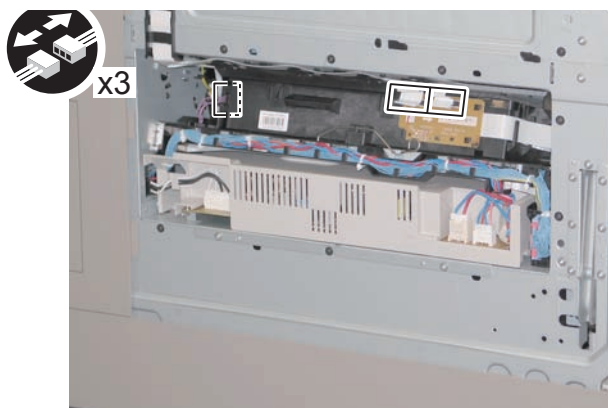
1) Remove the Fan Duct in the direction of the arrow.

- 1 Boss



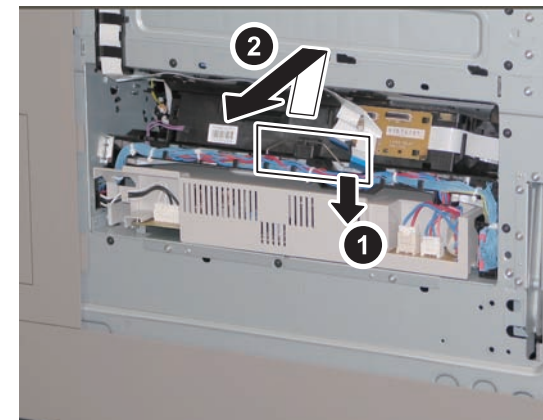
F-2-76

2) Disconnect the 2 Flat Cables and the connector.



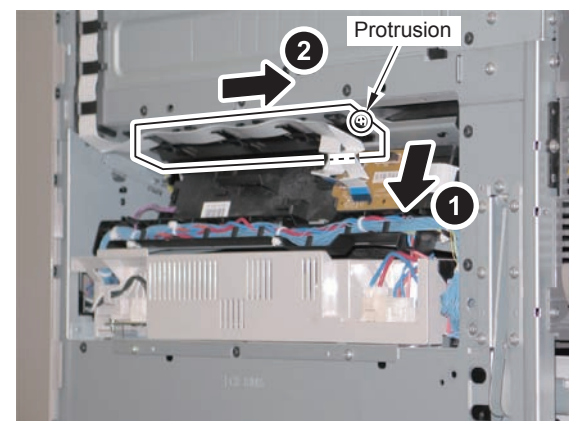
F-2-77

3) Remove the Scanner Retaining Spring.



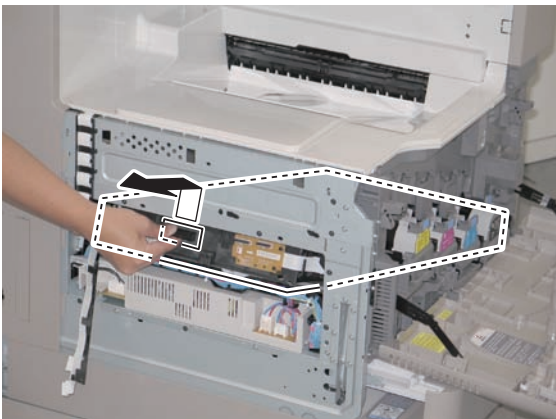
F-2-78

4) Unlock the protrusion, release the Harness Guide and disconnect the Flat Cable in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-79

5) Lift the grip, and pull out the Laser Scanner Unit.



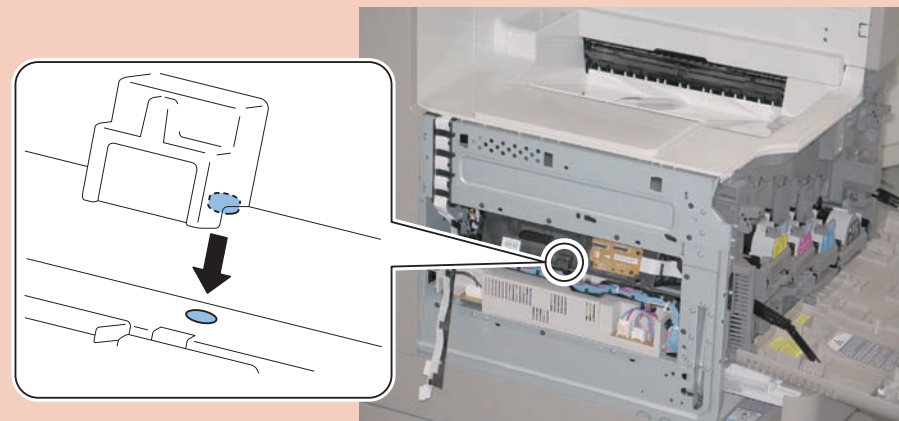
F-2-80

CAUTION:

Be sure not to disassemble the Laser Scanner Unit because it requires adjustment.

Points to Note at Installation:

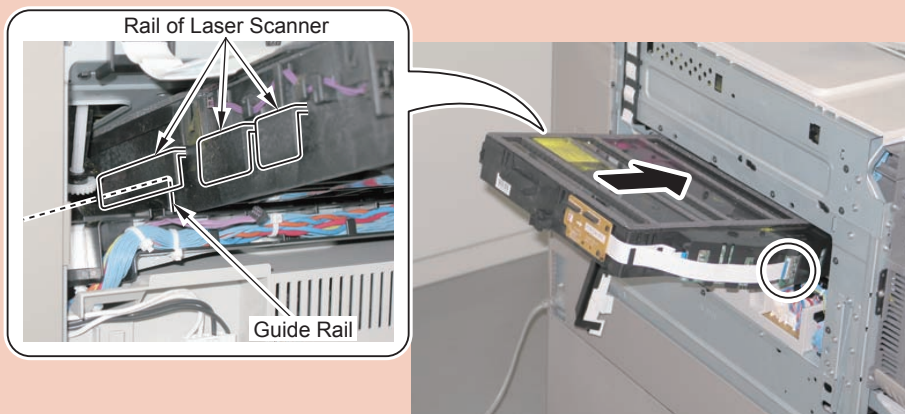
When installing, be sure to fit the protrusion of the Laser Scanner Unit with a hole on the plate.



F-2-82

Points to Note at Installation:

Be sure to hook the rail on the Laser Scanner to the rail on the host machine to install.
Be careful that the Flat Cable on the side of the Laser Scanner Unit is not disconnected.



F-2-81

Removing the Main Drive Unit

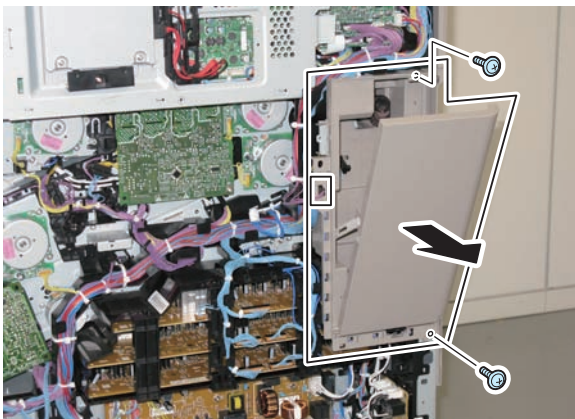
Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Rear Cover.
- 5) Remove the Waste Toner Container.

Procedure

- 1) Close the Right Door.
- 2) Remove the Waste Toner Box.

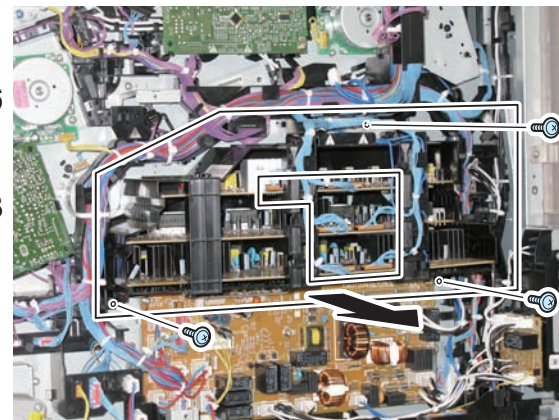
- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws



F-2-83

- 3) Remove the Developing High Voltage Box.

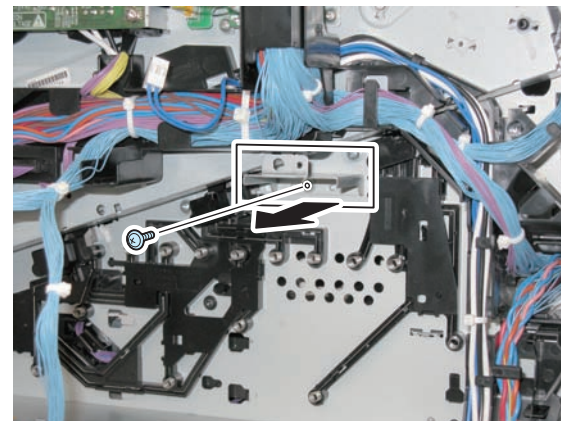
- 6 Connectors
- 3 Screws



F-2-84

- 4) Remove the Developing High Voltage Box Support Plate.

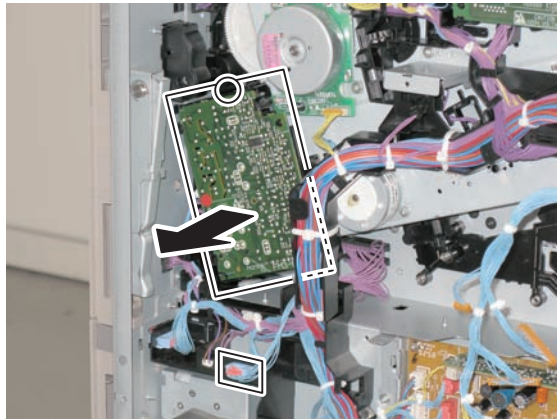
- 1 Screw



F-2-85

5) Remove the Secondary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB.

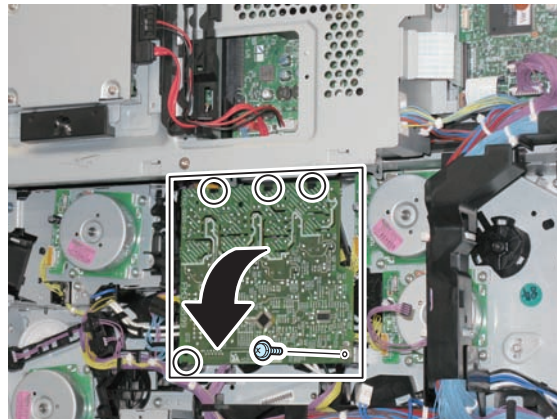
- 1 Connector
- 1 Claw



F-2-86

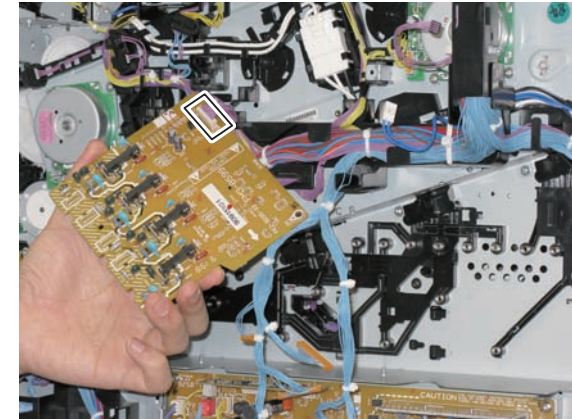
6) Remove the Primary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB.

- 1 Screw
- 4 Claws



F-2-87

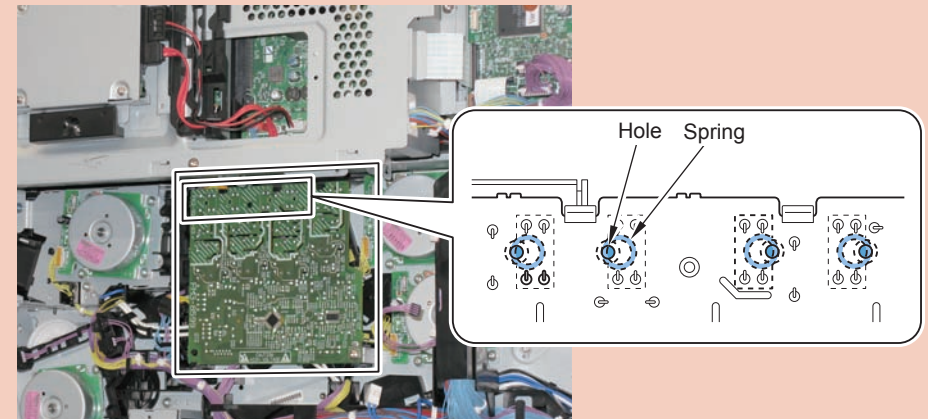
7) Disconnect the connector from the Primary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB.



F-2-88

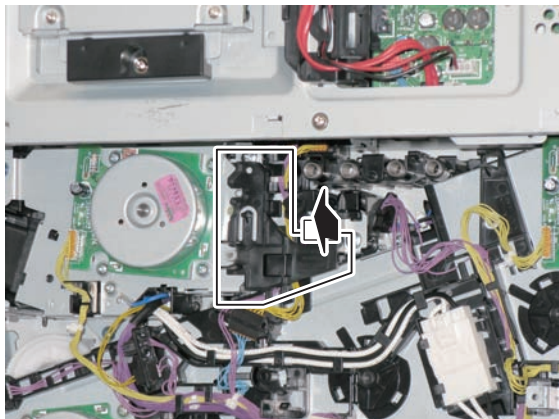
CAUTION:

When installing the Primary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB to the host machine, be sure to check that the Contact Springs are in contact from the 4 round holes.



F-2-89

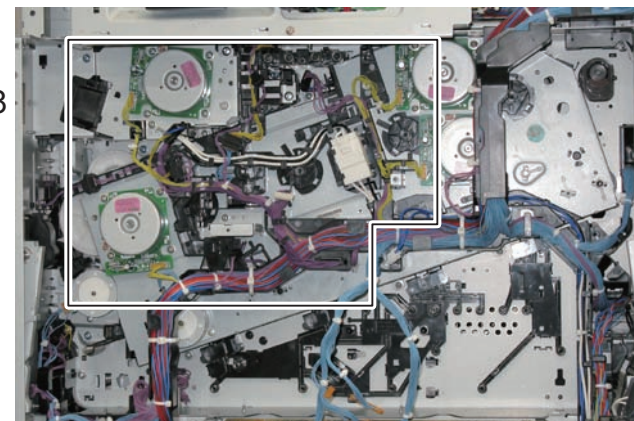
8) Remove the Harness Cover.



F-2-90

10) Disconnect the harness connected to the Main Drive Assembly.

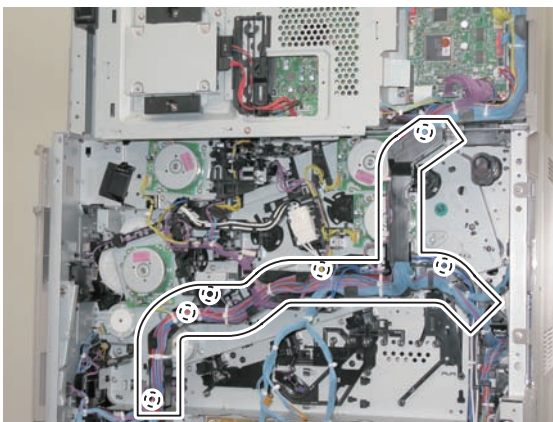
- 18 Connectors



F-2-92

9) Remove the guide from the Main Drive Assembly.

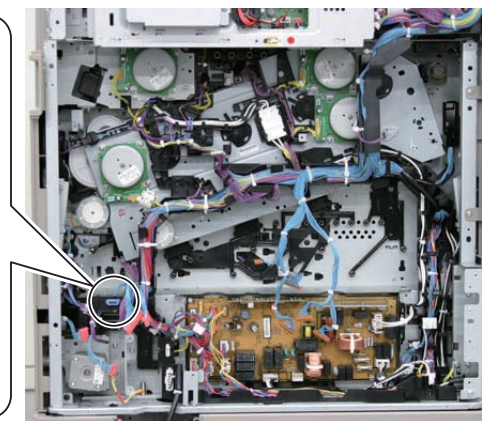
- 6 Claws



F-2-91

11) Disconnect the Connector.

- Connector



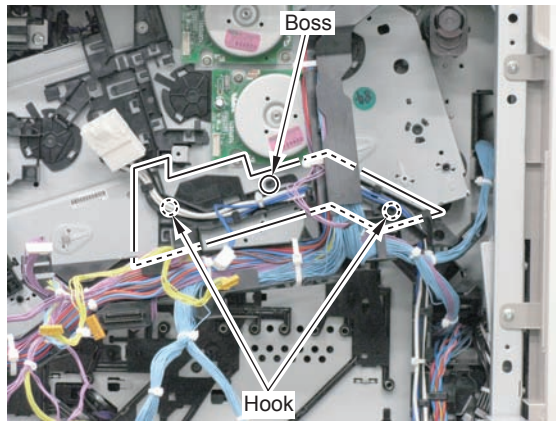
F-2-93

CAUTION:

When installing the guide to the host machine, be sure to check that the claws are locked.

12) Remove the guide at the rear side.

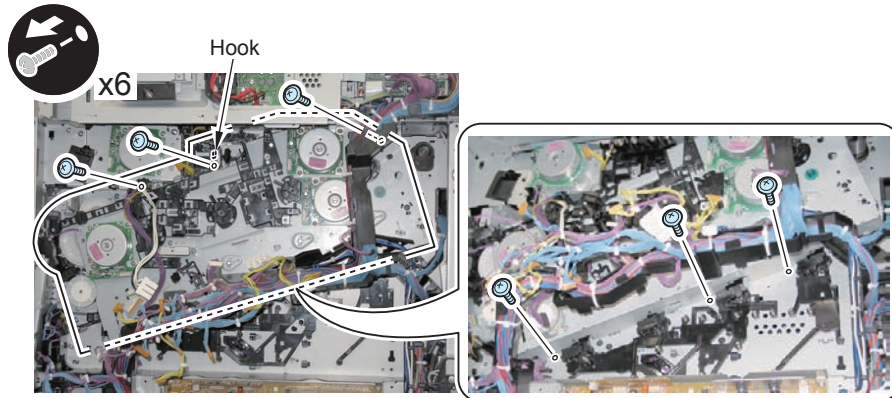
- 2 Hooks
- 1 Boss



F-2-94

13) Remove the Main Drive Unit.

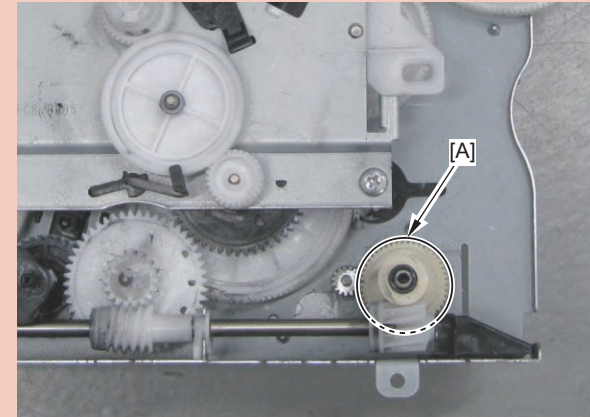
- 6 Screws
- 1 Hook



F-2-95

CAUTION:

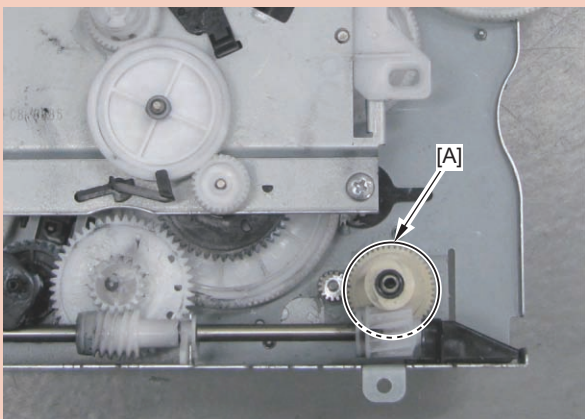
- Be sure not to disassemble the Main Drive Unit because it requires adjustment.
- Since the gear [A] comes off easily, be careful when removing the unit.



■ Installing the Main Drive Unit

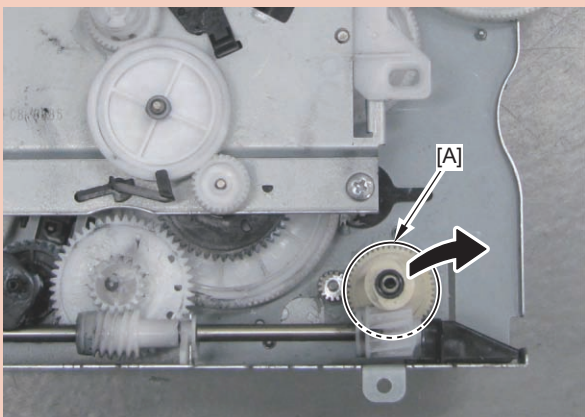
CAUTION

- Check that the Right Lower Cover is closed.
- Since the gear [A] comes off easily, be careful when installing the unit.

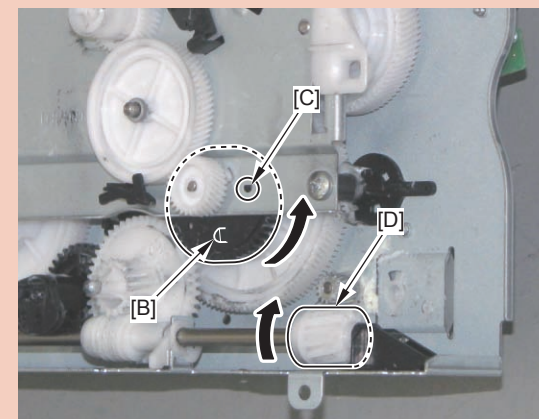


- When installing the Main Drive Unit other than a new one, be sure to align gear phase.

1) Remove the gear [a]



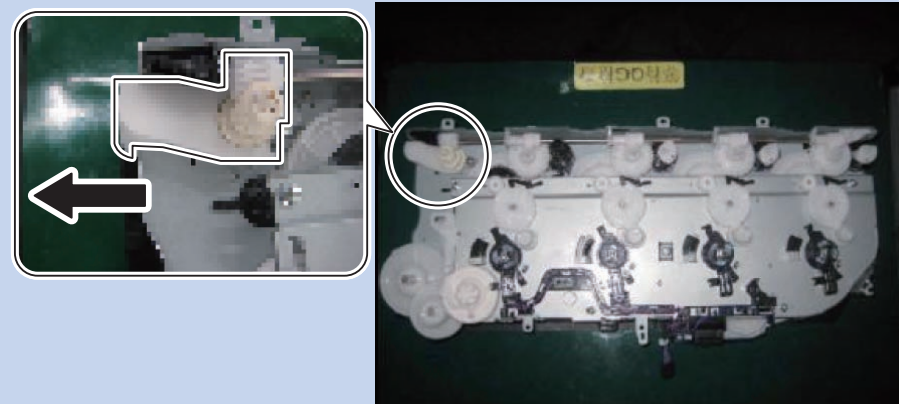
2) Turn the gear [D] by hand, and move the hole [B] to align with [C].



3) Install the gear [A] removed in step 1).

NOTE

When installing a new Main Drive, be sure to remove the Fixation Member 1 before installing it to the host machine.

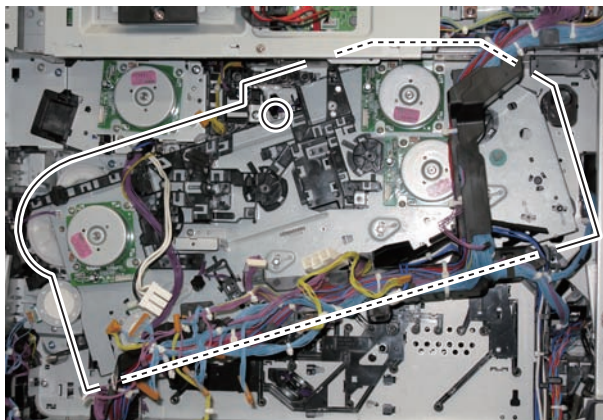


F-2-96

CAUTION:

Check that the Right Lower Cover is closed.

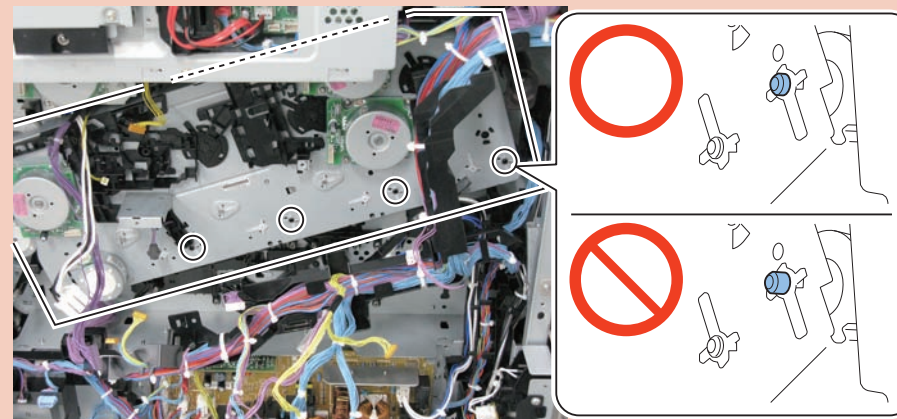
1) Install the Main Drive Unit, and tighten the screw temporarily.



F-2-97

CAUTION:

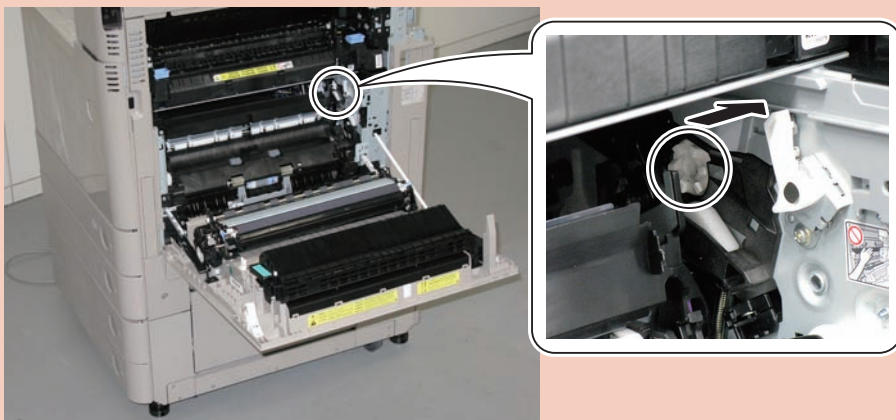
- Be sure to check that the 8 shafts are aligned with the shaft holes on the host machine correctly.



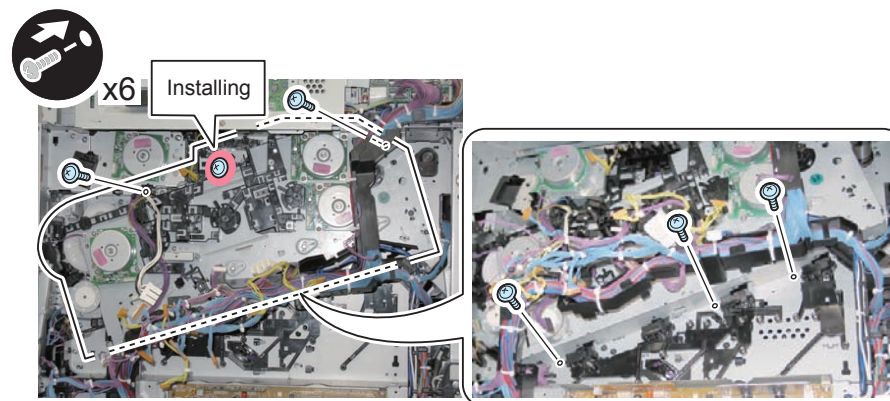
F-2-98

CAUTION:

- By opening and closing the Right Lower Cover, check that coupling of the ITB moves in the direction of the arrow.



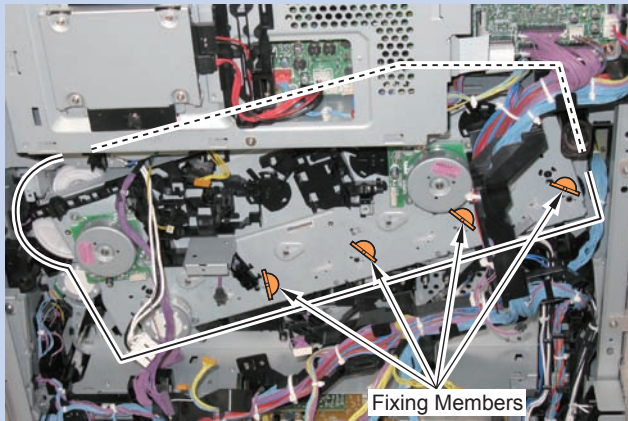
2) Check that the Main Drive Unit is installed correctly, and tighten the 6 screws.



F-2-99

NOTE:

When installing a new Main Drive Unit, be sure to remove the 4 Fixation Members 2.



F-2-100

Image Formation System

Overview

Overview

Image formation system of this machine uses the non-magnetic 2-component AC developing method for developing and the intermediate transfer method for transferring to form toner images.

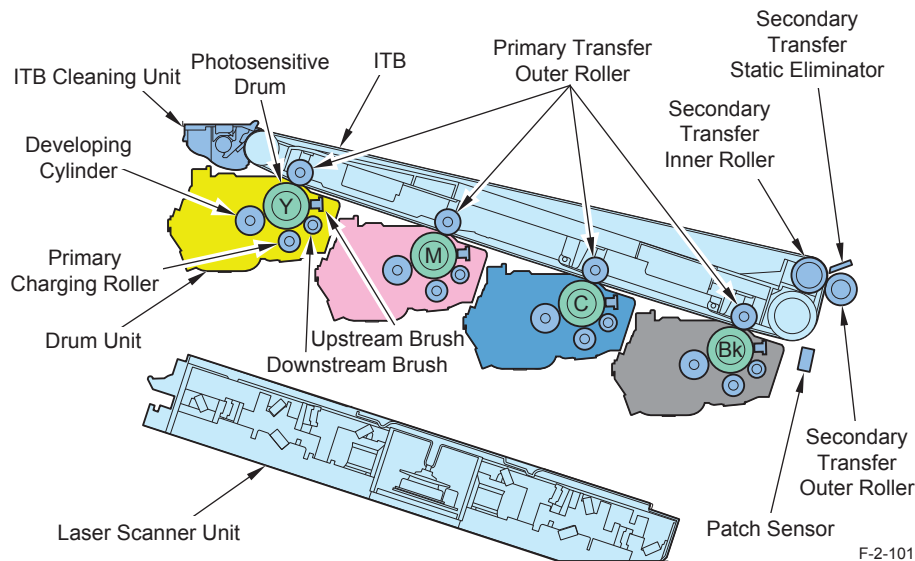
To increase life of the Image Formation Unit, this machine uses the primary transfer disengagement method.

This machine accomplished features such as space-saving and low initial cost while maintaining the basic specifications of iRC3380 / 2880 series. To enable such features, there is no Drum Cleaner with this machine and toner is fed to the upward direction.

The following shows major improved points compared to the previous iRC3880 / 2880 series:

Feature:	Improved points:
Low initial cost	Self-manufacturing of the parts. Less parts
Space-saving	Upward feeding of toner and the machine is designed without a Drum Cleaner
Reduced downtime	Adjustment of execution time and timing for each control
Serviceless	The ITB and the Drum Unit can be replaced with screw-less operation

T-2-20



F-2-101

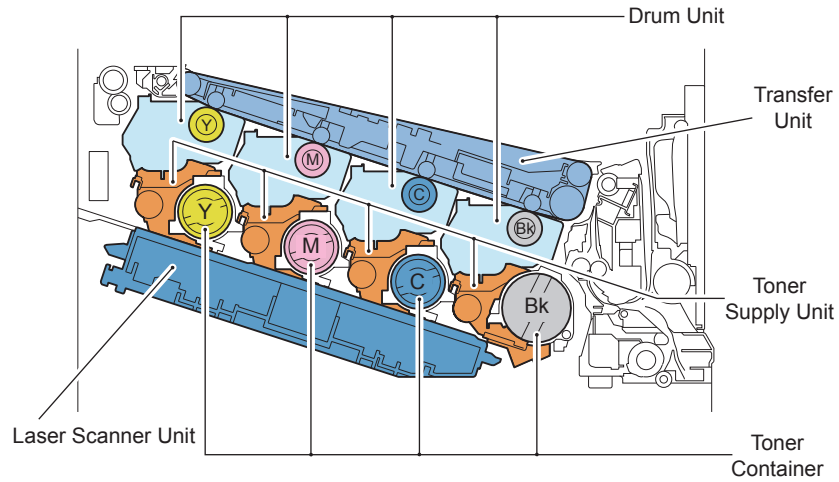
Specifications

Item		Function/Method
Photosensitive Drum	Material	OPC
	Drum diameter	30mm dia.
	Cleaning	Cleaner-less method
	Process speed	imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2230 = 135mm/s imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2220 = 135mm/s
	Drum Heater	None
Developing Assembly	Developing Cylinder	1 cylinder (single-developing method)
	Developing method	Dry, 2-component AC developing
	Toner	Non-magnetic negative toner
	Toner level detection	Yes
Primary charging	Charging method	Roller charging
	Cleaning	Engagement Sheet
Toner Container	Toner Container detection	Yes
	Replacement of Toner Container (during continuous print)	Disabled
	Transfer method	Intermediate transfer (ITB)
ITB Unit	Circumferential length	791mm
	Cleaning	Cleaning Blade
	Belt displacement correction	Yes
Primary transfer	Transfer method	Transfer Roller
	Disengagement mechanism	Yes
Secondary transfer	Transfer method	Transfer Roller
	Disengagement mechanism	None
	Cleaning	Static cleaning
Separation method	Curvature separation + Static Eliminator	
Patch Sensor	Yes	

T-2-21

Parts Configuration

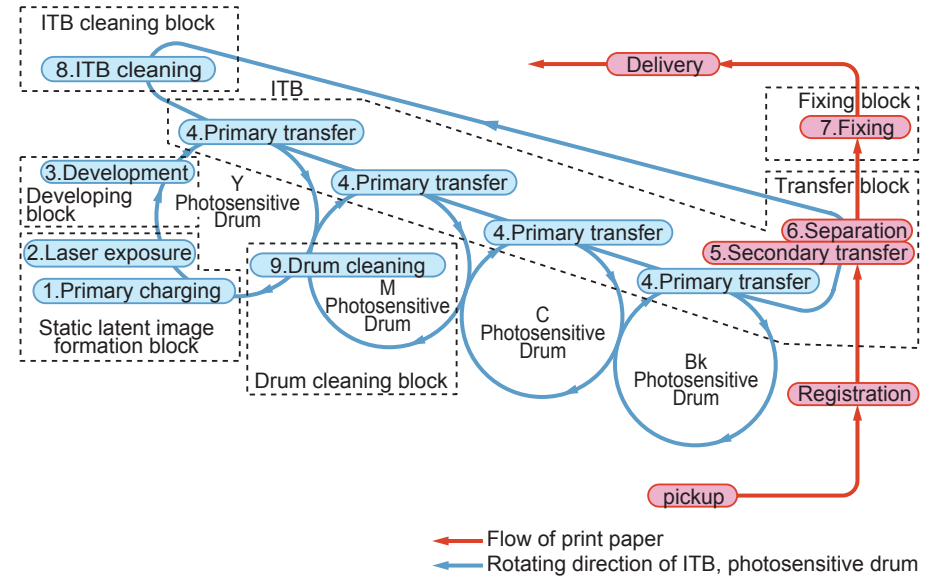
Major Parts



F-2-102

Print Process

Overview



F-2-103

Static latent image formation block	1	Primary charging	The surface of the Photosensitive Drum is charged to make a uniform negative potential.
	2	Laser exposure	Emission of the laser light forms a static latent image on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum. (Image exposure: laser exposed area becomes image area)
Developing block	3	Developing	With the non-magnetic, 2-component AC developing method, toner that has been negatively charged by the Developing Cylinder is attached to the Photosensitive Drum.
Transfer block	4	Primary transfer	Toner on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum is transferred to the ITB by applying positive potential from back side of the ITB.
	5	Secondary transfer	Toner on the ITB is transferred to the paper by applying positive potential to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	6	Separation	With the curvature separation method, the paper is separated from the ITB. In the case of thin paper which has low elastic force, the Static Eliminator reduces potential on the back side of paper to make the thin paper to be separated easily.
Fixing block	7	Fixing	The toner on the paper is fixed on the paper by heat and pressure.
ITB cleaning block	8	ITB cleaning	The Cleaning Blade removes the residual toner attached on the ITB.
Drum cleaning block	9	Drum cleaning	As well as removing potential on the Drum by the Upstream Brush and the Downstream Brush, character of residual toner on the Drum is adjusted so that residual toner on the Drum is collected in the Developing Assembly.

T-2-22

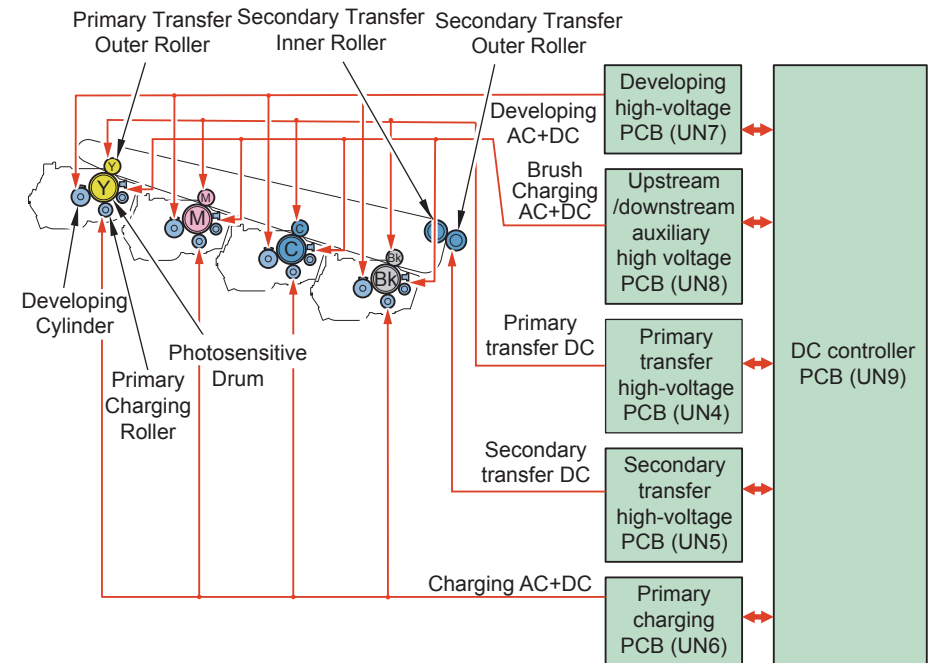
Bias Types

The following 9 types of bias are used with this machine.

Bias name	Bias types	Bias value (Reference value)	Application location
Primary charging bias (DC)	DC	Approx. -600V	Primary Charging Roller
Primary charging bias (AC)	AC	Approx. 1.5kVpp	
Developing bias (DC)	DC	Approx. -450V	Developing Cylinder
Developing bias (AC)	AC	Approx. 1.7kVpp	
Upstream Brush bias (DC)	DC	Approx. 200V	Upstream Brush
Upstream Brush bias (AC)	AC	Approx. 400Vpp	
Downstream Brush bias (DC)	DC	Approx. -1000V	Downstream Brush
Primary transfer bias	DC	Approx. 300V	Primary Transfer Roller
Secondary transfer bias	DC	Approx. 2.5kV	Secondary Transfer Outer Roller

T-2-23

The abovementioned biases are generated by the 5 High Voltage PCBs and are also supplied to the loads used in printing process.



F-2-104

Controls

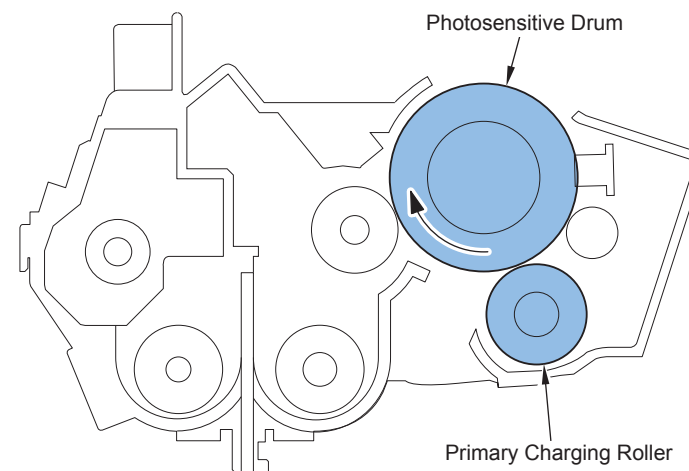
Overview

Primary charging		Image stabilization control	
	Primary charging bias control		D-max control
	Discharge current control		PASCAL control
			D-half control
			ARCDAT control
			Color displacement correction control
			ATR control
			ATVC control
Drum Unit (Developing/Drum)		Toner supply	
	Developing bias control		Toner Cap opening
	Drum Unit detection		Toner supply control/Toner level detection
	Drum Unit Life Detection		
	Drum phase control		
Transfer/Separation		Waste toner feeding	
	Primary Transfer Roller disengagement control		Waste toner full level detection
	Primary transfer bias control		Waste Toner Container detection
	Secondary transfer bias control		
	ITB displacement correction control		
	ITB cleaning control		
	Secondary Transfer Outer Roller cleaning control		
Drum cleaning			
	Auxiliary Brush control		
	Brush discharge control		

Primary Charging

Overview

This machine uses the roller charging method for primary charging.



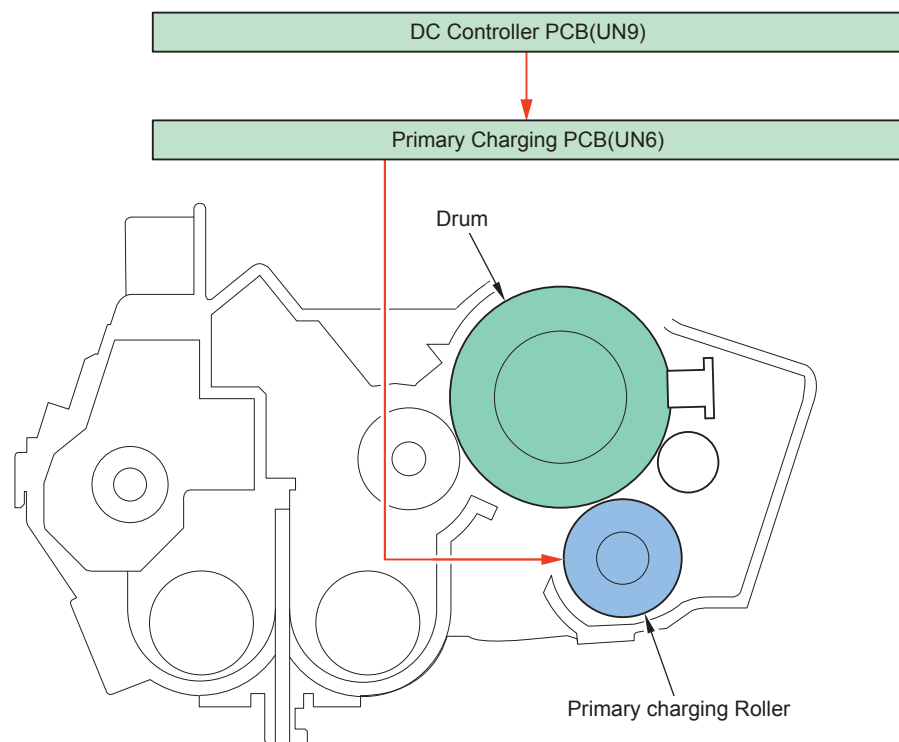
F-2-105

• Primary Charging Bias Control

The surface of the Photosensitive Drum is charged to make a uniform negative potential. The primary charging bias (AC + DC negative), which has been generated by the Primary Charging PCB (UN6), is applied to the Primary Charging Roller.

The primary charging bias value is determined by the following conditions on the DC Controller PCB:

- Environment (humidity detected by the Environment Sensor)
- Print speed
- Life of the Photosensitive Drum



F-2-106

• Discharge Current Control/Simple Discharge Current Control

Optimal primary charging bias is applied according to the environment change or use of the Photosensitive Drum.

Control timing

- Discharge current control
 - 1) At power-on
 - 2) When replacing the Drum Unit
 - 3) At initial rotation after printing of 500 sheets *1
- Simple discharge current control
 - 1) Initial rotation at recovery from sleep mode
 - 2) Paper interval when 2 or more sheets are printed continuously

*1: The number of accumulated sheets is counted individually in Color mode and Bk mode. This control is executed once either counter value reaches the specified value.

Detection description

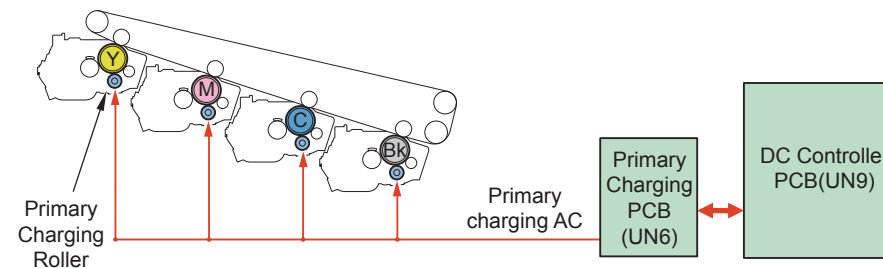
- Discharge current control: Current value of the primary charging AC bias is detected.
- Simple discharge current control: AC current value that was obtained by executing sampling for 16 times at 20m seconds intervals.

Execution time

- Discharge current control: within 3 seconds Simple discharge current control: within 1 second

Operation of the host machine

- 1) Current value of the primary charging AC bias is detected.
- 2) Optimal current value of the primary charging is determined by the result of Environment Sensor (UN45) and the current value.
- 3) The primary charging AC bias is determined that is to be applied to the Primary Charging Roller.



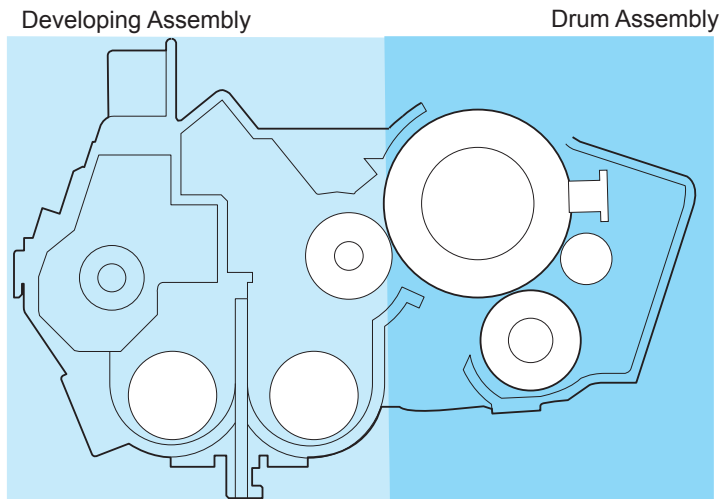
F-2-107

Related error codes (X)= 1: Y, 2: M, 3: C, 4: Bk
E065-000X Detection error in abnormal (X) charging AC current value

■ Drum Unit (Developing/Drum)

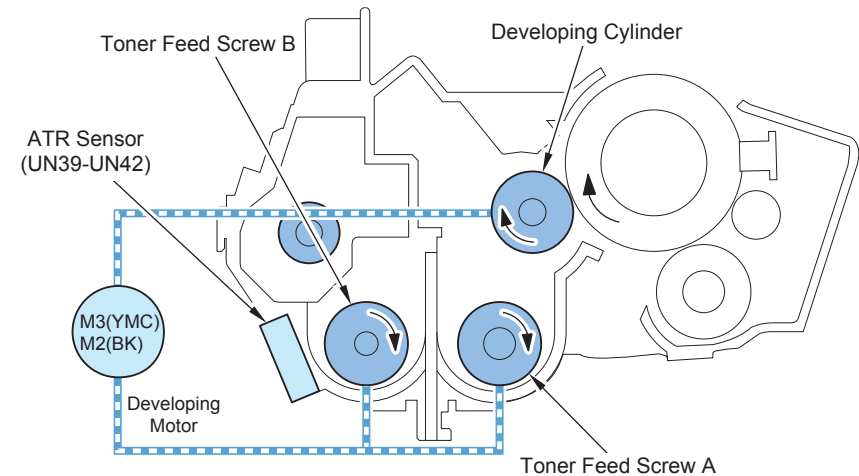
● Drum Unit Overview

The Drum Unit consists of the Developing Assembly and the Drum Assembly.



F-2-108

● Developing Overview/ Drive Configuration



F-2-109

Parts name	Function
Developing Assembly	To develop toner fed from the Hopper Unit to the Photosensitive Drum.
Developing Cylinder	To develop toner in the Developing Assembly on the Photosensitive Drum.
Toner Feed Screw A/B	Developer (toner and carrier) in the Toner Container is stirred and is supplied to the Developing Cylinder.
Toner Feed Screw C	Toner is supplied from the Toner Container to the Developing Assembly.

T-2-24

Parts name	Function	
M2	ITB Motor	To rotate the Bk Developing Cylinder and the Toner Feed Screw.
M3	Developing Motor	To rotate the Y/M/C Developing Cylinder and the Toner Feed Screw.
UN39 to UN42	ATR Sensor	To detect the ratio of developer (toner + carrier) in the Developing Assembly.

T-2-25

• Developing bias control

A toner image is formed on the Photosensitive Drum by attaching toner to the Developing Cylinder.

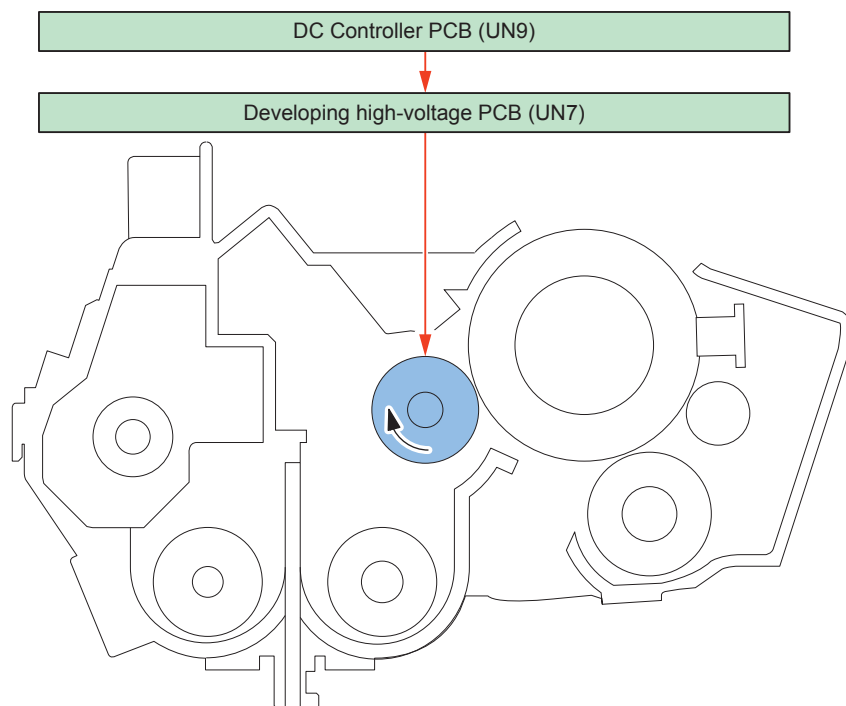
Control description

The developing bias (AC, DC negative), which has been generated on the Develop High Voltage PCB (UN9), is applied to the Developing Cylinder.

- Developing DC bias: The bias to generate potential difference with the Photosensitive Drum.

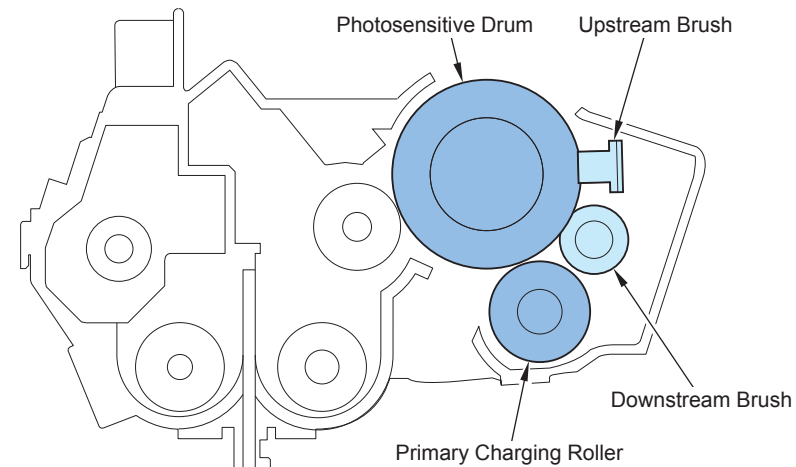
The bias value is determined based on the Environment Sensor (UN45).

- Developing AC bias: The bias to improve image quality.



F-2-110

• Drum Overview

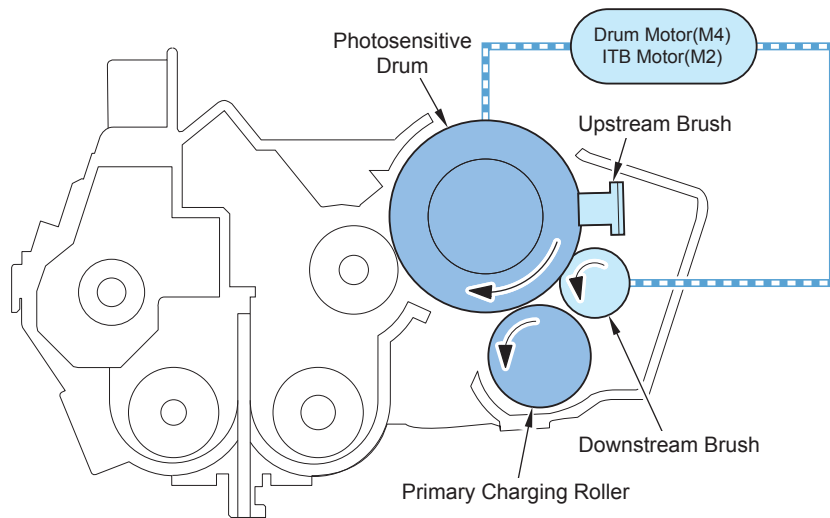


F-2-111

Parts name	Function
Drum Assembly	After a static latent image has been formed on the Photosensitive Drum, a toner image is formed with the toner from the Developing Cylinder.
Photosensitive Drum	A toner image is formed on the Photosensitive Drum.
Primary Charging Roller	The surface of the Photosensitive Drum is charged to make a uniform potential.
Upstream Brush	Previous latent image is removed by neutralizing electric charge on the Photosensitive Drum.
Downstream Brush	The Photosensitive Drum is negatively charged supplementarily. The residual toner is negatively charged (so that the residual toner is easily collected in the Developing Assembly).

T-2-26

• Drive Configuration



F-2-112

Parts name	Function	
M2	ITB Motor	Rotation of the Photosensitive Drum (Bk)
M4	Drum Motor	Rotation of the Photosensitive Drum (YMC)
PS3	Color Drum HP Sensor	HP detection of the Photosensitive Drum (YMC) (rotation detection)
PS4	Bk Drum HP Sensor	HP detection of the Photosensitive Drum (Bk) (rotation detection)

T-2-27

Related error codes

- E010-0001 Error in startup of the ITB Motor (M2)
- E010-0002 Error in speed of the ITB Motor (M2)
- E010-0003 Lock detection of the ITB Motor (M2)
- E012-0001 Error in startup of the Drum Motor (M4)
- E012-0002 Error in speed of the Drum Motor (M4)
- E012-0003 Lock detection of the Drum Motor (M4)

• Drum Unit Detection

Whether the Drum Unit is installed or not is detected.

Detection timing

- 1) At power-on, at recovery from sleep mode, when the Front Door is opened/closed.

Detection description

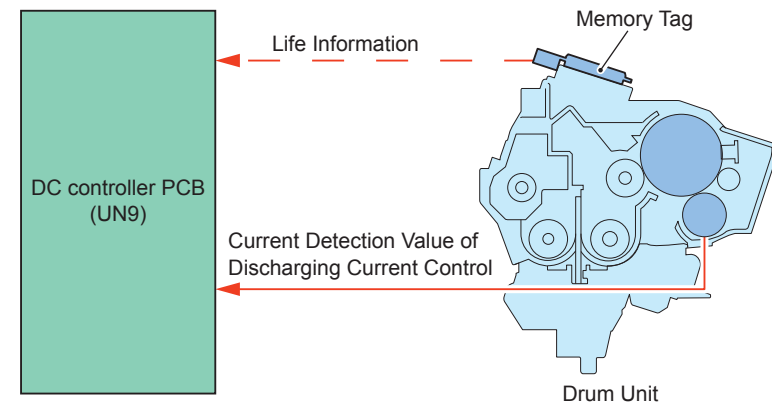
- 1) The memory tag of the Drum Unit is detected.
- 2) The discharge current control is executed based on the value saved in the memory tag and presence/absence of the Drum Unit is determined according to the charging value at the time of the control.
 - When the detected value for discharge current control shows the specified value or larger, it is detected that the Drum Unit is installed and the discharge current control is continued.
 - When the detected value for discharge current control shows less than the specified value, it is detected that there is no Drum Unit.

Execution time

Within 1 second

Operation of the host machine

The machine is stopped and "No" is displayed on the Control Panel at the same time.



F-2-113

● Drum Unit Life Detection

Life of the Drum Unit (Photosensitive Drum) is detected.

Detection timing

- At power-on
- At every print
- At recovery from sleep mode

Detection description

- 1) Count value for the Drum life is calculated by rotation time of the Photosensitive Drum + time that the primary charging AC bias is applied as well as the time that the developing AC bias is applied.
- 2) The count value calculated in step 1) is added to the Drum count value that has been stored in the memory tag of the Drum Unit.

NOTE:

The life (displayed in %) can be checked by the following service mode:
COPIER > COUNTER > LF > X-DRM-LF
(Enter Y/M/C/K for X above)

● Drum Phase Control

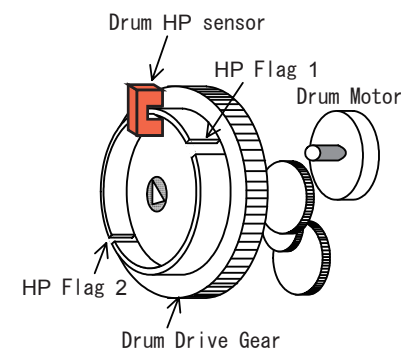
Overview

There can be uneven rotation speed of the Drum because the shapes of the Drive Gears (that rotate the Drum) slightly differ with each other. This control adjusts relative position of the Drum Drive Gears between YMC and Bk as well as controls uneven rotation between the YMK Motors and the Bk Motor to avoid color displacement.

Drum Phase Detection

Using the Drum HP Sensor, this is to detect absolute positional relation of the Y, M, C and Bk Drum Drive Gears by detection of the slit equipped with the Drum Drive Gear of the Host Machine. There are 2 detection positions for Drum phase: 1 position for Y, M and C and 1 position for Bk.

The following shows an outline drawing of the unit relating to phase detection.



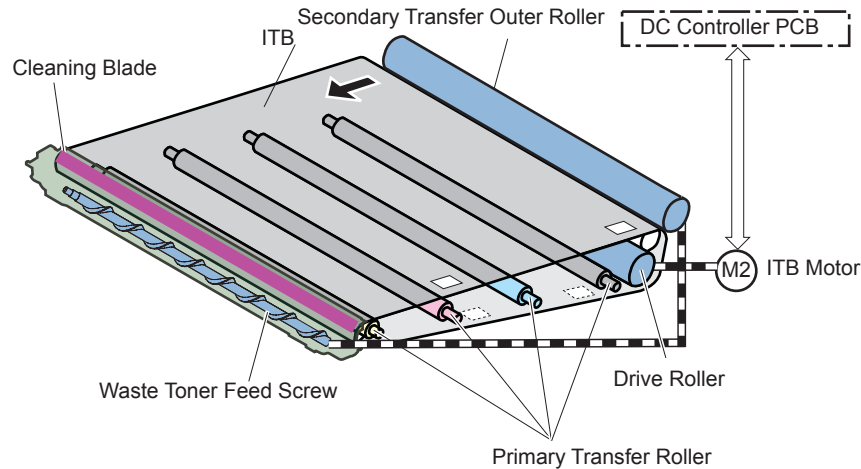
F-2-114

There are ribs with the Drum Drive Gear, which also have 2 slits of the HP Flags facing each other (opposed by 180 degree): HP Flag 1 (4mm width) and HP Flag 2 (2mm width). The Drum phase detection area determines which HP Flag (the flag at slit 1 or the flag at slit 2) has passed by the time when the slit passes through the Drum HP Sensor. Because the phase has been aligned at the time of assembly, even just the 2 slits can make the phase aligned with high accuracy.

■ Transfer/Separation

● Overview

The ITB Unit transfers a toner image on the Photosensitive Drum onto the ITB. Then, the toner image is transferred on the paper. With the seals affixed on the front side of the ITB, HP detection and rotation detection are performed.

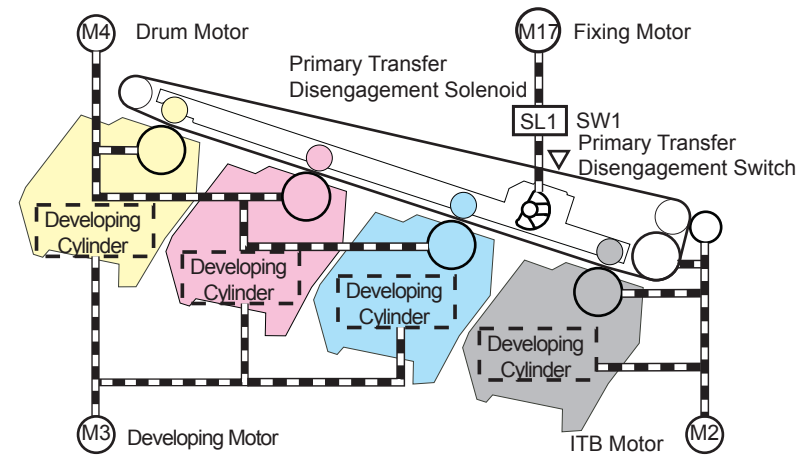


F-2-115

Parts name	Function
ITB Unit	Toner on the Photosensitive Drum is transferred to a paper.
ITB (Intermediate Transfer Belt)	Toner on the Photosensitive Drum is transferred to a paper.
Primary Transfer Roller	Toner on the Photosensitive Drum is attracted to the ITB.
Drive Roller	The ITB is driven.
Cleaning Blade	Toner on the ITB is scraped.
Waste Toner Feed Screw	Residual toner inside the ITB Cleaner Unit is fed.
Secondary Transfer Outer Roller	As well as attracting toner on the ITB to the paper, paper is fed.

T-2-28

● Drive Configuration



F-2-116

Parts name	Function
M2 ITB Motor	Rotation of the ITB, the Waste Toner Screw, the Bk Drum and the Developing Cylinder
M17 Fixing Motor	The Primary Transfer Roller (Y/M/C/Bk) is engaged.
SL1 Primary Transfer Disengagement Solenoid	The Primary Transfer Roller (Y/M/C/Bk) is engaged. The disengagement status is switched.
SW1 Primary Transfer Disengagement Switch	The Primary Transfer Roller (Y/M/C/Bk) is engaged. The status of disengagement is detected.

T-2-29

Related error codes

- E010-0001: Error in startup of the ITB Motor (M2)
- E010-0002: Error in speed of the ITB Motor (M2)
- E010-0003: Lock detection of the ITB Motor (M2)

• Primary Transfer Roller Disengagement Control

The Primary Transfer Roller is usually engaged. The Primary Transfer Roller needs to be disengaged when a part is replaced; otherwise, the ITB can contact with the Drum Unit.

The timing to make the Primary Transfer Roller disengaged

- At the time of shipment
- In the case of selecting the ITB/Drum Unit replacement in service mode or user mode

The timing to make the roller engaged

- At power-on
- At recovery from sleep mode
- When the Front Door is opened/closed

The roller is engaged after the roller is once disengaged.

Related service mode:

- Execution of the Primary Transfer Roller disengagement
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > T1-UP

Related user mode:

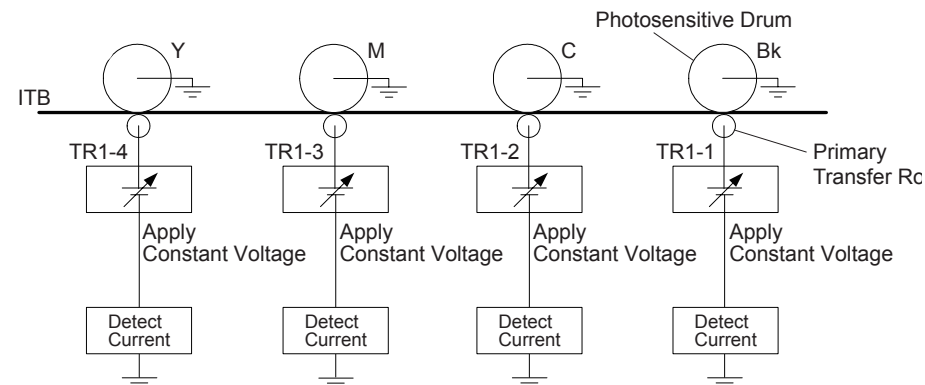
- Execution of ITB/Drum Unit Replacement Mode
Adjustment/Maintenance > Maintenance > ITB/Drum Unit Replacement Mode > Start

The above mode is displayed by selecting the following in service mode:
COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > ITB-DSP > 1 (default: 0)

• Primary Transfer Bias Control

The primary transfer bias is divided into each color (Y, M, C, Bk) to be generated on the primary transfer bias generation circuit. The primary transfer bias (TR1-1, TR1-2, TR1-3, TR1-4), which has been generated, is applied to the Primary Transfer Roller.

The primary transfer bias value is determined by the ATVC control with the DC Controller, which makes constant current value running through the Primary Transfer Roller.



F-2-117

NOTE:

The ATVC control secures transfer performance that can be affected by change in resistance caused by the environment as well as deterioration of the Primary Transfer Roller. The ATVC control is performed respectively for the primary transfer bias in each color.

• Secondary Transfer Bias Control

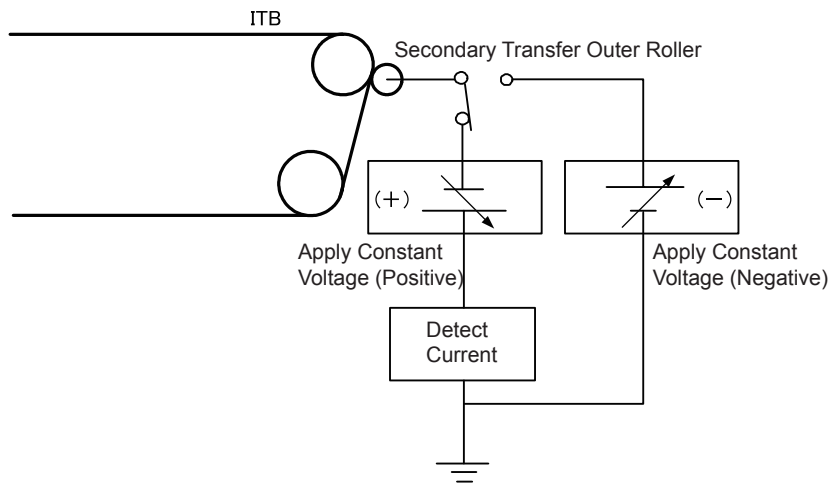
Toner on the ITB is transferred to a paper.

The secondary transfer bias (TR2), which has been generated on the secondary transfer bias generation circuit, is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.

There are 2 types of the secondary transfer bias (the DC positive and the DC negative) to apply bias with the following purpose.

- DC positive: Toner on the ITB is transferred to a paper when printing.
- DC negative: Toner on the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller is attracted onto the ITB when cleaning.

The secondary transfer bias value is determined by the ATVC control with the DC Controller, which makes constant current value running through the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.

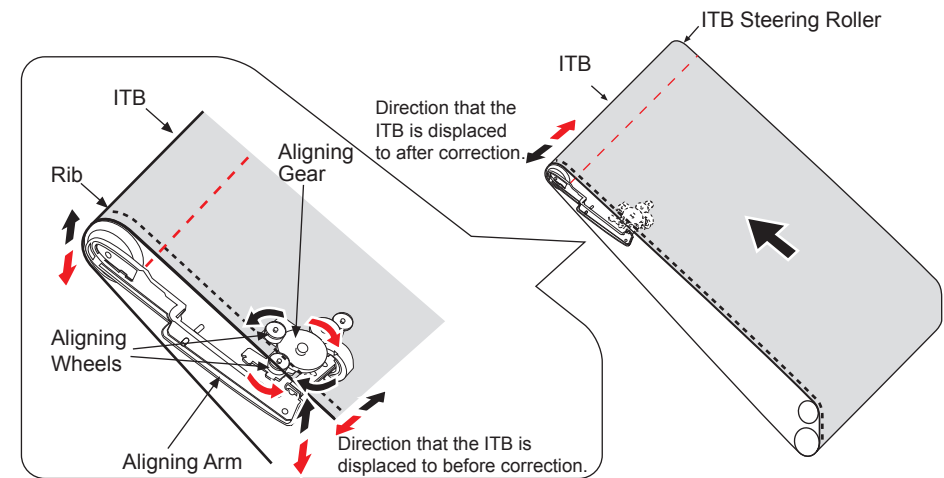


F-2-118

• ITB Displacement Correction Control

The ITB displacement correction control corrects displacement of the ITB to prevent tear of the ITB (caused by displacement of the ITB).

There is a rib inside the ITB at the front edge and the 2 Aligning wheels are located across the rib. When the ITB is displaced toward the front or the rear during rotation of the ITB, the rib contacts the Aligning wheels at the front or the rear, which makes the Aligning wheels rotate. The rotation of the Aligning wheels is transmitted to the Aligning Gear and the Aligning Arm moves the Steering Roller up and down. The up/down movement of the Steering Roller makes the ITB slide to the front or the rear to correct displacement.



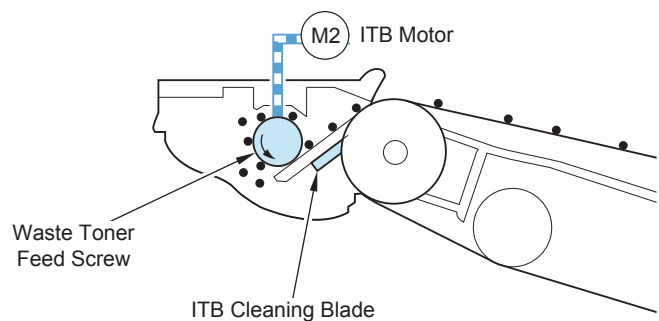
F-2-119

• ITB Cleaning Control

Residual toner on the ITB is removed.

Control description

- 1) The ITB Cleaning Blade scrapes toner on the ITB.
- 2) The scraped toner is fed to the Waste Toner Container with the Waste Toner Feed Screw.



F-2-120

• Secondary Transfer Outer Roller Cleaning Control

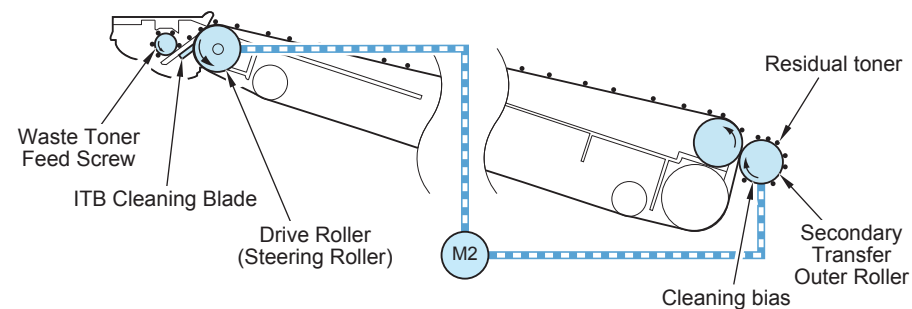
Soiling at the back of the sheet caused by soiling of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller can be prevented.

Control timing (TBD)

- 1) At initial rotation (less than 50 deg C of fixing temperature, jam recovery)
- 2) At last rotation
- 3) After executing the image stabilization control (generation of patch image on the ITB)

Control description

The secondary transfer cleaning bias, which has been generated on the Secondary Transfer High-voltage PCB (UN5), is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller. Residual toner on the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller is attached to the ITB, and then collected by the ITB Cleaning Unit.



F-2-121

Related service mode:

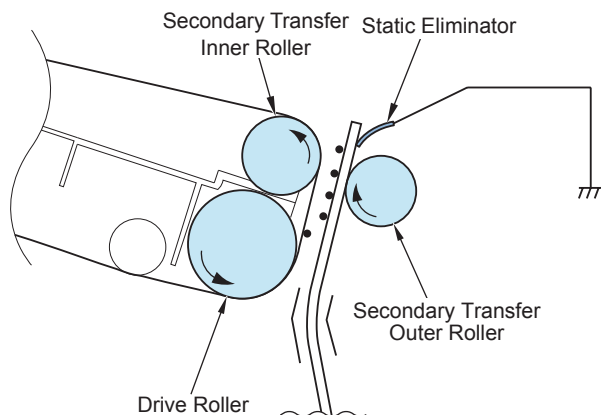
- Forced execution of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller cleaning
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > 2TR-CLN

• Separation

This control separates paper from the ITB by elastic force of the paper (curvature separation method).

In the case of thin paper which has low elastic force, the Static Eliminator removes positive potential at the back of the paper.

This reduces electrostatic absorption force of the paper so that paper can be easily separated.



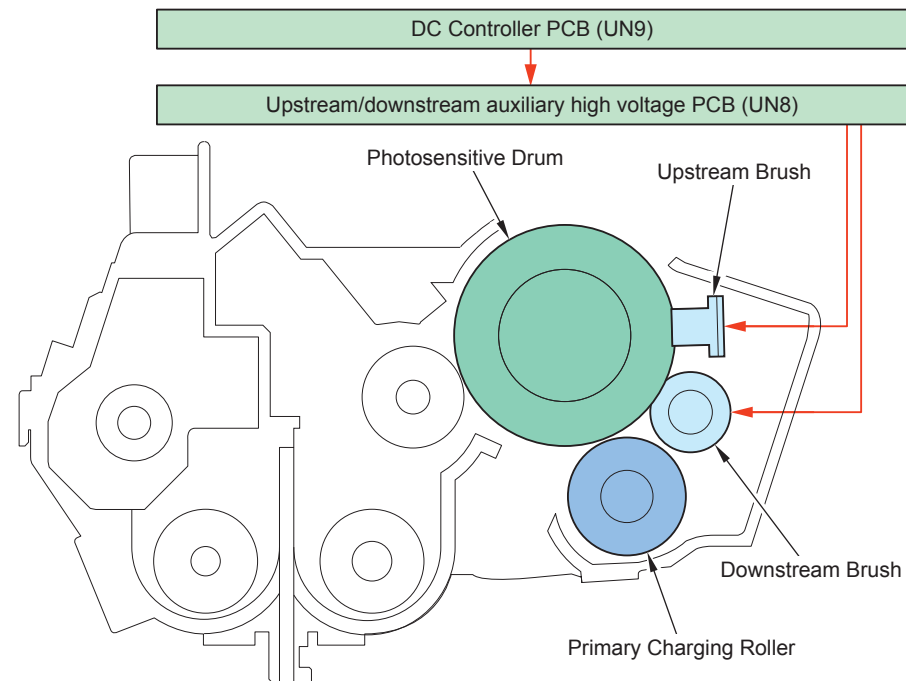
F-2-122

■ Drum Cleaning

• Overview

There is no Drum Cleaner with this machine.

This machine uses the 2 Auxiliary Brushes to control polar character of residual toner and the residual toner is collected to the Developing Assembly so that no Cleaner is used with this machine.



F-2-123

• Auxiliary Brush Control

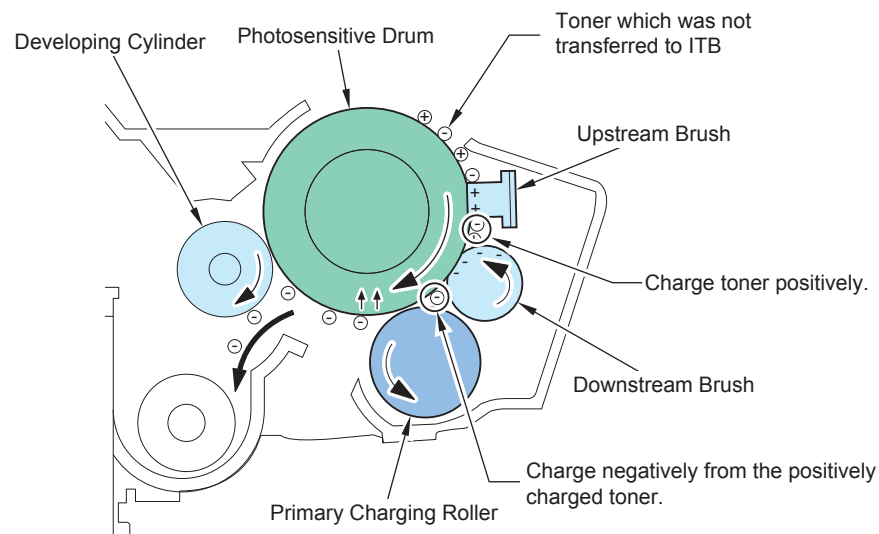
By controlling the polar character of the transfer-residual toner on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum, attachment of the toner to the Primary Charging Roller is prevented and also collecting performance of the toner in the Developing Assembly is improved.

Control timing

- 1) Immediately after the primary transfer

Control description

- 1) Bias value of the Upstream Brush and the Downstream Brush is determined according to the environment.
- 2) The Upstream Brush neutralizes electric charge on the Photosensitive Drum.
- 3) The Downstream Brush supplementarily makes the Photosensitive Drum negatively-charged.
- 4) The negatively-charged residual toner is repelled by the negative bias of the Developing Cylinder and collected into the Developing Assembly.



F-2-124

• Brush Discharge Control

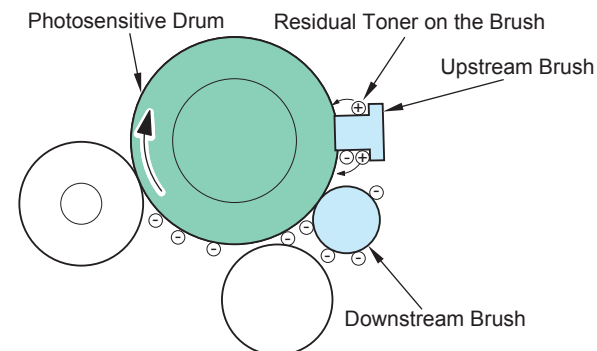
Toner accumulated with the Auxiliary Brush is discharged to maintain performance of the Auxiliary Brush.

Control timing

- 1) At last rotation
- 2) At power-on
- 3) At recovery from sleep mode
- 4) At every 100 sheets (accumulated) during printing

Control description

- 1) Switching bias of the Upstream Brush or the Downstream Brush (ON/OFF) can discharge toner (positively/negatively charged respectively) attached with the Brush to the Photosensitive Drum.
- 2) The toner discharged from each Brush is transferred to the ITB (primary transfer) and collected into the ITB Cleaning Unit in the end.

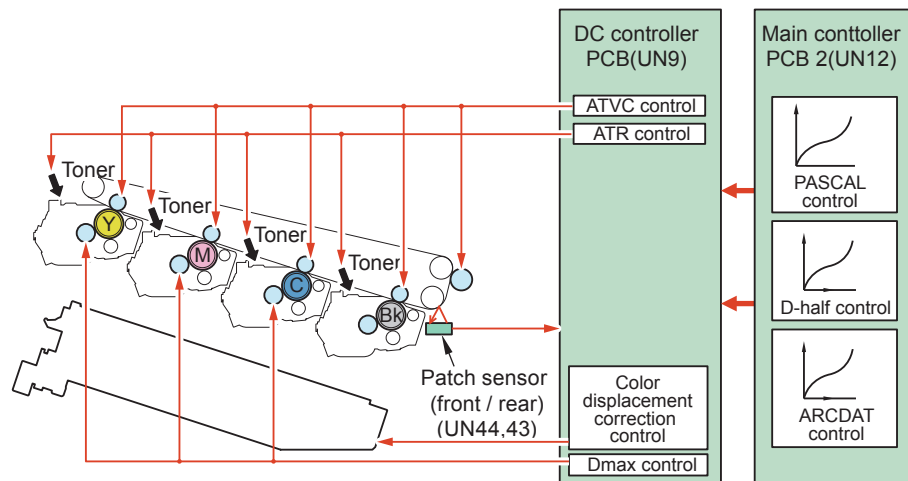


F-2-125

Image Stabilization Control

Overview

Image failure due to change of the environment or deterioration of the Photosensitive Drum is prevented to ensure stabilized print.



F-2-126

Control timing

Execution items for image stabilization control differ according to the environment and condition of image formation parts.

Following shows the control items at each sequence and estimated downtime.

Startup timing	Conditions for execution	Time required (sec.)	Control type									
			Startup correction (*1)	Discharge current control	ATR control (patch detection)	Primary transfer ATVC	Secondary transfer ATVC	Secondary transfer cleaning	D-max control	ARCDAT control	D-half control	Brush discharge
At power-on	At normal time	Approx. 30 sec.	○	○		○	○	○		○		○
	H/H environment	Approx. 35 sec.	○	○		○	○	○	○	○		○
At recovery from sleep mode	Within 8 hours of sleep state	Approx. 10 sec.		○		○	○	○				
	8 or more hours of sleep state	Approx. 30 sec.	○	○		○	○	○		○		○
	8 or more hours of sleep state (in H/H environment)	Approx. 35 sec.	○	○		○	○	○	○	○		○
At initial rotation	At normal time	Approx. 0 sec.					○	○				
	At environmental change	Approx. 4 sec.		○		○	○	○				
	Every 500 sheets (accumulated)	Approx. 3 sec.		○		○	○	○				
At paper interval	At normal time	Approx. 4 sec.		○		○		○				
	Every 100 sheets (accumulated) during printing	Approx. 5 sec.						○		○		
	Every 200 sheets (accumulated) during printing	Approx. 4 sec.			○			○				○
	Every 3000% of accumulated image ratio during printing	Approx. 4 sec.			○			○				

Startup timing	Conditions for execution	Time required (sec.)	Control type									
			Startup correction (*1)	Discharge current control	ATR control (patch detection)	Primary transfer ATVC	Secondary transfer ATVC	Secondary transfer cleaning	D-max control	ARCDAT control	D-half control	Brush discharge
At last rotation	After printing of 25 sheets	Approx. 15 sec.						○				
	After printing of 50 sheets	Approx. 18 sec.						○		○		
	After printing of 100 to 200 sheets	Approx. 17 sec.			○			○				○
	Every 1500% of accumulated image ratio after printing	Approx. 17 sec.			○			○				○
	After printing of 500 sheets	Approx. 42 sec.				○		○	○		○	
	After printing of 5000 sheets	Approx. 45 sec.	○			○		○	○		○	

*1: Correction of soiling on the ITB, correction of the Patch Sensor, etc.

T-2-30

CAUTION: Because the color displacement control is executed according to the environment, there is no specific execution timing. Therefore, execution timing is not described in the table above.

Related service mode:

COPIER > OPTION > CLEANING > OHP-PTH (to specify the number of sheets to execute the ITB cleaning sequence after feeding of transparency)

COPIER > OPTION > CLEANING > ITBB-TMG (to specify frequency of ITB Cleaning Band)

● D-max Control

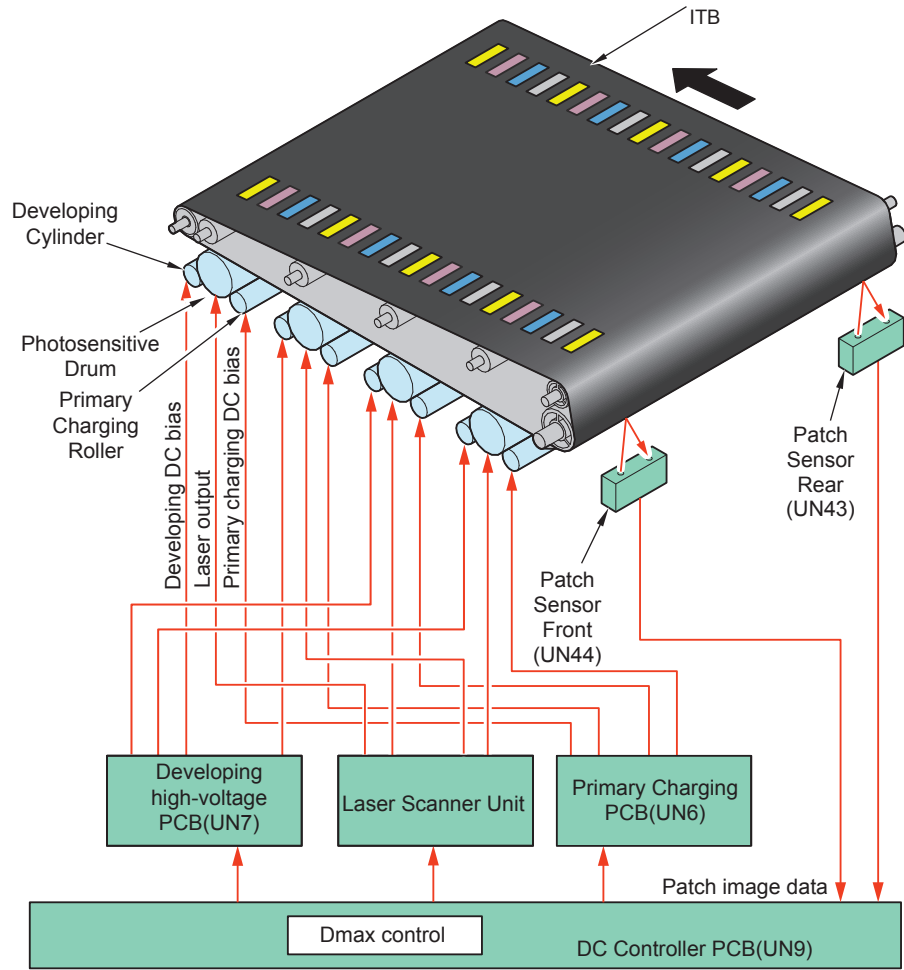
The optimal developing DC bias, primary charging bias and laser output are determined

Control timing

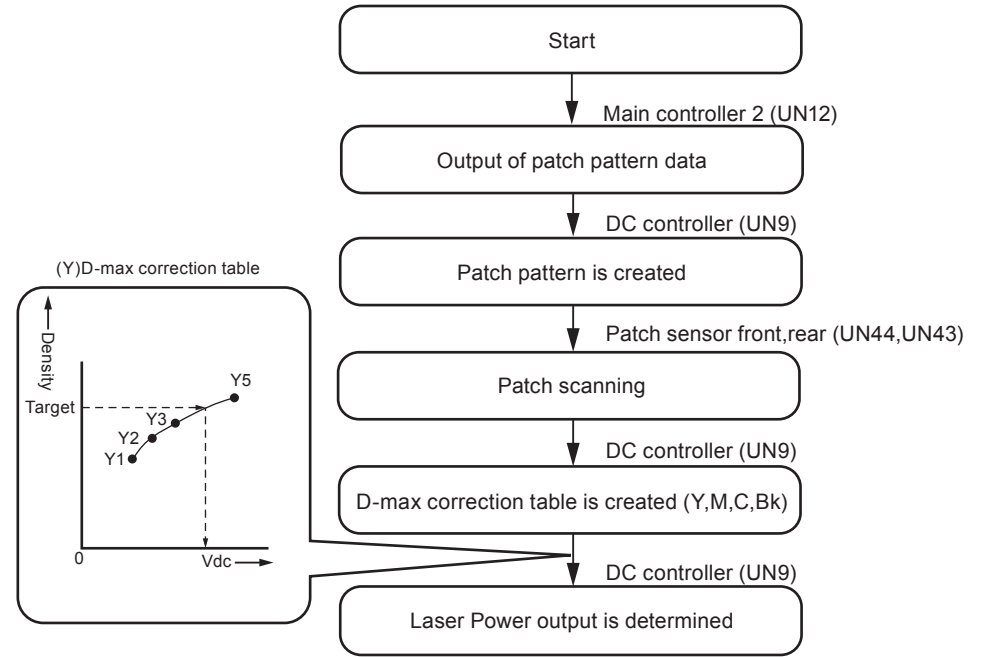
- 1) When replacing the Drum Unit
- 2) At last rotation on a specified print basis
- 3) At power-on in H/H environment
- 4) At recovery from sleep mode

Control description

- 1) Main Controller PCB 2 forms patch pattern in the target color on the ITB.
- 2) The DC Controller measures patch density by the Patch Sensor Front (UN44)/Patch Sensor Rear (UN43) to correct developing bias, primary charging bias and laser output in each color to meet the target density.



F-2-127



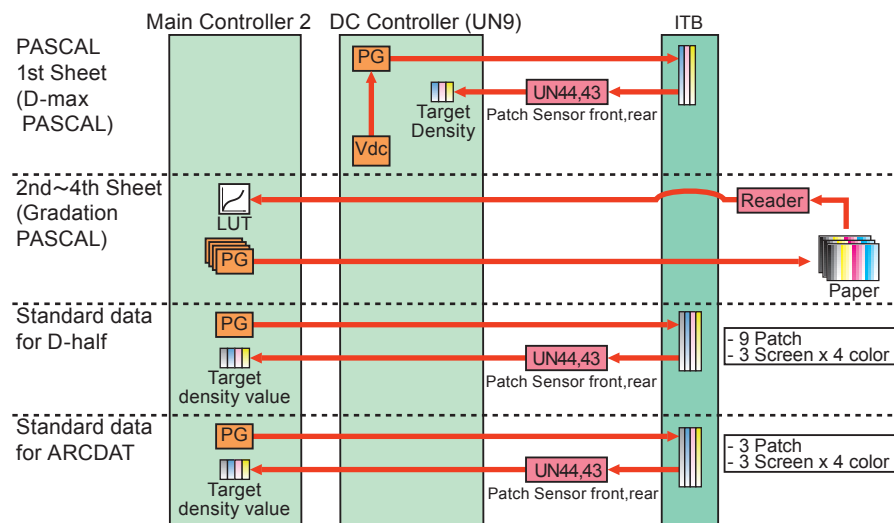
F-2-128

● PASCAL control

Gradation density characteristics on the image are stabilized.

This control is executed when the following is selected in user mode: Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjust. Gradation density of the patch pattern on the test print is scanned by the Reader to create an image density correction table.

The foregoing table corrects image gradation density characteristics which change according to the environment change and deterioration of the Photosensitive Drum.



F-2-129

Control timing

When executing calibration (during execution of "Auto Gradation Adjustment > Full Adjustment" in user mode)

Control description

- 1) When the specified conditions are satisfied, the Main Controller PCB 2 prints 3 types of memorized test prints (patch pattern).
- 2) Place the test prints in the Reader.
- 3) Reader scans the gradation density of the patch pattern on the test print.
- 4) The Main Controller PCB 2 creates an image gradation density correction table from the gradation density data of patch pattern scanned by the Reader.

NOTE:

The following 3 types of patch patterns are formed with this control:

- A pattern for copy (64 patches for each color)
- A pattern for text (64 patches for each color)
- A pattern for photo (64 patches for each color)

NOTE:

With this machine, executing correction of gradation density characteristics of plain paper estimates the appropriate value for the other media. Therefore, there is no need to individually execute this control with other media.

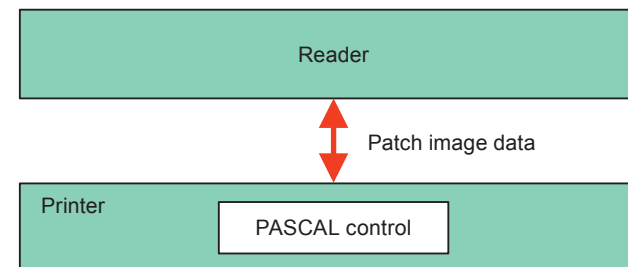
Note that the estimated value is just the predicted value. In the case of executing correction in a precise sense, change the numeric figure in the following service mode so that a correction menu is displayed in user mode.

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > HPFL-DSP

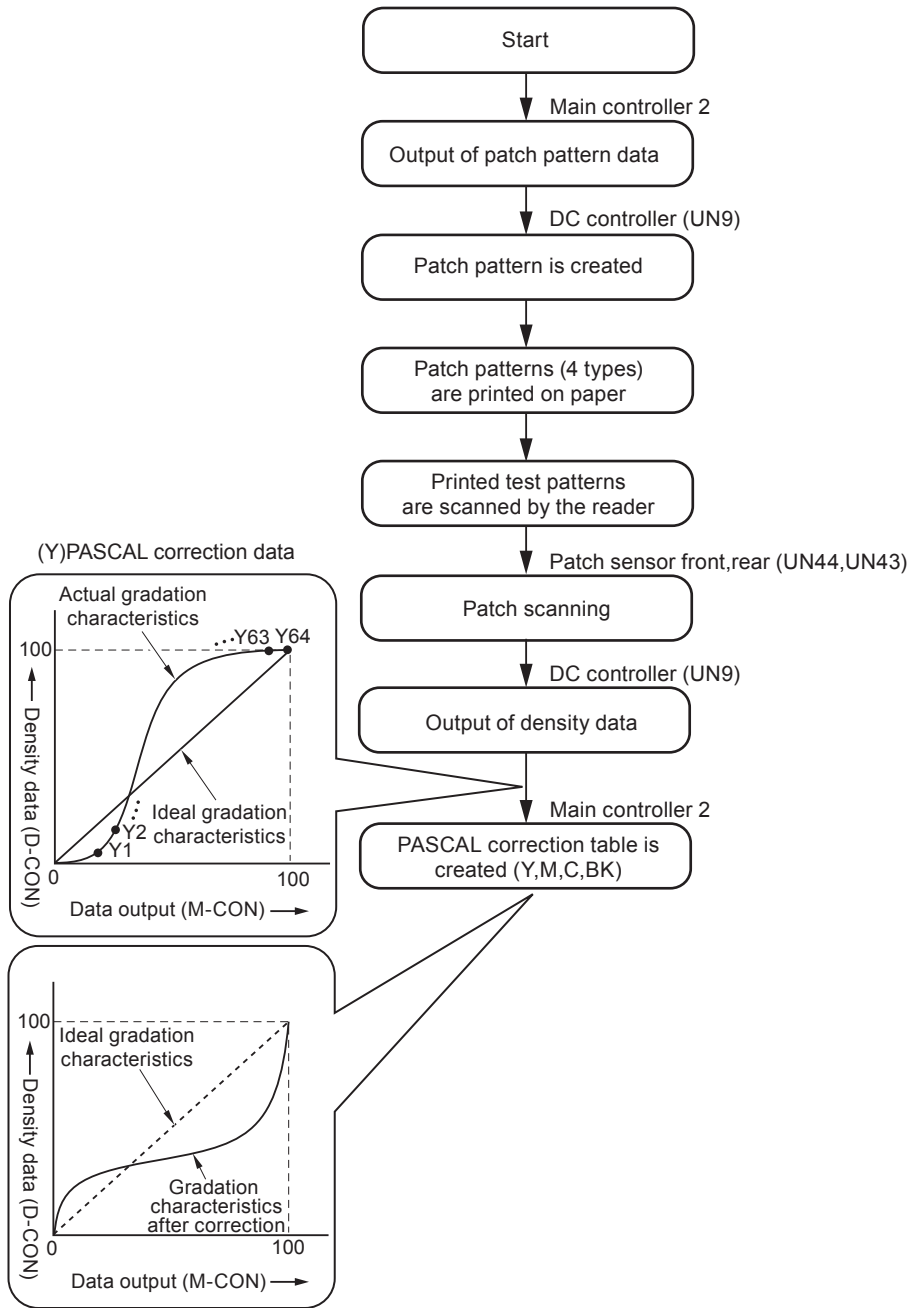
0 Displays Auto Gradation Adjustment with plain paper only (default)

1 Displays Auto Gradation Adjustment with plain paper and heavy paper

2 Displays Auto Gradation Adjustment with plain paper and 1200dpi resolution setting.
3 Displays Auto Gradation Adjustment with plain paper, heavy paper and 1200dpi resolution setting.



F-2-130



F-2-131

• D-half Control

Optimal image gradation is determined.

Control timing

- 1) When replacing the Drum Unit
- 2) At last rotation on a specified print basis
- 3) When executing PASCAL control
- 4) At recovery from sleep mode

Control description

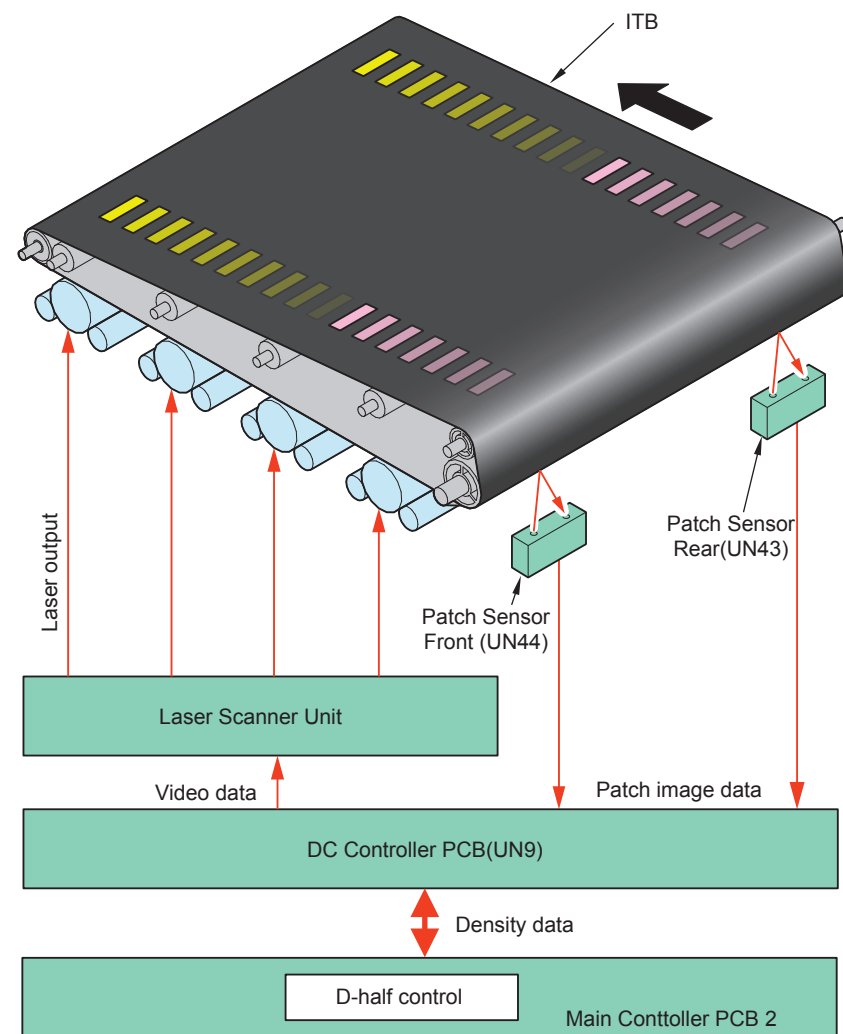
- 1) Main Controller PCB 2 outputs patch data in each color (Y, M, C, and Bk) to the DC Controller PCB.
- 2) From the data above, the DC Controller PCB forms patch pattern in each color (Y, M, C, and Bk) on the ITB.
- 3) The DC Controller measures the patch pattern by the Patch Sensor Front (UN44) and the Patch Sensor Rear (UN43) and the result is returned to the Main Controller PCB 2.
- 4) Based on the data above, the Main Controller PCB 2 executes gradation correction to obtain ideal halftone image.

Note that the reference patch used for ARCDAT control is formed with this control and the measurement result of the Patch Sensors or the reference data for ARCDAT is stored. (See NOTE)

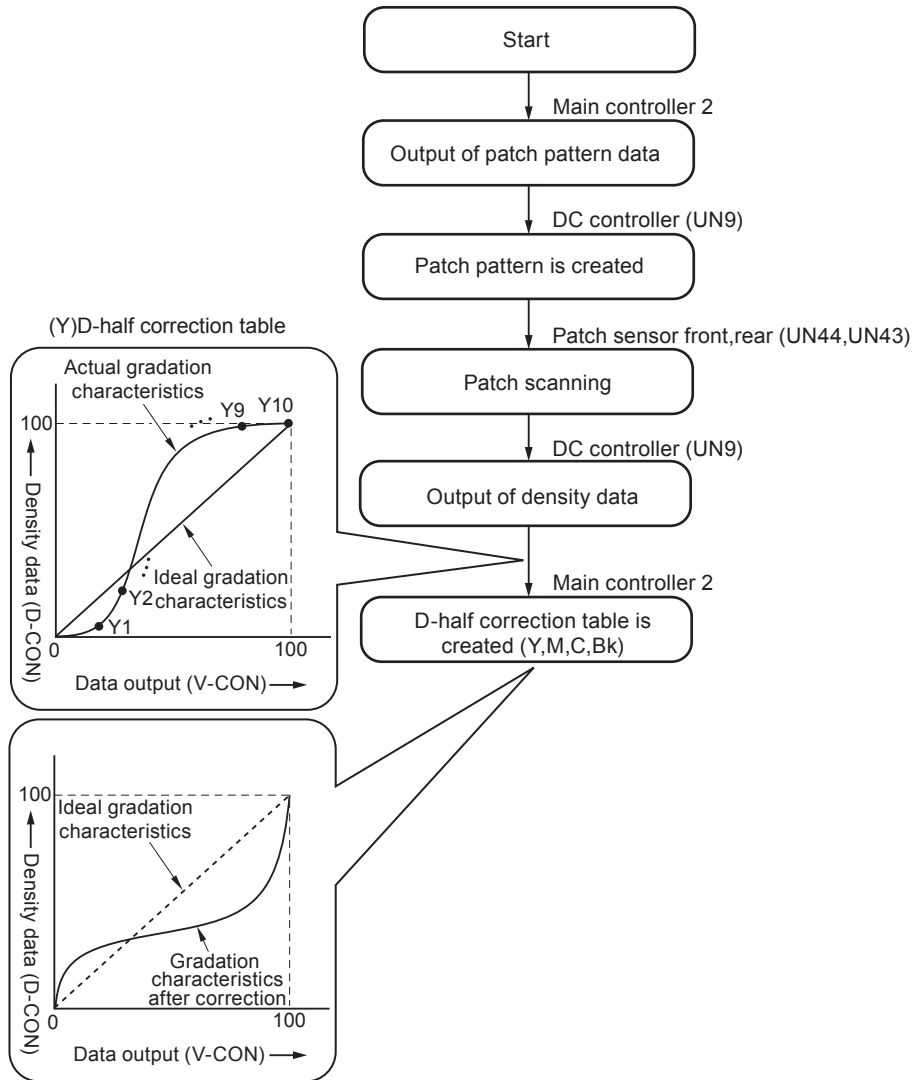
NOTE:

The following 4 types of patch patterns are formed with this control:

- A pattern for copy (9 patches for each color)
- A pattern for text priority (9 patches in each color)
- A pattern for photo priority (8 patches in each color)
- A reference pattern for ARCDAT control (3 patches in each color)

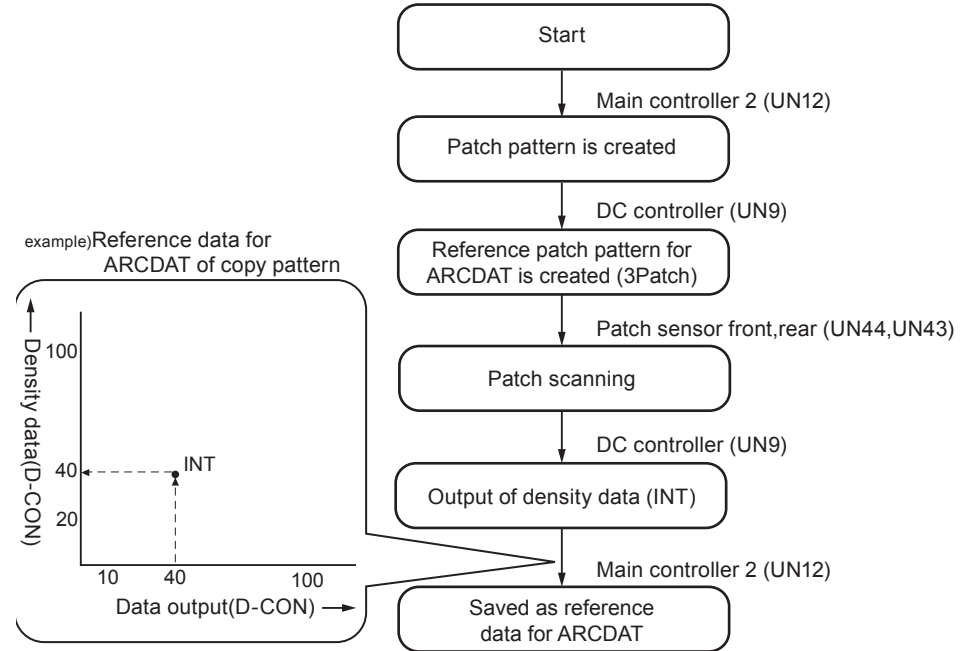


F-2-132



F-2-133

The flow to calculate correction value for ARCDAT control



F-2-134

● ARCDAT Control (Automatic and Reciprocal Color Density Adjustment Technology)

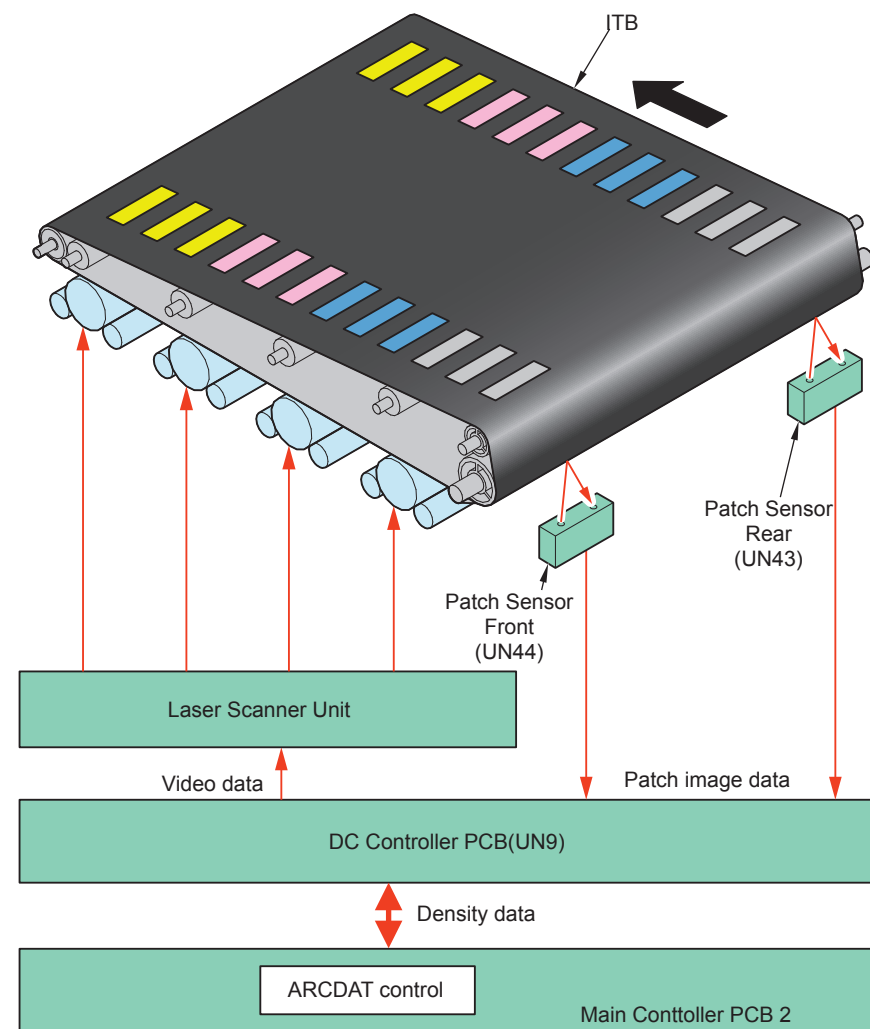
While reducing downtime, the ideal gradation characteristics are realized.

Control timing

- 1) When replacing the Drum Unit
- 2) At power-on
- 3) At paper interval on a specified print basis or at last rotation
- 4) At recovery from sleep mode

Control description

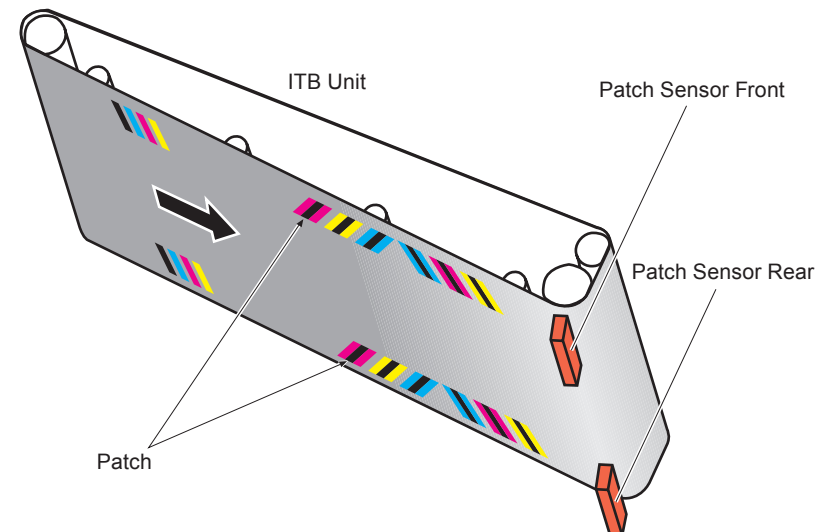
- 1) Main Controller PCB 2 outputs patch data in each color (Y, M, C, and Bk) to the DC Controller PCB.
- 2) The DC Controller PCB forms patch pattern in each color (Y, M, C, and Bk) on the ITB. (Total of 12 patterns: 3 patch patterns for each color)
- 3) The DC Controller PCB measures the patch pattern by the Patch Sensor Front (UN44) and the Patch Sensor Rear (UN43) and the result is returned to the Main Controller PCB 2.
- 4) Main Controller PCB 2 compares this measured data with the reference data for ARCDAT control that has been backed up. The difference by comparison is reflected to the D-half result as the offset value.



F-2-135

Color Displacement Correction Control

Uneven exposure of the Laser Scanner Unit and color displacement caused by uneven rotation of the drum or the ITB is corrected.



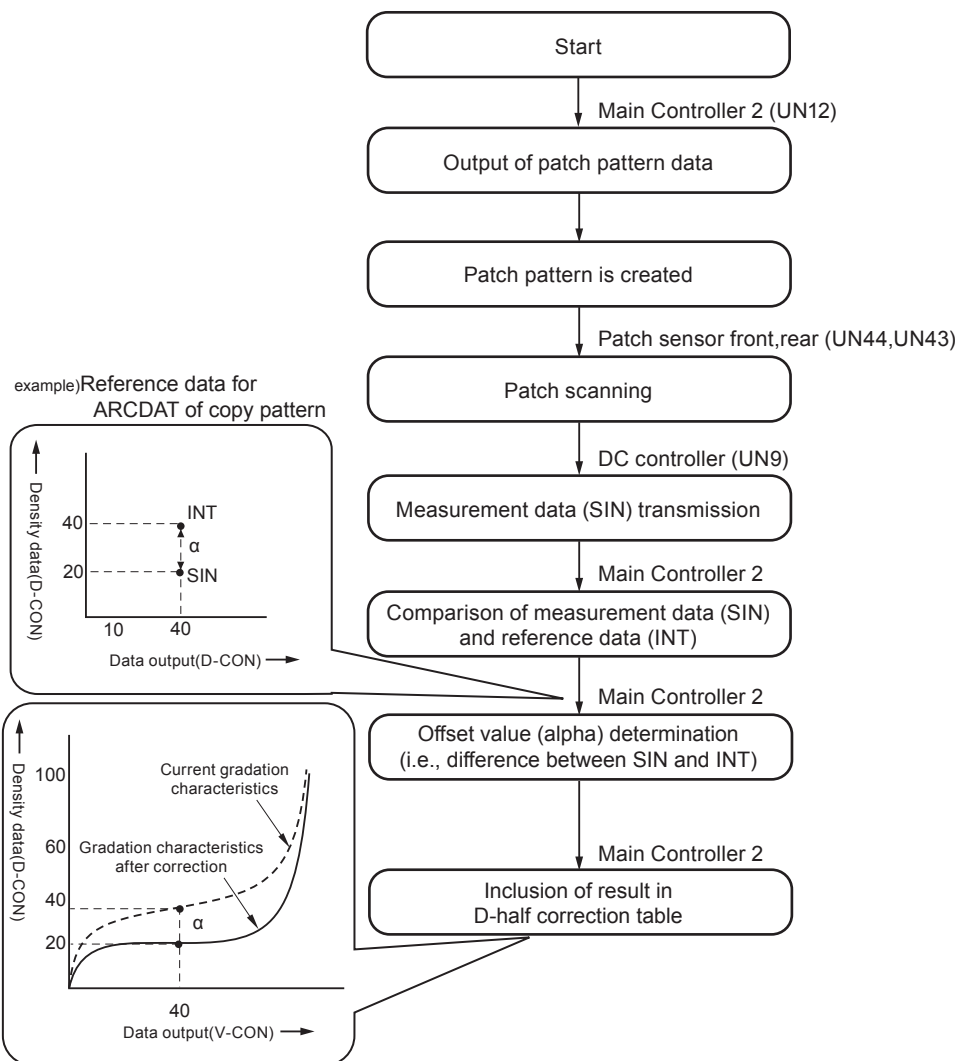
F-2-137

Startup timing

- 1) Execution of this control is determined according to the status of the host machine at power-on or recovery from the sleep mode.
- 2) When it is determined necessary based on the predicted value for temperature inside the machine (according to the usage environment and continuous print state). The control is executed based on the predicted value; therefore, there is no specific timing for control timing. As a guide, the control is executed once in the case of 1-sided continuous print for 30 minutes.

Control description 1: Color displacement correction based on patch pattern

- 1) The Main Controller forms patch pattern in each color on the ITB.
- 2) The DC Controller PCB scans the patch pattern by the Patch Sensor Front (UN44) and the Patch Sensor Rear (UN43) to detect the degree of color displacement comparing to the reference color (Bk).
- 3) Based on the abovementioned detection result, the DC Controller PCB executes correction according to the degree of color displacement.



F-2-136

Control description 2: Color displacement correction based on temperature prediction

- 1) The degree of color displacement is measured based on the operating condition (mainly temperature).
- 2) Exposure timing for YMC is adjusted with reference to Bk.
- 3) When the log for color displacement becomes large, the color displacement correction is performed with the patch pattern above.

Control type		Correction description
Correction in horizontal scanning direction	Write start correction	Write-start timing in horizontal scanning direction is changed.
	Entire magnification ratio correction	Pixels in horizontal scanning direction is increased/reduced (at the both edges of the image)
	One-direction magnification ratio correction	Pixels in horizontal scanning direction is increased/reduced (at the center of the image)
Correction in vertical scanning direction	Write start correction	Write-start timing in vertical scanning direction is changed.
	Image skew correction	Image data is corrected.

T-2-31

• ATR Control (Auto Toner Regulation)

Toner is supplied to the Developing Assembly to make the developer (toner + carrier) in the assembly to meet at an ideal ratio.

Control timing

When replacing the Drum Unit (ATR Sensor)

At every print (Developing Assembly supply count, ATR Sensor)

At paper interval on a specified print basis or at last rotation (Patch Sensor)

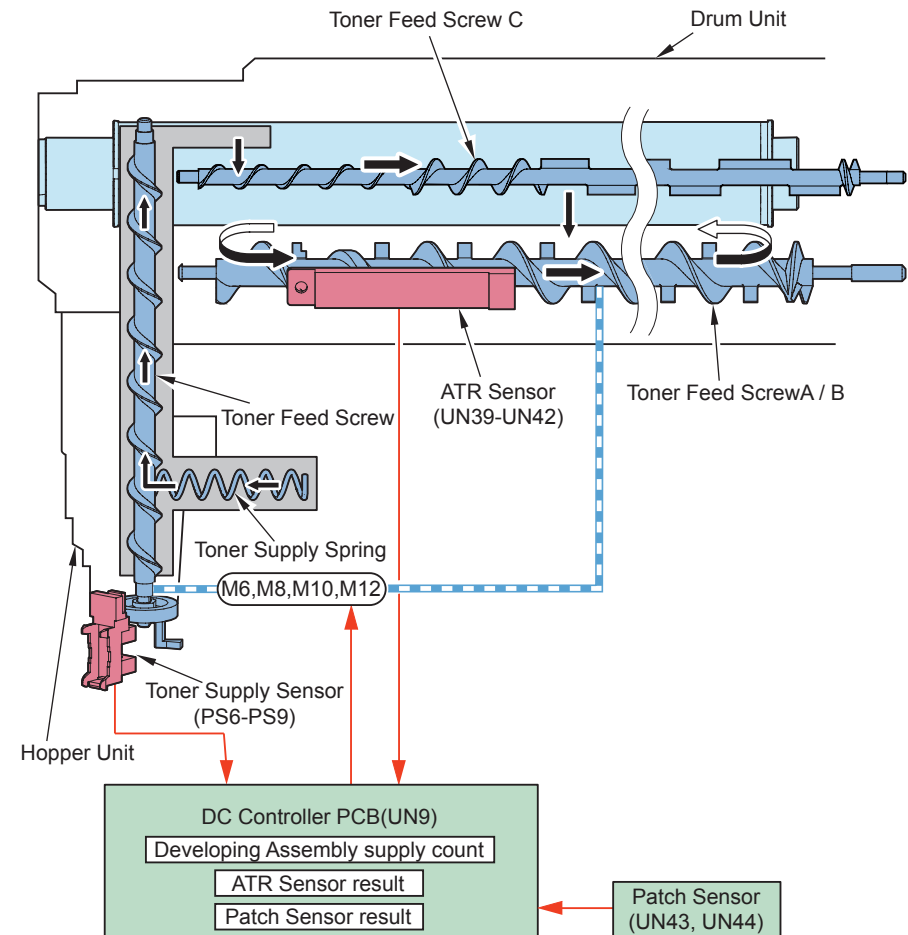
Control description

Supply amount of the toner for each color is calculated by the abovementioned startup timing, and toner is supplied to the Drum Unit. The DC Controller PCB determines toner supply amount by the following 3 data:

- Developing Assembly supply count
- ATR Sensor
- Patch Sensor

The DC Controller PCB turns ON the Toner Supply Motors (M6, M8, M10, M12) when it determines that toner supply is necessary.

This makes the Toner Upward Feed Screw and the Toner Feed Screw A/B rotate so that the specified amount of toner is supplied to the Developing Assembly.



F-2-138

Related error codes

X indicates the target color (1=Y, 2=M, 3=C, 4=Bk)

E020-0XB0: The TD ration detected by ATR Sensor is higher than the specified value (high density)

E020-0XB1: The TD ration detected by ATR Sensor is lower than the specified value (low density)

E020-0X20: The average of density reference value is lower than the specified value at the time of ATR Sensor initialization.

E020-0X30: The average of density reference value is higher than the specified value at the time of ATR Sensor initialization.

E020-0X40: Unable to adjust the control voltage at the time of ATR Sensor initialization.

E020-0X41: Unable to adjust the control voltage at the time of ATR Sensor initialization.

E020-0X90: The average of the detected toner density value is low.

E020-0X91: The average of the detected toner density value is high.

E020-0X50: The density for the target is high at patch detection.

E020-0X60: The density for the target is low at patch detection.

E020-1X50: Density is still high even the patch level is set to 0 (failed to be in the target range between 550 and 640)

E020-1X60: Density is still low even the patch level is set to 7 (failed to be in the target range between 550 and 640)

- **ATVC Control**

Transfer failure due to environmental change or deterioration of the Primary Transfer Roller or the Secondary Transfer Roller can be prevented.

Primary Transfer ATVC

Control timing

- 1)At power-on
- 2)When replacing the Drum Unit
- 3)At recovery from sleep mode
- 4)At paper interval on a specified print basis or at last rotation
- 5)At environmental change

Control description

- 1)Monitor current value of the primary transfer DC bias is detected.
- 2)Optimal target current value is determined based on temperature/humidity data of the Environment Sensor.
- 3)The primary transfer DC bias is determined that is to be applied to the Primary Transfer Roller.

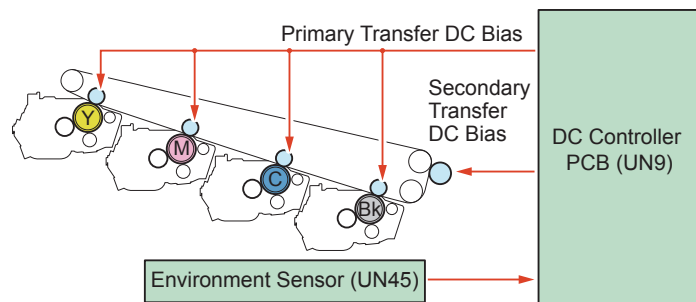
Secondary Transfer ATVC

Control timing

- 1) At power-on
- 2) At every print job

Control description

- 1) Monitor current value of the secondary transfer DC bias is detected.
- 2) Optimal target current value is determined based on temperature/humidity data of the Environment Sensor and paper type.
- 3) The secondary transfer DC bias is determined that is to be applied to the Secondary Transfer Roller.



F-2-139

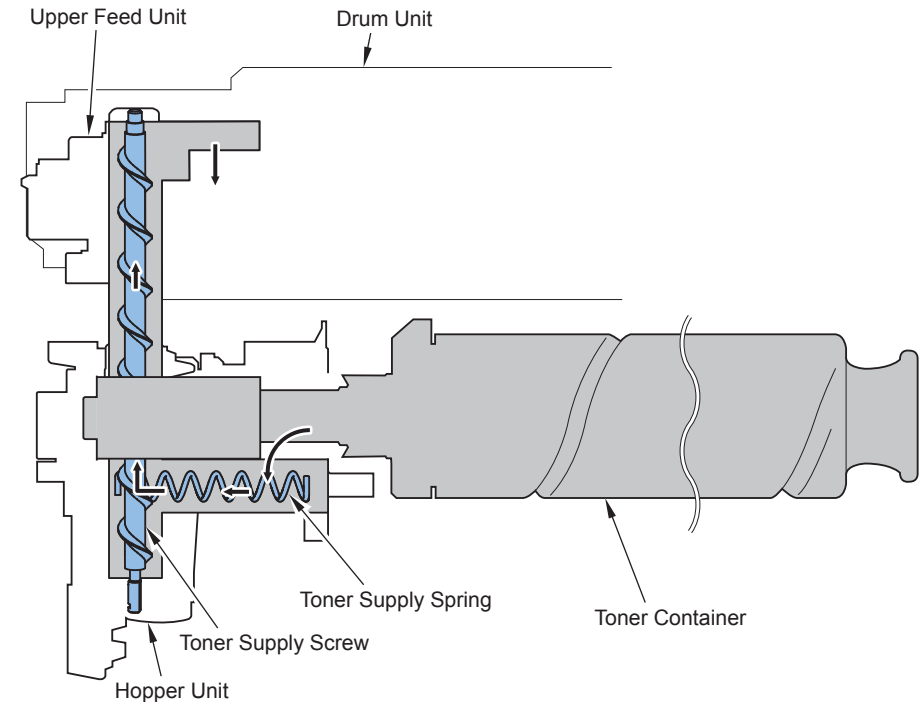
Toner Supply Assembly

Overview

Toner is supplied from the Toner Container to the Developing Assembly.

With this machine, toner is fed from the Toner Container located at the lower side to the Drum Unit located at the upper side.

In addition, this machine has a mechanism to stir toner at the lower side of the Hopper Unit to prevent toner fixation.



F-2-140

Parts name	Function
Cap Drive Link Holder	The Toner Cap is opened/closed, and the Toner Container is rotated.
Cap Release Holder	The Toner Cap is released.
Toner Supply Spring	Toner is supplied from the Hopper Unit to the Upward Feed Unit.
Toner Feed Screw	Toner is supplied from the Hopper Unit to the Developing Assembly.

T-2-32

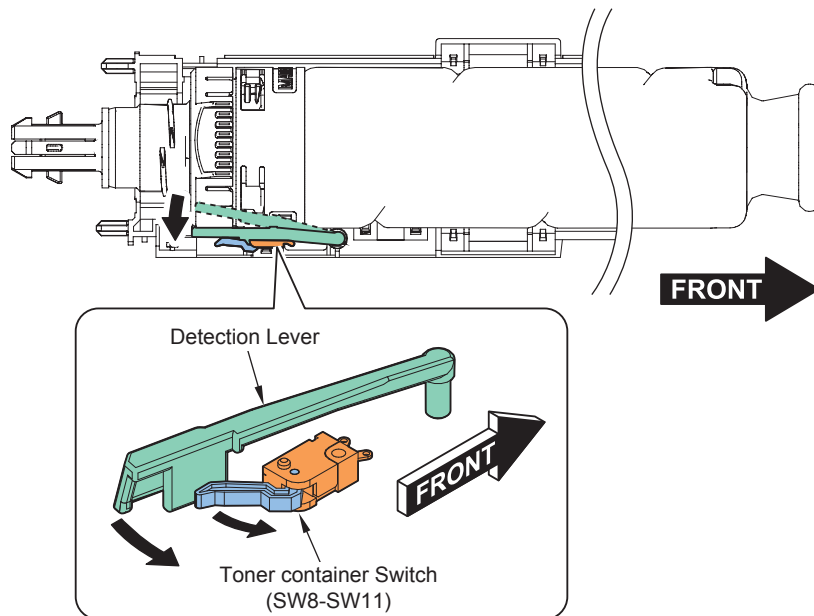
• Toner Cap Opening

A cap of the Toner Container is opened/closed in conjunction with opening and closing the Toner Container Cover.

• Toner Container Detection

Presence/absence of the Toner Container is detected.

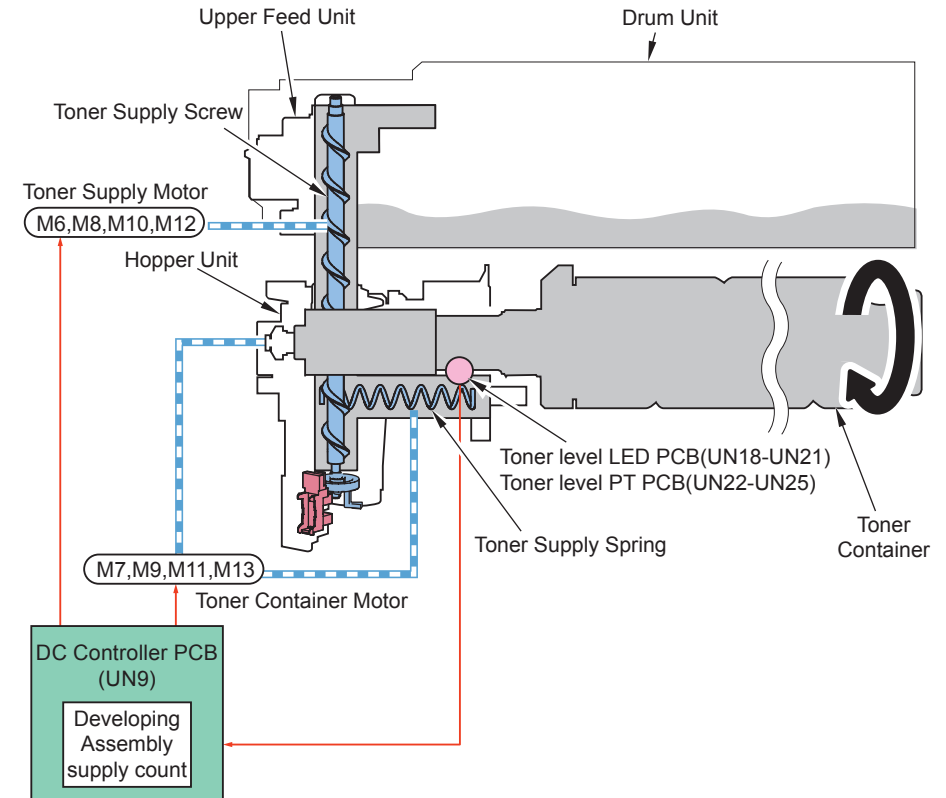
There are the Toner Container Switches (SW8 to 11) as shown in the figure below and they are pressed when the Toner Container is set so that presence of the Toner Container is detected.



F-2-141

• Toner Supply Control/Toner Level Detection

Toner is supplied from the Toner Container to the Developing Assembly. At the same time, toner level in the Hopper Unit is detected. The light emitted from the Toner Level LED PCB is received on the Toner Level PT PCB, and toner level in the Hopper Assembly is detected according to the light reception.



F-2-142

• Toner Supply Control

Title	Description	Supply timing	Operation of the host machine
Supply to the Hopper	Toner is supplied from the Toner Container to the Hopper Unit.	When the output result of Toner Level PT PCB (UN22 to UN25) is changed from L to H.	The Toner Container Motors (M7, M9, M11, M13) are driven and toner is supplied until the Sensor shows L.
Supply to the Developing Assembly	Toner is supplied from the Hopper Unit to the Developing Assembly.	When toner supply is determined necessary by the result of ATR control.	The Toner Supply Motors (M6, M8, M10, M12) are driven for 1 block.

T-2-33

• Toner Level Detection

Detection description	Prior delivery alarm	Display Remaining Toner error (approx. 10% left until the toner is out)	Empty toner (approx. 0% left until the toner is out)
The residual quantity of the toner	USA:15% Other:10% (A change of the setting is possible with a service mode)	10% (A change of the setting is possible with a service mode)	0%
Detection timing	Prediction from the Developing Assembly toner supply count (Judged from the number of toner supply to the Hopper Unit.)		The output result of the Toner Level PT PCBs (UN22 to UN25) is changed from L to H and the H state continues for 65 seconds.
Detecting to (location)	Developing Assembly supply count (Refer to Note 1.)		Toner Level PT PCB
Message (machine operation)	None	Please prepare a toner container(Continuous printing is enabled.)	Replace the toner cartridge. (Host machine is stopped.)
Alarm Code	10-0017 (Y), 0018 (M), 0019 (C), 0020 (Bk)	None	10-0001 (Bk), 0002 (C), 0003 (M), 0004 (Y)

T-2-34

CAUTION 1: Developing Assembly supply count shows the level of toner supplied from the Hopper Unit to the Developing Assembly.

NOTE:

The Developing Assembly supply count is reset in the case that the Toner Container is removed and then installed while absence of toner is detected, print operation is made, and then presence of toner is detected. Therefore, there is no need to reset the service mode. Note that the supply count is not reset in other cases.

Because the Hopper Assembly in this equipment is very small, printing cannot be executed after absence of toner in the Toner Container is detected. Therefore, the 3-level display, which is available with the existing models, is not available. In the case that the Toner Container is replaced while continuous printing is available, warning message will not be cleared.

To clear the warning message, select the following: User Mode > Adjustment/Maintenance > Replace Toner While Printing Is Still Possible, and then select the target color.

Example: when selecting black

A message "Did you replace the black toner while printing was possible? (Perform this operation only if toner was replaced when printing was possible.)" is displayed. By selecting "Yes", the supply count is reset and the warning is cleared.

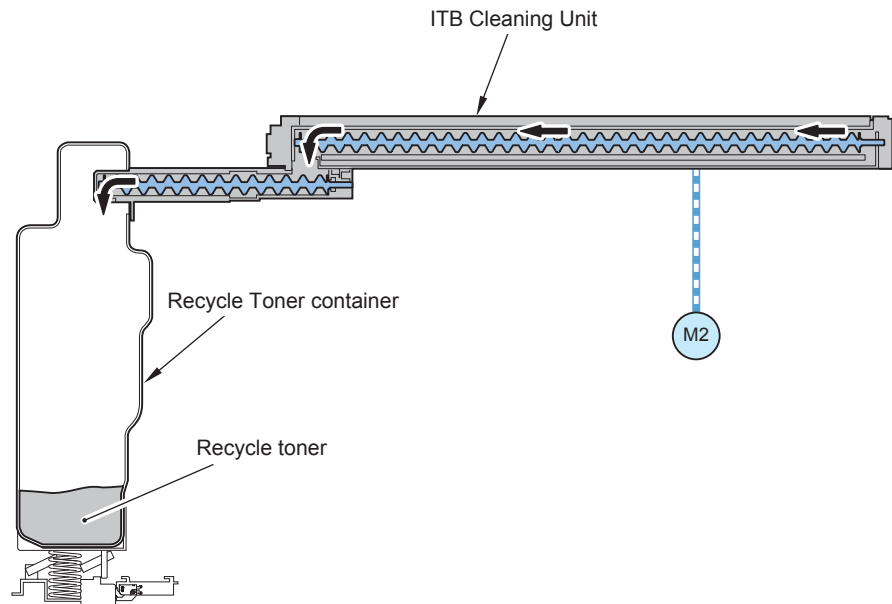
Related error codes:

E025-0001	Toner Supply Motor (Y) error
E025-0101	Toner Supply Motor (M) error
E025-0102	Toner Supply Motor (C) error
E025-0103	Toner Supply Motor (Bk) error
E025-0010	Toner Container Motor (Y) error
E025-0110	Toner Container Motor (M) error
E025-0210	Toner Container Motor (C) error
E025-0310	Toner Container Motor (Bk) error
E025-0020	Toner Container Motor Driver (Y) error
E025-0120	Toner Container Motor Driver (M) error
E025-0220	Toner Container Motor Driver (C) error
E025-0320	Toner Container Motor Driver (Bk) error
E025-0030	Toner Container Motor (Y) short circuit error
E025-0130	Toner Container Motor (M) short circuit error
E025-0230	Toner Container Motor (C) short circuit error
E025-0330	Toner Container Motor (Bk) short circuit error

■ Waste Toner Feeding Area

● Overview

Waste toner in the ITB Cleaning Unit is fed to the Waste Toner Container.



F-2-143

Parts name	Function
Waste Toner Feed Screw	Waste toner from the ITB Cleaning Unit is fed.
Waste Toner Container	Waste toner is collected.

T-2-35

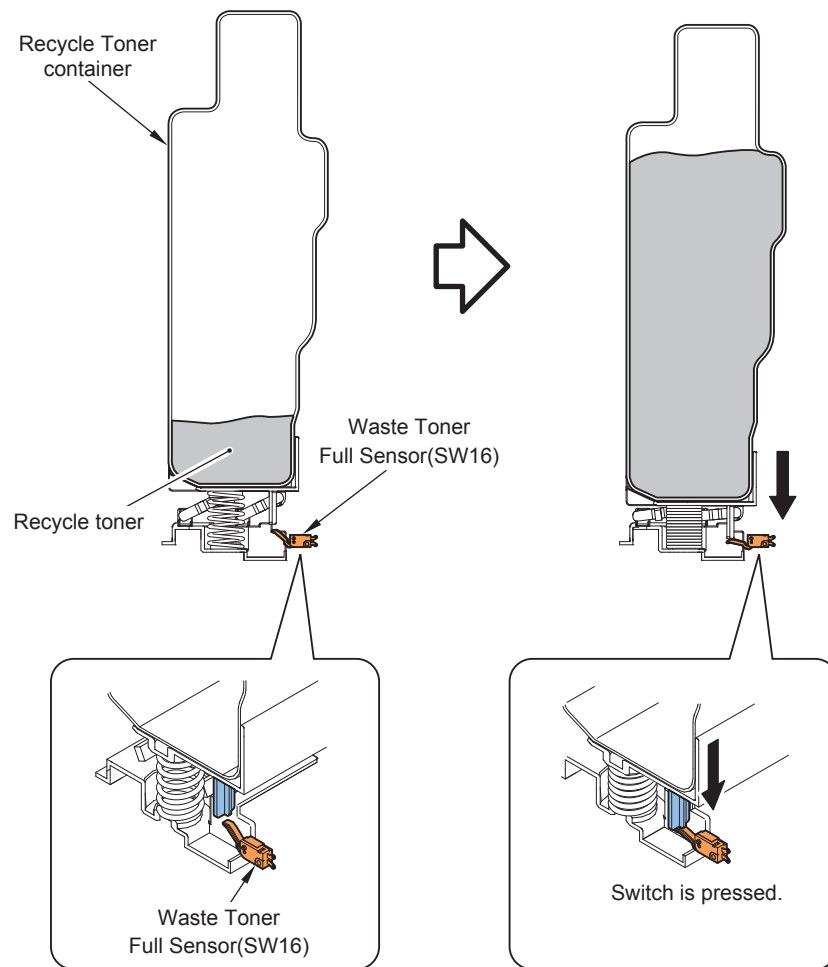
● Waste Toner Container Full Level Detection

Toner level accumulated in the Waste Toner Container is detected.

This machine uses a weight-based detection mechanism. When waste toner is accumulated, the weight of accumulated waste toner pushes the spring, which gradually goes down. Then, after printing approx. 9000 prints by the developing supply count, the system determines that it is Remaining Waste Toner Container error.

[When the waste toner level is low]

[When the waste toner level is 80% or more]



F-2-144

Detection description	Detection timing	Detecting to (location)
Detection timing	The Waste Toner Container preparation warning is displayed after counting up approx. 9000 counts at 5% duty from the point that the weight detection is ON. (Adjustable by changing the EXT-TBOX value)	Either of the following cases that comes first: After approx. 1000 sheets are printed from the point that the Developing Assembly supply count is started after the full level warning (in the case of A4 and dot ratio at 5% image for each color), or when 1000 sheets are printed since the full level warning.
Detecting to (location)	Waste Toner Full Level Switch (SW16)	Developing Assembly supply count OR The number of prints
Message (machine operation)	Please prepare a waste toner container (Continuous printing is enabled.)	Replace the waste toner container. (Host machine is stopped.)

T-2-36

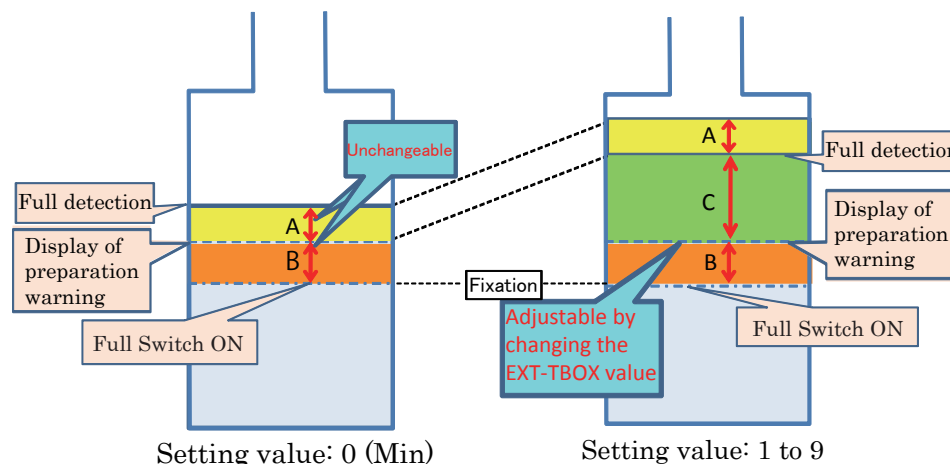
NOTE:

There is no mechanism to stir the waste toner with this equipment. Therefore, the volume is not equal to the weight and the volume tends to be large to the weight. Considering the worst situation since the waste toner volume is easily increased depending on the environment (e.g. high temperature and humidity), it is designed to release a warning when the weight reaches about 60% of the full weight so that toner spill is surely avoided. (The value that the volume reaches full in the worst case)

● Adjustment mode of Waste Toner Container preparation warning timing (Setting of service mode > COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM > EXT-TBOX)

By setting this service mode, the number of pages from when the full level switch is turned on until the machine stops can be set.

(0: 5000 pages, 1: 6000 pages, ..., 4: 9000 pages (default value), ...9: 14000 pages)



F-2-145

A: Unchangeable

Below (1) or (2), whichever is earlier after the display timing of the Waste Toner Container preparation warning.

(1) Count of the number of sheets: 1000 counts (1-sided: 1, 2-sided: 2, small size: 1, large size: 2)

(2) Developing supply count: Supply amount equivalent to approx. 1000 counts at 5% image ratio

* This number of sheets decreases as the image ratio increases.

B: Unchangeable

Below (1) or (2), whichever is earlier after the display timing of the Waste Toner Container preparation warning.

(1) Count of the number of sheets: 5000 counts (1-sided: 1, 2-sided: 2, small size: 1, large size: 2)

(2) Developing supply count: Supply amount equivalent to approx. 5000 counts at 5% image ratio

* This number of sheets decreases as the image ratio increases.

C: Varies according to the EXT-TBOX value

Service mode setting value	Display timing of Waste Toner Container preparation warning
"0"	Below (1) or (2), whichever is earlier after the Waste Toner Full Sensor is ON. (1) Count of the number of sheets: 5000 (1-sided: 1, 2-sided: 2, small size: 1, large size: 2) (2) Developing supply count: Supply amount equivalent to approx. 5000 counts at 5% image ratio * This number of sheets decreases as the image ratio increases.
"1"	Below (1) or (2), whichever is earlier after the Waste Toner Full Sensor is ON. (1) Count of the number of sheets: 6000 (1-sided: 1, 2-sided: 2, small size: 1, large size: 2) (2) Developing supply count: Supply amount equivalent to approx. 6000 counts at 5% image ratio * This number of sheets decreases as the image ratio increases.
---	----
"4"(Default setting)	Below (1) or (2), whichever is earlier after the Waste Toner Full Sensor is ON. (1) Count of the number of sheets: 9000 (1-sided: 1, 2-sided: 2, small size: 1, large size: 2) (2) Developing supply count: Supply amount equivalent to approx. 9000 counts at 5% image ratio * This number of sheets decreases as the image ratio increases.
---	----
"9"	Below (1) or (2), whichever is earlier after the Waste Toner Full Sensor is ON. (1) Count of the number of sheets: 14000 (1-sided: 1, 2-sided: 2, small size: 1, large size: 2) (2) Developing supply count: Supply amount equivalent to approx. 14000 counts at 5% image ratio * This number of sheets decreases as the image ratio increases.

T-2-37

By using this service mode, the Waste Toner Container can be used effectively, but waste toner may overflow depending on the environment or status of usage. Therefore, the value must be set carefully. Following shows the reference for setting.

CAUTION:

Even setting the service mode as above, waste toner leak may occur depending on usage of the user. (If a user prints a large volume of solid images in color, it may overflow.)Therefore, when changing the value, be sure to check the status of usage to confirm that not so many solid images in color have been output, and do not set a large value at once.

For the user who output a large volume of solid images in color, do not use this service mode. In summer, volume of waste toner tends to increase. Be careful not to increase the value too much before summer.

Waste Toner Container Detection

Presence/absence of the Waste Toner Container is detected.

Detection timing

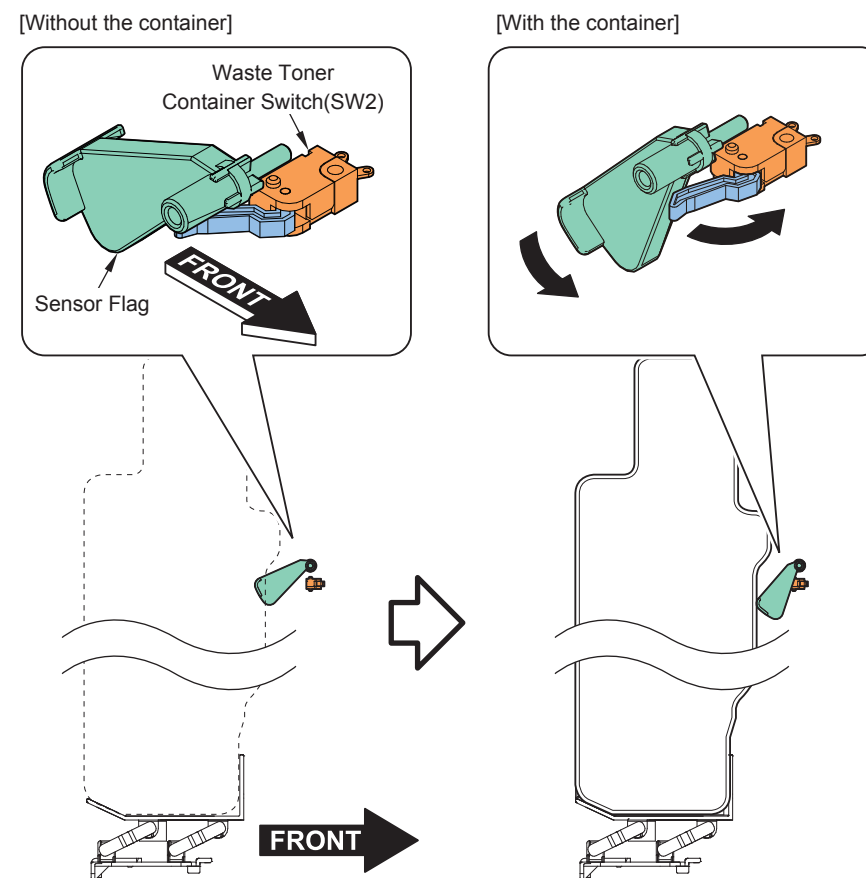
- 1) At power-on

Detection description

Presence/absence of the Waste Toner Container is detected according to the status of the Waste Toner Container Switch (SW2).

ON: There is a Waste Toner Container

OFF: There is no Waste Toner Container (display user message)

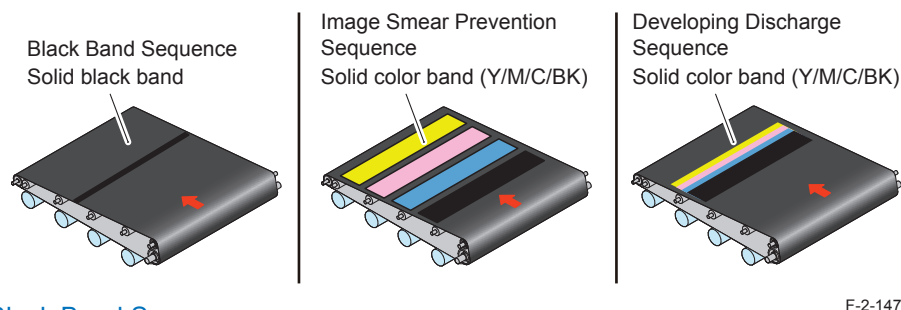


F-2-146

Other Controls

Special Controls

This machine has the following sequences as the special sequence.



F-2-147

Black Band Sequence

Control timing: At last rotation after printing of 100 sheets

When performing continuous printing while no toner is fed to the ITB Cleaning Blade, it may cause the blade to be everted. To prevent it happens, toner is transferred onto the ITB (a solid black band: width = whole ITB width, length = 1mm) to supply toner to the blade.

Image Smear Prevention Sequence

Control timing: Immediately after generating patch pattern with ATR control under a high humidity environment.

Toner band for all colors is formed to prevent image smear by supplying toner to the Auxiliary Brush and increasing sweeping performance for discharged product on the Drum.

Developing Discharge Sequence

Control timing: When the average image ratio per sheet reaches 2% or less

Developing performance can decrease when performing continuous printing with low image ratio. To prevent this error, the average image ratio for each color is calculated with the ATR control and adequate amount of toner based on the calculation (width = A4, length = a solid color band according to the deteriorated toner amount) is transferred to the ITB.

Print Mode Switch Sequence

This sequence is executed when the print mode to be printed next is different from the print mode currently executed. For this sequence, the operation to be executed differs between color mode switching and print speed switching. Therefore, downtime differs as well. Up to 28 seconds downtime is expected.

Type	Control to execute switching
Color mode switching (Color mode, Black mode)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drum phase control (when the print mode to be printed next is the color only)
Print speed switching (Full-speed, Half-speed)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fixing temperature switching Laser Scanner Motor / Feed Motor speed switching Drum phase control (when the print mode is the color only)

T-2-38

Service Tasks

Periodically Replaced Parts

None

Consumable Parts

No.	Parts name	Parts number	Quantity	Estimated life	Remarks
1	ITB Unit	FM3-8240	1	150,000 images	
2	Secondary Transfer Outer Roller	RM1-7928	1	150,000 images	
3	Waste Toner Container	FM3-8137	1	60,000 images	Plain paper, Intermittent printing of 2 sheets per job, Bk color, image ratio at 5% If service engineer removes the waste toner from the Waste Toner Container, the Waste Toner Container can be reused.

T-2-39

List of Periodical Service Works

No.	Parts name	Execution period	Work	Remarks
1	Patch Sensor	50,000 sheets	Cleaning	

T-2-40

Disassembly/Assembly - Image Formation System -

Removing the Waste Toner Container

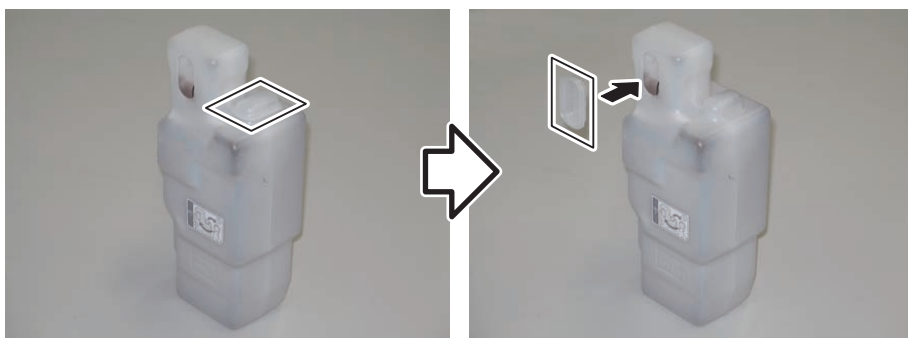
Procedure

- 1) Open the Waste Toner Cover.
- 2) Remove the Waste Toner Container.



F-2-148

- 3) Remove the attached cap to install to the Waste Toner Container.



F-2-149

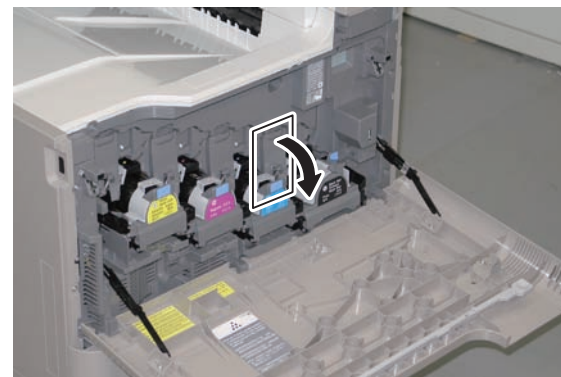
Removing the Drum Unit

Procedure

NOTE:

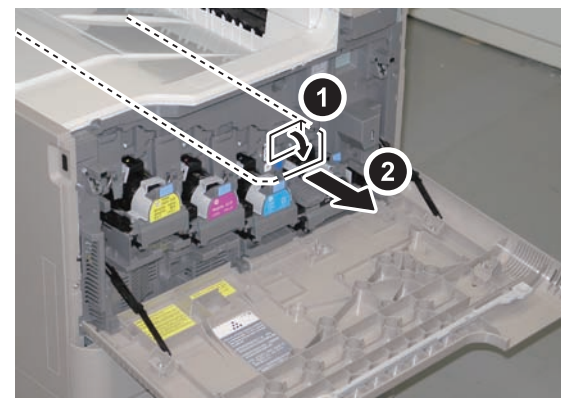
In this procedure, procedure for (Bk) is described. Be sure to perform the same procedure for (C), (M), and (Y).

- 1) Open the Front Cover.
- 2) Open the Drum Unit retaining cover.



F-2-150

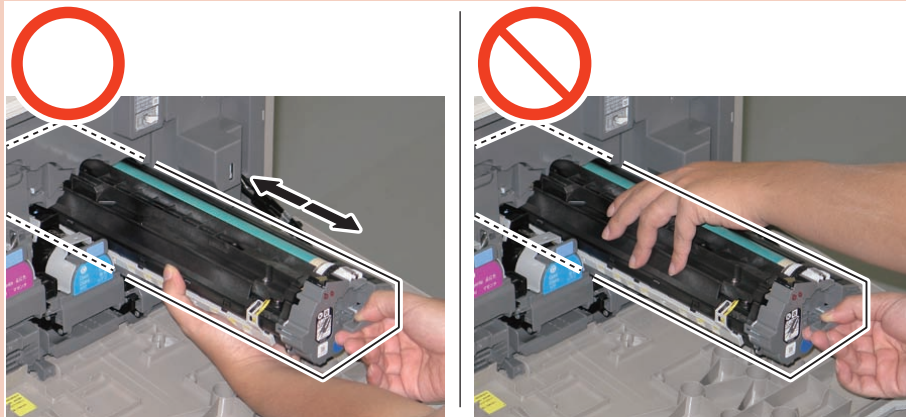
- 3) Open the handle and pull out the Drum Unit.



F-2-151

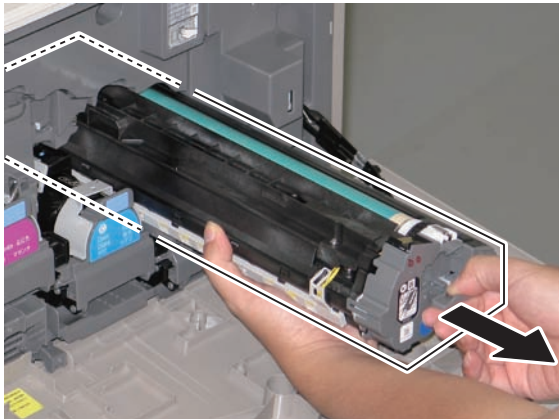
CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the Photosensitive Drum.



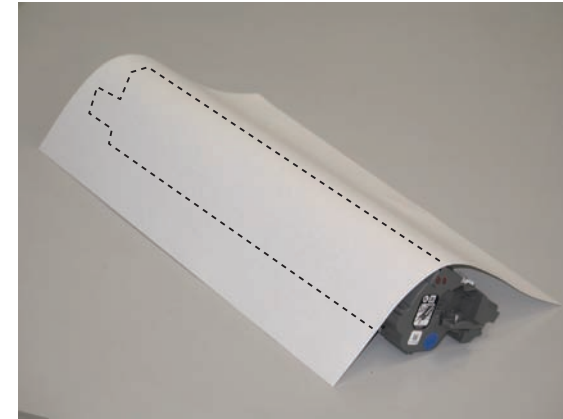
F-2-152

4) Hold the Drum Unit with both hands, and pull it out horizontally.



F-2-153

5) Block light with paper etc. to the removed Drum Unit.



F-2-154

CAUTION:

Be sure to insert the Drum Unit until it stops before closing the Retaining Cover.

Removing the ITB Unit

Preparation

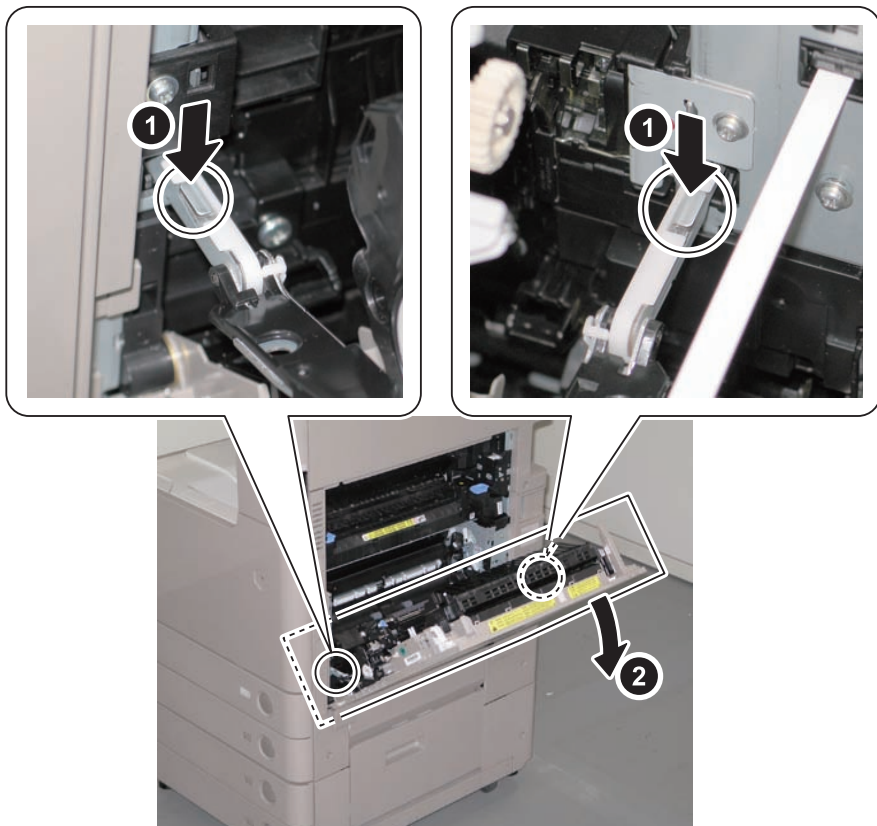
1) Remove the Drum Unit.

Procedure

1) Turn OFF the power.

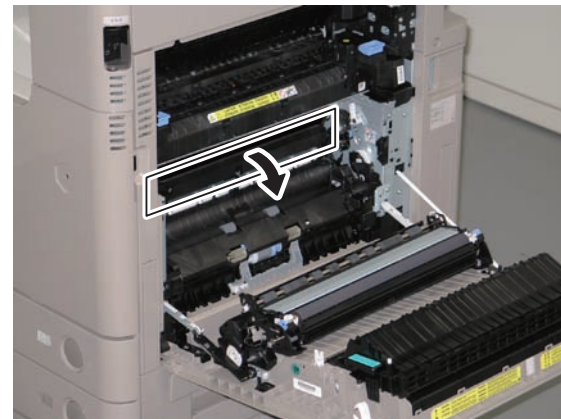
2) Open the Right Lower Cover.

3) Release the lock by pushing the [1] part to open fully.



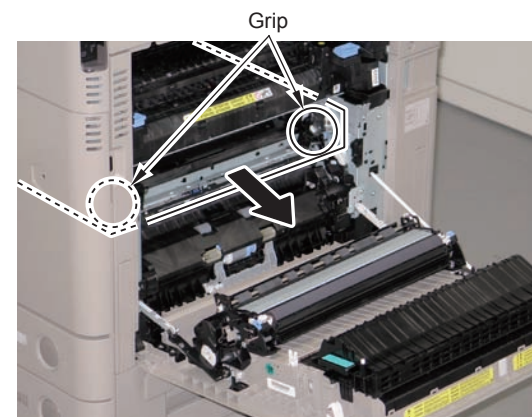
F-2-155

4) Open the Registration Patch Sensor.



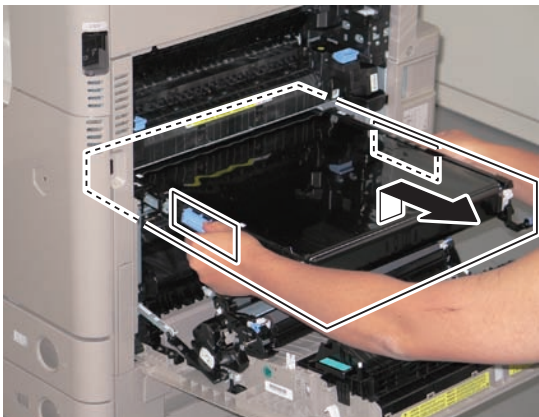
F-2-156

5) Hold the handle and pull out the ITB Unit in the obliquely downward direction along with the guide.



F-2-157

6) Hold the left and right handles, and remove the ITB Unit.



F-2-158

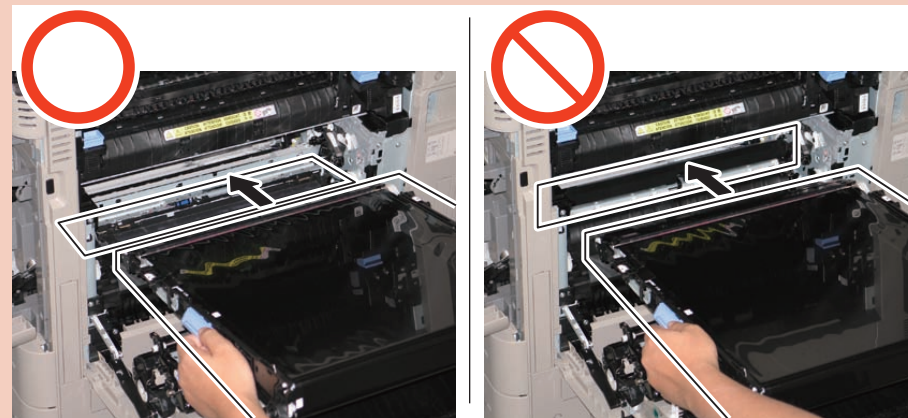
CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the ITB.



Points to Note at Installation:

- To perform image stabilization control (ATVC control) when replacing the ITB Unit, turn ON the main power switch once and then execute auto gradation adjustment (either one of the followings: quick adjustment or full adjustment).
- Check that the Registration Patch Sensor is open, and then install the ITB.



F-2-159

Removing the Front Cover

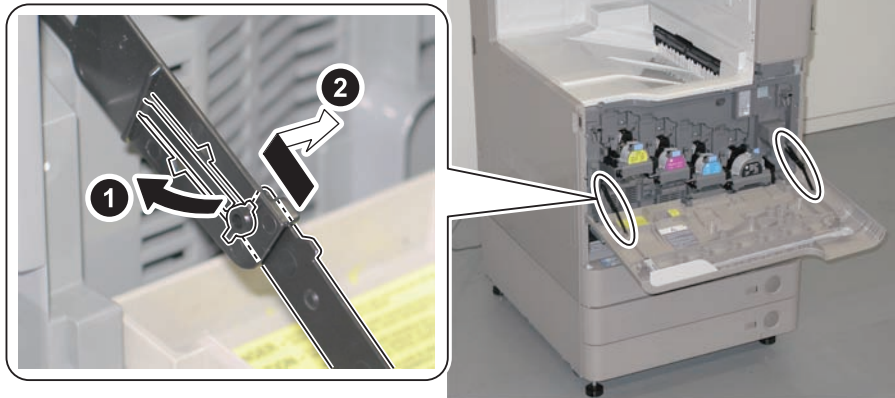
Preparation

1) Remove the Cassette 1.

Procedure

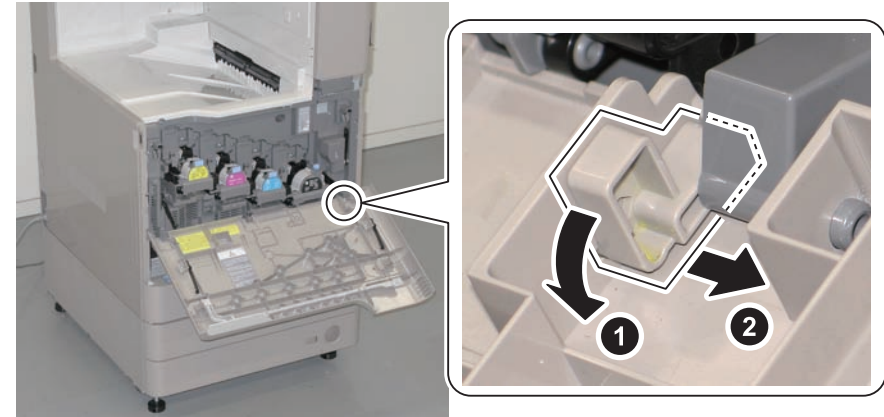
1) Open the Front Cover.

2) Remove the 2 link arms.



F-2-160

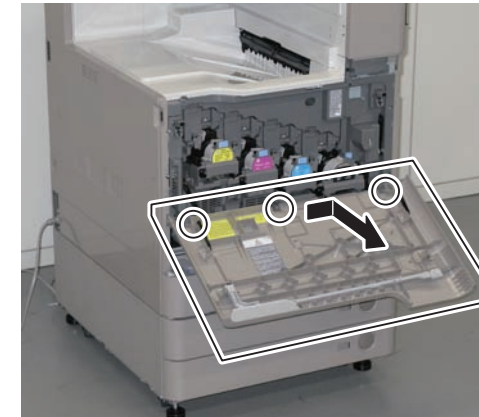
3) Remove the Stopper.



F-2-161

4) Remove the Front Cover in the direction of the arrow.

- 3 shafts



F-2-162

Removing the Toner Bottle Mount (CL)

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1.
- 5) Remove the Front Cover.
- 6) Remove the Left Cover.
- 7) Remove the First Delivery Tray.

Procedure

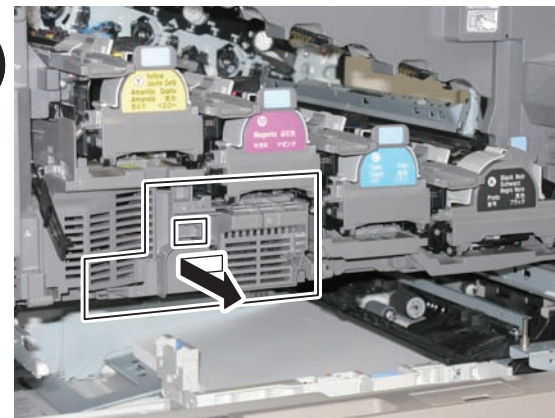
NOTE:

In this procedure, procedure for the Toner Bottle Mount (M) is described. Be sure to perform the same procedure for (Y) and (C).

CAUTION:

If there is any toner scattering, wipe off the toner.

- 1) Remove the Toner Cartridge.
- 2) Remove the Fan Holder Cover.
 - 1 Claw

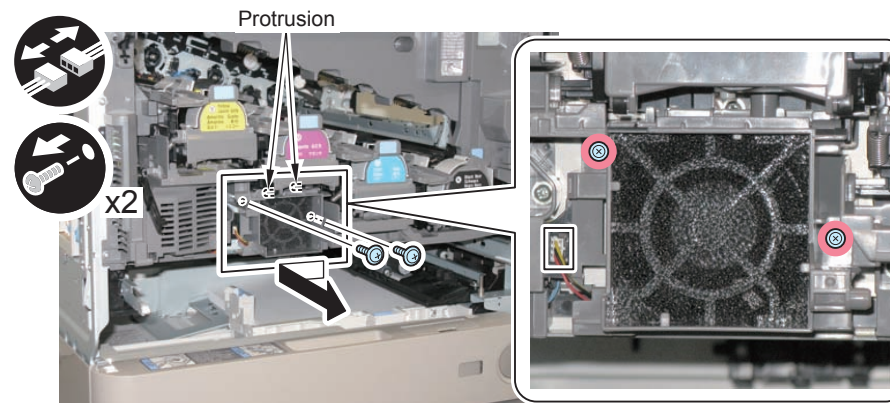


F-2-163

NOTE:

Skip step 2 in the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (C).

- 3) Remove the Fan Duct 2 in the direction of the arrow.
 - 1 Connector
 - 2 Screws
 - 2 Protrusions

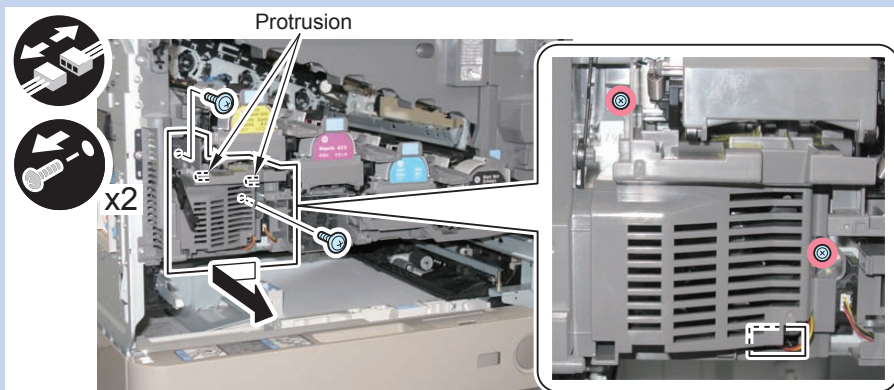


F-2-164

NOTE:

1) In the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (Y), remove the Fan Duct 1 in the direction of the arrow.

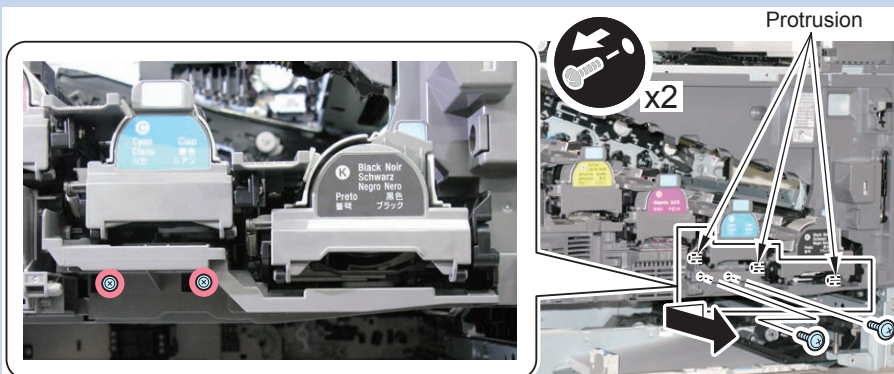
- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws
- 2 Protrusions



F-2-165

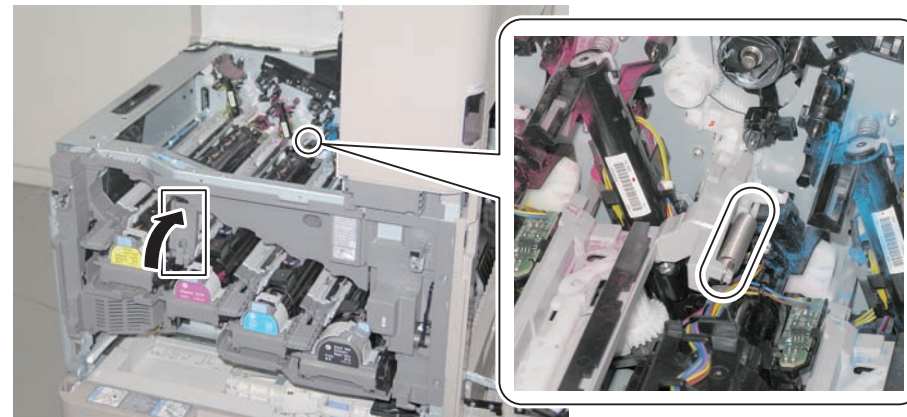
2) In the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (C), remove the Fan Duct 3 in the direction of the arrow.

- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws
- 2 Protrusions



F-2-166

4) Put the cover of Drum Unit back and remove the spring.



F-2-167

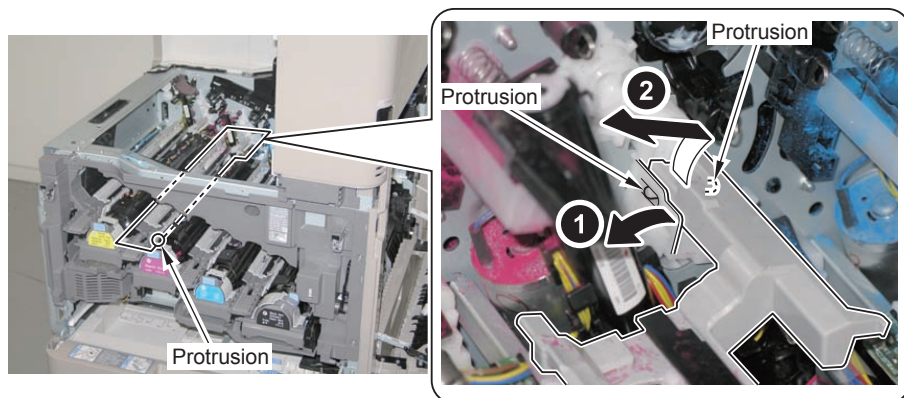
5) Remove the screw of the Toner Guide Rail Reinforcing Member.



F-2-168

6) Remove the Toner Guide Rail.

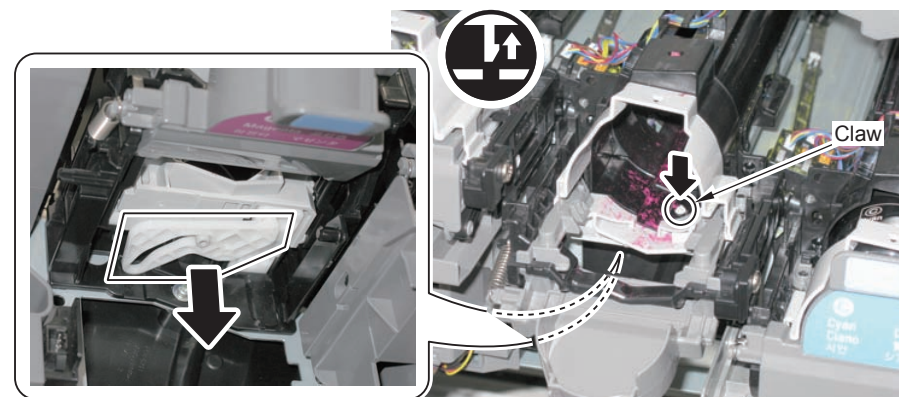
- 3 Protrusions



F-2-169

9) Remove the Link Lever.

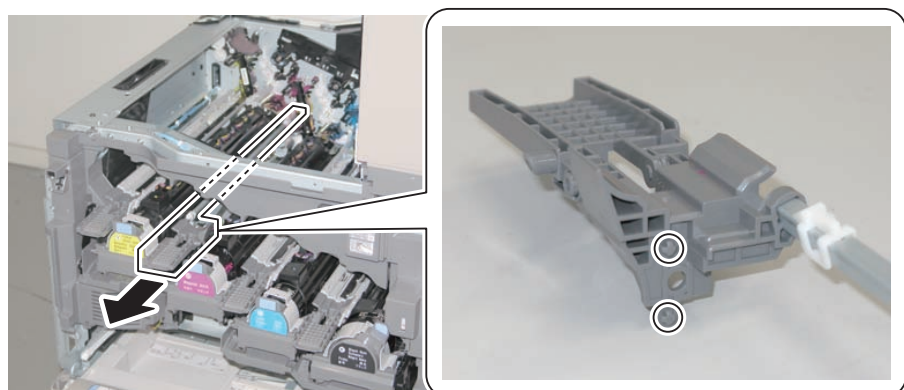
- 1 Claw



F-2-171

7) Remove the Toner Guide Rail Reinforcing Member.

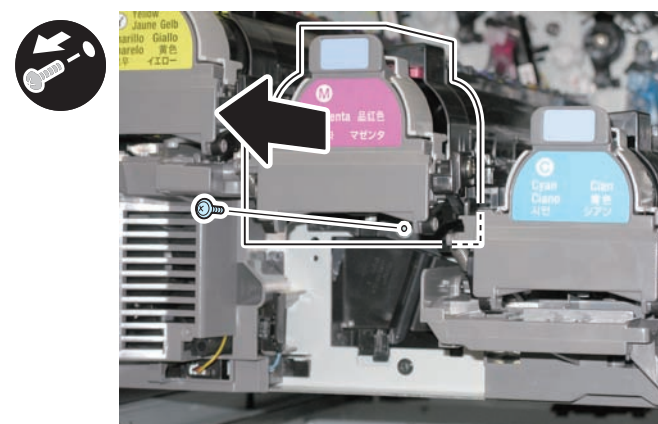
- 2 Bosses



F-2-170

10) Remove the Toner Bottle Door Unit.

- 1 Screw



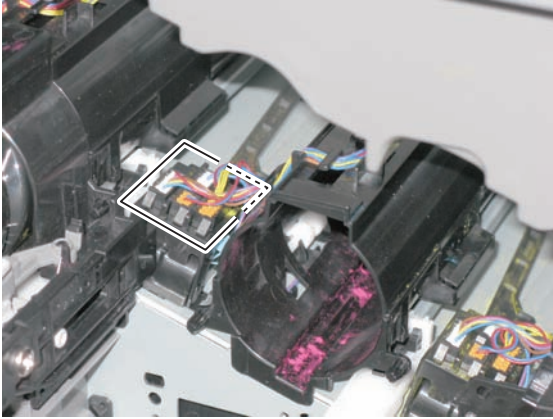
F-2-172

8) Perform step 4 to 6 to the unit on the right of the target Toner Bottle Mount.

NOTE:

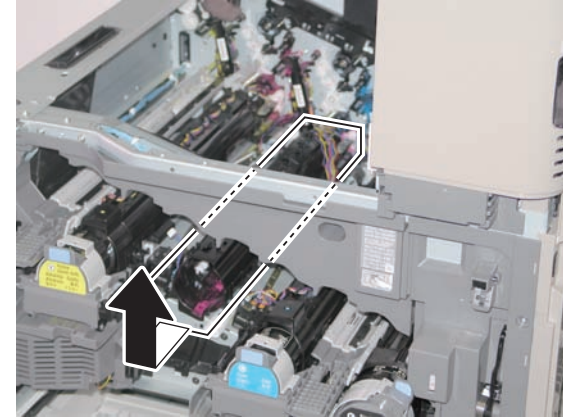
- In the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (Y), perform the work with the Toner Bottle Mount (M).
- In the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (M), perform the work with the Toner Bottle Mount (C).
- In the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (C), perform the work with the Toner Bottle Mount (Bk).

- 11) Disconnect the 4 connectors.



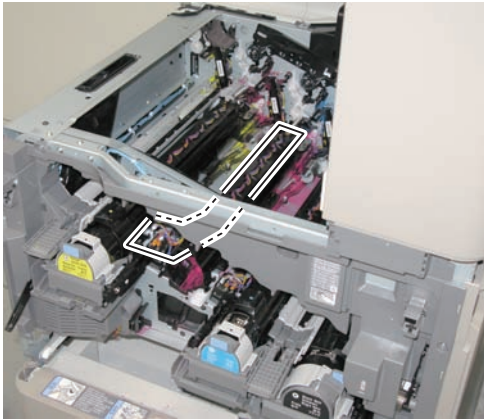
F-2-173

- 13) Remove the Toner Bottle Mount in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-175

- 12) Free the harness from the Upper Guide of the Toner Bottle Mount.

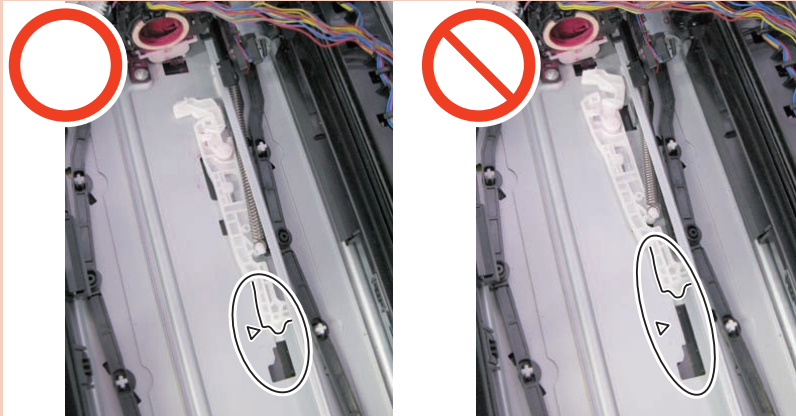


F-2-174

Points to Note at Installation:

1) Be sure to check the position of the Toggle Lever when installing the Toner Bottle Mount.

(If the Toggle Lever is not in the correct position, the Toner Bottle cannot be installed.)



F-2-176

2) Be sure to route the harness along the Upper Guide of the Toner Bottle Mount without slack.

3) After installing the Link Lever, check that the Toner Bottle Door Unit opens and closes smoothly.

4) After installation, check if the cover of Drum Unit opens and closes.

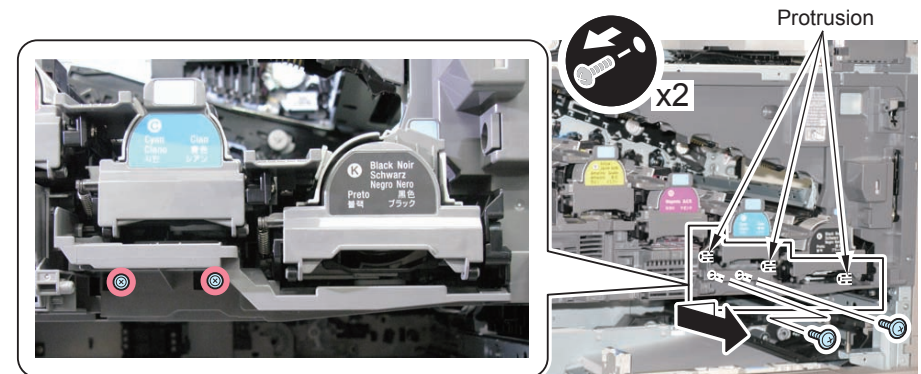
Removing the Toner Bottle Mount (Bk)

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1.
- 5) Remove the Front Cover.
- 6) Remove the Left Cover.
- 7) Remove the First Delivery Tray.

Procedure

- 1) Remove the Toner Cartridge (Bk).
- 2) Remove the Duct Cover in the direction of the arrow.
 - 2 Screws
 - 3 Protrusions



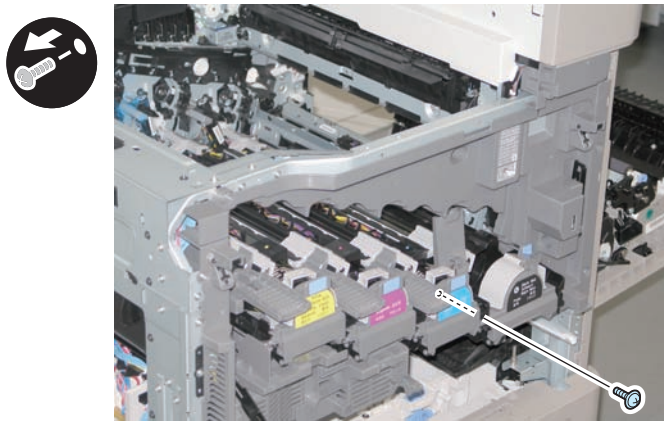
F-2-177

3) Put the cover of Drum Unit back and remove the spring.



F-2-178

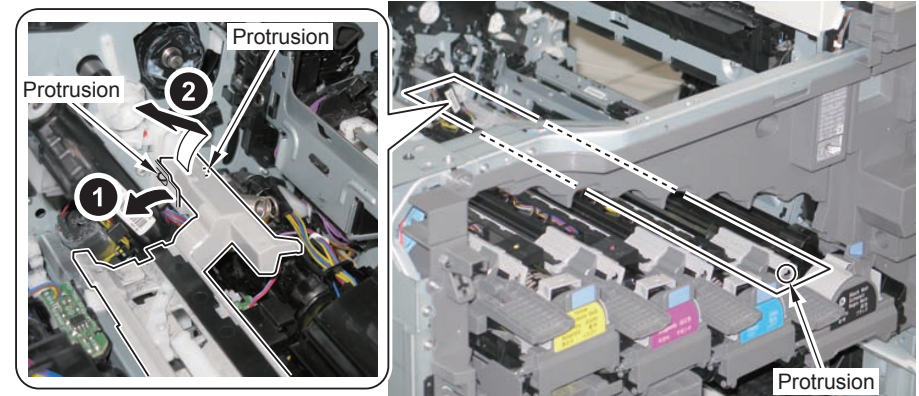
4) Remove the screw of the Toner Guide Rail Reinforcing Member.



F-2-179

5) Remove the Toner Guide Rail.

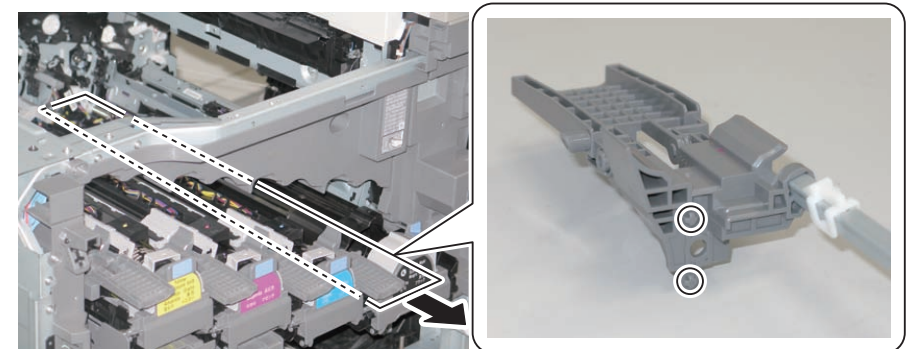
- 1 Screw
- 3 Protrusions



F-2-180

6) Remove the Toner Guide Rail Reinforcing Member.

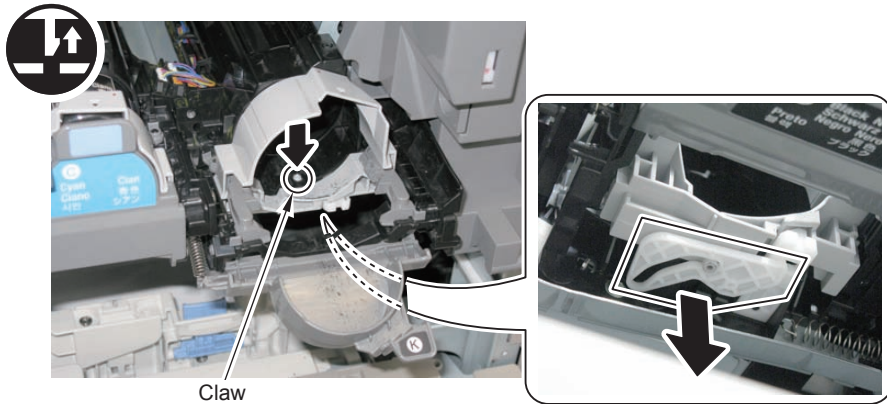
- 2 Bosses



F-2-181

7) Remove the Link Lever.

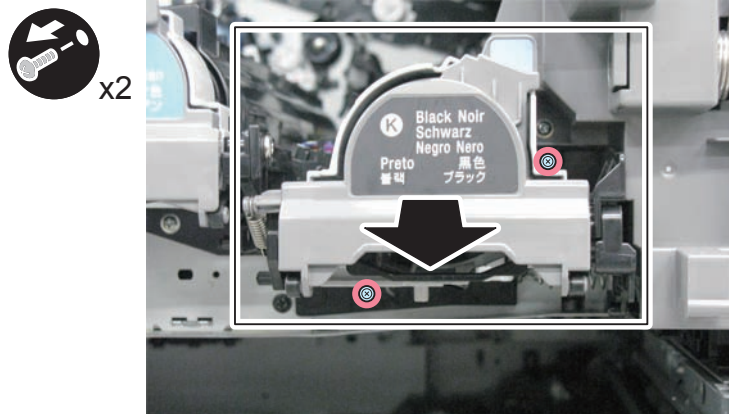
- 1 Claw



F-2-182

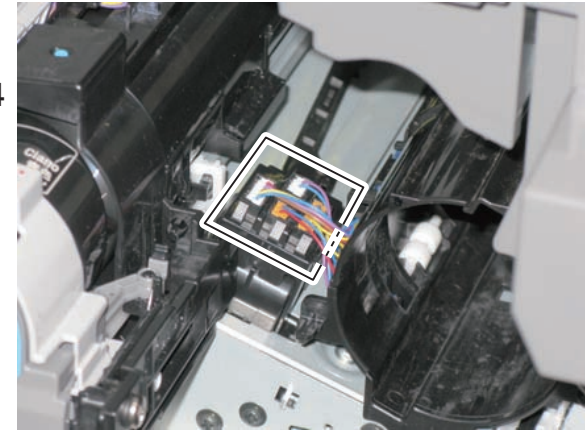
8) Remove the Toner Bottle Door Unit.

- 1 Screw



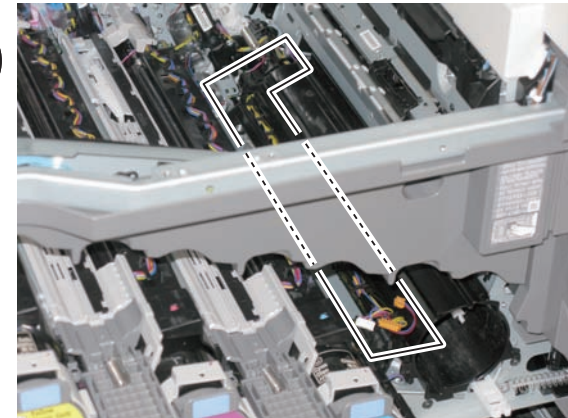
F-2-183

9) Disconnect the 4 connectors.



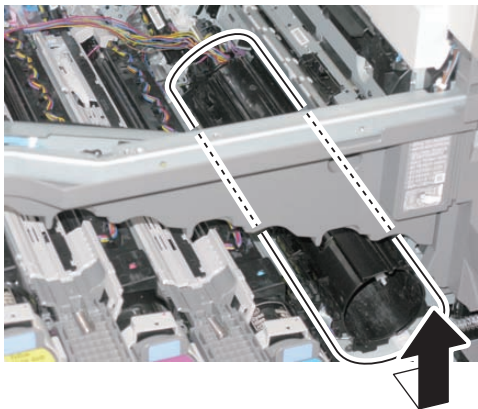
F-2-184

10) Free the Harness from the Guide of the Toner Bottle Mount.



F-2-185

11) Remove the Toner Bottle Mount in the direction of the arrow.

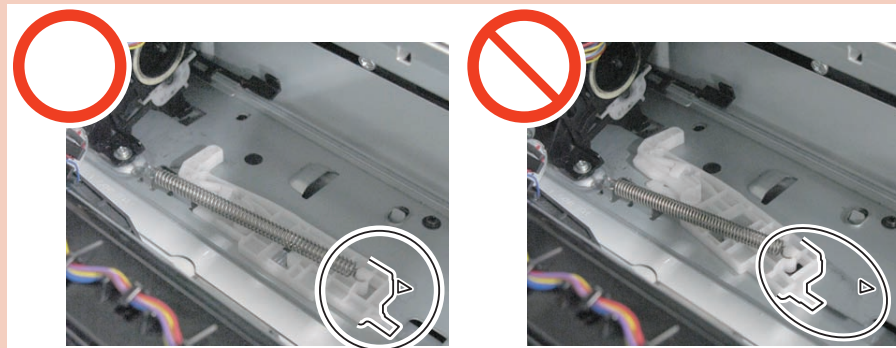


F-2-186

Points to Note at Installation:

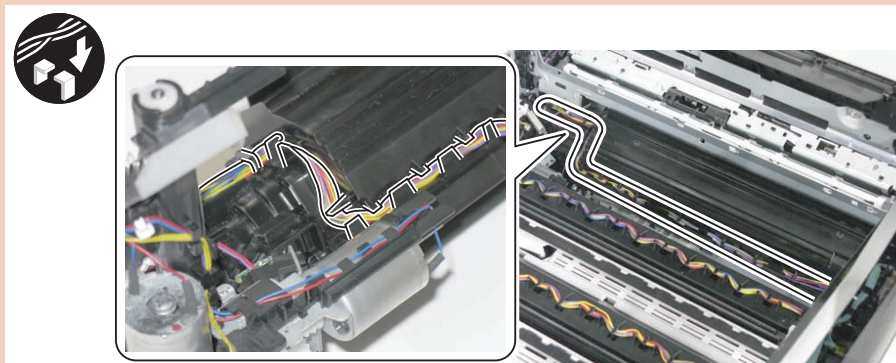
1) Be sure to check the position of the Toggle Lever when installing the Toner Bottle Mount.

(If the Toggle Lever is not in the correct position, the Toner Bottle cannot be installed.)



F-2-187

2) Be sure to route the harness along the guide of the Toner Bottle Mount without slack for not blocking the laser light path.



F-2-188

3) After installing the Link Lever, check that the Toner Bottle Door Unit opens and closes smoothly.

4) After installation, check if the cover of Drum Unit opens and closes.

Removing the Hopper Unit (CL)

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1.
- 5) Remove the Front Cover.
- 6) Remove the Left Cover.
- 7) Remove the First Delivery Tray.
- 8) Remove the Toner Bottle Mount of the target color.

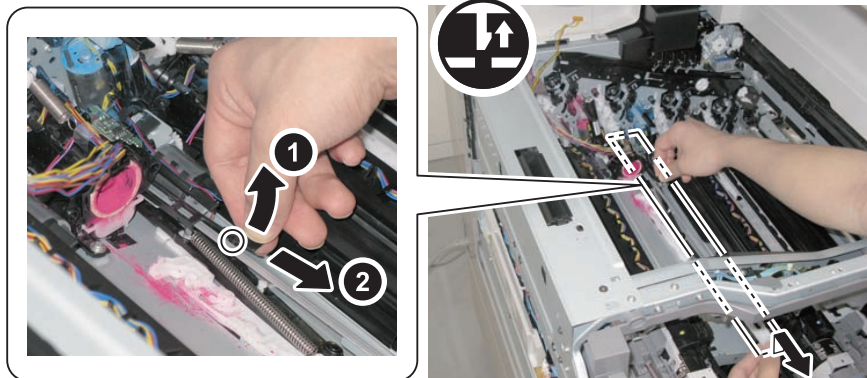
Procedure

NOTE:

In this procedure, procedure for the Hopper Unit (M) is described. Be sure to perform the same procedure for (Y) and (C).

- 1) Remove the stopper and remove the Link Stick in the direction of the arrow.

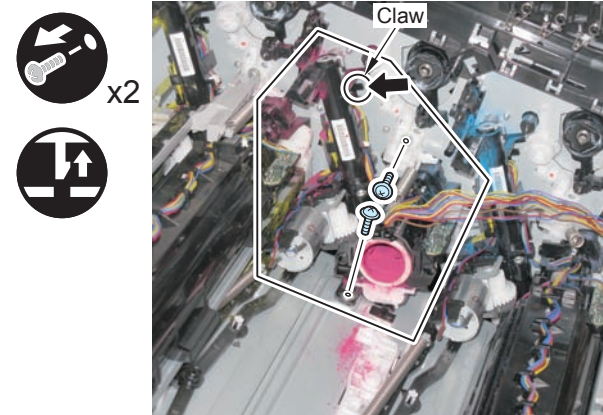
- 1 Claw



F-2-189

- 2) Remove the Reinforcing Member.

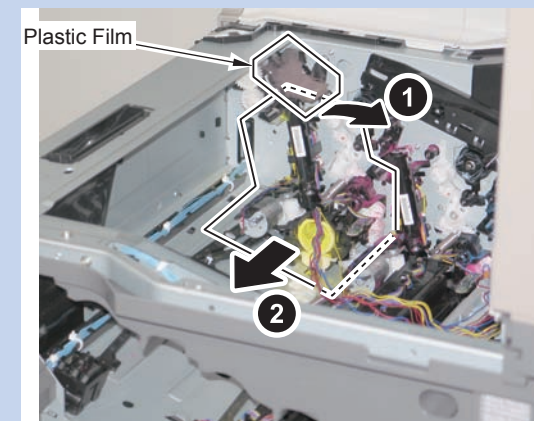
- 2 Screws
- 1 Claw



F-2-190

NOTE:

In the case of the Toner Supply Assembly (Y), avoid the plastic film of the Waste Toner Feed Unit to remove.



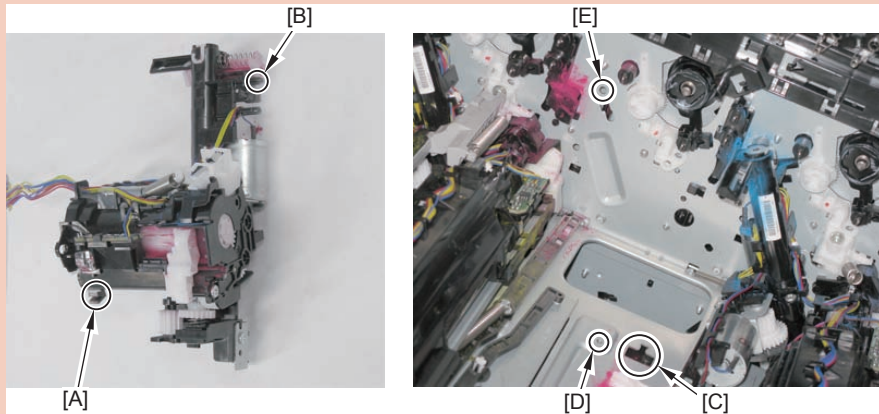
F-2-191

CAUTION:

When removing the Toner Supply Assembly, be careful not to spill the toner.

Points to Note at Installation:

1) Fit the hook [A] to [C] part and also fit the boss [B] to [E] part to adjust the position so that the Toner Supply Assembly is installed while fitting into the screw hole [D].



F-2-192

2) After installing the Link Stick, move it back and forth to check that it is secured.

3) After replacing the Hopper Unit, start the host machine.

Execute service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-Y/M/C.

After execution, toner is supplied to the Hopper Unit when warm-up rotation is performed.

(Warm-up rotation is performed by opening and closing the Front Door or turning OFF and then ON the power.)

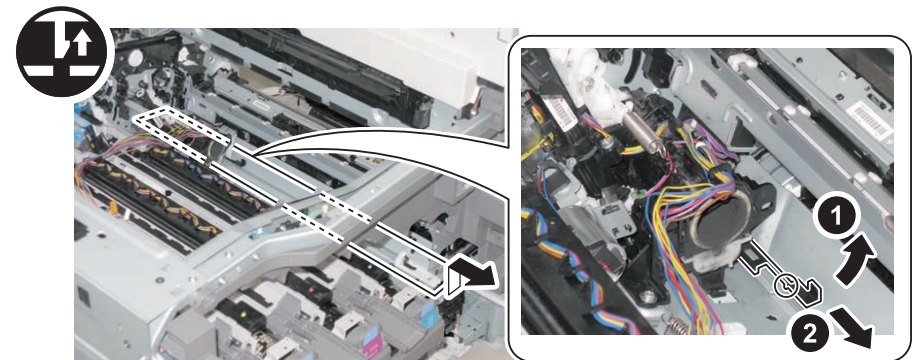
Removing the Hopper Unit (Bk)

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1.
- 5) Remove the Front Cover.
- 6) Remove the Left Cover.
- 7) Remove the First Delivery Tray.
- 8) Remove the Toner Bottle Mount (Bk).

Procedure

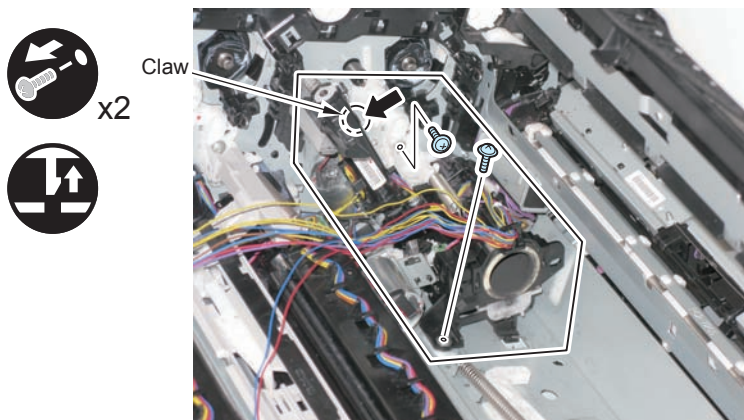
- 1) Remove the stopper and remove the Link Stick in the direction of the arrow.
 - 1 Claw



F-2-193

2) Remove the Reinforcing Member.

- 2 Screws
- 1 Claw



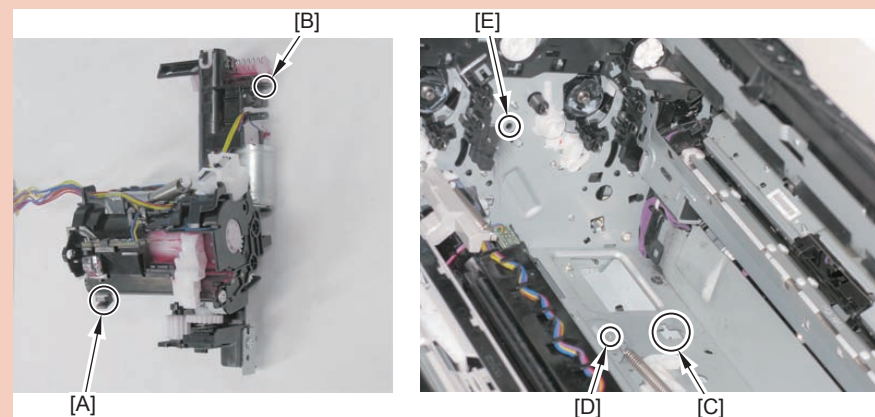
F-2-194

CAUTION:

When removing the Toner Supply Assembly, be careful not to spill the toner.

Points to Note at Installation:

1) Fit the hook [A] to [C] part and also fit the boss [B] to [E] part to adjust the position so that the Toner Supply Assembly is installed while fitting into the screw hole [D].



F-2-195

2) After installing the Link Stick, move it back and forth to check that it is secured.

3) After replacing the Hopper Unit, start the host machine.

Execute service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-K.

After execution, toner is supplied to the Hopper Unit when warm-up rotation is performed.

(Warm-up rotation is performed by opening and closing the Front Door or turning OFF and then ON the power.)

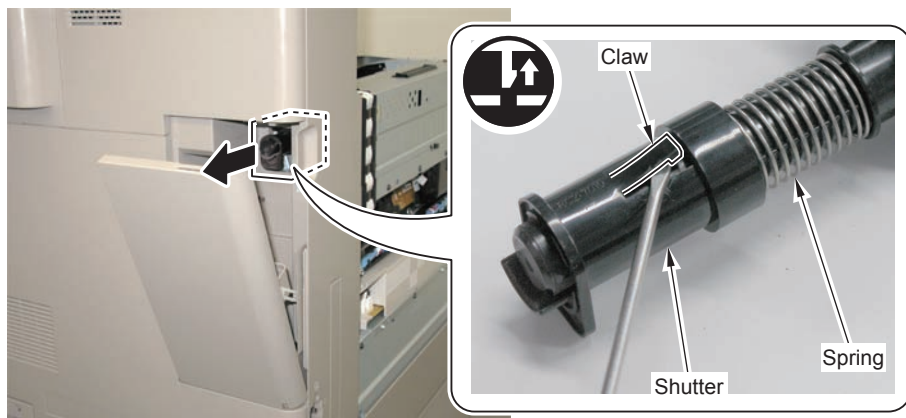
Removing the Waste Toner Feed Assembly

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1.
- 5) Remove the Front Cover.
- 6) Remove the Left Cover.
- 7) Remove the First Delivery Tray.
- 8) Remove the Waste Toner Container.

Procedure

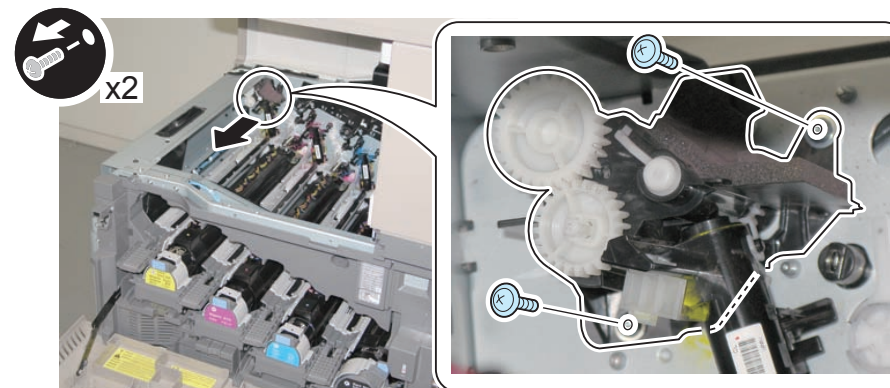
- 1) Remove the shutter and the spring.
 - 1 Claw



F-2-196

- 2) Remove the Waste Toner Feed Unit.

- 2 Screws



F-2-197

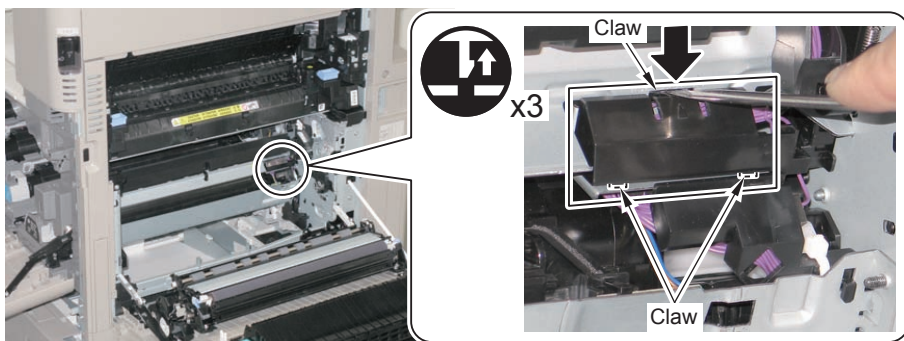
Removing the Registration Patch Sensor

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit.
- 5) Remove the Cassette 1 Pickup Unit.

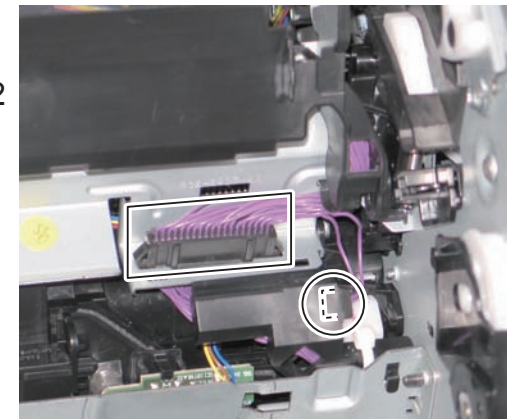
Procedure

- 1) Remove the Connector Cover.
 - 3 Claws



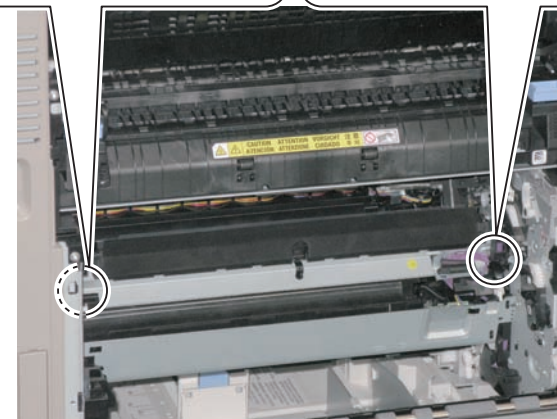
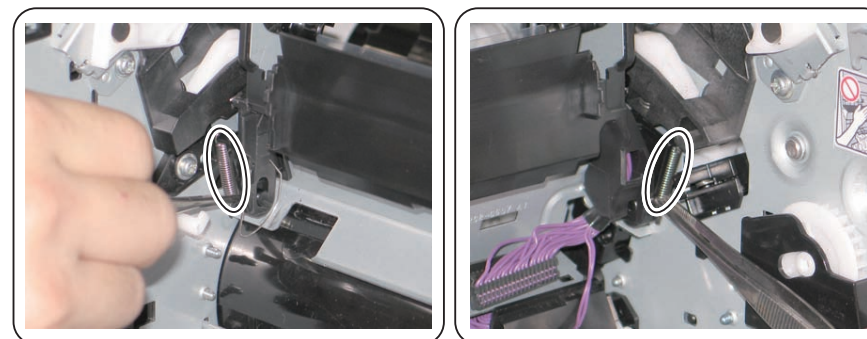
F-2-198

- 2) Disconnect the 2 connectors.



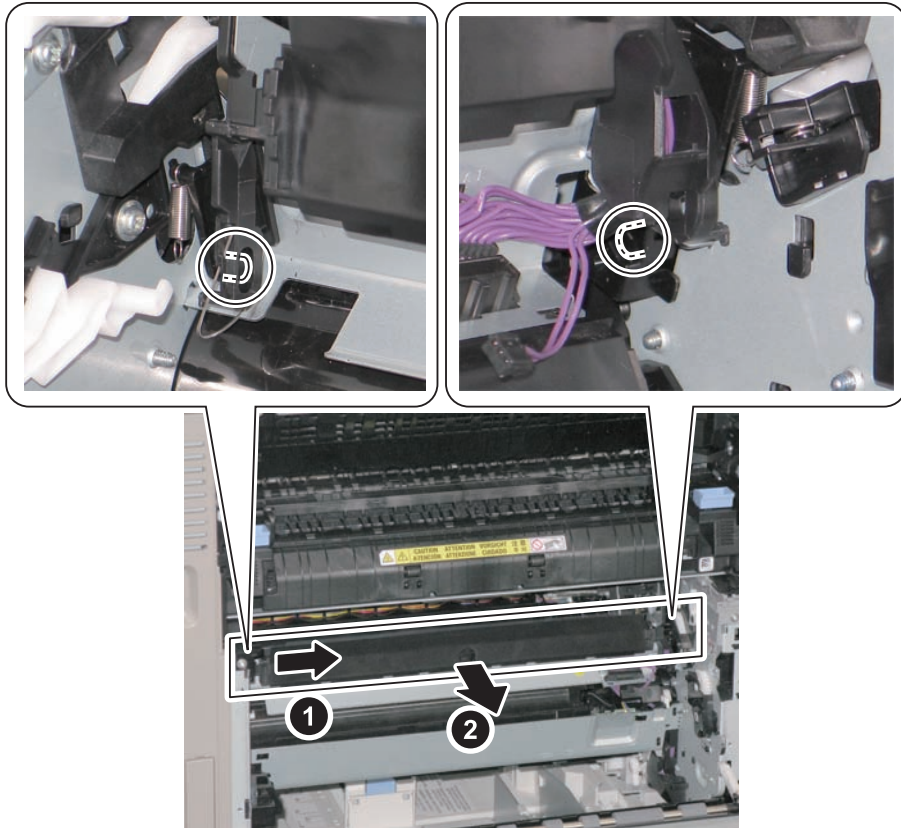
F-2-199

- 3) Remove the 2 springs (right and left).



F-2-200

4) Remove the Left Shaft in the direction of the arrow to remove the Registration Patch Sensor.



F-2-201

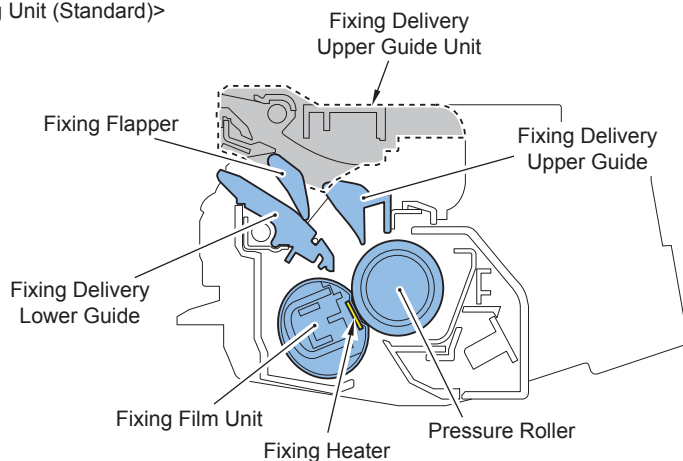
Fixing System

Overview

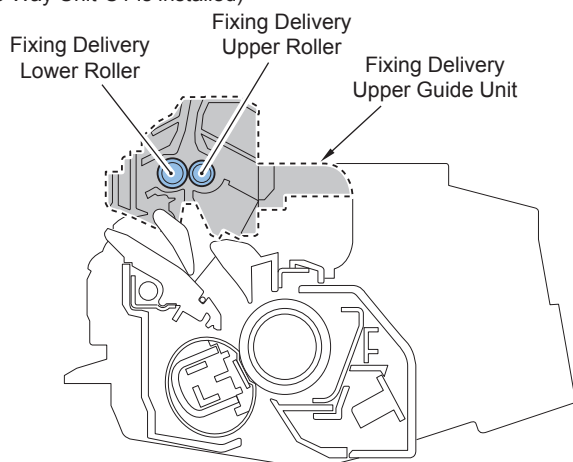
■ Features

This machine uses the on-demand fixing method.

<Fixing Unit (Standard)>



<Fixing Unit (when 3 Way Unit-C1 is installed)>



F-2-202

1. Applying a "service-less" Fixing Assembly

To replace the Fixing Assembly, a simple replacement procedure in which fixing screws do not have to be removed is realized for improving the serviceability.

2. Realizing a compact Fixing Assembly

By reducing the diameter of the Fixing Film and Pressure Roller, a compact Fixing Unit is realized.

3. Realizing improvement of fixing performance

By enhancing nip pressure and using two thermistors for fixing temperature control, highly accurate temperature control according to media is enabled.

As a result, a Fixing Assembly with high fixing performance is realized.

The Fixing Delivery Upper Guide Unit is not installed in the Fixing Assembly (service part).

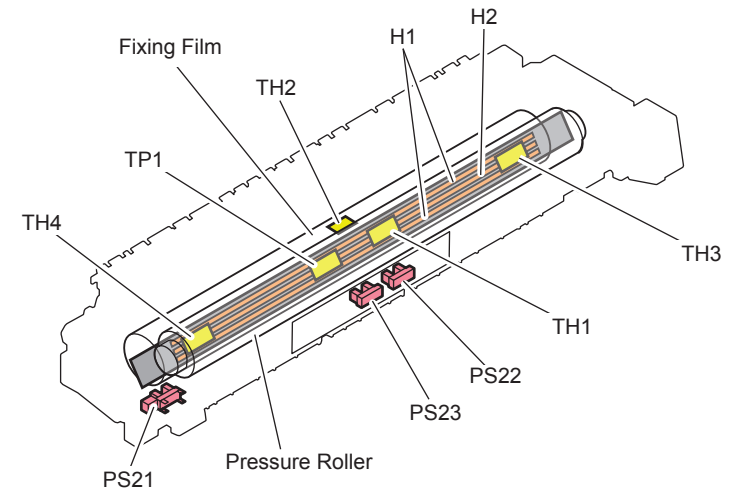
When replacing the Fixing Assembly, remove the guide from the old Fixing Assembly and attach it to the new Fixing Assembly.

■ Specifications

Item	Function/method
Fixing method	On-demand fixing
Fixing speed	135 mm/s (1/1 speed, plain paper) 67.5 mm/s (1/2 speed, heavy paper, long length heavy paper: SRA3, 12"×18")
Heater	Aluminum Heater Main Heater (Heat distribution: High at the center) / Sub Heater (Heat distribution: High at the edge) are driven independently. The heater activation rate changes according to the paper size. Purpose: To control temperature increase at the edge
Control temperature	Target temperature at printing <Plain Paper 1 (65 to 82g/m ²)> 134 to 155 deg C
Detection of temperature	Detected by Main Thermistor 1/2, Sub Thermistor 1/2.
Protection function	Main Thermistor 1/2, Sub Thermistor 1/2. When a failure is detected, power supply to Fixing Heater is shut down. Temperature fuse Rated operation temperature: 228 +0/-6 deg C

T-2-41

■ Major Components



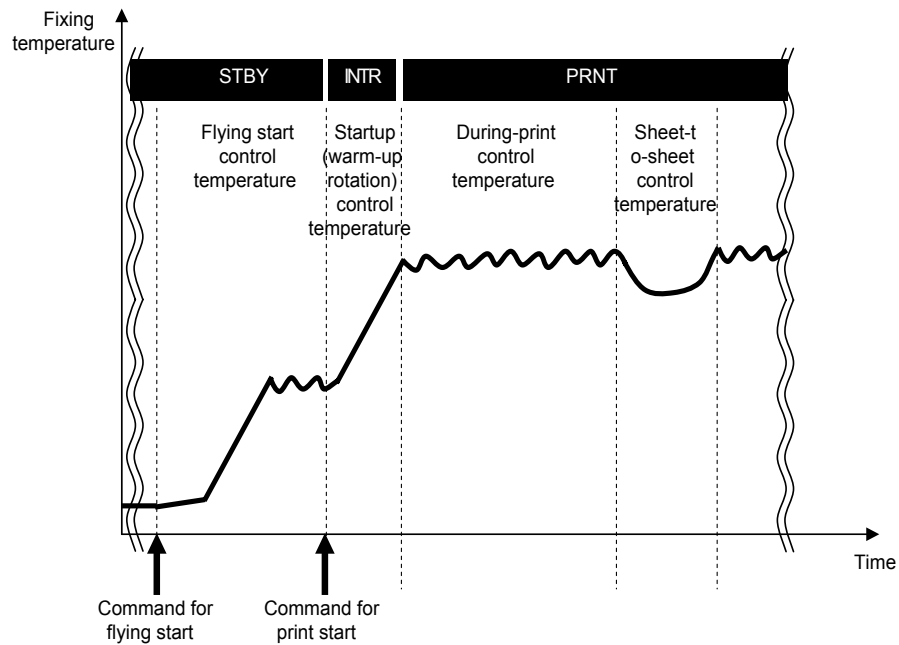
F-2-203

Parts name	Function/method	
---	Fixing Film Unit	A toner image on paper is fixed by applying heat/pressure.
---	Pressure Roller	
H1	Fixing Main Heater	For heating the center of Fixing Film (Aluminum Heater)
H2	Fixing Sub Heater	For heating the edge of Fixing Film (Aluminum Heater)
TH1	Main Thermistor 1	This is engaged with the inside surface of Film. Temperature is controlled and abnormal temperature increase is detected.
TH2	Main Thermistor 2	This is engaged with Heater. Temperature is controlled and abnormal temperature increase is detected.
TH3	Sub Thermistor 1	This is engaged with Heater. (Non paper feed area. Installed at the rear side of the host machine.) Temperature is controlled, and temperature at the edge and abnormal temperature increase are detected.
TH4	Sub Thermistor 2	This is engaged with Heater. (Non paper feed area. Installed at the front side of the host machine.) Temperature is controlled, and temperature at the edge and abnormal temperature increase are detected.
TP1	Temperature Fuse	Heater non contact type AC power supply is shut down at detection of a failure.
PS21	First Delivery Sensor	Jam detection
PS22	Loop Sensor 1	The fixing arch level is detected. (For heavy paper)
PS23	Loop Sensor 2	The fixing arch level is detected. (For other papers)

T-2-42

Controls

Overview of Fixing Temperature Control



F-2-204

• Standby Temperature Control

This control is executed to pre-heat the Fixing Assembly to reduce time to start printing.

- Flying start temperature control

• Print Temperature Control

This control is executed to increase a fixing temperature to the target level and keep it during printing.

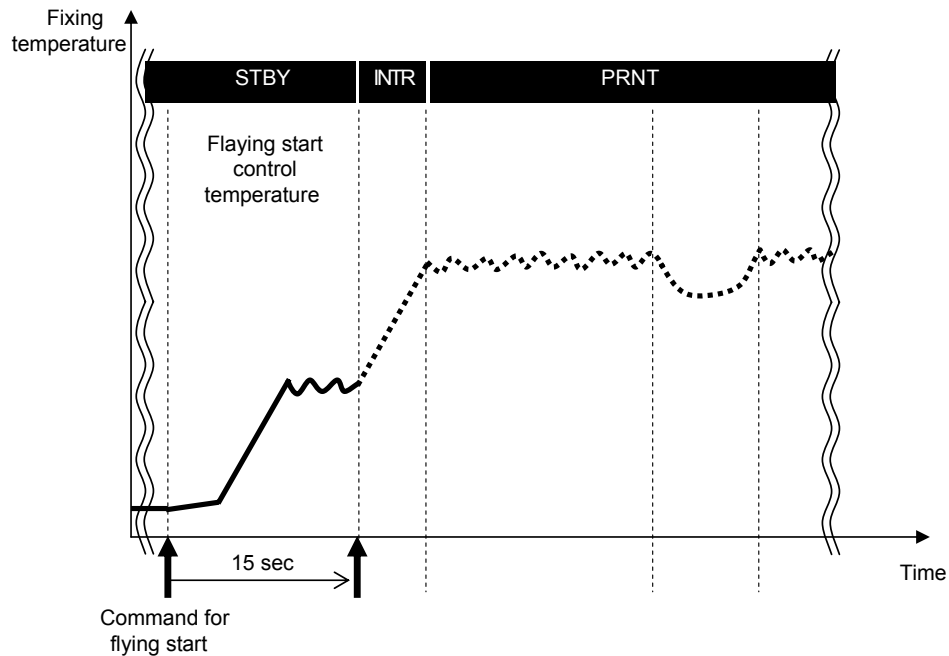
- Startup (initial rotation) temperature control
- Print temperature control
- Paper interval temperature control

• Down Sequence Control

This control is executed to prevent a fixing failure due to temperature increase at the edge or temperature decrease. Throughput decreases.

- Down sequence when small-size paper is fed
- Down sequence when the paper size is switched

■ Standby Temperature Control



F-2-205

Related service mode
(Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > FLYING
(Setting of whether or not to execute flying start)

<Setting value>

0: Flying start is executed. [Default]

1: Flying start is not executed.

● Flying start temperature control

Purpose:

To reduce time to print the first sheet (FPOT).

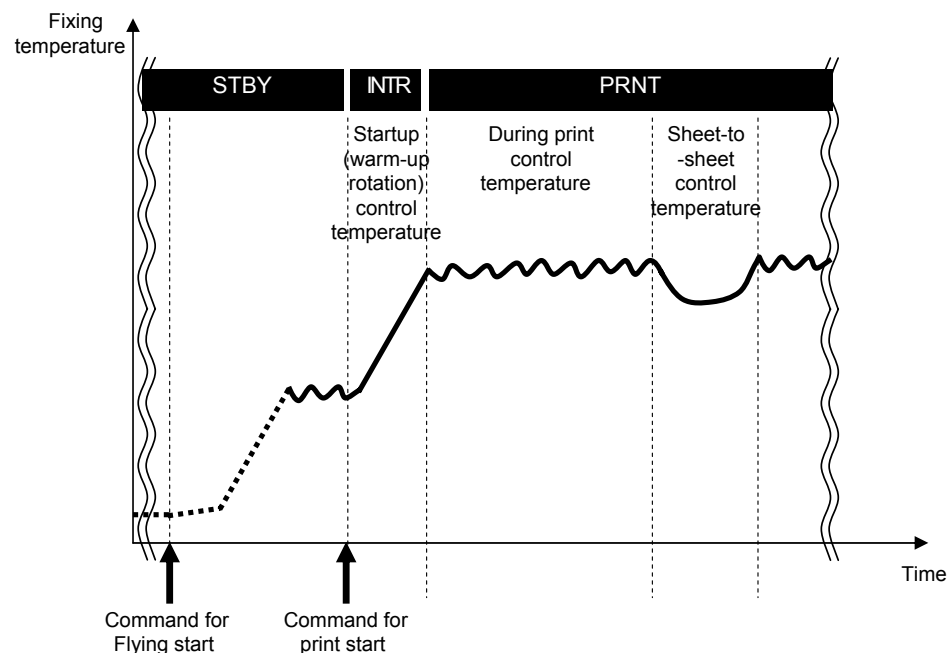
Startup condition:

- When pressing a numeric key on Control Panel
- When pressing a software key on Touch Panel
- When opening/closing the Cassette
- When recovering from sleep mode to standby mode

Control description:

A temperature is increased to a specified level (125 to 140 deg C: Main Thermistor 2: TH2) and controlled. It takes 15 seconds from the final operation.

■ Print Temperature Control



F-2-206

● Startup (initial rotation) temperature control

A fixing temperature is increased to a temperature where printing can be executed after receiving an instruction to start printing.

● Print temperature control

An appropriate target temperature is set according to the number of sheets, paper type, and environment at continuous printing.

A temperature of the Fixing Heater is controlled according to the result of detection by the Main Thermistor 1/2 (TH1/2).

Target temperature during printing

Paper type	Resolution	Fixing speed	Target temperature (deg C)
Plain paper 1 (65 to 82g/m ²), Color paper, Recycled paper	600dpi	135mm/sec (1/1 speed)	134 to 155
Plain paper 2 (83 to 99g/m ²), Pre-punched paper, Tracing paper, Washi (JPN paper), Bond paper			144 to 155
Thin paper			129 to 145
Plain paper 3 (100 to 105g/m ²)	1200dpi	67.5mm/sec (1/2 speed)	149 to 160
Plain paper 1 (65 to 82g/m ²), Color paper, Recycled paper			119 to 133
Plain paper 2 (83 to 99g/m ²), Pre-punched paper, Tracing paper, Washi (JPN paper), Bond paper			123 to 138
Thin paper	600/1200dpi		116 to 128
Plain paper 3 (100 to 105g/m ²)			126 to 143
Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120g/m ²), Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163g/m ²), 1-Sided Coated paper 1 (100 to 163g/m ²)			128 to 140
2-Sided Coated paper 1 (100 to 163g/m ²)			138 to 150
Labels (121 to 220g/m ²)			132 to 140
1-Sided Coated paper 2 (106 to 163g/m ²), 2-Sided Coated paper 2 (164 to 200g/m ²), Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220g/m ²), Postcard, 4 on 1 Postcard			
Envelope	129 to 145		
Transparency	132 to 147		132 to 147
Plain paper wide (60 to 105g/m ²)			140 to 145
Heavy paper 1 wide (106 to 120g/m ²)			145 to 150
Heavy paper 2 wide (121 to 163g/m ²)			
Heavy paper 3 wide (164 to 220g/m ²)			

T-2-43

* Wide: 12"×18" (305mm x 457mm), SRA3 (320mm x 450mm)

● Paper interval temperature control

A paper interval temperature is decreased to prevent temperature increase when the paper interval became wider than a normal condition ^{*1}.

Paper Interval Temperature = Target temperature during printing - (15 to 30 deg C) ^{*2}

*1: At down sequence

- An interval between the first side and the second side at 2-sided printing
- At execution of controls (ATR control, registration control, ATVC control)

*2: Determined according to the time which elapsed from when fixing temperature control (including standby control) finished last time and the fixing temperature when startup control started.

Related service mode:

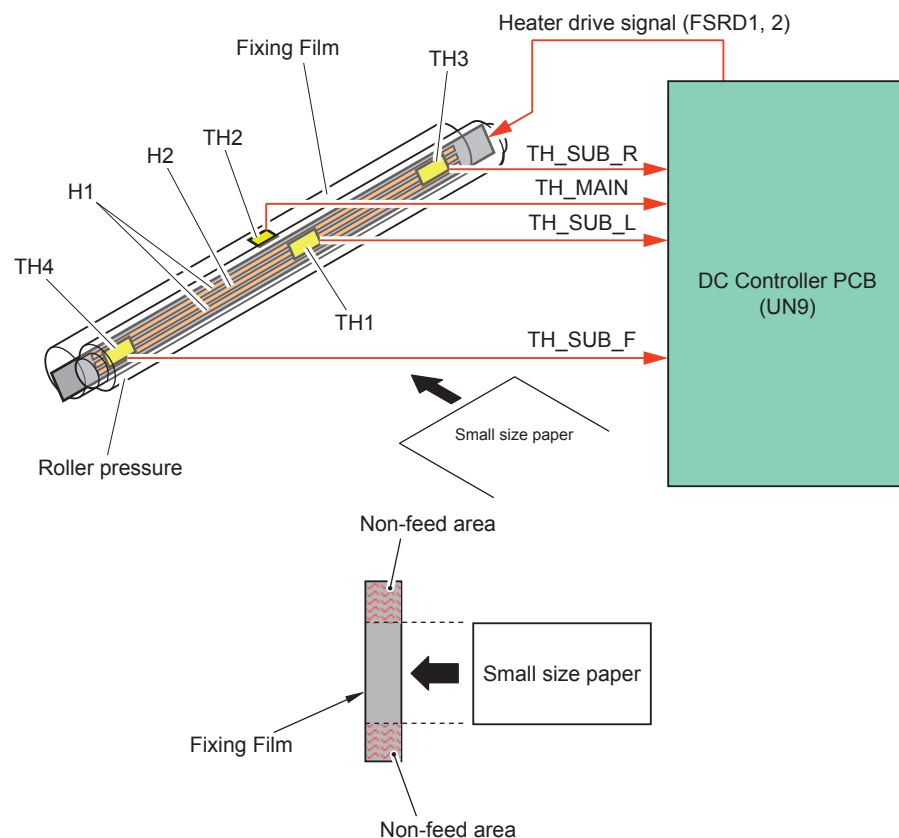
- Display of Thermistor detection temperature
(Lv.1) COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG
> FIX-C (Main Thermistor 2 detection temperature)
> FIX-E (Main Thermistor 1 detection temperature)
> FIX-E2 (Sub Thermistor 2 detection temperature)
> FIX-E3 (Sub Thermistor 2 detection temperature)
- Fixing temperature control offset
(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > CUSTUM
> TEMP-TBL (1/1Speed: Plain paper 1 to 3, Thin Paper)
(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX
> TMP-TBL2 (1/2Speed: Heavy paper 1 to 3)
> TMP-TBL4 (1/2Speed: Plain paper 1 to 3, Thin Paper)
> TMP-TBL5 (OHT)
> TMP-TBL6 (Envelope)

<Setting value>

TH1 offset temperature	TH2 offset temperature
-2: -10 deg C	-2: -5 deg C
-1: -5 deg C	-1: -2.5 deg C
0: 0 deg C [Default]	0: 0 deg C [Default]
+1: +5 deg C	+1: +2.5 deg C
+2: +10 deg C	+2: +5 deg C

Down Sequence Control

Down sequence when small-size paper is fed



F-2-207

Purpose:

Deterioration of the Fixing Offset and Fixing Film is prevented by controlling temperature increase at a non paper feed area at continuous printing of small-size paper (paper with the width direction size of less than LTR)

Startup condition:

Executed when the detection temperature by the Sub Thermistor 1 (TH3) or Sub Thermistor 2 (TH4) exceeded a specified temperature (235 to 270 deg C) during printing.

Operation:

A temperature is decreased by increasing a paper interval, and the temperature is controlled at a slightly lower level than the target temperature at normal printing

Paper type (): Paper weight (g/m ²)	Resolution (600/1200dpi) *	Target temperature (deg C)	Print speed (ppm)
Plain paper 1 (65 to 82) / Recycled paper (65 to 82) / Pre-punched paper / Tracing paper / Washi (JPN paper) (93)	600	134 to 155	15 to 4
Thin paper (60 to 64) / Color paper (65 to 82)		129 to 145	
Plain paper 2 (83 to 105) / Bond paper (80 to 90)		144 to 160	
Plain paper 1 (65 to 82) / Recycled paper (65 to 82) / Pre-punched paper / Tracing paper / Washi (JPN paper) (93)	1200	119 to 133	8 to 2
Thin paper (60 to 64) / Color paper (65 to 82)		116 to 128	
Plain paper 2 (83 to 105) / Bond paper (80 to 90)		123 to 143	
Heavy paper 1 (106 to 163) / Heavy paper 2 (164 to 209) / Coated paper 1 (106 to 163)	600/1200dpi	128 to 140	
Heavy paper 3 (210 to 220) / Texture paper (150) / Postcard, 4 on 1 Postcard (190) / Tab paper (160 to 203) / Coated paper 2 (164 to 209)		138 to 150	
Envelope		132 to 140	
Transparency		129 to 145	

T-2-44

* Half-speed control is executed for 1200dpi processing.

Related service mode:

- Down sequence start temperature setting when small-size paper is fed (Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > IMG-SPD > FX-D-TMP

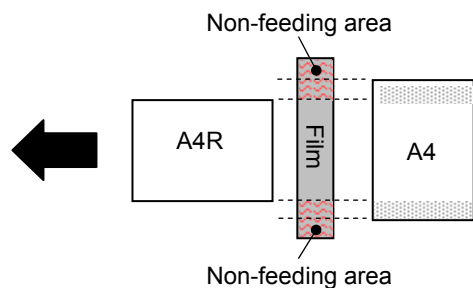
<Setting value>

-4:	-8 deg C
-3:	-6 deg C
-2:	-4 deg C
-1:	-2 deg C
0:	0 deg C [Default]
+1:	+2 deg C
+2:	+4 deg C
+3:	+6 deg C
+4:	+8 deg C

• Down sequence when the paper size is switched

Purpose:

During continuous printing, when a succeeding sheet with a wider width than a preceding sheet is fed, temperature at the non paper feed area increases, and it may cause fixing offset and wrinkles, etc. This down sequence controls temperature increase at the non paper feed area.



F-2-208

Startup condition:

Executed when the difference between the higher temperature detected by either Sub Thermistor 1 (TH3) or Sub Thermistor 2 (TH4) and the temperature of the Main Thermistor (TH1) is the specified temperature (5 to 30 deg C) or higher at the timing when a sheet with a wider width than a preceding sheet is fed during printing.

Operation:

The paper interval is increased to decrease temperature, and feeding the succeeding sheet and power supply to the Heater are stopped.

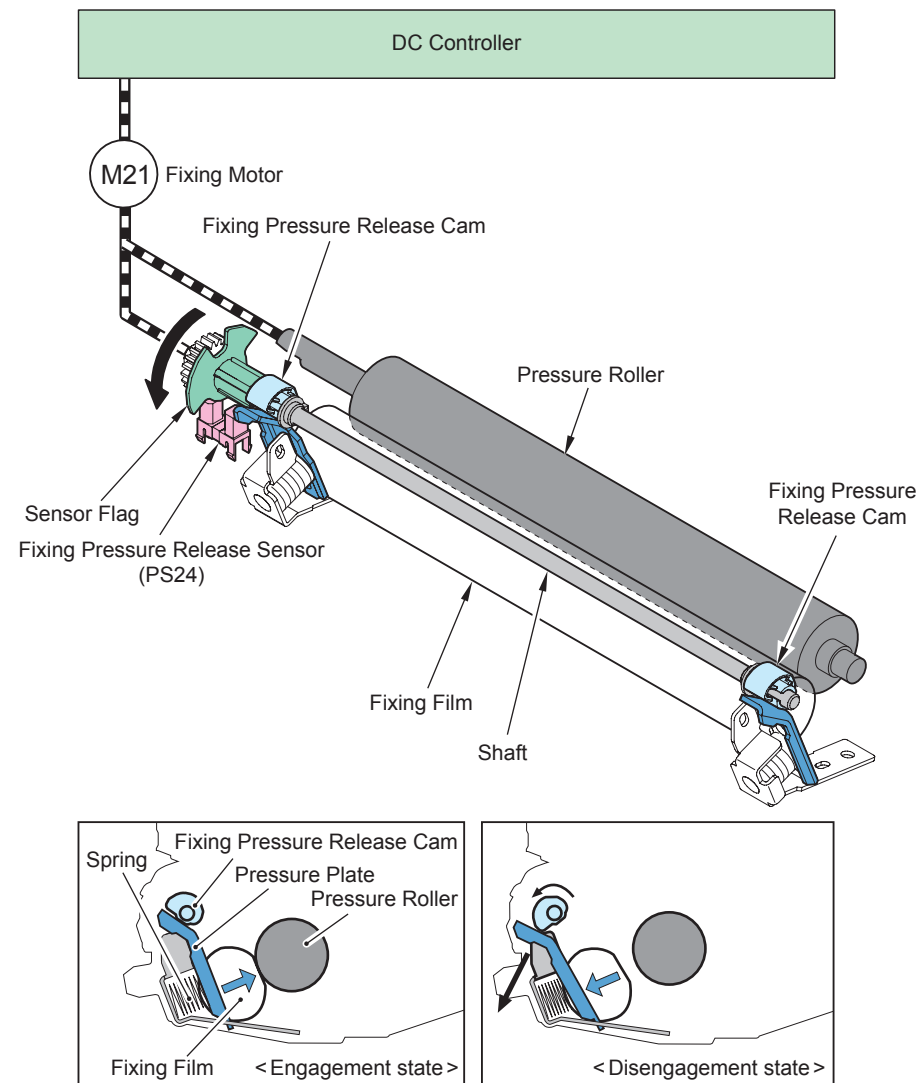
Termination condition:

This down sequence is terminated at the point when any of the following conditions is satisfied.

- The difference between the higher temperature detected by either Sub Thermistor 1 (TH3) or Sub Thermistor 2 (TH4) and the temperature of the Main Thermistor 1 (TH1) has become the specified temperature (5 to 30 deg C) or less.
- 30 seconds at maximum have elapsed since the preceding sheet passed the Fixing Nip.

■ Film Unit Engagement/Disengagement Control

The Fixing Film Unit is disengaged from the Pressure Roller under a specific condition for the purpose of preventing deformation of the Fixing Film/Pressure Roller due to heat and pressure when the drive of the Pressure Roller stops and improving a jam removal processing.



F-2-209

Execution condition/timing of engagement operation:

- When the unit is disengaged at power-on
- At recovery from sleep mode
- At recovery after jam removal
- When closing the Front Cover/Right Cover

Execution condition/timing of disengagement operation:

- When turning OFF the power
- When detecting a jam at power-on
- At transition to sleep mode
(When the power switch on the Control Panel is turned OFF, and the setup time for transition to sleep mode has elapsed)
- At occurrence of a jam
- At occurrence of an error

Related error code:

E009-0000 (Fixing Film Unit engagement/disengagement error)

There is no change in the result of detection by the Fixing Pressure Release Sensor even after five seconds elapsed after counterclockwise rotation of the Fixing Motor started.

■ Fixing Arch Control

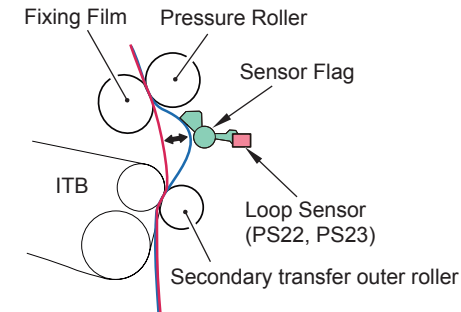
This machine executes fixing loop control to prevent image and feeding failures.

Fixing loop control is executed to prevent image and feeding failures by keeping the slack of paper between the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller and Pressure Roller to a specified level. Since the feeding speed of the Pressure Roller and that of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller are not completely the same when a sheet is fed to the Fixing Assembly, the following problems occur.

When the feeding speed of the Pressure Roller is slower than that of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, the slack of paper becomes larger, causing an image failure or paper wrinkle.

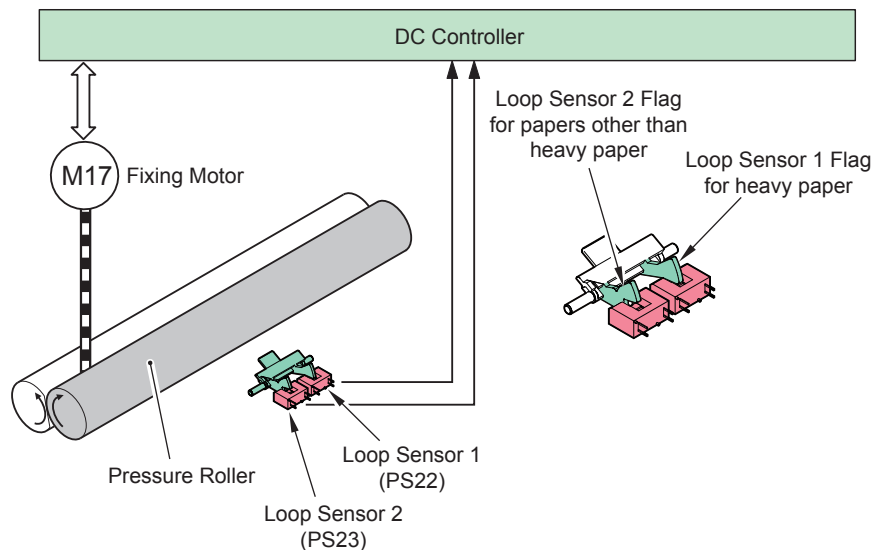
When the feeding speed of the Pressure Roller is faster than that of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, the slack of paper becomes smaller, causing incorrect transfer of a toner image, and an image expansion occurs.

The following figure shows the slack of paper.



F-2-210

To prevent this symptom, two Arch Sensors located at the inlet of the Fixing Assembly detect the slack of paper, and the DC Controller controls the rotation speed of the Fixing Motor. This keeps an appropriate level of paper slack.

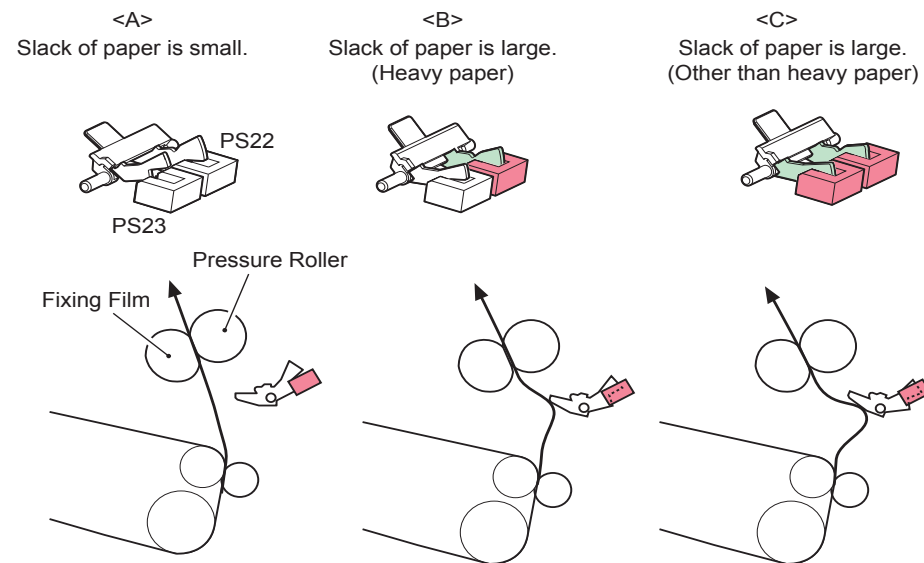


F-2-211

Two Arch Sensors are explained below.

Arch Sensor 1 (PS22): Detects slack of paper when heavy paper is fed.

Arch Sensor 2 (PS23): Detects slack of paper when plain paper other than heavy paper is fed.



F-2-212

Illustration No.	Arch Sensor (PS22)	Arch Sensor (PS23)	Operation of Fixing Motor	
			Heavy paper	Paper other than heavy paper
A	OFF	OFF	Speed decreases.	Speed decreases
B	ON	OFF	Speed increases.	Speed increases.
C	ON	ON		

T-2-45

NOTE:

As for heavy paper, when the slack of paper is large and the trailing edge of the paper goes through the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, the slack is rapidly removed because the paper elasticity is strong. As a result, the trailing edge of the paper oscillates, which may cause unfixed toner on the paper to scatter.

To prevent this problem, this machine has a sensor (PS22) to control the arch volume of heavy paper.

■ Fixing Assembly Detection

Presence of the Fixing Assembly is judged by a Fixing Assembly detection signal (/FSR_OPEN), which is input to the DC Controller at warm-up rotation (power-on, opening the cover).

When it is judged that the Fixing Assembly is absent, the machine displays "The fixing unit is not set. Please check the manual and set it correctly." and stops operation.

Signal	Judgment result
Fixing Assembly detection signal (/FSR_OPEN)	High: Fixing Assembly is absent. Low: Fixing Assembly is present.

■ Protection function

Code	Description	Clearing of error
E001	Detection of abnormal high temperature	
0001	Main Thermistor 1 (TH1) detected a temperature of 230 deg C or higher for more than 0.1 second.	Clear
0002	Main Thermistor 2 (TH2) detected a temperature of 283 deg C or higher for more than 0.1 second.	Clear
0003	Sub Thermistor 1 (TH3) detected a temperature of 283 deg C or higher for more than 0.1 second.	Clear
0004	Sub Thermistor 2 (TH4) detected a temperature of 283 deg C or higher for more than 0.1 second.	Clear
0005	Main Thermistor 2 hardware error detection signal executed detection for more than 1 second. (Hardware error detection temperature: 288 deg C)	Clear
0006	Sub Thermistor 1 hardware error detection signal executed detection for more than 1 second. (Hardware error detection temperature: 288 deg C)	Clear
0007	Sub Thermistor 2 hardware error detection signal executed detection for more than 1 second. (Hardware error detection temperature: 288 deg C)	Clear
0008	The temperature difference between the Sub Thermistor 1 (TH3) and the Sub Thermistor 2 (TH4) remained 45 deg C or more for 1 second or more.	Clear
E002	Detection of abnormal temperature increase	
0006	At startup while Fixing Motor is rotating, the temperature of Main Thermistor 1 (TH1) does not increase by 1 deg C or more per second.	Clear
E003	Detection of low temperature	
0001	In the period from initial rotation to printing, Main Thermistor 1 detected a temperature of 22 deg C or lower for more than 5 seconds.	Clear
0002	In the period from initial rotation to printing, Main Thermistor 2 detected a temperature of 40 deg C or lower for more than 3 seconds.	Clear
0003	In the period from initial rotation to printing, Sub Thermistor 1 detected a temperature of 40 deg C or lower for more than 3 seconds.	Clear
0004	In the period from initial rotation to printing, Sub Thermistor 2 detected a temperature of 40 deg C or lower for more than 3 seconds.	Clear
0005	In the period from printing to last rotation, Main Thermistor 1 detected a temperature of 70 deg C or lower for more than 5 seconds.	Clear
0006	In the period from printing to last rotation, Main Thermistor 2 detected a temperature of 80 deg C or lower for more than 1 second.	Clear
0007	In the period from printing to last rotation, Sub Thermistor 1 detected a temperature of 80 deg C or lower for more than 1 second.	Clear
0008	In the period from printing to last rotation, Sub Thermistor 2 detected a temperature of 80 deg C or lower for more than 1 second.	Clear

Code	Description	Clearing of error
E004	Detection of a failure in fixing heater drive circuit	
0001	Fixing Relay welding detection error	Not needed.
0005	Failure in electrical current detection circuit (Less than the specified range of current value)	Not needed
0006	Failure in electrical current detection circuit (More than the specified range of current value)	Not needed
E009	Fixing Film Unit engagement/disengagement error	
0000	There is no change in the result of detection by the Fixing Pressure Release Sensor even after five seconds elapsed after counterclockwise rotation of the Fixing Motor started.	Not needed
E808	Detection of a failure in zero cross circuit	Not needed
0001	A failure of zero cross detection signal was detected for more than 5 seconds after power-on.	Not needed
0002	A failure of zero cross detection signal was detected for more than 0.5 seconds after startup of Fixing Assembly.	Not needed

T-2-46

Service Tasks

Periodically Replaced Parts

None.

Consumable Parts

Parts name	Parts number	Quantity	Estimated life (sheets)	Counter (DRBL-1)	Adjustment	Remarks
1 Fixing Assembly	FM4-6226	1	150000	FX-UNIT	None	100V
	FM4-6227					120V
	FM4-6228					230V

T-2-47

List of Periodical Service Works

None.

Actions at Parts Replacement

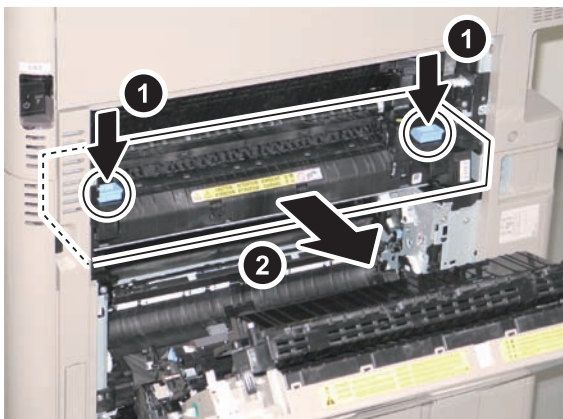
None.

Disassembly/Assembly - Fixing System -

Removing the Fixing Assembly

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover.
- 2) Hold the right and left grips and pull out the Fixing Assembly to the direction of the arrow.

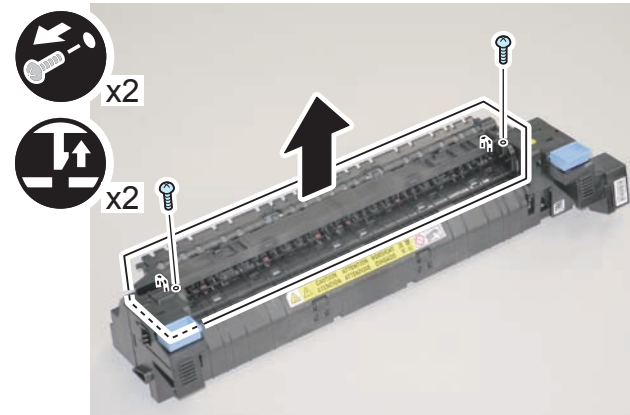


F-2-213

CAUTION:

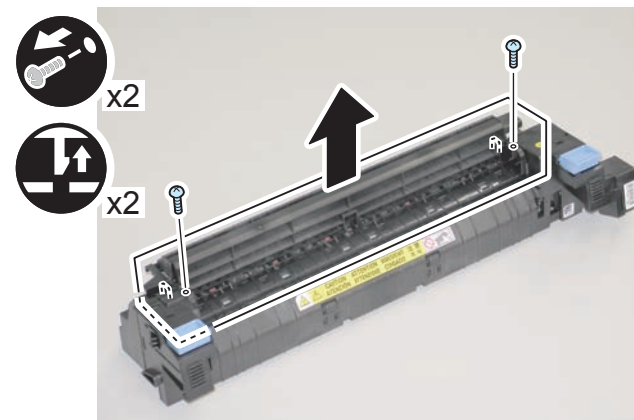
- Be careful when removing the Fixing Assembly because it is hot immediately after the power is turned OFF.
- Do not discard the assembly with the Delivery Guide attached.

- 3) Remove the 2 screws securing the Fixing Delivery Upper Guide.



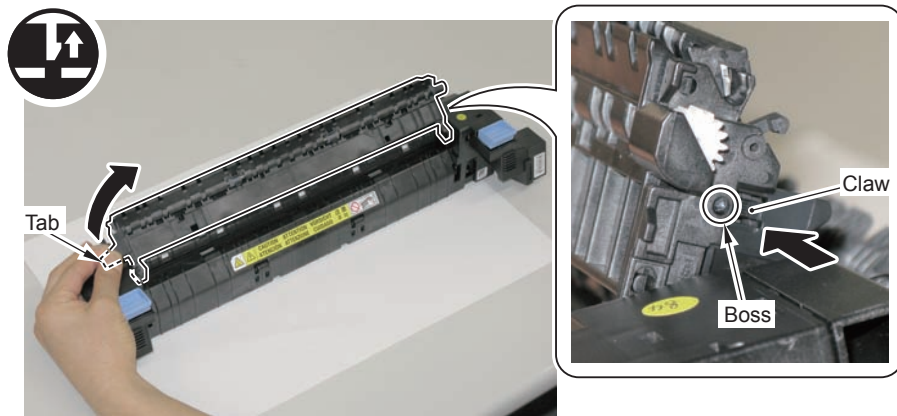
F-2-214

<When installing the Expansion Delivery Kit-C1>



F-2-215

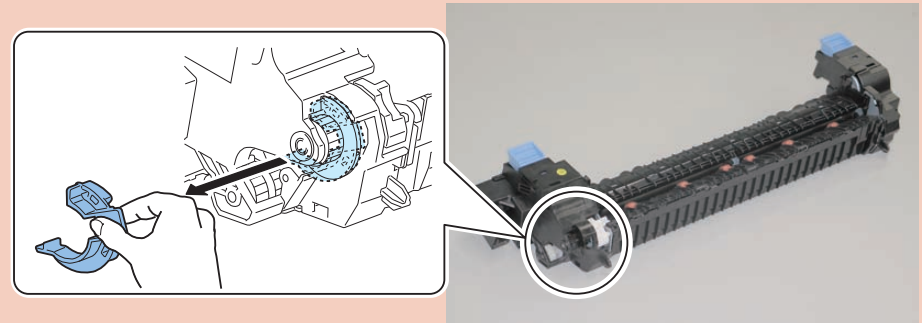
4) Lift the tab, push the claw to free the boss, and remove the Fixing Delivery Upper Guide.



F-2-216

CAUTION:

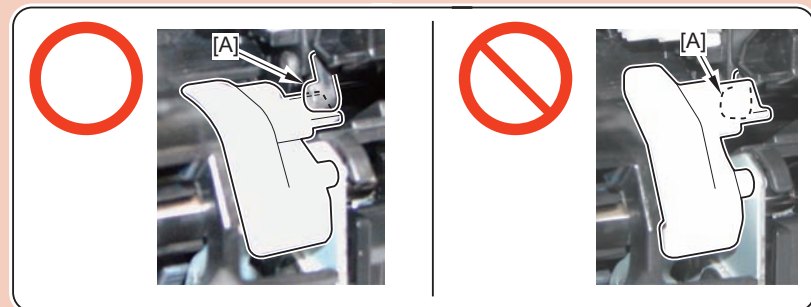
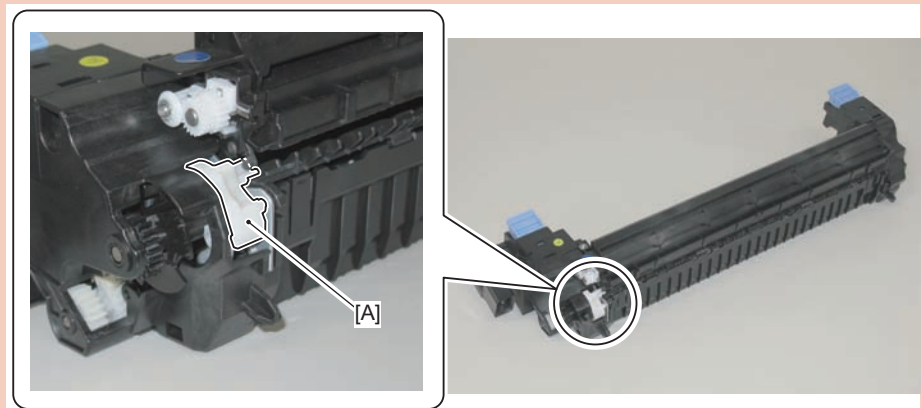
1) When attaching a new Fixing Assembly, remove the fixation member.



2) After installing the Fixing Delivery Guide, check that [A] moves.

F-2-217

(If it doesn't move, the Flapper will not operate properly and jam will occur.)

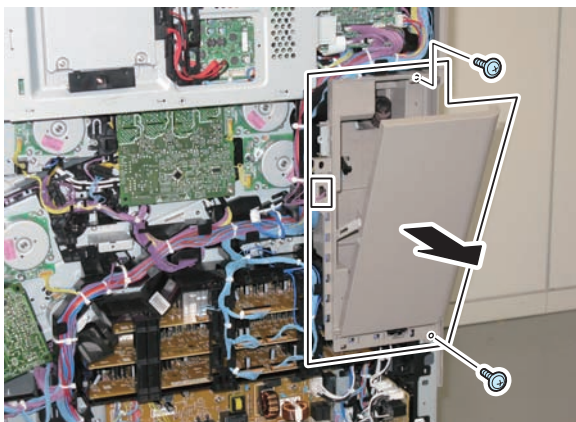


Removing the Fixing Drive Unit

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Connector Cover.
- 3) Remove the Rear Cover.
- 4) Open the Right lower Cover.
- 5) Remove the Fixing Assembly.
- 6) Remove the Waste Toner Container.
- 7) Remove the Waste Toner Storage Box.

- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws



F-2-218

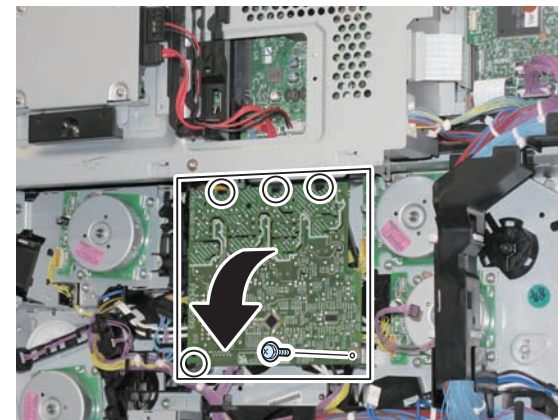
CAUTION:

In case of the FAX model, be sure to remove the FAX

Procedure

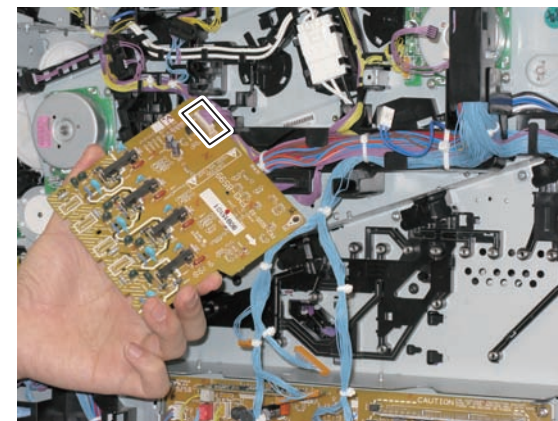
- 1) Remove the Primary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB.

- 1 Screw
- 4 Claws



- 2) Disconnect the connector from the Primary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB.

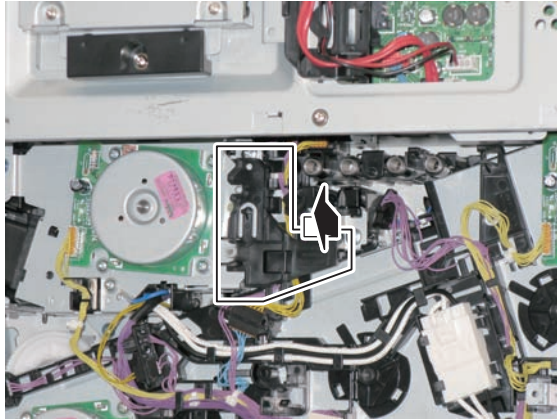
- 1 Connector



F-2-220

3) Remove the Harness Cover.

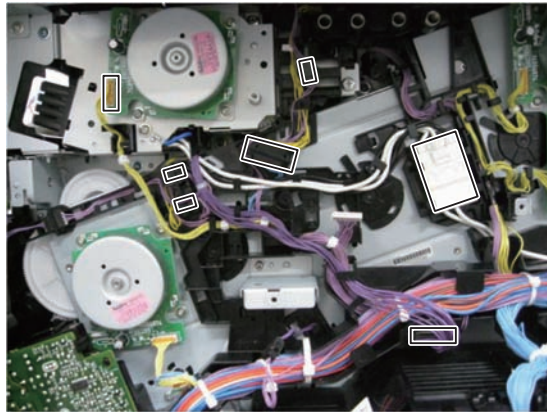
- 1 Claw



F-2-221

4) Disconnect the connectors.

- 7 Connectors



F-2-222

5) Remove the connectors in step 4 from the guides.

6) Remove the Right Rear Sub Cover.

- 1 Screw



F-2-223

7) Remove the Inner Guide 1.

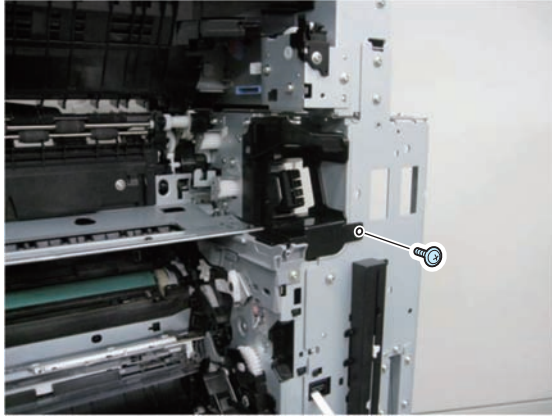
- 1 Screw



F-2-224

8) Remove the Inner Guide 2.

- 1 Screw



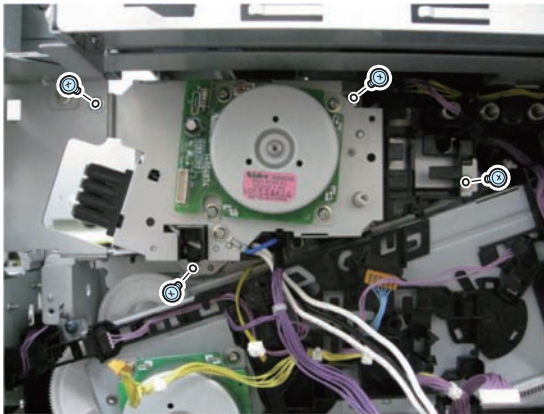
F-2-225

9) Remove the Fixing Drive Unit.

- 4 Screws



x4



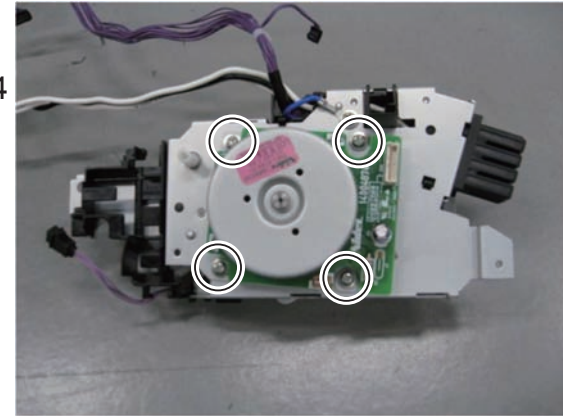
F-2-226

10) Remove the Fixing Motor.

- 4 Screws



x4



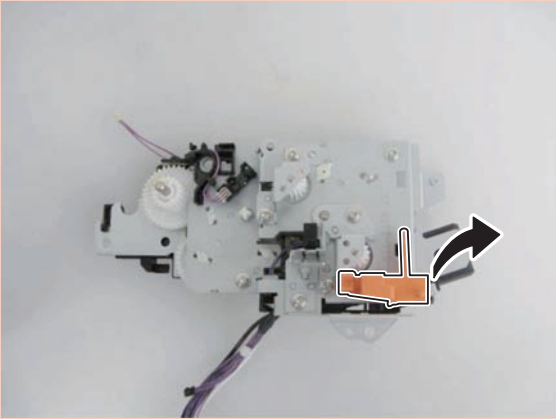
F-2-227

CAUTION:

Be careful not to dispose of the Fixing Motor together with the old Fixing Drive Unit since it is a different part from the new Fixing Drive Unit.

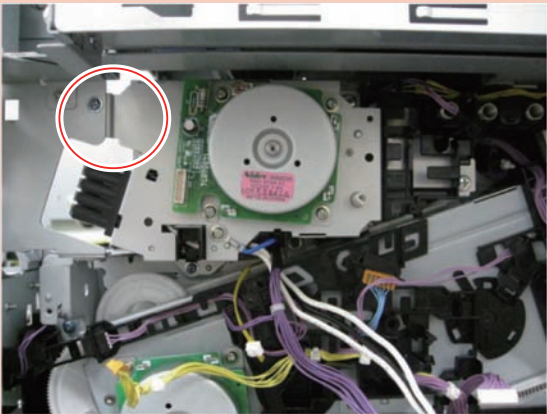
Points to Note at Installation:

1) When installing a new Fixing Drive, remove the positioning member



2) Be sure to pay attention to the positional relation of the plate in the figure when assembling.

Be sure that the plate in the Fixing Drive side is located inside the frame body of the host machine.



Pickup Feed System

Overview

■ Features

- Pickup mechanism
 - Since the pickup mechanism of Cassette 1 differs from that of Cassette 2, the stacking capacity, available paper sizes, and paper weight differ.
- Improvement of productivity
 - Nonstop registration control enables image matching without stopping a paper at the registration position, and improved productivity.
- Automatic paper size recognition by cassettes
 - Automatic paper size recognition is achieved by using two size switches and side plates. A user does not need to set the size of paper other than special paper.
- Increased stack capacity in the Multi-purpose Tray
 - The stack capacity increased from 50 sheets to 100 sheets.

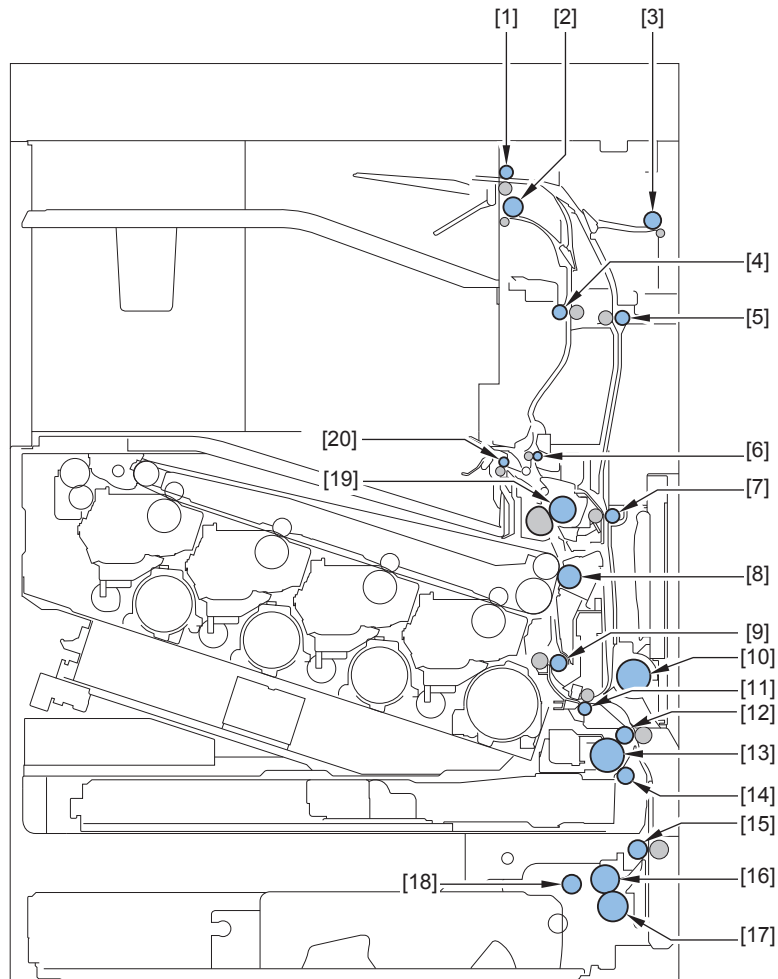
■ Specification

Item		Description
Paper storage method		Front loading method
Pickup method	Cassette 1	Simple Separation Roller method (Pickup Roller + Separation Roller)
	Cassette 2	Separation Roller method (Pickup Roller + Delivery Roller + Separation Roller)
	Multi-purpose tray	Separation Pad method (Pickup Roller + Separation Pad)
Paper stack capacity	Cassette 1	250 sheets (80g/m2 paper) / 520 sheets (80g/m2 paper)
	Cassette 2	550 sheets (80g/m2 paper)
	Multi-purpose tray	100 sheets (64g/m2 paper)
Paper feed reference		Center reference
Paper size	Cassette 1 (250 Sheets)	Standard (universal) A3,B4,A4,A4R,B5,B5R,A5R,LDR,LGL,LTR,LTRR, K8,K16
	Cassette 1 (520 Sheets)	Standard (universal) A3,B4,A4,B5,LTR,EXE,K8,K16
	Cassette 2	Standard (universal) A3,B4,A4,A4R,B5,B5R,A5R,LDR,LGL,LTR,LTRR, K8,K16,EXEC,STMTR,12"×18"
	Multi-purpose tray	A3,B4,A4,A4R,B5,A5,A5R,LDR,LGL,LTR,LTRR,K8,K16,EXEC,STMT,S TMTR,12"×18",SRA3,postcard, envelope, non-standard size (99mm x 140mm to 320mm x 457mm)
Paper grammage	Cassette 1	60-120g/m2
	Cassette 2	60-163g/m2
	Multi-purpose tray	60-220g/m2
Paper size switch	Cassette 1, 2	Size auto detection
	Multi-purpose tray	Input from the operation panel by uses
2-sided print method		Through path method
Paper level display		Yes
OHP detection		No
Lead edge margin	1-side	4.0mm +/-1.0mm
	2-side	4.0mm +1.5/-1.0mm
Left edge margin	1-side	2.5mm +/-1.5mm
	2-side	2.5mm +/-2.0mm

T-2-48

■ Parts Configuration

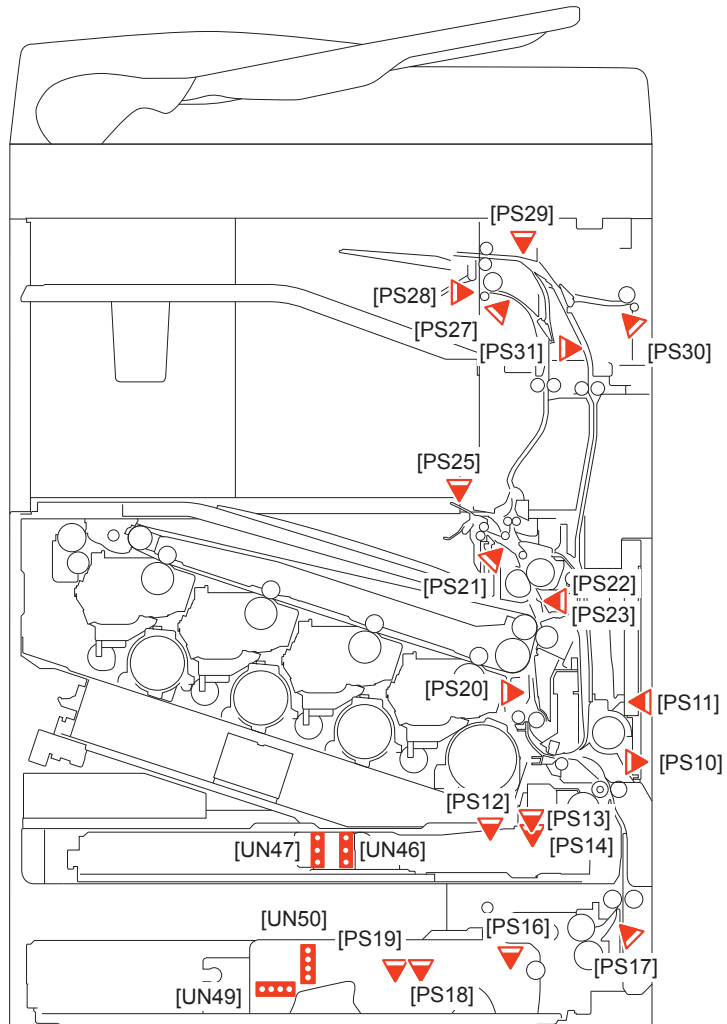
● Roller Layout Drawing



F-2-228

- | | |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| [1] Reverse Roller | [11] Merging Roller |
| [2] Second Delivery Roller | [12] Cassette 1 Vertical Path Roller |
| [3] Third Delivery Roller | [13] Cassette 1 Pickup Roller |
| [4] Second / Third Delivery Inlet Roller | [14] Cassette 1 Separation Roller |
| [5] Duplex Feed Upper Roller | [15] Cassette 2 Vertical Path Roller |
| [6] Fixing Delivery Upper Roller | [16] Cassette 2 Feed Roller |
| [7] Duplex Feed Lower Roller | [17] Cassette 2 Separation Roller |
| [8] Primary Transfer Outer Roller | [18] Cassette 2 Pickup Roller |
| [9] Registration Roller | [19] Roller Pressure |
| [10] Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller | [20] First Delivery Roller |

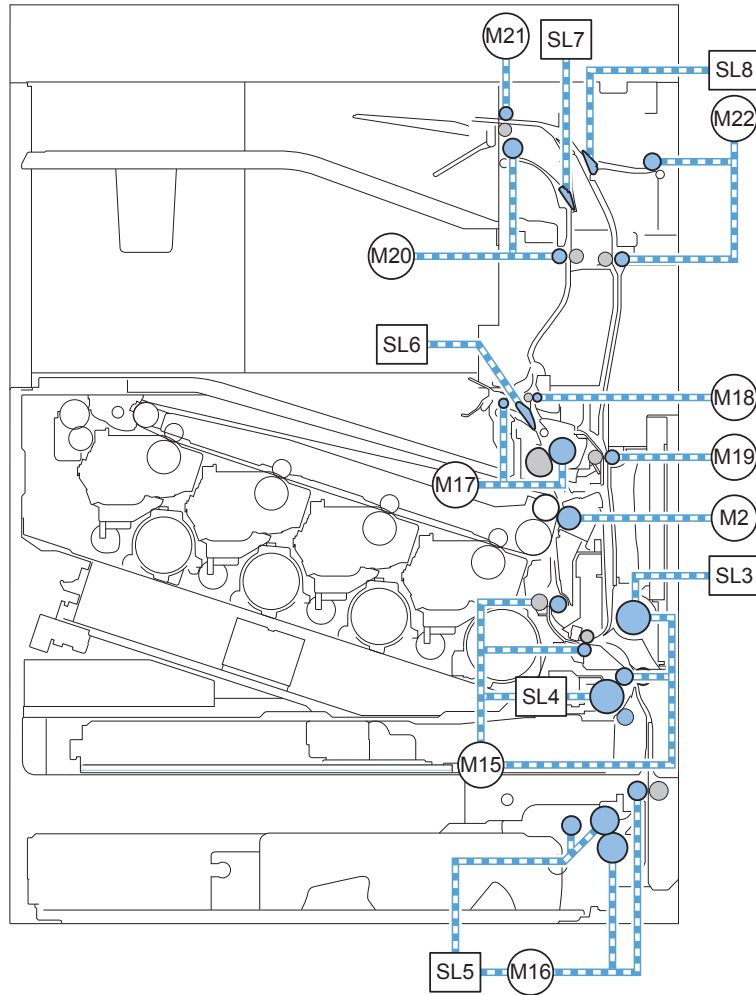
- Sensor/Switch Layout Drawing



F-2-229

PS10	Multi-purpose Tray Paper Sensor	PS25	First Delivery Tray Paper Full Sensor
PS11	Multi-purpose Tray Last Paper Sensor	PS27	Second Delivery Sensor
PS12/PS26	Cassette Lifter Sensor	PS28	Second Delivery Tray Full Sensor
PS13	Cassette 1 Paper Sensor	PS29	Reverse Sensor
PS14	Cassette 1 Paper Level Sensor	PS30	Third Delivery Sensor
PS16	Cassette 2 Paper Sensor	PS31	Duplex Sensor
PS17	Cassette 2 Vertical Path Sensor	UN46	Cassette 1 Size Switch A
PS18	Cassette 2 Paper Level Sensor A	UN47	Cassette 1 Size Switch B
PS19	Cassette 2 Paper Level Sensor B	UN49	Cassette 2 Size Switch A
PS20	Registration Sensor	UN50	Cassette 2 Size Switch B
PS21	First Delivery Sensor		
PS22	Arch Sensor 1		
PS23	Arch Sensor 2		

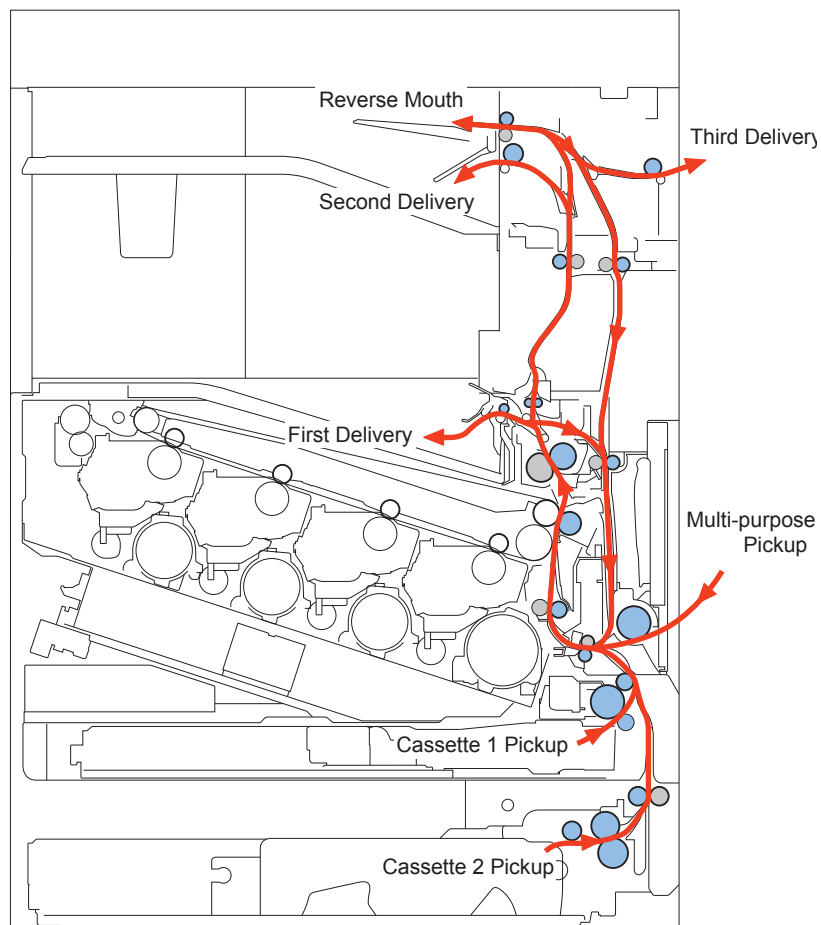
- Load Driving Drawing



F-2-230

M15	Cassette 1 Pickup Motor	SL3	Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Solenoid
M16	Cassette 2 Pickup Motor	SL4	Cassette 1 Pickup Solenoid
M17	Fixing Motor	SL5	Cassette 2 Pickup Solenoid
M18	Fixing Outlet Motor	SL6	First Delivery Flapper Solenoid
M19	Duplex Feed Motor	SL7	Second Delivery Flapper Solenoid
M20	Second Delivery Motor	SL8	Third Delivery Flapper Solenoid
M21	Reverse Motor		
M22	Third Delivery Motor		

■ Paper path



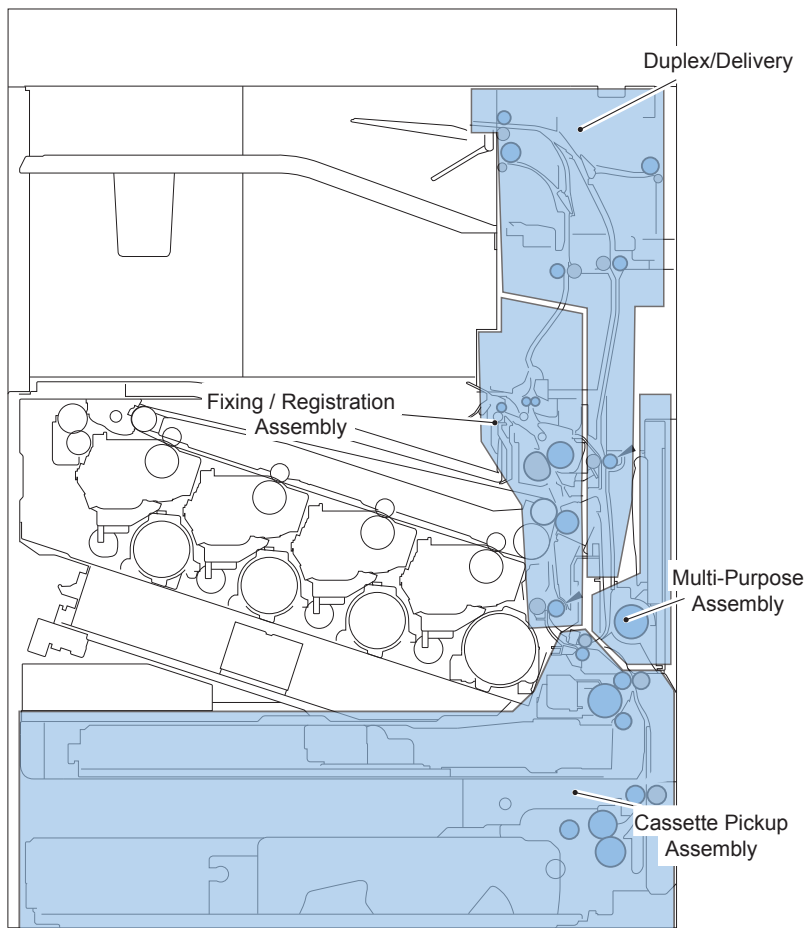
F-2-231

To feed heavy paper, the feed path in the Duplex Feed Assembly is made gently curved to minimize damage to the paper.

The paper feed speed is 135mm/sec.

Various Controls

Overview



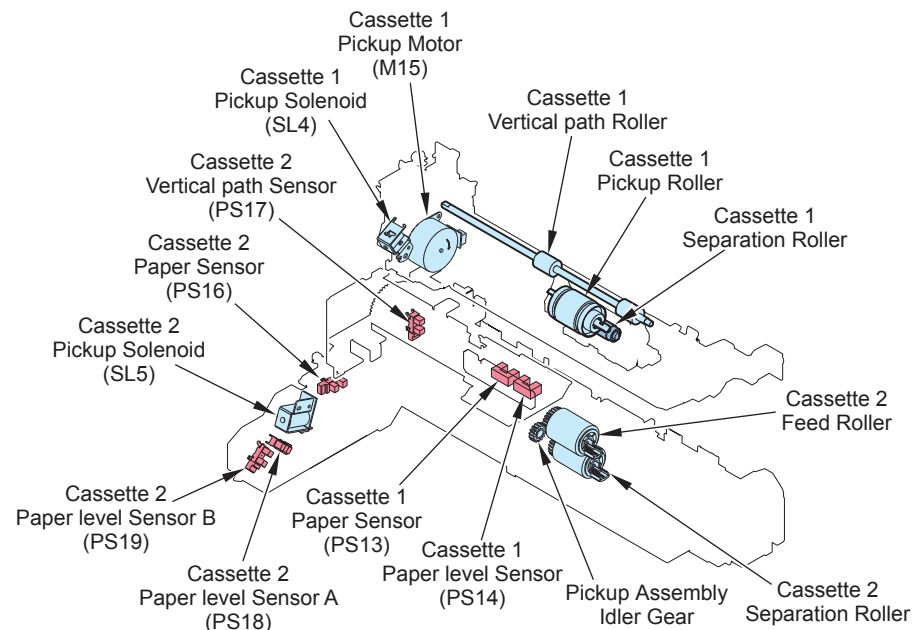
F-2-232

Area	Detection,Control
JAM Detection	JAM Detection

T-2-49

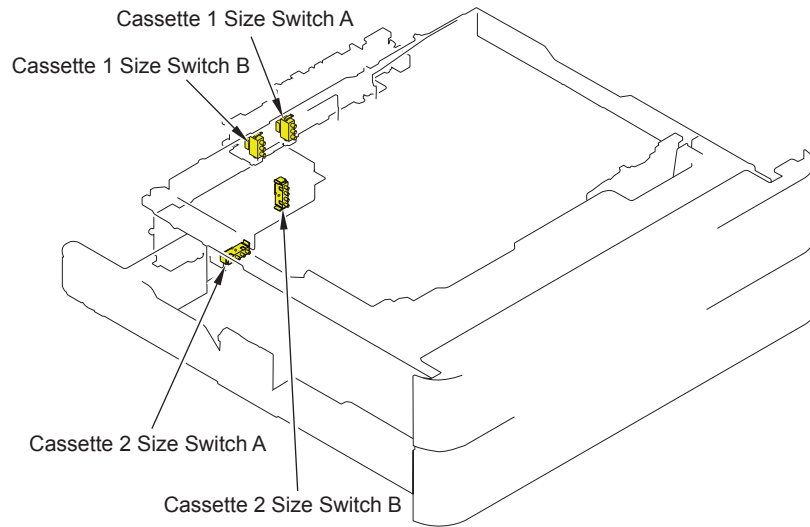
Cassette Pickup Assembly

Parts Configuration



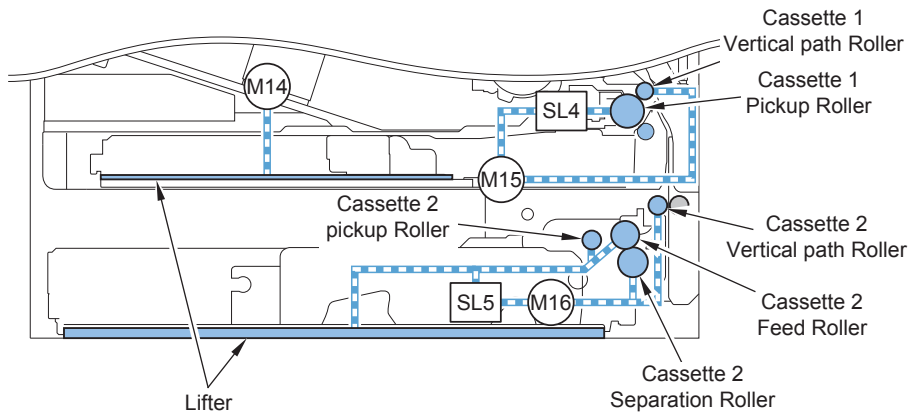
F-2-233

Area	Detection,Control
Cassette	Paper Level / Presence Detection
	Paper Size / Cassette Presence Detection
Multi-Purpose Pickup	The Multi-purpose Tray Paper Presence Detection
	The Multi-purpose Tray Last Paper Detection
Fixing / Registration Assembly	Registration Control
Duplex/Delivery	Duplex Feed Control
	Duplex Wait Control



F-2-234

• Drive Configuration



F-2-235

M14	Lifter Motor
M15	Cassette 1 Pickup Motor
M16	Cassette 2 Pickup Motor
SL4	Cassette 1 Pickup Solenoid
SL5	Cassette 2 Pickup Solenoid

■ Paper Size Detection / Cassette Presence Detection

• Cassette 1 (250 Sheets Model)

The Cassette 1 Size Switch A/B detects the size of the paper set in the cassette. Length and width are detected according to the ON / OFF combination of switches. As long as standard paper, both AB type and inch type can be used.

NOTE:

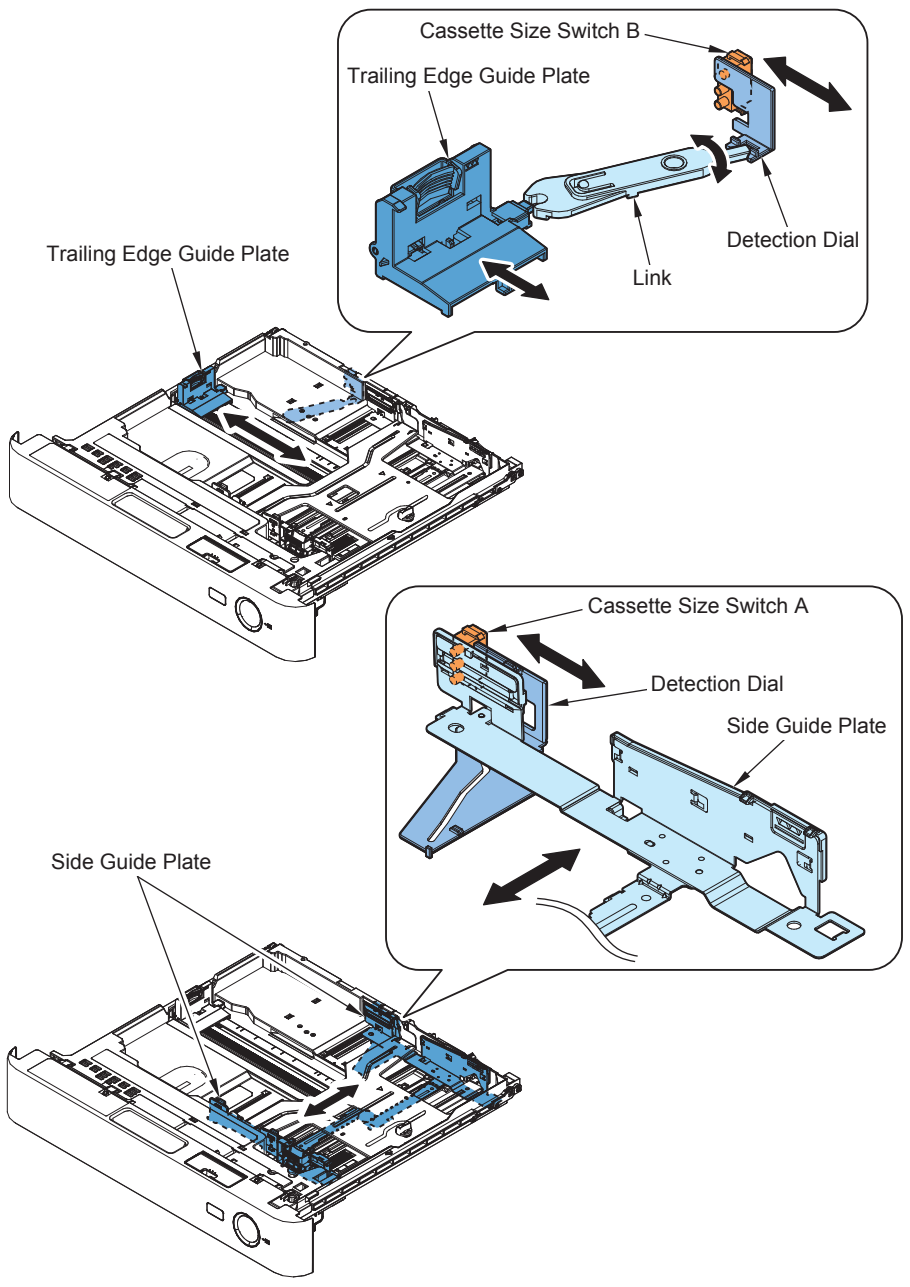
When a failure occurred while the cassette of the host machine is being lifted up, the cassette presence/absence and paper size status are not detected.

	Width	Length	Size switch A (Width Detection)			Size switch B (Length Detection)		
			1	2	3	1	2	3
B5	257.0	182.0	ON	OFF	OFF	-	OFF	OFF
K16	270.0	195.0	OFF	OFF	OFF	-	OFF	OFF
A5-R	148.5	210.0	OFF	ON	ON	-	OFF	OFF
A4	297.0	210.0	ON	ON	ON	-	OFF	OFF
LTR	279.4	215.9	ON	ON	OFF	-	OFF	OFF
B5-R	182.0	257.0	OFF	OFF	ON	-	OFF	OFF
LTR-R	215.9	279.4	ON	OFF	ON	-	OFF	OFF
A4-R	210.0	297.0	ON	OFF	ON	-	OFF	ON
LGL	215.9	355.6	ON	OFF	ON	-	ON	ON
B4	257.0	364.0	ON	OFF	OFF	-	ON	ON
K8	270.0	390.0	OFF	OFF	OFF	-	ON	ON
A3	297.0	420.0	ON	ON	ON	-	ON	ON

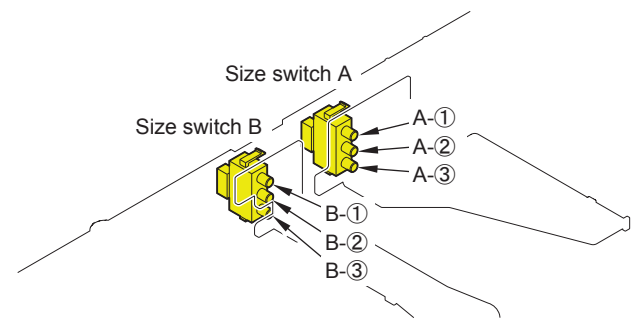
T-2-50

NOTE:

The upper switch of the Cassette Paper Length Switch detects the presence of the cassette. If there is cassette, the switch will be turned ON, and if there is no cassette, the switch will be turned OFF.



F-2-236



F-2-237

● **Cassette 1 (520 Sheets Model)**

The Cassette 1 Size Switch A/B detects the size of the paper set in the cassette. Length and width are detected according to the ON / OFF combination of switches. As long as standard paper, both AB type and inch type can be used.

NOTE:

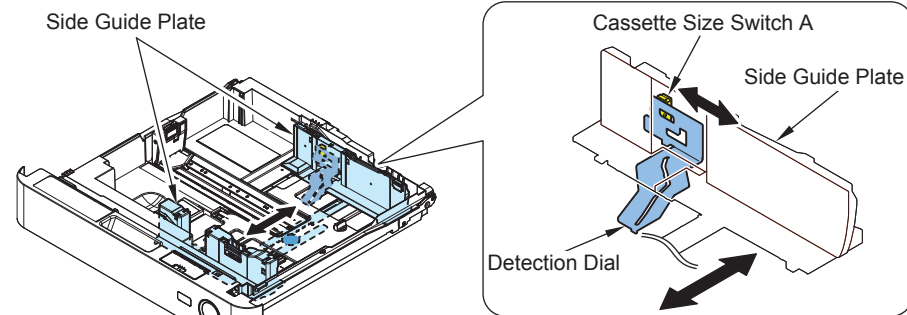
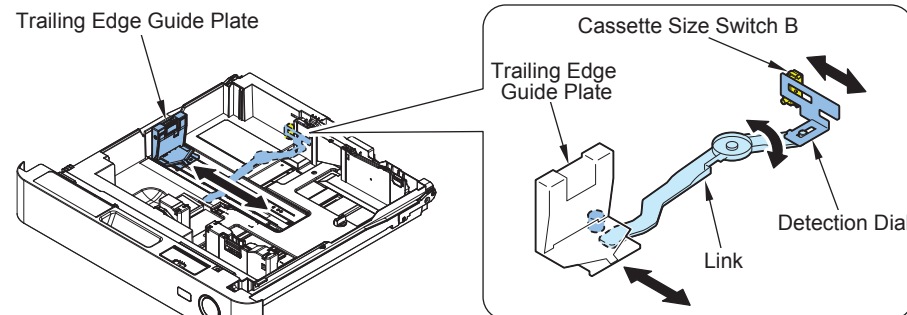
When a failure occurred while the cassette of the host machine is being lifted up, the cassette presence/absence and paper size status are not detected.

	Width	Length	Size switch A (Width Detection)			Size switch B (Length Detection)		
			1	2	3	1	2	3
B5	257.0	182.0	OFF	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
EXE	267.0	184.0	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
K16	270.0	195.0	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	ON
A4	297.0	210.0	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
LTR	279.4	215.9	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
B4	257.0	364.0	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON
K8	270.0	390.0	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF
A3	297.0	420.0	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF

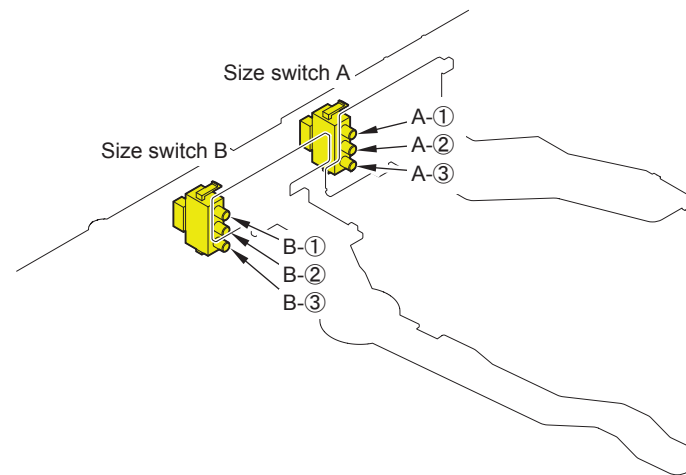
T-2-51

NOTE:

The upper switch of the Cassette Paper Length Switch detects the presence of the cassette.
If there is cassette, the switch will be turned ON, and if there is no cassette, the switch will be turned OFF.



F-2-238



F-2-239

● Cassette 2

Paper size of the cassette can be automatically detected by adjusting the position of the guide plate.

The Cassette 1 Size Switch A/B detects the size of the paper set in the cassette. Length and width are detected according to the ON / OFF combination of switches. As long as standard paper, both AB type and inch type can be used.

However, size should be found manually on the check screen for the combination of A5-R and STMT-R or the combination of B5 and EXE.

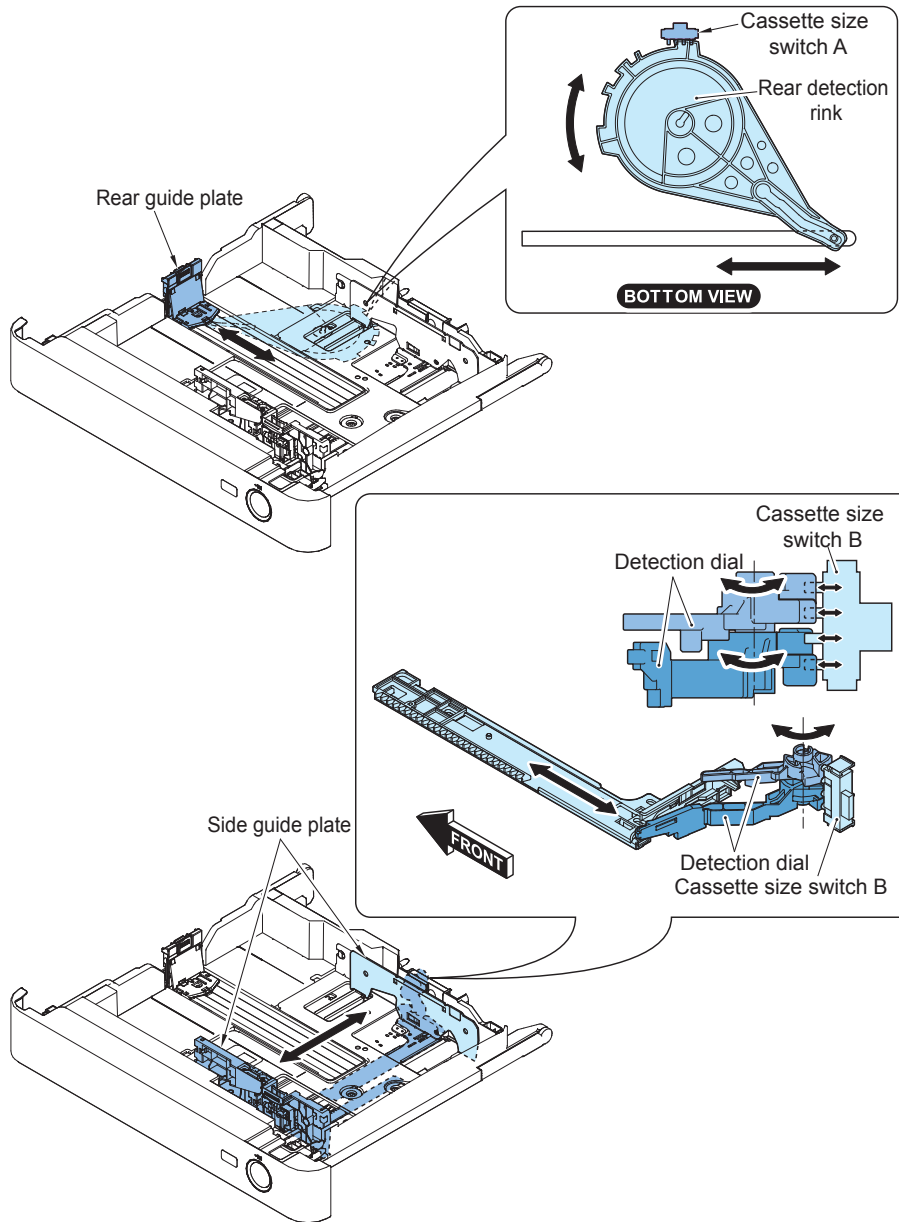
	Width	Length	Size switch A (Width Detection)				Size switch B (Length Detection)			
			1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
B5	257.0	182.0	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
EXE	267.0	184.0	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
K16	270.0	195.0	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
A5-R	148.5	210.0	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
A4	297.0	210.0	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
STMT-R	139.7	215.9	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
LTR	279.4	215.9	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
B5-R	182.0	257.0	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON
LTR-R	215.9	279.4	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	ON
A4-R	210.0	297.0	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
LGL	215.9	355.6	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON
B4	257.0	364.0	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON	ON	ON	OFF
K8	270.0	390.0	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON
A3	297.0	420.0	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
LDR	279.4	431.8	OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
12x18	304.8	457.2	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON

T-2-52

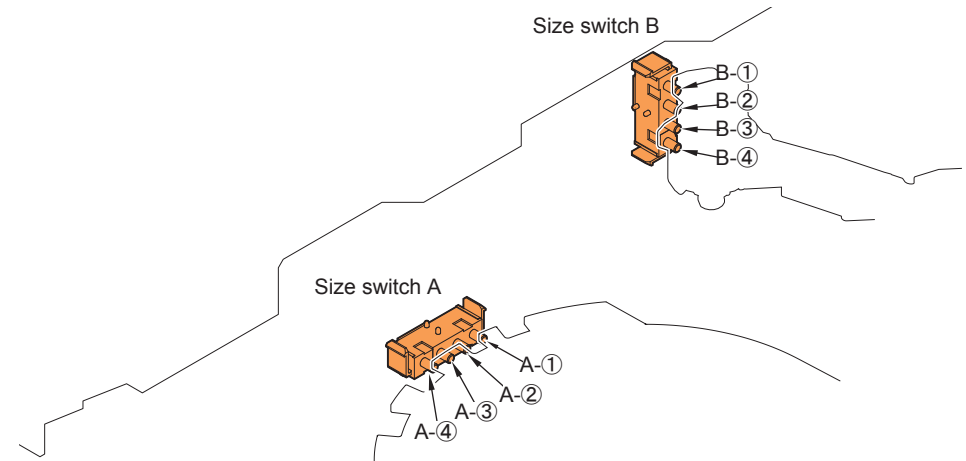
Also, the cassette presence is detected when the size switch is pushed. (If no switch is pushed, it is determined as no cassette.)

NOTE:

- A5R/STMTR Original Selection
[Settings/registration] > [Preferences] > [Paper Settings] > [A5R/STMTR Original Selection]
Setting value Cassette3: A5R, STMTR, Cassette4: A5R, STMTR
- B5/EXEC Original Selection
[Settings/registration] > [Preferences] > [Paper Settings] > [B5/EXEC Original Selection]
Setting value Cassette3: B5, EXEC, Cassette4: B5, EXEC
- Service Mode
(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > CST> CSTX-P1 (X: Cassette numbers 2 to 4)
Setting value 0: A5R, 1: STMTR
(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > CST> CSTX-P2 (X: Cassette numbers 2 to 4)
Setting value 0: B5, 1: EXEC



F-2-240



F-2-241

• Method of Setting 8K and 16K (Chinese Paper)

- 1) Set the original detection size to AB configuration.
(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > MODEL-SZ = 0
- 2) Enable detection and display of Chinese paper (K size paper: 8K and 16K).
(Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > KSIZE-SW = 1
- 3) Change the setting of Cassette 1 from EXEC to 16K.
(Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > CST > CST-K-SW = 1
- 4) (Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > MODELSZ2 = 0.
- 5) Turn OFF and then ON the main power.

• Cassette Heater

To prevent paper in the cassette from absorbing moisture, this machine has a Cassette Heater at the bottom of the Cassette 2.

Timing when the Cassette Heater is turned ON

If the Environment Switch is ON, the Cassette Heater is always ON regardless of ON/OFF of the machine power or sleep state.

CAUTION:

When the Environment Switch is ON, set "1" for COPIER > OPTION > USER > CSTHT-SW; otherwise the Cassette Heater is not recognized.

• Method of Setting Special Paper

- Service mode

COPIER > OPTION > CST > CSTX-UY > Setting number

X: Cassette number, Y: Size category (X: 1 to 4, Y: 1 to 4)

CAUTION:
The size category of Cassette 1 is different from that of Cassette 2/3/4.

Size category	Cassette1	Cassette2/3/4
	Size	
U1*	FLSP, A-FLSP, OFI, A-OFI, B-OFI, E-OFI, M-OFI, G-LGL * Cannot use it in 520 sheets of cassette models	FLSP, A-FLSP, OFI, A-OFI, M-OFI, FA4, G-LGL, A-LTRR, FA4
U2*	A-LTRR, G-LTRR * Cannot use it in 520 sheets of cassette models	G-LTRR
U3	A-LTR	A-LTR, G-LTR
U4	G-LTR	B-OFI

T-2-53

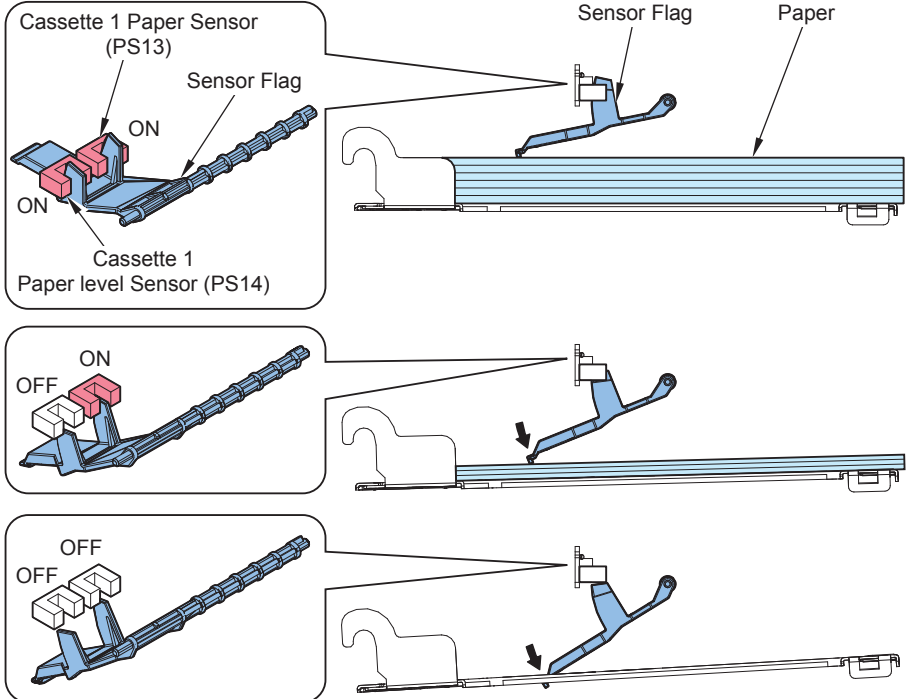
Setting No.	Size
22	K-LGL
23	K-LGLR
24	FLSC
25	A-FLS
27	E-OFI
28	B-OFI
29	A-LTR
30	A-LTRR
31	G-LTR
32	G-LTRR
33	A-LGL
34	G-LGL
36	A-OFI
37	M-OFI
42	FA4

Example: When setting G-LTR to Cassette 2
COPIER> OPTION> CST> CST2-U3> 31

■ Paper Level /Presence Detection

• Cassette 1 (250 Sheets Model)

There are 2 sensors to detect the paper level and paper presence in the cassette.
The paper level is displayed in three levels in the Control Panel.



F-2-242

Display	Remaining Level	Paper Level Sensor	Paper Sensor
	100% to approx. 50 sheets	ON	ON
	approx. 50 sheets or less	OFF	ON
	No paper	OFF	OFF

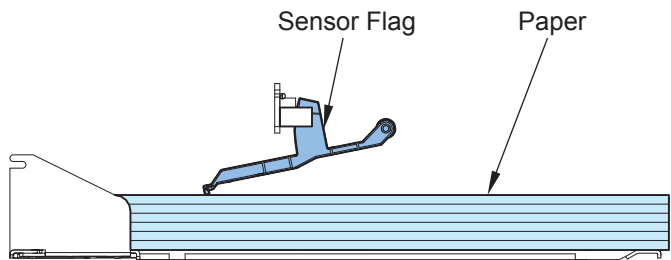
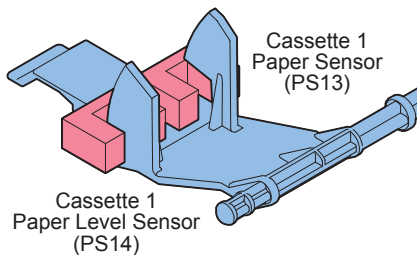
F-2-243

● **Cassette 1 (520 Sheets Model)**

There are 2 sensors to detect the paper level and paper presence in the cassette.

The paper level is displayed in three levels in the Control Panel.

Display	Remaining Level	Paper Level Sensor	Paper Sensor
	approx. 100% to 75%		
	approx. 75% to 25%		
	approx. 25% to 1%		
	No paper		

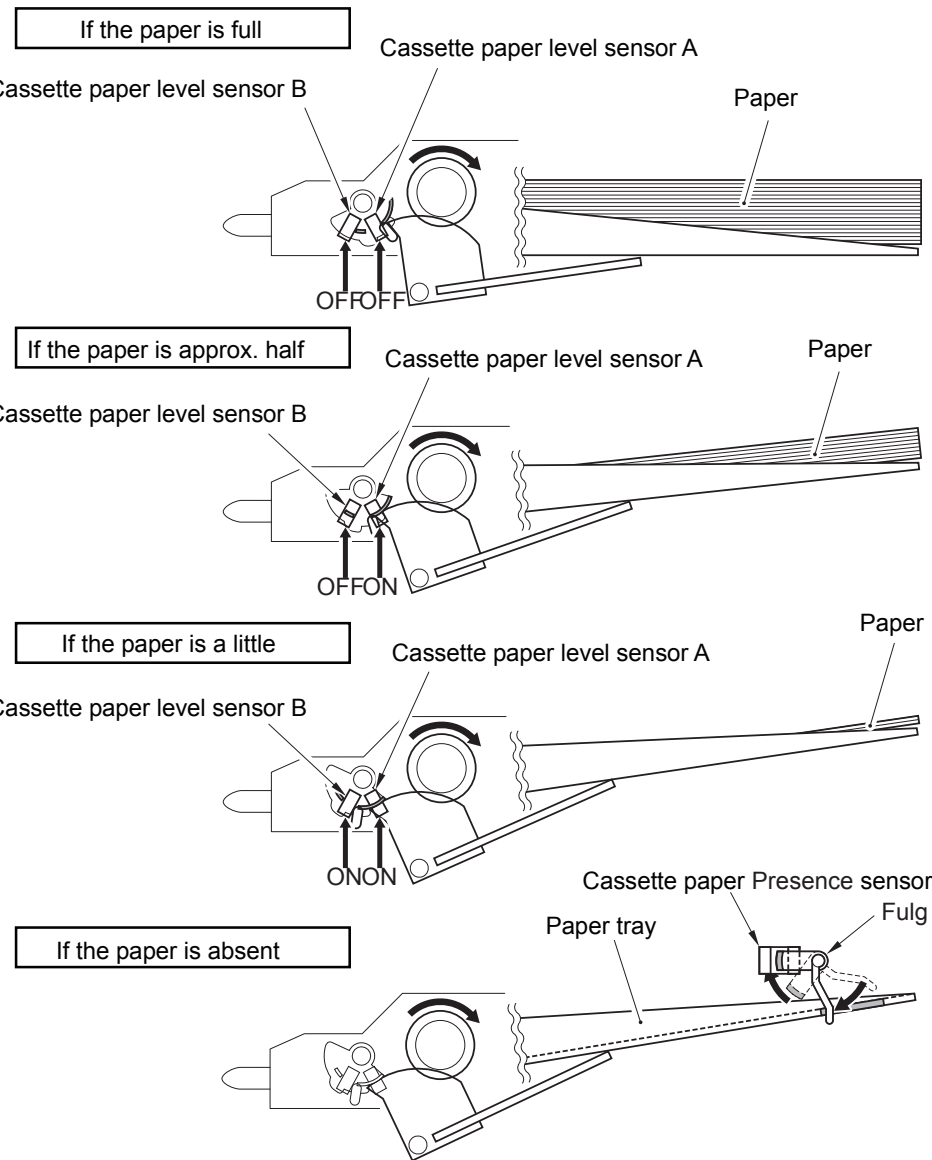


F-2-244





● **Cassette 2**

There are 3 sensors to detect the paper level and paper presence in the cassette.

The paper level is displayed in four levels in the Control Panel.



F-2-245

Display	Remaining Level	Sensor A	Sensor B	Paper Presence Sensor
	100% to approx. 50% of capacity	OFF	OFF	OFF
	Approx. 50% of capacity to approx. 50 sheets	ON	OFF	OFF
	Approx. 50 sheets or less	ON	ON	OFF
	No paper	-	-	ON

F-2-246

• Separation paper list

It is recommended to separate the following paper depending on the paper status (especially moisture absorption) and paper trimming state when setting the paper.

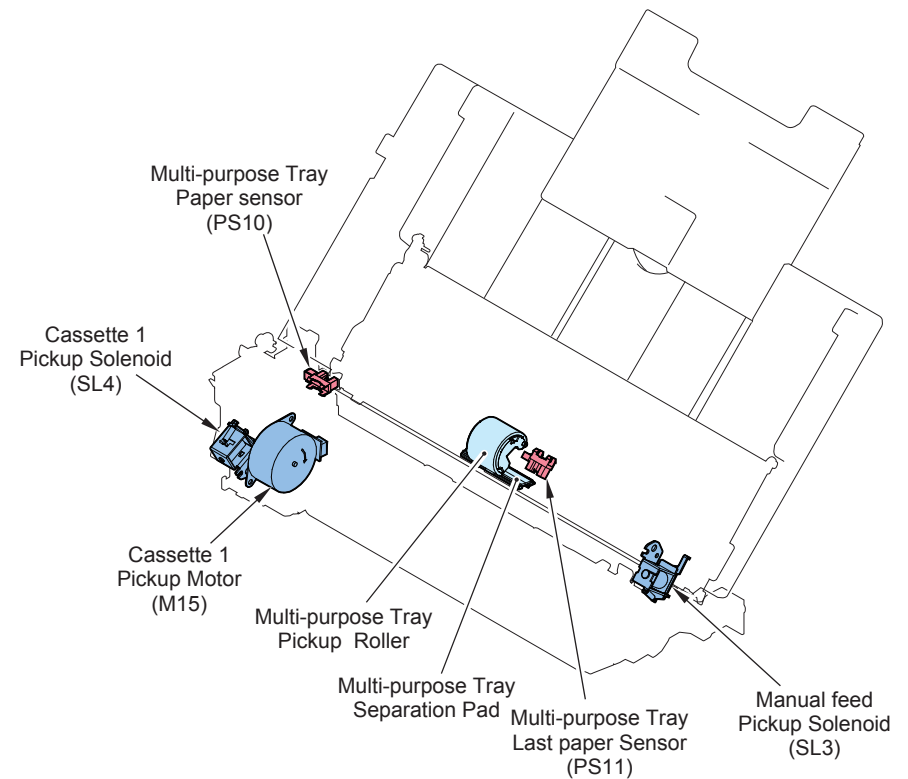
This ""separation"" can avoid troubles.

Paper type	Basis weight/name etc	Main area
Carbonless paper	Overall	-
OHP	Overall	-
Labels	Overall	-
Tub paper	Overall	-
Pre-punched paper	Overall	-
Canon Europe Canon Recycled 80 (Vision Classic White)	Overall	EUR
Canon Europe Canon High Grade (Mondi Business Papar)	Especially heavy paper 220/250 gsm etc.	EUR
Canon Digital Office Colour (Stora Enso MultiCopy Special Colour Laser)	Especially heavy paper 160 gsm etc.	EUR

T-2-54

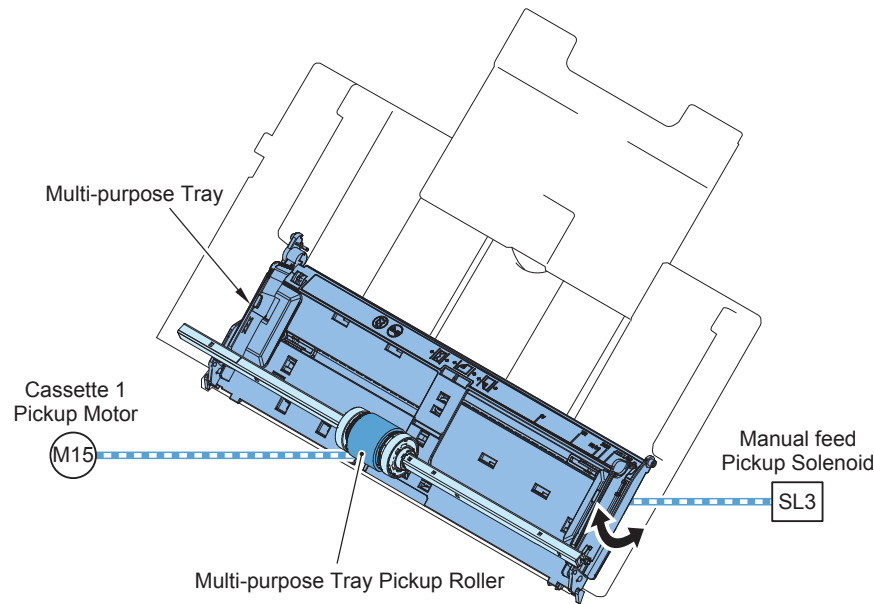
■ Multi-Purpose Tray Pickup Assembly

• Parts Configuration



F-2-247

• Drive Configuration



F-2-248

• Multi-Purpose Tray Paper Presence Detection

Whether there is paper or not in the Multi-purpose Tray is detected by the Multi-purpose Tray Paper Presence Sensor.

If no-paper is detected, no-paper message will be displayed in the status window.

NOTE:

Since a correct sensor status cannot be detected during sleep mode, the paper status before the transition to sleep mode is retained.

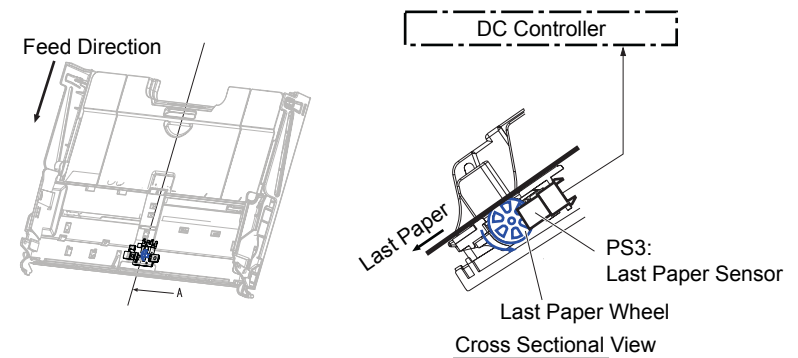
• Multi-Purpose Tray Last Paper Detection

This Host Machine detects whether the paper picked up from the Multi-purpose Tray is the last paper.

When pickup is performed from the Multi-purpose Tray, the feed distance from the Multi-purpose Tray Paper Presence Sensor to the Registration Roller is short, hence before the no-paper in the Multi-purpose Tray is detected, the next image is started to be formed. And to prevent the Photosensitive Drum and ITB from toner soiling, the DC Controller detects the last paper of the Multi-purpose Tray through the Last Paper Sensor.

When the last paper is detected, the message indicating empty paper is displayed in the Control Panel.

The following figure shows last paper detection mechanism.



F-2-249

• Multi-purpose tray pickup 1 sheet feed list

Be sure to set the following paper sheet-by-sheet to the Multi-purpose Tray.

If fails to set the paper sheet-by-sheet, it may cause troubles.

Paper Type	Basis weight/name
Glossy paper (coated paper)	Overall
Tracing paper	Overall
Extra long paper (up to 1200mm) Pickup can be enabled at service setting.	Overall

T-2-55

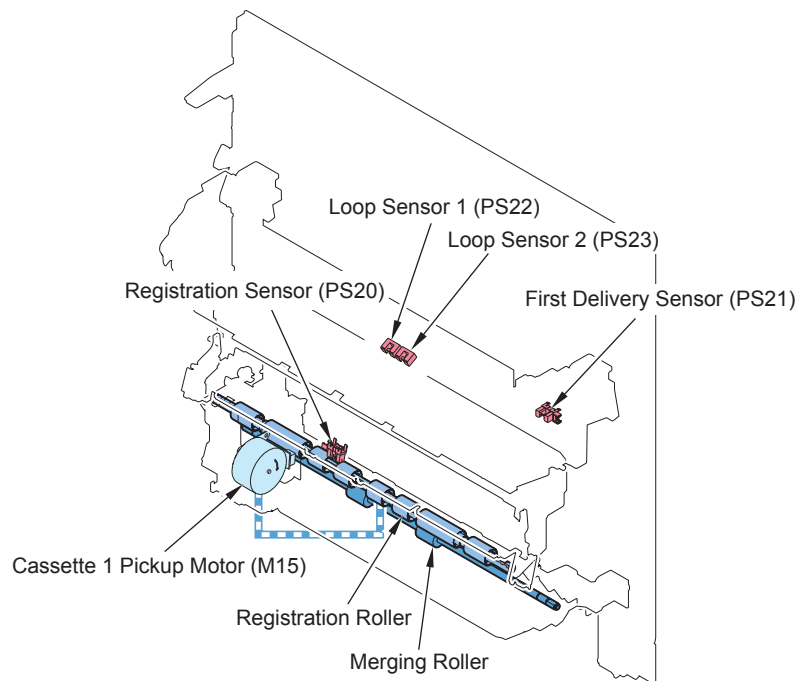
• Paper that requires extra caution at setting

Paper Type	Basis weight/name	Caution
Envelope	Overall	Let out the air of envelope and disperse the glued tabs

T-2-56

■ Fixing/Registration Assembly

● Parts/Drive Configuration



F-2-250

● Registration Control

This is the feed control executed to make the image fit in the paper.

Based on the leading edge detection by the Registration Sensor, either non-stop registration control, which increases/decreases the speed without stopping paper feed, or stop registration, which temporarily stops paper feed, is used according to the situation.

	Constant speed		1/2 speed
	1st side	2nd side	
LTR or Smaller	Non-stop registration		Stop registration
Larger than LTR	Stop registration		

Non-stop Registration Control

This control is executed to increase or decrease the feed speed without stopping paper at the registration position to shorten the paper interval and improve productivity.

Stop Registration Control

This control is executed to stop paper at the registration position and restart feeding in accordance with the timing when the image reaches the secondary transfer processing.

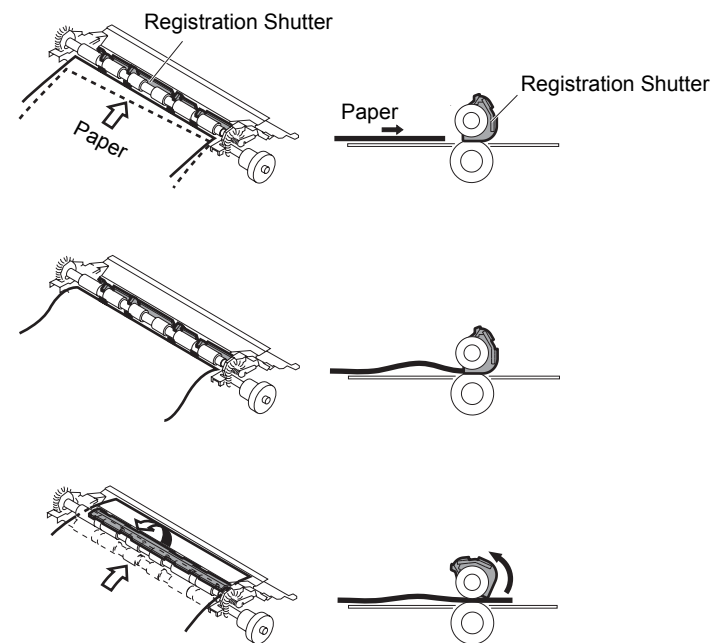
T-2-57

● Skew Correction Mechanism

This Host Machine can correct the skew of the paper without dropping the throughput.

The following figure shows the skew correction mechanism.

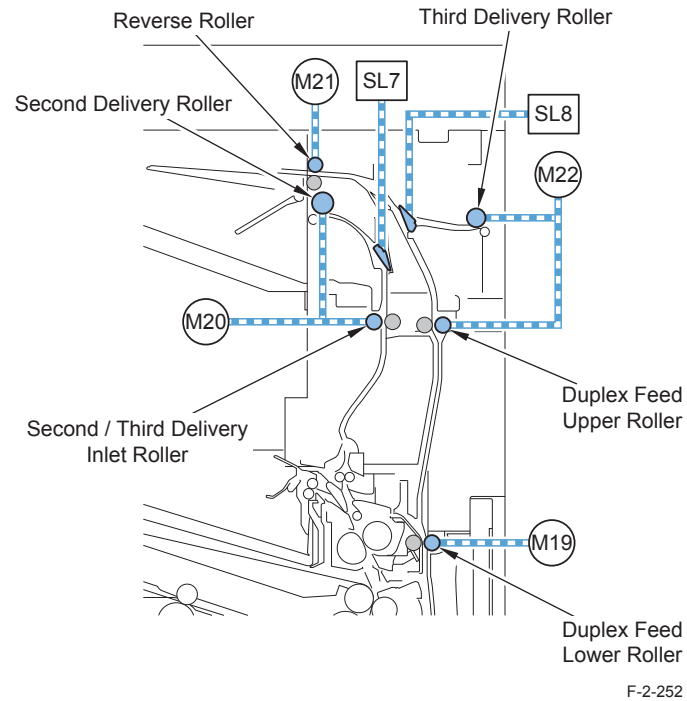
- 1) The paper leading edge hits the Registration Shutter, and the paper leading edge will be aligned.
- 2) When the paper leading edge is aligned, the Registration Shutter will be pushed, the papers whose leading edge are aligned will approach the Registration Roller, and the skew will be corrected.



F-2-251

■ Duplex / Delivery Assembly

● Parts / Drive Configuration



● Duplex Feed Control

This machine reverses paper outside the machine using the Reverse Inlet. The following shows each duplex reverse position and the number of sheets circulated.

When the Expansion Delivery Kit-C1 is installed

	First/Second Delivery	Third Delivery
Small size (LTR or smaller)	5	3
Large size (Larger than LTR)	3	1

T-2-58

When the Expansion Delivery Kit-C1 is not installed

	First Delivery
Small size (LTR or smaller)	3
Large size (Larger than LTR)	1

T-2-59

Since the duplex path is the same as the drive in the third delivery, productivity does not reach 100% in either "LTR or smaller" or "Larger than LTR".

● Duplex Wait Control

To realize 5-sheet circulation, there are 2 duplex wait positions. Following is the duplex wait position for small paper.

LTR or smaller



F-2-253

The position at 16.8mm upstream of the Merging Roller and that at 73.4mm upstream of the Duplex Feed Lower Roller are considered as the duplex standby position.

Larger than LTR



F-2-254

■ JAM Detection

JAM Code	Sensor		XX			
	Name	Code	01:Delay	02:Stationary	07:Wrap	0A:Power ON
xx02	Cassette 2 Vertical Path Sensor	PS17	○	×	×	○
xx05	Registration Sensor	PS20	○	○	×	○
xx08	Arch Sensor 1	PS22	×	×	×	○
xx09	Arch Sensor 2	PS23	×	×	×	○
xx0A	First Delivery Sensor	PS21	○	○	○	○
xx0B	Second Delivery Sensor	PS27	○	○	×	○
xx0C	Third Delivery Sensor	PS30	○	○	×	○
xx0D	Reverse Sensor	PS29	○	×	×	○
xx0E	Duplex Sensor	PS31	○	×	×	○

T-2-60

○: Detected
 ×: Not Detected

● Service Tasks

■ Periodically replacement parts

N/A

■ Consumables

No.	Parts Name	Parts Number	Number of used part	Replacement timing	Remarks
1	Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller	RM1-6177	1	150k	-
2	Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad	RM1-6178	1	150k	-
3	Cassette 1 Pickup Roller (250 Sheets)	RM1-6175	1	150k	-
	Cassette 1 Pickup Roller (520 Sheets)	FM0-3173	1	150k	-
4	Cassette 1 Separation Roller (250 Sheets)	RM1-6176	1	150k	-
	Cassette 1 Separation Roller (520 Sheets)	FM0-1657	1	150k	-
5	Cassette 2 Feed Roller	FC6-7083	1	150k	-
6	Cassette 2 Separation Roller	FC6-6661	1	150k	-
7	Secondary Transfer Outer Roller	RM1-6179	1	150k	-

T-2-61

■ Periodically Service

No.	Parts Name	Execution timing	Work	Remarks
1	Pre-secondary transfer Outer Guide	50k	Cleaning	-
2	Registration Patch Sensor	50k	Cleaning	-
3	Registration Roller	50k	Cleaning	-
4	Pre-registration Guide	50k	Cleaning	-
5	Duplex Feed Upper Roller	50k	Check	-
6	Duplex Feed Lower Roller	50k	Check	-
7	Second / Third Delivery Roller	50k	Check	-
8	Merging Roller	50k	Check	-
9	Cassette 2 Vertical Path Roller	50k	Check	-
10	Fixing Outlet Roller	50k	check	-

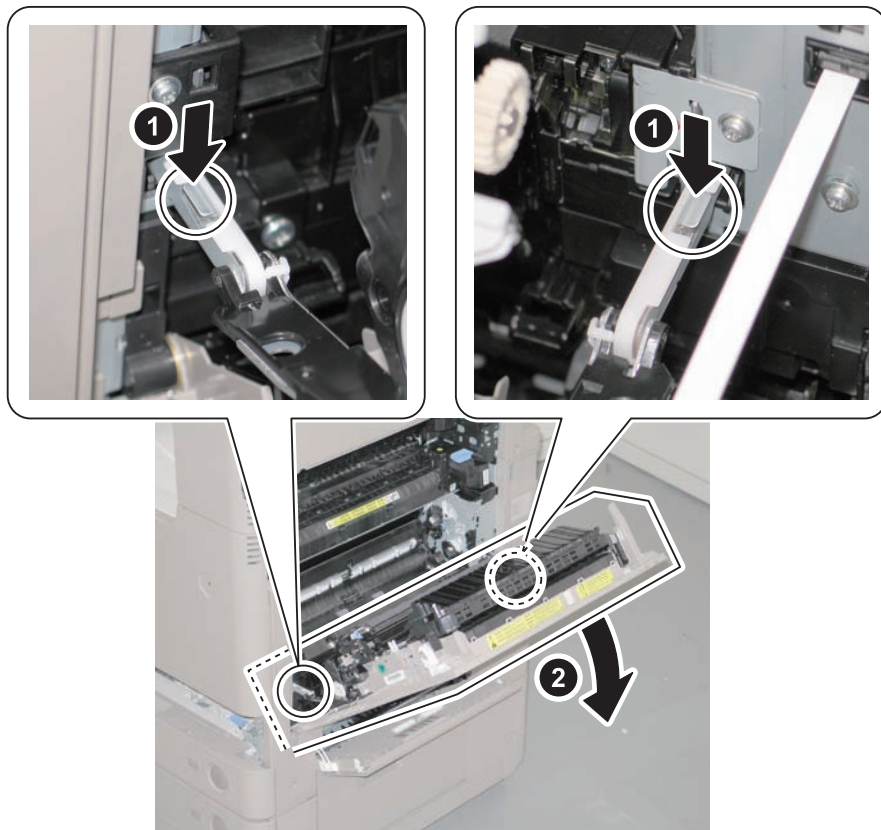
T-2-62

Disassembly/Assembly - Pickup Feed System -

Opening the Right Lower Cover Fully

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover.
- 2) Release the lock by pushing the [1] part to open fully.

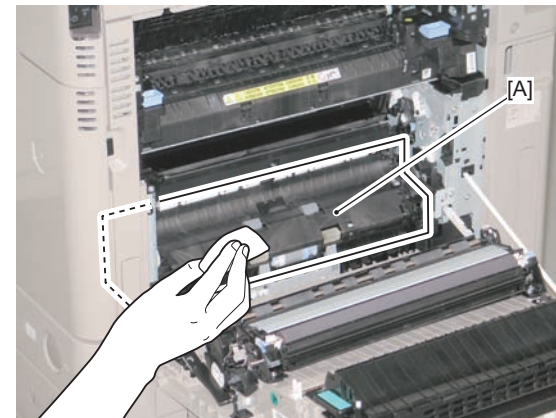


F-2-255

Cleaning the Pre-registration Guide

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 2) Clean the Pre-registration Guide area [A] with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

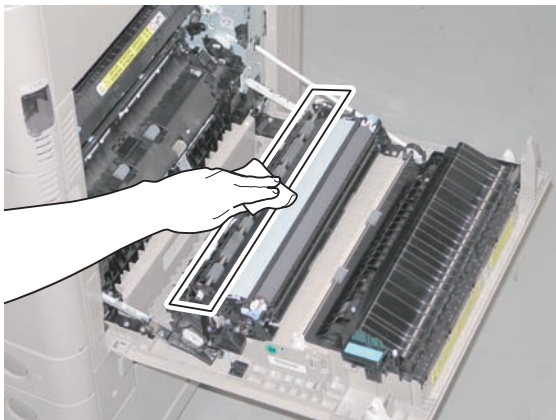


F-2-256

Cleaning the Registration Roller

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 2) Clean a whole circumference of the Registration Roller with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

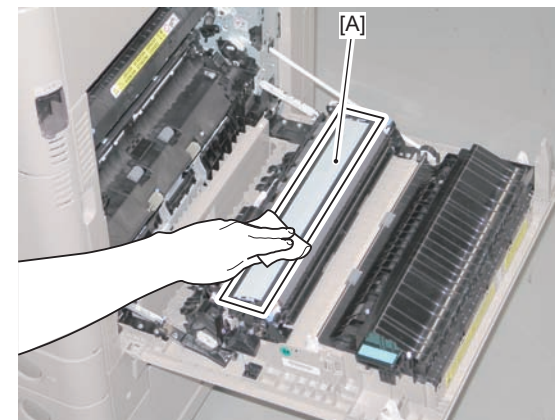


F-2-257

Cleaning the Pre-secondary Transfer Outer Guide

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 2) Clean the Pre-secondary Transfer Outer Guide area [A] with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

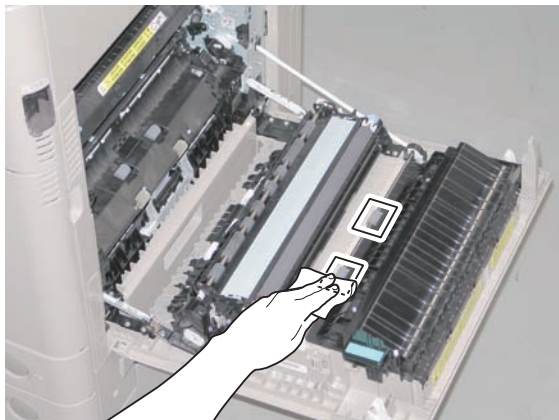


F-2-258

Cleaning Duplex Feed Lower Roller

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 2) Clean a whole circumference of the Duplex Feed Lower Roller with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



F-2-259

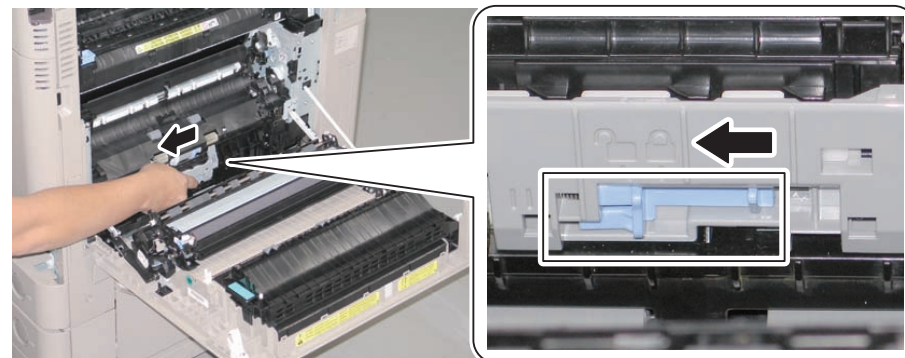
Removing the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit, Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and the Registration Roller.

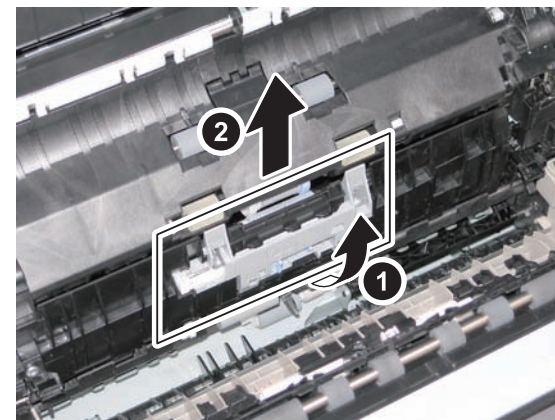
Procedure

- 1) Pull out the Cassette 1.
- 2) Open the Cassette Right Upper Cover.
- 3) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 4) Move the Lock Lever in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-260

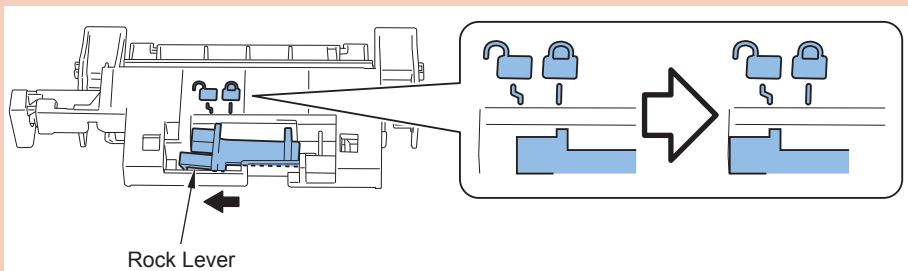
- 5) Remove the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-261

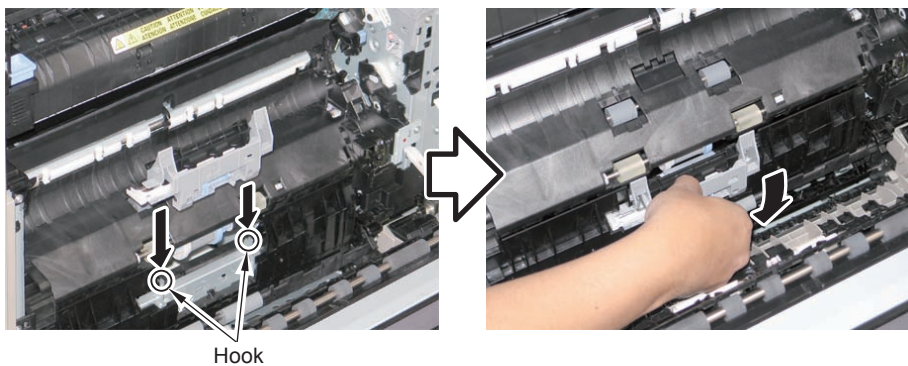
CAUTION:

When installing the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit, be sure that the Lock Lever is released.



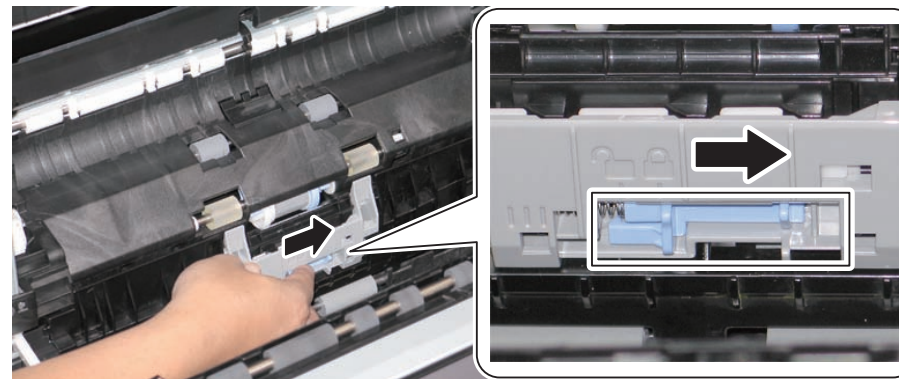
F-2-262

6) Hook to the hooks, and install the unit in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-263

7) Lock the Lock Lever in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-264

8) Check that the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit is secured.

Removing the Cassette 1 Pickup Roller

CAUTION:

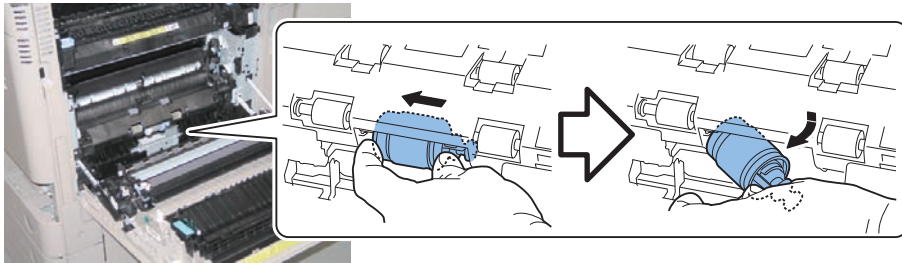
Do not touch the roller surface of the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit, Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and the Registration Roller.

Preparation

1) Remove the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit.

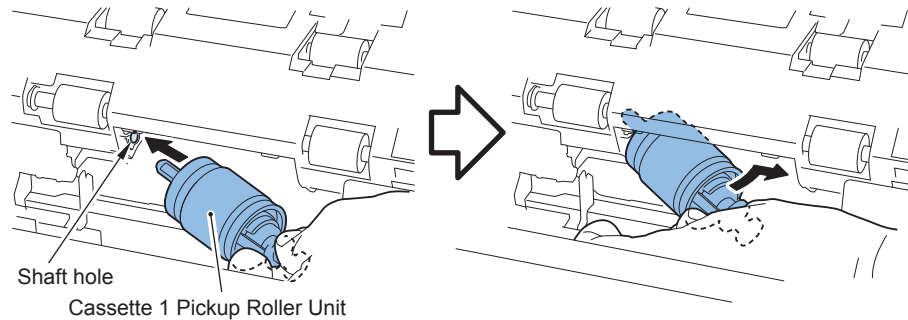
Procedure

1) Remove the Cassette 1 Pickup Roller in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-265

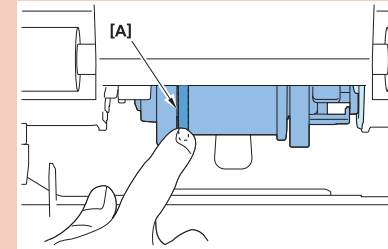
2) Align the Cassette 1 Pickup Roller with a shaft hole, and install it in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-266

CAUTION:

Be sure that there is no gap at [A] part of the Cassette 1 Pickup Roller after installation. By turning [B] part, the roller is fit into the installation position.



F-2-267

Removing the Cassette 1 Pickup Unit

CAUTION:

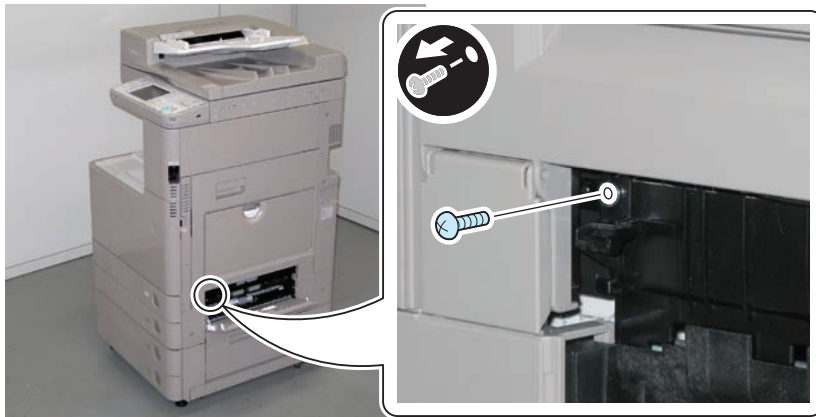
Do not touch the roller surface of the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit, Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and the Registration Roller.

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.

Procedure

- 1) Close the Right Lower Cover, and remove the screw of the Pickup Guide.

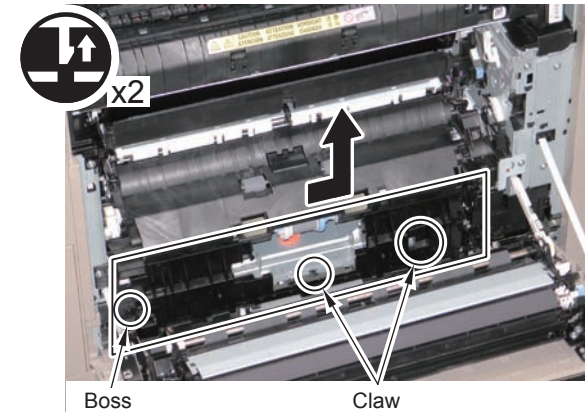


F-2-268

- 2) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.

- 3) Remove the Pickup Guide in the direction of the arrow.

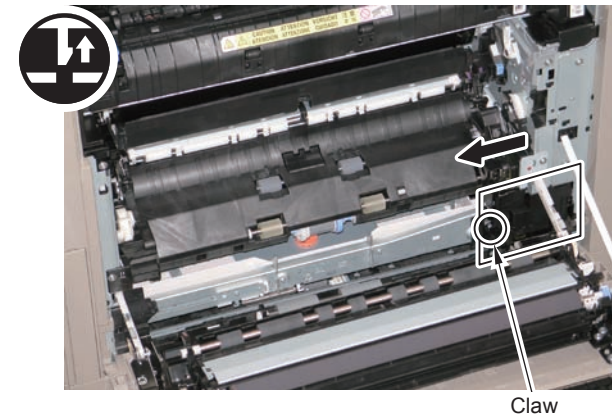
- 1 Boss
- 2 Claws



F-2-269

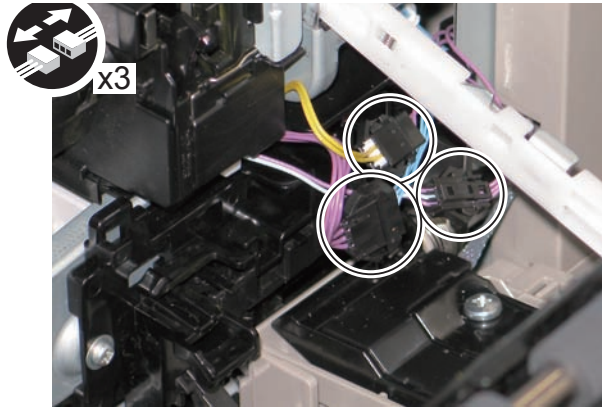
- 4) Remove the Cable Cover.

- 1 Claw



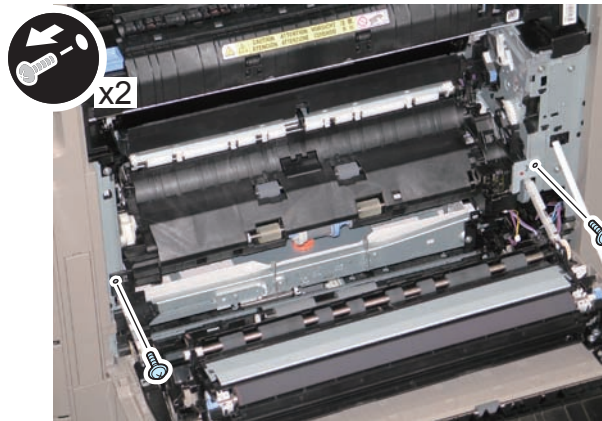
F-2-270

6) Disconnect the 3 connectors.



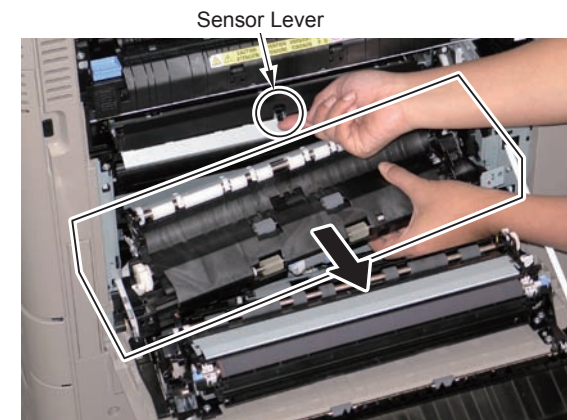
F-2-271

7) Remove the 2 screws.



F-2-272

8) While lifting up the Sensor Lever, pull out the Cassette 1 Pickup Unit toward the front.



F-2-273

CAUTION:

At installation, be sure to install the unit while lifting up the Sensor Lever, and check that it moves correctly.

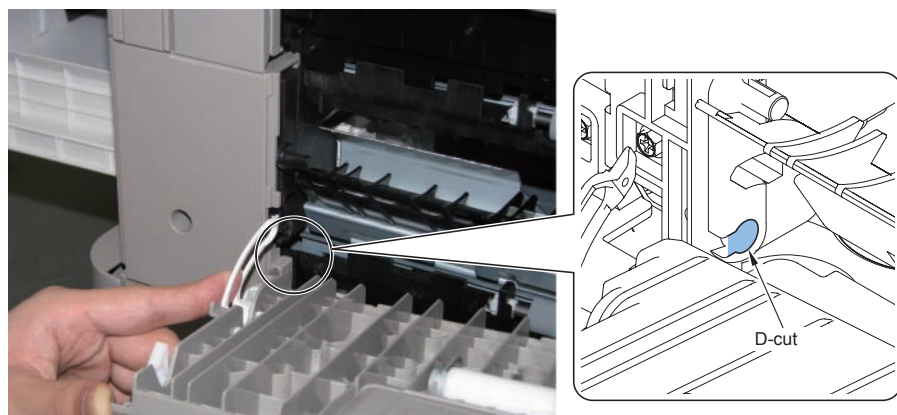
Removing the Cassette 2 Pickup Unit

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit, Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and the Registration Roller.

Procedure

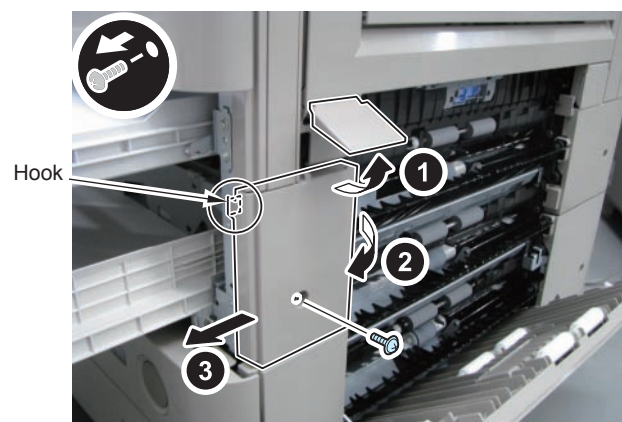
- 1) Pull out the Cassette 1 and 2.
- 2) Open the Pedestal Right Cover and the Cassette Right Upper Cover.
- 3) Remove the Cassette Right Upper Cover.



F-2-274

- 4) Remove the Cassette Right Upper Sub Cover 1.

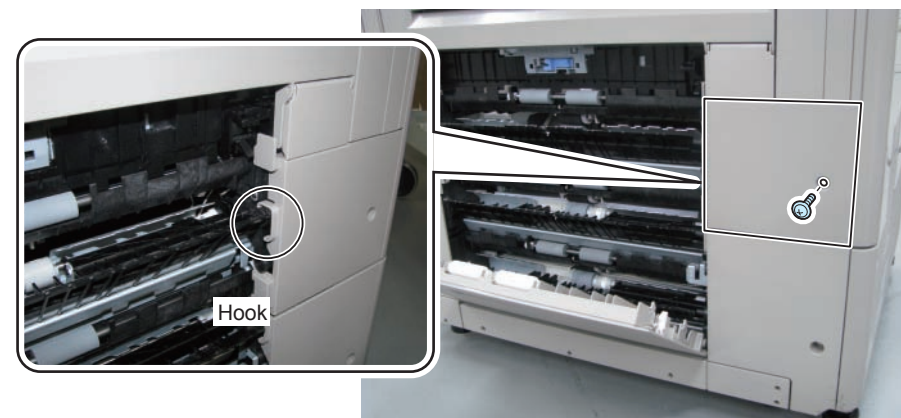
- 1 Claw



F-2-275

- 5) Remove the Cassette Right Upper Sub Cover 2.

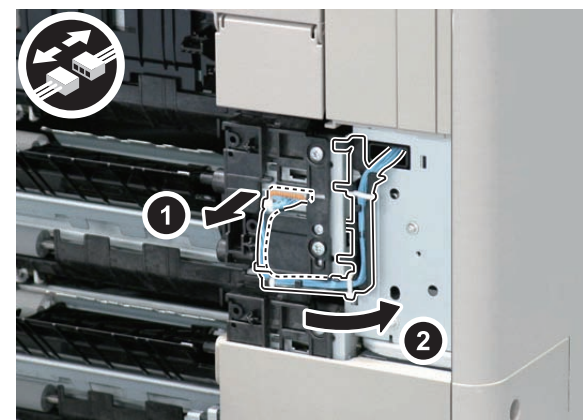
- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook



F-2-276

- 6) Remove the Connector and Connector Guide.

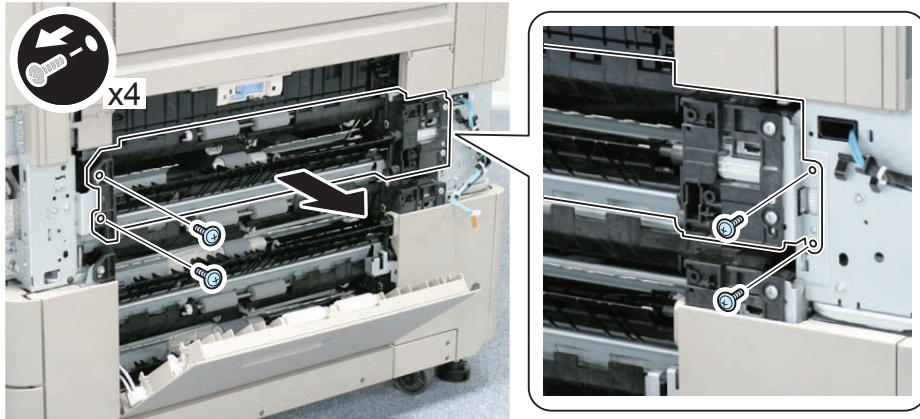
- 1 Claw
- 1 Connector



F-2-277

7) Remove the Cassette 2 Pickup Unit.

- 4 Screw



F-2-278

Removing the Cassette 2 Pickup Roller

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Pickup Roller, Feed Roller, and Separation Roller.

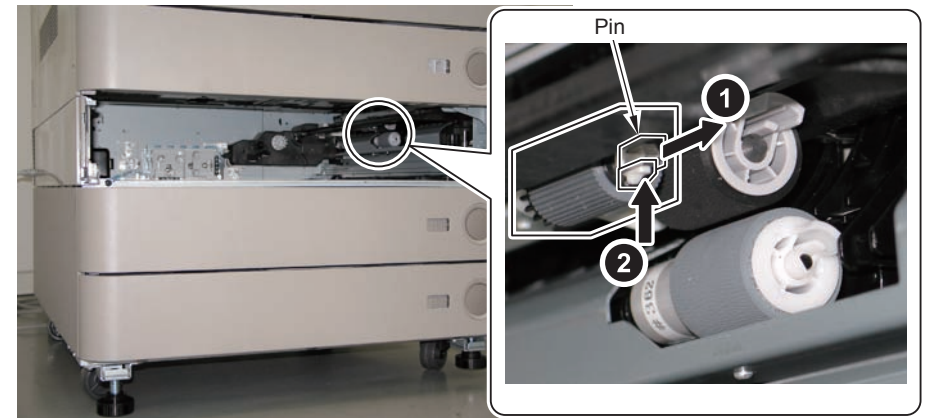
Preparation

- Remove the Cassette 2.

Procedure

1) Remove the Cassette 2 Pickup Roller.

- 1 Pin
- 1 Tab



F-2-279

Removing the Cassette 2 Feed Roller

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Pickup Roller, Feed Roller, and Separation Roller.

Preparation

- Remove the Cassette 2.

Procedure

1) Remove the Cassette 2 Feed Roller.

- 1 Tab



F-2-280

Removing the Cassette 2 Separation Roller

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Pickup Roller, Feed Roller, and Separation Roller.

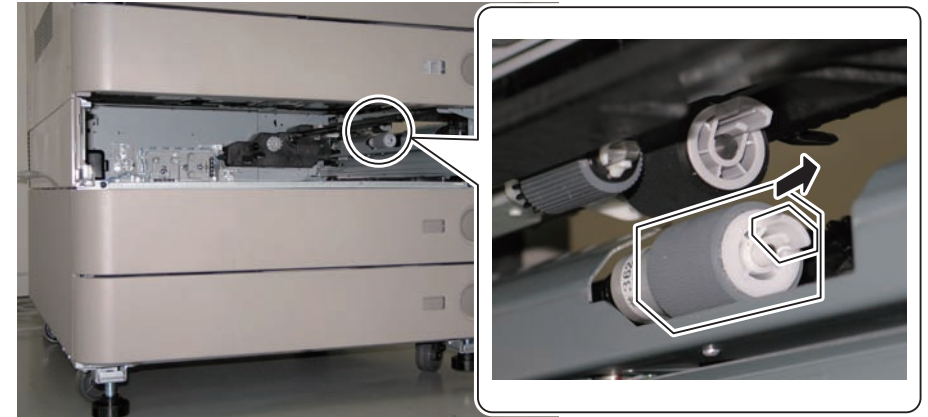
Preparation

- Remove the Cassette 2.

Procedure

1) Remove the Cassette 2 Separation Roller.

- 1 Tab



F-2-281

Removing the Pickup Assembly Idler Gear

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Pickup Roller, Feed Roller, and Separation Roller.

Preparation

- Remove the Cassette 2.
- Remove the Cassette 2 Pickup Roller.
- Remove the Cassette 2 Feed Roller.

Procedure

1) Remove the Cassette 2 Pickup Assembly Idler Gear.

- 1 Pin
- 1 Tab

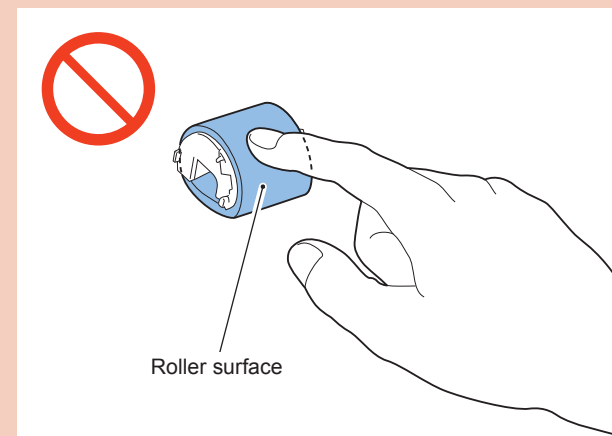


F-2-282

Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller

CAUTION:

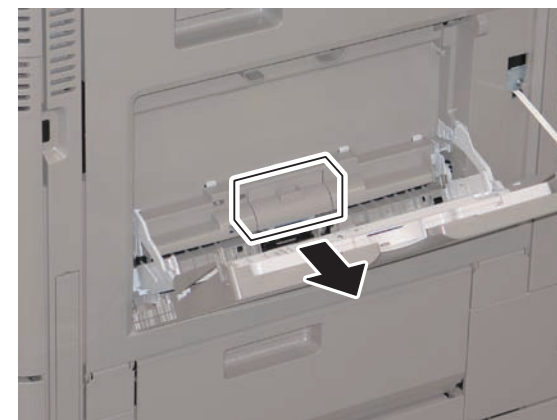
Do not touch the surface of the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller.



F-2-283

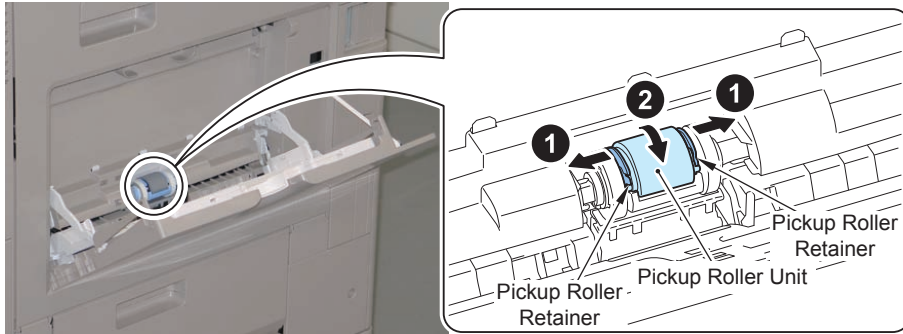
Procedure

- 1) Open the Multi-purpose Tray.
- 2) Remove the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller Cover.



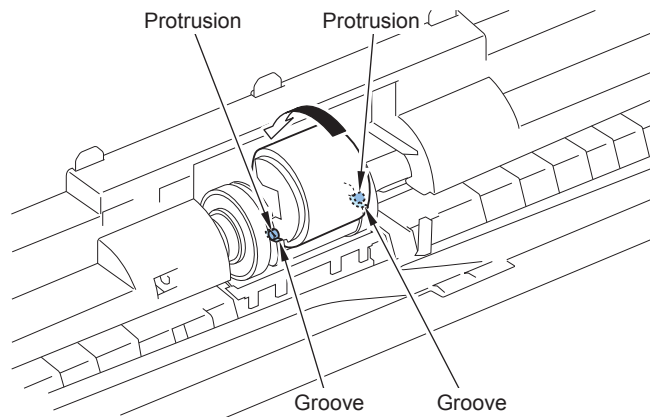
F-2-284

3) Open the Pickup Roller Retainer to right and left, and remove it in the direction of the arrow.



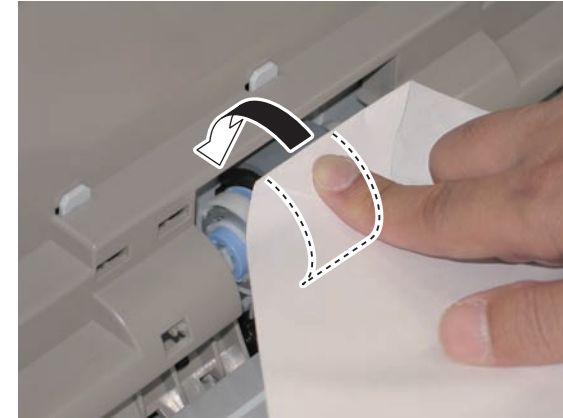
F-2-285

4) Fit the 2 protrusions on a new Pickup Roller into the groove, and install it in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-286

5) Place a paper onto the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller, and install the roller by pushing it in.



F-2-287

CAUTION:

Check that the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller is secured.

6) Install the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller Cover.

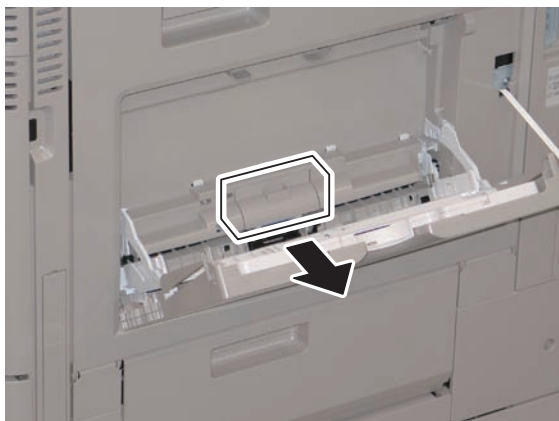
Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad

CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad.

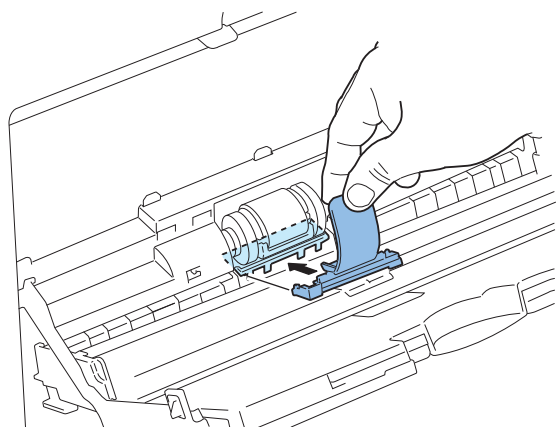
Procedure

- 1) Open the Multi-purpose Tray.
- 2) Remove the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller Cover.



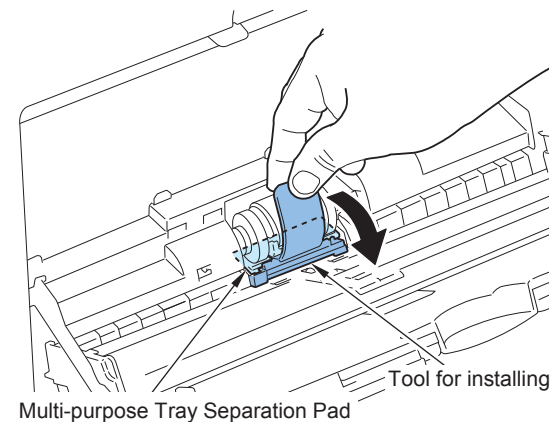
F-2-288

- 3) Insert the tool for installing included in the package in the direction of the arrow.



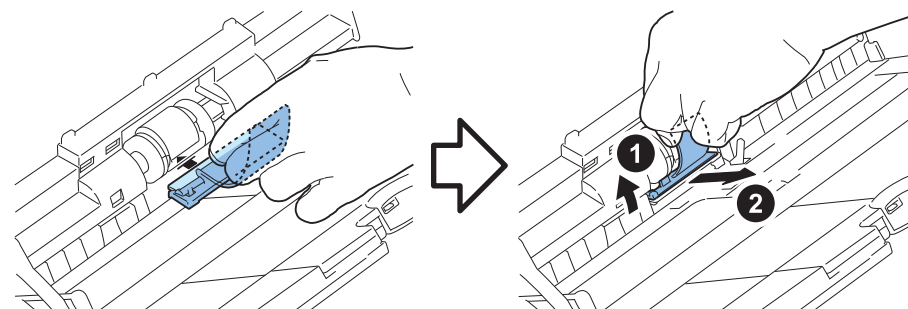
F-2-289

- 4) Move the tool for installing in the direction of the arrow to remove the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad.



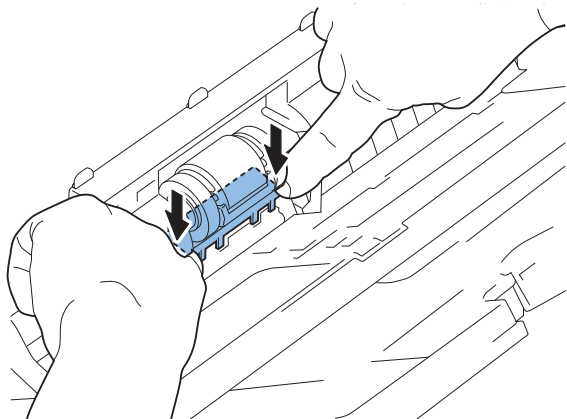
F-2-290

- 5) Insert a new Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad in the direction of the arrow with the tool for installing, and pull out the tool.



F-2-291

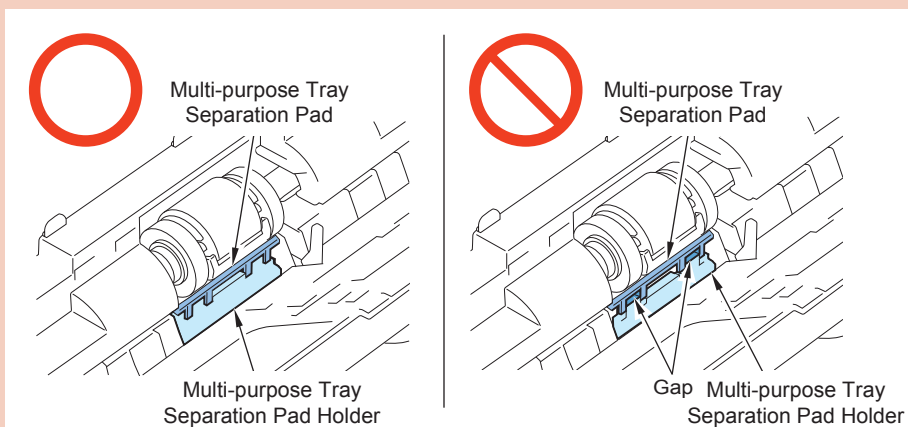
6) Push the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad in the direction of the arrow to secure it.



F-2-292

CAUTION:

Check that there is no gap between the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad and the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad Holder.



F-2-293

7) Install the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller Cover.

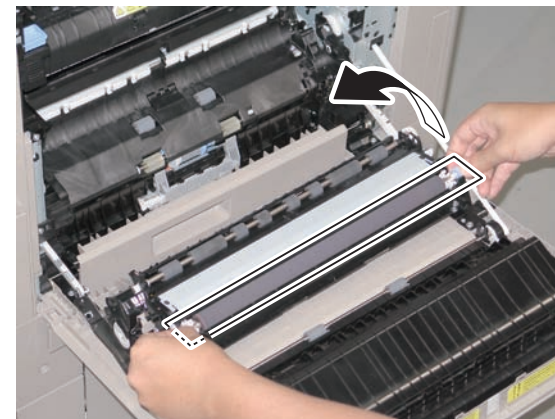
Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller

CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.

Procedure

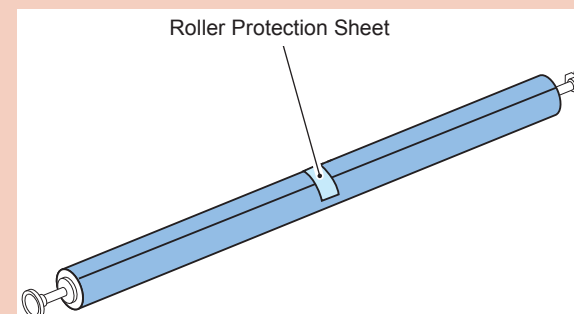
- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 2) Hold the both edges of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and remove it in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-294

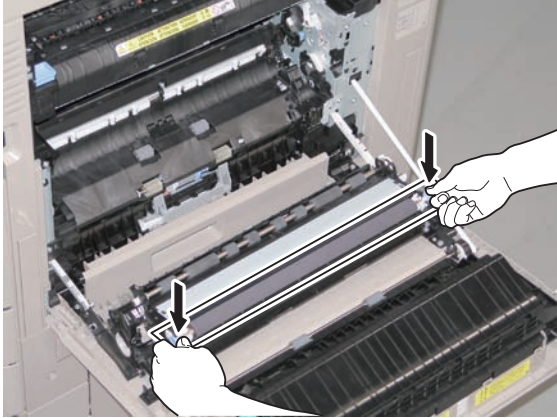
Points to Note at Installation:

Be sure not to remove the Protection Sheet on a new Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.



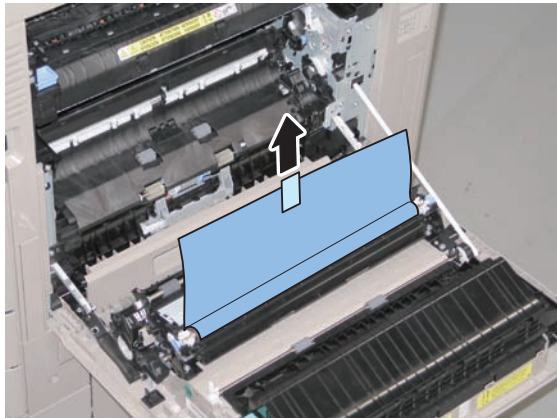
F-2-295

- 3) Hold the both edges of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and install it by pushing the shafts at right and left sides.



F-2-296

- 4) Pull the tape on the Protection Sheet in the direction of the arrow to remove the sheet.



F-2-297

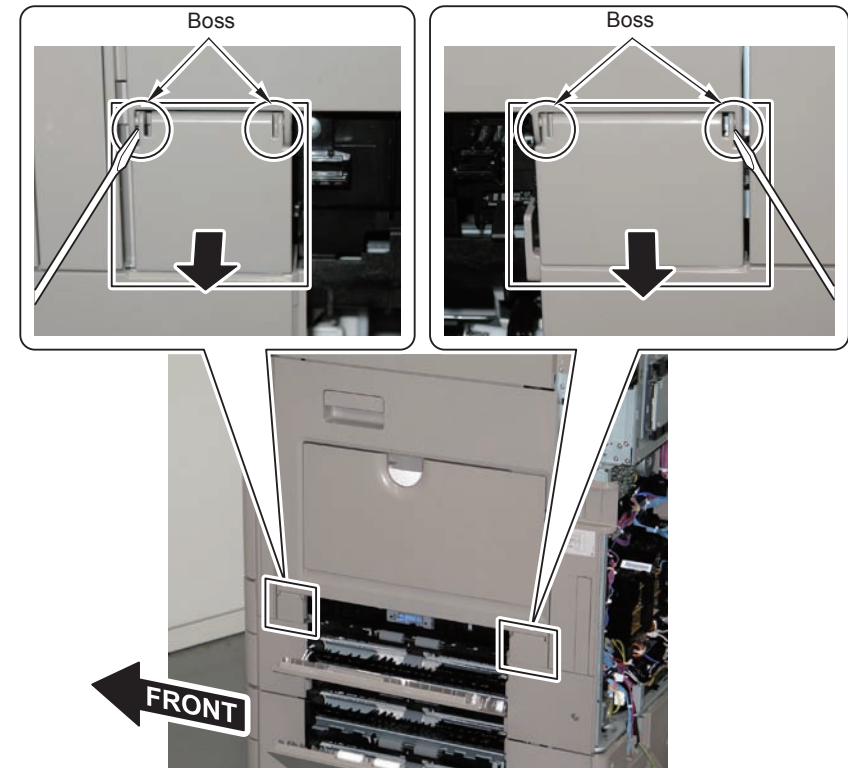
Removing the Right Door Unit

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
- 3) Remove the Rear Cover.

Procedure

- 1) Open the Cassette Right Upper Cover and the Cassette Right Lower Cover.
- 2) Remove the Cassette Right Upper Sub Cover 1 and the Cassette Right Upper Sub Cover 2.
 - 2 Bosses each



F-2-298

3) Remove the Right Lower Sub Cover 2.

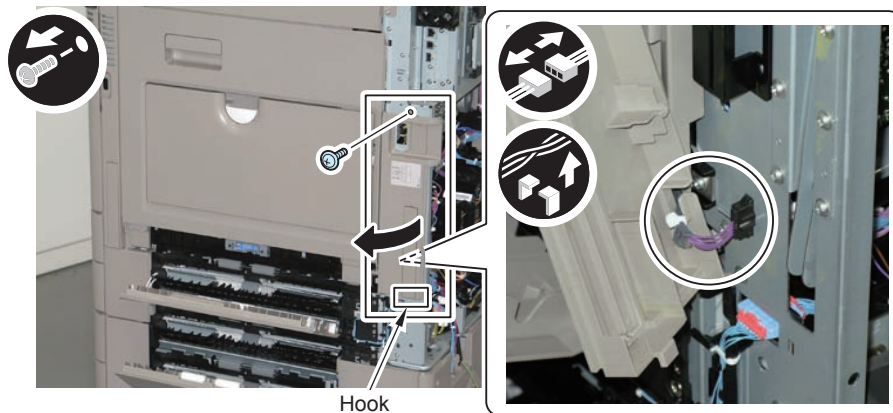
- 1 Screw
- 1 Hook



F-2-299

4) Remove the Right Rear Sub Cover.

- 1 Screw
- 1 Hook
- 1 Connector
- 1 Harness

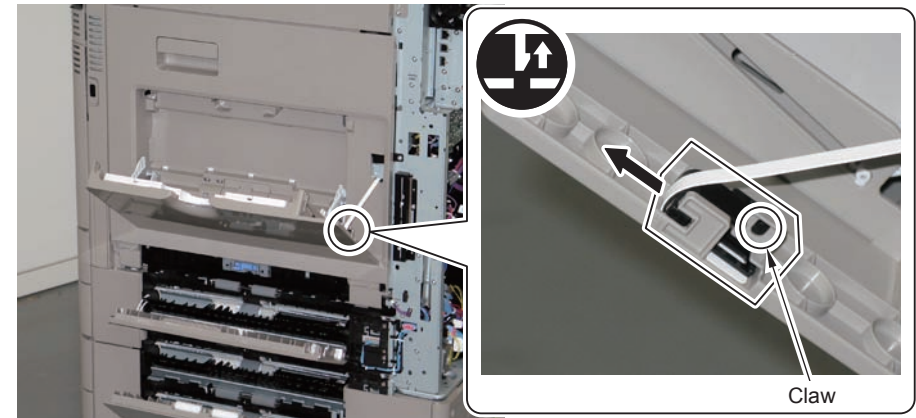


F-2-300

5) Open the Multi-purpose Tray.

6) Release the Stopper Retainer, remove the Stopper.

- 1 Claw



F-2-301

7) Close the Multi-purpose Tray.

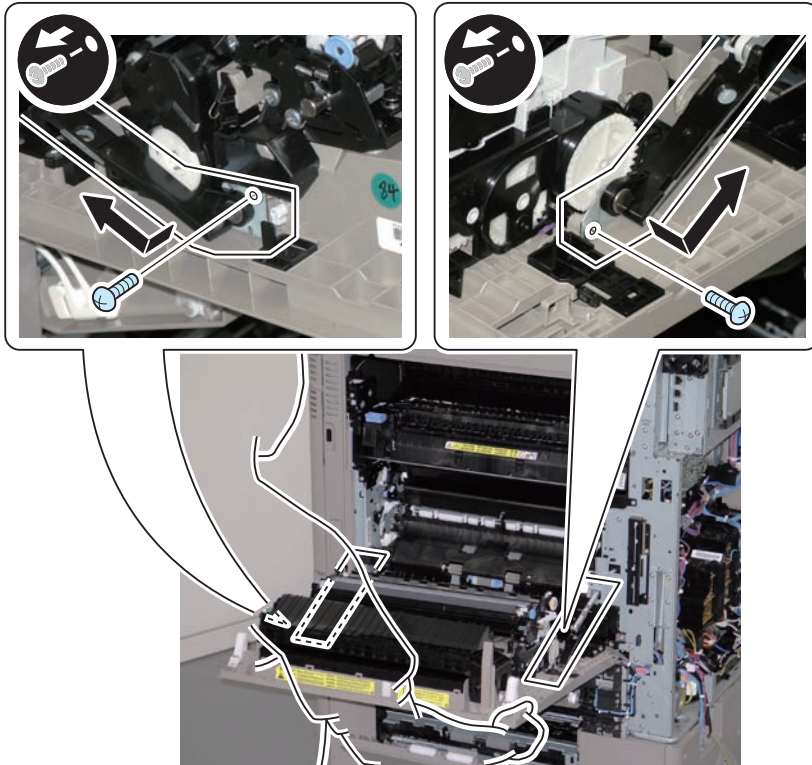
8) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.

9) Remove the Link Arms at right and left sides.

- 2 Screws

CAUTION:

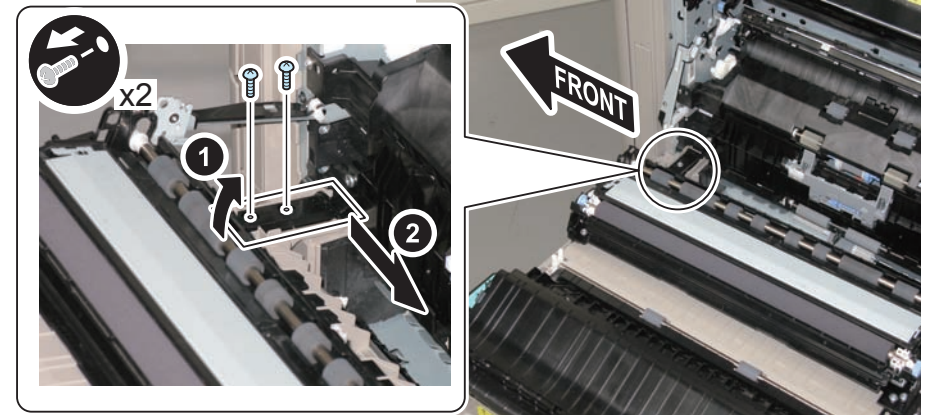
When removing the Link Arms, be sure to support the Right Door Unit.



F-2-302

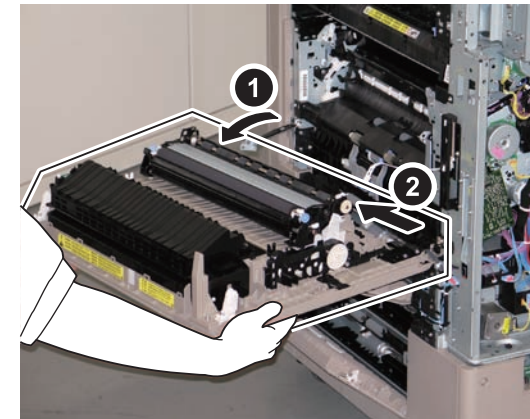
10) Remove the hinge at front side.

- 2 Screws



F-2-303

11) Remove the Right Door Unit in the direction of the arrow.



F-2-304

Document Exposure

Overview

Features

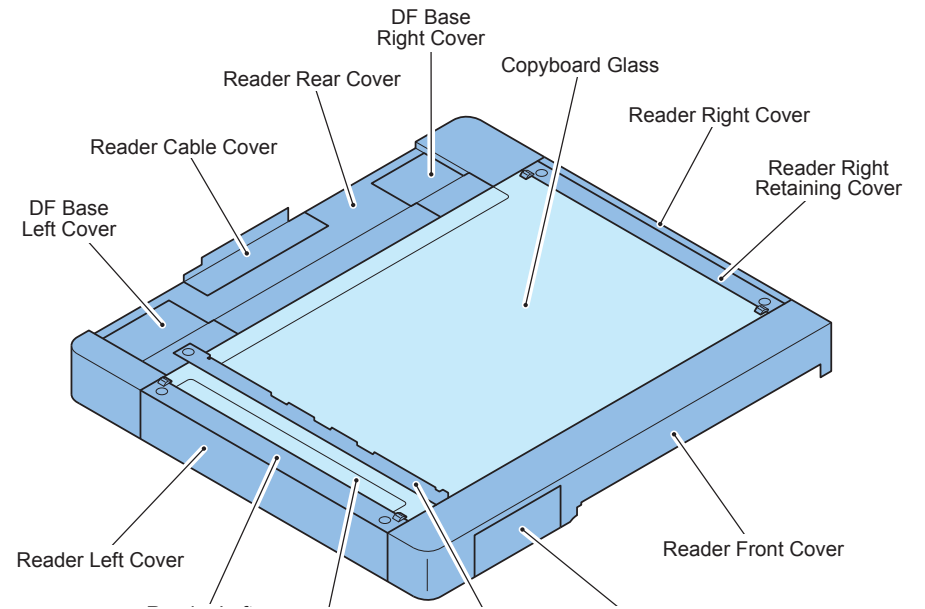
- Low energy consumption by adopting a new Scanner Unit
- Realization of a compact Scanner Unit by adopting a new lens unit

Specifications (Reader)

Item	Specification/function	Remarks	
Exposure system	High-brightness white LED + reflection plate	-	
Original scan	In BOOK mode	Scan by movement of scanner unit	-
	In DADF mode	Scan by original stream reading with scanner unit fixed	-
Scanning resolution	B&W: 600 dpi x 600 dpi Color: 600 dpi x 600 dpi *		
Gradation	256 gradations	-	
Carriage position detection	Scanner Unit HP Sensor (PS2)	-	
Magnification change	25% to 400%	B&W: scan magnification change (Vertical 2-line skipping: 25 to 50%) Color: digital reproduction	
	In horizontal direction	Image processing in main controller PCB	-
	In vertical direction	Image processing in main controller PCB	Some are processed by the reader controller PCB.
Number of line of Reading sensor	4 lines (R, G, B, B/W)	-	
Original size detection	In BOOK mode	Horizontal direction: detection by Scanner unit sensor (scanner unit)	-
	In DADF mode	Vertical direction: detection by reflection sensor (original size sensor 1 (AB type) or original size sensor 2 (Inch type))	-
Maximum original size	In BOOK mode	297 mm x 431.8 mm	-
	In DADF mode	304.8 mm x 630 mm	-

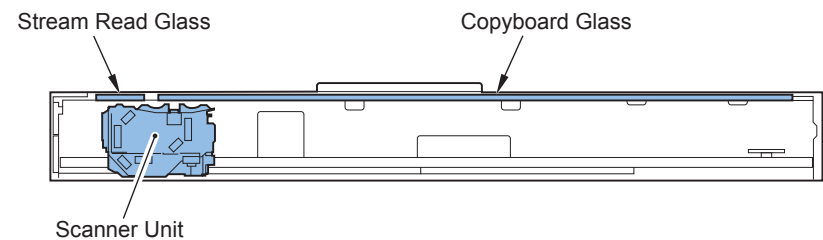
T-2-63

External View



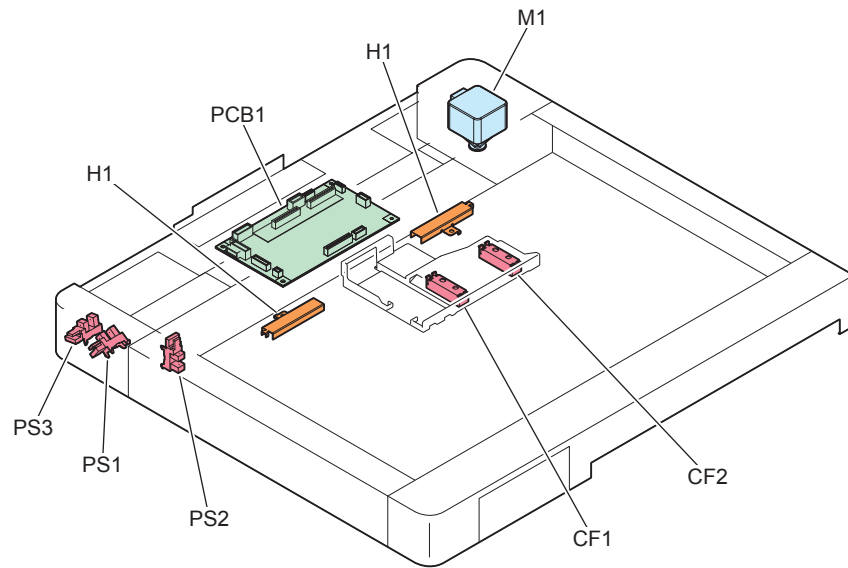
F-2-305

Cross Section



F-2-306

Major Electrical Parts



F-2-307

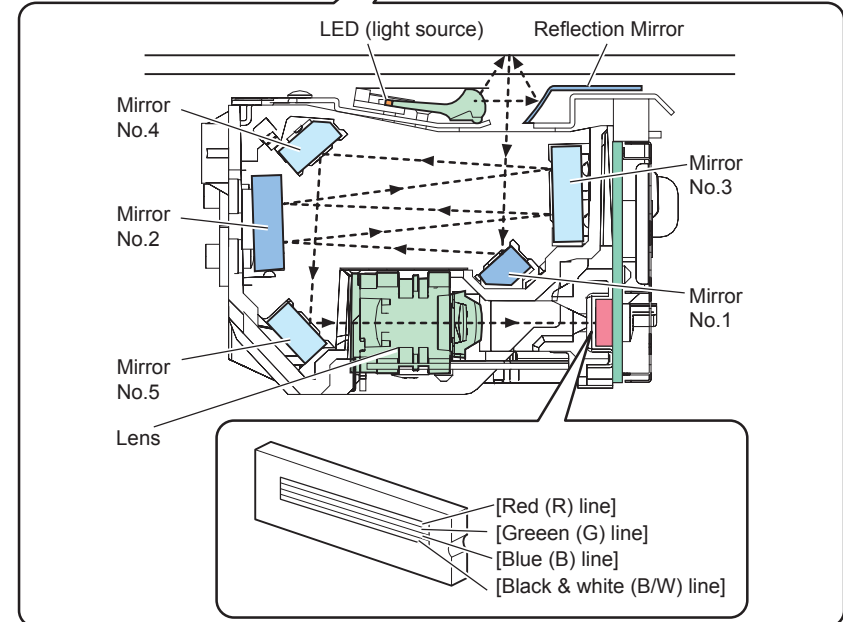
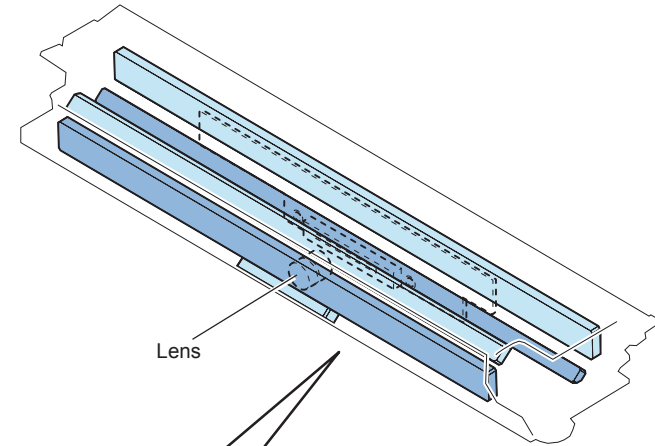
Component part	Symbol	Function/specification
Scanner motor	M1	2 phase pulse motor: pulse control
Scanner unit exhaust fan	FM1	Exhaustion of scanner unit
Scanner unit cooling fan	FM2	Cooling of scanner unit
DADF open/closed sensor 1	SR1	DADF open detection (DADF is detected at 5 degree)
Scanner unit HP sensor	SR2	Scanner unit HP detection
DADF open/closed sensor 2	SR3	DADF open detection (size detection timing is detected when DADF is open at 25 degree)
Original size sensor 1	CF1	Size detection in vertical direction (AB type)
Original size sensor 2	CF2	Size detection in vertical direction (INCH type)
Scanner unit	---	Image reading, analog image processing
Reader controller PCB	PCB1	Control of entire reader, digital image processing

T-2-64

Scanner Unit

Original exposure and scanning are performed by the integrated scanner unit of LED, turndown mirror, free curved mirror, and Reading sensor.

Light emitted from LED is reflected by the original and reaches the Reading Sensor through the Reflection Mirror and the newly developed Lens Unit.



F-2-308

■ LED lamp unit

On LED lamp unit, the light is generated from the 1 LED lamp PCBs (LED chip: 48 pieces per PCB).

Generated light is exposed to the original through the reflection plate.

● New lenses

By using the Lens Unit with 4 lenses combined, a compact Scanner Unit is achieved..

● Reading sensor

Reading sensor scans the image per 1 image line.

Reading sensor has 4 lines (R, G, B, BW). At 600dpi B&W reading, 1 line (B/W) is used. At color reading, 3 lines (R, G, and B) are used.

Error codes

E301 (insufficient light intensity)

- 0001 The light intensity during front side shading is lower than the standard level

E302 (Shading error)

- 0001 Error in paper front white shading
- 0002 Error in paper front black shading

Controls

■ Enlargement/Reduction

● Magnifications in Main Scanning Direction

An image is read at 100% in main scanning direction. Magnification variation and its data process are controlled on main controller PCB 2.

■ Detecting the Size of Originals

● Overview

The machine identifies the original size by the combination of measurement result of reflection light from the reflection sensor and specific points of Scanner. Also to identify it accurately even though an original moves when ADF is closed, the machine measures 2 points for each size.

- Main scanning direction: Scanner (AB type: 12 points measurement, inch type: 6 points measurement)
- Sub scanning direction: Reflection type photo sensor (AB type: 1 point, inch type: 1 point, AB/inch type: 2 point)

The followings are the procedures of original size identification.

1) External light search (main scanning direction only)

According to the LED status, the machine identifies the Scanner level of each detection position in main scanning direction.

2) Output level detection of each sensor

The machine turns on the LED on Scanner unit and measures the Scanner level of each detection position in main scanning direction.

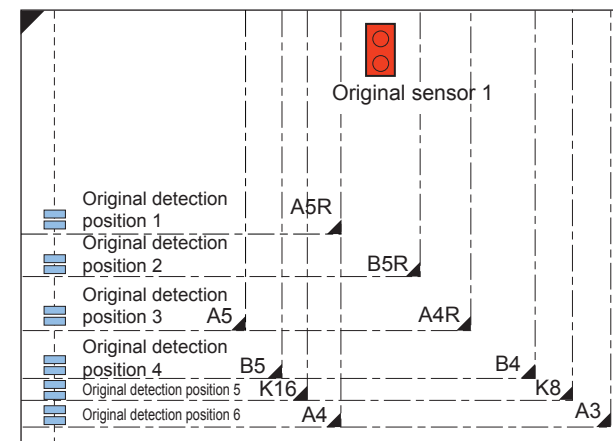
Also, turns on the LED on reflection type photo sensor in sub scanning direction and measures the sensor output.

The original size is identified by the combination of these output result.

● Control Details

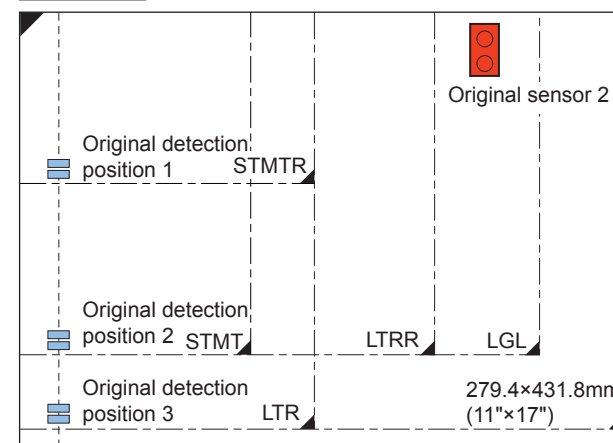
In horizontal scanning direction, sensor level of each original detection position is measured by moving the Scanner Unit to the detection position shown in the figure in relation to the original set position.

AB type



CCD original detection position

Inch type



CCD original detection position

F-2-309

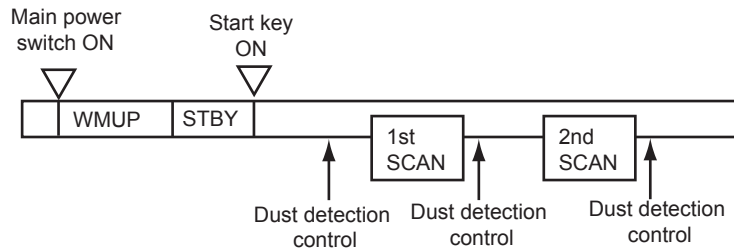
■ IDirt Sensor Control

● Overview

When reading an original, original reading position is changed according to the presence/absence of dust on the Stream Reading Glass or the Guide Plate of the ADF (on the Platen Roller in case of the reverse model), or image correction is performed to prevent the dust to be printed on an image.

[Control timing]

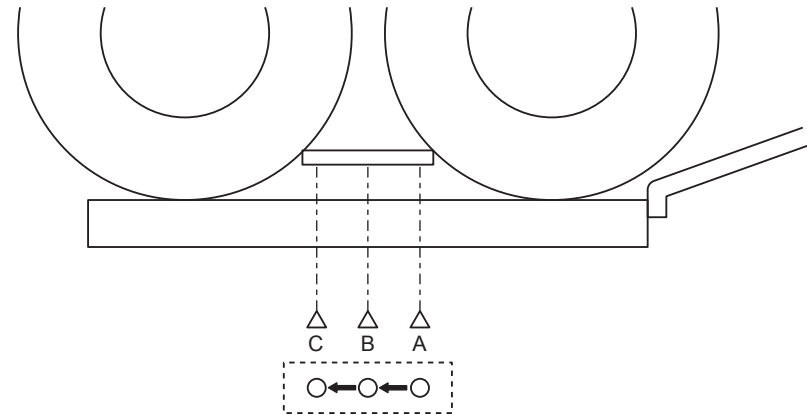
- At the end of a job
- Between sheets (for each reading of a sheet)
- At the start of a job (only when any of the following conditions is true.)
Dust detected at all points of detection at the end of the previous job
Dust detection failed to end normally at the end of the previous job (e.g., ADF opened)



F-2-310

[Particulars of control]

- At the end of a job (dust detection)
The Reading Sensor detects presence/absence of dust at the reading position A, B, and C in that order, and the position where dust is least present becomes the reading position for the next job..
- At the start of a job (dust bypass)
Like the time of completion of a job, presence/absence of dust is detected at all positions (A, B, and C in that order). The position where dust is least present is used as the reading position and reading starts.

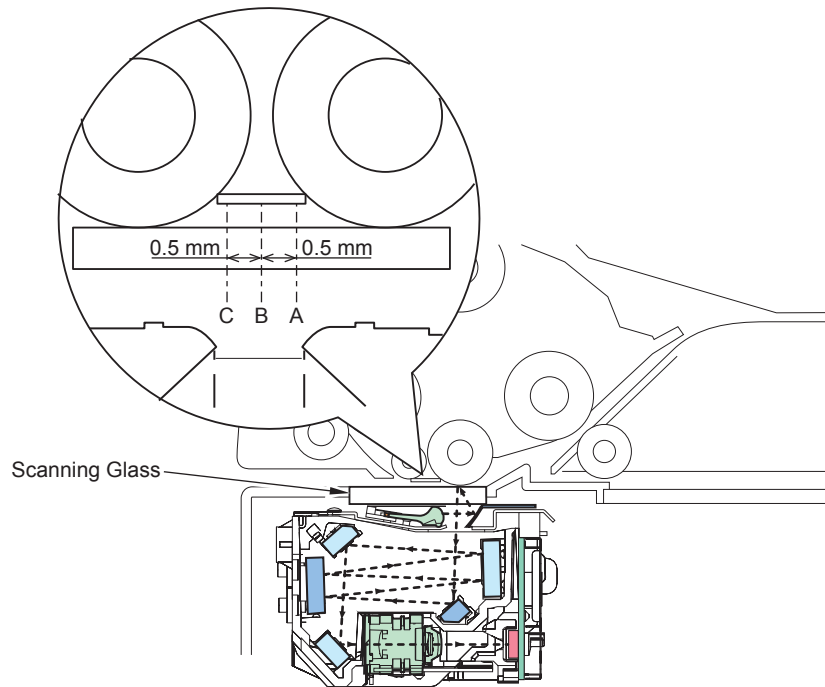


F-2-311

- Between sheets

The Scanner Unit does not move.

It reads the original using the position determined at the end or start of a job; however, if the presence of dust is still detected at the position, the machine will execute image correction.



F-2-312

Service Mode

- COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR > DFDST-L1
used to adjust the dust detection level between sheets
- COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR > DFDST-L2
used to adjust the dust detection level at the end of a job

Service Tasks

■ Periodically replacement parts

N/A

■ Consumables

N/A

■ Periodically Service

N/A

External Auxiliary System

Controls

■ Software counter

Count-up timing differs depending on the following conditions:

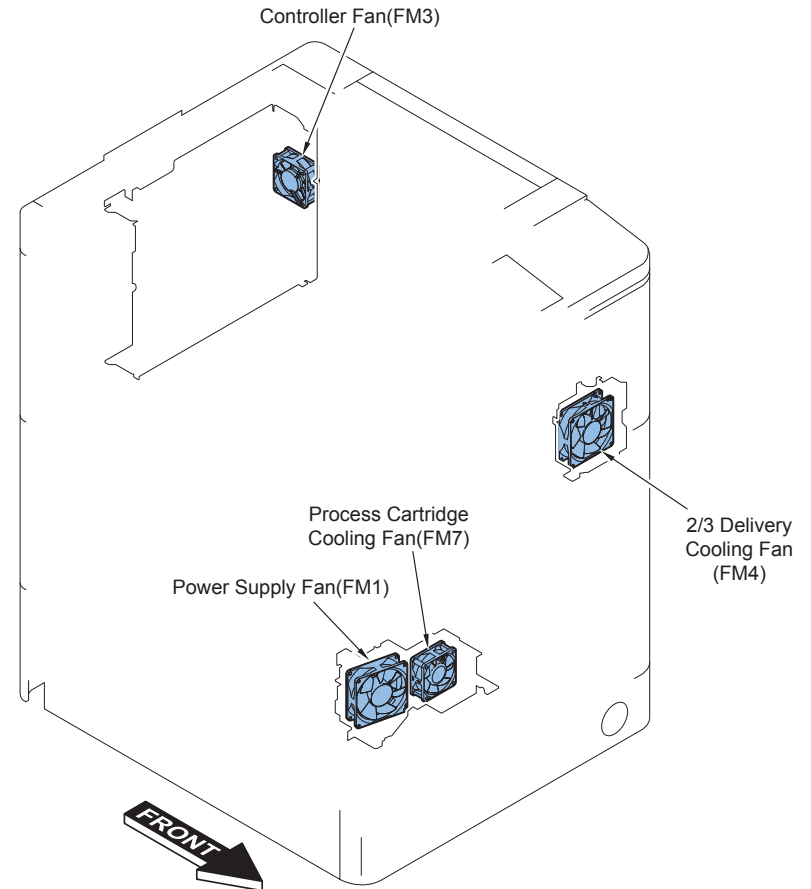
- Print mode (1-sided/ 2nd side of 2-sided/ 1st side of 2-sided)
- Delivery position (Finisher)

Delivery position			Print mode	
			1-sided/ 2nd side of 2-sided	1st side of 2-sided
			Count-up timing	
1	Host Machine	First Delivery Tray	First Delivery Sensor (PS21)	Duplex Paper Sensor (PS31)
		Second Delivery Tray	Second Delivery Sensor (PS27)	
		Third Delivery Tray*	Third Delivery Sensor (PS30)	
2	When the Finisher is installed	Finisher: Inlet Sensor (S1)		

T-2-65

*: In the case of installing 3 Way Unit-C1

- Fan
- Location of Fans

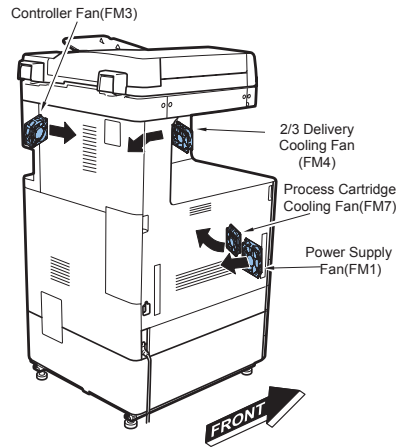


F-2-313

No.	Name	Function	Error codes	Target controller
FM1	Power Supply Fan	Cools the power, the High Voltage PCB and the paper delivered from the First Delivery Outlet.		Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12)
FM3	Controller Fan	Cools the Controller Assembly.		Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12)
FM4	2/3 Delivery Cooling Fan	Cools the paper delivered by 2/3 Delivery Outlet and the paper that is fed for 2-sided.		DC Controller PCB (UN9)
FM7	Drum Unit Cooling Fan	Cools the Drum Units and the Pickup Motor.		DC Controller PCB (UN9)

T-2-66

- Airflow



F-2-314

- Speed Control

Among the fans installed with this equipment, the Power Supply Cooling Fan (FM1), the Controller Fan (FM3) and the Delivery Cooling Fan (FM4) execute speed control. Rotation speed is switched by the Power Voltage Switch Circuit of the Controller Fan to switch voltage.

- Operation Sequence

3 Way Unit-C1	Fan type	Standby	At printing				Sleep		Others	
			1-sided		2-sided		Sleep1	Deep Sleep	ERR / JAM	Reader operation
			1st delivery	2nd/3rd delivery, Finisher	1st delivery	2nd/3rd delivery, Finisher				
Yes	Power Supply Cooling Fan	Half speed	Full speed	Full speed	Full speed	Full speed	Half speed	Stopped	Half speed	Half speed
	Controller Fan	80%	Full speed	Full speed	Full speed	Full speed	80%	Stopped	80%	80%
	Delivery Cooling Fan	Stopped	Stopped	*1 Stopped/Half speed	*2 Stopped/Full speed	*2 Stopped/Full speed	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped
	Drum Unit Cooling Fan	Stopped	Full speed	Full speed	Full speed	Full speed	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped
No	Power Supply Cooling Fan	Half speed	Full speed	-	Full speed	-	Half speed	Stopped	Half speed	Half speed
	Controller Fan	80%	Full speed	-	Full speed	-	80%	Stopped	80%	80%
	Delivery Cooling Fan	Stopped	Stopped	-	Full speed	-	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped
	Drum Unit Cooling Fan	Stopped	Full speed	-	Full speed	-	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped	Stopped

T-2-67

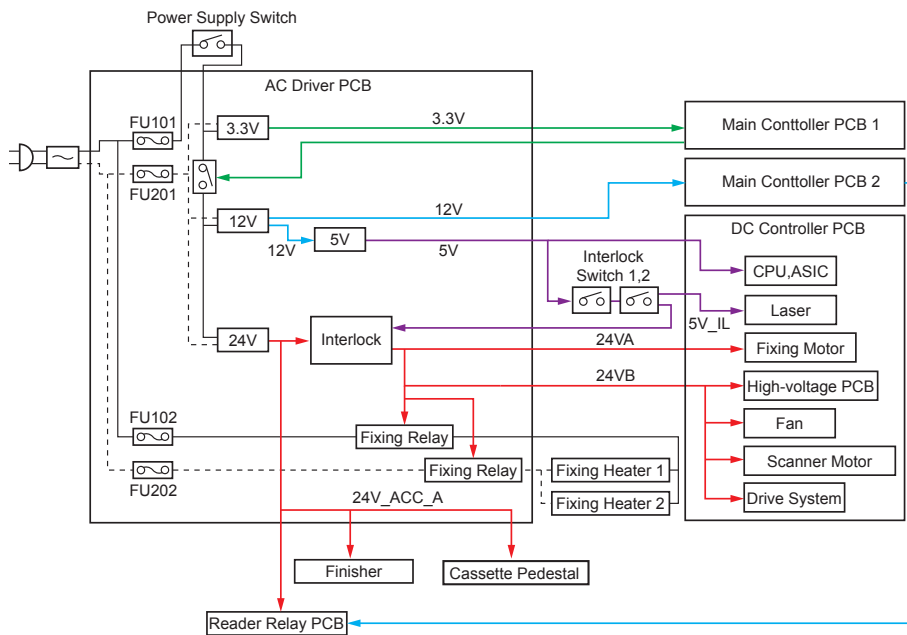
*1: The machine runs at half speed when temperature of the Fixing Assembly gets high. The machine is stopped in any other cases.

*2: The machine runs at full speed when temperature of the Fixing Assembly gets high. The machine is stopped in any other cases.

Although it depends on temperature status of the Fixing Assembly or feeding mode, the machine starts rotation by feeding of 140 sheets with a 1-sided print job using A4 plain paper.

Power Supply Control

Power supply distribution inside the printer



F-2-315

Quick Startup

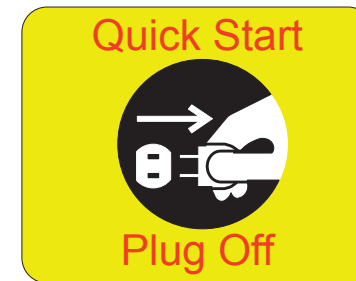
To realize faster startup, power configuration has been changed to always supply power to the AC Driver PCB. Thereby, the main menu can be displayed after 30 seconds from turning ON the Main Power Supply Switch.

Although when the Main Power Supply Switch is OFF, power is supplied to the following PCBs.

- AC Driver PCB
- Low-voltage Power Supply PCB
- Main Controller PCB 1

Disconnect the plug from outlet when performing work with the possibility to come in contact with the PCBs above. PCBs may get damage. If a conductive material comes in contact with the PCB, short circuit may occur in the PCB, and may cause damage on it.

The following illustration is used at the place where attention needs. When the following label is affixed, be sure to disconnect the plug from outlet.



In addition, quick startup is not performed under the following conditions.

At first startup after the AC Power Plug is connected to the outlet	
Under the following conditions (settings), the machine always starts up normally (even quick startup is ON).	
	When any of the following devices is connected.
	• Serial Interface Coin Vendor
	When any of the following network settings is set to "ON".
	• RARP
	• BOOTP
	• IPsec
	• IPv6
	• NetWare
	• AppleTalk

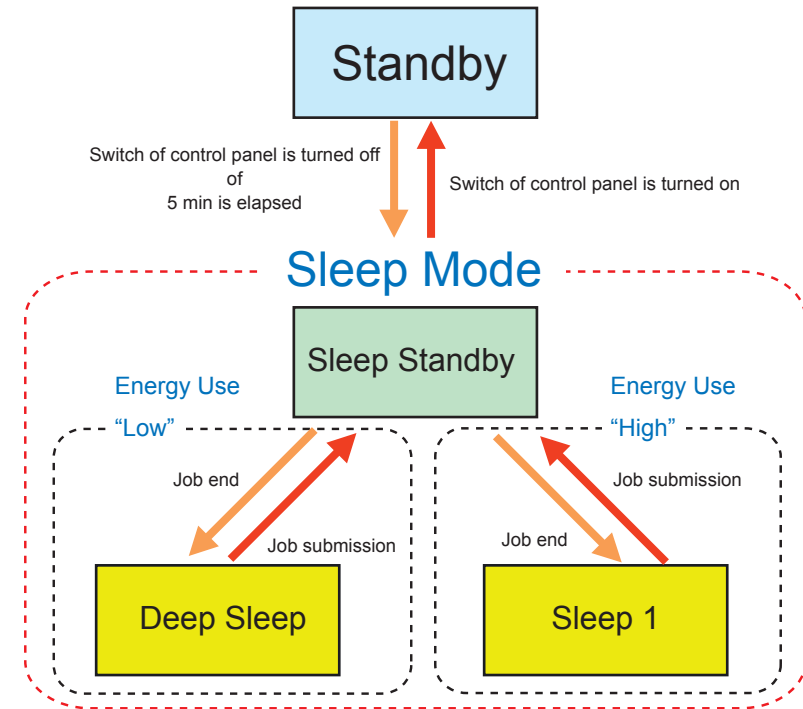
As for startup right after shutting down of the machine under any of the following conditions, it starts up normally (even quick startup is ON).

FAX	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is a fax transmission reservation. • Within a specified period of time (10 seconds) from disconnection of a fax line • Within a specified period of time (10 seconds) from non-detection of reception from a fax line • Within a specified period of time (10 seconds) from putting down the fax sub device or handset
MEAP	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • During execution of MEAP application which prohibits moving to Deep Sleep • A scheduled processing is reserved on MEAP.
Job processing	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • During print/scan job processing • During SEND job processing • During I-Fax communication/job processing • During report job processing • During forwarding transmission job/reception job processing • During processing of data storage to Advanced Box • During fax communication/phone communication • During distribution of device information • During Box backup • During export/import by RUI • During opening/reading/writing file of Advanced Box (common with SMR/WebDAV) • During rebuilding with the HDD Data Encryption/Mirroring Board installed
Others	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the machine state remains unchanged for more than 110 hours after turning ON the power as quick startup or turning OFF the power. -> At the time of shutdown, it will be normal shutdown. * This is to prevent a risk of UI freeze caused by memory leak. • Within a specified period of time (20 seconds) from turning OFF the Main Power Supply Switch -> In such a case, the machine reboots and then starts up normally at startup. Therefore, it will take a few more seconds compared with the normal startup. * This is for starting up the machine normally at the time of failure (UI freeze, etc.). • After moving to the Settings/Registration screen of service mode or RUI • After changing the user mode that requires restart • The machine is shut down from RUI • When an error occurs • When resource downloader is active • In printer/scanner limited functions mode • When a login application is switched by SMS • A license has been registered. • Startup by pressing the Control Panel Key

T-2-68

Energy Saving Function

The power supply mode of this equipment is divided into the "Standby" mode and the "Sleep" mode. In addition to the major modes, there are 3 patterns in "Sleep" mode.



F-2-317

*By default, it takes 5 minutes after completion of printing, scanning or Fax job. It takes 10 minutes after completion of other job cases (such as the job relating to Universal Send (e.g. iFAX) or ping, etc).

Standby

This is the mode that the machine is running or the machine is ready to start operation. All the power is supplied.

Sleep Standby

This mode indicates that only the display is turned off while the power of other parts is all supplied. The machine gets into this state when a PDL job is submitted during sleep.

Sleep 1

In the case of the following:

User Mode > Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Sleep Mode Energy Use > "High"

The Control Panel is not active (the light is off) and the 24V power on the DC Controller PCB is not supplied. The 12V power is supplied. The machine gets into the Sleep Standby mode when a print job is submitted and the Standby mode when the power supply switch on the Control Panel is pressed.

In the case of the following, the machine gets into this mode even if "Sleep Mode Energy Use" is set "Low".

- The device is connected to the USB Device Port-B3.
- Any mode other than "Auto" is specified for fax reception (RX) mode.

Deep Sleep

In the case of the following:

User mode > Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Sleep Mode Energy Use > "Low" (Default: "Low")

Only the 3.3V is supplied. The machine gets into the Sleep Standby mode when a print job is submitted and the Standby mode when the power supply switch on the Control Panel is pressed.

Regardless of the machine condition, the power of the Cassette Heater is always supplied when the Environment switch is turned ON.

The following descriptions are conditions for not entering DEEP SLEEP.

Software status	
	Common <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User Mode > Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Sleep Mode Energy Use is set to "High". • User Mode > Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Sleep Mode Exit Time Settings is set (and not blank).
	Network <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User Mode > Preferences > Network > TCP/IP Settings > BMLinkS Settings > Use BMLinkS is set to "ON". • User Mode > Preferences > Network > TCP/IP Settings > IPSec Settings > Use IPSec is set to "ON". • User Mode > Preferences > Network > SMB Server Settings > Use SMB Server is set to "ON". • User Mode > Preferences > Network > NetWare Settings > Use NetWare is set to "ON". • User Mode > Preferences > Network > AppleTalk Settings > Use AppleTalk is set to "ON". • User Mode > Preferences > Network > Ethernet Driver Settings > Auto Detect is set to "OFF" and "1000 Base-T" is set for "Ethernet Type". • User Mode > Preferences > Network > IEEE802.1X Settings > Use IEEE802.1X is set to "ON".
	Fax <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User Mode > Function Settings > Receive/Forward > Fax Settings > Selecting Reception Mode is not set to "Auto RX". • User Mode > Function Settings > Receive/Forward > Fax Settings > Auto Reception Switching is set to "ON". • User Mode > Function Settings > Receive/Forward > Fax Settings > Remote Reception is set to "ON". • User Mode > Function Settings > Send > Fax Settings > Set Line > Modem Dial in Settings > Line 1 or Line 2 is set to "ON". • User Mode > Function Settings > Receive/Forward > Fax Settings > Number Display Settings > Line 1 or Line 2 is set to "ON".

T-2-69

Hardware status

- The Serial Coin Vendor is connected.
- The G4 Fax Board is installed.
- The iSlot Extension Card is connected.
- User Mode > Preferences > Network > TCP/IP Settings > IPsec Settings > Use IPsec is set to "ON".
- The host machine (such as a PC) is connected to the USB Device.
- The HID is connected to the USB host.
- The storage is connected to the USB host.
- The Device Port (Multimedia Card Reader with a card) is connected to the USB host.
- A device (general USB devices such as the IC Card Reader not used by host machine's functions) used by MEAP is connected to the USB host.

T-2-70

System Performance Status

- A network application is communicating.
- A print job is being processed or waiting.
- A scan job is being processed or waiting.
- A fax communication is in progress.
- A phone communication is in progress.
- An IFAX communication is in progress.
- A job is being processed.
- A report job is being processed.
- A forward send job is in progress.
- A forward receive job is in progress.
- A SEND job is being processed.
- The delivery of device information is in progress.
- RUI is being exported.
- RUI is being imported.
- A VNC connection is in progress.
- A MEAP Application is being executed. (However, when the MEAP Application is scheduling Timer Service Task within the time condition (within 12 minutes) of the Alarm Service not entering DEEP SLEEP, the machine may enter DEEP SLEEP.)
- The Resource Downloader is executing a task (such as downloading a font data and creating a backup).
- The Inbox is being backed up.
- A file in the Super BOX is being opened (reading or writing). (*Common with WebDAV and SMB)
- The printer is in a limited operation.
- The scanner is in a limited operation.
- A store job is being processed. (As with SEND, this include the storage process to Advanced Box or other storage after the scanning is completed.)

The Alarm Service is set to within 12 minutes.

- * When one of the following is being executed, the Alarm Service (Time) is set.
- - Time setting for ON/OFF of the Memory Lock
- User Mode > Function Settings > Receive/Forward > Common Settings > Fax/I-Fax Inbox > Memory Lock Start Time
- User Mode > Function Settings > Receive/Forward > Common Settings > Fax/I-Fax Inbox > Memory Lock End Time
- - Output of the scheduled report
- User Mode > Function Settings > Send > Common Settings > Communication Management Report > Specify Print Time (when not set to "Off")
- User Mode > Function Settings > Send > Fax Settings > Fax Activity Report > Specify Print Time (when not set to "Off")
- User Mode > Management Settings > Device Management > Device Information Delivery Settings > Communication Log > Specify Print Time (when not set to "Off")
- - Scheduled Transmission Setting (Fax, Send)
- - POP settings
- User Mode > Function Settings > Send > E-Mail/I-Fax Settings > Network Settings > Next > POP Issue Interval (when not set to "0")
- DHCP Setting (The interval is specified by the server)
- E-RDS Setting (The interval is specified by the server)
- SNTP Setting (The interval is specified by the server)
- Auto delivery of device information
- Scheduled specified printing of web browser
- Time specified backup of Inbox document
- The auto sleep timer is running (and for the time set by User Mode > Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Weekly Timer Settings).
- The sleep mode exit timer is running (for 15 seconds after exiting DEEP SLEEP)."
- The network timer is running (and for the number of seconds set by Service Mode (Level 2) > COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK > WUEN-LIV.)
- The wake up timer is running (for 10 minutes after receiving a wake up packet).
- The hard disk drive protection timer is running (for 12 minutes after exiting from DEEP SLEEP and the HDD is powered ON. However, after a printing, scanning, and fax job is completed, this timer is disabled.)
- The after linkup timer is running (for 1 minute after the machine is powered ON and the communication with the network is started).
- The sleep notification timer is running (for 10 minutes after notifying the network module of entering DEEP SLEEP. However, when the network module responds, this timer is disabled).

T-2-71

● Effects of Spanning Tree-supported Hub

If you set the network as a loop, data keeps staying in this loop and efficiency of data transfer might be decreased. In order to prevent this symptom, some hubs have the function called "spanning tree". If this function is enabled, the device newly connected to the hub can make data communication with network 10 to 50 seconds (time changes due to the conditions) after the connection. When the machine enters Deep sleep mode and restores from the sleep mode, the machine electrically disconnects with the network once. Therefore, if the machine connects with the spanning tree-installed hub, the machine cannot communicate with network for approximately 1 minute at a maximum after restoring from the Deep sleep mode.

For this reason, right after restoring from the Deep sleep mode, the following symptoms might occur: Device status cannot be collected, printing cannot be made, and login using a login application cannot be made. If such symptoms become any problems, perform the following operations.

- Using user mode, set not to enter the Deep sleep mode.
Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Sleep Mode Energy Use > High
- Disable the spanning tree function of hub.
- Request users to use the hub which supports Rapid Spanning-Tree
- Protocol (RSTP) that resolved such problems.

● Service Tasks

■ Actions at Parts Replacement

None.

■ Periodically Replaced Parts

None.

■ Consumable Parts

None.

■ Service Notes

None.

Service Tasks

■ Actions at Parts Replacement

None.

■ Periodically Replaced Parts

None.

■ Consumable Parts

None.

■ Service Notes

None.

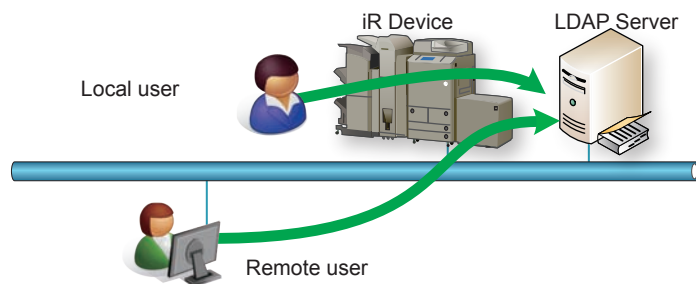
MEAP

Changes

LDAP Authentication (SSO-H Server Authentication)

LDAP authentication has been added to the server authentication method using Single Sign-On H (hereinafter referred to as SSO-H).

LDAP authentication is a user authentication performed by using an LDAP server on the network linked with the device.

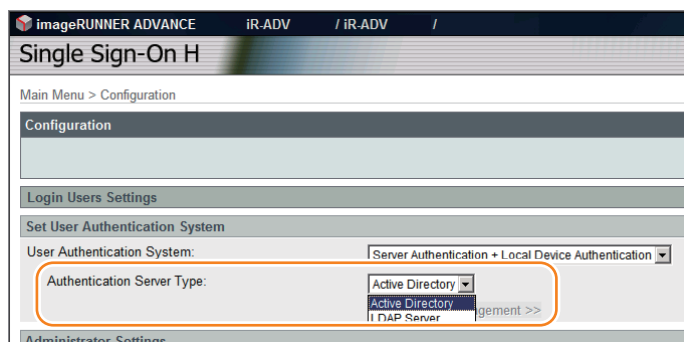


F-2-318

Accordingly, the following item and setting screens have been added to the SSO-H management screen of the remote UI.

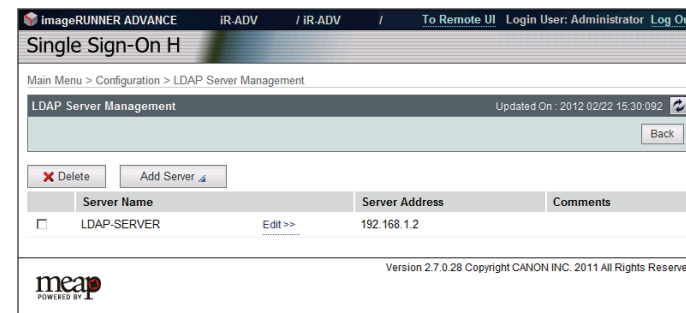
- Drop-down list for selecting the LDAP server as the authentication server
- The LDAP server management screen (when [LDAP Server] is selected from the foregoing drop-down list)
- The screen for adding an LDAP server

An example of the screen showing the drop-down list for selecting LDAP Server



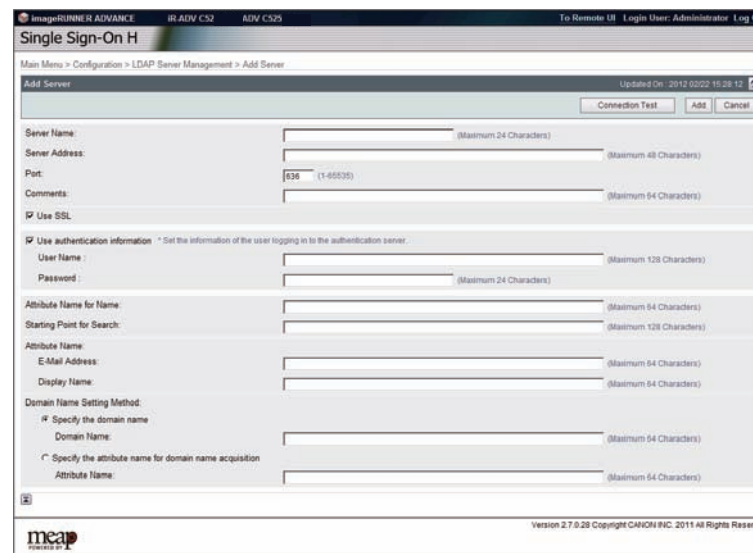
F-2-319

An example of the LDAP server management screen



F-2-320

An example of the screen for adding an LDAP server



F-2-321

For details, refer to "Server authentication (Active Directory authentication)" in this chapter.

■ Message Display by USB Driver Setting Change

By starting, stopping and uninstalling the MEAP application, driver settings of the USB device may be changed. Due to this setting change, when the device needs to be restarted, a message prompting to restart is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'MEAP Application Management' interface. A yellow warning banner at the top states: 'You need to restart the device to have driver settings of the USB device take effect.' Below this is a table of installed applications:

Application Name	Installed on	Status	License
Application A	2.0.0 2010 09/29	Stopped	Unnecessary
Application B	2.0.0 2010 09/29	Stopped	Unnecessary
Application C	2.0.0 2010 09/29	Stopped	Unnecessary

Below the table is a 'Resource Information' section with a table showing usage for Storage, Memory, Threads, Sockets, and File Descriptors.

F-2-322

■ Authentication Information Sharing Function

● Sharing the authentication information

Authentication information at login and authentication information for MEAP application were managed separately, so it was very inconvenient because authentication was executed many times.

In the MEAP environment, the unified authentication function which authentication information can be shared even between MEAP applications was added.

Supported MEAP Specifications is Ver.59 and both device and MEAP application need to support this version in order to use this function.

There are 2 types for authentication information sharing: Volatile Credential which the registered information is discarded at logout or shutdown of the device, and Persistent Credential which the registered information is not discarded even at logout. (See Chapter 2, "Integrated Authentication Function.")

■ MEAP Application Setting Information Management and Log Management

● 3 functions

For the built-in applications in iR-ADV models, 3 functions (services) were added. These functions support the platform which was reinforced in terms of management. In detail, information which the MEAP applications manage respectively (setting information, user setting information, a bunch of keys, and log) can be managed effectively and collectively. These 3 functions are shown below.

1) MEAP User Preference Service (MEAP Spec Ver 56)

Management service of customized information for each user which MEAP application retains

2) MEAP Application Configuration Service (MEAP Spec Ver 57)

Management service of the application's setting information

3) MEAP Application Log Service (MEAP Spec Ver 58)

Service to collect the application log (debug log and authentication log)

Note:

Registration method of application data to each service and its usage method are disclosed in MEAP SDK V.4.3. However, as for the authentication log only, they are disclosed in MEAP Login SDK V.3.1.

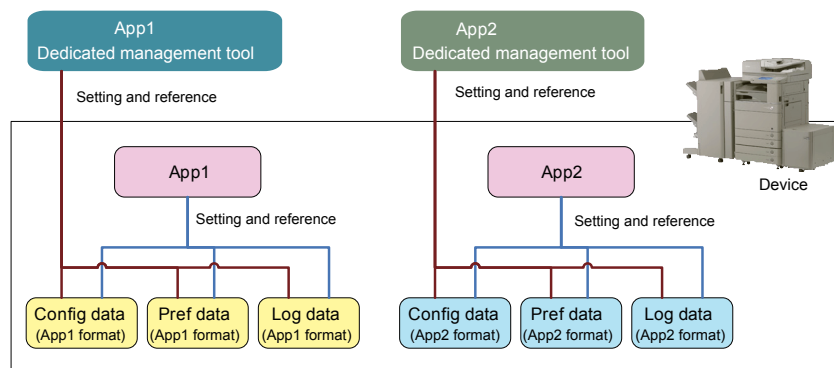
Management service of the application data which was stored in each service is provided.

- iW EMC Plug-in(DAM Plug-in)、RUI、SMS

● Differences in MEAP Application Data Management when Using New Functions

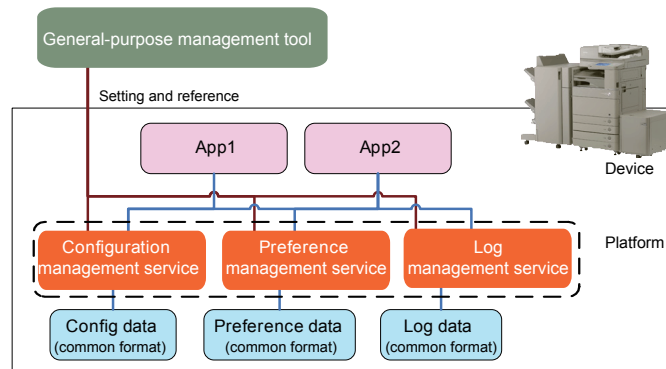
By using the 3 functions which were newly added, MEAP applications can be managed collectively as follows. (Only for MEAP applications which support new functions)

Devices and MEAP applications which do not support new functions



F-2-323

Devices and MEAP applications which support new functions



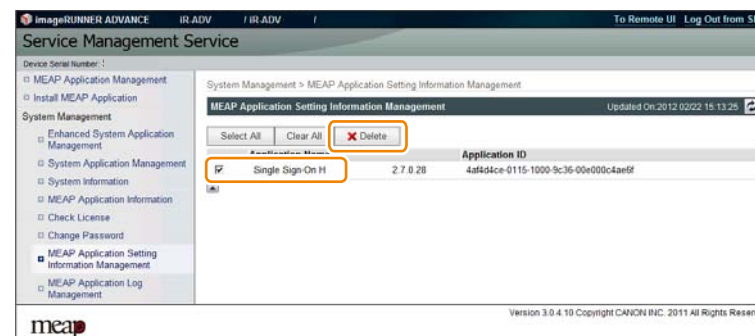
F-2-324

● Addition of SMS Functions

Due to the foregoing additional 3 functions, functions for MEAP application were added to SMS.

Management of the MEAP application's setting information

MEAP application's setting information management function which the application data can be deleted was added.

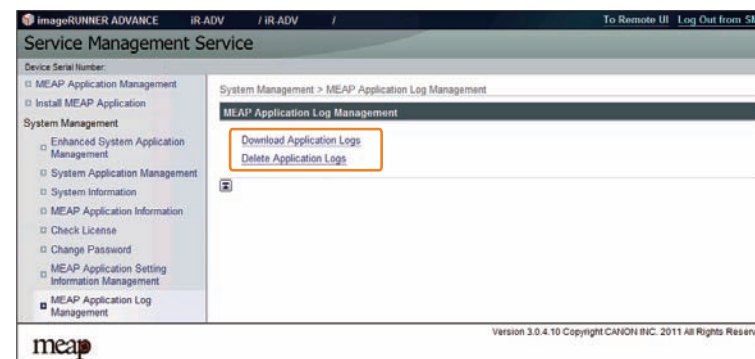


F-2-325

Log management of MEAP application

Log management function which the MEAP application log can be downloaded and/or deleted was added.

Screen example: Download/ Deletion of MEAP application log



F-2-326

■ Function Supporting Deep Sleep Mode

Once the device shifted to the deep sleep mode, the USB device could not be controlled after recovery from the deep sleep mode. For this reason, it was necessary to control the application not to shift to the deep sleep mode.

With this function, the USB device control is enabled after recovery from the deep sleep mode as in the case when the USB device is inserted and removed (occurrence of disconnection/connection event) at recovery from the deep sleep mode.

In addition, this function enables the USB device control after shifting to the deep sleep mode, so the application needs to perform reconnection processing.

This function can be used with the device which MEAP Specifications Ver.54 is supported.

● Preparation for Using SSO-H

■ Outline

When using Single Sign-On H (hereinafter referred to as SSO-H) for the login service, required system environments are different in server authentication or local device authentication.

See the following for system requirements in each of authentication methods:

■ Server authentication management

The system requirements necessary when using server authentication by SSO-H vary depending on the authentication server.

The system requirements for using each authentication server are shown below.

● Active Directory authentication

In order to use Active Directory authentication in SSO-H, the following system environments are required.

4) Authentication server (Active Directory : Windows server)

- Active Directory and Domain Name System (DNS) should be installed.
 - A group named "Canon Peripheral Admins" should be created on the Active Directory.
 - The OS should be one of the followings.
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2003 SP2 *
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 SP2 *
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2008 SP2 *
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1
- * 64-bit version is not supported.

5) Users accessing the authentication server (Active Directory: Windows Server)

- The user should belong to the "Canon Peripheral Admins" group on the Active Directory.
- The user name should contain only single-byte alphanumeric characters, - (hyphen), _ (low line), and % (percent).

Note:

The difference in time setting between the authentication server (Active Directory) and the machine (and the computer for login) should be within 5 minutes. (If the difference in time setting is 5 minutes or longer, an error will occur at the time of login for the server authentication.)

Note:

As for the user name for logging into the machine, use the name registered as "User logon name (pre-Windows 2000)" in the Active Directory.

An example of the user registration screen (Windows Server 2003)

F-2-327

● LDAP authentication

When using LDAP authentication by SSO-H, the following conditions need to be satisfied.

1) LDAP server

- Novell eDirectory V8.8 SP6 for Windows
- Lotus Domino V8.5 for Windows

2) OS where the LDAP server runs

- It should comply with the specifications of the LDAP server product.

Operation check has been conducted for the following OS.

- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise SP2
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Enterprise

Note:

When an LDAP server other than the server shown above is used, SSO-H may not work properly.

Windows Active Directory works also as an LDAP server, but is not supported.

■ PC Environment of Administrator Users and General Users

The following environment is required to use this machine (managed by SSO-H) from a PC on the network.

● OS of the PC and Other Environments

Classification	Operating System	Supported browser	Java Runtime Environment
Client OS	Windows XP Professional SP3	Internet Explorer 7 Internet Explorer 8	Java Runtime Environment 1.5 or later *1 *3
	Windows Vista SP2	Internet Explorer 7 Internet Explorer 8	Java Runtime Environment 1.5 or later *1 *3
		Internet Explorer 9	Java Runtime Environment 1.5 or later *2 *3
	Windows 7 SP1	Internet Explorer 8	Java Runtime Environment 1.5 or later *1 *3
Internet Explorer 9		Java Runtime Environment 1.5 or later *2 *3	
Server OS	Windows Server 2003 SP2	Internet Explorer 7	Java Runtime Environment 1.5 or later *1 *3
	Windows Server 2003 R2 SP2	Internet Explorer 8	Java Runtime Environment 1.5 or later *1 *3
	Windows Server 2008 SP2	Internet Explorer 7 Internet Explorer 8	Java Runtime Environment 1.5 or later *1 *3
		Internet Explorer 9	Java Runtime Environment 1.5 or later *2 *3
Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1	Internet Explorer 8	Java Runtime Environment 1.5 or later *1 *3	
	Internet Explorer 9	Java Runtime Environment 1.5 or later *2 *3	
Mac OS	Mac OS X v10.5	Safari 4.0.5 Safari 5.0.5	Java 2 Standard Edition 5.0 *1 *3
	Mac OS X v10.6	Safari 4.0.5 Safari 5.0.5	
		Safari 5.1	
Mac OS X v10.7	Safari 5.1		

JRE : Java Runtime Environment

J2SE : Java 2 Platform Standard Edition

T-2-72

Note:

*1 Excluding JRE6 update4/5

*2 In order to use JRE1.6 with Internet Explorer 9, JRE1.6.0.24 or later is required.

*3 Refer to the website of JAVA (<http://java.com/>) for how to obtain the Java environment.

Note:

- The ActiveX plug-in should be enabled in Internet Explorer.
- In Internet Explorer, if [Run ActiveX controls and plug-ins] is disabled in [Internet Options] > [Security] > [Custom level...], a warning message that JRE has not yet been installed is displayed.
- JavaScript should be enabled in all the browsers.
- In the case of an IP v6 environment, JRE1.5 or later is required.
- When using Windows XP in an IP v6 environment, IP v6 may need to be installed manually in some cases.

● Network ports used

	Port No.	Application
Connecting	53	Communication with DNS server (fixed)
	88	Kerberos authentication with KDC (Key Distribution Center)
	1-65535 (default:389)	Communication with directory service using LDAP (default is 389, may be changed to any port on LDAP service side)
Listening	10000 - 10100	

T-2-73

● Preparation for Using SMS

To use SMS, a PC and browser used to access SMS are required, and the network settings need to be set up on the device.

■ Preparation of PC for Accessing SMS

● Checking of operation environment

In order to access SMS using password authentication, the PC and browser need to comply with the following system environment.

Combination of the Browser and the OS

Operating System	Supported browser
Windows XP Professional SP3	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7
	Microsoft Internet Explorer 8
Windows Vista SP2	Microsoft Internet Explorer 7
	Microsoft Internet Explorer 8
	Microsoft Internet Explorer 9
Windows 7 SP1	Microsoft Internet Explorer 8
	Microsoft Internet Explorer 9
Mac OS X v10.5	Safari 4.0.5
	Safari 5.0.5
Mac OS X v10.6	Safari 4.0.5
	Safari 5.0.5
	Safari 5.1
Mac OS X Lion	Safari 5.1

T-2-74

In order to access SMS using RLS authentication, the environment should comply with the environment for using SSO-H as the login service. (For details, refer to "PC Environment of Administrator Users and General Users".)

● PC and Browser Settings

The PC and browser used to access SMS need to satisfy the following conditions.

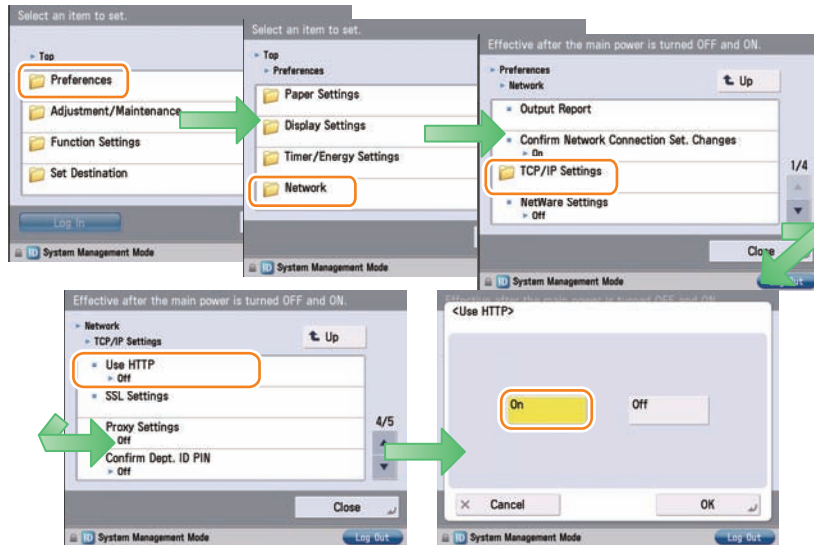
- The supported browser language should be the same with the language of the OS.
- Java Script should be enabled.
- The supported screen size should be 800 x 600 or larger (recommended size: 1024 x 768).
- Session cookie should be enabled.
- Only alphanumeric characters and some of the symbols ("-" or ".") should be used as the machine domain name and host name.
- If an invalid character string such as a low line ("_") is included in the host name, cookies cannot be enabled.

Settings on the Device Side

Network configuration process

In order to provide support for the machine via network such as SMS, the network settings need to be made from the touch panel of the machine. (this setting is [ON] by default).

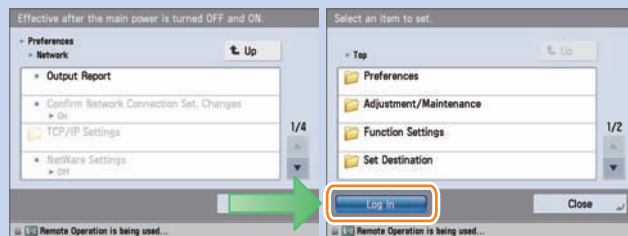
- 1) Press [Settings/Registration] button, select [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [Use HTTP] and press [On] button.



F-2-328

Note:

In iR-ADV series, the System Manager ID and the System PIN are configured by default, so "Network" and the items that follow are grayed out and cannot be selected. Return to the top screen, press "Login" button at the lower left of the screen, login as the system manager, and configure the settings. The default setting for the System Manager ID is "7654321", and the password is "7654321".

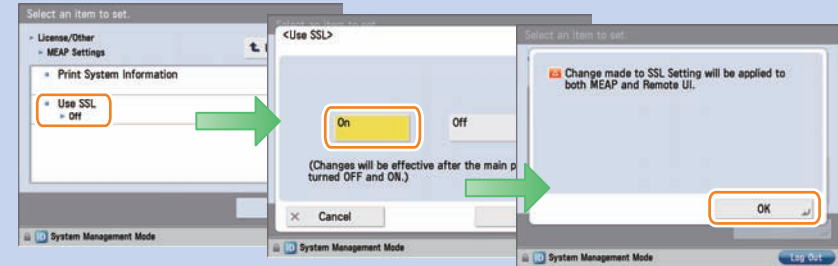


F-2-329

Note:

When using SSL, press [Settings/Registration] button, select [Management Settings]>[License / Other] > [MEAP Settings] > [SSL Settings] and press [On] button. (This setting is applied to SSL setting on RUI. Vice versa, [On] set for SSL on RUI is also applied to the touch panel.)

When [Use SSL] is set to On, the message dialog, [The Default Key is not set. Check the Key and Certificate List settings in Certificate Setting.], is shown. Press [OK] button for this message.



F-2-330

- 2) Press [OK] button to return to Main Menu screen.
- 3) Restart this device.

CAUTION:

- The setting [Use HTTP] is not actually enabled/disabled until you have restarted the device.
- You cannot make a connection through a proxy server. If a proxy server is in use, enter the IP address of the MEAP device in the Exceptions field for the browser. Open Internet Options dialog of Internet Explorer and select Connections tab, LAN Settings button, Use a proxy server option, and Advanced button of Proxy server group. Proxy Settings dialog will opens. The Exceptions field is in the dialog. As network settings vary among environments, consult the network administrator.
- If Cookie and JavaScript are not enabled in the Web browser, you will not be able to use SMS.
- To type text using the Web browser, use the characters compatible with the MEAP device's touch panel display. The MEAP device may not properly recognize some characters.
- When [Use SSL] is made available, it is necessary to set the key and the certificate necessary for the SSL communication. Set the key and the certificate by SSL with [SSL Settings] that exists in [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [SSL Settings] on the iR device.

● Key Pair and Server Certificate when Using Encrypted SSL Communication

To use SMS via SSL connection, it is required to specify a key pair and server certificate as the key to be used.

Since a key (default key) that can be used for encrypted SSL communication is installed as standard on the device, advance setting of the key pair and server certificate is not required. In order to use an encryption key other than the default key, follow the procedure "Generating a key pair" shown below to make settings for the key pair and server certificate necessary for encrypted SSL communication.

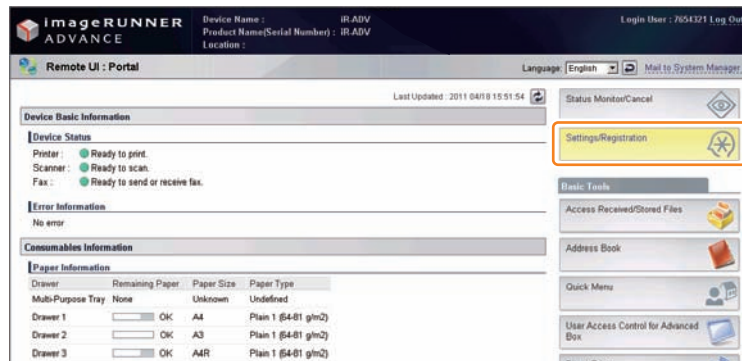
Note:

- MFP has a server certificate registered as standard.
- For detailed procedures of the Default Key setting, refer to [e-Manual > Security].
- As for SMS, by setting a Default Key, encrypted SSL communication is always executed regardless of the following setting: [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] (Settings/Registration) > [MEAP Settings] > [SSL Settings]: ON/OFF.

Generating a key pair

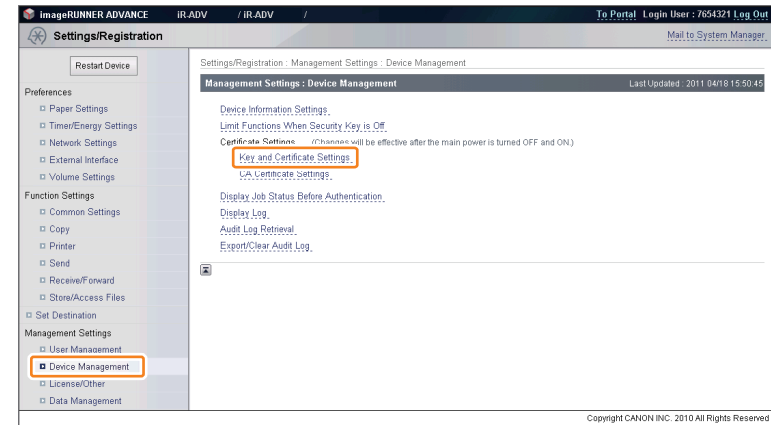
1) From a PC on the same network as the device, use a web browser to access the remote UI's portal page. Then, select [Settings/Registration] from the menu on the right side of the screen.

URL to access: <http://<device's IP address>:8000/>



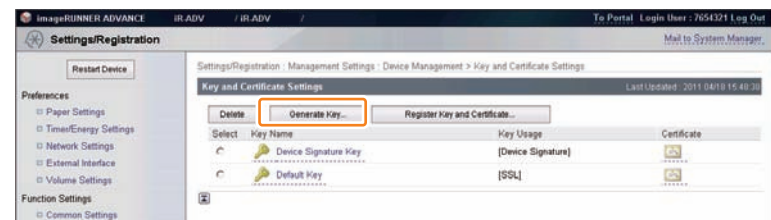
F-2-331

2) Click [Management Settings] > [Device Management] > [Certificate Settings] > [Key and Certificate Settings].



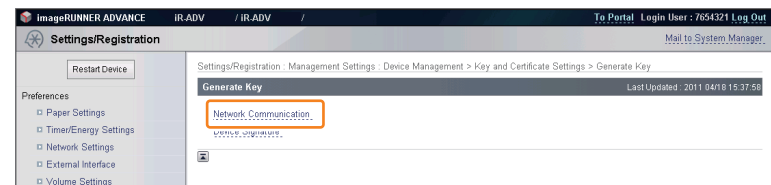
F-2-332

3) Click [Generate Key...] button.



F-2-333

4) Click [Network Communication]



F-2-334

5) Enter the necessary information, and then click the [OK] button.

F-2-335

Input example

Item name	Type	Content	Entry
Key Settings			
Key Name	Compulsory	An arbitrary character string	Default Key
Signature Algorithm	Compulsory	Selected from:SHA1/SHA256/SHA384/SHA512	RSA
Key Algorithm	Compulsory	Selected from:512/1024/2048/4096	512
Certificate Settings			
Validity Start Date	Compulsory	Date	15/4/2012
Validity End Date	Compulsory	Date	15/4/2036
Country/Region	Compulsory	Country or region name	US
State	Arbitrary	State name	-
City	Arbitrary	City name	-
Organization	Arbitrary	Organization name	-
Organization Unit	Arbitrary	Organization unit	-
Common Name	Arbitrary	Common Name*	-

T-2-75

Note:

When the IP address of the device has been entered in the [Common Name] entry field, if you install a server certificate to the browser (see "Installing a server certificate (reference information)"), the message "Certificate Error" that usually appears when access is made from Internet Explorer 7 or later will not be displayed.

6) Check to see that the generated key appears in [Registered Key and Certificate].

F-2-336

Default Key Settings

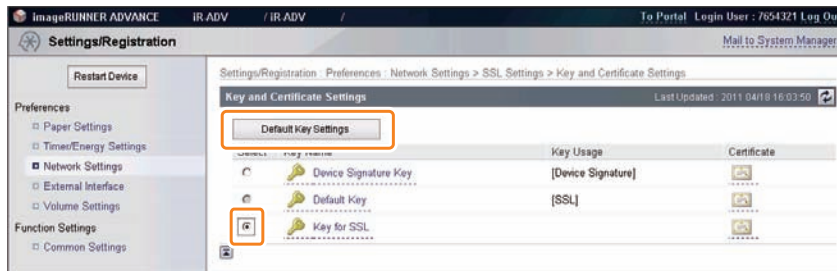
1) Click [Preferences] > [Network Settings] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [SSL Settings].

F-2-337

2) Click [Key and Certificate...] button.

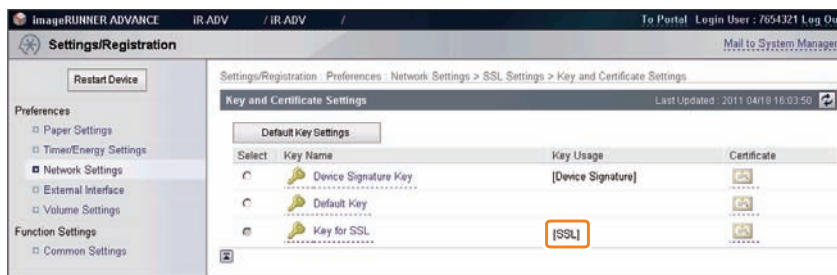
F-2-338

3) Select the generated key, and then click the [Default Key Settings] button.



F-2-339

4) Check that [SSL] is displayed in the [Key Usage] entry field.



F-2-340

5) Log out from the remote UI, and then restart the device.

Installing a server certificate (reference information)

When you access a device where the key installed as standard [default key] is set as the key for SSL, "Certificate Error" appears if the version of Internet Explorer (IE) is Version 7 or later.

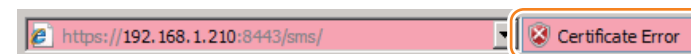
Error display example



F-2-341

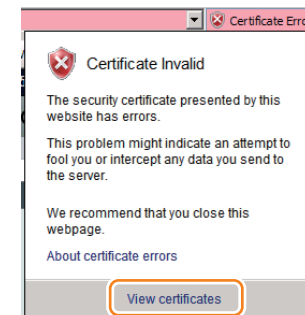
To disable display of "Certificate Error", use the following procedure (for IE8) to set the key generated in "Key Pair and Server Certificate when Using Encrypted SSL Communication" (i.e. the key with the IP address of the device specified as the shared name) as an SSL key.

1) Access SMS from the browser, and then click "Certificate Error" in the URL entry field.



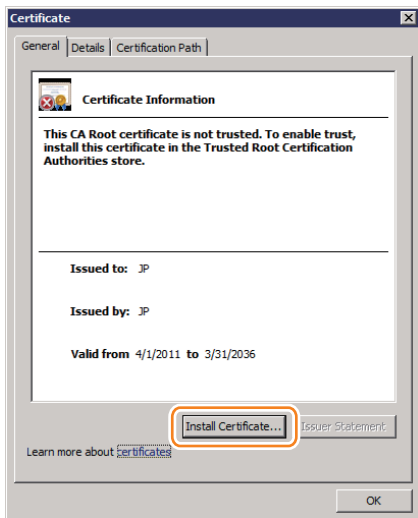
F-2-342

2) Click [View certificates].



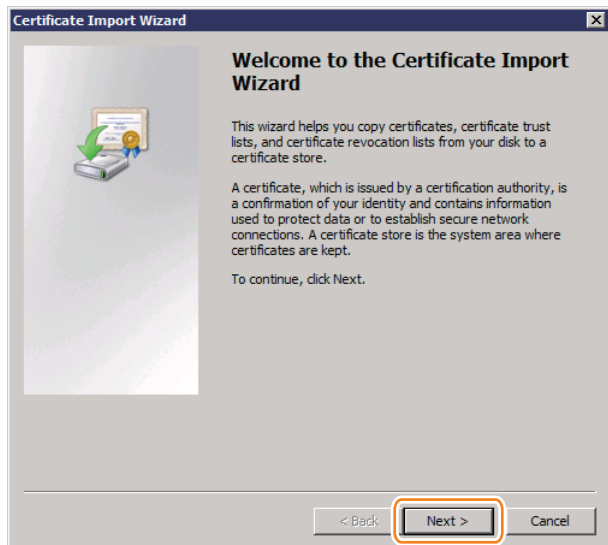
F-2-343

3) Click the [Install Certificate...] button on the [General] tab.



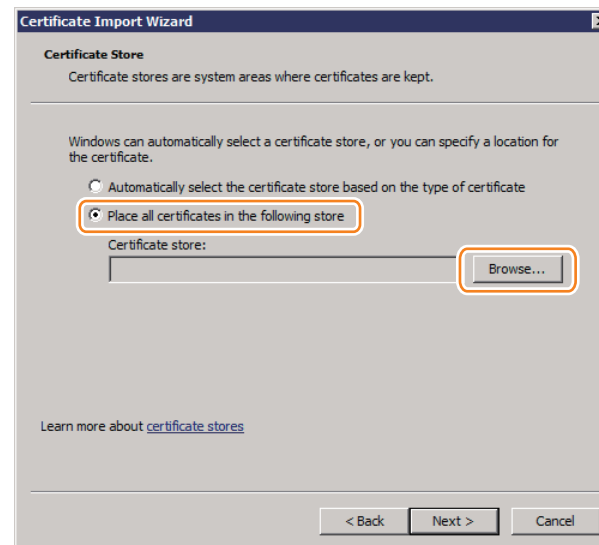
F-2-344

4) [Certificate Import Wizard] will appear. Click the [Next] button.



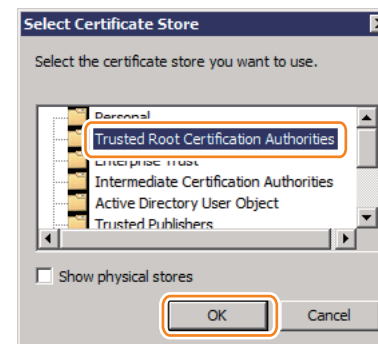
F-2-345

5) In [Certificate Store], select the [Place all certificates in the following store] option, and then click the [Browse] button.



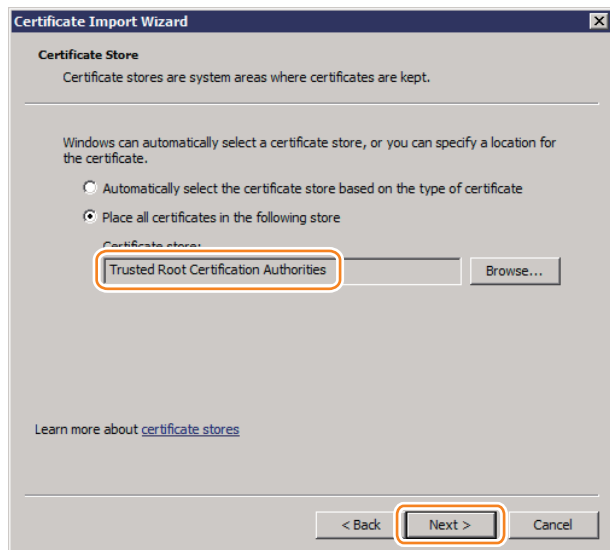
F-2-346

6) In [Select Certificate Store], select [Trusted Root Certification Authorities], and then click the [OK] button.



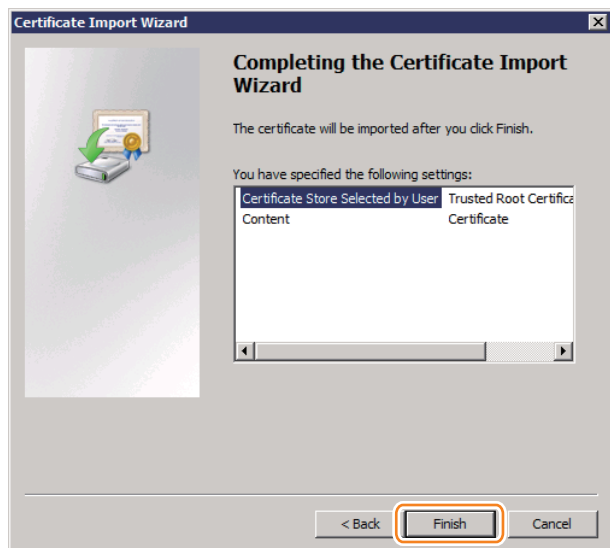
F-2-347

7) You will return to the [Certificate Store] dialog. Check that "Trusted Root Certification Authorities" appears in [Certificate], and then click the [Next] button.



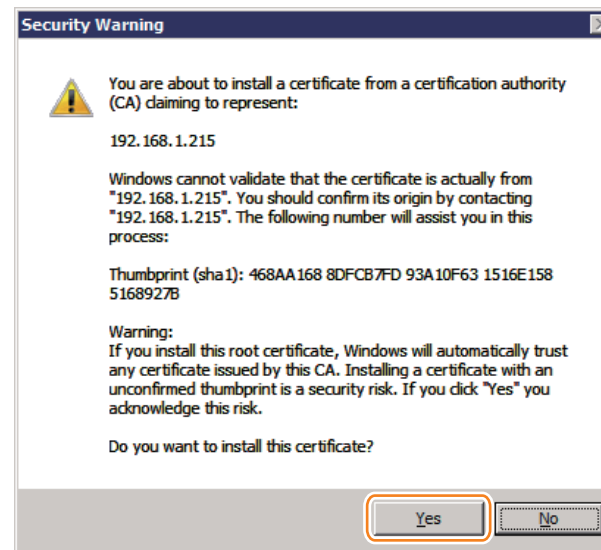
F-2-348

8) [Completing the Certificate Import Wizard] will appear. Click the [Finish] button.



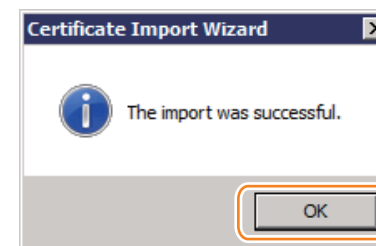
F-2-349

9) If the [Security Warning] appears, click the [Yes] button. (It does not appear when installing the same certificate again.)



F-2-350

10) A message will appear to indicate that import has been completed successfully. Click the [OK] button.



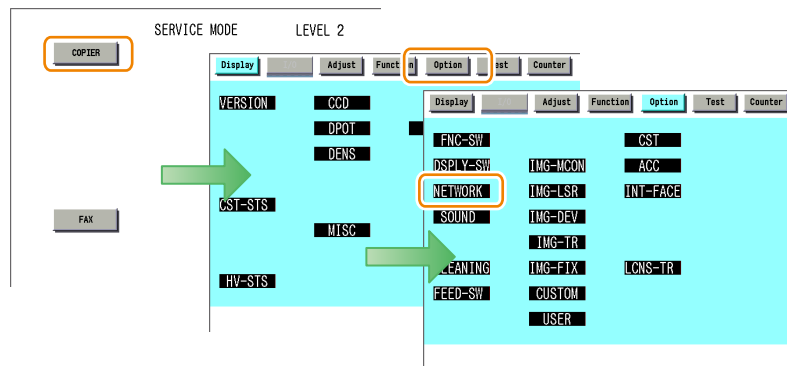
F-2-351

Network Port Settings

The default port of the HTTP server used for MEAP and MEAP applications to provide the servlet function is 8000, and the HTTPS server's default port is 8443. In the case that these ports have already used by the customer who is to introduce this application, the MEAP application cannot use the HTTP (or HTTPS) server(s).

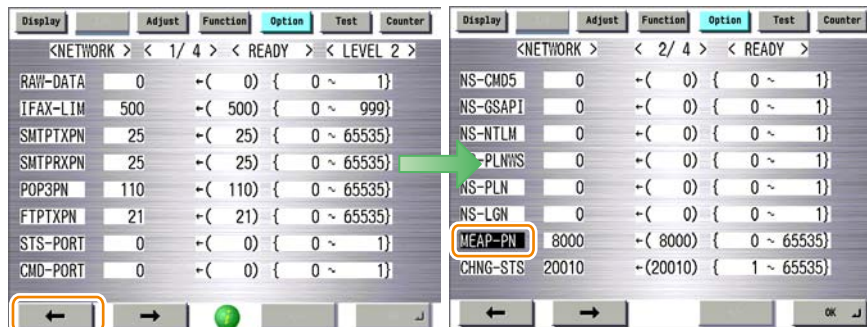
By changing the following ports to use, however, the MEAP application can be used as well as the existing system.

- 1) Start [SERVICE MODE] in Level 2.
- 2) Press [COPIER] > [Option] > [NETWORK] buttons.



F-2-352

- 3) To set up the HTTP server port, select [MEAP-PN]. To set up the HTTPS server port, select [MEAP-SSL].



F-2-353

- 4) Press the port number to specify on the control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.



F-2-354

Note:

A port number can be any integer from 0 to 65535. To avoid port numbers that are frequently used, do not use any integer from 0 to 1023.

Server	Setting value	Default value / Value after RAM clear
HTTP Server	1024 to 65535	8000
HTTPS Server	1024 to 65535	8443

T-2-76

Note:

- If PS Print Server Unit is connected, do not specify port 8080. If port 8080 is specified, it is not possible to access the remote UI of the device where the MEAP authentication application is running. (Port 8080 is reserved to allow the PS Print Server Unit to redirect to the iR device.)
- As for port on HTTPS server, it only applies to the device that supports SSL function.

- 5) Restart the device if the port number is set.



F-2-355

How to Check the Serial Number

When performing MEAP device support, the serial number of the device is necessary in some cases.

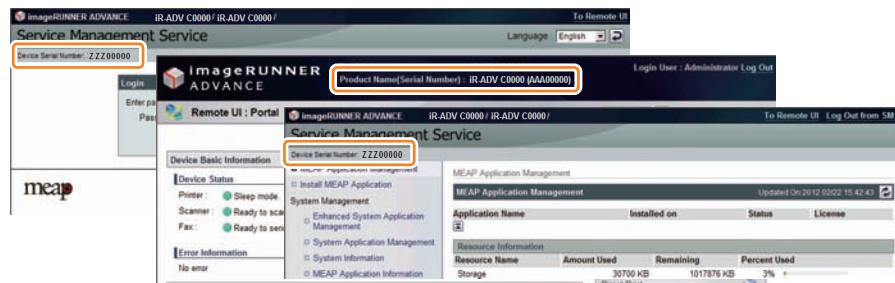
Examples of where the serial number is necessary

- When initializing SMS login password (obtaining a switch license)
- When obtaining a MEAP application license from LMS
- When obtaining a transfer license of MEAP application
- When obtaining a special license for reinstalling MEAP application

If a problem occurs in the MEAP device and you want to contact the support department of the sales company, you need to provide the serial number. Perform the following procedure to get the serial number.

Checking from the PC browser

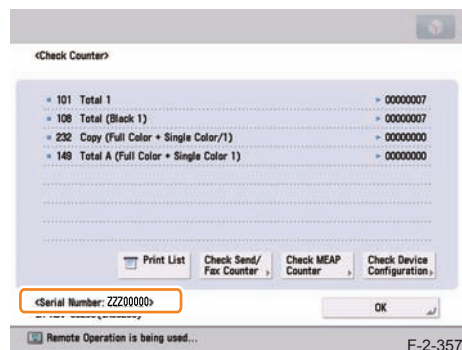
The serial number of the device is displayed on the SMS login screen, SMS screen, and remote UI portal screen.



F-2-356

Checking from the device's Touch Panel

You can see the number by pressing the counter key on the Control Panel of the machine.



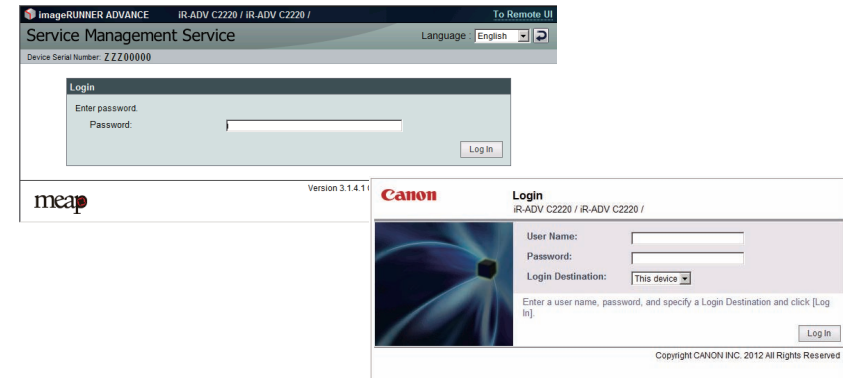
F-2-357

Login to SMS

Outline

SMS login may be done by entering a password for authentication, or by authentication via the Remote Login Service (RLS) login window (RLS authentication). Settings can be changed to allow either only one of these methods or both of them.

SMS login window (password auth) RLS login window (user name/ password auth)



F-2-358

Login method	Authentication method	Authentication service name	Users who may log in
Password authentication	Password authentication	SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication)	Users who know the SMS login password
RLS login	SSO-H	SMS Installer Service (Remote Login Service Authentication)	Users registered as administrators with SSO-H

T-2-77

Note:

If Default Authentication is selected as the device authentication method, 'RLS Authentication' is not selectable as SMS Login method. Also, if 'RLS Authentication' is selected, the device authentication method (Default Authentication, SDL, SSO) cannot be changed.

■ When SMS Cannot Be Accessed

● If you forgot the password (SMS login password initialization)

After changing the default SMS login password, if you forgot the new password and cannot log in to SMS, you can use a switch license for password initialization to change the password back to the default value "MeapSmsLogin".

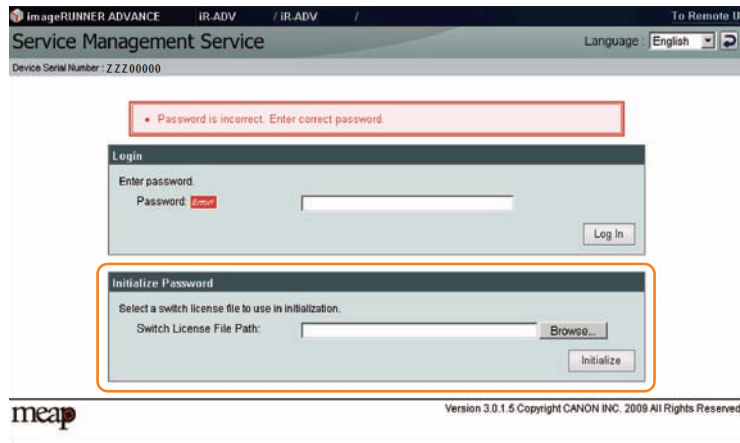
Note that there is no special password for service.

1) Obtain a switch license file for password initialization.

Contact the person in charge of support at the sales company, give the device's serial number, and have a switch license file for password initialization issued.

2) Load the switch license file.

With nothing entered, click the [Log in] button to display the area for specifying a switch license file for password initialization.



F-2-359

3) Specify the switch license file.

Click the [Browse] button and specify the switch license file.

4) Initialize the login password.

Click the [Initialize] button to display an initialization confirmation page, and click the [OK] button.

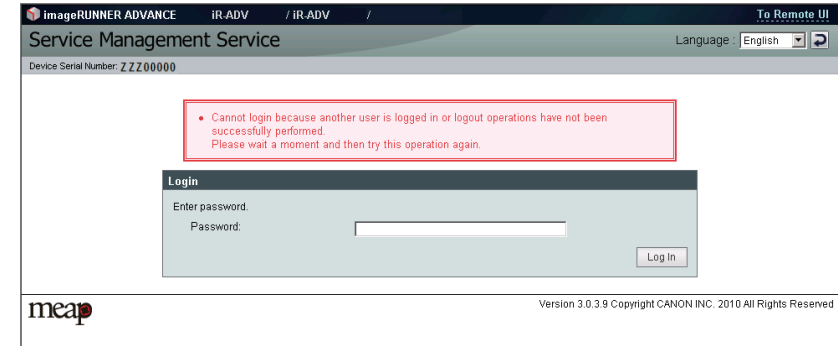
Note:

- The default password is "MeapSmsLogin." (The password is case-sensitive.)
- If you click [Cancel] button, the Login page opens without initializing the password.

● If login is not possible due to exclusive control

Since access to SMS is under exclusive control, you cannot log in if another user has already logged into the SMS of the same iR device.

An example of the exclusive control message



F-2-360

If you cannot log in due to exclusive control, you need to ask the other user to log out before you can try again.

Note:

If you close the browser without logging out, the session remains active. In that case, you cannot log in again.
If this problem occurs, you can wait for 5 minutes so that the session is disconnected.
Or, you can restart the device to force the session to disconnect.

● If [Key and Certificate Settings] is not set

If [Key and Certificate Settings] is not set correctly, you cannot access the URL for SMS (<https://<device's IP address>:8443/sms/>). In that case, perform the following procedure.

- 1) Go to <http://<device's IP address>:8000/sms/>, and check to see that "HTTP 500 Internal Server Error" appears.
- 2) If it appears, perform the procedure "Key Pair and Server Certificate when Using Encrypted SSL Communication" in this chapter.

Note:

In the case of SMS, by setting the key to be used, encrypted SSL communication is always executed regardless of the following setting: [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [MEAP Settings] > [Use SSL] > ON/OFF.

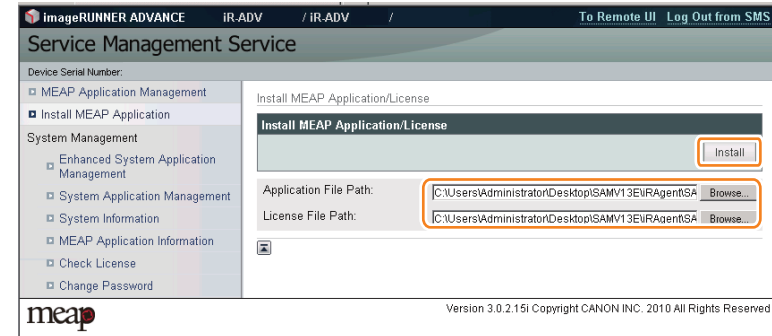
■ How to Deal with a Message "Certificate Error" That Appears at the Time of Access

When accessing from the browser to SMS, a message "Certificate Error" appears in some cases. In that case, perform the procedure "Installing a server certificate (reference information)" in this chapter.

● Installing an MEAP Application

■ Outline

From the MEAP application installation screen, you can install the MEAP application as well as the license file.



F-2-361

Before installing the MEAP application, be sure to check the following items.

● Device compatibility with the MEAP application

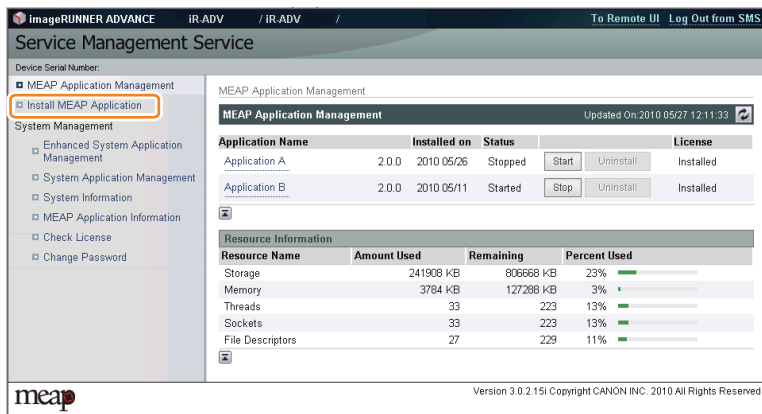
To find out whether the device is compatible with the MEAP application, check the devices supported by the MEAP application. Depending on the application, the device's firmware may require version upgrade.

● Resources availability (remaining amount)

The necessary resources (free storage space and free memory available) must be secured for an MEAP application to run; otherwise, you cannot install the MEAP application. To check the resource information, see "Device's resources" in this manual.

Procedure to install applications

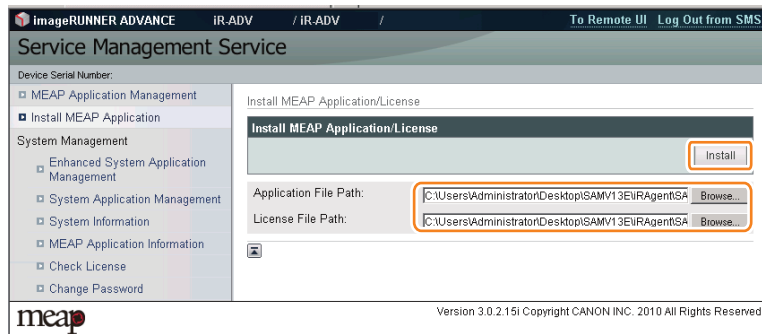
- 1) Long on to SMS.
- 2) Click [Install MEAP Application] on the menu.



F-2-362

- 3) Check [Install MEAP Application/License] page appears.
- 4) Click [Browse..] button, and select the application file and the license file of the application; then, click [Install] button.

Note:
 Application File: identified by the extension "jar".
 License File: identified by the extension "lic".



F-2-363

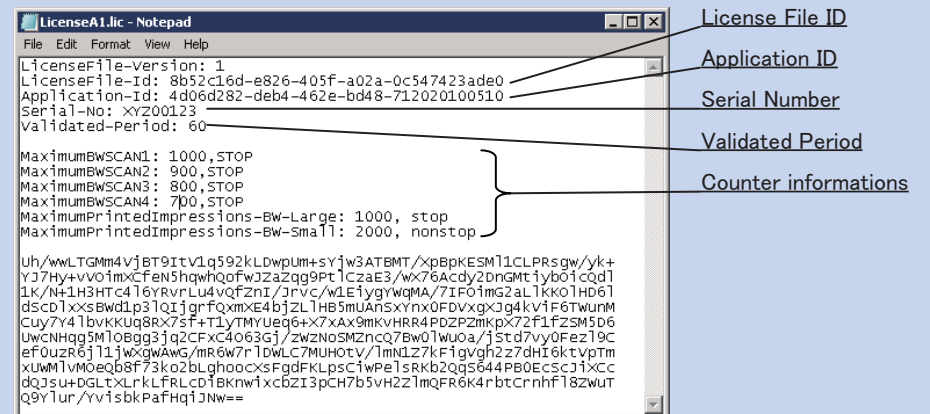
CAUTION:

- You cannot install only the license.
- You will not be able to install the application without using the appropriate license. Be sure to select its license file.
- If you are adding a license to an existing application, see "Procedure adding a license file".
- If you are updating an existing application, stop the application; then, install the new application or its license file. You will not be able to update an application while it is running.

Note:

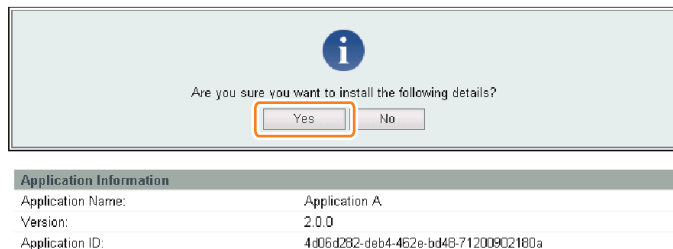
The license file is provided in text file format, enabling to view in a text editor. The application ID and device serial number shown in the file allow users to confirm which device to install with the license file.
 Note that any changes added to the license file may disable installation. Care should be taken when confirming the contents of the license file.

Sample file



F-2-364

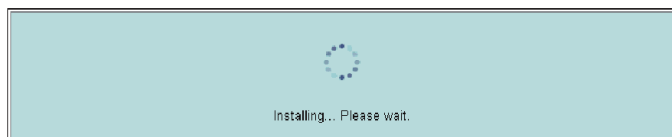
5) Check the contents of the Confirm page; then, click [OK] button.



F-2-365

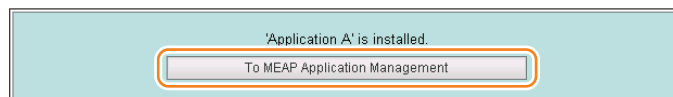
6) Some applications show a screen to indicate the terms of agreement. Read the terms, and click [OK].

7) Check the message "Installing...Please wait." appears, beginning the installation.



F-2-366

8) Upon installation completed, click [To MEAP Application Management] button shown on the screen to view MEAP Application Management page.



F-2-367

Note:

As for an application that has just been installed, the status is "Installed". In order to use the application, it is necessary to click the [Start] button to change the status to [Started].

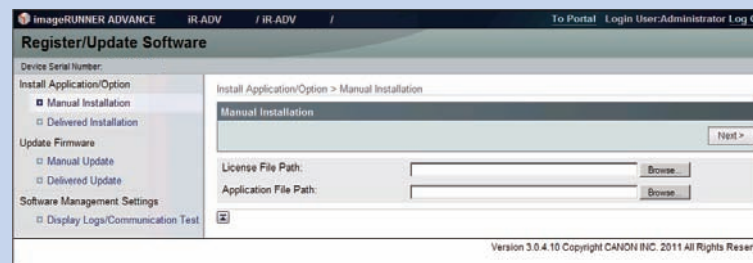
MEAP Application Management						
MEAP Application Management						Updated On: 2010 05/25 19:20:32
Application Name	Installed on	Status			License	
Workflow Composer	2.1.0 2010 05/24	Installed	Stop	Uninstall	Installed	
Sample Application	1.0.0 2010 05/11	Stopped	Start	Uninstall	Installed	

F-2-368

Note:

There are two ways to install an MEAP application. You can install using SMS, or install using the [Register/Update Software] screen of the remote UI.

Screen example



F-2-369

[Register/Update Software] provides two types of installations. One is [Manual Installation] where you specify a jar file and a license file and then install. The other is [Delivered Installation] where you enter a license access number. For details of the procedures, please refer to the e-Manual.

Resource Information

Outline

Application Management page shows [resource information] for information of the whole device resources including Amount Used, Remaining, and Percent Used.

This function enables users to judge the remaining resources before installing the additional application. Such resource information is shown based on the manifest header stated at the top of each application, which declares the resources required in the application. Therefore, the information does not necessarily show the resources actually in use.

The following resource information is shown:

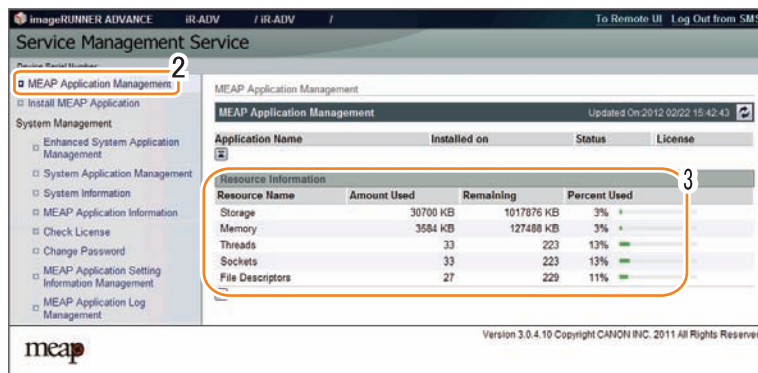
- Storage
- Memory
- Thread
- Socket
- File Descriptor

If the hard disk does not have enough free space for the application, the application cannot be installed.

Moreover, if the free space of any of the resources (Memory, Thread, Socket, and File Descriptor) is insufficient, the application cannot be started.

The following procedure shows how to check the resource information.

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Click [MEAP Application Management].
- 3) Check [Resource Information] for information of the whole device resources.



F-2-370

Device's resources

When 1 MEAP application operates, the resource volume allocated to each device is as follows (loaded resource list). Since the following value is an estimate, when installing the MEAP applications, it needs to check the available resource of SMS.

Since the indication of SMS resource volume fluctuates by the login service (authentication function) and configuration (future model), which the user selected, it may show a bigger value than the following values.

List of Available Resources

Product Name		Storage	Memory	Thread	Socket	File Description
iR-ADV C5051 series		1024MB	128MB	256	256	256
iR-ADV C9075 series		1024MB	128MB	256	256	256
iR-ADV 6075 series		1024MB	128MB	256	256	256
iR-ADV 8105 PRO series		1024MB	128MB	256	256	256
iR-ADV C2030/C2020 series	Flash model	220MB	32MB	162	128	128
	HDD model	1024MB	128MB	256	256	256
iR-ADV 4045 series		1024MB	128MB	256	256	256
iR-ADV C5255 series		1024MB	128MB	256	256	256
iR-ADV C2220/C2230 series	Flash model	220MB	32MB	162	128	128
	HDD model	1024MB	128MB	256	256	256

T-2-78

Note:

- Among the resources, the free space of Storage is checked when installing an application. For other resources, the free space is checked when the application is started.
- Some applications call for a specific set of conditions for installation. For details, see the User's Guide that comes with the individual applications.
- Maximum installable application is up to 20 even if the remaining resource is adequate. (However, the Send function consumes 1, it must be 19 in practice.) Authentication application is not included in this number.
- The MEAP application, which can be started simultaneously, is up to 19. (Authentication application is not included in this number.)

CAUTION:

To install an application, the user needs to use the following URL when accessing the license control system to obtain a license file. In doing so, he/she needs to register the license access number of the application and the serial number of the device.

<http://www.canon.com/lms/license/>

MEAP Specifications

What is MEAP Specifications (MEAP Spec Version)?

MEAP Specifications is one of the information required to judge whether MEAP applications can be operated or not. With MEAP Specifications, you can prevent an application that uses a specific function of device from being installed onto the device that does not have the function.

About Name

The displayed name for Meap Specifications differs depending on the screen or the location where the name is displayed.

In this document, it is referred to as "Meap Specifications".

The location where the name is displayed/shown	Displayed name
Platform Information : SMS > [System Management] > [System Information] > [Platform Information]	MEAP Specifications
System Information Print : Local UI [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [MEAP Settings] > [System Information Print]	
Manifest file of the MEAP application SDK documents	MeapSpecVersion

T-2-79

Mechanism

MEAP platform judges whether MEAP applications can be operated on it using on the 2 information below:

- Device Specification ID
- MEAP Specifications

Device Specification ID shows information such as the original functions of MFP (including print, scan, and copy), and one that differs by model such as maximum copy number, thus each model has a different ID. (It is easy to determine the IDs for this reason.) MEAP application declares 1 or more Device Specification ID required for its execution. Declaration of multiple Device Specification IDs means that the application is operable in all the models declared. Upon installation of MEAP application in (using) SMS or MEAP Enterprise Service Manager, matching of Device Specification ID is executed on the side of MEAP platform machine. The machine which doesn't support the ID declared by the application rejects installation of such an application.

Meanwhile, MEAP Specifications shows other information than defined by Device Specification ID above, including network and security. Thus each model does not always have the same version.

MEAP application declares 1 or more MEAP Specifications required for its execution.

Declaration of multiple Device Specification IDs means that the application is operable in all the environments declared. Upon installation of MEAP application in SMS or MEAP Enterprise Service Manager, matching of MEAP Specifications is executed on the side of MEAP platform machine. The machine which doesn't support the version declared by the application rejects installation of such an application.

MEAP Specifications for each model

Product Name	Initial MEAP SpecVer	Remarks
iR-ADV C5051	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14,	Ver.37.xx or later
iR-ADV C5045	15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26,	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29,
iR-ADV C5035	27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33,	30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44,
iR-ADV C5030	34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45	45, 46
		Ver.38.xx or later
		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 49
		Ver.50.xx or later
		5,6,7,9,10,11,13,14,15,17,18,19,25,26,27,29, 30,31,32, 33,34,35,36,37,38,39,40,41,42,44,45,46,47,49,50,51,5 2,53,54,55,56,57,58,59
		Ver.65.xx or later
		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 74
iR-ADV C9075	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14,	Ver.37.xx or later
iR-ADV C9070	15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26,	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29,
iR-ADV C9065	27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33,	30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44,
iR-ADV C9060	34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39,	45, 46
iR-ADV C7065	40, 41, 42, 44, 45	
iR-ADV C7055		Ver.38.xx or later
		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 49
		Ver.50.xx or later
		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59
		Ver.65.xx or later
		5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 74

Product Name	Initial MEAP SpecVer	Remarks
iR-ADV 6075 iR-ADV 6065 iR-ADV 6055	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 44, 45, 46, 49	Ver.20.xx or later 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 44, 45, 46, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59 Ver.42.xx or later 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 74
iR-ADV 8105 PRO iR-ADV 8095 PRO iR-ADV 8085 PRO	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 44, 45, 46, 49	Ver.20.xx or later 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 1, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 44, 45, 46, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59 Ver.42.xx or later 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 74
iR-ADV C2030 iR-ADV C2025 iR-ADV C2020	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49	Ver.10.xx or later 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 53 Ver.29.xx or later 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 53, 74
iR-ADV 4045 iR-ADV 4035 iR-ADV 4025	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59	Ver.11.xx or later 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 74
iR-ADV C5255 iR-ADV C5250 iR-ADV C5240 iR-ADV C5235	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 74, 78, 80	-

Product Name	Initial MEAP SpecVer	Remarks
iR-ADV C2230 iR-ADV C2225 iR-ADV C2220	5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 64, 65, 66, 67, 69, 70, 72, 74, 78, 79, 80	-

T-2-80

MEAP Specifications List

Ver	Description
1	MEAP basic function
2	MEAP Spec Version 1 function and SSL/TSL + Proxy
5	MEAP Spec Version 1 function and CPCA V2 + ERS (Error Recovery Service) + New SSL/TSL
6	Reserved
7	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and Compact PDF + OCR PDF (Text Searchable) + USB Host (Buffering of Interrupt Transfer)
9	Reserved
10	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and USB-Host (Exception + Clear Feature + Set Feature+ Hot Plug) + WINS address acquisition using MIB Agent + Timer Service + SSL client authentication
11	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and AMS
13	MEAP Spec Version 5 function and J2ME1.1 Support + Encrypted PDF + Trace and smooth PDF + CTK2.0
14	Device signature PDF
15	IMI + ERS (API addition for IMI) , IPv6, Extended encryption function (AES/RC4)
17	Acquiring images of JBIG format
18	Parsing XML documents (XML parser)
19	Enhancement of IMI function (IMI Version1.2 series)
21	Reserved
25	API to access the HID/Mass Storage class devices.
26	MEAP driver preference function
27	Symbols that can be used with MibAgent added. (symbols for IPv6 address acquisition)
29	IMI API added (IMI version 1.2.1 enabled)
30	Extended address book function. (e-mail/group/i-FAX/file)
31	Integrated ERS function
32	Extended Imaging function (function to generate PDF/OOXML (PowerPoint) with visible signature)
33	Extended function for imageRUNNER / iR ADVANCE series (API for address book/ CTK/ TopMenu)
34	Extended IMI Box function (v1.3.0)
35	Extended SIS function (function to check the network cable status, function to check PS print server unit status)
36	Reserved
37	CLS (Contextual Login Service) Supporting API Added
38	imageRUNNER / iR ADVANCE Series administrative privileges supported
39	MEAP Specifications added according to Jcrypto API Specification Change
40	ImagingAPI (Creation API of Visible Signature PDF) added
41	Reserved
42	Reserved
44	imageRUNNER / iR ADVANCE Series Remote Address Book Supported, RemoteFAX Supported
45	Addition of API that allows acquisition of the HID installation status
46	Multilingualization of the USB keyboard of the System Driver

Ver	Description
47	Addition of API which executes a print order from the MEAP application of the IMI encryption PDF document
48	ID expressing the scan function for iR-ADV C2030/C2025/C2020 series
49	Reserved
50	SecurityOptionalPackage
51	IMI function expansion of iR-ADV C5051 series (Ver.50.xx or later) or later
52	(iR-ADV C5051 series (Ver.50.xx or later)) Addition of registered API to enable SSL communication setting (On/Off) for each URL
53	Disclosure of registration/deletion function to/from Quick Menu
54	Function to notify an event to the application at recovery from the sleep mode.
55	System account release function
56	MEAP User Preference Service
57	MEAP Application Configuration Service
58	MEAP Application Log Service
59	Reserved
59	Integrated authentication service
60	SFP basic functions
61	AVS (Lightweight Applet Viewer Service) for LBP
62	SIS (Lightweight System Interface Service) for LBP
63	LDT
64	IMI customization
65	Extension of MEAP User Preference Service (Ver56) (preference shared among applications)
66	Reserved
68	Addition of Office Open XML's Word creation API
69	Extension of the encryption PDF function (AES 128-bit/256-bit)
70	Addition of 3 formats (uncompressed searchable PDF, XPS, and linearized searchable PDF)
71	Reserved
72	Reserved
73	IMI: API that supports A4 scanners and allows for specifying of the direction of the original image
74	SSL: Support for addition of the CN validation function
75	Reserved
76	Addition of the SFP ExtendedTextInputView class
77	Reserved
78	Reserved
79	Reserved
80	Reserved
81	Reserved

T-2-81

MEAP Application Management

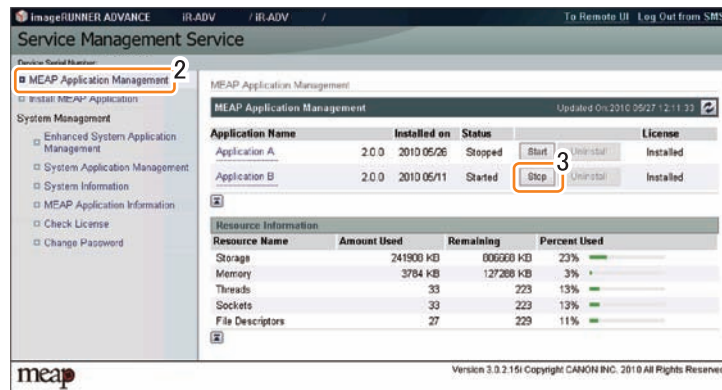
Outline

You can use the MEAP application management screen to perform basic management tasks of the MEAP application (start, stop, uninstall), or check the device's resource information.

Starting, Stopping, or Uninstalling the MEAP Application

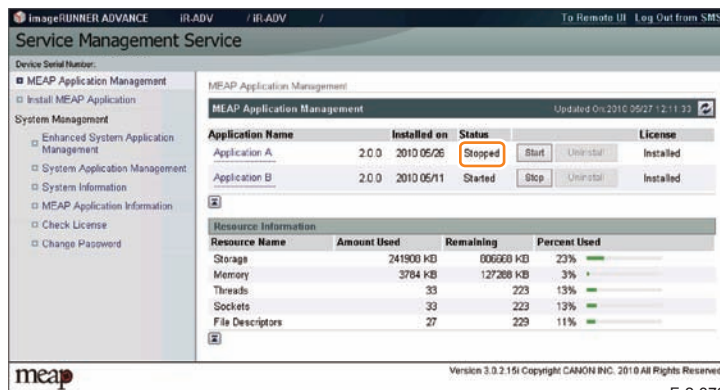
Procedure to start and stop a MEAP application

- 1) Log in to the SMS. (Refer to "Login to SMS" in this manual.)
- 2) Click [MEAP Application Management].
- 3) Click [Start] or [Stop] button shown for the MEAP application to be started or stopped.



F-2-371

- 4) Check to see that the status of the MEAP application in question is either [Started] or [Stopped].



F-2-372

If the MEAP application cannot be started

If the conditions to start the MEAP application are not satisfied, the MEAP application cannot be started.

If the MEAP application cannot be started, check the following items.

Is a valid license installed?

If the license has expired, you cannot start the application. If the license has already expired, obtain a new license and then update the license. (See "Managing the License File" in this manual.)

Are the necessary resources available?

If the resources such as memory capacity or number of threads are not sufficient, the application also cannot be started.

Delete any unnecessary data to secure sufficient resources.

If the application still cannot be started after checking the foregoing conditions, contact the support department of the sales company.

Procedure to uninstall the MEAP application

Before uninstalling the MEAP application, check that the following conditions are met.

- The MEAP application has stopped.
- The license has been disabled or deleted. (The status is "Not Installed".)

MEAP Application Management

Application Name	Installed on	Status	Start	Uninstall	License
Application A	2.0.0 2010 05/26	Stopped	Start	Uninstall	Not Installed
Application B	2.0.0 2010 05/11	Started	Stop	Uninstall	Installed

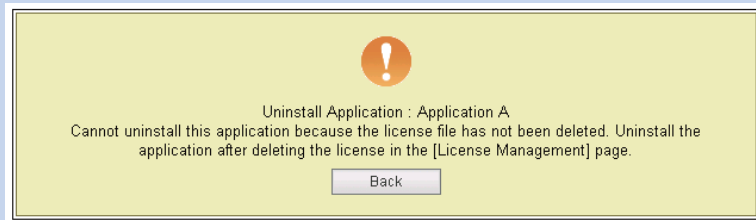
F-2-373

For information on the procedure to stop the MEAP application, see the previous section "Procedure to start and stop a MEAP application".

For information on the procedure to delete the license file, see the following section "Managing the License File".

Note:

When a user tries to uninstall an application before deleting the license, the following message is shown.



F-2-374

If the license file of the selected application cannot be deleted, the [Uninstall] button is grayed out and therefore the application cannot be uninstalled.

CAUTION:

If the application you are uninstalling is associated with another application, a message will appear to indicate that the package exported by the application will no longer be available. Uninstalling such an application may also disable its associated applications.

1) Log in to SMS to click [MEAP Application Management] on the menu.

2) Check that the status of the application you want to uninstall is [Stop] and the license has been disabled. (The status is "Not Installed".)

MEAP Application Management

Application Name	Installed on	Status	Start	Uninstall	License
Application A	2.0.0 2010 05/26	Stopped	Start	Uninstall	Not Installed
Application B	2.0.0 2010 05/11	Started	Stop	Uninstall	Installed

F-2-375

3) Click [Uninstall] button for the application to be uninstalled.

imageRUNNER ADVANCE IR.ADV / IR.ADV /

Service Management Service

MEAP Application Management

Application Name	Installed on	Status	Start	Uninstall	License
Application A	2.0.0 2010 05/26	Stopped	Start	Uninstall	Not installed
Application B	2.0.0 2010 05/11	Started	Stop	Uninstall	Installed

Resource Information

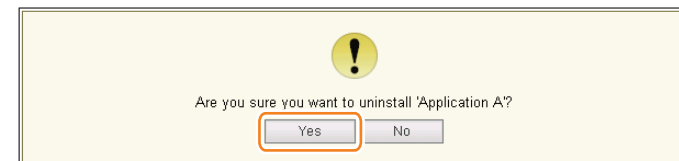
Resource Name	Amount Used	Remaining	Percent Used
Storage	241908 KB	806668 KB	23%
Memory	3784 KB	127288 KB	3%
Threads	33	223	13%
Sockets	33	223	13%
File Descriptors	27	229	11%

Version 3.0.2.151 Copyright CANON INC. 2010 All Rights Reserved

F-2-376

4) Check the application name to be uninstalled shown on the screen to click [Yes] button.

Upon [Yes] button clicked, uninstallation process is started.



F-2-377

Managing the License File

Outline

The license file management functions allow you to perform the following operations related to the license file necessary for the MEAP application to run.

- Update the license which has already expired.
- Disable or delete the license file in order to uninstall the MEAP application.

These license management functions can be performed from the [MEAP Application Management] screen.

The main license management functions are as follows:

Adding a license

When the license has expired, you can add a license file.

Disabling a License File

Before uninstalling the MEAP application, the license needs to be deleted. In that case, you must first disable the license file because a license file which has not been disabled cannot be downloaded or deleted.

Downloading / Removing an Invalidated License File

Before uninstalling the MEAP application, you need to delete its license file which has already been disabled.

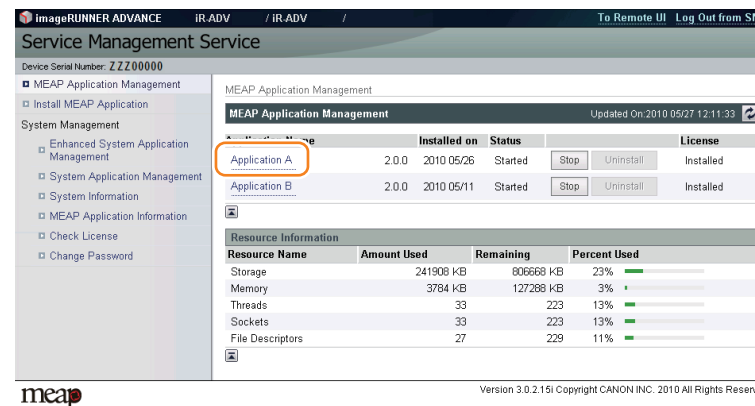
By downloading the license file to your PC before it is deleted, you can use it when installing the application again to the same device.

WARNING:

After deleting the license file which has been disabled, you can no longer download the license file.

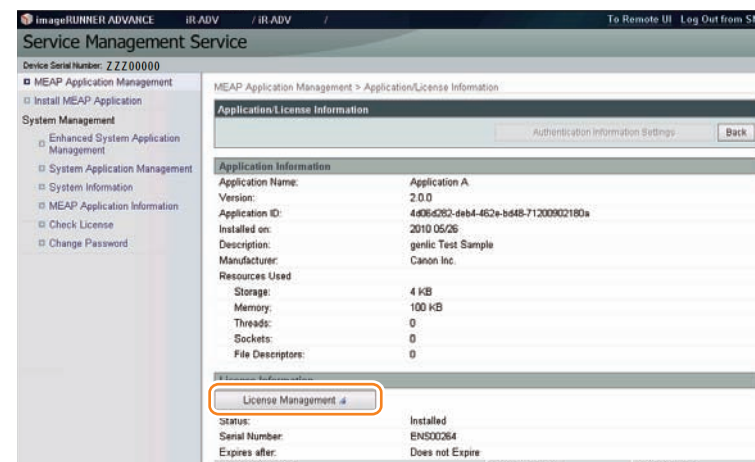
Procedure adding a license file

- 1) Log on to SMS.
- 2) On MEAP Application Management, click the name of the application to which you want to add a license file.



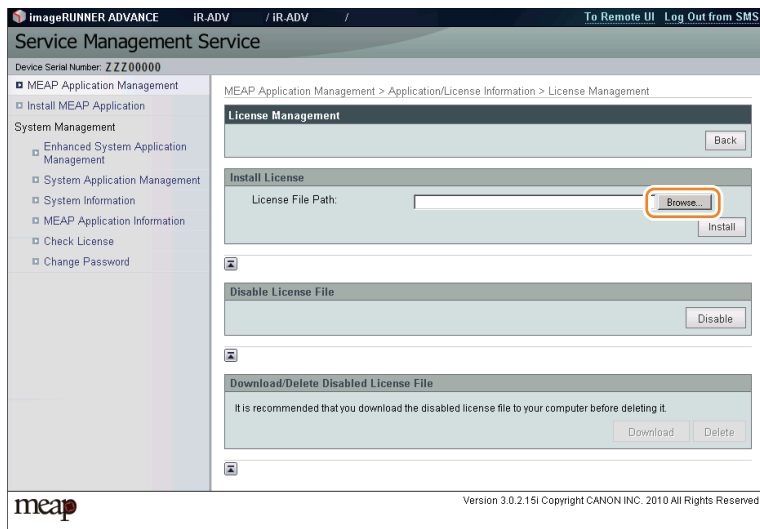
F-2-378

- 3) In [Application / License Information] page shown on the screen, click [License Management] button.



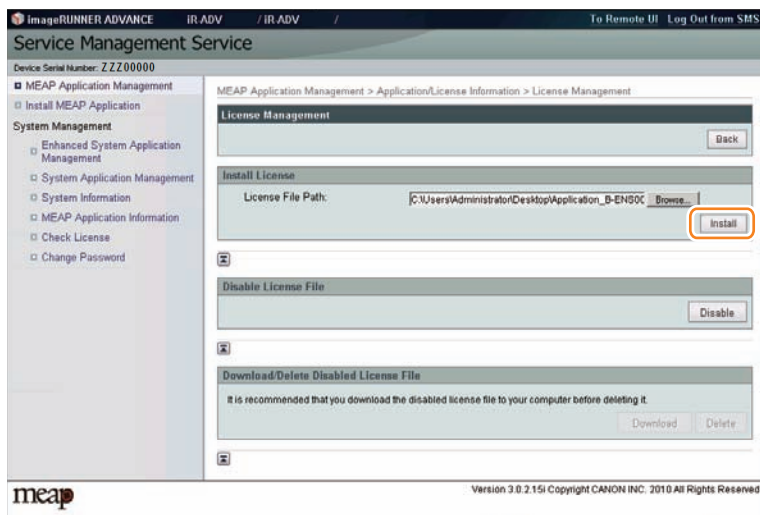
F-2-379

4) Click [Browse] button, and select the license file you want to install.



F-2-380

5) Click [Install] button.



F-2-381

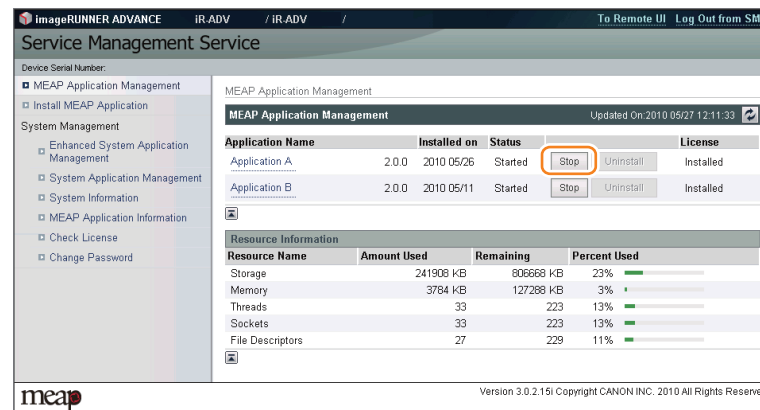
6) Check the content of the confirmation page, and click [OK] button.

Procedure disabling a license file (suspending a license)

CAUTION:

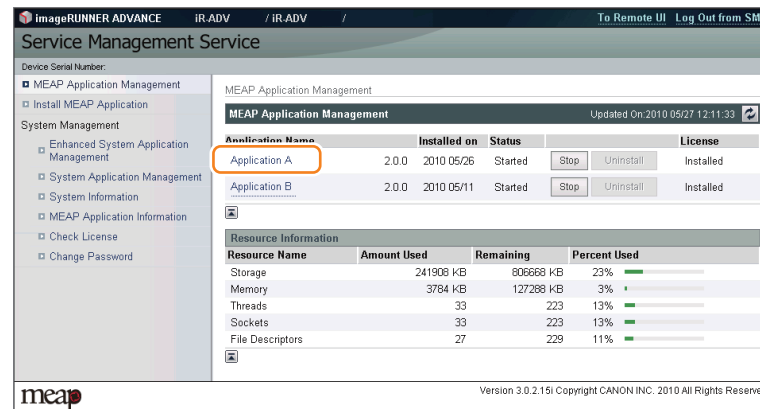
- Since the license file cannot be disabled when the application is still running, the application needs to be stopped before disabling the license file.
- Once suspended, the status of the license will be 'Not Installed', and its application will no longer be available for use.
- You can later restore a suspended license file as long as you are doing so on the same iR, the device with the same device serial number.
- If the machine needs to be replaced due to a device failure, use the transfer license during the replacement. (See "License for forwarding")

1) Stop the application you want to uninstall on MEAP Application Management page.



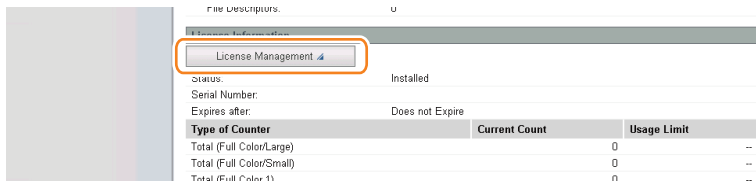
F-2-382

2) Click the name of the application that you want to disable.



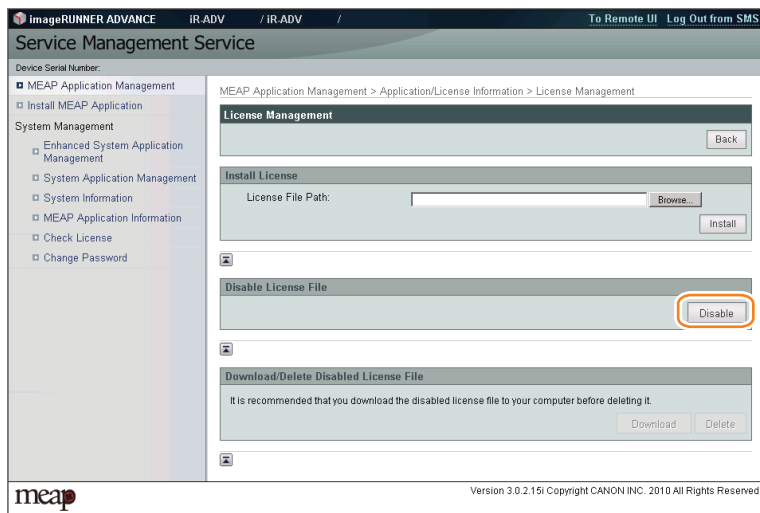
F-2-383

3) On Application/ License Information page, click [License Management] button.



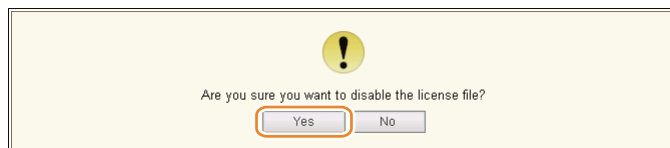
F-2-384

4) License Management page appears. Click [Disable] button.



F-2-385

5) Click [Yes].



F-2-386

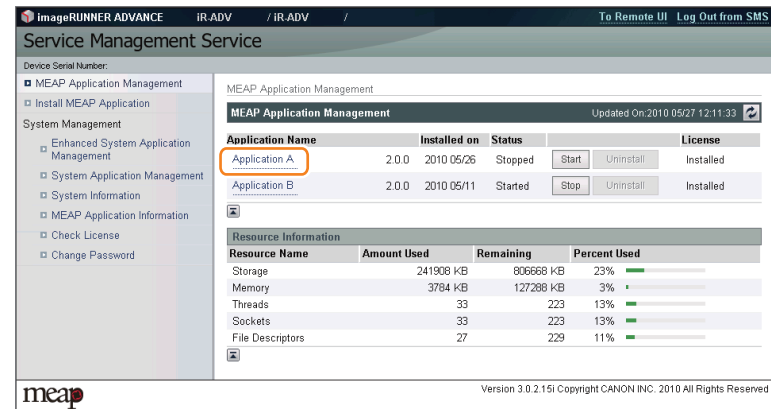
Procedure downloading / removing an invalidated license file

Note:

The downloaded license file can be used for reinstallation only in the same iR device (with the same device serial number).

1) Login to SMS. (See Chapter 2, "Login to SMS.")

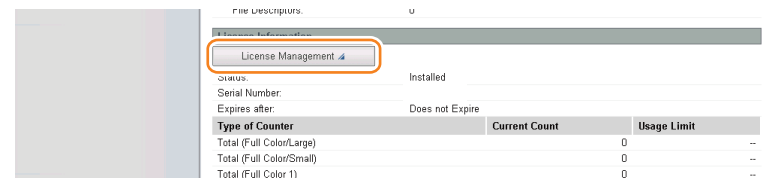
2) Application List page appears. On MEAP Application Management page, click the name of the application you want.



F-2-387

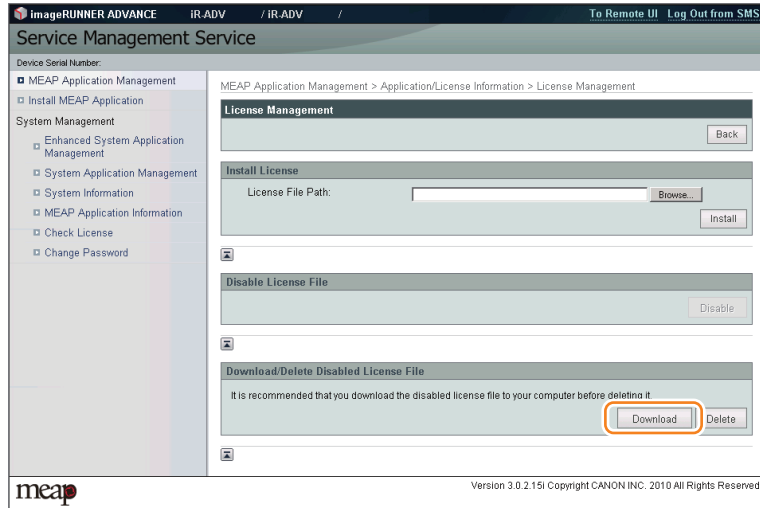
3) Check Application/ License Information page appears.

4) On Application / License Information page, click [License Management] button.



F-2-388

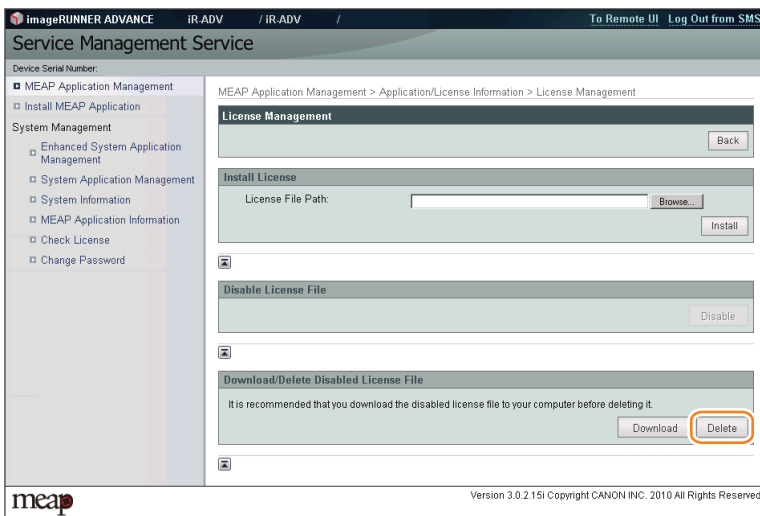
5) License Management page appears. To download, click [Download] button.



F-2-389

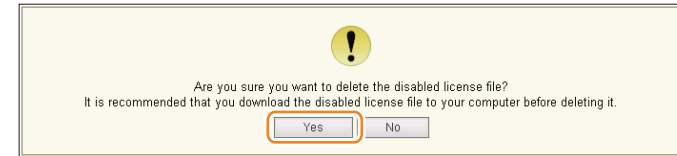
6) When you have selected [Download] button, specify where you want to store the file by following the instructions on the screen.

7) To delete, click [Delete] button.



F-2-390

8) When the dialog to confirm deletion is shown, click [Yes] button.



F-2-391

WARNING:

Without the license file, an application cannot be reinstalled even to the MEAP device that the application had been installed last time. Download and save the license file before deleting the application.

Other License File Management Functions

Reusable license

When reinstalling, Disable License file should be downloaded (see Chapter 0, “Disabling a License File .” and see Chapter 0, “Downloading / Removing an Invalidated License File.” in this manual) or a license for reinstallation should be obtained from LMS, before reinstallation. This specification aims to prevent misuse of applications.

To increase convenience of users, only application with unlimited validity date and application counter (e.g. Portal Service, SDL, SSO) has been made to be able to install as many times as needed by the same license file. This kind of license is called 'Reusable license'.

License for forwarding

If the machine needs to be replaced due to a device failure, you can transfer the license information used in the MEAP application to the new machine and continue its usage. Service engineers are responsible for license transfer as this task requires the SMS hidden page (not open to users).

The procedure is shown below.

- 1) Log in to SMS, stop the application to be forwarded (see Chapter 0, “Starting and Stopping a MEAP Application.” in this manual).

Service Management Service

MEAP Application Management

Application Name	Installed on	Status	License
Application A	2.0.0 2010 05/26	Started	Installed
Application B	2.0.0 2010 05/11	Started	Installed

Resource Information

Resource Name	Amount Used	Remaining	Percent Used
Storage	241908 KB	806668 KB	23%
Memory	3784 KB	127288 KB	3%
Threads	33	223	13%
Sockets	33	223	13%
File Descriptors	27	229	11%

F-2-392

- 2) Move to the download page of license forwarded for the device as sender ([https:// IP address of device: 8443/sms/ForwardLicense](https://IP address of device: 8443/sms/ForwardLicense)).



F-2-393

- 3) Specify the application to be forwarded.

Service Management Service

License Management

Application Name	Installed on	Application ID	Status	License
Application A	2.0.0 2010 05/27	4d06d282-deb4-462e-bd48-71200902180a	Stopped	Installed
Application B	2.0.0 2010 05/11	4d06d282-deb4-462e-bd48-712020100511	Started	Installed

F-2-394

- 4) Click [Disable] button on the [Disable License File].

Service Management Service

License File Management

Application Name: Application A

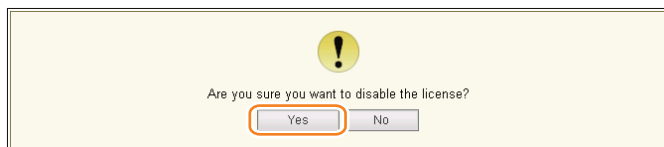
Disable License File

Download/Delete Transfer License File

It is recommended that you download the transfer license file to your computer before deleting it.

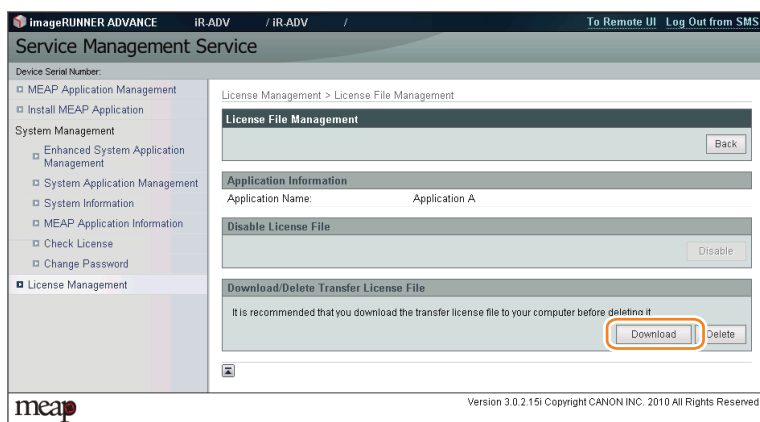
F-2-395

5) The window to confirm whether to create a transfer licence will be displayed. Click [Yes].



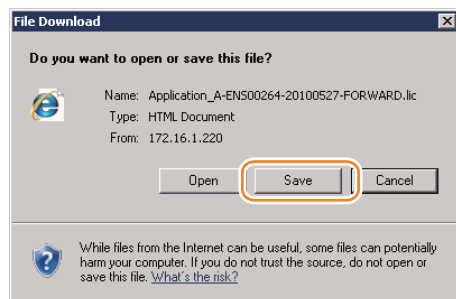
F-2-396

6) When [Download] button on the [Download / Delete Transfer License File] becomes effective, click [Download] button.



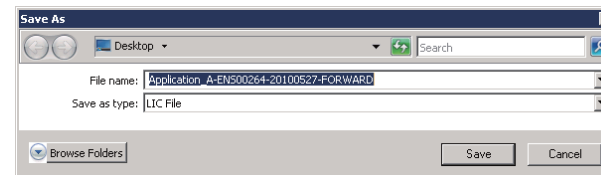
F-2-397

7) The dialogue [File Download] is displayed. Click [Save].



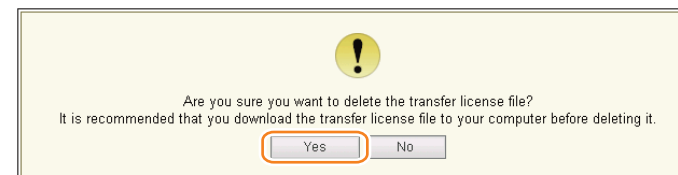
F-2-398

8) Specify the download destination, click [Save].



F-2-399

9) After downloading the license file for forwarding, click [Delete] to display the confirmation screen and click [Yes] to delete the file (in consideration of breakage of license for forwarding, deleting disabled license can be executed after all steps have been completed).



F-2-400

10) Log out of SMS.

11) Since this downloaded transfer license is the file only to prove the license invalidation, it cannot be used for installation to the other device as it is. Send the transfer license to the service support contact of your nearest sales company to request issuance of the new license for installation in the new device.

Note:

When requesting issuance of license for forwarding, inform the sales company of the name of product name and serial No. of the device as sender, and of the name of product name and serial No. of the forwarding destination.

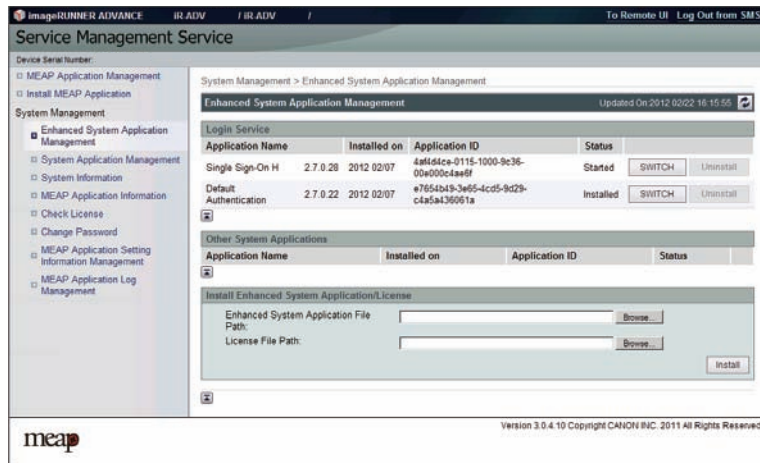
12) Install application using the license for forwarding issued by the sales company.

Enhanced System Application Management

Outline

[Enhanced System Application Management] mainly manages the login services for logging in to devices.

- Installing and uninstalling Enhanced System Application Management (login services, etc.)
- Switching login services (switching the method to log in to devices)
- Checking installation status of other System Applications



F-2-401

About Login Service

The login service is started up to authenticate the user when MEAP-enabled iR device is booted up. Login service changes and install/ uninstall are carried out from the [System Management] page.

The preinstalled login applications are Default Authentication and Single Sign On-H, and Default Authentication is enabled by default.

CAUTION:

- This device does not support SDL, conventional SSO and Security Agent.

Default Authentication overview

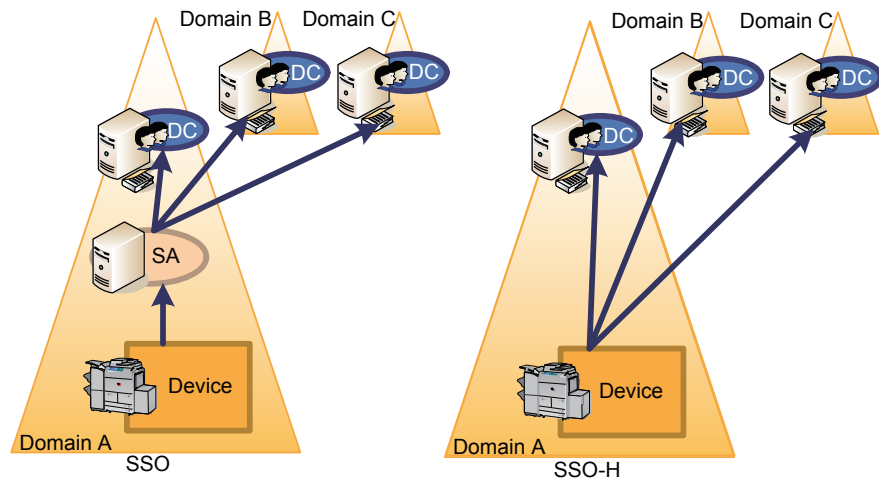
This login service is selected when the department ID management is enabled or no authentication function is set. Set the department ID management to [ON] on Setting / Registration (Additional Functions mode) of this device and register 7-digit ID and PIN by department. This setting restricts the use of this device only to users keying the registered ID and PIN. Department IDs/ and PINs can be registered on the touch panel of this device or Remote UI.

SSO-H (Single Sign-On-H) overview

This is a merger of the existing SDL and SSO login services and has the following features.

- The following three authentication methods may be selected from.
 - Server authentication
 - Server authentication and local authentication
 - Local device authentication
- Active Directory or LDAP can be used as the server for server authentication.
- It is not necessary to prepare a server for Security Agent (SA). (In the case of SSO, SA is necessary.)

Differences from conventional SSO



F-2-402

CAUTION:

- When the setting is SSO-H, the card reader for the option controller card cannot be used.
- When the setting is SSO-H, start up takes a little longer when compared to Default Authentication (because of the time required for object initialization).
- To use the SEND function when the setting is for SSO-H, when sending email, mail addresses need to be programmed against each user. If they are not, email cannot be sent. Note, however, that when sending i-Fax, the mail addresses set in the device are used.
- The system configuration is different from previous SSO, so individual management is required.
- Data porting of user information that was being used with the earlier SSO local device authentication and SDL can be done by exporting/ importing. However, application settings information cannot be ported.

● Environment confirmation

Refer to the section of "Preparation for Using SSO-H" of this manual for system requirements needed in each login service.

● Specification of SSO-H

Item		Specification
No. of local device users		Up to 5000
Maximum number of domains		Active Directory : 200 domains ("this device" not included)
IPv6		Authentication provided in IPv6 supports AD/KDC/DNS of Windows Server 2008 only)
Resource used		Memory : 3584KB Storage : 25000KB File Description : 27 Thread : 33 Socket : 33
Network ports used	Connecting	88 : KDC 53 : DNS 1 - 65535 (Default : 389) : LDAP
	Listening	10000 - 10100
Supported authentication server		Active Directory : Windows 2000 Server SP4/ Windows Server 2003 SP1 * / Windows Server 2003 R2 * / Windows 2008 Server * *64-bit OS is not supported. LDAP : Novell eDirectory V8.8 SP6 for Windows Lotus Domino V8.5 for Window
Supported Active Directory		Windows 2000 Server SP4/ Windows Server 2003 SP1/Windows Server 2003 R2/ Windows 2008 Server(64BitOS not supported)
Availability of Department Management Linkage		Available only in local authentication

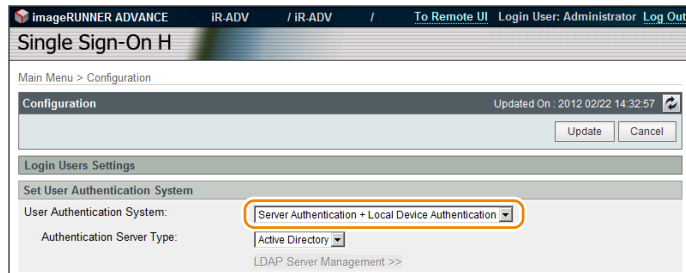
T-2-82

SSO/SDL handling

This model does not support older versions of SSO or SDL released in the past.

● Setting the Authentication Method

In the case of SSO-H, it is possible to use a combination of multiple authentication methods. The combination can be changed from the SSO-H setting screen. (For details, refer to e-Manual > MEAP > Menu for Administrators > Setting the SSO-H > "Setting the User Authentication System".)



F-2-403

Note:

The default settings are shown below.

- User authentication method : "Server Authentication + Local Device Authentication"
- Type of authentication : "Active Directory"

CAUTION:

- To ensure the security, it is recommended to change the password and the user name of the Local Device Authentication administrator from those at the time of shipment immediately after you have started using SSO-H.
- Since department ID and password are not assigned to domain users, distributing setting information where the department ID is enabled to a device where the server authentication is enabled may make the device unable to be logged in. If the device has become unable to be logged in, follow "Remedy to Be Performed When the Device Has Become Unable to Be Logged in" in this manual.

● Using an Accounting Product When SSO-H Is Used

SSO-H has collaborative linkage with NetSpot Accountant, imageWARE / iW Accounting Manager, imageWARE Enterprise Management Console / iW Management Console Access Management Plug-in, imageWARE Enterprise Management Console / iW Management Console Accounting Management Plug-in.

For details on the combination, refer to the User's Manual or Service Manual of the product.

● Conducting Department ID Management When SSO-H Is Used

Department ID Management can be conducted also when SSO-H is used for login service.

Usage Conditions

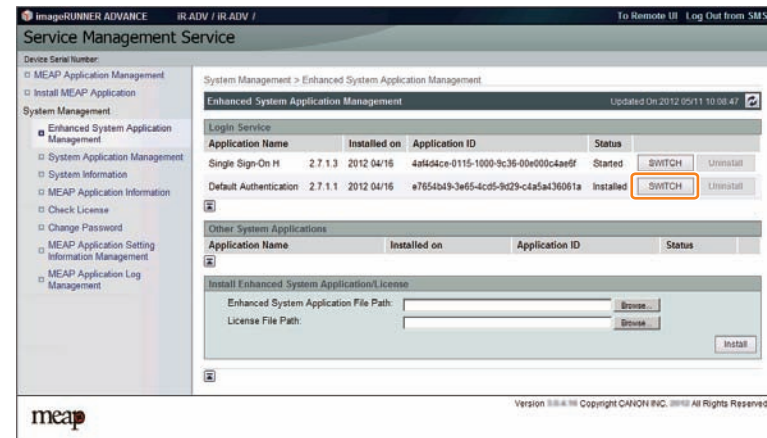
In order to allow coexistence of SSO-H and Department ID management, the following conditions need to be satisfied.

- Only "Local Device Authentication" can be used as the user authentication method.
- The department ID and password have been already set for the SSO-H login user before enabling department ID management.
- The information (the department ID and password) set for the login user coincides with the information registered in Department ID Management.

Setting Procedure

In order to allow coexistence of SSO-H and Department ID management, the following procedure needs to be performed to enable the setting.

- 1) Change the authentication method to DA (Default Authentication).
Access SMS, and select [Default Authentication] in [Enhanced System Application Management] > [Login Service]. (How to log in to SMS can be found in "Login to SMS".)



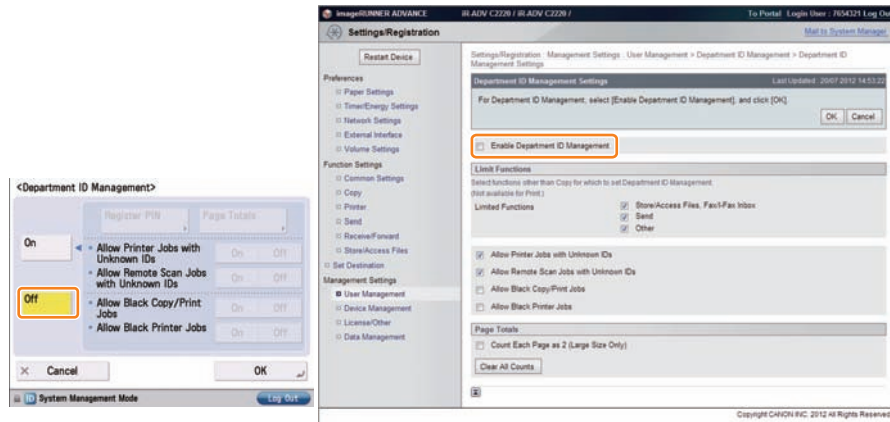
F-2-404

- 2) Restart the device.

Restart the device in order to reflect the changes in login service.

3) Disable Depart ID Management.

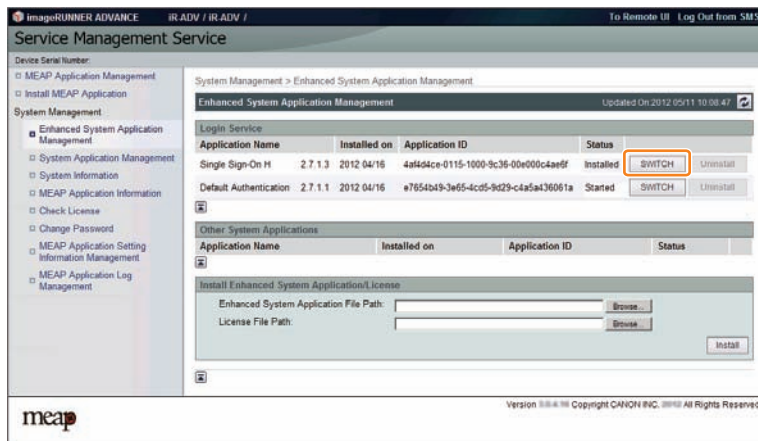
In user mode ([Settings/Registration]), select [Management Settings] > [User Management] > [Department ID Management] > [OFF]. In the case of remote UI, access [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [User Management] > [Department ID Management] > [Department ID Management Settings], and deselect [Enable Department ID Management].



F-2-405

4) Change the authentication method back to SSO-H authentication.

Access SMS, and select [Single Sign-On H] in [Enhanced System Application Management] > [Login Service]. (How to log in to SMS can be found in "Login to SMS".)



F-2-406

5) Restart the device.

Restart the device in order to reflect the changes in login service.

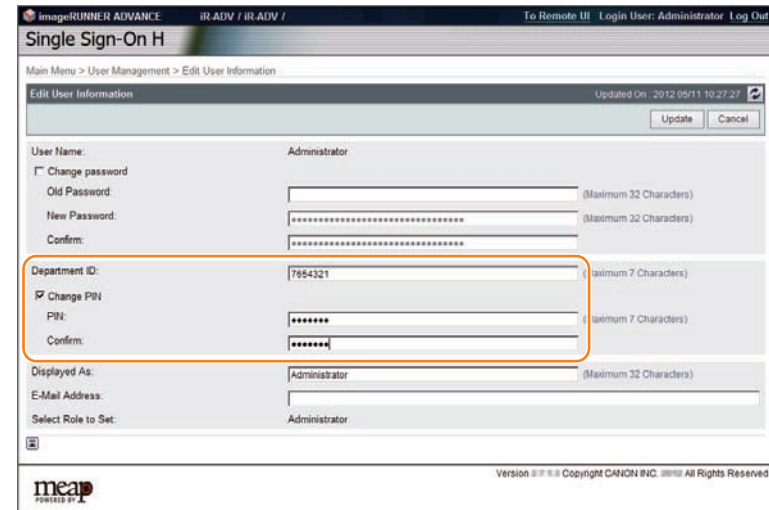
6) Change the user registration information of SSO-H.

Access the URL shown below, and change the content to the information registered in Department ID Management.

Or, import the setting file whose content you want to use.

SSO-H user registration information edition screen

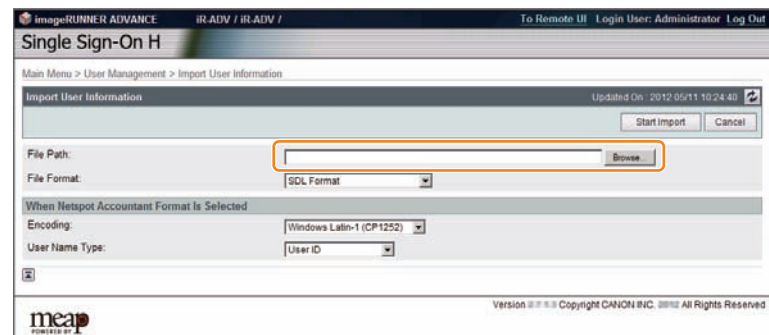
(SSO management screen [Main Menu] > [User Management] > [Edit User Information] or <https://<IP address>:8443/sso/Edit>).



F-2-407

SSO-H user registration information import screen

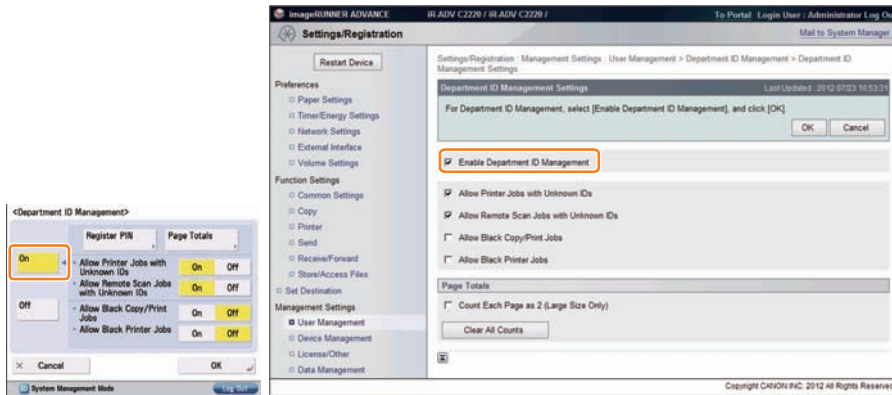
(SSO management screen [Main Menu] > [User Management] > [Import User Information] or (<https://<IP address>:8443/sso/Import>)).



F-2-408

7) Enable Depart ID Management.

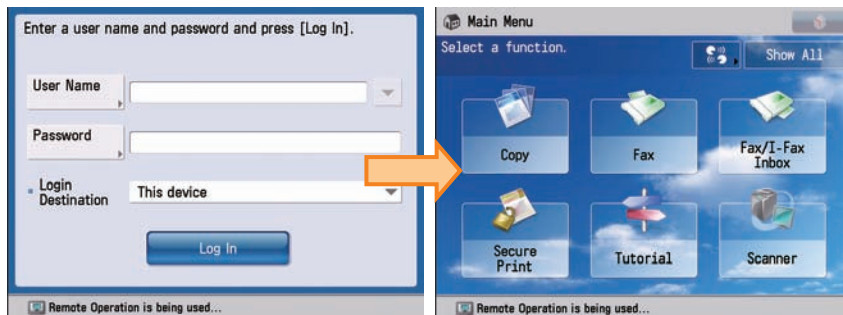
In user mode ([Settings/Registration]), select [Management Settings] > [User Management] > [Department ID Management] > [ON]. In the case of remote UI, access [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [User Management] > [Department ID Management] > [Department ID Management Settings], and select [Enable Department ID Management].



F-2-409

8) Check that the device can be logged in.

Log off and then log on to check that the device can be logged in with an environment where Local Device Authentication and Department ID Management are enabled.



F-2-410

Note:

In the case of conventional SSO, department management can be conducted also when server authentication is used provided that iWAM/iW EMC account management is used, which is not supported by SSO-H.

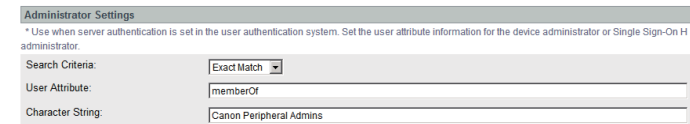
● Setting the Administrator for Server Authentication

When using Server Authentication, the user who satisfies the specified conditions (user attribute and its match criteria) becomes the administrator (the device administrator and the SSO-H administrator).

The default user attribute and whether the setting value can be changed or not are shown below.

Item	Default value	Active Directory	LDAP
Search Criteria:	Exact Match	Not Available	Available
User Attribute:	memberOf	Not Available	Available
Character String:	Canon Peripheral Admins	Available	Available

The settings of the administrator can be changed on the following screen: remote UI > Single Sign-On H > Configuration (<http://device's IP address:8000/ss0/ActionSet>)



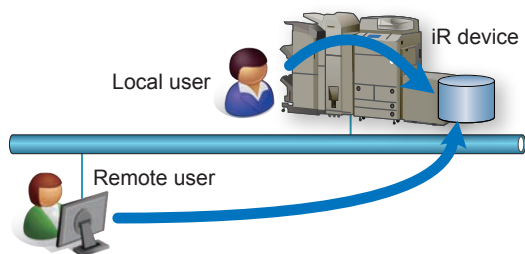
F-2-411

● System Manager Linkage (automatic ID allocation to SystemManagers)

SSO provided the automated function conventionally on Security Agent (hereinafter "SA") to authenticate System Manager by allocating IDs set on SA to domain authentication managers (users belonging to Canon Peripheral Admins group). However, SSO-H does not support this function.

Local device authentication

It is one of the user authentication methods using SSO-H, and is used for an iR device on a stand-alone basis.

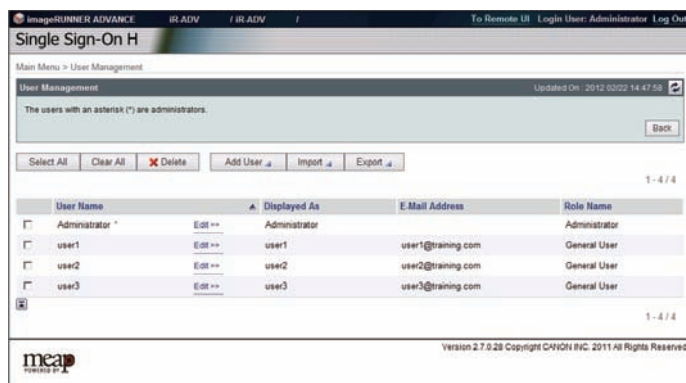


F-2-412

Register the user to be authenticated on the database in the device.

User management can be performed from the User Management screen (<http://device's IP address:8000/sso/>) or imageWARE Enterprise Management Console. The login destination is [This device].

User Management screen



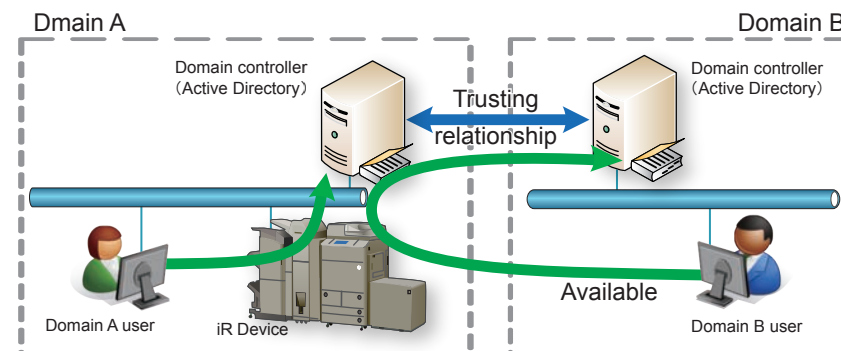
F-2-413

Server authentication (Active Directory authentication)

Outline

It is one of the user authentication methods using SSO-H. User authentication is performed with the device linked with a domain controller on the network in an Active Directory environment. It is a user authentication where the user is authenticated by the domain on the network when the user logs into the device. In addition to users belonging to the domain that includes the iR device, users belonging to domains that have a reliable relationship with the domain (multi-domain) can also be authenticated. The domain name of the login destination can be selected by the users themselves upon login.

Using one of the options (Net Spot Accountant, imageWARE Accounting Manager, or imageWARE EMC Accounting Management Plug-in) makes it possible to analyze/manage the iR device usage.



F-2-414

The protocol used is as follows.

- Kerberos:LLS/RLS/ILS
- NTLMV2:WLS(Web Service Login Service)

User information acquisition is done by LDAP, so the Active Directory LDAP port needs to be made accessible. If LDAP connection fails, the authentication will end in error.

No. of supported domains: 200 (unchanged from SSO) Site access supported.

CAUTION:

In the case of using Server Authentication (Active Directory authentication), it is necessary to synchronize the time settings of the Active Directory server and the machine (and the PC for login). If the difference in time setting is 5 minutes or longer, an error will occur at the time of login. (The setting of the allowable difference in time can be changed.)

CAUTION:

Since department ID and password are not assigned to domain users, distributing setting information where the department ID is enabled to a device where the server authentication is enabled may make the device unable to be logged in. If the device has become unable to be logged in, follow "Remedy to Be Performed When the Device Has Become Unable to Be Logged in" in this manual.

● Access Mode in Sites

With SSO-H, access to Active Directory within site can be prioritized or restricted, so there is a setting called 'Access Mode in Sites'. Sites programmed in Active Directory comprise multiple subnets. In this mode, SSO-H uses site information to access the same site as the device, or the subnet Active Directory.

- The SSO-H default setting is with the site internal access mode OFF.
- Access Active Directory within same site only.
- If there is no Active Directory within the same site, or if connection fails, there will be an authentication error.
- Access another site if Active Directory within the same site cannot be located.
- If there is no Active Directory within the same site, or if connection fails, an Active Directory external to the site will be accessed.
- If all attempts to access Active Directory fail, there will be an authentication error.

The operating specifications of the site internal access mode are as described below.

When first logging in to the login service after booting iR, the domain controller (DC) is obtained from the site list.

However, upon the first login, even if the site functionality is active, connection to DC is random. (This is because, if connection to DC should fail, the site to which the device belongs cannot be ascertained.)

If the device IP address or the domain name are changed, the site settings are acquired once more.

In this mode, at the first login (first authentication of domain to which the device belongs) LDAP-Bind is performed directly to DC and site information acquired by LDAP from DC.

From the acquired site list, the site to which the device subnet belongs is extracted and this becomes the site to which device belongs. Active Directory address is acquired (retrieved from DNS)

Note:

- The Active Directory subnet is assumed to be the same subnet as the device sub-net.
- In the Active Directory addresses, the Active Directories of the same site are listed.
- Active Directories of the same subnet as the device are listed first.
- If there is no Active Directory with the same subnet as the device, Active Directories belonging to different subnets than the device are listed.
- The Active Directories within the same site are accessed in order. Note, however, that where there are multiple Active Directories within the same site, access to those Active Directories will be in the order in which the address list was obtained.
- If there is no Active Directory within the same site, if access outside of the site is programmed, Active Directories outside of the site will be accessed in the order in which the address list was obtained.

Site list acquisition

After booting up, upon the first login by LLS or ILS/ RLS, the site list is obtained from the Active Directory. In order to obtain the site list from the Active Directory, Active Directory needs to be accessed in LDAP, so SASL-Kerberos-Bind is used by the login user account. If authentication by Active Directory should fail, an authentication error will be generated and the site list will be acquired again from Active Directory upon the next login.

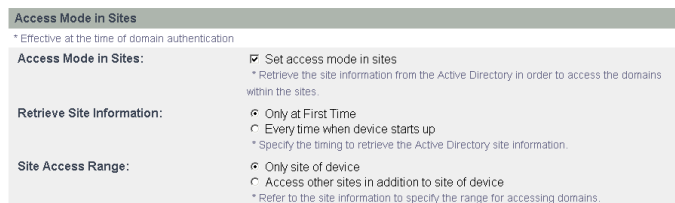
In SSO-H, the Active Directory to be accessed when acquiring the site list cannot be specified. In other words, if there is no site list, which site's Active Directory is accessed depends upon the order of the Active Directory addresses returned by DNS. Therefore, when acquiring the site list, LDAP may access the Active Directory of a different site. Therefore, in such cases, it is sometimes necessary to access across sites or subnets, which means that LDAP protocol needs to have continuity across sites (subnets) (normally, LDAP is port No. 389). Further, if connection with Active Directory fails when acquiring site information, another Active Directory will be accessed.

Site information, once it has been acquired, is cached within the device. The life settings of the cache can be set so that site information in the cache is updated upon the first login after the device boots up, or so that the cache is not updated once acquired.

Settings for access mode in sites

Switching between site internal access mode/ non site internal access mode, as well as detailed mode settings, are done via DMS or iWEMC.

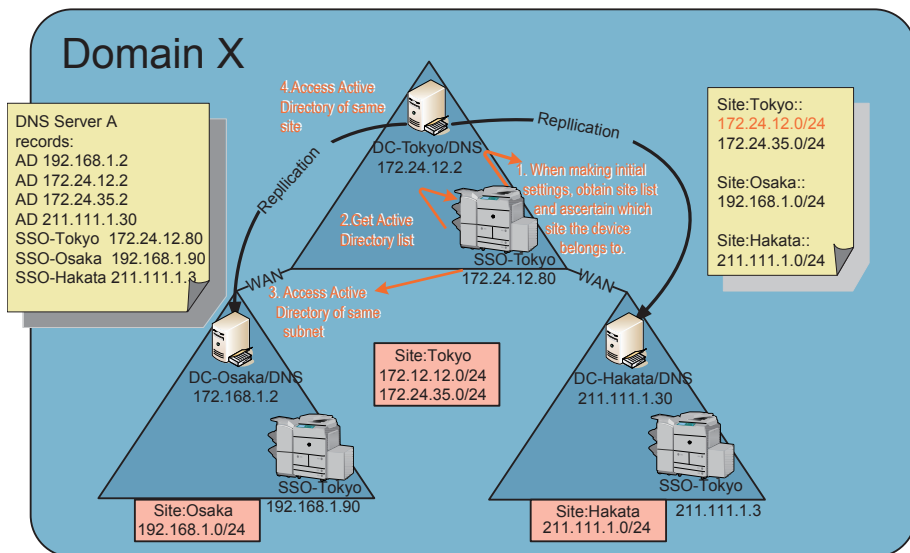
Site internal access mode settings window (DMS)



F-2-415

The figure below shows a sample of processing Access Mode in Sites.

Sample of Processing Access Mode in Sites



F-2-416

1) SSO-Tokyo acquires site lists from Active Directories.

Note, however, that the Active Directories accessed in order to acquire site lists are in the order in which they were returned by DNS, so there is no guarantee that the same Active Directory will be accessed as in the initial settings (upon device settings or changes to NW settings, etc.).

[Site subnet list]

Site: Tokyo: = 172.24.12.0/24, 172.24.35.0/24

Site: Osaka: = 192.168.1.0/24

Site: Hakata: = 211.111.1.0/24

As a result, since SSO-Tokyo is 172.24.12.80, the subnet is 172.24.12.0/24, and is judged as belonging to site Tokyo.

2) The DNS server obtains its Active Directory list from the primary or secondary DNS, as set in the device.

[Active Directory]

172.24.12.2, 172.24.35.2, 192.168.1.2, 211.111.1.30

3) Of the Active Directories in 2), above, the ones that belong to the same site (Tokyo) are 172.24.12.2 and 172.24.35.2.

Of these, the Active Directory that is the same subnet as SS-Tokyo is 172.24.12.2.

Therefore, this one will be accessed.

4) If access fails at step 3), above, the other Active Directory of the same site, 172.24.35.2, will be accessed.

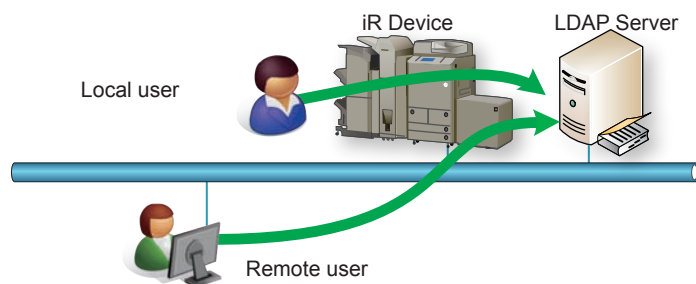
5) If access fails at step 4), above, also, SSO-Osaka and SSO-Hakata will be accessed (the order will depend on the order of the Active Directories in DNS). Note, however, that this is an optional operation.

Logging into other domains at multi-domain

At multi-domain, if another domain is logged into, based on the site/ subnet information retrieved in the home domain, the Active Directories of the login destination domain/ KDC address list are computed. In the event that the domain controller IP addresses of other domains are outside of the site access range, and only the domain controller within the site is programmed for access, an error message will be displayed to the effect that the site information is incorrect.

■ Server Authentication (LDAP Authentication)

It is one of the user authentication methods using SSO-H. User authentication is performed with the device linked with the LDAP Server on the network in an LDAP environment.



F-2-417

LDAP server authentication can be used for devices that support MEAP User Preference Service (MEAP Specification Ver.56) and MEAP Application Setting Information Management (MEAP Specification Ver.57).

As for models that do not support MEAP User Preference Service and MEAP Application Setting Information Management, [LDAP Server] cannot be selected as the type of the authentication server on the SSO-H Configuration page. Moreover, it is not possible to access the LDAP Server Management screen and the Add Server screen.

Simple bind (a method where the password is not encrypted) is used as the bind (authentication) between SSO-H and LDAP server. It is therefore strongly recommended to always use SSL connection from a security standpoint.

As for the version of LDAP, only Ver.3 is supported.

ON/OFF of SSL connection can be changed on the LDAP Server Management page.

The time-out value of connection is 60 seconds.

In the case of using LDAP server authentication, the characters entered as the user name are not case-sensitive, but the characters entered as the password are case-sensitive.

In the case of SSO-H, authentication is not allowed when the user name includes "*" (asterisk)".

If authentication is performed with "*" (asterisk)" used in the user name, an authentication error occurs.

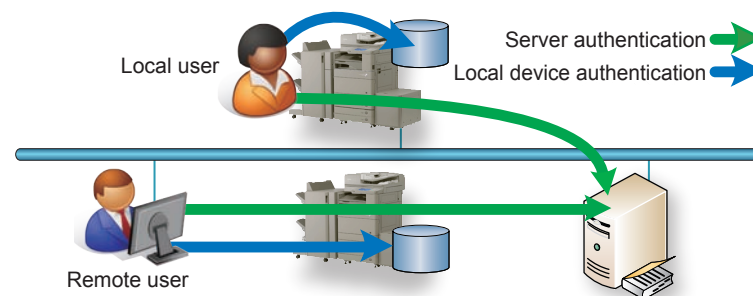
CAUTION:

Since department ID and password are not assigned to domain users, distributing setting information where the department ID is enabled to a device where the server authentication is enabled may make the device unable to be logged in. If the device has become unable to be logged in, follow "Remedy to Be Performed When the Device Has Become Unable to Be Logged in" in this manual.

■ Server authentication and local device authentication

It is a user authentication method provided with both the "server authentication" function and the "local device authentication" function.

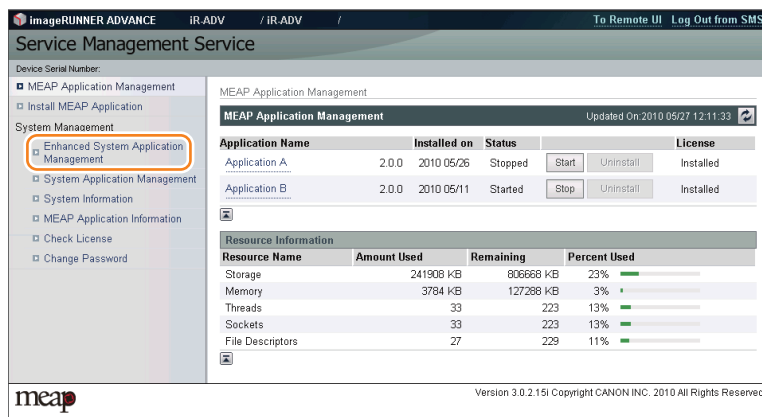
It is possible to use server authentication to authenticate the users registered on the authentication server under normal conditions and use local device authentication when a user who cannot be added to the authentication server needs to be temporarily authenticated. If a trouble occurs in the authentication server, local device authentication can be used as an emergency measure until recovery from the trouble.



F-2-418

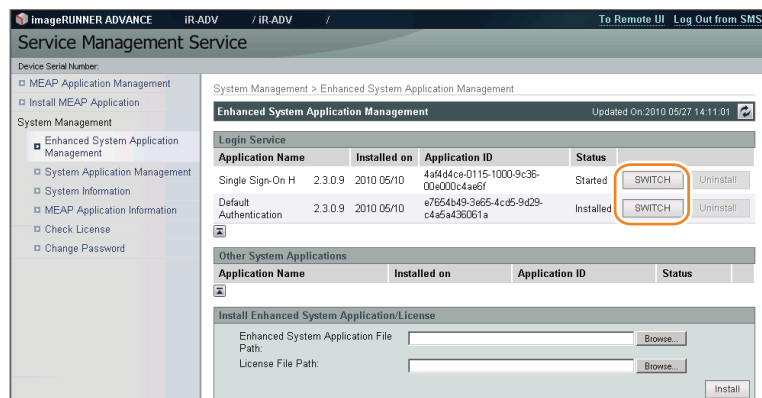
Steps to Change Login Services

1) Click [Enhanced System Application Management] on [System Management].



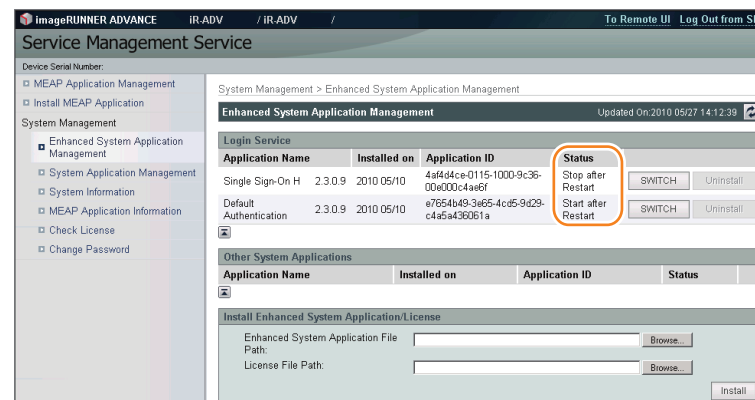
F-2-419

2) A page will appear showing the various selections you can make for the login service. Click [SWITCH] button for the login service to be used.



F-2-420

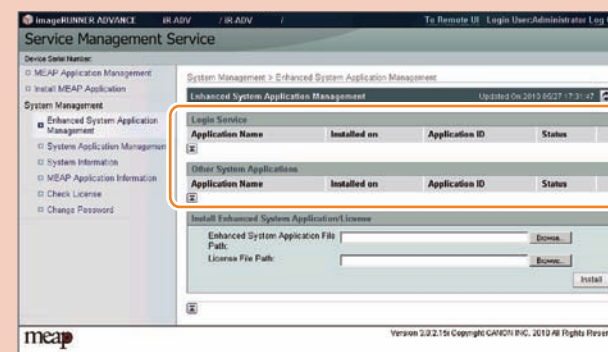
3) When login service application you have selected turns to Start after Restart, restart the device.



F-2-421

CAUTION:

In case that the login method to a device is set to SSO-H, if you log in SMS with RLS authentication, no selection is displayed although it is the screen to change the login method.



F-2-422

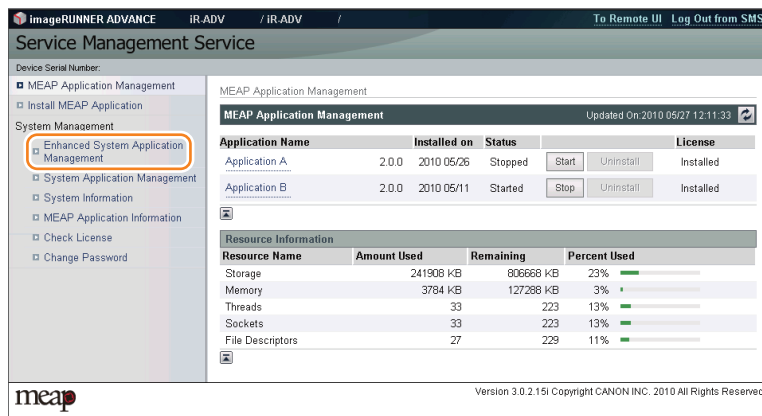
This is the specification to prevent the inconsistent setting which enables to stop SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication) by changing the login method to Default Authentication.

When you want to change the login method to a device, log in the SMS with the password authentication.

Login Service Installation Procedure

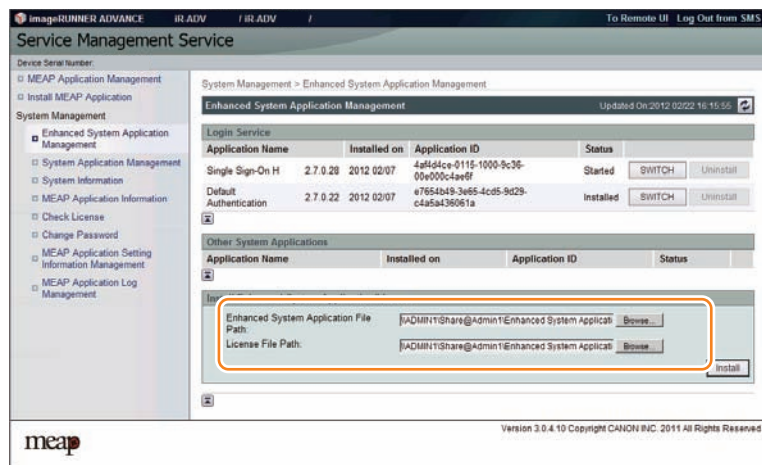
Follow the procedure show below to install login services.

- 1) Access SMS, and select [System Management] > [Enhanced System Application Management].



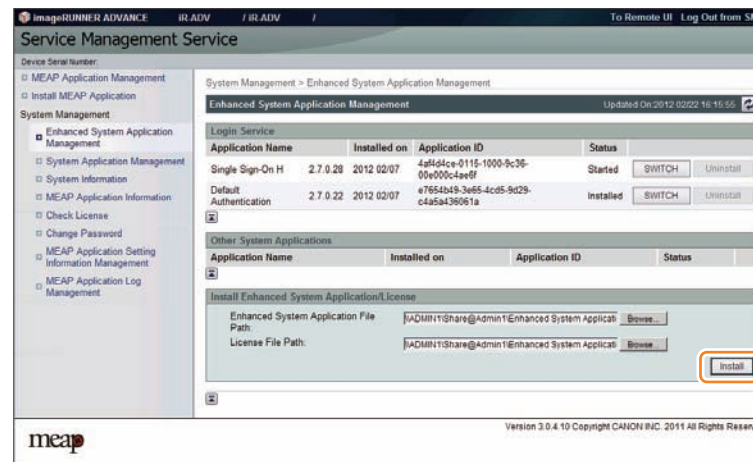
F-2-423

- 2) Click the [Browse] button, and specify the enhanced system application file and license file.



F-2-424

- 3) Click [Install] button.



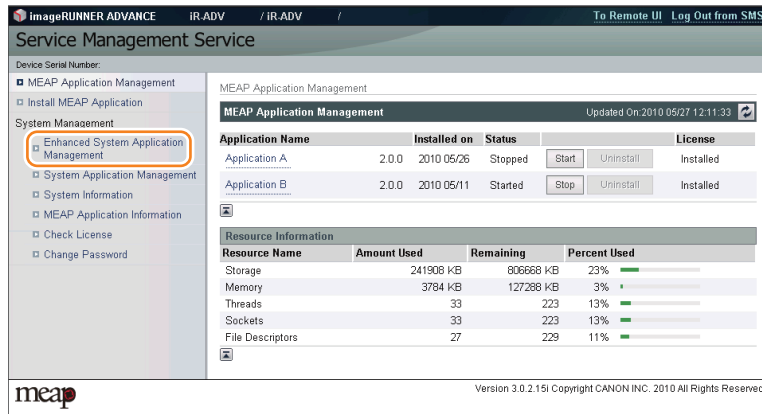
F-2-425

Login Service Uninstallation Procedure

Follow the procedure show below to uninstall login services.

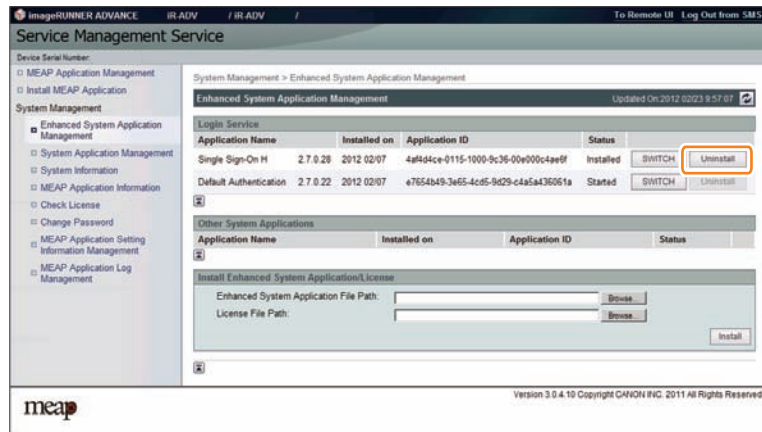
In order to uninstall a login service, the service needs to be stopped ("Installed" status). Default Authentication cannot be uninstalled even when the service is stopped.

- 1) Access SMS, and select [System Management] > [Enhanced System Application Management].



F-2-426

- 2) Click the [Uninstall] button of the login service you want to uninstall.



F-2-427

System Application Management

This function manages the login services for logging in to SMS.

There are two login methods: one is "password authentication" where you enter the password for SMS on the SMS login screen and log in, and the other is "RLS authentication" where you do not use the SMS login screen but enter the user ID and password on the RLS (Remote Login Service) screen for authentication.

Password authentication

Enter the password on the SMS login screen for authentication. Only one password can be set for SMS.

The login procedure is shown below.

- 1) Access SMS from the browser of a PC on the same network as the MEAP device. The URL is as follows.

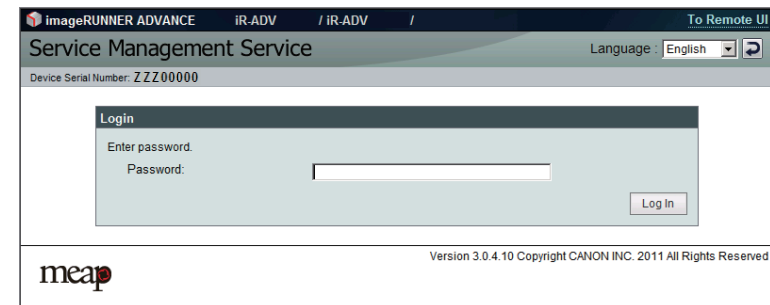
URL: <https://<IP address of MEAP device>:8443/sms/>

Ex.) <https://172.16.188.240:8443/sms/>

Note:

To encrypt the password information input when logging in, SSL of the login screen was made effective. However, it is redirected to new URL (effective SSL) even when accessing with URL (non-SSL) before.

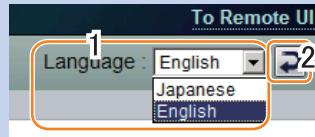
- 2) Enter the password in the password entry field, and click the [Log In] button. The default password is "MeapSmsLogin." (The password is case-sensitive.)



F-2-428

Note:

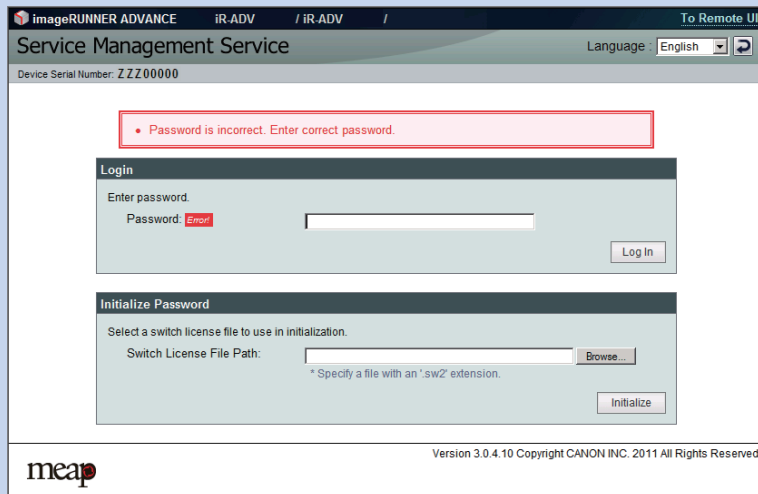
If you want to change the display language, select the language from the drop-down list of [Language] at the upper right of the login screen, and click the update button.



F-2-429

Note:

If the wrong password is entered, the following window is displayed. The user's system administrator may have changed the password, so confirm the password with the system administrator. Note that there is no special password for service.



F-2-430

■ RLS Authentication

Login without using the SMS login window but by entering the user ID and password for authentication in the RLS (Remote Login Service) window. The user information (user name and password) used is the information for server authentication or local device authentication. The login procedures are as follows.

1) Access SMS by RLS Authentication from the PC browser on the same network as the MEAP device.

URL: `https://<IP address of MEAP device>:8443/sms/rls/`

Ex.) `https://172.16.188.240:8443/sms/rls/`

Note:

- To encrypt the password information input when logging in, SSL of the login screen was made effective. However, it is redirected to new URL (effective SSL) even when accessing with URL (non-SSL) before.



F-2-431

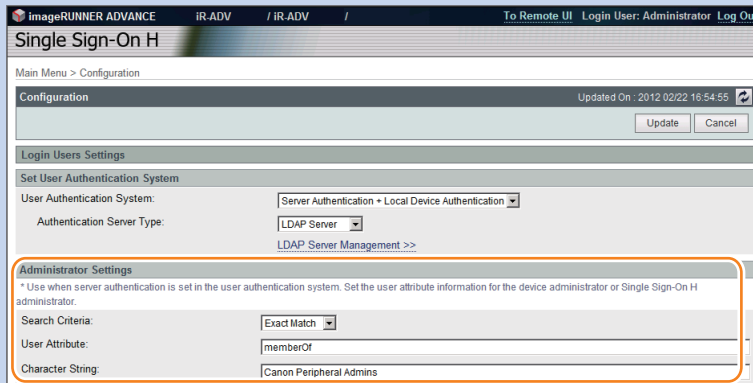
Note:

- When the device authentication method used is server authentication, enter the user name, password and login destination registered with authentication server and then click 'Log In'.
- If the authentication method used is local device authentication, enter the user name, password and login destination registered in the device and click 'Log In' button. The user information is set as below for local device authentication by default. Both are case sensitive.
 - User Name: Administrator
 - Password: password

Note:

Only the following users may use SMS via RLS.

- For local device authentication, users with Administrator or Device Admin authority.
- In the case of server authentication, the users who belong to the group (default: Canon Peripheral Admins) specified as the device administrator on the SSO-H Configuration screen.



F-2-432

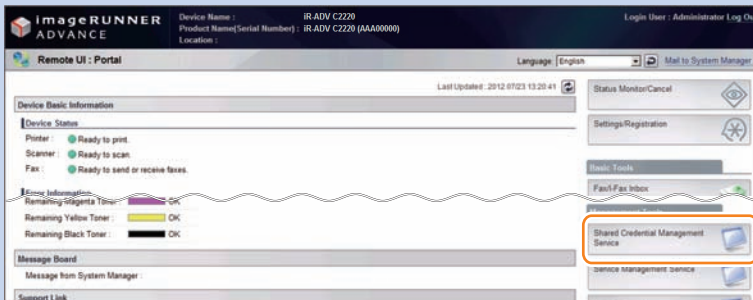
Note:

SMS Access can be gained also from Remote UI.

Access Remote UI and click on SMS shortcut shown on the lower right of the screen to gain access to SMS.

When only the password authentication is enabled, the password authentication screen is shown.

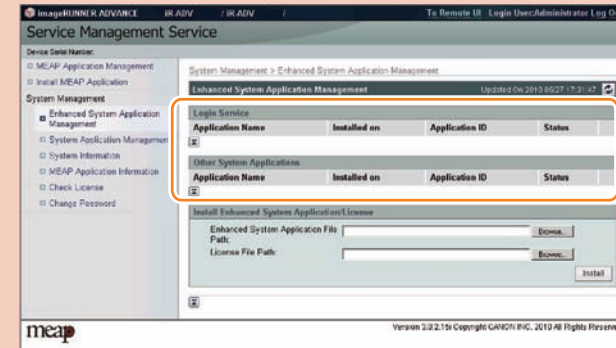
When only the RLS authentication is enabled, no further authentication is needed to access SMS. This is because users have already authorized upon accessing to Remote UI.



F-2-433

CAUTION:

In case that the login method to a device is set to SSO-H, if you log in SMS with RLS authentication, no selection is displayed although it is the screen to change the login method.



F-2-434

This is the specification to prevent the inconsistent setting which enables to stop SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication) by changing the login method to Default Authentication.

When you want to change the login method to a device, log in the SMS with the password authentication.

Setting the method to login to SMS

Outline

The method to log into SMS can be specified by one of the following methods.

- If you want to change the password authentication settings: Use RLS authentication to log in, and change the settings.
- If you want to change the RLS authentication settings: Use password authentication to log in, and change the settings.

The following table shows the start/stop combinations of the two login methods.

Combination of Login Methods

	Start RLS Authentication	Stop RLS Authentication
Start Password Authentication	Login available with either method	Login available only with
Stop Password Authentication	Login available only with RLS Authentication	Setting unavailable

T-2-84

CAUTION:

If only login via RLS is programmed, login may be disabled for the following reasons.

- Authentication server is down
- Network problem, no communication with authentication server

In the event of either of these cases, try the following.

1. If local device authentication is active, try logging in with local device authentication.
2. If only server authentication is active, launch in MEAP safe mode from the device service mode.

After launching in MEAP safe mode, the Default Authentication will become active, and you will be able to login to SMS with password authentication. After logging into SMS, set the password authentication login to ON (active) and restore the device from MEAP safe mode to normal mode. Until the problem blocking authentication is resolved, log into SMS with password authentication.

Setting for login by Password Authentication

The procedures for changing the password authentication Start/ stop settings are as follows.

- 1) Access SMS login screen by RLS Authentication from the PC browser on the same network as the MEAP device.

URL: https://<IP address of MEAP device>:8443/sms/rls/

Ex.) https://172.16.188.240:8443/sms/rls

- 2) Enter the user name and the password of the user registered as an administrator, select the login destination, and then click the [Log In] button.

Login screen (In case authentication method is SSO-H)

F-2-435

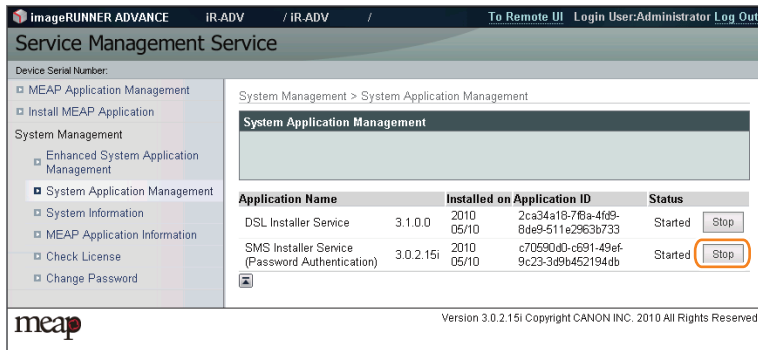
- 3) Select [System Application Management]

Application Name	Installed on	Status	Start	Uninstall	License
Sample Application A	4.4.0 2012 03/30	Installed	Start	Uninstall	Installed
Sample Application B	4.4.0 2012 03/30	Started	Stop	Uninstall	Installed
Sample Application C	4.4.0 2012 03/30	Started	Stop	Uninstall	Installed

Resource Name	Amount Used	Remaining	Percent Used
Storage	30712 KB	1017864 KB	3%
Memory	3784 KB	127288 KB	3%
Threads	33	223	13%
Sockets	33	223	13%
File Descriptors	27	229	11%

F-2-436

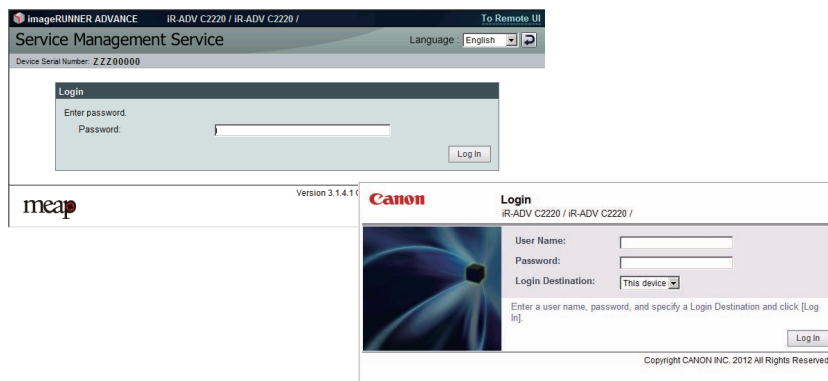
- 4) Click [Start] or [Stop] button shown in Status field of SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication) to check if the status is changed.



F-2-437

- 5) Logout once and login again to check to see that the setting is applied properly. When clicking [Stop] to change the status to [Start], another password authentication login screen is firstly shown. When trying to access the password authentication screen after clicking [Start] to change the status to [Stop], the user is automatically redirected to RLS authentication screen.

Password authentication started screen and Password authentication stopped screen



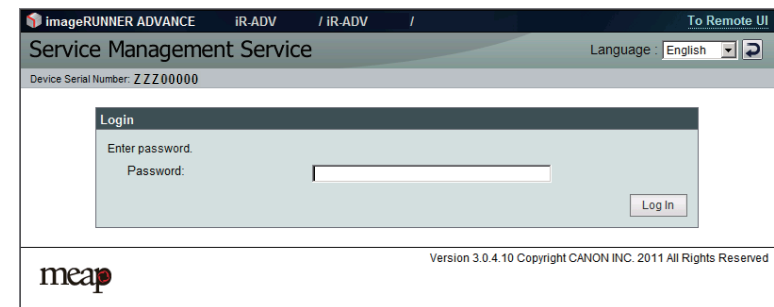
F-2-438

● Setting for login by RLS Authentication

The procedures for changing the RLS authentication Start/ Stop settings are as follows.

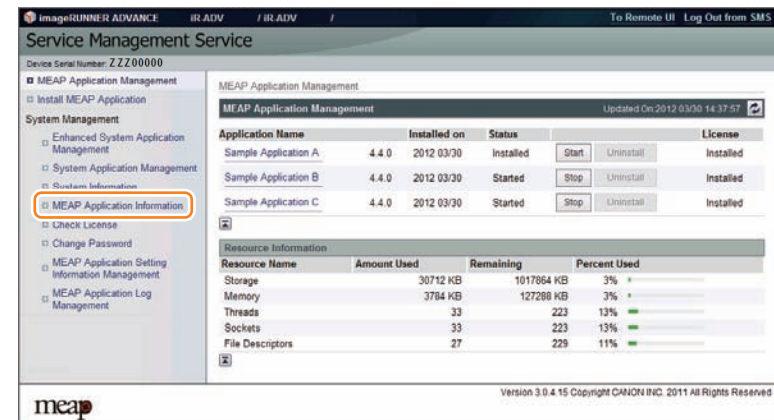
- 1) Access the SMS login screen using the normal method (password authentication). The URL is shown below.
URL: `https://<IP address of MEAP device>:8443/sms/rls/`
Ex.) `https://172.16.188.240:8443/sms/rls`
- 2) Enter the password in the password entry field, and click the [Log In] button. The default password is "MeapSmsLogin". (Case sensitive)

Login screen by Password Authentication



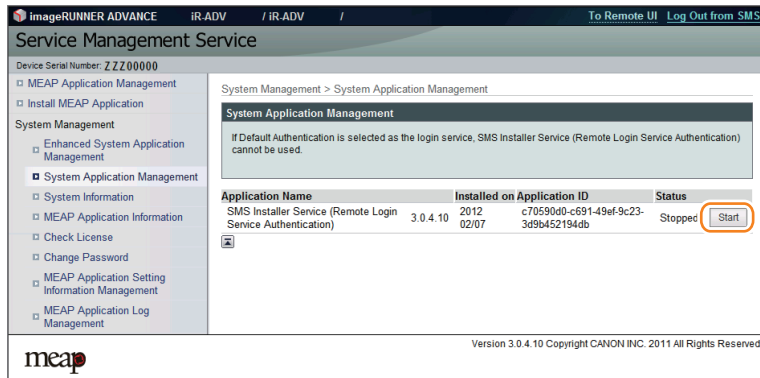
F-2-439

- 3) Select [System Application Management] on System Management menu.



F-2-440

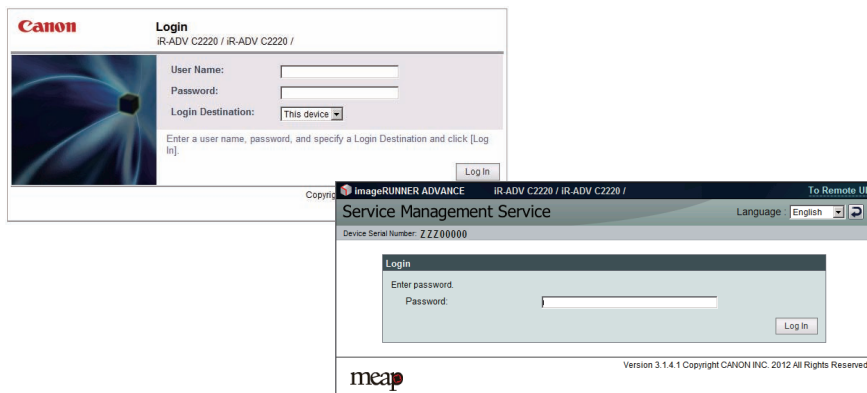
- 4) Click on [Start] or [Stop] button shown on Status field of SMS Installer Service (Remote Login Service Authentication) to check if the status is changed.



F-2-441

- 5) Log out and then log in again and access via the RLS authentication login window. When RLS authentication is set to [Start], another RLS login screen is firstly shown. When accessing to RLS status screen with the setting of [Stop], the user will be redirected to the password authentication screen.

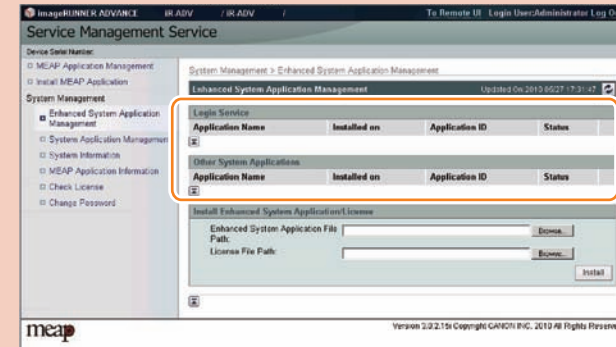
RLS authentication started screen and RLS authentication stopped screen



F-2-442

CAUTION:

In case that the login method to a device is set to SSO-H, if you log in SMS with RLS authentication, no selection is displayed although it is the screen to change the login method.



F-2-443

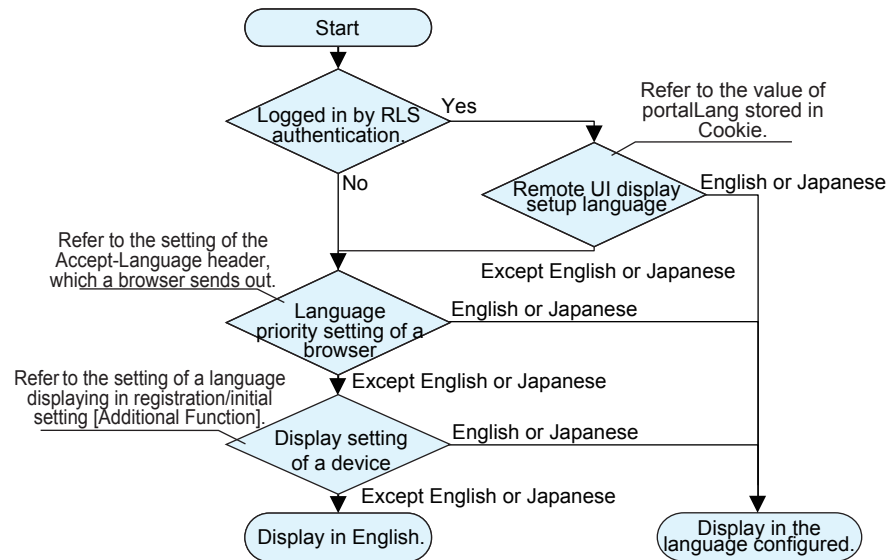
This is the specification to prevent the inconsistent setting which enables to stop SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication) by changing the login method to Default Authentication.

When you want to change the login method to a device, log in the SMS with the password authentication.

Initial Display Languages of SMS

SMS supports English and Japanese. Display language can be changed with selecting by the drop down list on a login page.

The initial display language at the time of accessing SMS depends on the setting.



F-2-444

When accessing by SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication)

It is referred in order of the language priority (setting of the Accept-Language header which a browser sends out) and the display-language setting in the "user mode". When the language setup is other than English or Japanese, it is displayed in English.

When accessing by SMS Installer Service (Remote Login Service Authentication).

Initial display language is set by the language setting (value of portalLang storing in Cookie) selected by the remote UI screen. When the setting is other than English or Japanese, Selection of display language is performed in a similar way with the SMS Installer Service (Password Authentication) mentioned above.

MEAP Application System Information

Outline

You can check the device's platform information and the MEAP application's system information.

Checking the System Information

System information that can be checked from the screen

- MEAP Specifications version (MEAP Spec Ver)
 - MEAP Contents version
 - Java Virtual Machine version
 - System application information
- The name of the installed system application
 - The installation date of the installed system application
 - Application ID of the installed system application
 - The status of the installed system application

The checking procedure is shown below.

- Log in to SMS.
- Select [System Management] > [System Information] on System Management menu.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Management Service' interface. The left sidebar has 'System Information' selected. The main content area displays 'MEAP Application Management' with a table of resource information.

Resource Name	Amount Used	Remaining	Percent Used
Storage	30700 KB	1017876 KB	3%
Memory	3584 KB	127488 KB	3%
Threads	33	223	13%
Sockets	33	223	13%
File Descriptors	27	229	11%

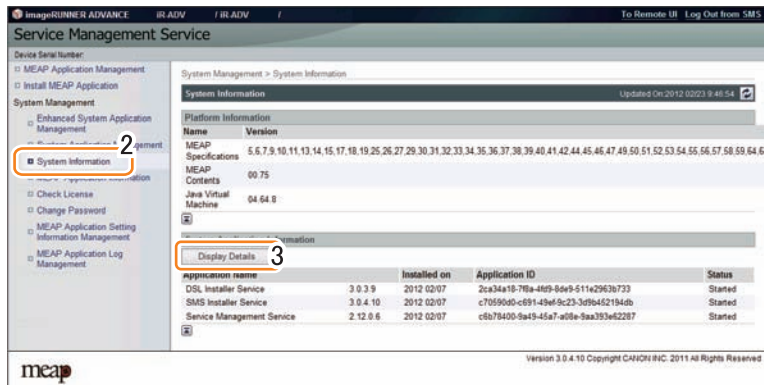
Version 3.0.4.10 Copyright CANON INC. 2011 All Rights Reserved

F-2-445

■ Display of System Information Details

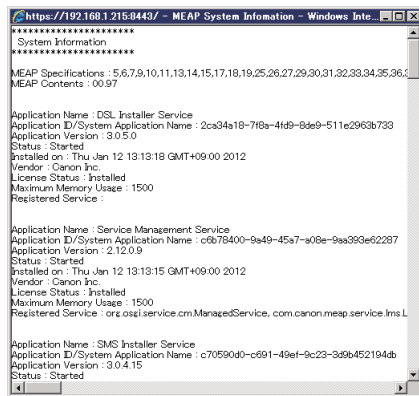
The system information details can be displayed to check more than one pieces of information all at the same time: platform information, system application information, information on the installed MEAP applications, etc.

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Select [System Info] on System Management menu.
- 3) Click [Display Details] button.



F-2-446

- 4) System information of each application (including system applications) is shown in an additional window. Copy and paste all the information in a file to attach to AR reports as text information. This function is useful to check status information of each application.



F-2-447

■ Printing the System Information of a MEAP Application

MEAP system information can be printed out with iR device for confirmation.

Note:

The system information of the MEAP application that you checked in the previous section is exactly the same as the system information of the MEAP application that is output.

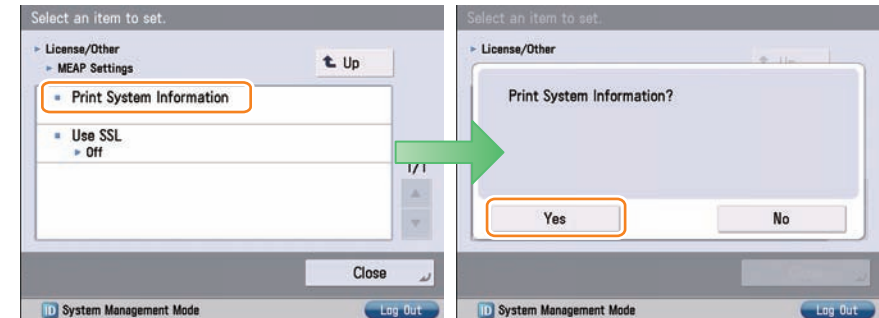
Follow the steps below when confirming information:

- 1) Select [Settings/ Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/ Other] > [MEAP Settings] > [Print System Information] .

Note:

When System Manager ID and PIN are set, go to Top screen and log in as System Manager to continue jobs.

- 2) Press [Yes] button.



F-2-448

Note:

MEAP system information was printed out in PDL format conventionally. However, the information has been printed out in text format instead of PDL format, enabling iR devices without PDL installation to print out information (iR C3220 and later).

Content of MEAP system information

Application System Information

Application Name: C-Cabinet Gateway for MEAP
 Application ID/System Application Name: 03a46668-63e4-4636-9cbb-492b6cef05d5
 Application Version: 1.0.0
 Status: Resolved
 Installed on: Tue Oct 21 14:00:11 GMT+09:00 2003
 Vendor : Canon Inc.
 License Status : Installed
 Maximum Memory Usage : 1024
 Registered Service :

item	content
Application Name	It is the name (bundle-name) declared in a statement within the application program. It may not necessarily be identical to the name of the program.
Application ID/System Application Name	Application ID (application-id) items which are declared on the declaration statement in the application program are printed.
Application Version	It is the version of the application (bundle-version) declared in a statement within the application program.
Status	It indicates the status of the application in question; specifically, Installed: the application has been installed. Active: the application is being in use. Resolved: the application is at rest.
Installed On	It indicates the date on which the application was installed.
Vendor	It is the name of the vendor that developed the application, and is the name (bundle-vendor) declared in a statement within the application program.
License Status	It indicates the status of the license; specifically, None: no license is needed. Not Installed: no license has been installed. Installed: the appropriate license has been installed. Invalid: the license has been invalidated. Overlimit: the license has been used beyond its permitted limit.
License Expires After	It indicates the date after which the license expires. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.
License Upper Limit	It indicates the limit imposed on individual counter readings. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.
Counter Value	It is the current counter reading of a specific counter. If the status of the license is 'none', this item will not be printed.
Maximum Memory Usage	It indicates the maximum amount of memory that the application uses. It is the amount (maximum memory usage) declared in a statement within the application program, and is expressed in kilobytes.
Registered Service	It is a list of services that have been registered by the application with the MEAP framework. Some services may not have printable data.

T-2-85

MEAP Application Information

Outline

You can check the MEAP application installed on the device.
 The following information can be checked on the MEAP application information screen.

Application Information

- Application Name
- Application ID
- Installed on
- Applet Number
- Resources Used (Storage, Memory, Threads, Sockets, File Descriptors)
- Description
- Manufacturer
- ContactAddress
- Category
- Version
- Copyright
- Applet-Name
- URL
- Export Package
- Export Service
- Import Package
- Import Service

License Information

- Status
- Serial Number
- Expires after

Procedure to Check MEAP Application Information

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Select [System Management] > [MEAP Application Information] on System Management menu.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Management Service' interface. The left sidebar has a menu with 'MEAP Application Information' highlighted. The main content area shows 'MEAP Application Management' with a table of applications:

Application Name	Version	Installed on	Status	License
Sample Application A	4.4.0	2012 03/30	Installed	Installed
Sample Application B	4.4.0	2012 03/30	Started	Installed
Sample Application C	4.4.0	2012 03/30	Started	Installed

Below the table is a 'Resource Information' section with a table:

Resource Name	Amount Used	Remaining	Percent Used
Storage	30712 KB	1017864 KB	3%
Memory	3784 KB	127288 KB	3%
Threads	33	223	13%
Sockets	33	223	13%
File Descriptors	27	229	11%

F-2-449

- 3) The MEAP application information screen appears. Scroll the screen and check the information of the target application.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Management Service' interface. The left sidebar contains a tree view with 'MEAP Application Information' selected. The main content area displays 'MEAP Application Information' for 'Sample Application A'. Below this, there is a table with columns 'Type of Counter', 'Current Count', and 'Usage Limit'. The 'Check License' option in the sidebar is circled in red.

Type of Counter	Current Count	Usage Limit
Total (Full Color/Large)	0	--
Total (Full Color/Small)	0	--
Total (Full Color 1)	0	--
Total (Single Color/Large)	0	--
Total (Single Color/Small)	0	--
Total (Single Color)	0	--
Total (Black and White/Large)	0	1000
Total (Black and White/Small)	0	2000
Total (Black and White 1)	0	--
Total 1	0	--
Free 5	0	--
Free 6	0	--
Free 7	0	--
Free 8	0	--
Free 9	0	--
Free 10	0	--
Free 11	0	--
Free 12	0	--

F-2-450

Check License

Outline

You can check the contents of the license file.

Procedure to Check the License File

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Select [System Management] > [Check License] on System Management menu.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Management Service' interface. The left sidebar contains a tree view with 'Check License' selected. The main content area displays 'MEAP Application Management' with a table of resource information.

Resource Name	Amount Used	Remaining	Percent Used
Storage	30700 KB	1017876 KB	3%
Memory	3584 KB	127488 KB	3%
Threads	33	223	13%
Sockets	33	223	13%
File Descriptors	27	229	11%

F-2-451

- 3) Click the [Browse..] button, specify a license file, and click the [Check] button.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Management Service' interface. The left sidebar contains a tree view with 'Check License' selected. The main content area displays the 'Check License' screen with a 'License File Path' field and a 'Browse' button. The 'Browse' button is circled in red.

F-2-452

Changing SMS Login Password

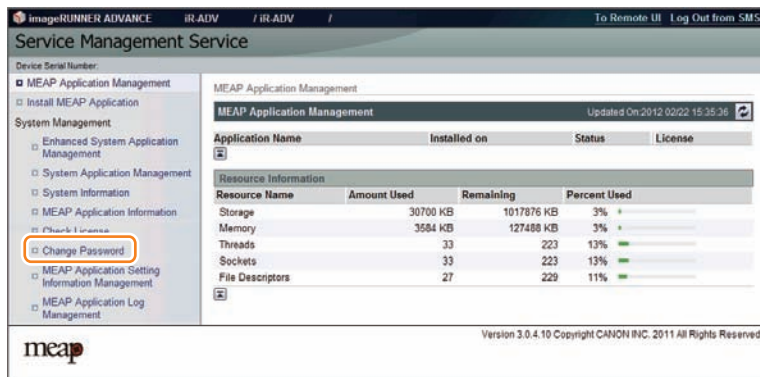
Outline

You can change the password for logging into SMS.

If you forgot the login password and you want to change the password back to the default value (MeapSmsLogin), see "If you forgot the password (SMS login password initialization)" in this chapter.

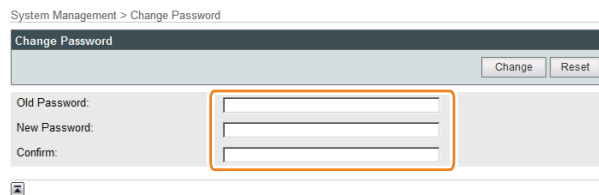
Procedure to Change the SMS Login Password

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Select [System Management] > [Change Password] on System Management menu.



F-2-453

- 3) Enter the current password and a new password, and then click the [Change] button.



F-2-454

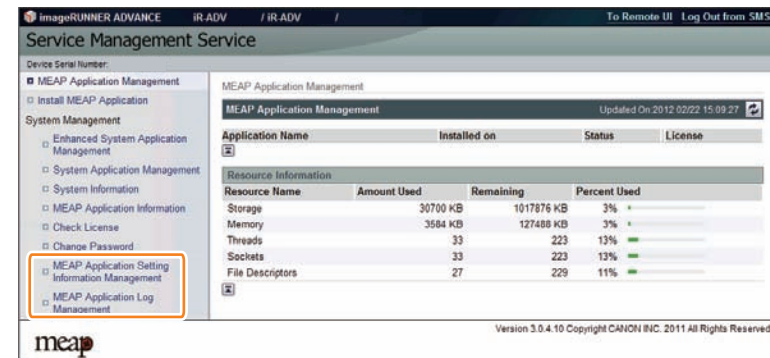
Note:

The [Reset] button on the [Change Password] screen is used to clear the value entered in the text field. It is not a button for changing the SMS login password back to the default value.

MEAP Application Setting Information Management and Log Management

Outline

The MEAP Application Setting Information Management page and the MEAP Application Log Management page provide menu related to "MEAP Application Configuration Service" for managing MEAP application setting information and menu related to "MEAP Application Log Service" for managing log information respectively.



F-2-455

MEAP Application Configuration Service

This service is used to manage the MEAP application setting information. It has functions such as saving setting information to the MEAP area. Ver 57 of MEAP Specifications supports this service.

MEAP Application Log Service

This service is used to collect MEAP application logs (debug logs and authentication logs). Ver 58 of MEAP Specifications supports this service.

The collected logs can be downloaded or deleted in user mode.

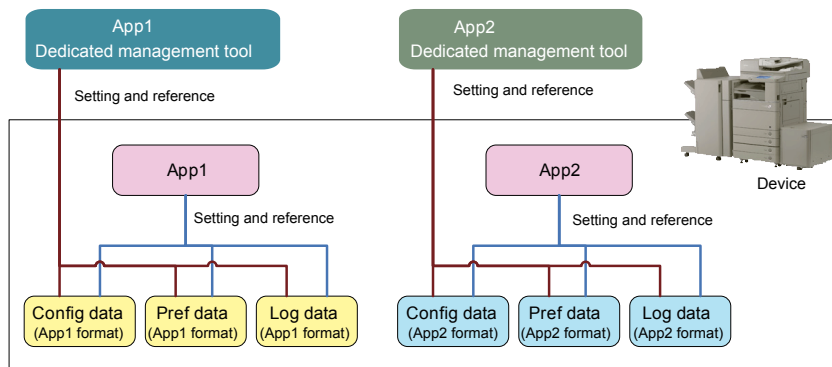
The settings such as the log level to be saved cannot be made from SMS.

These settings depend on the MEAP application. For detailed information, refer to the manual for the application.

Advantages Obtained When Using the Services

By using MEAP Application Setting Information Management and MEAP Application Log Service, as long as the MEAP application supports these services, you can collectively perform data management tasks.

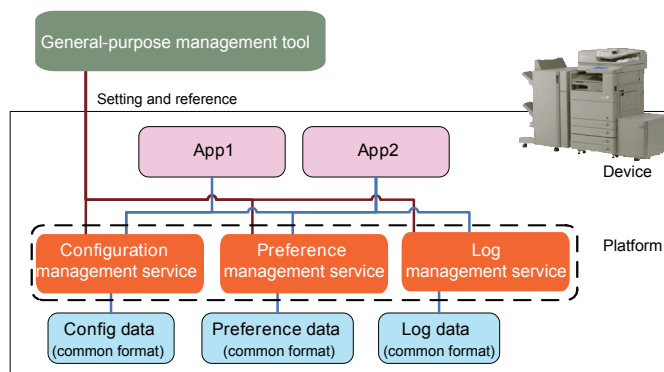
Devices and MEAP applications which do not support new functions



F-2-456

As for devices and MEAP applications that do not support the service, the setting information and log data are managed on an application-by-application basis.

Devices and MEAP applications which support new functions



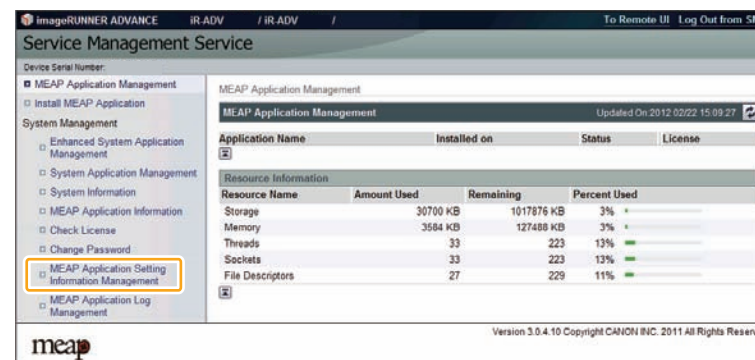
F-2-457

As for devices and MEAP applications that support the service, information can be collectively managed.

MEAP Application Setting Information Management

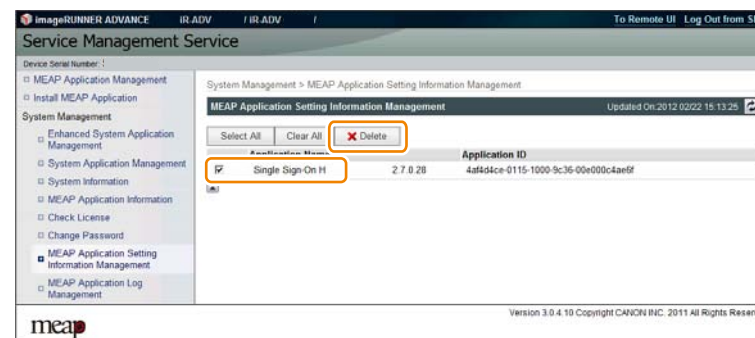
The setting data (stored on the device) of the MEAP applications which support MEAP Application Setting Information Management can be deleted. The procedure is shown below.

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Select [System Management] > [MEAP Application Setting Information Management] on System Management menu.



F-2-458

- 3) Select an application you want to delete, and click the [Delete] button.



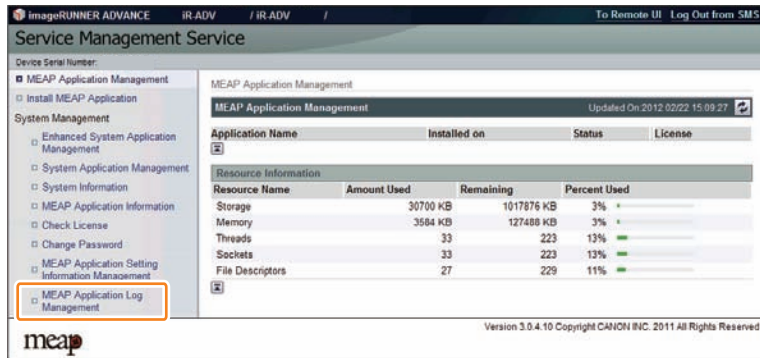
F-2-459

Note:
If a MEAP application that contains setting data which can be shared (not dedicated to the application) is installed, the application name [Shared Setting Information of Applications] is displayed.

MEAP Application Log Management

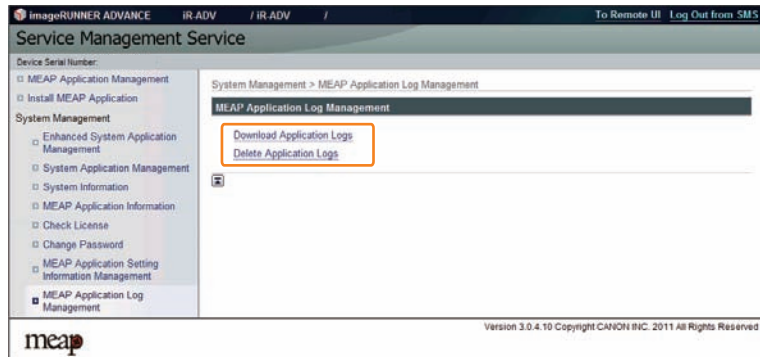
The log data (stored on the device) of the MEAP applications which support MEAP Application Log Service can be downloaded or deleted. The procedure is shown below.

- 1) Log in to SMS.
- 2) Select [System Management] > [MEAP Application Log Management] on System Management menu.



F-2-460

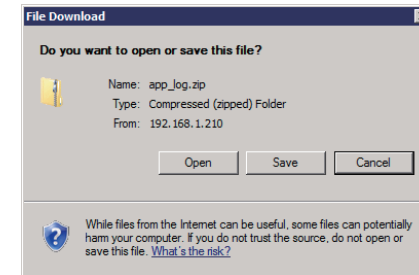
- 3) Select [Download Application Logs] or [Delete Application Logs].



F-2-461

- 4) To download the logs

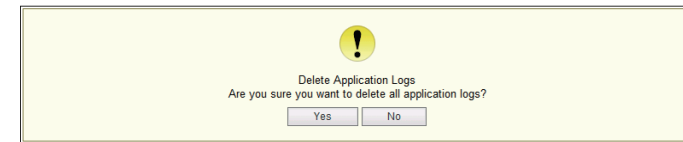
The file save dialog for the log file will appear. Specify the destination and save the file.



F-2-462

- 5) To delete the logs

The confirmation screen will appear to prompt you to delete the logs. Click the [Yes] button to delete the logs.



F-2-463

Maintenance

Backup of the MEAP Application Area and Recovery of the Backup Data Using SST

Outline

When replacing or formatting the HDD, the data in the MEAP application area needs to be temporarily saved to your PC.

This chapter describes information on backing up the data in the MEAP application area and recovering the backup data.

In the case of MEAP-installed devices, the application is license-managed, so the application needs to be reinstalled and reconfigured when replacing or formatting the HDD.

In that case, a license for reinstallation needs to be downloaded and the customer data and configuration information need to be recovered, and these procedures pose heavy burdens on the service technician.

The area used for the MEAP application can be easily saved/recovered by using the backup function of SST (Service Support Tool).

This greatly reduces the work burden on the service technician.

Please note that the application cannot be illegally copied because the backup data can be recovered only when the iR device has the same serial number.

WARNING:

You must not perform any other work (including checking operation) until the HDD has been backed up. This arrangement is to prevent a mismatch of MEAP counter readings and the HDD contents, and any fault in operation arising as the result of failure to observe this will not be covered by the guarantee of operation.

Note:

The application that is installed with a reusable license can be reinstalled by using the same license.

Backup Item Automatically Copied

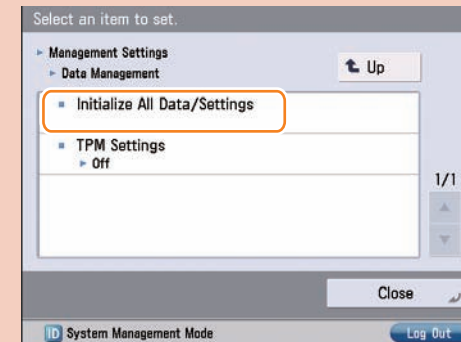
The following data are backed up using SST:

The following data are backed up (saved as Meapbackup.bin) using SST.

- MEAP applications.
- Setup data generated by MEAP applications (Note that image data stored in BOX will not be saved for MEAP applications using BOX function).
- User information data registered for local device authentication in SSO-H
- SMS password

CAUTION:

Do not execute [Initialize All Data/Settings] in user mode during the period from backup using SST to recovery of the data.



F-2-464

When [Initialize All Data/Settings] is executed, the key used to combine encrypted backup data (SMS password, etc.) is initialized, which makes it impossible to combine the data.

It means that SMS cannot be accessed even when the backup data has been recovered using SST.

If you inadvertently executed [Initialize All Data/Settings] and can no longer access SMS, the SMS login password needs to be initialized by following the procedure shown in "When SMS Cannot Be Accessed" in "Login to SMS" in this manual.

● Data backed up using SST in the case of iR-ADV devices

In the case of iR-ADV devices, menus are implemented as MEAP application. Therefore the following items can be also backed up (stored as Meapbackup.bin).

- Setting items of each menu in the main menu (Copy, Scan and Send, Fax, Scan and Store, Access Stored Files, Fax/I-Fax Inbox,).
 - Favorite settings
 - Default settings
 - Settings of option shortcuts
 - Previous settings
- Settings of quick menu
 - Button size information
 - Wallpaper settings
 - Quick menu button information
 - Restrict quick menu use

● Requirements for Backup Using the SST

The following conditions must be met for use of the function:

1) Device Firmware Version

Device Firmware Version for SST (Ver4.2x)

	Boot ROM	System	SST
iR-ADV C2030/C2020 series iR-ADV C2230/C2220 series	Boot ROM is not equipped.	Already supported since the 1st version.	The version supporting the corresponding devices.
imageRUNNER ADVANCE series other than above	Already supported since the 1st version.	Already supported since the 1st version.	The version supporting the corresponding devices.

T-2-86

2) SST Version

Version 4.2.x or later. An earlier version will not permit the use of the function. If needed, upgrade the SST.

3) Space for backup

To back up the HDD of the iR, the PC must have approx 1024MB of free space at maximum. Sizes of backup files depend on actual data capacities to be backed up.

■ Procedure for backing up the MEAP application area using SST

1) Switching Login Service / Backup of Login User Information

If SSO-H is used for the login service, switch to default authentication before backing up the user information. Although SST will back up local device user information, it is recommended to export the user information just in case. For local device user information backup, go to User Management page of SSO-H site and export the data. (The SSO-H login page opens with the URL "https://<device IP address>:8443/ssu/").

CAUTION:

- If a HDD of a system that uses SSO-H is formatted without changing the login service to the default authentication, the error message "The login service must be set again with SMS" appears and the system cannot start up when you attempt to restart the system after formatting.
- If this problem occurs, change the login service to SSO-H with SMS. If you cannot access to SMS since you do not have the IP address of the device, start the system with FIXIP mode -hold down the numeric keys 1 and 7 and turn the power switch on. The IP address "172.16.1.100" will be automatically assigned for the device. Then log in to SMS specifying the address.

2) Starting the device in Download Mode

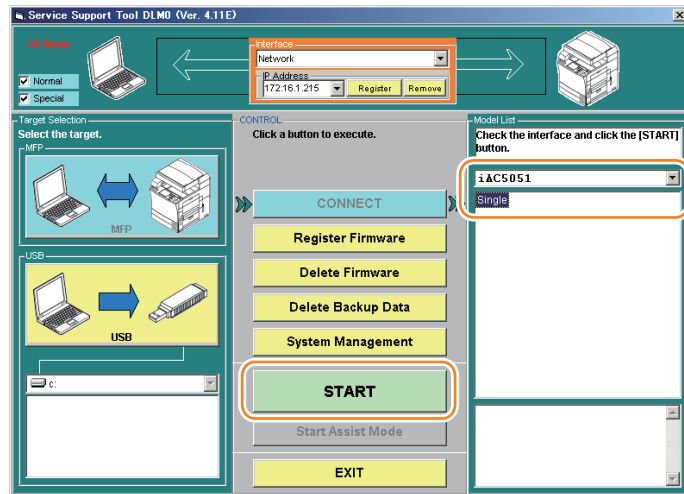
Press [2] and [8] buttons at the same time on the control panel and turn on the main power switch to start the device in Download Mode. Note that SST backup function is enabled only in Download Mode.

3) Connecting the main unit to the PC to start SST

Connect the main unit to the PC with SST installed using the crossing cable and the like to start SST on the PC.

4) Connecting the device using SST

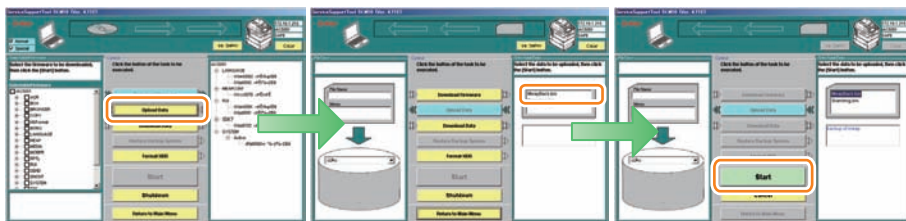
When starting SST, select the target device type as Single and click [Start] button.



F-2-465

5) Generating backup data to transfer it to the PC (uploading)

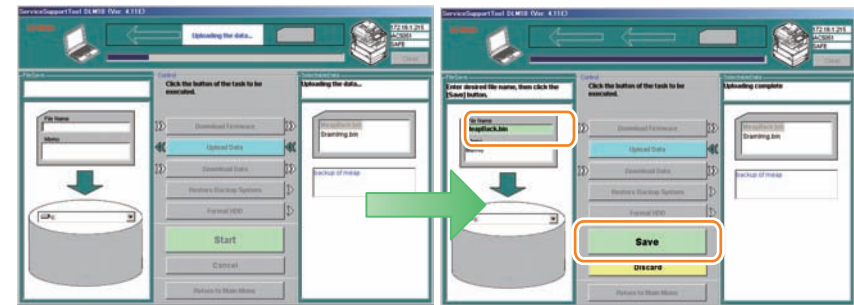
Click [Upload Data] button of SST and select "Meapback.bin" as the item to be backed up to click [Start] button.



F-2-466

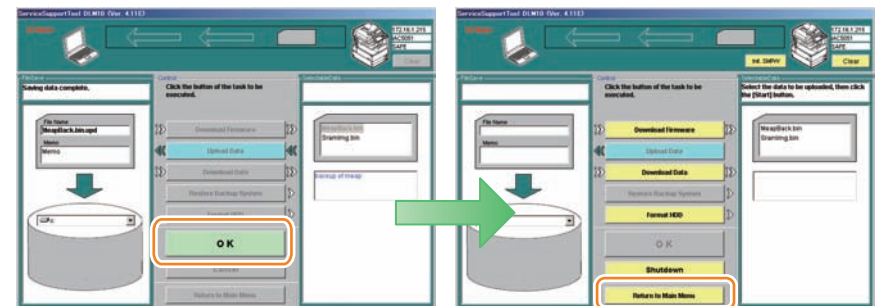
6) Saving backup data

Upon the backup data transferred to the PC, enter an appropriate file name and click [OK] to save the backup data on the PC.



F-2-467

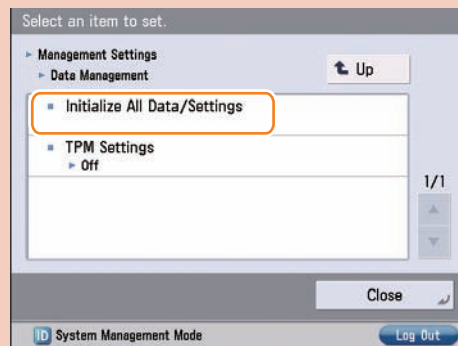
When the file is successfully saved, click [OK] button, and then click [Return to Menu] button.



F-2-468

CAUTION:

Do not execute [Initialize All Data/Settings] in user mode during the period from backup using SST to recovery of the data.



F-2-469

When [Initialize All Data/Settings] is executed, the key used to combine encrypted backup data (SMS password, etc.) is initialized, which makes it impossible to combine the data.

It means that SMS cannot be accessed even when the backup data has been recovered using SST.

If you inadvertently executed [Initialize All Data/Settings] and can no longer access SMS, the SMS login password needs to be initialized by following the procedure shown in "When SMS Cannot Be Accessed" in "Login to SMS" in this manual.

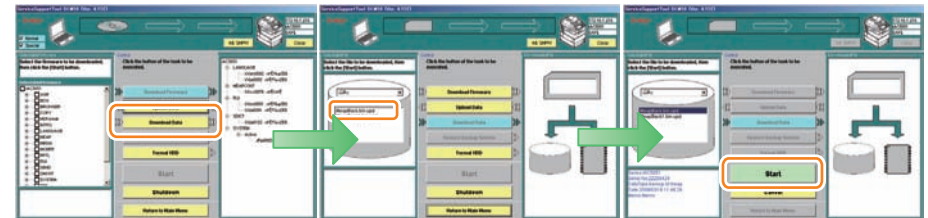
Procedures to Restore Backup Data

1) Connecting to the device

Connect the device using SST by following step 1 to step 4 of the Procedure for backing up the MEAP application area using SST.

2) Restoring backup file

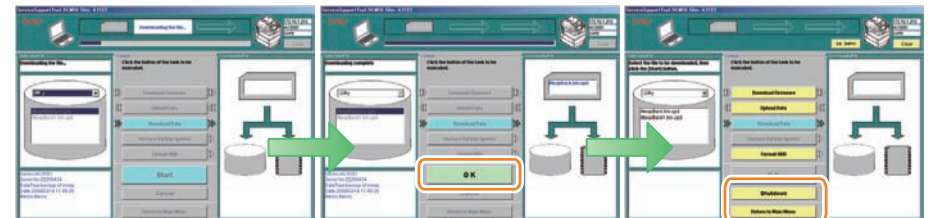
Click [Download Data] button and select the data backed up in the previous step (Meapback. bin) to click [Start Restoring Data]. Note that the data backed up in a different version cannot be restored.



F-2-470

3) Transferring Data

When the data is successfully transferred, click the [OK] button shown on the screen. To continue other jobs, click [Return to Menu] button.



F-2-471

4) Turn off and on the main power switch of the device to gain access in SMS to check that MEAP applications are surely restored.

5) Restore the backup data and setting saved. Note that the user information of the local device is included in the backup data, thus does not need to be restored.

■ Formatting and Replacing the HDD

● Outline

If the HDD is broken or does not function correctly due to failure of the system (excluding the MEAP application), it needs to be formatted or replaced.

When the HDD is formatted or replaced, the files of the MEAP application stored in it will be lost, so make a backup of the MEAP application area according to "Procedure for backing up the MEAP application area using SST" if possible. If a backup cannot be made, the MEAP application and the license files need to be reinstalled.

As for the MEAP counter information, it will not be lost because it is backed up just like the conventional counter.

If a backup cannot be made, a special license file (a license file for installation with the expiration date carried over from the current counter value) is required to reinstall the MEAP application. This special license file is treated as a service tool and cannot be obtained by a general user.

In order to obtain a special license file, a service technician needs to contact a person in charge of support of a sales company.

When contacting the person in charge of support, the service technician also needs to provide the serial number of the device and the name of the MEAP application installed.

In the support departments of regional headquarters of Canon, all license files of the applications that have been issued are filed according to device serial numbers, enabling you to obtain a series of license files through a single screen as long as you can identify the serial number of the device in question.

Note:

The application that is installed with a reusable license can be reinstalled by using the same license.

● Formatting the HDD

Procedure to format the hard disk

Follow the following procedure to format the HDD.

1) Connecting to the device

Connect the device using SST by following step 1 to step 4 of "Procedure for backing up the MEAP application area using SST".

2) Formatting the HDD

Select "Format HDD" from SST menu to format the HDD.

Note:

HDD can be formatted also by starting Download mode using the USB memory and executing formatting from the displayed menu.

● HDD replacement procedure

Outline

The procedure for replacing the HDD differs according to whether the HDD functions normally or not.

If the MEAP application area cannot be backed up

If the HDD does not function correctly due to failure or for other reason, the MEAP application area cannot be backed up. It is therefore necessary to reinstall the application after replacing the HDD. The procedure is shown below.

1)Preparation for replacement

Copy a set of license files for reinstalling the MEAP application (special licenses and reusable licenses) to a laptop for service operation.

Register a set of system files of a target product to SST. Or, prepare USB thumb drive of the System file transfer settlement.

2)Replacing the drive

Prepare the necessary service parts of the HDD, and replace the drive.

3)Formatting HDD

Format the HDD referring to Procedure to format the hard disk.

4)Reinstalling the MEAP application

When the device has started normally, obtain the jar files of the MEAP applications from the user, and install them using the license files for reinstallation.

Installation method is the same as normal installation.

5)Importing user information

As necessary, make login service selections and import user information.

Note:

When you replace the HDD without uninstalling MEAP applications, make sure to reinstall the previously installed applications. Unless reinstalling them, MEAP counter will not be released and the message "The number of applications that can be installed has exceeded the limit. Try to install this application after uninstalling other applications." is displayed so that the installation of new applications may not be accepted. If you want to install new applications in this case, once reinstall the applications in-stalled before formatting and uninstall unnecessary applications.

● If the MEAP application area can be backed up

If the MEAP application area can be backed up, it can be recovered after replacing the HDD, so it is not necessary to prepare the special licenses for reinstallation.

1)Preparation for replacement

Back up the MEAP application area of the device according to the procedure for backing up the MEAP application area using SST.

2)Replacing the drive

Prepare the necessary service parts of the HDD, and replace the drive.

3)Formatting HDD

Format the HDD referring to Procedure to format the hard disk.

4)Restoring the backup file

Restore the backup data referring to the Procedures to Restore Backup Data.

5)Importing user information

As necessary, make login service selections and import user information.

MEAP Safe Mode (level 2)

Outline

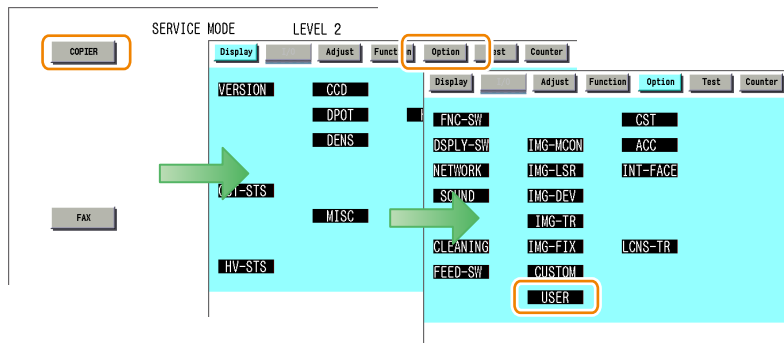
Use safe mode if you need to start up the system without worrying about extra applications. It will start up only those system software files (including SMS) that normally start up as default files while preventing MEAP applications and the like from starting up.

When you have made changes and restart the device, the control panel will indicate 'MPSF' in its lower right corner. The MEAP applications that may have been active before you shut down the equipment will not start up on their own. Make use of safe mode when restoring the system software as when MEAP applications or services cause a fault as the result of a conflict or wrong sequence of registration/use. You can access to SMS in this condition so that you can take necessary measures, for example, you can stop application that may cause the trouble.

If default authentication has been selected, the mode of authentication remains valid; otherwise, the message "The login service must be set again with SMS" appears. Change the login service as necessary.

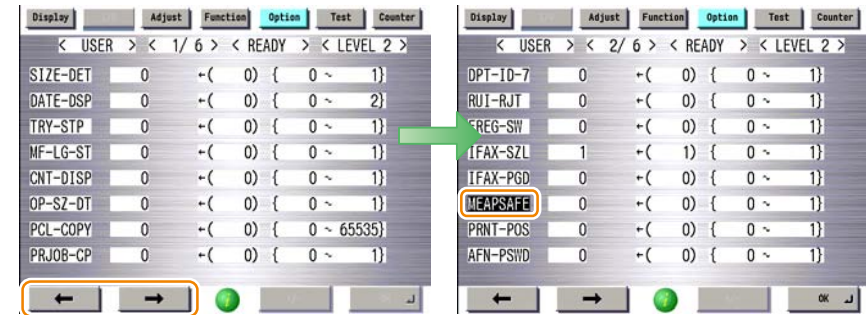
Starting in Safe Mode

- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] in level 2.
- 2) Press [COPIER] > [Option] > [USER] buttons.



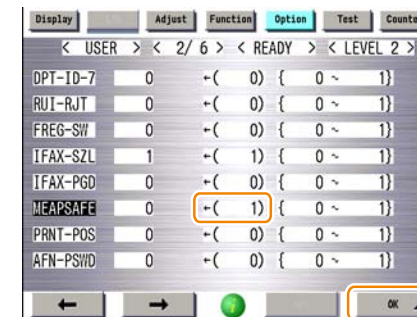
F-2-472

- 3) Press ← or → button for several times until [MEAPSAFE] button is shown. Click [MEAPSAFE] button.



F-2-473

- 4) Press the 1 key on the control panel keypad to change the setting to '1'; then, click [OK] button.



F-2-474

- 5) Check that the notation 'MPSF' has appeared in the upper left corner of the screen; then, restart the device.

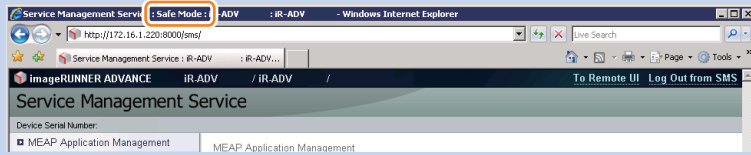


F-2-475

Note:

If accessed to SMS in MEAP SAFE mode, the device started mode is shown on the title bar of the browser.

An example of the title bar displayed at the time of startup in MEAP SAFE mode Service Management Service : <Device Name>:<Product Name>: Safe Mode

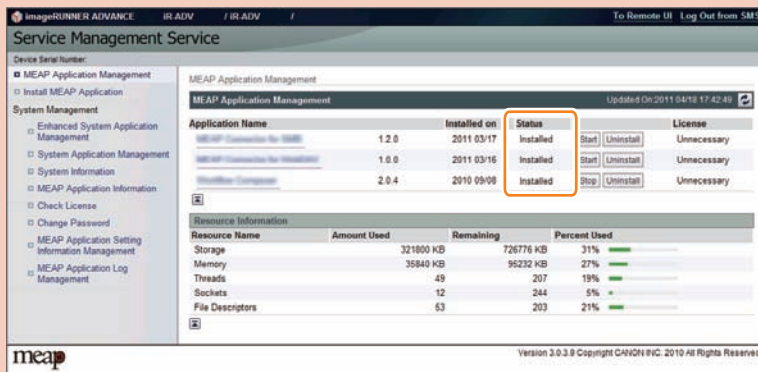


F-2-476

CAUTION:

If the device has been started in MEAP SAFE mode, all the MEAP applications stop and the status becomes "Installed".

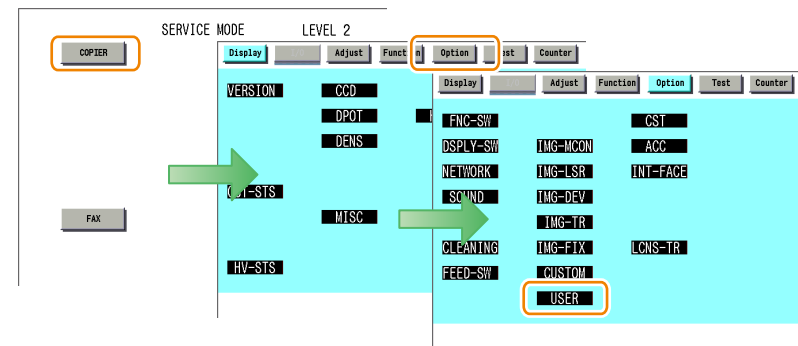
This status remains unchanged even if the MEAP SAFE mode is canceled and the device is started again in normal mode. It is therefore necessary to access SMS after normal startup and start the MEAP application.



F-2-477

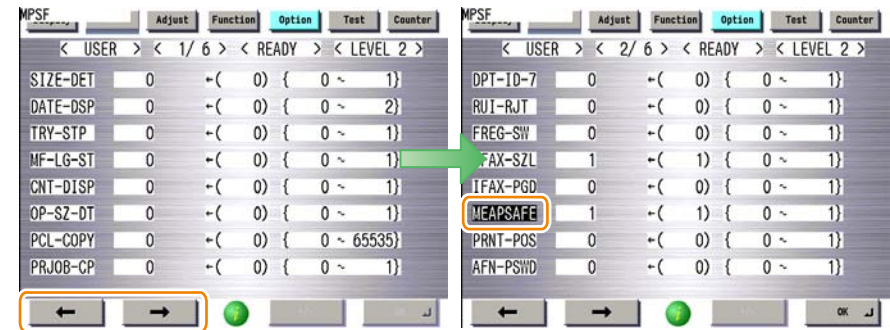
How to cancel MEAP SAFE mode

- 1) Startup [SERVICE MODE] in level 2.
- 2) Press [COPIER] > [Option] > [USER] buttons.



F-2-478

- 3) Press ← or → button for several times until [MEAPSAFE] button is shown. Click [MEAPSAFE] button.



F-2-479

4) Press the 0 key on the control panel keypad to change the setting to '0'; then, press [OK] button.



F-2-480

5) Start service mode again after rebooting the device, and check that the displayed setting value has changed to "0" and that [MPSF] is no longer displayed at the upper left of the screen.



F-2-481

Collection of MEAP Console Logs

Overview

When debugging a MEAP application, console logs need to be collected in some cases. The following shows how to collect MEAP console logs using commercially available terminal software and service mode.

What to Prepare

- PC connected with the same network as the device
- Commercially available terminal software

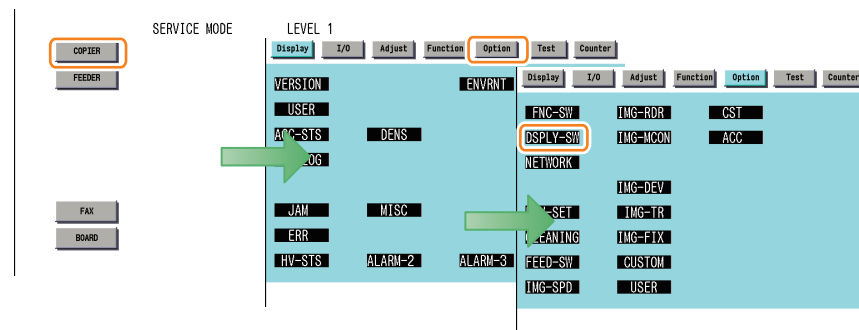
Note:

In the procedure shown in this manual, "Tera Term Pro" and "Hyper Terminal" are used as the terminal software.

Work Procedure

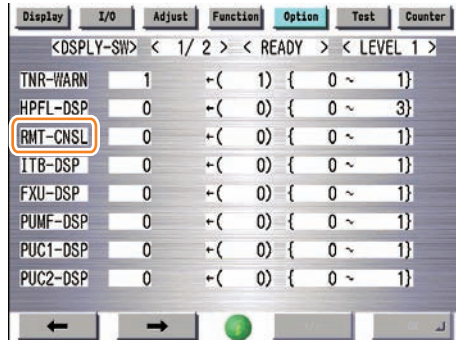
Device Setting Procedure

- 1) Start [SERVICE MODE] in Level 1.
- 2) Press [COPIER] > [Option] > [DSPLY-SW] buttons.



F-2-482

3) Press [RMT-CNSL] button.



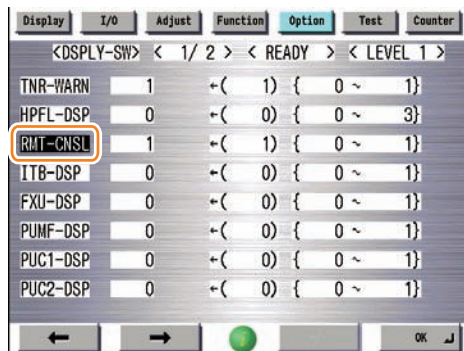
F-2-483

4) Press either 1 (activate remote console function) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.



F-2-484

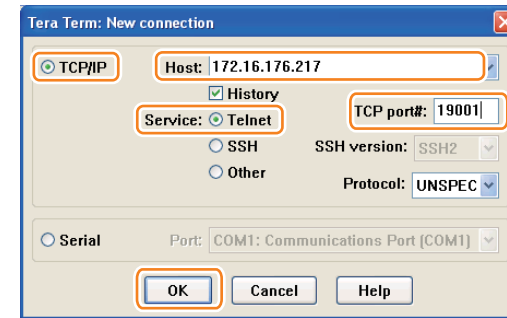
5) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and restart the device.



F-2-485

PC setting procedure (when Tera Term is used)

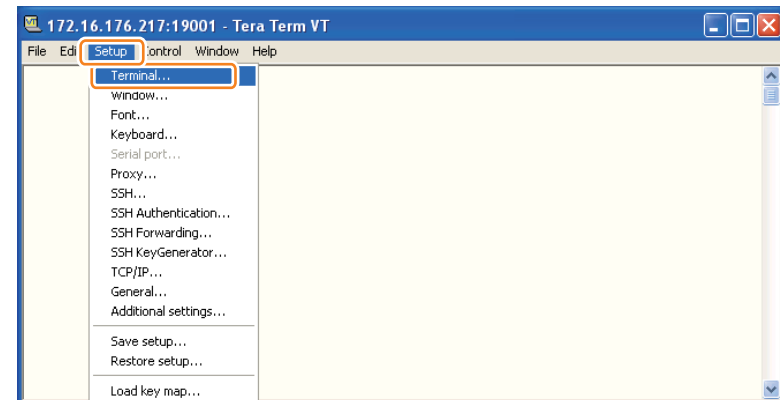
- 1) Install the terminal software on the PC.
- 2) Start the terminal software, make the following settings, and then click the "OK" button.



F-2-486

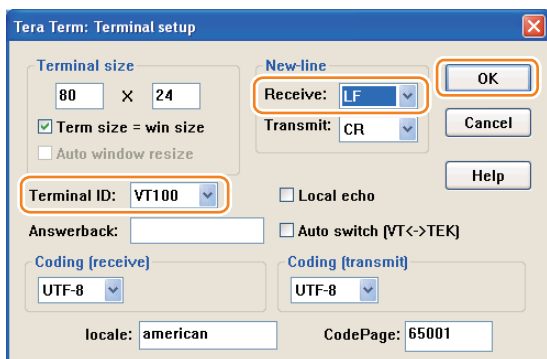
Connection : Select [TCP/IP] (Default)
 Host : Device Host Name or IP Address
 Service : Select "Telnet"
 TCP port# : Enter 19001

3) The connection window will open. Select [Terminal...] from the [Setup] menu.



F-2-487

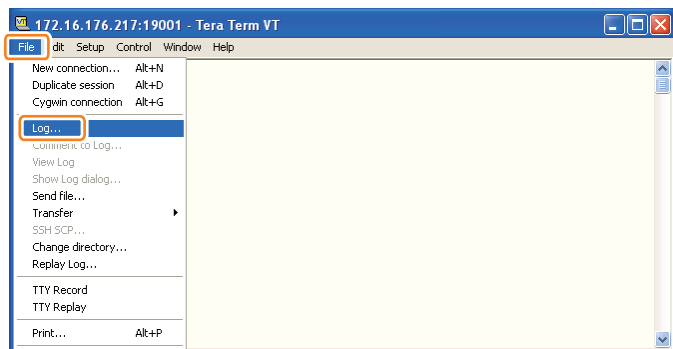
- 4) The terminal setting screen will appear. Make the following settings, and then click the "OK" button.



F-2-488

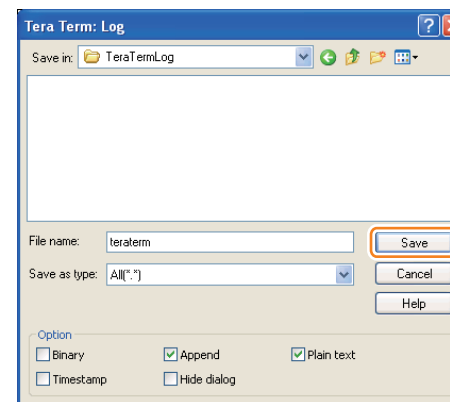
Terminal ID : VT100
New-line Receive : LF

- 5) Select [Log...] from the [File] menu.



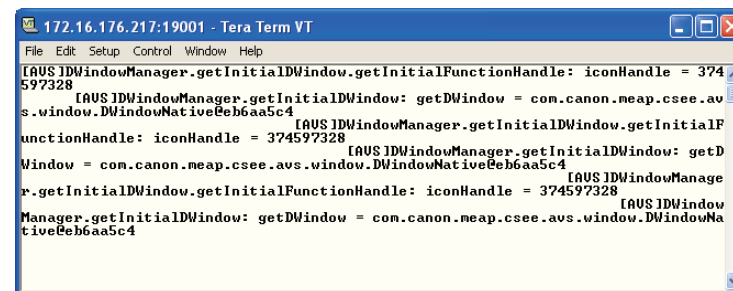
F-2-489

- 6) The dialog for specifying the save destination of the log file will appear. Set the save destination path and the file name, and then click the [Save] button.



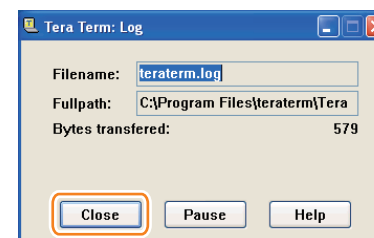
F-2-490

- 7) Perform the operation whose log you want to collect.



F-2-491

- 8) Click the [Close] button in the log dialog.



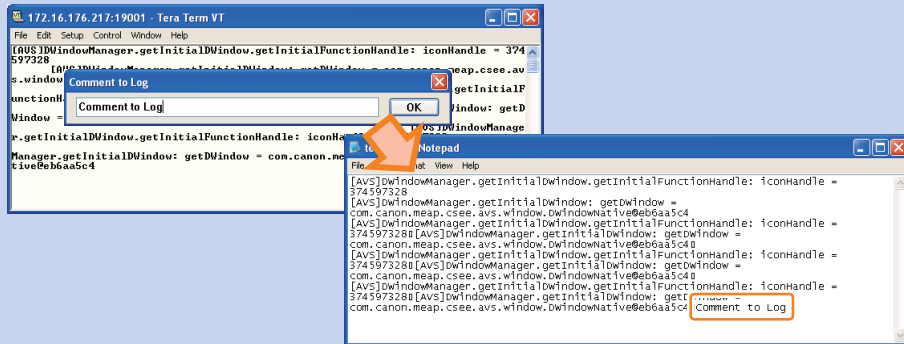
F-2-492

Note:
To suspend log collection, click the [Pause] button.

Note:
While collecting logs, the following operations are available from the [File] menu.

Comment to Log...

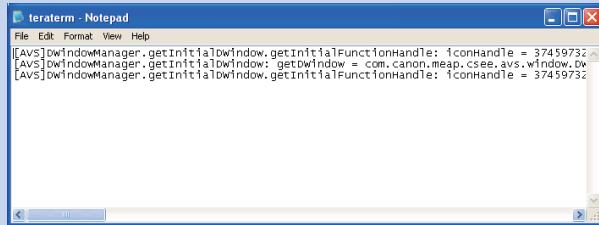
You can add a comment to the log being collected. The added comment is reflected in the log file.



F-2-493

Show Log dialog...

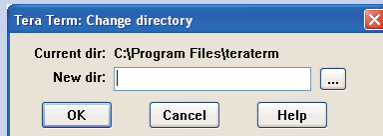
The logs that have been collected are pasted on Notepad and displayed.



F-2-494

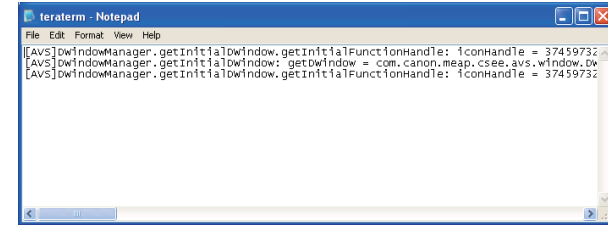
Change directory...

The preliminarily set save destination of the log file can be changed.



F-2-495

9) Open the file saved in the save destination, and check that the logs are stored correctly.



F-2-496

Note:

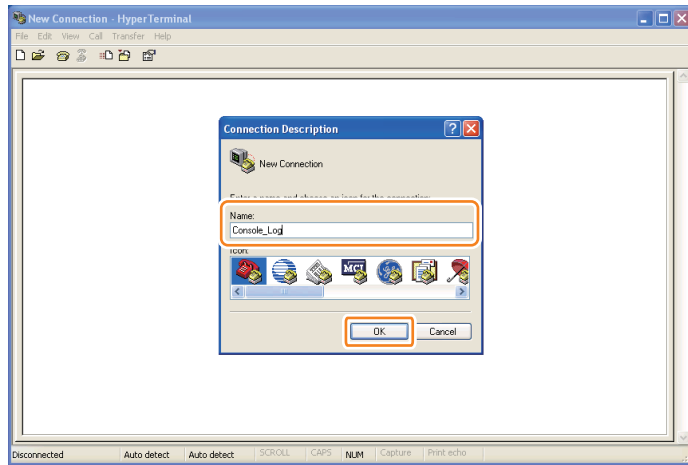
Depending on the MEAP application, the log output setting needs to be made in order to collect logs.

CAUTION:

After collecting logs, the remote console function of the device needs to be disabled (select [SERVICE MODE] LEVEL1 > [COPIER] > [Option] > [DSPLY-SW] > [RMT-CNSL] > 0, and restart the device).

PC setting procedure (when Hyper Terminal is used)

- 1) Start Hyper Terminal, set the connection name in the [Connect Description] dialog that appears on the screen, and then click the OK button.



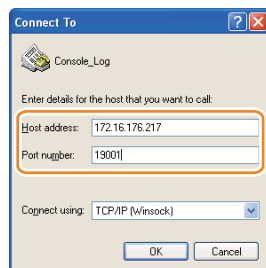
F-2-497

- 2) Set [TCP/IP(Winsock)] for [Connect using].



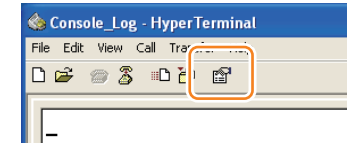
F-2-498

- 3) Enter the IP address of the target device in [Host address], and enter "19001" (fixed) in [Port number].



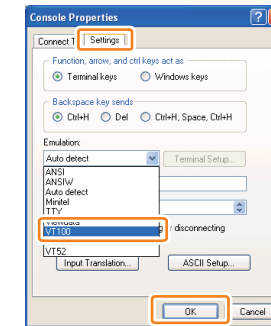
F-2-499

- 4) Click the "Properties" icon on the Hyper Terminal screen.



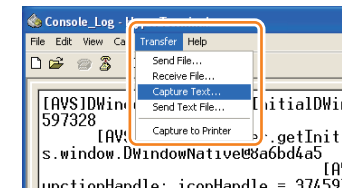
F-2-500

- 5) The [Console Properties] dialog will appear. Select the [Settings] tab, select [VT100] for [Emulation], and then click the [OK] button.



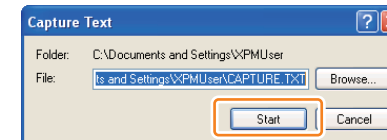
F-2-501

- 6) Return to the Hyper Terminal window, and select [Transfer] > [Capture Text...] from the menu.



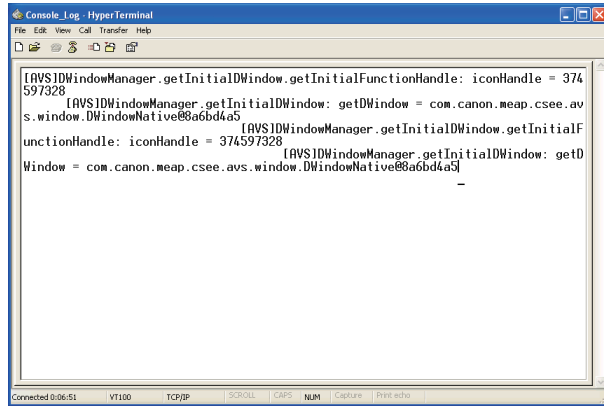
F-2-502

- 7) The dialog for specifying the save destination of the log file will appear. Specify the save destination.



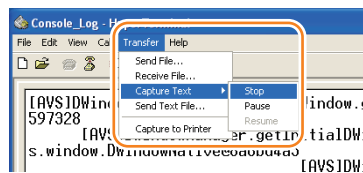
F-2-503

8) Perform the operation whose log you want to collect.



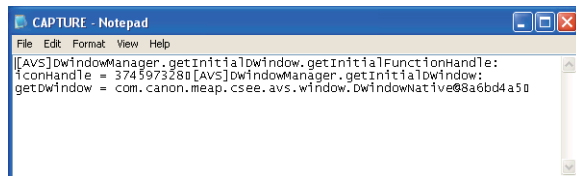
F-2-504

9) Select [Transfer] > [Capture Text...] > [Stop] from the menu.



F-2-505

10) Open the file saved in the save destination, and check that the logs are stored correctly.



F-2-506

Note:

Depending on the MEAP application, the log output setting needs to be made in order to collect logs.

CAUTION:

After collecting logs, the remote console function of the device needs to be disabled (select [SERVICE MODE] LEVEL1 > [COPIER] > [Option] > [DSPLY-SW] > [RMT-CNSL] > 0, and restart the device).

Using USB Devices

USB Driver

Two types of USB drivers

While the USB driver that can be used in iR series is only the USB driver designed exclusively for MEAP application (hereinafter referred to as "MEAP driver"), not only MEAP driver but also USB system driver (hereinafter referred to as "system driver") can be used in iR-ADV series.

System driver and MEAP driver cannot be used together. When either of them is used, the other driver cannot be used.

USB driver setting (iR-ADV series):

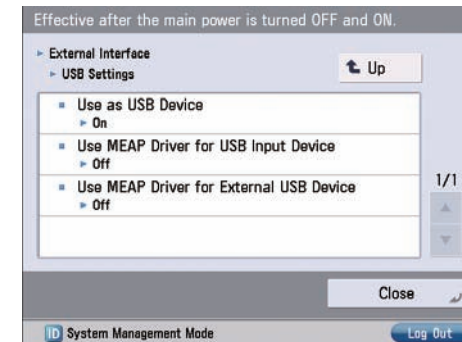
System driver is active by default in iR-ADV series.

The driver can be changed in Settings/Registration (user mode).

Usually, It is not necessary to change the setting because it is specified in the MEAP application side.

Only in the case of a special MEAP application, it is necessary to change the USB driver setting.

For details, refer to specifications of MEAP application side.



F-2-507

Operating mode settings [Use MEAP driver as USB input device]	Conventional USB keyboard enabled MEAP application	Software keyboard application (System Driver/ MEAP Driver)	System driver supported MEAP application
ON * MEAP driver (conventional compatibility mode)	Can use USB keyboard. Can work only on the conventional applications that support the MEAP application driver.	Cannot use USB keyboards. (Device cannot be detected.)	Cannot use USB keyboards.

Operating mode settings [Use MEAP driver as USB input device]	Conventional USB keyboard enabled MEAP application	Software keyboard application (System Driver/ MEAP Driver)	System driver supported MEAP application
OFF (*default) * Native driver	Cannot use USB keyboards. (Device cannot be detected.)	Can use USB keyboards.	Can use USB keyboards. Via software keyboards only.

T-2-87

Note:
When any settings changes are made, the device must be restarted.

Setting the USB driver for each USB device (MEAP driver preference registration)

If it is set to use the system driver, the conventional applications that support the MEAP application driver cannot use the USB input device.

Therefore, for the USB drivers used by USB devices/MEAP applications, there is setting function (MEAP driver preference registration) to give priority to the MEAP driver.

If you register the ID of the USB device by using this function, the USB device can use the MEAP driver despite the Additional Function settings.

Using this function requires the conditions below:

- Supported MEAP SpecVer: 26
- Describe the idVendeor(VID) and idProduct(PID) of USB device in the manifest or activate/deactivate the VID and PID by calling API from MEAP applications.

The driver setting that is used in a manifest file is reflected in the following timing.

When registering from a manifest file.

- The registration will be enabled when an application is activated and device is restarted.
- The registration will be disabled when an application is stopped and device is restarted.

Note:
You can display/check the used driver setting at "USB device report print" described below regardless of whether it is registered from a manifest file or is registered from API.

Availability for MEAP application of the USB device A (either HID keyboard or Mass Storage) plugged to iR device

Registration status of USB device A	When the HID keyboard is installed > USB Settings: [Use MEAP Driver for USB Input Device] When the Mass Storage is installed > USB Settings: [Use MEAP Driver for External USB Device]	Native application	MEAP application		
			System driver supported application	System driver not supported/ conventional application	Application with VID/ PID declared in Manifest for x
Not registered	OFF	YES	YES	NO	
	ON	NO	NO	YES	
Registered	OFF	NO	NO	YES	YES
	ON	NO	NO	YES	YES

T-2-88

YES: USB device available NO: USB device not available

Availability for MEAP applications of USB devices B and C (either HID keyboard or Mass Storage) plugged to iR device

Registration status of USB device B	Setting to use MEAP driver (Additional Functions mode)	USB device	Native application	MEAP application		
				System driver supported application	System driver not supported / conventional application	Application with VID/PID declared in Manifest for B
Registered	Not used (Native driver to be used)	B	YES	YES	NO	
		C	YES	YES	NO	
	To be used	B	NO	NO	YES	
		C	NO	NO	YES	
Not registered	Not used (Native driver to be used)	B	NO	NO	YES	YES
		C	YES	YES	NO	NO
	To be used	B	NO	NO	YES	YES
		C	NO	NO	YES	YES

T-2-89

YES: USB device available NO: USB device not available

Specifications for the use of USB keyboards

Characters that could be entered on the software keyboard displayed on the conventional control panel can be entered using a USB connected keyboard.

- When the software keyboard window is displayed, characters can be entered from the USB keyboard (in-line entry not possible).
- When the software keyboard window is not displayed, entered characters will not be remembered.
- The characters, which can be entered from a USB keyboard, is only a character, which can be entered from the software keyboard.
- Even if characters are entered from the USB keyboard, the software keyboard window will not change (the corresponding key does not invert or change color).
- Input from the USB keyboard can be accepted at the same time as input from the software keyboard or numeric keys.
- Since the device supports Plug and Play, the USB keyboard can be disconnected/connected freely. However, do not disconnect and connect during in deep sleep (when in sleep with setting "low" at "the power consumption in sleep"). It is out of an operation guarantee to disconnect and connect the USB keyboard in deep sleep.
- When USB device is attached to iR device, iR devices do not shift to deep sleep mode.
- Keyboard layout changes according to the keyboard layout settings in the Settings/Registration screen. In addition, function keys and ten keys which are not displayed in the software keyboard cannot be used. (Keyboard which the operation check was conducted is 84-key Keyboard, but this does not mean that the operation of all 84-key Keyboards is guaranteed.)

Note:

The factory shipment default setting is to enable the use of native (main unit functionality) USB keyboards. Therefore, in order to use MEAP application keyboards, [Use MEAP driver for USB input device] under [System management settings (initial settings/ registration)] needs to be set to ON (factory shipment setting is OFF). Operations change as described below in accordance with ON/ OFF settings.

ON: when using MEAP application keyboard

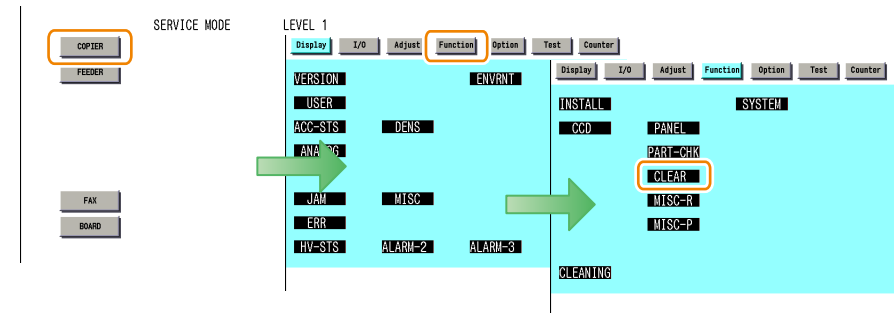
OFF: when using native (main unit functionality) keyboard (factory shipment default)

Initialization of MEAP driver priority registration

When any trouble occurs regarding USB driver settings and it is necessary to reset the setting information, you can reset the MEAP driver preference registration by using service mode.

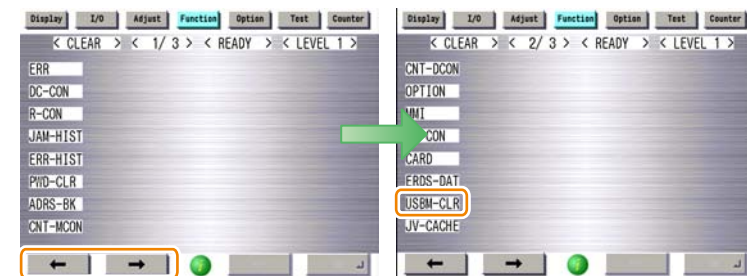
Steps to initialize preference use registration

- 1) Start [SERVICE MODE] in Level 1.
- 2) Press [COPIER] > [Function] > [CLEAR] > buttons.



F-2-508

- 3) Press ← or → button for several times until [USBM-CLR] is shown on the screen. Press [USBM-CLR] button.



F-2-509

- 4) Press [OK] button to restart this device.



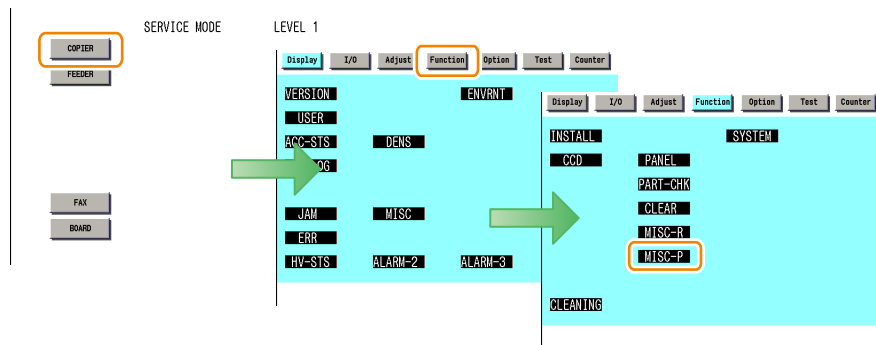
F-2-510

USB Device report print

To check the vendor IDs (idVendor) and the product IDs (idProduct) registered in this device by means of declaration in Manifest file of MEAP applications, output the USB Device report print.

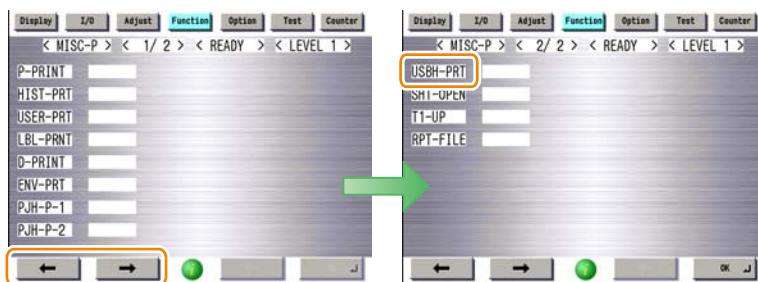
Steps to output the USB Device report print

- 1) Start [SERVICE MODE] in Level 1.
- 2) Press [COPIER] > [Function] > [MISC-P] > buttons.



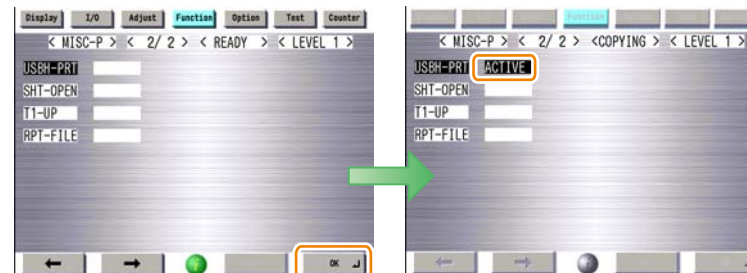
F-2-511

- 3) Press ← or → button for several times until [USBH-PRT] is shown. Press [USBH-PRT] button.



F-2-512

- 4) When pressing [OK] button, [ACTIVE] blinks on the status field.



F-2-513

- 5) When [OK] is shown on the status field, the status print is output. Check the contents of the print.



F-2-514

Example of output result

```

*****
*** USB Device report print ***
*****

USB device information

T: Bus=01 Lev=02 Prnt=03 Port=01 Cnt=01 Dev#= 5 Spd=480 MxCh= 0
D: Ver=2.00 Cls=00(>ifc) Sub=00 Prot=00 MxPS=64 #Cfgs= 1
P: Vendor=066f ProdID=4210 Rev=10.02
S: Manufacturer=SigmaTel, Inc.
S: Product=STlr42xx
S: SerialNumber=0002F0F7261287A5
C:* #Ifs= 1 Cfg#= 1 Atr=80 MxPwr=100mA
I: If#= 0 Alt= 0 #EPs= 2 Cls=fe(app.) Sub=02 Prot=00 Driver=irda-usb
E: Ad=81(I) Atr=02(Bulk) MxPS=512 Ivl=0ms
E: Ad=01(O) Atr=02(Bulk) MxPS=512 Ivl=0ms

```

F-2-515

USB device information Content

Display the information of the USB device, which the device recognized.

If not displayed, there may be some fault occurred.

Some of standard optional devices are not displayed on a report.

The details of each item are as follows.

T : Topology

Internal hierarchical structure, which a USB device is connected, is shown. The number of a connected bus, the hierarchical structure and connection speed can be indicated.

D : Device

Information of USB devices is shown.

P : Product

Product information of USB devices is shown. Vendor ID and Product ID can be recognized here.

S : String

The character string embedded in a USB device is shown. A manufacture name and a product name can be recognized here.

C : Configure

The configuration information of a USB device is shown. * mark is to know whether it is active.

I : Interface

The interface information of a USB device is shown. Interface class and the driver to handle can be recognized.

The value and the content of Driver are as follows.

Labeling	Content
usbhid	It is displayed when the USB system driver is assigned to the input device connected.
usb-storage	It is displayed when storage devices (USB memory storage etc.) are connected.
irda-usb IrDA	It is displayed when the dongle is connected.
hub	It is displayed when HUB is connected.
gpubs	It is displayed when the USB driver only for MEAP application is assigned to the input device connected.
gpubsex	It is displayed when a USB device, which specific vendor ID/ Product ID are preferentially registered using a manifest and MEAP API, is connected and the USB driver only for MEAP application is assigned.

T-2-90

E:Endpoint

The Endpoint information of a USB device is shown.

Right or wrong of report output

Connecting device		User installation	Report printing
HID		Available	Yes
Storage		Available	Yes
FAX		Not available	No
USB Device Port	IrDA	Not available	Yes
	Multimedia Card Reader	Not available	Yes
	IC Card Reader	Not available	Yes
Image Data Analyzer Board-A1		Not available	No
Hub	Internal Hub*	Not available	No
	External Hub	Available	Yes

* USB Device Port-B1 Hub for device ports installed at the introduction

T-2-91

The content of MEAP preferred device information

Display the information of the application or a USB device, which preferentially registered with MEAP application.

By seeing this information, it can check which Application ID of the MEAP application is in the status using a specific USB device.

AppID : Application ID

VID : Vendor ID

PID : Product ID

Note:

By starting, stopping or uninstalling a MEAP application, the driver settings of the USB device may be changed. If the device needs to be restarted following this setting change, a message prompting the user to restart the device is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Service Management Service' interface. The main content area displays 'MEAP Application Management' with a table of applications:

Application Name	Installed on	Status	Start	Uninstall	License
Application A	2.0.0 2010 09/29	Stopped	Start	Uninstall	Unnecessary
Application B	2.0.0 2010 09/29	Stopped	Start	Uninstall	Unnecessary
Application C	2.0.0 2010 09/29	Stopped	Start	Uninstall	Unnecessary

Below the table is a 'Resource Information' section with a table:

Resource Name	Amount Used	Remaining	Percent Used
Storage	29512 KB	1019064 KB	3%
Memory	3584 KB	127488 KB	3%
Threads	33	223	13%
Sockets	33	223	13%
File Descriptors	27	229	11%

F-2-516

Integrated Authentication Function

Sharing the Authentication Information

Separately managing the authentication information at login and the authentication information for MEAP applications creates inconveniences such as that the authentication process is executed many times.

In order to solve this problem, the device has an integrated authentication function. This function allows authentication information to be shared between MEAP applications in a MEAP environment.

The supported version of MEAP Specifications is Ver.59, which needs to be supported by both the device and the MEAP application in order to use this function.

There are 2 types of authentication information that can be shared: Volatile Credential whose registered information is discarded at the time of logout or shutdown of the device and Persistent Credential whose registered information is not discarded at the time of logout.

Volatile Credential

Volatile Credential is used in cases where the authentication information is shared between applications which use the same security domain for authentication.

The credential is registered mainly by the login application, therefore the applications which access the security domain that was used for authentication by the login application can use the credential.

Persistent Credential

Persistent Credential is used to help entry of authentication information when accessing a different security domain for authentication.

The credential is registered mainly by general MEAP applications, and the authentication information can be reused when the same user logs in for the second time or later.

Comparison of Functions

	Volatile Credential	Persistent Credential
Registered information	Character strings and arbitrary Java objects	Character strings only User ID/Password/Domain/Arbitrary character strings
Lifetime	Registration	At login (the login application), and at any timing of registration by an application
	Deletion	Can be used until deletion by the application or management tool.
Encryption of credential data	Not supported	Data retained on the HDD is encrypted.
Store (Save) to	Memory in the device	HDD in the device

T-2-92

Disabling the Integrated Authentication Function

If you do not want Volatile Credential to be used from a security standpoint, the function can be disabled.

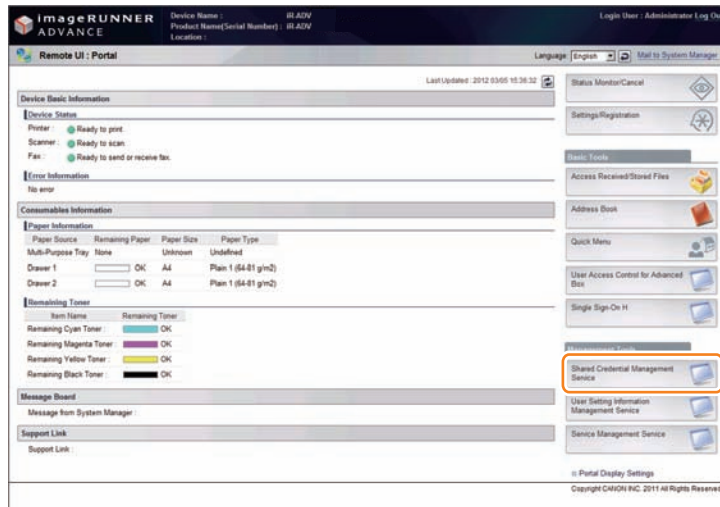
The function can be disabled from remote UI or service mode.

Persistent Credential cannot be disabled.

On the setting screen of remote UI, the function can be disabled on a protocol-by-protocol basis.

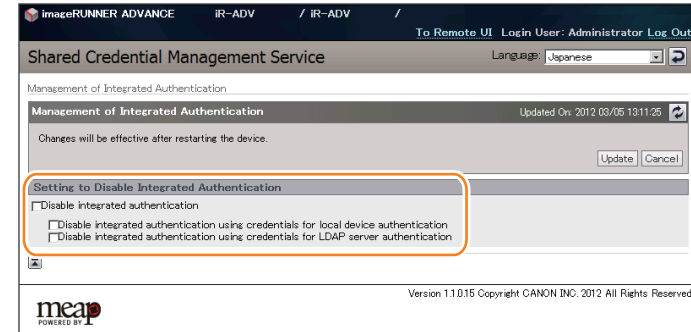
Remote UI

You can access the setting screen on remote UI for disabling integrated authentication as shown below.



F-2-517

Select the item you want to disable, and click the [Update] button.



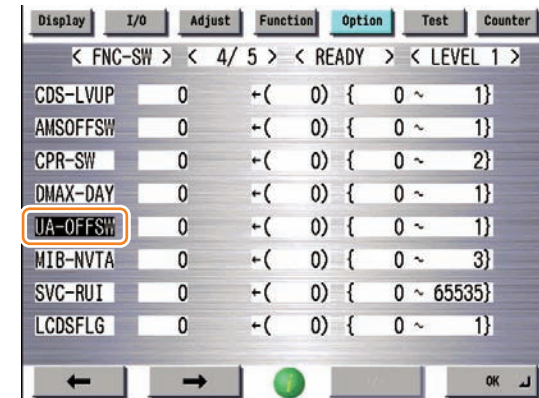
F-2-518

- [Disable integrated authentication]: The integrated authentication function is disabled regardless of the authentication method.
- [Disable integrated authentication using credentials for local device authentication]: The integrated authentication function is disabled only at the time of local device authentication.
- [Disable integrated authentication using credentials for LDAP server authentication]: The integrated authentication function is disabled only at the time of LDAP server authentication.

Service mode

The location of the service mode setting for disabling integrated authentication:

Setting value: 0 = Enabled, 1 = Disabled



F-2-519

Points to Note When Enabling the [Quick Startup Settings for Main Power] Setting

If some of the MEAP applications are running on the device, the following problems will occur.

The [Quick Startup Settings for Main Power] setting cannot be enabled.

If a MEAP application that restricts the device from shifting to deep sleep mode is running, even when the setting of [Quick Startup Settings for Main Power] is enabled (On), the device starts normally instead of quick startup.

In that case, it does not affect the behavior of the MEAP application.

Changes made in the settings of a MEAP application are not reflected.

If the startup setting [Quick Startup Settings for Main Power] is enabled (On), even when the Main Power Supply Switch of the machine is turned OFF, a shutdown process is not executed internally.

Therefore, in the case of a MEAP application where changes in settings are enabled when the device is restarted, changes in settings are not reflected just by changing the settings. Follow either of the restart procedures shown below to enable the changes made in the settings.

- Execute restart from remote UI.
- Turn OFF the Main Switch, and then turn it ON within 20 seconds.

After recovery from quick startup, MEAP applications do not work properly.

MEAP applications that are scheduled to execute processes at specified times may not work properly after recovery from quick restart.

Unexpected problems such as that the application executes a task at an unexpected timing may occur.

Problems may occur in the following two cases.

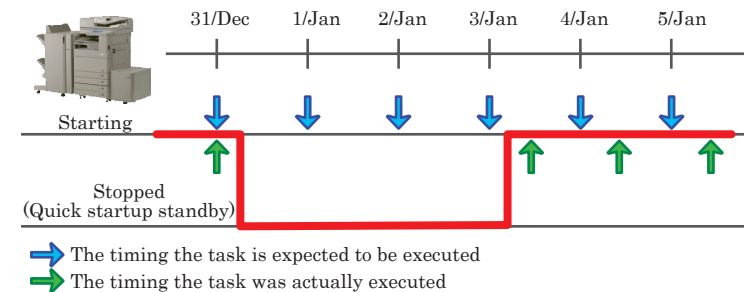
In the case of "Schedule: Execute the task every 24 hours"

A schedule is set to start the specified task at the specified time and repeat "fixed-delay execution".

If execution is delayed for some reason, the delay time is ignored.

Problem: If 24 hours have passed since the last execution of the task, the task is executed only once.

=> The task may be executed at a timing other than the time the user expects it to be executed.



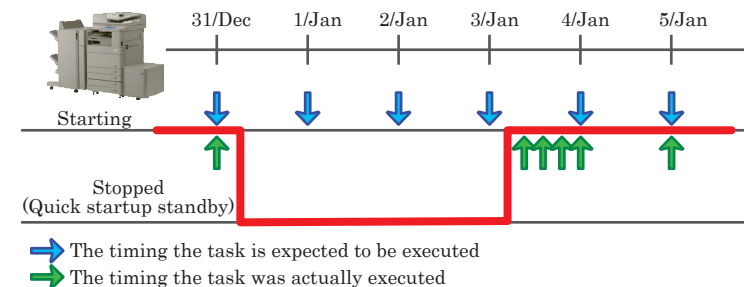
F-2-520

In the case of "Schedule: Execute the task at 00:00 every day"

A schedule is set to start the specified task at the specified time and repeat "fixed-rate execution".

If execution was delayed for some reason, two or more tasks are continuously executed to "make up for the delay".

Problem: The tasks of Jan. 1, Jan. 2, and Jan. 3 are executed after quick startup.

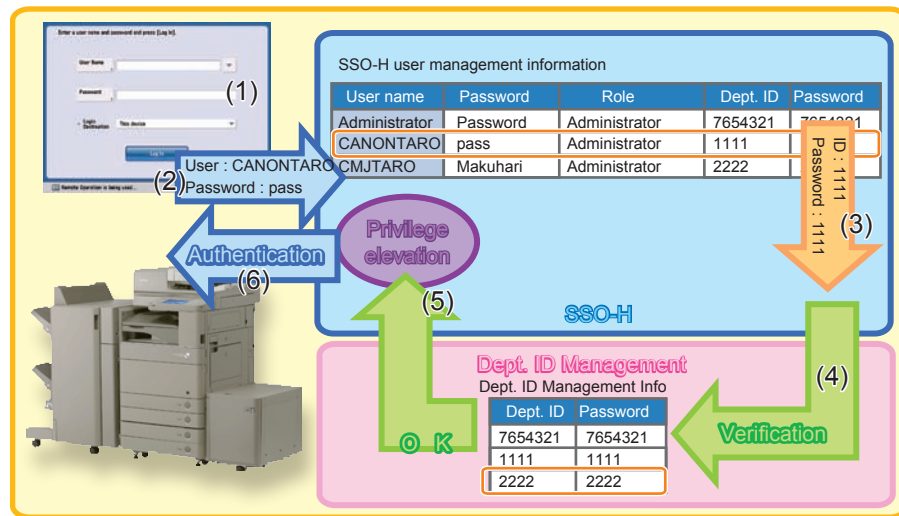


F-2-521

Remedy to Be Performed When the Device Has Become Unable to Be Logged in

Overview

Department ID Management and SSO-H (Local Device Authentication) manage user information separately. Therefore, in order to allow coexistence of Department ID Management and SSO-H, it is necessary that the information of SSO-H and the information of Department ID Management are the same.



F-2-522

- 1) The user enters the ID and password of SSO-H to a device where both SSO-H and Department ID Management are enabled.
- 2) SSO-H checks the entered ID and password with the SSO-H user information table.
- 3) SSO-H sends the department ID and password which correspond to the entered ID and password to the department ID management function.
- 4) The department ID management function checks the department ID and password sent from SSO-H with the user information table.
- 5) The user is elevated to the corresponding privilege.
- 6) The user is authenticated.

If the department ID and password registered in the user information of SSO-H do not coincide with the department ID and password registered in the Department ID Management, the authentication ends in failure and the user can no longer log in to the device.

The user information of SSO-H does not coincide with the user information of Department ID Management in the following cases:

- The user information of SSO-H was different from that of Department ID Management when Department ID Management was enabled.
 - Department ID Management was enabled before changing the department ID and password registered in SSO-H to match with the information of Department ID Management.

User name	Password	Role	Dept. ID	Password
Administrator	Password	Administrator	7654321	7654321
CANONTARO	pass	Administrator	1234	1234
CMJTARO	Makuhari	Administrator	5678	5678

Mismatch

Dept. ID	Password
1111	1111
2222	2222
3333	3333

F-2-523

- Only one of information was updated, resulting in mismatch.
 - Only the department ID and password registered in SSO-H or those in Department ID Management were changed.

User name	Password	Role	Dept. ID	Password
Administrator	Password	Administrator	7654321	7654321
CANONTARO	pass	Administrator	1234	1234
CMJTARO	Makuhari	Administrator	5678	5678

Match

Dept. ID	Password
7654321	7654321
1234	1234
5678	5678

Only the SSO-H user information was updated

User name	Password	Role	Dept. ID	Password
Administrator	Password	Administrator	1234567	1234567
CANONTARO	pass	Administrator	9999	9999
CMJTARO	Makuhari	Administrator	8888	8888

Mismatch

Dept. ID	Password
7654321	7654321
1234	1234
5678	5678

F-2-524

- Only the information of Department ID Management was updated, resulting in mismatch.
 - Only the Department ID Management information was changed in "Import All Function", resulting in mismatch. (The SSO-H user information cannot be changed in Import All Function.)

User name	Password	Role	Dept. ID	Password
Administrator	Password	Administrator	1234567	1234567
CANONTARO	pass	Administrator	9999	9999
CMJTARO	Makuhari	Administrator	8888	8888

Mismatch

Dept. ID	Password
1111	1111
2222	2222
3333	3333

Import All Function (Only the Department ID Management information was updated.)

F-2-525

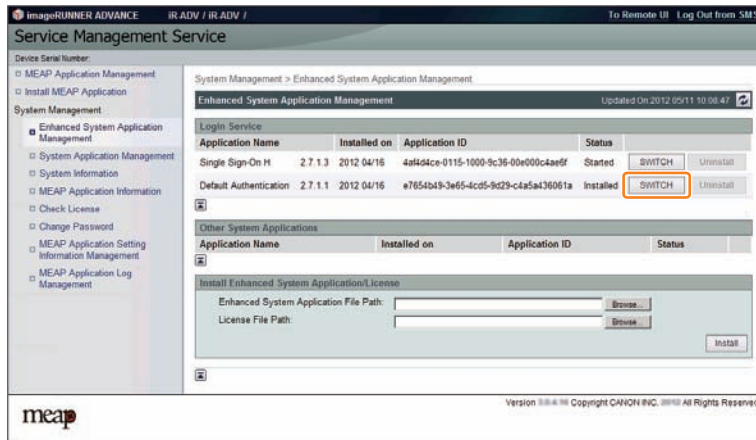
Remedy

If the device became unable to be logged in due to mismatch of the department ID/password, perform the following remedy.

Procedure

1) Change the authentication method to DA (Default Authentication).

Access SMS, and select [Default Authentication] in [Enhanced System Application Management] > [Login Service]. (How to log in to SMS can be found in "Login to SMS".)



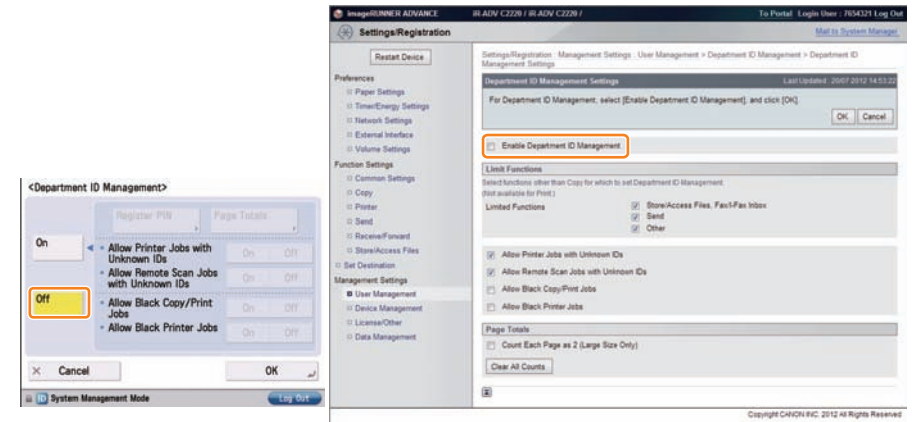
F-2-526

2) Restart the device.

Restart the device in order to reflect the changes in login service.

3) Disable Depart ID Management.

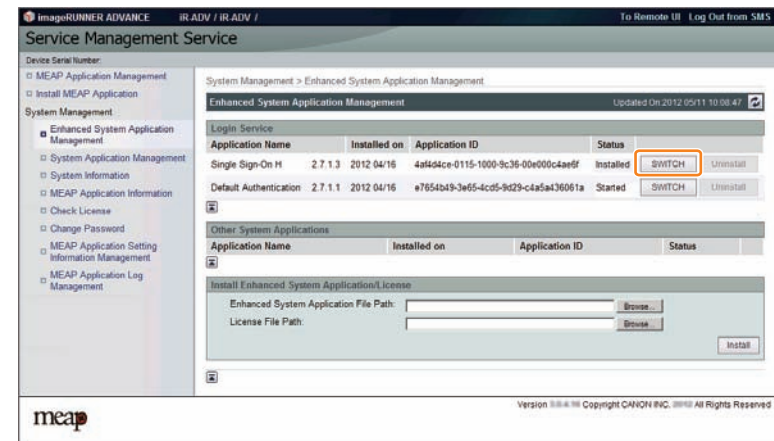
In user mode ([Settings/Registration]), select [Management Settings] > [User Management] > [Department ID Management] > [OFF]. In the case of remote UI, access [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [User Management] > [Department ID Management] > [Department ID Management Settings], and deselect [Enable Department ID Management].



F-2-527

4) Change the authentication method back to SSO-H authentication.

Access SMS, and select [Single Sign-On H] in [Enhanced System Application Management] > [Login Service]. (How to log in to SMS can be found in "Login to SMS".)



F-2-528

5) Restart the device.

Restart the device in order to reflect the changes in login service.

6) Change the user registration information of SSO-H.

Access the URL shown below, and change the content to the information registered in Department ID Management.

Or, import the setting file whose content you want to use.

SSO-H user registration information edition screen:

(SSO management screen [Main Menu] > [User Management] > [Edit User Information] or <https://<IP address>:8443/ss0/Edit>).

F-2-529

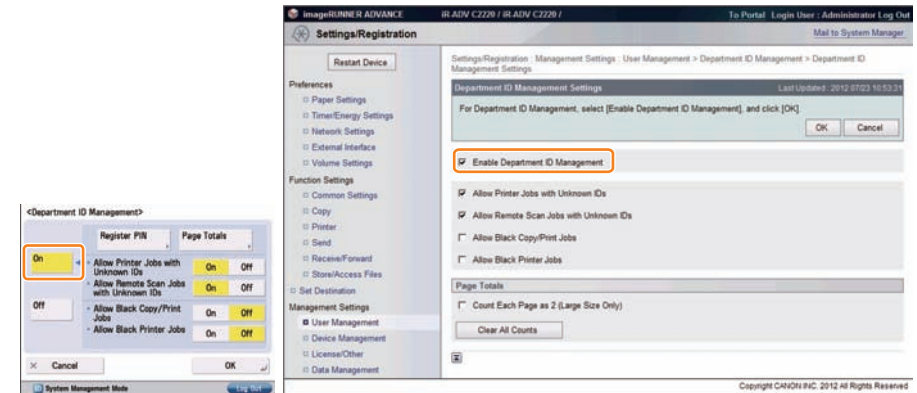
SSO-H user registration information import screen:

(SSO management screen [Main Menu] > [User Management] > [Import User Information] or (<https://<IP address>:8443/ss0/Import>).

F-2-530

7) Enable Depart ID Management.

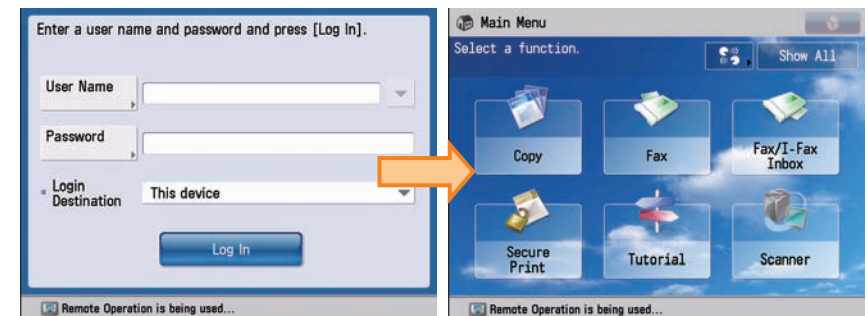
In user mode ([Settings/Registration]), select [Management Settings] > [User Management] > [Department ID Management] > [ON]. In the case of remote UI, access [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [User Management] > [Department ID Management] > [Department ID Management Settings], and select [Enable Department ID Management].



F-2-531

8) Check that the device can be logged in.

Log off and then log on to check that the device can be logged in with an environment where Local Device Authentication and Department ID Management are enabled.



F-2-532

Reference material

Glossary

Terms & Acronyms	Definitions and Explanations
Application	A program unit to provide users with solutions.
Application ID	An identifier assigned to each application. A unique ID is assigned to each MEAP application.
Applet (Applet Type Application)	A MEAP application type created in Java. This type of applications show buttons on the touch panel display.
Code Sign	Information to check if an application is genuine. An application marketed in the normal procedure has a code sign assigned by LMS. MEAP platform rejects applications without Canon code signs for being installed or executed on the device.
CPCA (Common Peripheral Controlling Architecture)	Common Peripheral Controlling Architecture. CPCA defines an object model of peripheral devices. A client can control a device by creating or modifying objects in the device.
CPCA Java CL (Class Library)	CPCA Java Class Library. A Java class library, which is used to control a device.
Default Authentication -Department ID Management	The login service used when the department ID control is used but other authentication controls are not used. When the Department ID control is turned on, the login dialog prompts the users to enter the department ID and password. The dialog appears the initial screen of both the control panel on the MEAP device and Remote UI
Device Specification ID	ID allocated to each device type. This represents CPCA API specification and the version number to use MFP generic functions or obtain information including maximum allowable copies.
Esplet (Esplet Type Application)	A MEAP application type created in Java. This type of applications do not show user interfaces either on Local UI or Web. Esplet is a coined word created by Canon, consisting of [Espresso] or Italian coffee and [let] derived from Applet/Service.
File Description	An identifier for the OS to identify the destination file requested by a program. A program descriptor includes an identifier and information such as a file name and size, which helps OS to judge the file to be edited.
HID class	HID stands for Human Interface Device, representing man-machine interfaces of PC components and peripheral devices. HID class means USB class classified as HID.
iR Native application	The functionalities that existing imageRUNNER has such as Copy, Universal Send and Mailbox.
ISV (Independent Software Vendor)	Independent Software Vendor. Software manufacturer who develops and/or sells applications and tools but does not entire computer systems. Refers application developer in this document.

Terms & Acronyms	Definitions and Explanations
J2ME (Java2 Platform Micro Edition)	Java 2 Platform Micro Edition. One of Java Platforms licensed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. It is applied for MEAP. Other devices such as cellular phones and PDA.
J2RE (Java 2 Runtime Environment)	A set of basic programs to run applications developed in the programming language of Java2. This set includes Java virtual machine providing runtime environment for Java applications among others. Java applets do not require J2RE since these are executed on Web browsers using Java runtime environment provided on browsers. However, standalone Java applications require Java runtime environment such as J2RE for execution. Runtime environments can be downloaded for free of charge from the Web site of Sun Microsystems, the Java developer.
Java	A programming language developed by Sun Microsystems, in the U. S. A. Low dependent on models and OSes and runs on various platforms. Taking advantage of this feature, many applications that runs on web servers uses Java. The MEAP platform uses J2ME - a type of Java.
JavaScript	A script language developed by Netscape Communications, in the U.S. A., runs on web browsers such as Netscape Navigator and Internet Explorer. Allows web designers to create interactive pages with HTML files such as animated buttons and display of timetables.
Java VM (Java Virtual Machine)	JAVA Virtual Machine. The Java byte code interpreter. The Virtual Machine acts as an interpreter for processing the byte code using the native instruction set.
License Access Number	A number issued for accessing license file. The Licensing server requires entries of application ID, expiration date/times information, and the number of access numbers, to issue license access numbers
Licensae File	A software manufacture of a MEAP application provides the users with the license files. Specifies the terms of agreement that a user concludes with the manufacturer. Required for installing a MEAP application.
LMS (License Management System)	The license is required for installing a MEAP application in a MEAPenabled iR device. LMS is the server issuing [License Files] as well as license access numbers.
Login Service	Manages user information of MEAP device. Authenticates users with user names and passwords. Three login services are available for MEAP device - Default Authentication, which provides department ID control, SDL (Simple Device Login) and SSO (Single Sign-On).
Mass Storage class	Mass Storage means a storage device with large capacity, generally secondary storage devices. Mass Storage class means USB class classified in the secondary storage device group.
MEAP (Multifunction Embedded Application Platform)	Multifunctional Embedded Application Platform. Provides an environment for executing application programs on a peripheral device. Uses the Java platform (J2ME - Java 2 platform Micro Edition) to run Java application for MEAP.
MEAP Contents	Required to install an MEAP application to a MEAP device.

Terms & Acronyms	Definitions and Explanations
MEAP Specifications (MEAP Spec Version)	MEAP Spec Version, the term used for the SDK. The version number that shows the APIs of the MEAP platform other than CPCA, such as network and security. The version number is not assigned for each device model. MEAP Application Runs on MEAP platform. Consists of application files (*.jar) and the license file (*.lic).
MEAP-enabled iR device	imageRUNNER (iR) devices with built-in MEAP platform.
MFP (Multi Function Peripheral)	Multi Function Peripheral. Peripheral device that supports more than one function, such as digital copier, printer, scanner, and fax.
OSGi (Open Service Gateway Initiative)	Open Service Gateway Initiative. See "http://www.osgi.org/".
Portal Service	The web portal to gain access to a MEAP-enabled device. This service has been integrated in Remote UI top page in iR ADVANCE series.
Protocol	A set of rules applied to data transmission procedures over network. Major communication protocols include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FTP: File Transfer Protocol. This is a communication protocol or protocol implemented commands to provide file transfer between a host and clients over TCP/IP network. • DHCP: An upward compatible protocol of BOOTP. This communication protocol allocates a dynamic IP address to each client machine upon communication startup on TCP/IP network and collects the allocated IP address when communication is completed. The server allocates one of multiple IP addresses and notifies the setup information to a client. • BOOTP: A communication protocol to automatically load setup information including IP address and a domain name from the server to a client on TCP/IP network. • RARP: A communication protocol to request IP address information via the network adaptor address (MAC address) of a client. • IPP: A communication protocol to execute remote printing between the print server and clients via Internet. • TCP/IP: A standard communication protocol required to access to Internet and other large-scale network.
Proxy Server	Provides functions to store data fetched from remote servers. When a user request to display a web page that has been displayed and stored in the proxy, the proxy server read the stored data but does not access the remote server where the original page is present, for efficient access services. When a proxy server receives a URL from a PC, it searches the file in the cache and sends it to the PC if the requested file is found. If the requested file is not stored in the cache, it accesses the remote server of the URL to acquire the file and, at the same time, stores the acquired file in the cache so that the proxy server can quickly send the file at the next request.
Redistribution module	A built-in module of an application created with SDK. Applications without this module cannot work on MEAP platform.

Terms & Acronyms	Definitions and Explanations
SDK (Software Development Kit)	The kit containing information and tools required for software development.
Service	A functional unit or an application program working on MEAP platform. [Applications] are generally termed [Services] in Java world.
Servlet (Servlet Type Application)	A MEAP application type created in Java. This type of applications is designed to show user interface on the Web browser.
SMS (Service Management Service)	The web-base service to provide user interfaces for application life cycle management.
Socket	A virtual interface of an application for network communication. A user only needs to specify a socket as a unit of an address and a port from an application. This establishes the network connection for data transmission, eliminating complication related to detailed communication procedures.
SSO-H (Single Sign-On H)	Login service providing features of both local device authentication and domain authentication. The former is the method that iR device independently authorizes users; whereas the latter is that iR device links to the domain controller on the network in the Active Directory environment to authorize users.
Thread	A unit for program execution. A multi-task system allowing multiple programs to run concurrently assigns a memory space and other resources independently to each program, providing users with a feel as if only a program is running. At least one thread is generated upon a program generated.
URL (Uniform Resource Locator)	The method to denote Web page locations on Internet and the like. For instance, a URL on the Web is denoted as [http://www.w3.org/default.html]. [http] at the beginning means that an address following this is in a web page on the Internet.
USB	Abbreviation of Universal Serial Bus. This is the interface standard to link between information devices.
USB system driver	The general-purpose driver that control the behavior of the device, there are HID class driver, Mass Storage class driver and so on.

T-2-93

Option for exclusive individual measure

Display Setting of Copy Icon (level2)

Make a setting as to whether to display/hide the copy screen (copy tab) on the control panel.

This is the specification for users who want to customize hiding it on control panel.

Default value

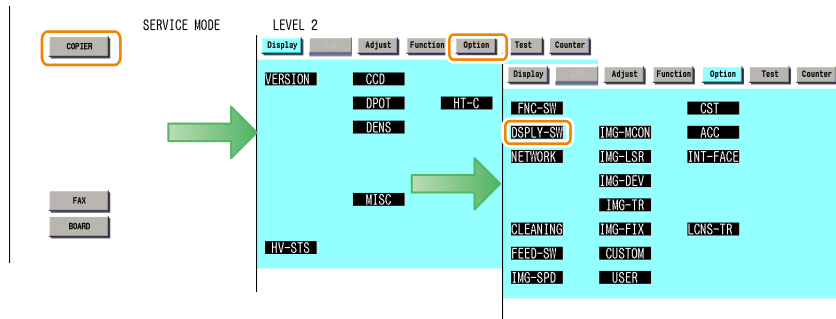
1: display

Setting range, item

0: hide 1: display

Setting Procedure

- 1) Start [SERVICE MODE] in Level 1.
- 2) Press [COPIER] > [Option] > [DSPLY-SW] buttons.



F-2-533

- 3) Press [UI-COPY] button.



F-2-534

- 4) Press either 0 (hide) or 1 (display) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.



F-2-535

- 5) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and restart the device.

● Error at starting up the MEAP application/Setting to hide JAM screen (level 2)

In the case that operation is restricted by MEAP application, hide the warning screen of error/JAM (such as JAM screen, door opening, no-toner). In the case that these errors occur, there will be a display indicating 'call the service personnel' etc.

Note:

Part of the warning screens is displayed if shifting to the device screen.

- As for the screens for jam and no-toner, the warning screen (animation) can be displayed by pressing the followings: [Device Screen] > [Recovery Procedure]
- As for the screen for door opening, the warning screen cannot be displayed because there is no display for [[Device Screen] > [Recovery Procedure]

Default value

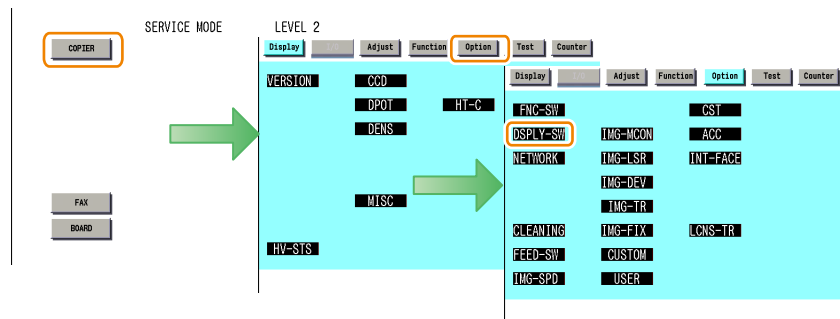
1: No activation of warning display

Setting range, item

0: display warning screen 1: hide warning screen

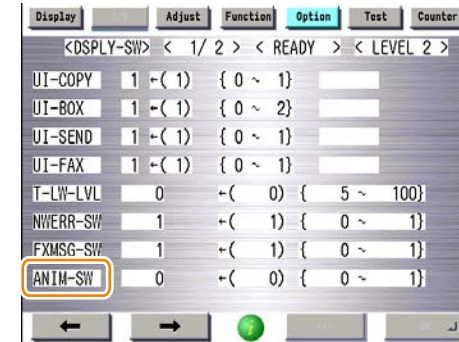
Setting Procedure

- 1) Start [SERVICE MODE] in Level 1.
- 2) Press [COPIER] > [Option] > [DSPLY-SW] buttons.



F-2-536

- 3) Press [ANIM-SW] button.



F-2-537

- 4) Press either 0 (display warning screen) or 1 (hide warning screen) on control panel (the numerical value input in the field is displayed), and press [OK] button.



F-2-538

- 5) Check to see that it is reflected in setting field, and restart the device.

Embedded RDS

Product Overview

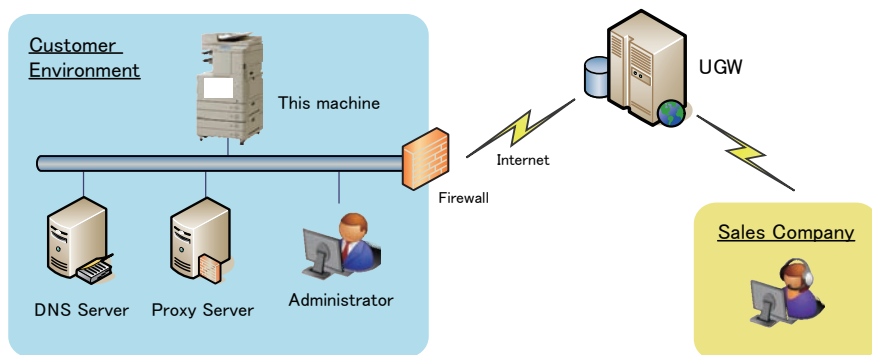
Overview

Embedded RDS (hereinafter referred to as E-RDS) is a monitoring program that runs on the host machine. When the monitoring option is enabled by making the setting on this machine, information such as the status change of the machine, counter information, and failure information are collected. The collected device information is sent to a remote maintenance server called UGW (Universal Gateway Server) via Internet, thus allowing for e-Maintenance/ imageWARE Remote (Remote Diagnosis System).

The following device information/ status can be monitored.

- Billing counts
- Parts counter
- Firmware info
- Service call error log
- Jam log
- Alarm log
- Status changes (Toner low/ out, etc.)

Since high confidentiality is required for the information shown above, it performs communication between this machine and the UGW using HTTPS/ SOAP protocol.



The e-Maintenance/ imageWARE Remote system configuration

F-2-539

Features and benefits

E-RDS embedded with a network module in advance can realize a front-end processing of e-Maintenance/ imageWARE Remote system without attaching any extra hardware equipment.

Major Functions

Service Call Button

If a user touches service call button on the touch panel display when corrupt image, paper jams, or/ and other problem has occurred, E-RDS generates an alarm and notifies it to UGW. Moreover, E-RDS also notifies cancellation and the completion of the request

Service Browser

Service browser is a web browsing functionality only for service technicians in charge, and is used for referring to the FAQ contents which is connected to UGW.

In order to grasp on which devices the service browser is enabled, when the status of the service browser is changed from disabled (0: OFF) to enabled, E-RDS sends the browser information to the UGW.

Service mode menu Transmission

E-RDS sends the target service mode menu data to UGW in the following cases:

- When a specific alarm and service call error are detected
- When the setting is changed in service mode

The following shows the transmission timing and the target data for transmission in service mode menu:

Transmission timing	Transmitting data			Error retry
When the following alarm is detected.	COPIER	Display	ANALOG	No
			HV-STC	
			CCD	
			DPOT	
			DENS	
			FIXING	
			SENSOR	
			MISC	
			HT-C	
			HV-TR	
	P-PASCAL			
Alarm codes for transmission: 0x060002, // Fixing 0x060004 - 0x069999 // Fixing 0x090005 - 0x099999 // Dram 0x100006 - 0016, 0x100022 - 0099, 0x100101 - 9900, // Development 0x300001 - 0x309999 // High voltage				

Transmission timing	Transmitting data			Error retry
When the following service call error is detected. Error codes for transmission: E000 - E00F, // Fixing E020, // Development ATR E060 - E06F // High voltage	COPIER	Display	ANALOG HV-STC CCD DPOT DENS FIXING SENSOR MISC HT-C HV-TR P-PASCAL	No
When a value is set to [COPIER - Adjust] subordinate's Service mode menu. (Transmission will be done at 60 min, later of setting)	COPIER	Adjust		Yes
When the first communication test is done. (For transmission process, 5 minutes after the execution)	COPIER	Display	ANALOG HV-STC CCD DPOT DENS FIXING SENSOR MISC HT-C HV-TR P-PASCAL	Yes
		Adjust		

T-2-94

NOTE:

Target transmission data are only the items under LEVEL1 and 2 in the service mode.

Limitations

Service Mode Menu Transmission Function

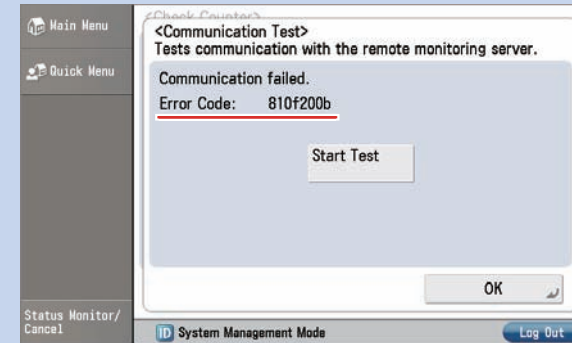
- In the following cases, service mode menu data is not transmitted.
 - When an unsent alarm log or service call log has been detected by E-RDS at power-on
 - When an alarm log or service call log to be resent due to a transmission failure is detected
 - When transmission of service mode menu executed at the time of detection of an alarm or a service call error ended in failure
 - If a new alarm or service call error occurs while service mode menu data is being obtained after detection of an alarm or a service call error, the data being obtained is not sent.
- If alarms/service call errors successively occur, and if the time of the host machine is corrected or changed while the log is being sent, service mode menu data may not be properly sent. It is because a Link No.* may be applied to the old log although it should be applied to the new log.
 - * Link No.:
A common number for linking the service mode menu data with the alarm log/service call log data to be sent
After completion of log transmission, the service mode menu data is obtained, and is sent with this number attached.
- Transmission of the data of changes made in service mode menu settings is not performed instantly, but performed when a specified period of 60 minutes elapse after the change of service mode menu settings is detected or when a communication test is performed at the time of power-on. (There is a time lag.)
- When service mode menu settings ([COPIER] > [Adjust]) are made, transmission is performed even when no change is made in the target data to be transmitted. Transmission of service mode data is also performed when changes are made in the service mode setting value not subject to transmission (items other than Level 1, 2) or when settlement of a value is performed without changing the setting value.

Service cautions

- 1) After clearing RAM of the Main Controller PCB SRAM Board, initialization of the E-RDS setting (ERDS-DAT) and a communication test (COM-TEST) need to be performed. Failure to do so will result that the counter transmitting value to the UGW may become unusual.
Also, after replacing the main controller board, all settings must be reprogrammed.
- 2) The following settings in service mode must not be change unless there are specific instructions to do so. Changing these values will cause error in communication with UGW.
 - Set port number of UGW
[SERVICE MODE] > [COPIER] > [Function] > [INSTALL] > [RGW-PORT]
Default : 443
 - URL setting of UGW
[SERVICE MODE] > [COPIER] > [Function] > [INSTALL] > [RGW-ADR]
Default : https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010
- 3) If the e-Maintenance/imageWARE Remote contract of the device is invalid, be sure to turn OFF the E-RDS setting (E-RDS : 0).
- 4) Communication tests can be conducted in user mode.* When conducting a communication test in user mode, pay attention on the following points:
 - During a communication test in user mode, do not take any actions such as pressing a key. Actions are not accepted until the communication test is completed (actions are ignored).
 - When a communication test is being conducted from service mode or user mode, do not conduct a communication test from the other. These operations are not guaranteed.

NOTE:

*The user can conduct a communication test and seen the communication test result. If the communication results in failure, an error code (a hexadecimal number, 8 digits) appears on the touch panel display.



E-RDS Setup

Confirmation and preparation in advance

To monitor this machine with e-Maintenance/ imageWARE Remote, the following settings are required.

(1) Advance confirmation

Confirm with the UGW administrator that the device to be monitored with e-Maintenance/ imageWARE Remote is registered in the UGW.

(2) Advance preparations

The following network-related information needs to be obtained from the user's system administrator in advance.

Information item 1

IP address settings

- Automatic setting : DHCP, RARP, BOOTP
- Manual setting : IP address, subnet mask and gateway address to be set

Information item 2

Is there a DNS server in use?

If there is a DNS server in use, find out the following.

- Primary DNS server address
- Secondary DNS server address

Information item 3

Is there a proxy server?

If there is a proxy server in use, find out the following.

- Proxy server address
- Port No. for proxy server

Information item 4

Is proxy server authentication required?

If proxy server authentication is required, find out the following.

- User name and password required for proxy authentication

(3) Network settings

Based on the results of the information obtained in (2) Advance preparations, make this machine network related settings.

See Users' Guide for detailed procedures.

CAUTION:

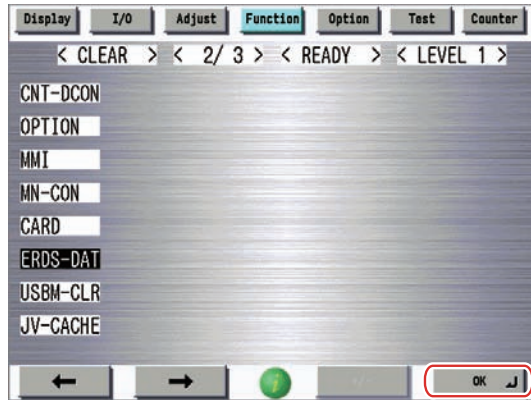
When changes are made to the above-mentioned network settings, be sure to reboot this machine.

Steps to E-RDS settings

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Select [COPIER] > [Function] > [CLEAR] > [ERDS-DAT] and touch the [OK] button.

NOTE:

This operation initializes the E-RDS settings to factory setting values.
For the setting values to be initialized, see the section of "Initializing E-RDS settings".



F-2-540

3. Perform installation or deletion of the CA certificate if necessary, and reboot this machine.
 - Installation of the CA certificate: Perform installation from SST or Remote UI.
 - Deletion of the CA certificate: When the following operation is performed, the CA certificate in the factory setting is automatically installed.

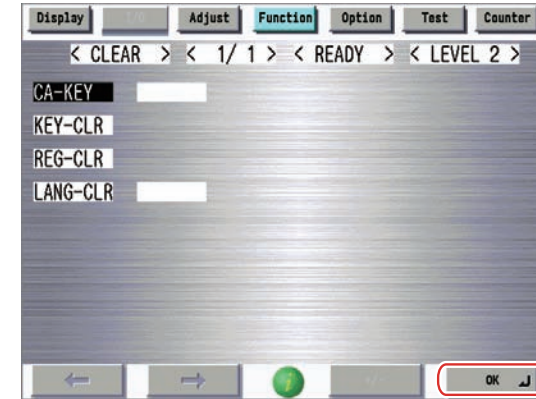
CAUTION:

After following procedure, the registered key and CA certificate are deleted, and only the CA certificate installed at the time of shipment is registered.

It is therefore necessary to check with the user in advance.

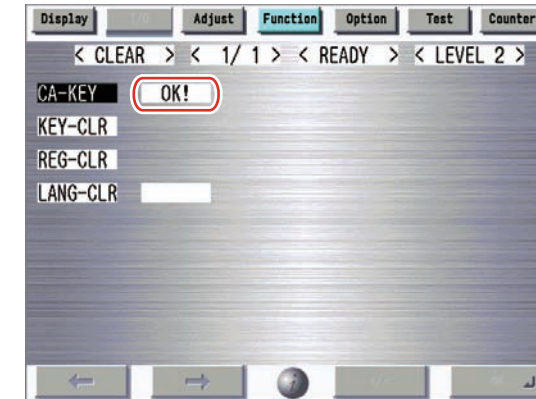
- (1) Start [Service Mode] at Level 2.

- (2) Select [COPIER] > [Function] > [CLEAR] > [CA-KEY] and touch the [OK] button.



F-2-541

"OK!" is displayed if the CA certificate is initialized. When "NG!" is displayed, see the section of "Troubleshooting" to execute the remedy, and then perform initialization of the CA certificate again and check to see if the CA certificate is initialized.



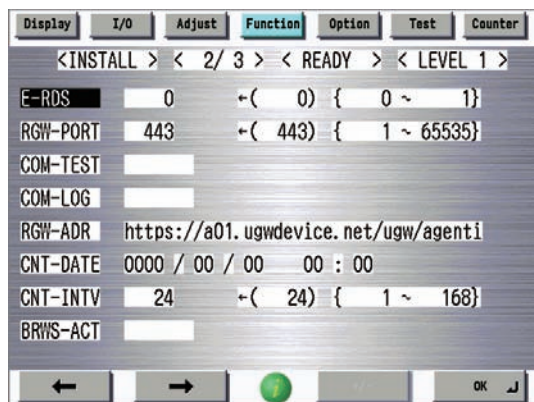
F-2-542

- (3) Reboot this machine.

CAUTION:

If a key and a CA certificate have been registered in order to use a function other than E-RDS, it is necessary to register again from SST or Remote UI.

4. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
5. Select [COPIER] > [Function] > [INSTALL] > [E-RDS].

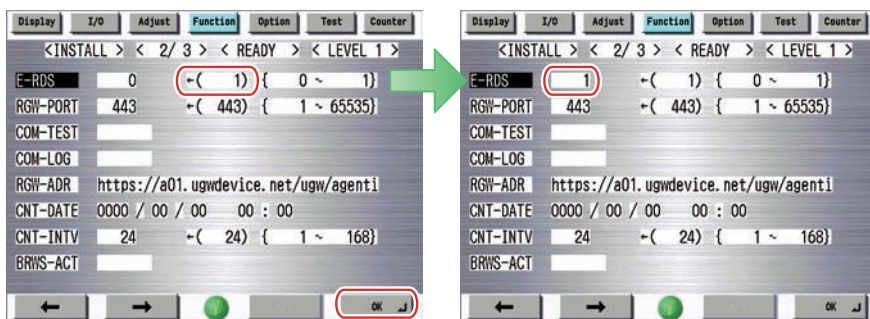


F-2-543

6. Touch the numeric button [1] on the control panel (the setting value is changed to 1) and touch the [OK] button. (The data is reflected to the setting value field.)

NOTE:

This operation enables the communication function with UGW.

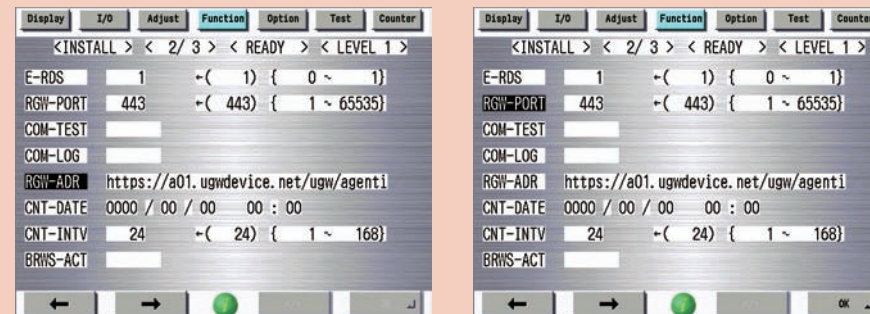


F-2-544

CAUTION:

The following settings i.e. RGW-PORT and RGW-ADR in Service mode must not be change unless there are specific instructions to do so.

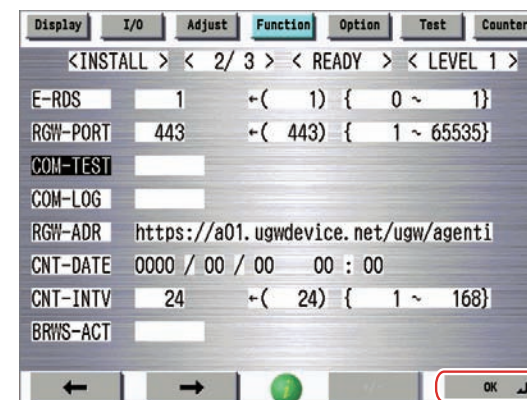
Changing these values will cause error in communication with UGW.



7. Select [COM-TEST] and then touch [OK].

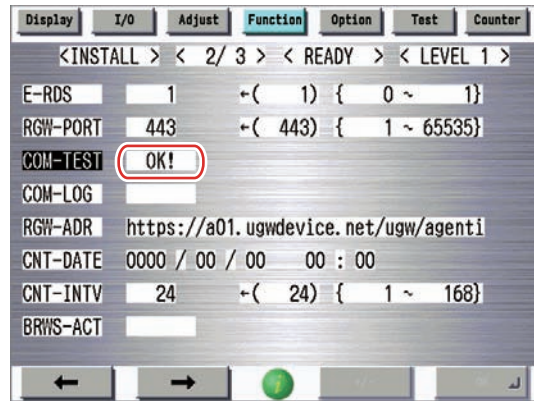
NOTE:

This initiates the communication test between the device and the UGW.



F-2-545

If the communication is successful, "OK!" is displayed. If "NG!" (failed) appears, refer to the "Troubleshooting" and repeat until "OK!" is displayed.



F-2-546

NOTE:

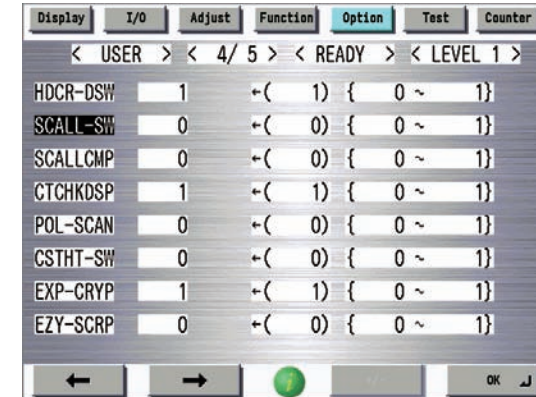
The communication results with UGW can be distinguished by referring to the COM-LOG. By performing the communication test with UGW, E-RDS acquires schedule information and starts monitoring and meter reads operation.

Steps to Service Call button settings

Steps for settings to display the service call button

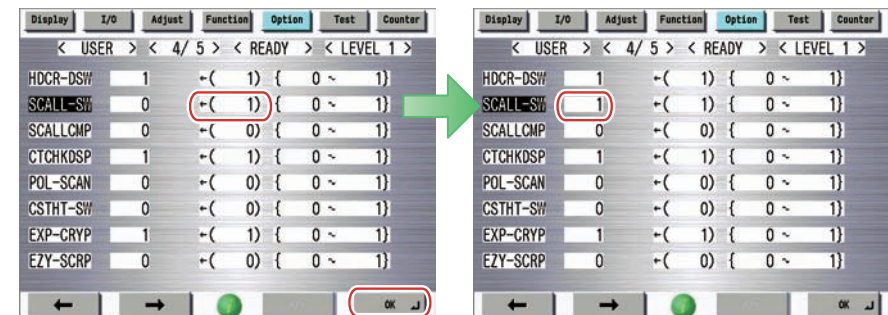
In order to use the "Service Call" button, follow the procedure shown below to display the "Service Call" button.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Select [COPIER] > [Option] > [USER] > [SCALL-SW].



F-2-547

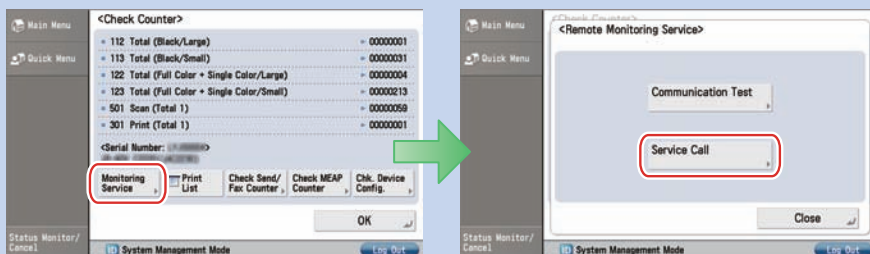
3. Touch the numeric button [1] on the control panel (the setting value is changed to 1) and touch the [OK] button. (The data is reflected to the setting value field.)



F-2-548

NOTE:

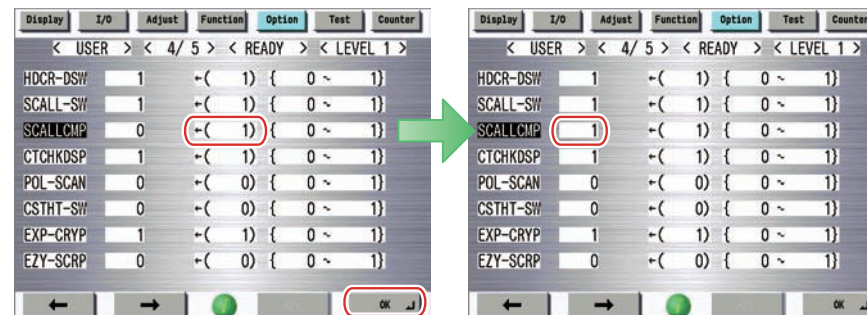
When the function is enabled, the [Service Call] button is displayed on the Monitoring Service screen by touching the [Monitoring Service] button on the Check Counter screen.



3. Touch the numeric button [1] or [0] on the control panel (the setting value is changed to 1 or 0) and touch the [OK] button. (The data is reflected to the setting value field.)

NOTE:

E-RDS generates an alarm of service call completion at this timing, and sends the alarm to UGW.



F-2-550

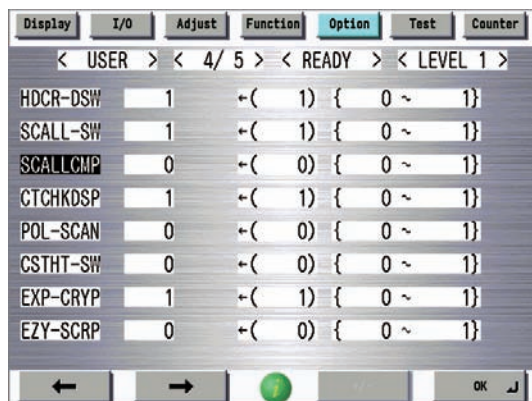
NOTE:

In the current condition, touching the [OK] button completes the service call regardless of whether 0 or 1 is set.

● Steps for settings of service call completion

When the service technician completes the work for the service call, follow the instruction as described below to execute the service call completion work.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Select [COPIER] > [Option] > [USER] > [SCALLCMP].

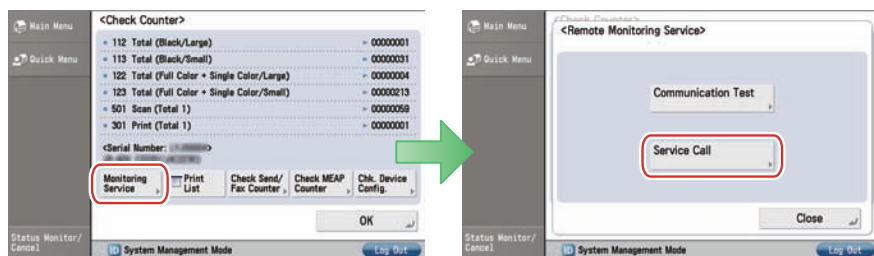


F-2-549

Steps for service call request

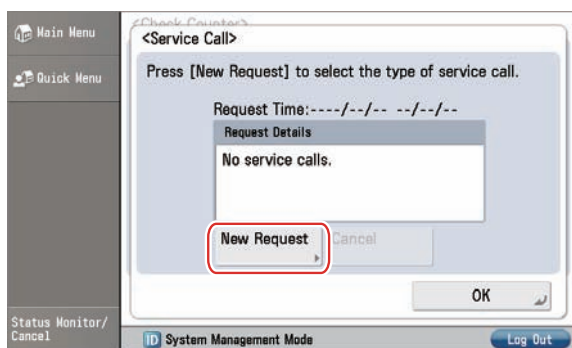
Users should follow the instructions as described below to request a service call.

1. Touch the [Counter Check] button on the control panel to display the Check Counter screen.
2. Touch the [Monitoring Service] button, and touch the [Service Call] button on the Monitoring Service screen.



F-2-551

3. Touch the [New Request] button on the Service Call screen.



F-2-552

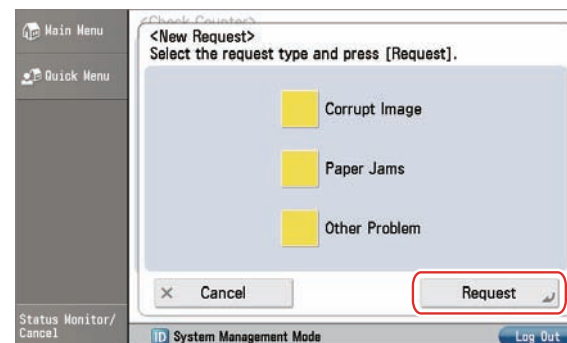
CAUTION:

When a service call has been already requested, another service call cannot be sent. The previous service call needs to be canceled, or a service technician needs to perform processing for service call completion.

4. Select the request details and touch the [Request] button.

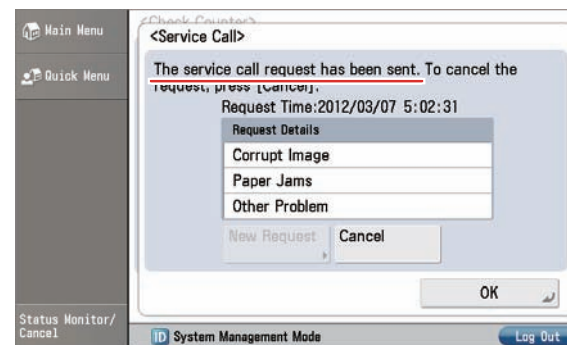
NOTE:

E-RDS generates an alarm of service call request at this timing, and sends the alarm to UGW.



F-2-553

5. If the service call request is successful, "The service call request has been sent." is displayed. If "Could not send the service call request." appears, refer to the "Troubleshooting" and repeat until "The service call request has been sent." is displayed.

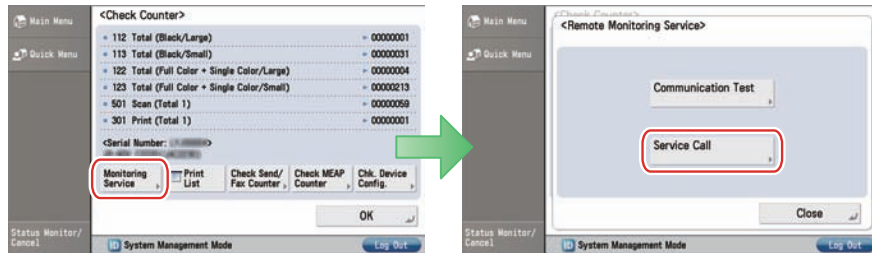


F-2-554

Steps for service call cancellation

To cancel the service call, follow the instructions as described below.

1. Touch the [Counter Check] button on the control panel to display the Check Counter screen.
2. Touch the [Monitoring Service] button, and touch the [Service Call] button on the Monitoring Service screen.

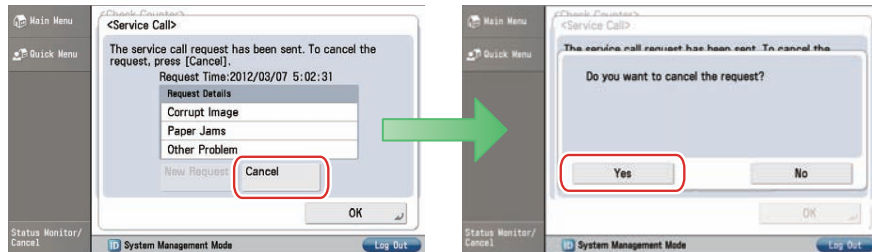


F-2-555

3. Touch the [Cancel] button, and touch the [Yes] button in the check screen.

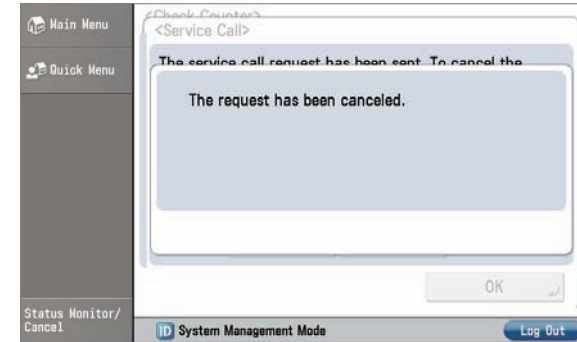
NOTE:

E-RDS generates an alarm of service call cancellation at this timing, and sends the alarm to UGW.



F-2-556

4. "The request has been canceled." is displayed.



F-2-557

Steps to Service Browser settings

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Select [COPIER] > [Function] > [INSTALL] > [BRWS-ACT] and then touch [OK].

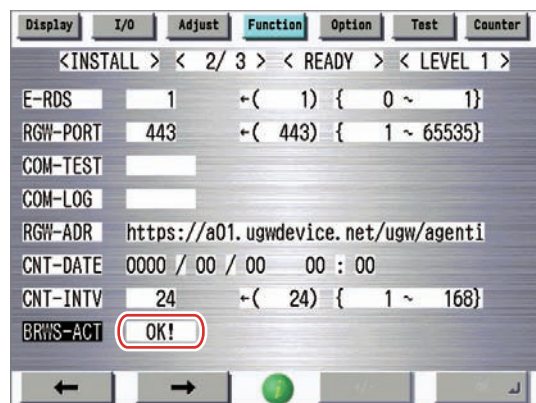
NOTE:

When the status of the function is changed from disabled to enabled, E-RDS sends the browser information to the UGW.



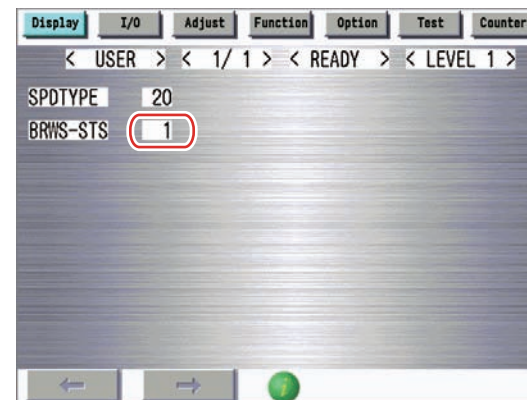
F-2-558

If the connection is established with UGW successfully, "OK!" is displayed. When "NG!" is displayed, perform the steps referring to "Troubleshooting" until connection is established with UGW.



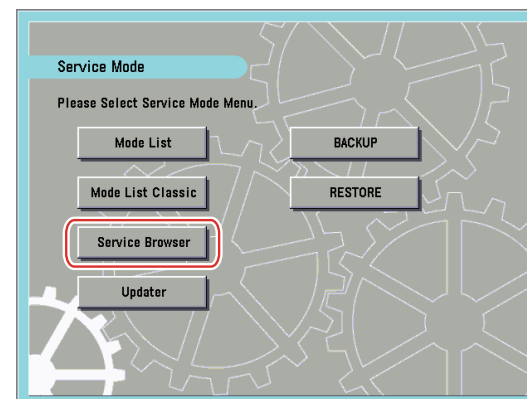
F-2-559

3. Reboot this machine.
4. Make sure that "1 (: ACTIVE)" is set under [COPIER] > [Display] > [USER] > [BRWS-ST5].



F-2-560

5. When the above-shown setting values are enabled, [Service Browser] is displayed in the Service Mode screen.



F-2-561

NOTE:

Generally, once service browsing is enabled (BRWS-ST5 : 1), it cannot be disabled (BRWS-ST5 : 0) again*. To disable service browsing, clear SRAM.

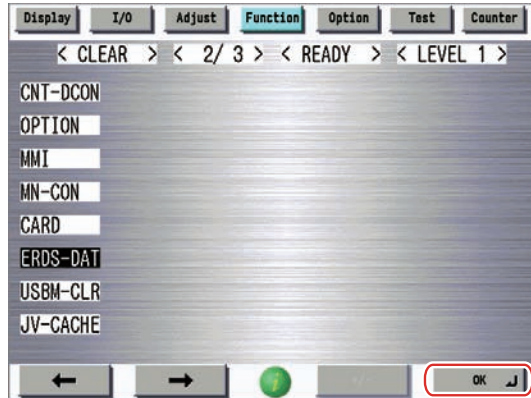
* The function is disabled (BRWS-ST5 : 2) by executing BRWS-ACT again.

■ Initializing E-RDS settings

It is possible to clear the SRAM data of E-RDS and change the E-RDS setting back to the default value.

● Initialization procedure

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Select [COPIER] > [Function] > [CLEAR] > [ERDS-DAT] and then touch [OK].



F-2-562

● Setting values and data to be initialized

The following E-RDS settings, internal data, and Alarm filtering information are initialized.

- COPIER > Function > INSTALL > E-RDS
- COPIER > Function > INSTALL > RGW-ADR
- COPIER > Function > INSTALL > RGW-PORT
- COPIER > Function > INSTALL > COM-LOG

CAUTION:

In case of replacing the CA certificate file, even if initialization of E-RDS is executed, the status is not returned to the factory default.

When installing the certificate file other than the factory default CA certificate file, it is required to delete the certificate file after E-RDS initialization and install the factory default CA certificate file.

For detailed procedures, see "Steps to E-RDS settings - step 3."

● FAQ

No.1

Q: In what case does a communication test with UGW fail?

A: The following cases can be considered in the becoming "NG!" case.

1. Name resolution was failed due to an incorrect host name or DNS server has been halted.
2. Network cable is blocked off.
3. Proxy server settings is not correct.

No.2

Q: When does E-RDS send counter information to UGW? How many data is sent?

A: The schedule of data transmitting, the start time are determined by settings in the UGW side. The send time cannot be specified on the E-RDS side. Data is sent once every 16 hours.

The data size of counter information is approx. 285 KB.

No.3

Q: Will data which failed to be sent due to an error in communication with UGW be resent?

A: Data shown below will be resent.

- Jam log
- Service call log
- Alarm log
- Service mode menu
- Browser information

The newest data is resent only when the settings are changed in service mode.

It is resent only when the web browser option is enabled.

Data is resent endlessly (after 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, and 30 minutes since the occurrence of communication error; once 30 minutes have passed, it is resent at 30-minute intervals) until it is sent successfully. Resend continues even if the power is turned OFF and then ON.

No.4

Q: What is the upper limit of the number of COM-LOGs? What is the upper limit of the number of characters of error information displayed in a COM-LOG?

A: Up to 30 log data can be saved. The data size of error information is maximum 128 characters.

No.5

Q: Although Microsoft ISA as a proxy server is introduced, the authentication check is failed.

Can E-RDS adopt with Microsoft ISA?

A: E-RDS must comply with "Basic" while "Integrated" authentication is used for Microsoft ISA (as default); therefore, authentication with E-RDS is available if you change the setting to "Basic" authentication on the server.

No.6

Q: Can I turn this machine power off during the e-Maintenance/ imageWARE Remote system operation?

A: While operating the e-Maintenance/ imageWARE Remote system, the power of the device must be ON. If power OFF is needed, do not leave the device power OFF for long time. It will become "Device is busy, try later" errors if the power supply of network equipment such as HUB is made prolonged OFF.

No.7

Q: Although a Service call error may not be notified to UGW, the reason is what?

A: If a service technician in charge turns off the power supply of this machine immediately after error occurred once, It may be unable to notify to UGW because data processing does not take a time from the controller of this machine to NIC though, the data will be saved on the RAM.

If the power supply is blocked off while starting up, the data will be inevitably deleted.

No.8

Q: How does E-RDS operate while this machine is placed in the sleep mode?

A: While being in Real Deep Sleep, and if data to be sent is in E-RDS, the system wakes up asleep, then starts to send the data to the UGW. The system also waits for completion of data transmission and let the device to shift to asleep status again.

However, transition time to the Real Deep Sleep depends on the device, and the transition to sleep won't be done if the next data transmission will be done within 10 minutes.

No.9

Q: Is E-RDS compatible with Department counter?

A: No, E-RDS does not support Department counter.

No.10

Q: Is there any setting to be made on the device side to enable the service mode menu transmission function? Moreover, what is Service mode menu set as the object of transmission?

A: No steps peculiar to Transmitting Service mode menu. As for the data that applies to transmission of the service mode, see the "Service mode menu Transmission".

No.11

Q: What service browser data is transmitted to UGW by E-RDS in what timing?

A: The service browser data to be transmitted and the transmission timing are shown below.

Transmission timing	Detailed procedure	Transmission information	Error occurs
When the service browser is enabled from the disabled state [OFF]	1) Specify the service browser setting in the service mode menu. 2) Send browser information to UGW. 3) Once obtaining OK response from UGW, enable the service browser mode [ACTIVE]. (To use the setting, it is necessary to reboot this machine)	Service browser mode: [Register] WEB browser option: [ON] or [OFF] according to the license status	Retransmission is not performed. ("Disabling [OFF]" continues to be set.)

T-2-95

No.12

Q: Can I make another service call request when I have already requested a service call?

A: No, you cannot make another service call request if you have already made a service call request.

Touch the [Cancel] button to cancel the service call which you'd made. Or the service technician performs a service call completion process.

No.13

Q: Is the "Requesting" status cancelled when this machine is rebooted?

A: The requesting status is not cancelled even if the device is rebooted. The information of the notified service call request (the time that the request was made, the service call request description) is also retained during the "Requesting" status.

No.14

Q: Counter information could not be sent at the scheduled send time due to the power of this machine being turned OFF. Will the counter information be sent later when the power of this machine is turned ON?

A: Yes. When a scheduled send such as that for counter could not be executed due to the power of this machine being turned OFF, etc., and the scheduled send time has already passed at power-on, the send is executed immediately.

The following shows data send according to the status of this machine.

Send types	Status of this machine		
	Power ON	Power OFF	Sleep
Scheduled send	Sent	Not sent ^{*1}	Sent ^{*2}
Immediate send (Service call log / Alarm log / Jam log)	Sent	-	Sent ^{*2}

T-2-96

*1: Immediately sent if the send time has already passed at power-on.

*2: Sent after recovery from sleep mode.

Troubleshooting

No.1

Symptom: A communication test (COM-TEST) results NG!

Cause: Initial settings or network conditions is incomplete.

Remedy 1: Check and take actions mentioned below.

1) Check network connections

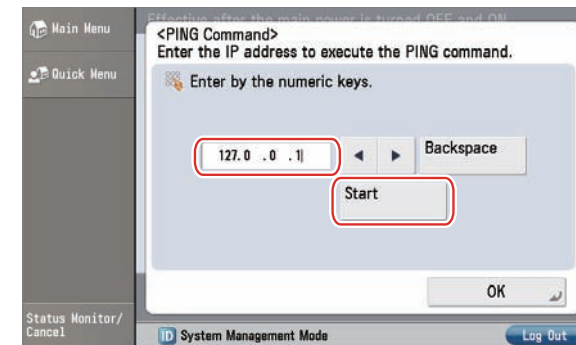
Is the status indicator LED for the HUB port to which this machine is connected ON?

YES: Proceed to Step 2).

NO: Check that the network cable is properly connected.

2) Confirm loop back address (* In case of IPv4)

Select [Settings/Registration (User Mode)] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 Settings] > [PING Command], enter "127.0.0.1", and touch the [Start] button.

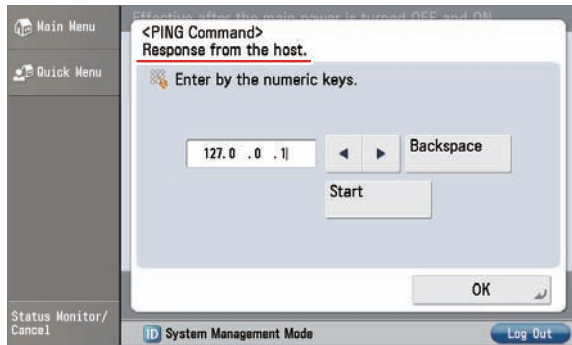


F-2-563

Does the screen display "Response from the host."? (See the next figure.)

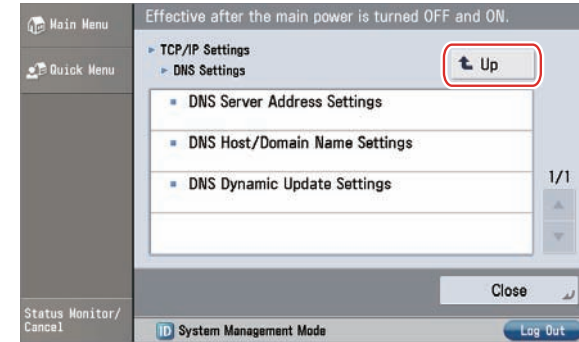
YES: Proceed to Step 3).

NO: There is a possibility that this machine's network settings are wrong. Check the details of the IPv4 settings once more.



F-2-564

(b) Touch the [Up] button.



F-2-566

3) Confirmation from another PC connected to same network.

Request the user to ping this machine from a PC connected to same network.

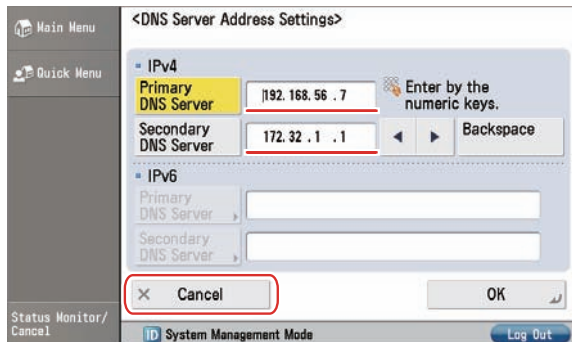
Does this machine respond?

YES: Proceed to Step 4).

NO: Confirm the details of this machine's IP address and subnet mask settings.

4) Confirm DNS connection

(a) Select [Settings/Registration (User Mode)] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [DNS Settings] > [DNS Server Address Settings], write down the primary and secondary addresses of the DNS server, and touch the [Cancel] button.



F-2-565

(c) Select [IPv4 Settings] > [PING Command], enter the primary DNS server noted down in step a) as the IP address, and touch the [Start] button.

Does the screen display "Response from the host."?

YES: Proceed to Remedy 2.

NO: Enter the secondary DNS server noted down in step a) as the IP address, and then touch the [Start] button.

Does the screen display "Response from the host."?

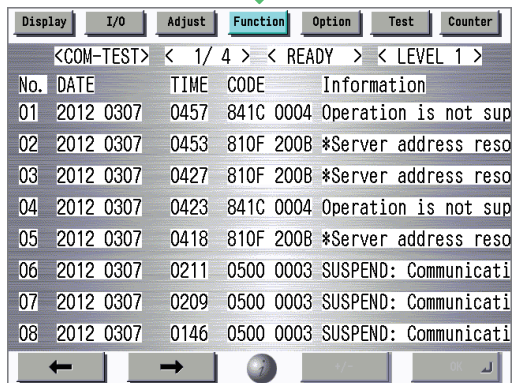
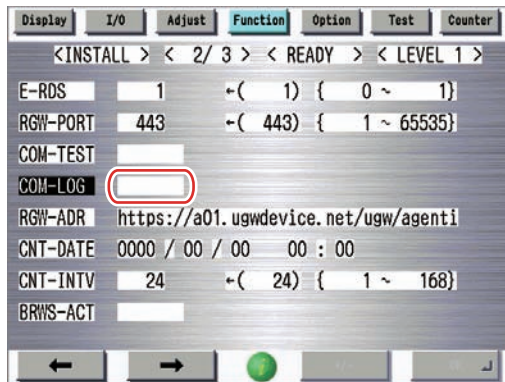
YES: Proceed to Remedy 2.

NO: There is a possibility that the DNS server address is wrong. Reconfirm the address with the user's system administrator.

Remedy 2: Troubleshooting using communication error log (COM-LOG)

1) Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.

2) Select [COPIER] > [Function] > [INSTALL] > [COM-LOG] and touch the blank field on the right side. The communication error log list screen is displayed.

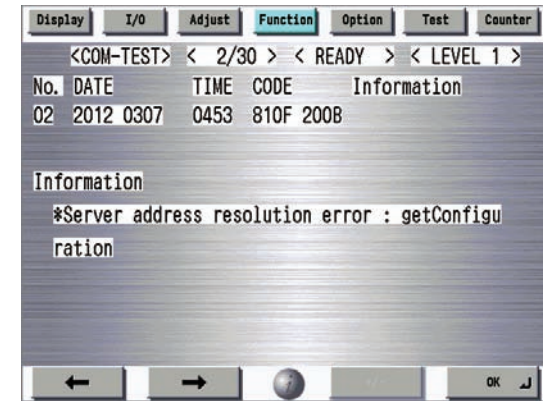


F-2-567

NOTE:

- Only the initial part of error information is displayed in the communication error log list screen.
- "*" is added to the top of the error text in the case of an error in communication test (method name: getConfiguration or communicationTest) only.

3) When each line is selected, the communication error log detailed screen is displayed as shown in the figure below. (Example: No. 02)



F-2-568

NOTE:

- A detailed description of the error appears below 'Information'. (Max 128 characters)
- Touch the [OK] button to return to the communication error log list screen.

4) When a message is displayed, take an appropriate action referring to "Error code and strings".

No.2

Symptom: A communication test results NG! even if network setting is set properly.

Cause: The network environment is inappropriate, or RGW-ADR or RGW-PORT settings for E-RDS have been changed.

Remedy: The following points should be checked.

- 1) Check network conditions such as proxy server settings and so on.
- 2) Check the E-RDS setting values.
 - Check the communication error log from COM-LOG.
 - Check whether RGW-ADR or RGW-PORT settings has changed. If RGW-ADR or RGW-PORT settings has changed, restore initial values. For initial values, see "Service cautions".

No.3

Symptom: There was a log, indicating "Device is not ready, try later" in error details of COM-LOG list.

Cause: A certain problem occurred in networking.

Remedy: Check and take actions mentioned below.

- 1) Check networking conditions and connections.
- 2) Turn on the power supply of this machine and perform a communication test about 60 seconds later.

No.4

Symptom: "Unknown error" is displayed though a communication test (COM-TEST) has done successfully.

Cause: It could be a problem at the UGW side or the network load is temporarily faulty.

Remedy: Try again after a period of time. If the same error persists, check the UGW status with a network and UGW administrator.

No.5

Symptom: Enabling Service Browser (BRWS-ACT) results NG!

Cause: A communication test with UGW has not been performed, or a communication test result is NG!

Remedy: Perform a communication test, and check that the test with UGW finishes successfully.

No.6

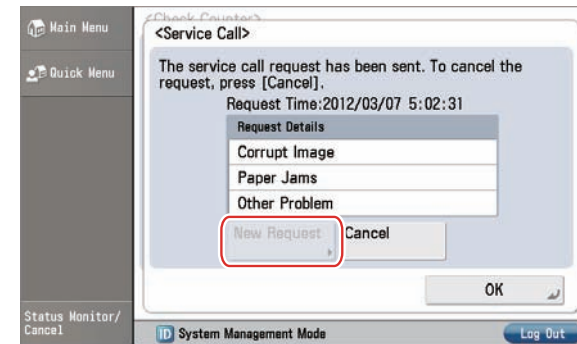
Symptom: The display indicates that the service browser is enabled (BRWS-STTS: 1), but the service browser fails to be activated.

Cause: The main power switch of this machine has not been turned OFF and then ON. ON/OFF of the service browser is enabled after reboot.

Remedy: Turn OFF and then ON the main power of this machine.

No.7

Symptom: A service call request cannot be made because the [New Request] button is grayed out.



F-2-569

Cause: There has been already a service call request.

Remedy: Perform either of the following remedy works:

- Touch the [Cancel] button to cancel the service call request that has been made.
- A service technician performs a complete processing for the service call request that has been made.

No.8

Symptom: Initializing the CA certificate (CA-KEY) results in NG!

Cause: Initialization process of the CA certificate has completed abnormally.

Remedy: Initialize the HDD.

No.9

Symptom: A service call request is failed, and a message "Could not send the service call request" is displayed.

Cause: A communication test with UGW has not been performed, or a communication test result is NG!

Remedy: Perform a communication test, and check that the test with UGW finishes successfully.

No.10

Symptom: When a communication test (COM-TEST) is repeatedly executed, an error occurs.

Cause: During communication conducted after execution of a COM-TEST, another COM-TEST was executed again.

Remedy: When repeatedly executing COM-TEST, execute COM-TEST at intervals of 5 minutes or more.

Error code and strings

The following error information is displayed on the communication error log details screen. (Here, "server" means UGW.)

- The error information are displayed in the following form.
[*] [Error strings] [Method name] [Error details provided by UGW]

NOTE:

*** is added to the top of the error text in the case of an error in communication test (method name: getConfiguration or communicationTest) only.

No.	Code	Error strings	Cause	Remedy
1	0000 0000	SUSPEND: mode changed.	Unmatched Operation Mode	Initialize the E-RDS setting (ERDS-DAT).
2	0500 0003	SUSPEND: Communication test is not performed.	Rebooting the device while the communication test had not been performed although E-RDS is enabled.	Perform a communication test (COM-TEST).
3	0xxx 0003	Server schedule is not exist	Blank schedule data have been received from UGW.	Perform and complete a communication test (COM-TEST).
4	0xxx 0003	Communication test is not performed	Communication test has not completed.	Perform and complete a communication test (COM-TEST).
5	84xx 0003	E-RDS switch is setted OFF	A communication test has been attempted with the E-RDS switch being OFF.	Set E-RDS switch (E-RDS) to 1, and then perform a communication test (COM-TEST).
6	8600 0002 8600 0003 8600 0101 8600 0201 8600 0305 8600 0306 8600 0401 8600 0403 8600 0414 8600 0415	Event Registration is Failed	Processing (event processing) within the device has failed.	Turn the device OFF/ ON. If the error persists, replace the device system software. (Upgrade)
7	8700 0306	SRAM version mismatch!	Improper value is written in at the head of the Main Controller PCB 2 SRAM domain of E-RDS.	Turn the device OFF/ ON.
8	8700 0306	SRAM AeRDS version mismatch!	Improper value is written in at the head of the Main Controller PCB 2 SRAM domain of Ae-RDS.	Turn the device OFF/ ON.

No.	Code	Error strings	Cause	Remedy
9	8xxx 0004	Operation is not supported	Method which E-RDS is not supporting attempted.	Contact help desk
10	8xxx 0101	Server response error (NULL)	Communication with UGW has been successful, but an error of some sort has prevented UGW from responding. When (Null) is displayed at the end of the message, this indicates that there has been an error in the HTTPS communication method.	Perform and complete a communication test (COM-TEST).
11	8xxx 0201 8xxx 0202 8xxx 0203 8xxx 0204 8xxx 0206	Server schedule is invalid	During the communication test, there has been some kind of error in the schedule values passed from UGW.	When the error occurs, report the details to the support section. After the UGW side has responded, try the communication test again.
12	8xxx 0207 8xxx 0208	Internal Schedule is broken	The schedule data in the inside of E-RDS is not right.	Perform a communication test (COM-TEST).
13	8xxx 0221	Server specified list is too big	Alarm/Alert filtering error: The number of elements of the list specified by the server is over restriction value.	Alert filtering is not supported by UGW.
14	8xxx 0222	Server specified list is wrong	Alarm filtering error: Unjust value is included in the element of the list specified by the server.	Alert filtering is not supported by UGW.
15	8xxx 0304	Device is busy, try later	The semaphore consumption error at the time of a communication test.	Try again a communication test after a period of time.
16	8xxx 0709	Tracking ID is not match	When upgrading firmware, the TrackingID notified by Updater differs from the thing of UGW designates.	Obtain the sublog, and contact the support department of the sales company.
17	8xxx 2000	Unknown error	Some other kind of communication error has occurred.	Perform and complete a communication test (COM-TEST).
18	8xxx 2001	URL Scheme error(not https)	The header of the URL of the registered UGW is not in https format.	Check that the value of URL of UGW (RGW-ADR) is https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010.
19	8xxx 2002	URL server specified is illegal	A URL different to that specified by the UGW has been set.	Check that the value of URL of UGW (RGW-ADR) is https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010.

No.	Code	Error strings	Cause	Remedy
20	8xxx 2003	Network is not ready, try later	Communication attempted without confirming network connection, just after booting up a device in which the network preparations are not ready.	Check the network connection, as per the initial procedures described in the troubleshooting. Perform a communication test (COM-TEST) about 60 seconds later, after turn on the device.
21	8xxx 2004	Server response error ([Hexadecimal]) [Error detailed in UGW] ¹	Communication with UGW has been successful, but an error of some sort has prevented UGW from responding.	Try again after a period of time. Check detailed error code (Hexadecimal) and [Error details in UGW] from UGW displayed after the message.
22	8xxx 200A	Server connection error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> TCP/IP communication fault The IP address of device is not set. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the network connection, as per the initial procedures described in the troubleshooting. When proxy is used, make the settings for proxy, and check the status of the proxy server.
23	8xxx 200B	Server address resolution error	Server address name resolution has failed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check that the value of URL of UGW (RGW-ADR) is https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010. Check that Internet connection is available in the environment.
24	8xxx 2014	Proxy connection error	Could not connect to proxy server due to improper address.	Check proxy server address / port and re-enter as needed.
25	8xxx 2015	Proxy address resolution error	Could not connect to proxy server due to name resolution error of proxy address.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check that the proxy server name is correct. If the proxy server name is correct, check the DNS connection, as per the initial procedures described in the troubleshooting. Specify the IP address as the proxy server name.
26	8xxx 201E	Proxy authentication error	Proxy authentication is failed.	Check the user name and password required in order to login to the proxy, and re-enter as needed.

No.	Code	Error strings	Cause	Remedy
27	8xxx 2028	Server certificate error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No route certificate installed in device. Certificate other than that initially registered in the user's operating environment is being used, but has not been registered with the device. The date and time of the device is not correct. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Install the latest device system software. (Upgrade) Correctly set the date and time of the device. Execute CLEAR > CA-KEY, and turn OFF and then ON the device. (The CA certificate at the time of shipment is automatically installed.)
28	8xxx 2029	Server certificate verify error	The server certificate verification error occurred.	Check that the value of URL of UGW (RGW-ADR) is https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010 .
29	8xxx 2046	Server certificate expired	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The route certificate registered with the device has expired. Certificate other than that initially registered in the user's operating environment is being used, but has not been registered with the device. The device time and date is outside of the certificated period. 	Check that the device time and date are correctly set. If the device time and date are correct, upgrade to the latest system software.
30	8xxx 2047	Server response time out	Due to network congestion, etc., the response from UGW does not come within the specified time. (HTTPS level time out)	If this error occurs when the communication test is being run or Service Browser is being set, try again after a period of time.
31	8xxx 2048	Service not found	There is a mistake in the UGW URL, and UGW cannot be accessed. (Path is wrong)	Check that the value of URL of UGW (RGW-ADR) is https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010 .
32	8xxx 2052	URL error	The data which is not URL is inputted into URL field.	Check that the value of URL of UGW (RGW-ADR) is https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010 .
33	8xxx 2058	Unknown error	SOAP Client fails to obtain SOAP Response. Possibility of a problem in UGW or of a temporary problem in the network load.	Perform and complete a communication test (COM-TEST).
34	8xxx 2063	SOAP Fault	SOAP communication error has occurred.	Check that the value of port number of UGW (RGW-PORT) is 443.

No.	Code	Error strings	Cause	Remedy
35	xxxx xxxx	Device internal error	An internal error, such as memory unavailable, etc., has occurred during a device internal error phase.	Turn the device OFF/ ON. Or replace the device system software. (Upgrade)
36	xxxx xxxx	SUSPEND: Initialize Failure!	Internal error occurred at the initiating E-RDS.	Turn the device OFF/ ON.

T-2-97

*1: [Hexadecimal]: indicates an error code returned from UGW.

[Error details in UGW]: indicates error details returned from UGW.

Updater

Functional Overview

Overview

Updater provides functions that enable network communication with Content Delivery System (hereinafter CDS) to install firmware, MEAP applications and system options.

- Firmware Installation**
 Updater function enables users to distribute firmware through CDS via Internet. Particularly on e-Maintenance/UGW (called NETEYE in Japan)-enabled devices, firmware can be updated remotely, which effectively slashes costs incurred in field services.
- MEAP Application/System Option Installation**
 By linking devices to CDS and License Management System (providing the function to manage licenses; hereinafter LMS), applications can be installed in devices via Updater, regardless of those not embedded (MEAP application) or embedded (system options) in devices.

Installing Firmware

With link to Updater, service technicians provide firmware install services in the following 3 methods.

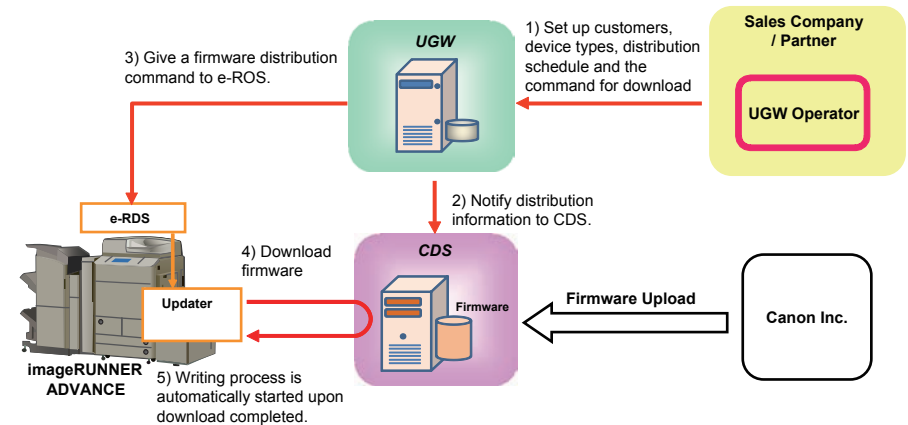
Distribution Method	Download Commanded by:	Update Timing	Downloadable Firmware Versions		
			Previous Ver	Current Ver	Newer Ver
a. UGW-linked Download / Update (Full-remote update)	UGW	Auto	No	Yes	Yes*1
b. UGW-linked Download (Remote Distribution / Update)	UGW	Manual	Yes	Yes	Yes
c. Manual Download / Update (On-site Update via Service mode)	Local UI	Auto	No	Yes	Yes*1
		Manual	Yes	Yes	Yes

*1: You can select the version allowed Remote Update.

T-2-98

a. UGW-linked Download and Update (Full-Remote Update)

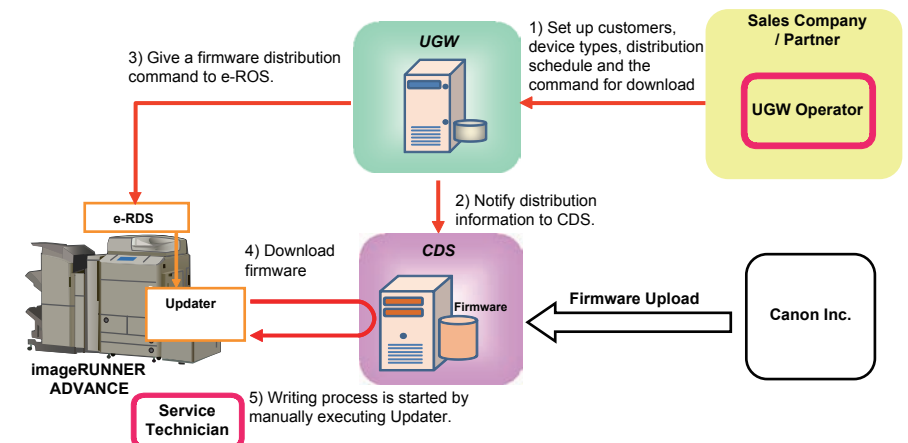
If the device is linked to UGW and the distribution schedule and update setting are registered on UGW in advance, full remote firmware update is available on an imageRUNNER ADVANCE-series device. Upon downloaded from CDS, the firmware is updated on the device.



F-2-570

b. UGW-linked Download (Remote Distribution / Update)

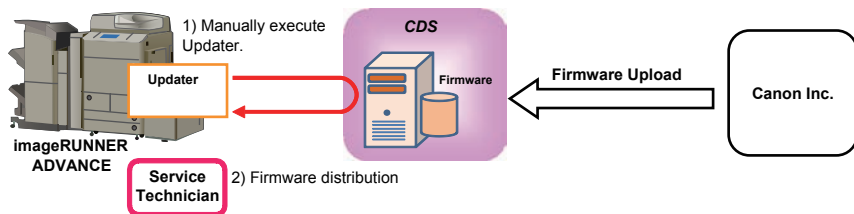
If the device is linked to UGW and the distribution schedule is registered on UGW in advance, firmware can be distributed to an imageRUNNER ADVANCE-series device before a service technician actually visits the customer site. This allows the service technician to update the firmware manually immediately after completing device inspection.



F-2-571

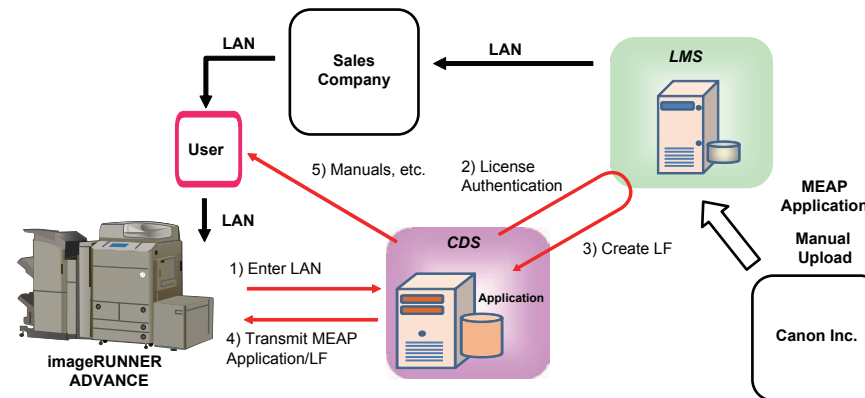
c. Manual Download and Update (On-site Update via Service Mode)

If an imageRUNNER ADVANCE-series device has connection with the external network, a service technician can gain access to CDS via Service mode to download and update firmware. This allows service technicians to update the firmware as needed on the customer site even without PCs.



F-2-572

Installing MEAP Application



If a customer enters LAN purchased from the sales company to an imageRUNNERADVANCE-series device, MEAP application/LF can be installed.

LAN: License Access Number
LF: License File
(DSN: Device Serial Number, automatically sent to CDS upon LAN entered.)

F-2-573

NOTE:

“External network” here means the network connecting the device to CDS via Internet.

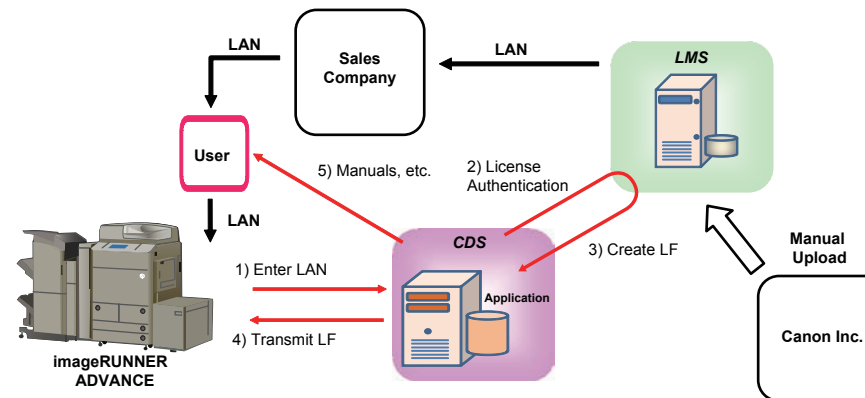
NOTE:

Users are able to gain firmware distribution in the following 3 methods by introducing CDS. See User Manual for detailed information.

Distribution Method	Download Commanded by	Update Timing	Downloadable Firmware Versions		
			Previous Ver	Current Ver	Newer Ver
Manual download/update via Local UI	Local UI	Auto	No	No	Yes *1
		Manual	No	No	Yes *1
Manual download/upload via Remote UI	Remote UI	Auto	No	No	Yes *1
		Manual	No	No	Yes *1
Special download/upload via Remote UI	Remote UI	-	Specific version only (Obtain it separately)		

*1: Only the latest version of Remote update-enabled version is downloadable.

Installing System Option



If a customer enters LAN purchased from the sales company to an imageRUNNERADVANCE-series device, a LF can be installed.

LAN: License Access Number
LF: License File
(DSN: Device Serial Number, automatically sent to CDS upon LAN entered.)

F-2-574

● Installing MEAP Application/System Option

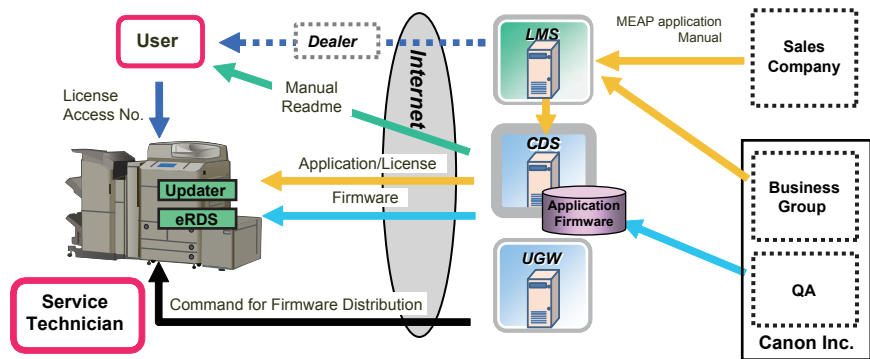
The following is the installation method of MEAP application/system option which is enabled by applying CDS.

a. LMS-linked MEAP Application/System Option Installation

If an imageRUNNER ADVANCE-series device is connected to the external network, user or service technician can gain access to CDS from User mode to install a MEAP application or a system option.

■ System Configuration

The figure below schematically shows the system configuration.



F-2-575

■ List of Functions

The matrix below shows the list of functions provided by Updater.

Category	Function	Service Mode	User Mode	Remote UI	UGW-linked
Firmware	Checking firmware compatibility	Yes	-	-	-
	Checking special firmware	Yes	-	-	-
	Checking latest firmware version	-	Yes	Yes	-
	Registering/deleting firmware distribution schedule	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
	Confirming and downloading firmware	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Updating downloaded firmware	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
	Cancelling downloaded firmware	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
	Acquiring firmware distribution information registered from UGW	-	-	-	Yes
	Notifying firmware version information	-	-	-	Yes
MEAP application/system option	Inquiring license for MEAP application/system option	-	Yes	Yes	-
	Installing MEAP application / system option	-	Yes	Yes	-
System Management	Settings	Yes	-	-	-
	Testing communications	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
	Displaying update logs	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
Internal system error notification	Displaying system logs	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
	Notifying internal system error occurrence to distribution server	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

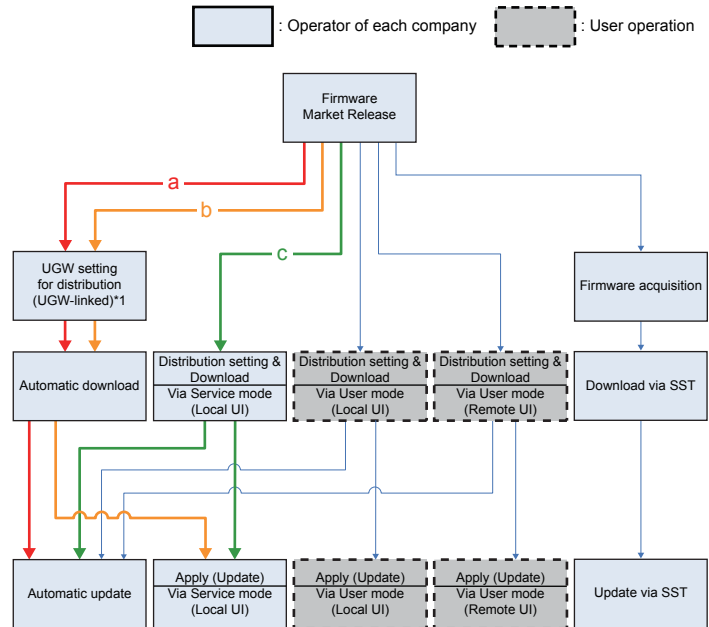
T-2-99

■ Distribution Flow

● Firmware Installation Flow

Service technicians provide firmware install services in the following 3 methods.

- a: UGW-linked download and update
- b: UGW-linked download
- c: Manual download and update

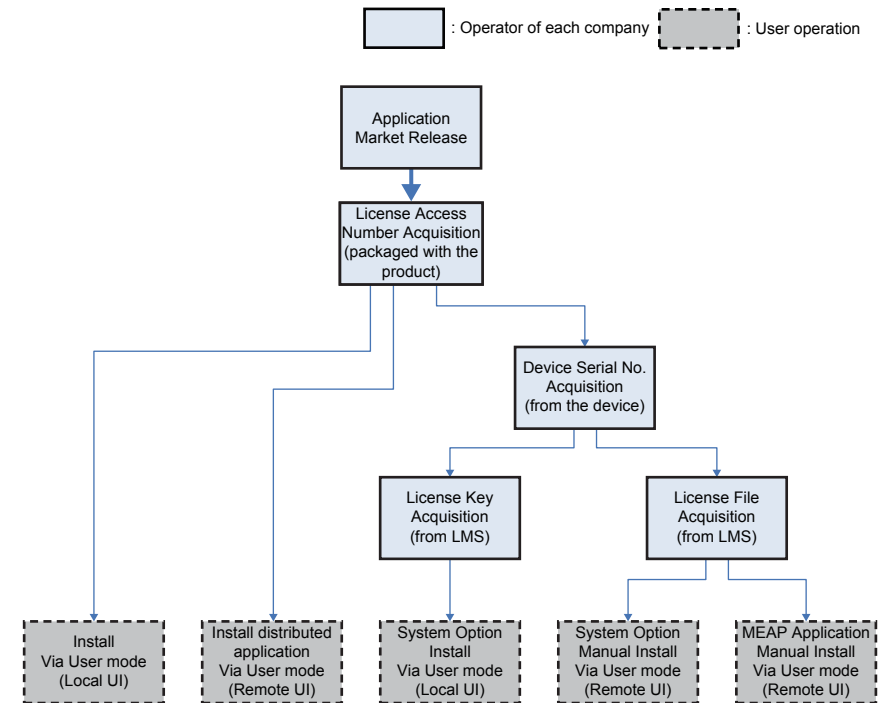


F-2-576

*1: Schedules for UGW-linked distribution are maintained on CDS.

● MEAP Application/System Option Installation Flow

MEAP application/system option installation method using service mode is not provided. Be sure to use the user mode to install.



F-2-577

Limitations and Cautions

■ Limitations

Changing Date/Time on Device

When a user changes the date/time setting on the device (including change of the setting according to daylight saving time), the firmware distribution may not be performed as scheduled.

But there is not the problem if it is time adjustment of several minutes with NTP servers.

Change of Setting from Service mode

Any settings from Service mode will be enabled after restarting the device.

■ Cautions

Concurrent use of Updater functions

Multiple users cannot use Updater functions on a device concurrently by using it together with Remote UI.

Coexistence of Remote UI and other tools

Users logged in SMS (Service Management Service) are unable to use Update functions from Remote UI.

Using Updater function from Remote UI

Upon the following operations done, Updater functions are suspended from Remote UI for certain duration.

- When a user exits Web browser without clicking [Portal] or [Log Out] button in the setting of Remote Login Service via SMS
- When a user exits Web browser without clicking [Portal] button in the setting of not to use Remote Login Service via SMS.
- When a user exits Web browser without clicking [Log out from SMS] or [To Remote UI] button.

Wait for EOJ (end of job) Function

Firmware update will be triggered only after the following jobs are completed.

This is the Updater-specific specification.

Job/Function type	Receiving	Printing	Queued print jobs	Sending	Queued send jobs
COPY	-	Wait for EOJ	Wait for EOJ	-	-
PRINT	Wait for EOJ (end of job)	Wait for EOJ Wait for EOJ	-	-	
FAX	Wait for EOJ	Wait for EOJ	Wait for EOJ	Wait for EOJ	Wait for EOJ
I-FAX Receipt	Cancel processing to trigger update *	Wait for EOJ	Wait for EOJ	Wait for EOJ	Wait for EOJ
Report Print	-	Wait for EOJ	Wait for EOJ	-	-
SEND	-	-	-	Cancel processing to trigger update *	Cancel processing to trigger update *

T-2-100

*The data are guaranteed even if cut off in the middle of a job. It becomes the recovery object after the device reboot and carry out send / reception again.

Even during transfer, Pull SCAN job processing is cancelled soon after scanning is completed.

Firmware update is cancelled if the jobs are not completed within 10 minutes. If this occurs, the error code, 8x001106, will be returned (different numbers will be shown for x depending on the execution modes).

Firmware update is executed if the jobs stated above are not in the queue.

Follow the shutdown sequence to reboot the device after the firmware is updated.

Preparation

Overview of Preparation

The following should be prepared before using Updater.

- For updating of firmware

Installation Method	Setting Sales Company's HQ	Network Settings	Enabling UGW Link	Enabling [Update Firmware] Button of User Mode	Enabling [Manual Update] Button of User Mode (Remote UI)
UGW-linked Download and Update	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-
UGW-linked Download	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-
Manual Download and Update	Yes	Yes	-	-	-
Manual Download and Update via Local UI	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	-
Manual Download and Update via Remote UI	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	-
Special Download and Update via Remote UI	Yes	-	-	-	Yes

T-2-101

- For Install of Application

Installation Method	Network Settings	Enabling [Install Application/Options] Button of User Mode
LMS-linked Installation	Yes	-
LMA-linked installation via Local UI	Yes	Yes
LMS-linked installation via Remote UI	Yes	Yes

T-2-102

Setting Sales Company's HQ

When using devices input in the markets listed below, the default setting of Sales Company's HQ should be changed before obtaining firmware distributed from CDS. Unless the setting is changed properly, the desired firmware may not be able to be selected.

Market	Default Setting of Sales Company's HQ	Setting of Sales Company's HQ after Change
Canada	US	CA
Latin America	US/SG	LA
Hong Kong	SG	HK

T-2-103

Go to the following screen to change the setting of Sales Company's HQ.

Service Technician	Setting of Device Service Mode (Level 1)	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CDS-CTL
--------------------	------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

NOTE:

The list below shows the setting of Sales Company's HQ for CDS-CTS by market. Check and adhere to the appropriate setting for your market.
<List of Sales Company's HQ and the settings for CDS-CTL>

Japan = JP	China = CN
USA = US	Hong Kong = HK
Singapore = SG	Australia = AU
Europe = NL	Canada = CA
Korea = KR	Latin America = LA

■ Network Settings

● Connecting to External Network

The method of connecting to external network is similar to a normal network connection method. Refer to user manual of the device for details.

NOTE:

- See User Manual for how to connect the device to the external network.
- Before using UGW link or User mode, see the sections below to prepare as required.
 - "Enabling UGW Link"
 - "Enabling [Update Firmware] Button of User Mode"
 - "Enabling [Install Application/Options] Button of User Mode"

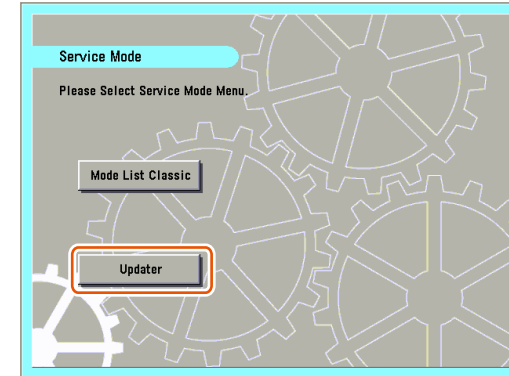
NOTE:

"External Network" here means the network connecting the device to CDS via Internet.

● Confirming URL Setting of Distribution Server

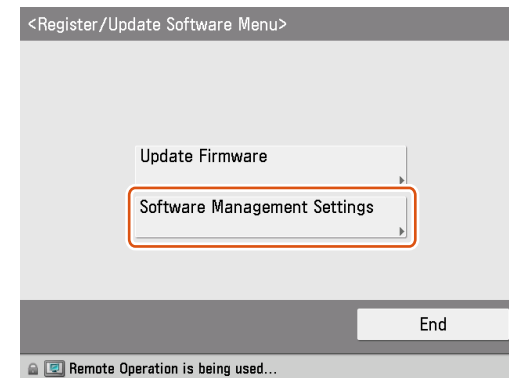
This section describes how to confirm the URL setting of the distribution server.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Press [Updater] button.



F-2-578

3. Press [Software Management Settings] button.



F-2-579

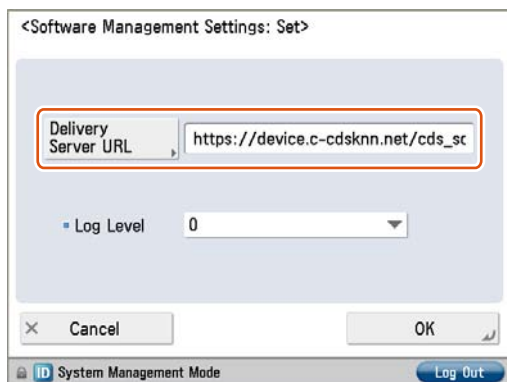
4. Press [Settings] button.



F-2-580

5. Ensure to enter “https://device.c-cdsknn.net/cds_soap/updaterif” in the field beside the [Delivery Server URL] button.

If the URL is not entered or a wrong URL is entered in the field, click [Delivery Server URL] button to show the virtual keypad. Check the URL and enter the correct one.



F-2-581

6. Press [OK] to set the entered items. Now the URL of the distribution server is successfully set.

• Communication Test

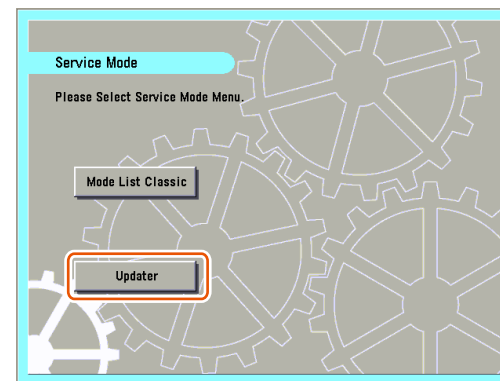
This section describes how to check if the communication is normally done to the distribution server and/or the file server.

NOTE:

Carry out the communication test with both Embedded RDS and CDS.

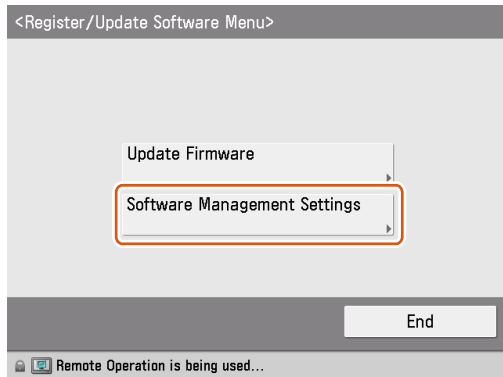
1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.

2. Press [Updater] button.



F-2-582

3. Press [Software Management Settings] button.



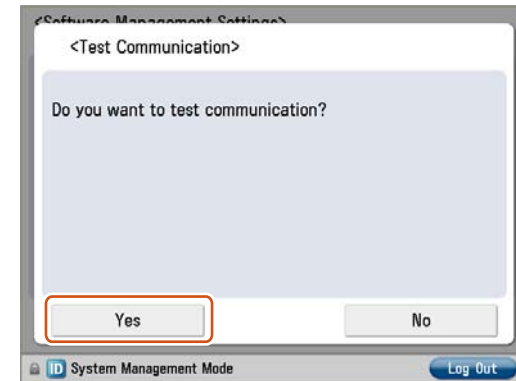
F-2-583

4. Press [Test Communication] button.



F-2-584

5. Press [Yes] button.

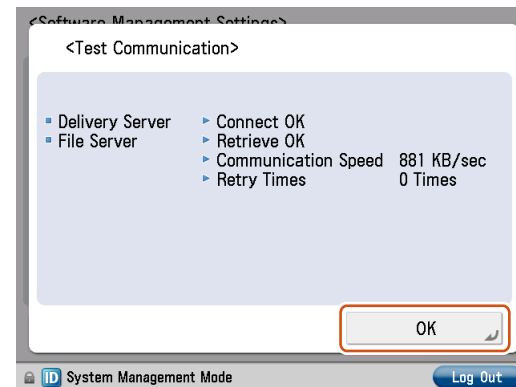


F-2-585

Obtain the download file information for communication test from the distribution server (to execute the communication test to the distribution server).

Using the download file information for communication test, the contents for test are downloaded from the file server (for the communication test to the file server).

6. Upon the communication test completed, the communication test result screen is shown. Press [OK] button to exit this operation.



F-2-586

■ Enabling UGW Link

When installing the firmware in the method of “UGW-linked Download and Update” or “UGW-linked Download”, the following should be set before actually using UGW link.

Service Technician	Setting of Device Service Mode (Level 1)	COPIER >OPTION >FNC-SW >CDS-UGW (0 -> 1)
	Setting of UGW WebPortal	In [Customer Management] screen, set [Do not distribute firmware] to [Distribute firmware].
Sales Company's HQ	Setting of Authorities on UGW WebPortal	See "Analysis>Firmware Distribution Information" to grant the appropriate authorities to each account.

NOTE:

- See “imageWARE Remote Operator's Manual / e-Maintenance Business Operation Manual” for how to operate UGW WebPortal.
- [Distribute Firmware] should be set on [Customer Management] screen for staff in charge of setting for [Enter customer information] or [Command for firmware distribution] in order to allow them to select the desired device on [Firmware Distribution Information] screen.
- If [Distribute Firmware] is not shown on [Customer Management] screen of UGW WebPortal, appropriate authorities may not be set to each account in Firmware Distribution Information. Contact the Sales Company HQ concerned for confirmation.

■ Enabling [Update Firmware] Button of User Mode

To allow users to install firmware using Updater, the setting of firmware installation should be set to ON for users in advance.

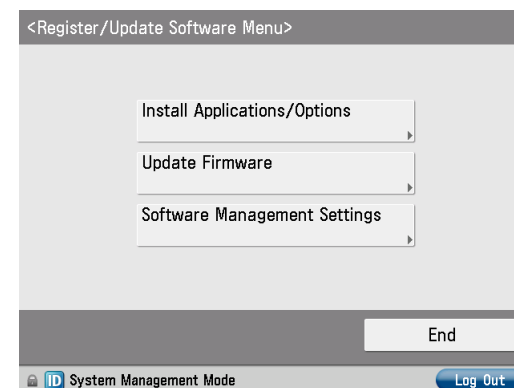
Service Technician	Setting of Device Service Mode (Level 1)	COPIER >OPTION >FNC-SW >CDS-FIRM (0 -> 1)
--------------------	------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------

- User Mode screen for Updater when the setting is not enabled (CDS-FIRM(0)):



F-2-587

- User Mode screen for Updater when the setting is enabled (CDS-FIRM(1)):



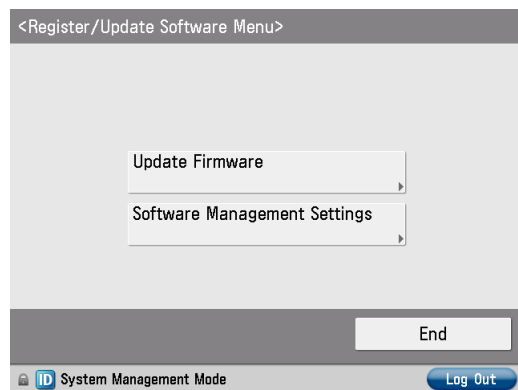
F-2-588

■ Enabling [Install Application/Options] Button of User Mode

To allow users to install applications using Updater, the setting of application installation should be set to ON for users in advance.

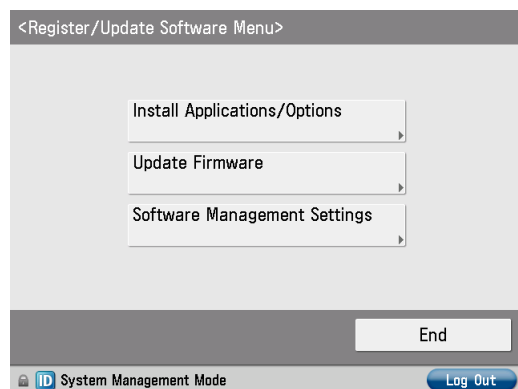
Service Technician	Setting of Device Service Mode (Level 1)	COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CDS-MEAP (0 -> 1)
--------------------	------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------

- User Mode screen of Updater when the setting is not enabled (CDS-MEAP(0)):



F-2-589

- User Mode screen of Updater when the setting is enabled (CDS-MEAP(1)):



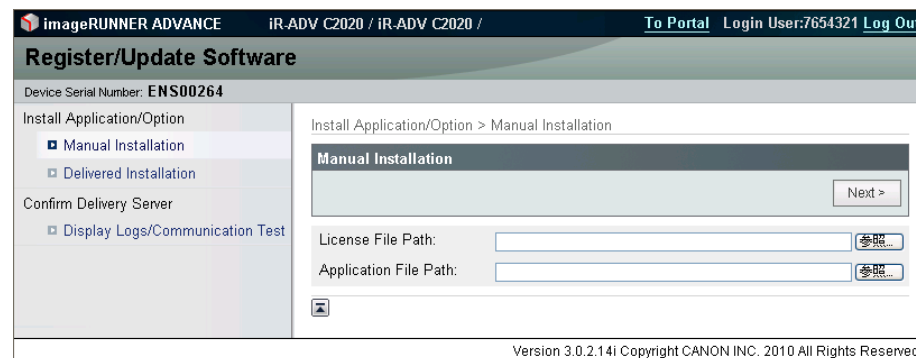
F-2-590

■ Enabling [Manual Update] Button of User Mode (Remote UI)

To allow users to install firmware from Updater using the file on Local PCs, the setting of firmware installation should be set to ON for users in advance.

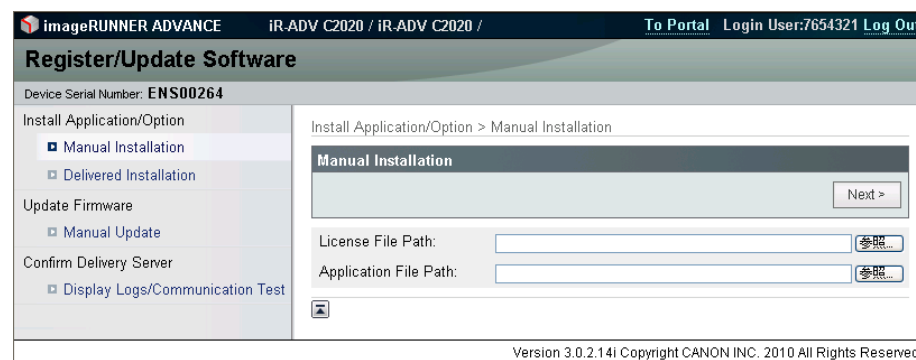
Service Technician	Setting of Device Service Mode (Level 1)	COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > LOCLFIRM (0 -> 1)
--------------------	------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------

- Remote UI screen of Updater when the setting is not enabled (LOCLFIRM (0)):



F-2-591

- Remote UI screen of Updater when the setting is enabled (LOCLFIRM (1)):



F-2-592

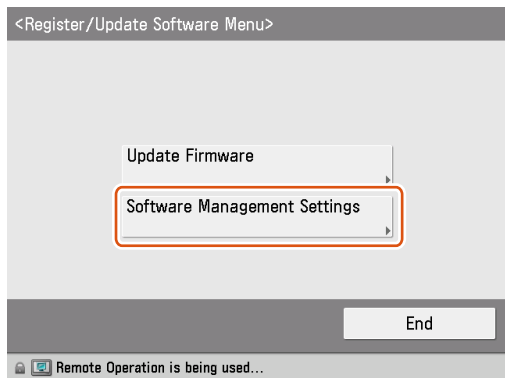
System Management Operations

Various Setting

Setting URL of Distribution Server

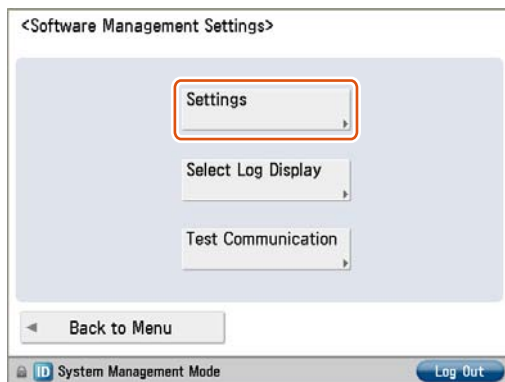
This section describes how to set URL of the distribution server.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Press [Updater] button.
3. Press [Software Management Settings] button.



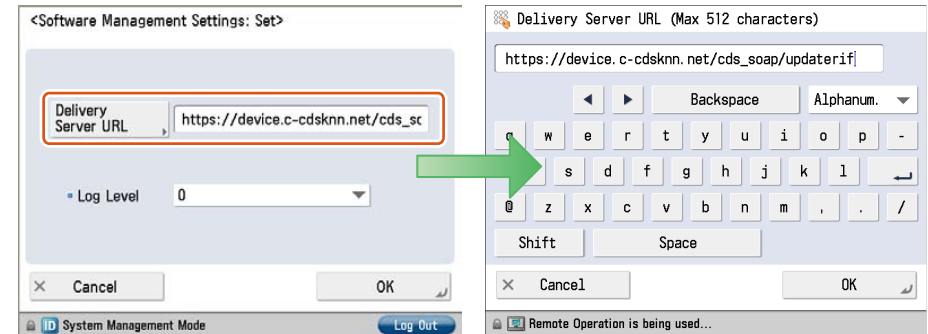
F-2-593

4. Press [Settings] button.



F-2-594

5. Press [Delivery Server URL] to show the virtual keypad. Enter the URL.



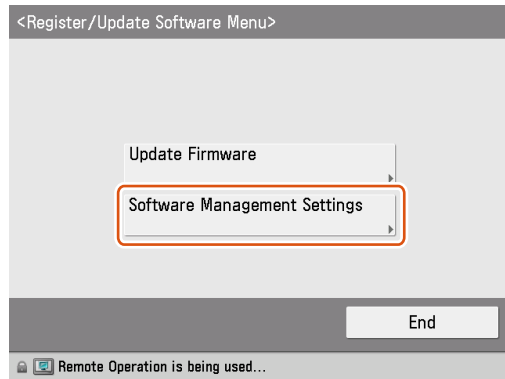
F-2-595

- [Delivery Server URL]:
Enter the "https://device.c-cdsknn.net/cds_soap/updaterif".
6. Press [OK] to set the entered items. Now the URL of the distribution server is successfully set.

● Setting Log Level

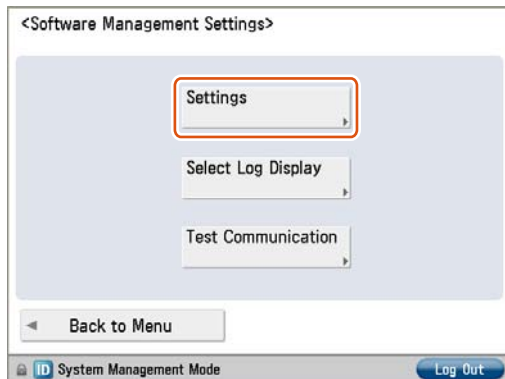
This section describes how to set system log levels.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Press [Updater] button.
3. Press [Software Management Settings] button.



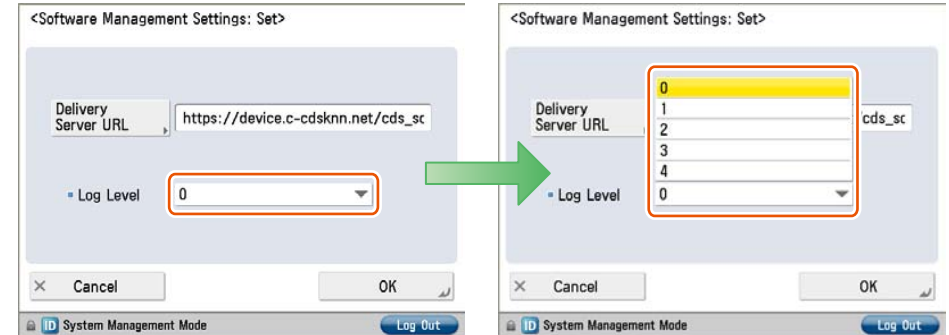
F-2-596

4. Press [Settings] button.



F-2-597

5. Select a log level from [Log Level] dropdown list.



F-2-598

- [Log Level]:
Select one of 5 levels ranging from [0] to [4].
See the table below for logs output in each level.

Log Level	Log Output				
	Trace	Information	Important Message	Ordinary Error	System Error
0	-	-	-	-	Yes
1	-	-	-	Yes	Yes
2	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
3	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

T-2-104

NOTE:

This list shows the contents of the Log Output.

Log Output	Description
Trace	Detailed logs for debug
Information	Logs related to operations done on the system
Important Message	Update logs output by firmware type Installation logs by MEAP application Logs related to enabled functions by system option
Ordinary Error	Logs for ordinary errors
System Error	Logs for internal system errors

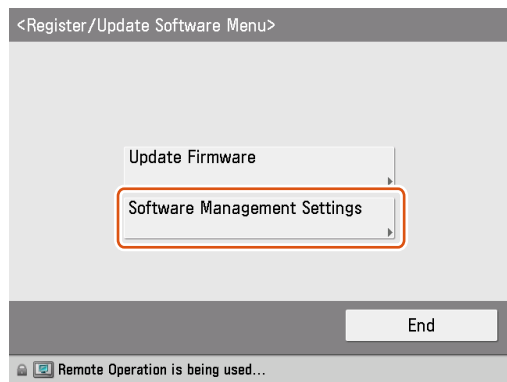
6. Press [OK] button to set the selected log level. Now the log level is successfully set.

■ Displaying Logs

● Update Logs

This section describes how to confirm System Option/MEAP Application Installation Logs and Firmware Update Logs.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Press [Updater] button.
3. Press [Software Management Settings] button.



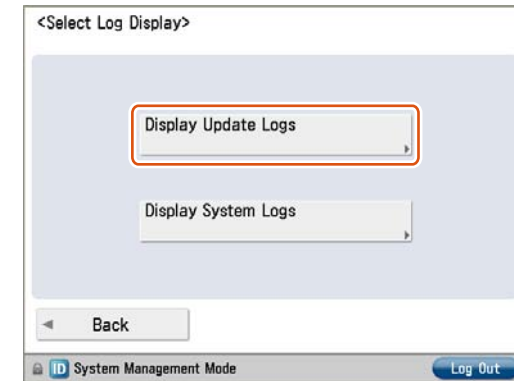
F-2-599

4. Press [Select Log Display] button.



F-2-600

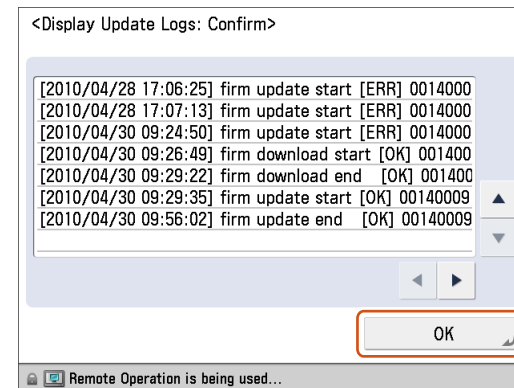
5. Press [Display Update Logs] button.



F-2-601

6. System Option/MEAP Application Installation Logs and Firmware Update Logs are shown.

Press [OK] button to exit this operation.

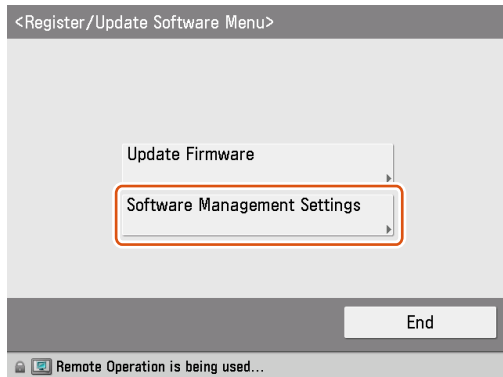


F-2-602

System Logs

This section describes how to confirm System Logs.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Press [Updater] button.
3. Press [Software Management Settings] button.



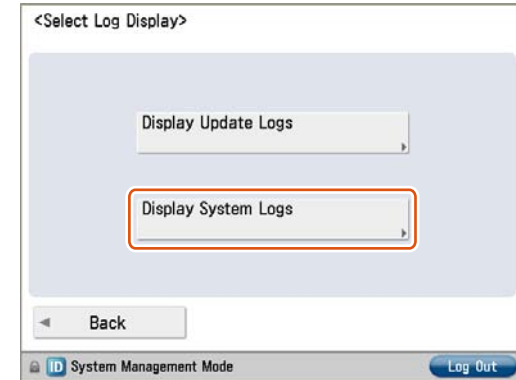
F-2-603

4. Press [Select Log Display] button.



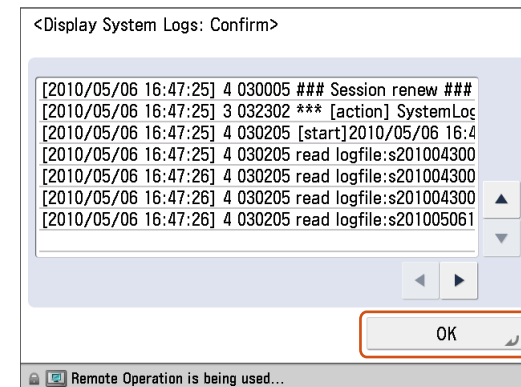
F-2-604

5. Press [Display System Logs] button.



F-2-605

6. Updater internal logs are displayed.
Press [OK] button to exit this operation



F-2-606

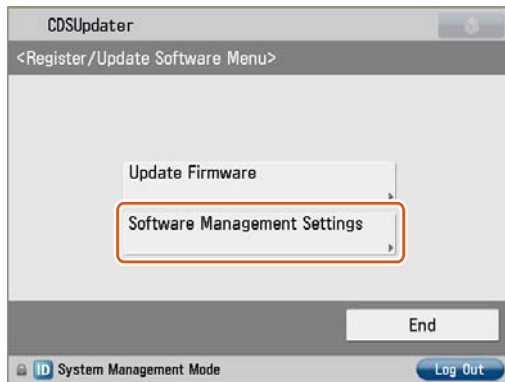
NOTE:

See the section of "Debug Logs" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual for more detailed information.

• Communication Test

This section describes how to check if the communication is normally done to the distribution server and/or the file server.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Press [Updater] button.
3. Press [Software Management Settings] button.



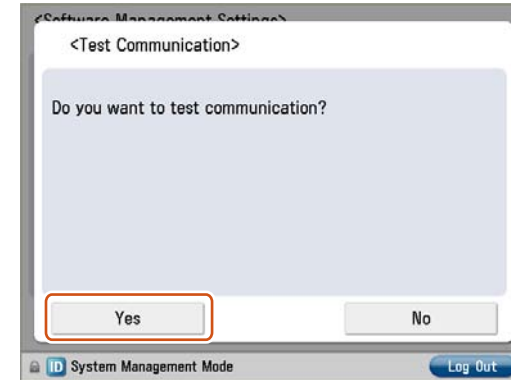
F-2-607

4. Press [Test Communication] button.



F-2-608

5. Press [Yes] button.

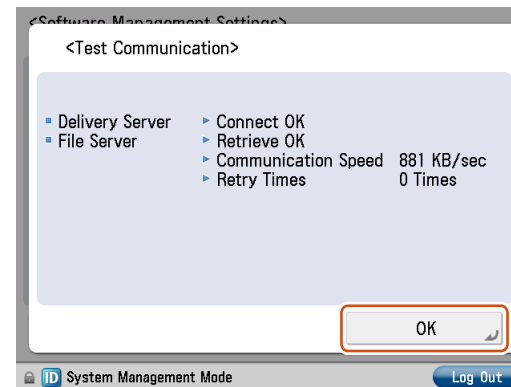


F-2-609

Obtain the download file information for communication test from the distribution server (to execute the communication test to the distribution server).

Using the download file information for communication test, the contents for test are downloaded from the file server (for the communication test to the file server).

6. Upon the communication test completed, the communication test result screen is shown. Press [OK] button to exit this operation.



F-2-610

NOTE:
Carry out the communication test with both Embedded RDS and CDS.

Maintenance

■ Upgrading Updater

The firmware installed in the device should be also upgraded when upgrading Updater. See the section of "Version Upgrade", Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual for more detailed information.

■ Formatting Hard Disk

Since Updater is a MEAP application, its contents can be temporarily saved in the MEAP application storage area on PC via SST during formatting or replacing HDD. See MEAP Service Manual for further information.

The settings initialized in format or replacement should be restored. See the section of "Preparation", "Updater" of Chapter 2 "Technology" of this manual for more detailed information.

NOTE:

When formatting or replacing HDD, distribution schedule, downloaded firmware (not updated yet) and logs (update/system logs) will be deleted.

■ How to Replace Controller Boards

The steps are different depending on which of 2 controller boards are to be replaced.

- Main Controller Board PCB 1

No steps follow.

- Main Controller Board PCB 2 (including SRAM)

The network and service mode setting should be set again after initialization. See the section of "Preparation", "Updater" of Chapter 2 "Technology" of this manual for more detailed information.

■ How to Replace Devices

All settings should be set again because no data are inherited. See the section of "Preparation", "Updater" of Chapter 2 "Technology" of this manual for more detailed information.



FAQ

FAQ on Installing Firmware

No.1

Q: Is it also possible to downgrade firmware with using CDS?

A: Firmware can be downgraded in some methods shown in the table below.

If download and update are performed consecutively, firmware can't be downgraded.

Distribution Method	Downgrade Possibility
UGW-linked Download and Update	No
UGW-linked Download	Yes
Manual Download and Update(Timing to Apply : Manual)	Yes
Manual Download and Update(Timing to Apply : Automatic)	No

T-2-105

No.2

Q: When installing firmware, does it take less time in "manual download and update" compared to "update via SST"?

A: It depends on the number of devices to update firmware.

When updating the firmware on a device, it takes more time in "manual download and update" compared to "update via SST" (It depend on network environment.).

As for the time to update firmware to multiple devices, "manual download and update" takes less time compared to "update via SST" because updating the firmware to multiple devices can be executed simultaneously.

No.3

Q: How can we confirm that the firmware is properly updated after "UGW-linked download and update" done?

A: You can confirm this in E-mail or the Device List on UGW-linked screen.

E-mail to notify firmware update will be sent from CDS server to the addresses set as destinations at the time of distribution setting to notify update completion.

On UGW-linked screen, search the device of your interest on [Select Device] screen to find the distribution status per device as shown in the search result.

No.4

Q: In the course of "UGW-linked download", what will happen if the user downloads the firmware before the service technician update the firmware downloaded with "UGW-linked download" before?

A: The previously downloaded firmware in the method of "UGW-linked download" will be overridden by the subsequently downloaded one.

This is because only one downloaded firmware can be held on the device.

The firmware downloaded in the method of "Service mode-linked download" and "UGW-linked download" can be checked/deleted from User mode, but cannot be updated, so it cannot be updated by the user unnoticed by the service technician.

No.5

Q: What happens if the user registers another distribution schedule when the distribution schedule has been set in "manual download and update"?

A: The distribution schedule subsequently registered by the user will override the existing schedule. This is because only one distribution schedule can be held. Any existing distribution schedule is deleted and the newly registered distribution schedule is made valid.

No.6

Q: How is an individual response edition of firmware distributed?

A: Any individual response edition of firmware can be installed in all the methods provided by service technicians. Before installing the individual response edition, ensure to obtain the ID and password separately.

No.7

Q: If the device is down during firmware update, can the device be started using the older firmware version?

A: No, it is impossible to start the device using older versions. If this occurs, the service technician in charge should reinstall the firmware via SST. See the section of "Troubleshooting on Firmware Installation" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual for more detailed information.

No.8

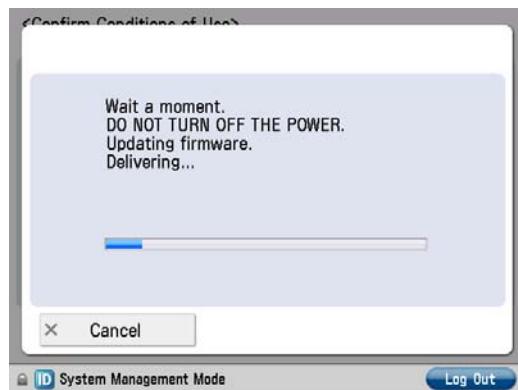
Q: If the device is down during firmware download, is it possible to download the firmware again?

A: Firmware cannot be downloaded again automatically. Instead, the error is notified in E-mail. The user should register the firmware distribution schedule again accordingly.

No.9

Q: Can we cancel the operation during firmware download?

A: Yes. [Cancel] button is shown.



F-2-611

No.10

Q: E-mail is sent to users to notify update completion. Can service technicians also receive such a notification?

A: Yes. The notification E-mail is also set for the service technician in charge if the user enters his/her E-mail address at the time of firmware distribution setting.

Multiple E-mail addresses can be entered in the field. Delimit each E-mail address with “,” (comma) or “;” (semicolon) when you enter multiple E-mail addresses in the field.

No.11

Q: How long does the firmware update take?

A: Approx. 30 min. However, this does not include the download time. Download time relies on the network environment.

FAQ on Installing MEAP Application/System Option

No.1

Q: What happens if a MEAP application is installed in the system with insufficient HDD free space?

A: An error message is shown. Upon starting installation, the MEAP application checks the required space against free space to judge installation availability.

No.2

Q: Can we cancel the operation during installation of MEAP application?

A: Yes: [Cancel] button is shown.

No.3

Q: Is the device automatically restarted after the system option is enabled?

A: The device is not automatically restarted. Users should restart the device manually.

FAQ on General Matters of Updater

No.1

Q: What preparation is needed in each installation method?

A: See the table below for preparation required in each installation method.

- For updating firmware

Installation Method	Setting Sales Company's HQ	Network Settings	Enabling UGW Link	Enabling [Update Firmware] Button of User Mode	Enabling [Manual Update] Button of User Mode (Remote UI)
UGW-linked Download and Update	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-
UGW-linked Download	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-
Manual Download and Update	Yes	Yes	-	-	-
Manual Download and Update via Local UI	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	-
Manual Download and Update via Remote UI	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	-
Special Download and Update via Remote UI	Yes	-	-	-	Yes

T-2-106

- For install Application

Installation Method	Network Settings	Enabling [Install Application/Options] Button of User Mode
LMS-linked Installation	Yes	-
LMA-linked installation via Local UI	Yes	Yes
LMS-linked installation via Remote UI	Yes	Yes

T-2-107

No.2

Q: How can operations using Updater be masked on the users' side?

A: Be sure to perform the following from the service mode.

- Masking Firmware Installation

Setting Device Service Mode (Level 1)	COPIER >OPTION >FNC-SW >CDS-FIRM (1 -> 0)
Setting Device Service Mode (Level 1)	COPIER >OPTION >FNC-SW >LOCLFIRM (1 -> 0)

- Masking Application Installation

Setting Device Service Mode (Level 1)	COPIER >OPTION >FNC-SW >CDS-MEAP (1 -> 0)
---------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------

No.3

Q: Can the communication be cancelled during the communication test?

A: Yes. During the communication test, "Cancel" button is displayed.

DCM

DCM

Overview

DCM (Device Configuration Management) is a function to migrate the setting values (of user mode and service mode). In terms of the description in the User's Guide, it is synonymous with "Import/Export All". Service mode setting values can be backed up/restored from the top screen of service mode.

By the conventional method for backing up SRAM of the Main Controller 2, data could be backed up/restored only for the same machine. DCM supports the following 3 patterns.

- The same machine (backup for the purpose of providing against emergency)
- A different machine of the same model (setting values are migrated collectively to multiple machines when replacing a host machine)
- A different model (e.g.: the setting values are copied from an old model to a new model)

Where data is stored

Store the backup data in the following location.

- Remote UI > PC (RUI)
- iW EMC > iW EMC Server
- Service Mode > USB memory device/HDD of the machine (top screen of service mode)

Setting values that can be backed up

The values changed by the user under [Settings/Registration] and those specified in service mode can be backed up.

Only setting values are backed up. Image data such as scanned image cannot be backed up.

- [Settings/Registration] value that a user set.
- Service mode setting values

General limitations on DCM

- With DCM, stored data, MEAP application, and system option license cannot be migrated.
- A .dcm file exported to the internal HDD is not deleted even when the machine is restarted. Only 2 files at a maximum are stored in HDD. When there are more than 2 files, the old .dcm files are deleted from the oldest.
- Continuous import is not guaranteed. After importing a file, the machine must be restarted. If executing import without restart, NG is displayed and a file is not imported.
- When importing DCM file in service mode and user mode separately, perform it in the following procedures.

- 1) Perform the import of the DCM data of the service mode earlier.
- 2) Reboot the Host machine.
- 3) Import the DCM data of the user mode.

- As for service mode, if the process is not completed within 5 minutes in the case of export and 15 minutes in the case of import, the item performed at that time is continued until it ends, but the final result becomes ERROR.
- Data to which no password is set when exporting service mode cannot be loaded from collective import from RUI. When assuming to perform collective import from RUI, password must be set to data to be exported.
- Following limitations are applied to password for DCM data:
 - Character string of software keyboard: 0 to 32 characters
 - No password is set when 0 character is entered. (The setting in which no password is set is allowed only for service mode.)
 - No space is allowed in the middle of a password.
 - Password is case sensitive.
- At the time of following setting, Host machine does not recognize USB memory. The DCM function is not usable, too.
 - Settings/Registration > Preferences > External Interface > USB Settings > Use MEAP Driver for External USB Device = On

Restrictions about import/export by Remote UI

- An import/export process ends with error while the following specific job is executed;
 - Send job,
 - Forwarding job,
 - FAX reception job,
 - IFAX reception job
- Flash Model : Print job (PDL/Copy) and the DCM function become the exclusion.
- HDD Model : If this function is executed with a print job simultaneously, it affects the operation such as; UI is locked, or a print job is cleared by reboot after import. So it requires careful operation.
- A device rejects an import/ export request during shut-down.
- If this function is executed with device information distribution or RUI import/ export (conventional function) simultaneously, the first coming job takes priority and they are controlled exclusively.
- If this function is executed with a firmware update by a CDS Updater simultaneously, a firmware update process takes priority, and this function is stopped temporarily by reboot.
- When error code is issued, this function ends with error.
- If the display language differs between export and import, a setting value of a text corrupts

in some cases. The character corruption can be solved by changing the display language to the appropriate one.

● Import/Export All from Remote UI

The following settings information is available with the Import function in each case

- Settings/Registration Basic Information
- Box Settings
- Department ID Management Settings
- Main Menu Settings
- Favorite Settings
- Address Book
- Forwarding Settings
- Quick Menu Settings
- Paper Type Management Settings
- Web Access Settings
- MEAP Application Setting Information
- User Setting Information
- Workflow Composer
- Service Mode Settings(Display/hide of the service mode settings on the export screen)

The screenshot shows the 'Settings/Registration' page in the imageRUNNER ADVANCE web interface. The left sidebar contains a tree view of settings categories, with 'Data Management' selected under 'Management Settings'. The main content area is titled 'Settings/Registration : Management Settings : Data Management > Export'. It features an 'Export' section with instructions and a 'Start Exporting' button. Below this is an 'Export Settings' section with a 'Select Items to Export' list containing various settings categories, each with a checkbox.

F-2-612

Note:

Display/hide of the service mode settings on RUI can be switched by changing the setting in the following service mode.

Service mode L1 > Copier > Option > USER > SMD-EXPT

[0]: Hide the service mode settings. (Def.)

[1]: Display the service mode settings.

Collective Import Using Data Collectively Exported from RUI

For the reason of security, it is not appropriate that the user mode can be exported from service mode without user's permission. Because of that, it cannot be exported due to the specification. However, it is possible to import the setting values of user mode exported from RUI.

Preparation

- PC and web browser
- USB memory device to store the data of reference machine

Overall flow

1. Complete the device setting as a reference machine.
2. Export the data of reference machine including service mode from RUI.
3. Copy the data to the root of the USB memory device using a PC.
4. Connect the USB memory device to the copy destination machine.
5. Execute import by specifying the target files from RESTORE in service mode.

The following cases may be possible for the Import All function.

Case A: Importing all to your machine (Restoring the settings information to your machine for backups)

Case B: Importing all to the same model machine.

Case C: Importing all to the different model machine that supports the Import All function

Setting Information		Case A	Case B	Case C	
Settings/ Registration Basic Information	Preferences				
	Paper Settings	Paper Settings	Yes	Yes	No
		Register Custom Size	Yes	Yes	No
	Display Settings	Default Screen after Startup/Restoration	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Default Screen (Status Monitor/Cancel)	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Display Fax Function	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Store Location Display Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Language/Keyboard Switch On/Off	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Language/Keyboard Switch	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Use Keyboard Shift Lock Feature	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Display Remaining Paper Message	Yes	Yes	Yes
		No. of Copies/Job Duration Status	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Display Original Scanning Cleaning Area	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Paper Type Selection Screen Priority	Yes	Yes	Yes
		mm/Inch Entry Switch	Yes	Yes	Yes
		ID/User Name Display On/Off	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Display Remaining Toner Error Message	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Preferences				
	Timer/Energy Settings	Date/Time Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Time Format	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Quick Startup Settings for Main Power	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Auto Reset Time	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Restrict Auto Reset Time	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Function After Auto Reset	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Auto Sleep Time	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Sleep Mode Energy Use	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Auto Sleep Weekly Timer	Yes	Yes	Yes
Sleep Mode Exit Time Settings		Yes	Yes	Yes	
Preferences					
Network	Confirm Network Connection Set. Changes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	TCP/IP Settings				

Setting Information			Case	Case	Case
			A	B	C
Settings/ Registration Basic Information	IPv4 Settings	Use IPv4	Yes	Yes	Yes
		IP Address Settings			
		IP Address	Yes	No	No
		Subnet Mask	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Gateway Address	Yes	Yes	Yes
		DHCP	Yes	Yes	Yes
		RARP	Yes	Yes	Yes
		BOOTP	Yes	Yes	Yes
		DHCP Option Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
	IPv6 Settings	Use IPv6	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Stateless Address Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Manual Address Settings	Yes	No	No
		Use DHCPv6	Yes	Yes	Yes
	DNS Settings	DNS Server Address Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
		DNS Host/Domain Name Settings	Yes	No	No
		DNS Dynamic Update Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
	WINS Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	LPD Print Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	RAW Print Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	SNTP Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	FTP Print Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	WSD Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Use FTP PASV Mode	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Multicast Discovery Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Use HTTP	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Use WebDAV Server	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Proxy Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	NetWare Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	AppleTalk Settings	Yes	No	No	
	SMB Server Settings	Yes	No	No	
	SNMP Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Dedicated Port Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Use Spool Function	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Startup Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	

Setting Information			Case	Case	Case
			A	B	C
Settings/ Registration Basic Information	Ethernet Driver Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
		Firewall Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Preferences				
	External Interface	USB Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Accessibility	Key Repetition Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Reversed Display (Color)	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Adjustment/Maintenance				
	Adjust Image Quality	Correct Density	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Full Color Printing Vividness Settings	Yes	No	No
		Fine Adjust Zoom	Yes	No	No
	Function Settings				
	Common	Paper Feed Settings	Yes	Yes	No
		Print Settings			
		Text/Photo Priority When ACS Is Set to Black	Yes	Yes	No
		Output Report Default Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Register Characters for Page No./Watermark	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Secure Watermark/Document Scan Lock	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Scan Settings				
		Streak Prevention	Yes	Yes	No
		Feeder Black Scan Speed/Image Quality Priority	Yes	Yes	No
		LTRR/STMT Original Selection	Yes	Yes	No
		Remote Scan Gamma Value	Yes	Yes	No
		Auto Online	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Auto Offline	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Generate File				
		High Compression Image Quality Level	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Compact PDF Settings for Text Original	Yes	Yes	Yes
		OCR (Text Searchable) Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Trace & Smooth Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
		OOXML Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Include Background Images in Word File	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Specify Minimum PDF Version	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Format PDF to PDF/A	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Optimize PDF for Web	Yes	Yes	Yes
		256-bit AES Settings for Encrypted PDF	Yes	Yes	Yes

Setting Information		Case		
		A	B	C
Settings/ Registration Basic Information	Document Scan Lock Operational Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Set Authentication Method	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Function Settings			
Copy	Auto Collate	Yes	Yes	No
	Auto Orientation	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Select Color Settings for Copy	Yes	Yes	Yes
Send	Common Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
	E-Mail/Fax Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Fax Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
Receive/Forward	Common Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Fax Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
Store/Access Files	Network Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Memory Media Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
Secure Print	Simple Authentication Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Only Allow Encrypted Print Jobs	Yes	Yes	Yes
Set Destination				
Change Default Display of Address Book		Yes	Yes	Yes
Address Book PIN		Yes	Yes	Yes
Manage Address Book Access Numbers		Yes	Yes	Yes
Include Pswd. When Exporting Address Book		Yes	Yes	Yes
Register LDAP Server		Yes	Yes	No
Auto Search When Using LDAP Server		Yes	Yes	Yes
Register/Edit LDAP Search Conditions		Yes	Yes	No
Acquire Remote Address Book	Acquire Address Book	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Remote Address Book Server Address	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Communication Timeout	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Fax TX Line Auto Select Adjustment	Yes	Yes	Yes
Make Remote Address Book Open	Make Address Book Open	Yes	Yes	Yes
Management Settings				
Device Management	Device Information Settings	Yes	No	No
	Device Information Delivery Settings			
	Register Destinations	Yes	Yes	No

Setting Information		Case			
		A	B	C	
Settings/ Registration Basic Information	Set Auto Delivery	Yes	Yes	No	
	Restrict Receiving Device Information	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Restrict Receiving for Each Function	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Report Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Display Job Status Before Authentication	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Display Log	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Format Encryption Method to FIPS 140-2	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Data Management	Back Up/Restore Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Delete Existing Data Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Box Settings	Function Settings				
	Receive/Forward	Set/Register Confidential Fax Inboxes	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Memory RX Inbox PIN	Yes	Yes	Yes
Department ID management Settings	Management Settings				
	User Management	System Manager Information Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Department ID Management			
	Register PIN	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Main Menu Settings	Main Menu Settings				
	Setting File	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Favorite Settings	Function Settings				
	Copy	Register/Edit Favorite Settings	Yes	Yes	No
		Change Default Settings	Yes	Yes	No
		Register Options Shortcuts (Regular Copy)	Yes	Yes	No
		Register Options Shortcuts (Express Copy)	Yes	Yes	No
	Send	Common Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
		Fax Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Store/Access Files	Common Settings	Yes	Yes	No
	Copy Basic Features Screen				
	Color Balance (Options)		Yes	Yes	No
Address Book	Set Destination				
	Register Destinations	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Rename Address List	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Register One-Touch	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Forwarding Settings	Function Settings				
	Receive/Forward	Common Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
Quick Menu Settings	Quick Menu Settings				
	Button File	Yes	Yes	No	

Setting Information		Case A	Case B	Case C	
MEAP Application Setting Information	iW Function Flow				
	Flow Data File	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	Operation Setting File	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	MEAP User Setting Information				
	Data	Yes	Yes	Yes	
	MEAP Application Setting Information				
Paper Type Management Settings	Preferences				
	Paper Settings	Paper Type Management Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes
Web Access Settings*	Web Access Settings				
	Favorites		Yes	Yes	Yes
	Settings		Yes	Yes	Yes

T-2-108

Service mode setting values that can be backed up by DCM

The numbers shown in the Compatibility level are explained in the table below.

Compatibility level (Lv)	Description
Case A	Can import to a device of the same model and same SN only. Usable for the purpose of backup/restore.
Case B	Can import to a device of a same model.
Case C	Can import to a device of a different model also.

T-2-109

Service Mode

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	ADJUST	ADJ-XY	ADJ-X	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	ADJ-XY	ADJ-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	ADJ-XY	ADJ-S	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	ADJ-XY	ADJ-Y-DF	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	ADJ-XY	STRD-POS	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	ADJ-XY	ADJ-X-MG	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	BLANK	BLANK-T	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	BLANK	BLANK-L	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	BLANK	BLANK-R	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	BLANK	BLANK-B	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	W-PLT-X	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	W-PLT-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	W-PLT-Z	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	100-RG	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	100-GB	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	DFTAR-R	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	DFTAR-G	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-M1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-M2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-M3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-M4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-M5	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-M6	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-M7	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-M8	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-M9	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-S1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-S2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-S3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-S4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-S5	Yes	No	No

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-S6	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-S7	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-S8	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	MTF2-S9	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	CCD	CCD-CHNG	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	ADJ-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	ADJ-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	ADJ-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	ADJ-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	OFST-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	OFST-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	OFST-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	OFST-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	LD-OFS-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	LD-OFS-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	LD-OFS-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	LD-OFS-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	MD-OFS-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	MD-OFS-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	MD-OFS-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	MD-OFS-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	HD-OFS-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	HD-OFS-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	HD-OFS-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	HD-OFS-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PL-OFS-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PL-OFS-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PL-OFS-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PL-OFS-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PM-OFS-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PM-OFS-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PM-OFS-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PM-OFS-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PH-OFS-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PH-OFS-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PH-OFS-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	COLOR	PH-OFS-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	SGNL-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	SGNL-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	SGNL-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	SGNL-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	HLMT-PTY	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	HLMT-PTM	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	HLMT-PTC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	LLMT-PTY	Yes	No	No

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	LLMT-PTM	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	LLMT-PTC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	T-SPLY-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	T-SPLY-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	T-SPLY-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	T-SPLY-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	DMAX-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	DMAX-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	DMAX-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	P-TG-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	P-TG-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	P-TG-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	P-TG-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	DMAX-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	HLMT-PTK	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	DENS	LLMT-PTK	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	REGIST	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-MF	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C1RE	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C2RE	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C3RE	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C4RE	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-MFRE	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	REG-THCK	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	REG-DUP1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	REG-DUP2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	REG-SPD	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	REG-LEFT	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	REG-MFH1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	LSUB-YDC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	LSUB-MDC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	LSUB-CDC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	LSUB-KDC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	USUB-YAC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	USUB-KAC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	USUB-YDC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	USUB-KDC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	DIS-TGY	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	DIS-TGM	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	DIS-TGC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	DIS-TGK	Yes	No	No

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	DIS-TGY2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	DIS-TGM2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	DIS-TGC2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-PRI	DIS-TGK2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	2TR-TGT1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	2TR-TGT2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	2TR-TGT3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	2TR-TGT4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	2TR-TGT5	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	2TR-TGT6	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	2TR-TGT7	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	2TR-TGT8	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-PPR1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-PPR2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-PPR3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-PPR4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-PPR5	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-PPR6	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-PPR7	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-PPR8	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-ENV1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-ENV2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-ENV3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-ENV4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-ENV5	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-ENV6	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-ENV7	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-ENV8	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-CLR1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-CLR2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-CLR3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-CLR4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-CLR5	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-CLR6	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-CLR7	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-CLR8	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-DUP1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-DUP2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-DUP3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-DUP4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-DUP5	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-DUP6	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-DUP7	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-DUP8	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	1TR-TGY	Yes	No	No

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	1TR-TGM	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	1TR-TGC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	1TR-TGK1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	1TR-TGK4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-COEF	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	FIX-T2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	HV-TR	TR-MLT	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-H-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-H-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-H-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-HS-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-HS-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-HS-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-V-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-V-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-V-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-H-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-V-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	IMG-REG	REG-HS-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	MISC	SEG-ADJ	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	MISC	K-ADJ	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	MISC	ACS-ADJ	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	MISC	ACS-EN	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	MISC	ACS-CNT	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	MISC	ACS-EN2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	MISC	ACS-CNT2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	MISC	SH-ADJ	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	PASCAL	OFST-P-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	PASCAL	OFST-P-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	PASCAL	OFST-P-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	PASCAL	OFST-P-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	V-CONT	VCONT-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	V-CONT	VCONT-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	V-CONT	VCONT-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	V-CONT	VCONT-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	V-CONT	VBACK-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	V-CONT	VBACK-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	V-CONT	VBACK-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	ADJUST	V-CONT	VBACK-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	FUNCTION	INSTALL	E-RDS	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	FUNCTION	INSTALL	RGW-PORT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	FUNCTION	INSTALL	RGW-ADR	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	FUNCTION	INSTALL	CDS-CTL	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	FUNCTION	INSTALL	BIT-SVC	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	COIN	Yes	No	No

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	CARD-SW	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	SC-TYPE	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	CC-SPSW	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	UNIT-PRC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	MIN-PRC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	MAX-PRC	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	MIC-TUN	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	SRL-SPSW	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	PDL-THR	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	C2-EXIST	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	CR-TYPE	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	CLEANING	OHP-PTH	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CLEANING	ITBB-TMG	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CUSTOM	TEMP-TBL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CUSTOM	SC-L-CNT	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	CUSTOM	ABK-TOOL	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	CUSTOM	FAN-ROT	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	CUSTOM	EXT-TBOX	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CUSTOM	USEUPTNR	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CUSTOM	FAN-POST	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	CUSTOM	TNSNS-CL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CUSTOM	TNSNS-BK	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CUSTOM	ATR12-SW	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	UI-COPY	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	UI-BOX	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	UI-SEND	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	UI-FAX	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	T-LW-LVL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	NWERR-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	FXMSG-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	ANIM-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	UI-PRINT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	UI-RSCAN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	UI-WEB	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	TNR-WARN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	HPFL-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	RMT-CNSL	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	UI-SBOX	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	UI-MEM	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	UI-NAVI	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	ITB-DSP	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	FXU-DSP	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	PUMF-DSP	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	PUC1-DSP	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	PUC2-DSP	Yes	Yes	No

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	PUC3-DSP	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	PUC4-DSP	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	UI-CUSTM	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	CLN-SEL	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	USER-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	SDTM-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	WT-WARN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	ENV-SET	ENVP-INT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	ENV-SET	DRY-CISU	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FEED-SW	EVL-SPD	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FEED-SW	EVL-FS	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FEED-SW	OUT-SPD	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FEED-SW	DCL-FACE	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FEED-SW	DCL-ADJ	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	MODEL-SZ	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	SCANSLECT	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	DH-SW	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	SENS-CNF	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	CONFIG	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	W/SCNR	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	ORG-LGL	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	ORG-LTR	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	ORG-LTRR	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	ORG-LDR	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	ORG-B5	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	INTROT-1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	INTROT-2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	DMAX-SW	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	MODELSZ2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	SVMD-ENT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	FXWRNLVL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	KSIZE-SW	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	ORG-B4	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	PDF-RDCT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	SJB-UNW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	CARD-RNG	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	ARCDT-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	SJOB-CL	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	USB-RCNT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	UNLMTBND	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	MIBCOUNT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	W/RAID	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	PSWD-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	SM-PSWD	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	RPT2SIDE	Yes	Yes	Yes

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	PSCL-MS	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	INVALPDL	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	IMGCNTPR	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	CDS-FIRM	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	CDS-MEAP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	CDS-UGW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	LOCLFIRM	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	RSHDW-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	MC-FANSW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	SDLMTWRN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	PRE-CURL	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	AUTO-OUT	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	JLK-PWSC	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	FAX-INT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	PDL-Z-LG	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	CDS-LVUP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	AMSOFFSW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	CPR-SW	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	DMAX-DAY	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	UA-OFFSW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	MIB-NVTA	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	SVC-RUI	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	LCDSFLG	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	NO-LGOUT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	T-DLV-BK	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	D-DLV-CL	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	JM-ERR-D	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	JM-ERR-R	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	ASLPMAX	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-DEV	DEVL-VTH	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-DEV	AUTO-DH	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-DEV	DV-RT-LG	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-DEV	ADJ-VPP	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-DEV	DMX-OF-Y	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-DEV	DMX-OF-M	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-DEV	DMX-OF-C	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-DEV	DMX-OF-K	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-DEV	ADJ-VPPN	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	NEGA-GST	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	FX-S-TMP	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	TMP-TBL2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	TMP-TBL3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	TMP-TBL4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	TMP-TBL5	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	TMP-TBL6	Yes	No	No

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	FXS-TMP2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	FXS-TMP3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	FXS-TMP4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	FXS-TMP5	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	FXS-TMP6	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	FLYING	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	FIXMIXBD	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	PRE-FXRL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	TMP-TB11	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-FIX	FXS-TM11	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-LSR	PR-SUBRL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-LSR	PR-SUBBR	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-LSR	PRI-CLN	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	PASCAL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	SCR-SLCT	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	TMC-SLCT	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	PRN-FLG	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	SCN-FLG	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	TNR-DWN	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	TMIC-BK	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	DH-MODE	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	REPORT-Z	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	IFXEML-Z	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	BMLNKS-Z	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	REDU-CNT	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	VP-ART	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	VP-TXT	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	PASCL-TY	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	AST-SEL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	REGM-SEL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	SCR-SW	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	ERS-SEL1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	ERS-SEL2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	BGE-OFS	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-RDR	DFDST-L1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-RDR	DFDST-L2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-RDR	DSC-LINE	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-SPD	FX-D-TMP	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-SPD	FIX-ROT	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-SPD	MXSPDSEL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-SPD	ARC-INT1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-SPD	ARC-INT2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-TR	ITB-TYPE	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-TR	T2TOPDIV	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	RAW-DATA	Yes	Yes	Yes

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	IFAX-LIM	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	SMTPTXPN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	SMTPRXPN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	POP3PN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	FTPTXPN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	STS-PORT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	CMD-PORT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	NS-CMD5	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	NS-GSAPI	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	NS-NTLM	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	NS-PLNWS	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	NS-PLN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	NS-LGN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	MEAP-PN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	CHNG-STX	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	CHNG-CMD	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	MEAP-SSL	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	LPD-PORT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	WUEV-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	WUEV-INT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	WUEV-POT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	WUEV-RTR	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	WUEN-LIV	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	IFX-CHIG	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	DNSTRANS	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	PROXYRES	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	WOLTRANS	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	802XTOUT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	IKERETRY	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	SPDALDEL	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	NCONF-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	IKEINTVL	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	IPSDEBLV	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	SP-LINK	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	AFS-JOB	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	AFC-EVNT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	ILOGMODE	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	ILOGKEEP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	IPTBROAD	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	PFWFTPRT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	IPMTU	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	NETWORK	DDNSINTV	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	CST	U1-NAME	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	CST	U2-NAME	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	CST	U3-NAME	Yes	Yes	Yes

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	OPTION	CST	U4-NAME	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST2-P1	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST2-P2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST3-P1	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST3-P2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST4-P1	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST4-P2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST1-U1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST1-U2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST1-U3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST1-U4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST2-U1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST2-U2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST2-U3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST2-U4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST3-U1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST3-U2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST3-U3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST3-U4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST4-U1	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST4-U2	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST4-U3	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST4-U4	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	CST	CST-K-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	CST	C1-MODEL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	INT-FACE	NWCT-TM	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COPY-LIM	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	SLEEP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	SIZE-DET	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER1	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER2	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER3	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER4	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER5	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER6	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	DATE-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	CONTROL	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	B4-L-CNT	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	TRY-STP	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	MF-LG-ST	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	CNT-DISP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COPY-JOB	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	OP-SZ-DT	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	P-CRG-LF	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	CPRT-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	OPTION	USER	PCL-COPY	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	CNT-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	PRJOB-CP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	DFLT-CPY	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	DFLT-BOX	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	DOC-REM	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	DPT-ID-7	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	RUI-RJT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	FREG-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	IFAX-SZL	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	IFAX-PGD	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	MEAPSAFE	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	PRNT-POS	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	AFN-PSWD	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	PTJAM-RC	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	PDL-NCSW	Yes	Yes	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	PS-MODE	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	CNCT-RLZ	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER7	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER8	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	2C-CT-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	LDAP-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	FROM-OF	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	DOM-ADD	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	FILE-OF	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	MAIL-OF	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	IFAX-OF	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	LDAP-DEF	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	FREE-DSP	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	TNRB-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	CLR-TIM	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	HDCR-DSW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	BWCL-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	SCALL-SW	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	SCALLCMP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	USBH-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	USBM-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	USBI-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	CTCHKDSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	USBB-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	USBR-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	POL-SCAN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-SBOX	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-DFAX	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-REP	Yes	Yes	Yes

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-FREP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-BOX	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-FORM	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-PREV	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-PULL	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-PDLB	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-JOBK	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-JDF	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-RUI	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	JA-WEB	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	CSTHT-SW	Yes	No	No
COPIER	OPTION	USER	EXP-CRYP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	EZY-SCRP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	DMN-MTCH	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	SNDSTREN	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	USER	FAXSTREN	Yes	Yes	Yes
FEEDER	ADJUST		DOCST	Yes	No	No
FEEDER	ADJUST		LA-SPEED	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		STP-F1	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		STP-R1	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		STP-2P	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		SDL-STP	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		SDL-ALG	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		ST-ALG1	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		ST-ALG2	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		STP-F3	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		STP-R3	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		SW-UP-RL	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		PRCS-RET	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		UP-CL	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		DW-CL	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		THC-CL	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		THC-PUSH	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		OFST-STC	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		THN-STC	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		STP-P-CH	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		TRY-NIS	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		TRY-SU	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		FIN-NIS	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		1SHT-SHF	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		SDL-SWCH	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		SDL-ALM	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		SFT-AMT1	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		SFT-AMT2	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		STP-NTN	Yes	No	No

Initial screen	Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
SORTER	ADJUST		INSTP-F1	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		INSTP-R1	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		THN-STCL	Yes	No	No
SORTER	ADJUST		DSTP-F1	Yes	No	No
SORTER	OPTION		MD-SPRTN	Yes	No	No
SORTER	OPTION		BUFF-SW	Yes	No	No
SORTER	OPTION		PRCS-SP1	Yes	No	No
SORTER	OPTION		STCR-DWN	Yes	No	No
SORTER	OPTION		CURL-HVY	Yes	No	No
SORTER	OPTION		PRCS-SP3	Yes	No	No
SORTER	OPTION		NSRT-STC	Yes	No	No
SORTER	OPTION		THN-TRSW	Yes	No	No

T-2-110

● FAX

Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
SSSW		sssw_sw01	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw02	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw03	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw04	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw05	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw06	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw07	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw08	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw09	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw10	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw11	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw12	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw13	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw14	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw15	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw16	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw17	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw18	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw19	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw20	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw21	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw22	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw23	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw24	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw25	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw26	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw27	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw28	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw29	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw30	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw31	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw32	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw33	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw34	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw35	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw36	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw37	Yes	Yes	No
SSSW		sssw_sw38	Yes	Yes	No

Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
sssw		sssw_sw39	Yes	Yes	No
sssw		sssw_sw40	Yes	Yes	No
sssw		sssw_sw41	Yes	Yes	No
sssw		sssw_sw42	Yes	Yes	No
sssw		sssw_sw43	Yes	Yes	No
sssw		sssw_sw44	Yes	Yes	No
sssw		sssw_sw45	Yes	Yes	No
sssw		sssw_sw46	Yes	Yes	No
sssw		sssw_sw47	Yes	Yes	No
sssw		sssw_sw48	Yes	Yes	No
sssw		sssw_sw49	Yes	Yes	No
sssw		sssw_sw50	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_01	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_02	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_03	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_04	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_05	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_06	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_07	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_08	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_09	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_10	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_11	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_12	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_13	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_14	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_15	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_16	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_17	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_18	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_19	Yes	Yes	No
menu		menu_20	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_01	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_02	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_03	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_04	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_05	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_06	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_07	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_08	Yes	Yes	No

Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
num		np_09	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_10	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_11	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_12	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_13	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_14	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_15	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_16	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_17	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_18	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_19	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_20	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_21	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_22	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_23	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_24	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_25	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_26	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_27	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_28	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_29	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_30	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_31	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_32	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_33	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_34	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_35	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_36	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_37	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_38	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_39	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_40	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_41	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_42	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_43	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_44	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_45	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_46	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_47	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_48	Yes	Yes	No

Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
num		np_49	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_50	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_51	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_52	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_53	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_54	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_55	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_56	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_57	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_58	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_59	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_60	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_61	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_62	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_63	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_64	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_65	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_66	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_67	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_68	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_69	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_70	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_71	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_72	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_73	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_74	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_75	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_76	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_77	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_78	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_79	Yes	Yes	No
num		np_80	Yes	Yes	No
ncu	ncu_special_bitsw	ncu_special_bsw04	Yes	Yes	Yes
ncu	ncu_special_bitsw	ncu_special_bsw29	Yes	Yes	Yes
ncu	ncu_special_bitsw	ncu_special_bsw30	Yes	Yes	No
ncu	ncu_special_numsw	ncu_special_nsw26	Yes	Yes	No
ncu	ncu_special_numsw	ncu_special_nsw27	Yes	Yes	No
ncu	ncu_special_numsw	ncu_special_nsw41	Yes	Yes	No
ncu	ncu_special_numsw	ncu_special_nsw43	Yes	Yes	No
ncu	ncu_special_numsw	ncu_special_nsw44	Yes	Yes	No

Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
type		type_type	Yes	Yes	No
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw01	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw02	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw03	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw04	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw05	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw06	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw07	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw08	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw09	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw10	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw11	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw12	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw13	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw14	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw15	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw16	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw17	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw18	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw19	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_bitsw	printer_bsw20	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw01	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw02	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw03	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw04	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw05	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw06	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw07	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw08	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw09	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw10	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw11	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw12	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw13	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw14	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw15	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw16	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw17	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw18	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw19	Yes	Yes	Yes

Large	Middle	Small	Case A	Case B	Case C
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw20	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw21	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw22	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw23	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw24	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw25	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw26	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw27	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw28	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw29	Yes	Yes	Yes
printer	printer_numeric	printer_nsw30	Yes	Yes	Yes

T-2-111

Import/export by service mode (external)

The following shows the procedure for importing and exporting the service mode setting values in service mode. With export by which data is collected from the machine, service mode setting values can be backed up. With import, data backed up from service mode and that backed up from remote UI can be restored.

The save destination of backup data can be selected from either a USB memory device or HDD of the machine.

Export

Preparation

- USB memory device
 - * Required when exporting to an external USB memory device.

It needs to have been formatted to be recognized by the device. No firmware registration is necessary.

Overall flow

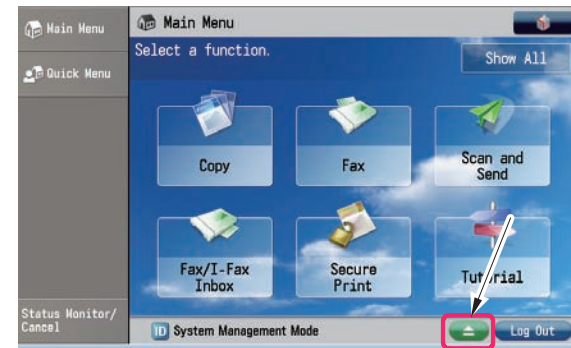
Select the save destination between the internal HDD or external USB memory device depending on the use case.

Procedure

1. Select external USB memory device as save destination (LIST=1)
2. Register password
3. Export to external USB memory device
4. Remove USB memory device

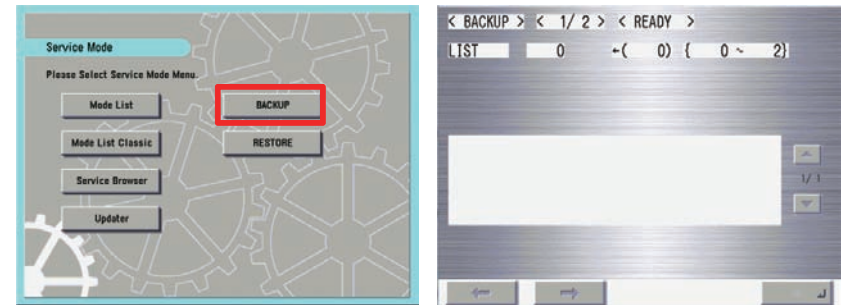
Exporting data to an external USB memory device

1. Connect the USB memory device and check that it has been mounted. (When using the external USB memory device)



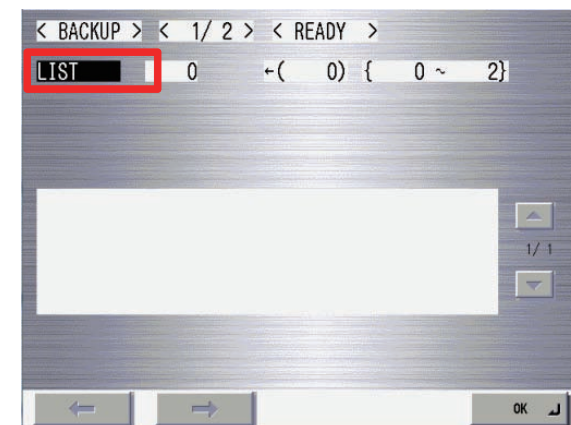
F-2-613

2. Log in to service mode and press BACKUP.



F-2-614

3. Select LIST after the screen moves to <BACKUP>.

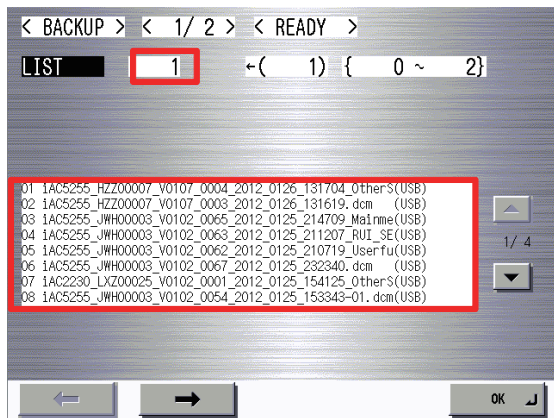


F-2-615

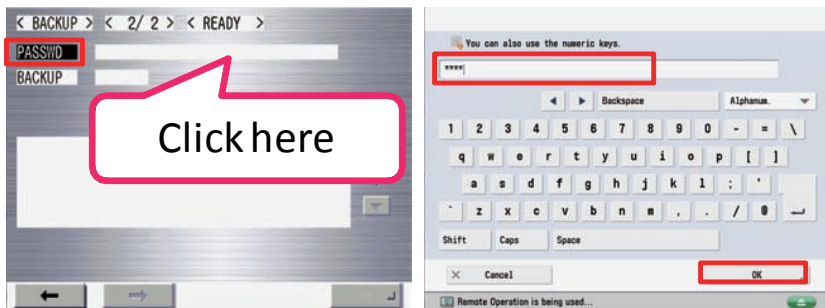
4. When saving to the external USB memory device, select 1 and press OK.



5. The names of .dcm files saved in the external USB memory device are displayed.



6. Select PASSWD, enter a password from the software keyboard, and then press OK.



F-2-618

Note:

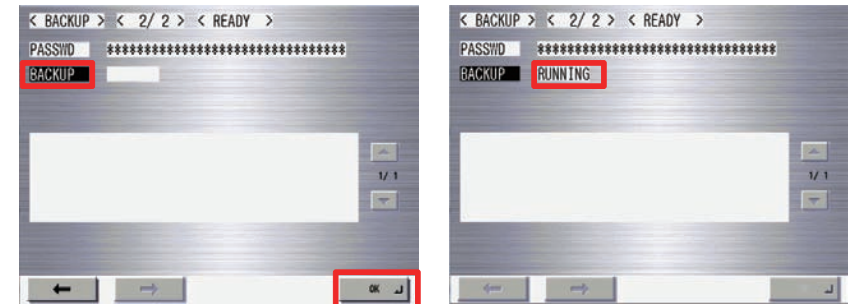
Limitations regarding the DCM data password

- Character string of software keyboard: 0 to 32 characters
- No password is set when 0 character is entered. (The setting in which no password is set is allowed only for service mode.)
- No space is allowed in the middle of a password.
- Password is case sensitive.

Limitations regarding the DCM data no password

- The exported data cannot import from remote UI without appointing a password. You can import only from service mode UI.

7. After registering the password, select BACKUP. Press OK to execute export.



F-2-619

8. "OK!" is displayed in the status column when the processing is successfully completed.

Press <-.



F-2-620

9. After access to the USB memory device has occurred, select LIST=0 and press OK.

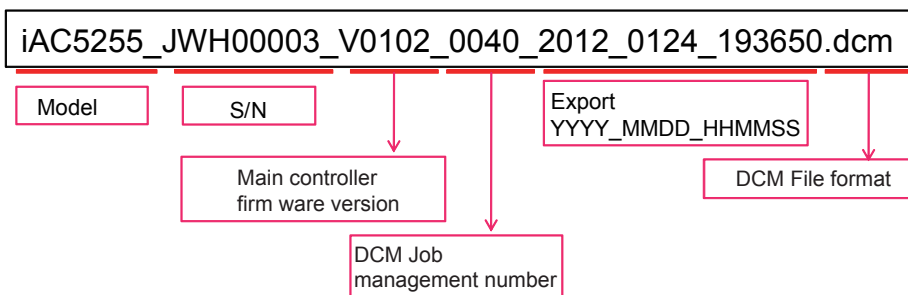
Unmount the USB memory device.

It can also be removed by pressing the Remove button on the main menu.



F-2-621

Reference:



F-2-622

● Import

Preparation

- USB memory device

Note:

- Required when importing from an external USB memory device.
- It needs to have been formatted to be recognized by the device. No firmware registration is necessary.
- When necessary, copy the files which you want to import using a PC in advance.
- Be sure to store them in the root folder of the USB memory device.
- Do not change the extension from .dcm. (only .dcm files can be recognized.)
- It is desirable to connect the USB memory device before entering service mode.

Overall flow

Procedure for restoring data from an external USB memory device.

Procedure

1. Select external USB memory device as save destination (LIST=1)
2. Names of saved DCM data files are displayed
3. Register password
4. Import from external USB memory device
5. Remove USB memory device
6. Specification of export file name

Procedure for restoring data from an external USB memory device

1. Connect the USB memory device. (When using the external USB memory device)
2. Log in to service mode and press RESTORE.



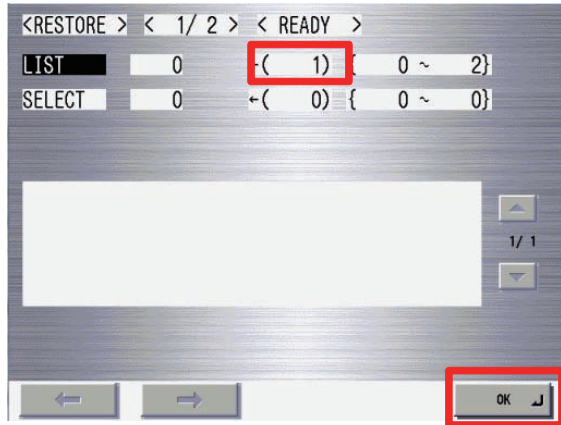
F-2-623

3. Select LIST after the screen moves to <RESTORE>.



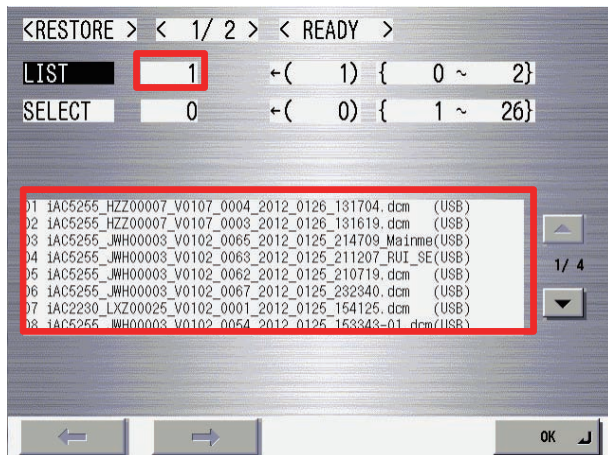
F-2-624

4. When referring to the external USB memory device, select 1 and press OK.



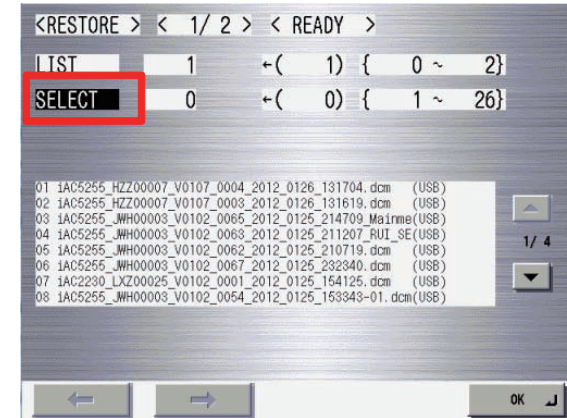
F-2-625

5. The names of .dcm files referred to in the external USB memory device are displayed.



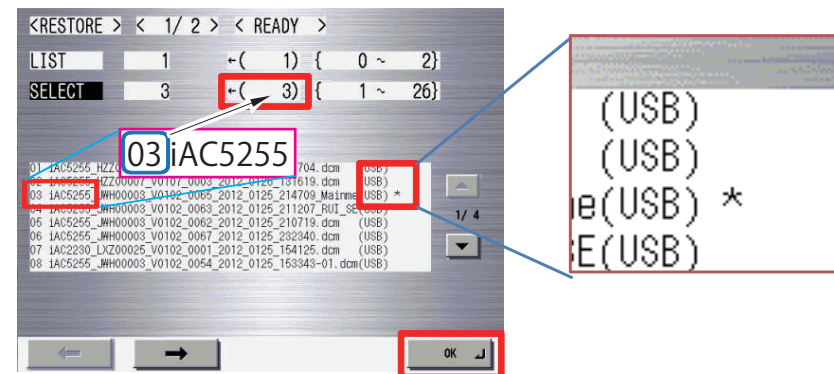
F-2-626

6. Select SELECT.



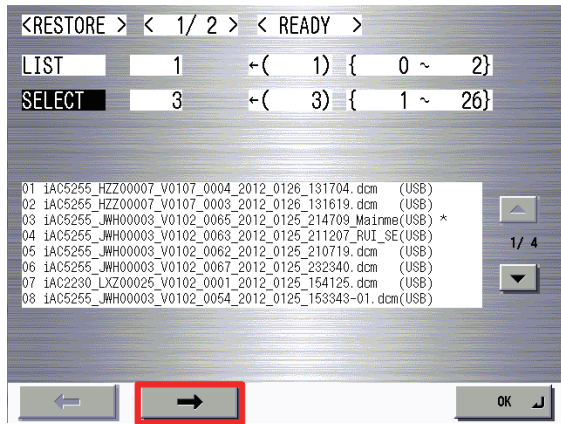
F-2-627

7. Enter the selection number displayed on the left side of the file to be selected and press OK.



F-2-628

8. When the correct file is displayed, press ->.



F-2-629

Note:

Specification of file selection display

- "*" is displayed on the right side of the file to indicate that the file has been selected in SELECT.
- USB memory device: Up to 8 files are displayed in a screen.



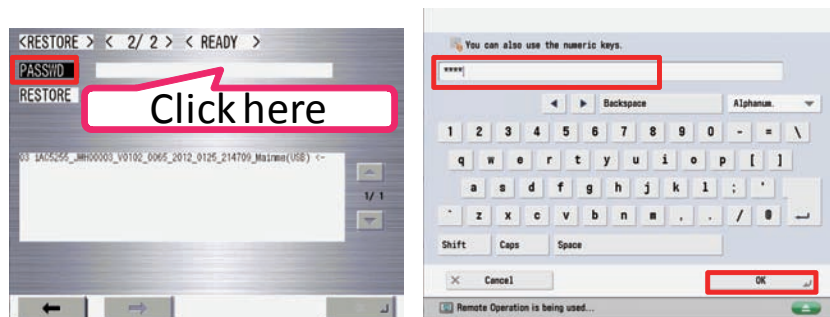
F-2-631

Note:

Specification of file selection display

- "<-" is displayed on the right side of the file to indicate that the selection of the file has been confirmed.
- "****" is displayed after the password is entered.

9. Select PASSWD, enter a password from the software keyboard, and then press OK.



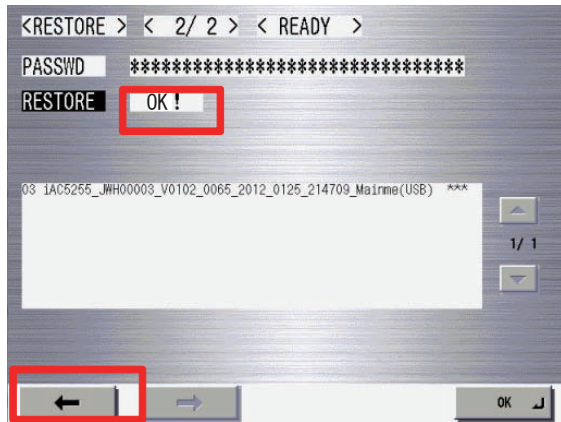
F-2-630

10. After registering the password, select RESTORE. Press OK to execute import.



F-2-632

11. OK!" is displayed in the status column when the processing is successfully completed.
Press <-.



F-2-633

12. After access to the USB memory device has occurred, select LIST=0 and press OK.
Unmount the USB memory device.
It can also be removed by pressing the Remove button on the main menu.



F-2-634

Import/export by service mode (internal)

When selecting the HDD of the machine at execution of BACKUP from the top screen of service mode, service mode settings can be saved. Setting values of Main Controller 2, Reader Controller, DC Controller, etc. can be collectively saved. It can be used when recovering the initial status after having tried multiple setting changes temporarily for troubleshooting, etc.

Note:

DCM must not be used when replacing a PCB.
Be sure to use a method such as backup of SRAM of the Main Controller 2/service mode backup of DCON/RCON.
DCM enables to back up only service mode setting values. There is still necessary information other than setting values when replacing a PCB.
SRAM backup or service mode backup enables to save data other than setting values.

Export

Preparation

There is no need to newly prepare for saving data to the HDD of the machine.

Overall flow

Here is a procedure for exporting data of the HDD of the machine.

Procedure

1. Select internal HDD as save destination (LIST=2)
2. Register password
3. Import from the internal HDD

Procedure for backing up data to the HDD of the machine

1. Select LIST after the screen moves to <BACKUP>.



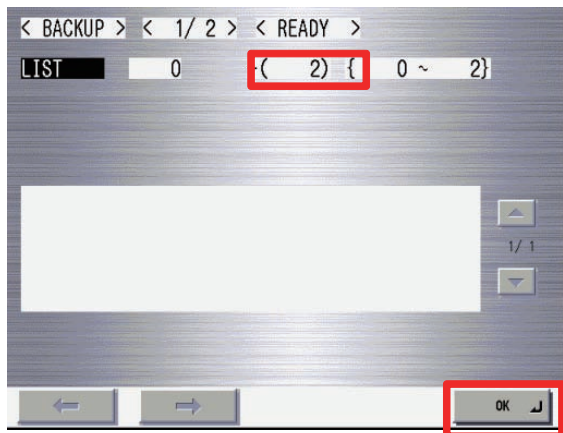
F-2-635

2. Select LIST after the screen moves to <BACKUP>.



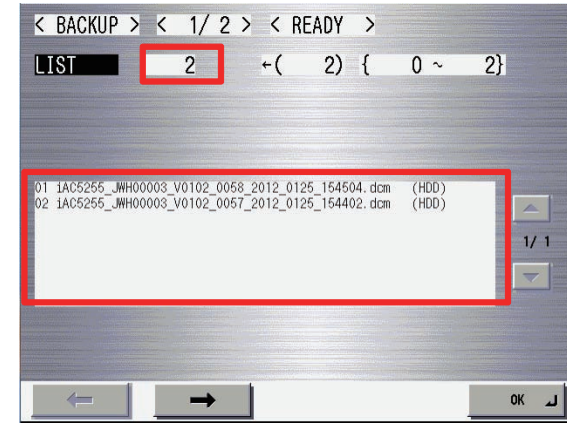
F-2-636

3. When saving to the internal HDD, select 2 and press OK.



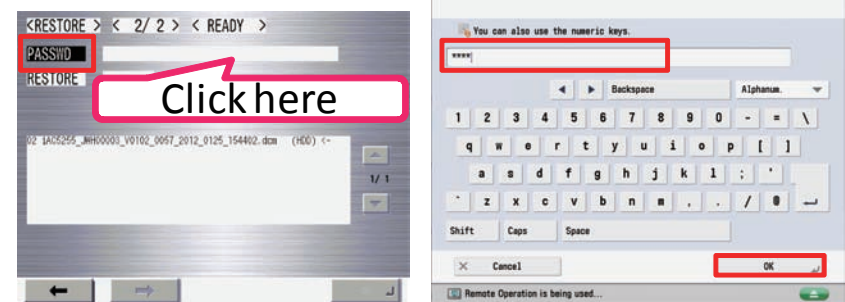
F-2-637

4. The names of .dcm files saved in the internal HDD are displayed.



F-2-638

5. Select PASSWD, enter a password from the software keyboard, and then press OK.



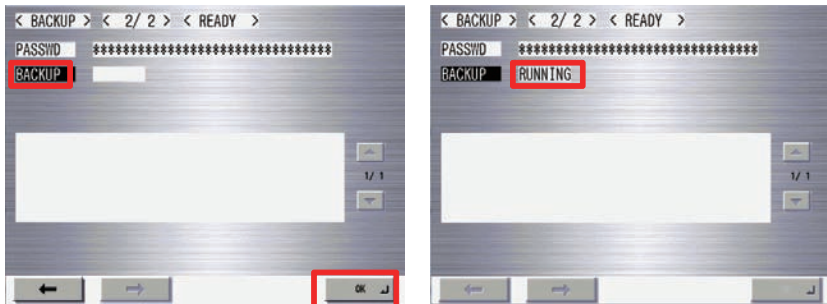
F-2-639

Note:

Limitations regarding the DCM data password

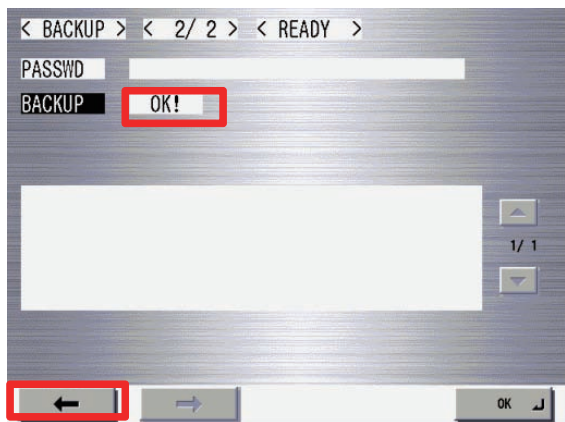
- Character string of software keyboard: 0 to 32 characters
- No password is set when 0 character is entered. (The setting in which no password is set is allowed only for service mode.)
- No space is allowed in the middle of a password.
- Password is case sensitive.

6. After registering the password, select BACKUP. Press OK to execute export.



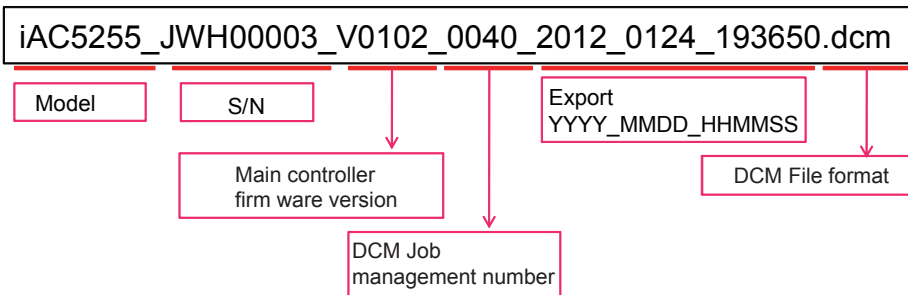
F-2-640

7. OK!" is displayed in the status column when the processing is successfully completed. Press <-.



F-2-641

Reference:



F-2-642

● Import

Preparation

There is no need to newly prepare for saving data to the HDD of the machine.

Overall flow

Here is a procedure for Importing data of the HDD of the machine.

Procedure

1. Select internal HDD as save destination (LIST=2)
2. Register password
3. Import from the internal HDD

Import from the internal HDD

1. Log in to service mode and press RESTORE.



F-2-643

2. Select LIST after the screen moves to <RESTORE>.



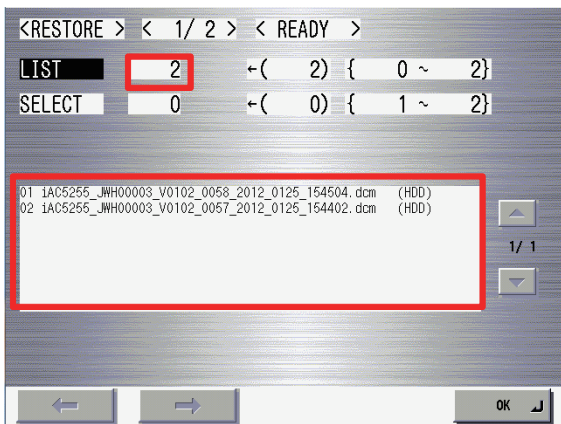
F-2-644

3. When referring to the internal HDD, select 2 and press OK.



F-2-645

4. The names of .dcm files referred to in the internal HDD are displayed.



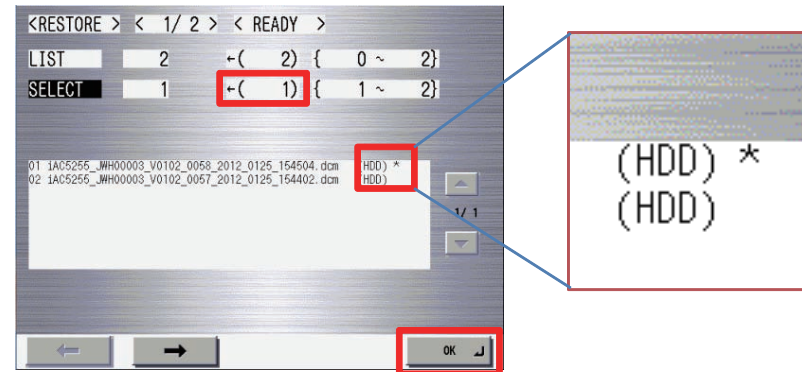
F-2-646

5. Select PASSWD.



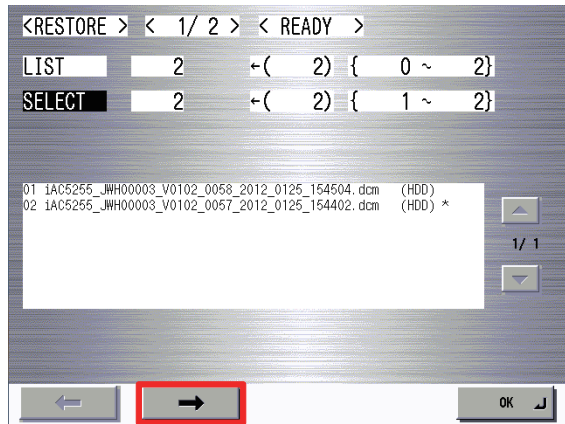
F-2-647

6. Enter the selection number displayed on the left side of the file to be selected.



F-2-648

7. When the correct file is displayed, press ->.



F-2-649

Note:

Specification of file selection display

- "*" is displayed on the right side of the file to indicate that the file has been selected in SELECT.
- HDD : Up to 2 files are displayed in a screen.



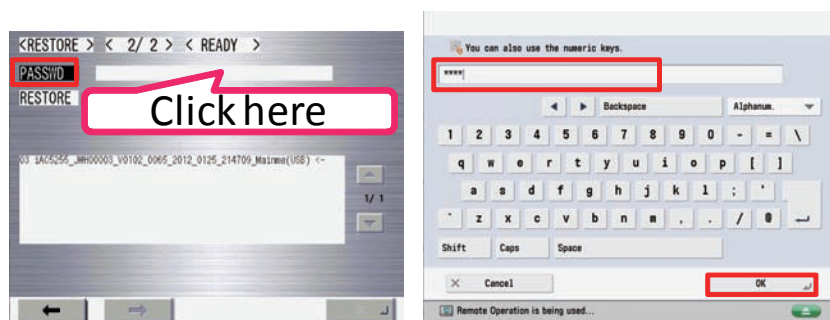
F-2-651

Note:

Specification of file selection display

- "<" is displayed on the right side of the file to indicate that the selection of the file has been confirmed.
- "*****" is displayed after the password is entered.

8. Select PASSWD, enter a password from the software keyboard, and then press OK.



F-2-650

9. After registering the password, select RESTORE. Press OK to execute import.



F-2-652

10. OK!" is displayed in the status column when the processing is successfully completed.

Press <-.



F-2-653



Consumable Parts and Cleaning Parts

- Consumable Parts and
Cleaning Parts
- Cleaning Parts

Consumable Parts and Cleaning Parts

●: Replacement (Consumable parts) Δ: Cleaning ■: Inspection

No.	Category	Part Name	Part No	Num	Interval					Counter		Remark	
					At installation	50K	150K	500K	Other				
1	Body	Dust-blocking glass	-	1		Δ				-	-	Cleaning with Dust-blocking glass Cleaning tool	
2	Fixing System	Fixing Assembly		1			●			DRBL-1	FX-UNIT	FM4-6226 (100V) FM4-6227 (120V) FM4-6228 (230V)	
3	Image Formation System	ITB Unit	FM3-8240	1			●			DRBL-1	TR-BLT		
4		Registration Patch Sensor	FK2-7316	1		Δ				-	-		
5		Secondary Transfer Outer Roleir	RM1-7928	1		■	●			DRBL-1	2TR-ROLL		
6		Pre-Secondary Transfer Outer Guide	-	1		Δ				-	-		
7	-	Waste Toner Container	FM3-8137	1					●	-	WST-TNR	Plain paper, Intermittent printing of 2 sheets per job, Bk color, image ratio at 5% (60k sheets) If service engineer removes the waste toner from the Waste Toner Container, the Waste Toner Container can be reused.	
8	Pickup Feed System	Registration Roller	-	1		Δ				-	-		
9		Pre-Registration Guide	-	1		Δ				-	-		
10		Merging Roller		1		■				-	-		
11		Duplex Feed Upper Roller	-	1		■				-	-		
12		Duplex Feed Lower Roller	-	1		■				-	-		
13		Cassette 1 Pickup Roller (250 CST)	RM1-6175	1							DRBL-1	C1-PU-RL	
		CST 1 Pickup Roller (250CST for CCN)	FM0-1163				●						
		CST 1 Pickup Roller (520 CST)	FM0-3173										
14		CST 1 Separation Roller (250CST)	RM1-6176	1				●			DRBL-1	C1-SP-RL	
		CST 1 Separation Roller (520CST)	FM0-1657										
15		CST 2 Feed Roller	FC6-7083	1				●			DRBL-1	C2-FD-RL	
16		CST 2 Separation Roller	FC6-6661	1				●			DRBL-1	C2-SP-RL	
17		CST 2 Vertical Path roller	FC6-6661	1			■				-	-	
18		Pickup Assembly Idler Gear	FU3-0280	1				●			-	-	China only
19	Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller	RM1-6177	1				●			DRBL-1	MP-PU-RL		
20	Multi-purpose Tray Separation Roller	RM1-6178	1				●			DRBL-1	MP-SP-PD		
21	Second Delivery roller	-	1			■				-	-		
22	Third Delivery Roller	-	1			■				-	-		

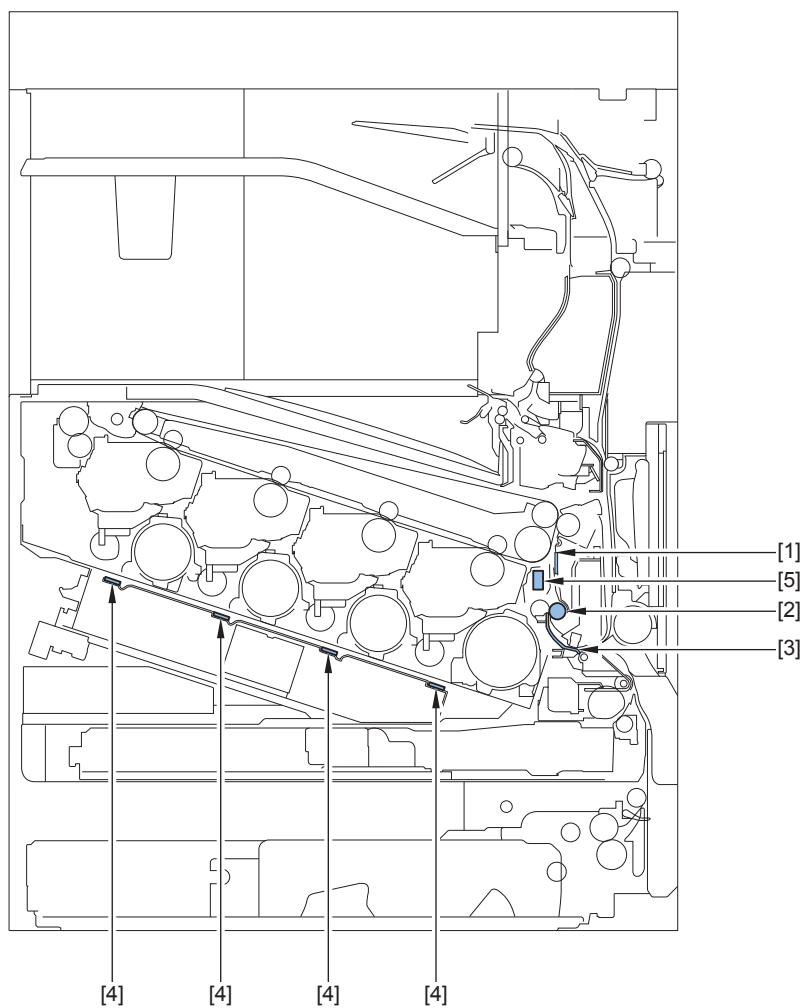
■ Drum Unit

T-3-1

Model		Drum Life	
		Bk	YMC
iR ADVANCE C2220	Europe / Asia / Austraria / China / Korea / Taiwan	43k	36k
iR ADVANCE C2225	USA	48k	44k
	Europe	52k	44k
	Asia / China / Korea / Taiwan	49k	41k
iR ADVANCE C2230	USA	56k	51k
	Europe	60k	51k
	Asia / Austraria / China / Korea / Taiwan	55k	46k

T-3-2

Cleaning Parts



- [1] Pre-Secondary Transfer Outer Guide
- [2] Pre-registration Guide
- [3] Registration Roller
- [4] Dust-blocking Glass
- [5] Registration Patch Sensor

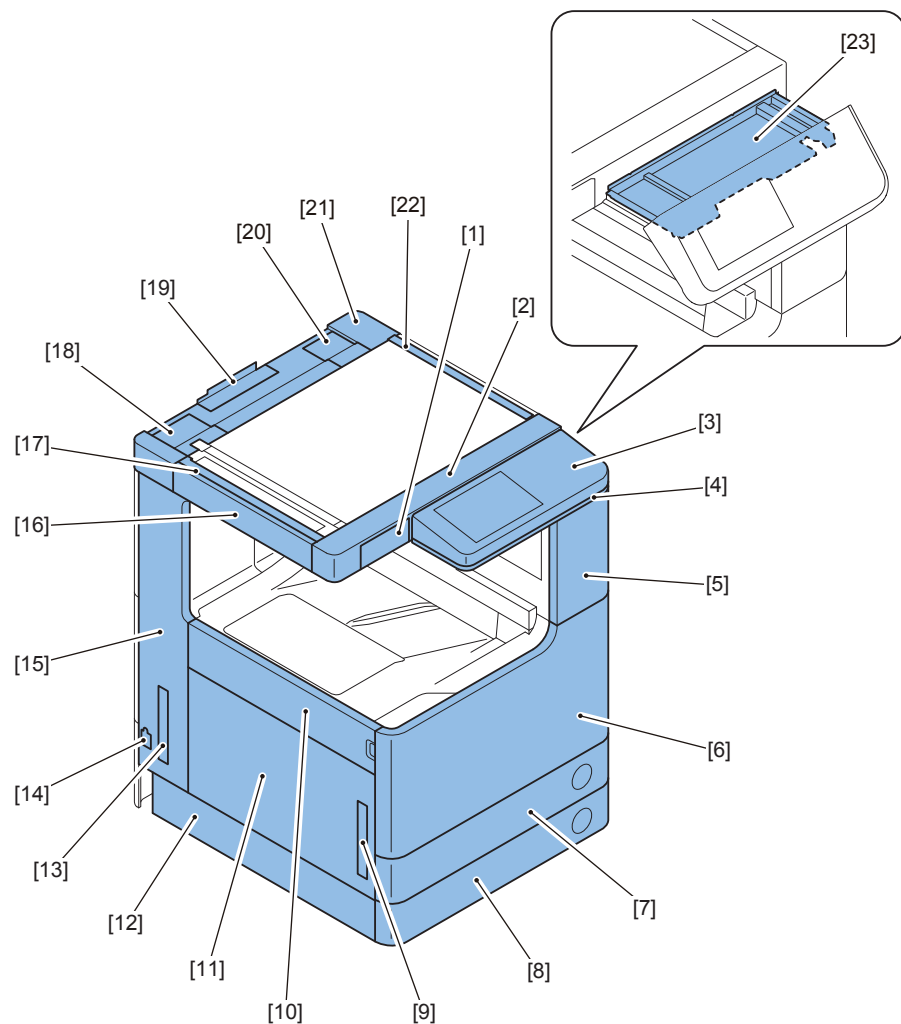
4

Parts Replacement and Cleaning

- List of Parts
- Disassembly/Assembly- Main Controller system -
- Disassembly/Assembly - Laser Control System -
- Disassembly/Assembly - Image Formation System -
- Disassembly/Assembly - Fixing System -
- Disassembly/Assembly - Pickup Feed System -
- Disassembly/Assembly - External Auxiliary System -
- Disassembly/Assembly - Document Exposure

List of Parts

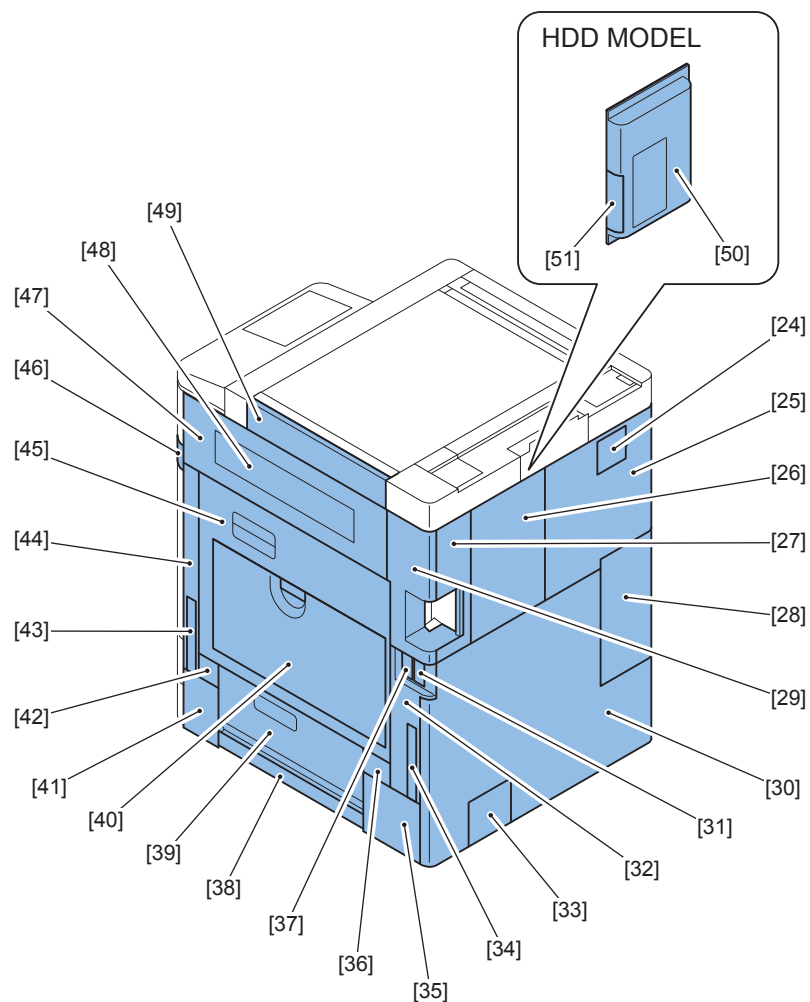
List of Cover



F-4-1

No.	Name	Reference
[1]	Reader Front Sub Cover	
[2]	Reader Front Cover	
[3]	Control Panel Upper Cover	
[4]	Control Panel Lower Cover	
[5]	Front Upper Cover	
[6]	Front Cover	
[7]	Cassette 1 Front Cover	
[8]	Cassette 2 Front Cover	
[9]	Right grip cover 1	
[10]	Left Cover 1	
[11]	Left Cover 2	
[12]	Left Lower Cover	
[13]	Left Grip Cover 2	
[14]	Environment Heater Switch Cover	
[15]	Left Rear Cover	
[16]	Reader Left Cover	
[17]	Reader Left Retaining Cover	
[18]	DF Base Left Cover	
[19]	Reader Cable Cover	
[20]	DF Base Right Cover	
[21]	Reader Rear Cover	
[22]	Reader Right Retaining Cover	
[23]	Control Panel Rail Cover	

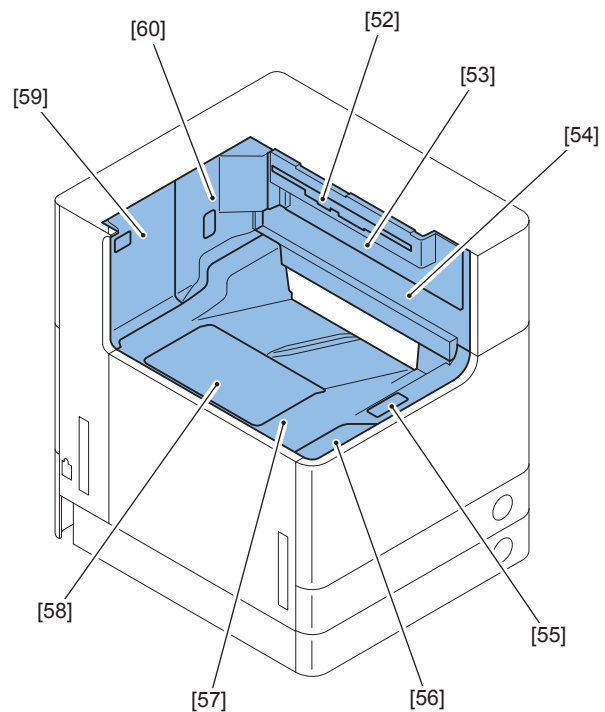
T-4-1



F-4-2

No.	Name	Reference
[24]	Reader Rear Sub Cover	
[25]	Rear Upper Cover 3	
[26]	Rear Upper Cover 1	
[27]	Rear Upper Cover 2	
[28]	Right Upper Sub Cover 2	
[29]	Waste Toner Cover	
[30]	Right Upper Sub Cover	
[31]	Rear Cover	
[32]	FAX Connector Cover 2	
[33]	Right Rear Cover	
[34]	Connector Cover	
[35]	Right Grip Cover 2	
[36]	Cassette Right Upper Sub Cover 2	
[37]	Right Lower Sub Cover 2	
[38]	FAX Connector Cover 1	
[39]	Cassette Right Upper Sub Cover 3	
[40]	Cassette Right Upper Cover	
[41]	Multi-purpose Tray	
[42]	Cassette Right Upper Sub Cover 1	
[43]	Right Lower Sub Cover 1	
[44]	Right Grip Cover 1	
[45]	Right Gront Sub Cover	
[46]	Right Lower Cover	
[47]	Power Supply Cover	
[48]	Right Upper Cover	
[49]	Reader Right Cover	
[50]	Rear Upper Cover 1 (HDD Model)	
[51]	Removable HDD Cover	

T-4-2



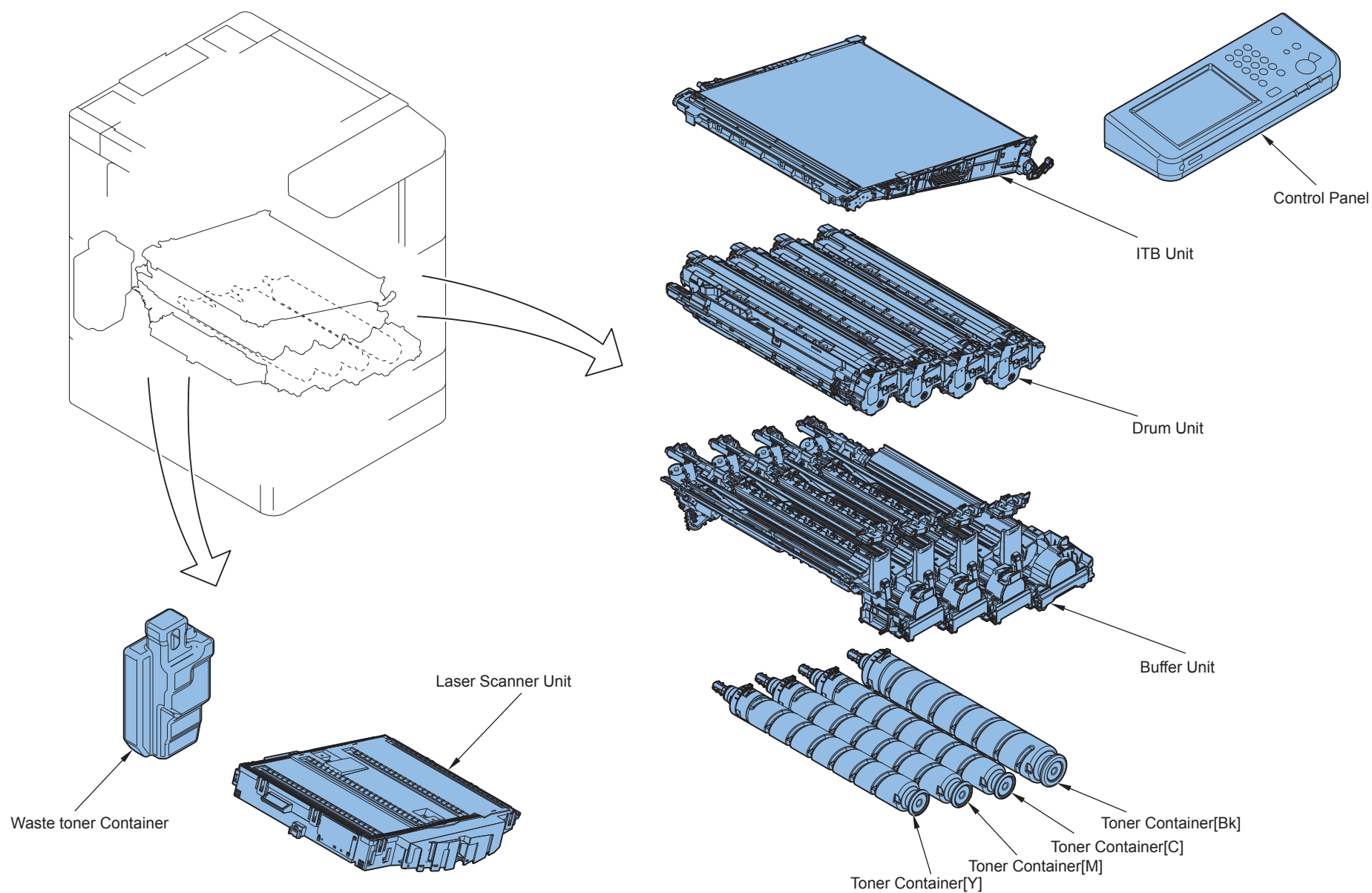
F-4-3

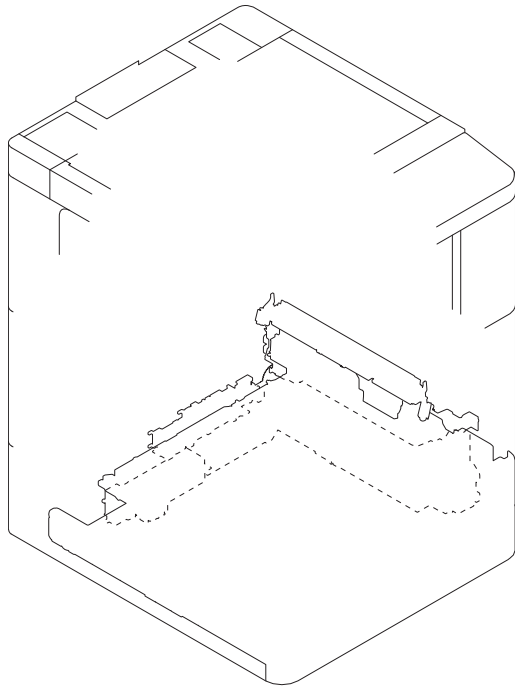
No.	Name	Reference
[52]	Second Delivery Outlet Cover	
[53]	Second Delivery Cover	
[54]	First Delivery Cover	
[55]	Inner Sub Cover 1	
[56]	Inner Sub Cover 2	
[57]	Inner Bottom Cover	
[58]	First Delivery Tray	
[59]	Inner Rear Cover 1	
[60]	Inner Rear Cover 2	

T-4-3

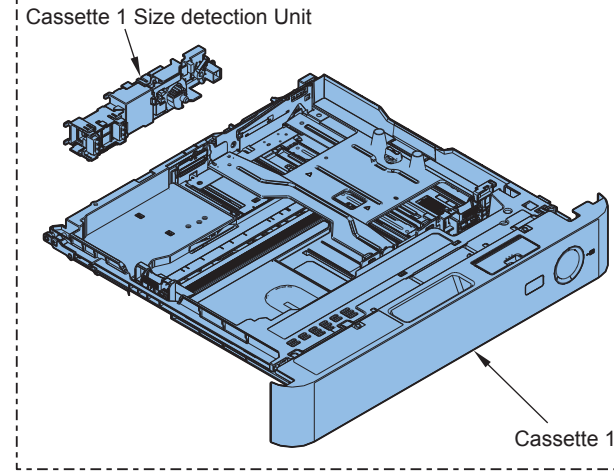
List of Main Unit

Unit Layout

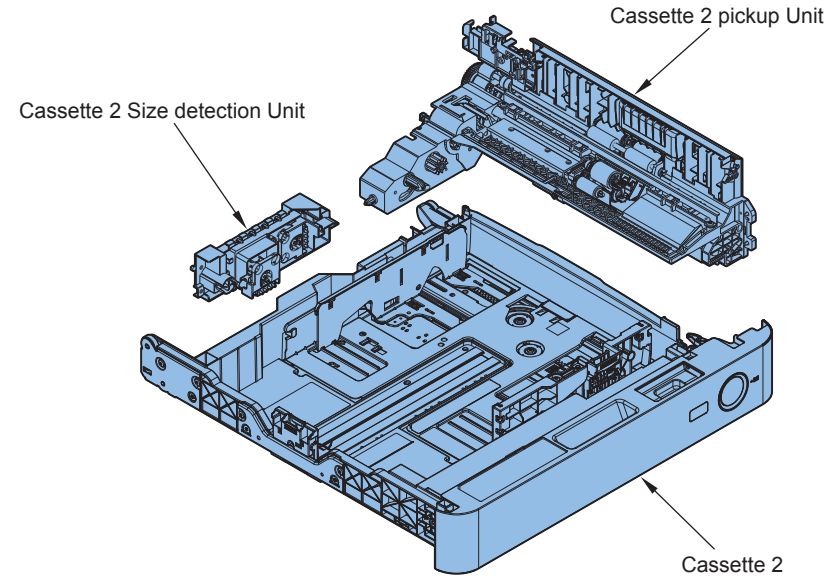
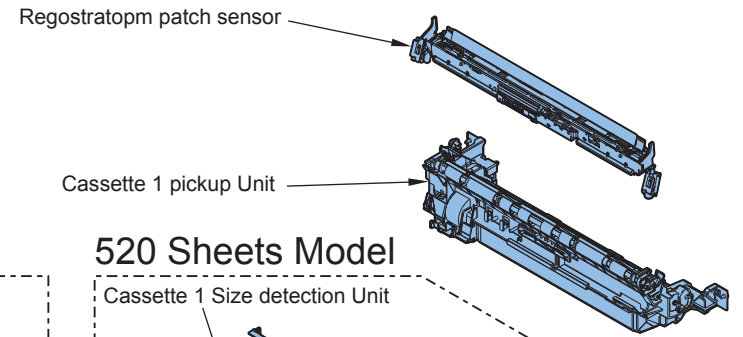
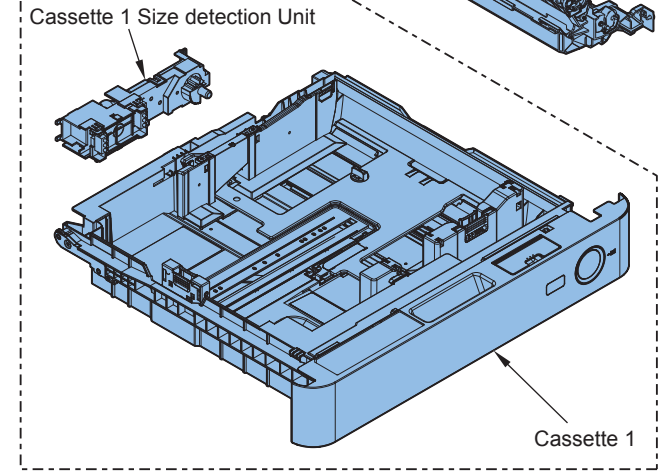


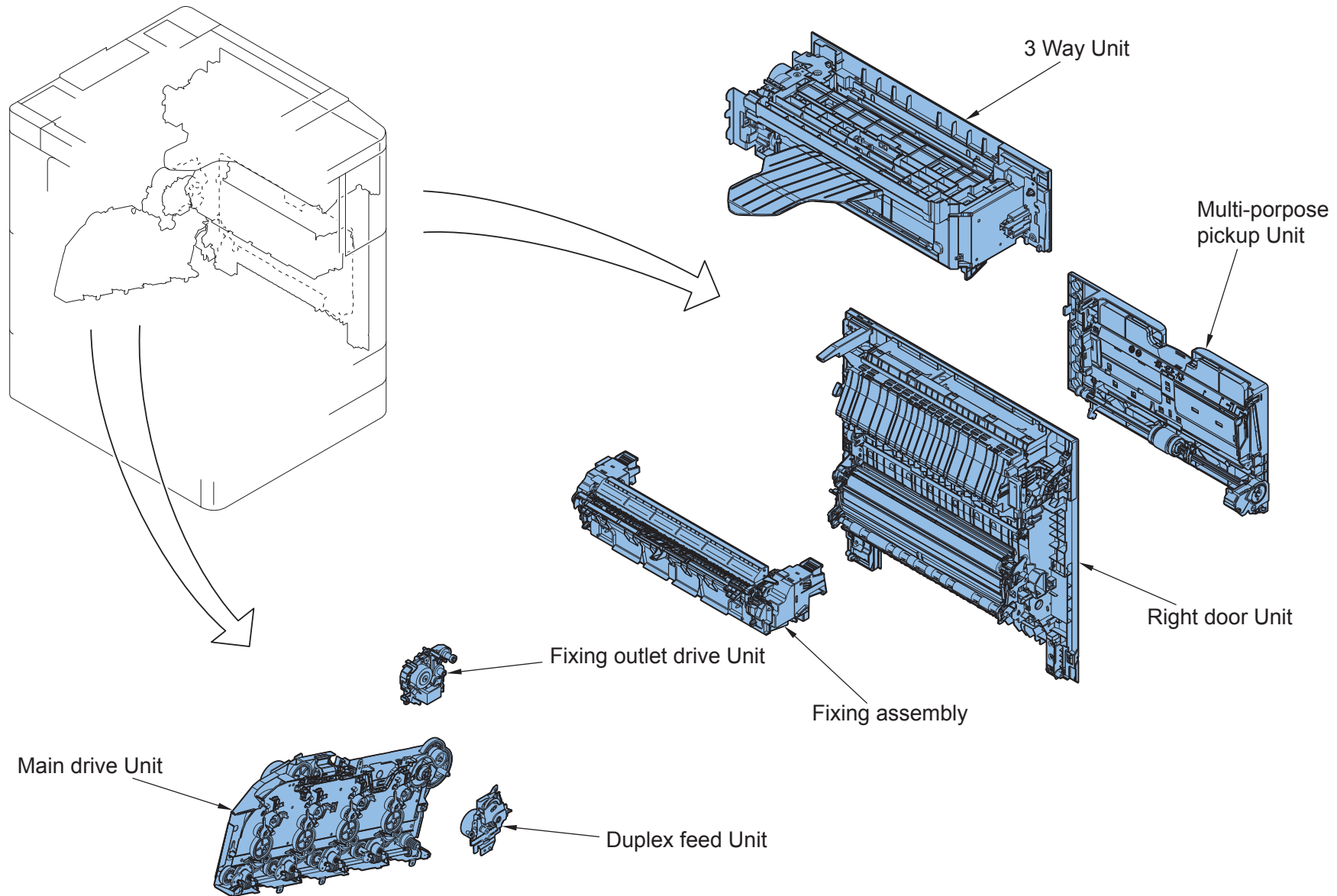


250 Sheets Model



520 Sheets Model



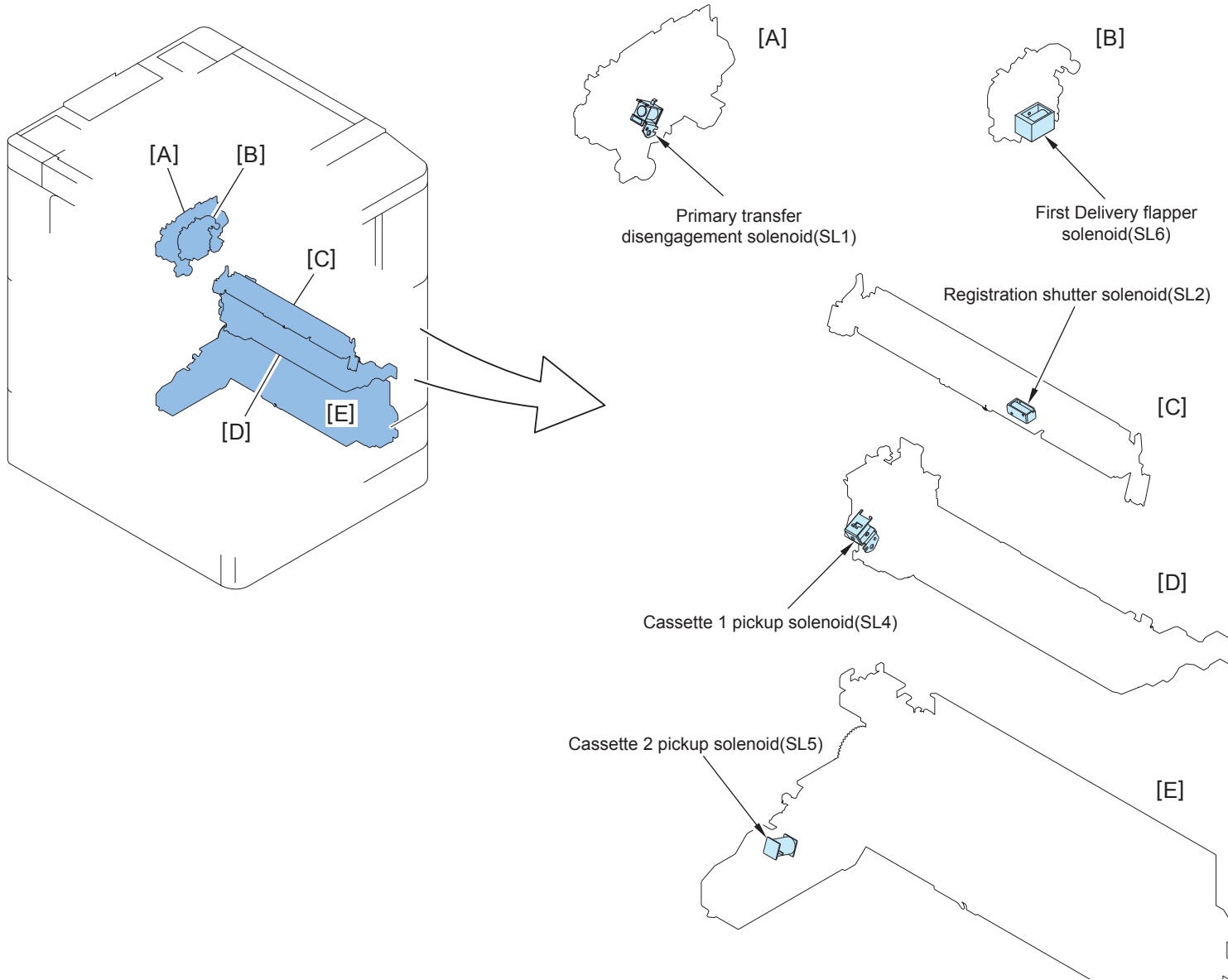


F-4-6

No.	Name	Reference
[1]	Registration Patch Sensor	
[2]	Cassette 1 Pickup Unit	
[3]	Cassette 2 Pickup Unit	
[4]	Cassette 1 Size Detection Unit	
[5]	Cassette 2 Size Detection Unit	
[6]	Cassette	
[7]	Control Panel	
[8]	ITB Unit	
[9]	Drum Unit (Y)	
[10]	Drum Unit (M)	
[11]	Drum Unit (C)	
[12]	Drum Unit (Bk)	
[13]	Toner Buffer Unit	
[14]	Toner Container (Y)	
[15]	Toner Container (M)	
[16]	Toner Container (C)	
[17]	Toner Container (Bk)	
[18]	Laser Scanner Unit	
[19]	Waste Toner Container	
[20]	3 Way Unit	
[21]	Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Unit	
[22]	Right Door Unit	
[23]	Fixing Assembly	
[24]	Fixing Outlet Drive Unit	
[25]	2-side Drive Unit	
[26]	Main Drive Unit	

T-4-4

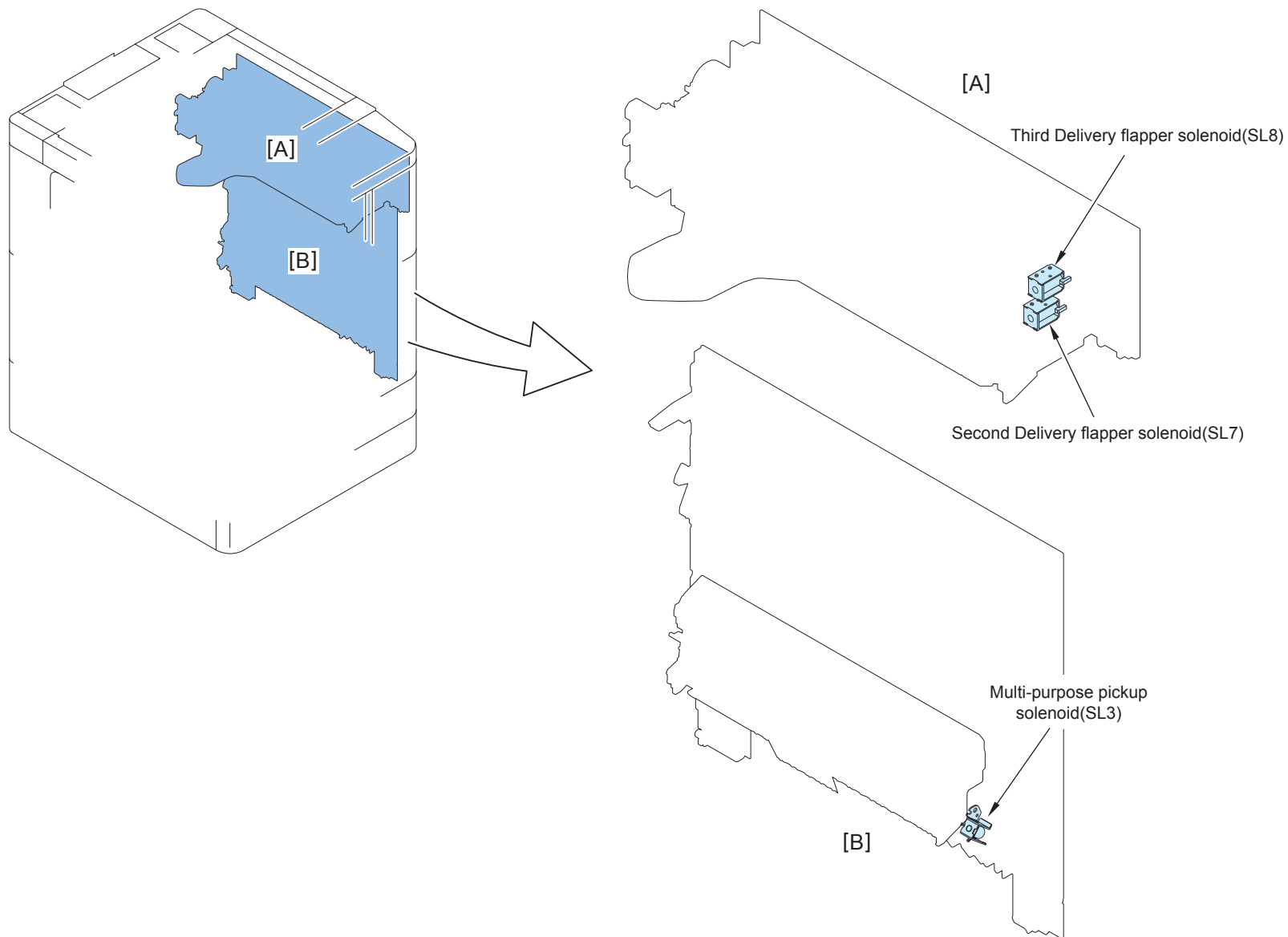
Solenoid



F-4-7

No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
SL1	Primary Transfer Disengagement Solenoid	ITB Unit	
SL2	Registration Shutter Solenoid	Registration Patch Sensor	
SL4	Cassette 1 Pickup Solenoid	Cassette 1 Pickup Unit	
SL5	Cassette 2 Pickup Solenoid	Cassette 2 Pickup Unit	
SL6	First Delivery Flapper Solenoid	Fixing Outlet Drive Unit	

T-4-5

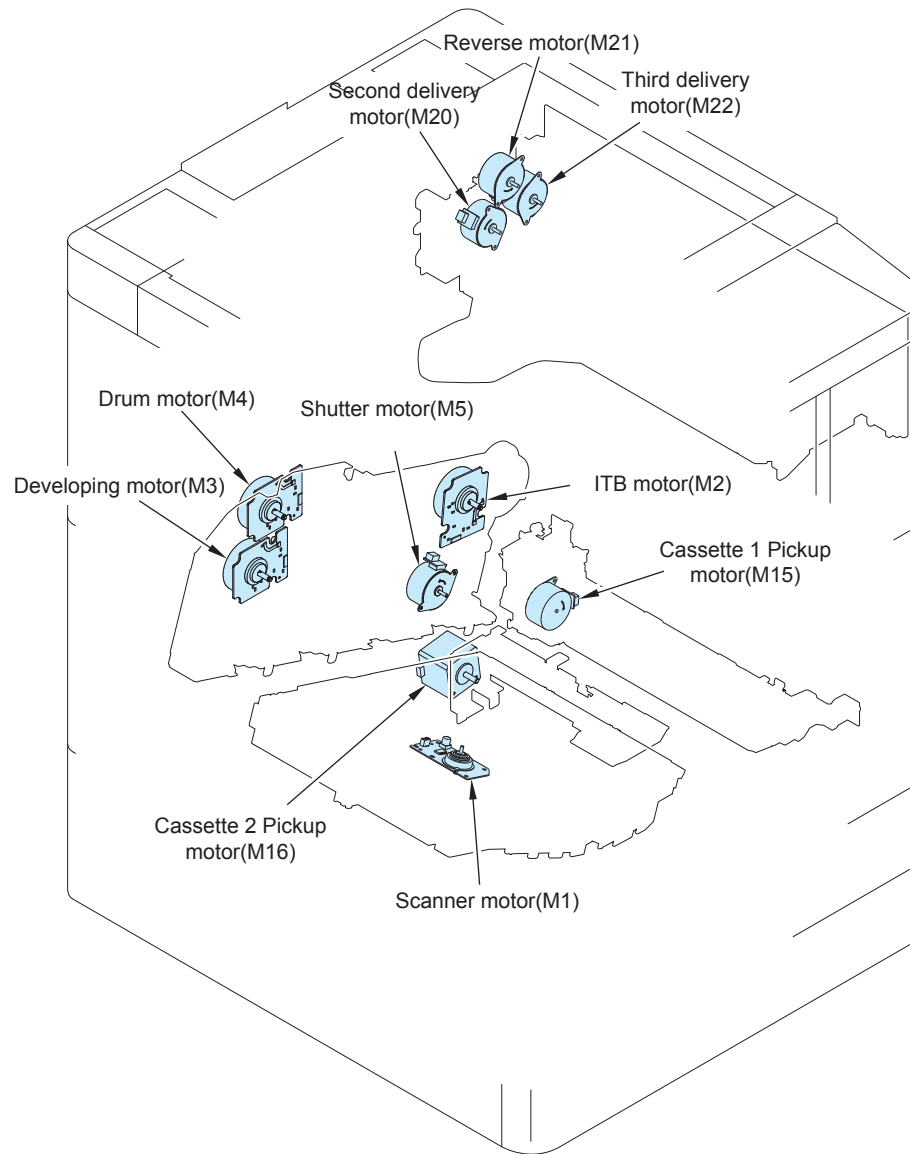


No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
SL3	Multi-purpsoe Tray Pickup Solenoid	Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Unit	
SL7	Second Delivery Flapper Solenoid	3 Way Unit	
SL8	Third Delivery Flapper Solenoid	3 Way Unit	

F-4-8

T-4-6

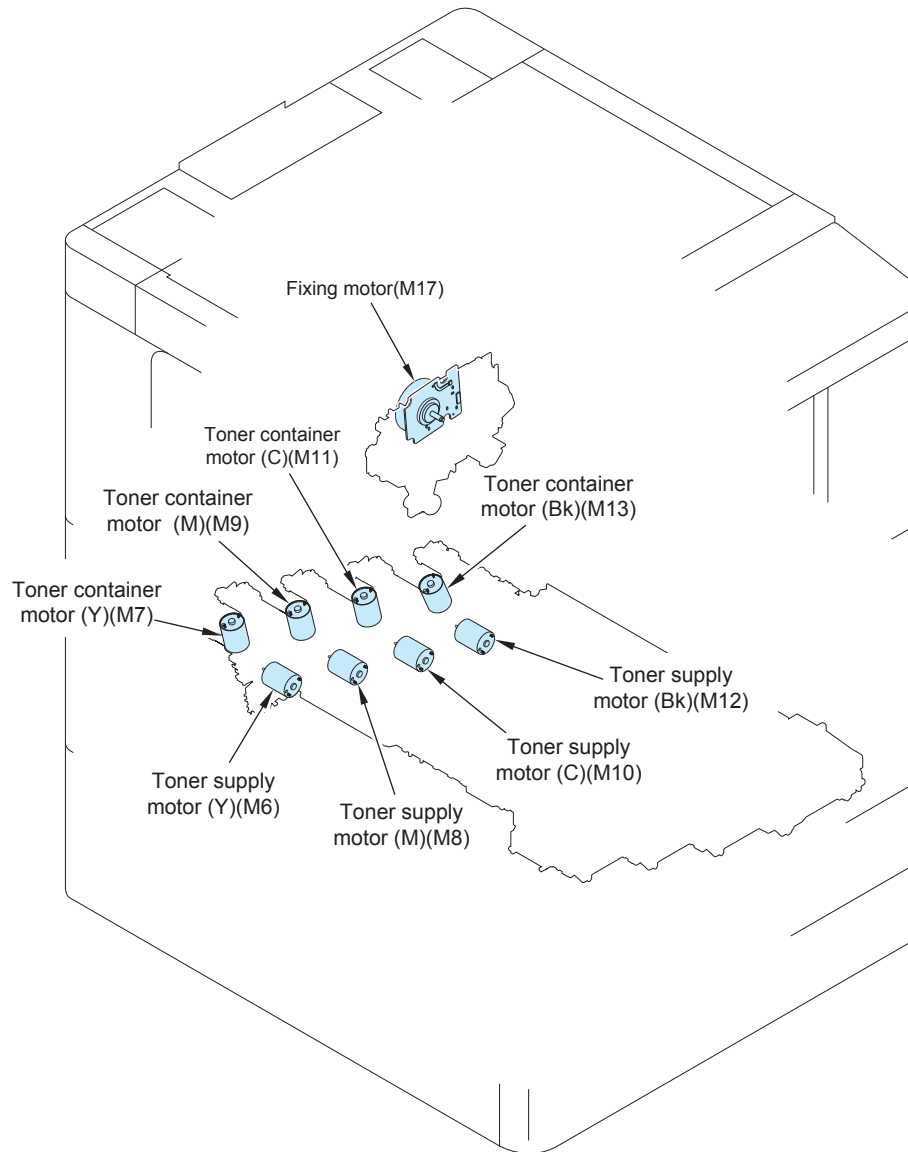
Motor



F-4-9

No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
M1	Scanner Motor	Laser Scanner Unit	
M2	ITB Motor	Main Drive Unit	
M3	Developing Motor	Main Drive Unit	
M4	Drum Motor	Main Drive Unit	
M5	Shutter Motor	Main Drive Unit	
M15	Cassette 1 Pickup Motor	Cassette 1 Pickup Unit	
M16	Cassette 2 Pickup Motor	Cassette 2 Pickup Unit	
M20	Second Delivery Motor	3 Way Unit	
M21	Reverse Motor	3 Way Unit	
M22	Third Delivery Motor	3 Way Unit	

T-4-7



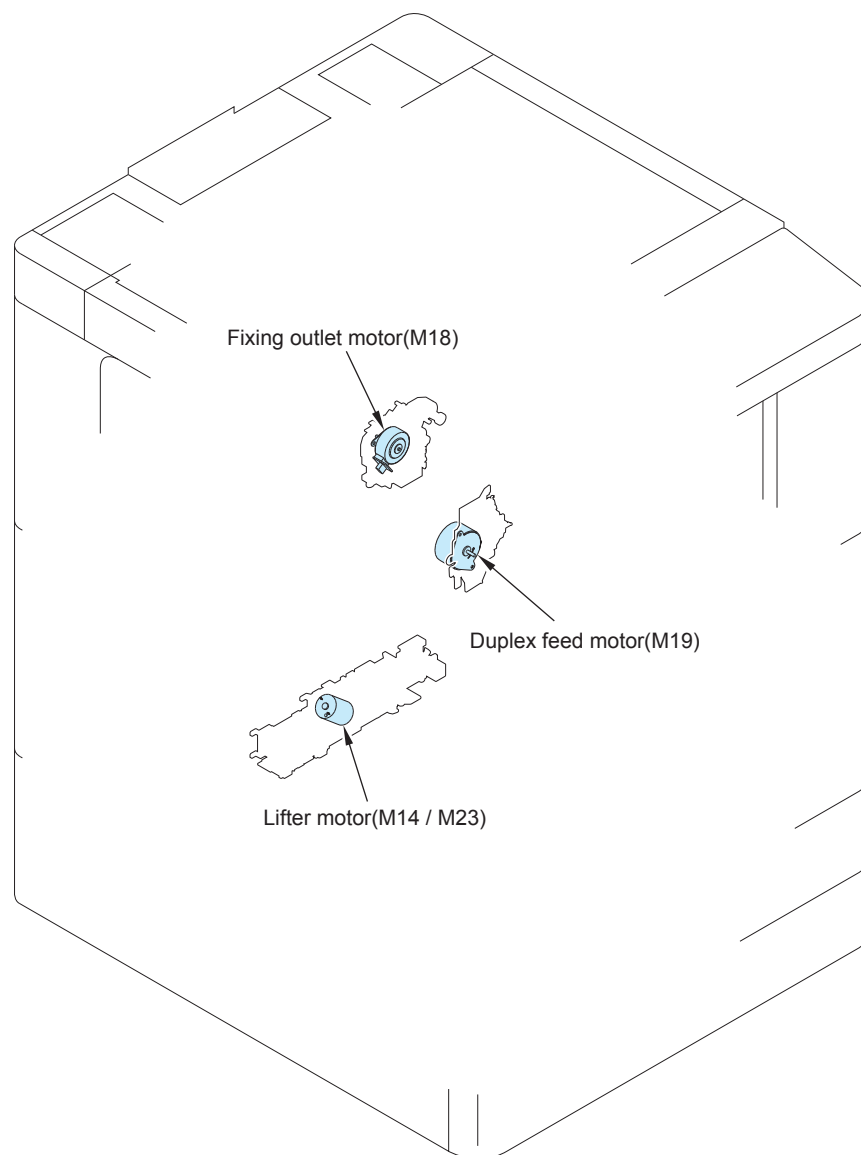
F-4-10

No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
M6	Toner Supply Motor (Y)	Toner Buffer Unit	
M7	Toner Container Motor (Y)	Toner Buffer Unit	
M8	Toner Supply Motor (M)	Toner Buffer Unit	
M9	Toner Container Motor (M)	Toner Buffer Unit	
M10	Toner Supply Motor (C)	Toner Buffer Unit	
M11	Toner Container Motor (C)	Toner Buffer Unit	
M12	Toner Supply Motor (Bk)	Toner Buffer Unit	
M13	Toner Container Motor (Bk)	Toner Buffer Unit	
M17	Fixing Motor	Fixing Drive Unit	

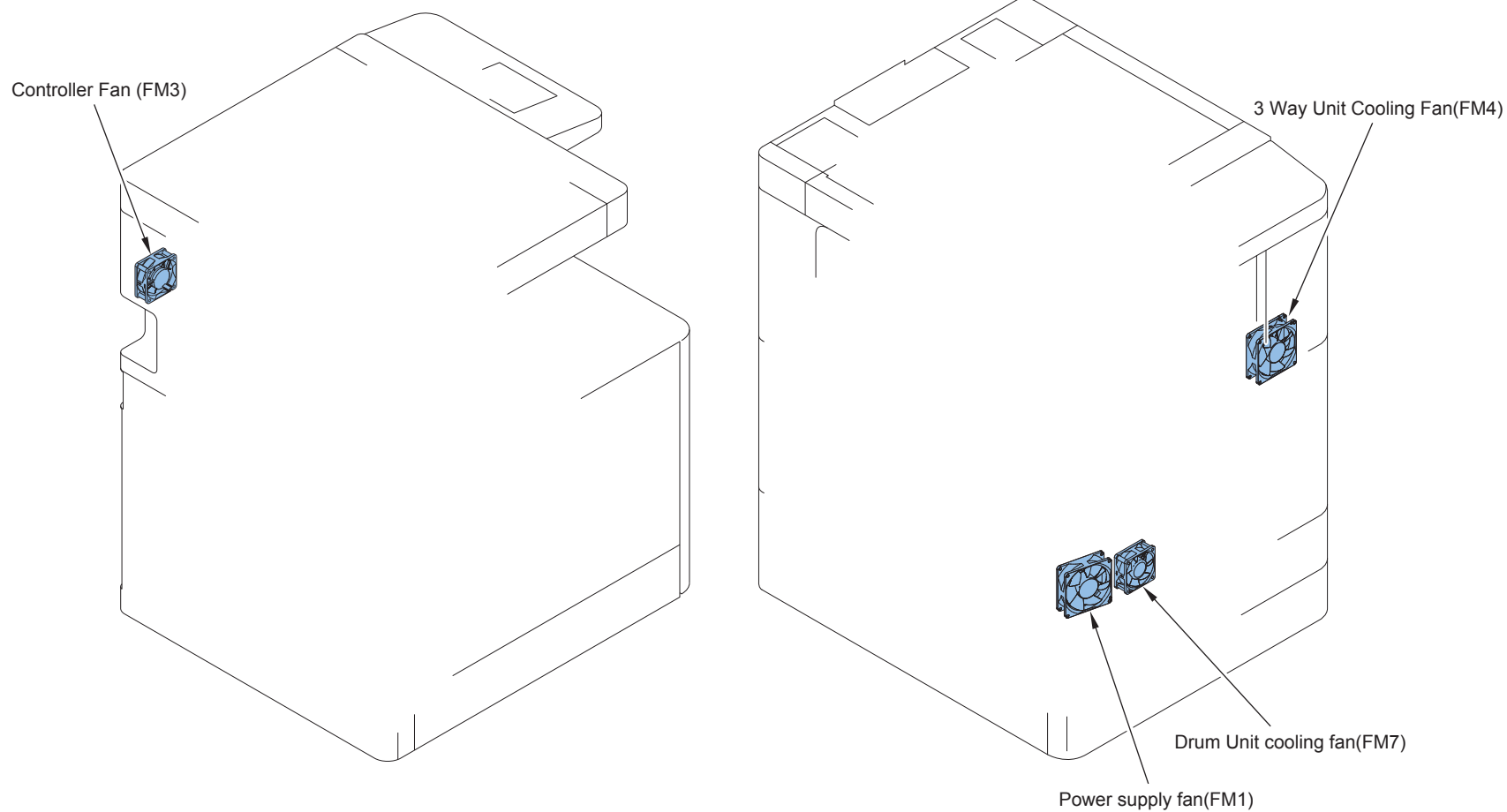
T-4-8

No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
M14/M23	Cassette 1 Lifter Motor	Cassette 1 Pickup Unit	
M18	Fixing Outlet Motor	Fixing Outlet Drive Motor	
M19	Duplexing Feed Motor	Duplexing Drive Motor	

T-4-9



Fan

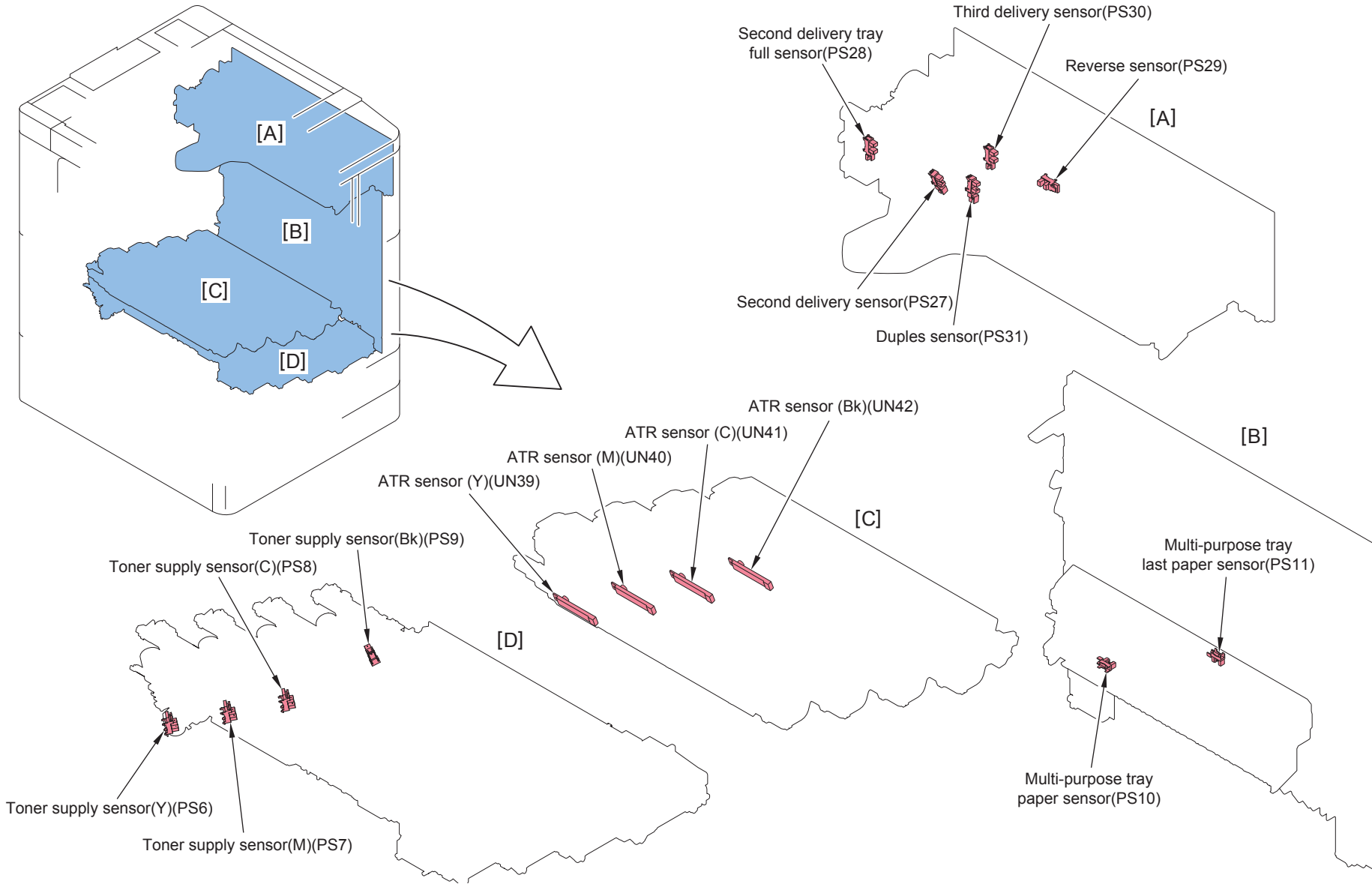


No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
FM1	Power Supply Fan		
FM3	Controller Fan		
FM4	3 Way Unit Cooling Fan		
FM7	Drum Unit Cooling Fan		

T-4-10

F-4-11

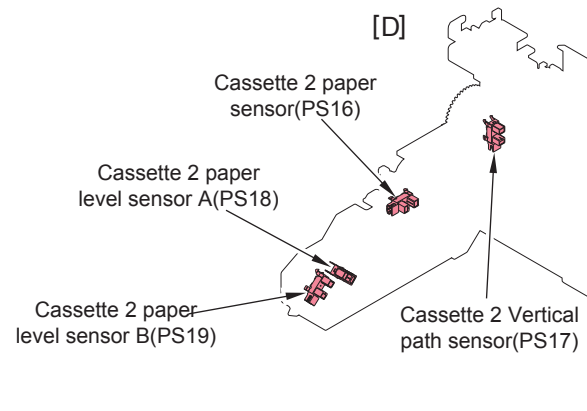
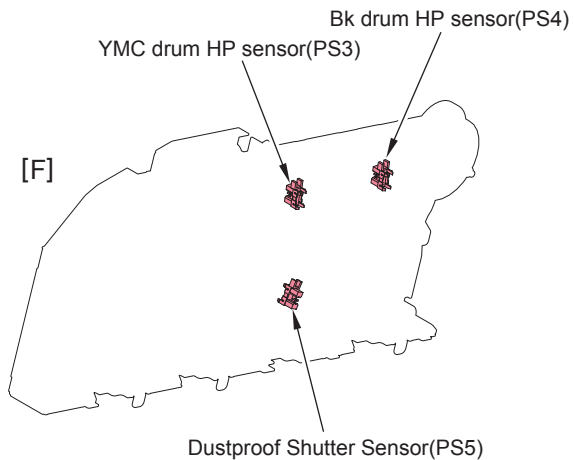
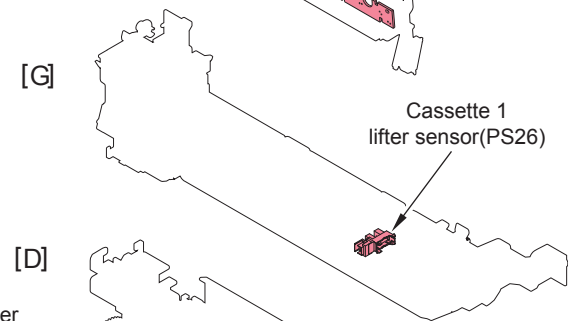
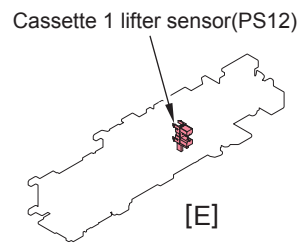
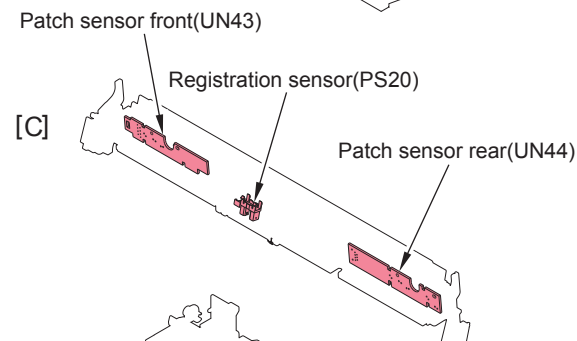
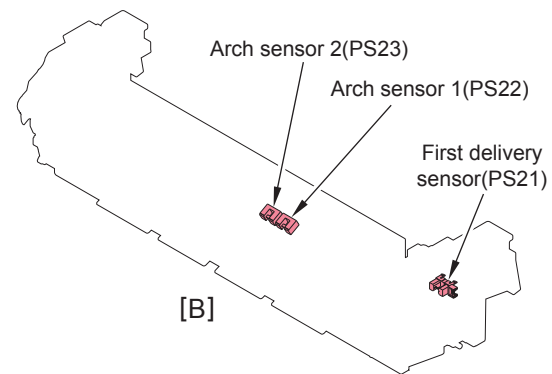
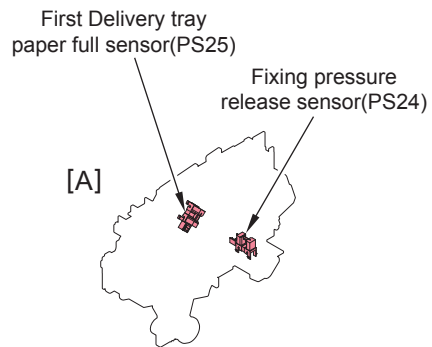
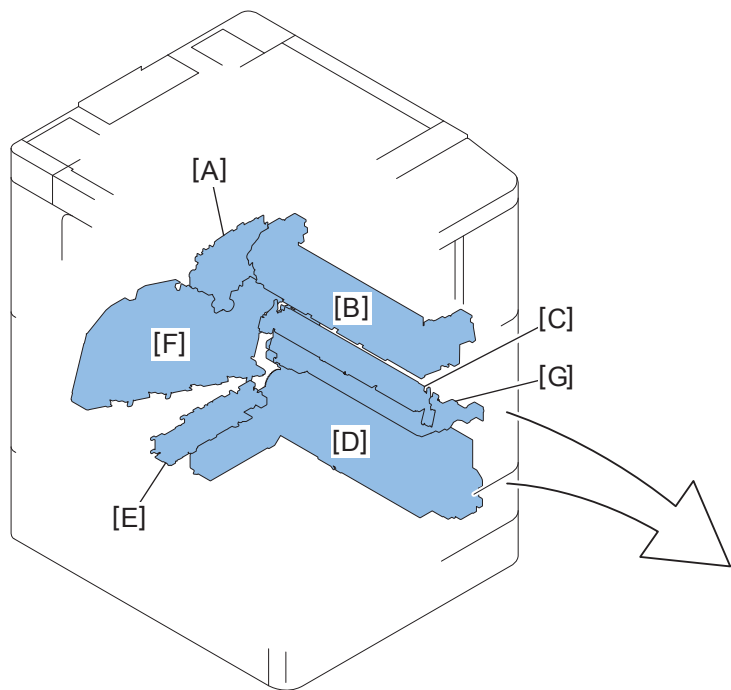
Sensor



F-4-12

No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
PS6	Toner Supply Sensor (Y)	Toner Buffer Unit	
PS7	Toner Supply Sensor (M)	Toner Buffer Unit	
PS8	Toner Supply Sensor (C)	Toner Buffer Unit	
PS9	Toner Supply Sensor (Bk)	Toner Buffer Unit	
PS10	Multi-purpose Tray Paper Sensor	Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Unit	
PS11	Multi-purpose Tray Last Paper Sensor	Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Unit	
PS27	Second Delivery Sensor	3 Way Unit	
PS28	Second Delivery Tray Full Sensor	3 Way Unit	
PS29	Reverse Sensor	3 Way Unit	
PS30	Third Delivery Sensor	3 Way Unit	
PS31	Duplex Sensor	3 Way Unit	
PS39	ATR Sensor (Y)	Drum Unit	
PS40	ATR Sensor (M)	Drum Unit	
PS41	ATR Sensor (C)	Drum Unit	
PS42	ATR Sensor (Bk)	Drum Unit	

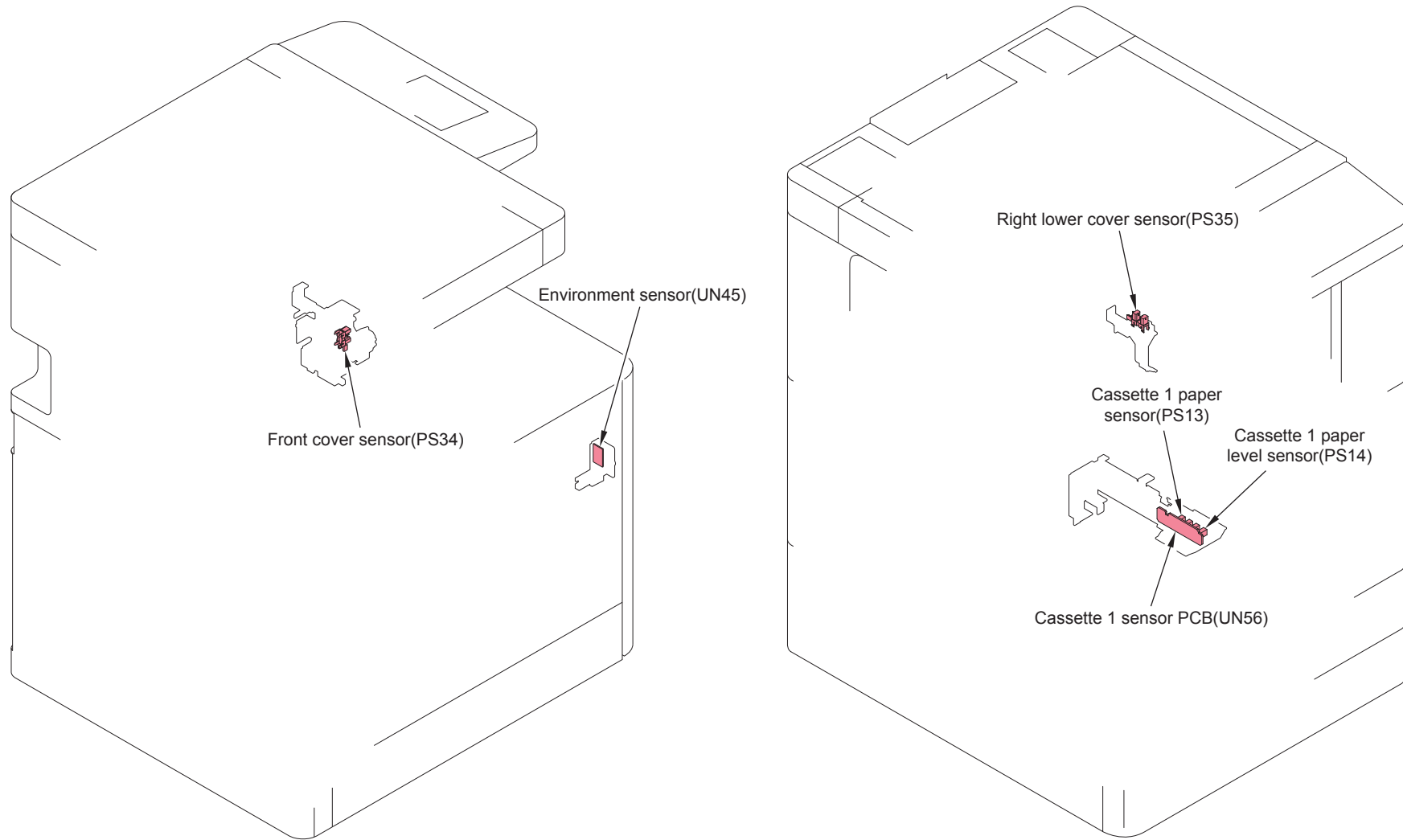
T-4-11



F-4-13

No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
PS3	Color Drum HP Sensor	Main Drive Unit	
PS4	Bk Drum HP Sensor	Main Drive Unit	
PS5	Dustproof Shutter Sensor	Main Drive Unit	
PS12	Cassette 1 Lifter Sensor	Cassette 1 Pickup Unit	
PS16	Cassette 2 Paper Sensor	Cassette 2 Pickup Unit	
PS17	Cassette 2 Vertical Path Sensor	Cassette 2 Pickup Unit	
PS18	Cassette 2 Paper Level Sensor A	Cassette 2 Pickup Unit	
PS19	Cassette 2 Paper Level Sensor B	Cassette 2 Pickup Unit	
PS20	Registration Sensor	Registration Patch Sensor	
PS21	First Delivery Sensor	Fixing Assembly	
PS22	Arch Sensor 1	Fixing Assembly	
PS23	Arch Sensor 2	Fixing Assembly	
PS24	Fixing Pressure Release Sensor	Fixing Drive Unit	
PS25	First Delivery Tray Paper Full Sensor	Fixing Drive Unit	
UN43	Patch Sensor (Front)	Registration Patch Sensor	
UN44	Patch Sensor (Rear)	Registration Patch Sensor	

T-4-12

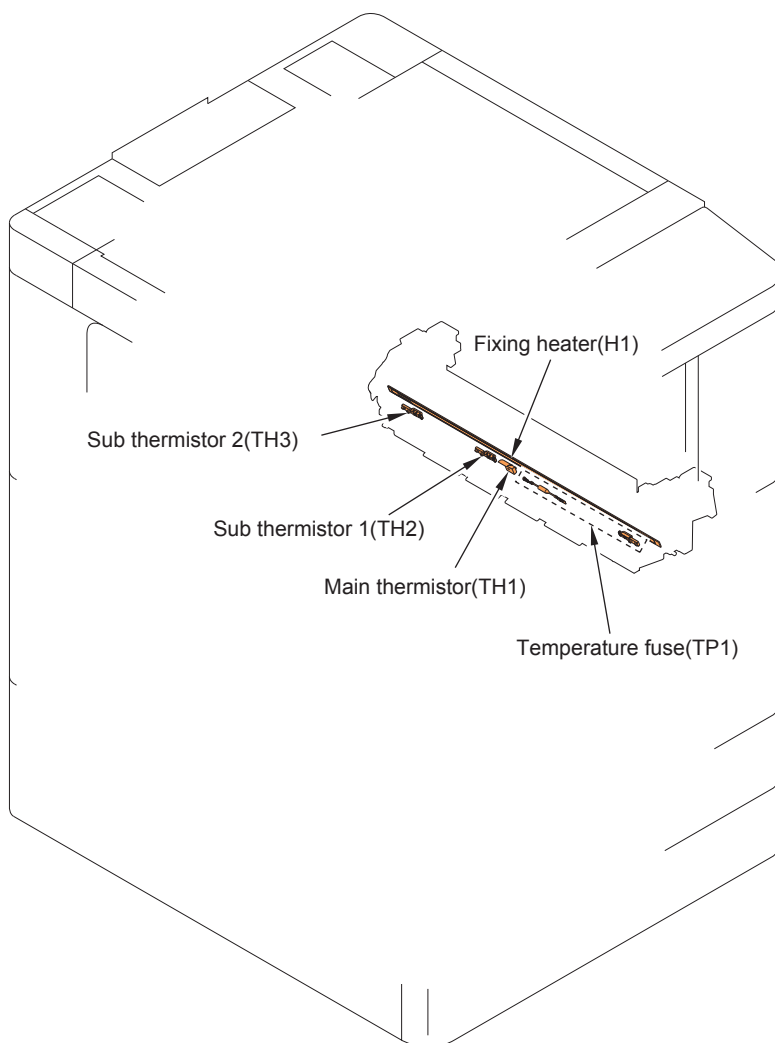


F-4-14

No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
PS13	Cassette 1 Paper Sensor	Cassette 1 Pickup Unit	
PS14	Cassette 1 Paper Level Sensor	Cassette 1 Pickup Unit	
PS34	Front Cover Sensor		
PS35	Right Lower Cover Sensor	Right Door Unit	
UN45	Environment Sensor	-	
UN56	Cassette 1 Sensor PCB	Cassette 1 Pickup Unit	

T-4-13

■ Heater / Other

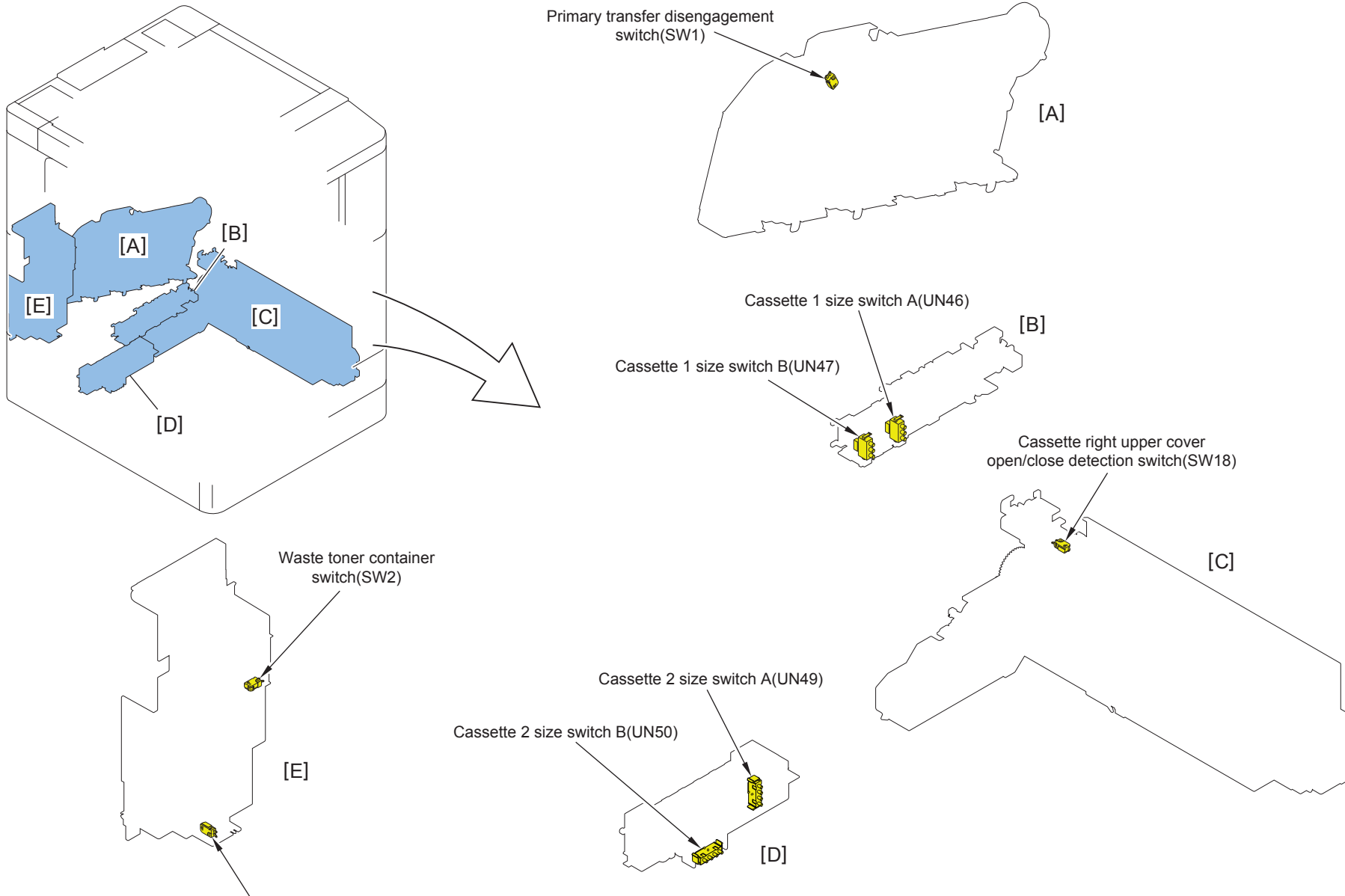


F-4-15

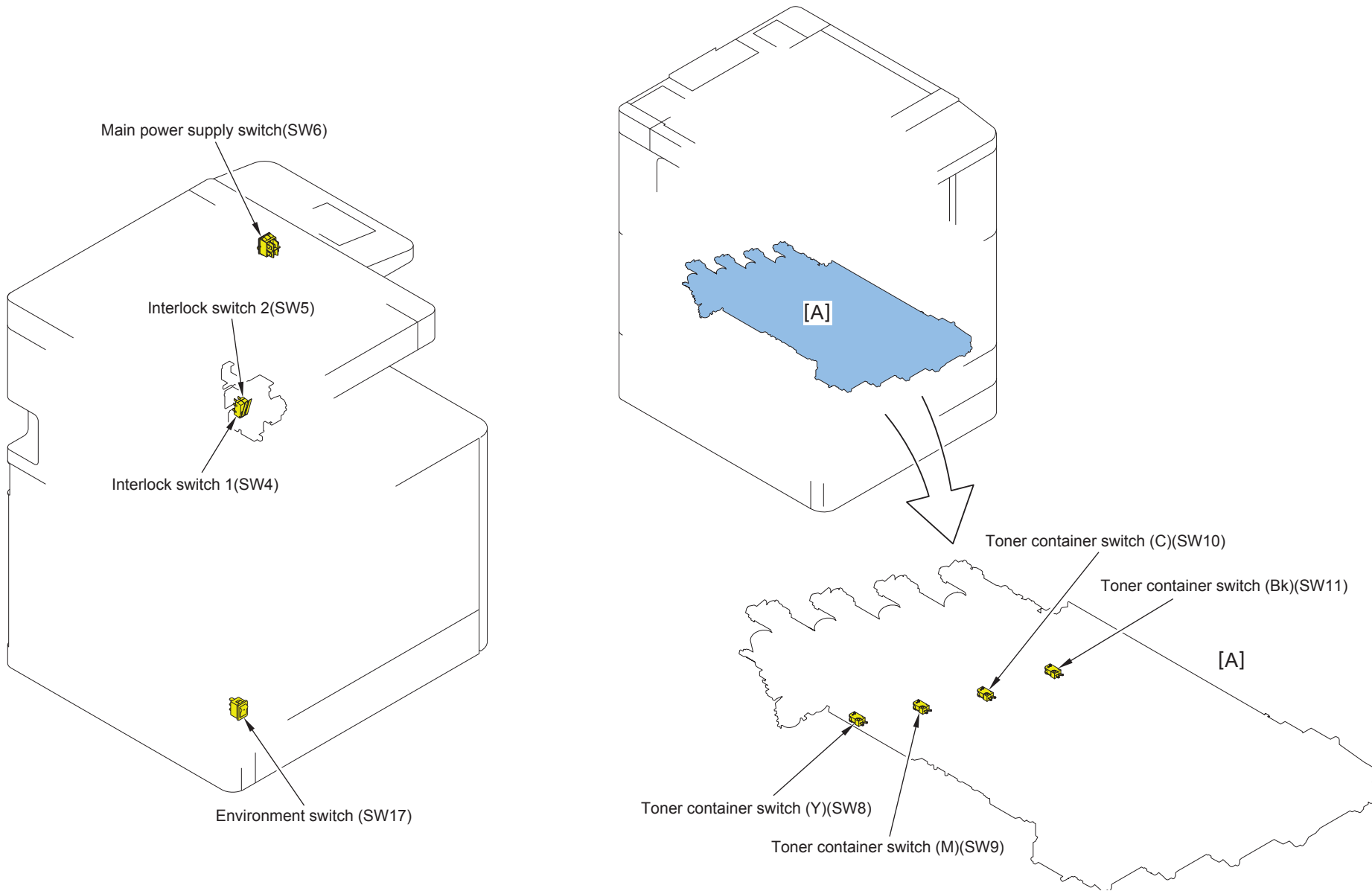
No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
H1	Fixing Heater	Fixing Assembly	
TH1	Main Thermistor	Fixing Assembly	
TH2	Sub Thermistor 1	Fixing Assembly	
TH3	Sub Thermistor 2	Fixing Assembly	
TP1	Temperature Fuse	Fixing Assembly	

T-4-14

Switch



F-4-16

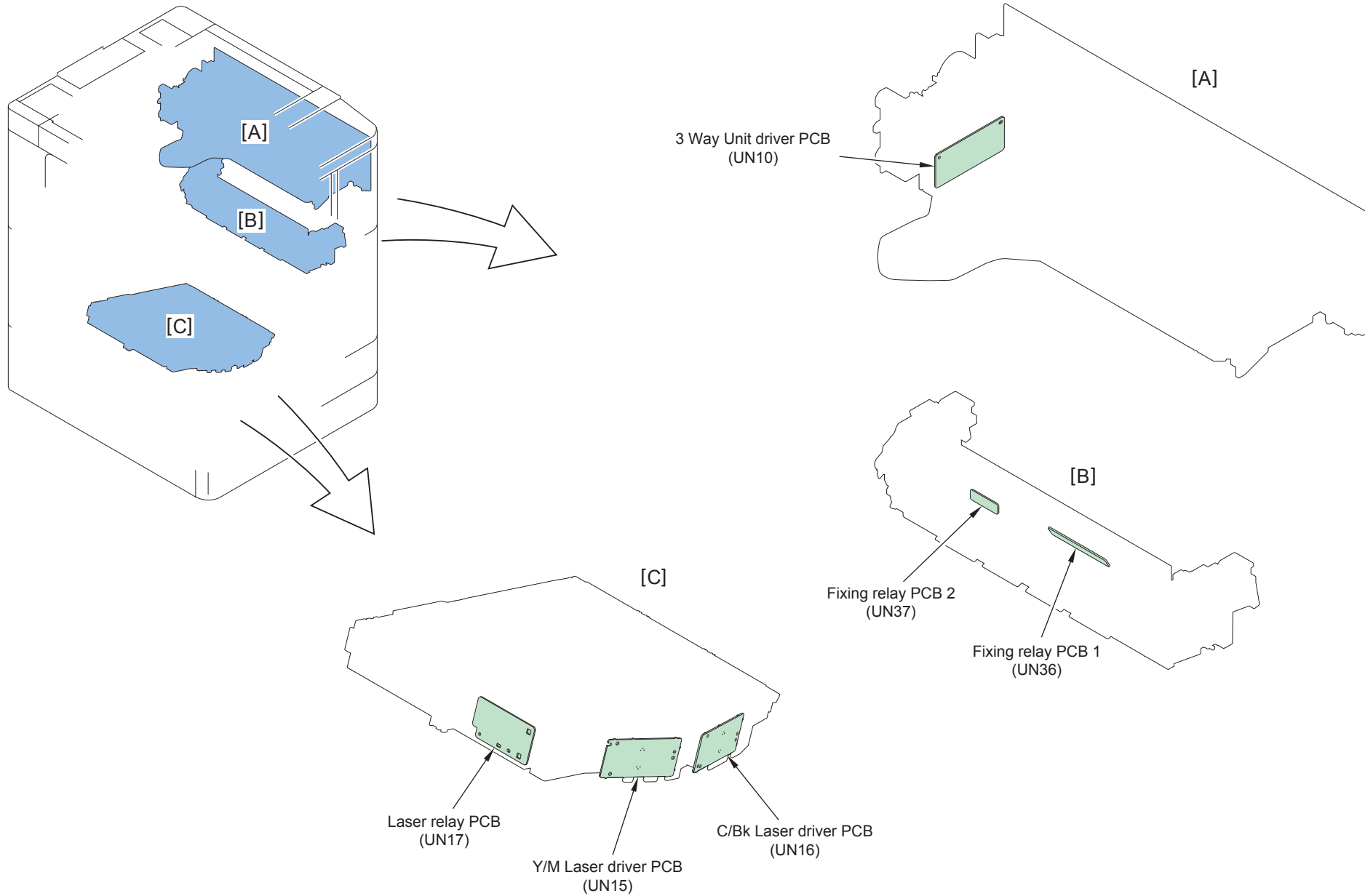


F-4-17

No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
SW1	Primary Transfer Disengagement Switch	Main Drive Unit	
SW2	Waste toner container switch		
SW4	Interlock Switch 1	Electric	
SW5	Interlock switch 2	Electric	
SW6	Main Power Supply Switch	Electric	
SW8	Toner Container Switch (Y)	Toner Buffer Unit	
SW9	Toner Container Switch (M)	Toner Buffer Unit	
SW10	Toner Container Switch (C)	Toner Buffer Unit	
SW11	Toner Container Switch (Bk)	Toner Buffer Unit	
SW16	Waste Toner Full Sensor		
SW18	Cassette Right Upper Cover Open/Close Detection Switch		
UN46	Cassette 1 Size Switch A	Cassette	
UN47	Cassette 1 Size Switch B	Cassette	
UN49	Cassette 2 Size Switch A	Cassette	
UN50	Cassette 2 Size Switch B	Cassette	

T-4-15

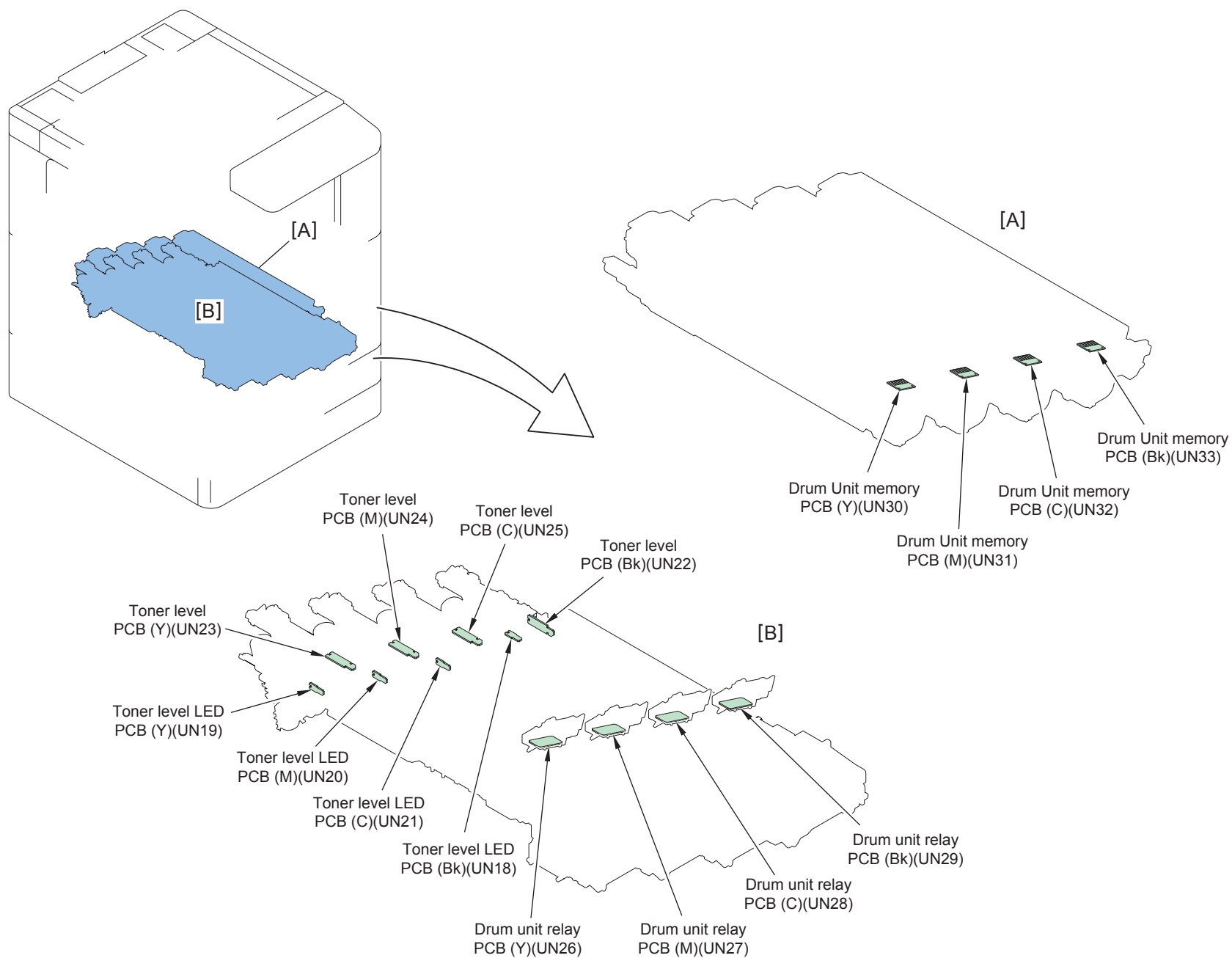
PCBs



F-4-18

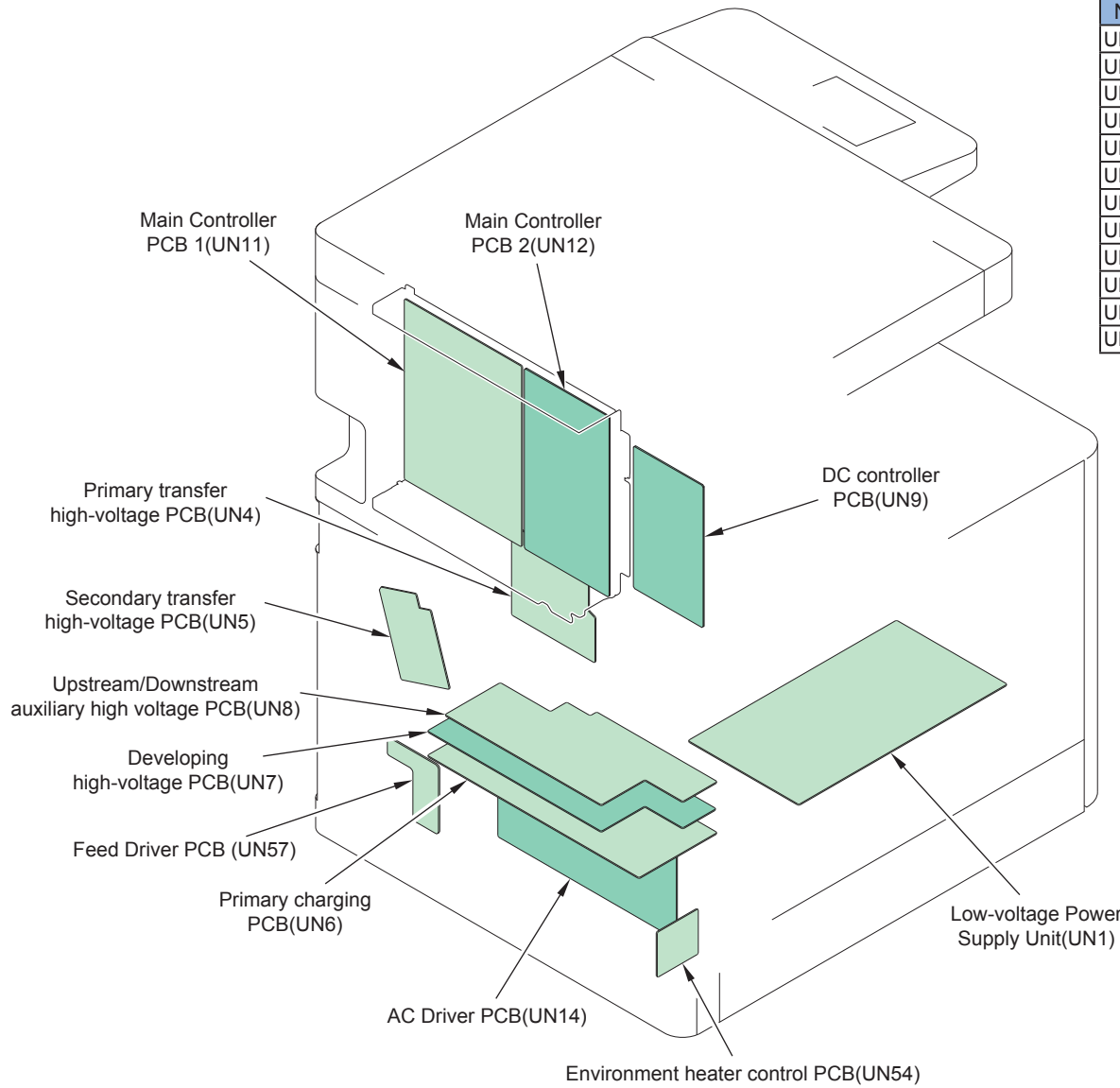
No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
UN10	3 Way Unit Driver PCB	3 Way Unit	
UN15	Y/M Laser Driver PCB	Laser Scanner Unit	
UN16	C/Bk Laser Driver PCB	Laser Scanner Unit	
UN17	Laser relay PCB	Laser Scanner Unit	
UN36	Fixing Relay PCB 1	Fixing Assembly	
UN37	Fixing Relay PCB 2	Fixing Assembly	

T-4-16



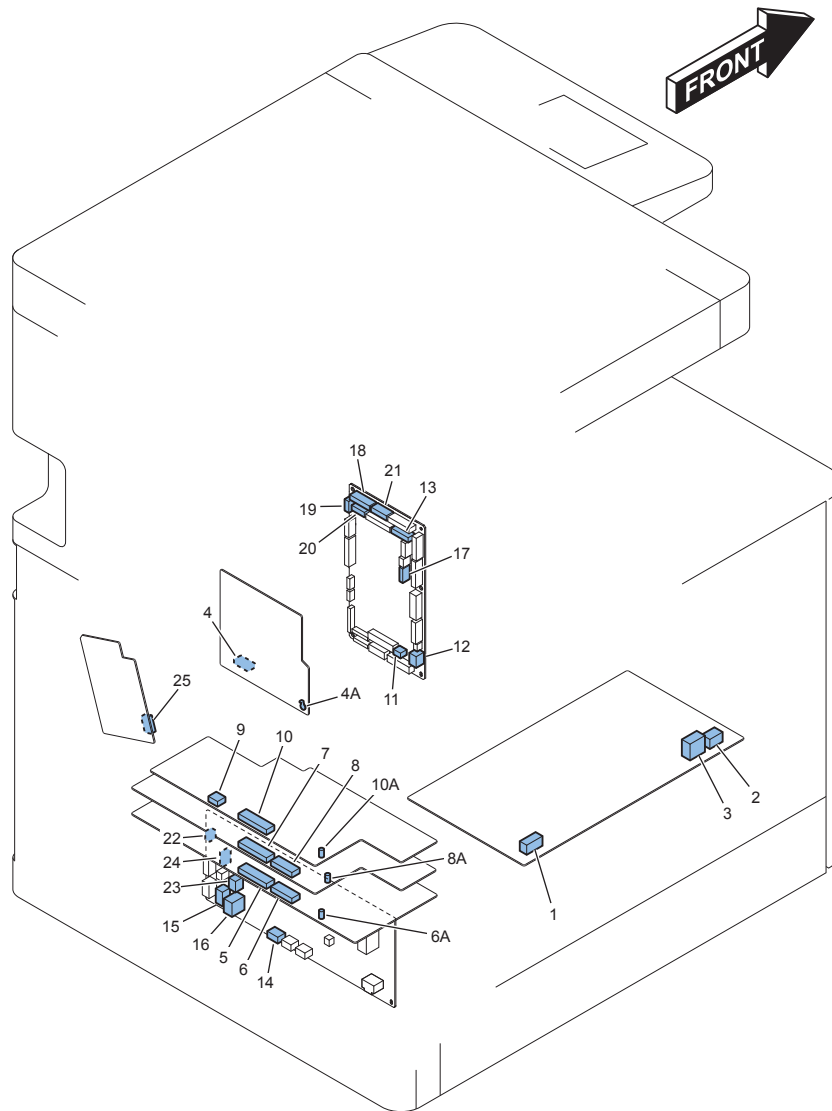
No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
UN18	Toner Level LED PCB (Bk)	Hopper Unit	
UN19	Toner Level LED PCB (Y)	Hopper Unit	
UN20	Toner Level LED PCB (M)	Hopper Unit	
UN21	Toner Level LED PCB (C)	Hopper Unit	
UN22	Toner Level PCB (Bk)	Hopper Unit	
UN23	Toner Level PCB (Y)	Hopper Unit	
UN24	Toner Level PCB (M)	Hopper Unit	
UN25	Toner Level PCB (C)	Hopper Unit	
UN26	Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y)	Electric (Front)	
UN27	Drum Unit Relay PCB (M)	Electric (Front)	
UN28	Drum Unit Relay PCB (C)	Electric (Front)	
UN29	Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk)	Electric (Front)	
UN30	Drum Unit Memory PCB (Y)	Drum Unit	
UN31	Drum Unit Memory PCB (M)	Drum Unit	
UN32	Drum Unit Memory PCB (C)	Drum Unit	
UN33	Drum Unit Memory PCB (Bk)	Drum Unit	

T-4-17



No.	Name	Main Unit	Reference
UN1	Low-voltage Power Supply Unit	Electric	
UN4	Primary Transfer High-voltage PCB	Electric	
UN5	Secondary Transfer High-voltage PCB	Electric	
UN6	Primary Charging PCB	Electric	
UN7	Developing High-voltage PCB	Electric	
UN8	Upstream / Downstream Auxiliary High voltage PCB	Electric	
UN9	DC Controller PCB	Controller	
UN11	Main Controller PCB 1	Controller	
UN12	Main Controller PCB 2	Controller	
UN14	AC Driver PCB	Electric	
UN54	Environment Heater Control PCB	Electric	
UN57	Feed Driver PCB	Electric	

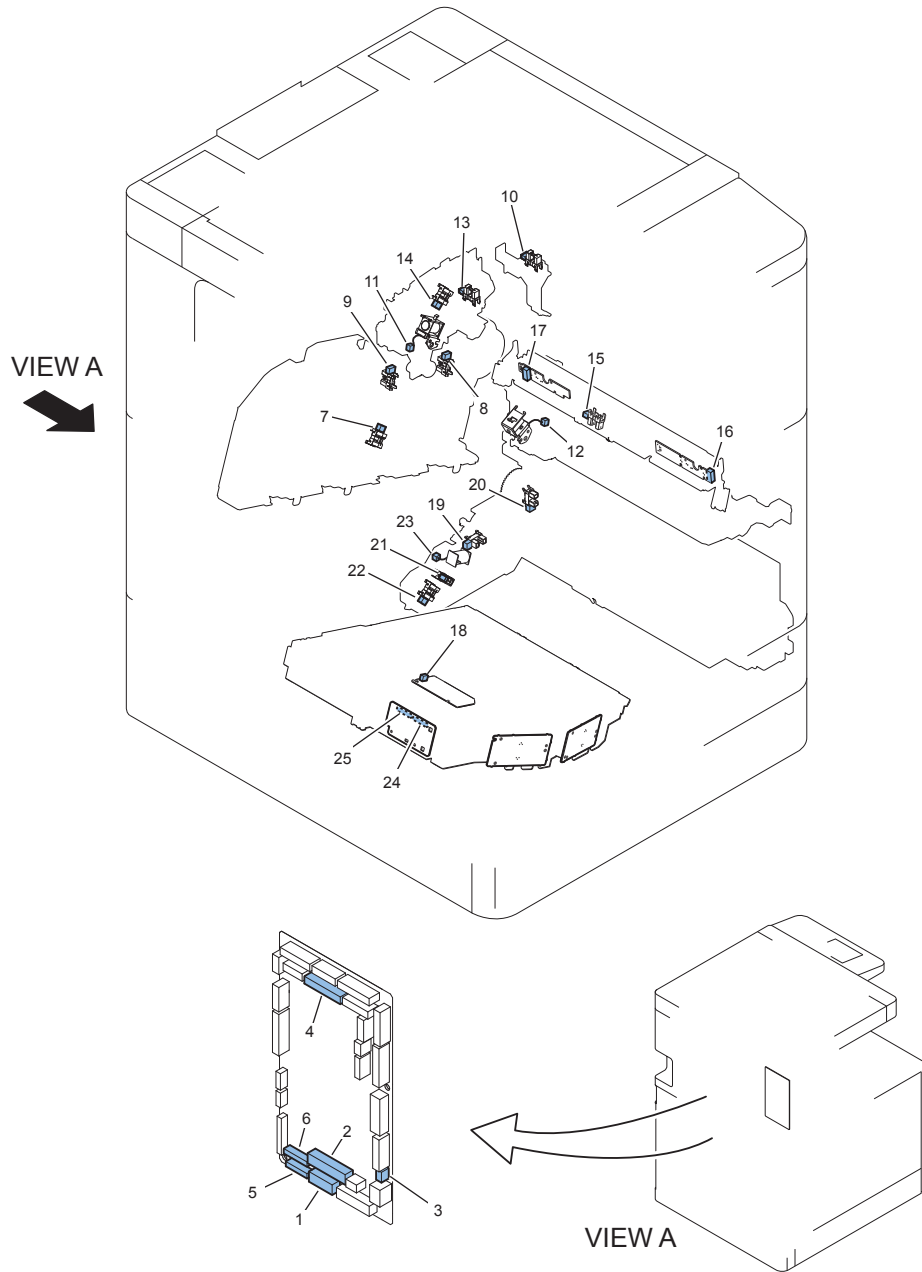
T-4-18

 Conector


F-4-20

Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name	Intermediate Connector	Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name
1	J1	UN01	Low-voltage Power Supply Unit		14	J102	UN14	AC driver PCB
2	J11	UN01	Low-voltage Power Supply Unit		15	J110	UN14	AC driver PCB
3	J12	UN01	Low-voltage Power Supply Unit		16	J111	UN14	AC driver PCB
4	J1001A	UN04	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB		17	J205	UN09	DC controller PCB
4A	J1010	UN04	Primary transfer high-voltage PCB		-	-		DC controller PCB
5	J441	UN06	Primary charging PCB		18	J21	UN09	DC controller PCB
6	J442	UN06	Primary charging PCB		18	J21	UN09	DC controller PCB
6A	J1	UN06	Primary charging PCB		-	-	UN09	DC controller PCB
7	J451	UN07	Developing high-voltage PCB		19	J20	UN09	DC controller PCB
8	J452	UN07	Developing high-voltage PCB		20	J22	UN09	DC controller PCB
8A	J501	UN07	Developing high-voltage PCB		-	-		DC controller PCB
9	J461	UN08	Upstream/downstream auxiliary high voltage PCB		21	J19	UN09	DC controller PCB
10	J462	UN08	Upstream/downstream auxiliary high voltage PCB		21	J19	UN09	DC controller PCB
10A	J1	UN08	Upstream/downstream auxiliary high voltage PCB		-	-		DC controller PCB
11	J1	UN09	DC controller PCB		22	J114	UN14	AC driver PCB
12	J2	UN09	DC controller PCB		23	J115	UN14	AC driver PCB
13	J10	UN09	DC controller PCB		24	J122	UN14	AC driver PCB
13	J10	UN09	DC controller PCB	J818	25	J201	UN05	Secondary transfer high-voltage PCB

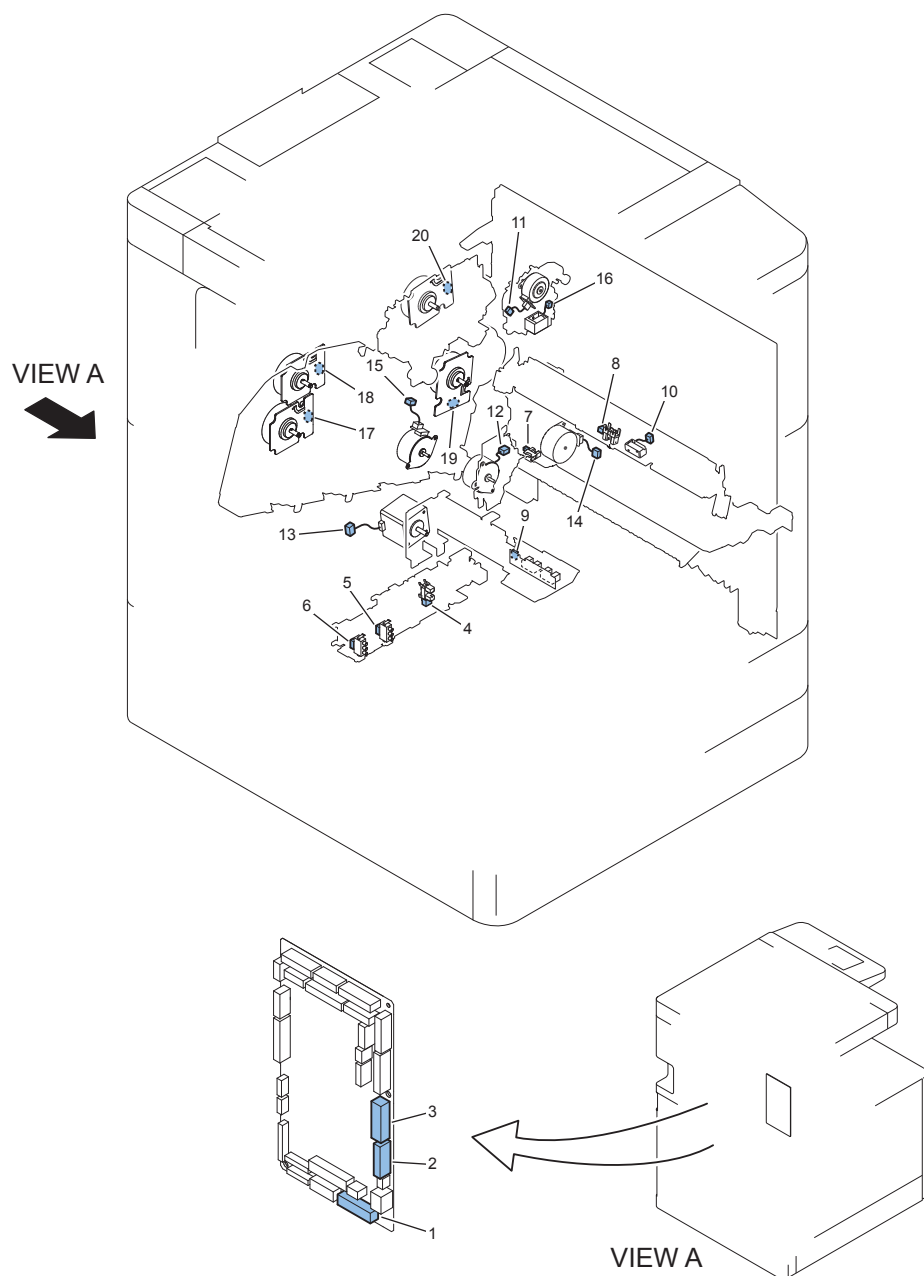
T-4-19



F-4-21

Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name	Intermediate Connector	Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name
1	J11	UN09	DC controller PCB	J821	7	J6004	PS05	Laser Shutter Sensor
1	J11	UN09	DC controller PCB	J822	8	J6005	PS04	Bk drum HP sensor
1	J11	UN09	DC controller PCB	J822	9	J6006	PS03	YMC drum HP sensor
1	J11	UN09	DC controller PCB	J822	-	-	SW01	Primary transfer disengagement switch
1	J11	UN09	DC controller PCB	J824	-	-	SW18	Right lower cover open/close detection switch
1	J11	UN09	DC controller PCB	J823	10	J6009	PS35	Right lower cover sensor
1	J11	UN09	DC controller PCB		11	J6008	SL01	Primary transfer disengagement solenoid
1	J11	UN09	DC controller PCB		12	J6007	SL04	Cassette 1 pickup solenoid
2	J12	UN09	DC controller PCB	J738	13	J510	PS24	Fixing pressure release sensor
2	J12	UN09	DC controller PCB	J743	14	J513	PS25	First Delivery tray paper full sensor
2	J12	UN09	DC controller PCB	J813 J814	15	J6001	PS20	Registration sensor
2	J12	UN09	DC controller PCB	J813 J814	16	J4006	UN44	Patch sensor front
2	J12	UN09	DC controller PCB	J813 J814	17	J4007	UN43	Patch sensor rear
3	J15	UN09	DC controller PCB	J714	18	J529	M01	Scanner motor
4	J28	UN09	DC controller PCB	J825 J826	19	J6011	PS16	Cassette 2 paper sensor
4	J28	UN09	DC controller PCB	J825 J826	20	J6014	PS17	Cassette 2 Vertical path sensor
4	J28	UN09	DC controller PCB	J825 J826	21	J6012	PS18	Cassette 2 paper level sensor A
4	J28	UN09	DC controller PCB	J825 J826	22	J6013	PS19	Cassette 2 paper level sensor B
4	J28	UN09	DC controller PCB	J825 J826	23	J6015	SL05	Cassette 2 pickup solenoid
4	J28	UN09	DC controller PCB		-	-	-	CASSETTE FEEDING UNIT
5	J61	UN09	DC controller PCB		24	J831	UN17	Laser relay PCB
6	J62	UN09	DC controller PCB		25	J832	UN17	Laser relay PCB

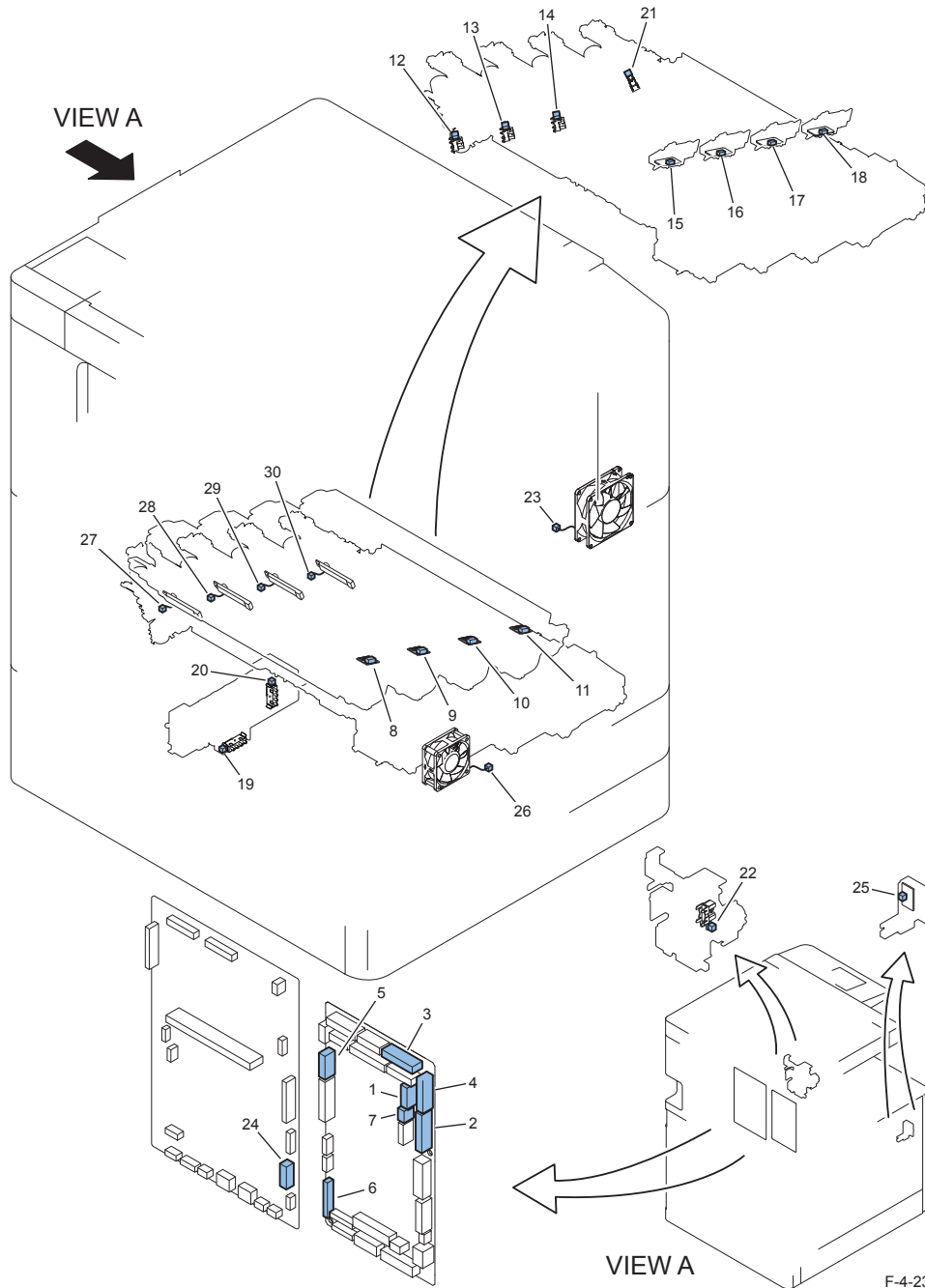
T-4-20



F-4-22

Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name	Intermediate Connector	Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J840	4	J6020	PS12	Cassette 1 lifter sensor
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J840	5	J6018	UN46	Cassette 1 size switch A
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J840	6	J6019	UN47	Cassette 1 size switch B
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J828	-	-	SW16	Waste toner full sensor
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J828	-	-	SW02	Waste toner container switch
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J840	-	-	M14	Lifter motor
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J736	7	J527	PS10	Multi-purpose tray paper sensor
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J827 J114 J561	8	J528	PS11	Multi-purpose tray last paper sensor
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J840 J842	9	J543	PS13	Cassette 1 paper sensor
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J840 J842	9	J543	PS14	Cassette 1 paper level sensor
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J840 J842	9	J543	UN56	Cassette 1 sensor PCB
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J827 J114 J530	-	-	SL03	Multi-purpose pickup solenoid
1	J13	UN09	DC controller PCB	J829 J830	10	J6017	SL02	Registration shutter solenoid
2	J31	UN09	DC controller PCB	J833 J552	11	J520	M18	Fixing outlet motor
2	J31	UN09	DC controller PCB		12	J6024	M19	Duplexing feed motor
2	J31	UN09	DC controller PCB	J834	13	J6022	M16	Cassette 2 pickup motor
2	J31	UN09	DC controller PCB	J535	14	J523	M15	Cassette 1 pickup motor
2	J31	UN09	DC controller PCB		15	J6023	M05	Shutter motor
2	J31	UN09	DC controller PCB	J833	16	J6021	SL06	First Delivery flapper solenoid
3	J210	UN09	DC controller PCB		17	J6025	M04	Drum motor
3	J210	UN09	DC controller PCB		18	J6026	M03	Developing motor
3	J210	UN09	DC controller PCB		19	J6027	M02	ITB motor
3	J210	UN09	DC controller PCB		20	J6028	M17	Fixing motor

T-4-21

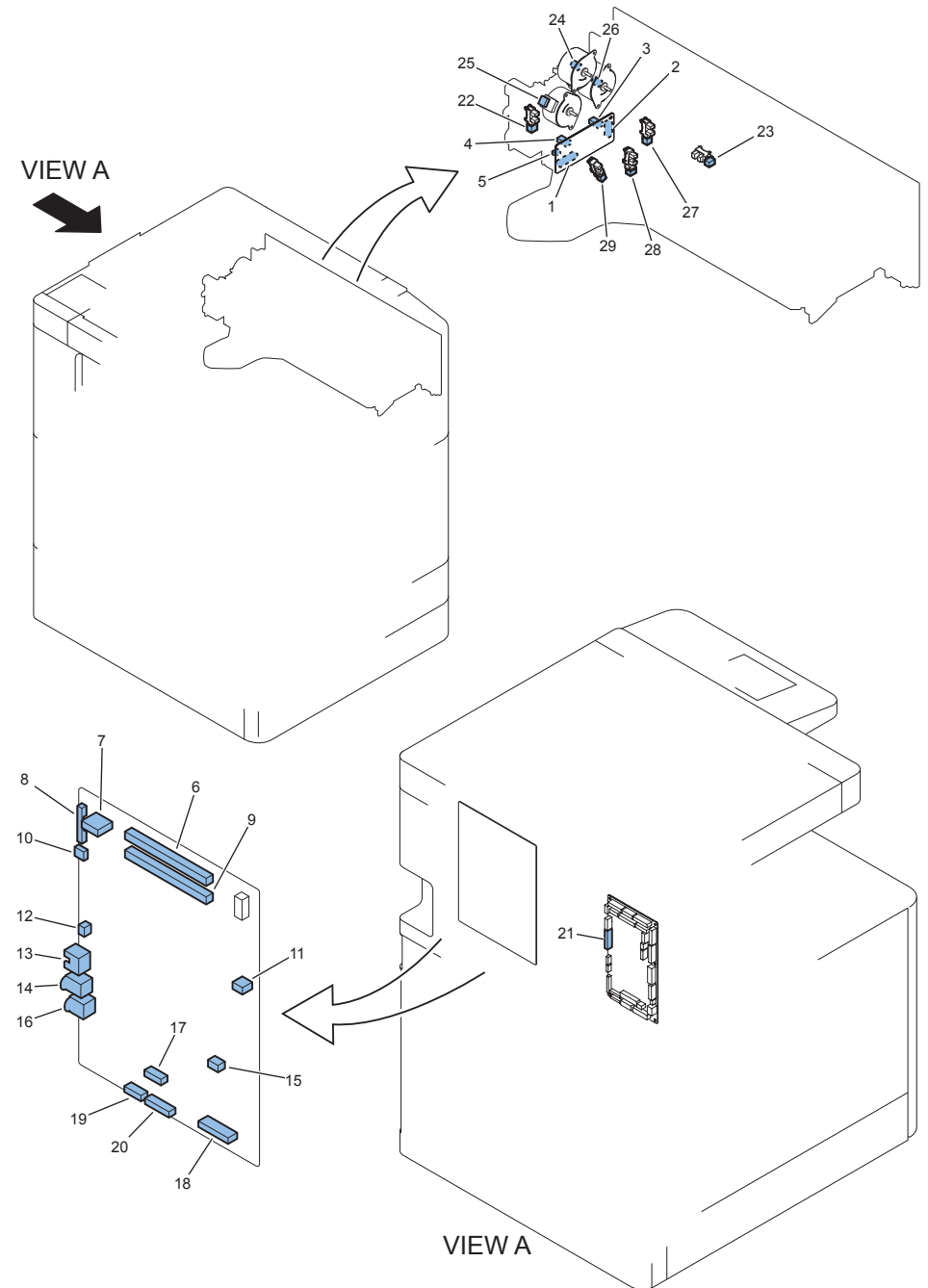


F-4-23

Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name	Intermediate Connector	Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name
1	J23	UN09	DC controller PCB	J853	-	-	SW08	Toner container switch(Y)
1	J23	UN09	DC controller PCB	J852	-	-	UN19	Toner level LED PCB(Y)
1	J23	UN09	DC controller PCB	J852	-	-	UN23	Toner level PCB(Y)
1	J23	UN09	DC controller PCB	J850	-	-	M07	Toner container motor (Y)
1	J23	UN09	DC controller PCB	J851	-	-	M06	Toner supply motor (Y)
1	J23	UN09	DC controller PCB	J850	12	J6044	PS06	Toner supply sensor (Y)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J860	13	J6045	PS07	Toner supply sensor (M)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J870	14	J6046	PS08	Toner supply sensor (C)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J863	-	-	SW09	Toner container switch(M)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J873	-	-	SW10	Toner container switch(C)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J862	-	-	UN20	Toner level LED PCB(M)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J862	-	-	UN24	Toner level PCB(M)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J872	-	-	UN21	Toner level LED PCB(C)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J872	-	-	UN25	Toner level PCB(C)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J860	-	-	M09	Toner container motor (M)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J861	-	-	M08	Toner supply motor (M)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J870	-	-	M11	Toner container motor (C)
2	J24	UN09	DC controller PCB	J815 J871	-	-	M10	Toner supply motor (C)
3	J25	UN09	DC controller PCB	J820	15	J4011	UN26	Drum unit relay PCB (Y)
3	J25	UN09	DC controller PCB	J820	16	J4014	UN27	Drum Unit relay PCB (M)
3	J25	UN09	DC controller PCB	J820	17	J4017	UN28	Drum Unit relay PCB ©
3	J25	UN09	DC controller PCB	J820	18	J4020	UN29	Drum Unit relay PCB (Bk)

Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name	Intermediate Connector	Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name
4	J26	UN09	DC controller PCB	J816 J883	-	-	SW11	Toner container switch(Bk)
4	J26	UN09	DC controller PCB	J816 J882	-	-	UN18	Toner level LED PCB(Bk)
4	J26	UN09	DC controller PCB	J816 J882	-	-	UN22	Toner level PCB(Bk)
4	J26	UN09	DC controller PCB	J817	19	J4008	UN50	Cassette 2 size switch B
4	J26	UN09	DC controller PCB	J817	20	J4009	UN49	Cassette 2 size switch A
4	J26	UN09	DC controller PCB	J816 J880	-	-	M13	Toner container motor (Bk)
4	J26	UN09	DC controller PCB	J816 J881	-	-	M12	Toner supply motor (Bk)
4	J26	UN09	DC controller PCB	J816 J880	21	J6047	PS09	Toner supply sensor (Bk)
5	J35	UN09	DC controller PCB	J837 J838	22	J6030	PS34	Front cover sensor
5	J35	UN09	DC controller PCB	J837	23	J6031	FM04	3 Way Unit Cooling Fan
5	J35	UN09	DC controller PCB	J837	-	-	-	FINISHER
6	J51	UN09	DC controller PCB		24	J1	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2
7	J206	UN09	DC controller PCB	J819	25	J4010	UN45	Environment sensor
7	J206	UN09	DC controller PCB		26	J6002	FM07	Drum Unit cooling fan
8	J1	UN30	Drum unit memory PCB(Y)		27	J4013	UN39	ATR sensor (Y)
9	J1	UN31	Drum unit memory PCB(M)		28	J4016	UN40	ATR sensor (M)
10	J1	UN32	Drum unit memory PCB (C)		29	J4019	UN41	ATR sensor (C)
11	J1	UN33	Drum unit memory PCB(Bk)		30	J4022	UN42	ATR sensor (Bk)

T-4-22

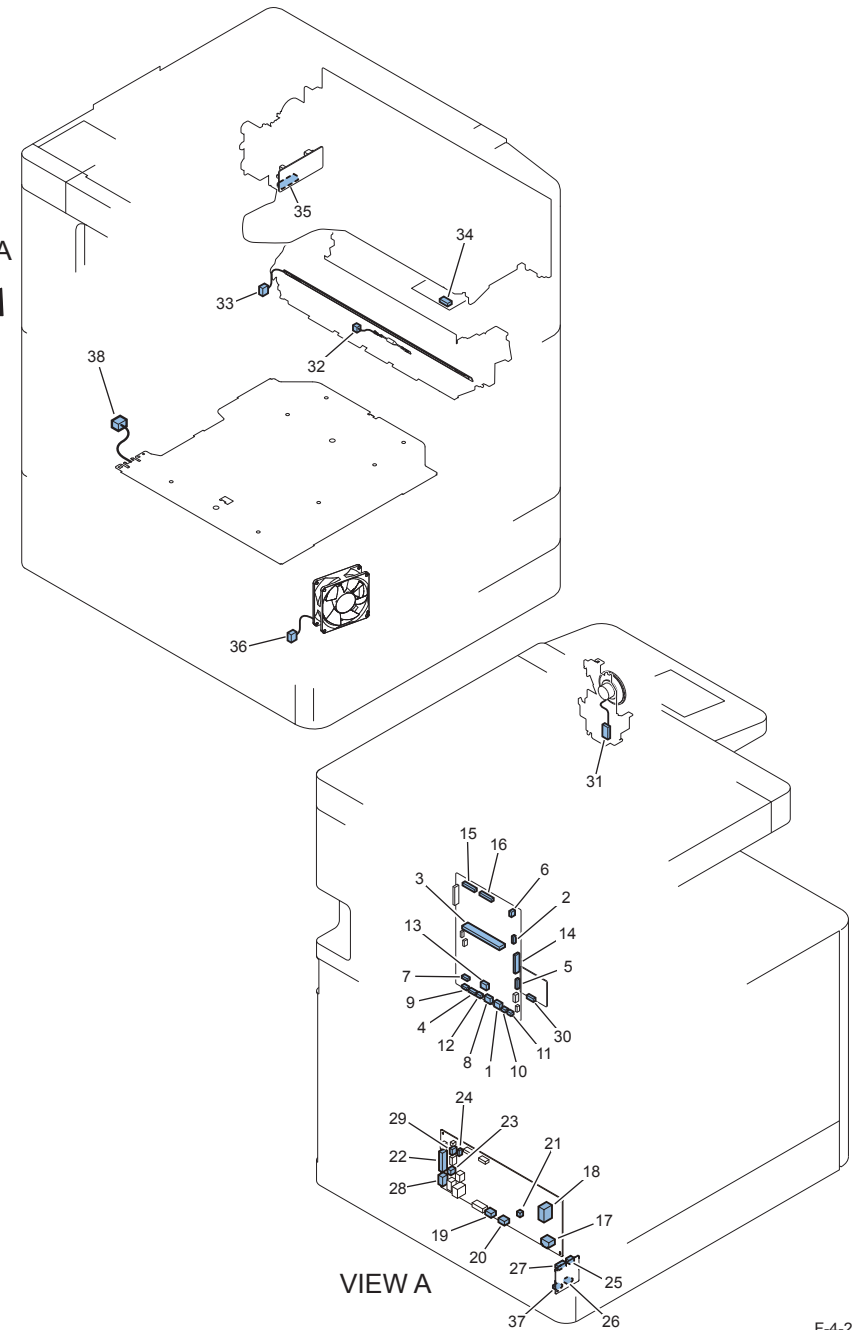


Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name	Intermediate Connector	Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name
1	J212	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB	J839	21	J33	UN09	DC controller PCB
2	J213	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB		22	J6034	PS28	Second delivery tray full sensor
2	J213	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB		23	J6035	PS29	Reverse sensor
2	J213	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB		24	J6036	M21	Reverse motor
2	J213	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB		25	J6037	M20	Second delivery motor
2	J213	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB		26	J6038	M22	Third delivery motor
3	J214	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB		27	J6039	PS30	Third delivery sensor
3	J214	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB	J6040	-	-	SL07	Second Delivery flapper solenoid
3	J214	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB	J6041	-	-	SL08	Third Delivery flapper solenoid
4	J215	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB		28	J6042	PS31	Duplex sensor
5	J216	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB		29	J6043	PS27	Second delivery sensor
6	J1000	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	DDR2 DIMM2
7	J1002	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	VOICE-OPERATION-BOARD
7	J1002	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	VOICE-GUIDANCE-BOARD
8	J1003	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	UI PCU (A515)
9	J1004	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	DDR2 DIMM1
10	J1007	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	DEVECE PORT HUB
11	J1013	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	POSTPONE I/F
12	J1015	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	FM03	Controller fan
13	J1017	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	ETHERNET
14	J1018	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	USB(D)
15	J1020	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	SATA-FLASH

Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name	Intermediate Connector	Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name
16	J1021	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	USB(H)
17	J1022	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	TPM
18	J1025	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	-	-	YON-RISER
19	J1026	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1		-	J5500	-	CC-VI
20	J1027	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1	J5502	J5503	-	J5504	CARD READER
20	J1027	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1			-	J5502	SRIAL-RS CONV_ BOARD
20	J1027	UN11	Main Controller PCB 1			-	J5502	COIN VENDER

T-4-23

VIEW A



F-4-25

Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name	Intermediate Connector			Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name
1	J4	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				28	J113	UN14	AC driver PCB
2	J17	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				-	-	-	DEBUG SRAM
3	J11	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				-	-	-	DDR2 DIMM
4	J12	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				-	-	-	HDD
5	J14	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				-	-	-	FRAM COUNTER
6	J16	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				29	J1010	UN14	AC driver PCB
7	J18	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				30	J922	UN13	ECO PCB
8	J20	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				-	-	-	FAX
9	J21	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				-	-	-	L2FAX
10	J22	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				28	J113	UN14	AC driver PCB
11	J23	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2	J835			31	J6029	SP01	Speaker
12	J2017	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				-	-	-	MINERVA (MDS)
13	J2026	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				-	-	-	HDD
14	J2083	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				-	-	-	L1FAX
15	J8113	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				-	-	-	Reader
16	J8141	UN12	Main Controller PCB 2				-	-	-	Reader
17	J101	UN14	AC driver PCB				-	-	PLG1	Power supply cord
17	J101A	UN14	AC driver PCB				-	-	PLG1A	Power supply cord
17	J101B	UN14	AC driver PCB				-	-	PLG1B	Power supply cord
18	J103	UN14	AC driver PCB	J109	J704	J5002	32	J5003	TP01	Temperature fuse
18	J103	UN14	AC driver PCB	J109	J704		33	J5001	H01	Fixing heater
19	J104	UN14	AC driver PCB	J811			-	-	SW06	Main power supply switch
19	J104	UN14	AC driver PCB	J811			-	J4002	-	Reader Heater

Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name	Intermediate Connector			Key No.	J No.	Symbol	Parts Name
20	J105	UN14	AC driver PCB				-	-	UN54	Environment heater control PCB
20	J105B	UN14	AC driver PCB				-	-	UN54	Environment heater control PCB
21	J107	UN14	AC driver PCB				-	J1002	-	FAX
22	J116	UN14	AC driver PCB	J803			34	J4001	UN38	Operation panel Unit
22	J116	UN14	AC driver PCB	J803	J808		-	-	SW04	Interlock switch 1
22	J116	UN14	AC driver PCB	J803	J808		-	-	SW05	Interlock switch 2
22	J116	UN14	AC driver PCB	J810			35	J211	UN10	3 Way Unit driver PCB
22	J116	UN14	AC driver PCB	J803	J806		-	J4000	-	Devide Unit
22	J116	UN14	AC driver PCB	J803	J807		-	-	-	FINISHER
22	J116	UN14	AC driver PCB				-	-	-	Reader
23	J117	UN14	AC driver PCB				-	J4005	-	Cassette Pedestal
24	J120	UN14	AC driver PCB				36	J6000	FM01	Power supply fan
24	J120	UN14	AC driver PCB				37	J420	UN54	Environment heater control PCB
25	J416	UN54	Environment heater control PCB				-	-	SW17	Environment switch
26	J418	UN54	Environment heater control PCB				-	J4003	-	Cassette Pedestal Heater
27	J419	UN54	Environment heater control PCB	J811			-	J4002	-	Reader Heater
	-	UN54	Environment heater control PCB				38	J4004	H01	Cassette heater

T-4-24

Disassembly/Assembly- Main Controller system -

Removing the Controller Cover

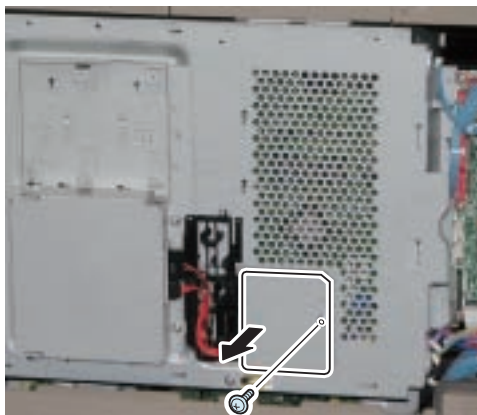
Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.

Procedure

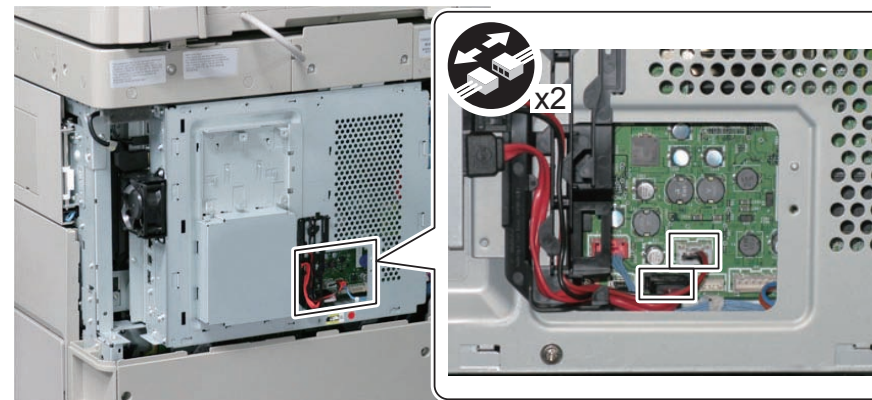
NOTE:
The following describes the procedure for the HDD model. For the models without the HDD, start from step 2.

- 1) Remove the small Cover.
- 1 Screw



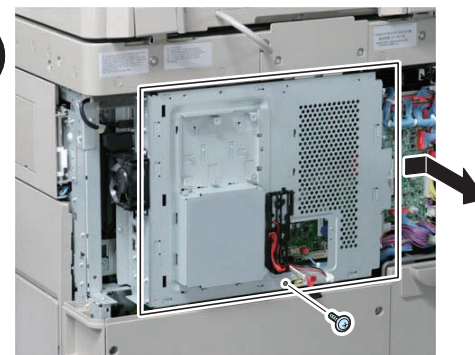
F-4-26

- 2) Remove the HDD Power Cable when the HDD is installed.
- 2 Connectors



F-4-27

- 3) Remove the Controller Cover in the direction of the arrow.
- 1 Screw



F-4-28

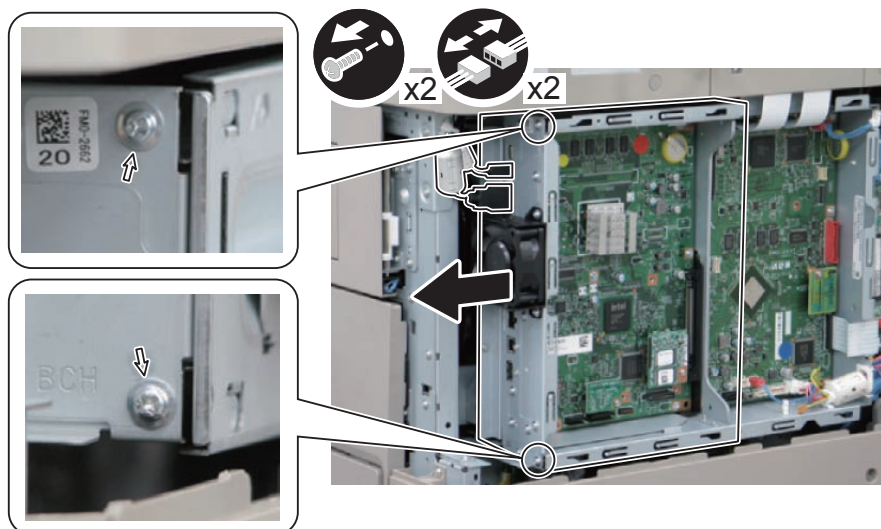
Removing the Main Controller PCB 1

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
- 3) Remove the Controller Cover.

Procedure

- 1) Disconnect the Control Panel Communication Cable and Remove Main Controller 1 in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-29

Removing the Main Controller 2

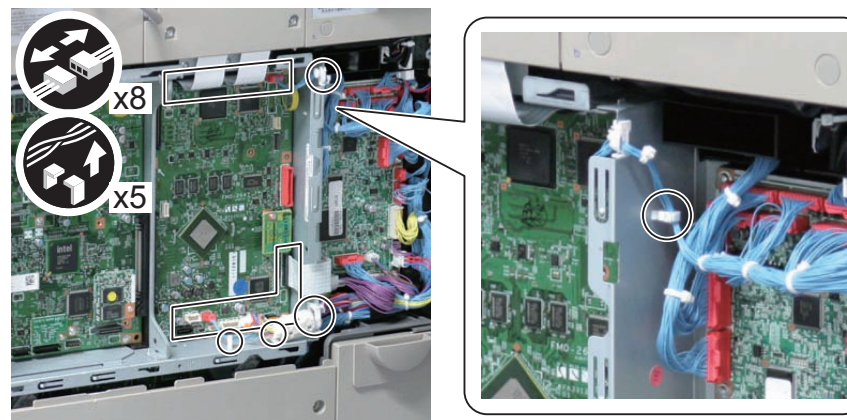
- 1) Backup of the Forwarding Settings and Service Mode setting values (MN-CON) Use the Remote UI.
Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export
Target data:
 - Forwarding Settings
 - Service Mode setting values (MN-CON)
Only when ON is selected in COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT, the service mode setting values can be backed up and restored from the RUI.

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
- 3) Remove the Controller Cover.

Procedure

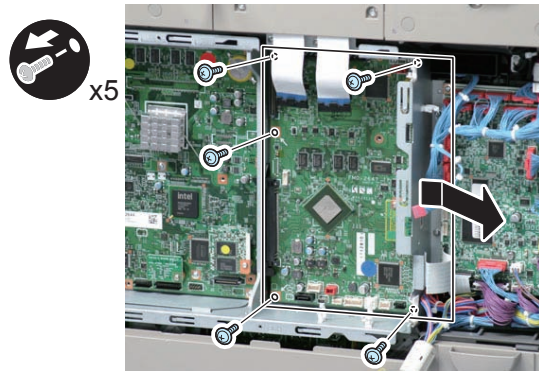
- 1) Remove the 5 Connectors, 3 Flat Cables, Edge Saddle and Wire Saddle.
 - 5 Connectors
 - 3 Flat cables
 - Wire Saddle
 - Edge Saddle



F-4-30

2) Remove Main Controller PCB 2 in the direction of the arrow.

- 5 Screws



F-4-31

- 1) After installing the parts, turn ON the main power switch.
- 2) Restoring the backup data
Use the Remote UI.
Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export
- 3) TPM key information
If the TPM key information in the SRAM of the HDD or the Main Controller PCB 2 is lost, the key information in the SRAM is automatically recovered from the backup of the common key in the HDD. Then the internal state of TPM setting key changes to "ON". However, the display on the UI remains "OFF", therefore the TPM setting needs to be manually changed to "ON".
- 4) When the user generates and adds the encryption key, certificate and/or CA certificate, request the user to generate them again.

Removing the DC Controller PCB

Preparation

At replacement:

Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, execute the following service mode to perform backup of the DC Controller PCB SRAM:

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DSRAMBUP (LEVEL2)

"ACTIVE" is displayed and then "OK!" is displayed about 2 minutes later.

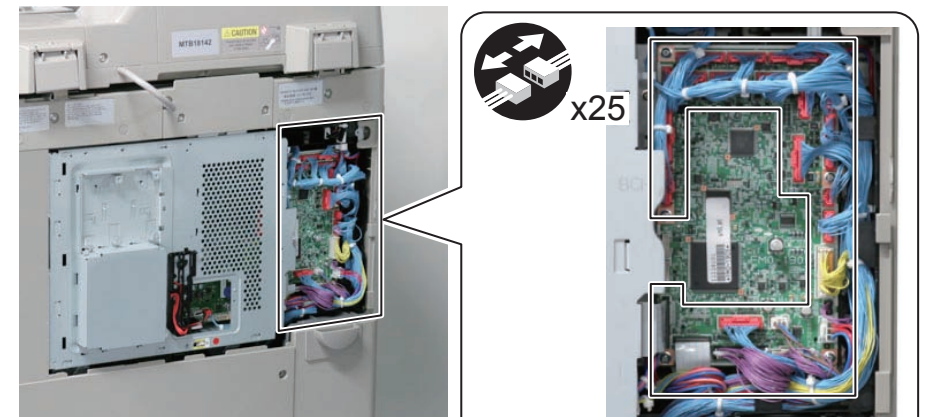
Turn OFF the main power when the above work is complete.

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.

Procedure

- 1) Disconnect all of the Connectors on the DC Controller PCB.

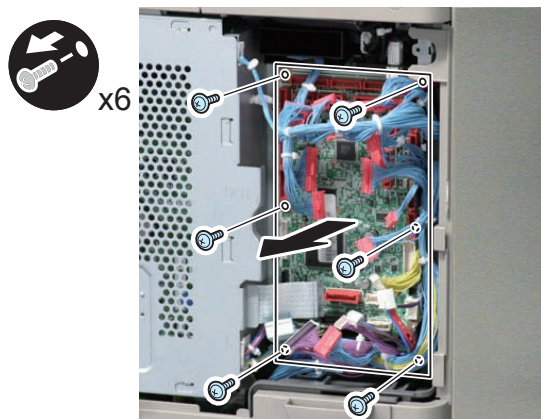
- 22 Connectors
- 3 Flat Cables



F-4-32

2) Remove the DC Controller PCB.

- 6 Screws



F-4-33

After replacement:

Turn ON the power and execute the following service mode to restore DC Controller PCB SRAM.

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DSRAMRES (LEVEL2)

“ACTIVE” is displayed at execution and then “OK!” is displayed about 2 minutes later. Restoration is complete.

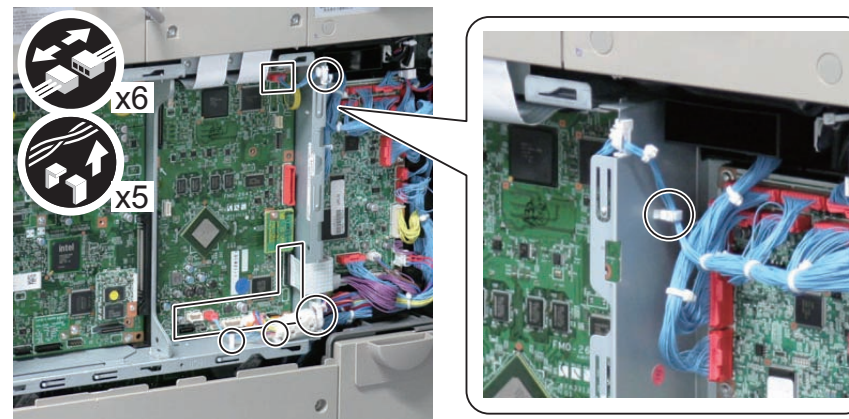
Removing the Controller Box

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
- 3) Remove the Controller Cover.

Procedure

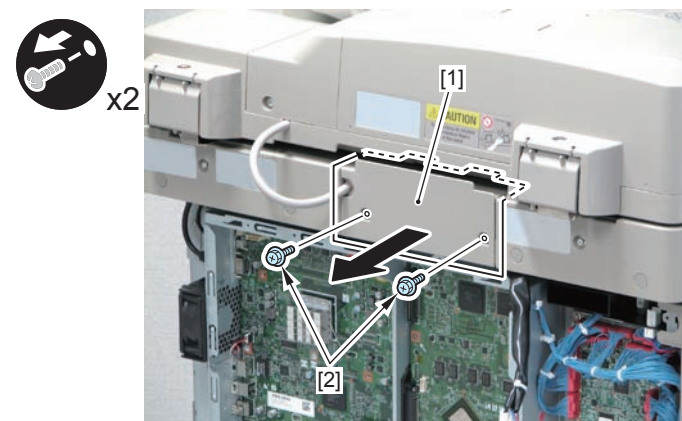
- 1) Remove the 5 Connectors, 3 Flat Cables and 2 Wire Saddles.
 - Wire Saddle
 - Edge Saddle



F-4-34

2) Remove the Reader Cable Cover [1].

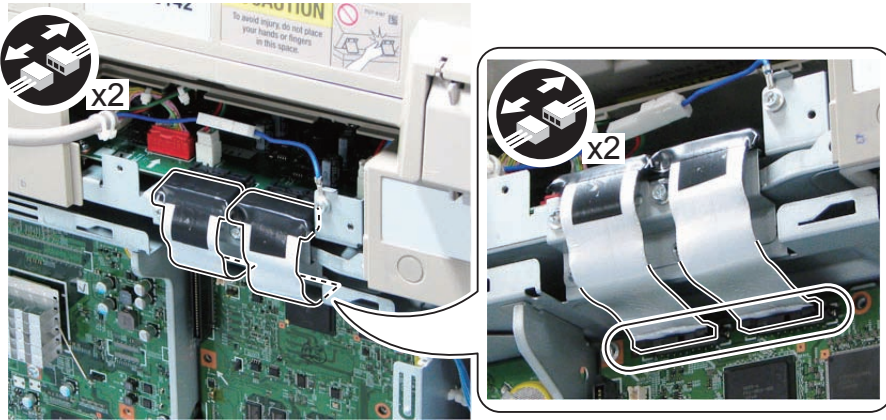
- 2 Screws [2]



F-4-35

3) Remove the 2 Flat Cables.

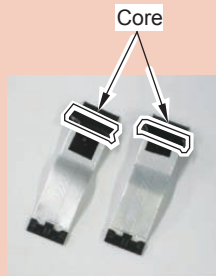
- 2 Flat Cables



F-4-36

CAUTION: Correct direction of the Flexible Cable

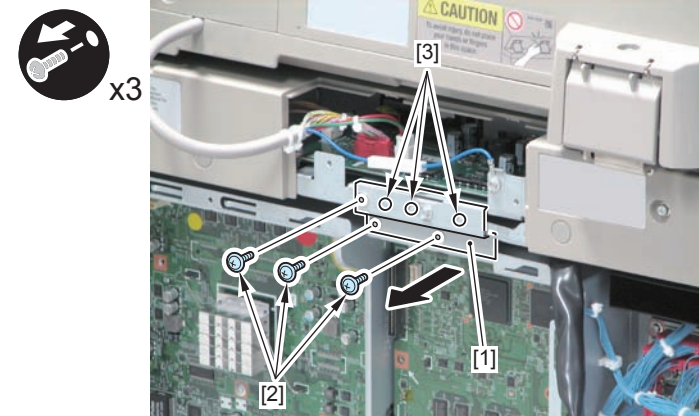
- There is a correct direction to connect the Flexible Cable.
- When connecting a Flexible Cable, connect the core end to the reader.



F-4-37

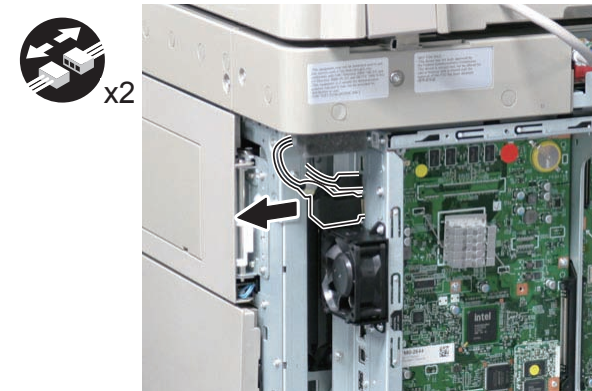
4) Remove the Reader Grounding Plate [1].

- 3 Screws [2]
- 3 Bosses [3]



F-4-38

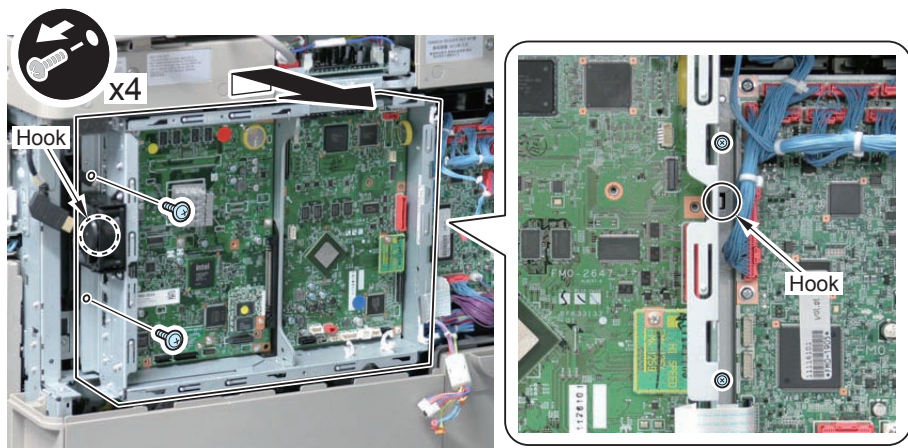
5) Disconnect the Control Panel Communication Cable.



F-4-39

6) Remove the Controller Box in the direction of the arrow.

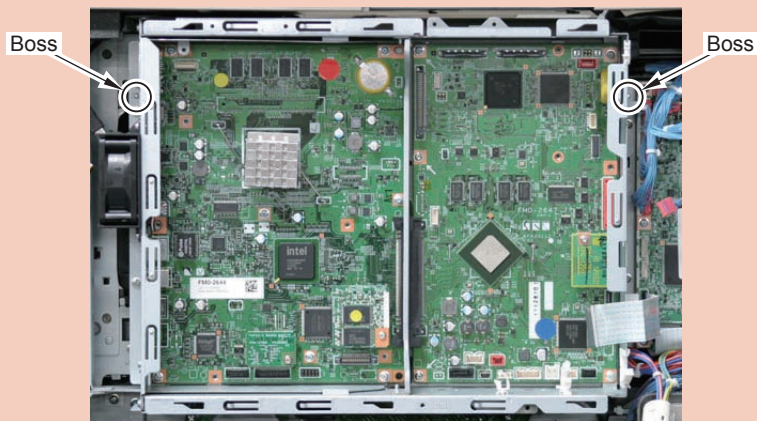
- 4 Screws
- 2 Hooks



F-4-40

CAUTION:

Be sure to fit the 2 bosses when installing the Controller Box.



F-4-41

HDD

<Procedure of parts replacement>

1. Before Replacing

Perform the following operations. Be sure to get an approval from the user beforehand. Refer to "Back Up" row for data back up.

	Back Up	Restore/ Resetting	Object Item	Remarks
Export of settings	Remote UI Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Export	Remote UI Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import	Settings/Registration Basic Information Box Settings Department ID Management Settings Main Menu Settings Favorite Settings Address Book Forwarding Settings Quick Menu Settings Paper Type Management Settings Web Access Settings Service Mode Settings	When exporting "Service Mode Settings", select Copier > Option > USER > SMD-EXPT > 1. SMD-EXPT cannot be exported, therefore the settings need to be made every time the HDD is replaced.
Backup of MEAP	SST (Meapback)	SST (Meapback)	MEAP application(SMS) User authentication information registered in the Local Device Authentication user authentication system of SSO-H (Single Sign-On H)	Meapback.bin can be restored after replacement or initialization of the HDD. [CAUTION] When the following service mode is executed, Meapback.bin cannot be restored. COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE > 3* *MEAP 3:HDD model 6:Flash model COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR

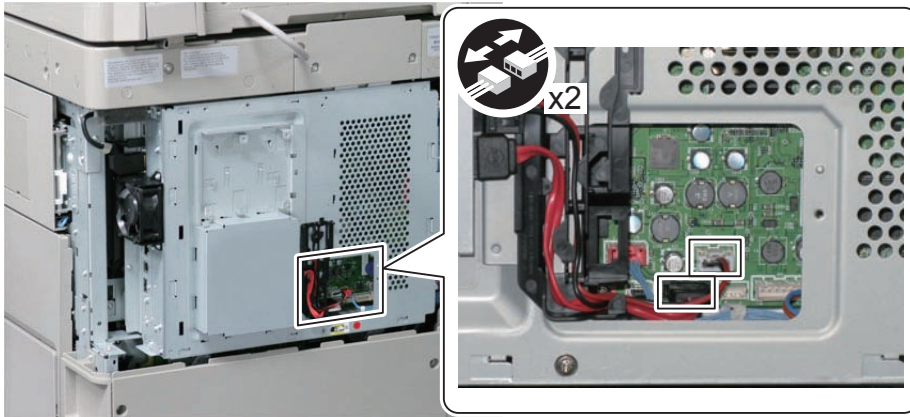
T-4-25

<Preparation>

- 1) Remove the 2 screws securing the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Rear Upper sub Covers.
- 3) Remove the cover of the Controller Box Cover.

<Procedure>

- 1 Remove the small cover of the Controller Box Cover.
 - 1 Screw
- 2 Remove the Signal Cable and the Power Cable with the HDD Cable Holder.
 - 2 Connectors



F-4-42

- 3 Remove the HDD Unit.
 - 2 Screw
- 4 Remove the HDD.
 - 4 Screw

<Actions after Parts Replacement>

- 1) HDD format
 - 1-1) Enter download mode.
 - 1-2) Connect the USB memory storage device to the USB port.
 - 1-3) Press the key on the control panel.

[4] - [1] - [0]: Execute format/ any key other than [0]: Return to the menu screen
- 22) Initializing the key, certificate and CA certificate
(Lv.2) COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CA-KEY
- 33) Turning OFF and ON the main power switch
- 44) Restoring the backup data
Refer to "Restore/Resetting" row for data restore by a list of "<Procedure of adjustment>"
- 55) Resetting/registering the data
While referring to the list of set/registered data which was printed before replacement, reset/register the data.
- 66) When the user generates and adds the encryption key, certificate and/or CA certificate, request the user to generate them again.
- 77) Executing "Auto Adjust Gradation (Full Adjust)"
Settings/Registration mode: Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Auto Adjust Gradation

When using the Card Reader and imageWARE Accounting Manager

Card ID used for imageWARE Accounting Manager is stored in the HDD, so NSA collection control is not enabled after the HDD replacement. After the HDD is replaced, reinstall the card ID from imageWARE Accounting Manager using the following procedures.

- 1) Go to COPIER > FUNCTION> INSTALL > CARD and enter the numerical value of the leading card which is used for Department ID. Then, press "OK" button.(e.g.: If No.1 to No.1000 cards are used for Department ID, enter "1" of the leading card.)
- 2) After turning OFF and ON the main power switch, perform the following operations from Settings/Registration mode.
In Management Settings > User Management > Department ID Management > Page Totals, be sure that "ID00000001" to "ID00001000" are created.
Set the following: Preferences > Network > TCP / IP Settings > IPv4 Settings> IP Address Settings > IP Address, Gateway Address, Subnet Mask
In Management Settings > User Management> System Manager Information Settings> System Manager ID and System PIN, register any number for them. Then, turn OFF and ON the main power switch.
If "System Manager ID" and "System PIN" are not registered, "card registration to device" cannot be executed for the imageWARE Accounting Manager setting operation.
- 3) Download the card ID from imageWARE Accounting Manager to the Main Body again.
- 4) After downloading is completed, go to Management Settings > User Management > Department ID Management > Page Totals. Be sure that only the downloaded card ID is displayed.
- 5) Print using the user card registered from imageWARE Accounting Manager. Be sure that the card information used for the target devices of imageWARE Accounting Manager is collected.

CAUTION:Points to Caution when Using the System Software-installed HDD

When using the HDD which was installed the system software of the other achine (different serial number), be sure to format the HDD after the installation. If the HDD is not formatted, the operation cannot be guaranteed.

Disassembly/Assembly - Laser Control System -

Cleaning the Dustproof Glass

Preparation

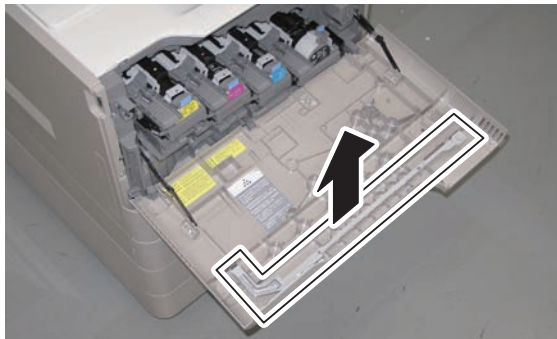
- 1) Open the shutter of the Dustproof Glass.
Service Mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > SHT-OPEN
- 2) Pull out the Drum Unit.

Procedure

NOTE:

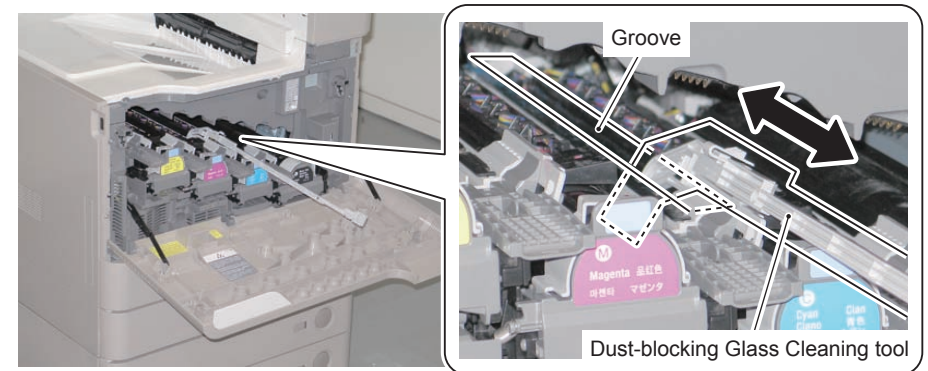
In this procedure, procedure for (C) is described. Be sure to perform the same procedure for (Bk), (M), and (Y).

- 1) Remove the Dustproof Glass cleaning tool from the Front Cover.



F-4-43

- 2) Insert the Dustproof Glass cleaning tool into the groove, and clean the Dustproof Glass.



F-4-44

CAUTION:

When pulling the Dustproof Glass cleaning tool out, be sure to pull it out while pushing the lever toward right direction.

If it is pulled out abruptly, it may come in contact with the ITB.

Removing the Laser Scanner Unit

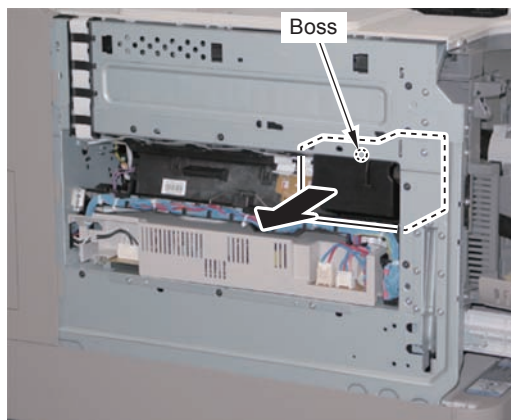
Preparation

1) Remove the Left Cover.

Procedure

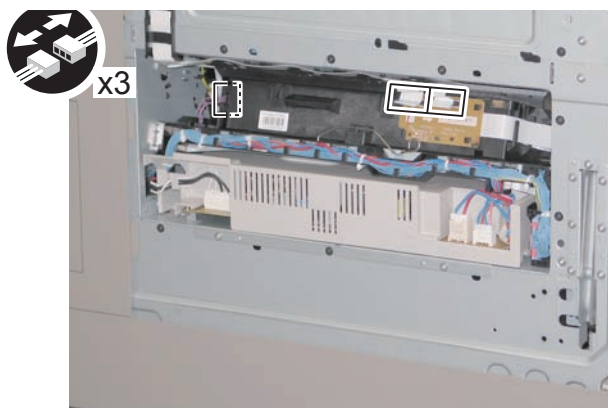
1) Remove the Fan Duct in the direction of the arrow.

- 1 Boss



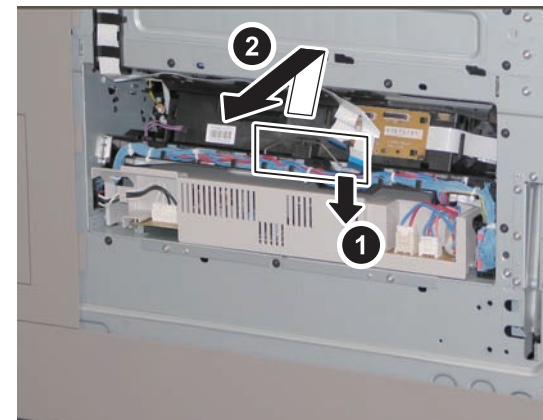
F-4-45

2) Disconnect the 2 Flat Cables and the connector.



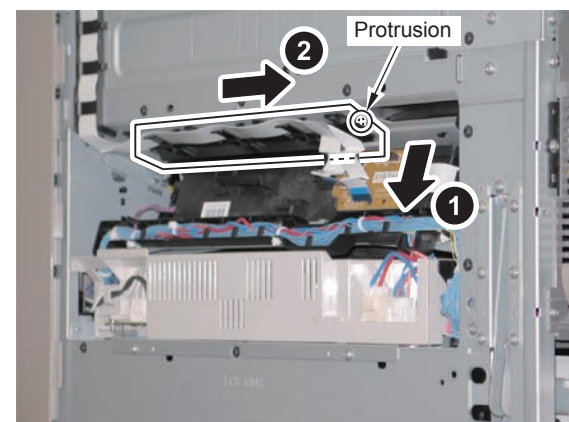
F-4-46

3) Remove the Scanner Retaining Spring.



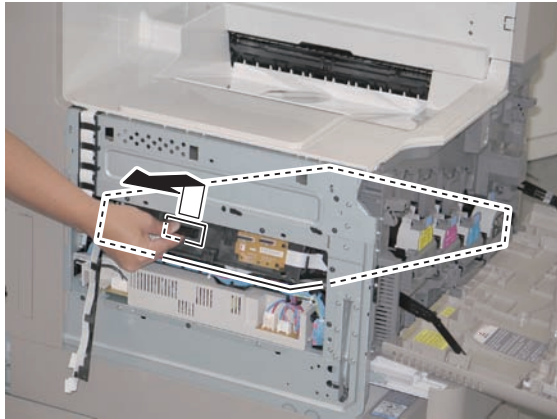
F-4-47

4) Unlock the protrusion, release the Harness Guide and disconnect the Flat Cable in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-48

5) Lift the grip, and pull out the Laser Scanner Unit.



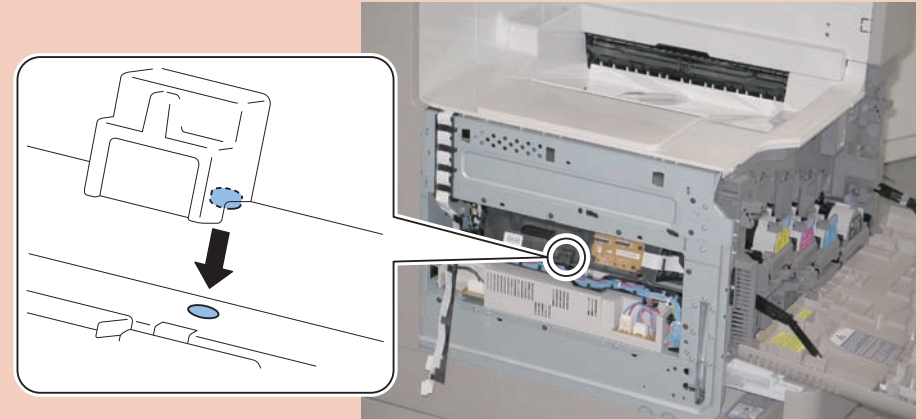
F-4-49

CAUTION:

Be sure not to disassemble the Laser Scanner Unit because it requires adjustment.

Points to Note at Installation:

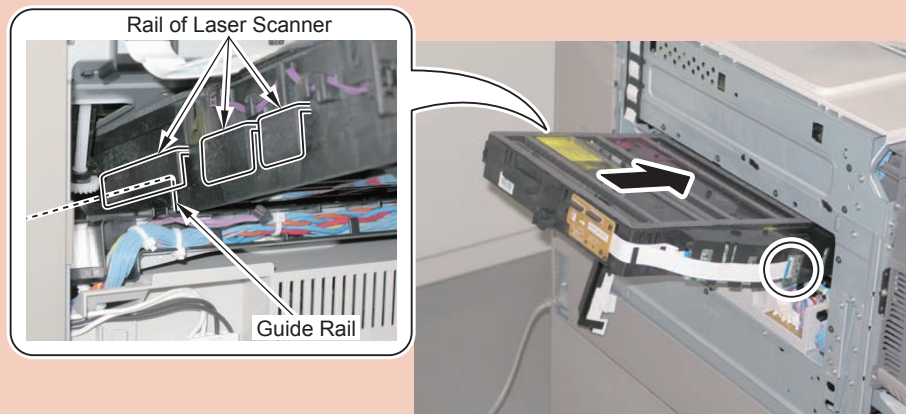
When installing, be sure to fit the protrusion of the Laser Scanner Unit with a hole on the plate.



F-4-51

Points to Note at Installation:

Be sure to hook the rail on the Laser Scanner to the rail on the host machine to install.
Be careful that the Flat Cable on the side of the Laser Scanner Unit is not disconnected.



F-4-50

Removing the Main Drive Unit

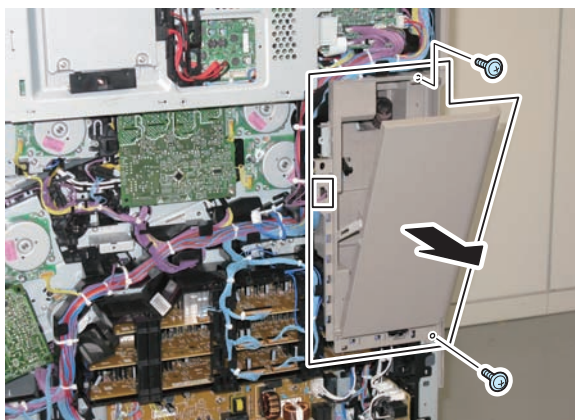
Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Rear Cover.
- 5) Remove the Waste Toner Container.

Procedure

- 1) Close the Right Door.
- 2) Remove the Waste Toner Box.

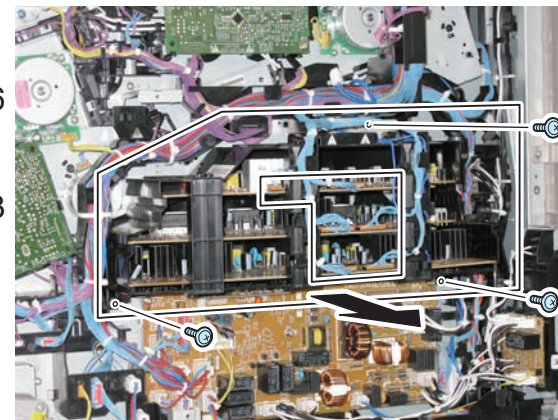
- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws



F-4-52

- 3) Remove the Developing High Voltage Box.

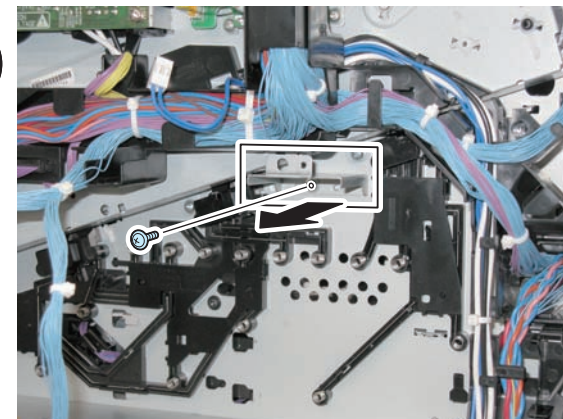
- 6 Connectors
- 3 Screws



F-4-53

- 4) Remove the Developing High Voltage Box Support Plate.

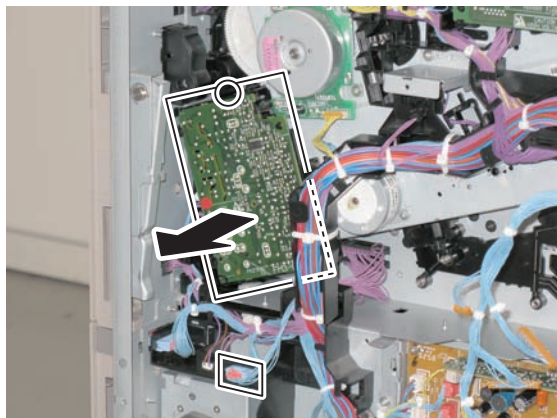
- 1 Screw



F-4-54

5) Remove the Secondary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB.

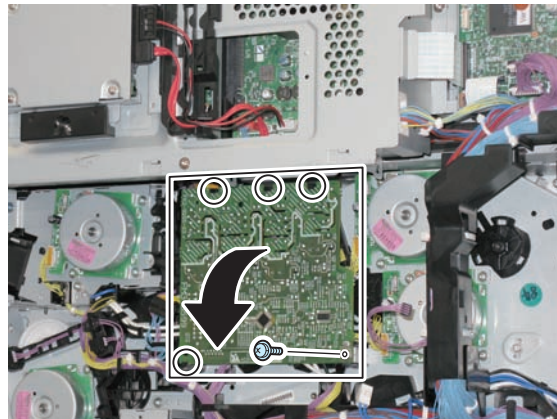
- 1 Connector
- 1 Claw



F-4-55

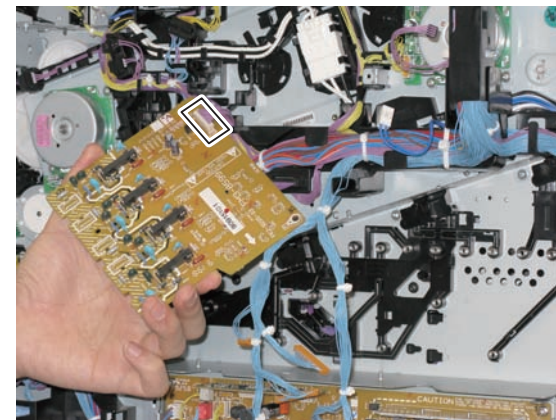
6) Remove the Primary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB.

- 1 Screw
- 4 Claws



F-4-56

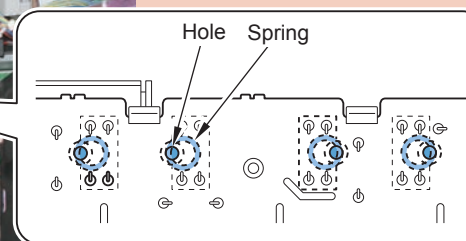
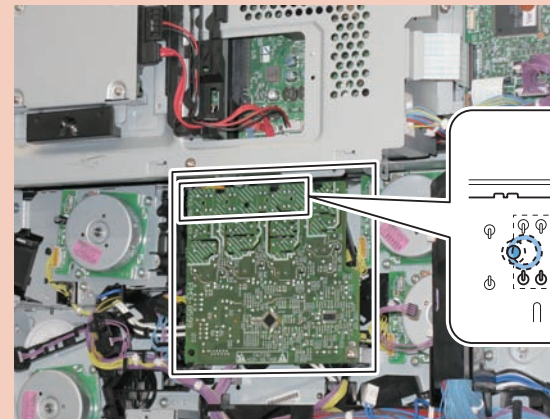
7) Disconnect the connector from the Primary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB.



F-4-57

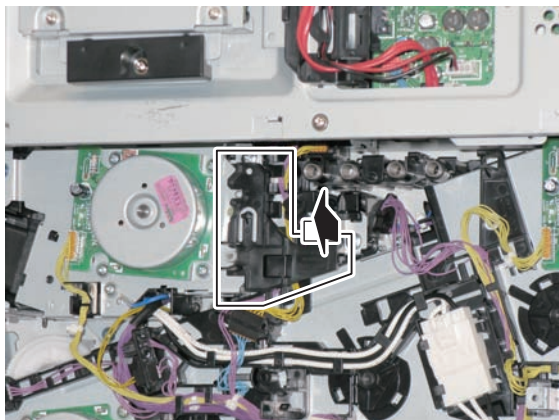
CAUTION:

When installing the Primary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB to the host machine, be sure to check that the Contact Springs are in contact from the 4 round holes.



F-4-58

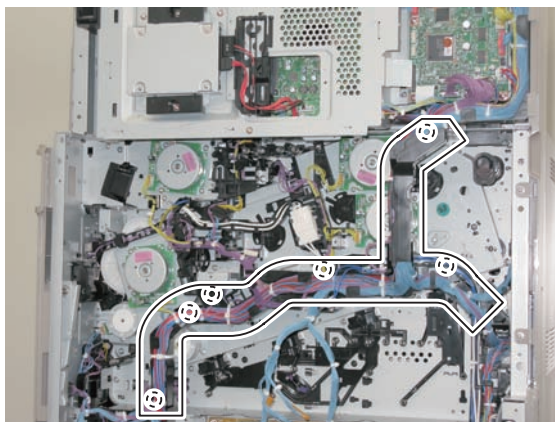
8) Remove the Harness Cover.



F-4-59

9) Remove the guide from the Main Drive Assembly.

- 6 Claws



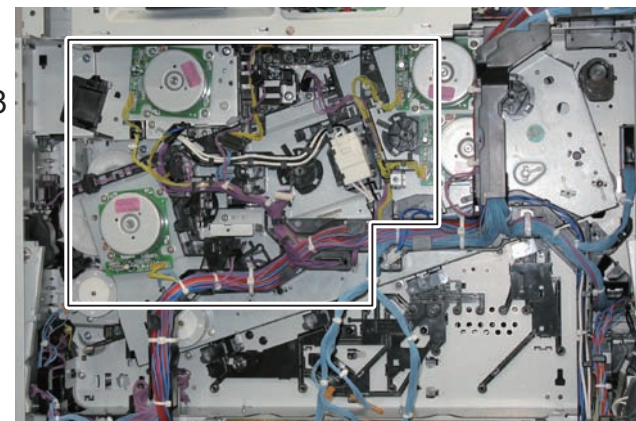
F-4-60

CAUTION:

When installing the guide to the host machine, be sure to check that the claws are locked.

10) Disconnect the harness connected to the Main Drive Assembly.

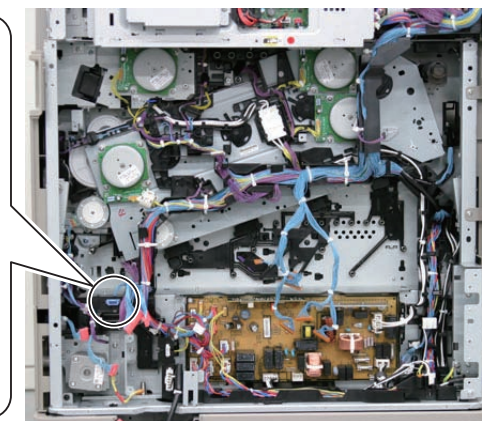
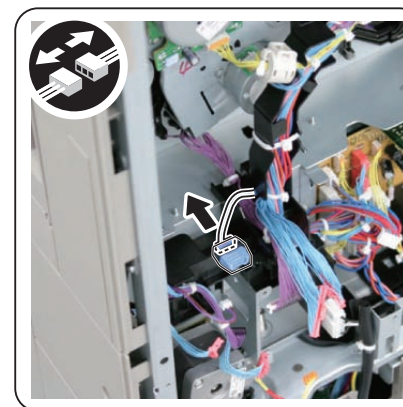
- 18 Connectors



F-4-61

11) Disconnect the Connector.

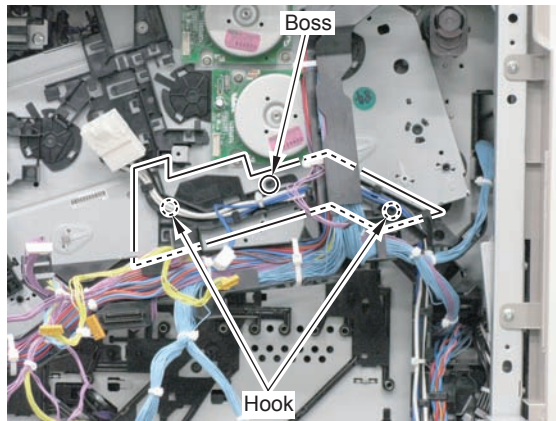
- Connector



F-4-62

12) Remove the guide at the rear side.

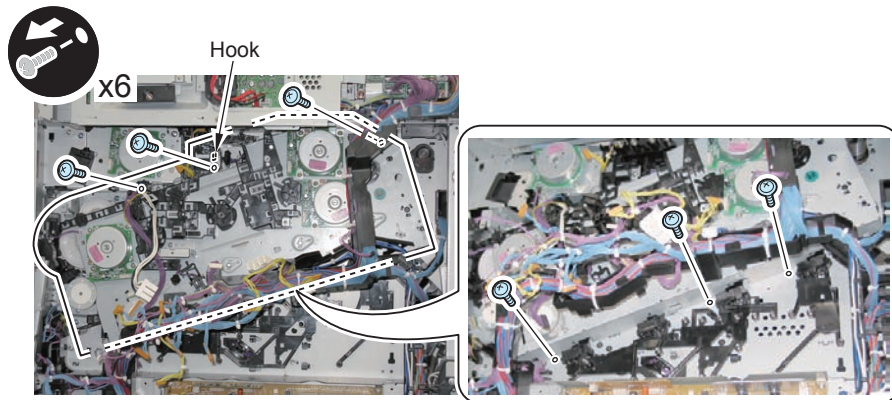
- 2 Hooks
- 1 Boss



F-4-63

13) Remove the Main Drive Unit.

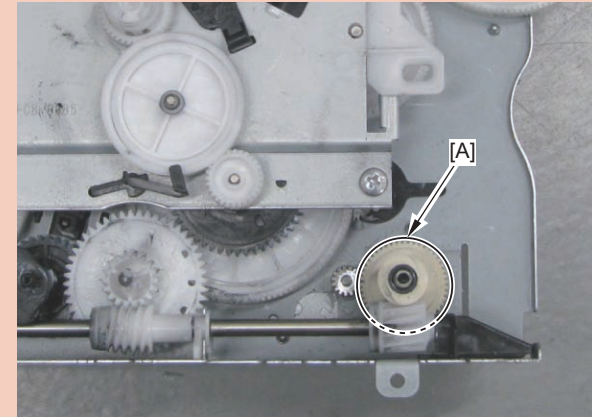
- 6 Screws
- 1 Hook



F-4-64

CAUTION:

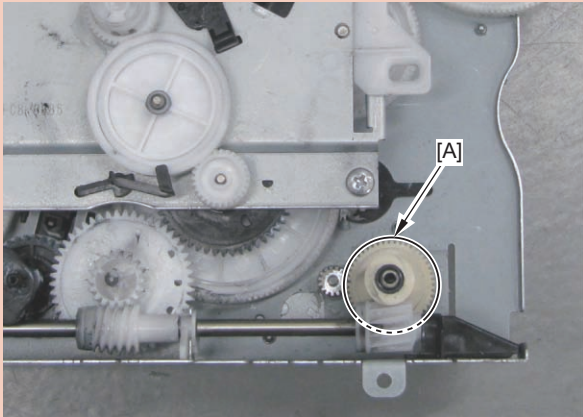
- Be sure not to disassemble the Main Drive Unit because it requires adjustment.
- Since the gear [A] comes off easily, be careful when removing the unit.



Installing the Main Drive Unit

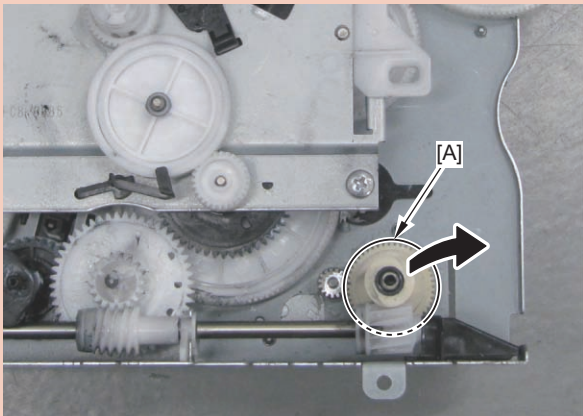
CAUTION

- Check that the Right Lower Cover is closed.
- Since the gear [A] comes off easily, be careful when installing the unit.

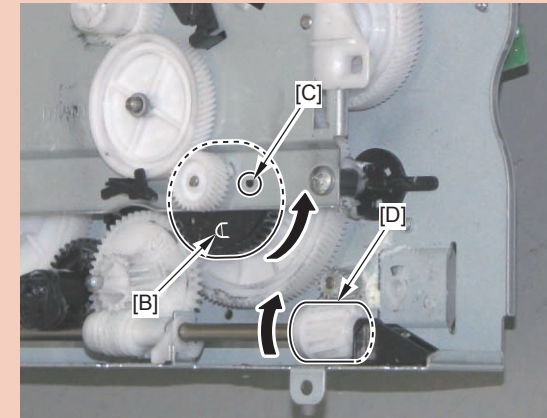


- When installing the Main Drive Unit other than a new one, be sure to align gear phase.

1) Remove the gear [a]



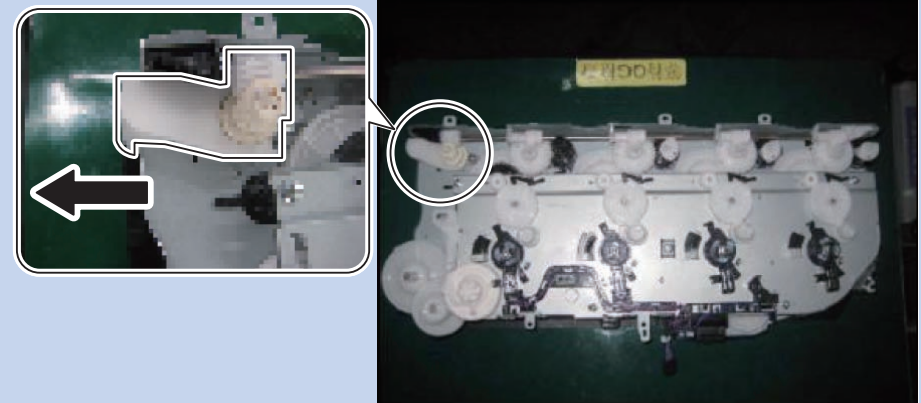
2) Turn the gear [D] by hand, and move the hole [B] to align with [C].



3) Install the gear [A] removed in step 1).

NOTE

When installing anew Main Drive, be sure to remove the Fixation Member 1 before installing it to the host machine.

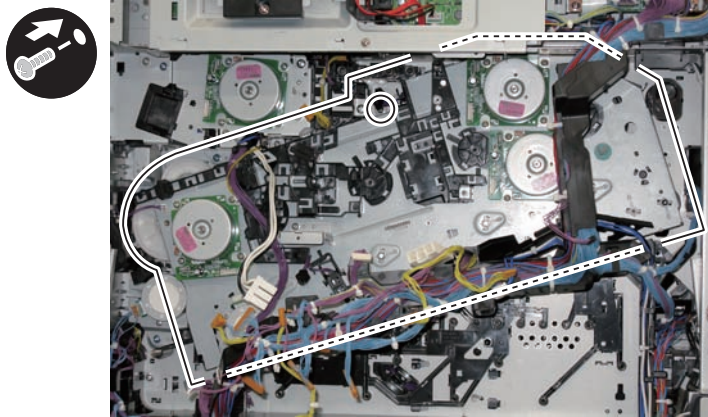


F-4-65

CAUTION:

Check that the Right Lower Cover is closed.

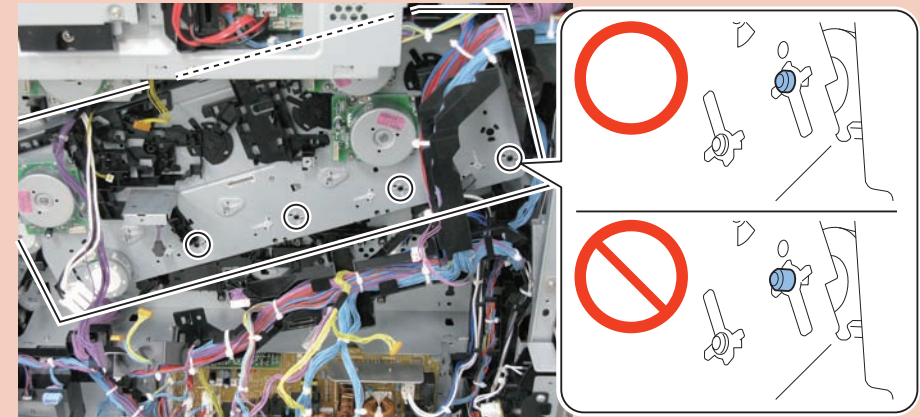
1) Install the Main Drive Unit, and tighten the screw temporarily.



F-4-66

CAUTION:

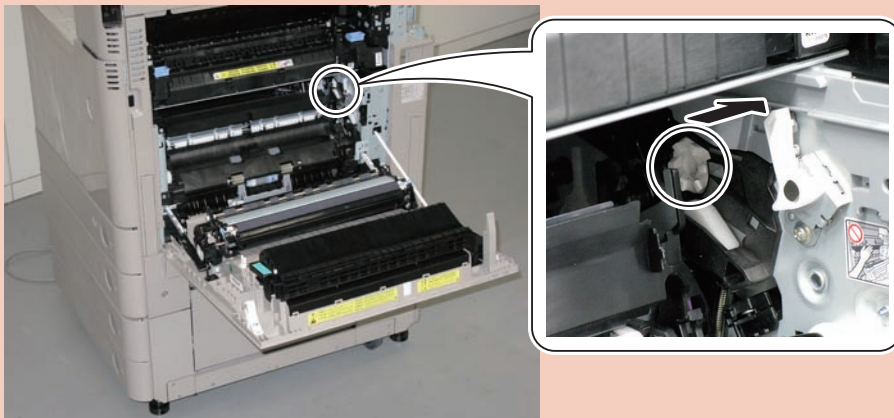
- Be sure to check that the 8 shafts are aligned with the shaft holes on the host machine correctly.



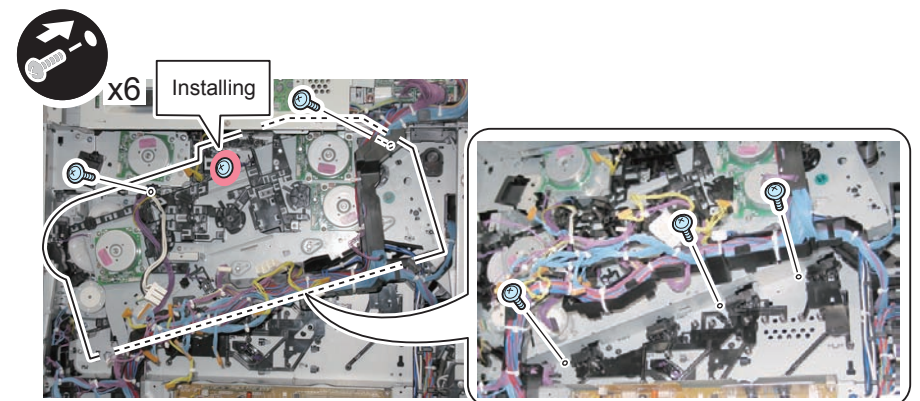
F-4-67

CAUTION:

- By opening and closing the Right Lower Cover, check that coupling of the ITB moves in the direction of the arrow.



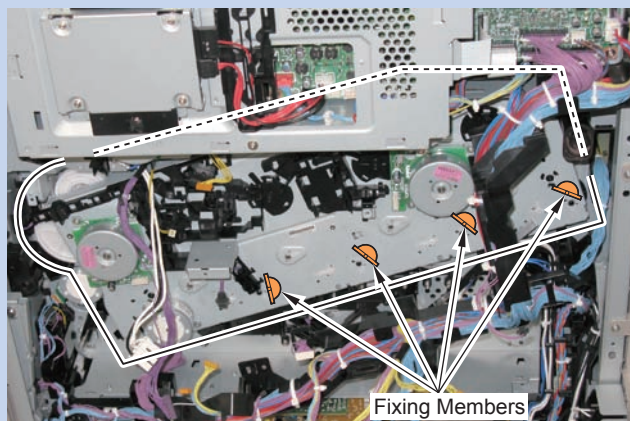
2) Check that the Main Drive Unit is installed correctly, and tighten the 6 screws.



F-4-68

NOTE:

When installing a new Main Drive Unit, be sure to remove the 4 Fixation Members 2.



F-4-69

Disassembly/Assembly - Image Formation System -

Removing the Waste Toner Container

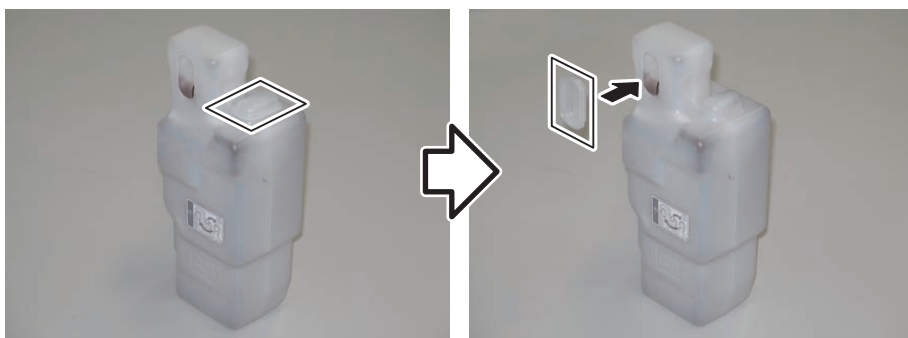
Procedure

- 1) Open the Waste Toner Cover.
- 2) Remove the Waste Toner Container.



F-4-70

- 3) Remove the attached cap to install to the Waste Toner Container.



F-4-71

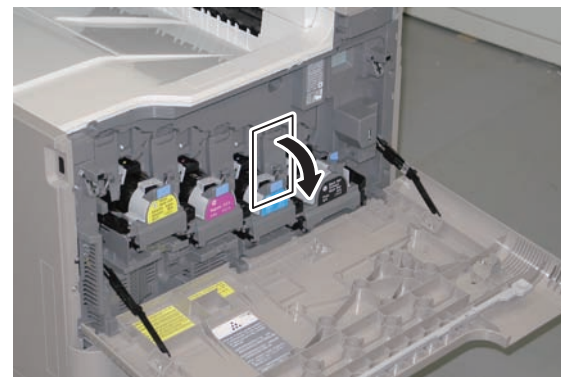
Removing the Drum Unit

Procedure

NOTE:

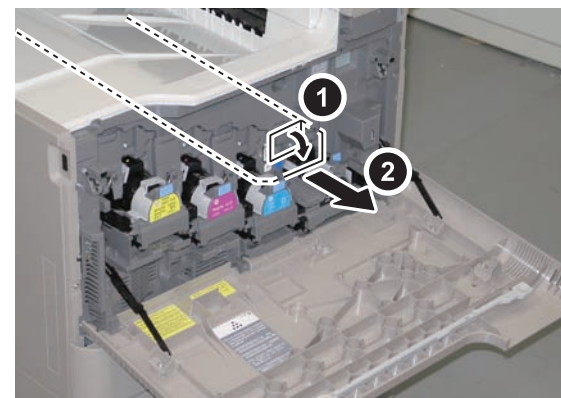
In this procedure, procedure for (Bk) is described. Be sure to perform the same procedure for (C), (M), and (Y).

- 1) Open the Front Cover.
- 2) Open the Drum Unit retaining cover.



F-4-72

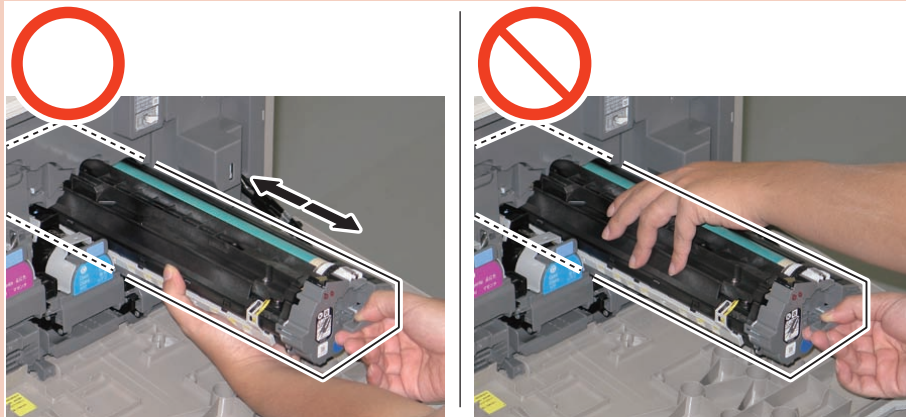
- 3) Open the handle and pull out the Drum Unit.



F-4-73

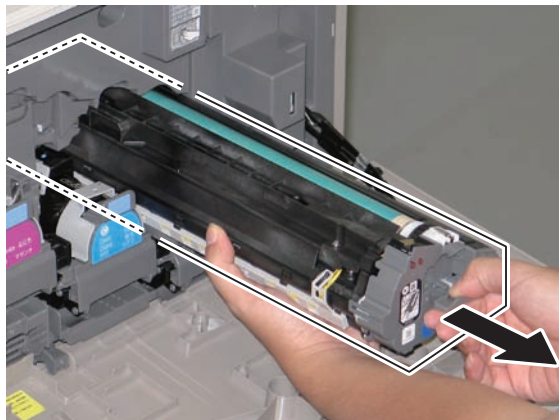
CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the Photosensitive Drum.



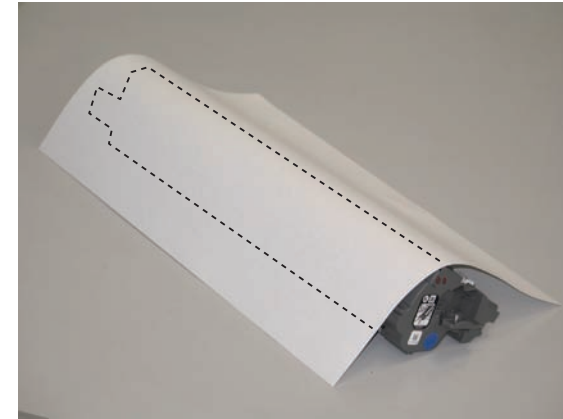
F-4-74

4) Hold the Drum Unit with both hands, and pull it out horizontally.



F-4-75

5) Block light with paper etc. to the removed Drum Unit.



F-4-76

CAUTION:

Be sure to insert the Drum Unit until it stops before closing the Retaining Cover.

Removing the ITB Unit

Preparation

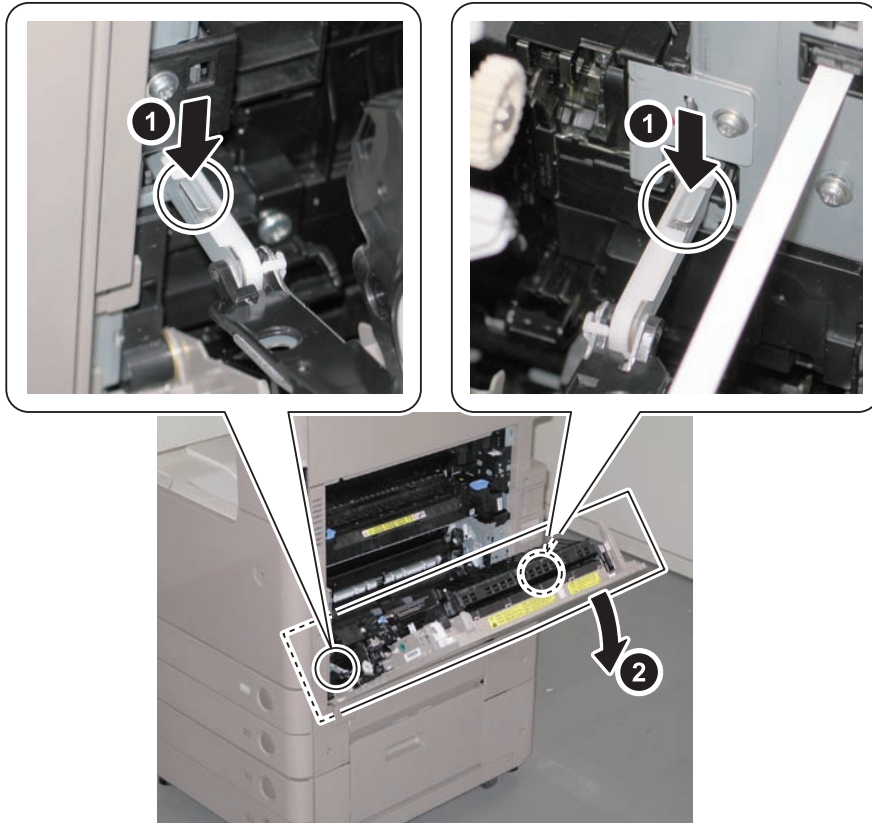
1) Remove the Drum Unit.

Procedure

1) Turn OFF the power.

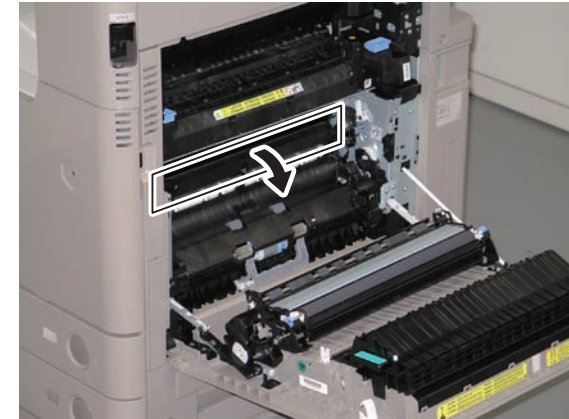
2) Open the Right Lower Cover.

3) Release the lock by pushing the [1] part to open fully.



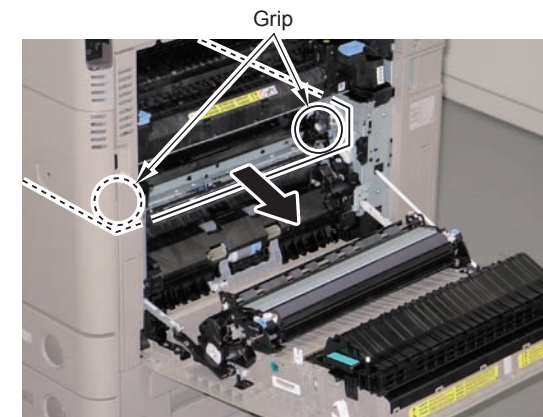
F-4-77

4) Open the Registration Patch Sensor.



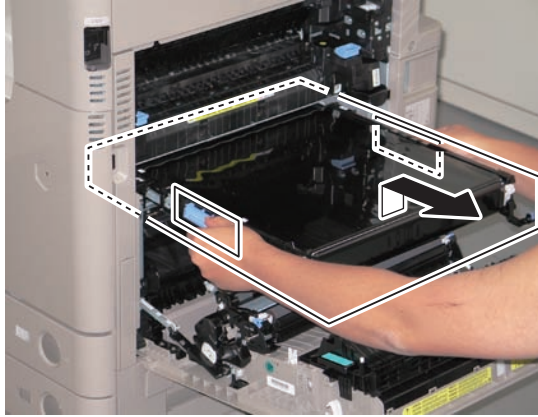
F-4-78

5) Hold the handle and pull out the ITB Unit in the obliquely downward direction along with the guide.



F-4-79

6) Hold the left and right handles, and remove the ITB Unit.



F-4-80

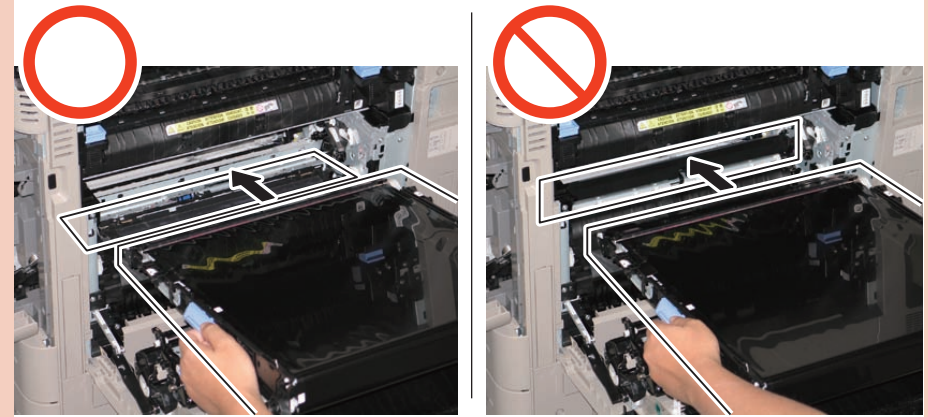
CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the ITB.



Points to Note at Installation:

- To perform image stabilization control (ATVC control) when replacing the ITB Unit, turn ON the main power switch once and then execute auto gradation adjustment (either one of the followings: quick adjustment or full adjustment).
- Check that the Registration Patch Sensor is open, and then install the ITB.



F-4-81

Removing the Front Cover

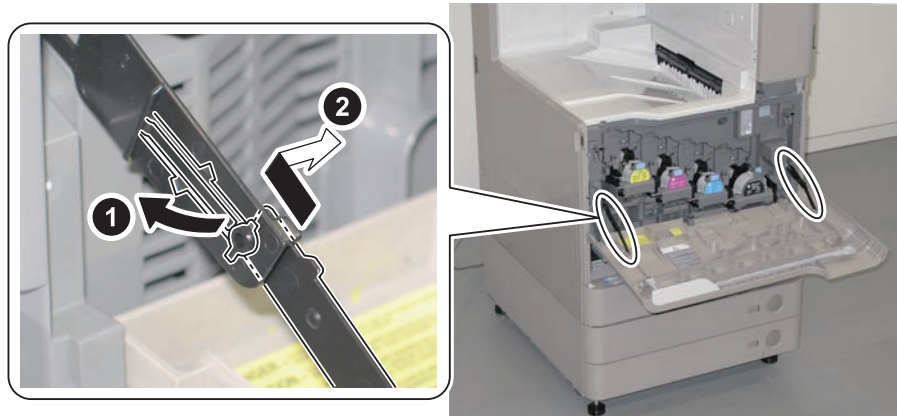
Preparation

1) Remove the Cassette 1.

Procedure

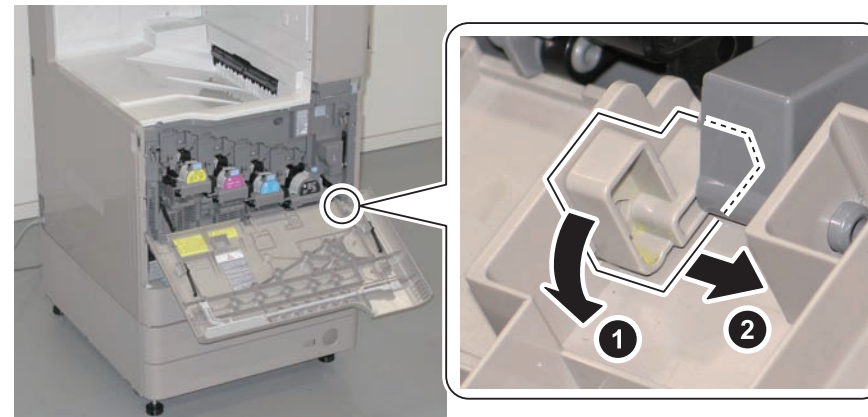
1) Open the Front Cover.

2) Remove the 2 link arms.



F-4-82

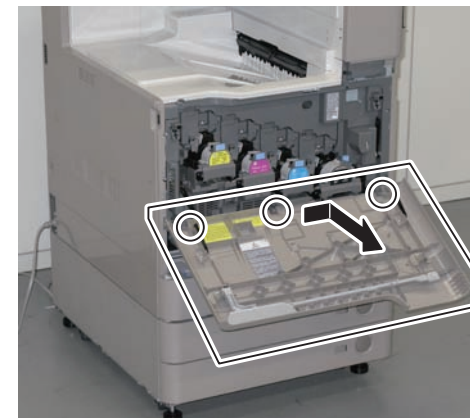
3) Remove the Stopper.



F-4-83

4) Remove the Front Cover in the direction of the arrow.

• 3 shafts



F-4-84

Removing the Toner Bottle Mount (CL)

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1.
- 5) Remove the Front Cover.
- 6) Remove the Left Cover.
- 7) Remove the First Delivery Tray.

Procedure

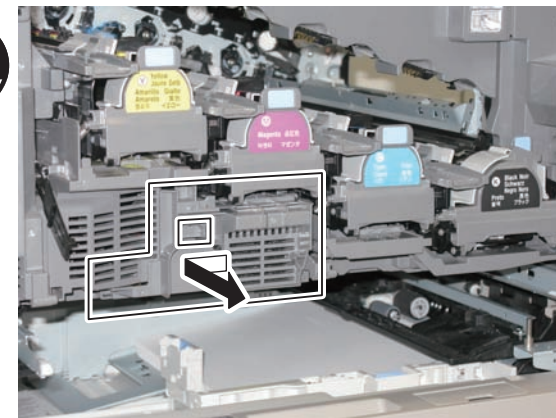
NOTE:

In this procedure, procedure for the Toner Bottle Mount (M) is described. Be sure to perform the same procedure for (Y) and (C).

CAUTION:

If there is any toner scattering, wipe off the toner.

- 1) Remove the Toner Cartridge.
- 2) Remove the Fan Holder Cover.
 - 1 Claw

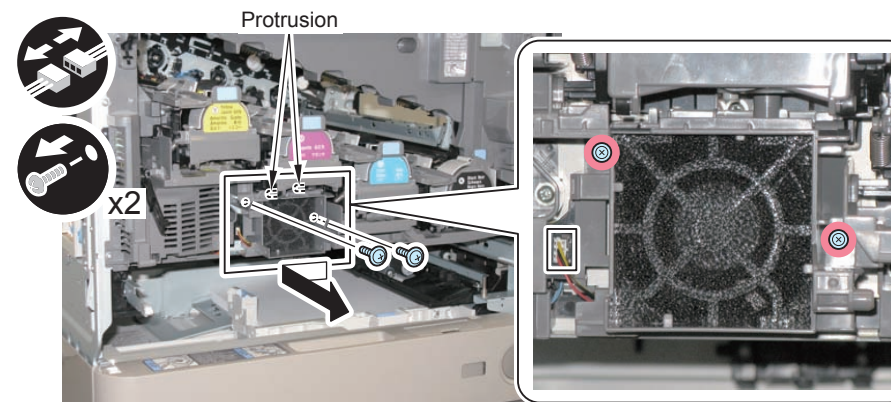


F-4-85

NOTE:

Skip step 2 in the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (C).

- 3) Remove the Fan Duct 2 in the direction of the arrow.
 - 1 Connector
 - 2 Screws
 - 2 Protrusions

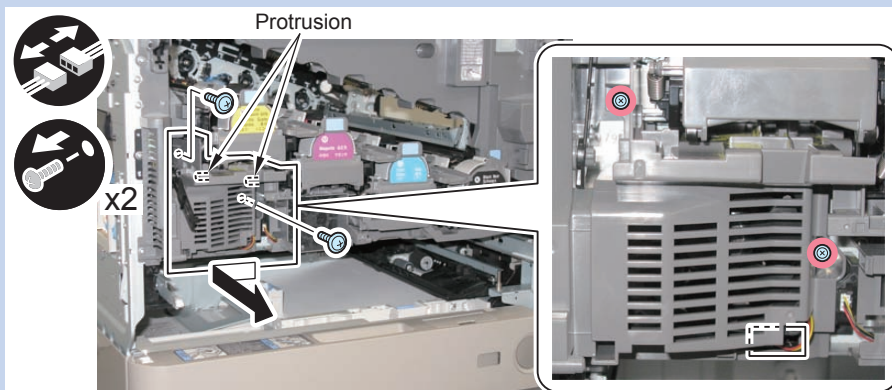


F-4-86

NOTE:

1) In the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (Y), remove the Fan Duct 1 in the direction of the arrow.

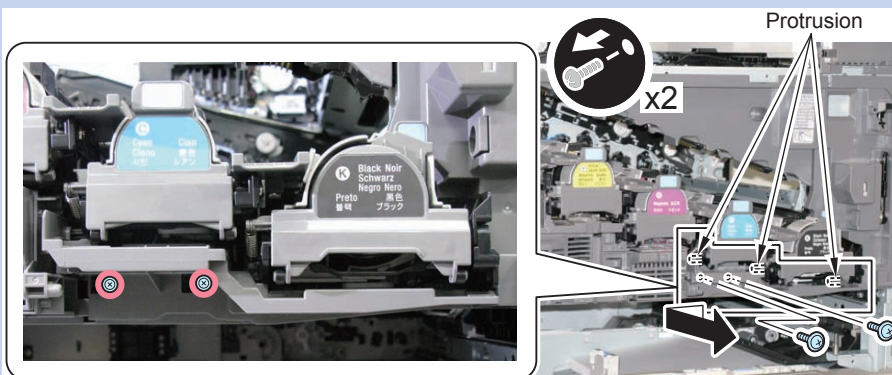
- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws
- 2 Protrusions



F-4-87

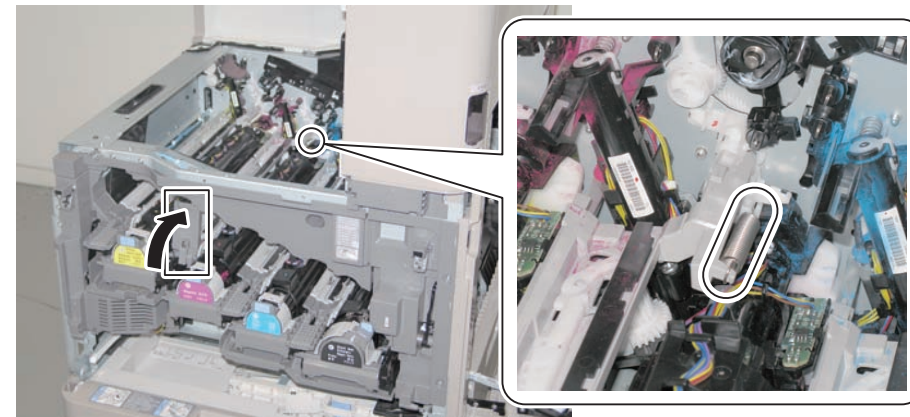
2) In the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (C), remove the Fan Duct 3 in the direction of the arrow.

- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws
- 2 Protrusions



F-4-88

4) Put the cover of Drum Unit back and remove the spring.



F-4-89

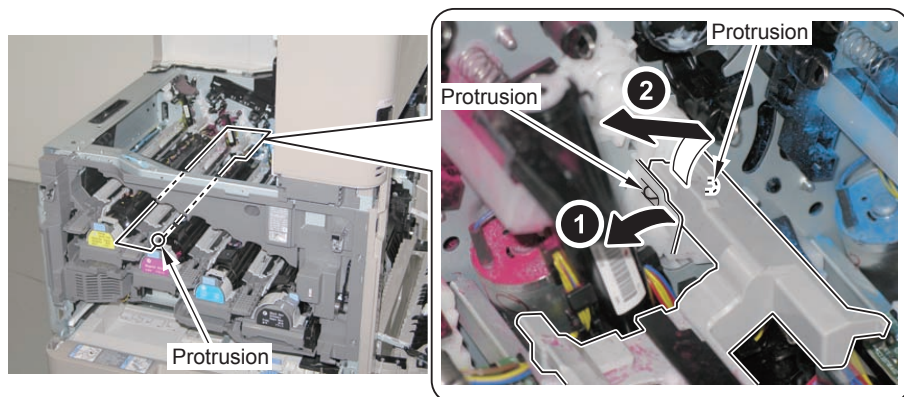
5) Remove the screw of the Toner Guide Rail Reinforcing Member.



F-4-90

6) Remove the Toner Guide Rail.

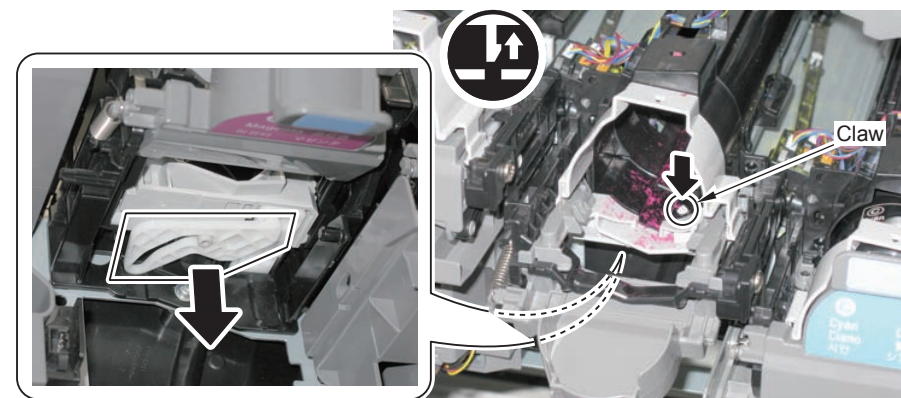
- 3 Protrusions



F-4-91

9) Remove the Link Lever.

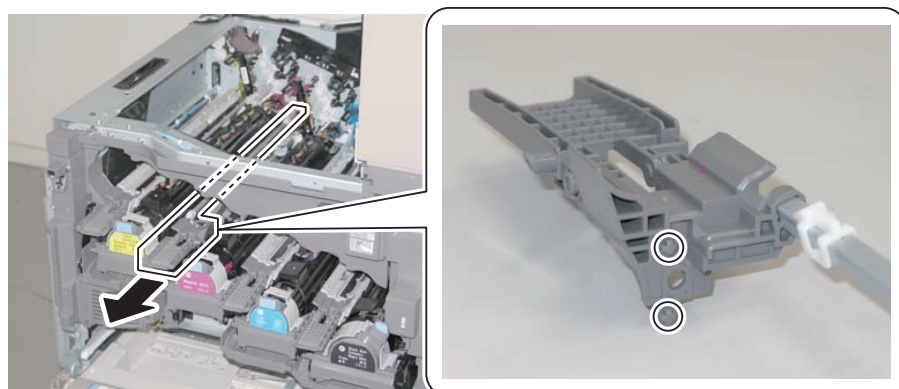
- 1 Claw



F-4-93

7) Remove the Toner Guide Rail Reinforcing Member.

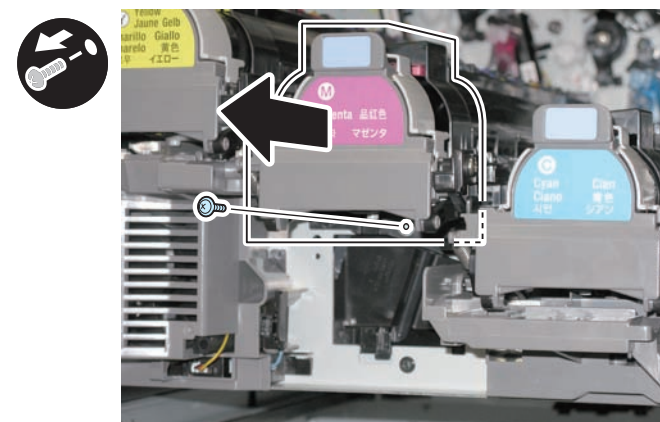
- 2 Bosses



F-4-92

10) Remove the Toner Bottle Door Unit.

- 1 Screw



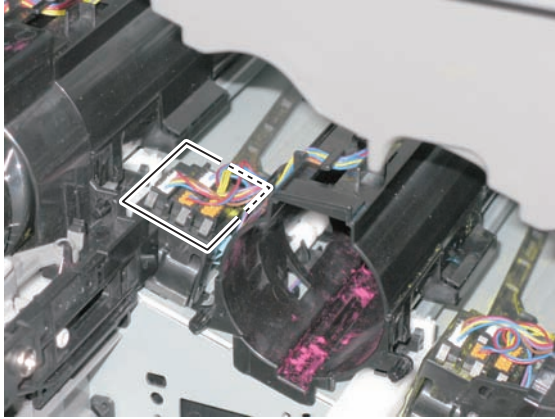
F-4-94

8) Perform step 4 to 6 to the unit on the right of the target Toner Bottle Mount.

NOTE:

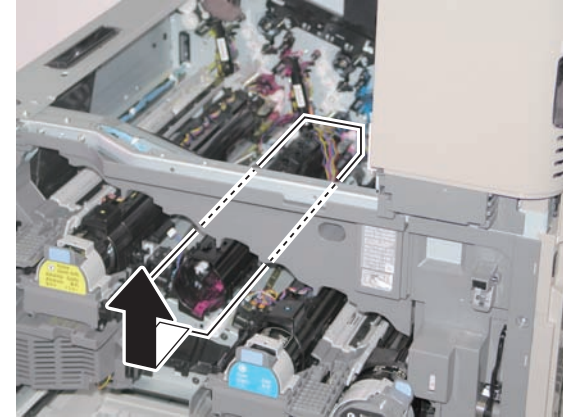
- In the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (Y), perform the work with the Toner Bottle Mount (M).
- In the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (M), perform the work with the Toner Bottle Mount (C).
- In the case of the Toner Bottle Mount (C), perform the work with the Toner Bottle Mount (Bk).

- 11) Disconnect the 4 connectors.



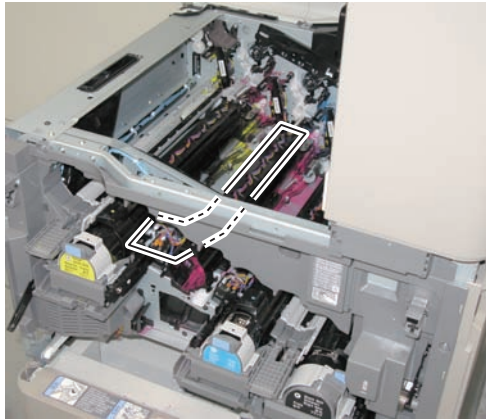
F-4-95

- 13) Remove the Toner Bottle Mount in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-97

- 12) Free the harness from the Upper Guide of the Toner Bottle Mount.

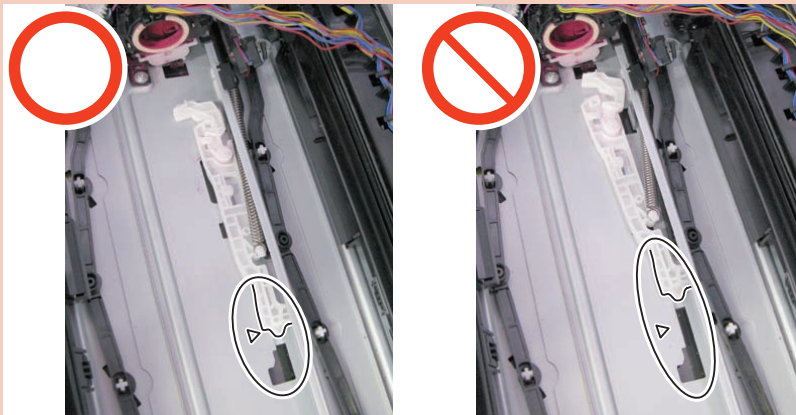


F-4-96

Points to Note at Installation:

1) Be sure to check the position of the Toggle Lever when installing the Toner Bottle Mount.

(If the Toggle Lever is not in the correct position, the Toner Bottle cannot be installed.)



F-4-98

2) Be sure to route the harness along the Upper Guide of the Toner Bottle Mount without slack.

3) After installing the Link Lever, check that the Toner Bottle Door Unit opens and closes smoothly.

4) After installation, check if the cover of Drum Unit opens and closes.

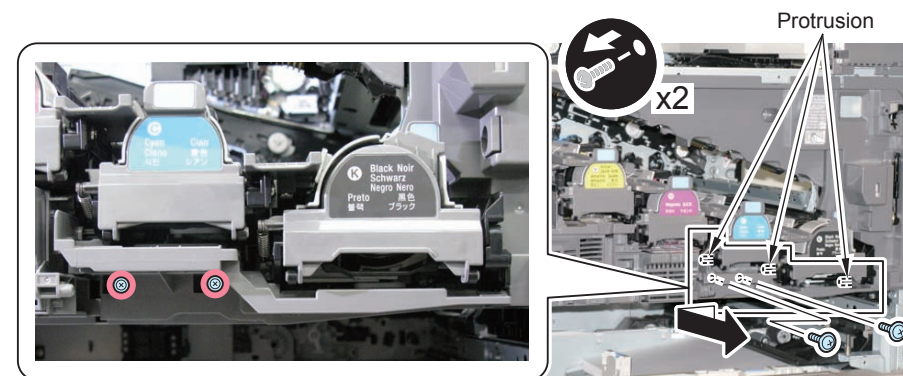
Removing the Toner Bottle Mount (Bk)

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1.
- 5) Remove the Front Cover.
- 6) Remove the Left Cover.
- 7) Remove the First Delivery Tray.

Procedure

- 1) Remove the Toner Cartridge (Bk).
- 2) Remove the Duct Cover in the direction of the arrow.
 - 2 Screws
 - 3 Protrusions



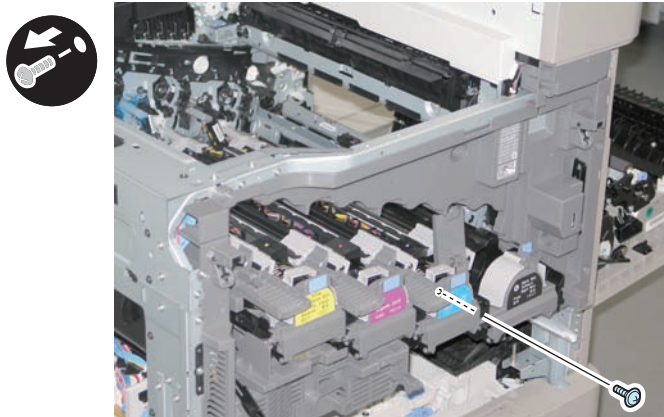
F-4-99

3) Put the cover of Drum Unit back and remove the spring.



F-4-100

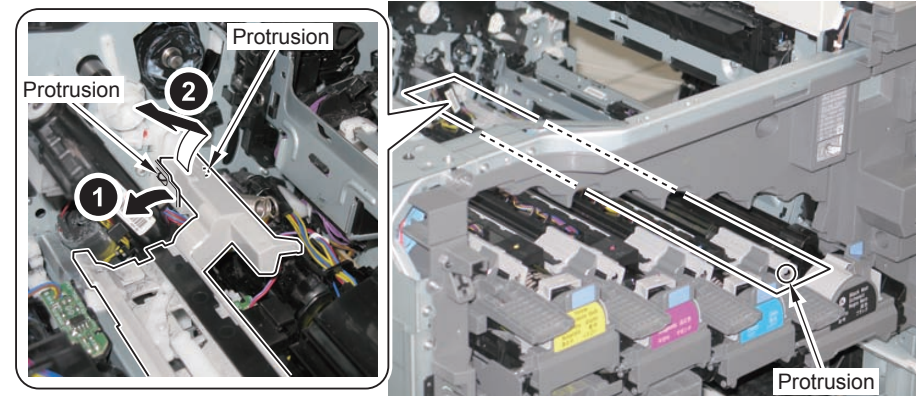
4) Remove the screw of the Toner Guide Rail Reinforcing Member.



F-4-101

5) Remove the Toner Guide Rail.

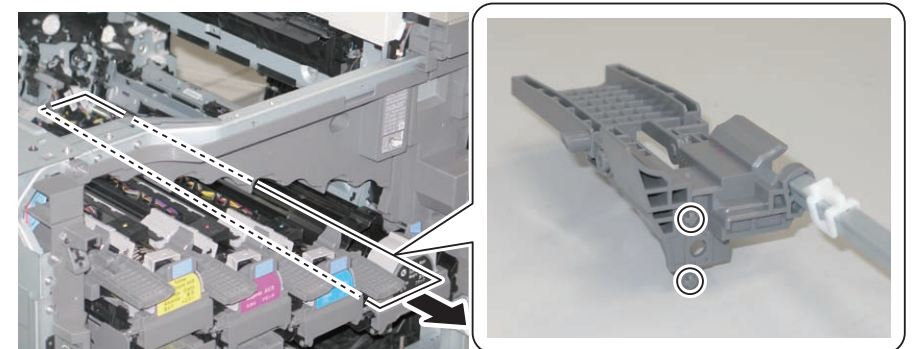
- 1 Screw
- 3 Protrusions



F-4-102

6) Remove the Toner Guide Rail Reinforcing Member.

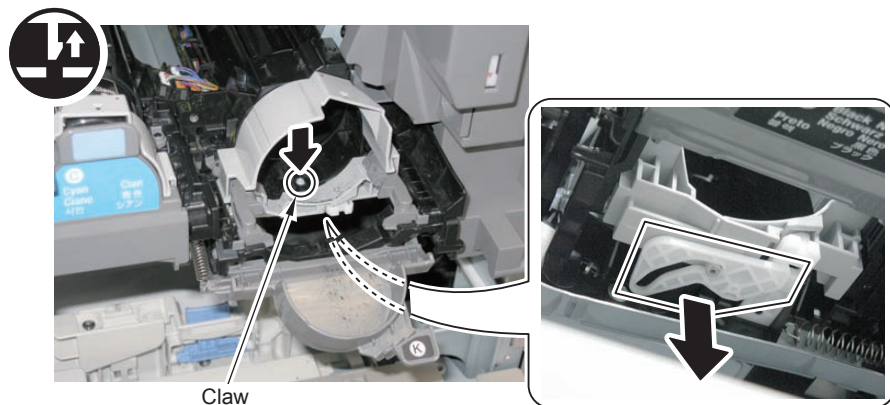
- 2 Bosses



F-4-103

7) Remove the Link Lever.

- 1 Claw

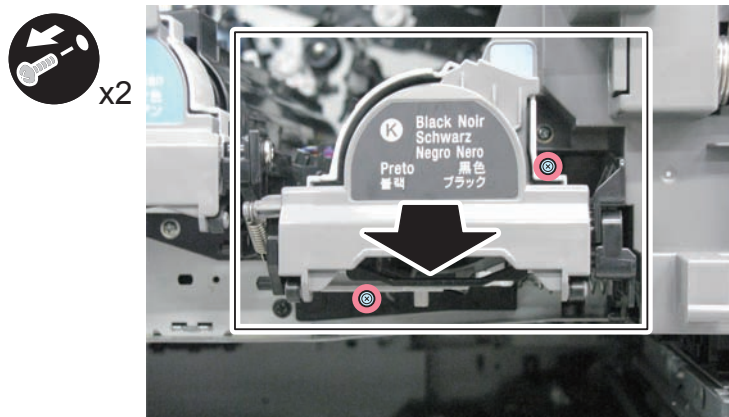


Claw

F-4-104

8) Remove the Toner Bottle Door Unit.

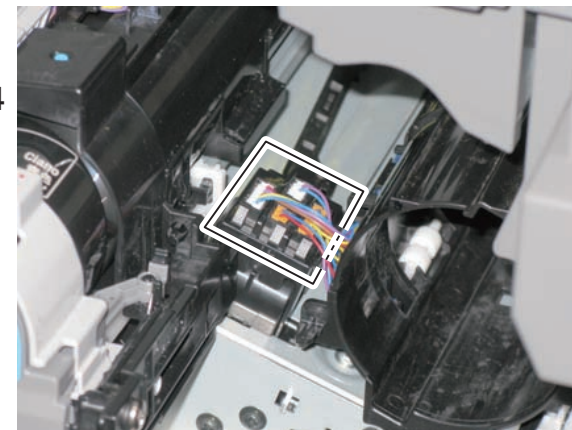
- 1 Screw



x2

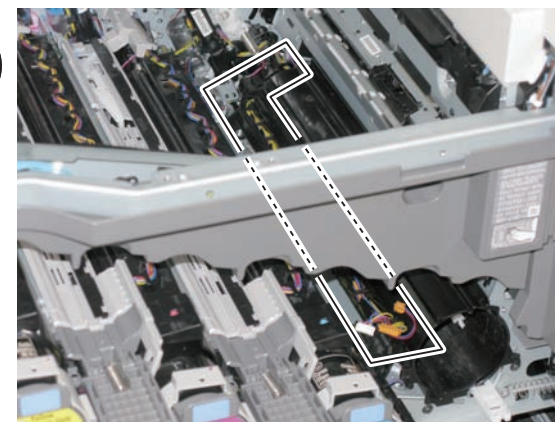
F-4-105

9) Disconnect the 4 connectors.



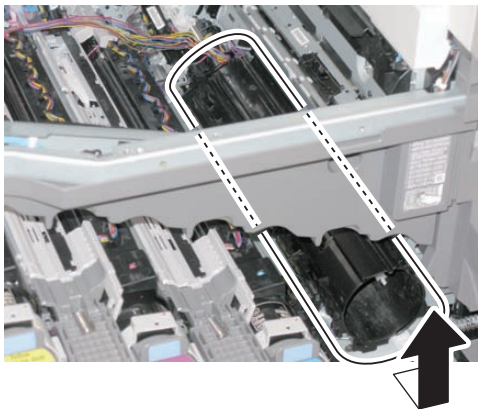
F-4-106

10) Free the Harness from the Guide of the Toner Bottle Mount.



F-4-107

11) Remove the Toner Bottle Mount in the direction of the arrow.

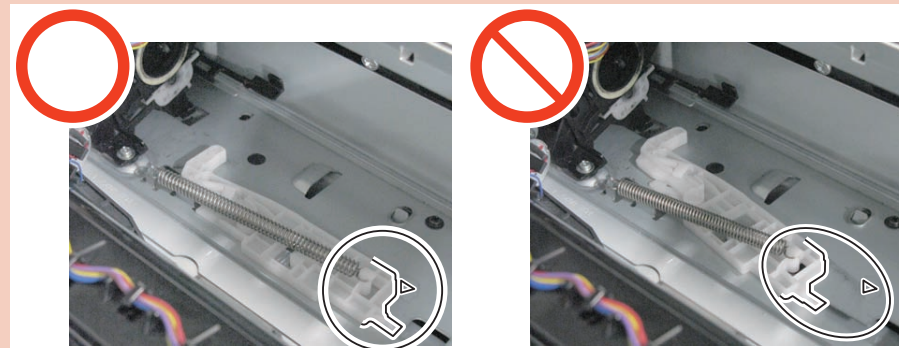


F-4-108

Points to Note at Installation:

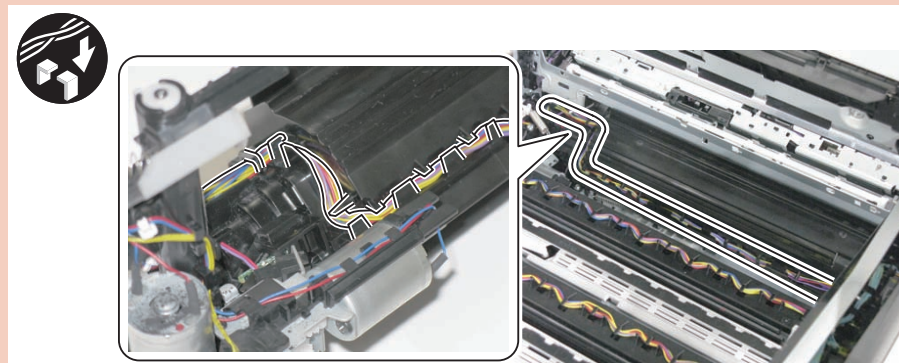
1) Be sure to check the position of the Toggle Lever when installing the Toner Bottle Mount.

(If the Toggle Lever is not in the correct position, the Toner Bottle cannot be installed.)



F-4-109

2) Be sure to route the harness along the guide of the Toner Bottle Mount without slack for not blocking the laser light path.



F-4-110

3) After installing the Link Lever, check that the Toner Bottle Door Unit opens and closes smoothly.

4) After installation, check if the cover of Drum Unit opens and closes.

Removing the Hopper Unit (CL)

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1.
- 5) Remove the Front Cover.
- 6) Remove the Left Cover.
- 7) Remove the First Delivery Tray.
- 8) Remove the Toner Bottle Mount of the target color.

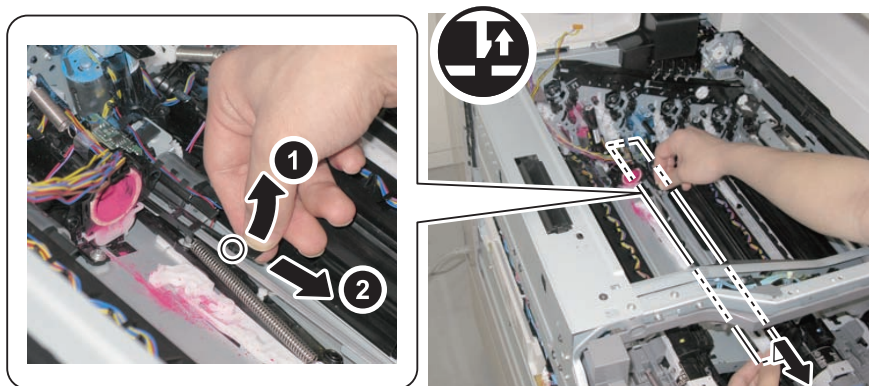
Procedure

NOTE:

In this procedure, procedure for the Hopper Unit (M) is described. Be sure to perform the same procedure for (Y) and (C).

- 1) Remove the stopper and remove the Link Stick in the direction of the arrow.

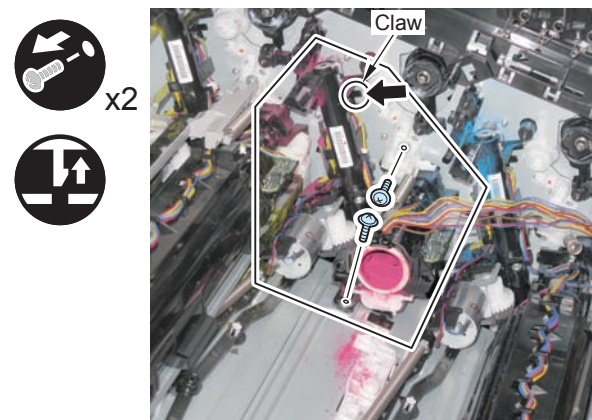
- 1 Claw



F-4-111

- 2) Remove the Reinforcing Member.

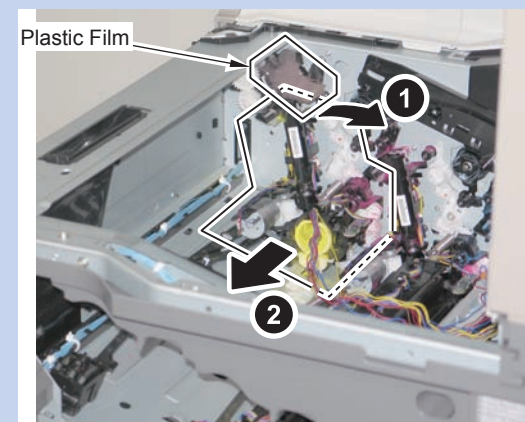
- 2 Screws
- 1 Claw



F-4-112

NOTE:

In the case of the Toner Supply Assembly (Y), avoid the plastic film of the Waste Toner Feed Unit to remove.



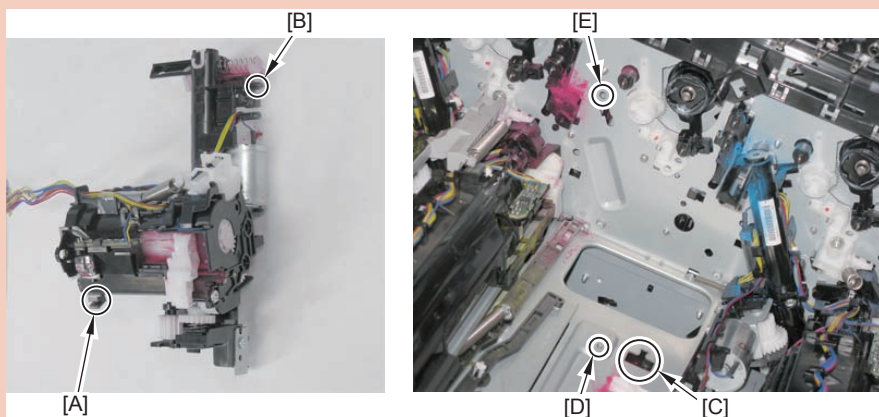
F-4-113

CAUTION:

When removing the Toner Supply Assembly, be careful not to spill the toner.

Points to Note at Installation:

1) Fit the hook [A] to [C] part and also fit the boss [B] to [E] part to adjust the position so that the Toner Supply Assembly is installed while fitting into the screw hole [D].



F-4-114

2) After installing the Link Stick, move it back and forth to check that it is secured.

3) After replacing the Hopper Unit, start the host machine.

Execute service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-Y/M/C.

After execution, toner is supplied to the Hopper Unit when warm-up rotation is performed.

(Warm-up rotation is performed by opening and closing the Front Door or turning OFF and then ON the power.)

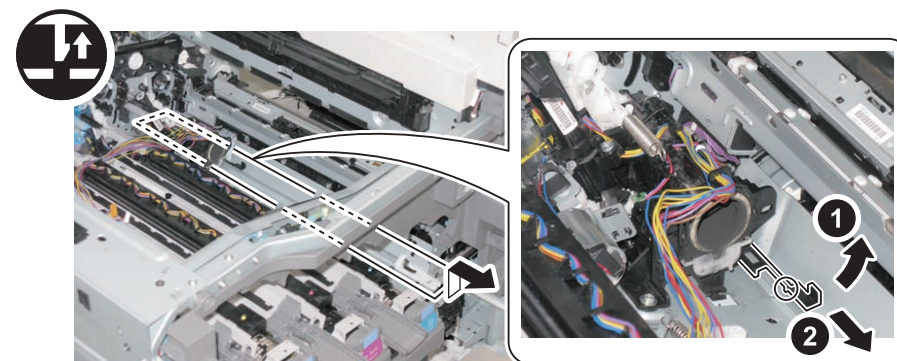
Removing the Hopper Unit (Bk)

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1.
- 5) Remove the Front Cover.
- 6) Remove the Left Cover.
- 7) Remove the First Delivery Tray.
- 8) Remove the Toner Bottle Mount (Bk).

Procedure

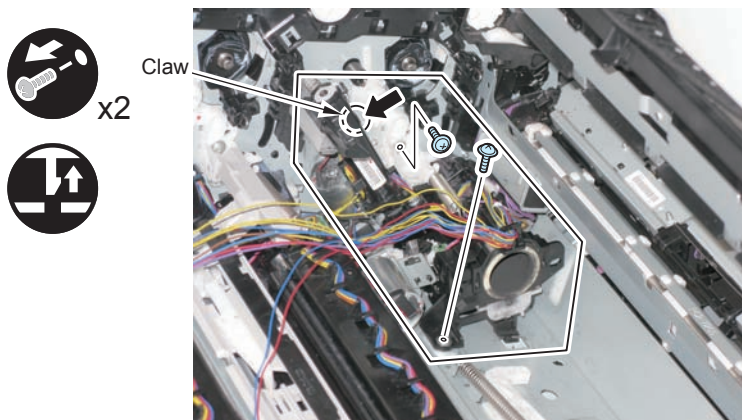
- 1) Remove the stopper and remove the Link Stick in the direction of the arrow.
 - 1 Claw



F-4-115

2) Remove the Reinforcing Member.

- 2 Screws
- 1 Claw



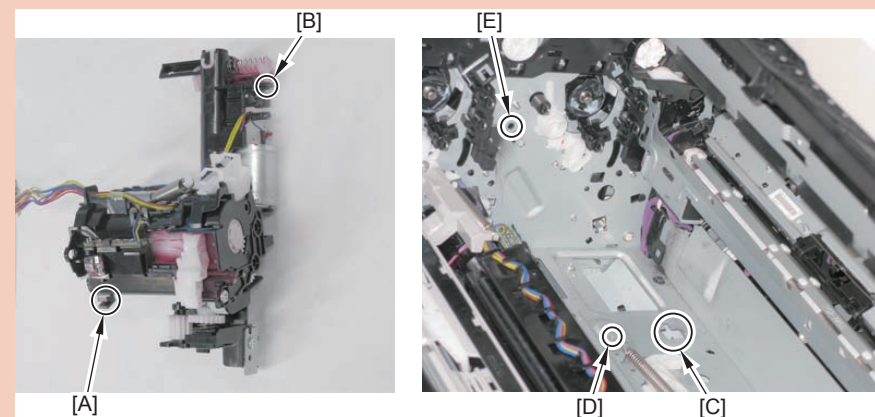
F-4-116

CAUTION:

When removing the Toner Supply Assembly, be careful not to spill the toner.

Points to Note at Installation:

1) Fit the hook [A] to [C] part and also fit the boss [B] to [E] part to adjust the position so that the Toner Supply Assembly is installed while fitting into the screw hole [D].



F-4-117

2) After installing the Link Stick, move it back and forth to check that it is secured.

3) After replacing the Hopper Unit, start the host machine.

Execute service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > SPLY-H-K.

After execution, toner is supplied to the Hopper Unit when warm-up rotation is performed.

(Warm-up rotation is performed by opening and closing the Front Door or turning OFF and then ON the power.)

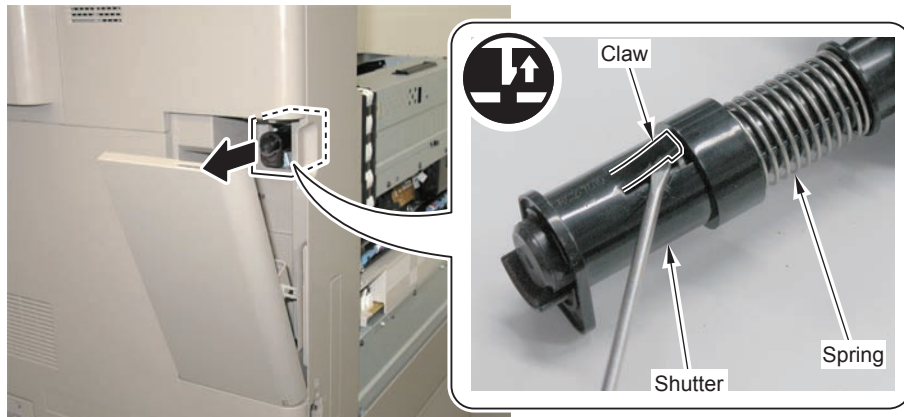
Removing the Waste Toner Feed Assembly

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1.
- 5) Remove the Front Cover.
- 6) Remove the Left Cover.
- 7) Remove the First Delivery Tray.
- 8) Remove the Waste Toner Container.

Procedure

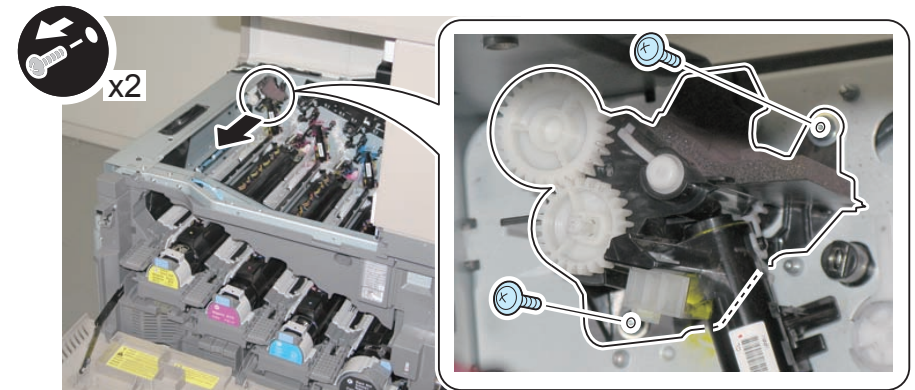
- 1) Remove the shutter and the spring.
 - 1 Claw



F-4-118

- 2) Remove the Waste Toner Feed Unit.

- 2 Screws



F-4-119

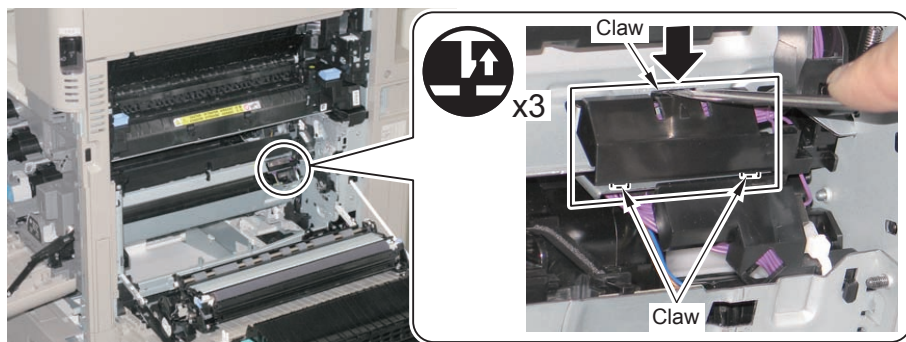
Removing the Registration Patch Sensor

Preparation

- 1) Remove the all Drum Units.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.
- 3) Turn OFF the power.
- 4) Remove the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit.
- 5) Remove the Cassette 1 Pickup Unit.

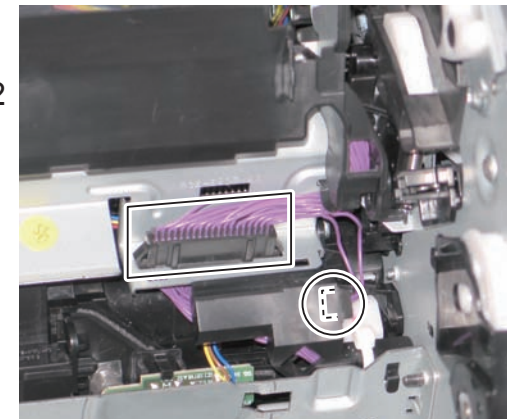
Procedure

- 1) Remove the Connector Cover.
 - 3 Claws



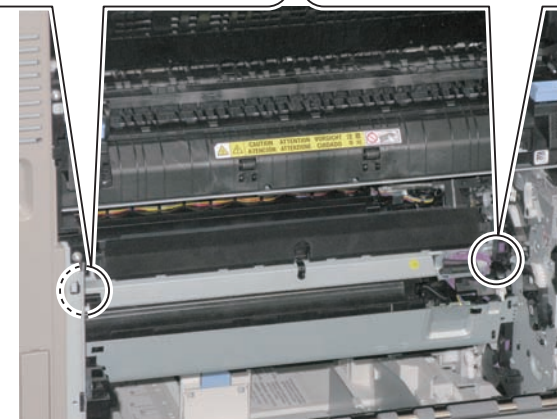
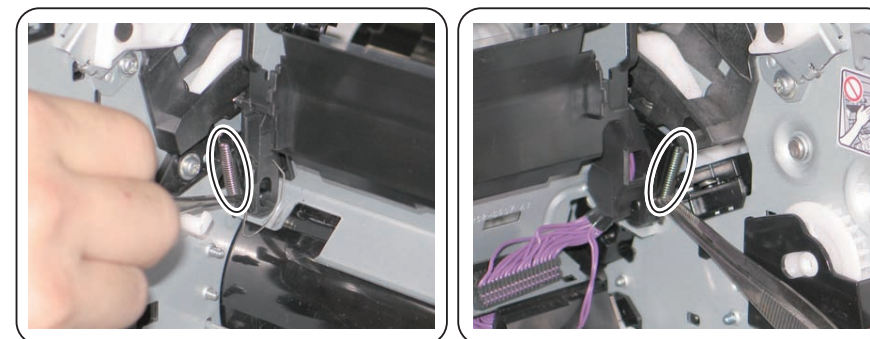
F-4-120

- 2) Disconnect the 2 connectors.



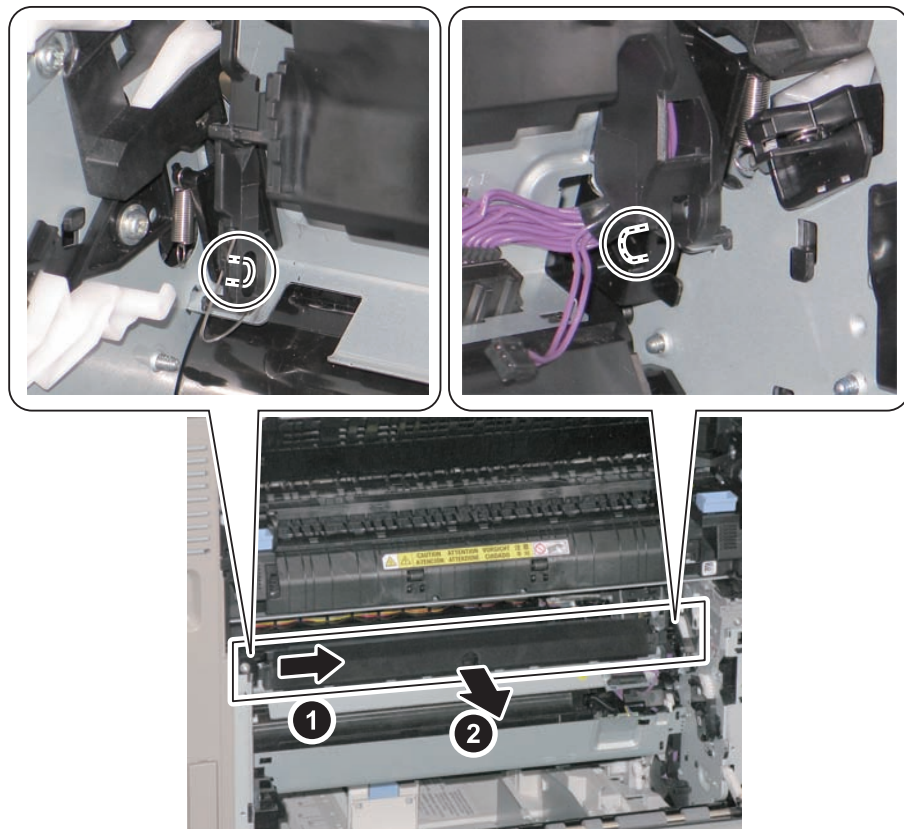
F-4-121

- 3) Remove the 2 springs (right and left).



F-4-122

4) Remove the Left Shaft in the direction of the arrow to remove the Registration Patch Sensor.



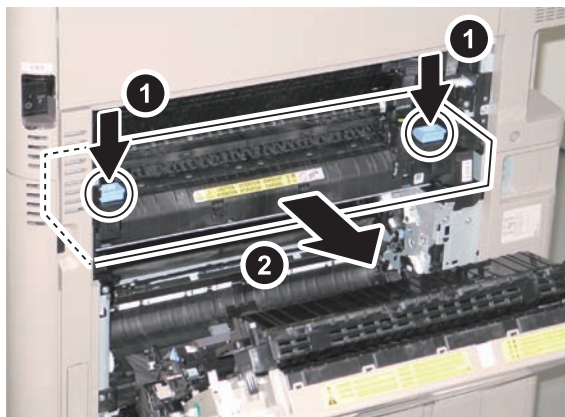
F-4-123

Disassembly/Assembly - Fixing System -

Removing the Fixing Assembly

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover.
- 2) Hold the right and left grips and pull out the Fixing Assembly to the direction of the arrow.

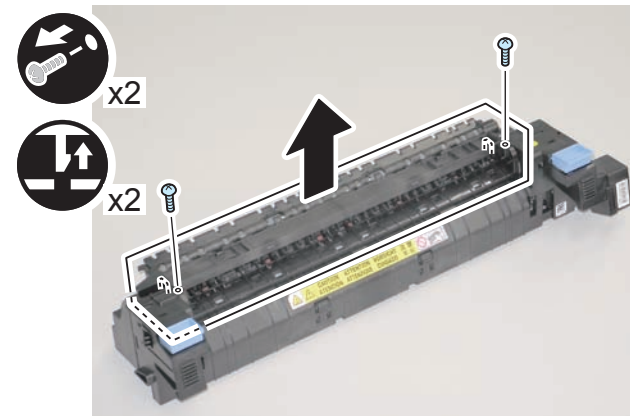


F-4-124

CAUTION:

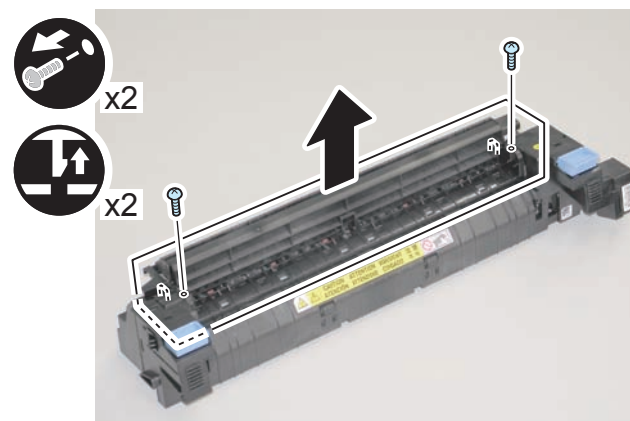
- Be careful when removing the Fixing Assembly because it is hot immediately after the power is turned OFF.
- Do not discard the assembly with the Delivery Guide attached.

- 3) Remove the 2 screws securing the Fixing Delivery Upper Guide.



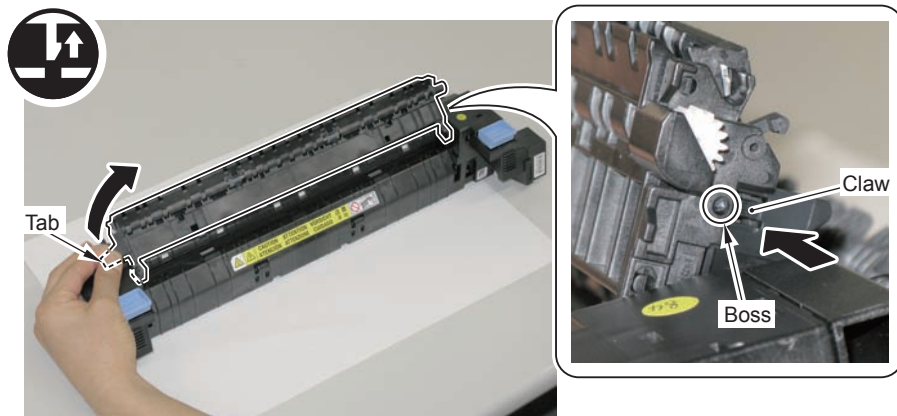
F-4-125

<When installing the Expansion Delivery Kit-C1>



F-4-126

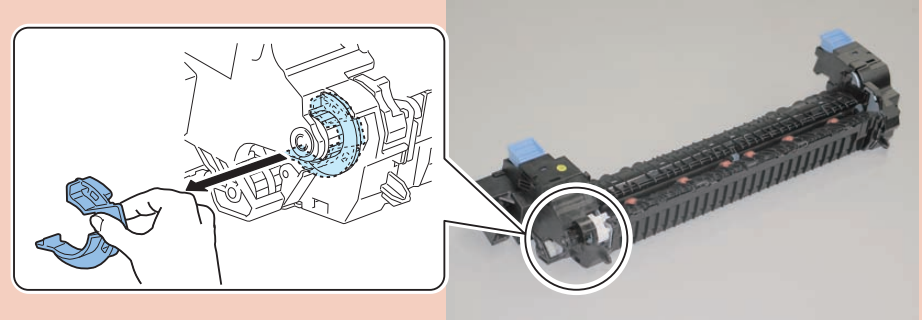
4) Lift the tab, push the claw to free the boss, and remove the Fixing Delivery Upper Guide.



F-4-127

CAUTION:

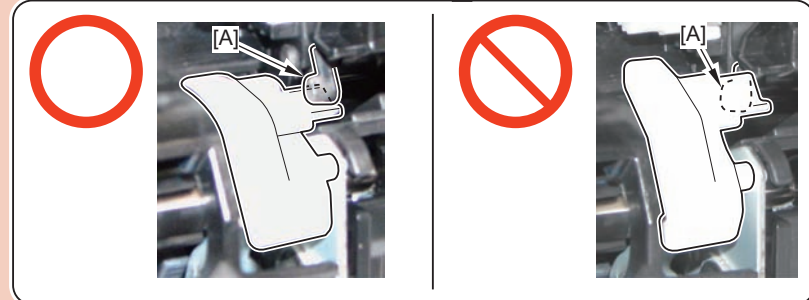
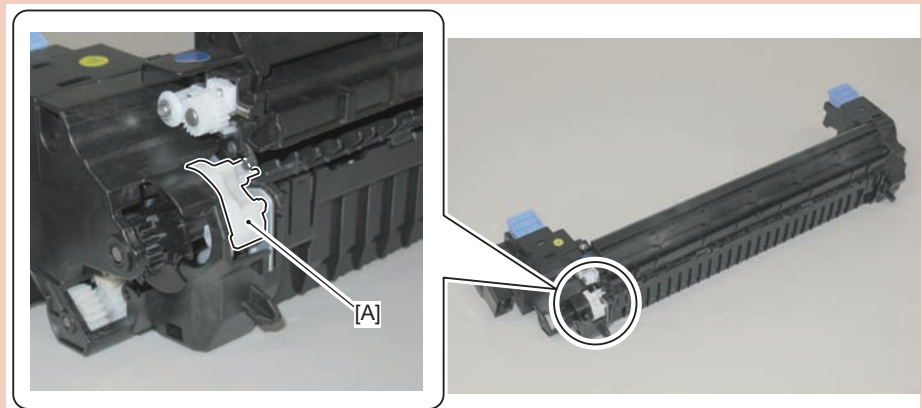
1) When attaching a new Fixing Assembly, remove the fixation member.



2) After installing the Fixing Delivery Guide, check that [A] moves.

(If it doesn't move, the Flapper will not operate properly and jam will occur.)

F-4-128

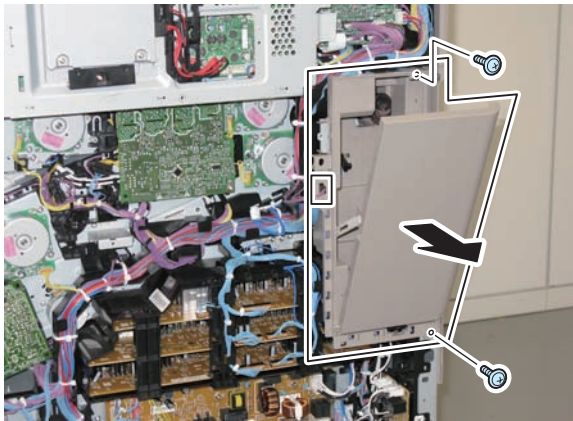


Removing the Fixing Drive Unit

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Connector Cover.
- 3) Remove the Rear Cover.
- 4) Open the Right lower Cover.
- 5) Remove the Fixing Assembly.
- 6) Remove the Waste Toner Container.
- 7) Remove the Waste Toner Storage Box.

- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws



F-4-129

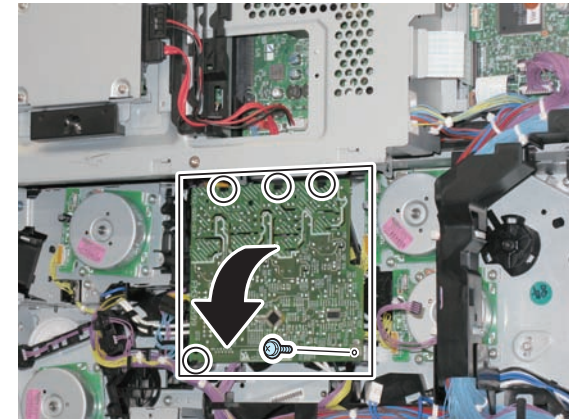
CAUTION:

In case of the FAX model, be sure to remove the FAX

Procedure

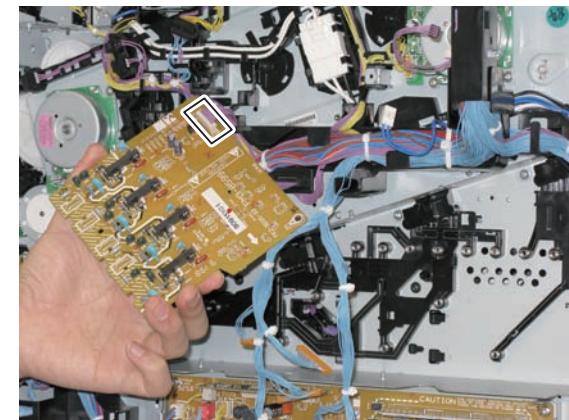
- 1) Remove the Primary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB.

- 1 Screw
- 4 Claws



- 2) Disconnect the connector from the Primary Transfer High-voltage Power Supply PCB.

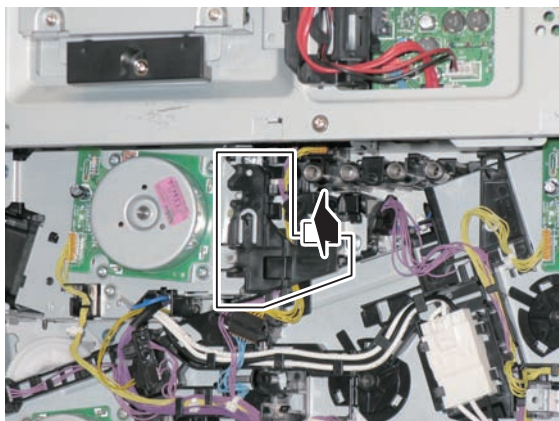
- 1 Connector



F-4-131

3) Remove the Harness Cover.

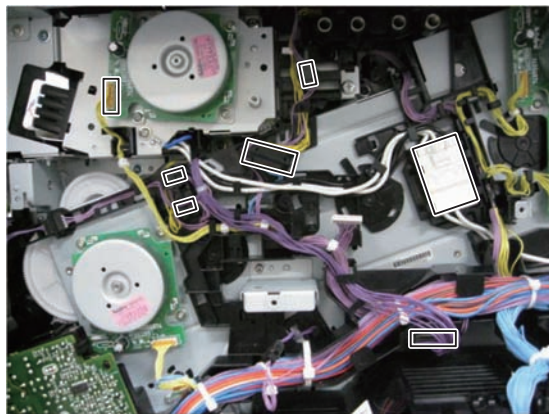
- 1 Claw



F-4-132

4) Disconnect the connectors.

- 7 Connectors

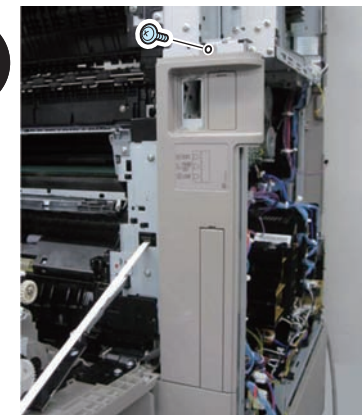


F-4-133

5) Remove the connectors in step 4 from the guides.

6) Remove the Right Rear Sub Cover.

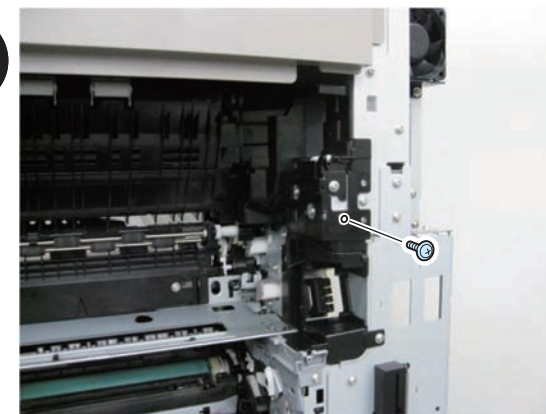
- 1 Screw



F-4-134

7) Remove the Inner Guide 1.

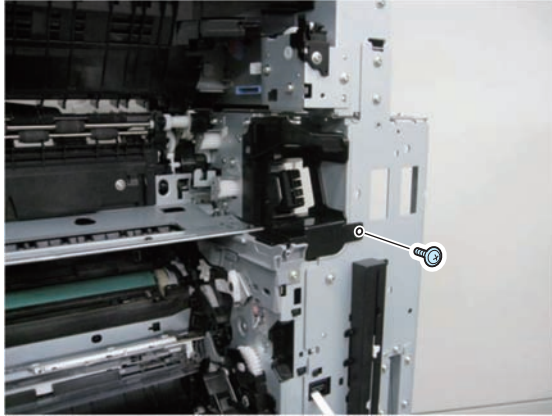
- 1 Screw



F-4-135

8) Remove the Inner Guide 2.

- 1 Screw



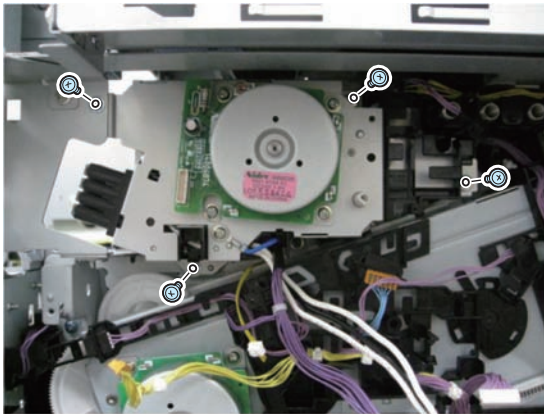
F-4-136

9) Remove the Fixing Drive Unit.

- 4 Screws



x4



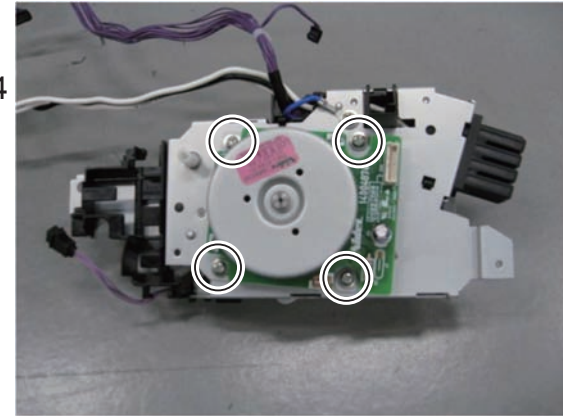
F-4-137

10) Remove the Fixing Motor.

- 4 Screws



x4



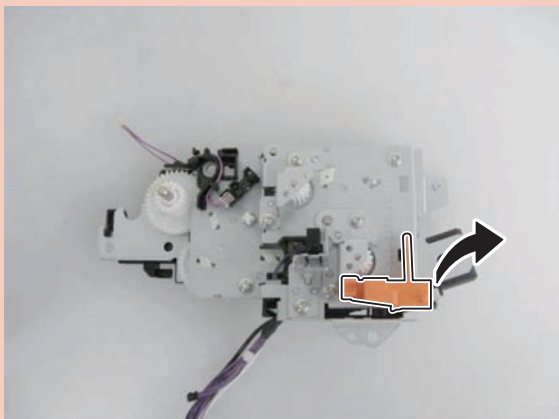
F-4-138

CAUTION:

Be careful not to dispose of the Fixing Motor together with the old Fixing Drive Unit since it is a different part from the new Fixing Drive Unit.

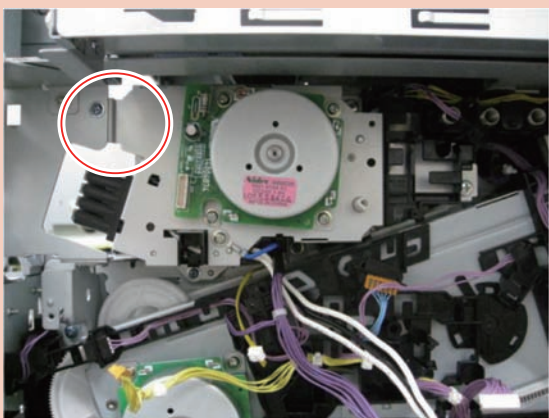
Points to Note at Installation:

1) When installing a new Fixing Drive, remove the positioning member



2) Be sure to pay attention to the positional relation of the plate in the figure when assembling.

Be sure that the plate in the Fixing Drive side is located inside the frame body of the host machine.

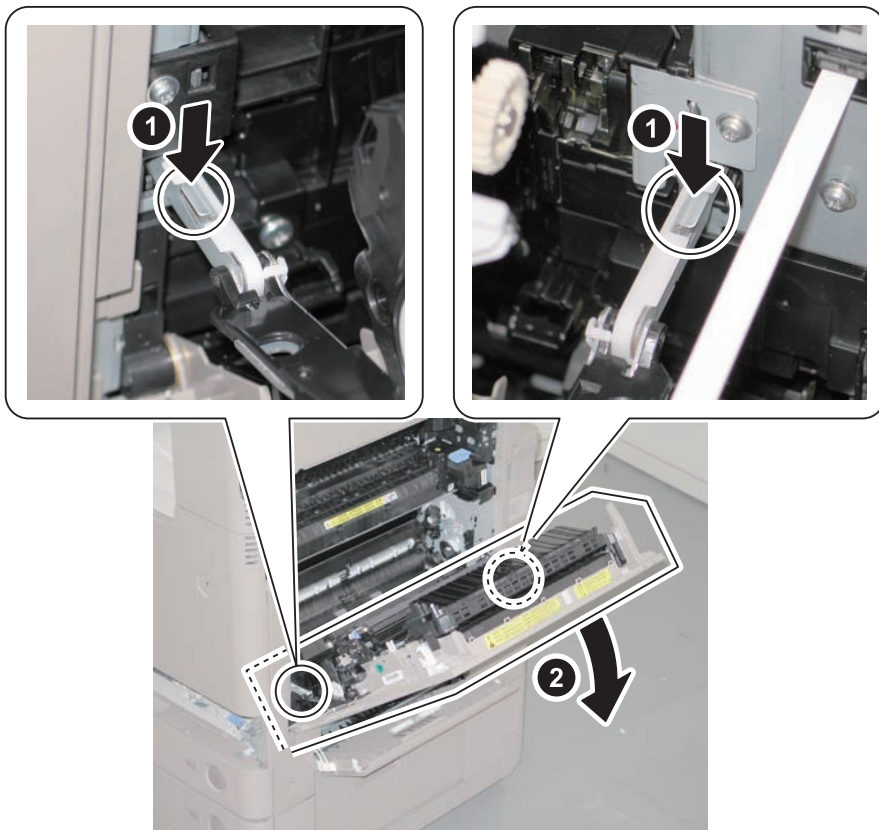


Disassembly/Assembly - Pickup Feed System -

Opening the Right Lower Cover Fully

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover.
- 2) Release the lock by pushing the [1] part to open fully.

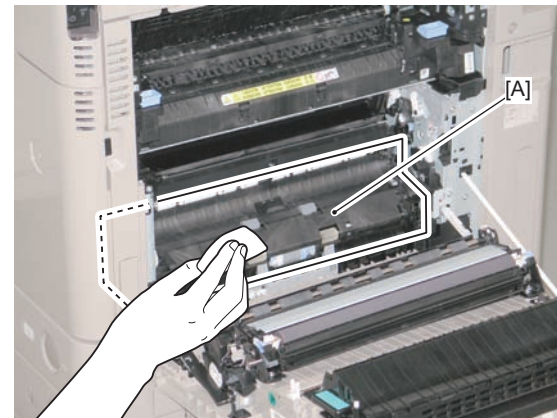


F-4-139

Cleaning the Pre-registration Guide

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 2) Clean the Pre-registration Guide area [A] with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

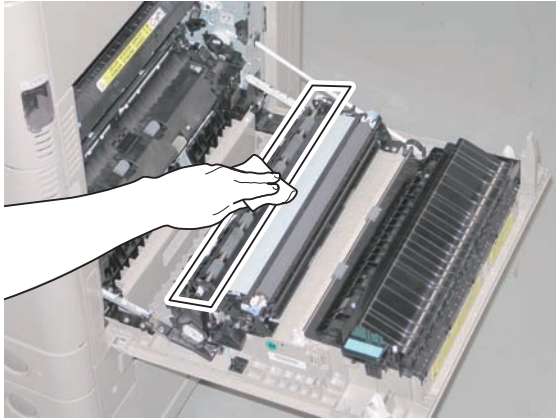


F-4-140

Cleaning the Registration Roller

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 2) Clean a whole circumference of the Registration Roller with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

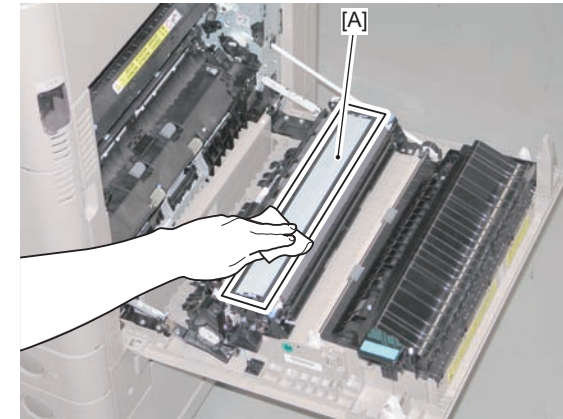


F-4-141

Cleaning the Pre-secondary Transfer Outer Guide

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 2) Clean the Pre-secondary Transfer Outer Guide area [A] with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

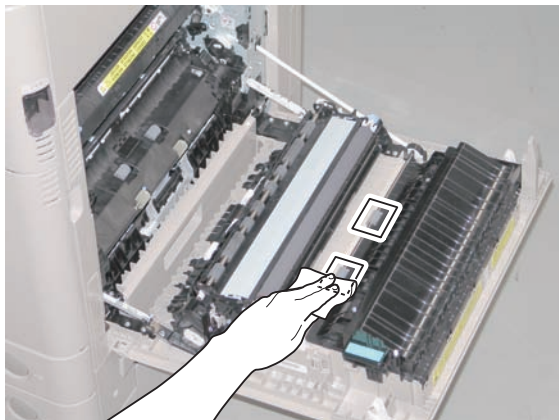


F-4-142

Cleaning Duplex Feed Lower Roller

Procedure

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 2) Clean a whole circumference of the Duplex Feed Lower Roller with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.



F-4-143

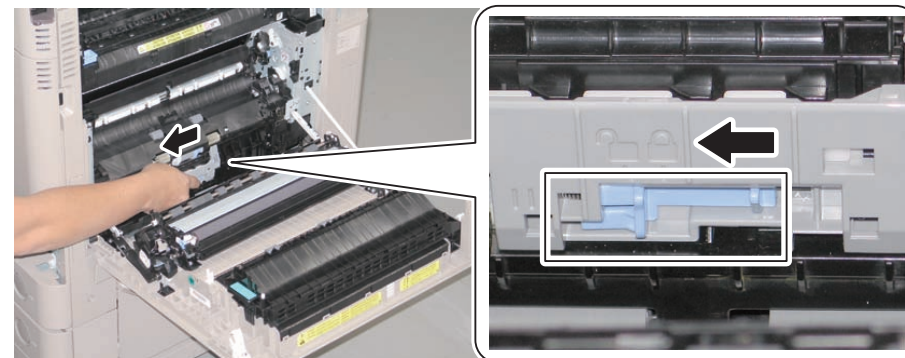
Removing the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit, Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and the Registration Roller.

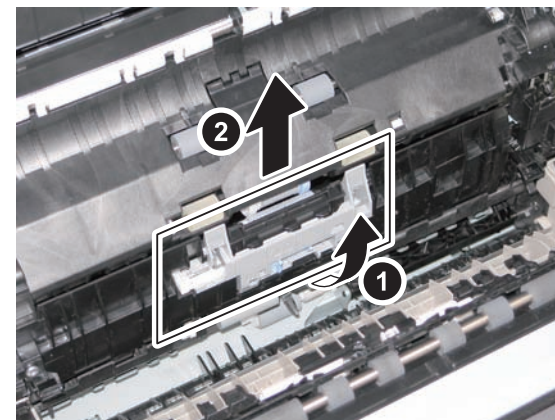
Procedure

- 1) Pull out the Cassette 1.
- 2) Open the Cassette Right Upper Cover.
- 3) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 4) Move the Lock Lever in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-144

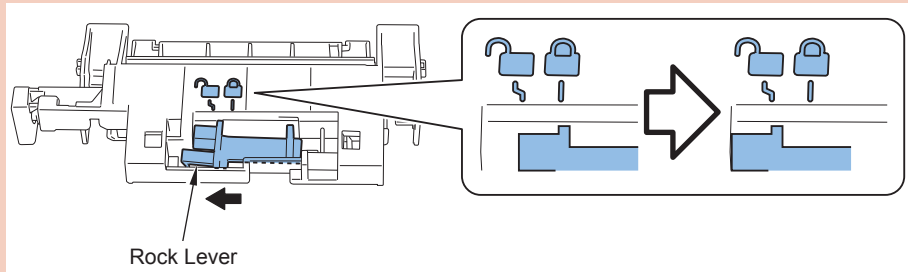
- 5) Remove the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-145

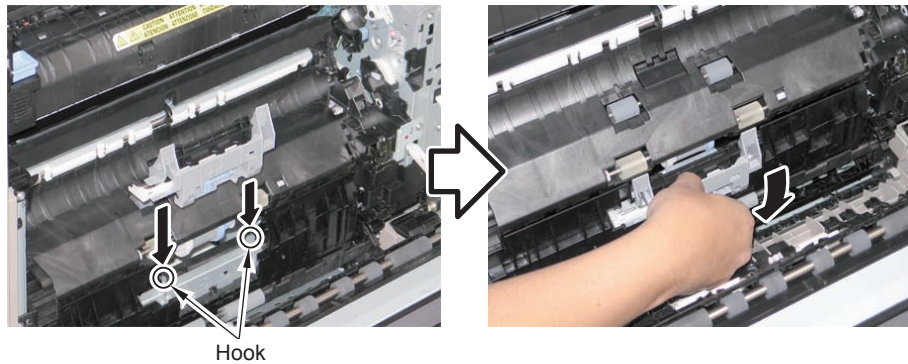
CAUTION:

When installing the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit, be sure that the Lock Lever is released.



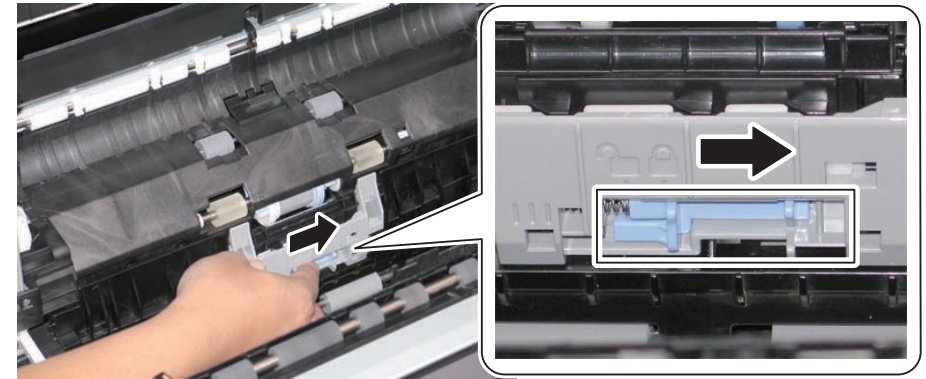
F-4-146

6) Hook to the hooks, and install the unit in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-147

7) Lock the Lock Lever in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-148

8) Check that the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit is secured.

Removing the Cassette 1 Pickup Roller

CAUTION:

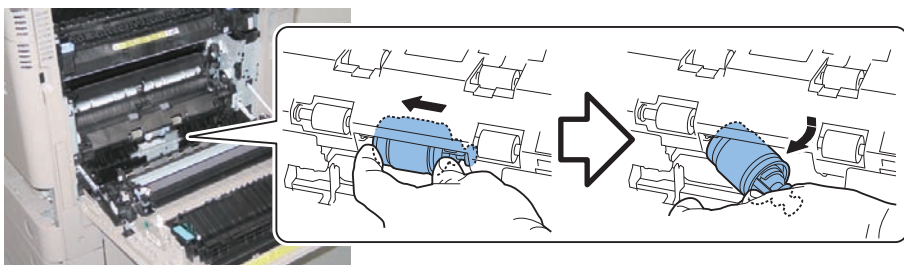
Do not touch the roller surface of the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit, Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and the Registration Roller.

Preparation

1) Remove the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit.

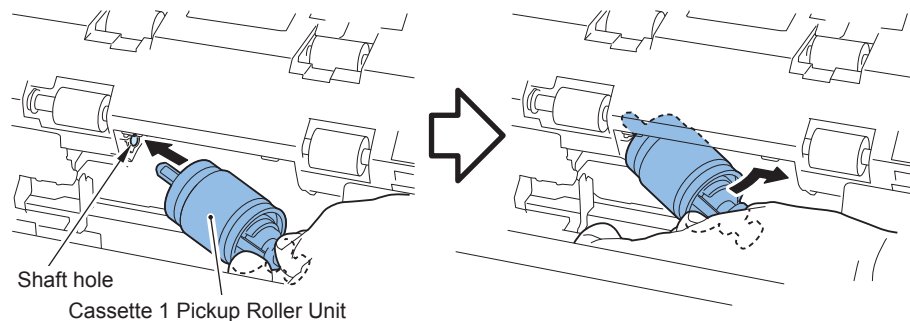
Procedure

1) Remove the Cassette 1 Pickup Roller in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-149

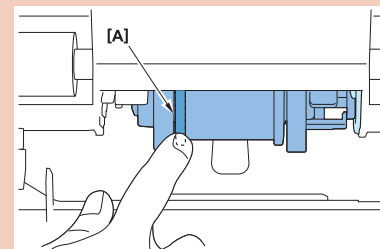
2) Align the Cassette 1 Pickup Roller with a shaft hole, and install it in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-150

CAUTION:

Be sure that there is no gap at [A] part of the Cassette 1 Pickup Roller after installation. By turning [B] part, the roller is fit into the installation position.



F-4-151

Removing the Cassette 1 Pickup Unit

CAUTION:

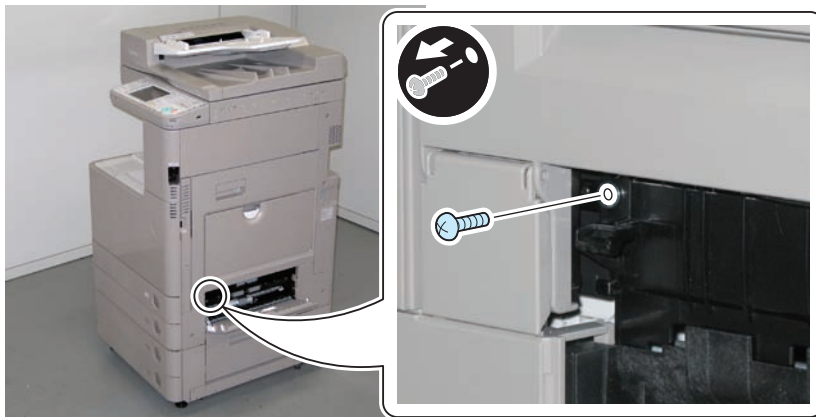
Do not touch the roller surface of the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit, Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and the Registration Roller.

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit.
- 2) Remove the ITB Unit.

Procedure

- 1) Close the Right Lower Cover, and remove the screw of the Pickup Guide.

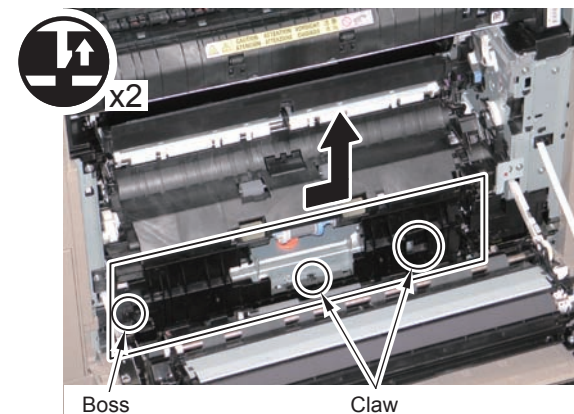


F-4-152

- 2) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.

- 3) Remove the Pickup Guide in the direction of the arrow.

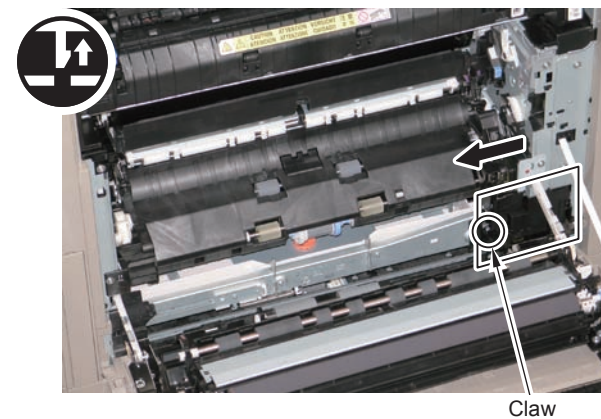
- 1 Boss
- 2 Claws



F-4-153

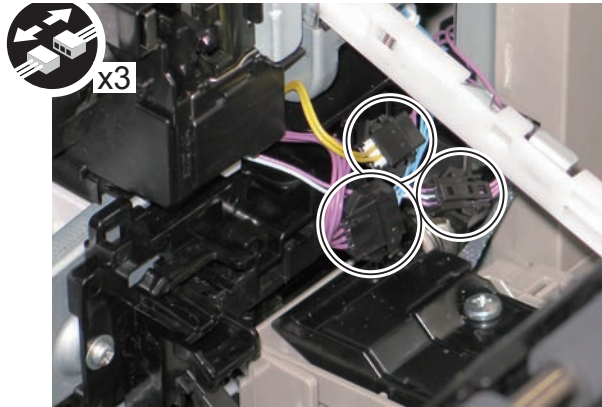
- 4) Remove the Cable Cover.

- 1 Claw



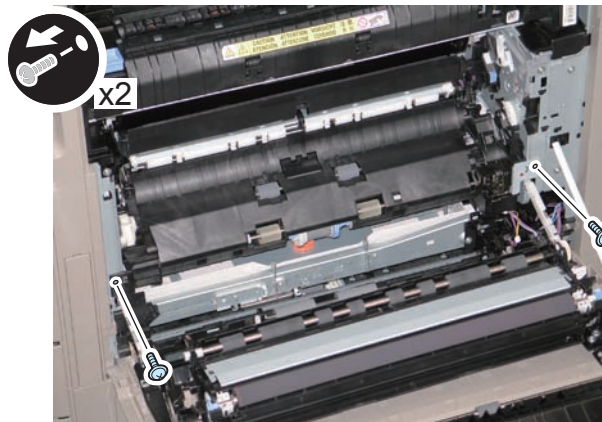
F-4-154

6) Disconnect the 3 connectors.



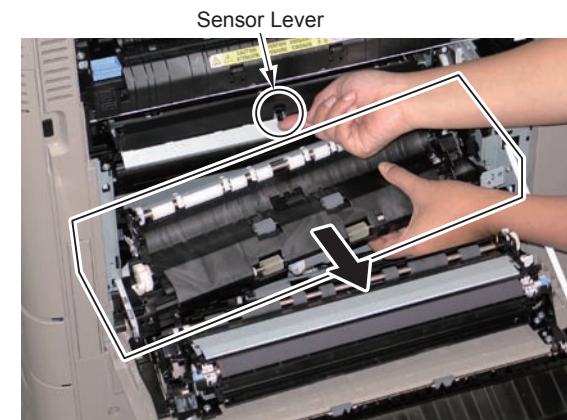
F-4-155

7) Remove the 2 screws.



F-4-156

8) While lifting up the Sensor Lever, pull out the Cassette 1 Pickup Unit toward the front.



F-4-157

CAUTION:

At installation, be sure to install the unit while lifting up the Sensor Lever, and check that it moves correctly.

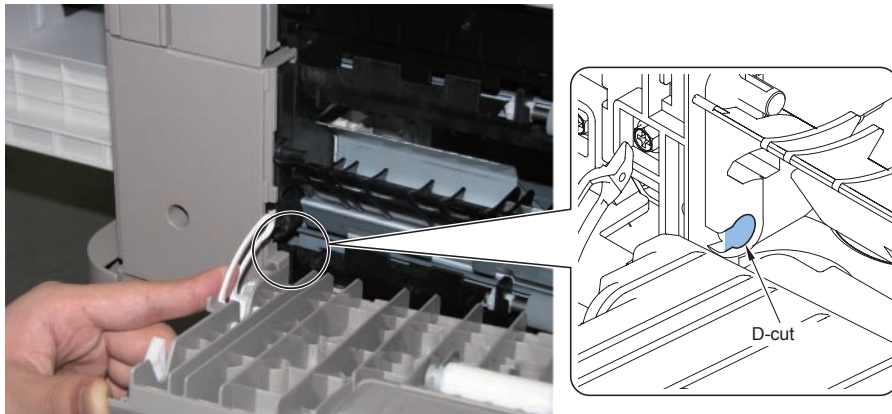
Removing the Cassette 2 Pickup Unit

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Cassette 1 Separation Roller Unit, Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and the Registration Roller.

Procedure

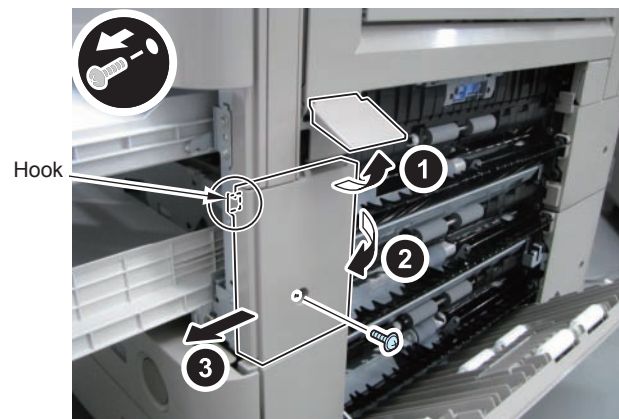
- 1) Pull out the Cassette 1 and 2.
- 2) Open the Pedestal Right Cover and the Cassette Right Upper Cover.
- 3) Remove the Cassette Right Upper Cover.



F-4-158

- 4) Remove the Cassette Right Upper Sub Cover 1.

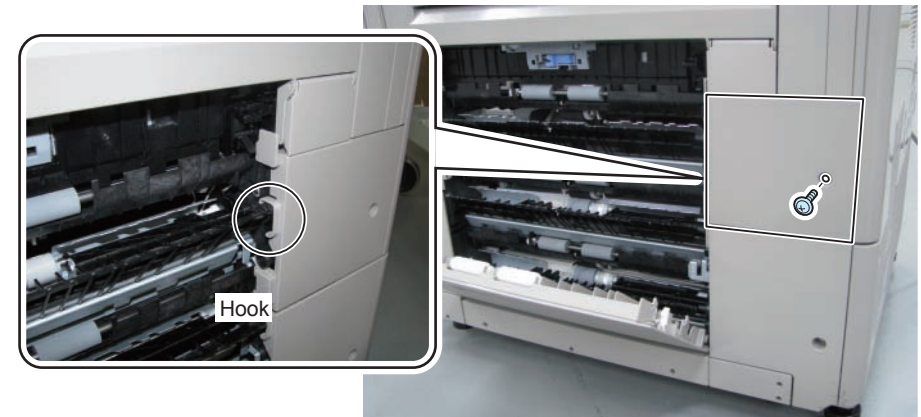
- 1 Claw



F-4-159

- 5) Remove the Cassette Right Upper Sub Cover 2.

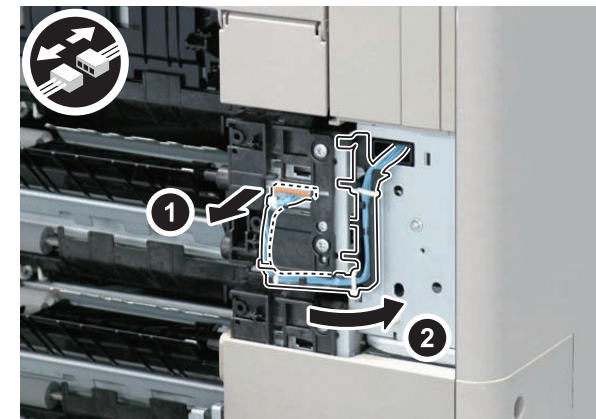
- 1 Claw
- 1 Hook



F-4-160

- 6) Remove the Connector and Connector Guide.

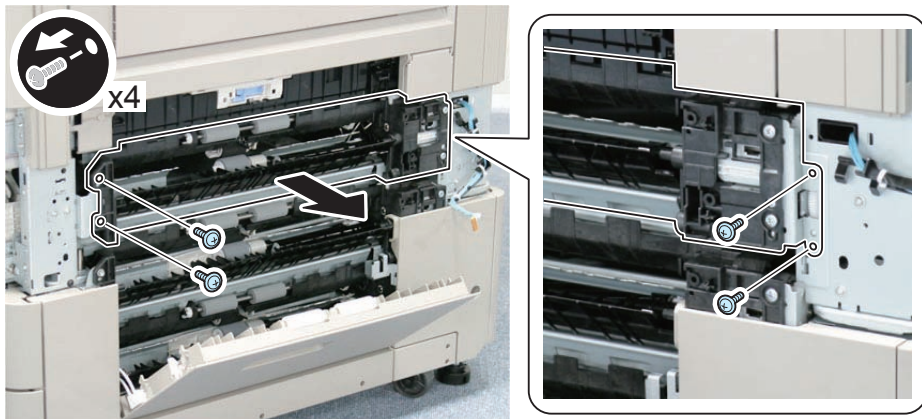
- 1 Claw
- 1 Connector



F-4-161

7) Remove the Cassette 2 Pickup Unit.

- 4 Screw



F-4-162

Removing the Cassette 2 Pickup Roller

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Pickup Roller, Feed Roller, and Separation Roller.

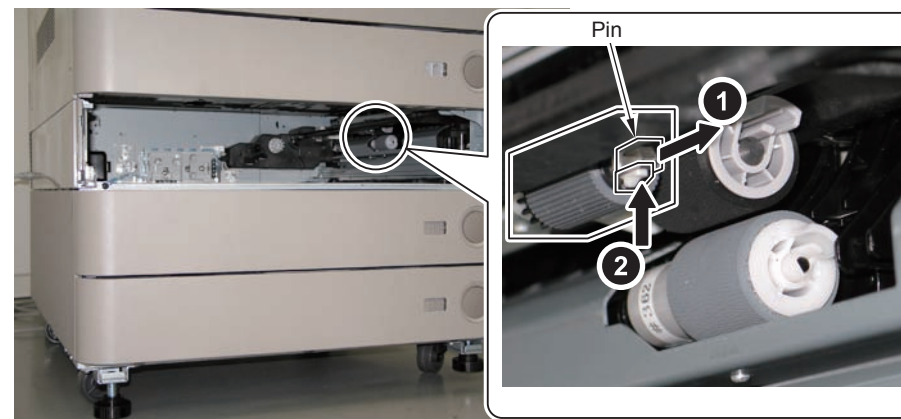
Preparation

- Remove the Cassette 2.

Procedure

1) Remove the Cassette 2 Pickup Roller.

- 1 Pin
- 1 Tab



F-4-163

Removing the Cassette 2 Feed Roller

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Pickup Roller, Feed Roller, and Separation Roller.

Preparation

- Remove the Cassette 2.

Procedure

1) Remove the Cassette 2 Feed Roller.

- 1 Tab



F-4-164

Removing the Cassette 2 Separation Roller

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Pickup Roller, Feed Roller, and Separation Roller.

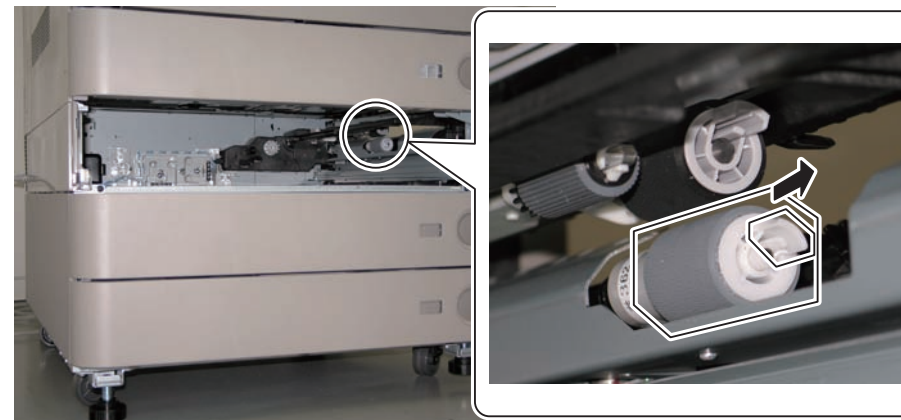
Preparation

- Remove the Cassette 2.

Procedure

1) Remove the Cassette 2 Separation Roller.

- 1 Tab



F-4-165

Removing the Pickup Assembly Idler Gear

CAUTION:

Do not touch the roller surface of the Pickup Roller, Feed Roller, and Separation Roller.

Preparation

- Remove the Cassette 2.
- Remove the Cassette 2 Pickup Roller.
- Remove the Cassette 2 Feed Roller.

Procedure

1) Remove the Cassette 2 Pickup Assembly Idler Gear.

- 1 Pin
- 1 Tab

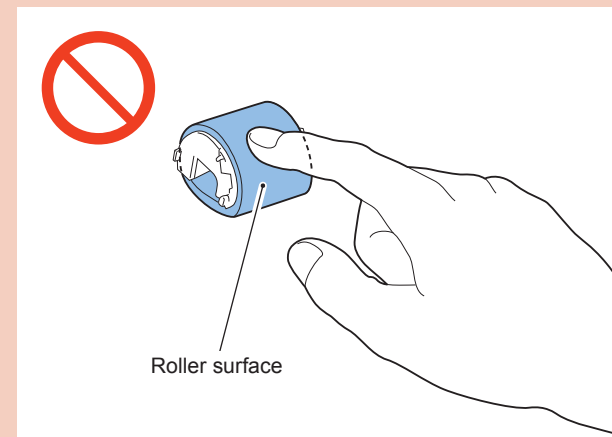


F-4-166

Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller

CAUTION:

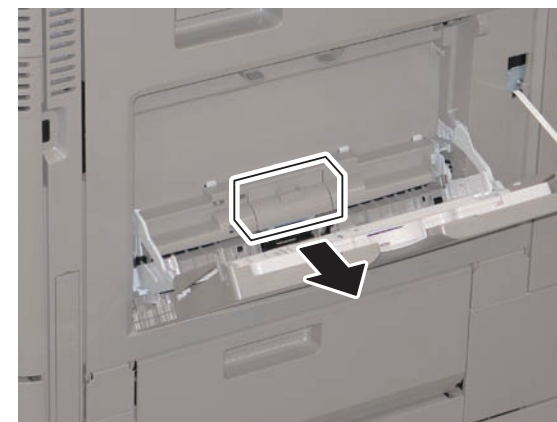
Do not touch the surface of the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller.



F-4-167

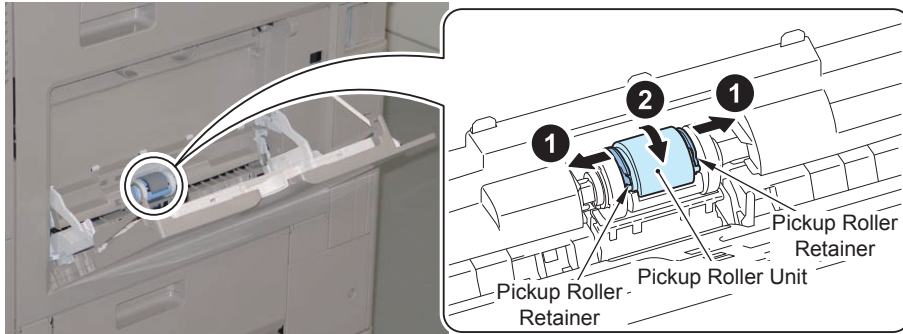
Procedure

- 1) Open the Multi-purpose Tray.
- 2) Remove the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller Cover.



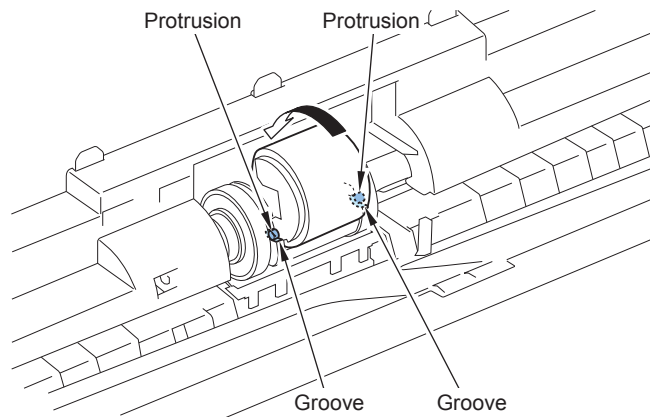
F-4-168

3) Open the Pickup Roller Retainer to right and left, and remove it in the direction of the arrow.



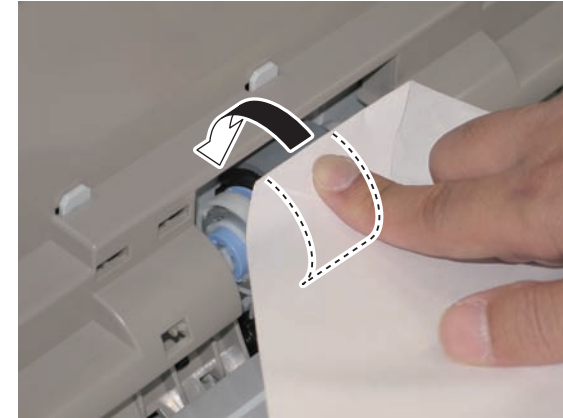
F-4-169

4) Fit the 2 protrusions on a new Pickup Roller into the groove, and install it in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-170

5) Place a paper onto the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller, and install the roller by pushing it in.



F-4-171

CAUTION:

Check that the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller is secured.

6) Install the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller Cover.

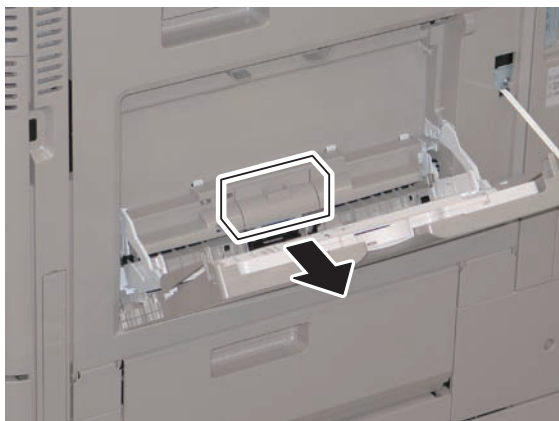
Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad

CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad.

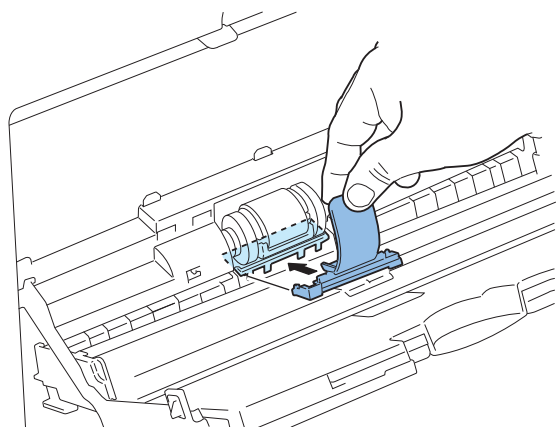
Procedure

- 1) Open the Multi-purpose Tray.
- 2) Remove the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller Cover.



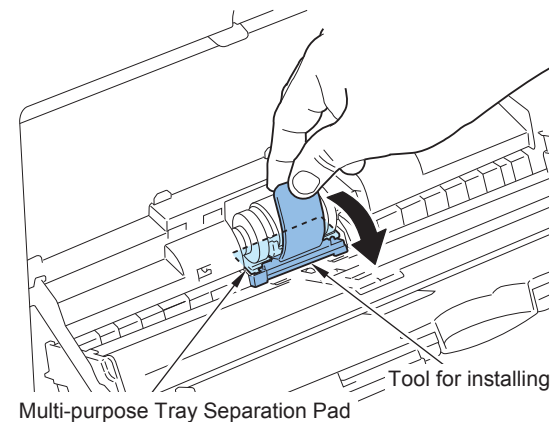
F-4-172

- 3) Insert the tool for installing included in the package in the direction of the arrow.



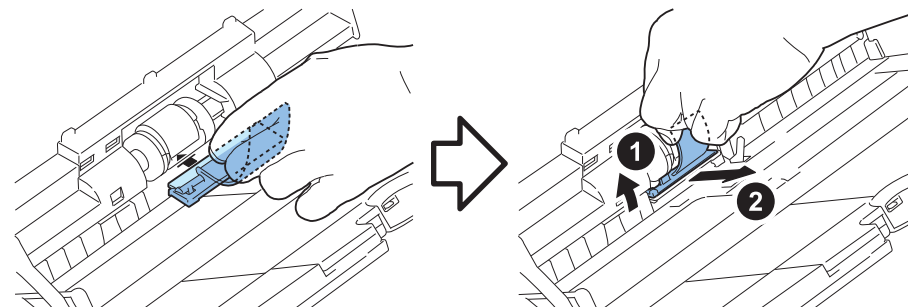
F-4-173

- 4) Move the tool for installing in the direction of the arrow to remove the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad.



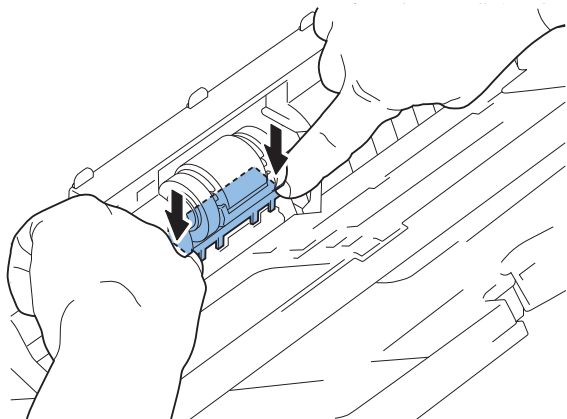
F-4-174

- 5) Insert a new Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad in the direction of the arrow with the tool for installing, and pull out the tool.



F-4-175

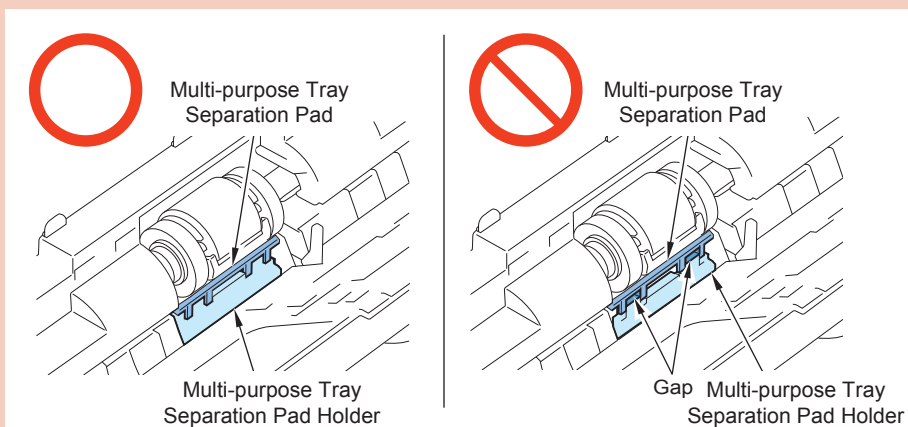
6) Push the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad in the direction of the arrow to secure it.



F-4-176

CAUTION:

Check that there is no gap between the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad and the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad Holder.



F-4-177

7) Install the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller Cover.

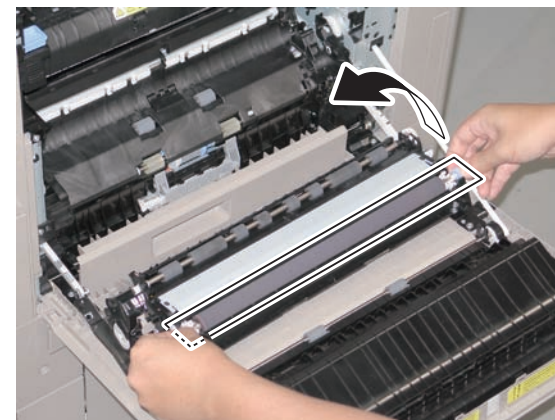
Removing the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller

CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.

Procedure

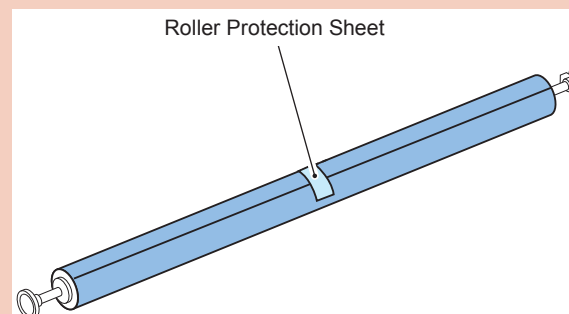
- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.
- 2) Hold the both edges of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and remove it in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-178

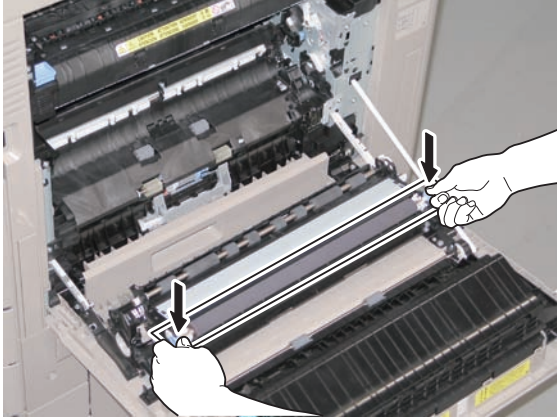
Points to Note at Installation:

Be sure not to remove the Protection Sheet on a new Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.



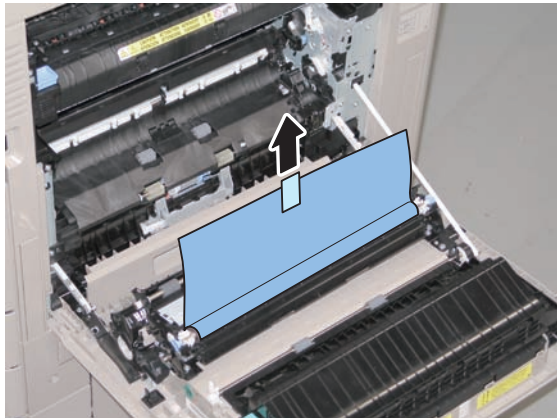
F-4-179

- 3) Hold the both edges of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller, and install it by pushing the shafts at right and left sides.



F-4-180

- 4) Pull the tape on the Protection Sheet in the direction of the arrow to remove the sheet.



F-4-181

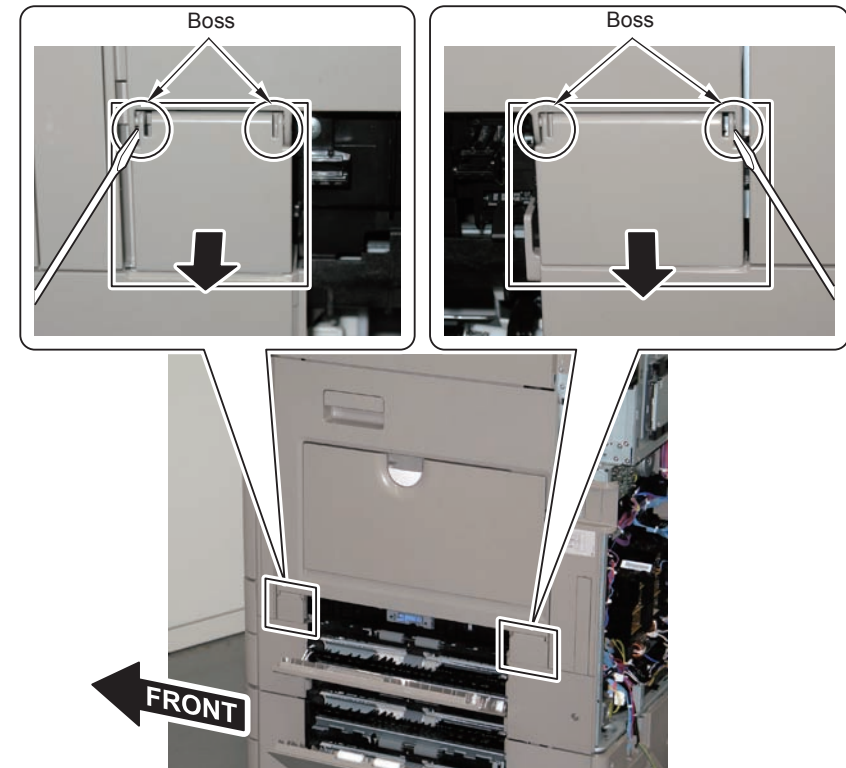
Removing the Right Door Unit

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
- 3) Remove the Rear Cover.

Procedure

- 1) Open the Cassette Right Upper Cover and the Cassette Right Lower Cover.
- 2) Remove the Cassette Right Upper Sub Cover 1 and the Cassette Right Upper Sub Cover 2.
 - 2 Bosses each



F-4-182

3) Remove the Right Lower Sub Cover 2.

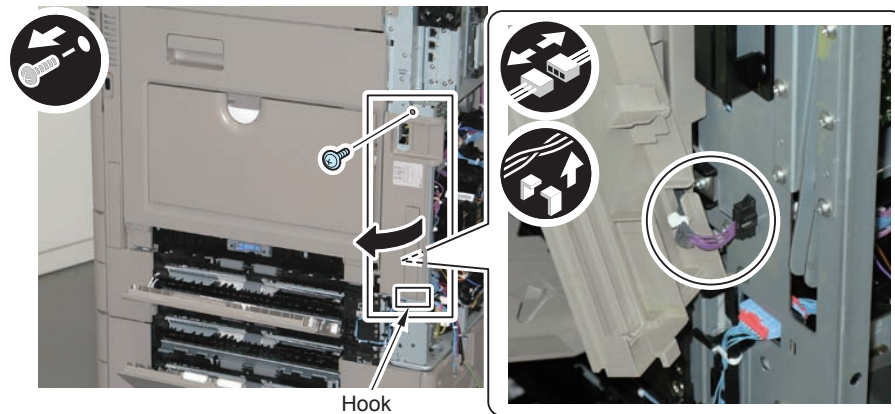
- 1 Screw
- 1 Hook



F-4-183

4) Remove the Right Rear Sub Cover.

- 1 Screw
- 1 Hook
- 1 Connector
- 1 Harness

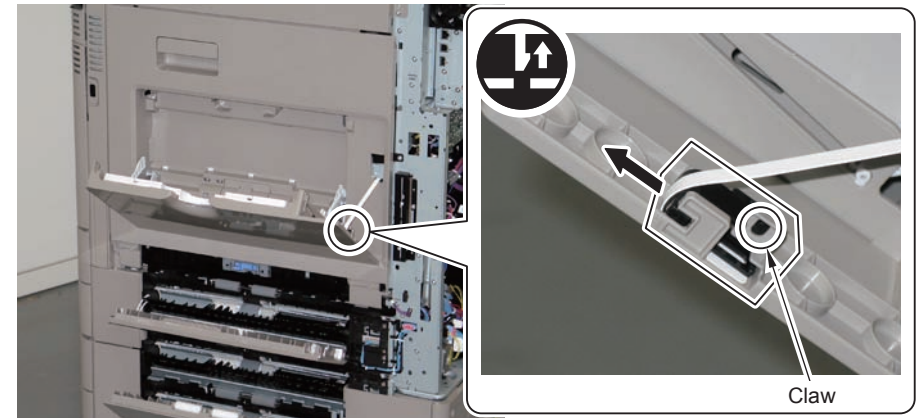


F-4-184

5) Open the Multi-purpose Tray.

6) Release the Stopper Retainer, remove the Stopper.

- 1 Claw



F-4-185

7) Close the Multi-purpose Tray.

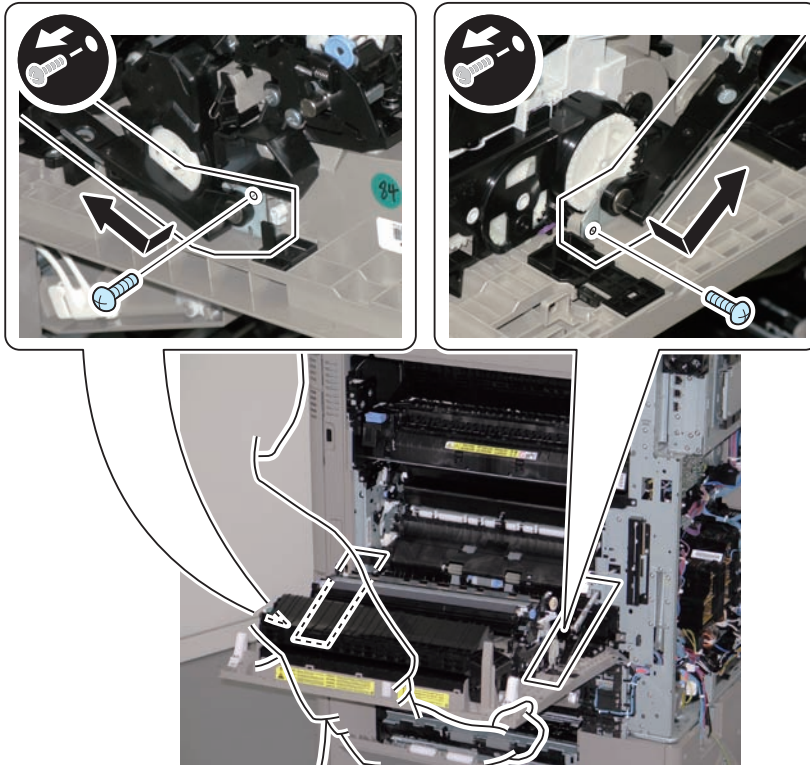
8) Open the Right Lower Cover fully.

9) Remove the Link Arms at right and left sides.

- 2 Screws

CAUTION:

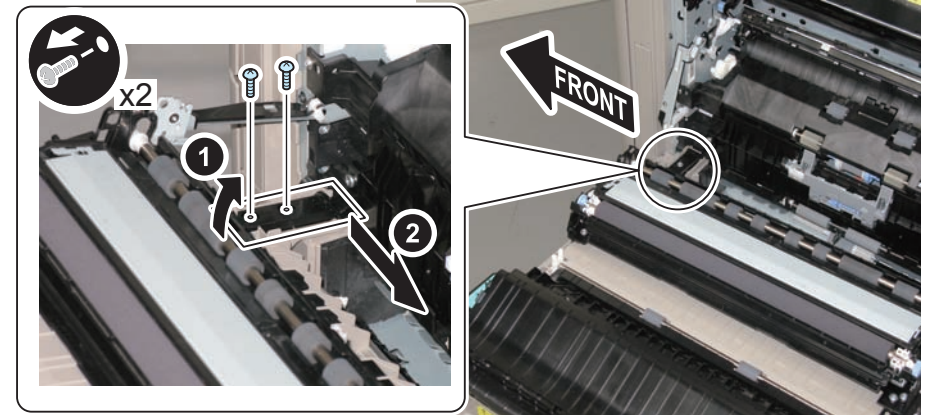
When removing the Link Arms, be sure to support the Right Door Unit.



F-4-186

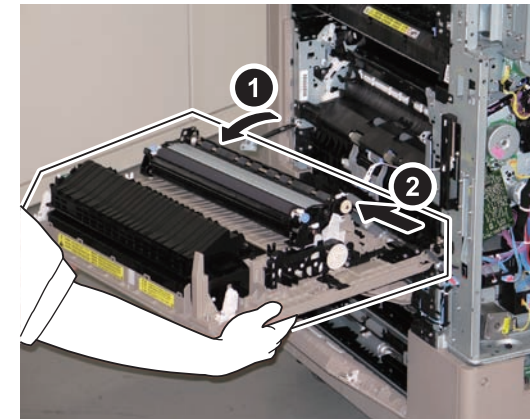
10) Remove the hinge at front side.

- 2 Screws



F-4-187

11) Remove the Right Door Unit in the direction of the arrow.



F-4-188

Disassembly/Assembly - External Auxiliary System -

Removing the Control Panel

Preparation

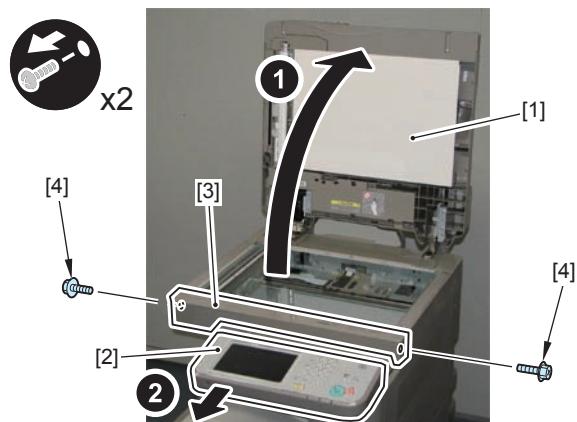
1) Remove the Front Upper Cover.

Procedure

8) Open the ADF Unit [1].

9) Pull out the Control Panel [2].

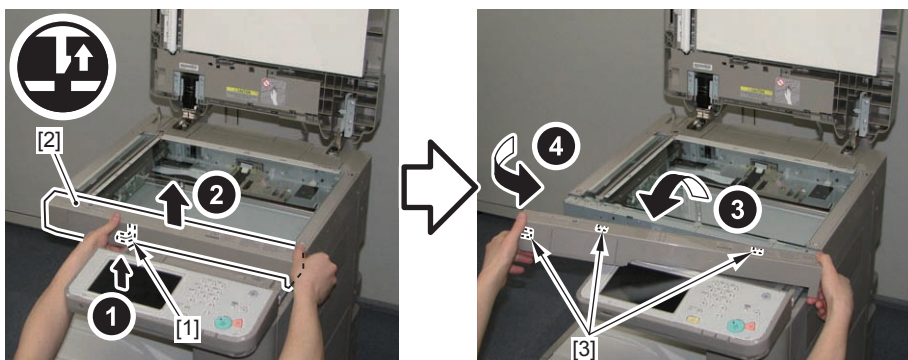
10) Remove 2 screws [4] from the Front Upper Cover [3].



F-4-189

11) Release the claw [1], and remove the Front Upper Cover [2].

• 3 Hooks [3]

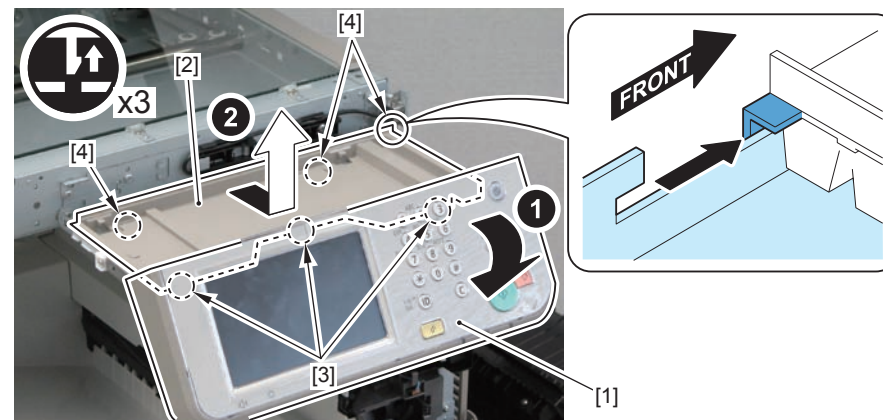


F-4-190

12) Make the Control Panel [1] upright, and remove the Rail Cover [2] of the Control Panel.

• 3 Protrusions [3]

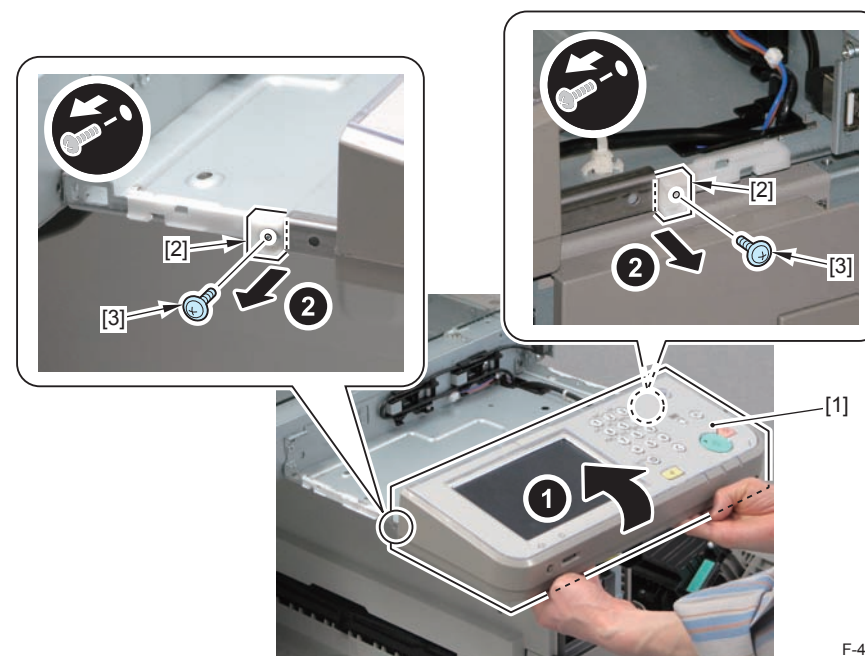
• 3 Hooks [4]



F-4-191

13) Return the Control Panel [1] to a level state, and remove the 2 stoppers [2].

• 2 Screws [3]

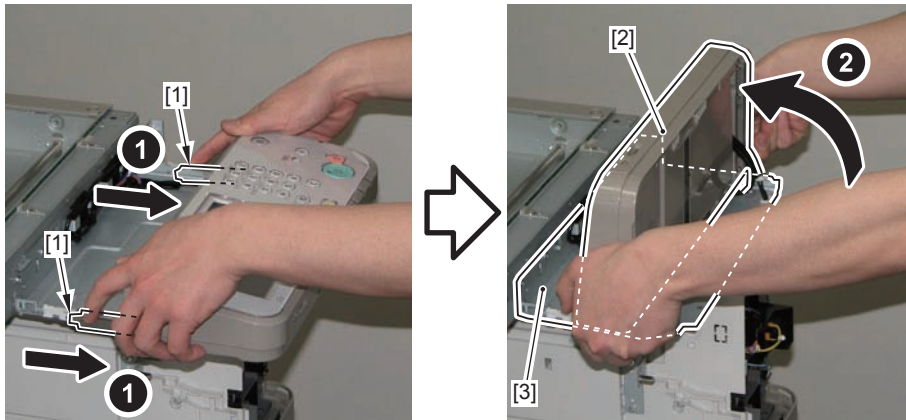


F-4-192

- 14) Store the 2 rails [1], and place the Control Panel [2] on the Control Panel Support Plate [3].

CAUTION:

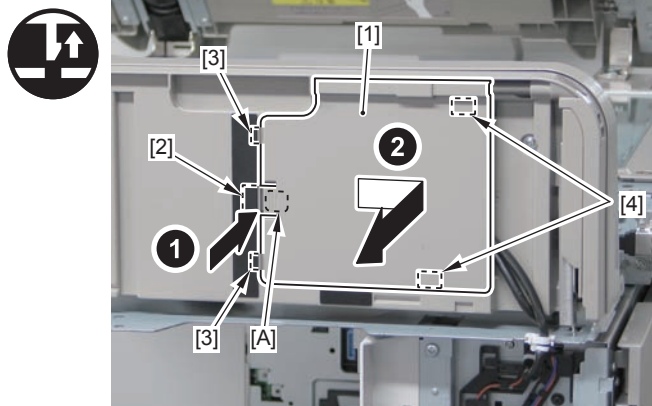
Be careful not to drop the Control Panel [2].



F-4-193

- 15) Remove the Lower Cover (Small) [1] while pressing the [A] part.

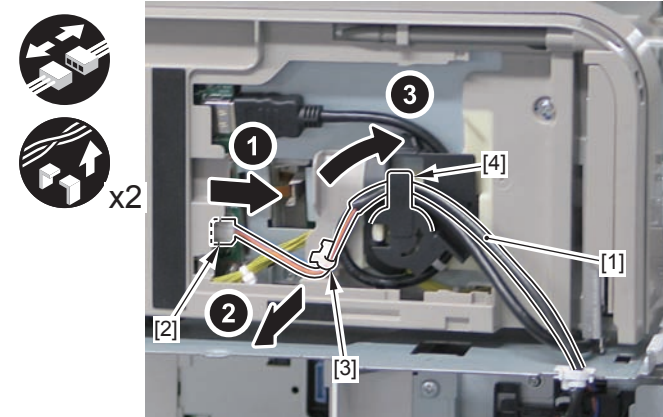
- 1 Claw [2]
- 2 Protrusions [3]
- 2 Hooks [4]



F-4-194

- 16) Disconnect the Control Panel Cable [1].

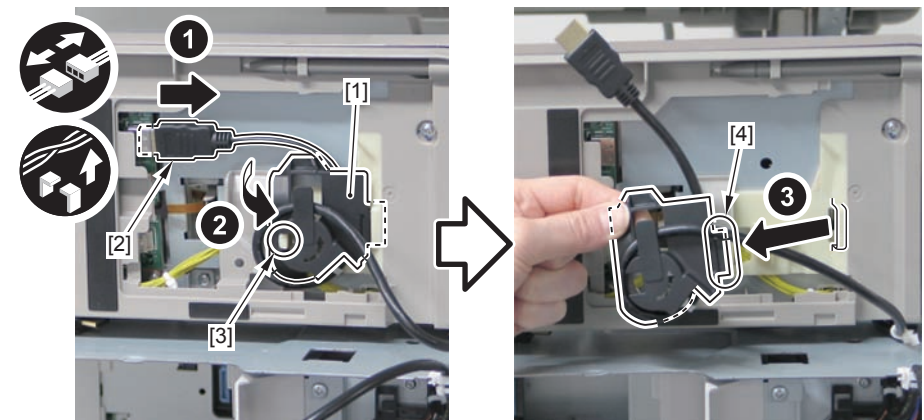
- 1 Claw [2]
- 2 Protrusions [3]
- 2 Hooks [4]



F-4-195

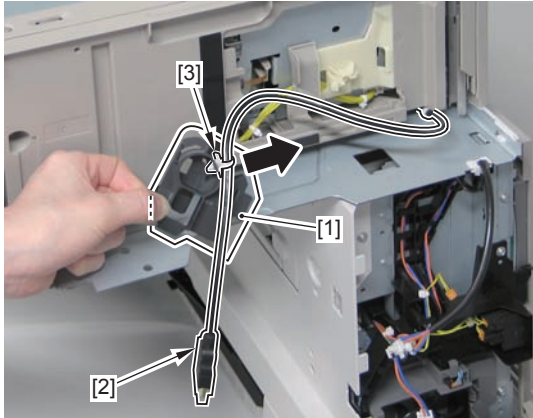
- 17) Remove the UI Cable Guide [1].

- 1 Connector [2]
- 1 Claw [3]
- 1 Protrusion [4]



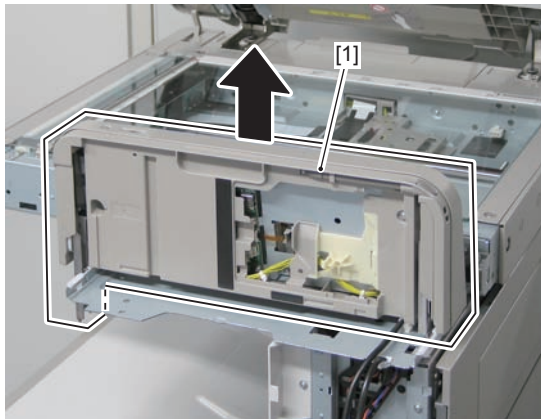
F-4-196

- 18) Disconnect the HDMI Cable [2] from the UI Cable Guide [1].
- 1 Reuse Band [3]



F-4-197

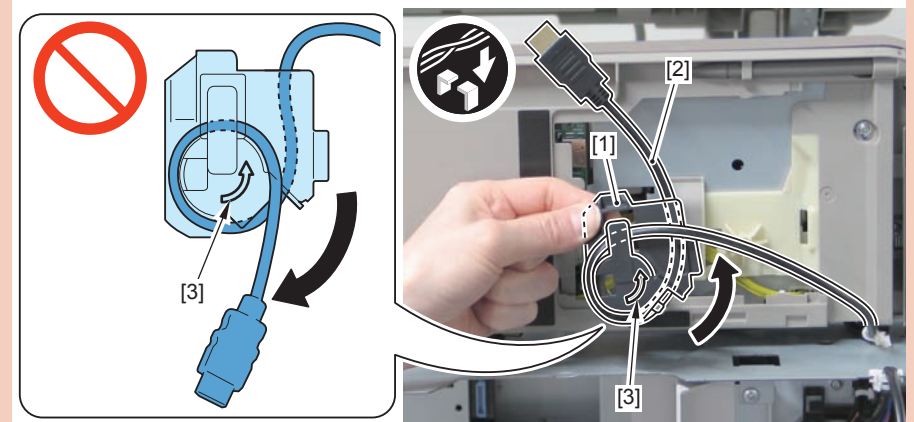
- 19) Remove the Control Panel [1].



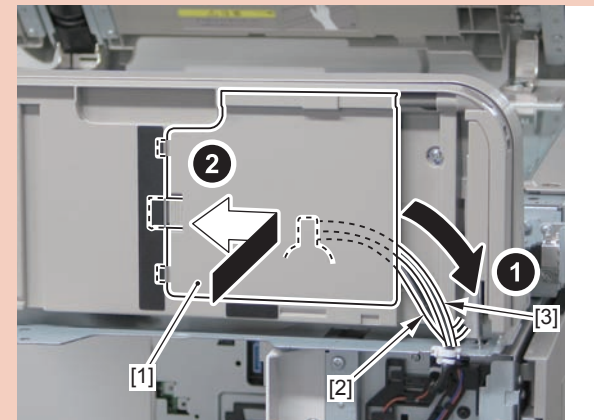
F-4-198

CAUTION: Be sure to note the following when installing.

- When wrapping the HDMI Cable [2] around the UI Cable Guide [1], be sure to wrap it in the direction of the arrow [3] marked on the UI Cable Guide.
Reason: Wrapping it in the opposite direction of the arrow will make the HDMI Cable twisted, causing open circuit.



- When installing the Lower Cover (Small) [1], Be sure to pull the HDMI Cable [2] and the Power Supply Cable [3] toward the host machine to reduce the slack in the routing of cables in the Control Panel.
Reason: Sliding the Control Panel with insufficient cable length after installing it to the host machine will cause open circuit of the cables.



F-4-200

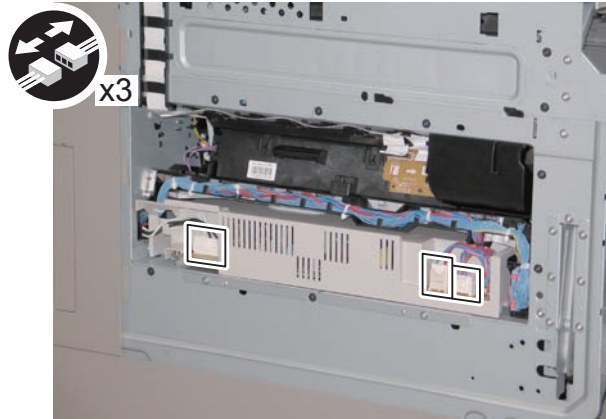
Removing the Low-voltage Power Supply Unit

Preparation

- 1) Open the Left Cover

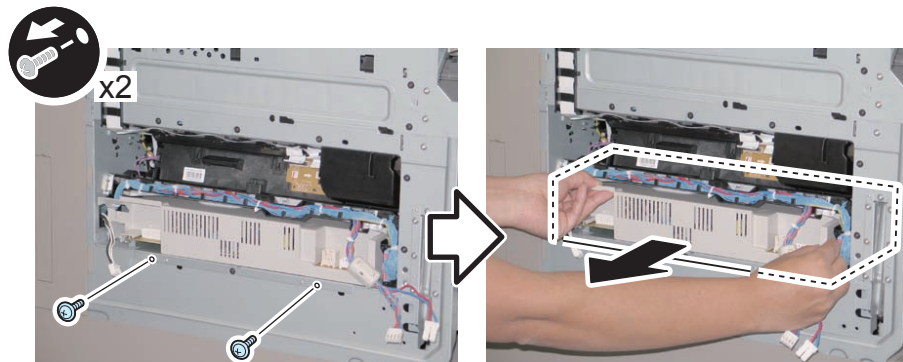
Procedure

- 1) Disconnect the 3 connectors.



- 2) Pull out the Low-voltage Power Supply Unit.

F-4-201



F-4-202

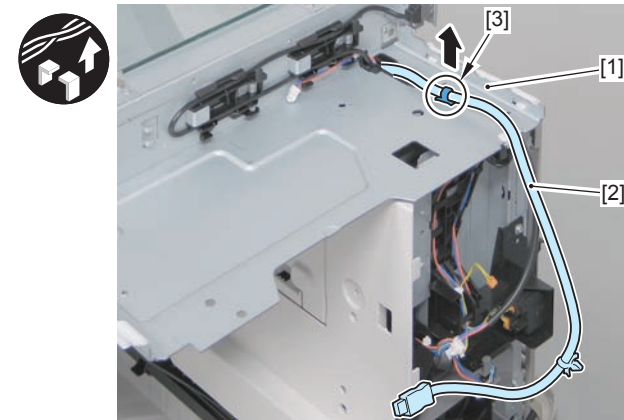
Removing the ADF + Reader Unit

Preparation

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
- 3) Remove the Controller Cover.
- 4) Remove the Front Upper Cover.
- 5) Remove the Control Panel.

Procedure

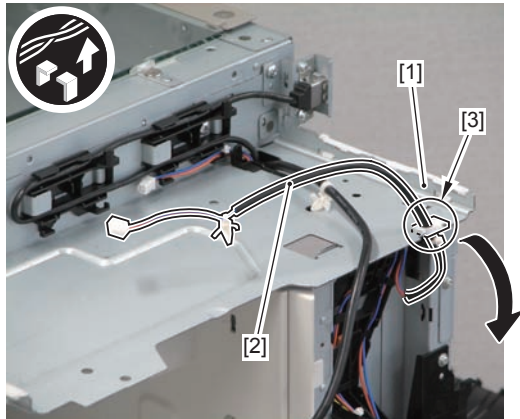
- 1) Disconnect the HDMI Cable [2] from the Control Panel Support Plate [1].
 - 1 Reuse Band [3]



F-4-203

- 2) Disconnect the Control Panel Power Supply Cable [2] from the Control Panel Support Plate [1].

- 1 Edge Saddle [3]



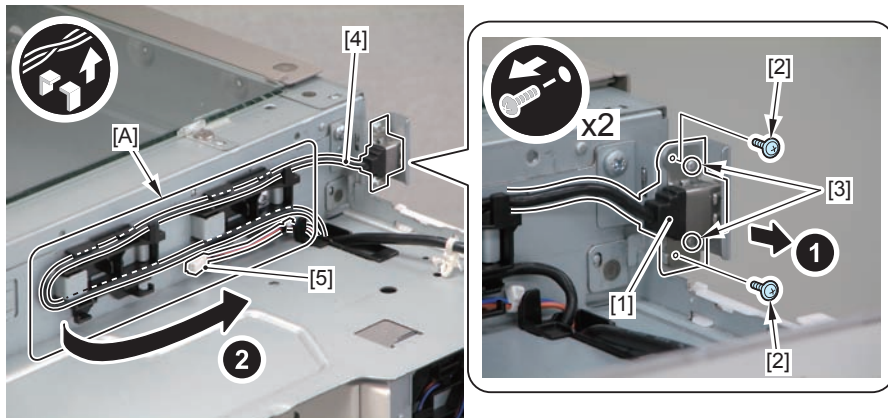
F-4-204

- 3) Remove the Grounding Plate [1] of the USB Connector.

- 2 Screws [2]
- 2 Bosses [3]

- 4) Disconnect the USB Cable [4] and the Option Connection Cable [5].

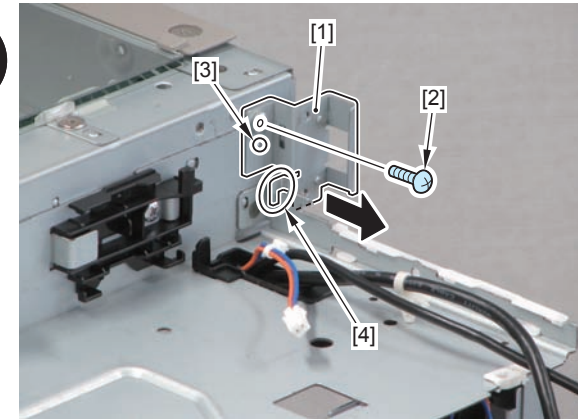
- Harness Guides [A]



F-4-205

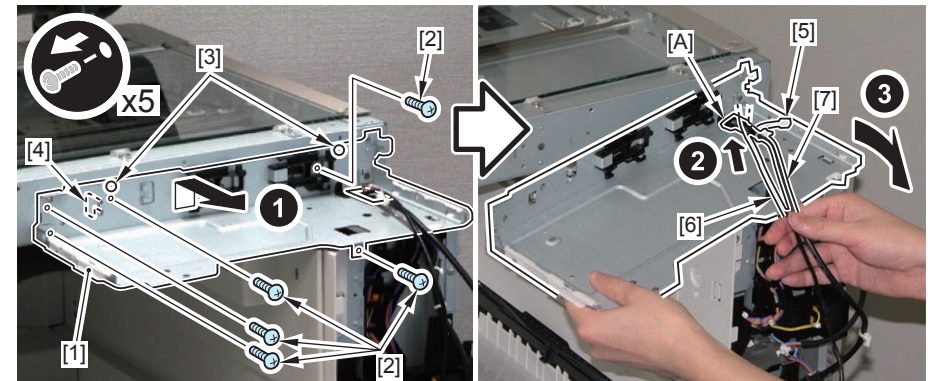
- 5) Remove the USB Mounting Plate [1].

- 1 Screw [2]
- 1 Hook [3]
- 1 Boss [4]



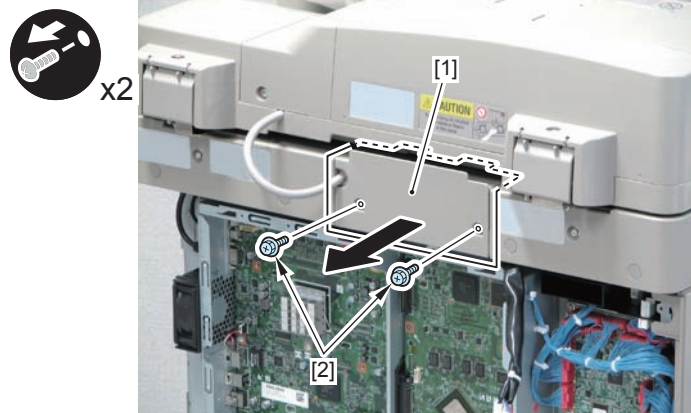
F-4-206

- 6) Remove 5 Screws [2], 2 Bosses [3], 1 Hook [4] from the Control Panel Support Plate [1].
- 7) Put the 3 harnesses (Option Connection Cable [5], Control Panel Power Supply Cable [6] and HDMI Cable [7]) through the hole [A], and remove the Control Panel Support Plate [1].



8) Remove the Reader Cable Cover [1].

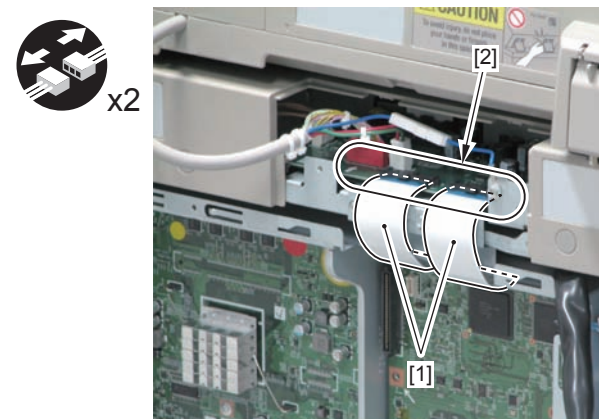
- 2 Screws [2]



F-4-207

10) Disconnect the 2 Flat Cables [1].

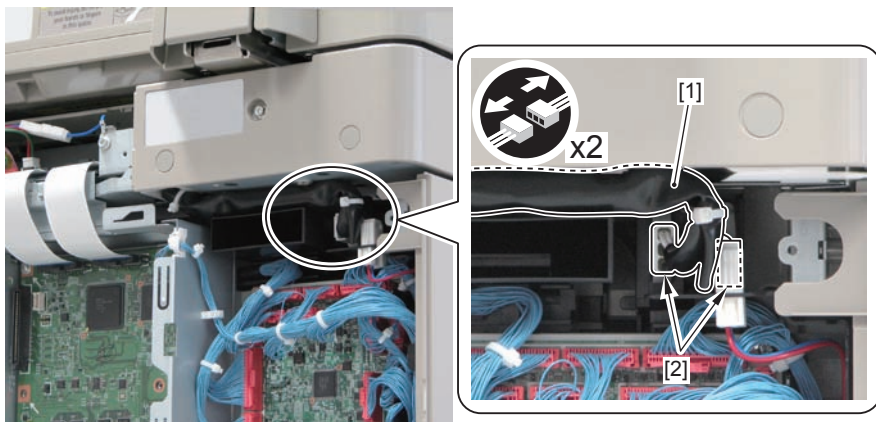
- 2 Connectors [2]



F-4-209

9) Free the Reader Harness [1].

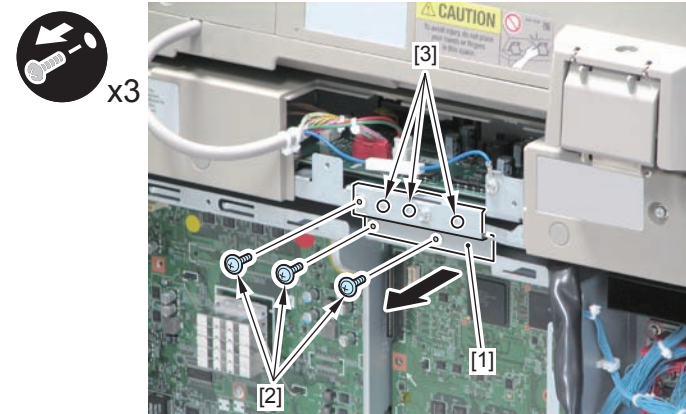
- 2 Connectors [2]



F-4-208

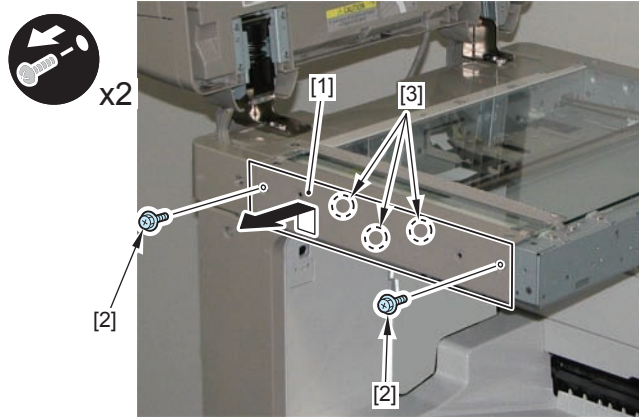
11) Remove the Reader Connecting Plate [1].

- 3 Screws [2]
- 3 Bosses [3]



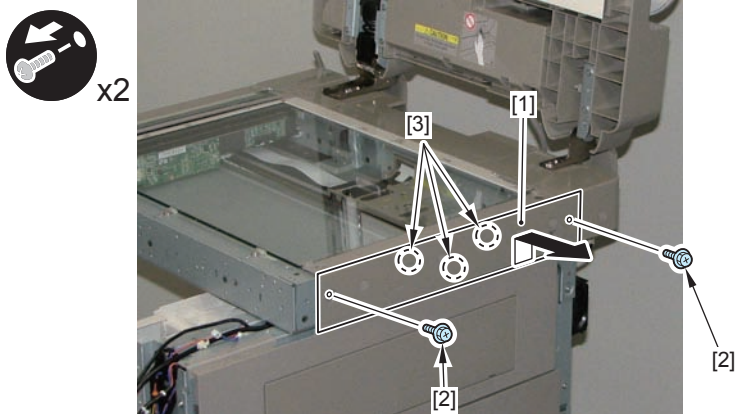
F-4-210

- 12) Open the ADF.
- 13) Remove the Reader Left Cover [1].
 - 3 Screws [2]
 - 3 Hooks [3]



F-4-211

- 14) Remove the Reader Right Cover [1].
 - 3 Screws [2]
 - 3 Hooks [3]

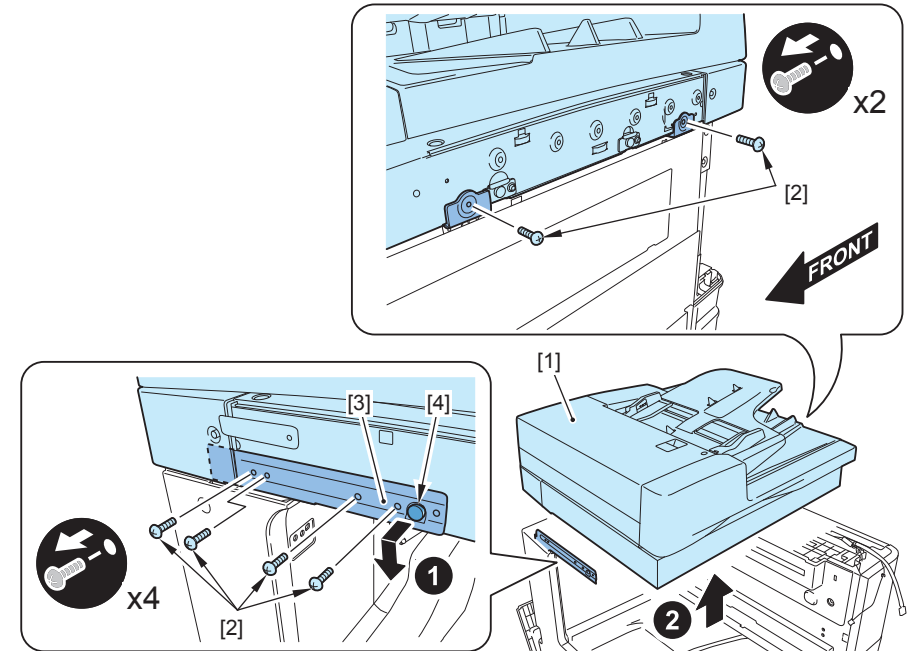


F-4-212

- 15) Close the ADF.
- 16) Remove 6 Screws [2] from the ADF + Reader Unit [1].
- 17) Remove the Left Stay [3] from the Boss [4], and remove the ADF + Reader Unit [1].

CAUTION:

Be sure to work with 2 or more people when holding the ADF + Reader Unit.

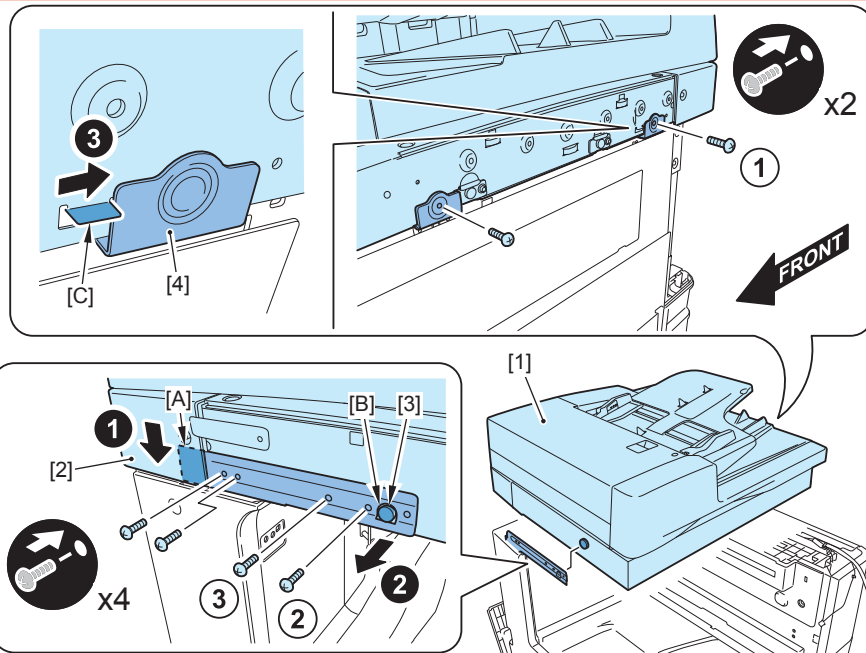


F-4-213

CAUTION:

Points to Note When Installing the ADF + Reader Unit [1] to the Host Machine.

- Be sure to place the [A] part of Left Stay inside of the Reader Rear Cover [2].
- Secure the ADF+Reader Unit by fitting the boss [3] to the hole [B] of the Left Stay.
- As for the Protrusion [C], install the screw by pressing down the stopper [4] (on the right side).
- Be sure to install the 6 screws in the order from (1) to (3) in the figure. The rest of the screws can be installed in any order.

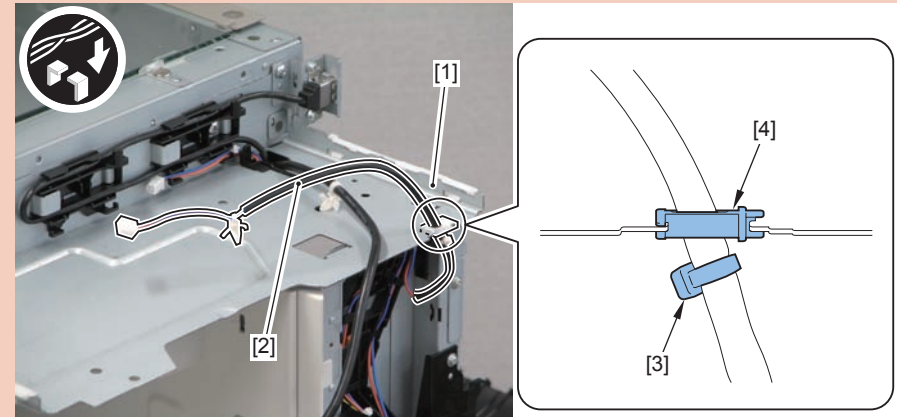


F-4-214

CAUTION:

Points to Note When Connecting the Control Panel Power Supply Cable [2] to the Control Panel Support Plate [1]

- Be sure to secure it so that the tie-wrap [3] is under the Edge Saddle [4].



F-4-215

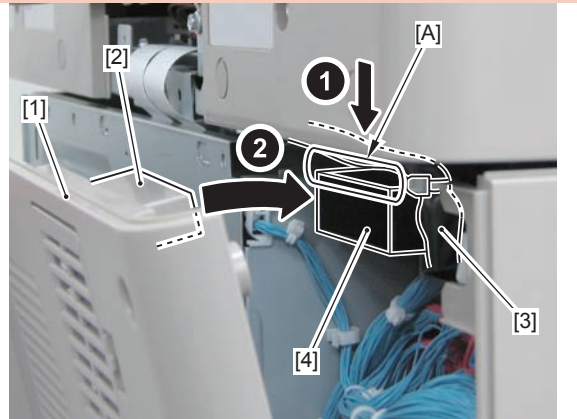
CAUTION:**Points to Note When Installing the Rear Upper Cover [1]**

- Do not push the Reader Harness [3] to the rear side of the host machine by the protrusion [2] of the Rear Upper Cover.

Reason: It causes open circuit of the Reader Harness [3].

Installation Method:

1. Press the Reader Harness [3] downward toward the duct [4] to make clearance [A].
2. Put the protrusion [2] in the clearance [A] of the Rear Upper Cover, and install the Rear Cover [1].



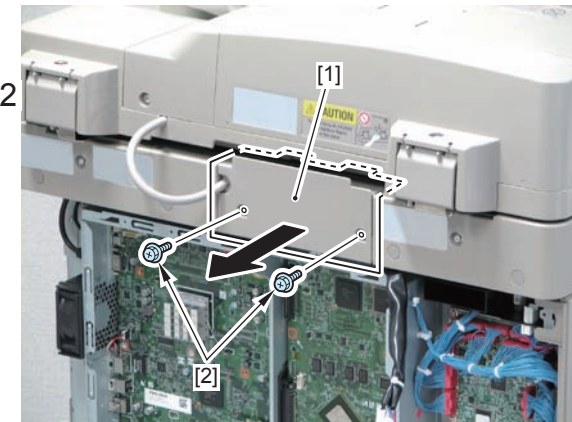
F-4-216

Disassembly/Assembly - Document Exposure**Removing the Reader Controller PCB****Preparation**

- 1) Remove the Rear Upper Cover.
- 2) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
- 3) Remove the Controller Cover.

Procedure

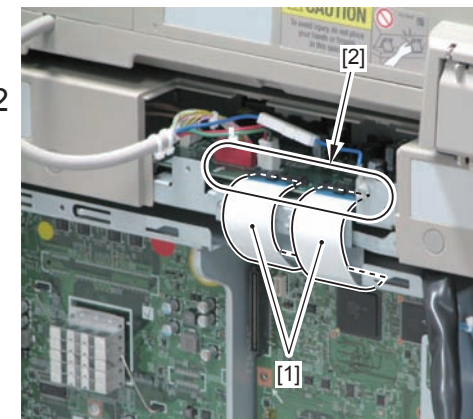
- 1) Remove the Reader Cable Cover [1].
 - 2 Screws [2]



F-4-217

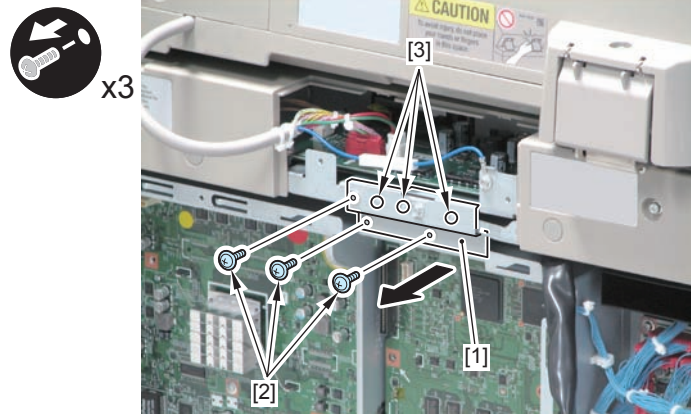
- 2) Disconnect the 2 Flat Cables [1].
 - 2 Connectors [2]

- 2 Connectors [2]



3) Remove the Reader Connecting Plate [1].

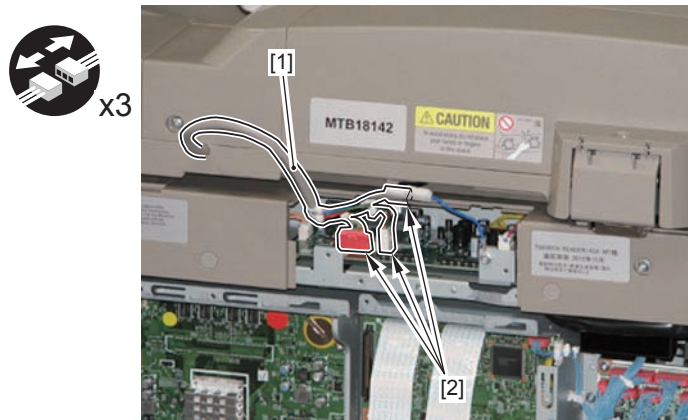
- 3 Screws [2]
- 3 Bosses [3]



F-4-218

4) Free the ADF Harness [1].

- 3 Connectors [2]

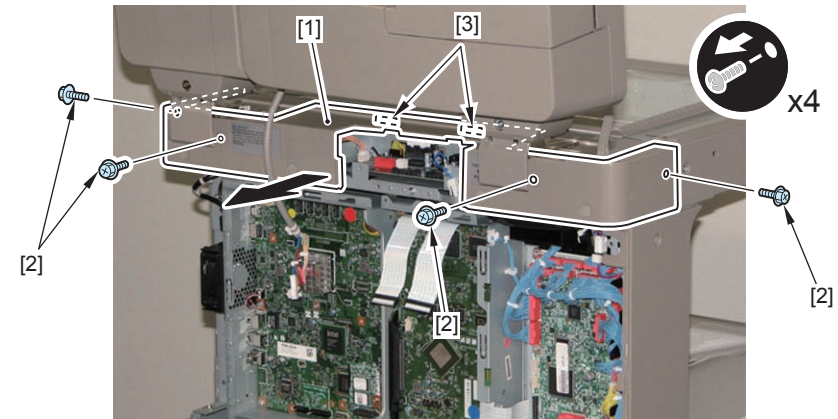


F-4-219

5) Open the ADF.

6) Remove the Reader Rear Cover [1].

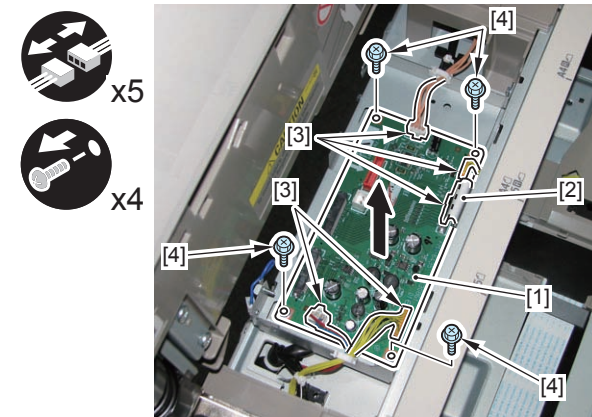
- 4 Screws [2]
- 2 Protrusions [3]



F-4-220

7) Remove the Reader Controller PCB [1].

- 1 Flat Cable [2]
- 5 Connectors [3]
- 4 Screws [4]



F-4-221

Removing the Reader Scanner Unit

Procedure

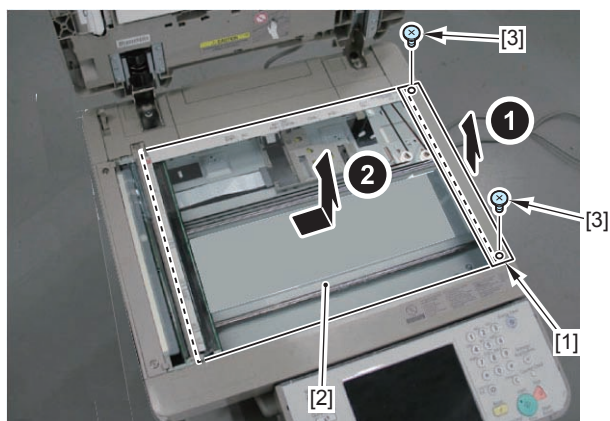
CAUTION:

Be sure not to soil the Stream Reading Glass and the Copyboard Glass.

- 1) Open the ADF Unit.
- 2) Remove the Copyboard Glass Retainer (Right), and remove the Copyboard Glass [2].
 - 2 Screws [3]



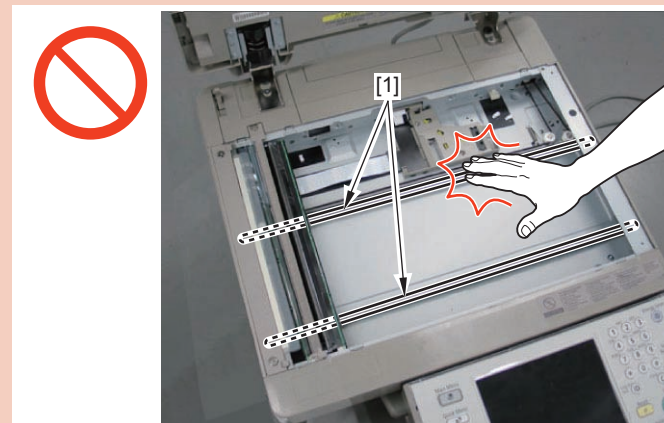
x2



F-4-222

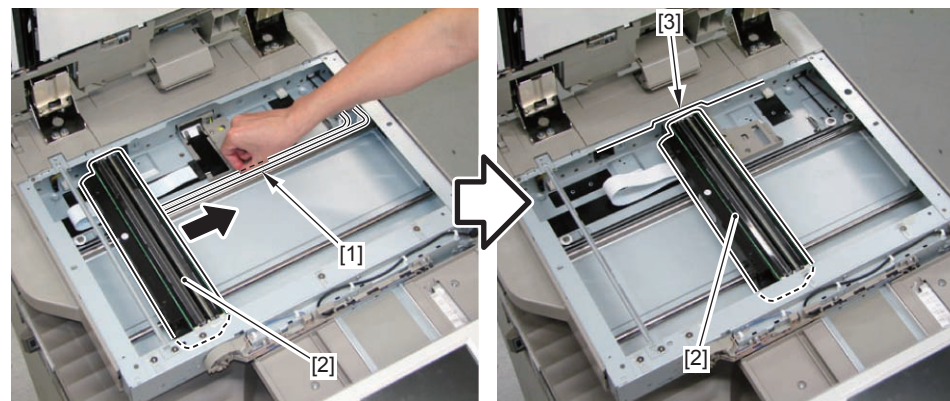
CAUTION:

Grease is applied on the 2 Rail Shafts [1] of the Reader Scanner Unit. If you have touched the grease, be careful not to put it to other parts.



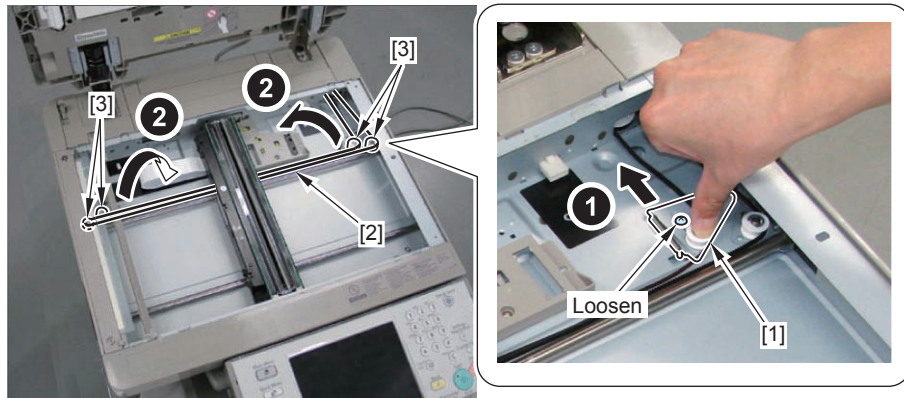
F-4-223

- 3) Move the belt [1], and move the Reader Scanner Unit [2] to the cut-off [3] of the Reader Unit.



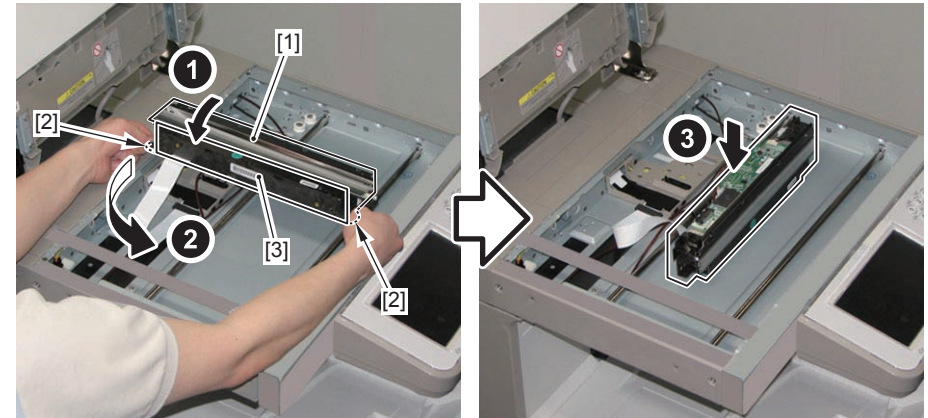
F-4-224

4) Loosen the screws, shift the Pulley Unit [1], and then remove the belt [2] from 4 Pulleys [3].



F-4-225

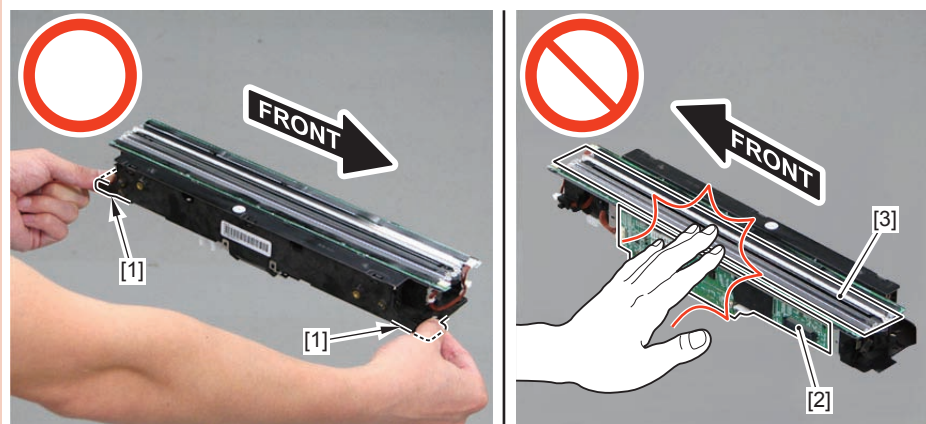
5) Hold both ends [2] of the Reader Scanner Unit [1], and place it with its left side [3].



F-4-227

CAUTION: How to hold the Reader Scanner Unit

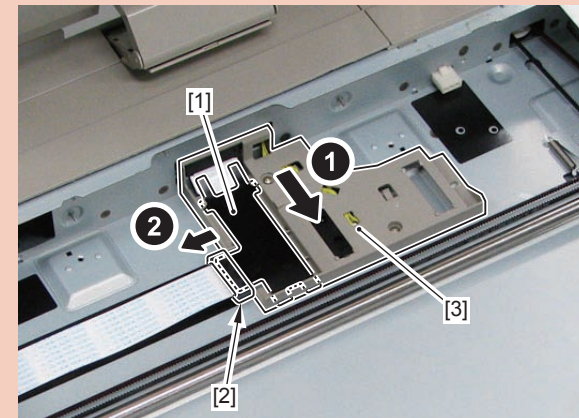
- Be sure to hold both edges [1].
- Do not touch the PCB [2] and the mirror [3].



F-4-226

CAUTION:

When removing the Reader Scanner Unit, if the Flat Cable Cover [1] and Core [2] of the Reader Unit come off, be sure to install them to the Harness Guide [3].

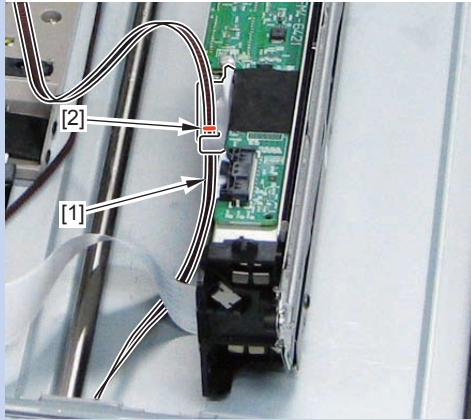


F-4-228

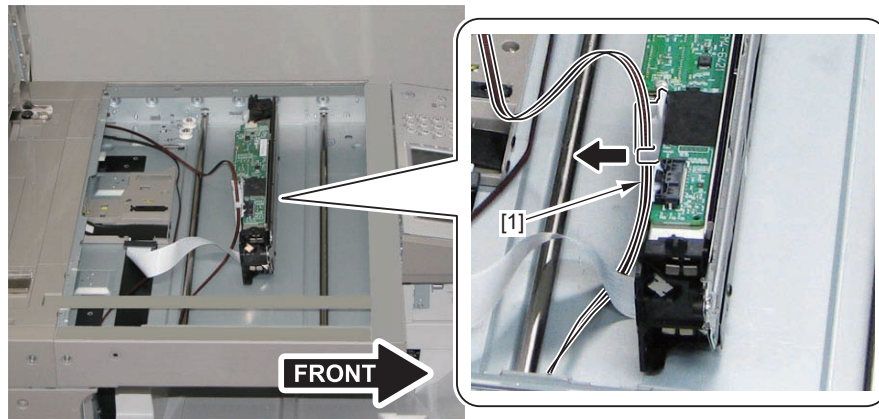
6) Remove the belt [1] from the Reader Scanner Unit.

NOTE:

Before removing the belt [1], put a marking [2] on the position where the belt is installed to the Reader Scanner Unit. This will make it easier when installing the belt.



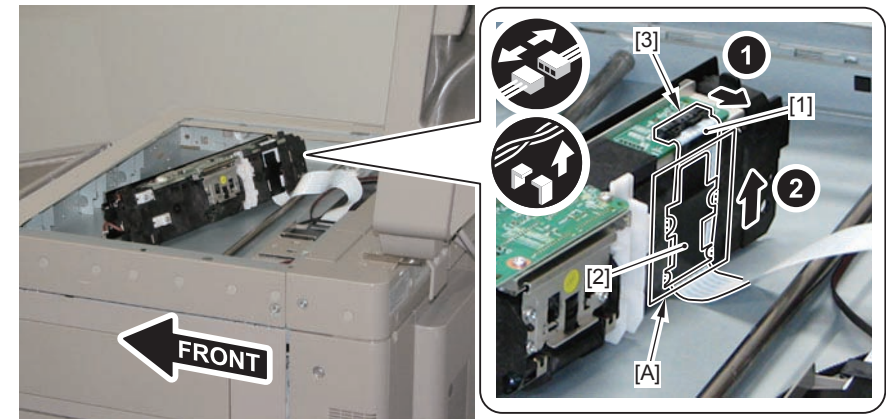
F-4-229



F-4-230

7) Disconnect the Flat Cable [1] (with Protection Sheet [2]) from the Reader Scanner Unit.

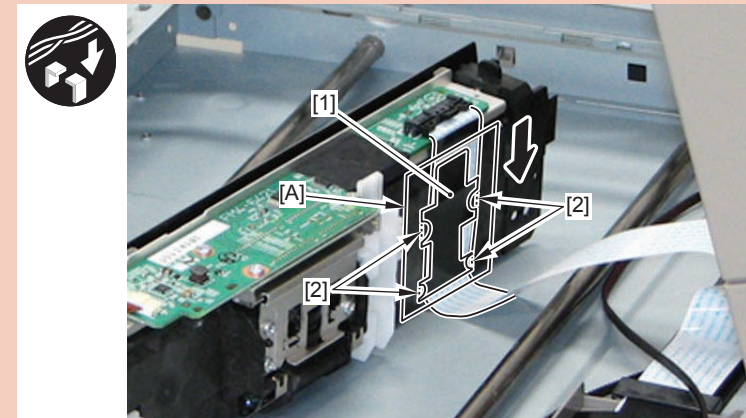
- 1 Connector [3] (with a hook)
- Guide [A]



F-4-231

CAUTION:

When connecting the Flat Cable, be sure to insert the 4 protrusions [2] of the Flat Cable Protection Sheet [2] into the Guide [A].



F-4-232

5

Adjustment

- Main Controller
- Pickup Feed System
- Document Exposure System

Main Controller

HDD

Before Replacing	<p>1) Backup of the set/registered data Use the Remote UI. Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export Target data:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Address List • Forwarding Settings • Web Access Favorites <p>2) Printing the set/registered data Use the service mode. (Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > USER-PRT List of the set/registered data which cannot be backed up is printed."</p>
After Replacing	<p>1) HDD format 1-1) Start with the safe mode. (While pressing 2 and 8 keys simultaneously, turn ON the main power switch.) 1-2) Use SST to format all partitions.</p> <p>2) Downloading system software 2-1) Use SST to download the system software (System, LANG, RUI and others).</p> <p>3) Initializing the key, certificate and CA certificate (Lv.2) COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CA-KEY</p> <p>4) Turning OFF and ON the main power switch</p> <p>5) Restoring the backup data Use the Remote UI. Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export</p> <p>6) Resetting/registering the data While referring to the list of set/registered data which was printed before replacement, reset/register the data.</p> <p>7) When the user generates and adds the encryption key, certificate and/or CA certificate, request the user to generate them again.</p>
Points to Note when Using the HDD	<p>When using the HDD of the other machine (different serial number), be sure to format the HDD after the installation. If the HDD is not formatted, the operation cannot be guaranteed.</p>

T-5-1

Main controller PCB 1

Operation at Replacement	<p>Transferring the parts from old PCB to new PCB</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Flash PCB • TPM PCB <p>Resetting/registering the data is not necessary after Main Controller PCB 1 is replaced.</p>
Prohibited Operation	<p>Do not transfer the following parts to another model (which has a different serial number). If you fail to do so, the Main Body does not activate normally and this might cause to fail the restoration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Main Controller PCB 1 • Flash PCB

T-5-2

Main controller PCB 2

Before Replacing	<p>Backup of the Forwarding Settings and Service Mode setting values (MN-CON) Use the Remote UI. Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export Target data:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Forwarding Settings Service Mode setting values (MN-CON) Only when ON is selected in COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT, the service mode setting values can be backed up and restored from the RUI.
Replacement	<p>Transferring the parts from old PCB to new PCB</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Memory PCB
After Replacing	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> After installing the parts, turn ON the main power switch. Restoring the backup data Use the Remote UI. Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export TPM key information If the TPM key information in the SRAM of the HDD or the Main Controller PCB 2 is lost, the key information in the SRAM is automatically recovered from the backup of the common key in the HDD. Then the internal state of TPM setting changes to "ON". However, the display on the UI remains "OFF", therefore the TPM setting needs to be manually changed to "ON". When the user generates and adds the encryption key, certificate and/or CA certificate, request the user to generate them again.
Prohibited Operation	<p>Do not transfer the following parts to another model (which has a different serial number). If you fail to do so, the Main Body does not activate normally and this might cause to fail the restoration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Main Controller PCB 2 Memory PCB

T-5-3

DC controller PCB

Before Replacing	<p>Execute the following Service Mode to backup the DC Controller PCB SRAM. Execute COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DSRAMBUP (LEVEL2). After "ACTIVE" is displayed for approx. 2 minutes, "OK!" is displayed. After the above execution is completed, turn OFF the main power supply.</p>
After Replacing	<p>Turn ON the main power supply and restore the DC Controller PCB SRAM. Execute COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DSRAMRES (LEVEL2). After the above execution, "ACTIVE" is displayed for approx. 2 minutes, then "OK!" is displayed. Restoration is completed now.</p>

T-5-4

Pickup Feed System

Method of Setting Special Paper

- Service mode

COPIER > OPTION > CST > CSTX-UY > Setting number

X: Cassette number, Y: Size category (X: 1 to 4, Y: 1 to 4)

CAUTION:

The size category of Cassette 1 is different from that of Cassette 2/3/4.

Size category	Size	
	Cassette 1	Cassette 2,3,4
U1*	FLSP, A-FLSP, OFI, A-OFI, B-OFI, E-OFI, M-OFI, G-LGL * Cannot use it in 520 sheets of cassette models	FLSP, A-FLSP, OFI, A-OFI, M-OFI, FA4, G-LGL, A-LTRR, FA4
U2*	A-LTRR, G-LTRR * Cannot use it in 520 sheets of cassette models	G-LTRR
U3	A-LTR	A-LTR, G-LTR
U4	G-LTR	B-OFI

T-5-5

Setting No.	Size
22	K-LGL
23	K-LGLR
24	FLSC
25	A-FLS
27	E-OFI
28	B-OFI
29	A-LTR
30	A-LTRR
31	G-LTR
32	G-LTRR
33	A-LGL
34	G-LGL
36	A-OFI
37	M-OFI
42	FA4

T-5-6

Example: When setting G-LTR to Cassette 2

COPIER> OPTION> CST> CST2-U3> 31

Method of Setting 8K and 16K (Chinese Paper)

- 1) Set the original detection size to AB configuration.r
(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > MODEL-SZ = 0
- 2) Enable detection and display of Chinese paper (K size paper: 8K and 16K).
(Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > KSIZE-SW = 1
- 3) Change the setting of Cassette 1 from EXEC to 16K.
(Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > CST > CST-K-SW = 1
- 4) (Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > MODELSZ2 = 0.
- 5) Turn OFF and then ON the main power.

Document Exposure System

Service mode backup

The machine is adjusted one by one at the factory shipment and the adjustment values are written on the service label.

When the adjustment is carried out at a field and the service mode values are changed, be sure to write the changed values on the service label.

If there is no corresponding items on the service label, write the value to a blank field.

The service label is affixed to the back of the Reader Front Cover.

In addition, backup and restoration in service mode is also possible. It takes approx. 10 seconds to execute this backup.

- Backup

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM >
2	RSRAMBUP

T-5-7

- Restoration

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM >
2	RSRAMRES

T-5-8

NOTE:

When changing the service mode setting values, it is recommended to back them up in the above service mode. Performing backup makes the work easier when replacing the Main Controller PCB 2, etc.

Measurement during Main Controller PCB 2 Replacement and After RAM Clear:

Points to note before replacing the Reader Controller PCB:

- Be sure to output the latest P-PRINT.

(Lv.1) COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > P-PRINT

- Back up the service mode setting values related to Main Controller PCB 2. (Excluding the case where service mode cannot be executed due to the Main Controller PCB 2 not operating normally)

(Lv.2) COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > RSRAMBUP

1) Using SST, download the newest system software (R-CON):

2) Perform RAM clear.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR >
1	R-CON

T-5-9

3) Turn the connecting equipment OFF/ON.

When backup is performed normally

4) Restore the backup data.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM >
2	RSRAMRES

T-5-10

NOTE:

Work is completed when backup was normally performed.

When backup is not performed normally

5) Enter the values written on the service label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover).

Lv.	COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY >			
1	ADJ-X	ADJ-Y-DF	ADJ-X-MG	-
	ADJ-Y	STRD-POS	-	-
Lv.	COPIER > ADJUST > CCD >			
1	W-PLT-X	W-PLT-Y	W-PLT-Z	-
	DFTAR-R	DFTAR-G	DFTAR-B	-
	MTF2-M1	MTF2-M6	MTF2-S1	MTF2-S6
	MTF2-M2	MTF2-M7	MTF2-S2	MTF2-S7
	MTF2-M3	MTF2-M8	MTF2-S3	MTF2-S8
	MTF2-M4	MTF2-M9	MTF2-S4	MTF2-S9
1	MTF2-M5	-	MTF2-S5	-
	Lv.	COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL >		
1	OFST-P-Y	OFST-P-M	OFST-P-C	OFST-P-K

T-5-11

6) Perform the MTF filter coefficient computation.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD >	
1	MTF-CLC	

T-5-12

7) Enter the values written on the service label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover).

Lv.	FEEDER > ADJUST >	
1	DOCST	LA-SPEED

8) Adjust tray width. Perform either AB system^{T-5-13} or Inch system.

a. AB system adjustment.

a-1) Select the item in the service mode.

Lv.	FEEDER > FUNCTION >	
1	TRY-A4	

T-5-14

a-2) Adjust the slide guide to the index "A4/A3".

a-3) Press OK, and register the A4 width.

a-4) Select the item in the service mode.

Lv.	FEEDER > FUNCTION >	
1	TRY-A5R	

T-5-15

a-5) Adjust the slide guide to the index "A5R".

a-6) Press OK, and register the A5R width.

b. Inch system adjustment.

b-1) Select the item in the service mode.

Lv.	FEEDER > FUNCTION >	
1	TRY-LTR	

T-5-16

b-2) Adjust the slide guide to the index "LTR/ 11x17".

b-3) Press OK, and register the letter width.

b-4) Select the item in the service mode.

Lv.	FEEDER > FUNCTION >	
1	TRY-LTRR	

T-5-17

b-5) Adjust the slide guide to the index "STMT/ LTRR/ LGL".

b-6) Press OK, and register the LTRR width.

9) Make an output of P-PRINT.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P >	
1	P-PRINT	

T-5-18

10) Store the outputted P-PRINT into the service book.

After Replacing the Scanner Unit (Reader side)

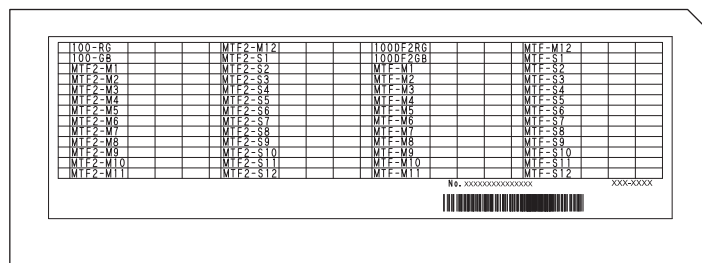
NOTE:

The adjustment method differs depending whether the unit replaced is Reader Scanner or ADF Scanner.

1) Input the service label value packaged in the Scanner Unit content.

Lv.	COPIER > ADJUST > CCD >			
1	100-RG	100-GB	-	-
	MTF2-M1	MTF2-M6	MTF2-S1	MTF2-S6
	MTF2-M2	MTF2-M7	MTF2-S2	MTF2-S7
	MTF2-M3	MTF2-M8	MTF2-S3	MTF2-S8
	MTF2-M4	MTF2-M9	MTF2-S4	MTF2-S9
	MTF2-M5	-	MTF2-S5	-

T-5-19



F-5-1

2) Perform white level adjustment:

2-1) Set A4 or LTR paper in the copyboard glass, close the DADF.

CAUTION:

If white level is adjusted in the small width paper, there is possibility that it will not adjust.

2-2) Perform service mode item.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD >
1	DF-WLVL1

T-5-20

2-3) Remove the paper from copyboard glass, set it in the DADF document pickup tray.

2-4) Perform service mode item.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD >
1	DF-WLVL2

T-5-21

3) Perform the MTF filter coefficient computation.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD >
1	MTF-CLC

T-5-22

4) Write down the values in the service label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover).

Lv.	COPIER > ADJUST > CCD >			
1	DFTAR-R	DFTAR-G	DFTAR-B	-
	100-RG	100-GB	-	-
	MTF2-M1	MTF2-M6	MTF2-S1	MTF2-S6
	MTF2-M2	MTF2-M7	MTF2-S2	MTF2-S7
	MTF2-M3	MTF2-M8	MTF2-S3	MTF2-S8
	MTF2-M4	MTF2-M9	MTF2-S4	MTF2-S9
	MTF2-M5	-	MTF2-S5	-

T-5-23

5) Adjust the shading position.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL >
1	RDSHDPOS

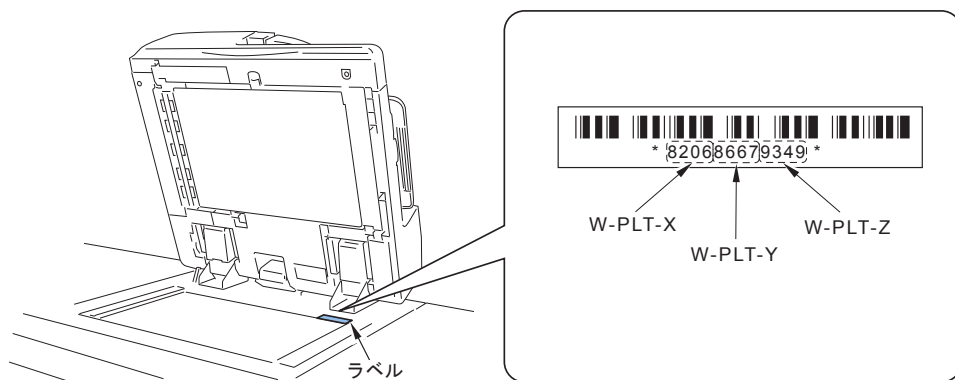
T-5-24

After Replacing the Scanner Unit

- 1) Input the white level data (barcode value in the copyboard glass right upper) of the standard white plate.

Lv.	COPIER > ADJUST > CCD >		
1	W-PLT-X	W-PLT-Y	W-PLT-Z

T-5-25



F-5-2

- 3) Perform white level adjustment.:

3-1) Set A4 or LTR paper in the copyboard glass, close the DADF.

CAUTION:

If white level is adjusted in the small width paper, there is possibility that it will not adjust.

3-2) Perform service mode item.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD >	
1	DF-WLVL1	

T-5-26

3-3) Remove the paper from copyboard glass, set it in the DADF document pickup tray.

3-4) Perform service mode item.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD >	
1	DF-WLVL2	

T-5-27

- 4) Perform the MTF filter coefficient computation.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD >	
1	MTF-CLC	

T-5-28

- 5) Write down the values in the service label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover).

Lv.	COPIER > ADJUST > CCD >			
1	DFTAR-R	DFTAR-G	DFTAR-B	-
	100-RG	100-GB	-	-
	MTF2-M1	MTF2-M6	MTF2-S1	MTF2-S6
	MTF2-M2	MTF2-M7	MTF2-S2	MTF2-S7
	MTF2-M3	MTF2-M8	MTF2-S3	MTF2-S8
	MTF2-M4	MTF2-M9	MTF2-S4	MTF2-S9
	MTF2-M5	-	MTF2-S5	-

T-5-29

- 6) Adjust the shading position.

Lv.	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL >	
1	RDSHDPOS	

T-5-30

6

Troubleshooting

- Initial Check
- Test Print
- Troubleshooting Items
- Version upgrade
- Controller Self Diagnosis
- Debug log

Initial Check

Initial check items list

Item	No.	Detail	Check
Site Environment	1	The voltage of the power supply is as rated ($\pm 10\%$).	
	2	The site is not a high temperature / humidity environment (near a water faucet, water boiler, humidifier), and it is not in a cold place. The machine is not near a source of fire or dust.	
	3	The site is not subject to ammonium gas.	
	4	The site is not exposed to direct rays of the sun. (Otherwise, provide curtains.)	
	5	The site is well ventilated, and the floor keeps the machine level.	
	6	The machine's power plug remains connected to the power outlet.	
Checking the Paper	7	The paper is of a recommended type.	
	8	The paper is not moist. Try paper fresh out of package.	
Checking the Placement of Paper	9	Check the cassette and the manual feed tray to see if the paper is not in excess of a specific level.	
	10	If a transparency is used, check to make sure that it is placed in the correct orientation in the manual feed tray.	
Checking the Durables	11	Check the table of durables to see if any has reached the end of its life.	
Checking the Periodically Replaced Parts	12	Check the scheduled servicing table and the periodically replaced parts table, and replace any part that has reached the time of replacement.	

T-6-1

Test Print

Overview

This machine have the following test print TYPE and you can judge the image failure that is checked as “Yes” in the following image check items with each test print. If the image failure occurred on normal output does not reappear on the test print, it may be caused by the PDL input or reader side.

PG TYPE	TYPE Pattern	Items										Originator
		Gradation	Fogging	Transfer Fault	Black line (Color line)	White line	Uneven Density	Uneven Density at the Front / Rea	Right Angle	Straight Lines	Color displacement,	
0	Normal copy / print											----
1to3	---(For R&D)											----
4	16 gradations	Yes	Yes			Yes		Yes				Main controller PCB 2
5	Full half-tone			Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes				Main controller PCB 2
6	Grid								Yes	Yes	Yes	Main controller PCB 2
7to9	---(For R&D)											----
10	MCYBk horizontal stripes (sub scanning direction)				Yes	Yes		Yes				Main controller PCB 2
11	---(For R&D)											----
12	64-gradation	Yes	Yes			Yes						Main controller PCB 2
13	---(For R&D)											----
14	Full color 16-gradation	Yes	Yes									Main controller PCB 2
15to100	---(For R&D)											----

T-6-2

Steps to select the test print TYPE

- 1) Set the number of print, paper size etc.
- 2) Select: COPIER > TEST > PG.
- 3) Select: COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE.
- 4) Enter the desired TYPE number and press OK key.
- 5) Select the corresponding color (setting 1 means output) in COLOR-Y/M/C/K.
- 6) Set the density in DENS-Y/M/C/K (this is enabled for TYPE=5 only).
- 7) Press start key.

How to use the test print

16 gradations (TYPE=4)



This test print is for mainly checking the gradation, fogging, white line and uneven density at front & rear.

F-6-1

Check item	Check method	Assumed cause
Gradation	Check that 16 density gradation is properly reproduced.	Failure of Drum Unit
		Failure of Laser Scanner Unit
Fogging	Check that fogging occurs on white image area only.	Failure of Drum Unit
		Failure of Laser Scanner Unit
White line	Check that white line does not appear on entire image.	Failure of Drum Unit
Uneven density at front & rear	Check that uneven density does not appear at front & rear.	Failure of Drum Unit

T-6-3

■ Full half tone (TYPE=5)



This test print is for mainly checking the black line, white line and uneven density.

F-6-2

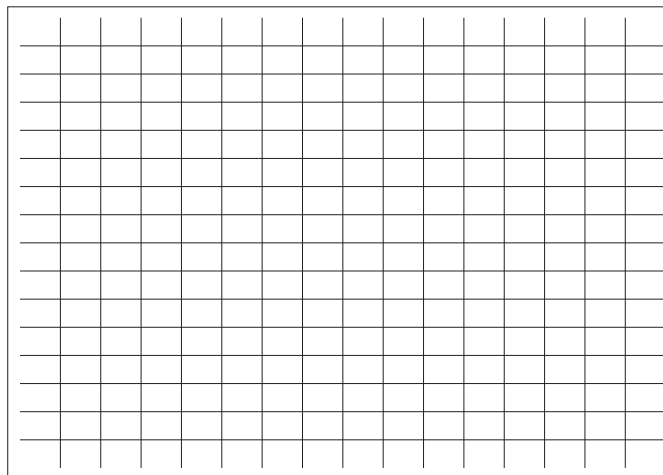
MEMO:

1. Select: service mode > COPIER > TEST > PG and specify developing color "COLOR-Y/M/C/K" to output the print by developing color.
2. To change the density of test print, select: service mode > TEST > PG > DENS-Y/M/C/K and set the density.

Check item	Check method	Assumed cause
Transfer failure	Check that the transfer failure does not appear on entire image.	Failure of ITB (scratch, dirt)
		Failure of Primary Transfer Roller (scratch, dirt)
		Failure of Secondary Transfer Roller (scratch, dirt)
Black line (color line)	Check that black line does not appear on entire image.	Scratch on Photosensitive Drum
		Dirt on Primary Charging Roller
White line	Check that white line does not appear on entire image.	Failure of ITB Unit
		Failure of Secondary Transfer Outer Roller
		Dirt on laser light path
Uneven pitch	Check that uneven pitch does not appear on entire image.	Failure of Drum Unit
Uneven density	Check that uneven density does not appear on entire image.	Dirt on Dustproof Glass
		Deterioration of ITB

T-6-4

■ Grid (TYPE=6)



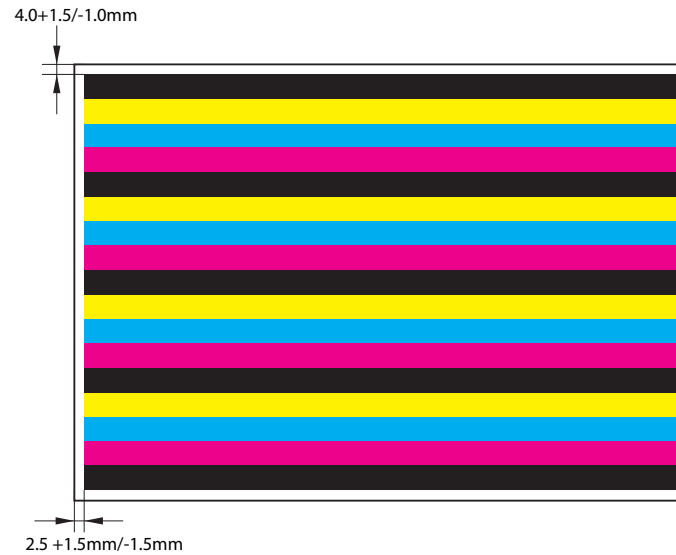
This test print is for mainly checking the color displacement, right angle accuracy and straight line accuracy.

F-6-3

Check items	Check method	Assumed cause
Uneven density	Check that uneven density does not appear on solid area of each color	Failure of Laser Scanner Unit
		Failure of developer in Drum Unit
		Failure of Primary Transfer Roller
Black line (color line)	Check that black line (color line) does not appear on solid area of each color	Scratch on Photosensitive Drum
		Dirt on Primary Charging Roller
White line	Check that white line does not appear on solid area of each color	Failure of ITB Unit
		Failure of Secondary Transfer Outer Roller
		Dirt on Laser Light Path

T-6-5

■ MCYBk horizontal stripe (TYPE=10)



This test print is for mainly checking the dark area density of each color, each color balance and white line on development.

F-6-4

Check items	Check method	Assumed cause
Uneven density	Check that uneven density does not appear on solid area of each color	Failure of Laser Scanner Unit
		Failure of developer in Drum Unit
		Failure of Primary Transfer Roller
Black line (color line)	Check that black line (color line) does not appear on solid area of each color	Scratch on Photosensitive Drum
		Dirt on Primary Charging Roller
White line	Check that white line does not appear on solid area of each color	Failure of ITB Unit
		Failure of Secondary Transfer Outer Roller
		Dirt on Laser Light Path

T-6-6

■ 64-gradations (TYPE=12)



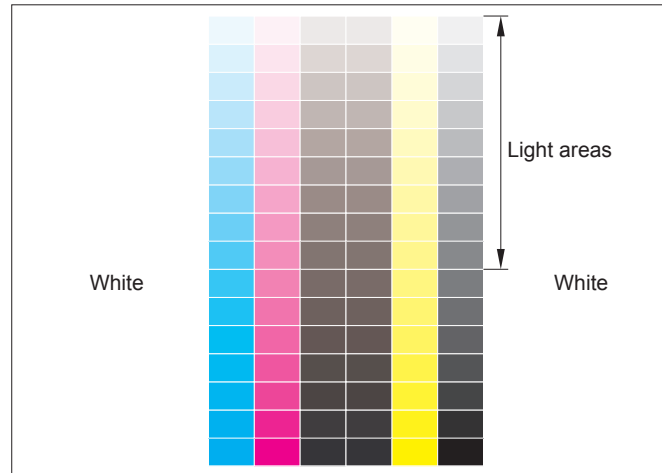
This test print is for mainly checking the gradations of YMCBk single color at one time.

F-6-5

Check item	Check method	Assumed cause
Gradation	Check that 64 gradations density is properly reproduced.	Failure of Drum Unit
		Failure of Laser Scanner Unit
Fogging	Check that fogging appears on white image area only.	Failure of Drum Unit
		Failure of Laser Scanner Unit
White line	Check that there is no white line on entire image.	Failure of Drum Unit

T-6-7

Full color 16-gradations (TYPE=14)



This test print is for mainly checking the gray balance, gradations of YMCBk single color and fogging.

F-6-6

Check item	Check method	Assumed cause
Gradation	Check that 64 gradations density is properly reproduced in each color.	Failure of Drum Unit
		Failure of Laser Scanner Unit
Fogging	Check that fogging appears on white image area only.	Failure of Drum Unit
		Failure of Laser Scanner Unit
Gray balance	Check that density is even in each color on gray scale area.	Failure of Drum Unit

T-6-8

Troubleshooting Items

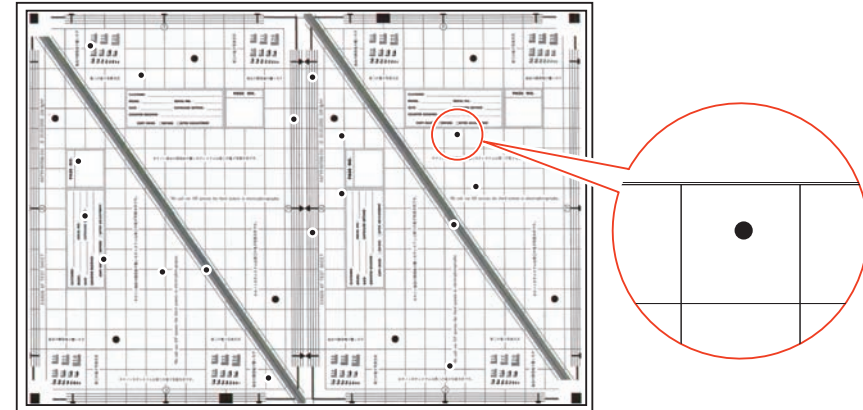
Troubleshooting Items List

Category	Item	Reference	
Image failure	Soil/spots	Dots image in whole	6-10
		White dots/spots image in whole	6-11
		Solid image on the 2nd side and magenta spots on the trailing edge of paper	6-12
		Trace of Upstream Brush	6-13
		Same color fogging	6-14
		Different colors fogging	6-15
		Actions to be taken when image smear due to condensation occurred	6-17
		Actions to be taken when water drop marks appear on the 2nd side	6-16
	Soil/lines distortion	Roller trace on transparency	6-17
		Image distortion	6-18
		The paper wrinkle has occurred when passing through the Buffer Pass Unit.	6-19
Operation failure	Abnormal noise during pickup from Cassette 2	6-19	
	Second Delivery Tray full detection error (020A jam occurrence)	6-20	
	Document falling from Inner Finisher	6-20	
	Waste toner leak	6-21	
	Alignment error in Inner Finisher	6-22	
	JAM "0d91" during the PG print	6-22	
	Paper curled when delivered from the External Finisher	6-22	

T-6-9

Image Failure

Dots image in whole



F-6-7

[Location]

Developing Assembly or Upstream/Downstream Auxiliary Roller, and Drum

[Cause]

This failure occurs because toner aggregate inside the machine is adhered on the drum through the Developing Cylinder or Upstream/Downstream Auxiliary Roller at the time of delivery.

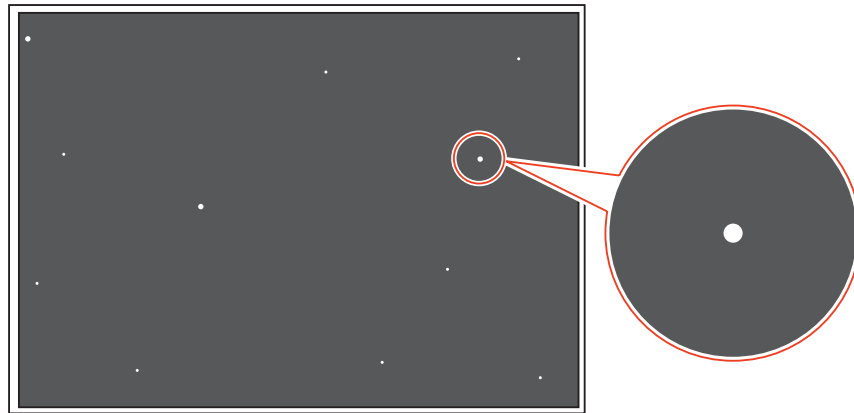
[Condition]

This failure occurs when the machine is moved (vibrated) while the life of the Drum Unit is close to the end and toner aggregate exists inside the machine

[Field Remedy]

It can be alleviated by opening and closing the Front Door and performing warm-up rotation. Perform the operation 1 to 3 times. (When performing the operation 3 times, degree of alleviation increases.)

■ White dots/spots image in whole



[Location]

Primary Charging Roller

F-6-8

[Cause]

1. This failure occurs because toner aggregate inside the machine is adhered on the Primary Transfer Roller at the time of delivery.
2. This failure occurs because transfer efficiency is decreased if the machine is used with high CV (1,000 sheets or more per day) every day.

[Condition]

1. This failure occurs when the machine is moved (vibrated) while the life of the Drum Unit is close to the end and toner aggregate exists inside the machine
2. This failure occurs on solid black when the machine is used with high CV (1,000 sheets or more per day) every day.

[Field Remedy]

● When this failure occurs at the time of delivery

Execute the following service mode to eject the deteriorated toner.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > TBLT-CLN <LEVEL1>

If a user moves the machine by himself/herself and inquires regarding the image failure, this symptom can be solved by copying a blank image on approx. 10 sheets of paper.

● When this failure occurs with high CV environment

Execute the following service mode to eject the deteriorated toner.

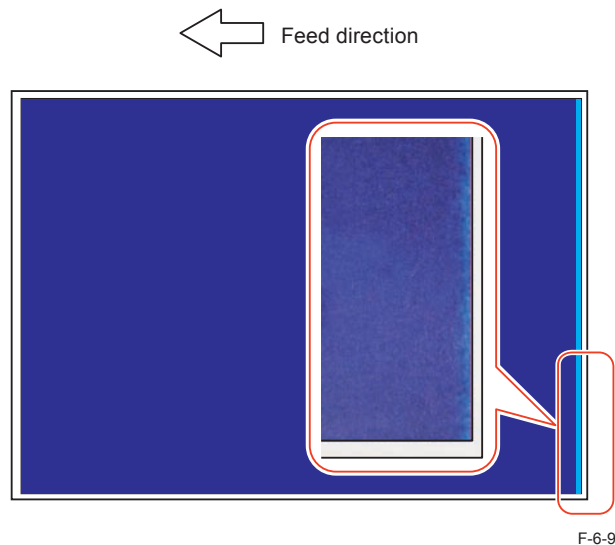
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING > TBLT-CLN <LEVEL1>

This failure can be prevented by checking the frequency of user usage and then changing the following service mode to change the interval of brush discharge control. However, be sure to get approval from the user in advance that productivity is decreased when executing this service mode.

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-LSR > PR-SUBBR <LEVEL2>

■ Solid image on the 2nd side and magenta spots on the trailing edge of paper

(As this service mode is increased by 1, the margin on the trailing edge of paper changes by 0.0423mm. Be sure to have 1.5mm or longer margin on the trailing edge.)
If the symptom still occurs, increase the setting value by 1 and check the image.



[Location]

Secondary Transfer Roller

[Cause]

When the trailing edge of paper passes through the Secondary Transfer Roller, the contact point with the roller has the following 2 areas: paper presence and paper absence. In dry environment, a resistance difference occurs between these 2 areas (paper presence and paper absence), and a current is more likely to flow to the area of paper absence. Usually, if there is an enough margin on the trailing edge of paper, the current difference does not affect on the image, but if the margin is extremely narrow (1.0 to 1.2mm), a transfer failure may occur.

[Condition]

This failure occurs when printing a solid image on both sides including magenta in the normal temperature and low humidity environment.

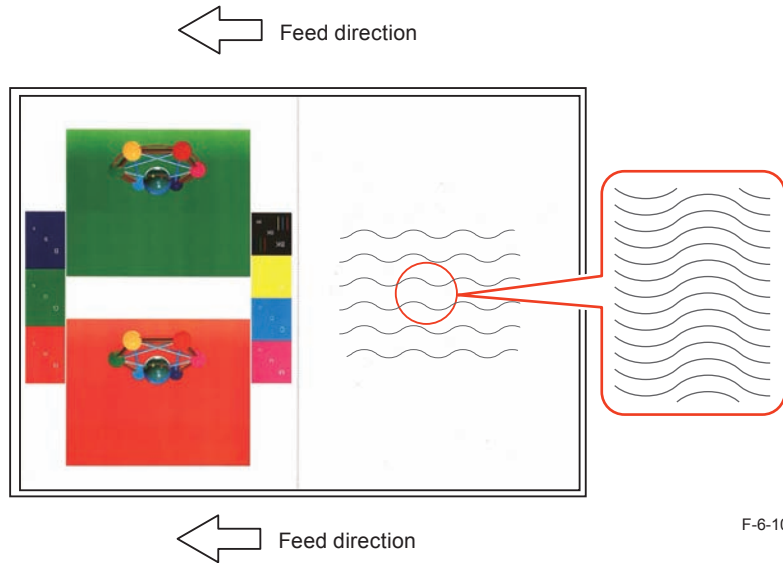
This failure occurs when the setting value of margin is extremely narrow (1.0 to 1.2mm).

[Field Remedy]

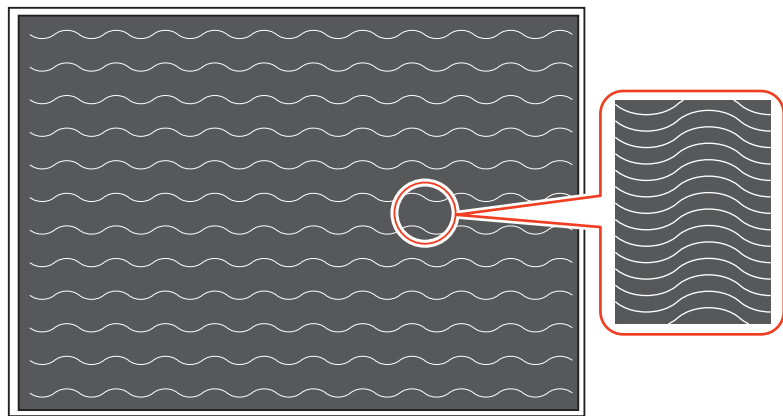
Adjust the margin on the trailing edge of paper. (COPIER>Adjust>BLANK>BLANK-B)<Level1>

Set the service mode setting value to "36" or higher.

Trace of Upstream Brush



F-6-10



F-6-11

[Cause]

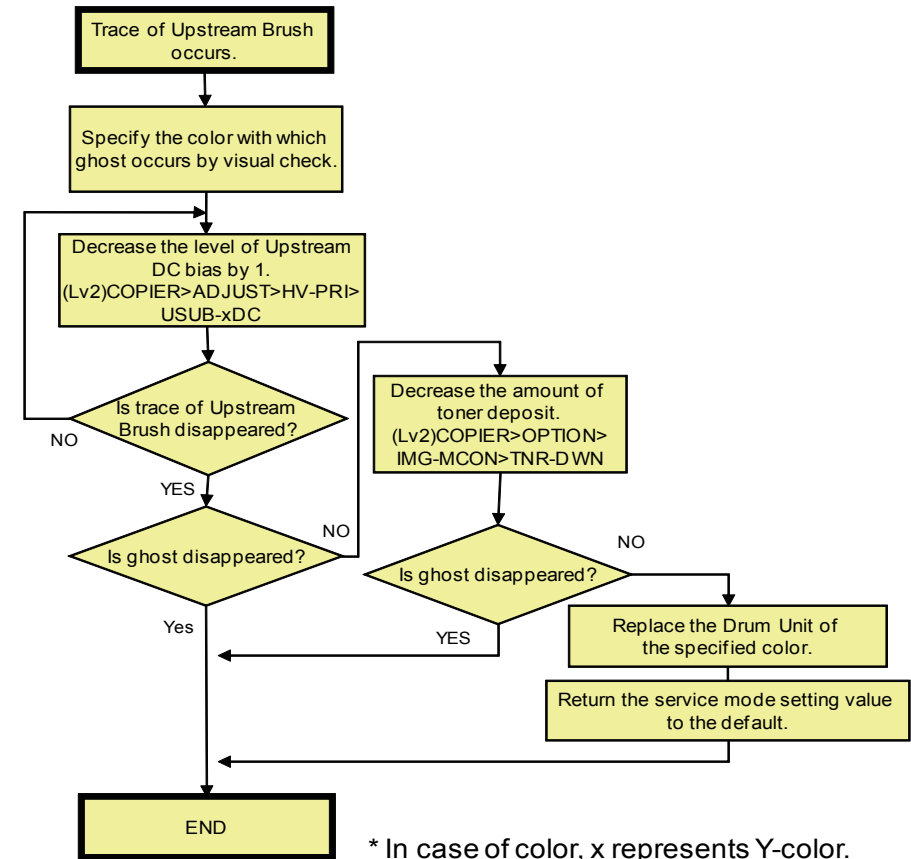
As the residual toner accumulated on the Upstream Brush increases, uneven potential occurs between the Upstream Brush and the Drum due to partial discharge so that the drum cannot be charged evenly. For this reason, toner adhesion occurs at blank area.

[Condition]

It occurs when the life of the Drum Unit is advanced in a high duty/high CV environment.

[Field Remedy]

Perform the field remedy by referring to the following flow chart.



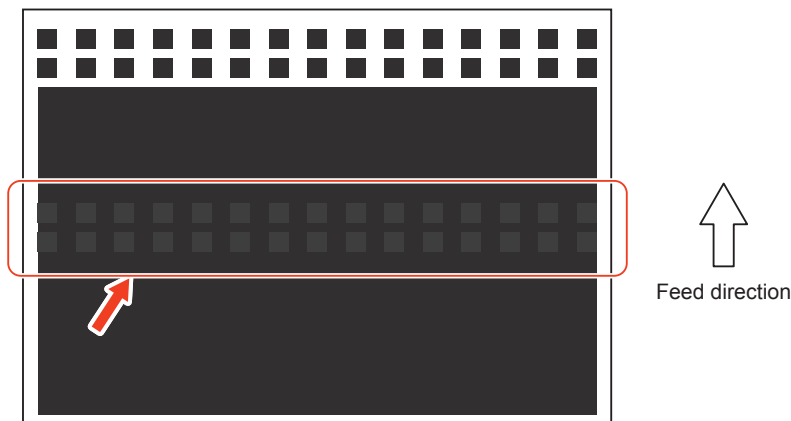
* In case of color, x represents Y-color. In case of Bk, it represents K-color.

F-6-12

CAUTION

In case that the Drum Unit is replaced, return the setting value to the default..

Same color fogging



F-6-13

[Cause]

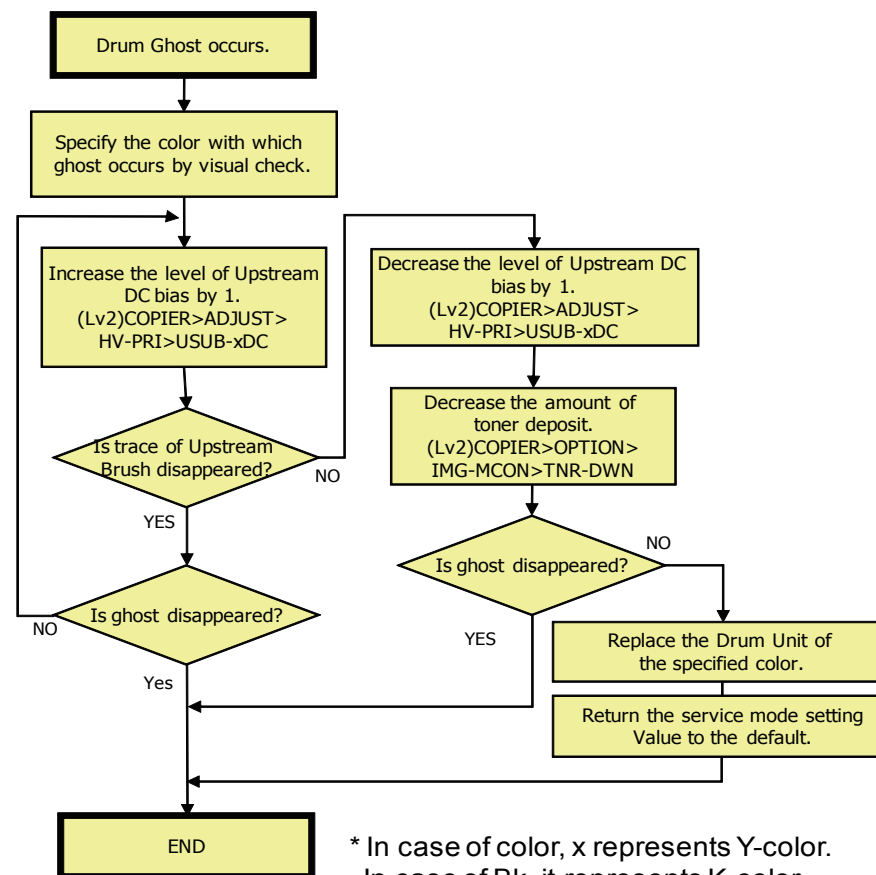
As the residual toner accumulated on the Upstream Brush increases, potential cannot be equalized when outputting solid white and solid black after transferring to the ITB so that the failure occurs.

[Condition]

It occurs when the life of the Drum Unit is advanced in a high duty/high CV environment.

[Field Remedy]

Perform the field remedy by referring to the following flow chart.

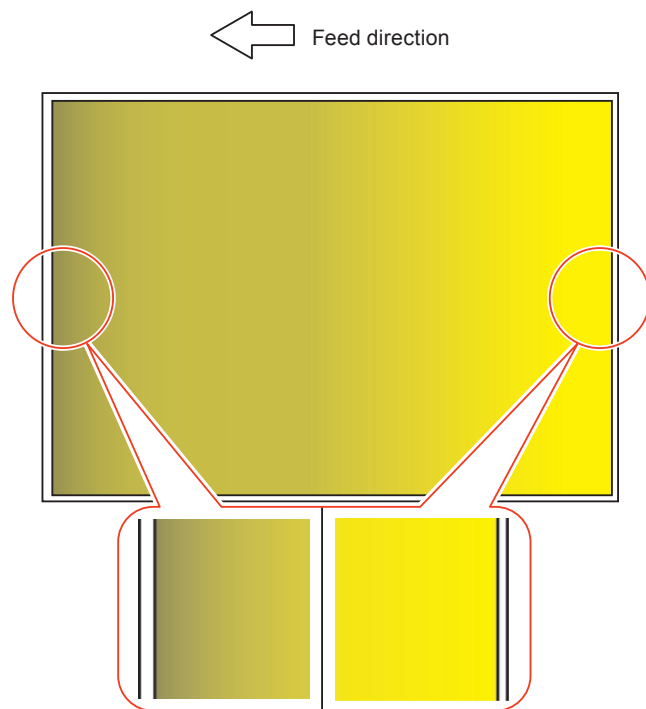


F-6-14

CAUTION

In case that the Drum Unit is replaced, return the setting value to the default..

Different colors fogging



F-6-15

[Cause]

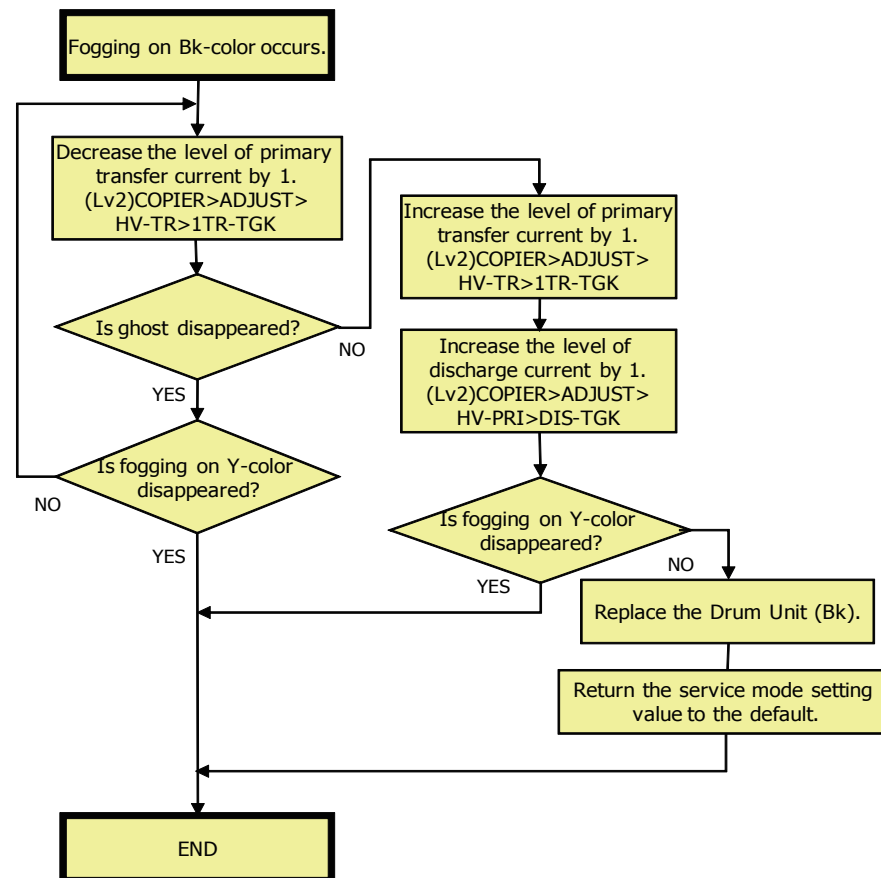
As the duty ratio changes to the upper limit at the time of high CV, the failure occurs. Because of deterioration of transfer efficiency, adhesion of residual toner increases so that it occurs.

[Condition]

It occurs when the life of the Drum Unit is advanced in a high duty/high CV environment.

[Field Remedy]

Perform the field remedy by referring to the following flow chart.

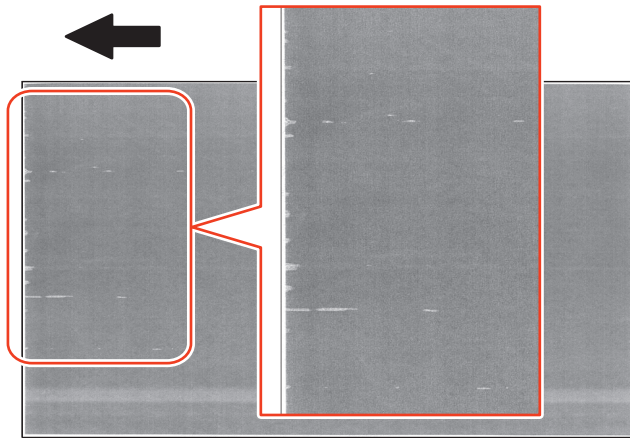


F-6-16

CAUTION

In case that the Drum Unit is replaced, return the setting value to the default..

Actions to be taken when water drop marks appear on the 2nd side



[Cause]

F-6-17

After paper passes through the Fixing Assembly, water contained in the paper evaporates, and the water is accumulated in the Paper Path Guide.

If the accumulated water attaches to the back (2nd side) of the 1st side when the 1st side passes, the water corrupts the image when the 2nd side is transferred and appears as water drop marks on the image.

[Condition]

When the 3-Way Unit is installed, in a high temperature and high humidity environment, and when acclimatized paper (completely hygroscopic paper) is used, the symptom occurs on the 2nd side of 2-sided printing of the first several sheets immediately after continuous paper feed of 1-sided 30 sheets.

[Field Remedy]

Select COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM, and change the value of FAN-POST from 0 to 1, 2, or 3

The fan is driven and the water drop marks are resolved by configuring this setting.

However, jobs cannot be executed while the fan is driven. ("Printing..." is displayed on the LUI.)

FAN-POST	Downtime at execution	Effect
0	None	
1	Approx. 15 sec	Small
2	Approx. 30 sec	Medium
3	Approx. 60 sec	Large

T-6-10

CAUTION

- High waterdrop alleviation effect can be obtained when 2 or higher is set. Talk with the user about the down time before deciding the value to be set.
- The down time is the time required after auto adjustment.

■ Actions to be taken when image smear due to condensation occurred

[Cause]

Image smear occurs because of water drops attached to the Drum due to condensation in the machine caused by abrupt change in temperature and humidity.

[Condition]

A low temperature and high humidity environment or a high humidity environment with large temperature difference

[Field Remedy]

- 1) Turn ON the Environment Switch.
- 2) Select COPIER > OPTION > USER, and change the value of CSTHT-SW from 0 to 1.
- 3) Select COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM, and change the value of FAN-ROT from 0 to 1.
- 4) Select COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW, and change the value of CLN-SEL from 0 to 1, 2, or 3.
- 5) Execute Settings/Registration > Adjustment/Maintenance > Maintenance > Clean Condensation that appears on the LUI by executing step 4.

CLN-SEL	Downtime at execution	Effect
0	None	
1	Approx. 40 to 60 sec	Small
2	Approx. 2 min. to 3 min	Medium
3	Approx. 4 min. to 5 min.	Large

T-6-11

CAUTION

- When the setting value is higher, the effect becomes higher. However, the number of times of cleaning increases, so the toner consumption and drum consumption are also increased.
- When deciding the values to be set, gain agreement with the user.
- Explain the user that Settings/Registration > Adjustment/Maintenance > Maintenance > Clean Condensation needs to be executed when condensation occurs.

■ Roller trace on transparency

[Location]

First Delivery Roller

[Cause]

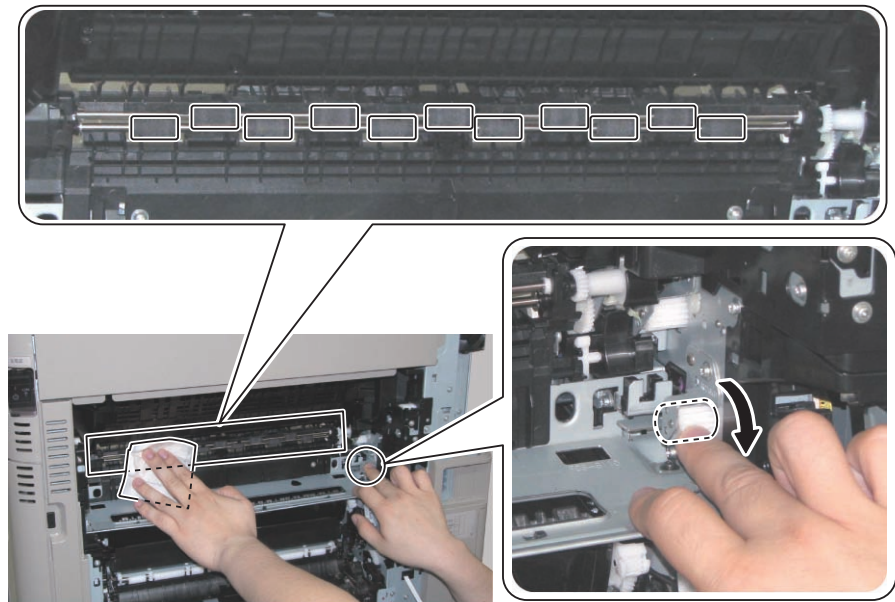
As the number of fed sheets is increased, the First Delivery Roller is soiled. With the normal paper, any problem does not occur, but when transparency is used, its soil may be adhered on the roller.

[Condition]

This failure occurs when the number of fed sheets is increased, the First Delivery Roller is soiled, and transparency is fed.

[Field Remedy]

Change to the Delivery Tray other than First Delivery Tray. Clean the First Delivery Roller with lint-free paper moistened with alcohol.

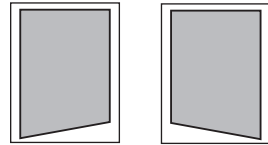


F-6-18

Image distortion

[Field Remedy]

In case that distortion occurs on the trailing edge of image as shown below, execute procedure A and B, Only if it is not solved with these measures, execute procedure C.

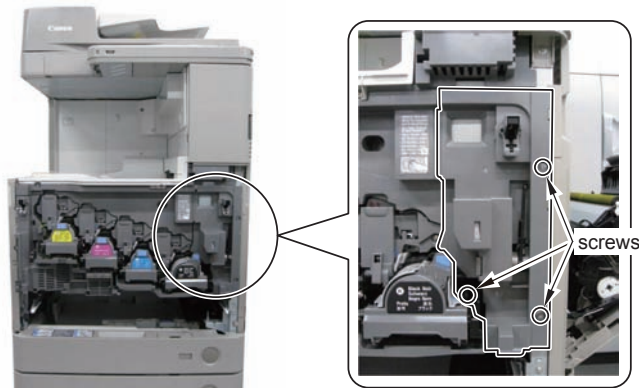


F-6-19

- Check that the paper in the cassette is positioned correctly.
- Check for any damaged parts.
- Execute alignment adjustment of the Fixing Assembly

[Fixing alignment adjustment procedure]

- Open the Right Door.
 - Remove the Fixing Assembly.
 - Open the Front Cover.
 - Remove the Front Cover.
 - Remove the Front Inner Cover.
- 3 screws



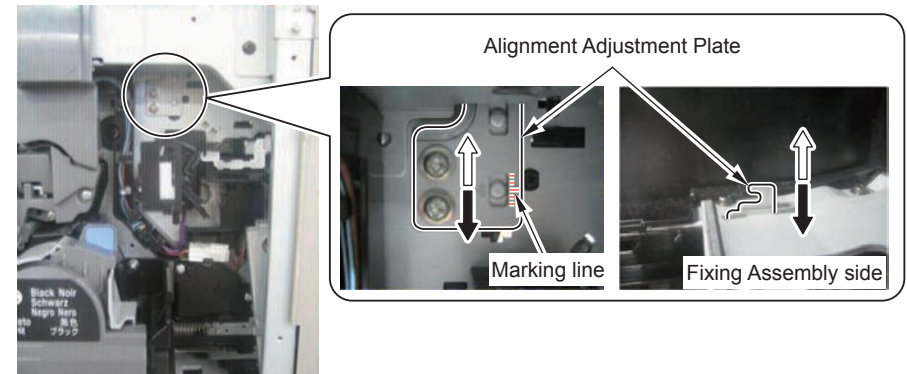
F-6-20

CAUTION

Be careful not to free the interlock when removing the Front Inner Cover.

- Vertically adjust the Adjustment Plate, using the marking line as a target for adjustment.

- 2 screws

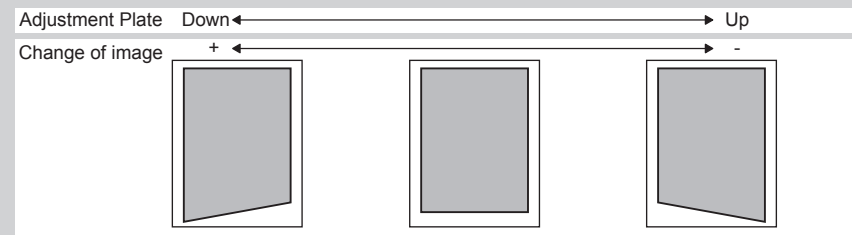


Adjustment width	
Unit of 1 scale	0.5mm
Max. adjustment width	Adjustable up to +/-1.0mm

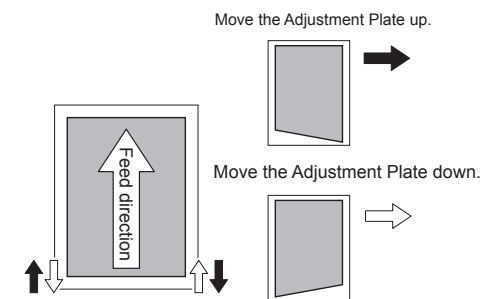
F-6-21

T-6-12

The adjustment direction and the direction of change of the image



F-6-22



F-6-23

■ The paper wrinkle has occurred when passing through the Buffer Pass Unit.

To correct paper curl, decurler function is available at the buffer pass Unit.
With this function, paper curl is removed by applying pressure on the paper, but fine wrinkles may occur.

[Cause]

It is likely to occur when feeding moist paper (moisture content: 9.5% or higher) in a high temperature and high humidity environment.

[Field Remedy]

Wrinkle can be alleviated by installing the Cassette Heater to prevent paper from adsorbing moisture.

● Operation failure

■ Abnormal noise during pickup from Cassette 2

[Location]

Cassette 2 Pickup Unit

[Cause]

Groove and claw of the Separation Roller Shaft are not properly engaged.

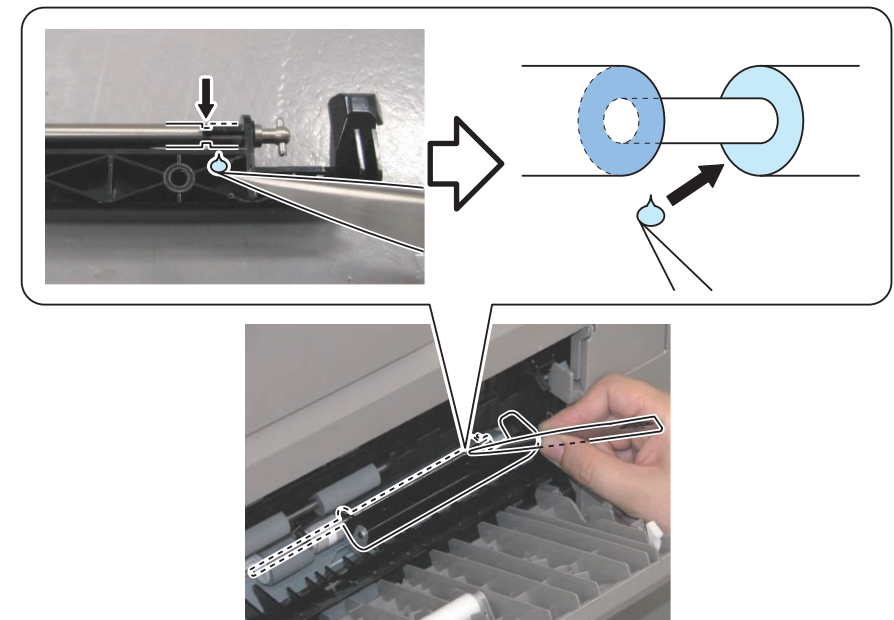
[Condition]

In rare cases, this failure occurs when groove and claw of the Separation Roller Shaft are not properly engaged.

[Field Remedy]

Follow the following procedure to apply grease to the groove and claw engagement area of the Separation Roller Shaft.

- 1) Open the Right Lower Cover.
- 2) Put rice-grain sized grease on the leading end of tweezers.
- 3) Apply grease to the area in the following figure.



F-6-24

■ Second Delivery Tray full detection error

[Location]

Second Delivery Tray (when installing the 3 Way Unit)

[Cause]

Level of paper curl is large, so the Full Detection Sensor cannot detect full level.

Jam code 020A occurs.

[Condition]

The occurrence of this failure differs according to paper type and size. The smaller the paper weight is, the more the paper curl occurs.

[Field Remedy]

By executing the following service mode, the fixing temperature control can be decreased by 3 deg C. However, be careful when using this mode because if the temperature is decreased too much, a fixing failure may occur.

Be careful when using the service mode because it is different according to the paper speed and weight.

In case of full speed and plain paper (60 to 105g/m²)

COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM > TMP-TBL <Level1>

In case of half speed and plain paper (60 to 105g/m²)

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > TMP-TBL4 <Level1>

In case of half speed and heavy paper (106 to 220g/m²)

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > TMP-TBL2 <Level1>

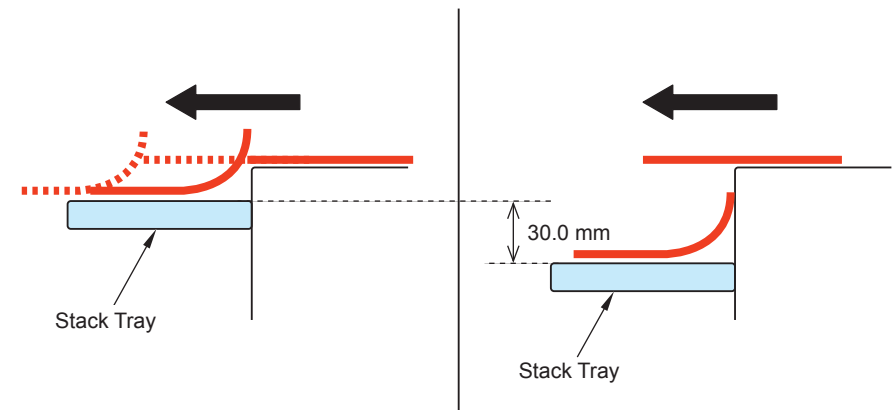
In case of half speed and transparency

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > TMP-TBL5 <Level1>

In case of half speed and envelope

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > TMP-TBL6 <Level1>

■ Document falling from Inner Finisher



[Location]

Delivery Outlet of Inner Finisher

F-6-25

[Cause]

Level of paper curl is large, so the preceding paper is pushed out by the succeeding paper delivered next.

[Condition]

When delivering heavy paper (106g/m² or more) or coated paper continuously in a high temperature and humidity environment

[Field Remedy]

Execute the following 2 service modes. However, when executing these service modes, productivity decreases by approx. 20% with all paper types. Therefore, be sure to explain to and get approval from the user in advance when executing them.

- Service mode for fixing temperature control
Select the following: COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX > TMP-TBL 2<Level1>, and set -2.
- Service mode to increase the distance from the Delivery Outlet to the Stack Tray
Select the following: SORTER > OPTION > CURL-HVY <Level1>, and set 1.

If the measure above does not solve the problem, execute the following service mode to prevent papers from being pushed out. However, when executing this service mode, productivity decreases by half with all paper types. Therefore, be sure not to execute it without a strong request from the user.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > PRE-CURL <Level1>

Waste toner leak

[Location]

Waste Toner Container

[Cause]

The setting value for waste toner full level detection (service mode > COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM >EXT-TBOX) is too high.

[Condition]

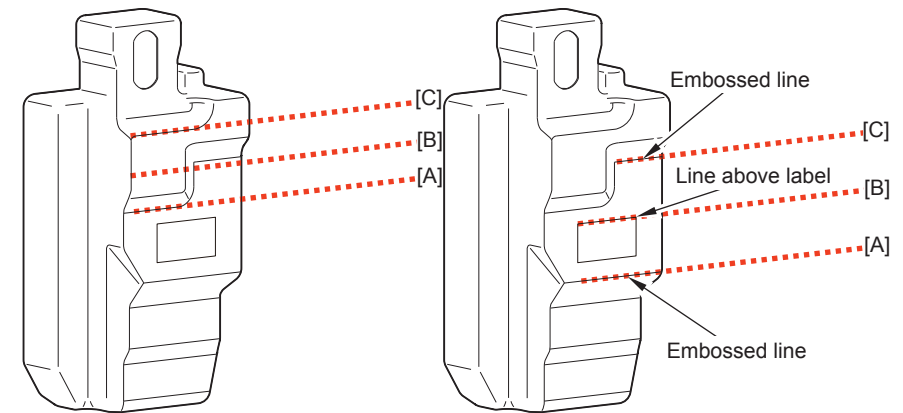
1. Service mode > COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM >EXT-TBOX is set other than 4.
2. A high temperature and humidity environment.
3. When the user prints large volume of solid images in color.

The problem occurs when condition 2 or 3 is added while condition 1 is fulfilled.

[Field Remedy]

Clean the overflow waste toner. After that, decrease the setting value (service mode> COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM >EXT-TBOX). Range of reduction must be determined according to the usage environment of the user.

Following shows the setting values for reference. Since following is a reference, it is not recommended to change the setting value drastically at once even within the following range. (Because as the usage environment of the user changes, accumulation speed of waste toner changes, so) be sure to take the usage environment of the user and the waste toner level at the time of replacement into consideration when adjusting the value. In addition, if it becomes a high temperature and humidity environment, do not increase the value as much as possible.



F-6-26

F-6-27

The line which becomes the aim	Setting Value
A	0 (Min)
B	4 (Default)
C	9 (Max)

T-6-13

CAUTION:

Even setting the service mode as above, waste toner leak may occur depending on usage of the user. (If a user prints a large volume of solid images in color, it may overflow.) Therefore, when changing the value, be sure to check the status of usage to confirm that not so many solid images in color have been output, and do not set a large value at once.

For the user who output a large volume of solid images in color, do not use this service mode. In summer, volume of waste toner tends to increase. Be careful not to increase the value too much before summer.

■ Alignment error in Inner Finisher

[Location]

Delivery Outlet of Inner Finisher

[Cause]

Alignment error due to occurrence of unexpected curl.

[Condition]

Because it occurs unexpectedly, it may occur in all environments although the possibility is low. In a high temperature and humidity environment, the problem is likely to occur.

[Field Remedy]

Execute the following service mode for fixing temperature control. Recommended setting value is -2. If the value is decreased too much, a fixing failure may occur; thus, be careful when using this mode.

COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM > TMP-TBL <Level1>

■ JAM "0d91" during the PG print

[Location]

Multi-purpose Tray

[Cause]

The Multi-purpose Tray paper setting is not appropriate.

[Condition]

When the service mode "COPIER>TEST>PG>PG-PICK " is set to 6(Multi-purpose Tray) and the paper size selection is incorrect.

[Remedy]

After removing the jam papers, turn OFF and ON the main power SW.

In case of re-printing the PG print, set the paper size to a correct size or set the service mode "COPIER>TEST>PG>PG-PICK" to any value other than 6.

■ Paper curled when delivered from the External Finisher



F-6-28

[Cause]

When paper passes through the Fixing Assembly, water is vaporized by heat and pressure is applied, thereby making the paper curl.

[Condition]

It is likely to occur when feeding moist paper (moisture content: 9.5% or higher) in a low temperature and high humidity environment.

* It especially tends to occur at cold start (e.g. the first time in the day).

[Remedy]

- 1) Install a Cassette Heater and extract water from paper in order to prevent paper curl caused by the change in moisture content which occurs when paper passes through the Fixing Assembly.
- 2) In (Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FEED-SW > DCL-ADJ, change the value from 0 to 1 (or 2 in the case of heavy paper) to increase the curl correction level.

Version upgrade

Overview

Overview of Version Upgrade

The system software version is upgraded in 2 steps, downloading and writing the new version of the system software.

Downloading System Software

This machine supports the following 3 downloading methods.

1. Download via the service support tool (hereinafter referred to as "SST")

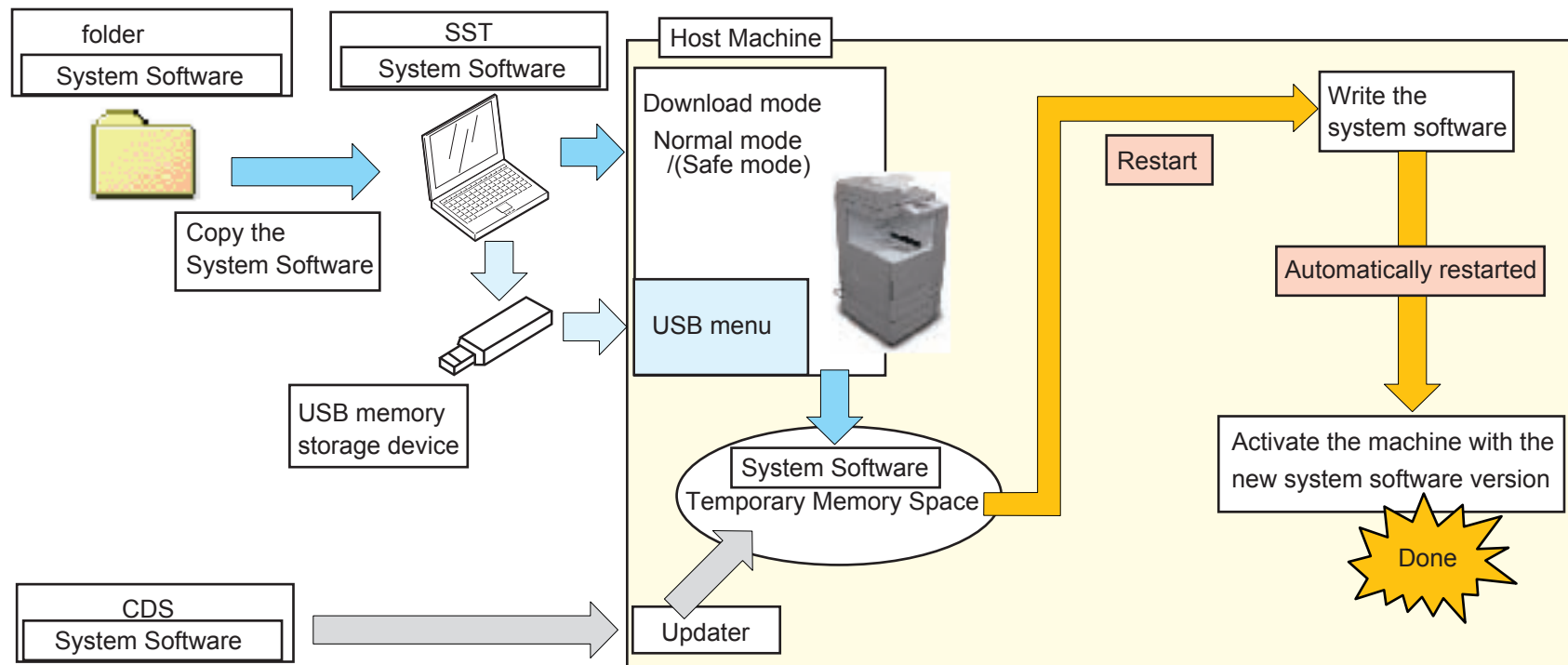
Connect the machine to the PC by the cross cable to download the system software using SST installed in the PC.

2. Download using the USB memory storage device

Insert the USB memory storage device to the slot of the machine and download the system software stored in the device.

3. Download via Contents Delivery System (hereinafter referred to as "CDS")

Download the system software directly to the machine from CDS via Internet.



F-6-29

■ Download mode

When upgrading the version using SST or USB memory storage device, it is necessary to enter download mode.

● Starting the download mode

Enter download mode by selecting Copier > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD in service mode (recommended).

Press and hold 2 and 8 keys simultaneously on the numeric keypad, and turn ON the power switch.

The above operation makes this machine to be in static IP address automatically and recovers to enable the download in the same way as before.

■ Writing System Software

The system software downloaded in either of the abovementioned methods is stored in the temporary storage space of the FLASH PCB.

After the system software is successfully downloaded and this machine is restarted, writing process to the system area of the FLASH PCB is started.

When the main power switch of this machine is turned OFF during the writing process, it may render the machine unable to start.

This machine supports the remote version upgrade via CDS. When upgrading the system software via CDS, a warning message is shown on the control panel to alert the user not to turn OFF the power switch.

When the system software is successfully written, the machine is automatically restarted with the downloaded system software.

If any error occurs during the writing process, the machine is restarted with the previous firmware (the version before upgrade). Therefore, after version upgrade, be sure to check in service mode by following COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION if version upgrade has been properly completed.

■ System Software Configuration

The table below shows the system software configuration for this machine.

Software to be upgraded		Display on SST		How to upgrade versions			Remarks
		Registered name of product	Name of system software	SST	USB memory	CDS	
Host Machine	SafeCont	iAC2030	SYSTEM	yes	yes	yes	
	StdCont			yes	yes	yes	
	Language Module		LANGUAGE	yes	yes	yes	
	Printer Controller		DCON	yes	yes	yes	
	FAX Board Boot Program		G3CCB	yes	yes	yes	Super G3FAX Board - AH1
	FAX Board Main Program		G3CCM	yes	yes	yes	Super 3FAX Board - AH1
Inner Finisher - C1	Finisher Controller	IFN_C1	FIN_CON	yes	yes	yes	Inner Finisher - C1

The finisher of this machine supports version upgrade via the host machine in any of the abovementioned methods, i.e., via SST, USB memory storage device or CDS.

T-6-14

Note on download process

CAUTION: Never turn OFF the power during the download/ writing process

Turning OFF the power during the download/ writing process of the system software may cause a failure of machine startup at power-on.

When the machine fails to be started after turning the power ON, be sure to start in safe mode (by pressing 2 and 8 keys simultaneously on the numeric keypad).

CAUTION: Note on version upgrade completion

Even if the version upgrade is failed, the machine is properly restarted with the previous version; therefore, be sure to execute the following after completion of version upgrade to see if version upgrade has been properly completed

COPIER > DISPLAY >VERSION

NOTE:

With the previous models, the error code of E753-0001 occurs when downloading the system software for the option that is not installed. With this machine, however, no error occurs even if downloading the system software for the option that is not installed.

Version Upgrade via SST

Overview

The system software can be downloaded via SST in either of the two modes below.

- Assist mode (recommended)
- Single mode

The assist mode has the following features:

- Automatically identifies the connecting model
- Automatically searches the new version of the system software for the connecting model
- Automatically downloads the system software in the combination of the versions, which the operation has been checked.

This machine consists of multiple system software that mutually interacts during operation; therefore, it is necessary to download all the system software in the combination of the versions, which the operation has been checked. Basically, use the assist mode to download the system software of this machine.

NOTE:

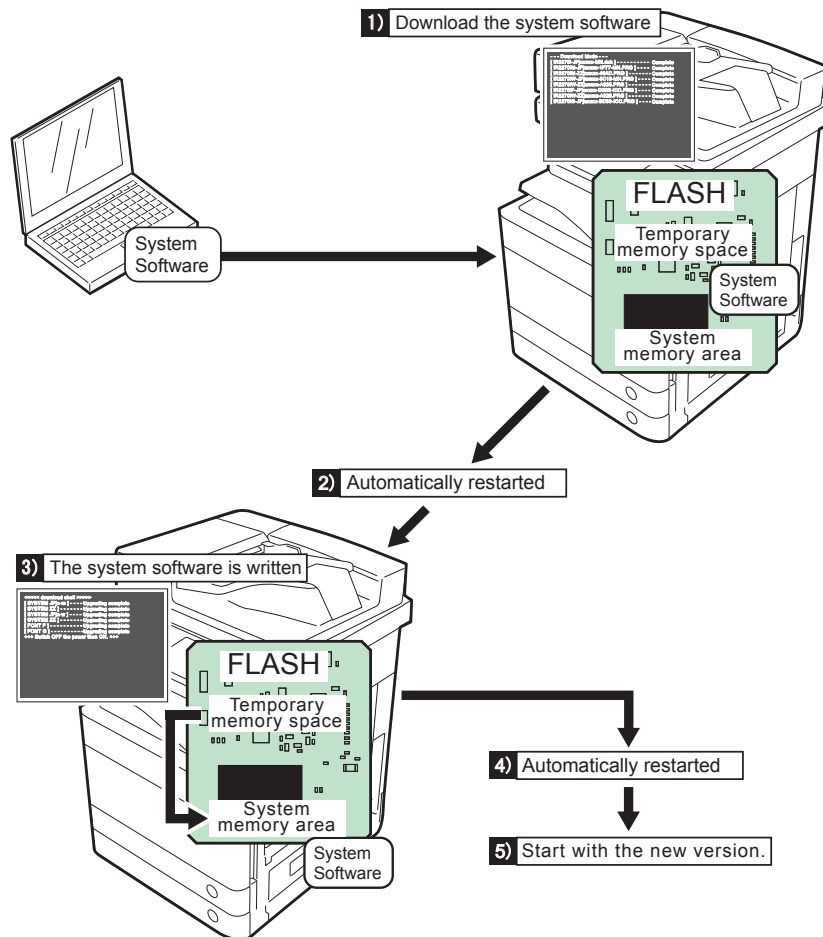
Use the single mode only in the following cases:

- When downloading a part of system software such as the DCON or an option.
- When uploading/ downloading the backup data.

● Downloading System Software

The system software is stored in the temporary storage space of the FLASH PCB immediately after downloading from the PC. When this machine is restarted after the download process, the system software is written in the system area of the FLASH PCB and the data in the temporary storage space is deleted.

This machine is automatically restarted after the writing process is completed. When the writing process is successfully completed, the machine is restarted with the new version of the system software. When an error occurs, the machine restarted with previous version of the system software.



F-6-30

■ Registering System Software

● System file storage folder to SST

Register the system software stored in the system file storage folder to SST.

NOTE:

When the system software has been compressed, decompress the compression file and then register the file to SST.

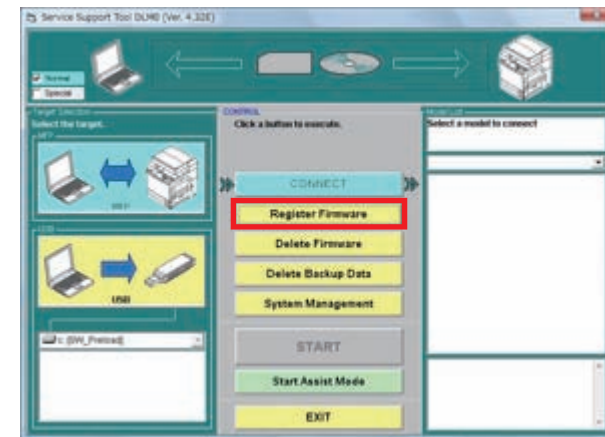
Preparation

Requirements:

- PC with SST Ver.4.31 or later installed
- The system software for this machine

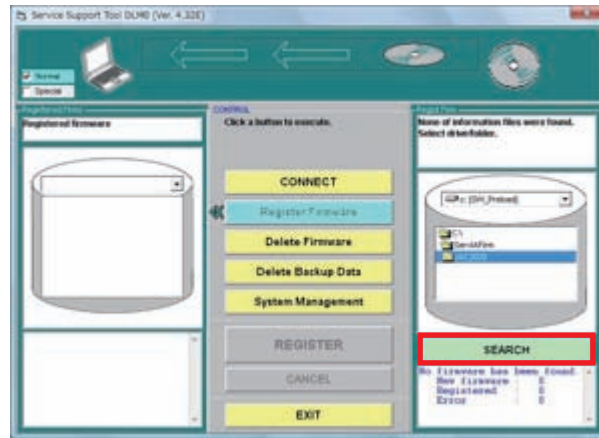
Steps to register the system software

- 1) Start the PC.
- 2) Start SST.
- 3) Click the "Register System Software" button.



F-6-31

4) Select the folder containing the system software and click the “Search” button.



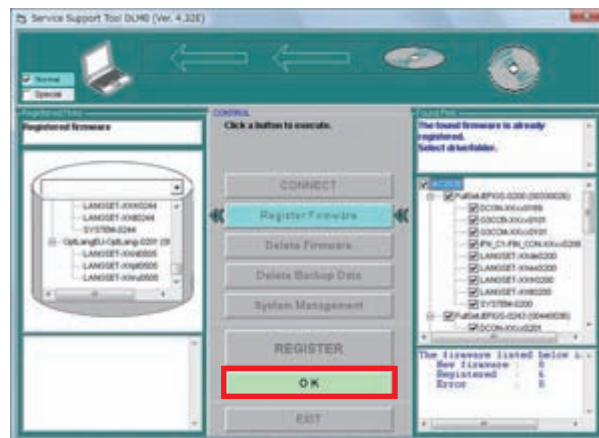
F-6-32

NOTE:
“XXXX” in the figure describes the version of system software.

5) A list of system software in the folder is displayed.

Deselect the checkbox of unnecessary folder(s) and/or system software and click the “Register” button.

6) Click the “OK” button after the message telling completion of system software registration is displayed.



F-6-33

Connection

The following IP address is automatically assigned for this machine at startup in download mode.

- IP address: 172.16.1.100
- Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0

When the PC with SST installed is connected to this machine, change the PC network address as follows:

- IP address: 172.16.1.160
- Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
- Default gateway: arbitrary

CAUTION:

While the PC is connected to the network, changing to the abovementioned settings may cause network failures due to an IP address conflict, etc. Ensure that the PC is disconnected from the network when you change the PC network settings. Alternatively use the cross cable to connect to this machine.

Preparation

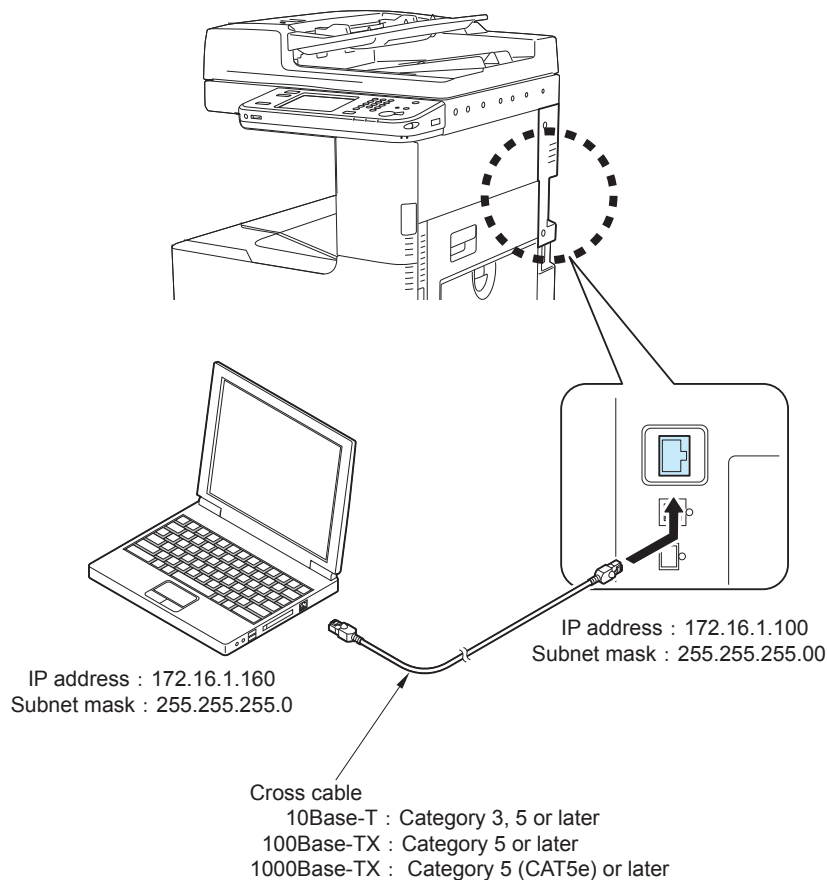
Requirements

- PC with SST Ver.4.31 or later installed and the system software for this machine is registered.
- Cross cable
 - 10Base-T: Category 3 or 5
 - 100Base-T: Category 5
 - 1000Base-T: Enhanced Category 5 (CAT5e) or later

CAUTION:

Disconnect USB memory storage devices if connected.

This machine disables the communication to SST if any USB memory storage device is recognized. SST and the USB memory storage device cannot be used concurrently.



F-6-34

Procedure

- 1) Connect this machine and the PC with SST installed with the cross cable.
- 2) Turn ON the main power switch of this machine.
- 3) Enter service mode to start the machine in download mode.
COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD; and press [OK].

- 4) Check the IP address of the PC.

Go to Start menu to select the following: Program > Accessory > Command Prompt.
Type IPCONFIG and press the [Return] key to see the network settings of the PC.
If any discrepancies from the description in the figure below are found, change the network settings of the PC.

```

コマンド プロンプト
Microsoft Windows 2000 [Version 5.00.2195]
(C) Copyright 1985-1999 Microsoft Corp.

C:\>ipconfig

Windows 2000 IP Configuration

Ethernet adapter ローカル エリア接続:

    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . : 
    IP Address. . . . . : 172.16.1.160
    Subnet Mask . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
    Default Gateway . . . . . : 

C:\>
  
```

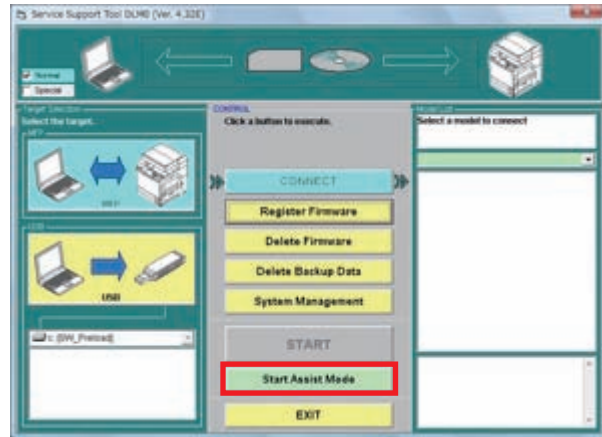
F-6-35

CAUTION:

The network settings cannot be shown with IPCONFIG if the PC is disconnected from the network. To check the settings, ensure that this machine is turned ON, and connect the PC and this machine with the cross cable.

■ Downloading System Software (Assist mode)

- 1) Start this machine and enter download mode. (COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD)
- 2) Connect the PC to this machine and start SST.
- 3) Click the “Start Assist Mode” button.
Skip this step when starting SST in assist mode.



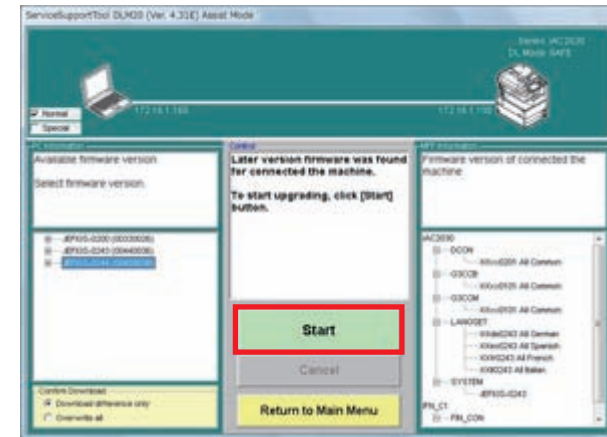
F-6-36

If newer combination of the system software is stored in SST, the new combination is automatically selected.

NOTE:

If only the existing system software combination is stored, none of them are selected. Any versions of the existing system software can be downloaded by manual selection.

- 4) Click the “Start” button.



F-6-37

Writing process is started when download is completed.

The machine is restarted twice during the writing process (at completion of writing processes other than SafeCont and at completion of writing process of SafeCont).

Upon completion of the writing process, the main menu is displayed.

NOTE: Download confirmation modes

Download is confirmed in any of the following 2 modes:

Downloading of the difference only: “Skip the existing versions and confirm whether to download the downgraded versions”

Downloading of the system software in the version that is not installed in the machine: “Confirm whether to download the existing versions/ downgraded versions”

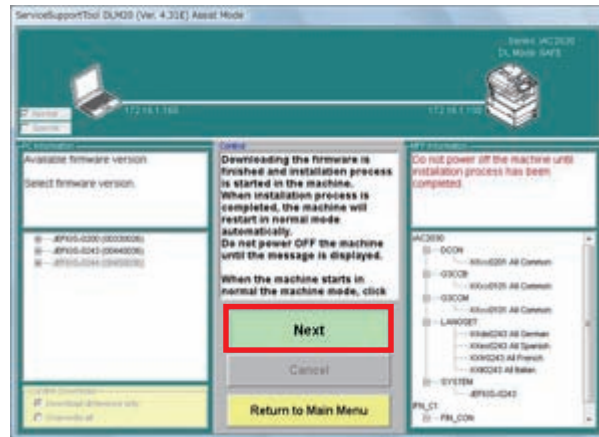
Download is not executed when the target software is in the same version.

Overwrite all versions

Regardless of version upgrade or downgrade, all versions of the system software are downloaded without the confirmation message.

By default, “Skip the existing versions and confirm whether to download the downgraded versions” is selected.

5) Click the “Next” button.



F-6-38

- 6) Disconnect the cross cable from the machine.
- 7) Enter service mode to check the version of the system software.
- 8) Click the “OK” button.

The main menu is displayed.

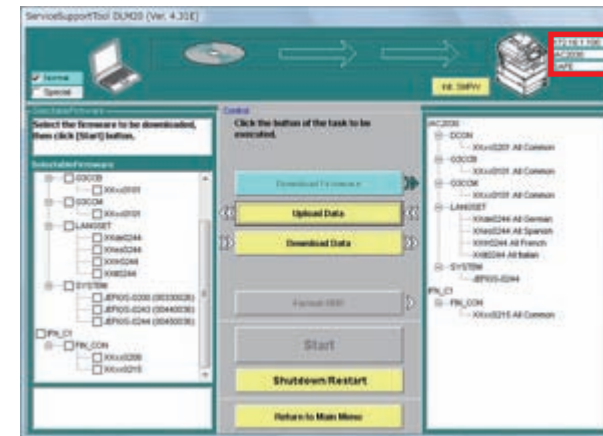
NOTE:

When an error occurs during version upgrade, the machine is normally started with the previous version of the system software (the version before the upgrade). After version upgrade, be sure to check if the version of the system software is changed to the version you downloaded.

■ Downloading System Software (in single mode)

The following is the sample steps to download the DCON (the other components of the system software can be downloaded similarly)

- 1) Start the machine in download mode.
- 2) Connect the PC to this machine and start SST.
- 3) Select the model to be connected and “Single”, check the network settings. Click the “Start” button.



F-6-39

NOTE:

The following device information is shown at the right top of SST screen.

- IP address
- Model name
- Download mode



F-6-40

- 4) Select the DCON version to be downloaded and click the “Start” button.
Multiple files of system software can be selected in this step. Selecting SYSTEM automatically selects the language software that supports the selected system.



F-6-41

NOTE: Download confirmation modes

Download is confirmed in any of the following 2 modes:

- Downloading of the difference only: “Skip the existing versions and confirm whether to download the downgraded versions”
- Overwrite all versions
Regardless of version upgrade or downgrade, all versions of the system software are downloaded without the confirmation message.

“Skip the existing versions and confirm whether to download the downgraded versions” can be selected when the checkbox for SYSTEM is selected. There is no choice but to select “Overwrite all versions” when the checkbox for SYSTEM is not selected.

NOTE: Checking execution status for download

Once download is started, the process up to the writing process is automatically executed. You cannot interrupt or add the process in the middle of the operation. The following confirmation message is displayed when downloading is executed.



F-6-42

- 5) When download is completed, click the “OK” button.
Return to the main menu screen.
This machine is automatically restarted.
The downloaded system software is written on the FLASH PCB.
- 6) Enter service mode to check the version.

■ Formatting HDD

NOTE:

This function can be selected only when the HDD is installed to the machine.
This function is not selectable if there is no HDD in the machine.

● Overview

Only HDD formatting is available on this machine. HDD formatting can be executed in the following cases:

- When installing the HDD from other machine installed
- When the HDD seems to be faulty and it is highly possible to solve the problem by formatting.

Executing Format ALL on the machine in use deletes all the user data in the HDD as well as the MEAP application; therefore, be sure to gain agreement with the user.

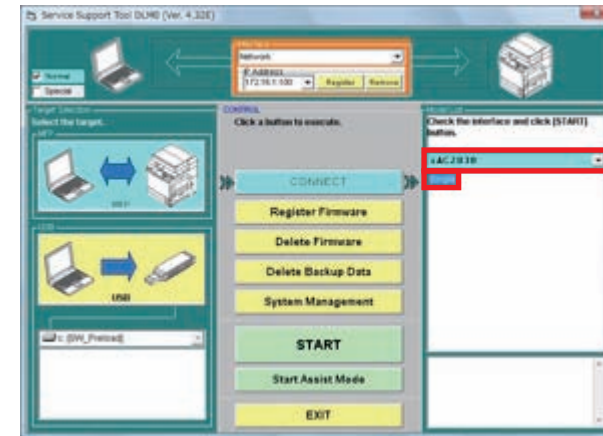
For normal version update, there is no need to format the HDD.

HDD can be formatted only in single mode.

When the HDD format is initiated, the formatting is executed at next start-up. In such cases, startup time will take longer than normal.

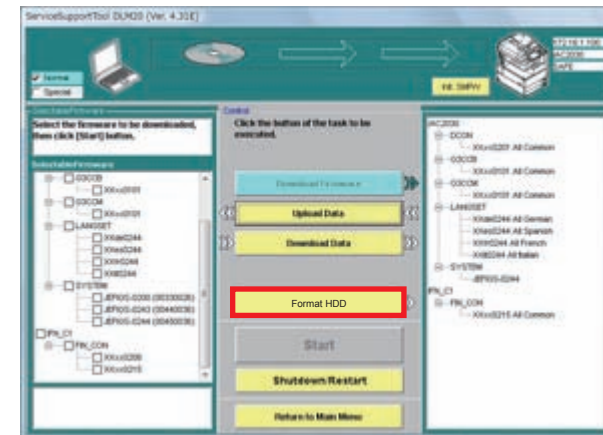
● Steps of Formatting

- 1) Enter download mode.
- 2) Connect the PC to the machine and start SST.
- 3) Select the model to be connected and "Single". Check the network settings and click the "Start" button.



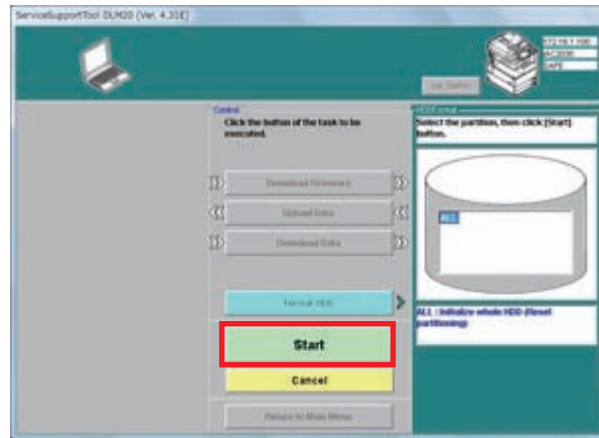
F-6-43

- 4) Click the "Format HDD" button.



F-6-44

5) Click the "Execute Format" button.



F-6-45

HDD is formatted at next startup.

The startup will take longer than normal for the HDD format.

Backup

Overview

When replacing the Controller PCB, the data stored in the PCB can be temporary saved and migrated to the new PCB by using the backup function.

- Backup via SST

Backup data	File name to be downloaded/ uploaded
Backup RAM	Sramlmg.bin (to be saved in the FLASH PCB. Backup and restoration to the FLASH PCB is available)
MEAP application	MeapBack.bin (available to upload/ download)
For R&D use	Sublog.bin (Do not select this file)

T-6-15

- Although backup of Sramlmg.bin can be executed with SST, the file is actually saved in the FLASH PCB.
- MeapBack is the MEAP application and its data stored in the FLASH/HDD. (MeapBack is saved in the FLASH PCB for a FLASH (memory) model while it is saved in the HDD for a HDD model)

- Backup via service mode

Backup data	Service mode
Backup of DC Controller PCB	COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM DSRAMBUP (backup) COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM DSRAMRES (restoration)

- Data is saved in the FLASH PCB.

T-6-16

NOTE:

Before replacing the DC Controller PCB, backup the data in service mode. The backup data can be restored in service mode after replacing the DC Controller PCB. This enables to maintain the setting data including service mode stored in the old DC Controller PCB.

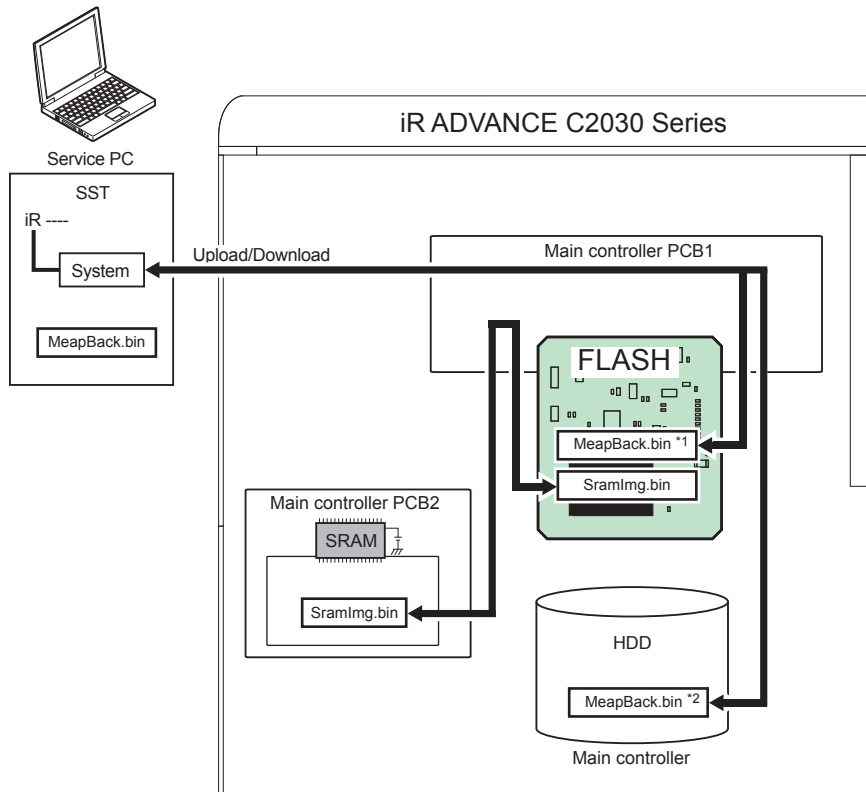
Before replacing Main Controller PCB 2, backup the data of Sramlmg.bin. The backup data can be restored after replacing Main Controller PCB 2. This enables to maintain the setting data including service mode stored in Main Controller PCB 2.

Steps to Upload Data

CAUTION:

Do not select Sublog.bin

The backup data can be downloaded only on the machine from which the data was uploaded.



F-6-46

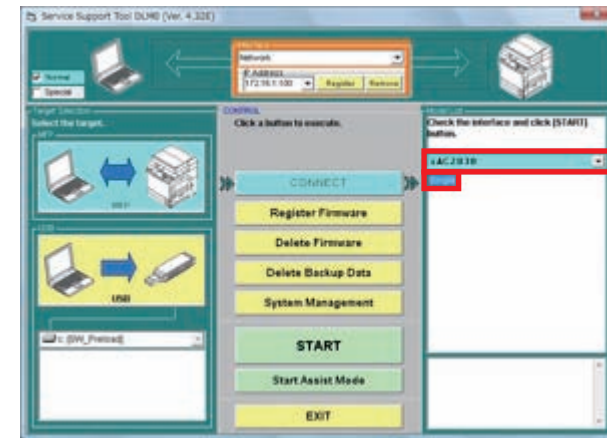
*1: For a FLASH (memory) model

*2: For a HDD model

Listed below are the sample steps to upload MeapBack.

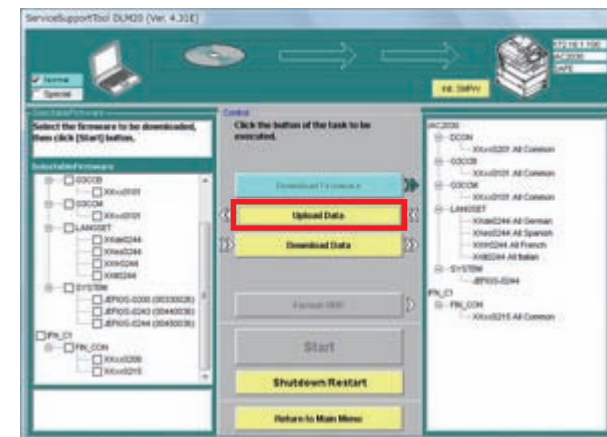
- 1) Enter download mode.
- 2) Connect the PC to the machine and start SST.

- 3) Select the model to be connected and "Single". Check the network settings and click the "Start" button.



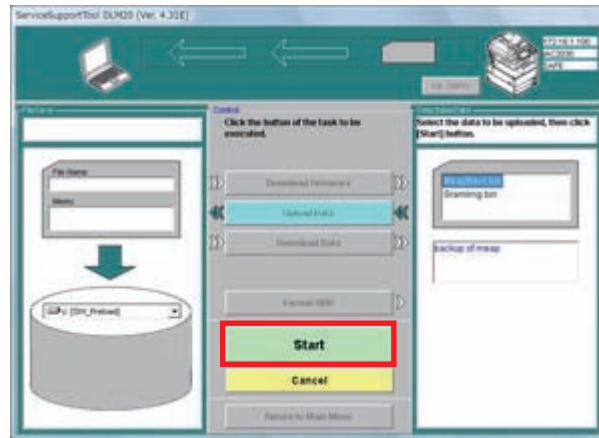
F-6-47

- 4) Click the "Upload Data" button.



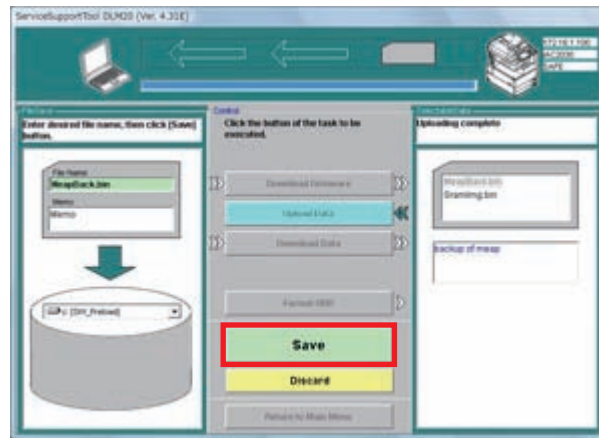
F-6-48

5) Select “MeapBack.bin” and click the “Start” button.



F-6-49

6) Enter the file name to be saved and comments when necessary. Click the “Save” button.



F-6-50

7) Click the “OK” button.

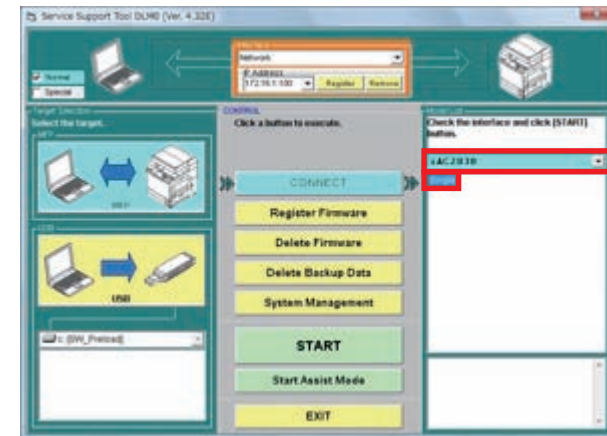
Steps to Download Data

CAUTION:

The backup data can be downloaded to the machine from which the data was uploaded.

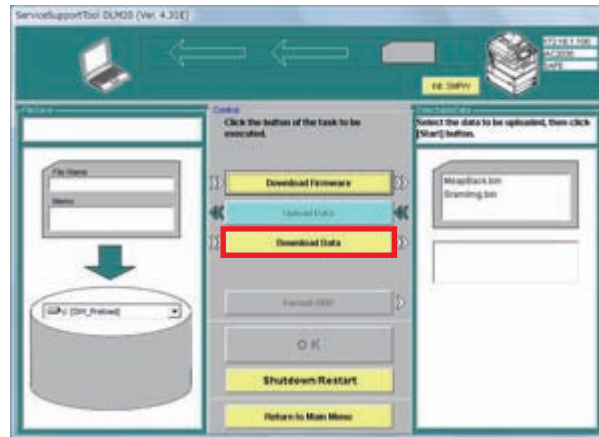
Listed below are the sample steps to download MeapBack.

- 1) Enter download mode.
- 2) Connect the PC to the machine and start SST.
- 3) Select the model to be connected and “Single”. Check the network setting and click the “Start” button.



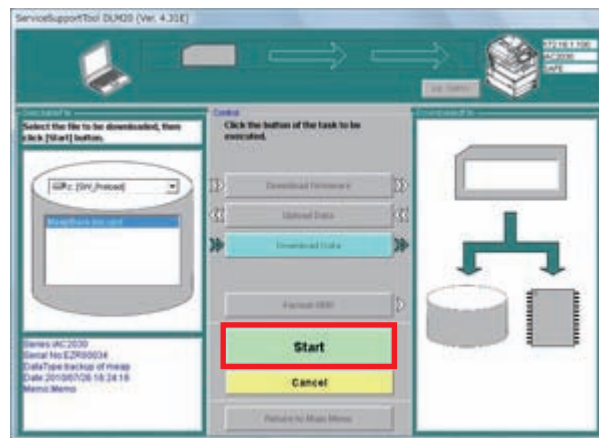
F-6-51

4) Click the “Download Data” button.



F-6-52

5) Select the data to be downloaded and click the “Start” button.



F-6-53

6) When the data is successfully downloaded, click the “OK” button.

7) Restart the machine.

Optional language support

This is the explanation on how to download optional language firmware prepared locally by sales company.

The following basic languages and a normal languages are installed in this machine at the time of factory shipment.

General area	
Basic languages	English, Japanese
Normal languages	German, French, Italy, Spanish

T-6-17

Asian area	
Basic languages	English, Japanese
Normal languages	Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese, Korean

T-6-18

Besides these languages, you can install optional languages for which sales company prepared.

You can install basic languages, normal languages, optional languages, collectively 8 languages. The optional languages are prepared for in European area and Asian area. The optional languages are shown below:

- European area
 - Bulgarian, Catalan, Czech, Danish, Greek, Estonian, Finnish, Croatian, Hungarian, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Romanian, Russian, Slovak, Slovenian, Swedish, Turkish,
- Asian area
 - Vietnamese and Thai.

The number of the installable languages

The number of the installable languages in this machine which are basic languages, normal languages, optional languages, collectively 8 languages.

2 basic languages and 4 normal languages are already installed. So you can install only 2 optional languages.

First, select the optional language to be downloaded in the Assist Mode and exported to the USB memory.

Optional language confirmation message appears in the Assist Mode.

The firmware of the selected optional language is exported to the USB memory.

The elimination of normal languages and optional languages

There are 2 kinds of language modules. One is the basic module which saved in system area, the other is the indication module which saved in other area.

Usually the indication module is used in UI. If there is not the indication module, it is made from the basic module.

If you want to eliminate languages from this machine, you have to delete both of the basic module and the indication module.

You can delete the indication module only in the normal mode. The deletion of the basic module is only in the download mode.

To eliminate normal languages and optional languages, you select following service mode. Copier > FUNCTION > CLEAR > LANG-CLR (Level-2)

By selecting this service mode, the indication module of normal languages and optional languages are deleted, then the download mode is activated automatically.

At this time, installing firmware set(including SYSTEM) without the deletion languages by SST or USB memory, the basic module is deleted.

The basic languages(English and Japanese) are included in SYSTEM and these languages cannot be deleted.

The use case and execution methods

Work contents	SST	USB	CDS
Installing the optional languages to the machine of the normal languages.	Available	Available	Available
Eliminating the optional languages and restore to the normal languages	Available	Available	N/A
Interchanging the optional languages	Available	Available	N/A
Installing the more than 3 optional languages after eliminating the normal languages	Available	Available	N/A
Updating the machine of the optional languages	Available	Available	Available

T-6-19

Optional language selection

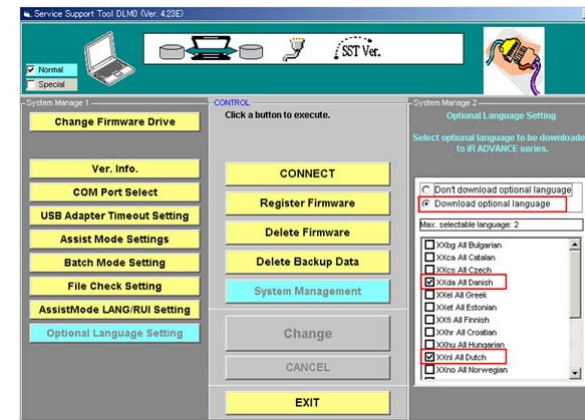
"Optional Language Setting" is added to "System Management".

By default, "Don't download optional language" is selected.

When "Download optional language" is selected, up to two optional languages can be selected.

The firmware of the optional languages on the list are excluded from Assist Mode necessary firmware.

Assist Mode can be executed without registering the optional language firmware to SST.



F-6-54

Optional language confirmation

When either of the following conditions is satisfied, the optional language confirmation message appears when "Start" button is clicked.

Optional language is selected in the "Optional Language Setting" of "System Management". Any optional language is installed to the connected machine.

Maximum number of the optional languages installed to the machine is two.

The optional language already installed to the connected machine is always selected, and it cannot be removed from the machine with SST.

Even if the firmware of the installed optional language is not registered to SST, it is counted as the installed optional language.

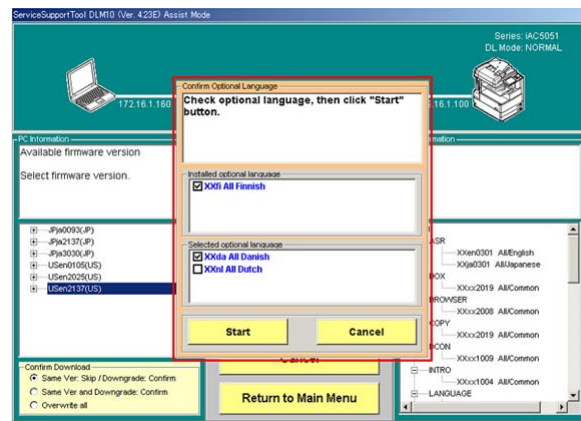
The number of the selectable optional languages in the "Optional Language Setting" is equivalent to the maximum number of optional languages.

The number of the optional languages to be added to the machine is equivalent to the maximum number of optional languages minus the number of the optional languages installed to the machine.

Error will not occur even the number of the installed optional languages is greater than the maximum number of the optional languages.

In such a case, any new optional language cannot be added, but the firmware of the installed optional language is downloaded in the Assist Mode.

The picture shown below is the example of the case that Finnish is installed to the machine, and Danish and Dutch are selected in the "Optional Language Setting". Only two optional languages can be installed to the machine and Finnish is already installed. Therefore, either Danish or Dutch can be installed to the machine.

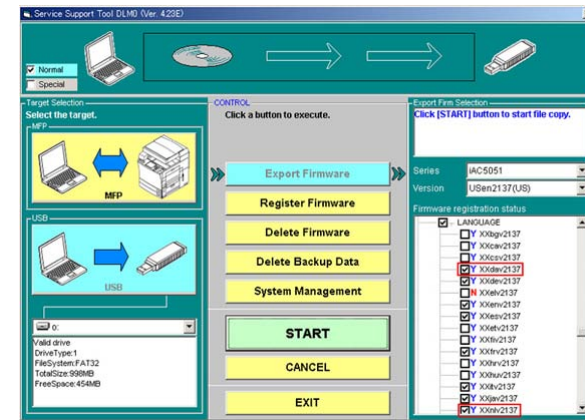


F-6-55

● Firmware to be exported to USB memory

When the firmware of the selected optional language in "Optional Language Setting" is installed to SST, it is exported to the USB memory.

The firmware of the other optional languages are not exported to the USB memory. When Danish and Dutch are selected in the "Optional Language Setting", the firmware of these languages are exported to the USB memory as shown below.



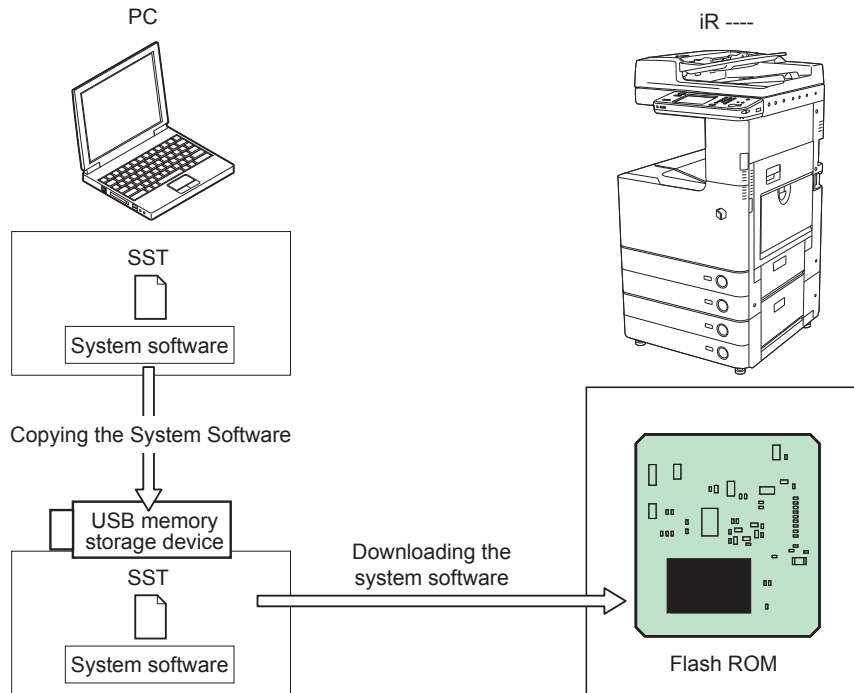
F-6-56

Version Upgrade using USB Memory Storage Device

Relation between SST and USB memory storage device

When using the USB memory storage device for version upgrade, the system software should be copied to the USB memory storage device. By inserting the USB memory storage device to the slot of the machine, the system software can be upgraded.

The figure below shows the relation between SST and USB memory storage device.



When downloading the system software, enter download mode by any of the following methods.

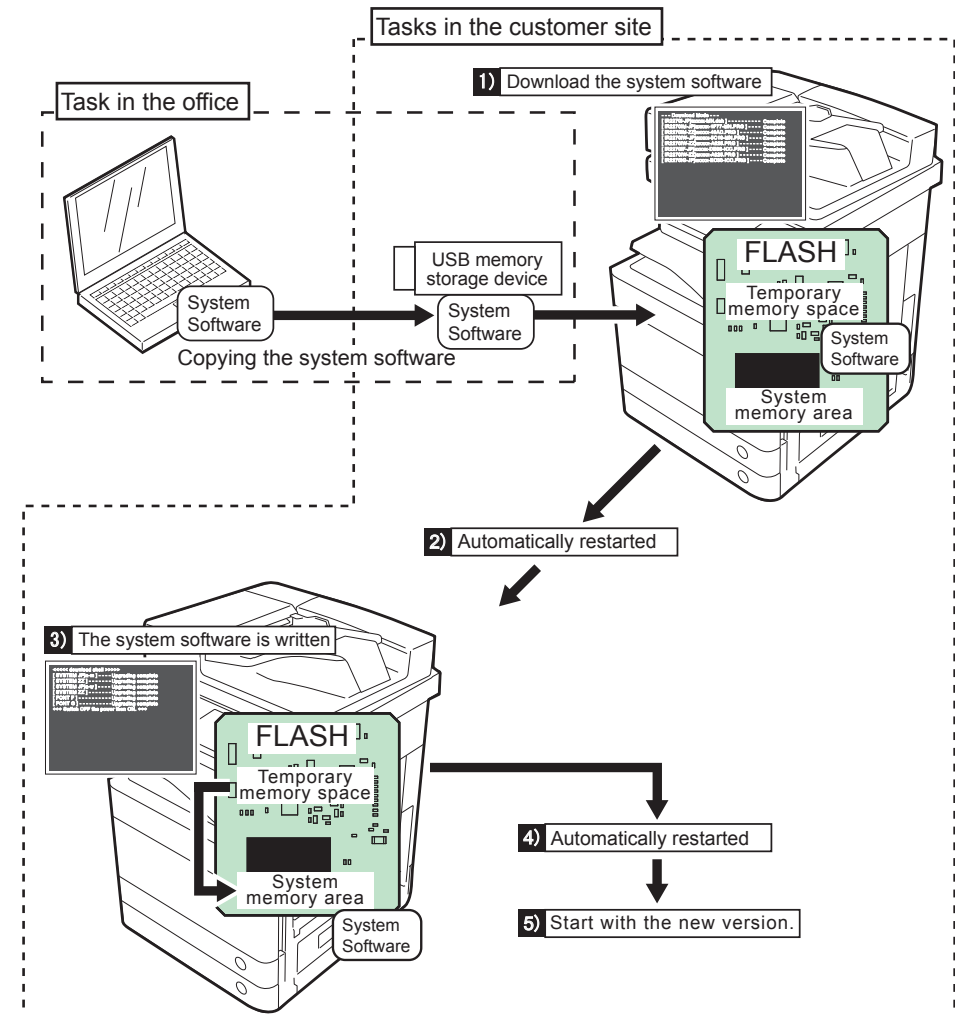
- Select the following in service mode (recommended):
COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD; and click [OK].
- Press and hold 2 and 8 keys simultaneously on the numeric keypad when turning ON the power switch.

NOTE:

It takes 2 to 3 minutes to enter the download mode from the service mode because the machine is restarted. Do not turn OFF the power during that time.

Downloading System Software

The system software is updated according to the set of versions selected from the USB menu. The system software is stored in the temporary storage space on the FLASH PCB immediately after the system software is downloaded. After the download process, the system software is written in the system area on the FLASH PCB and the data saved in the temporary storage space is deleted. This machine is automatically restarted when the writing process is completed. When writing process is successfully completed, the machine is restarted with the new version of the system software. When an error occurs, the machine is restarted with the previous version of the system software.



■ Registering System Software

● System software storage folder to SST

Register the system software stored in the folder to SST.

NOTE:

When the system software has been compressed, decompress the compression file and then register to SST.

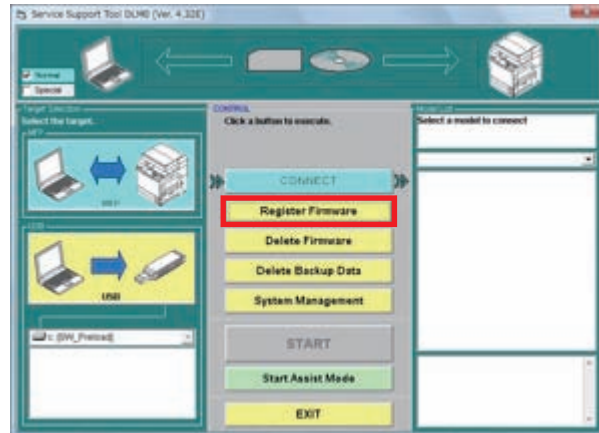
Preparation

Requirements:

- PC with SST Ver.4.31 or later installed
- The system software for this machine

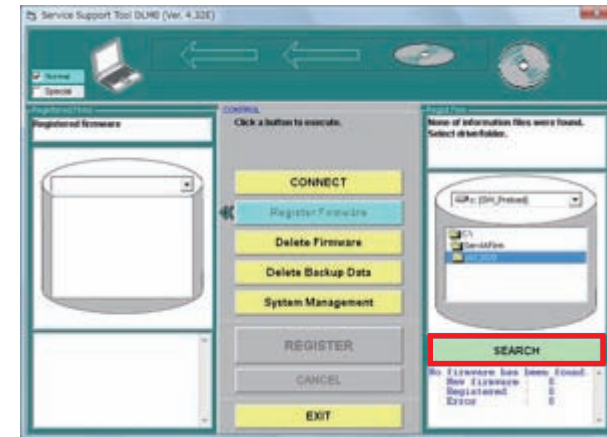
Steps to register the system software

- 1) Start the PC.
- 2) Start SST.
- 3) Click the “Register System Software” button.



F-6-57

- 4) Select the folder in which the system software is saved and click the “Search” button.

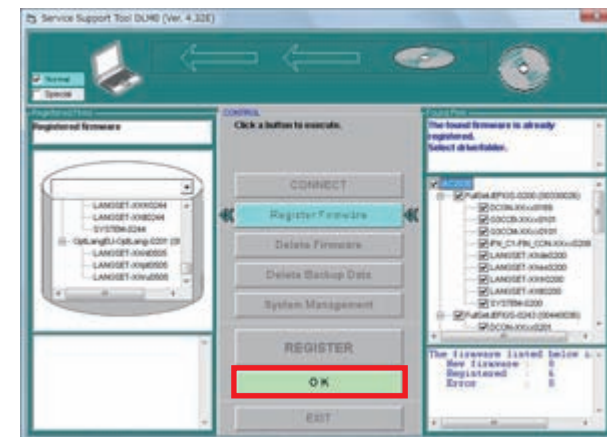


F-6-58

NOTE:

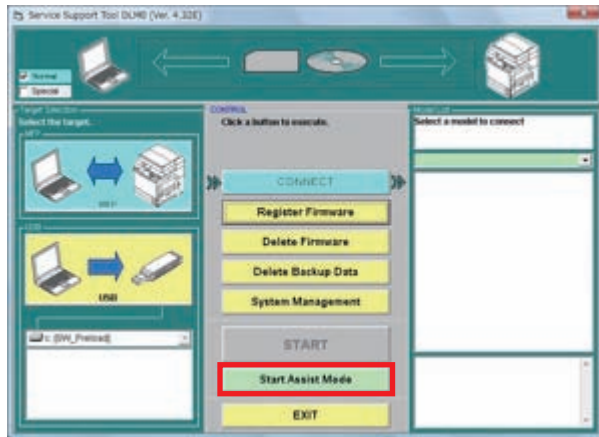
“XXXX” in the figure describes the version of system software.

- 5) A list of system software in the folder is displayed.
Deselect the checkbox of unnecessary folder(s) and/or system software and click the “Register” button.



F-6-59

- 6) Click the "OK" button when the message telling completion of system software registration is displayed.



F-6-60

● SST to USB memory storage device

Register the system software registered in SST to the USB memory storage device.

NOTE:

Although only one version of software can be saved with the existing machines, multiple versions of software can be saved simultaneously in the USB memory storage device with this machine (up to 9 versions of software can be saved)

Preparation

Requirements:

- PC with SST Ver.4.31 or later installed
- USB memory storage device (*)

*: Requirements for USB memory storage devices

Interface: USB1.1 or later (USB2.0 is recommended)

Memory capacity: 1GB or more is recommended (the total file size of the system software is approx. 350MB)

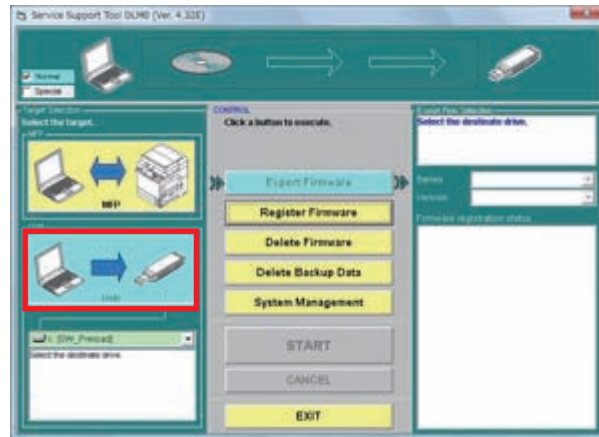
Format: FAT (FAT16), FAT32 (NTFS and HFS are not supported). The memory is formatted in a partition (multiple partitions are not supported)

Unusable USB memory storage device: the memory that is protected by a password or the encryption technology.

Steps to register the system software

- 1) Start the PC.
- 2) Insert the USB memory storage device to the USB port of the PC.
- 3) Start SST.

4) Click the USB icon shown in “Select the target” screen.



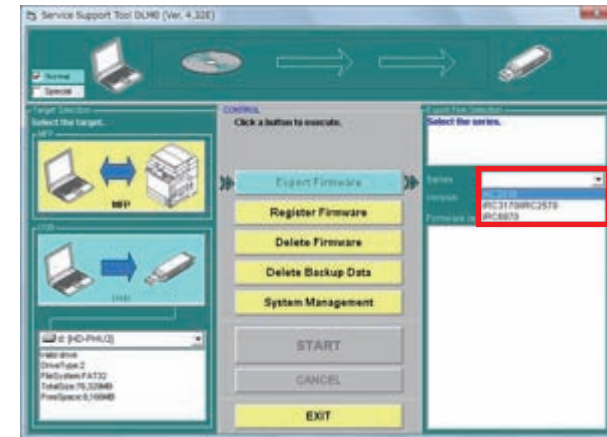
F-6-61

5) Select the drive (removable disk) where the USB memory storage device is inserted.



F-6-62

6) Select the “Series” (iRAC2030).

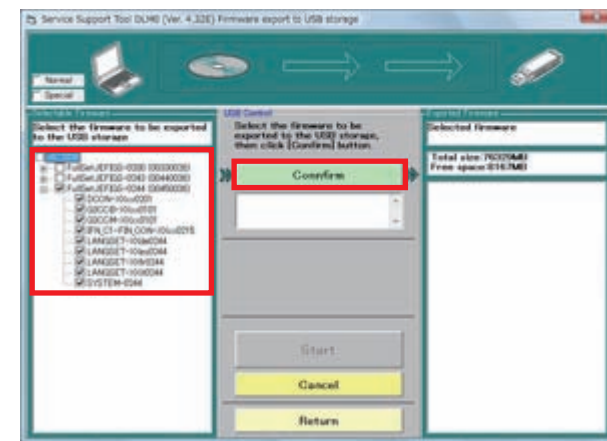


F-6-63

7) Select the version to register. After selecting the version, click confirm button.

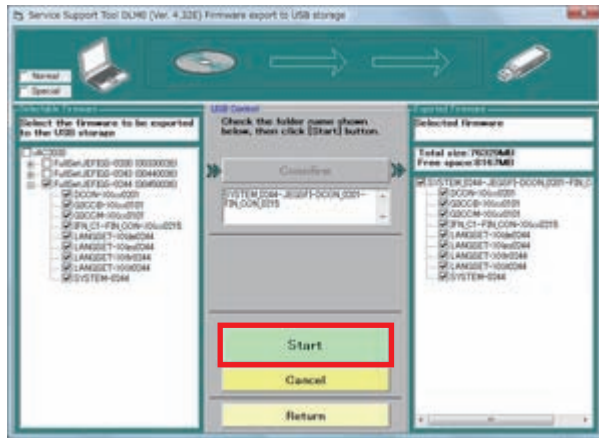
NOTE:

Only one version can be registered at once. In addition, a single system software can be registered.



F-6-64

- 8) Wait for approx. 1 minute so the firmware to be written is displayed. When the following screen is displayed, click start button.



F-6-65

NOTE:

In the case of using USB1.1, it takes approx. up to 10 minutes for writing. In the case of using USB2.0, it takes approx. up to 3minutes so it is recommended to use USB memory supporting USB2.0.

- 9) When the system software is successfully registered to the USB memory storage device, click the "OK" button.



F-6-66

Connection

CAUTION:

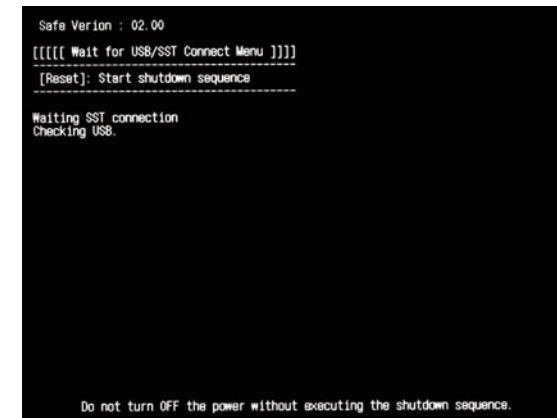
This machine does not communicate with SST once it recognizes a USB memory storage device. Therefore, SST and a USB memory device cannot be used at the same time.

Preparation

Requirements: a USB memory storage device, which the system software for this machine is registered.

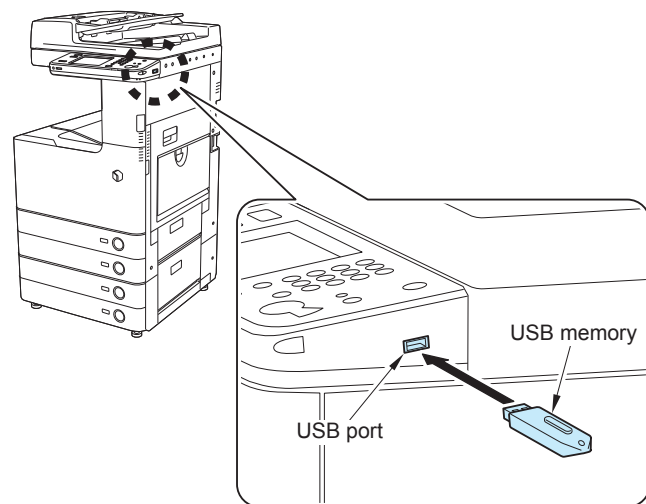
Procedure

- 1) Remove the network cable if any network cable is connected to this machine.
- 2) Turn ON the power of the machine and enter download mode from the service mode. Select the following in service mode: COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD; and click [OK].
- 3) The following screen is displayed.



F-6-67

4) Connect the USB memory storage device to the USB port.

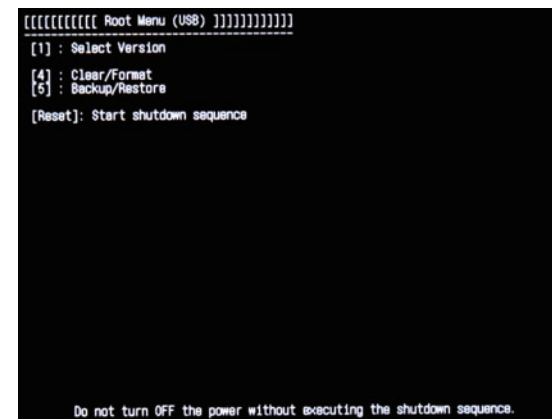


F-6-68

NOTE:

The USB port at the back of the device can be used as well.

5) When the machine recognizes the USB memory storage device, the following menu is displayed on the control panel.



F-6-69

CAUTION:

Depending on the manufacturer or the model, this machine may fail to recognize the USB memory storage device.

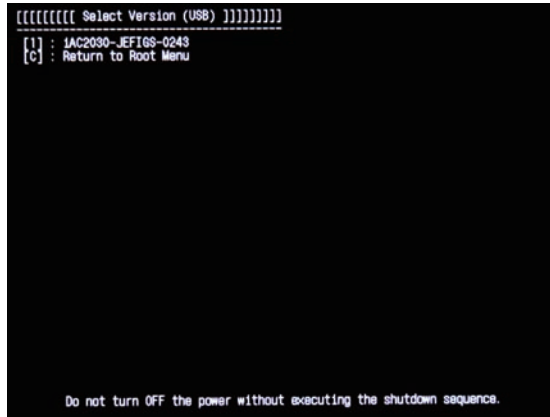
This machine retries recognition of a USB memory storage device for up to 60 seconds after power-ON. The above menu is not displayed if the machine fails to recognize a USB memory storage device within the time period.

In such a case, use another USB memory storage device.

■ Selecting System Software

● [1]: Select Version

Select the version to be used (from the system software versions saved in the USB memory).



F-6-71

Selecting version gets into the download menu.

■ Downloading/ Writing System Software (Automatic)

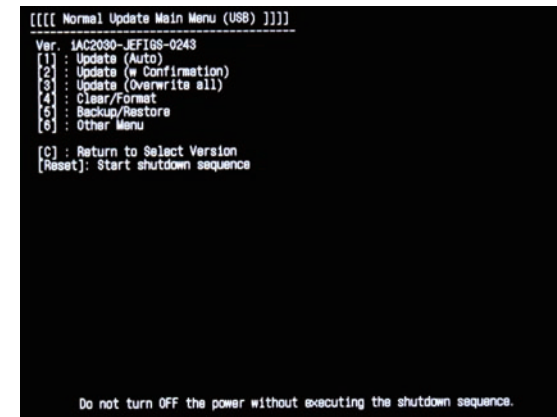
● [1]: Upgrade (Auto)

The versions are compared among the host machine, options and the system software in the USB memory storage device, and only the newest version of the system software in the USB memory is downloaded to the temporary storage space in the FLASH PCB.

This machine is automatically restarted after the writing process is completed. When the writing process is successfully completed, the machine is restarted with the new version of the system software. When an error occurs, the machine is restarted with the previous version of the system software.

Procedure

- 1) Enter download mode.
 - 2) Connect the USB memory storage device to the USB port.
 - 3) Press [1] and select the version of system software to be used on the screen for selecting version.
 - 4) Select [1]: Update (Auto) to start download.
- [1] to [0]: Execute download/ any key other than [0]: Return to the menu screen



F-6-72

During the download process, download status is displayed on the control panel.

Writing to the system software area on the FLASH PCB is started once download is completed. When writing to the Dcon (ACC1, CCM or CCB if there is an option) is completed, the machine is automatically restarted. After writing of SafeCont is completed, the machine is automatically restarted again.



F-6-73

5) When the main menu is displayed, press the removal key at the bottom right on the touch panel and select removal of memory media device, and then remove the USB memory storage device.

● [2]: Upgrade (w Confirmation)

The versions are compared among the host machine, options and system software in the USB memory storage device, and newest version of the system software is downloaded to the temporary storage space in the FLASH PCB.

When the versions of system software in the USB memory storage device are older version, a confirmation message is displayed on the control panel so that the user can select whether to overwrite or not. This step is skipped when the target software is the same version.

This machine is automatically restarted once writing process is completed. When writing process is successfully completed, the machine is started with the new version of the system software. When an error occurs, the machine is restarted with the previous version of the system software.

Operation Procedure

- 1) Enter download mode.
 - 2) Connect the USB memory storage device to the USB port.
 - 3) Press [1] and select the version of system software to be used on the screen for selecting version.
 - 4) Select [2]: Update (w Confirmation) to start downloading.
[2] - [0]: Execute download/ any key other than [0]: Return to the menu screen
- During the download process, download status is displayed on the control panel.

NOTE:

When the system software version in the USB memory storage device is older than the system software version in the device, a confirmation message as to whether to overwrite or not is displayed on a module basis. Press the key on the control panel.
[0]: Overwrite/ any key other than [0]: Not to overwrite

When download is completed, this machine is automatically restarted to start writing to the system software area in the FLASH PCB. When writing to the Dcon (ACC1, CCM or CCB if there is an option) is completed, the machine is automatically restarted. After writing of SafeCont is completed, the machine is automatically restarted again.

5) When the main menu is displayed, press the removal key at the bottom right on the touch panel and select removal of memory media device, and then remove the USB memory storage device.

● [3]: Upgrade (Overwrite all)

Regardless of the system software version in the machine, all the system software in the USB memory storage device is downloaded.

This machine is automatically restarted once writing process is completed. When writing process is successfully completed, the machine is restarted with the new version of the system software. When an error occurs, the machine is restarted with the previous version of the system software.

NOTE:

All firmware update may take up to 25 minutes. To reduce downtime, we recommend using Auto under normal condition.

Operation Procedure

- 1) Enter download mode.
 - 2) Connect the USB memory storage device to the USB port.
 - 3) Press [1] and select the version of system software to be used on the screen for selecting version.
 - 4) Select [3]: Update (Overwrite all) to start downloading.
 - [3] - [0]: Execute download/ any key other than [0]: Return to the menu screen
- During the download process, download status is displayed on the control panel.

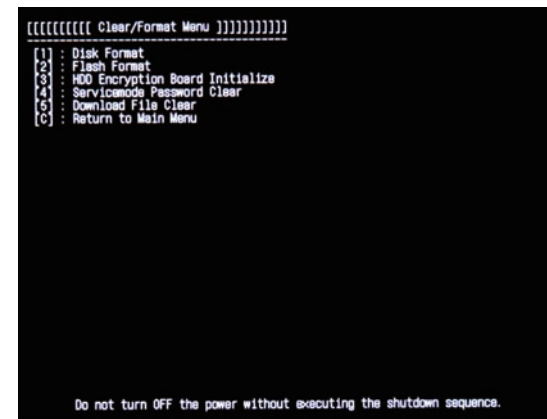
When download is completed, this machine is automatically restarted to start writing to the system software in the FLASH PCB. When writing to the Dcon (ACC1, CCM or CCB if there is an option) is completed, the machine is automatically restarted. After writing of SafeCont is completed, the machine is automatically restarted again.

- 5) When the main menu is displayed, press the removal key at the bottom right on the touch panel and select removal of memory media device, and then remove the USB memory storage device.

■ Formatting FLASH PCB or HDD

● Format Overview

The following 3 types of formatting/initialization methods are available with this machine. With this machine, there is no function to format BOOTDEV only, which was available with the existing machines.



F-6-74

- Disk Format: To initialize the entire HDD
- Flash Format: To initialize the entire FLASH PCB
- HDD Encryption Board Initialize: To initialize the HDD Encryption Board

For normal version update, there is no need to format the FLASH PCB/ HDD.

● [1]: Disk Format

To format the entire HDD

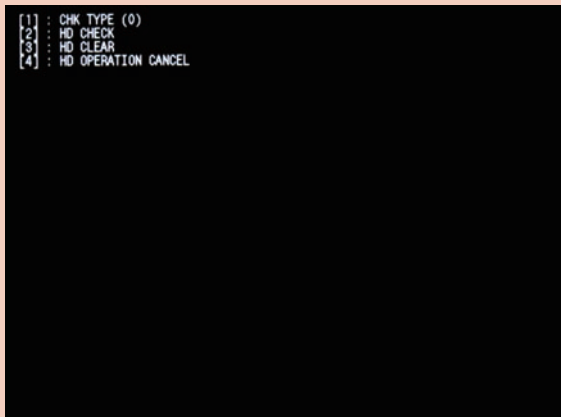
Executing format on the machine in use deletes all the user data in the HDD as well as the MEAP application (caution); therefore, be sure to gain agreement with the user.

Formatting is necessary when replacing a service part HDD. Note that recovery is not available by HD-CLEAR in service mode.

CAUTION: Points to note on FLASH (memory) model

Note that reservation to execute HDD format is available even with the machine that does not have the HDD. Do not make a reservation if the machine does not have the HDD; otherwise, the error code E602-0002 occurs and the machine cannot be started properly.

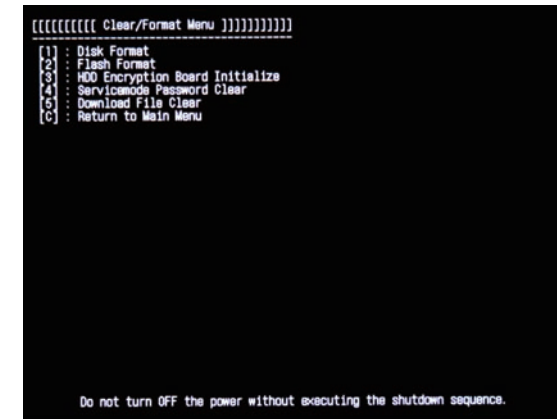
When the HDD format reservation is executed by mistake, enter service mode on the screen with the E602-0002 displayed as shown below. Execute [4]: HDD OPERATION CLEAR; and turn OFF the power to recover.



F-6-75

Operation Procedure

- 1) Enter download mode.
 - 2) Connect the USB memory storage device to the USB port.
 - 3) Press the key on the control panel.
- [4] - [1] - [0]: Execute format/ any key other than [0]: Return to the menu screen



F-6-76

Formatting is executed when the power is turned ON the next time. The message showing data initialization and wait time are displayed.

● [2]: FLASH Format

To clear all the user data in the FLASH PCB

Executing format with the machine in use deletes all the user data in the FLASH PCB as well as the MEAP application (note); therefore, be sure to gain agreement with the user.

After executing format of the FLASH PCB, the user data in the FLASH PCB is initialized and the machine is started. Download of system software is not necessary because the system software is restored from the backup.

Operation Procedure

- 1) Enter download mode.
- 2) Connect the USB memory storage device to the USB port.
- 3) Press the key on the control panel.

[4] - [2] - [0]: Execute format/ any key other than [0]: Return to the menu screen

Formatting is executed when the power is turned ON the next time. The message showing data initialization and wait time are displayed.

● [3]HDD Encryption Board Initialize

To execute when using the HDD and the HDD Encryption Board that were used with the other machine.

When initializing the Encryption Board, the data in the HDD becomes inaccessible. Therefore, to the HDD format is necessary for reuse. Be sure to obtain agreement with the user because formatting the HDD deletes all the user data and MEAP application (note).

Operation Procedure

- 1) Enter download mode.
- 2) Connect the USB memory storage device to the USB port.
- 3) Press the key on the control panel.

[4] - [3] - [0]: Execute format/ any key other than [0]: Return to the menu screen

Formatting is executed when the power is turned ON the next time. The message showing data initialization and wait time are displayed.

■ Backup/ Restore

● [5]: Backup/Restore

Backup/Restoration of SRAM can be executed

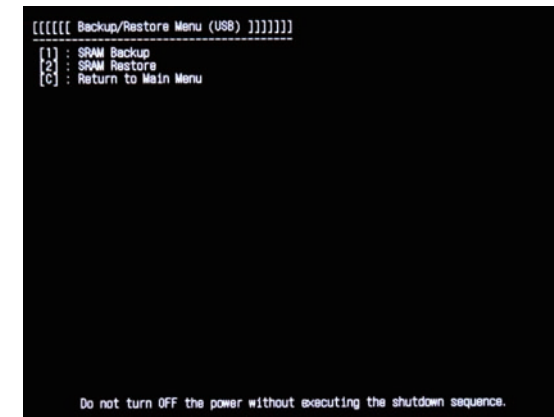
When replacing Main Controller PCB 2, this function is used to temporarily save the data stored in the SRAM to the FLASH PCB, and restore the data after replacement.

Note that this backup procedure is for backup of the data in SRAM and not for backup to the USB memory storage device.

Operation Procedure

- 1) Enter download mode.
- 2) Connect the USB memory storage device to the USB port.
- 3) Press the key on the control panel.

[5] - [1] - [0]: Execute backup/ any key other than [0]: Return to the menu screen



F-6-77

The following message is displayed when the backup process is completed.



F-6-78

4) The restoration process follows the same procedure as the backup procedure.

NOTE:

If there is no advance data backup, restoration is not available.

■ Other menus

● [6]: Other Menu 2

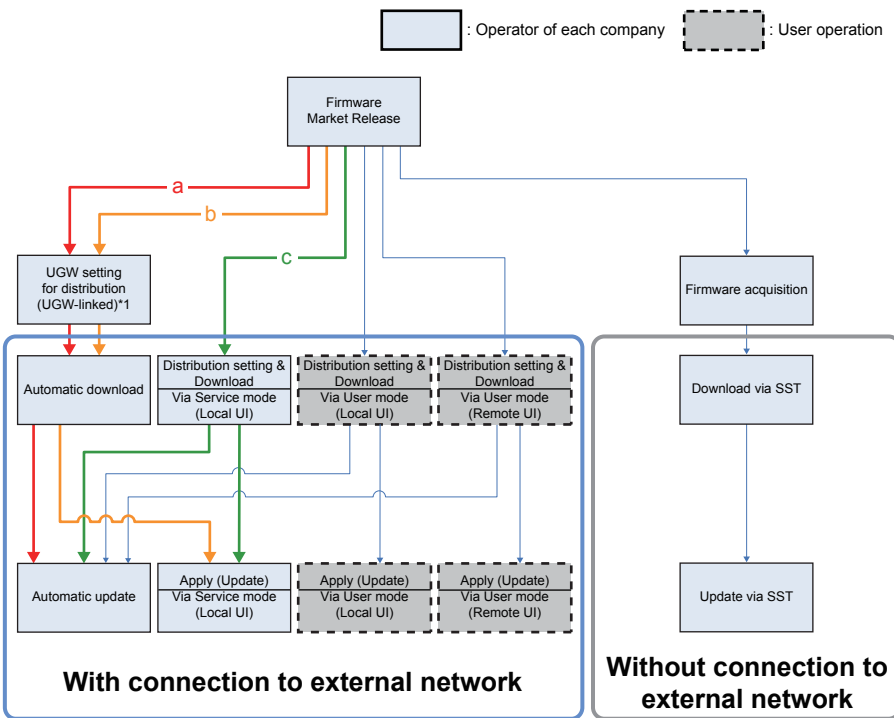
This item is not used

Version Upgrade via CDS

Overview

Among the 4 methods in which service technicians provide firmware install services, the following 3 methods are available using Updater functions.

- a. UGW-linked Download and Update (Full-remote Update)
- b. UGW-linked Download (Remote Distribution Update)
- c. Manual Download and Update (On-site Update from Service Mode)



*1: Schedules for UGW-linked distribution are maintained on CDS.

F-6-79

NOTE:

- See User Manual of the device for how to connect the device to the external network.
- When needed, perform the communication test before actual download to check if the communication with the distribution server is normal.

■ Preparation

● Overview of Preparation

The following should be prepared before using Updater.

- For updating of firmware

Installation Method	Setting Sales Company's HQ	Network Settings	Enabling UGW Link	Enabling [Update Firmware] Button of User Mode	Enabling [Manual Update] Button of User Mode (Remote UI)
UGW-linked Download and Update	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-
UGW-linked Download	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-
Manual Download and Update	Yes	Yes	-	-	-
Manual Download and Update via Local UI	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	-
Manual Download and Update via Remote UI	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	-
Special Download and Update via Remote UI	Yes	-	-	-	Yes

T-6-20

- For Install of Application

Installation Method	Network Settings	Enabling [Install Application/Options] Button of User Mode
LMS-linked Installation	Yes	-
LMA-linked installation via Local UI	Yes	Yes
LMS-linked installation via Remote UI	Yes	Yes

T-6-21

● Setting Sales Company's HQ

When using devices input in the markets listed below, the default setting of Sales Company's HQ should be changed before obtaining firmware distributed from CDS. Unless the setting is changed properly, the desired firmware may not be able to be selected.

Market	Default Setting of Sales Company's HQ	Setting of Sales Company's HQ after Change
Canada	US	CA
Latin America	US/SG	LA
Hong Kong	SG	HK

T-6-22

Go to the following screen to change the setting of Sales Company's HQ.

Service Technician	Setting of Device Service Mode (Level 1)	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CDS-CTL
--------------------	------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

NOTE:

The list below shows the setting of Sales Company's HQ for CDS-CTS by market. Check and adhere to the appropriate setting for your market.

<List of Sales Company's HQ and the settings for CDS-CTL>

Japan = JP	China = CN
USA = US	Hong Kong = HK
Singapore = SG	Australia = AU
Europe = NL	Canada = CA
Korea = KR	Latin America = LA

● Network Settings

1. Connecting to External Network

The method of connecting to external network is similar to a normal network connection method. Refer to user manual of the device for details.

NOTE:

- See User Manual for how to connect the device to the external network.
- Before using UGW link or User mode, see the sections below to prepare as required.
 - "Enabling UGW Link"
 - "Enabling [Update Firmware] Button of User Mode"
 - "Enabling [Install Application/Options] Button of User Mode"

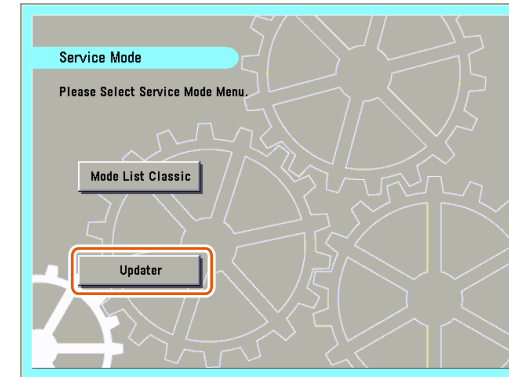
NOTE:

"External Network" here means the network connecting the device to CDS via Internet.

2. Confirming URL Setting of Distribution Server

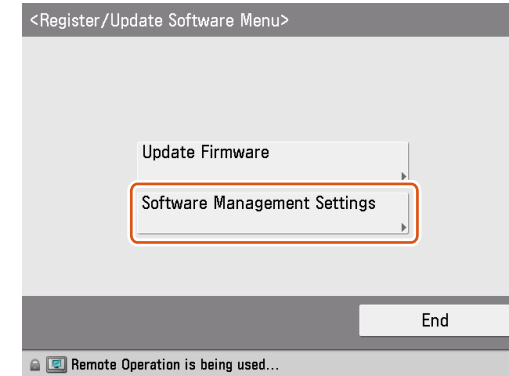
This section describes how to confirm the URL setting of the distribution server.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Press [Updater] button.



F-6-80

3. Press [Software Management Settings] button.



F-6-81

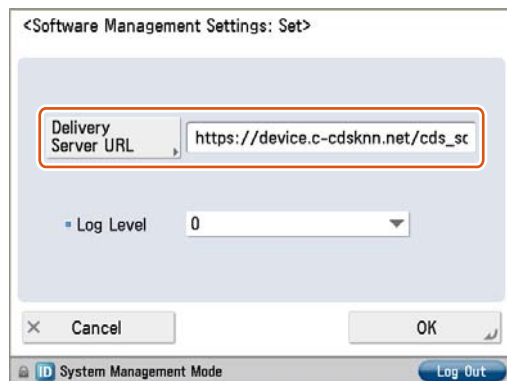
4. Press [Settings] button.



F-6-82

5. Ensure to enter "https://device.c-cdsknn.net/cds_soap/updaterif" in the field beside the [Delivery Server URL] button.

If the URL is not entered or a wrong URL is entered in the field, click [Delivery Server URL] button to show the virtual keypad. Check the URL and enter the correct one.



F-6-83

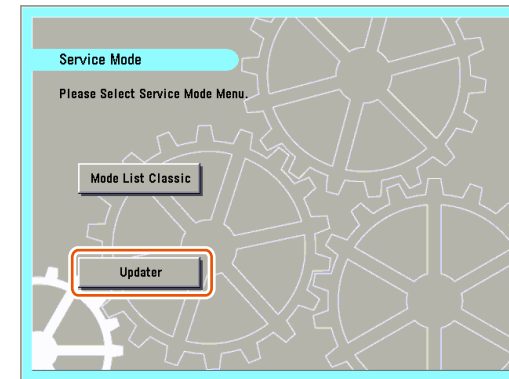
6. Press [OK] to set the entered items. Now the URL of the distribution server is successfully set.

3. Communication Test

This section describes how to check if the communication is normally done to the distribution server and/or the file server.

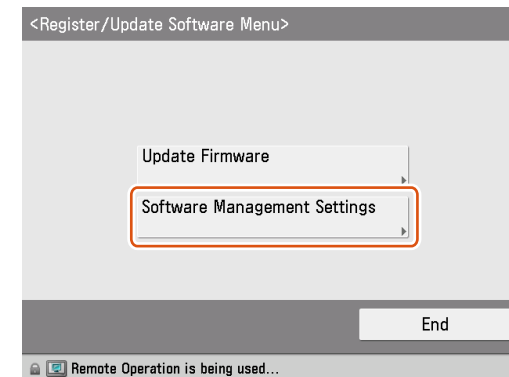
1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.

2. Press [Updater] button.



F-6-84

3. Press [Software Management Settings] button.



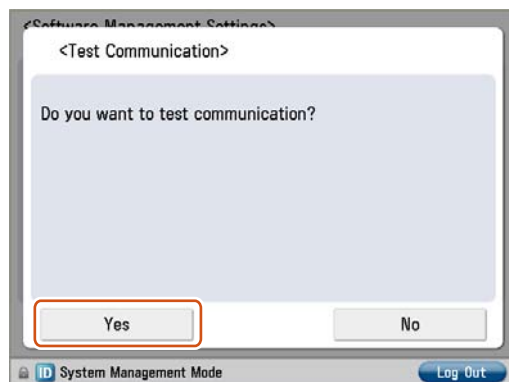
F-6-85

4. Press [Test Communication] button.



F-6-86

5. Press [Yes] button.

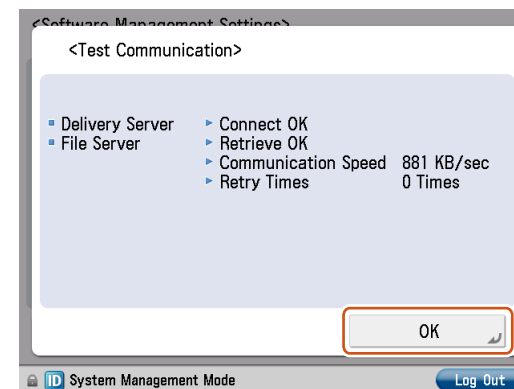


F-6-87

Obtain the download file information for communication test from the distribution server (to execute the communication test to the distribution server).

Using the download file information for communication test, the contents for test are downloaded from the file server (for the communication test to the file server).

6. Upon the communication test completed, the communication test result screen is shown. Press [OK] button to exit this operation.



F-6-88

NOTE:

Carry out the communication test with both Embedded RDS and CDS.

● Enabling UGW Link

When installing the firmware in the method of “UGW-linked Download and Update” or “UGW-linked Download”, the following should be set before actually using UGW link.

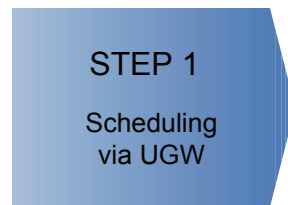
Service Technician	Setting of Device Service Mode (Level 1)	COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CDS-UGW (0 -> 1)
	Setting of UGW WebPortal	In [Customer Management] screen, set [Do not distribute firmware] to [Distribute firmware].
Sales Company's HQ	Setting of Authorities on UGW WebPortal	See "Analysis>Firmware Distribution Information" to grant the appropriate authorities to each account.

NOTE:

- See “imageWARE Remote Operator’s Manual / e-Maintenance Business Operation Manual” for how to operate UGW WebPortal.
- [Distribute Firmware] should be set on [Customer Management] screen for staff in charge of setting for [Enter customer information] or [Command for firmware distribution] in order to allow them to select the desired device on [Firmware Distribution Information] screen.

a. UGW-linked Download and Update (Full-remote Update)

See the figure below for the operational flow of “UGW-linked Download and Update”.



F-6-89

STEP1: Scheduling via UGW

The firmware distribution schedule to the certain device should be set on UGW. See “UGW-linked Download and Update” in chapter 5 of Operation Manual of Content Delivery System for Firmware Distribution for details.

The device checks the schedule concerned every 12 hours on UGW. This allows the device to register the firmware distribution setting, enabling automatic firmware download and update.

CAUTION:

Firmware update will not be triggered when any of the following jobs remains in the queue.

- Print
- Scan
- Fax (except I-FAX; this function is enabled for I-FAX only during Print/Scan operation)

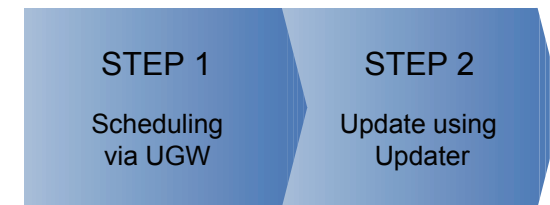
See the section of "Wait for EOJ (end of job) Function" under “Limitations and Cautions”, “Updater” of Chapter 2 “Technology” of this manual for more detailed information.

NOTE:

To contacts registered for E-mail notification on UGW, the E-mail is sent from UGW upon completing firmware update.

b. UGW-linked Download (Remote Distribution Update)

See the figure below for the operational flow of “UGW-linked download”.



F-6-90

STEP 1: Scheduling via UGW

The firmware distribution schedule to the certain device should be set on UGW. See “UGW-linked Download” in Operation Manual of Content Delivery System (for Firmware Distribution) for details.

NOTE:

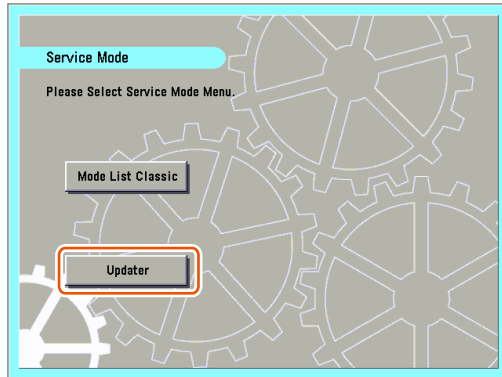
The firmware downloaded by scheduling via UGW can be checked/deleted from User mode, but cannot be updated. If a user download the other firmware, the firmware downloaded with "UGW-linked Download" is overwritten.

STEP 2: Update using Updater

The firmware downloaded on the device can be updated using Updater functions.

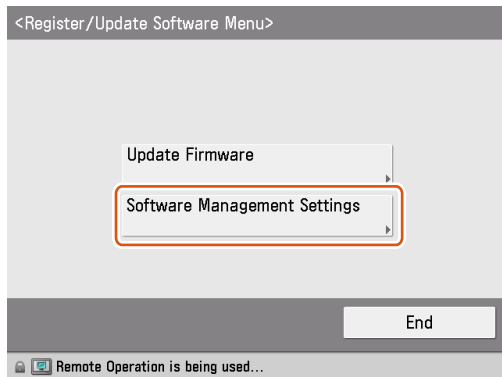
1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.

2. Press [Updater] button.



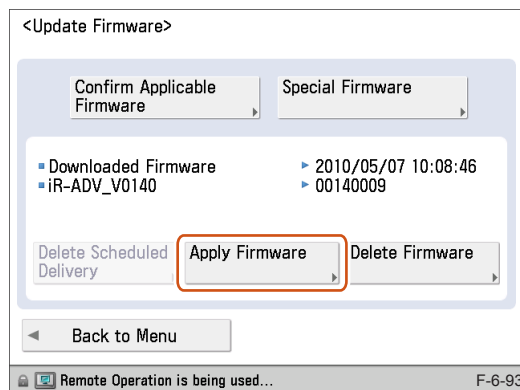
F-6-91

3. Press [Update Firmware] button.



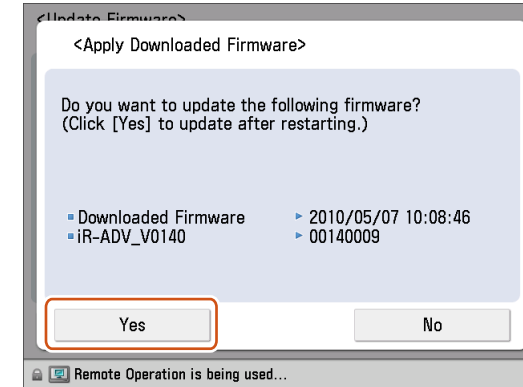
F-6-92

4. Press [Apply Firmware] button.



F-6-93

5. Confirm the downloaded firmware and press [Yes] button.



F-6-94

6. The firmware is applied to the device. The device is automatically restarted when the firmware is successfully applied.

7. When the device is restarted, confirm the version of the firmware.

- 1). Press [Check Counter Key] button on the control panel.
- 2). Press [Check Device Configuration] button.
- 3). Confirm if the updated firmware version corresponds to [Controller Version].

Now the firmware is successfully updated in the method of "Manual Download and Update".

CAUTION:

Firmware update will not be triggered when any of the following jobs remains in the queue.

- Print
- Scan
- Fax (except I-FAX; this function is enabled for I-FAX only during Print/Scan operation)

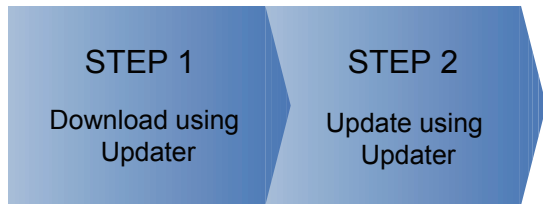
See the section of "Wait for EOJ (end of job) Function" under "Limitations and Cautions", "Updater" of Chapter 2 "Technology" of this manual for more detailed information.

NOTE:

To contacts registered for E-mail notification on UGW, the E-mail is sent from UGW upon completing firmware update.

c. Manual Download and Update (On-site Update from Service Mode)

The figure below shows the operational flow of "Manual Download and Update".



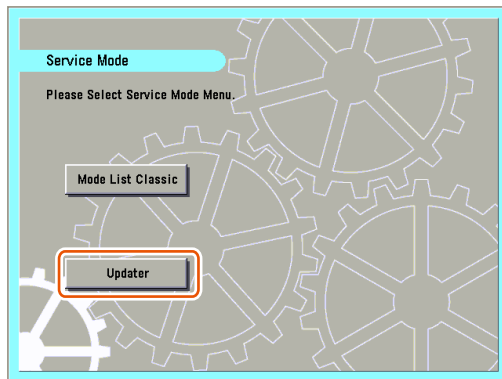
F-6-95

STEP 1: Download using Updater

The firmware can be downloaded from CDS to the device using Updater.

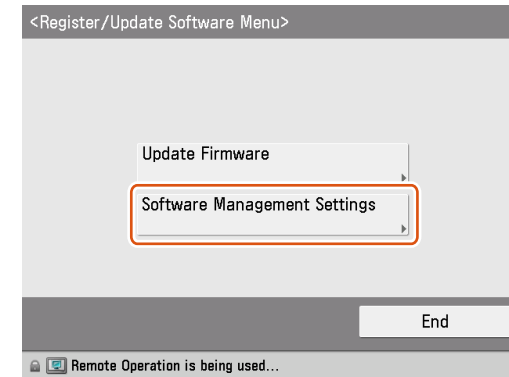
1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.

2. Press [Updater] button.



F-6-96

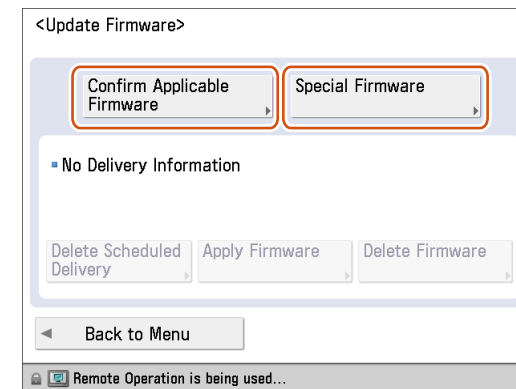
3. Press [Update Firmware] button.



F-6-97

4. Confirm the firmware to be updated in either of the following 2 ways.

- To update to the official edition, press [Confirm Applicable Firmware] button and go to Step 6.
- To update to the individual response edition, press [Special Firmware] and go to Step 5.



F-6-98

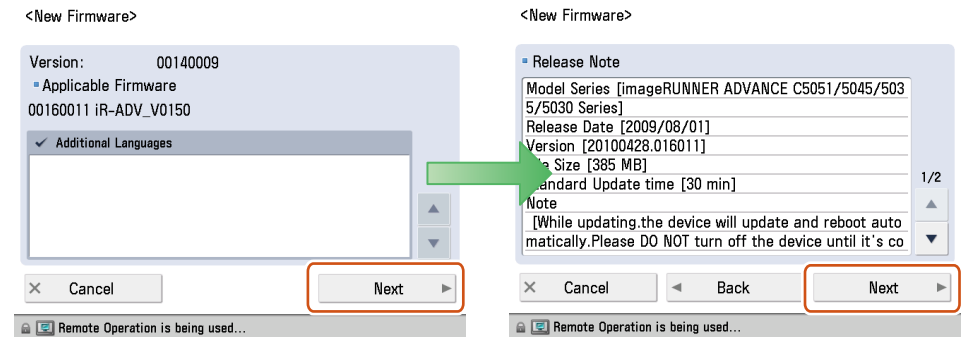
5. [Special Firmware] screen is shown as below. Enter the fields and press [OK] button.



F-6-99

- [Retrieval ID]:
Enter numeric up to 8 characters.
- [Password]:
Enter numeric up to 8 characters.

6. [New Firmware] screen is shown as below. Check the contents and press [Next] button.



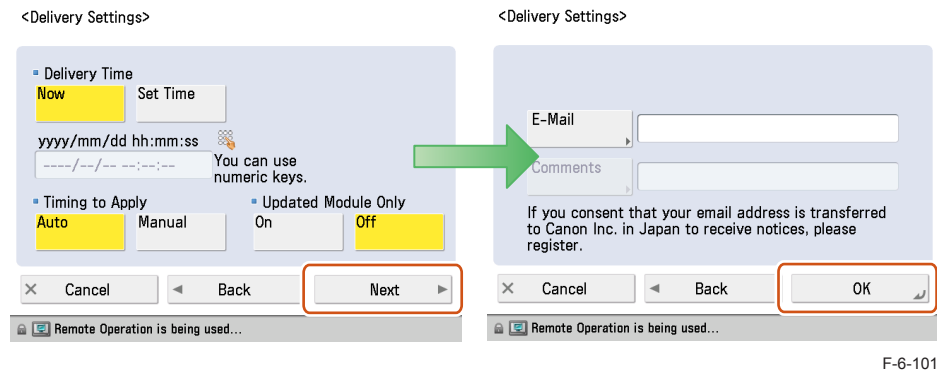
F-6-100

- [Version]:
The current firmware version is shown.
- [Applicable Firmware]:
Select the firmware applicable to the device from the dropdown list.
- [Additional Languages]:
If there are any additional languages, they are displayed.
More than 1 language can be selected, and it is possible to add another language when upgrading the firmware.
Up to 8 languages can be added, including Japanese and English. The languages already registered in the device are always selected, and SST is used to delete an unnecessary language from the device.
- [Release Note]:
If any release note is published, the contents are shown here.

NOTE:

To update to the individual response edition, the firmware corresponding to the ID and password that you input is displayed in [Applicable Firmware].

7. [Delivery Settings] screen is shown as below. Enter the fields and press [OK] button.



F-6-101

- [Delivery Time]:
Press either [Now] or [Set Time] button.
 - [Now]:
The firmware is downloaded immediately after distribution schedule is set.
 - [Set Time]:
Be sure to specify the date (within 30 days) and time. The firmware is downloaded on the specified date and time.
Enter the date and time using the numeric keypad in the format of “yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm:ss”
- [Timing to Apply]:
Press either [Auto] or [Manual] button.
 - [Auto]:
The firmware is applied automatically upon firmware downloaded.
 - [Manual]:
The firmware is automatically downloaded. Go to [Apply Firmware] to set up for updating the downloaded firmware.
- [Updated Module Only]:
Press either [On] or [Off] button.
 - [On]:
Only difference between the current and new firmware is downloaded.
 - [Off]:
The firmware to be applied is wholly downloaded.

- [E-mail]:
E-mails concerning update statuses are sent from the device to the contact registered here.
Enter the E-mail address of the service technician in charge.
Enter 1-byte alphanumeric or symbols up to 64 characters.
- [Comments]:
Enter the comment in 1-byte alphanumeric or symbols up to 128 characters.
Enter the comment to be automatically included in E-mail. Model Name in the comment will be helpful to identify the device relevant to the E-mail.

NOTE:

[Timing to Apply]

- For firmware versions with no remote update permission, [Auto] cannot be selected in [Timing to Apply]

[Updated Module Only]

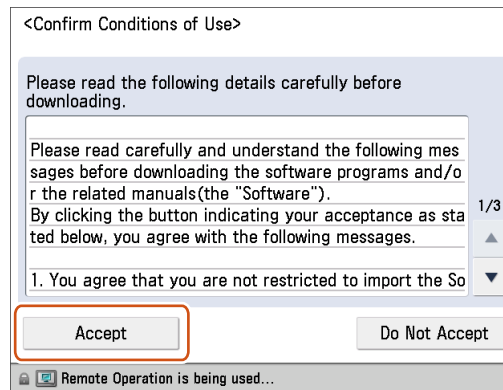
- For firmware versions with difference-only delivery disabled, only [OFF] can be selected in [Updated Module Only].

[E-mail]

- To send E-mails to multiple destinations, each E-mail address should be delimited with comma (,) or semi-colon (;).
- For E-mail addresses entered in this field, a notification E-mail is sent at the following timing.

-Distribution Set
-Distribution Started
-Distribution Finished
-Update Started
-Update Finished
-Error Occurred

8. Confirm Export Criteria screen is shown as below. Check the contents and press [Accept] button.

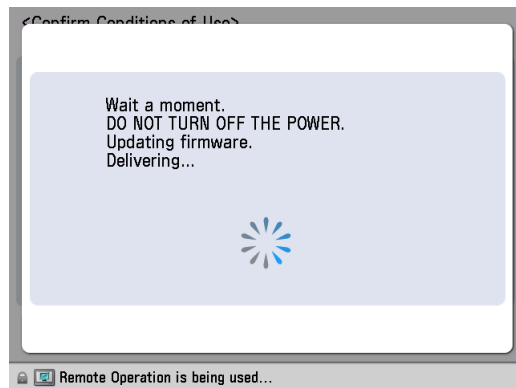


F-6-102

9. One of the screens below is shown according to the setting.

- When Distribution Time and Timing to Apply of Distribution Setting are set to [Now] and [Auto], respectively:

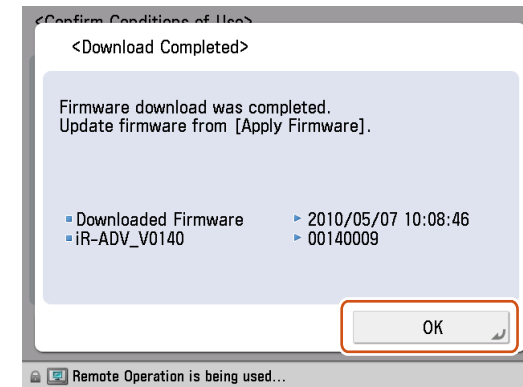
Firmware is downloaded and updated automatically to the device. The device is automatically restarted upon update completed. Now STEP 1 is successfully completed.



F-6-103

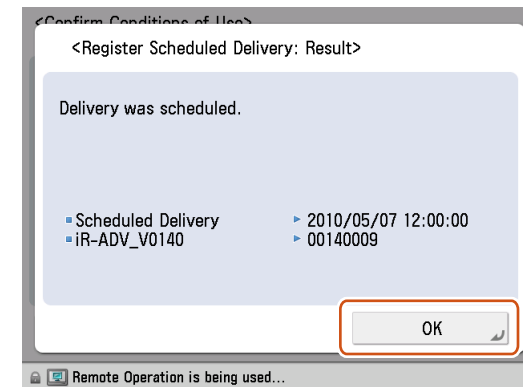
- When Distribution Time and Timing to Apply of Distribution Setting are set to [Now] and [Manual], respectively:

Confirm the firmware and press [OK] button. Now STEP 1 is successfully completed.



F-6-104

- When Distribution Time is set to [Set Time] in Distribution Setting:
- Confirm the distribution schedule and press [OK] button. Now STEP 1 is successfully completed.



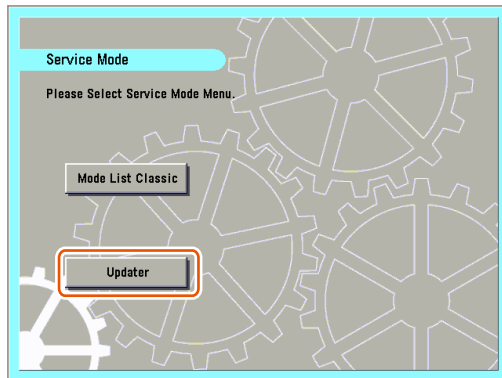
F-6-105

STEP 2: Update using Updater

The firmware downloaded to the device can be updated using Updater functions.

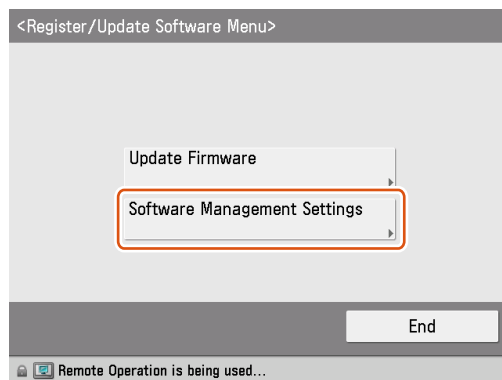
When Timing to Apply is set to [Auto] in Distribution Setting in STEP 1, the firmware is updated automatically. Only when Timing to Apply is set to [Manual], follow the steps below to update the firmware.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Press [Updater] button.



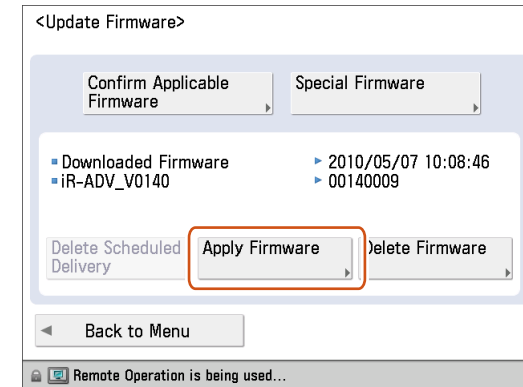
F-6-106

3. Press [Update Firmware] button.



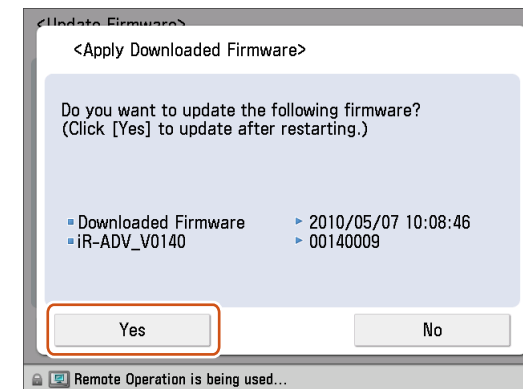
F-6-107

4. Press [Apply Firmware] button.



F-6-108

5. Confirm the downloaded firmware and press [Yes] button.



F-6-109

6. The firmware is applied to the device. The device is automatically restarted when the firmware is successfully applied.

7. When the device is restarted, confirm the version of the firmware.

- 1). Press [Check Counter Key] button on the control panel.
- 2). Press [Check Device Configuration] button.
- 3). Confirm if the updated firmware version corresponds to [Controller Version].

Now the firmware is successfully updated in the method of "Manual Download and Update".

CAUTION:

Firmware update will not be triggered when any of the following jobs remains in the queue.

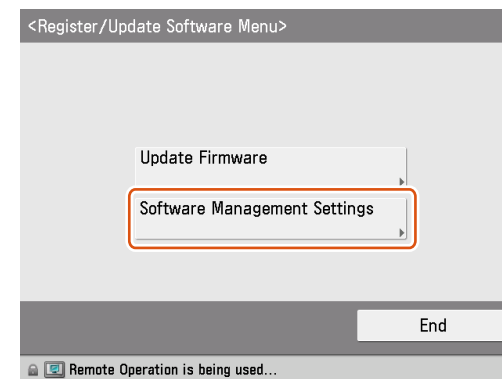
- Print
- Scan
- Fax (except I-FAX; this function is enabled for I-FAX only during Print/Scan operation)

See the section of "Wait for EOJ (end of job) Function" under "Limitations and Cautions", "Updater" of Chapter 2 "Technical Information" of this manual for more detailed information.

■ Deleting Firmware Distribution Schedule

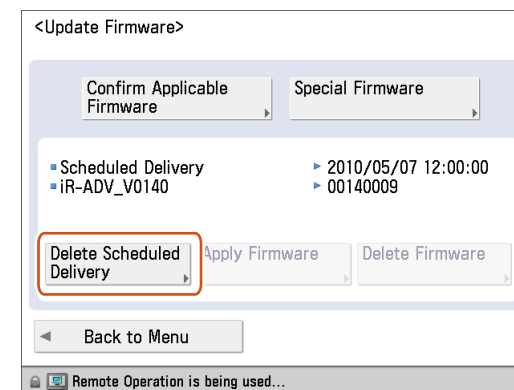
This section describes how to delete firmware distribution schedule set by Updater.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Press [Updater] button.
3. Press [Update Firmware] button.



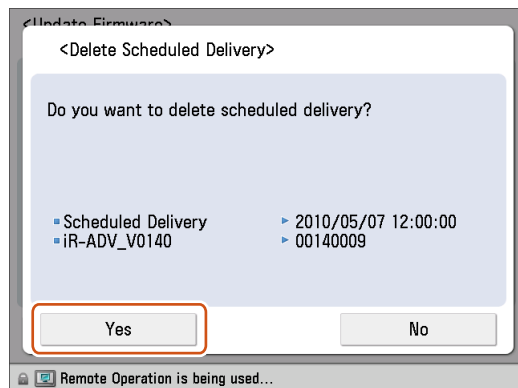
F-6-110

4. Press [Delete Scheduled Delivery] button.



F-6-111

5. Confirm the contents of the distribution schedule and press [Yes] button.



F-6-112

6. Confirm the result of deletion shown on the screen and press [OK] button. Now the firmware distribution schedule is successfully deleted.

■ Updating Downloaded Firmware (Applying Firmware)

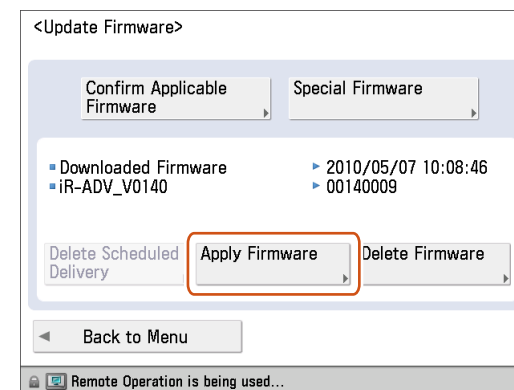
This section describes how to update the downloaded firmware.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Press [Updater] button.
3. Press [Update Firmware] button.



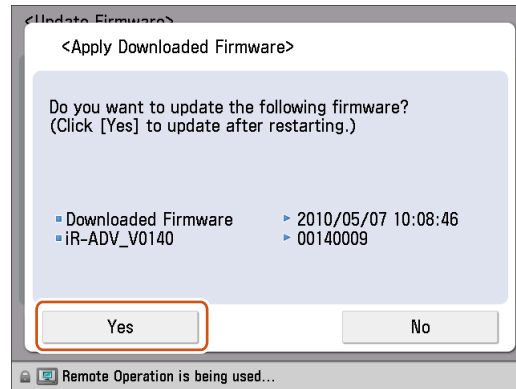
F-6-113

4. Press [Apply Firmware] button.



F-6-114

5. Confirm the downloaded firmware and press [Yes] button.



F-6-115

6. The firmware is applied to the device. The device is automatically restarted when the firmware is successfully applied.

7. When the device is restarted, confirm the version of the firmware.

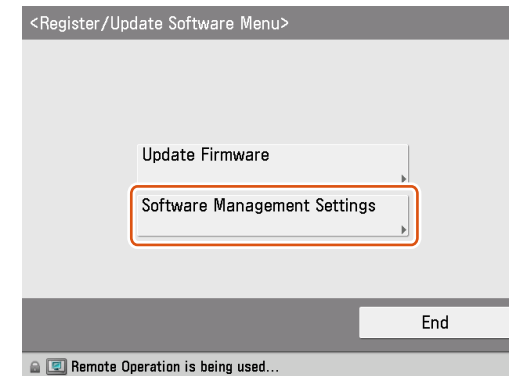
- 1). Press [Check Counter Key] button on the control panel.
- 2). Press [Check Device Configuration] button.
- 3). Confirm if the updated firmware version corresponds to [Controller Version].

Now the firmware is successfully updated in the method.

Deleting Downloaded Firmware

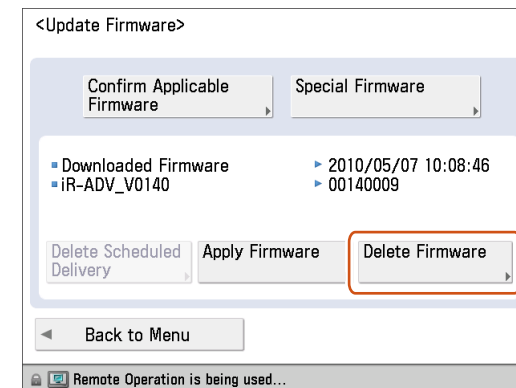
This section describes how to delete the downloaded firmware using Updater.

1. Start [Service Mode] at Level 1.
2. Press [Updater] button.
3. Press [Update Firmware] button.



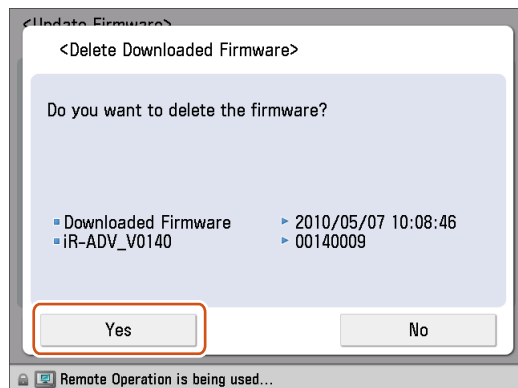
F-6-116

4. Press [Delete Firmware] button.



F-6-117

5. Confirm the downloaded firmware to be deleted and press [Yes] button.



F-6-118

6. Confirm the result of deletion and press [OK] button. Now the downloaded firmware is successfully deleted.

Troubleshooting on Firmware Installation

No.1

Symptom: I can't find the firmware to be updated using Updater.

Cause: Preparation has not been properly done.

Action: Confirm the setting of Sales Company's HQ below.

Setting of Device [SERVICE MODE] (Level1)

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CDS-CTL



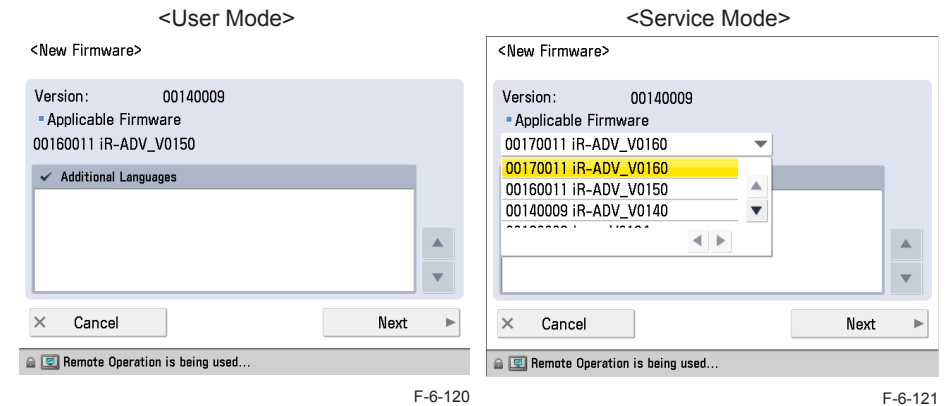
F-6-119

Cause: The version currently in use is not available for update.

Action: Download the release note from CDS separately to upgrade to the version available for update.

Cause: You try to download firmware from User mode. You can download only the latest version of firmware from User mode.

Action: Download from Service mode.



F-6-120

F-6-121

No.2

Symptom: Firmware download is aborted during operation using Updater functions.

Cause: The network cable is disconnected or the power went off due to blackout and the like.

Action: Retry download. Firmware under download is cancelled upon aborted.

No.3

Symptom: Firmware update is aborted during operation using Updater functions and the device cannot be started.

Cause: The power went off due to blackout and the like.

Action: Service technicians should follow the steps below via SST.

1. Press [2] and [8] buttons at a time to start the device.
 - 1) Turn on the power and hold down [2] and [8] buttons at a time on the control panel.
 - 2) [Download Mode] is shown on Local UI.

If the operation above does not trigger the download mode, BOOT (Flash Memory, service parts) should be replaced (takes up to 1 minute for rewriting).

If the operation above successfully triggers the download mode, go to the next steps below.
2. Via SST, format the HDD of BOOT Dev only.
3. Via SST, install the firmware in the device.

No.4

Symptom: Firmware has not been downloaded according to the distribution schedule.

Cause: Other firmware distribution schedule is set. Since only 1 distribution schedule is held, the registered schedule may be overridden by the new firmware distribution schedule.

Action: Once the schedule is overridden, the firmware cannot be downloaded. Distribution should be rescheduled for the firmware.

Cause: At the scheduled distribution date and time, the firmware registered was not found on CDS.

Action: Distribution should be rescheduled for the firmware.

Cause: After distribution is scheduled, device is updated to other version of firmware via SST. (Status of the firmware in the device is changed.)

Action: Distribution should be rescheduled for the firmware.

Cause: The power of the device was off at scheduled date and time.

Action: Distribution should be rescheduled for the firmware.

No.5

Symptom: The firmware presumed to be downloaded to the device cannot be found.

Cause: Since only 1 firmware can be held on the device, the firmware previously downloaded was overridden by the newly downloaded one.

Action: Retry the firmware download.

Information required for Reports

Information required for Service Technicians to Obtain on Site

- Update Logs
- System Logs (Log Level: 4)

Information to Report

- Symptom occurred
- Location of the device
- Date and Time that symptom occurred
- Steps taken for reproduction
- Firmware / Application you tried to install
- Occurrence frequency
- Model dependency (if the same symptom occurred in other models)
- Dependency on firmware/MEAP application/system option
- Conditions of symptom occurrence
 - Model
 - Firmware version installed on the device
 - List of MEAP applications installed on the device
 - Network setting information of the device
 - Service mode setting information

Setting of device service mode (Level 1)	COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CDS-CTL
	COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CDS-UGW
	COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CDS-FIRM
	COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CDS-MEAP
	COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > LOCLFIRM

* As many as the items listed above should be obtained on site. More information provided will be helpful for investigation.

Debug Logs

Obtaining Log Files

Updater log files can be obtained by copy & paste from remote UI.

This procedure is shown below.

1. Check that the “CDS-MEAP” or “CDS-FIRM” is enabled in the service mode. If they are not enabled, change the value to “1” and then restart the device.

Service mode (Level1) > Mode List

- COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CDS-MEAP: 1
- COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CDS-FIRM: 1

2. Log in the remote UI (URL: <http://<device's IP address or host name>>) using the system administrator right.

3. From “Display Logs/Communication Test” screen, obtain System Logs (log level 4) and Update Logs by copy & paste.

Top page (Remote UI) > [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Others] > [Register/Update Software] > “Display Logs/Communication Test”

The screenshot shows the 'Register/Update Software' interface for device 'ENS00264'. The 'Display Logs/Communication Test' screen is active, showing a list of system logs. The 'System Logs' dropdown menu is highlighted with a red box. The log content includes the following entries:

```

2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130205 [DLThread:1]@File[597]>--- <<< Downloading Completed I >>> ---
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130204 [DLThread:1]@File[597]>@WAITING
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 020036 ++DeliveryManager getHttpStatus() currentFunc:[8]requestFunc[8]
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 3 033404 *** event downloading ***
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 031801 download [290608222 / 307520906]
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130105 Download Finished Thread Found!
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130105 FILE INFO =====
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130105 INDEX:598
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130105
NAME : http://172.16.1.139:80/Ginger/Firm/20100428.014011_00140009/xjaibase-release-7.138.1-
auto201004141916.nif
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130105 =====
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130201 [DLThread:1]@File[598]>Requested File Download
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130201 [DLThread:1]@File[598]>@HTTP-NOTIFIED
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130201 [DLThread:1]@File[598]>Requested File Download completed!
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130204 [DLThread:1]@File[598]>@EXIT WAITING
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130205 [DLThread:1]@File[598]>--- <<< Downloading >>> ---
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130500 [DLThread:1]@File[598]>Server Host[172.16.1.139:80] Port[80]
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 4 130500 [DLThread:1]@File[598]>adapter connect no proxy.
[2010/05/07 10:11:22] 3 130209 [DLThread:0]@File[595]>Another 1M bytes downloaded

```

Version 3.0.2.14i Copyright CANON INC. 2010 All Rights Reserved

F-6-122

NOTE:

- See the section of “Setting Log Level” under “Various Setting”, “System Management Operations” of “Updater” of Chapter 2 “Technology” of this manual for more details of changing Log Level.

4. If the value of CDS-MEAP or CDS-FIRM was changed in the service mode, return to the original value and then restart the device to enable this setting.

Obtaining the log files is completed.

Error Messages

Error messages displayed in LUI on a device are shown below. As to error codes, see the next list.

No.	Messages	Timing of display	Cause	Remedy
1	An error occurred with the delivery server. Contact your sales representative. Error Code: [xxx]	In communicating with the delivery server.	System error occurred in server.	Obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
2	Delivery server is stopped. Wait a while and then try to perform the operation again. Check the following URL for details. <Stopped Delivery Server URL>	In communicating with the delivery server.	Delivery server stopped.	Check the delivery server stop information. After the delivery server starts, perform the operation from this application. When the delivery server stop information is not available, contact the sales company's Support Department.
3	Failed to connect to delivery server. Check the delivery server and network.	In communicating with the delivery server.	Communication error due to incorrect settings of CDS URL.	Set correct CDS URL in the Updater settings.
			Excluding delivery server stop, communication error to the delivery server occurred.	Check if the network environment is correct to solve the cause of the error occurrence. If the network environment of the device is correct, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
4	Download was stopped because an error occurred with the file server. Check the network.	At the time of file download	Communication error to the delivery server occurred.	Check if the network environment is correct to solve the cause of the error occurrence. If the network environment of the device is correct, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
5	Downloaded files are invalid. Check the network.	At the time of file download	The received file is broken.	After checking the network environment of the device, re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
6	Failed to retrieve information of special firmware. Check the retrieval ID and password.	Acquisition of applicable firmware information	No information exists about firmware for special firmware retrieval ID or Password is invalid.	Enter the correct firmware ID or Password applicable to the firmware information. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
7	Scheduled delivery information of firmware does not exist. Check it because it may already have been deleted.	Acquisition of applicable firmware information	Delivery information with specified delivery ID does not exist.	Register the delivery schedule again. If this occurs at the time of canceling file download, deleting downloaded firmware or deleting scheduled delivery, no remedy is required.
8	Failed to apply firmware.	Firmware application error	Error due to the application (NLM)	Obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
9	Delivery Server : Connect Failed File Server : Retrieve Failed Error Code: [xxxx]	Communication test, etc. (communication test result dialogue)	In the communication test, failed to connect to the delivery server.	Check the network environment of the device, and re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			In SOAP communication, failed to success after 1 min retry. ID and Password required for proxy to connect to the internet are not configured in device.	Set proxy and restart the communication test. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.

No.	Messages	Timing of display	Cause	Remedy
9	Delivery Server : Connect Failed File Server : Retrieve Failed Error Code: [xxxx]	Communication test, etc. (communication test result dialogue)	The access to the network is limited.	Set the user environment to make the access to the following domain available. https://device.cdsknn.net/ http://cdsknn.net.edgesuite.net/ If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			Delivery server stopped.	Contact Field Support Group in the sale company. After confirmation that the delivery server has been restored, restart the communication test. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company again.
10	Delivery Server : Connect OK File Server : Retrieve Failed Error Code: [xxxx]	Delivery Server : Connect OK File Server : Retrieve Failed Error Code: [XXXX]	Due to no return of data for the communication test, time-out (in HTTP communication, no response for 1min) occurred. After that, retried but failed to connect to server.	Check the network environment of the device and re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			The network cable was disconnected during data download in the communication test.	Reconnect the network cable and then restart the communication test. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			The file server stopped during data download in the communication test.	Contact the sales company's Support Department. After confirmation that the delivery server has been restored, restart the communication test. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company again.
			Hash value in the communication test file is incorrect.	Check the network environment and re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
11	An error occurred. Error Code: [xxx]	communication test, etc. (main screen)	The max value (space/file) was exceeded and new log was not accepted. Normally an old log file is deleted before the max value (space/file) is exceeded, but error may occur due to other element (e.g. I/O error).	Check if the log file exceeded the max value. <Update log> Max space: 128KB/file Max file number: 4 <System log> Max space: 512KB/file Max file number: 4 If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
		Notice of version information (main screen)	Failed to acquire version information of device due to no CDS registration of firmware version of device.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.

No.	Messages	Timing of display	Cause	Remedy
			At the time of notifying version information, failed to connect to the delivery server.	Check if the network environment is correct to solve the cause of the error occurrence. If the network environment of the device is correct, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			No return of notifying version information	
			Network cable was disconnected during notice of version information.	Re-connect the network cable and re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			Failed to send notice of version information since the main power was turned OFF and then ON during the sending.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			Server stopped at the time of sending notice of version information.	Check the network environment of the device and re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			An internal error occurred at the time of sending notice of version information.	Obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
		UGW linkage (main screen)	UGW linkage was turned ON when eRDS was OFF.	For a device using eRDS, turn ON the eRDS. For a device not using eRDS, turn OFF the UGW linkage. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			An internal error occurred at the time of acquiring delivery information.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
		On-site (error dialogue)	An internal error occurred at the time of acquiring applicable firmware information.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			An internal error occurred at the time of sending approval information.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			An internal error occurred at the time of delivery order	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
		Immediate download (error dialogue)	An internal error occurred at the time of requesting firmware delivery information.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			During the download, all space in the storage disk was occupied. (DiskFull)	After adding vacant space of the storage disk, re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.

No.	Messages	Timing of display	Cause	Remedy
			At the end of receipt, an internal error occurred.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
		Manual update (error dialogue)	At the update start, an internal error occurred.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company
		Automatic update (error dialogue)	At the update start, an internal error occurred.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
		Deletion of downloaded firmware	At the time of notifying cancellation, an internal error occurred.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
12	An error occurred. Check the Update Firmware screen	UGW linkage (main screen)	eRDS sent an order but Updater failed to connect to server.	Conduct a communication test to analyze the cause of the error. After solving the cause, resend the order from the eRDS. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			Delivery server stopped.	Contact the sales company's Support Department. After confirming restoration of the delivery server, re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			Scheduled date and time acquired from the delivery server was before current time (15 or more min had passed.)	Do the delivery setting from UGW again. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			Scheduled data and time acquired from the delivery server did not exist.	Do the delivery setting from UGW again. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
		Immediate download (main screen)	At the time of immediate download, turned OFF and then ON the power of device main body.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
		Manual update (main screen) Automatic update (main screen)	Updated version was different from the ordered version.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			After the update, failed to connect to the delivery server.	Check the network environment and re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			After the update, delivery server stopped.	Contact the sales company's Support Department. After confirming restoration of the delivery server, re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.

No.	Messages	Timing of display	Cause	Remedy
			After the update, the network cable was disconnected.	Re-connect the network cable and re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			After the update, server returned an error.	Obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			After the update, an internal error occurred.	If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
13	Delivery Error Error Code: [xxx]	UGW linkage (Update Firmware screen)	eRDS sent an order but Updater failed to connect to the server.	Conduct a communication test to analyze the cause of the error. After solving the cause, resend the order from the eRDS. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			The delivery server stopped.	Contact the sales company's Support Department. After confirming restoration of the delivery server, re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
			The scheduled data and time acquired from delivery server does not exist.	Do the delivery setting from UGW again. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
14	Delivery Error Delivery Time Delivery Firmware Label Delivery Firmware version Error Code: [xxx]	UGW linkage (Update Firmware screen)	The scheduled date and time acquired from delivery server was before current time (15 or more min had passed).	Do the delivery setting from UGW again. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
		Immediate download (Update Firmware screen)	At the time of immediate download, turned OFF and then ON the power of device main body.	Re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
15	Applicable firmware is not registered.	On-site (error dialogue)	At the user site, no latest firmware exists.	This means the current firmware is the latest, so this error has no impact. But when the latest firmware to be retrieved must exist e.g. released new firmware information has been notified, contact Field Support Group in the sales company.
			No applicable firmware exists on CDS, so the service person can't select any applicable firmware.	Contact the sales company's Support Department.
16	Restart failed. Turn the main power OFF and ON.	Manual update (error dialogue)	An error occurred at the time of the device restart.	After turning OFF and then ON the main power of the device, re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.
		Automatic update (error dialogue)	An error occurred at the time of the device restart.	After turning OFF and then ON the main power of the device, re-execute the job. If it recurs, obtain the log etc. (Refer to "Information required for Reports" under "Version Upgrade via CDS", "Version Upgrade" of Chapter 6 "Troubleshooting" of this manual.) and contact Support Div. of the sales company.

T-6-23

Error Code

The following shows the error codes displayed on CDS error dialogs and the Control Panel of the device (local UI) and explanation of those error codes.

How to read an error code

The diagram illustrates the structure of the error code 84014206. It shows the code appearing in a 'Local UI' dialog and an 'Error Message dialog'. Arrows connect the digits of the code to a table that explains their meaning.

Code	Value	Contents
The first digit Error field	8	Error
The second digit Operator	0 1 2 3 4 5 6	Not defined. CDS server Updater UGW Service person IT administrator (User) Scheduled Update
The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	XX	Method
The 5th digit Category code	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	Category code
The 6 - 8th digits Description code	000-	See Error code list

F-6-123

List of Error Codes Likely to Be Displayed

In the list shown below, error codes which are likely to be displayed are classified into two groups:

- Error codes caused by the CDS server (error codes starting with "81")
- Error codes caused by the device (error codes starting with "82" to "86")

When an error code is displayed, check this list first. If it is not in this list, see "Error Code".

Error codes caused by the CDS server (error codes starting with "81")

Error Code (hex number)	Description	Remedy
Error codes starting with "81": CDS server		
81021008	As to the device serial number in the data entry items, there is no applicable device code product	Check registration of LMS. (CINC)
81040002	In a string type of a data entry item, digit number and/or character type is/are set against the regulations 81040002 is displayed in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The number of digits of the registration ID or password is not 8. • The registration ID or password includes characters other than single-byte numeric characters. 	When 81040002 is displayed: Enter the correct ID and password for Special Firmware. (User)
81041012	Device is "Not applicable to CDS" (Firmware distribution) * It occurs only when a device that can access CDS is managed.	Register the device as a CDS device.
81060002	In a string type of a data entry item, digit number and/or character type is/are set against the regulations 81060002 is displayed in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The number of digits or type of characters used for Firm Type, Firmware Version, Firmware Group Version, or Firmware Label does not meet the specified number of digits or type of characters. • The character string of Firmware Group Version (firmGroupVersion) includes characters other than numeric values. • The number of digits of E-mail Address (mailAddress) is larger than 128. • Characters other than single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols are used for E-mail Address (mailAddress). • An invalid e-mail address was input (The domain name is missing, .(dot) was input instead of , (comma), etc.) 	When 81060002 is displayed due to an error in Firm Type, Firmware Version, or Firmware Group Version, register the correct firmware again.(CINC) When 81060002 is displayed due to an invalid e-mail address, register the correct e-mail address. (User)
81081014	When confirmation of the firmware distribution settings ended in time-out. CDS was not accessed within 30 minutes after the distribution time. The device has been turned OFF, the network has been disconnected, etc.	Search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.
81091001	81091001 is displayed in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The firmware information of the device at the time of execution of distribution differs from the firmware information of the device at the time of registration of the distribution schedule. The firmware was upgraded without using CDS when distribution schedule for the device that supports the UGW-linked function had been registered. • As a result, the firmware information of the CDS server at the time of execution of distribution differs from the firmware information of the CDS server at the time of registration of the distribution schedule. When the remote update setting for the firmware to be updated was disabled after distribution schedule was registered using auto update. 	If distribution of the firmware is necessary, search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.
8106100A	The delivery status is Applying After the firmware was updated and when an update completion notification has not been sent to CDS, distribution of the firmware was attempted again before update time-out is processed in CDS.	After 2 hours and 30 minutes have passed since the failed attempt to distribute the firmware, search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.

Error Code (hex number)	Description	Remedy
8108100D	The delivery status is Distributing/Distributed/Applying/Finished/Failed 8108100D: When the distribution status was not correct, schedule information was checked with CDS. (CDS has not been notified of the status change due to a network	Search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.
810A1015	When firmware distribution time-out occurs. A reception completion notification was not sent to CDS within 24 hours after the start of the distribution. The device has been turned OFF, the network has been disconnected, etc.	Search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.
810B1010	The delivery status is New/Waiting to Distribute/Distributing/Applying/Finished/Failed 810B1010: An update start notification was sent to CDS with an invalid status. (The CDS server failed to receive the status change due to a network error, etc.)	Search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.
810C1016	Firmware update time-out occurred. An update completion notification had not been sent to CDS even after 2 hours since the start of the update.	Check the device to see if the update has been completed. When the update has ended in failure, execute the operation again if there is no problem with the device.

T-6-24

● Error codes caused by the device (error codes starting with "82" to "86")

Error Code (hex number)	Description	Remedy
Error codes starting with "82": Updater		
82001106	Another job existed immediately before the firmware update processing.	Start the operation again after terminating the job of the device
82005202	Failed to connect to the server	Check the network environment of the device (check for any problem in the DNS server), and start the operation again.
82005203	Failed to find the server	Check the network environment of the device (the proxy settings, etc.), and start the operation again.
82005204	An input/output error occurred during the connecting process to the server	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.
82005205	Failed to read a HTTP response	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.
82005206	Error in a HTTP response	Check the network environment.
82005300	Codes other than the following "3xx" definition	Check that no problem is found in the proxy settings and network environment.
82005304	Failed to receive the data	Check the network environment of the device, and start the operation again.
82005308	Invalid hash code of the download file	Check the network environment of the device, and start the operation again.
82005309	The proxy authentication method is not supported, or access to the CDS file server is not permitted.	Check the proxy authentication method being used, change the setting to use a supported proxy authentication, and then start the operation again. Check that access to the following URL is permitted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • device.c-cdsknn.net (protocol: https) • cdsknn.net.edgesuite.net (protocol: http)
82007502	The scheduled distribution had not been executed even after a certain period of time due to the power of the device being OFF at the scheduled time or other reasons.	Scheduled deliveries not executed within the defined period of time are abandoned, so register a scheduled delivery again. When setting the date and time of the scheduled delivery, be sure to designate a time when the device is ON.
82095204	An input/output error occurred during the connecting process to the server	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.
82095206	Error in a HTTP response	Check the network environment.

Error Code (hex number)	Description	Remedy
82095300	Codes other than the following "3xx" definition	Check that no problem is found in the proxy settings and network environment.
82095309	The proxy authentication method is not supported, or access to the CDS file server is not permitted.	Check the proxy authentication method being used, change the setting to use a supported proxy authentication, and then start the operation again. Check that access to the following URL is permitted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> device.c-cdsknn.net (protocol: https) cdsknn.net.edgesuite.net (protocol: http)
Error codes starting with "84": Service person		
84001106	Another job existed immediately before the firmware update processing.	Start the operation again after terminating the job of the device
84005202	Failed to connect to the server	Check the network environment of the device (check for any problem in the DNS server), and start the operation again.
84005203	Failed to find the server	Check the network environment of the device (the proxy settings, etc.), and start the operation again.
84005204	An input/output error occurred during the connecting process to the server	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.
84005205	Failed to read a HTTP response	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.
84005206	Error in a HTTP response	Check the network environment.
84005300	Codes other than the following "3xx" definition	Check that no problem is found in the proxy settings and network environment.
84005304	Failed to receive the data	Check the network environment of the device, and start the operation again.
84005308	Invalid hash code of the download file	Check the network environment of the device, and start the operation again.
84005309	The proxy authentication method is not supported, or access to the CDS file server is not permitted.	Check the proxy authentication method being used, change the setting to use a supported proxy authentication, and then start the operation again. Check that access to the following URL is permitted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> device.c-cdsknn.net (protocol: https) cdsknn.net.edgesuite.net (protocol: http)
84095203	Failed to find the server	Check the network environment of the device (the proxy settings, etc.), and start the operation again.
84095204	An input/output error occurred during the connecting process to the server	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.
84095205	Failed to read a HTTP response	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.
84095206	Error in a HTTP response	Check the network environment.
84095300	Codes other than the following "3xx" definition	Check that no problem is found in the proxy settings and network environment.
84095309	The proxy authentication method is not supported, or access to the CDS file server is not permitted.	Check the proxy authentication method being used, change the setting to use a supported proxy authentication, and then start the operation again. Check that access to the following URL is permitted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> device.c-cdsknn.net (protocol: https) cdsknn.net.edgesuite.net (protocol: http)
Error codes starting with "85": IT administrator (User)		
85001106	Another job existed immediately before the firmware update processing.	Start the operation again after terminating the job of the device
85005203	Failed to find the server	Check the network environment of the device (the proxy settings, etc.), and start the operation again.
85005204	An input/output error occurred during the connecting process to the server	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.

Error Code (hex number)	Description	Remedy
85005206	Error in a HTTP response	Check the network environment.
85005300	Codes other than the following "3xx" definition	Check that no problem is found in the proxy settings and network environment.
85005308	Invalid hash code of the download file	Check the network environment of the device, and start the operation again.
85005309	The proxy authentication method is not supported, or access to the CDS file server is not permitted.	Check the proxy authentication method being used, change the setting to use a supported proxy authentication, and then start the operation again. Check that access to the following URL is permitted. • device.c-cdsknn.net (protocol: https) • cdsknn.net.edgesuite.net (protocol: http)
85095203	Failed to find the server	Check the network environment of the device (the proxy settings, etc.), and start the operation again.
85095204	An input/output error occurred during the connecting process to the server	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.
85095206	Error in a HTTP response	Check the network environment.
85095300	Codes other than the following "3xx" definition	Check that no problem is found in the proxy settings and network environment.
850C1104	Session time-out excluding after application inquiry (after issuing delivery ID)	Start the operation again from the beginning
Error codes starting with "86": Scheduled Update		
86001106	Another job existed immediately before the firmware update processing.	Start the operation again after terminating the job of the device
86005203	Failed to find the server	Check the network environment of the device (the proxy settings, etc.), and start the operation again.
86005204	An input/output error occurred during the connecting process to the server	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.
86005205	Failed to read a HTTP response	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.
86005206	Error in a HTTP response	Check the network environment.
86005300	Codes other than the following "3xx" definition	Check that no problem is found in the proxy settings and network environment.
86005304	Failed to receive the data	Check the network environment of the device, and start the operation again.
86005305	Failed to receive the data	Check that no problem is found in the HDD. When this error occurs again, contact Support Group of sales companies.
86005308	Invalid hash code of the download file	Check the network environment of the device, and start the operation again.
86005309	The proxy authentication method is not supported, or access to the CDS file server is not permitted.	Check the proxy authentication method being used, change the setting to use a supported proxy authentication, and then start the operation again. Check that access to the following URL is permitted. • device.c-cdsknn.net (protocol: https) • cdsknn.net.edgesuite.net (protocol: http)
86095203	Failed to find the server	Check the network environment of the device (the proxy settings, etc.), and start the operation again.
86095204	An input/output error occurred during the connecting process to the server	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.
86095300	Codes other than the following "3xx" definition	Check that no problem is found in the proxy settings and network environment.

T-6-25

Error Code

The error code list is shown below. Remedy are error codes of "-", and for all the error codes out of the list, contact Field Support Group in the sales company.

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	Error											
8	0	Not defined.										
8	1	CDS server										
8	1	x	x	Relating method code								
8	1	x	x	0	Not categorized							
8	1	x	x	0	001	No value is set in a mandatory data entry item	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	Yes	-	-
8	1	x	x	0	002	In a string type of a data entry item, digit number and/or character type is/are set against the regulations 81040002 is displayed in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The number of digits of the registration ID or password is not 8. The registration ID or password includes characters other than single-byte numeric characters. 81060002 is displayed in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The number of digits or type of characters used for Firm Type, Firmware Version, Firmware Group Version, or Firmware Label does not meet the specified number of digits or type of characters. The character string of Firmware Group Version (firmGroupVersion) includes characters other than numeric values. The number of digits of E-mail Address (mailAddress) is larger than 128. Characters other than single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols are used for E-mail Address (mailAddress). An invalid e-mail address was input (The domain name is missing, . (dot) was input instead of , (comma), etc.) 	When 81040002 is displayed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter the correct ID and password for Special Firmware. (User) When 81060002 is displayed due to an error in Firm Type, Firmware Version, or Firmware Group Version: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Register the correct firmware again. (CINC) When 81060002 is displayed due to an invalid e-mail address: - Register the correct e-mail address. (User)	Yes	-	Yes	-	-
8	1	x	x	0	003	In an data entry item, the value is set against the regulations (E.g. the set value is other than "Operator: 4. Service person, 5. User")	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	Yes	-	-
8	1	x	x	0	004	No applicable delivery information exists	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	1	x	x	1	Operation							
8	1	x	x	1	001	Inconsistency between the current firmware component in the data entry item and delivery information (E.g. the conditions for automatic update are not met. The settings of a mandatory additional set are invalid) 81071001 is displayed in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A cancellation notification was sent to CDS when the distribution status was not correct. (CDS has not received the status change due to a network failure, etc.) 81091001 is displayed in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The firmware information of the device at the time of execution of distribution differs from the firmware information of the device at the time of registration of the distribution schedule. The firmware was upgraded without using CDS when distribution schedule for the device that supports the UGW-linked function had been registered. As a result, the firmware information of the CDS server at the time of execution of distribution differs from the firmware information of the CDS server at the time of registration of the distribution schedule. When the remote update setting for the firmware to be updated was disabled after distribution schedule was registered using auto update. 	If distribution of the firmware is necessary, search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.	Yes	-	Yes	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	002	In a notice of delivery-allowed information, an install-set was release to the market, but the market release was stopped during the delivery	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	003	No mail template file exists	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	004	The device serial number in the data entry item differs from that in delivery information	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	005	User is selected as Operator in the data entry items and the retrieval type is other than the latest	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	006	The retrieval type in the data entry item is special and registration ID and individual Password are not set (* Operator did not enter registration ID and individual Password)	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	007	The retrieval type in the data entry item is special and Operator is not Service person	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	008	As to the device serial number in the data entry items, there is no applicable device code product	Check registration of LMS. (CINC)	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	009	The retrieval type in the data entry items is special and there are no basic-set applicable to the registration ID and Password (* When wrong registration ID or Password was entered by an operator)	Enter correct ID and the password.	Yes	-	-	-	-

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	1	x	x	1	00A	The delivery status is Applying After the firmware was updated and when an update completion notification has not been sent to CDS, distribution of the firmware was attempted again before update time-out is processed in CDS.	After 2 hours and 30 minutes have passed since the failed attempt to distribute the firmware, search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	00B	No approval information exists about EULA or the export criteria when the delivery is determined	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	00C	The delivery status is Distributing/Distributed/Applying/Finished/Failed When the distribution status was not correct, distribution information was obtained from CDS. (CDS has not been notified of the status change due to a network failure, etc.)	Search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	00D	The delivery status is Distributing/Distributed/Applying/Finished/Failed 8108100D: When the distribution status was not correct, schedule information was checked with CDS. (CDS has not been notified of the status change due to a network	Search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	00E	The delivery status is New/Waiting to Distribute/Distributed/Applying/Finished/Failed	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	00F	The delivery code is other than Distributing. (Firmware distribution)	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	010	The delivery status is New/Waiting to Distribute/Distributing/Applying/Finished/Failed 810B1010: An update start notification was sent to CDS with an invalid status. (The CDS server failed to receive the status change due to a network error, etc.)	Search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	011	The delivery status is Distributing/Distributed/Applying/Finished/Failed	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	012	Device is "Not applicable to CDS" (Firmware distribution) * It occurs only when a device that can access CDS is managed.	Register the device as a CDS device.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	013	When the specified distribution time was within the time frame of CDS distribution stop. (Firmware distribution)	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	014	When confirmation of the firmware distribution settings ended in time-out. CDS was not accessed within 30 minutes after the distribution time. The device has been turned OFF, the network has been disconnected, etc.	Search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	015	When firmware distribution time-out occurs. A reception completion notification was not sent to CDS within 24 hours after the start of the distribution. The device has been turned OFF, the network has been disconnected, etc.	Search the applicable firmware again, and perform distribution of the firmware.	Yes	-	-	-	-

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	1	x	x	1	016	Firmware update time-out occurred. An update completion notification had not been sent to CDS even after 2 hours since the start of the update.	Check the device to see if the update has been completed. When the update has ended in failure, execute the operation again if there is no problem with the device.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	017	When the firmware distribution information notification showed an error in processing the distribution information.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	018	When the firmware distribution information notification showed an error in processing the scheduled update information.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	019	When the status of the scheduled update information is "Set", "Finished", or "Failed".	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	020	When the status of the scheduled update information is "Waiting to Transmit" or "New".	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	021	When the status of the scheduled update information is "Set".	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	022	The scheduled update setting information differs between the input information and the distribution information.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	1	023	When the distribution status is "Cancel".	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	I/O							
8	1	x	x	2	001	The specified license access number does not exist in LMS	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	002	The specified license access number has been deauthorized	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	003	The package product of the entered license access number doesn't include MEAP application/System Option	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	004	The sales company for the MEAP application isn't identical with the sales company for the package product	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	005	The number of licenses to be issued will exceed the limit number allowed to register	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	006	As for System Option for the same function, the license keys were issued more than the defined number of times for the same device serial number	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	007	No device product exists applicable to the optional product	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	008	No product exists applicable to the device serial number	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	009	The product of the entered license access number cannot be used with this device because the settings of the sales company are incorrect	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	00A	No product linked to the license access number is registered in CDS for delivery	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	00B	Although the product linked to the license access number is registered in CDS for delivery, the delivery is stopped now	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	00C	No existence of optional product applicable to the device serial number.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	1	x	x	2	00D	The license access number has been registered for another device	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	00E	For the device product applicable to the device serial number, no available software (MEAP application, System Option) exists	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	010	LMS system error * In support of multi-manifest, when the MFP/SFP section value shows any value other than 0 or 1, LMS returns an error code "-215" to CDS.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	011	LMS system error * In the case of failure in collection of manifest in support of multi-manifest, LMS returns an error code "-999" to CDS.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	012	License cannot be issued for the upgrade product. Since the configuration has been changed in the upgrade product, there are no applications and options for which a license can be issued.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	2	013	Not registered in CSA CSA associated with the license access number does not include any products associated with the group ID.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F		L-CDS						
8	1	x	x	F	000	Unclassified	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F	001	Communication test information not registered Download file information for communication test does not exist.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F	003	Firmware information not registered Firmware information corresponding to the target device serial number does not exist.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F	007	Invalid firmware version The firmware version at the time of registration of the distribution schedule differs from the current firmware version.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F	008	Invalid firmware information Firmware information to be distributed does not exist.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F	009	Forcible termination Distribution information is forcibly terminated from the server UI.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F	00F	Invalid distribution status Distribution status of the server is in a condition where a requested method from the client cannot be accepted.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F	010	Invalid parameter Requested parameter from the client is not correct.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F	011	Version information not registered Version information corresponding to the specified serial number has not been registered.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F	012	Distribution time-out Distribution has not been completed even after a certain period of time from the start of the distribution.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	1	x	x	F	013	Unable to judge the necessity of distribution Version information from a device has not been registered in the local CDS. Since the local CDS does not know the version information of the device, it cannot respond to the distribution request from updater. As a result of that, an error occurred when the request has been made.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F	FFE	DB error General error to access DB.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	1	x	x	F	FFF	DB error Internal error other than error to access DB (file I/O, etc.).	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	2~6											
8	2~6	x	x	Relating method code								
8	2~6	x	x	0	Not cartelized							
8	2~6	x	x	0	000	Not defined	Normally not indicated					
8	2~6	x	x	0	100	Unknown error	Normally not indicated					
8	2~6	x	x	1	Operation							
8	2~6	x	x	1	001	Processing exclusively	Start the operation again after terminating other Updater operations being executed simultaneously.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	002	Stopped	Restart the device, and start the operation again.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	101	Failed to process preparation for use	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	102	Failed to process use end	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	103	Time out during restart of readiness preparation	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	104	Session time-out excluding after application inquiry (after issuing delivery ID)	Start the operation again from the beginning	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	105	CDS URL is not set	Set CDS URL	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	106	Another job existed immediately before the firmware update processing.	Start the operation again after terminating the job of the device	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	201	Specifying of an iR option for a model that does not support iR options	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	202	Specifying of scheduled update for a model that does not support scheduled update	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	203	Firmware processing for a model that does not support firmware processing	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	204	L-CDS update process for a model that does not support L-CDS	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	301	Security Token verification error	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	-	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	1	302	Privilege check error	Perform the authentication as a correct user.	-	-	-	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	1	303	Parameter error	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	-	-	Yes

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	2~6	x	x	1	304	There is no distribution information from the server.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	-	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	305	Version notification is not required.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	-	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	1	306	Connection server information mismatch error	Check the connection server settings.	-	-	-	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	2	I/O							
8	2~6	x	x	2	1xx	An internal error about file operation	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	2	2xx	An internal error about XML file operation	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	2	301	Failed to output the license file	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	2	400	Codes other than the following "4xx" definition	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	2	401	Failure in creation of an auto shutdown stop file	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	2	402	Failure in deletion of the auto shutdown stop file	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	3	Device							
8	2~6	x	x	3	1xx	An internal error in CPCA	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	3	2xx	An internal error in IMI	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	3	3xx	An internal error in SMS	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	3	4xx	An internal error in NLM	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	3	5xx	Configuration Service property setting error	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	3	6xx	An internal error related to APL_CDS partition	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	3	7xx	DCM-related service error	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	4	SOAP communication							
8	2~6	x		4	101	The processing thread stopped	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	4	102	Processing SOAP communication now	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	4	103	The function type is not matched	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	4	104	An invalid SOAP response error	Check the network environment. When this problem recurs, contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	4	201	An internal error about application information	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	2~6	x	x	4	202	config.xml is NOT FOUND	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	4	203	type.xml is NOT FOUND	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	4	204	An error in binding type.xml	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	4	205	An error in creating a service tab	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	4	206	A runtime error in performing the web method	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	4	207	An unknown host error in performing the web method	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the network environment of the device and start the operation again Check if the URL settings of the CDS server are correct, and start the operation again after resetting 	Yes	-	Yes	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	4	301	The delivery server is stopped	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	4	302	<p><In the case of scheduled update> In response to a download start notification sent from the device, the distribution server returned an error and stopped the operation of the device within a certain period of time before the distribution server maintenance time.</p> <p><In the case of distribution executed by specifying the date and time> The firmware version of the device at the time when the distribution settings were specified and the version at the time immediately before update are different.</p>	<p><In the case of scheduled update> Specify the distribution settings again, making sure that the distribution server maintenance time and the scheduled update time do not overlap.</p> <p><In the case of distribution executed by specifying the date and time> Specify the distribution settings again, making sure that the firmware version of device at the time when the distribution settings are specified and the version at the time immediately before update are the same.</p>	Yes	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	5	HTTP communication							
8	2~6	x	x	5	101	Specified Hash Algorithm is unknown	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	5	102	Download file URL is invalid	Check the URL setting of CDS server, reset the setting, and then start the operation again.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	5	103	No network cable connection (device side)	Check the network environment of the device, and start the operation again.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	5	201	Invalid HTTP request	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	202	Failed to connect to the server	Check the network environment of the device (check for any problem in the DNS server), and start the operation again.	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	2~6	x	x	5	203	Failed to find the server	Check the network environment of the device (the proxy settings, etc.), and start the operation again.	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	204	An input/output error occurred during the connecting process to the server	Check that no problem is found in the two items displayed during the communication test. If any problem was found, check the network environment.	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	205	Failed to read a HTTP response	Check the network environment.	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	206	Error in a HTTP response	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	207	Generation of secure socket failed.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	208	Certificate check error	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	209	Connection time-out	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	300	Codes other than the following "3xx" definition	Check that no problem is found in the proxy settings and network environment.	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	301	Failed to retrieve the data stream	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	302	Failed to create the file object for receipt	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	303	Failed to create the data stream of the file for receipt	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	304	Failed to receive the data	Check the network environment of the device, and start the operation again.	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	305	An error about reserving the file data for receipt	Check that no problem is found in the HDD. When this error occurs again, contact Support Group of sales companies.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	5	306	Failed to close the data stream	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	5	307	Failed to close the file data for receipt	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	5	308	Invalid hash code of the download file	Check the network environment of the device, and start the operation again.	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	5	309	The proxy authentication method is not supported, or access to the CDS file server is not permitted.	Check the proxy authentication method being used, change the setting to use a supported proxy authentication, and then start the operation again. Check that access to the following URL is permitted. • device.c-cdsknn.net (protocol: https) • cdsknn.net.edgesuite.net (protocol: http)	-	-	Yes	-	Yes

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	2~6	x	x	6	Socket communication							
8	2~6	x	x	6	101	Failed to connect the eRDS	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	6	102	No response from eRDS	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	6	103	No notice of start from the eRDS	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	6	104	Error of socket reading	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	6	105	Socket communication time-out	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	Yes
8	2~6	x	x	7	Other internal codes							
8	2~6	x	x	7	002	One of installation, start or authorization failed (When installation or authorization failed, it is regarded as an error) *	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	03x	An internal error in processing the installation	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	1xx	An error by using invalid API	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	2xx	An internal error in SMS	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	301	No existence of delivery ID	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	302	Invalid delivery ID	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	303	The updated firmware information is not identical with the firmware information after activation of the Updater	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	304	The process of firmware download is incomplete It occurs when the power of the device is turned OFF during download.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	305	The update process is incomplete The power was turned OFF after completion of download and before start of update processing.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	306	The installment process is incomplete	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	401	Failed to retrieve delivery information	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	501	Failed to execute the delivery process	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	2~6	x	x	7	502	The scheduled distribution had not been executed even after a certain period of time due to the power of the device being OFF at the scheduled time or other reasons.	Scheduled deliveries not executed within the defined period of time are abandoned, so register a scheduled delivery again. When setting the date and time of the scheduled delivery, be sure to designate a time when the device is ON	-	-	Yes	-	-

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	2~6	x	x	A	Internal Module							
8	2~6	x	x	A	xxx	Communication error in the internal module	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	x											
8	x	x	x									
8	x	x	x	1	I/O							
8	x	x	x	1	200	An error occurred in the CDS server.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	x	x	x	1	201			Yes	-	-	-	-
8	x	x	x	1	202			Yes	-	-	-	-
8	x	x	x	1	203			Yes	-	-	-	-
8	x	x	x	3	Device							
8	x	x	x	3	303	Restart of the device failed.	Restart the device, and perform the operation again.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	x	x	x	3	304		When this problem recurs, obtain the Updater log, and contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	x	x	x	3	401	Application of the firmware failed.	Obtain the Updater log, and contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	x	x	x	3	402			-	-	Yes	-	-
8	x	x	x	3	403			-	-	Yes	-	-
8	x	x	x	3	404			-	-	Yes	-	-
8	x	x	x	3	405			-	-	Yes	-	-
8	x	x	x	3	406			-	-	Yes	-	-
8	x	x	x	3	407	Restart of the device failed.	Restart the device, and perform the operation again.	-	-	Yes	-	-
							When this problem recurs, obtain the Updater log, and contact the support department of the sales company.					
8	x	x	x	3	409	Application of the firmware failed.	Obtain the Updater log, and contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-
8	x	x	x	4	SOAP communication							
8	x	x	x	4	104	An error occurred in the CDS server.	Contact the support department of the sales company.	Yes	-	-	-	-
8	x	x	x	4	207	An error occurred in the CDS server due to an unknown host error at execution of Web method.	Check the network environment of the device, and then check that the URL setting of the CDS server is correct, and perform the operation again.	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error					
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	Local CDS server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network	
8	x	x	x	5	HTTP communication							
8	x	x	x	5	101	Download was canceled due to an error that occurred in the file server. Check the network environment. When there is no problem with the network environment, collect the Updater log, and contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	-	-	
8	x	x	x	5	201		-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	202		-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	203		-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	204		-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	205		-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	206		-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	300		-	-	Yes	-	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	301		-	-	Yes	-	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	302		-	-	Yes	-	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	303		-	-	Yes	-	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	304		-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	305		-	-	Yes	-	-	
8	x	x	x	5	306		-	-	Yes	-	-	
8	x	x	x	5	307		-	-	Yes	-	-	
8	x	x	x	5	309		-	-	Yes	-	Yes	
8	x	x	x	5	308		An error occurred in the CDS server due to an invalid hash code of download file. Check the network environment, and perform the operation again. When there is no problem with the network environment, collect the Updater log, and contact the support department of the sales company.	-	-	Yes	Yes	Yes

* Not displayed on a device UI

T-6-26

■ Error Codes When Using the UGW-linked Function

Codes displayed as eRDS errors when the UGW-linked function is used

Error Code (hex number)					Description	Remedy	Cause of error			
The first digit Error field	The second digit Operator	The 3rd - 4th digits Method category	The 5th digit Category code	The 6 - 8th digits Description code			CDS delivery server	UP DATER	CDS file server	Network
8	Error									
	x									
		x	x	0	Unclassified					
				000	An unexpected error occurred in the device.	Restart the device, and perform the operation again. When this problem recurs, the firmware of the device needs to be reinstalled (upgraded).	-	Yes	-	-
				002	A time-out error occurred due to no response from Updater within the specified time (3 seconds).	Obtain the sublog, and contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-
				101	Processing in the device (event processing) failed. Restart the device, and perform the operation again.	Restart the device, and perform the operation again. When this problem recurs, the firmware of the device needs to be reinstalled (upgraded).	-	Yes	-	-
				303	Queue could not be sent due to failure of processing in the device (event processing).	Restart the device, and perform the operation again. When this problem recurs, the firmware of the device needs to be reinstalled (upgraded).	-	Yes	-	-
				304	An error occurred in control of synchronization or interruption processing between processes being handled in parallel.	Wait for a while, and perform a communication test again.	-	Yes	-	-
				706	Communication with Updater failed.	Restart the device, and perform the operation again after checking that Updater has been started.	-	Yes	-	-
				707		When this problem recurs, obtain the sublog, and contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-
				708			-	Yes	-	-
				709	At the time of firmware update, the Tracking ID ordered by UGW and the one to which the Updater responded did not match.	Obtain the sublog, and contact the support department of the sales company.	-	Yes	-	-

T-6-27

■ Error Codes Not Included in the Error Code List and Remedy for Them

● Scenes Where an Error Occurs

When an error code not included in the error code list is displayed, one of the errors shown in the following scenes may have occurred.

Scenes Where an Error Occurs

Scenes Where an Error Occurs	Content
Communication test, etc. (main screen)	Log could not be written due to maximum value (capacity/the number of files) being exceeded.
Version information notification (main screen)	Retrieval of device version information ended in failure because the firmware version of the device was not registered in CDS.
	Connection to the delivery server failed at the time of notification of version information.
	The network cable was disconnected during notification of version information.
	Notification of version information ended in failure because the device was restarted during notification of version information.
UGW linkage (main screen)	UGW linkage was turned ON while eRDS was OFF.
On-site (error dialog)	An internal error occurred when obtaining the applicable firmware information.
Immediate download (error dialog)	An internal error occurred at the time of request of firmware delivery information.
	Free space in the storage destination disk ran out during download. (DiskFull)
Manual/auto update (error dialog)	An internal error occurred at start of update.
Deletion of downloaded firmware	An internal error occurred at the time of cancellation notification.

T-6-28

● Remedy

Check that the log files shown below do not exceed the maximum values.

When this problem recurs, obtain the log, and contact the support department of the sales company.

Logs and maximum capacity / number

Log name	Maximum capacity	Maximum number of files
Update log	128KB/ file	4
System log	512KB/ file	4

T-6-29

Controller Self Diagnosis

Introduction

Operation of the (2 types of) error diagnosis tools added to the main body and remedy for errors are described. These tools can reduce time to determine cause of errors occurred in field and improve the accuracy of specifying error locations.

This manual can be applied when the main body is placed in the following conditions.

- The main body does not boot. (In such a case that the Control Panel is not displayed or the progress bar does not work, etc.)
- An error is suspected to have occurred in the Main Controller PCB 1/2 and other related PCBs (child PCBs such as Flash PCB, Memory PCB or TPM mounted in the Main Controller PCB 1/2).

PCBs and units diagnosed by each tool are as follow:

● Boot System Error Diagnosis Tool

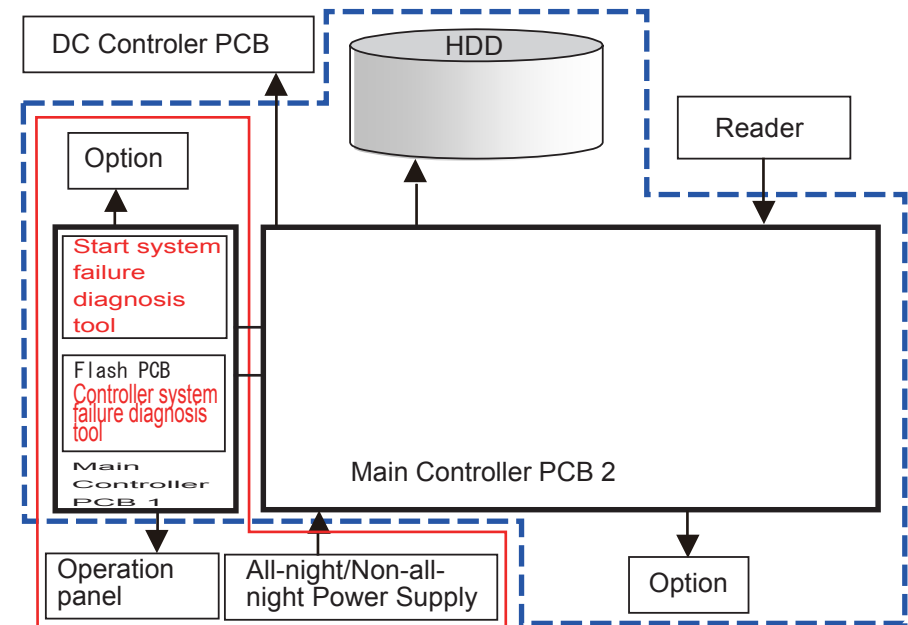
- Main Controller PCB 1 side <Main Controller PCB 1>
- Control Panel
- All-night Power Supply, Non-all-night Power Supply

● Controller System Error Diagnosis Tool

- Main Controller PCB 1 side <Main Controller PCB 1, TPM PCB, FLASH Memory PCB,>
- Main Controller PCB 2 side <Main Controller PCB 2, Memory PCB
- HDD (except Flash memory model)

Overview

Two types of error diagnosis tools are installed in this machine, and stored in the locations shown below.



F-6-124

Boot System Error Diagnosis Tool covers the components shown in the red frame (solid line) in the figure. Controller System Error Diagnosis Tool covers the components shown in the blue frame (dotted line).

● Boot System Error Diagnosis Tool

This tool automatically checks the Control Panel, Main Controller PCB 1, All-night Power Supply, and Non-all-night Power Supply, and notifies the result by the number of light-out and blinking interval of the lamp on the Control Panel.

This tool is installed in the ROM of Main Controller PCB 1.

Therefore, regardless the version of MN-CNT, this tool can be used even when an error occurs in child PCBs or when the Controller System Error Diagnosis Tool cannot be booted.

● Controller System Error Diagnosis Tool

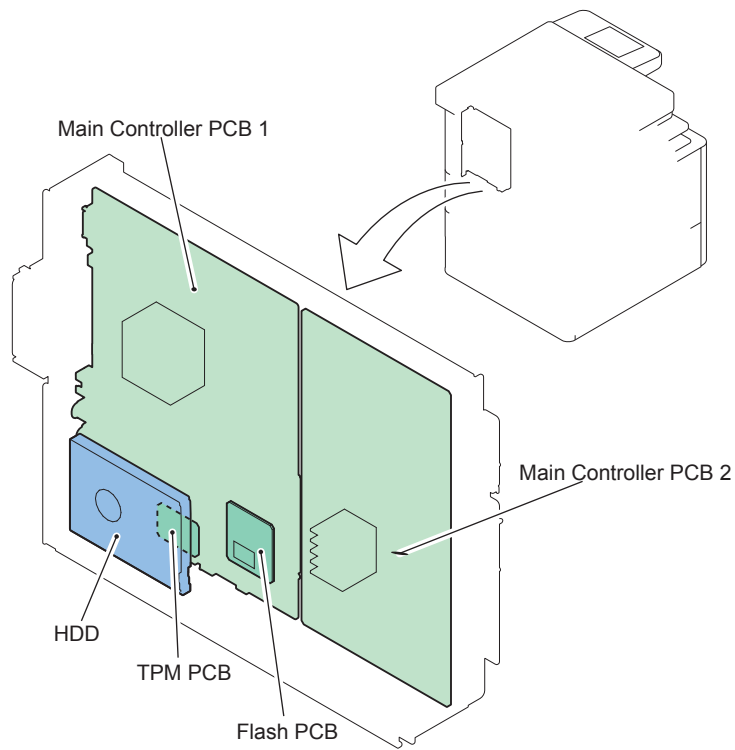
This tool automatically checks the Main Controller PCB 1/2, child PCBs mounted on the Main Controller PCB 1/2, and HDD, and display the result on the Control Panel.

This tool is installed in Flash PCB.

Therefore, this tool cannot be used when an error occurred in Flash PCB.

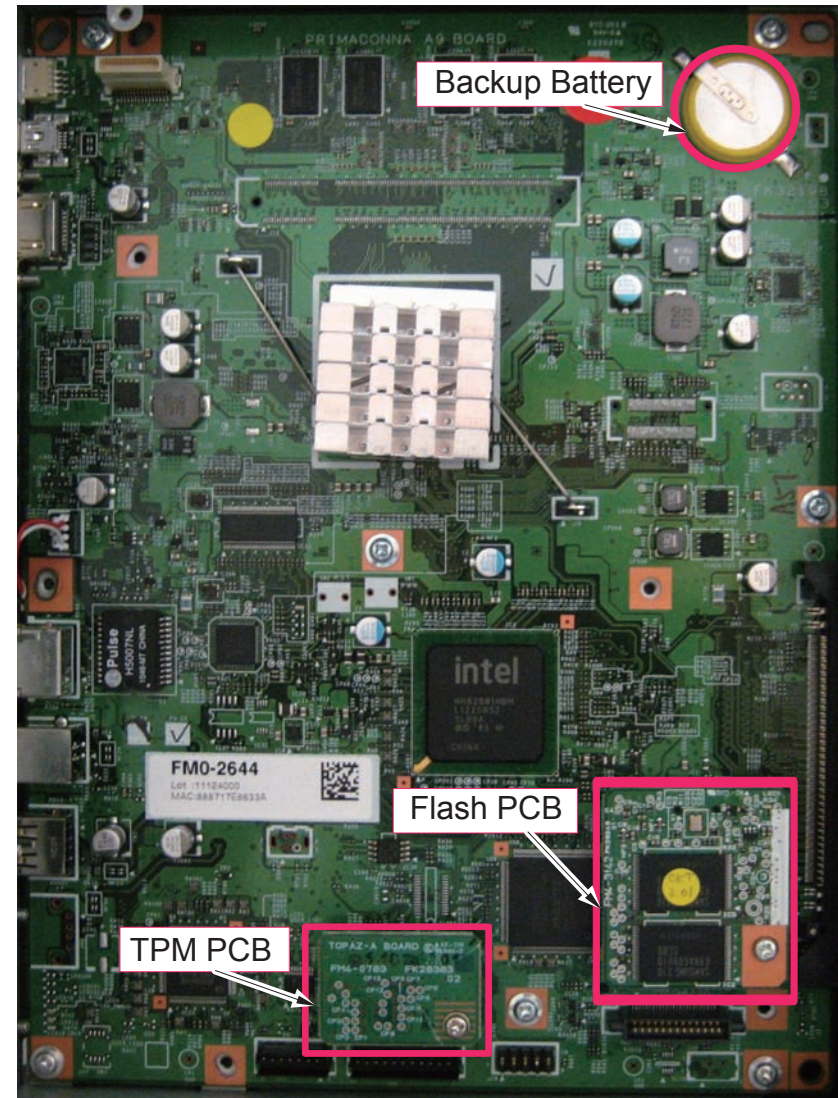
■ Layout Drawing

Layout Drawing of PCBs Subject to Diagnosis



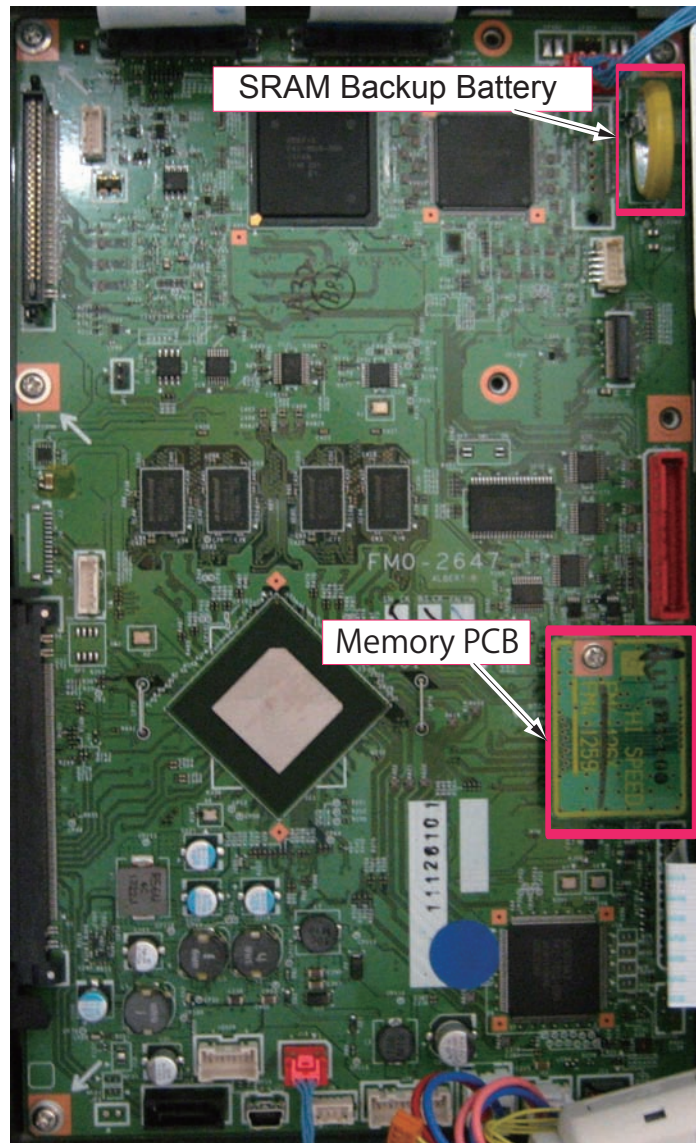
F-6-125

Main Controller PCB 1



F-6-126

Main Controller PCB 2

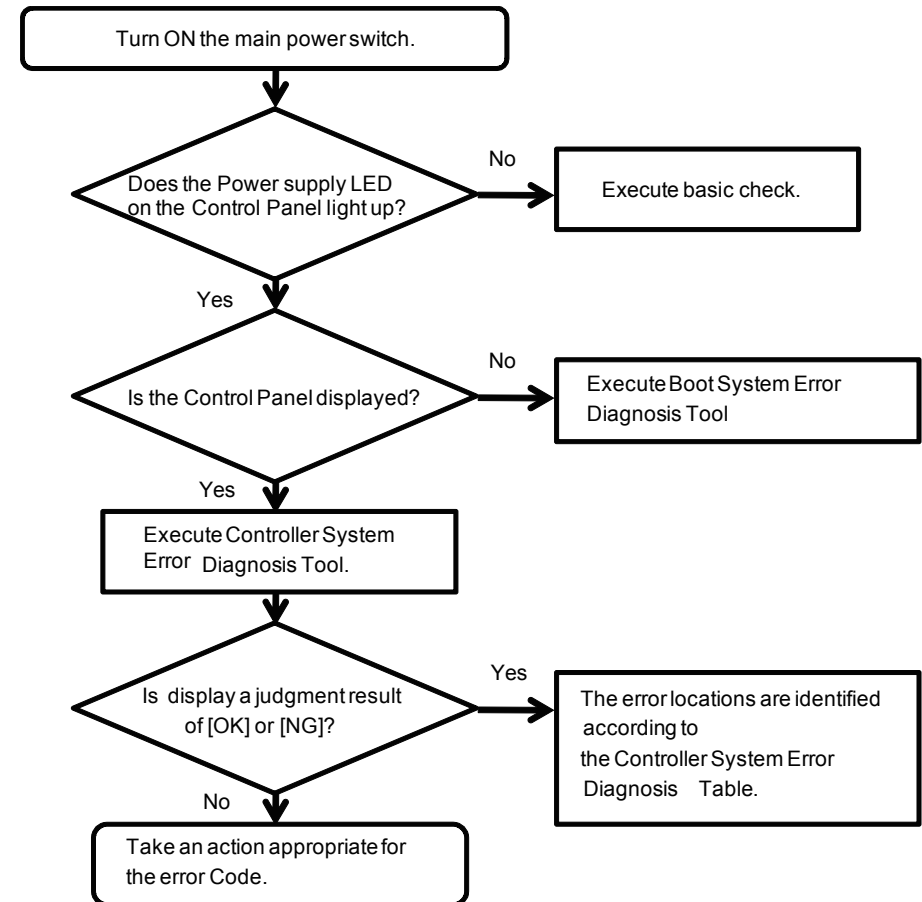


F-6-127

Basic Flowchart

Basic Check Items

Check all of the items shown below.



Basic Check Items

1. Check if the Power Supply Plug is disconnected.
2. Check if the Connection Cable between the Main Controller PCB 1 and Control Panel is disconnected.
3. Check if the Connection An All-night Power Supply. Check if the Connection Cable from Main Controller PCB 2 is disconnected. Change AC Driver PCB if not recovered.

Prerequisite

This machine's Firmware is installed in Flash PCB.

Controller System Error Diagnosis Tool (BCT) is also installed at the same time when System software is installed.

NOTE:

BCT stands for Box Checker Test.

When BCT is installed on the main body, version of the installed module can be checked using service mode (COPIER>DISPLAY>VERSION>BCT).

Operation

Operations of the two diagnosis tools are explained below.

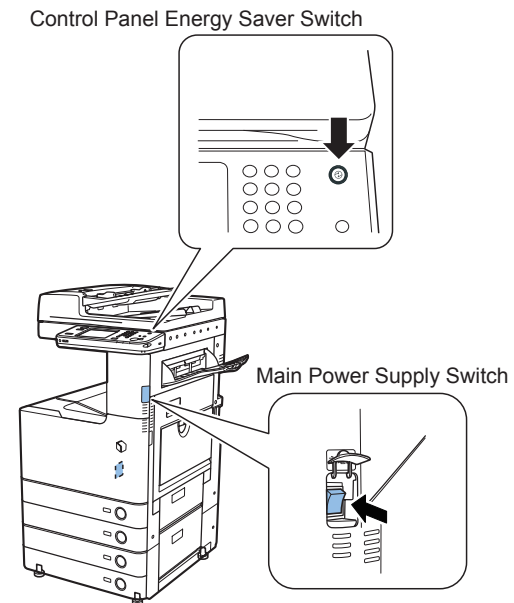
Use each tool according to the following purposes.

- When the main body does not boot (the Control Panel is not displayed): Execute Boot System Error Diagnosis.
- When an error is suspected to have occurred in the Main Controller PCB 1/2 or child PCBs mounted on the Main Controller PCB 1/2: Execute Controller System Error Diagnosis.

Boot System Error Diagnosis

Boot Method

- 1) Turn ON the Main Power Supply Switch while pressing the Control Panel Energy Saver Switch.



- 2) Right after the Main Power Supply Lamp lights up once, it lights out instantly, and diagnosis starts.

(When the Main Power Supply Lamp lights out, you can release your finger from the Control Panel Switch.)



F-6-129

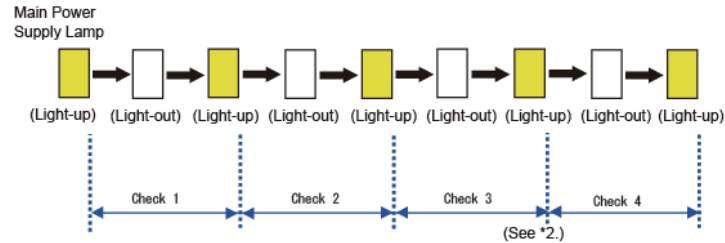
● Diagnosis Time

Diagnosis is completed in approx. 1 minutes.

<When the diagnosis result is normal>

After the Main Power Supply Lamp repeatedly lights out 4 times, it lights up and the diagnosis is completed.

After completion of the diagnosis, this machine executes normal boot sequence.



F-6-130

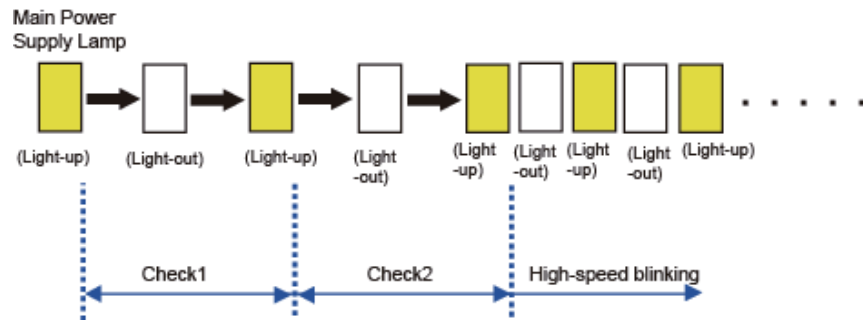
<When an error is detected by diagnosis>

The Main Power Supply Lamp repeats high-speed blinking after completion of a check in which an error is detected. (See *1.)

For example, when an error is detected in Check 2, the Main Power Supply Lamp lights out twice and repeats high-speed blinking (ON/OFF in 0.3 seconds interval).

When an error is detected, be sure to count the number of times the Main Power Supply Lamp lights out.

For detailed results, see “Error Diagnosis”.



F-6-131

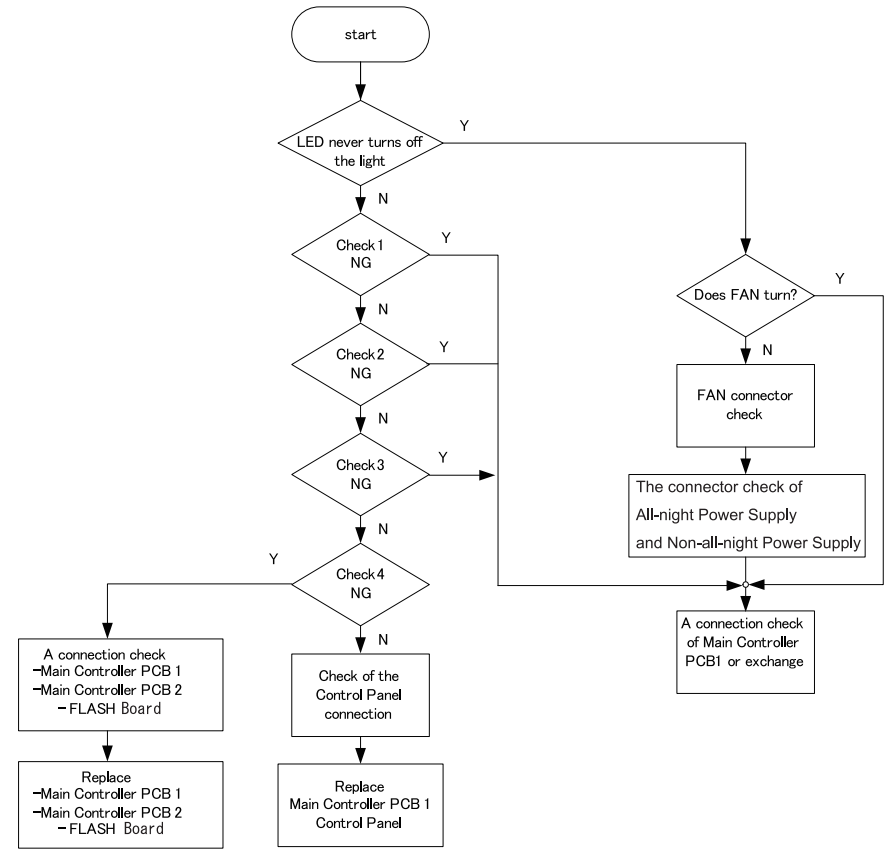
*1: When an error is detected, there is a possibility that the Main Power Supply Lamp may not perform high-speed blinking but perform other operation (continuous light-up, light-out). If the error is not resolved, execute the remedy of the Check No. which is not completed normally. (For details, see “Error Diagnosis”.)

*2: Although diagnosis time for Check 3, and Check 4 is longer than that of other Checks, it is correct operation.

● Error Diagnosis

<Boot System Error Diagnosis Table>

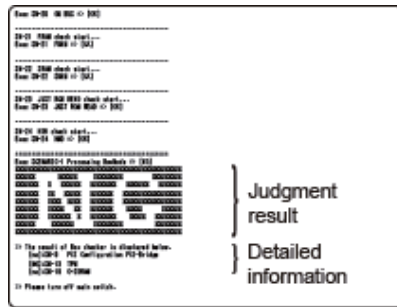
The error locations are identified according to the following table.



F-6-132

<When an error is detected by diagnosis>

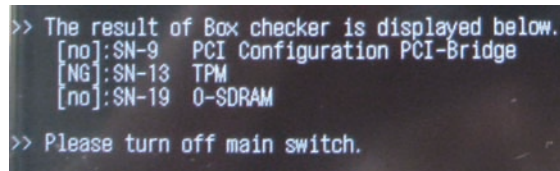
Detailed information is displayed under the judgment result. In detailed information, the name of the test where an error was detected is indicated.



F-6-137

<How to view the error result>

The following screen is an enlarged view of the detailed information indicated above. Explanation of the detailed error information is described.



F-6-138

[no] means that optional PCBs are not mounted.

When [no] is displayed although a result of an optional PCB is mounted, it means that an error has been occurring.

[NG] means that an error occurred to PCBs mounted as standard.

NOTE:

Once the tool is activated, this machine reboots after approx. 2 minutes. After completion of the diagnosis, be sure to turn OFF and then ON the main power. By turning the power OFF, the operation of this tool completes.

<Controller System Error Diagnosis Table>

The error locations are identified according to the following table.

Test Name	Description	Assumed Error Location	Remedy	Error Code
SN-1 IA-DDR2 SDRAM	Check an error between the Main Controller PCB 1 and SDRAM on the Main Controller PCB 1	Main Controller PCB 1	Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.	-
SN-2 SM BUS IA DIMM1	Check an SM bus error in I2C on the Main Controller PCB 1	Main Controller PCB 1	Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.	-
SN-3 SM BUS IA DIMM2	Check an SM bus error in SDRAM (inside) on the Main Controller PCB 1	Main Controller PCB 1	Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.	-
SN-4PCI Configuration	Test a PCI bus between the Main Controller PCB 1 and the Main Controller PCB 2	PCI bus error between Main Controller PCB 1 and Main Controller PCB 2	1. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 1, and ascertain presence of breach. 2. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.	-
SN-8 CPLD	Check failure of CPLD chip on the Main Controller PCB 1	Main Controller PCB 1	Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.	-
SN-9 LANC SPI	Check failure of LANC SPI on the Main Controller PCB 1	Main Controller PCB 1	Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.	-
SN-10 RTC CHECK	Check failure of RTC on the Main Controller PCB 1	Main Controller PCB 1	Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.	-

Test Name	Description	Assumed Error Location	Remedy	Error Code
SN-11 TPM	Check failure of the TPM PCB on the Main Controller PCB 1 * TPM PCB is not installed in products for China. So, the diagnosis results NG.	Main Controller PCB 1 TPM PCB	1. Check the installation of the TPM PCB. 2. Replace the TPM PCB. 3. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.	E746
SN-12 SOC- DDR2 SDRAM	Check an error DDR2 SDRAM on the Main Controller PCB 2	Main Controller PCB 2	Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.	-
SN-13 FRAM	Check failure between the Main Controller PCB 2 and the Memory PCB	Main Controller PCB 2 Memory PCB	1. Check the installation of the Memory PCB on the Main Controller PCB 2. 2. Replace the Memory PCB on the Main Controller PCB 2. 3. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.	E355
SN-14 SRAM	Check failure of SDRAM and battery exhaustion on the Main Controller PCB 2	Main Controller PCB 2	Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.	E246 E350 E355
SN-15 JUST ROM READ	Check ROM READ on the Main Controller PCB 2	Main Controller PCB 2	Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.	-
SN-18 HDD	Check an HDD I/F error	Main Controller PCB 2 PCB HDD Cable HDD	1. Check the cable connection of the HDD. 2. Check the connection between the Main Controller PCB 2 and the Main Controller PCB 1. 3. Replace the HDD.	-

T-6-30

Restrictions

<Boot System Error Diagnosis>

- If an error cannot be resolved by executing remedy according to the error diagnosis table described above, consider boot failure of the main power supply and take appropriate actions.

<Controller System Error Diagnosis>

- Regarding the diagnosis for the test names (SN-1, 2, 4, 14), if an error occurs in the diagnosis under the test names, this diagnosis tool will not boot.
- When no PCBs are installed on the Main Controller PCB 1/2, the following judgment results are displayed.

Standard PCB: [NG]

Optional PCB: [OK]

However, [no] is displayed in detailed error information for optional PCBs.

Debug log

Scope of Application

Purpose

- When the Canon quality-appointed staff determines the need for an analysis of firmware debug log by the R&D department, we ask the field to collect log for an investigation to determine the cause.
- This is intended to improve efficiency in log collection when a trouble occurs.

Target Models

iR ADVANCE C2200 Series

Version of the host machine: 20.xx or later

Adding Users for Log Collection

Collecting logs previously required operation in service mode. Therefore, a service technician needed to visit the site.

Operation in service mode, however, is no longer necessary because a log can be created by holding down the counter + 123.

Thanks to this feature, even a user can create a log for a trouble as long as the Control Panel can be used.

When only the service mode is available, the service technician performs the work.

Lev2 COPIER > FUNCTION > DBG-LOG > LOG2USB

Overview

Function Overview

Debug log is an integrated log for failure analysis that gathers logs prepared by the software modules in the device for debug purpose.

In the case of a field failure that is hard to be reproduced, this measure is intended to improve efficiency in failure analysis and reduce the time for failure support by collecting debug log at the user site (which was created immediately after the failure) and sending it to the R&D.

When the Canon quality-appointed staff determines the need for an analysis of firmware debug log by the R&D department, we ask the field to collect log for an investigation to determine the cause.

Effective Instances of Collecting Debug Log

- The error occurs only at the customer site and cannot be reproduced by the sales company or the Canon staff who is in charge of quality follow-up.
- When the error frequency is low.

- When the error is suspected of links with firmware rather than a mechanical/electrical failure.

* Collection of Sublog is not necessary when the reproduction procedure is identified and the error can be reproduced by the sales company HQ or the Canon staff who is in charge of quality follow-up.

With imageRUNNER ADVANCE, Sublog can be saved in the HDD using the standard function of the machine without using the Sublog Board.

The Sublog Board is also assigned as a tool with imageRUNNER ADVANCE. The Sublog Board is required for an error that requires rebooting because the Sublog Board has a battery.

Storing System Information

Storage Method of System Information

Automatic Storage

At the time of shipment, 101 is specified in service mode Lev2: COPIER > FUNCTION > DBG-LOG > LOG-TRIG.

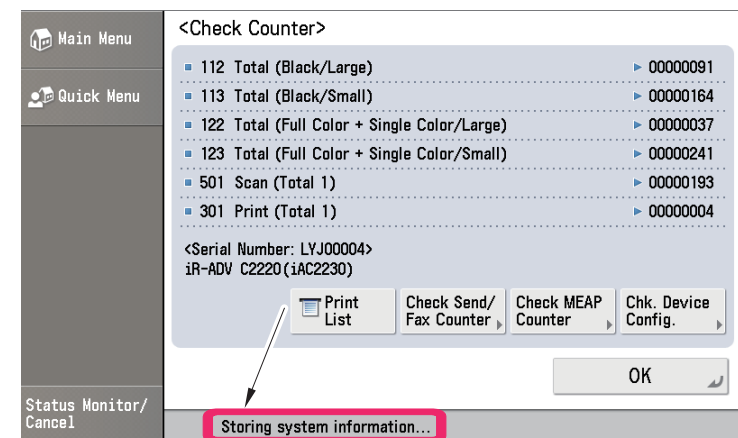
Debug log is automatically stored in the case of the following:

Exception + E-code + reboot

Manual Storage

Counter Key + 1.2.3

When executing "Counter Key + 1.2.3" while no USB memory device is connected to the machine, "Storing system information..." is displayed at the lower side of the Control Panel and debug log is stored in the HDD of the machine.



F-6-139

Description of Log to be Collected

The log consists of the number of logs as shown below; from the latest log extended to the older logs.

Logs older than the specified period are overwritten (deleted).

When collecting logs, they are archived to be one file.

When collecting logs from the machine, the log file in the machine is deleted.

DC configuration can be obtained by manual generation. DC configuration can be obtained by automatic generation with LOG-TRIG specified.

FLASH model	2 pieces
HDD model	10 pieces

T-6-31

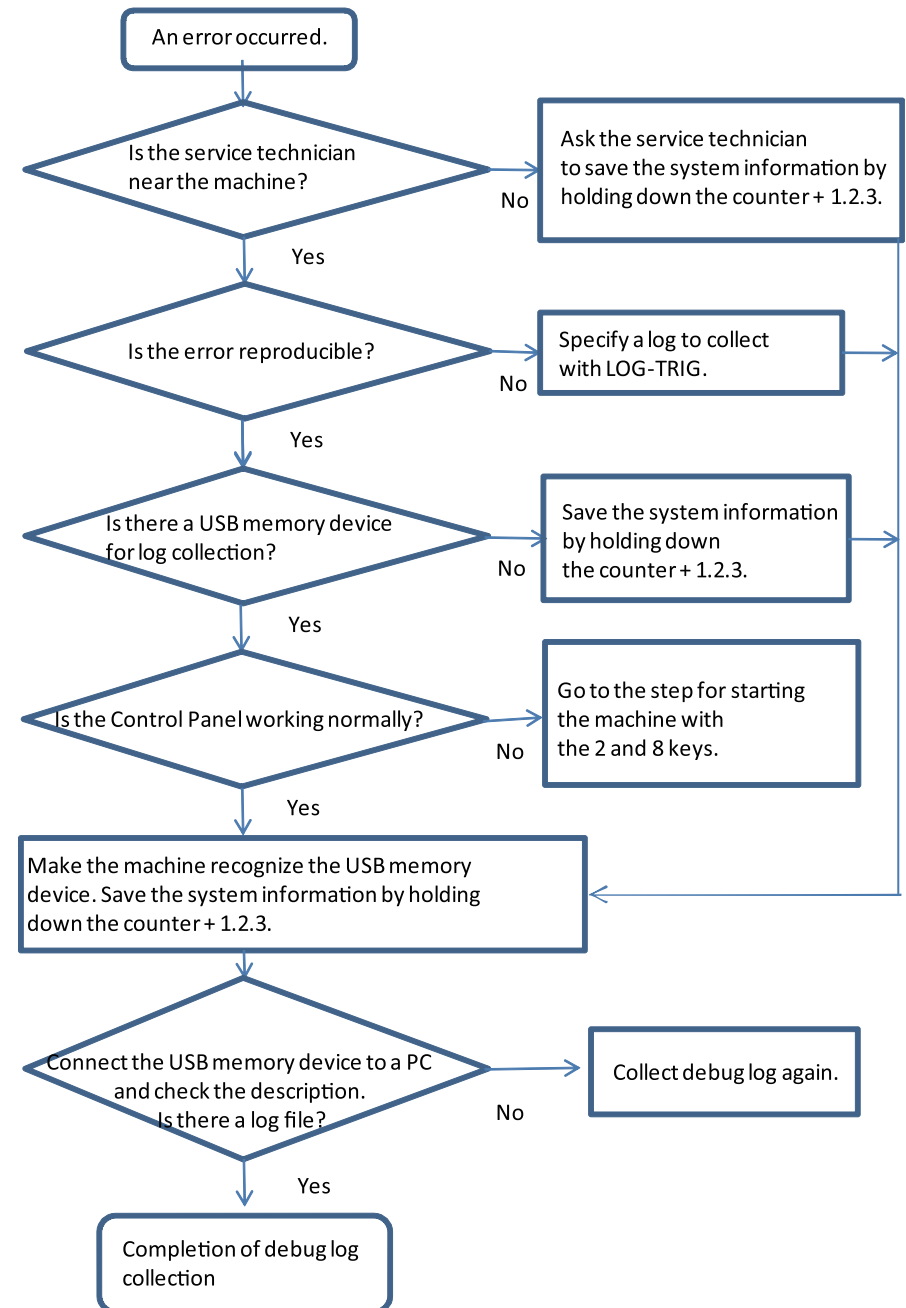
Operation to Save System Information

By holding down the counter + 1.2.3, you can separate the operation into two: the operation to save debug log in the HDD and the operation to transfer the data into a USB memory.

By using service mode LOG2USB or SST, the data storage and the data transfer are performed as one operation.

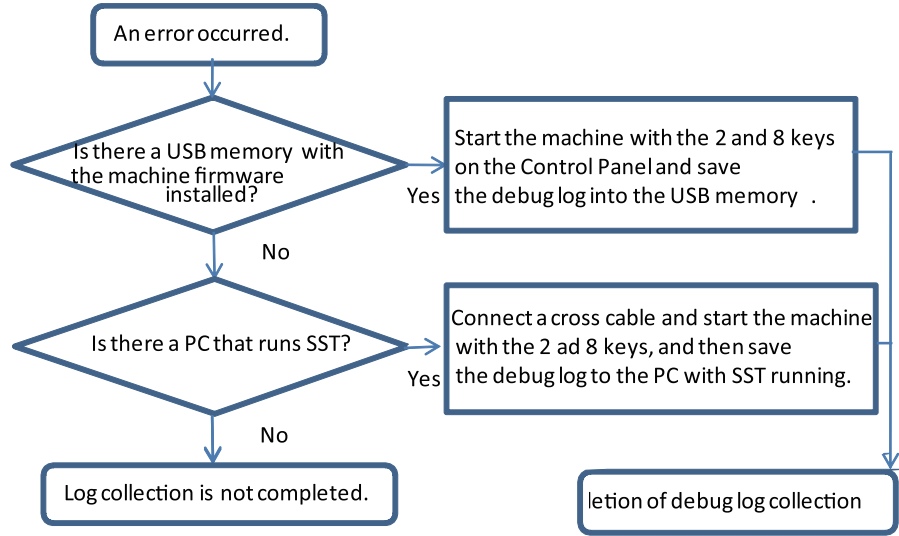
In any of these cases, debug log in the HDD of the machine is deleted when the data is transferred.]

The following shows a flowchart of assumed work to collect debug log by a service technician.



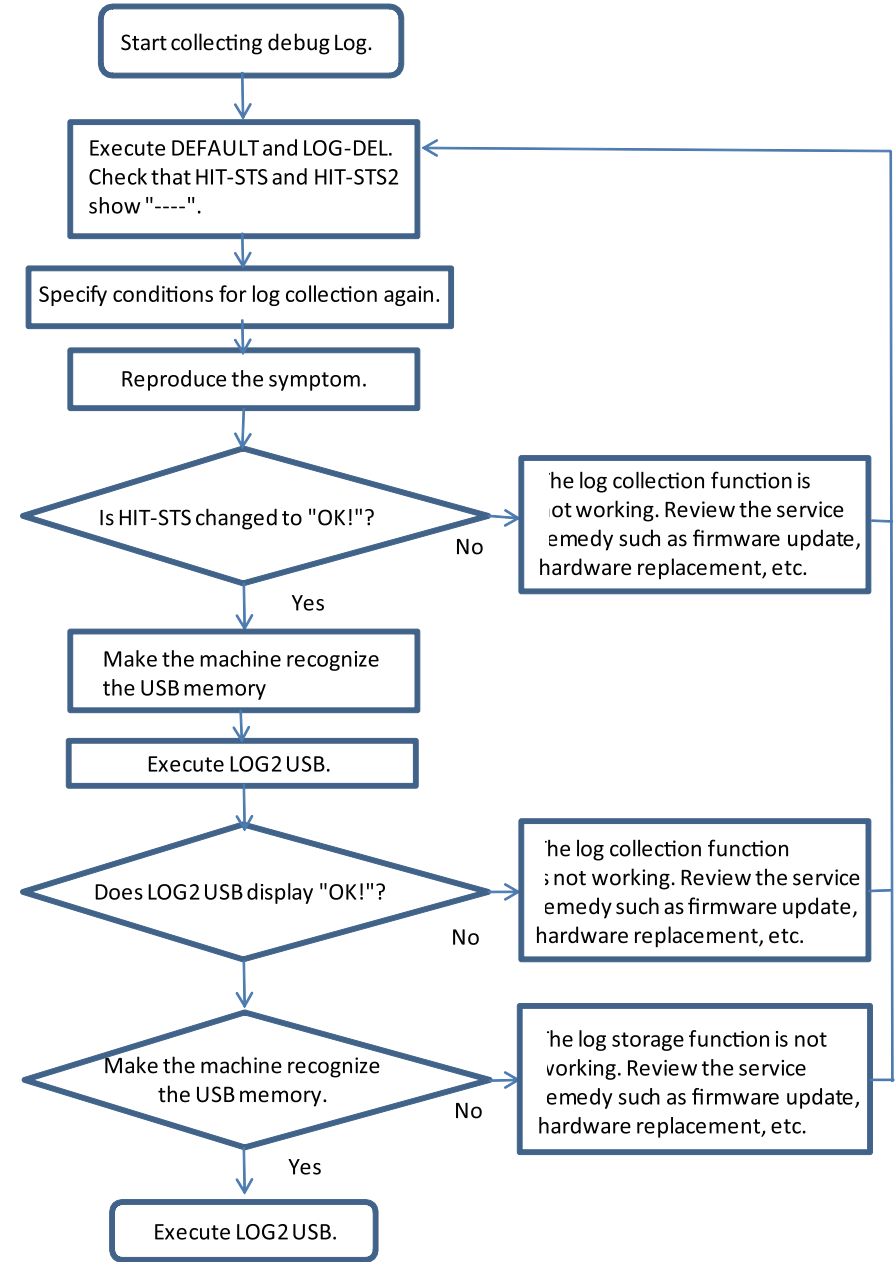
F-6-140

Workflow to Start the Machine with the 2 and 8 Keys



F-6-141

Reacquiring Debug Log



F-6-142

Collecting System Information

Collection Destination

To retrieve debug log to an external location from the device, use a USB memory device, FTP server or SST (Ver. 4.41 or later).

Collection Method

Retrieve debug log from the machine by any of the following methods.

- Make the machine recognize the USB memory device. Save the system information by holding down the counter + 1.2.3 and transfer the data to the USB memory device.
- Make the machine recognize the USB memory device. Select the following in service mode Lev2: COPIER > FUNCTION > DBG-LOG > LOG2USB; and click OK.
- Start the machine with the 2 and 8 keys and use SST on a PC with the network cable connected to transfer the debug log.
- Start the machine with the 2 and 8 keys and transfer the debug log to a USB memory device that stores the system of the machine.
- Store the setting file, which was sent from the Canon field support department through the sales company HQ, into a USB memory device. Select the following in service mode Lev2 to read the data with LOG2SRVR: COPIER > FUNCTION > DBG-LOG > LOG2SRVR; and transfer the debug log to the specified FTP server.

Method	Storage	Collection
Holding down the counter + 1.2.3	If there is no USB memory device, the data is just saved.	If there is a USB memory device, the data is saved and collected.
LOG2USB	The data is saved and collected as a set of operation.	
LOG2RVR	The data is saved and collected as a set of operation.	
SST	The data is saved and collected as a set of operation.	
Starting the machine with the 2 and 8 keys and using a USB memory device	The data is saved and collected as a set of operation.	

T-6-32

Measures against Frequent Debug Log Collection

Debug log collection involves operations with the machine; therefore, frequent log collection increases service load.

Carrying a tool PC (PC with a USB memory device attached or SST installed) to the user site can be restricted.

When the user allows the Internet connection in their site, debug log can be sent to the specified FTP server in the service mode LOG2SRVR setting by distributing the setting file, which has been sent from the Canon field support department via the sales company HQ.

Collecting Debug Log (USB memory device)

Manual Saving by Holding Down the Counter + 1.2.3

Note:

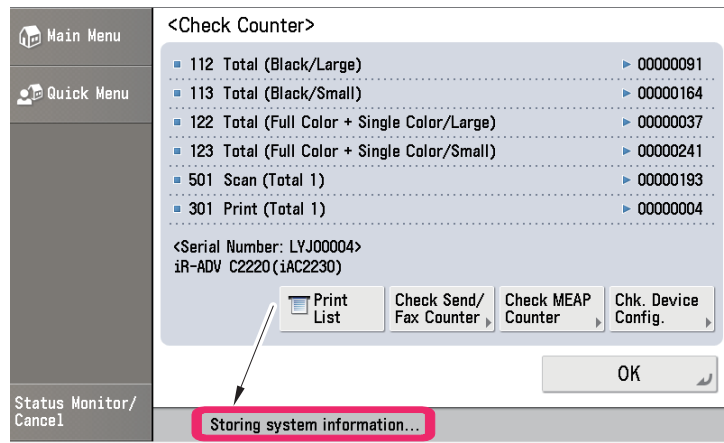
If a USB memory device is recognized in advance by the machine, debug log is written to the USB memory device by executing the following operation.

If the USB memory device is not recognized, the data is moved to the log storage space in the controller; and then the data is written to the USB memory device when the following operation is executed the next time while the USB memory device is connected.

Note that the extension of the file name differs between the one that is directly written and the one that is written after the data was saved.

The log file is deleted in the machine once it is collected into the USB memory device. Log can be collected from service mode as well. See the LOG2USB section for details.

1. Reproduce the error.
 2. Hold down the [Counter] button (10 sec. or longer).
 3. Press 1 on the numeric keypad.
 4. Press 2 on the numeric keypad.
 5. Press 3 on the numeric keypad. (UI is locked at this stage) The machine starts generation of the file that was converted from binary data on the memory into text-based data and then encrypted.
- "Storing system information..." is displayed at the lower side of the touch panel (Control Panel of the machine). Data transfer is complete when the display disappears.
- See the following for the file name.



F-6-143

6. A file is generated in root of the USB memory device.
7. Note that the screen is locked while the data is transferred to the USB memory device; therefore, the screen does not change even though you press any key on the Control Panel. Press the Reset key to check that the screen changes. Data transfer is completed when the screen changes. (Multiple times) No change on the screen at this moment. (The screen is locked.)
8. Wait for a while until the screen changes. Completion of copying data into the USB memory device when the screen changes.

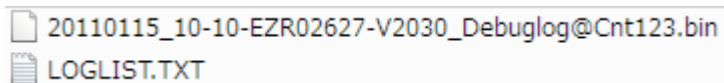
File name

When the data is sent to the USB memory device:

The file name is as follows: Date/time + serial number + MNCONT version + Debuglog@Cnt123.Bin

Example:

20100510_12-35-ENS00059-V01.54_debuglog@Cnt123.bin



F-6-144

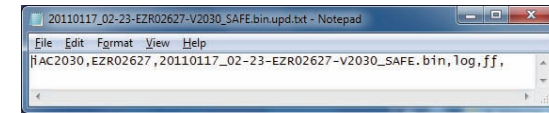
Note:

Date to be added to the file name shows the date that the log was transferred. The time of the specified region may not be shown when the machine is not working properly. In such a case, Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) is shown.

Log Description

You can check the description of the logs to be included in .bin file with "LOGLIST.TXT" that is saved simultaneously with the .bin file into the USB memory device.

The following are samples of LOGLIST.TXT:



F-6-145

- 20101216_14-12-ENS00059-V2022_UserErr00-ServiceCall
 <- A log file automatically saved at 14:12 on Dec. 16 by a service call
- 20101216_14-48-ENS00059-V2022_Fatal00-exception
 <- A log file automatically saved at 14:48 on Dec. 16 by Exception processing
- 20101216_14-51-ENS00059-V2022_Debuglog@Cnt123
 <- A log file saved at the moment of holding down the counter + 1.2.3

Status Display on the Control Panel

During a log collection processing, "Storing system information..." is displayed on the status line. The message disappears once the log collection processing is complete. (When the log has been collected with a USB memory device connected, a message "a memory media is connected" is displayed.)

When holding down the counter + 1.2.3 while an error code is shown, the message "Storing system information..." is not displayed for convenience of UI display.

DBG-LOG Screen

Function

Service mode LEVEL 2

COPIER > FUNCTION > DBG-LOG



F-6-146

LOG2USB

Function

This is a function to send a set of debug logs in the machine to a USB memory device attached to the device.

For using LOG2USB, take note of the following difference compared to the operation by holding down the counter + 1.2.3.

Points to Remember

- Executing LOG2USB while no USB memory device is attached to the machine causes an "NG" display. The data is not transferred. The log in the HDD is retained. Make the machine recognize a USB memory device before executing LOG2USB.

Operation Procedure

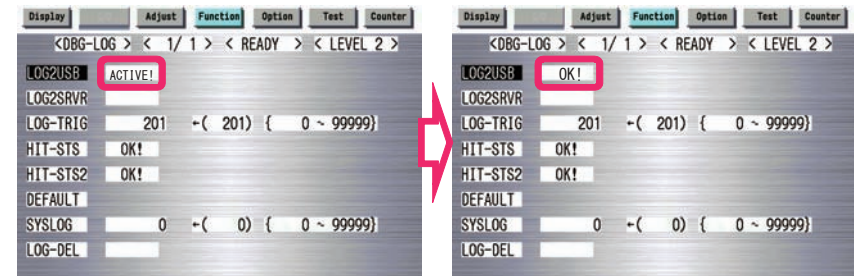
- Insert a USB memory device for log collection to the machine.

Note:

When inserting a USB memory device, wait for 10 seconds or so because it takes several seconds for the machine to recognize the USB memory device after it was inserted. Or enter service mode when you confirmed the display of "A memory media is connected" after inserting a USB memory device to the machine. The size and the number of log files to be collected vary depending on the device status and log storage status; therefore, the file size to be collected can be large as several-hundred MB. Because of the above reason, we recommend using a USB memory device with 1GB or larger capacity.

- Select "LOG-USB" and click "OK" to start a log collection.

An "ACTIVE!" sign blinks during the processing.



F-6-147

Note:

Do not perform the following operations during the processing.

- Turning OFF and then ON the power of the machine.
- Disconnecting a USB memory device.
- Any operation on the touch panel of the machine.

- "OK!" is displayed when the processing is successfully completed. "NG!" is displayed when the processing fails.
- Remove the USB memory device for log collection.

Note:

To remove the USB memory device, exit the service mode screen and perform the operation for removing memory media on the screen.

Remarks:)

- When there is any debug log file that has been automatically saved in the sublog storage space, send it to the USB memory device as well.
- Multiple debug logs are archived into one file to be sent into the USB memory device.
- The archived name is automatically given as follows: "date and time", "serial number", "MN-CONT"

A file name example: 20100425_13-32-ENS00059-V01.44_Debuglog@USB.bin

In the above example, "20100425_13-32" shows the date and time of log collection (the date and time set in the machine),

"ENS00059" the serial number,

"V01.44" the firmware version of the Main Controller (MNCONT), and

"Debuglog@USB" shows that the log was "collected with "DBG-LOG>LOG2USB".

Note:

The log file is deleted from the machine once it is collected into the USB memory device.

You can check the description of the logs to be included in .bin file with "LOGLIST.TXT" that is saved simultaneously with the .bin file into the USB memory device.

LOG2SRVR

When the Canon quality-appointed staff determines that it is necessary to use this function, the setting file for the FTP server is provided through the sales company HQ.

Function

This is a function to transfer debug log to the FTP server.

Preconditions

Network connection is available from the machine and there is a FTP server with a registered account (ID/Password) used by the machine.

The address and account of the FTP server used by the machine are specified with the setting file (to be described later).

Operation Procedure

First, go through the following steps to set the address of the FTP server:

- Save the log setting file (e.g. "800.conf") provided by the Canon quality-appointed staff into a USB memory device.
- Insert the USB memory device to the machine and enter 800 for "LOG-TRIG" to execute reading.
 - The server address described in 800.conf is specified in the transfer destination of LOG2SRVR.
- Select "LOG-SRVR" and click "OK" to start a log collection and server transfer processing.
- An "ACTIVE!" sign blinks during the processing.

Note:

Do not perform the following operations during the processing.

- Turning OFF and then ON the power of the machine.
- Operation on UI.

When the processing results in "NG!" although you tried several times before, check for the IP address in the loaded setting file again.

Perform an internal ping test from the machine to the specified IP address immediately after you started the processing; if the result shows OK, start a processing to collect and transfer the log.

Failure in a ping test can cause "NG!"; in such a case, select "LOG2SRVR" again to try again.

- "OK!" is displayed when the processing is successfully completed. "NG!" is displayed when the processing fails.

When there is any debug log file that has been automatically saved in the sublog storage space, send it to the server as well.

- Multiple debug logs are archived into one file to be sent to the server.

The archived name is automatically given as follows: "date and time", "serial number", "MN-CONT"

A file name example: 20100425_13-26-ENS00059-V01.44_Debuglog@Server.bin

In the above example, "20100425_13-26" shows the date and time of log collection (the date and time set in the machine),

"ENS00059" the serial number,

"V01.44" the firmware version of the Main Controller (MNCONT), and

"Debuglog@Server" shows that the log was "collected with "DBG-LOG>LOG2SRVR".

Note:

The log file is deleted from the device once it is collected into the server.

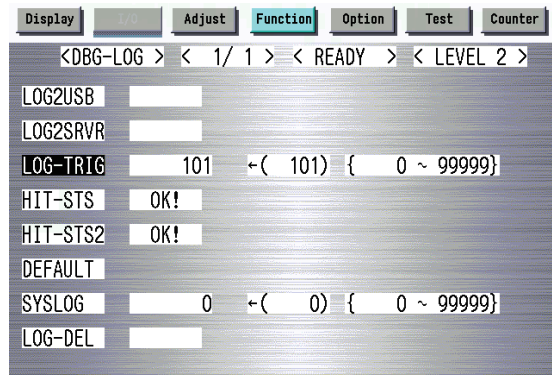
LOG-TRIG

Function

This is a function to change the settings on debug log and then start a log collection operation with the new settings.

Operation Procedure

a) Enter a numeric value (100 to 99999) that corresponds to the target operation mode for "LOG-TRIG" and click the "OK" button.



- b) The log settings start to be changed in the device and "ACTIVE!" blinks during the processing.
- c) "OK!" is displayed when the processing is successfully completed. "NG!" is displayed when the processing fails.
- d) It is not necessary to reboot the device.

See the following table for definition of the operation mode (0 to 99999).

	Number	Timing to automatically store the log
100-199	101	Exception + E-code + reboot
	Default setting (at the time of shipment)	
	111	Exception only
	121	E-code only
200-299	131	Reboot only
	201	101 + alarm
	211	Exception + alarm
	221	E-code + alarm
	231	Reboot + alarm
	291	Alarm only
300-399	301	101 + jam
	311	Exception + jam
	321	E-code + jam
	331	Reboot + jam
	391	Jam only

T-6-33

- Do not use number 0 to 99 for system reservation.
- When changing the setting value or executing DEFAULT, the latest setting value will not be displayed unless the DBG-LOG screen is displayed again. Therefore, exit the DBG-LOG screen and then display the DBG-LOG screen again to check that the intended setting value is shown.
- The setting to "automatically store logs by Exception + E-code + reboot (setting number 101)" is specified as default (the state specified at the shipment).

Limitations

Automatic Collection (LOG-TRIG)

- When the operation on debug log goes wrong, repeated log collection/setting change can cause faulty behavior such as generating extra temporary file and log file. In such a case, execute "DEFAULT" and reset the settings on debug log, and then try again.

Types and Descriptions of Logs to be Collected from Device

Debug log information, serial number and status information sent by the firmware of the device are collected while image data, user settings (such as Address Book), etc. are not collected. Depending on the log, user information (print file name, a part of image data, etc.) can be included indirectly.

Select necessary settings.

1. Mode 1: Collection of all logs (including logs that may contain user information)
2. Mode 2: Collection of only logs that do not contain user information

When you gain an approval from the customer, collect log in mode 1. (Switch modes 1 and 2 by changing the settings from "LOG-TRIG".)

Mode 2 is the default setting; therefore, Mode 2 applies to all log collection settings unless the mode is changed by LOG-TRIG (LOG-TRIG > 1).

When changing the mode to Mode 1 by LOG-TRIG, Mode 1 applies to all log collection settings.

The following shows how to change the mode from Mode 2 (default at the time of shipping) to Mode 1:

- 1) Enter "1" by LOG-TRIG and click OK.
- 2) Then enter "101" and click OK.

When making another number setting after executing step 2) above, the setting made in step 1) is disabled; therefore, clear the default settings and then execute steps 1) and 2) again.

HIT-STS

The status shows OK when there is any log.

Note:

The status shows "OK" under the condition that there is any storage log.
The status also shows "OK" by holding down the counter key + 1.2.3.

HIT-STS2

The log is automatically collected by the automatic log storage function (to be saved as a file in the device) and the status shows whether there is any log that includes an "expected log pattern".

There is a log that includes an "expected pattern" when the status shows "OK".

Note:

- 1) The status shows "OK" when both of the following conditions are satisfied: "There is a storage log" and "the log includes an expected pattern described in the settings file".
- 2) In the standard settings, the expected pattern for HIT-STS2 condition is not specified. To enable HIT-STS2, it is necessary to use LOG-TRIG to read and set the setting file with an expected pattern described, which was provided by R&D.

DEFAULT

Function

Set all debug log-related settings back to the default settings (the state at the time of shipment).

- You must perform this measure when you complete troubleshooting and return the device to the customer.
- Perform this measure when you reset or make another settings relating to debug log during a log collection investigation.

For log files that were automatically stored in the debug log storage space secured in the machine's controller (/var/xpt/dbglog), they kept to be stored unless the number of log files exceeds the limit. To delete the stored log (to use HIT-STS), use "LOG-DEL" described later.

SYSLOG

When a Canon quality-appointed staff determines the need to use this function, the setting file for SYSLOG is provided through the sales company HQ.

The setting file may be provided when a large volume of logs are determined necessary by Canon because the log storage space in the HDD is not sufficient.

Turn ON and OFF the operation of syslog function.

The program responsible for the syslog function is hereinafter described as "syslogd".

Syslogd sends debug log of the machine's controller to any of the following:

- A file on the HDD in the controller of the machine
- Any of the syslog servers (not FTP server) that can connect to the machine and network

Note:

The syslog function involves a risk of full capacity in the HDD or increased network traffic.

Perform this measure in the field only when the R&D determines it is necessary.

- Collect sublog at the main CPU of the Main Controller.

LOG-DEL

This is a function to delete log files that have been automatically stored. The settings on log operation such as the log storage trigger are not cleared.

Normally, there is no need to use this function (the firmware automatically restricts the upper limit for the number of stored logs); however, it is necessary to delete logs by LOG-DEL when using HIT-STS to see whether the log is collected or not after changing the log storage trigger setting.

(Because the HIT-STS status always shows OK as long as there is a log that has been stored.)

An Example of Automatic Log Collection Setting

Setting LOG-TRIG enables to collect logs limited to the following items

- Error code, Reboot, Exception processing
- Alarm
- Jam

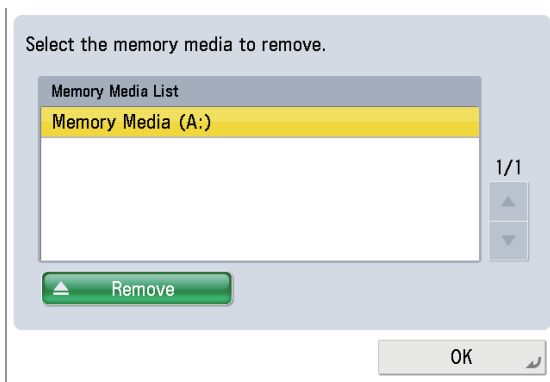
Setting Example

(Delivery Jam)

To experience a log collection operation, the following shows a setting example:

This is a log collection example when a jam occurs in the Delivery Assembly during a copy operation.

1. Connect a USB memory to an available machine.
2. Check that the machine recognizes the USB memory.

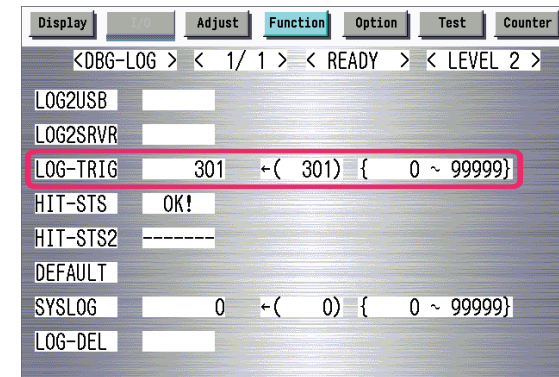


F-6-149

3. Execute the service mode setting as follows.

Service mode LEVEL 2

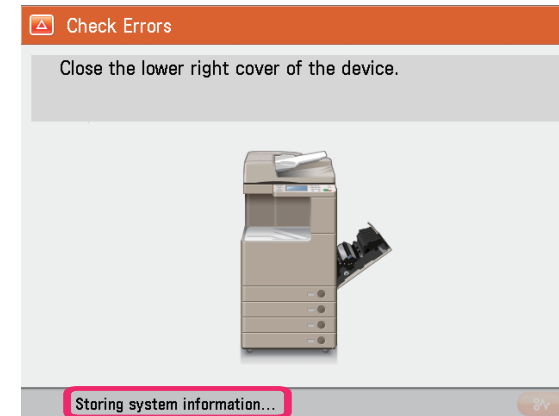
COPIER > FUNCTION > DBG-LOG > LOG-TRIG; and set 301.



F-6-150

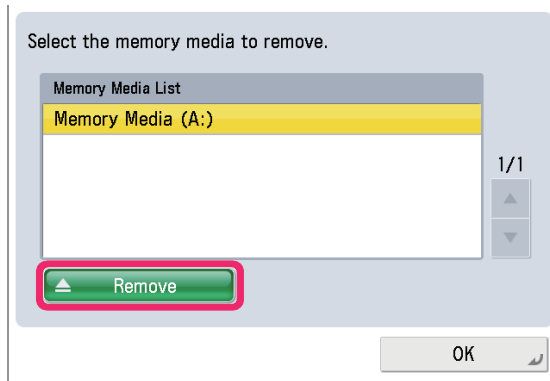
4. Make a sheet of copy. Open the Delivery Feed Assembly before the paper is delivered from the Delivery Assembly to make paper jam.

5. When a jam occurs, "Storing system information..." is displayed at the lower side of the Control Panel.



F-6-151

6. Hold down the counter + 1.2.3 to transfer the log in the HDD of the machine to the USB memory.
7. Check that the display disappears and cancel connection of the USB memory device to remove the USB memory.



F-6-152

8. Connect the USB memory to the PC and check that a log file is created.

Uploading Data by SST

The following shows a method to collect a log by connecting a PC with SST (Ver. 4.41 or later) running to the machine.

Preconditions:

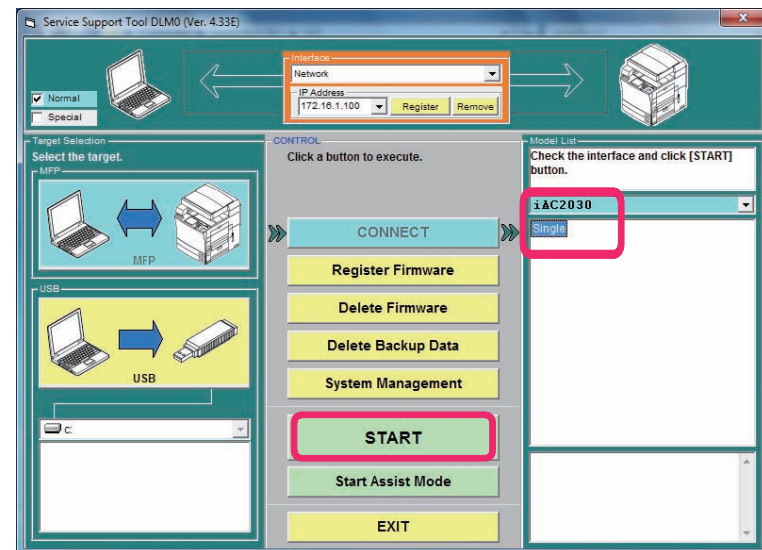
The log is stored in the machine by holding down the counter + 1.2.3 or the automatic log collection function.

A PC with SST running is connected to the machine and the machine is at download mode by starting it with the 2 and 8 keys.

Note:

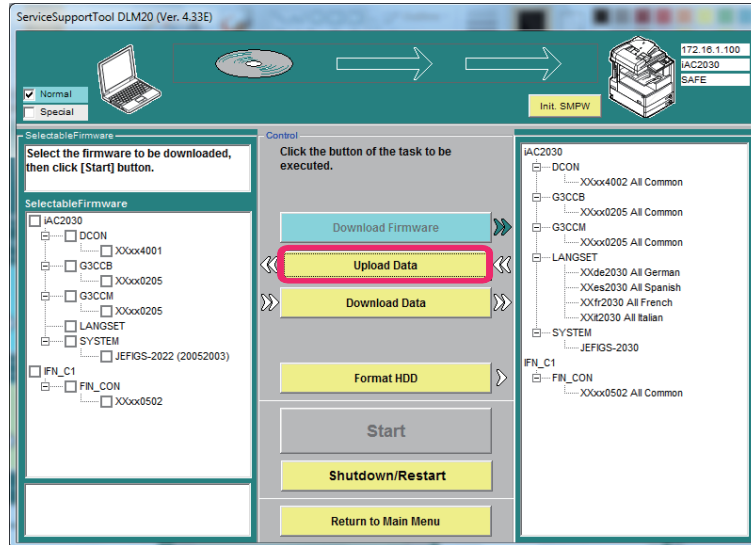
Executing a log collection by SST deletes logs in the machine.

1. Start SST (Ver. 4.41 or later) and select iRC2030 from Model List. Press the Start button.



F-6-153

2. Press the Upload Data button.



F-6-154

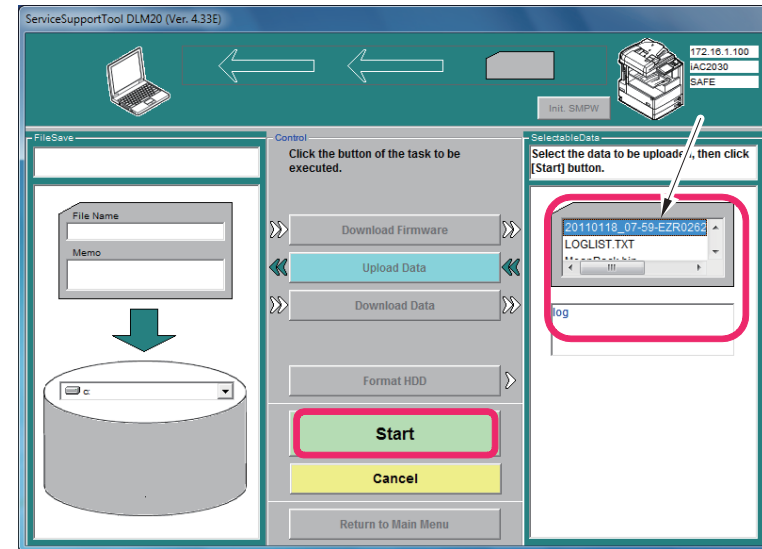
3. Select the data to be uploaded, then click [Start] button.

When there is no log in the machine, it results in blank option items for "data to upload".
When the file name is longer than the frame, it displays that it is a log in the comment column just below.

It is displayed as "log" in the figure below.

Note:

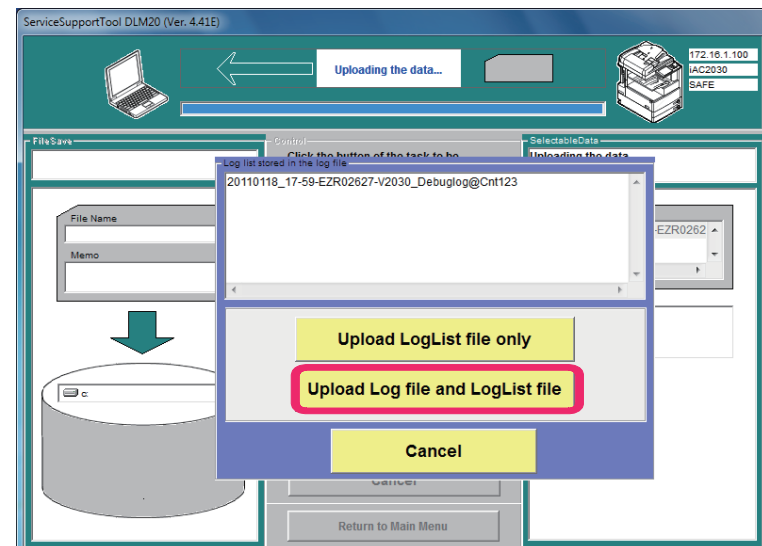
The log is not stored when You cancel it before pushing the Start button.
It is deleted from the main body.



F-6-155

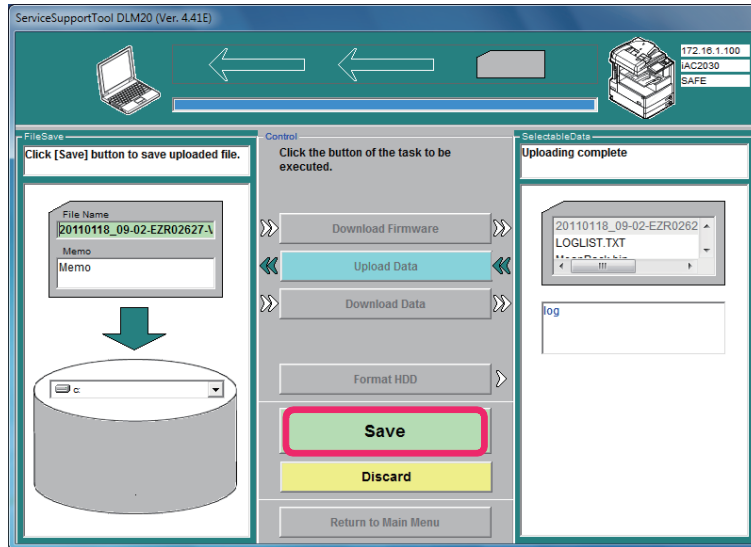
4. Select "Upload Log file and LogList file".

The list of logs stored in the log file of the machine (description of LogList files) is displayed.



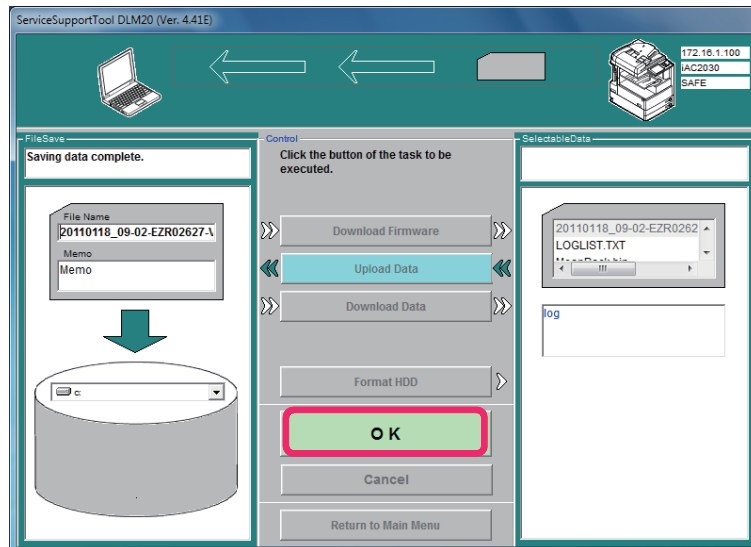
F-6-156

5. Press the "Save" button.



6. Check that the data storage is completed and click the "OK" button.

F-6-157

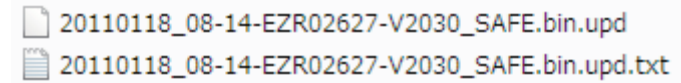


F-6-158

7. Check that the log is stored in the specified location in the PC.

In the initial setting:

Windows(C:) > ServData > iRC2030 > EXR02627 (Serial number)



F-6-159

Saving a Log of Key Operations

■ Overview

- The key operation log function collects key operation log of the user to identify the cause of an error such as a wrong FAX transmission, to see whether the error is caused by a failure in the machine or a wrong operation of the user.
- The key operation log is not recorded with the status at the time of shipment.
- A setting is ready in user mode to enable the saving function of key operation log.
- Only when the above setting is enabled, the machine determines that the user permission has been obtained and starts recording user operation log.
- User operation log is saved/collected to be included in sublog when the sublog is saved.
- Among the user operation log that was saved, the following confidential information is masked.
 - Password entered from the software keyboard
 - Password, PIN code, etc. entered from the numeric keypad
 - Character strings displayed with turned letters on the UI screen

Note:

- When the log is output, information such as passwords and PINs is output as masked characters. This can help prevent sensitive information from being leaked externally. For information on interpreting and outputting saved logs, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
- When the Canon quality-appointed staff determines the need for an analysis of firmware debug log by the R&D department, we ask the field to collect log for an investigation to determine the cause. This is intended to improve efficiency in log collection when a trouble occurs.

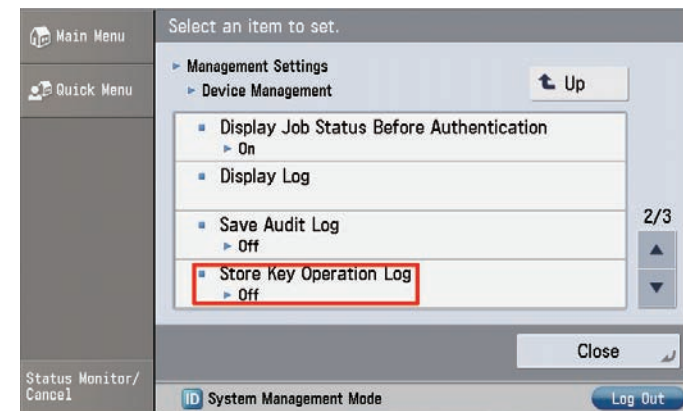
■ Usage Method

● Preparation

1. Obtaining permission from the user to record key operation log for cause analysis
After gaining permission from the user, in Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Device Management > Store Key Operation Log, change the setting to "ON".
2. Starting to save key operation log
3. Occurring an error
After the error occurred, execute a manual trigger operation to save key operation log in the HDD of the machine.
4. Collecting key operation log with SST or USB memory
The key operation log is collected together with the sublog. Transfer the data that was collected from the machine to the PC or USB memory.
5. Changing the setting of saving key operation log back to "OFF" after collecting the log

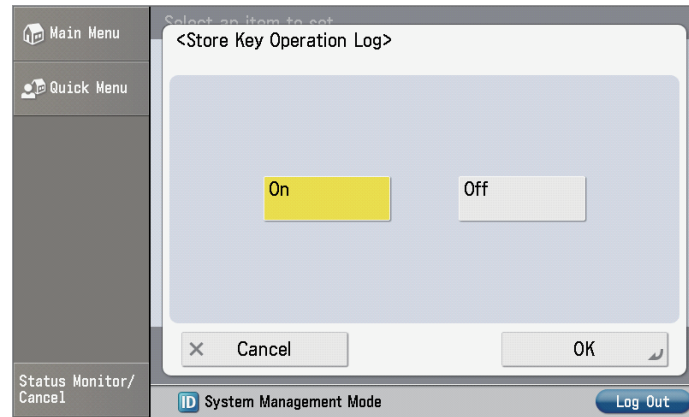
● Operation

1. Obtaining Permission to Record Key Operation Log
After gaining permission from the user, in Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Device Management > Store Key Operation Log, change the setting to "ON".



F-6-160

2. Starting to Save Key Operation Log

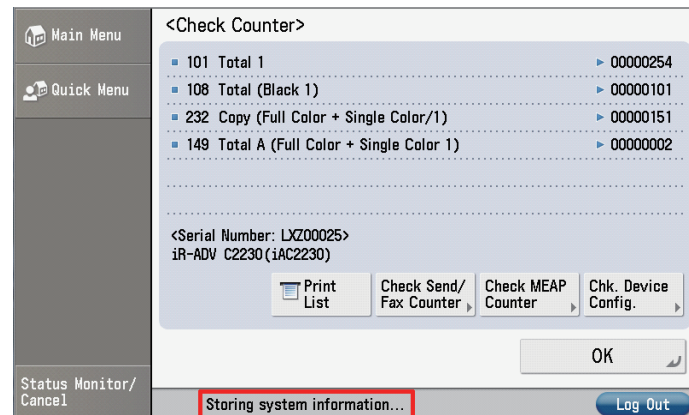


F-6-161

- Starting to Save Key Operation Log.
- Note that the log cannot be recorded while "OFF" is selected.

3. After the error occurred, immediately execute a manual trigger operation for sublog.

- While holding down the Counter key (10 sec.), press 1, 2, and 3 keys.

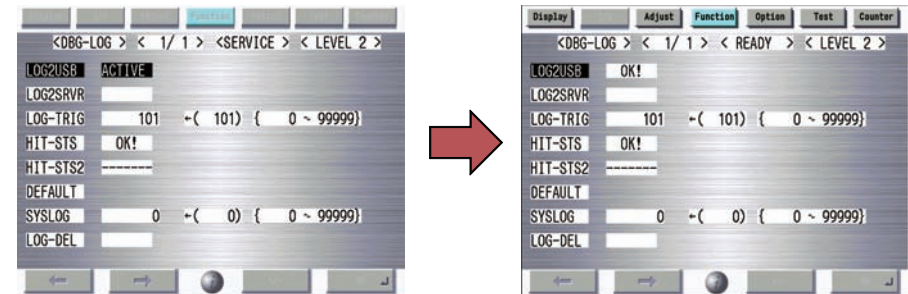


F-6-162

4. Collecting Key Operation Log with SST or USB Memory

See " Debuglog Collection (SST) " or " Debuglog Collection (USB) " for details. Here is an example of using USB memory to collect.

- Allow the host machine to recognize USB memory storage device.
- Select Service Mode Lev2 > COPIER > FUNCTION > DBG-LOG > LOG2USB and click OK.



F-6-163

- "OK!" is displayed when the processing is successfully completed. "NG!" is displayed when the processing fails.
- Remove the USB memory device for log collection.



Error Code

- Overview
- Error Code
- Jam Code
- Alarm Code

Overview

Outline

Outline

This chapter describes various codes which are displayed when a failure occurs on the product. These are classified into 3 codes as follows.

Code type	Explanation
Error code	This code is displayed when an error occurs on the machine.
Jam code	This code is displayed when a jam occurs inside the machine.
Alarm code	This code is displayed when a function of the machine is malfunctioned.

T-7-1

- Error code notation

An error code is shown in 7-digit [E000XXX] on the display on the operation panel. However, [000] in 2 to 4 digit is not used. Thus, an error code is described as [EXXX] using 5 to 7 digit in the service manual. (e.g.: E012 = E000012)

Location code

Error code, jam code, and alarm code include the location information.

Location information is displayed as 2-digit numbers as follows.

In the jam display screen, the "L" row corresponds to the location code

Device	JAM	ERR	ALARM
imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2200	00	Main Controller = 00 Printer engine = 05	Others of listed below
Cassette Feeding Unit-AF1	00	05	-
Buffer Pass Unit-K1	00	05	33
Reader+DADF	01	04	02
Inner Finisher-F1	02	05	-
Staple / Booklet Finisher-M1	02	05	-

T-7-2

Location code

When jam occurs, pickup location is indicated with the following pickup position code.

In the jam display screen, the "P" row corresponds to the pickup position code

Pickup position	Pickup position code
At Finisher jam/At error avoidance jam/At ADF jam without pickup operation (at SEND, Inbox, etc.)	00
Cassette 1	01
Cassette 2	02
Cassette 3 (Cassette Feeding Unit-AF1)	03
Cassette 4 (Cassette Feeding Unit-AF1)	04
Multi-purpose Tray	05
Duplex (At duplex printing, jam occurs after paper passes through the Duplex Sensor (PS31).)	F0

T-7-3

Points to Note When Clearing MN-CON

- Execution of clearing MN-COM deletes all data in Address Book, Forwarding Settings, Settings/Registration (Preferences), Adjustment/Maintenance, Function Settings, Set Destination, Management Settings, TPM Settings, etc. Before execution of this operation, ask user to back up the data and get approval for this operation.
- When clearing MN-CON while any login application other than Default Authentication is, error such as not displayed login screen occurred. In this case, access SMS once and switch login application to Default Authentication to recover to the normal status.

Points to Note When Clearing HDD

As a remedy for error codes (E602-XXXX, E611-0000), HDD partition is selected and the target partition may be cleared.

When clearing partition, be sure to check which data will be deleted by referring Detail of HDD partition and explain to the user before starting work.

Error Code

 Error Code Details

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E001	0001	05	Title	Main Thermistor high temperature detection
			Description	Main Thermistor 2 detected a temperature of 230 deg C or higher for 0.1 sec or longer.
			Remedy	Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error 1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/J123, UN13/J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Disconnect the connector of DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and start the host machine to check the reading value of the following: service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > FIX-C => When the value is 40 deg C or higher 3-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) => When the value is lower than 40 deg C 3-2. Replace the Fixing Assembly NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR
E001	0002	05	Title	Center Thermistor high temperature detection
			Description	Main Thermistor 1 detected a temperature of 283 deg C or higher for 0.1 sec or longer.
			Remedy	Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error 1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Disconnect the connector of DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and start the host machine to check the reading value of the following: service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > FIX-E => When the value is 40 deg C or higher 3-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) => When the value is lower than 40 deg C 3-2. Replace the Fixing Assembly NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E001	0003	05	Title	Edge Thermistor high temperature detection
			Description	Sub Thermistor 1 detected a temperature of 283 deg C or higher for 0.1 sec or longer.
			Remedy	Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error 1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Disconnect the connector of DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and start the host machine to check the reading value of the following: service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > FIX-E2 => When the value is 40 deg C or higher 3-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) => When the value is lower than 40 deg C 3-2. Replace the Fixing Assembly NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR
E001	0004	05	Title	Edge Thermistor high temperature detection
			Description	Sub Thermistor 2 detected a temperature of 283 deg C or higher for 0.1 sec or longer.
			Remedy	Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error 1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Disconnect the connector of DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and start the host machine to check the reading value of the following: service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > FIX-E3 => When the value is 40 deg C or higher 3-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) => When the value is lower than 40 deg C 3-2. Replace the Fixing Assembly NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E001	0005	05	Title	Center Thermistor high temperature detection
			Description	Main Thermistor 1 hardware signal is continued for 1 sec or longer.
			Remedy	<p>Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error</p> <p>1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit</p> <p>2. Disconnect the connector of DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and start the host machine to check the reading value of the following: service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > FIX-E</p> <p>=> When the value is 40 deg C or higher 3-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p> <p>=> When the value is lower than 40 deg C 3-2. Replace the Fixing Assembly</p> <p>NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR</p>
E001	0006	05	Title	Edge Thermistor high temperature detection
			Description	Sub Thermistor 1 hardware error detection signal is continued for 1 sec or longer.
			Remedy	<p>Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error</p> <p>1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit</p> <p>2. Disconnect the connector of DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and start the host machine to check the reading value of the following: service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > FIX-E2</p> <p>=> When the value is 40 deg C or higher 3-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p> <p>=> When the value is lower than 40 deg C 3-2. Replace the Fixing Assembly</p> <p>NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E001	0007	05	Title	Edge Thermistor high temperature detection
			Description	Sub Thermistor 2 hardware error detection signal is continued for 1 sec or longer.
			Remedy	<p>Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error</p> <p>1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit</p> <p>2. Disconnect the connector of DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and start the host machine to check the reading value of the following: service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > FIX-C</p> <p>Check the reading value of the following: service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > FIX-E3</p> <p>=> When the value is 40 deg C or higher 3-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p> <p>=> When the value is lower than 40 deg C 3-2. Replace the Fixing Assembly</p> <p>NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR</p>
E001	0008	05	Title	Displacement detection
			Description	The temperature difference between the Sub Thermistor 1 (TH3) and the Sub Thermistor 2 (TH4) remained 45 deg C or more for 1 second or more.
			Remedy	<p>Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error</p> <p>1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit</p> <p>2. Disconnect the connector of DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and start the host machine to check the reading value of the following: service mode > COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG > FIX-E2, FIX-E3</p> <p>=> When the value of either one is 40 deg C or higher 3-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p> <p>=> When the both values are lower than 40 deg C 3-2. Replace the Fixing Assembly</p> <p>NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E002	0006	05	Title	Detection of abnormal temperature increase
			Description	Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error
			Remedy	<p>1. Check the location for voltage of the Fixing Assembly -> Replace with a correct Fixing Assembly for the location in the case of mismatching.</p> <p>2. Check the location for voltage of the AC Driver PCB (UN14) -> Replace with a correct AC Driver PCB (UN14) for the location in the case of mismatching.</p> <p>3. Check failure between the AC Driver PCB (UN14/J103) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/J123, UN13/J13). (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit</p> <p>4. Replace the AC Driver PCB (UN14)</p> <p>5. Replace the Fixing Assembly</p> <p>6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p> <p>NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR</p>
E003	0001	05	Title	Thermistor open circuit detection
			Description	In the period from initial rotation to printing, Main Thermistor 1 detected a temperature of 22 deg C or lower for more than 5 seconds.
			Remedy	<p>Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error</p> <p>1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit</p> <p>2. Replace the Fixing Assembly</p> <p>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p> <p>NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E003	0002	05	Title	Thermistor open circuit detection
			Description	In the period from initial rotation to printing, Main Thermistor 2 detected a temperature of 40 deg C or lower for more than 3 seconds.
			Remedy	<p>Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error</p> <p>1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit</p> <p>2. Replace the Fixing Assembly</p> <p>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p> <p>NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR</p>
E003	0003	05	Title	Thermistor open circuit detection
			Description	In the period from initial rotation to printing, Sub Thermistor 1 detected a temperature of 40 deg C or lower for more than 3 seconds.
			Remedy	<p>Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error</p> <p>1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit</p> <p>2. Replace the Fixing Assembly</p> <p>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p> <p>NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E003	0004	05	Title	Thermistor open circuit detection
			Description	In the period from initial rotation to printing, Sub Thermistor 2 detected a temperature of 40 deg C or lower for more than 3 seconds.
			Remedy	Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error 1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Replace the Fixing Assembly 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR
E003	0005	05	Title	Main Thermistor 2 low temperature detection at printing
			Description	In the period from printing to last rotation, Main Thermistor 1 detected a temperature of 70 deg C or lower for more than 5 seconds.
			Remedy	Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error 1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Replace the Fixing Assembly 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E003	0006	05	Title	Center Thermistor low temperature detection at printing
			Description	In the period from printing to last rotation, Main Thermistor 2 detected a temperature of 80 deg C or lower for more than 1 second.
			Remedy	Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error 1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Replace the Fixing Assembly 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR
E003	0007	05	Title	Edge Thermistor low temperature detection at printing
			Description	In the period from printing to last rotation, Sub Thermistor 1 detected a temperature of 80 deg C or lower for more than 1 second.
			Remedy	Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error 1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Replace the Fixing Assembly 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E003	0008	05	Title	Edge Thermistor low temperature detection at printing
			Description	In the period from printing to last rotation, Sub Thermistor 2 detected a temperature of 80 deg C or lower for more than 1 second.
			Remedy	Fixing Assembly error, Fixing temperature detection error 1. Check failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Assembly (UN37/ J123, UN13/ J13) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection). -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Replace the Fixing Assembly 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) NOTE: After performing the above remedy work, go through the following to clear the error: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERR
E004	0001	05	Title	Fixing Relay PCB welding detection error
			Description	Zero cross interruption although relay is not ON.
			Remedy	Electrical trouble with abnormal fixing safety circuit relay Replace the AC Driver PCB (UN14)
E004	0005	05	Title	Failure in electrical current detection circuit (abnormal small current)
			Description	Failure in electrical current detection circuit (Less than the specified range of current value)
			Remedy	Electrical trouble with abnormal fixing current detection circuit 1. Check failure between the AC Driver PCB (UN14/ J122) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J10). (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Replace the AC Driver PCB (UN14) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E004	0006	05	Title	Failure in electrical current detection circuit (abnormal large current)
			Description	Failure in electrical current detection circuit (More than the specified range of current value)
			Remedy	Electrical trouble with abnormal fixing current detection circuit 1. Check failure between the AC Driver PCB (UN14/ J122) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J10). (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Replace the AC Driver PCB (UN14) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E009	0000	05	Title	Fixing Film Unit engagement / disengagement error
			Description	There is no change in the result of detection by the Fixing Pressure Release Sensor even after five seconds elapsed after counterclockwise rotation of the Fixing Motor started.
			Remedy	Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble 1. Check if the Fixing Assembly is installed. 2. Remove and reinstall the Fixing Assembly 3. Check the gear 4. Replace the Fixing Assembly 5. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J210) and the Fixing Motor (M17). 6. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J12) and the Fixing Pressure Release Sensor (PS24) 6. Check conduction of FU1153 in the AC Driver PCB (UN14) => Replace the AC Driver PCB (UN14) in the case of disconnection. 7. Replace the Fixing Motor (M17) 8. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E010	0001	05	Title	ITB Motor startup error
			Description	Within a specified period of time from the startup, the speed fails to be OK.
			Remedy	Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble 1. Check the Main Drive Unit (turn the unit by hand to see if it rotates) Replace the Main Drive Unit when the unit failed to rotate When the unit rotates 2. Check failure of the harness between the ITB Motor (M02/ J6027) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J210W) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) 3. Check conduction of the fuse (FU4) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When the fuse is not blown out 4-1. Replace the ITB Motor (M02) 5-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 6-1. Replace the Main Drive Unit When the fuse is blown out 4-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E010	0002	05	Title	ITB Motor speed error
			Description	ITB Motor speed error
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the Main Drive Unit (turn the unit by hand to see if it rotates) Replace the Main Drive Unit when the unit failed to rotate When the unit rotates 2. Check failure of the harness between the ITB Motor (M02/ J6027) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J210W) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) 3. Check conduction of the fuse (FU4) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) <p>When the fuse is not blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-1. Replace the ITB Motor (M02) 5-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 6-1. Replace the Main Drive Unit <p>When the fuse is blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E010	0003	05	Title	ITB Motor lock detection
			Description	Within a specified period of time from the startup, signal is not received.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the Main Drive Unit (turn the unit by hand to see if it rotates) Replace the Main Drive Unit when the unit failed to rotate When the unit rotates 2. Check failure of the harness between the ITB Motor (M02/ J6027) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J210W) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) 3. Check conduction of the fuse (FU4) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) <p>When the fuse is not blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-1. Replace the ITB Motor (M02) 5-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 6-1. Replace the Main Drive Unit <p>When the fuse is blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E012	0001	05	Title	CL Drum Motor speed error
			Description	Within a specified period of time from the startup, the speed fails to be OK.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the Main Drive Unit (turn the unit by hand to see if it rotates) Replace the Main Drive Unit when the unit failed to rotate When the unit rotates 2. Check failure of the harness between the Motor (M04/ J6025) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J210W) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) 3. Check conduction of the fuse (FU7) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) <p>When the fuse is not blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-1. Replace the Drum Motor (M04) 5-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) <p>When the fuse is blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E012	0002	05	Title	CL Drum Motor speed error
			Description	CL Drum Motor speed error
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the Main Drive Unit (turn the unit by hand to see if it rotates) Replace the Main Drive Unit when the unit failed to rotate When the unit rotates 2. Check failure of the harness between the Motor (M04/ J6025) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J210W) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) 3. Check conduction of the fuse (FU7) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) <p>When the fuse is not blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-1. Replace the Drum Motor (M04) 5-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) <p>When the fuse is blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E012	0003	05	Title	CL Drum Motor lock detection
			Description	Within a specified period of time from the startup, the speed fails to be OK.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the Main Drive Unit (turn the unit by hand to see if it rotates) Replace the Main Drive Unit when the unit failed to rotate When the unit rotates 2. Check failure of the harness between the Motor (M04/ J6025) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J210W) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) 3. Check conduction of the fuse (FU7) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) <p>When the fuse is not blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-1. Replace the Drum Motor (M04) 5-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) <p>When the fuse is blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E014	0001	05	Title	Fixing Motor startup error
			Description	Within a specified period of time from the startup, the speed fails to be OK.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Fixing Assembly is installed. 2. Remove and reinstall the Fixing Assembly 3. Check the gear 4. Replace the Fixing Assembly 5. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J210) and the Fixing Motor (M17). 6. Check conduction of FU1153 in the AC Driver PCB (UN14) =>Replace the AC Driver when the fuse is blown out 7. Replace the Fixing Motor (M17) 8. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E014	0002	05	Title	Fixing Motor speed error
			Description	Fixing Motor speed error
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Fixing Assembly is installed. 2. Remove and reinstall the Fixing Assembly 3. Check the gear 4. Replace the Fixing Assembly 5. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J210) and the Fixing Motor (M17). 6. Check conduction of FU1153 in the AC Driver PCB (UN14) =>Replace the AC Driver when the fuse is blown out 7. Replace the Fixing Motor (M17) 8. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E014	0003	05	Title	Fixing Motor lock detection
			Description	Within a specified period of time from the startup, signal is not received.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Fixing Assembly is installed. 2. Remove and reinstall the Fixing Assembly 3. Check the gear 4. Replace the Fixing Assembly 5. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J210) and the Fixing Motor (M17). 6. Check conduction of FU1153 in the AC Driver PCB (UN14) =>Replace the AC Driver when the fuse is blown out 7. Replace the Fixing Motor (M17) 8. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0020	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Y) error or toner supply error
			Description	<p>Error in detected TD ratio.</p> <p>The average of ATR reference value is the specified value or lower at the time of ATR Sensor (Y) initialization.</p>
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (Y) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Y) (UN30) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Y). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0030	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Y) error or toner supply error
			Description	Error in detected TD ratio. The average of ATR reference value is the specified value or higher at the time of ATR Sensor (Y) initialization.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Drum Unit (Y) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Y) (UN30) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Y). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0040	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Y) error or toner supply error
			Description	Unable to adjust the control voltage at the time of ATR Sensor (Y) initialization.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Drum Unit (Y) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Y) (UN30) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Y). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0041	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Y) error or toner supply error
			Description	Unable to adjust the control voltage at the time of ATR Sensor (Y) initialization.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Drum Unit (Y) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Y) (UN30) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Y). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0050	05	Title	ATR patch failed to be created correctly or Patch Sensor error
			Description	High density for the target at patch detection
			Remedy	1. Clean the scanner's window. 2. Use your hand to check if the shutter of the Registration Patch Sensor Unit can be open. 3. Check if the window of the Patch Sensor (UN43/ UN44) is soiled. 4. Check scar on the ITB. 5. Check movement of the Registration Shutter Solenoid (SL02). COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL to move SL02 6. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and the Patch Sensors (UN43/J4007, UN44, J4006). 7. Replace the Drum Unit (Y) 8. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 9. Replace the ITB Unit. 10. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 11. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 12. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 13. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 14. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 15. Replace the Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0060	05	Title	ATR patch failed to be created correctly or Patch Sensor error
			Description	High density for the target at patch detection
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the patch shape. 2. Clean the high voltage contact point with dry wiping or air blower. 3. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09) and the High Voltage PCB. Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21, J22) and the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07/ J451, J452) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J19) and the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08/J461, J462) Between the DC Controller PCB (J205) and the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) 4. Replace the Drum Unit (Y) 5. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 6. Replace the ITB Unit. 7. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 8. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 9. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 10. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 11. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 12. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0070	05	Title	Patch Sensor error
			Description	The Patch Sensor could not read a patch properly. (Patch error due to software or the ITB Unit)
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Replace the ITB Unit.
E020	0090	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Y) error or toner supply error
			Description	The average of ATR Sensor (Y) detection value is the specified value or lower.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (Y) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Y) (UN30) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Y). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0091	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Y) error or toner supply error
			Description	The average of ATR Sensor (Y) detection value is the specified value or higher.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (Y) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Y) (UN30) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Y). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	00B0	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Y) error or toner supply error
			Description	T/D ratio detected by the ATR Sensor (Y) (UN39) is equal to or higher than the specified value (high density)
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (Y) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Y) (UN30) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Y). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	00B1	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Y) error or toner supply error
			Description	Error in detected delta T/D ratio T/D ratio detected by the ATR Sensor (Y) (UN39) is equal to or lower than the specified value (light density)
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause: overload with the motor or motor failure</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check conduction with FU2 on the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J23) and PS06. 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Check the Hopper Unit (Y) 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (Y).
E020	0120	05	Title	ATR Sensor (M) error or toner supply error
			Description	Error in detected TD ratio. The average of ATR reference value is the specified value or lower at the time of ATR Sensor (M) initialization.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (M) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (M) (UN31). 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (M). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0130	05	Title	ATR Sensor (M) error or toner supply error
			Description	Error in detected TD ratio. The average of ATR reference value is the specified value or higher at the time of ATR Sensor (M) initialization.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Drum Unit (M) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (M) (UN31). 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (M). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0140	05	Title	ATR Sensor (M) error or toner supply error
			Description	Unable to adjust the control voltage at the time of ATR Sensor (M) initialization.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Drum Unit (M) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (M) (UN31). 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (M). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0141	05	Title	ATR Sensor (M) error or toner supply error
			Description	Unable to adjust the control voltage at the time of ATR Sensor (M) initialization.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Drum Unit (M) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (M) (UN31). 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (M). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0150	05	Title	ATR patch failed to be created correctly or Patch Sensor error
			Description	High density for the target at patch detection
			Remedy	1. Clean the scanner's window. 2. Use your hand to check if the shutter of the Registration Patch Sensor Unit can be open. 3. Check if the window of the Patch Sensor (UN43/ UN44) is soiled. 4. Check scar on the ITB. 5. Check movement of the Registration Shutter Solenoid (SL02). COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL to move SL02 6. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and the Patch Sensors (UN43/J4007, UN44, J4006). 7. Replace the Drum Unit (M) 8. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 9. Replace the ITB Unit. 10. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 11. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 12. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 13. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 14. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 15. Replace the Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0160	05	Title	ATR patch failed to be created correctly or Patch Sensor error
			Description	High density for the target at patch detection
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the patch shape. 2. Clean the high voltage contact point with dry wiping or air blower. 3. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09) and the High Voltage PCB. Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21, J22) and the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07/ J451, J452) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J19) and the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08/J461, J462) Between the DC Controller PCB (J205) and the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) 4. Replace the Drum Unit (M) 5. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 6. Replace the ITB Unit. 7. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 8. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 9. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 10. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 11. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 12. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0170	05	Title	Patch Sensor error
			Description	The Patch Sensor could not read a patch properly. (Patch error due to software or the ITB Unit)
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Replace the ITB Unit.
E020	0190	05	Title	ATR Sensor (M) error or toner supply error
			Description	The average of ATR Sensor (M) detection value is the specified value or lower.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (M) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (M) (UN31). 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (M). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0191	05	Title	ATR Sensor (M) error or toner supply error
			Description	The average of ATR Sensor (M) detection value is the specified value or higher.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (M) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (M) (UN31). 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (M). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	01B0	05	Title	ATR Sensor (M) error or toner supply error
			Description	The T/D ratio detected by the ATR Sensor (M) (UN40) is equal to or higher than the specified value (high density)
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (M) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (M) (UN31). 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (M). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	01B1	05	Title	ATR Sensor (M) error or toner supply error
			Description	Error in detected delta T/D ratio The T/D ratio detected by the ATR Sensor (M) (UN40) is equal to or lower than the specified value (light density)
			Remedy	<p>Overload of the motor or motor failure</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check conduction with FU2 on the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J24) and PS07. 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Check the Hopper Unit (M) 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (M).
E020	0220	05	Title	ATR Sensor (C) error or toner supply error
			Description	Error in detected TD ratio. The average of ATR reference value is the specified value or lower at the time of ATR Sensor (C) initialization.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (C) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (C) (UN32) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (C). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0230	05	Title	ATR Sensor (C) error or toner supply error
			Description	Error in detected TD ratio. The average of ATR reference value is the specified value or higher at the time of ATR Sensor (C) initialization.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Drum Unit (C) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (C) (UN32) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (C). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0240	05	Title	ATR Sensor (C) error or toner supply error
			Description	Unable to adjust the control voltage at the time of ATR Sensor (C) initialization.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Drum Unit (C) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (C) (UN32) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (C). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0241	05	Title	ATR Sensor (C) error or toner supply error
			Description	Unable to adjust the control voltage at the time of ATR Sensor (C) initialization.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Drum Unit (C) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (C) (UN32) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (C). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0250	05	Title	ATR patch failed to be created correctly or Patch Sensor error
			Description	High density for the target at patch detection
			Remedy	1. Clean the scanner's window. 2. Use your hand to check if the shutter of the Registration Patch Sensor Unit can be open. 3. Check if the window of the Patch Sensor (UN43/ UN44) is soiled. 4. Check scar on the ITB. 5. Check movement of the Registration Shutter Solenoid (SL02). COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL to move SL02 6. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and the Patch Sensors (UN43/J4007, UN44, J4006). 7. Replace the Drum Unit (C) 8. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 9. Replace the ITB Unit. 10. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 11. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 12. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 13. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 14. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 15. Replace the Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0260	05	Title	ATR patch failed to be created correctly or Patch Sensor error
			Description	High density for the target at patch detection
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the patch shape. 2. Clean the high voltage contact point with dry wiping or air blower. 3. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09) and the High Voltage PCB. Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21, J22) and the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07/ J451, J452) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J19) and the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08/J461, J462) Between the DC Controller PCB (J205) and the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) 4. Replace the Drum Unit (C) 5. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 6. Replace the ITB Unit. 7. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 8. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 9. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 10. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 11. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 12. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0290	05	Title	ATR Sensor (C) error or toner supply error
			Description	The average of ATR Sensor (C) detection value is the specified value or lower.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (C) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (C) (UN32) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (C). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0291	05	Title	ATR Sensor (C) error or toner supply error
			Description	The average of ATR Sensor (C) detection value is the specified value or higher.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (C) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (C) (UN32) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (C). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	02B0	05	Title	ATR Sensor (C) error or toner supply error
			Description	The T/D ratio detected by the ATR Sensor (C) (UN41) is equal to or higher than the specified value (high density)
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (C) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (C) (UN32) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (C). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	02B1	05	Title	ATR Sensor (C) error or toner supply error
			Description	Error in detected delta T/D ratio The T/D ratio detected by the ATR Sensor (C) (UN41) is equal to or lower than the specified value (light density)
			Remedy	<p>Overload of the motor or motor failure</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check conduction of FU9 on the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J24) and PS08. 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Check the Hopper Unit (C). 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (C).
E020	0320	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Bk) error or toner supply error
			Description	Error in detected TD ratio. The average of ATR reference value is the specified value or lower at the time of ATR Sensor (Bk) initialization.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (Bk) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Bk) (UN33) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0330	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Bk) error or toner supply error
			Description	Error in detected TD ratio. The average of ATR reference value is the specified value or higher at the time of ATR Sensor (Bk) initialization.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (Bk) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Bk) (UN33) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0340	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Bk) error or toner supply error
			Description	Unable to adjust the control voltage at the time of ATR Sensor (Bk) initialization.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (Bk) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Bk) (UN33) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0341	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Bk) error or toner supply error
			Description	Unable to adjust the control voltage at the time of ATR Sensor (Bk) initialization.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (Bk) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Bk) (UN33) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0350	05	Title	ATR patch failed to be created correctly or Patch Sensor error
			Description	High density for the target at patch detection
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Clean the scanner's window. 2. Use your hand to check if the shutter of the Registration Patch Sensor Unit can be open. 3. Check if the window of the Patch Sensor (UN43/ UN44) is soiled. 4. Check scar on the ITB. 5. Check movement of the Registration Shutter Solenoid (SL02). COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL to move SL02 6. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and the Patch Sensors (UN43/J4007, UN44, J4006). 7. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk) 8. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 9. Replace the ITB Unit. 10. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 11. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 12. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 13. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 14. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 15. Replace the Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	0360	05	Title	ATR patch failed to be created correctly or Patch Sensor error
			Description	High density for the target at patch detection
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the patch shape. 2. Clean the high voltage contact point with dry wiping or air blower. 3. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09) and the High Voltage PCB. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21, J22) and the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07/ J451, J452) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J19) and the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08/J461, J462) Between the DC Controller PCB (J205) and the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) 4. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk) 5. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 6. Replace the ITB Unit. 7. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 8. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 9. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 10. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 11. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 12. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0390	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Bk) error or toner supply error
			Description	The average of ATR Sensor (Bk) detection value is the specified value or lower.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (Bk) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Bk) (UN33) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	0391	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Bk) error or toner supply error
			Description	The average of ATR Sensor (Bk) detection value is the specified value or higher.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (Bk) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Bk) (UN33) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	03B0	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Bk) error or toner supply error
			Description	The T/D ratio detected by the ATR Sensor (Bk) (UN42) is equal to or higher than the specified value (high density)
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Drum Unit (Bk) is installed. 2. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29) 3. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Bk) (UN33) 4. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29). 5. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk). 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E020	03B1	05	Title	ATR Sensor (Bk) error or toner supply error
			Description	Error in detected delta T/D ratio The T/D ratio detected by the ATR Sensor (Bk) (UN42) is equal to or lower than the specified value (light density)
			Remedy	<p>Overload of the motor or motor failure</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check conduction of FU9 on the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J26) and PS09 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Check the Hopper Unit (Bk). 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (Bk).
E020	1050	05	Title	Abnormal Y color patch reading value
			Description	Dark patch although setting 0 for the patch level
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Clean the scanner's window. 2. Use your hand to check if the shutter of the Registration Patch Sensor Unit can be open. 3. Check if the window of the Patch Sensor (UN43/ UN44) is soiled. 4. Check scar on the ITB. 5. Check movement of the Registration Shutter Solenoid (SL02). COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL to move SL02 6. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and the Patch Sensors (UN43/J4007, UN44, J4006). 7. Replace the Drum Unit (Y) 8. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 9. Replace the ITB Unit. 10. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 11. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 12. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 13. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 14. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 15. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	1060	05	Title	Abnormal Y color patch reading value
			Description	Light patch although setting 7 for patch level
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the patch shape. 2. Clean the high voltage contact point with dry wiping or air blower. 3. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09) and the High Voltage PCB. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21, J22) and the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07/ J451, J452) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J19) and the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08/J461, J462) Between the DC Controller PCB (J205) and the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) 4. Replace the Drum Unit (Y) 5. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 6. Replace the ITB Unit. 7. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 8. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 9. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 10. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 11. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 12. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	1150	05	Title	Abnormal M color patch reading value
			Description	Dark patch although setting 0 for the patch level
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Clean the scanner's window. 2. Use your hand to check if the shutter of the Registration Patch Sensor Unit can be open. 3. Check if the window of the Patch Sensor (UN43/ UN44) is soiled. 4. Check scar on the ITB. 5. Check movement of the Registration Shutter Solenoid (SL02). COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL to move SL02 6. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and the Patch Sensors (UN43/J4007, UN44, J4006). 7. Replace the Drum Unit (M) 8. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 9. Replace the ITB Unit. 10. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 11. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 12. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 13. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 14. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 15. Replace the Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	1160	05	Title	Abnormal M color patch reading value
			Description	Light patch although setting 7 for patch level (unable to fit in the target between 550 and 640)
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the patch shape. 2. Clean the high voltage contact point with dry wiping or air blower. 3. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09) and the High Voltage PCB. Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21, J22) and the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07/ J451, J452) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J19) and the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08/J461, J462) Between the DC Controller PCB (J205) and the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) 4. Replace the Drum Unit (M) 5. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 6. Replace the ITB Unit. 7. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 8. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 9. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 10. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 11. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 12. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	1250	05	Title	Abnormal C color patch reading value
			Description	Dark patch although setting 0 for the patch level
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Clean the scanner's window. 2. Use your hand to check if the shutter of the Registration Patch Sensor Unit can be open. 3. Check if the window of the Patch Sensor (UN43/ UN44) is soiled. 4. Check scar on the ITB. 5. Check movement of the Registration Shutter Solenoid (SL02). COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL to move SL02 6. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and the Patch Sensors (UN43/J4007, UN44, J4006). 7. Replace the Drum Unit (C) 8. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 9. Replace the ITB Unit. 10. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 11. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 12. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 13. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 14. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 15. Replace the Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	1260	05	Title	Abnormal C color patch reading value
			Description	Light patch although setting 7 for patch level (unable to fit in the target between 550 and 640)
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the patch shape. 2. Clean the high voltage contact point with dry wiping or air blower. 3. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09) and the High Voltage PCB. Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21, J22) and the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07/ J451, J452) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J19) and the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08/J461, J462) Between the DC Controller PCB (J205) and the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) 4. Replace the Drum Unit (C) 5. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 6. Replace the ITB Unit. 7. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 8. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 9. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 10. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 11. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 12. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	1350	05	Title	Abnormal Bk color patch reading value
			Description	Dark patch although setting 0 for the patch level
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Clean the scanner's window. 2. Use your hand to check if the shutter of the Registration Patch Sensor Unit can be open. 3. Check if the window of the Patch Sensor (UN43/ UN44) is soiled. 4. Check scar on the ITB. 5. Check movement of the Registration Shutter Solenoid (SL02). COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL to move SL02 6. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and the Patch Sensors (UN43/J4007, UN44, J4006). 7. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk) 8. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 9. Replace the ITB Unit. 10. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 11. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 12. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 13. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 14. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 15. Replace the Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E020	1360	05	Title	Abnormal Bk color patch reading value
			Description	Light patch although setting 7 for patch level
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the patch shape. 2. Clean the high voltage contact point with dry wiping or air blower. 3. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09) and the High Voltage PCB. Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21, J22) and the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07/ J451, J452) Between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J19) and the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08/J461, J462) Between the DC Controller PCB (J205) and the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) 4. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk) 5. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 6. Replace the ITB Unit. 7. Check conduction of the fuses (FU5, FU8) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 8. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 9. Replace the Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07) 10. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06) 11. Replace the Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08) 12. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E021	0001	05	Title	CL Developing Motor startup error
			Description	After 700 msec since the startup, the speed failed to be OK for 500 consecutive msec.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the Main Drive Unit (turn the unit by hand to see if it rotates) Replace the Main Drive Unit when the unit failed to rotate When the unit rotates 2. Check failure of the harness between the Developing Motor (M03/J6026) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J210W) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) 3. Check conduction of the fuse (FU7) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) <p>When the fuse is not blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-1. Replace the Developing Motor (M03) 5-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09). <p>When the fuse is blown out</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09).

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E021	0002	05	Title	CL Developing Motor speed error
			Description	Since the startup, the speed had been OK at least once, and then the speed failed to be OK for 500 consecutive msec.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble</p> <p>1. Check the Main Drive Unit (turn the unit by hand to see if it rotates) Replace the Main Drive Unit when the unit failed to rotate When the unit rotates</p> <p>2. Check failure of the harness between the Developing Motor (M03/J6026) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J210W) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection)</p> <p>3. Check conduction of the fuse (FU7) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p> <p>When the fuse is not blown out 4-1. Replace the Developing Motor (M03) 5-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09).</p> <p>When the fuse is blown out 4-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09).</p>
E021	0003	05	Title	CL Developing Motor lock detection
			Description	Since the startup, the FG signal failed to be turned ON for 300msec.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause is overload or rotation failure of the motor due to an electrical trouble</p> <p>1. Check the Main Drive Unit (turn the unit by hand to see if it rotates) Replace the Main Drive Unit when the unit failed to rotate When the unit rotates</p> <p>2. Check failure of the harness between the Developing Motor (M03/J6026) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J210W) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection)</p> <p>3. Check conduction of the fuse (FU7) in the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p> <p>When the fuse is not blown out 4-1. Replace the Developing Motor (M03) 5-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09).</p> <p>When the fuse is blown out 4-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09).</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E021	0020	05	Title	Developing screw rotation detection
			Description	Error in the difference between the maximum and the minimum of ATR Sensor (Y) detection value.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause: The screw is not rotating due to failure in the coupling between the main body and the Developing Assembly, or the value of ATR Sensor (Y) (UN39) failed to be read due to an electrical trouble.</p> <p>1. Remove the Drum Unit (Y) and check no damage. (Replace the Drum Unit (Y) if defective)</p> <p>2. Lift the pressure lever after the Drum Unit (Y) is pushed all the way in.</p> <p>3. Check failure of the harness between the Drum Unit (Y) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J25) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection)</p> <p>4. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Y) (UN26) (Soil/ deformation/ damage)</p> <p>5. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (M) (UN30) (Soil/ damage)</p> <p>6. Replace the Drum Unit (Y)</p> <p>7. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09).</p> <p>8. Replace the Main Drive Unit</p>
E021	0120	05	Title	Developing screw rotation detection
			Description	Error in the difference between the maximum and the minimum of ATR Sensor (M) detection value.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause: The screw is not rotating due to failure in the coupling between the main body and the Developing Assembly, or the value of ATR Sensor (M) (UN40) failed to be read due to an electrical trouble.</p> <p>1. Remove the Drum Unit (M) and check no damage. (Replace the Drum Unit (M) if defective)</p> <p>2. Lift the pressure lever after the Drum Unit (M) is pushed all the way in.</p> <p>3. Check failure of the harness between the Drum Unit (M) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J25) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection)</p> <p>4. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (M) (UN27) (Soil/ deformation/ damage)</p> <p>5. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (M) (UN31) (Soil/ damage)</p> <p>6. Replace the Drum Unit (M)</p> <p>7. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09).</p> <p>8. Replace the Main Drive Unit</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E021	0220	05	Title	Developing screw rotation detection
			Description	Error in the difference between the maximum and the minimum of ATR Sensor (C) detection value.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause: The screw is not rotating due to failure in the coupling between the main body and the Developing Assembly, or the value of ATR Sensor (C)(UN41) failed to be read due to an electrical trouble.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the Drum Unit (C) and check no damage. (Replace the Drum Unit (C) if defective) 2. Lift the pressure lever after the Drum Unit (C) is pushed all the way in. 3. Check failure of the harness between the Drum Unit (C) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J25) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) 4. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (C) (UN28) (Soil/ deformation/ damage) 5. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (C) (UN32) (Soil/ damage) 6. Replace the Drum Unit (C). 7. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 8. Replace the Main Drive Unit
E021	0320	05	Title	Developing screw rotation detection
			Description	Error in the difference between the maximum and the minimum of ATR Sensor (Bk) detection value.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause: The screw is not rotating due to failure in the coupling between the main body and the Developing Assembly, or the value of ATR Sensor (Bk) (UN42) failed to be read due to an electrical trouble</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the Drum Unit (Bk) and check no damage. (Replace the Drum Unit (Bk) if defective) 2. Lift the pressure lever after the Drum Unit (Bk) is pushed all the way in. 3. Check failure of the harness between the Drum Unit (Bk) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J25) (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) 4. Check the Drum Unit Relay PCB (Bk) (UN29) (Soil/ deformation/ damage) 5. Check the Drum Unit Memory PCB (Bk) (UN33) (Soil/ damage) 6. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk). 7. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 8. Replace the Main Drive Unit

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E022	0000	05	Title	Error in detection of abnormal opening/closing of the Laser Shutter
			Description	At the Dustproof Shutter open/close control, the sensor fails to detect although the specified time has passed.
			Remedy	<p>Error in the Shutter Motor or the Laser Shutter Sensor</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > MTR; move M05 <p>When it works</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2-1. Check the harness between the DC Controller (UN09/ J11) and the Laser Shutter Sensor (PS05) 3-1. Check condition of the Laser Shutter 4-1. Check the Laser Shutter Sensor (PS05) in the Main Drive 5-1. Replace the Main Drive <p>When it does not work</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2-2. Check the harness between the DC Controller (UN09/ J31) and the Developing Disengagement Motor (M05) 3-2. Check conduction of the fuse (FU6) in the DC Controller (UN09) 4-2. Replace the Laser Shutter Motor (M05) 5-2. Replace the Main Drive
E025	0000	05	Title	Toner Supply Motor (Y) lock detection
			Description	Failed to detect rotation after turning ON the motor.
			Remedy	<p>Possible cause: overload with the motor or motor failure</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check conduction with FU2 on the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J23) and PS06. 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) <p>Check the harness toward the sensor</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Check the Hopper Unit (Y) 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (Y).
E025	0010	05	Title	Toner Container Motor (Y) lock detection
			Description	Error in the current value after turning ON the motor.
			Remedy	<p>Overload of the motor or motor failure</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Toner Bottle (Y) is installed 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Toner Container Motor (Y) (M07) 3. Check conduction of FU1 in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (Y)
E025	0020	05	Title	Detection of short-circuit with Toner Container Motor (Y)FET
			Description	Error in element in the DC Controller PCB
			Remedy	<p>Error in the current value after turning OFF the motor.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E025	0030	05	Title	Detection of short-circuit with Toner Container Motor (Y) GND
			Description	After turning ON the motor, the current value is a certain value or lower.
			Remedy	Short-circuit failure of the Toner Bottle Motor or error in element in the DC Controller PCB 1. Check the harness between the DC Controller (UN09/J23) and the Toner Container Motor (Y) (M07) 2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 3. Replace the Hopper Unit (Y)
E025	0100	05	Title	Toner Supply Motor (M) lock detection
			Description	The Rotation Sensor does not detect rotation although 5 sec has passed since the motor was turned ON
			Remedy	Overload of the motor or motor failure 1. Check conduction with FU2 on the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J24) and PS07. 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Check the Hopper Unit (M). 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (M).
E025	0110	05	Title	Toner Container Motor (M) lock detection
			Description	Error in the current value after turning ON the motor.
			Remedy	Overload of the motor or motor failure 1. Check if the Toner Bottle (M) is installed 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Toner Container Motor (M) (M09) 3. Check conduction of FU1 in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (M)
E025	0120	05	Title	Detection of short-circuit with Toner Container Motor (M)FET
			Description	Error in element in the DC Controller PCB Error in the current value after turning OFF the motor.
			Remedy	Error in element in the DC Controller PCB 1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E025	0130	05	Title	Detection of short-circuit with Toner Container Motor (M) GND
			Description	After turning ON the motor, the current value is a certain value or lower.
			Remedy	Short-circuit failure of the Toner Bottle Motor or error in element in the DC Controller PCB 1. Check the harness between the DC Controller (UN09/J24) and the Toner Container Motor (M) (M09) 2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 3. Replace the Hopper Unit (M)
E025	0200	05	Title	Toner Supply Motor (C) lock detection
			Description	After turning ON the motor, the rotation sensor does not detect although a specified period of time has passed.
			Remedy	Overload of the motor or motor failure 1. Check conduction of FU9 on the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J24) and PS08. 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Check the Hopper Unit (C). 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (C).
E025	0210	05	Title	Toner Container Motor (C) lock detection
			Description	Error in the current value after turning ON the motor.
			Remedy	Overload of the motor or motor failure 1. Check if the Toner Bottle (C) is installed 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Toner Container Motor (C) (M11) 3. Check conduction of FU3 in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (C)
E025	0220	05	Title	Detection of short-circuit with Toner Container Motor (C)FET
			Description	Error in element in the DC Controller PCB Error in the current value after turning OFF the motor.
			Remedy	Error in element in the DC Controller PCB 1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E025	0230	05	Title	Detection of short-circuit with Toner Container Motor (C) GND
			Description	After turning ON the motor, the current value is a certain value or lower.
			Remedy	Short-circuit failure of the Toner Bottle Motor or error in element in the DC Controller PCB 1. Check the harness between the DC Controller (UN09/J24) and the Toner Container Motor (C) (M11) 2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 3. Replace the Hopper Unit (C)
E025	0300	05	Title	Toner Supply Motor (Bk) lock detection
			Description	The Rotation Sensor does not detect rotation although 5 sec has passed since the motor was turned ON
			Remedy	Overload of the motor or motor failure 1. Check conduction of FU9 on the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J26) and PS09 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Check the Hopper Unit (Bk). 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (Bk).
E025	0310	05	Title	Toner Container Motor (Bk) lock detection
			Description	Error in the current value after turning ON the motor.
			Remedy	Overload of the motor or motor failure 1. Check if the Toner Bottle (Bk) is installed 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the B Toner Container Motor (Bk)(M13) 3. Check conduction of FU3 in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 5. Replace the Hopper Unit (Bk)
E025	0320	05	Title	Detection of short-circuit with Toner Container Motor (Bk)FET
			Description	Error in element in the DC Controller PCB Error in the current value after turning OFF the motor.
			Remedy	Error in element in the DC Controller PCB 1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E025	0330	05	Title	Detection of short-circuit with Toner Container Motor (Bk) GND
			Description	After turning ON the motor, the current value is a certain value or lower.
			Remedy	Short-circuit failure of the Toner Bottle Motor or error in element in the DC Controller PCB 1. Check the harness between the DC Controller (UN09/J26) and the Toner Container Motor (Bk) (M13) 2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 3. Replace the Hopper Unit (Bk)
E032	0001	05	Title	ASSIST Counter failed to work
			Description	Detection of short-circuit with the Count Pulse Signal
			Remedy	Check the cable (to see if it's disconnected)
E040	0002	05	Title	Cassette 1 Lifter error
			Description	Unable to detect the lift-up completion position within 4.5 sec after lift-up was started
			Remedy	Error in Lift Motor or Lifter Sensor 1. While Cassette 1 is removed, turn ON the power and then insert Cassette 1. When there is operation sound of the motor 1-1. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09/J13) and the Cassette 1 Lifter Sensor (PS12) 2-1. Check if the Cassette 1 Lifter Sensor (PS12) is installed. 3-1. Extend the Sensor Flag of the Cassette 1 Lifter Sensor (PS12) by approx. 1.5 mm with Plastic Film, etc. 4-1. Check the condition of the gear at the host machine side (to see if there is missing or swing with the gear) 5-1. Replace the Cassette 1 Lifter Sensor (PS12) 6-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When there is no operation sound of the motor 1-2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09/J13) and the Cassette 1 Lifter Motor (M14) 2-2. Check conduction of the fuse (FU2) of the DC Controller (UN09) 3-2. Check the condition of the gear at the host machine side (to see if there is something missing or swing with the gear) 4-2. Check the Cassette 1 Lifter Motor (M14) 5-2. Replace the DC Controller (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E065	0000	05	Title	Error in detection of abnormal Y charging AC current value
			Description	During the paper interval simple discharge current control, a current value that is higher than the target of 500[uA] is detected
			Remedy	<p>Error in output of charging high voltage, Drum Unit error or environment control error</p> <p>1. COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG; check if the TEMP value and the HUM value are matched with the environment temperature.</p> <p>When the values are dramatically mismatched (Lager than 15degrees Celsius)</p> <p>2-1. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller (UN09/ J206) and the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>3-1. Replace the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>4-1. Replace the DC Controller (UN09)</p> <p>When the values are matched</p> <p>2-2. Check the state of the charging high voltage contact point</p> <p>3-2. Replace the Drum Unit (Y)</p> <p>4-2. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442)</p> <p>5-2. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06)</p> <p>6-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p>
E065	0001	05	Title	Error in detection of abnormal M charging AC current value
			Description	During the paper interval simple discharge current control, a current value that is higher than the target of 500[uA] is detected
			Remedy	<p>Error in output of charging high voltage, Drum Unit error or environment control error</p> <p>1. COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG; check if the TEMP value and the HUM value are matched with the environment temperature.</p> <p>When the values are dramatically mismatched (Lager than 15degrees Celsius)</p> <p>2-1. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller (UN09/ J206) and the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>3-1. Replace the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>4-1. Replace the DC Controller (UN9)</p> <p>When the values are matched</p> <p>2-2. Check the state of the charging high voltage contact point</p> <p>3-2. Replace the Drum Unit (M)</p> <p>4-2. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442)</p> <p>5-2. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06)</p> <p>6-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E065	0002	05	Title	Error in detection of abnormal C charging AC current value
			Description	During the paper interval simple discharge current control, a current value that is higher than the target of 500[uA] is detected
			Remedy	<p>Error in output of charging high voltage, Drum Unit error or environment control error</p> <p>1. COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG; check if the TEMP value and the HUM value are matched with the environment temperature.</p> <p>When the values are dramatically mismatched (Lager than 15degrees Celsius)</p> <p>2-1. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller (UN09/ J206) and the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>3-1. Replace the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>4-1. Replace the DC Controller (UN9)</p> <p>When the values are matched</p> <p>2-2. Check the state of the charging high voltage contact point</p> <p>3-2. Replace the Drum Unit (C)</p> <p>4-2. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442)</p> <p>5-2. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06)</p> <p>6-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p>
E065	0003	05	Title	Error in detection of abnormal Bk charging AC current value
			Description	During the paper interval simple discharge current control, a current value that is higher than the target of 500[uA] is detected
			Remedy	<p>Error in output of charging high voltage, Drum Unit error or environment control error</p> <p>1. COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG; check if the TEMP value and the HUM value are matched with the environment temperature.</p> <p>When the values are dramatically mismatched (Lager than 15degrees Celsius)</p> <p>2-1. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller (UN09/ J206) and the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>3-1. Replace the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>4-1. Replace the DC Controller (UN9)</p> <p>When the values are matched</p> <p>2-2. Check the state of the charging high voltage contact point</p> <p>3-2. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk).</p> <p>4-2. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442)</p> <p>5-2. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06)</p> <p>6-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p>

T-7-4

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E065	0000	05	Title	Error in detection of abnormal Y charging AC current value
			Description	During the paper interval simple discharge current control, a current value that is higher than the target of 500[uA] is detected
			Remedy	<p>Error in output of charging high voltage, Drum Unit error or environment control error</p> <p>1. COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG; check if the TEMP value and the HUM value are matched with the environment temperature.</p> <p>When the values are dramatically mismatched (Lager than 15degrees Celsius)</p> <p>2-1. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller (UN09/ J206) and the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>3-1. Replace the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>4-1. Replace the DC Controller (UN09)</p> <p>When the values are matched</p> <p>2-2. Check the state of the charging high voltage contact point</p> <p>3-2. Replace the Drum Unit (Y)</p> <p>4-2. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442)</p> <p>5-2. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06)</p> <p>6-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p>
E065	0001	05	Title	Error in detection of abnormal M charging AC current value
			Description	During the paper interval simple discharge current control, a current value that is higher than the target of 500[uA] is detected
			Remedy	<p>Error in output of charging high voltage, Drum Unit error or environment control error</p> <p>1. COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG; check if the TEMP value and the HUM value are matched with the environment temperature.</p> <p>When the values are dramatically mismatched (Lager than 15degrees Celsius)</p> <p>2-1. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller (UN09/ J206) and the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>3-1. Replace the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>4-1. Replace the DC Controller (UN9)</p> <p>When the values are matched</p> <p>2-2. Check the state of the charging high voltage contact point</p> <p>3-2. Replace the Drum Unit (M)</p> <p>4-2. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442)</p> <p>5-2. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06)</p> <p>6-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E065	0002	05	Title	Error in detection of abnormal C charging AC current value
			Description	During the paper interval simple discharge current control, a current value that is higher than the target of 500[uA] is detected
			Remedy	<p>Error in output of charging high voltage, Drum Unit error or environment control error</p> <p>1. COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG; check if the TEMP value and the HUM value are matched with the environment temperature.</p> <p>When the values are dramatically mismatched (Lager than 15degrees Celsius)</p> <p>2-1. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller (UN09/ J206) and the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>3-1. Replace the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>4-1. Replace the DC Controller (UN9)</p> <p>When the values are matched</p> <p>2-2. Check the state of the charging high voltage contact point</p> <p>3-2. Replace the Drum Unit (C)</p> <p>4-2. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442)</p> <p>5-2. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06)</p> <p>6-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p>
E065	0003	05	Title	Error in detection of abnormal Bk charging AC current value
			Description	During the paper interval simple discharge current control, a current value that is higher than the target of 500[uA] is detected
			Remedy	<p>Error in output of charging high voltage, Drum Unit error or environment control error</p> <p>1. COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG; check if the TEMP value and the HUM value are matched with the environment temperature.</p> <p>When the values are dramatically mismatched (Lager than 15degrees Celsius)</p> <p>2-1. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller (UN09/ J206) and the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>3-1. Replace the Environment Sensor (UN45)</p> <p>4-1. Replace the DC Controller (UN9)</p> <p>When the values are matched</p> <p>2-2. Check the state of the charging high voltage contact point</p> <p>3-2. Replace the Drum Unit (Bk).</p> <p>4-2. Check the harness and connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J21) and the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06/ J441, J442)</p> <p>5-2. Replace the Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06)</p> <p>6-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E067	0000	05	Title	Error in Y primary transfer abnormal detection
			Description	When trying to apply the specified voltage or higher
			Remedy	<p>Error in the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB, Error in the Primary Transfer Roller (ITB Unit)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check failure of the harness between the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J205) (open circuit, trapped cable, connector disconnection). -> Replace the harness if it is faulty 2. Check connection failure between the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J41) and the Primary Transfer Roller (Check that the connection is free from open circuit or GND contact) 3. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 4. Replace the ITB Unit 5. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 6. Replace the Primary Transfer Power Supply Unit
E067	0001	05	Title	Error in M primary transfer abnormal detection
			Description	When trying to apply the specified voltage of 1500 [V] or higher
			Remedy	<p>Error in the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB, Error in the Primary Transfer Roller (ITB Unit)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check failure of the harness between the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J205) (open circuit, trapped cable, connector disconnection). -> Replace the harness if it is faulty 2. Check connection failure between the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J31) and the Primary Transfer Roller (Check that the connection is free from open circuit or GND contact) 3. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 4. Replace the ITB Unit 5. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 6. Replace the Primary Transfer Power Supply Unit

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E067	0002	05	Title	Error in C primary transfer abnormal detection
			Description	When trying to apply the specified voltage of 1500 [V] or higher
			Remedy	<p>Error in the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB, Error in the Primary Transfer Roller (ITB Unit)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check failure of the harness between the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J205) (open circuit, trapped cable, connector disconnection). -> Replace the harness if it is faulty 2. Check connection failure between the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J21) and the Primary Transfer Roller (Check that the connection is free from open circuit or GND contact) 3. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 4. Replace the ITB Unit 5. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 6. Replace the Primary Transfer Power Supply Unit
E067	0003	05	Title	Error in Bk primary transfer abnormal detection
			Description	When trying to apply the specified voltage of 1500 [V] or higher
			Remedy	<p>Error in the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB, Error in the Primary Transfer Roller (ITB Unit)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check failure of the harness between the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J205) (open circuit, trapped cable, connector disconnection). -> Replace the harness if it is faulty 2. Check connection failure between the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J11) and the Primary Transfer Roller (Check that the connection is free from open circuit or GND contact) 3. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 4. Replace the ITB Unit 5. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 6. Replace the Primary Transfer Power Supply Unit

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E069	0001	05	Title	Abnormal current is detected at the secondary transfer
			Description	When 5 [μ A] or smaller is detected at the secondary transfer
			Remedy	Error in the Secondary Transfer High Voltage PCB, Error in the Secondary Transfer Roller 1. Check failure of the harness between the Secondary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN05/J201) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J10) (open circuit, trapped cable, connector disconnection). -> Replace the harness if it is faulty 2. Check connection failure between the Secondary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN05/T1201) and the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller (Check that the connection is free from open circuit or GND contact) 3. Replace the Secondary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN05) 4. Replace the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller 5. Replace the ITB Unit 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 7. Replace the Secondary Transfer Power Supply Unit
E069	0002	05	Title	Abnormal current is detected at the secondary transfer
			Description	When 100 [μ A] or larger is detected at the secondary transfer
			Remedy	Error in the Secondary Transfer High Voltage PCB, Error in the Secondary Transfer Roller 1. Check failure of the harness between the Secondary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN05/J201) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J10) (open circuit, trapped cable, connector disconnection). -> Replace the harness if it is faulty 2. Check connection failure between the Secondary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN05/T1201) and the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller (Check that the connection is free from open circuit or GND contact) -> Replace the connection wire if it is faulty 3. Replace the Secondary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN05) 4. Replace the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller 5. Replace the ITB Unit 6. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09).

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E074	0000	05	Title	Error in the primary transfer disengagement control
			Description	At the primary transfer disengagement control, the sensor fails to detect although the specified time has passed.
			Remedy	Error in the Primary Transfer Disengagement Solenoid, Error in the Primary Transfer Disengagement Switch, or the ITB Guide Rail error 1. Replace the ITB Unit 2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J11) and the Primary Transfer Disengagement Switch (SW01) 3. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J11) and the Primary Transfer Disengagement Solenoid (SL01) 4. Check conduction of FU6 on the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 5. Replace the ITB Guide Rail 6. Replace the Main Drive 7. Replace the Fixing Drive 8. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E074	FFFF	05	Title	ITB rotation detection error
			Description	The sensor fails to detect although it passes through the mark on the ITB for the specified time (ITB is detected as not rotating)
			Remedy	The HP mark is at undetectable state, ITB Top Sensor error, or error in the coupling between the ITB Unit and the ITB Drive 1. Check if the ITB is driven. When the ITB is driven 2-1. Check soil of the HP mark on the ITB Belt 3-1. Check if there is a scar at the edge of the ITB 4-1. Use your hand to check if the shutter of the Registration Patch Sensor Unit can be open 5-1. Check for soil on the window of the Patch Sensor (UN43/UN44) 6-1. Check movement of the Registration Shutter Solenoid (SL02) COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL to move SL02 7-1. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and the Patch Sensor (UN43/J4007, UN44/J4006) 8-1. Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit 9-1 Replace the ITB Unit. 10-1. Replace the DCON When the ITB is not driven 2-2. Remove and then install the ITB Unit 3-2 Replace the ITB Unit. 4-2. Replace the Main Drive

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E100	0001	05	Title	BD error
			Description	BD fails to be ready in 5 sec
			Remedy	Scanner Motor movement error or BD signal error 1.COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > MTR; and move M01 When the Scanner Motor (M01) moves 2-1. Check the flexible cable/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Laser Scanner Unit 3-1. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit 4-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When the Scanner Motor (M01) does not move 2-2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Laser Scanner Unit 3-2. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit 4-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E100	0002	05	Title	BD error
			Description	Unable to complete in 5 sec since the facet correction was started
			Remedy	Polygon Motor error 1. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit
E100	0003	05	Title	BD error
			Description	During the drive at the constant speed, the BD cycle is mismatched by +/- 0.5% for 500 continuous msec
			Remedy	Scanner Motor movement error or BD signal error 1.COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > MTR; and move M01 When the Scanner Motor (M01) moves 2-1. Check the flexible cable/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Laser Scanner Unit 3-1. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit 4-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When the Scanner Motor (M01) does not move 2-2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Laser Scanner Unit 3-2. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit 4-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E110	0001	05	Title	Scanner Motor error
			Description	Scanner Motor movement error or motor control error
			Remedy	Scanner Motor movement error or motor control error 1.Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Laser Scanner Unit 2.Check the flexible cable/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Laser Scanner Unit 3. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit 4. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E110	0002	05	Title	Scanner Motor error
			Description	Scanner Motor movement error or motor control error
			Remedy	Scanner Motor movement error or motor control error 1.Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Laser Scanner Unit 2.Check the flexible cable/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Laser Scanner Unit 3. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit 4. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E110	0003	05	Title	Scanner Motor error
			Description	The signal fails to be 1 at laser sequence enable check
			Remedy	Error in control with the Laser Scanner Unit 1. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E194	0000	05	Title	Registration detection error
			Description	When the number of reading patterns fails to be the specified value
			Remedy	<p>The patch by the registration detection is not correctly created, or registration patch sensor error</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the dustproof glass. Check density on the image visually. <p>When the image density is light</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the high voltage contact point with dry wiping or air blower. Replace the Drum Unit (If the color showing abnormality can be identified from the image, replace the Drum Unit for that color. otherwise, replace from the Drum Unit (Y) in order) Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the High Voltage PCB Replace the High Voltage PCB. Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06), Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07), Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08), Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) Replace the DCON <p>When the image density is not light</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use your hand to check that the shutter of the Registration Patch Sensor Unit can be open Check for soil on the window of the Patch Sensor (UN43, UN44) Check scar on the ITB. Check movement of the Registration Shutter Solenoid COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL to move SL02 Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J12) and the Patch Sensor (UN43/J4007, UN44/J4006) Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit Replace the ITB Unit.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E194	0001	05	Title	Registration detection error
			Description	When there is an image gap of 3.25[mm] or larger.
			Remedy	<p>The last registration detection was not properly executed</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Clear the registration detection data COPIER>FUNCTION>CLEAR>REG-CLR Clean the window of the scanner Check density on the image visually. <p>When the image density is light</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the high voltage contact point with dry wiping or air blower. Replace the Drum Unit (If the color showing abnormality can be identified from the image, replace the Drum Unit for that color. otherwise, replace from the Drum Unit (Y) in order) Check the harness/connector between the DCON and the High Voltage PCB Replace the High Voltage PCB. Primary Charging High Voltage PCB (UN06), Developing High Voltage PCB (UN07), Auxiliary High Voltage PCB (UN08), Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) Replace the DCON <p>When the image density is not light</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use your hand to check that the shutter of the Registration Patch Sensor Unit can be open Check for soil on the window of the Patch Sensor (UN43, UN44) Check scar on the ITB. Check movement of the Registration Shutter Solenoid COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > SL to move SL02 Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Patch Sensor (UN43/J4007, UN44/J4006) Replace the Registration Patch Sensor Unit Replace the ITB Unit.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E194	FFFF	05	Title	Registration detection error
			Description	There has been no command from CONT although 1 min has passed since the start of retry operation
			Remedy	Connection failure between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the CB Controller PCB (UN11), error in the DC Controller PCB (UN09), or error in the Controller PCB 1.Disconnect and then connect FFC (FFC 07) that is connected to the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E196	0001	05	Title	E2PROM communication error
			Description	I2C communication error
			Remedy	Error in access to EEPROM mounted on the Laser Scanner. 1. Disconnect and then connect the connector and Flat Cable of the Laser Scanner Unit. 2. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit.
E196	0002	05	Title	E2PROM data retrieval timeout
			Description	Within 10 sec since the power was turned ON, the E2PROM data cannot be developed to RAM
			Remedy	EEPROM communication error in the DCON or the Drum Unit 1. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (UN26/4011, UN27/J4014, UN28/J4017, UN29/J4020) 2. Check the contact surface on the Drum Unit Relay PCB and the Drum Unit Memory PCB (soil, damage, contact pressure) Y:UN26/UN30 M:UN27/UN31 C:UN28/UN32 Bk UN29/UN33 3. From Y Drum Unit, install each Drum Unit accordingly at a time to identify error ROM 4. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E196	0003	05	Title	E2PROM bus possession error
			Description	The operation of the Drum Unit Memory PCB is faulty and cannot be recovered
			Remedy	EEPROM communication error of the Drum Unit 1.Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J25) and the Drum Unit Relay PCB (UN26/4011, UN27/J4014, UN28/J4017, UN29/J4020) 2.Check the contact surface on the Drum Unit Relay PCB and the Drum Unit Memory PCB (soil, damage, contact pressure) Y:UN26/UN30 M:UN27/UN31 C:UN28/UN32 Bk UN29/UN33 3. From Y Drum Unit, install each Drum Unit accordingly at a time to identify error ROM 4. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E196	1B00	05	Title	E2PROM communication error
			Description	Command error
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power
E196	1B01	05	Title	E2PROM communication error
			Description	Command error
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power
E196	1B02	05	Title	E2PROM communication error
			Description	Command error
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power
E196	1B03	05	Title	E2PROM communication error
			Description	Command error
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power
E196	1B04	05	Title	E2PROM communication error
			Description	Command error
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power
E196	1BFF	05	Title	E2PROM communication error
			Description	Command error
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power
E197	0000	05	Title	HOB communication error
			Description	HOB communication error
			Remedy	High Voltage contact point error or DC Controller PCB error When this symptom occurs regularly 1-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When this symptom occurs incidentally 1-2. Check the high voltage contact point and clean the Primary Transfer Roller Shaft Support 2-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E197	0050	05	Title	HOB communication error
			Description	HOB communication error
			Remedy	High Voltage contact point error or DC Controller PCB error When this symptom occurs regularly 1-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When this symptom occurs incidentally 1-2. Check the high voltage contact point and clean the Primary Transfer Roller Shaft Support 2-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E202	0001	04	Title	There is an error in the detection of the Scanner Unit home position.
			Description	The attempt to detect the home position fails when the Scanner Unit is moved forward.
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable(Relay PCB(PCB1)-Main Controller2 PCB(UN12)64Pin). 2.Replace the flexible cable. 3.Replace the Scanner Unit HP sensor(SR1). 4.Replace the Scanner Motor(M1). 5.Replace the Relay PCB(PCB1). 6.Replace the Main Controller2 PCB(UN12)
E202	0002	04	Title	There is an error in the detection of the Scanner Unit home position.
			Description	The attempt to detect the home position fails when the Scanner Unit is moved back.
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable(Relay PCB(PCB1)-Main Controller2 PCB(UN12)64Pin). 2.Replace the flexible cable. 3.Replace the Scanner Unit HP sensor(SR1). 4.Replace the Scanner Motor(M1). 5.Replace the Relay PCB(PCB1). 6.Replace the Main Controller2 PCB(UN12)
E225	0001	04	Title	The light intensity of the Scanner Unit is faulty.
			Description	The light intensity of the Scanner Unit during shading is under the specified level.
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable. 2.Replace the flexible cable. 3.Replace the Scanner Unit. 4.Replace the Relay PCB(PCB1). 5.Replace the Main Controller2 PCB(UN12).
E227	0001	05	Title	The reader unit power supply (24V) is faulty.
			Description	At time of power-on, the 24V port is off.
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the power supply harness connector. 2.Replace the Power Supply PCB(UN1).
E227	0002	05	Title	The reader unit power supply (24V) is faulty.
			Description	At the start of a job, the 24V port is off.
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the power supply harness connector. 2.Replace the Power Supply PCB(UN1).
E227	0003	05	Title	At the end of a job, the 24V port is off.
			Description	At time of power-on,the 24V port is off.
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the power supply harness connector. 2.Replace the Power Supply PCB(UN1).

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E227	0004	05	Title	The reader unit power supply (24V) is faulty.
			Description	When a load is being driven, the 24V port is off.
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the power supply harness connector. 2.Replace the Power Supply PCB(UN1).
E240	0000	05	Title	Communication data error
			Description	Connection error between the DC Controller PCB and Main Controller PCB 2, or error in Main Controller PCB 2.
			Remedy	1. Disconnect and then connect the FFC (FFC07) that is connected to the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E240	0001	05	Title	Communication data error
			Description	60 sec while waiting for a pickup request
			Remedy	1. Disconnect and then connect the FFC (FFC07) that is connected to the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E240	0002	05	Title	Communication data error
			Description	60 sec while waiting for an image output request
			Remedy	1. Disconnect and then connect the FFC (FFC07) that is connected to the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E240	0003	05	Title	Communication data error
			Description	After a paper jam, 60 sec has passed without stopping
			Remedy	1. Disconnect and then connect the FFC (FFC07) that is connected to the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E240	0004	05	Title	Communication data error
			Description	60 sec has passed while waiting for completion of the initial rotation
			Remedy	1. Disconnect and then connect the FFC (FFC07) that is connected to the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E240	0005	05	Title	Communication data error
			Description	60 sec has passed while waiting for the start of auto adjustment at warm-up rotation
			Remedy	1. Disconnect and then connect the FFC (FFC07) that is connected to the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E240	0006	05	Title	Communication data error
			Description	Data access error
			Remedy	1. Disconnect and then connect the FFC (FFC07) that is connected to the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E240	0007	05	Title	Communication data error
			Description	Time notification error
			Remedy	1. Disconnect and then connect the FFC (FFC07) that is connected to the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 (UN12) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E246	0001	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E246	0002	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E246	0003	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E246	0005	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E247	0001	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E247	0002	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E247	0003	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E247	0004	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E248	0001	04	Title	EEPROM error (Scanner Unit)
			Description	An error has occurred at power-on.
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable(Relay PCB(PCB1)-Main Controller2 PCB(UN12)50pin). 2.Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable(Scanner Unit-Relay PCB(PCB1)). 3.Disconnect and then connect the power supply harness connector. 4.Replace the flexible cable. 5.Replace the Scanner Unit. 6.Replace the Relay PCB(PCB1) 7.Replace the Power Supply PCB(PCB1). 8.Replace the Main Controller2 PCB(UN12).
E248	0002	04	Title	EEPROM error (Scanner Unit)
			Description	An error has occurred during write operation.
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable(Relay PCB(PCB1)-Main Controller2 PCB(UN12)50pin). 2.Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable(Scanner Unit-Relay PCB(PCB1)). 3.Disconnect and then connect the power supply harness connector. 4.Replace the flexible cable. 5.Replace the Scanner Unit. 6.Replace the Relay PCB(PCB1) 7.Replace the Power Supply PCB(PCB1). 8.Replace the Main Controller2 PCB(UN12).
E248	0003	04	Title	EEPROM error (Scanner Unit)
			Description	An error has occurred during read operation following write operation.
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable(Relay PCB(PCB1)-Main Controller2 PCB(UN12)50pin). 2.Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable(Scanner Unit-Relay PCB(PCB1)). 3.Disconnect and then connect the power supply harness connector. 4.Replace the flexible cable. 5.Replace the Scanner Unit. 6.Replace the Relay PCB(PCB1) 7.Replace the Power Supply PCB(PCB1). 8.Replace the Main Controller2 PCB(UN12).

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E270	0001	04	Title	Scanner Unit VSYNC signal error
			Description	Due to the VSYNC error in the Scanner Unit which communicates with Reader Relay PCB, VSYNC signal is not sent appropriately, so the image error occurs or the operation stops abnormally.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Check the connection between Reader Relay PCB and Scanner Unit, and check that the Cable is not open-circuit. 3. Check the connection between Reader and Printer, and check that the Cable is not open-circuit. 4. Replace the Reader Relay PCB. 5. Replace the Scanner Unit.
E270	0002	04	Title	DDI HSYNC error
			Description	Due to the DDI hardware HSYNC signal error, VSYNC signal is not sent appropriately, so the image error occurs or the operation stops abnormally.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Check the connection between Reader and Printer, and check that the Cable is not open-circuit. 3. Replace the DDI-S Cable between Reader and Printer. 4. Replace the Reader Relay PCB.
E280	0001	04	Title	Communication error between Reader Relay PCB and Scanner Unit
			Description	Within specified time, communication between Reader Relay PCB and Scanner Unit cannot be made.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Check the connection between Reader Relay PCB and Scanner Unit, and check that the Cable is not open-circuit. 3. Check the connection between Reader and Printer, and check that the Cable is not open-circuit. 4. Replace the Reader Relay PCB. 5. Replace the Scanner Unit.
E280	0002	04	Title	Communication error between Reader Relay PCB and Scanner Unit
			Description	Disconnection of the cable between the Reader Relay PCB and the Scanner Unit was detected.
			Remedy	1. Check the connection between Reader Relay PCB and Scanner Unit, and check that the Cable is not open-circuit. 2. Check the connection between Reader and Printer, and check that the Cable is not open-circuit.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E280	0003	04	Title	Readingunit communication error
			Description	Communication error at J507 and J508 connectors of the Reader Relay PBC(PCB1).
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable(Reader Relay PCB(PCB1)-Main Controller PCB(UN12) 50pin). 2.Cisconnect and then connect the flexible cable(Scanner Unit-Reader Relay PCB(PCB1)). 3.Replace the flexible cable. 4.Replace the Reader Relay PCB(PCB1). 5.Replace the Main Controller2 PCB(UN12).
E280	0004	04	Title	Readingunit communication error
			Description	Communication error at J512 conector of the Reader Relay PBC(PCB1).
			Remedy	1.Disconnect and then connect the flexible cable(Reader Relay PCB(PCB1)-Main Controller PCB(UN12) 50pin). 2.Replace the flexible cable. 3.Replace the Reader Relay PCB(PCB1). 4.Replace the Main Controller2 PCB(UN12).
E301	0001	04	Title	Reading light intensity error
			Description	The light intensity was at the reference level or below at paper front shading.
			Remedy	1. Execute the service mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R > SCANLAMP) and check that the LED of the Scanner Unit (Paper Front) is lit. 2. Check the connection between Scanner Unit (Paper Front) and LED, and check that the Cable is not open-circuit. 3. Check the connection between Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit (Paper Front), and check that the Cable is not open-circuit.
E301	0002	04	Title	Reading light intensity error
			Description	The light intensity was at the reference level or below at paper back shading.
			Remedy	1. Check that the LED of the Scanner Unit (Paper Back) is lit. 2. Check the connection between Scanner Unit (Paper Back) and LED, and check that the Cable is not open-circuit. 3. Check the connection between Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit (Paper Back), and check that the Cable is not open-circuit.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E302	0001	04	Title	Error in paper front white shading
			Description	Error in shading RAM access The shading value is out of the specified range.
			Remedy	1. Check that the LED of the Scanner Unit (Paper Front) is lit. 2. Check the connection between Scanner Unit (Paper Front) and LED, and check that the Cable is not open-circuit. 3. Check the connection between Reader Controller PCB and Scanner Unit (Paper Front), and check that the Cable is not open-circuit. 4. Check the condition of Shading White Plate of the Stream Read Glass (Paper Front) (scratches, dust, soil, etc.). 5. Check if Scanner Unit (Paper Front) detects HP correctly. (If it does not detect correctly, the Scanner Unit reaches to the end when DF is opened.) 6. Replace the Scanner Unit (Paper Front). 7. Replace the Reader Controller PCB.
E302	0002	04	Title	Error in paper front black shading
			Description	Error in shading RAM access The shading value is out of the specified range.
			Remedy	1. Check that the LED of the Scanner Unit (Paper Front) is lit. 2. Check the connection between Scanner Unit (Paper Front) and LED, and check that the Cable is not open-circuit. 3. Check the condition of Shading White Plate of the Stream Read Glass (Paper Front) (scratches, dust, soil, etc.). 4. Check if Scanner Unit (Paper Front) detects HP correctly. (If it does not detect correctly, the Scanner Unit reaches to the end when DF is opened.) 5. Replace the Scanner Unit (Paper Front). 6. Replace the Reader Controller PCB.
E315	0007	00	Title	Image process device error
			Description	JBIG encode error
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power 2. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 2
E315	000d	00	Title	Image process device error
			Description	JBIG decode error
			Remedy	1. Delete the current job 2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power 3. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 4. Replace the DDR-SDRAM, the HDD and Main Controller PCB 2 at the same time

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E315	000e	00	Title	Image process device error
			Description	Error at software decoding
			Remedy	1. Delete the current job 2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power 3. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 4. Replace the DDR-SDRAM, the HDD and Main Controller PCB 2 at the same time
E315	000f	00	Title	Image process device error
			Description	Error at MemoryCopy
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power 2. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 2
E315	0027	00	Title	Image process device error
			Description	ROTU timeout error
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power 2. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 2
E315	0035	00	Title	Image process device error
			Description	MemFill timeout error
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power 2. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 2
E315	0100	00	Title	Image process device error
			Description	PRIO overrun
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power 2. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 2
E315	0500	00	Title	Device timeout
			Description	An image synchronous signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is not received within 30 seconds.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E315	0501	00	Title	Device abnormal completion
			Description	An abnormal signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is detected.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E315	0510	00	Title	Device timeout
			Description	An image synchronous signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is not received within 30 seconds.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E315	0511	00	Title	Device abnormal completion
			Description	An abnormal signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is detected.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E315	0520	00	Title	Device timeout
			Description	An image synchronous signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is not received within 30 seconds.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E315	0521	00	Title	Device abnormal completion
			Description	An abnormal signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is detected.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E315	0530	00	Title	Device timeout
			Description	An image synchronous signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is not received within 30 seconds.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E315	0531	00	Title	Device abnormal completion
			Description	An abnormal signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is detected.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E315	0540	00	Title	Device timeout
			Description	An image synchronous signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is not received within 30 seconds.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E315	0541	00	Title	Device abnormal completion
			Description	An abnormal signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is detected.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E315	0550	00	Title	Device timeout
			Description	An image synchronous signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is not received within 30 seconds.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E315	0551	00	Title	Device abnormal completion
			Description	An abnormal signal from the Main Controller PCB 2 to the Reader is detected.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Main Controller PCB 2 (including the flat cable). 3. Replace the flat cable. 4. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E350	0000	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E350	0001	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E350	0002	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E350	0003	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E350	3000	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E351	0000	00	Title	Main Controller PCB 2 communication error
			Description	Main Controller PCB 2 communication error.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power 2. Disconnect and then connect the connector of the Main Controller PCB 2. 3. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E354	0001	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E354	0002	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E355	0001	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E355	0002	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E355	0003	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E355	0004	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E400	0001	04	Title	Communication error between Reader Controller PCB and DF Unit
			Description	Communication checksum error between Reader Controller PCB and DF Unit
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Check the connection between Reader Controller PCB and DF Driver PCB (Signal Cable and Power Supply Cable), and check that the Cables are not open-circuit. 3. Replace the Cable between Reader Controller PCB and DF Driver PCB. 4. Replace the Reader Controller PCB. 5. Replace the DF Driver PCB.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E400	0002	04	Title	Communication error between Reader Controller PCB and DF Unit
			Description	Communication error between Reader Controller PCB and DF Unit
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Check the connection between Reader Controller PCB and DF Driver PCB (Signal Cable and Power Supply Cable), and check that the Cables are not open-circuit. 3. Replace the Cable between Reader Controller PCB and DF Driver PCB. 4. Replace the Reader Controller PCB. 5. Replace the DF Driver PCB.
E400	0003	04	Title	Disconnection of the Flat Cable between the Reader Controller PCB and DF Driver PCB
			Description	Connection of the Flat Cable between the Reader Controller PCB and DF Driver PCB could not be detected.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Check the connection between Reader Controller PCB and DF Driver PCB (Signal Cable and Power Supply Cable), and check that the Cables are not open-circuit. 3. Replace the cable between Reader Controller PCB and DF Driver PCB. 4. Replace the Reader Controller PCB. 5. Replace the DF PCB.
E413	0001	04	Title	Release Motor error
			Description	Release motor HP sensor open.
			Remedy	1. Replace the Release Motor HP sensor(SR11). 2. Replace the Release Motor(M2). 3. Replace the ADF Driver PCB(PCB1).
E413	0002	04	Title	Release Motor error
			Description	Release motor HP sensor close.
			Remedy	1. Replace the Release Motor HP sensor(SR11). 2. Replace the Release Motor(M2). 3. Replace the ADF Driver PCB(PCB1).
E500	0000	05	Title	Communication error
			Description	The communication with the host machine is interrupted.
			Remedy	1. Replace the finisher controller PCB. 2. Replace the host machine DC Controller PCB.
E503	0002	05	Title	Communication error
			Description	Communication between the Saddle Controller and the Finisher Controller is suspended.
			Remedy	1. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and saddle controller PCB is faulty. 2. The finisher controller PCB is faulty. 3. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E505	0001	05	Title	EEPROM error
			Description	The checksum for the EEPROM data has an error.
			Remedy	Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E514	8001	05	Title	Rear end assist home position error
			Description	The stapler does not leave the rear end assist home position when the rear end assist motor has been driven for 3 seconds.
			Remedy	1. The rear end assist home position sensor (PI109) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and rear end assist motor is faulty. 3. The end assist mechanism is faulty. 4. The rear end assist motor (M109) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E514	8002	05	Title	Rear end assist home position error
			Description	The stapler does not return to the rear end assist home position when the rear end assist motor has been driven for 3 seconds.
			Remedy	1. The rear end assist home position sensor (PI109) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and rear end assist motor is faulty. 3. The end assist mechanism is faulty. 4. The rear end assist motor (M109) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E517	0001	05	Title	Decurler HP detection error (at intrusion amount control)
			Description	The HP was not detected within the specified period of time (2 seconds) since the start of the decurler HP detection.
			Remedy	1. Check that the cam of the Decurler Roller is installed properly. 2. Replace the Decurler Motor. 3. Replace the Buffer Driver PCB. 4. Replace the DC Controller PCB.
E519	8001	05	Title	Gear change home position error
			Description	The gear change home position sensor does not turn OFF when the gear change motor has been driven for 387 pulses.
			Remedy	1. The gear change home position sensor (PI117) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and gear change motor is faulty. 3. The gear change mechanism is faulty. 4. The gear change motor (M110) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E519	0002	05	Title	Gear change home position error
			Description	The gear change home position sensor does not turn ON when the gear change motor has been driven for 387 pulses.
			Remedy	1. The gear change home position sensor (PI117) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and gear change motor is faulty. 3. The gear change mechanism is faulty. 4. The gear change motor (M110) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E520	0001	05	Title	Shift Motor fails to move from HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot move from HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M4) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Shift Roller HP Sensor (S2) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Shift Roller HP Sensor (S2).
E520	0002	05	Title	Shift Motor fails to return to HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot return to HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M4) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Shift Roller HP Sensor (S2) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Shift Roller HP Sensor (S2).
E530	8001	05	Title	Front aligning plate home position error
			Description	The aligning plate does not leave the aligningplate front home position sensor when the alignment plate front motor has been driven for 4 seconds.
			Remedy	1. The front aligning plate home position sensor (PI106) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and front aligning plate motor is faulty. 3. The front aligning plate is faulty. 4. The front aligning plate motor (M103) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E530	8002	05	Title	Front aligning plate home position error
			Description	The aligning plate does not return to aligning plate front home position sensor when the alignment plate front motor has been driven for 4 seconds.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The front aligning plate home position sensor (P1106) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and front aligning plate motor is faulty. 3. The front aligning plate is faulty. 4. The front aligning plate motor (M103) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E531	8001	05	Title	Stapler Motor fails to move from HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot move from HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Motor (M10) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Stapler HP Sensor (S18) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Stapler HP Sensor (S18).
E531	8002	05	Title	Stapler Motor fails to return to HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot return to HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Motor (M10) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Stapler HP Sensor (S18) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Stapler HP Sensor (S18).
E532	0001	05	Title	STP Move Motor fails to move from HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot move from HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Motor (M1) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Stapler Move HP Sensor (S10) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Stapler Move HP Sensor (S10).

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E532	0002	05	Title	STP Move Motor fails to return to HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot return to HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check if the Motor (M1) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Stapler Move HP Sensor (S10) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Stapler Move HP Sensor (S10).
E532	8001	05	Title	Stapler shift home position error
			Description	The stapler does not leave the stapler shifhome position when the stapler shift motor hasbeen driven for 5 seconds.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stapler drive home position sensor (P1110) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and stapler shift motor is faulty. 3. The stapler shift base is faulty. 4. The stapler shift motor (M105) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E532	8002	05	Title	Stapler shift home position error
			Description	The stapler does not return to the stapler shift home position when the stapler shift motor has been driven for 20 seconds.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stapler drive home position sensor (P1110) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and stapler shift motor is faulty. 3. The stapler shift base is faulty. 4. The stapler shift motor (M105) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E535	8001	05	Title	Swing home position error
			Description	The stapler does not leave the swing home position when the swing motor has been driven for 3 seconds.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The swing home position sensor (P1105) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and swing motor is faulty. 3. The swing mechanism is faulty. 4. The swing motor (M106) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E535	8002	05	Title	Swing home position error
			Description	The stapler does not return to the swing home position when the swing motor has bee driven for 3 seconds.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The swing home position sensor (P1105) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and swing motor is faulty. 3. The swing mechanism is faulty. 4. The swing motor (M106) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E537	8001	05	Title	Rear aligning plate home position error
			Description	The aligning plate does not leave the aligning plate rear home position sensor when the alignment plate rear motor has been driven for 4 seconds.
			Remedy	1. The aligning plate rear home position sensor (PI107) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and aligning plate rear motor is faulty. 3. The rear aligning plate is faulty. 4. The rear aligning plate motor (M104) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E537	8002	05	Title	Rear aligning plate home position error
			Description	The aligning plate does not return to aligning plate rear home position sensor when the alignment plate rear motor has been driven for 4 seconds.
			Remedy	1. The aligning plate rear home position sensor (PI107) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and aligning plate rear motor is faulty. 3. The rear aligning plate is faulty. 4. The rear aligning plate motor (M104) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E540	0001	05	Title	Tray Lift Motor timeout error
			Description	Unable to complete the operation even after the specified period of time during initial rotation. When the Motor remains in the same area for the specified period of time and the same symptom occurs again after the first retry, it is detected as an error.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M11) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor failure occurs. 3. Check if the Stack Tray Clock Sensor (S14) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Stack Tray Clock Sensor (S14).
E540	0005	05	Title	Tray Lift Motor clock error
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Tray Lift Motor rotates and clock input is not detected within the specified period of time, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M11) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Stack Tray Clock Sensor (S14) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Stack Tray Clock Sensor (S14).

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E540	8001	05	Title	Tray 1 time out error
			Description	If the tray does not return to home position when the tray 1 shift motor is driven for 25 seconds. If the tray does not move to other area when tray 1 shift motor is driven for 5 seconds.
			Remedy	1. The tray 1 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 1 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 1 shift motor (M107) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E540	8002	05	Title	Tray 1 shift area error
			Description	The dangerous area is reached before the tray 1 paper surface sensor detects paper surface during the paper surface detection operation. A discontinuous area is detected during tray operation.
			Remedy	1. The tray 1 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 1 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 1 shift motor (M107) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E540	8003	05	Title	Swing guide switch/Staple safety switch error
			Description	The swing guide switch or staple safety switch is activated while the tray is operating.
			Remedy	1. The tray 1 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 1 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 1 shift motor (M107) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E540	8004	05	Title	The tray 1 shift motor clock error
			Description	The FG input cannot be detected when the tray 1 shift motor has been driven for 0.2 second.
			Remedy	1. The tray 1 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 1 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 1 shift motor (M107) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E540	8005	05	Title	The tray 1 shift motor speed error
			Description	The lock detection signal turns OFF 150 ms after the lock detection signal turned ON.
			Remedy	1. The tray 1 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 1 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 1 shift motor (M107) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E540	8006	05	Title	The tray 1 shift motor acceleration error
			Description	The lock detection signal does not turn ON when the tray 1 shift motor has been driven for 1 second.
			Remedy	1. The tray 1 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 1 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 1 shift motor (M107) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E540	8007	05	Title	The tray 1 shift motor error
			Description	The lock detection signal does not turn OFF when the tray 1 shift motor is at a stop.
			Remedy	1. The tray 1 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 1 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 1 shift motor (M107) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E542	0001	05	Title	Additional Tray Lift Motor timeout error
			Description	Unable to complete the operation even after the specified period of time during initial rotation. When the Motor remains in the same area for the specified period of time and the same symptom occurs again after the first retry, it is detected as an error.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M12) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Additional Tray Clock Sensor (S23) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Additional Tray Clock Sensor (S23).

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E542	0005	05	Title	Additional Tray Lift Motor clock error
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Tray Lift Motor rotates and clock signal is not detected within the specified period of time, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M12) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Additional Tray Clock Sensor (S23) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Additional Tray Clock Sensor (S23).
E542	8001	05	Title	Tray 2 time out error
			Description	If the tray does not return to home position when the tray 1 shift motor is driven for 25 seconds. If the tray does not move to other area when tray 2 shift motor is driven for 5 seconds.
			Remedy	1. The Tray 2 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 2 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The Tray 2 shift motor (M105) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E542	8002	05	Title	Tray 2 shift area error
			Description	The upper limit area is reached before the tray 2 paper surface sensor 1 detects the paper surface during paper surface detection operation. A discontinuous area is detected during tray operation. During evacuation operation, arrival at the area beyond the tray 2 paper surface sensor 2 is detected before this sensor detects paper surface.
			Remedy	1. The tray 2 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 2 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 2 shift motor (M105) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E542	8003	05	Title	Tray 2 shift area error
			Description	Tray 2 shift area error
			Remedy	1. The tray 2 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 2 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 2 shift motor (M105) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E542	8004	05	Title	The tray 2 shift motor clock error
			Description	The FG input cannot be detected when the tray 2 shift motor has been driven for 0.2 second.
			Remedy	1. The Tray 2 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 2 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The Tray 2 shift motor (M105) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E542	8005	05	Title	The tray 2 shift motor speed error
			Description	The lock detection signal turns OFF 150 ms after the lock detection signal turned ON.
			Remedy	1. The tray 2 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 2 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 2 shift motor (M105) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E542	8006	05	Title	The tray 2 shift motor acceleration error
			Description	The lock detection signal does not turn ON when the tray 2 shift motor has been driven for 1 second.
			Remedy	1. The tray 2 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 2 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 2 shift motor (M105) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E542	8007	05	Title	The tray 2 shift motor error
			Description	The lock detection signal does not turn OFF when the tray 2 shift motor is at a stop.
			Remedy	1. The tray 2 shift area sensor PCB is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and tray 2 shift motor is faulty. 3. The tray up/down mechanism is faulty. 4. The tray 2 shift motor (M105) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E551	8001	05	Title	Front Fan lock error
			Description	While the front fan is rotating, this machine stops the front fan after detecting the lock signal. Then this machine retries to rotate the front fan, but lock signal is detected again, this machine displays the error.
			Remedy	1. Check the Fan (M8). 2. Replace the finisher controller PCB.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E551	8002	05	Title	Rear Fan lock error
			Description	While the rear fan is rotating, this machine stops the front fan after detecting the lock signal. Then this machine retries to rotate the rear fan, but lock signal is detected again, this machine displays the error.
			Remedy	1. Check the Fan (M9). 2. Replace the finisher controller PCB.
E567	0001	05	Title	Shift Roller Release Motor fails to move from HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot move from HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M5) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Shift Roller Release Sensor (S3) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Shift Roller Release Sensor (S3).
E567	0002	05	Title	Shift Roller Release Motor fails to return to HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot return to HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M5) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Shift Roller Release Sensor (S3) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Shift Roller Release Sensor (S3).
E56F	0001	05	Title	Entrance Roller Release/Stopper HP Motor fails to move from HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot move from HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M6) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Entrance Roller Release/Stopper HP Sensor (S5) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Entrance Roller Release/Stopper HP Sensor (S5).
E56F	0002	05	Title	Entrance Roller Release/Stopper HP Motor fails to return to HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot return to HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M6) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Entrance Roller Release/Stopper HP Sensor (S5) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Entrance Roller Release/Stopper HP Sensor (S5).

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E571	0001	05	Title	Gripper Open/Close Motor fails to move from HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot move from HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M7) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Gripper Arm HP Sensor (S13) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Gripper Unit HP Sensor (S13).
E571	0002	05	Title	Gripper Open/Close Motor fails to return to HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot return to HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M7) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Gripper Arm HP Sensor (S13) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Gripper Unit HP Sensor (S7).
E575	0001	05	Title	Gripper Unit Move Motor fails to move from HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot move from HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M2) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Gripper Unit HP Sensor (S7) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Gripper Unit HP Sensor (S7).
E575	0002	05	Title	Gripper Unit Move Motor fails to return to HP
			Description	At initial rotation, when the Motor rotates for specified period of time and cannot return to HP, it is detected as an error if the same symptom occurs again after the first retry.
			Remedy	1. Check if the Motor (M2) Connector is physically removed. 2. Replace the Motor. 3. Check if the Gripper Unit HP Sensor (S7) Connector is physically removed. 4. Replace the Gripper Unit HP Sensor (S7).

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E584	8001	05	Title	Shutter home position error
			Description	The stapler does not leave the shutter home position when the stack ejection motor has been driven for 30 seconds.
			Remedy	1. The shutter home position sensor (PI113) is faulty. 2. The wiring between the finisher controller PCB and stack ejection motor, and between the finisher controller PCB and shutter clutch is faulty. 3. The shutter mechanism is faulty. 4. The stack ejection motor (M102), shutter clutch (CL101), and stack ejection lower roller clutch (CL102) is faulty. 5. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E584	0002	05	Title	Shutter home position error
			Description	The stapler does not return to the shutter home position when the stack ejection motor has been driven for 3 seconds.
			Remedy	1. The shutter home position sensor (PI113) is faulty. 2. The shutter mechanism is faulty. 3. The stack ejection motor (M102), shutter clutch (CL101), and stack ejection lower roller clutch (CL102) is faulty. 4. The finisher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F0	8001	05	Title	Paper positioning plate home position error
			Description	The paper positioning plate home position sensor does not turn ON when the paper positioning plate motor has been driven for 1500 pulses.
			Remedy	1. The paper positioning plate home position sensor (PI7) is faulty. 2. The positioning plate drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The paper positioning plate motor (M4) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F0	8002	05	Title	Paper positioning plate home position error
			Description	The paper positioning plate home position sensor does not turn OFF when the paper positioning plate motor has been driven for 300 pulses.
			Remedy	1. The paper positioning plate home position sensor (PI7) is faulty. 2. Open circuit of the Harness between Finisher Controller PCB and Stack Delivery Motor & between Finisher Controller PCB and Shutter Open/Close Clutch 3. The positioning plate drive mechanism is faulty. 4. The paper positioning plate motor (M4) is faulty. 5. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E5F1	8001	05	Title	Paper folding motor lock error
			Description	The feed speed of the paper fold roller reaches 5 mm/sec or less.
			Remedy	1. The paper folding motor clock sensor (PI4) and paper folding home position sensor (PI21) is faulty. 2. The paper folding roller drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The paper folding motor (M2) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F1	8002	05	Title	Paper positioning plate home position error
			Description	The status of Paper Fold Home Position Sensor does not change although the Paper Fold Motor is driven for a specified period of time.
			Remedy	1. The paper folding motor clock sensor (PI4) and paper folding home position sensor (PI21) is faulty. 2. The paper folding roller drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The paper folding motor (M2) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F2	8001	05	Title	Guide home position error
			Description	The guide home position sensor does not turn ON when the guide motor has been driven for 700 pulses.
			Remedy	1. The guide home position sensor (PI13) is faulty. 2. The guide plate drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The guide Motor (M3) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F2	8002	05	Title	Guide home position error
			Description	The guide home position sensor does not turn OFF when the guide motor has been driven for 50 pulses.
			Remedy	1. The guide home position sensor (PI13) is faulty. 2. The guide plate drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The guide Motor (M3) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F3	8001	05	Title	Aligning plate home position error
			Description	The aligning plate home position sensor does not turn ON when the aligning plate motor has been driven for 500 pulses.
			Remedy	1. The aligning plate home position sensor (PI5) is faulty. 2. The aligning plate drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The aligning motor (M5) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F3	8002	05	Title	Aligning plate home position error
			Description	The aligning plate home position sensor does not turn OFF when the aligning plate motor has been driven for 50 pulses.
			Remedy	1. The aligning plate home position sensor (PI5) is faulty. 2. The aligning plate drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The aligning motor (M5) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E5F4	8001	05	Title	Stitcher (rear) home position error
			Description	The stitching home position sensor does not turn ON when the stitch motor (rear) has been driven backward for 0.5 sec.
			Remedy	1. The stitcher home position sensor (rear) (SW5) is faulty. 2. The stitcher (rear) is faulty. 3. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F4	8002	05	Title	Stitcher (rear) home position error
			Description	The stitching home position sensor does not turn OFF when the stitch motor (rear) has been driven forward for 0.5 sec.
			Remedy	1. The stitcher home position sensor (rear) (SW5) is faulty. 2. The stitcher (rear) is faulty. 3. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F5	8001	05	Title	Stitcher (front) home position error
			Description	The stitching home position sensor does not turn ON when the stitch motor (front) has been driven forward for 0.5 sec.
			Remedy	1. The stitcher home position sensor (front) (SW7) is faulty. 2. The stitcher (front) is faulty. 3. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F5	8002	05	Title	Stitcher (front) home position error
			Description	The stitching home position sensor does not turn OFF when the stitch motor (front) has been driven backward for 0.5 sec.
			Remedy	1. The stitcher home position sensor (front) (SW7) is faulty. 2. The stitcher (front) is faulty. 3. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F6	8001	05	Title	Paper pushing plate home position error
			Description	The paper pushing plate home position sensor does not turn ON when the paper pushing plate motor has been driven for 0.5 sec.
			Remedy	1. The paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14), paper pushing plate top position sensor (PI15), and paper pushing plate motor clock sensor (PI1) is faulty. 2. The paper pushing plate drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The paper pushing plate motor (M8) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F6	8002	05	Title	Paper pushing plate home position error
			Description	The paper pushing plate home position sensor does not turn OFF when the paper pushing plate motor has been driven for 150 ms.
			Remedy	1. The paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14), paper pushing plate top position sensor (PI15), and paper pushing plate motor clock sensor (PI1) is faulty. 2. The paper pushing plate drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The paper pushing plate motor (M8) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E5F6	8003	05	Title	Paper pushing plate motor clock error
			Description	The number of pulses detected by the paper pushing plate motor clock sensor is 6 pulses or less.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14), paper pushing plate top position sensor (PI15), and paper pushing plate motor clock sensor (PI1) is faulty. 2. The paper pushing plate drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The paper pushing plate motor (M8) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F6	8004	05	Title	Pushing position error
			Description	The paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor does not turn ON when the paper pushing plate motor has been driven for 0.1 sec.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14), paper pushing plate top position sensor (PI15), and paper pushing plate motor clock sensor (PI1) is faulty. 2. The paper pushing plate drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The paper pushing plate motor (M8) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.
E5F6	8005	05	Title	Pushing position error
			Description	The paper pushing plate leading edge position sensor does not turn OFF when the paper pushing plate motor has been driven for 0.5 sec.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The paper pushing plate home position sensor (PI14), paper pushing plate top position sensor (PI15), and paper pushing plate motor clock sensor (PI1) is faulty. 2. The paper pushing plate drive mechanism is faulty. 3. The paper pushing plate motor (M8) is faulty. 4. The saddle stitcher controller PCB is faulty.

T-7-5

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0001	00	Title	HDD detection error
			Description	HDD fails to be Ready. HDD is not formatted. Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF the main power and check connection of the HDD cable. Then, turn ON the main power. 2. Replace the HDD cable. 3. Erase all partitions that can be initialized (all of erasable partition data is erased) Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2, 8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CLEAR, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0102	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The system-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 2. Replace the HDD. 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2, 8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CLEAR, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0103	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The system-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 2. Replace the HDD. 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2, 8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CLEAR, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0112	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The system-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0113	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The system-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0202	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	SWAP (temporary file / memory alternative area) Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Erase all partitions that can be initialized (all of erasable partition data is erased) (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2, 8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CLEAR, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0203	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	SWAP (temporary file / memory alternative area) Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Erase all partitions that can be initialized (all of erasable partition data is erased) (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2, 8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CLEAR, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0212	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	SWAP (temporary file / memory alternative area) Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0213	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	SWAP (temporary file / memory alternative area) Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0302	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The MEAP-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=3, select [3]:HD-CLEAR, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=3, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=3, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0303	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The MEAP-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=3, select [3]:HD-CLEAR, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=3, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=3, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0312	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The MEAP-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=3, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=3, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=3, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=3, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0313	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The MEAP-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=3, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=3, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=3, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=3, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0402	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	Partitions Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Back up necessary data. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>
E602	0403	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	Partitions Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Back up necessary data. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0412	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	Partitions Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the HDD. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E602	0413	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	Partitions Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the HDD. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0502	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Image and document-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=5, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=5, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=5, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0503	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Image and document-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=5, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=5, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=5, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0512	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Image and document-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0513	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Image and document-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0602	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The PDL-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=6, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=6, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=6, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0603	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The PDL-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=6, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=6, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=6, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0612	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The PDL-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0613	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The PDL-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0702	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Image log-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=7, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=7, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=7, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0703	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Image log-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=7, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=7, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=7, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0712	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Image log-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0713	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Image log-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0802	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The PDL spool-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=8, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=8, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=8, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0803	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The PDL spool-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=8, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=8, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=8, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0812	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The PDL spool-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0813	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The PDL spool-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0902	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The General application temporary area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=9, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=9, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=9, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0903	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The General application temporary area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=9, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=9, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=9, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0912	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The General application temporary area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	0913	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The General application temporary area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1002	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The SEND-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=10, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=10, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=10, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1003	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The SEND-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=10, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=10, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=10, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1012	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The SEND-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1013	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The SEND-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1102	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The General application-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=11, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=11, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=11, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1103	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The General application-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=11, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=11, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=11, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1112	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The General application-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=11, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=11, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=11, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1113	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The General application-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=11, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=11, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=11, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1202	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Update-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=12, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=12, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=12, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1203	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Update-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=12, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=12, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=12, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1212	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Update-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1213	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Update-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1302	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The License-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=13, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the HDD. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>
E602	1303	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The License-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=13, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the HDD. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1312	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The License-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=13, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the HDD. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>
E602	1313	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The License-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=13, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the HDD. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1402	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Debug-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=14, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=14, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=14, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1403	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Debug-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=14, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=14, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=14, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1412	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Debug-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	1413	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	The Debug-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [1]:Disk Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the HDD. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	2000	00	Title	Error in authentication between the host machine and the Encryption Board
			Description	I/O error occurred in the file system after startup
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After checking connection of the Encryption Board, remove and then install the board, and then turn OFF and ON the main power 2. Execute key clear by SST (to make an unformatted disc) Execute step 3 because starting an unformatted disc causes E602-0001 3. Start in safe mode and format the HDD
E602	5001	00	Title	Authentication error between the host machine and the Encryption Board
			Description	Mistake in the procedure for installing the HDD Encryption Board
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the HDD Encryption Board, and start the machine with only the HDD connected. 2. Execute service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > HD-CRYP. 3. Install the HDD Encryption Board again.
E602	5002	00	Title	HDD error
			Description	A non-genuine HDD has been detected.
			Remedy	Install a genuine HDD.
E602	FF02	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	<p>HDD error (unidentified) (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup)</p> <p>Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally.</p> <p>Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.</p>
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	FF03	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	HDD error (unidentified) (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E602	FF12	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	HDD error (unidentified) (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E602	FF13	00	Title	Error in HDD
			Description	HDD error (unidentified) (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format (HDD format) using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the HDD. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E604	0512	00	Title	Image memory is faulty or insufficient
			Description	0512MB memory needs to be installed (insufficient memory for the model)
			Remedy	1. Install a 0512MB or larger main memory
E604	1024	00	Title	Image memory is faulty or insufficient
			Description	1024MB memory needs to be installed (insufficient memory for the model)
			Remedy	1. Install a 1024MB or larger main memory
E604	1536	00	Title	Image memory is faulty or insufficient
			Description	1536MB memory needs to be installed (insufficient memory for the model)
			Remedy	1. Install a 1536MB or larger main memory
E611	0000	00	Title	An error code to prevent repeated resend due to power shutdown during FAX transmission
			Description	Repeated rebooting and resending in a short period of time
			Remedy	1. Clear the FAX job information Execute the following: COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > FCTX-CLR 2. Turn OFF and ON the main power

T-7-6

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E613	0512	00	Title	Image memory is faulty or insufficient
			Description	No necessary memory at Main Controller PCB 2 side
			Remedy	Make a 512MB memory at Main Controller PCB 2 side
E613	1024	00	Title	Image memory is faulty or insufficient
			Description	No necessary memory at Main Controller PCB 2 side
			Remedy	Make a 1024MB memory at Main Controller PCB 2 side
E613	1536	00	Title	Image memory is faulty or insufficient
			Description	No necessary memory at Main Controller PCB 2 side
			Remedy	Make a 1536MB memory at Main Controller PCB 2 side
E614	0001	00	Title	Flash PCB detection error
			Description	Unable to recognize the Flash PCB. The Flash PCB is not formatted.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF the main power and check connection of the Flash PCB, and then turn ON the main power. 2. Erase all partitions that can be initialized (all of erasable partition data is erased) Press (user mode key) => (2, 8) => (user mode key), Select the following to enter 0: [1]:CHK-TYPE = 0, and execute the following: [3]:HD-CLEAR = 1, and then turn OFF and ON the power. 3. Start in safe mode and format the Flash PCB, and then reinstall the system using SST or USB. 4. Replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1
E614	0002	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF the main power and check connection of the Flash PCB, and then turn ON the main power. 2. Erase all partitions that can be initialized (all of erasable partition data is erased) Press (user mode key) => (2, 8) => (user mode key), Select the following to enter 0: [1]:CHK-TYPE = 0, and execute the following: [3]:HD-CLEAR = 1, and then turn OFF and ON the power. 3. Start in safe mode and format the Flash PCB, and then reinstall the system using SST or USB. 4. Replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0006	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	Bootable is not found on the Flash PCB.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the installation of the Flash PCB. 3. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and execute [4]: Clear/Format => [2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and reinstall the system using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the Flash PCB, and install the system using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.
E614	0007	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	The ICC Profile is not found on the Flash PCB.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the installation of the Flash PCB. 3. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and execute [4]: Clear/Format => [2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and reinstall the system using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the Flash PCB, and install the system using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.
E614	0008	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	Thai font is not found on the Flash PCB.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the installation of the Flash PCB. 3. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and execute [4]: Clear/Format => [2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and reinstall the system using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the Flash PCB, and install the system using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0009	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	The font for Print Report is not found on the Flash PCB.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the installation of the Flash PCB. 3. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and execute [4]: Clear/Format => [2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and reinstall the system using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the Flash PCB, and install the system using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.
E614	0010	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	Simplified Chinese, Hangul, and traditional Chinese fonts are not found on the Flash PCB.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the installation of the Flash PCB. 3. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and execute [4]: Clear/Format => [2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and reinstall the system using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the Flash PCB, and install the system using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.
E614	0011	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	Simplified Chinese, Hangul, and traditional Chinese fonts are not found on the Flash PCB.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the installation of the Flash PCB. 3. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and execute [4]: Clear/Format => [2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and reinstall the system using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the Flash PCB, and install the system using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0012	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	The web browser archive is not found on the Flash PCB.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the installation of the Flash PCB. 3. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and execute [4]: Clear/Format => [2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Enter download mode using (2+8) startup, and reinstall the system using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the Flash PCB, and install the system using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Main Controller PCB 1.
E614	0102	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2, 8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format ->[2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0103	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2, 8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format ->[2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E614	0112	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0113	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E614	0202	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2, 8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format ->[2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0203	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2, 8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format ->[2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E614	0212	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0213	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E614	0302	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2, 8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format ->[2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0303	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2, 8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format ->[2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E614	0312	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0313	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E614	0402	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Back up necessary data. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format ->[2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0403	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Back up necessary data. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format ->[2]: Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E614	0412	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Back up necessary data. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Fomat using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E614	0413	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The system-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Back up necessary data. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Fomat using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0502	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Image and document-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=5, select [3]:HD-CLEAR, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Fomat using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=5, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=5, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Fomat using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0503	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Image and document-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=5, select [3]:HD-CLEAR, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Fomat using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=5, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=5, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Fomat using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0512	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Image and document-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Fomat using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0513	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Image and document-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=5, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0602	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The MEAP-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=6, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=6, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=6, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0603	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The MEAP-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=6, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=6, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=6, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0612	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The MEAP-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0613	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The MEAP-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1</p> <p>Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=6, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1</p> <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0702	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The PDL-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=7, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1</p> <p>Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=7, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=7, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1</p> <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0703	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The PDL-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=7, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=7, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=7, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0712	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The PDL-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0713	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The PDL-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=7, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0802	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The General application-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=8, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=8, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=8, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0803	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The General application-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=8, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=8, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=8, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0812	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The General application-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0813	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The General application-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1</p> <p>Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=8, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0902	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The SEND-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=9, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1</p> <p>Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=9, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=9, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0903	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The SEND-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=9, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=9, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=9, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0912	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The SEND-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	0913	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The SEND-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=9, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1002	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The General application-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=10, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=10, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=10, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1003	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The General application-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=10, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=10, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=10, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1012	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The General application-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1013	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The General application-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=10, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1102	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The License-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 2. Replace the Flash PCB. 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=11, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1103	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The License-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 2. Replace the Flash PCB. 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=11, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1112	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The License-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 2. Replace the Flash PCB. 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=11, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1113	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The License-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 2. Replace the Flash PCB. 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=11, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 4. Replace the Flash PCB. 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1202	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Debug-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=12, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=12, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=12, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1203	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Debug-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=12, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=12, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=12, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1212	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Debug-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1213	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Debug-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=12, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1302	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Update-related area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=13, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=13, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=13, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1303	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Update-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=13, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=13, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=13, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1312	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Update-related area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=13, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=13, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=13, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1313	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The Update-related area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=13, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (All the partitions that can be deleted are deleted.) 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=13, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=13, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1402	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The System setting value (service mode, etc.) storage area Error (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=14, select [3]:HD-CLEAR, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=14, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=14, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1403	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The System setting value (service mode, etc.) storage area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=14, select [3]:HD-CLEAR, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=14, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=14, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1412	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The System setting value (service mode, etc.) storage area Error (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user. A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.) Case A 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Case B 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	1413	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	The System setting value (service mode, etc.) storage area Error (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	<p>When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power, ask the followings to user.</p> <p>A. Preferring to give priority on recovery time although data is deleted</p> <p>B. Preferring to wait for tens of minutes with possibility that data can be protected (Tell the user that data may not be able to be protected in the worst case.)</p> <p>Case A</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 3. Replace the Flash PCB. 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Case B</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=14, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. After that, restore the backup data. 4. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 5. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 6. Replace the Flash PCB. 7. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 <p>Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.</p>

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	4000	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	The OS cannot be recognized.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.
E614	4001	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	The OS boot file is not found.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.
E614	4002	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	The OS kernel is not found.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.
E614	4003	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	The OS boot loader is not found.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.
E614	4010	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	The OS in safe mode cannot be recognized.
			Remedy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	4011	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	The file for booting the OS in safe mode is not found.
			Remedy	1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.
E614	4012	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	The kernel in safe mode is not found.
			Remedy	1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.
E614	9000	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	SRAM device access-related error
			Remedy	1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.
E614	9001	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	Error in securing memory/invalid memory
			Remedy	1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.
E614	9002	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	Setting file error
			Remedy	1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	9003	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	Parameter error
			Remedy	1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.
E614	9004	00	Title	Error in file system on the Flash PCB
			Description	Startup error
			Remedy	1. Check the cable or the power connector 2. If the above measure does not solve the problem, start in safe mode to format the entire Flash PCB, reinstall the system using SST or USB (System, Lang, RUI), and then turn OFF and ON the main power. 3. The Flash PCB is detected as faulty; therefore, replace the Flash PCB and reinstall the system using SST or USB.
E614	FF02	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	Flash error (unidentified) (The file system failed to be initialized properly at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the Flash PCB. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	FF03	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	Flash error (unidentified) (I/O error occurred in the file system at startup) Error, the system of the host machine has not been started normally. Therefore the error code is not recorded in the log.
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Press (Settings/Registration key) -> (2+8) -> (Settings/Registration key), enter [1]:CHK-TYPE=0, select [3]:HD-CHECK, and turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter CHK-TYPE=0, enter HD-CLEAR, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the Flash PCB. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E614	FF12	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	Flash error (unidentified) (Error in file system writing after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the Flash PCB. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E614	FF13	00	Title	Error in Flash PCB
			Description	Flash error (unidentified) (I/O error occurred in the file system after startup)
			Remedy	When the problem is not solved by turning OFF and then ON the power 1. Try to recover the corresponding file/partition. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CHECK=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. 2. Back up necessary data. 3. Enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > CHK-TYPE=0, enter COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > HD-CLEAR=1, and then turn OFF and then ON the power. (Delete all the partitions that can be deleted.) After that, restore the backup data. 4. Turn ON the main power using (2+8) or select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD to enter download mode, and execute [4]: Clear/Format -> [2]:Flash Format using SST or a USB memory device. 5. Replace the Flash PCB. 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 1 Note: Although the problem can be solved with step 1 in some cases, there is a possibility that the error may occur again; therefore, be sure to perform the steps 1 through 3.
E615	0001	00	Title	Error in self-diagnosis of the encryption module
			Description	An error was found in self-diagnosis of the encryption library.
			Remedy	1. Reinstall the system software. 2. Replace the HDD.
E674	0001	00	Title	FAX Board communication error
			Description	The specified number of errors was detected with FAX Board communication
			Remedy	Note: Note: For the part described as the Main Control PCB, it indicates Main Controller PCB 2 when the FAX Board is for 1 line, and Main Controller PCB 1 when the FAX Board is for 2 lines. 1. Check wire connection between the FAX Board and the Main Controller PCB 2. Replace the FAX Board 3. Replace the Main Controller PCB

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E674	0004	00	Title	FAX Board communication error
			Description	Error in access of the modem IC used by FAX
			Remedy	Note: Note: For the part described as the Main Control PCB, it indicates Main Controller PCB 2 when the FAX Board is for 1 line, and Main Controller PCB 1 when the FAX Board is for 2 lines. 1. Check wire connection between the FAX Board and the Main Controller PCB 2. Replace the FAX Board 3. Replace the Main Controller PCB
E674	0008	00	Title	FAX Board communication error
			Description	Error in access of the port IC used by OnBoardFax
			Remedy	Note: Note: For the part described as the Main Control PCB, it indicates Main Controller PCB 2 when the FAX Board is for 1 line, and Main Controller PCB 1 when the FAX Board is for 2 lines. 1. Check wire connection between the FAX Board and the Main Controller PCB 2. Replace the FAX Board 3. Replace the Main Controller PCB
E674	000C	00	Title	FAX Board communication error
			Description	An error was detected in access of the modem IC or port IC used by Fax
			Remedy	Note: Note: For the part described as the Main Control PCB, it indicates Main Controller PCB 2 when the FAX Board is for 1 line, and Main Controller PCB 1 when the FAX Board is for 2 lines. 1. Check wire connection between the FAX Board and the Main Controller PCB 2. Replace the FAX Board 3. Replace the Main Controller PCB
E674	0010	00	Title	FAX Board communication error
			Description	Error in timer device to be used by FAX at activation
			Remedy	Note: For the part described as the Main Control PCB, it indicates Main Controller PCB 2 when the FAX Board is for 1 line, and Main Controller PCB 1 when the FAX Board is for 2 lines. Replace the Main Controller PCB

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E674	0011	00	Title	FAX Board communication error
			Description	Error when the timer device to be used by FAX is started
			Remedy	Note: For the part described as the Main Control PCB, it indicates Main Controller PCB 2 when the FAX Board is for 1 line, and Main Controller PCB 1 when the FAX Board is for 2 lines. Replace the Main Controller PCB
E674	0030	00	Title	FAX Board communication error
			Description	Checksum error of USB-FAX MAINROM
			Remedy	When the power is turned ON, get in the download mode from service mode to execute downloading of USBFAX MAINROM
E677	0003	00	Title	Print server error
			Description	Error is detected by checking of the mother board at startup of the print server
			Remedy	1. Check cable connection and turn ON the power again 2. Reinstall the printer server
E710	0001	05	Title	IPC initialization error
			Description	Unable to be ready within 3 sec after IPC chip was started
			Remedy	Check the connection cable between the DC Controller PCB and the Finisher
E711	0001	05	Title	IPC register error
			Description	4 or more errors are set to the error register of the IPC chip in 1.5 sec
			Remedy	Check the connection cable between the DC Controller PCB and the Finisher
E713	0001	05	Title	Finisher communication error 1
			Description	Continuous interruption to RX communication from the Finisher (Finisher down is detected)
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power
E713	0002	05	Title	Finisher communication error 2
			Description	A large amount of data from the Finisher causes data overflow
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power
E713	0003	05	Title	Finisher communication error 3
			Description	A large amount of data from the Finisher causes the reception buffer overflow
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power
E713	0004	05	Title	Finisher communication error 4
			Description	OFF detection of detect signal
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E713	0005	05	Title	Finisher communication error 5
			Description	The DC Controller sent a command to the Finisher three times, but no response was received.
			Remedy	1. Check cable connection between the Finisher and the host machine. 2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power.
E713	0006	05	Title	Finisher communication error 6
			Description	Error signal was received for 3 times in a row.
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power
E713	0007	05	Title	Finisher communication error 7
			Description	Overflow of driver buffer due to many requests from the upper task before the process of the driver
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power
E713	0008	05	Title	Removing the Finisher
			Description	Removal of the Finisher from the host machine was detected.
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the main power.
E719	0001	00	Title	Coin vendor error
			Description	Error when the coin vendor is started - The Coin Vendor, which must have been connected before the power was turned OFF, is not connected when the power is turned ON
			Remedy	Check cable connection between the charging management equipment and the host machine While the charging management equipment is connected for operation, clear the error in the case of switching to the operation without the charging management equipment (To prevent a misuse by removing the charging management equipment, this error code is displayed)
E719	0002	00	Title	Coin vendor error
			Description	IPC error at coin vendor operation - Open circuit of IPC, unable to recover the IPC communication - When open circuit of the pickup/delivery signal cable is detected - Invalid connection is detected
			Remedy	Check cable connection between the charging management equipment and the host machine While the charging management equipment is connected for operation, clear the error in the case of switching to the operation without the charging management equipment (To prevent a misuse by removing the charging management equipment, this error code is displayed)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E719	0003	00	Title	Coin vendor error
			Description	- Communication error with the coin manager occurs during unit price acquisition at startup.
			Remedy	Check cable connection between the charging management equipment and the host machine While the charging management equipment is connected for operation, clear the error in the case of switching to the operation without the charging management equipment (To prevent a misuse by removing the charging management equipment, this error code is displayed)
E719	0004	00	Title	Coin vendor error
			Description	The coin vendor was connected to a model that does not support the coin vendor
			Remedy	1. Disconnect the coin vendor
E719	0011	00	Title	Coin vendor error
			Description	Error when the NewCardReader is started - The NewCardReader, which must have been connected before the power was turned OFF, is not connected when the power is turned ON)
			Remedy	Check cable connection between the charging management equipment and the host machine While the charging management equipment is connected for operation, clear the error in the case of switching to the operation without the charging management equipment (To prevent a misuse by removing the charging management equipment, this error code is displayed)
E719	0012	00	Title	Coin vendor error
			Description	IPC error at NewCardReader operation Open circuit of IPC, unable to recover the IPC communication
			Remedy	Check cable connection between the charging management equipment and the host machine While the charging management equipment is connected for operation, clear the error in the case of switching to the operation without the charging management equipment (To prevent a misuse by removing the charging management equipment, this error code is displayed)

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E719	0031	00	Title	Serial communication error when the NewCardReader is started
			Description	Unable to start communication with the Serial NewCardReader at startup
			Remedy	1. Check if the cable of Serial NewCardReader is open circuit 2. Remove the Serial NewCardReader COPIER > Function > CLEAR > CARD COPIER > Function > CLEAR > ERR
E719	0032	00	Title	Serial communication error after the NewCardReader was started
			Description	Although communication with the Card Reader was possible at startup, it became unavailable in the middle of communication
			Remedy	Check if the NewCardReader cable is open circuit
E730	1001	00	Title	PDL software error
			Description	Initialization error
			Remedy	1. PDL reset processing (user mode > function settings > printer > printer settings > utility > Reset Printer) 2. Turn OFF and then ON the power
E730	100A	00	Title	PDL software error
			Description	Systematic fatal error occurs
			Remedy	1. PDL reset processing (user mode > function settings > printer > printer settings > utility > Reset Printer) 2. Turn OFF and then ON the power
E730	A006	00	Title	PDL communication error
			Description	No reply from PDL. No reply from PDL due to failure or absence of the controller firmware
			Remedy	1. PDL reset processing (user mode > function settings > printer > printer settings > utility > Reset Printer) 2. Turn OFF and then ON the power 3. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 4. Reinstall the controller firmware 5. Replace Main Controller PCB 1
E730	A007	00	Title	Mismatched PDL version
			Description	Mismatch in version of the control software between the host machine and the PDL
			Remedy	System all format and installation
E730	B013	00	Title	PDL embedded font error
			Description	Broken font data
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power 2. Reinstall the system using SST or USB 3. System all format and reinstall the system using SST or USB
E730	C000	00	Title	Initialization error
			Description	An error, such as failure in memory retrieval at startup, occurs
			Remedy	System all format and installation Replace Main Controller PCB 1

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E730	C001	00	Title	HDD access error
			Description	An error occurs when accessing to the HDD
			Remedy	1. Start in safe mode to format the HDD (all the data in the HDD is erased) 2. Replace the HDD 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1
E731	3000	00	Title	Error in Main Controller PCB 2
			Description	Unable to recognize the Surf board
			Remedy	1. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 1
E731	3001	00	Title	Error in Main Controller PCB 2
			Description	Failure in Surf initialization
			Remedy	1. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 1
E731	3002	00	Title	Error in Main Controller PCB 2
			Description	Failure in Surf initialization
			Remedy	1. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 1
E731	3015	00	Title	Error in Main Controller PCB 2
			Description	Although it works normally at the software side, there is no video data into CL1-G
			Remedy	1. Check connection of Main Controller PCB 2 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 1
E732	0001	04	Title	Scanner communication error
			Description	DDI-S communication error
			Remedy	1. Check the connector connection with the scanner 2. Check the power of the scanner > Is initialization executed at startup? 3. Replace the Reader Relay PCB, the Scanner PCB or Main Controller PCB 2
E732	9999	04	Title	Scanner communication error
			Description	When a scanner is detected from the printer model for the first time (It is recorded in the history, but "Turn OFF and then ON the power again" is displayed on the UI.)
			Remedy	Turn OFF and then ON the power
E732	FFFF	04	Title	Scanner communication error
			Description	A network communication error in a development environment is detected.
			Remedy	1. Checking network connection 2. Turn OFF and then ON the main power.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E733	0000	05	Title	Printer communication error
			Description	A communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB 2 is detected at startup.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Flexible Cable between the DC Controller PCB (UN9) and the Main Controller PCB 2. 3. Replace the Flexible Cable. 4. Check the power of the DC Controller PCB (UN9). (Check if the initialization operation is executed at startup.) 5. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN9). 6. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E733	0001	05	Title	Printer communication error
			Description	A communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB 2 is detected at startup.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Flexible Cable between the DC Controller PCB (UN9) and the Main Controller PCB 2. 3. Replace the Flexible Cable. 4. Check the power of the DC Controller PCB (UN9). (Check if the initialization operation is executed at startup.) 5. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN9). 6. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E733	0005	05	Title	Printer communication error
			Description	A communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB 2 is detected at startup.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Flexible Cable between the DC Controller PCB (UN9) and the Main Controller PCB 2. 3. Replace the Flexible Cable. 4. Check the power of the DC Controller PCB (UN9). (Check if the initialization operation is executed at startup.) 5. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN9). 6. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.
E733	0006	05	Title	Printer communication error
			Description	A communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB 2 is detected at startup.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Flexible Cable between the DC Controller PCB (UN9) and the Main Controller PCB 2. 3. Replace the Flexible Cable. 4. Check the power of the DC Controller PCB (UN9). (Check if the initialization operation is executed at startup.) 5. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN9). 6. Replace the Main Controller PCB 2.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E733	9999	05	Title	Printer communication error
			Description	The Finisher connection information differs between the Main Controller PCB 2 and the DC Controller PCB. The information on the Main Controller PCB 2 side is overwritten by turning OFF and then ON the power.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power
E733	F000	05	Title	Printer communication error
			Description	A communication error between the DC Controller PCB and the Main Controller PCB 2 is detected at startup.
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power. 2. Check the connection of the Flexible Cable between the DC Controller PCB (UN9) and the Main Controller PCB 2. 3. Replace the Flexible Cable.
E740	0002	00	Title	Ethernet Board error
			Description	Invalid MAC address
			Remedy	1. Replace the LAN card
E740	0003	00	Title	Ethernet Board error
			Description	Invalid MAC address
			Remedy	1. Replace the LAN card
E743	0000	00	Title	DDI communication error
			Description	SCI error, reception data NG, reception timeout, SEQ timeout error
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power 2. Check connection of the cable between the Reader and the Controller 3. Check voltage (+24V and +12V) on the Reader Relay PCB 4. Replace the DDI-S cable 5. Replace the Reader Relay PCB 6. Replace Main Controller PCB 2
E744	0001	00	Title	Language file error
			Description	Mismatch between the language version in the Flash PCB and the Bootable version
			Remedy	Use SST or USB memory to reinstall the correct language file. Or reinstall the entire software.
E744	0002	00	Title	Language file error
			Description	Too large language size in the Flash PCB
			Remedy	Format the Flash PCB and reinstall the system because more than necessary language files may have been installed
E744	0003	00	Title	Language file error
			Description	Unable to find the language described in Config.txt in the Flash that should be switched
			Remedy	Reinstall the system
E744	0004	00	Title	Language file error
			Description	Unable to switch to the language in the Flash PCB
			Remedy	Use SST or USB to reinstall the system

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E744	2000	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E746	0021	00	Title	Engine ID error
			Description	Self-check error of Image Analysis Board (HW board used for PCAM)
			Remedy	1. Replace the Image Analysis Board (HW board used for PCAM) 2. As a temporary measure, remove the Image Analysis Board and get in service mode: COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR > ST-JBLK (Lv2); set ST-JBLK from 1 to 0, and turn OFF and then ON the power
E746	0022	00	Title	Engine ID error
			Description	Wrong version of Image Analysis Board
			Remedy	1. Update the firmware of the Image Analysis Board 2. As a temporary measure, remove the Image Analysis Board and get in service mode: COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR > ST-JBLK (Lv2); set ST-JBLK from 1 to 0, and turn OFF and then ON the power
E746	0023	00	Title	Engine ID error
			Description	No reply from the Image Analysis Board
			Remedy	1. Check if the Image Analysis Board is correctly installed 2. Turn OFF and then ON the power 3. If the problem is not fixed, replace the Option Board. 4. As a temporary measure, remove the Image Analysis Board and get in service mode: COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR > ST-JBLK (Lv2); set ST-JBLK from 1 to 0, and turn OFF and then ON the power
E746	0024	00	Title	Engine ID error
			Description	Operation error of the Image Analysis Board
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power 2. If the problem is not fixed, replace the Image Analysis Board. 3. As a temporary measure, remove the Image Analysis Board and get in service mode: (Lv2) COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR > ST-JBLK ; set ST-JBLK from 1 to 0, and turn OFF and then ON the power
E746	0031	00	Title	Engine ID error
			Description	Hardware error
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power 2. Replace the TPM PCB

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E746	0032	00	Title	Engine ID error
			Description	TPM key mismatch
			Remedy	Format the system Use SST or USB memory to format the HDD, and then execute downloading of the system software. See Chapter 6 Upgrading for details. For reference, the method using USB memory is shown below: 1. Prepare USB memory in which the system software was registered
E746	0033	00	Title	Engine ID error
			Description	Mismatched data in the TPM
			Remedy	Recovery is available if backup of the TPM has been executed 1. Connect the USB memory in which the TPM key is saved 2. Management Settings > Data Management > TPM Settings; click [Restore TPM key] 3. Enter the password that was specified at the time of backup work 4. Once the restore completion screen is displayed, click [OK] and remove the USB memory, and then turn OFF and ON the main power switch. When backup of the TPM key is not executed System format is necessary Use SST or USB memory to format the HDD, and then download the system software
E746	0034	00	Title	TPM auto recovery error
			Description	An error occurs when clearing the HDD while the TPM setting is ON
			Remedy	The symptom is recovered by turning OFF and then ON the power
E746	0035	00	Title	TPM version error
			Description	TPM which cannot be used in this machine was installed.
			Remedy	Install the supported TPM.
E747	1201	00	Title	PDL rendering error
			Description	Image processing IC error
			Remedy	1. Turn OFF and then ON the power (send the data to Inc because running the data which generated an error code causes another error code) 2. Replace Main Controller PCB 2
E748	2010	00	Title	Flash PCB error
			Description	Unable to find IPL (startup program)
			Remedy	Replace the Flash PCB and install the system using SST or USB

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E748	2021	00	Title	Main Controller PCB 2 access error
			Description	Necessary H/W on Main Controller PCB 2 is not detected
			Remedy	1. Clean the terminal of Main Controller PCB 2, and remove and then install Main Controller PCB 2 2. Clean the terminal of Main Controller PCB 1, and remove and then install Main Controller PCB 1 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 2
E748	2023	00	Title	Main Controller PCB 2 access error
			Description	Unable to initialize memory DDR2-SDRAM at the Main Controller PCB 2 side
			Remedy	1. Clean the terminal of DDR2-SDRAM, and remove and then install the DDR2-SDRAM 2. Replace the DDR2-SDRAM
E748	2024	00	Title	Main Controller PCB 2 access error
			Description	The CPU at the Main Controller PCB 2 side failed to complete initialization
			Remedy	1. Clean the terminal of DDR2-SDRAM, and remove and then install the DDR2-SDRAM 2. Check power state of Main Controller PCB 2 and check around the connector 3. Replace Main Controller PCB 2 4. Replace Main Controller PCB 1
E748	9000	00	Title	System error
			Description	System error
			Remedy	Contact the service company office
E749	0002	00	Title	Rebooting instruction due to change of MEAP configuration
			Description	There is a change in configuration that requires turning OFF and then ON the power
			Remedy	The symptom is recovered by turning OFF and then ON the power
E749	0003	00	Title	Booting instruction due to change in mAccele configuration
			Description	There is a change in configuration that requires turning OFF and then ON the power
			Remedy	The symptom is recovered by turning OFF and then ON the power
E749	0005	00	Title	Booting instruction due to change in hardware configuration
			Description	There is a change in configuration that requires turning OFF and then ON the power
			Remedy	The symptom is recovered by turning OFF and then ON the power

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E749	0006	00	Title	Restart direction due to configuration change.
			Description	The option such as the Finisher and ADF was installed or removed when all of following conditions were met and the machine configuration is changed when the main power switch is turned ON. - Settings/Registration > Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Quick Startup at Power-on > ON - The Main Power Switch is turned OFF - The power plug of the machine is connected to the output.
			Remedy	It is recovered by turning OFF and then ON the main power. CAUTION This machine provides power to some PCBs even when in the main power OFF status. The power supply is not completely OFF by just turning OFF the main power switch and therefore, the machine is unable to detect a configuration change. When disconnecting and then connecting a connector, always disconnect the power plug. Refer to the Service Manual > Chapter 2 > External and Controls > Quick Startup for details.
E750	0013	05	Title	Mismatch between the DC Controller PCB and the Driver PCB
			Detection description	Error in combination of the software of the DC Controller PCB with the electrical circuit
			Remedy	This symptom occurs when updating the software that does not match with the DC Controller PCB 1. Check the downloaded software and then execute downloading again 2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E753	0001	00	Title	Downloading error
			Description	Firmware update error This symptom occurs when trying to update the firmware of an option that is not installed
			Remedy	1. Check the log to identify the location of the download error Check if the target option is installed When the target option is not installed: -> The symptom is recovered by turning OFF and then ON the power (because there is nothing to update) When the target option is installed: -> Check if the target option is properly installed and see if the software to download is for the correct target option, and then execute downloading again.
E804	0000	05	Title	Power Supply Cooling Fan error
			Description	Lock of the Power Supply Cooling Fan is detected
			Remedy	1. Check power supply to the Power Supply Cooling Fan (FM1) 2. Replace the Power Supply Cooling Fan

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E806	0001	05	Title	Error detection of 3 Way Unit Cooling Fan
			Detection description	When lock of the 3 Way Unit Cooling Fan was detected out for 15 sec
			Remedy	The Fan is physically locked or failed, or electrical trouble 1. COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > FAN; and then move FM04 When the 3 Way Unit Cooling Fan (FM04) works 2-1. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the 3 Way Unit Cooling Fan (FM04) 3-1. Replace the 3 Way Unit Cooling Fan (FM04) 4-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When the 3 Way Unit Cooling Fan (FM04) does not work 2-2. Turn the 3 Way Unit Cooling Fan (FM04) with your hand to check for rotation of the fan 3-2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the 3 Way Unit Cooling Fan (FM04) 2. Check conduction of FU11 in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When the fuse is blown out 5-2-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When the fuse is not blown out 5-2-2. Replace the 3 Way Unit Cooling Fan (FM04) 6-2-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)
E807	0001	05	Title	Error detection of Drum Unit Cooling Fan
			Detection description	Lock of the Drum Unit Cooling Fan was detected out for 15 sec
			Remedy	The Fan is physically locked or failed, or electrical trouble 1.COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK > FAN; and then move FM07 When the Drum Unit Cooling Fan (FM07) works 2-1. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Drum Unit Cooling Fan (FM07) 3-1. Replace the Drum Unit Cooling Fan (FM07) 4-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When the Drum Unit Cooling Fan (FM07) does not work 2-2. Turn the Drum Unit Cooling Fan (FM07) with your hand to check for rotation of the fan 3-2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB (UN09) and the Drum Unit Cooling Fan (FM07) 4-2. Check conduction of FU9 in the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When the fuse is blown out 5-2-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) When the fuse is not blown out 5-2-2. Replace the Drum Unit Cooling Fan (FM07) 6-2-2. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)

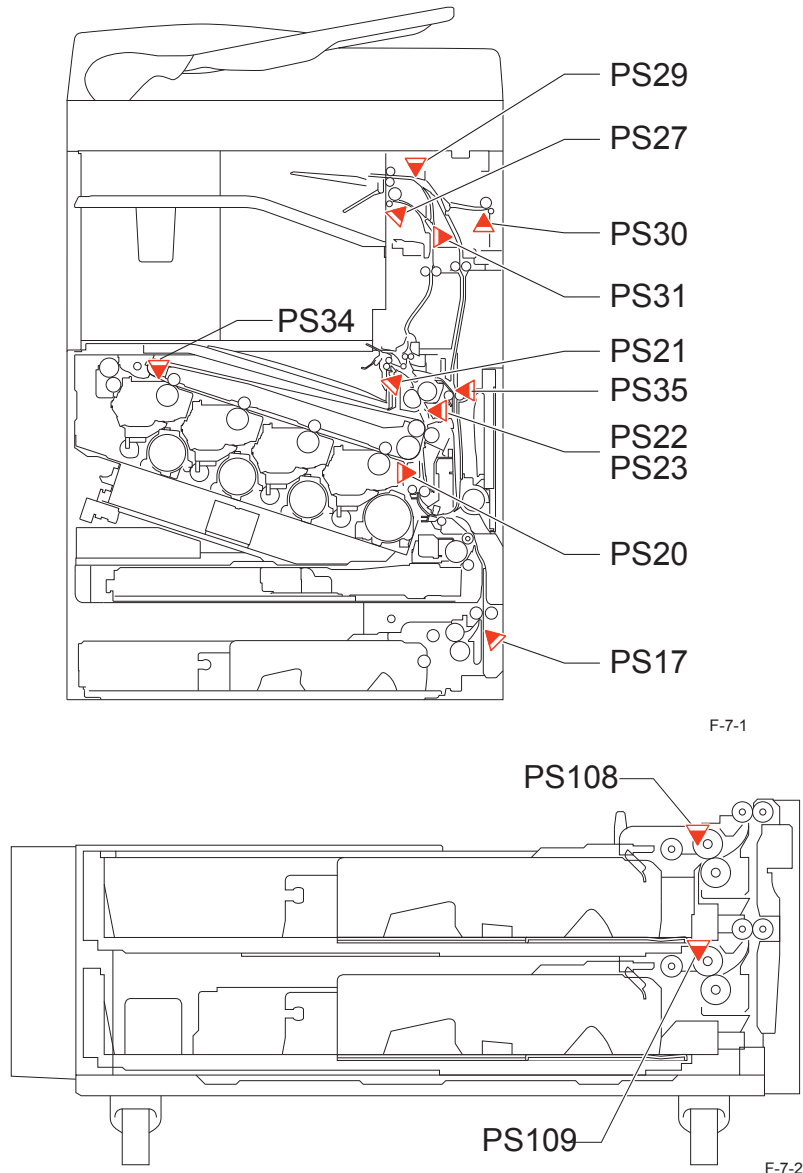
E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E808	0001	05	Title	Zero cross signal detection error
			Detection description	Unable to detect 43 to 57Hz for 5000 msec or longer at the start of zero cross detection
			Remedy	Electrical trouble with failed zero cross signal 1. Check failure between the AC Driver PCB (UN14/ J122) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J10). (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Replace the AC Driver PCB (UN14) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Check the power supply condition at the customer site. When it is below 43 to 57Hz, ask for a construction work.
E808	0002	05	Title	Zero cross signal detection error
			Detection description	Unable to detect 43 to 57Hz for 500 msec or longer after confirmation of a zero cross cycle
			Remedy	Electrical trouble with failed zero cross signal 1. Check failure between the AC Driver PCB (UN14/ J122) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/ J10). (trapped cable, open circuit, connector disconnection) -> Replace the part in the case of trapped cable/open circuit 2. Replace the AC Driver PCB (UN14) 3. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09) 4. Check the power supply condition at the customer site. When it is below 43 to 57Hz, ask for a construction work.
E880	0001	00	Title	Controller Fan error
			Description	Lock of Controller Fan is detected
			Remedy	Check if the connector is connected If the connector is OK, replace Controller Fan (FM3)
E996	0071	04	Title	Frequent error avoidance jam (ADF)
			Description	Frequent error avoidance jam (ADF)
			Remedy	Depending on the setting of JM-ERR-R in service mode, "010071" jam is displayed as an error. Collect log and contact to the sales companies. To cancel the setting, select COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> J M-ERR-R, and set JM-ERR-R to 0.
E996	0CA1	05	Title	Frequent error avoidance jam (PRINTER)
			Description	Frequent error avoidance jam (PRINTER)
			Remedy	Make "000CA1" jam to be displayed as an error by setting M-ERR-D in service mode. Collect log and contact to the sales companies. To cancel the setting, select COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> J M-ERR-D, and set JM-ERR-D to 0.

E Code	Detail Code	Location	Item	Description
E996	0CA2	05	Title	Frequent error avoidance jam (PRINTER)
			Description	Frequent error avoidance jam (PRINTER)
			Remedy	Make "000CA2" jam to be displayed as an error by setting M-ERR-D in service mode. Collect log and contact to the sales companies. To cancel the setting, select COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> J M-ERR-D, and set JM-ERR-D to 0.
E996	0CA3	05	Title	Frequent error avoidance jam (PRINTER)
			Description	Frequent error avoidance jam (PRINTER)
			Remedy	Make "000CA3" jam to be displayed as an error by setting M-ERR-D in service mode. Collect log and contact to the sales companies. To cancel the setting, select COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> J M-ERR-D, and set JM-ERR-D to 0.
E996	0CF1	05	Title	Frequent error avoidance jam (PRINTER)
			Description	Frequent error avoidance jam (PRINTER)
			Remedy	Make "000CF1" jam to be displayed as an error by setting M-ERR-D in service mode. Collect log and contact to the sales companies. To cancel the setting, select COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> J M-ERR-D, and set JM-ERR-D to 0.

T-7-7

Jam Code

image RUNNER ADVANCE C2200

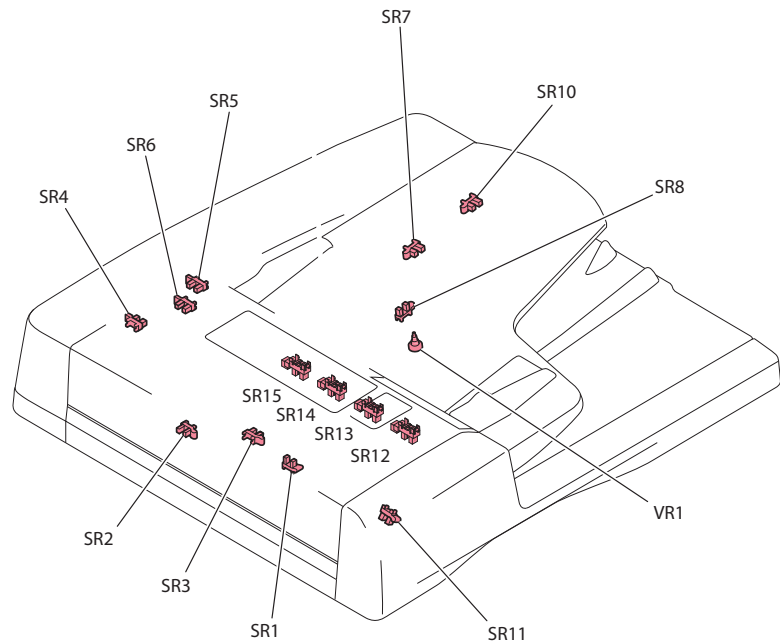


ACC ID	Jam Code	Type	Sensor Name	Sensor ID
00	0102	Delay	Cassette 2 Vertical Path Sensor	PS17
00	0103	Delay	Cassette 3 Vertical Path Sensor	PS108
00	0104	Delay	Cassette 4 Vertical Path Sensor	PS109
00	0105	Delay	Registration Sensor	PS20
00	010A	Delay	First Delivery Sensor	PS21
00	010B	Delay	Second Delivery Sensor	PS27
00	010C	Delay	Third Delivery Sensor	PS30
00	010D	Delay	Reverse Sensor	PS29
00	010E	Delay	Duplex Sensor	PS31
00	0205	Stationary	Registration Sensor	PS20
00	020A	Stationary	First Delivery Sensor	PS21
00	020B	Stationary	Second Delivery Sensor	PS27
00	020C	Stationary	Third Delivery Sensor	PS30
00	070A	Wrap	First Delivery Sensor	PS21
00	0A02	Power ON	Cassette 2 Vertical Path Sensor	PS17
00	0A03	Power ON	Cassette 3 Vertical Path Sensor	PS108
00	0A04	Power ON	Cassette 4 Vertical Path Sensor	PS109
00	0A05	Power ON	Registration Sensor	PS20
00	0A08	Power ON	Arch Sensor 1	PS22
00	0A09	Power ON	Arch Sensor 2	PS23
00	0A0A	Power ON	First Delivery Sensor	PS21
00	0A0B	Power ON	Second Delivery Sensor	PS27
00	0A0C	Power ON	Third Delivery Sensor	PS30
00	0A0D	Power ON	Reverse Sensor	PS29
00	0A0E	Power ON	Duplex Sensor	PS31
00	0B00	Door Open	Front Cover Sensor	PS41
00	0B01	Door Open	Right Door Sensor	PS41
00	0CA1	Error *1	-	-
00	0CA2	Sequence *2	-	-
00	0CA3	Sequence *2	-	-
00	0CF1	Retry Error*1	-	-
00	0D91	Size Error	Registration Sensor	PS20
00	0D92	Media Error	-	-
00	0D93	Media Error	-	-
00	0D94	Size Error	Registration Sensor	PS20

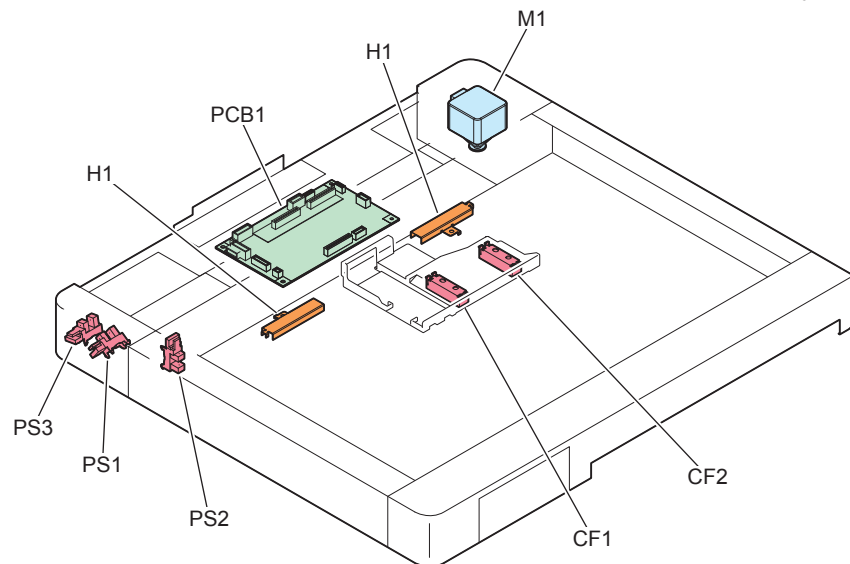
*1 The state is recovered by opening and closing the Door, or turning OFF and then ON the power supply.

If the same jam is detected regardless of the operation above, the error code is displayed.

*2: The state is recovered by opening and closing the Door, or turning OFF and then ON the power supply. If it is not recovered by the above operation, it is considered an error near the target sensor. Disconnect and then connect the connectors around the target sensor, check if the cable is open circuit, and replace the sensor.



F-7-3



F-7-4

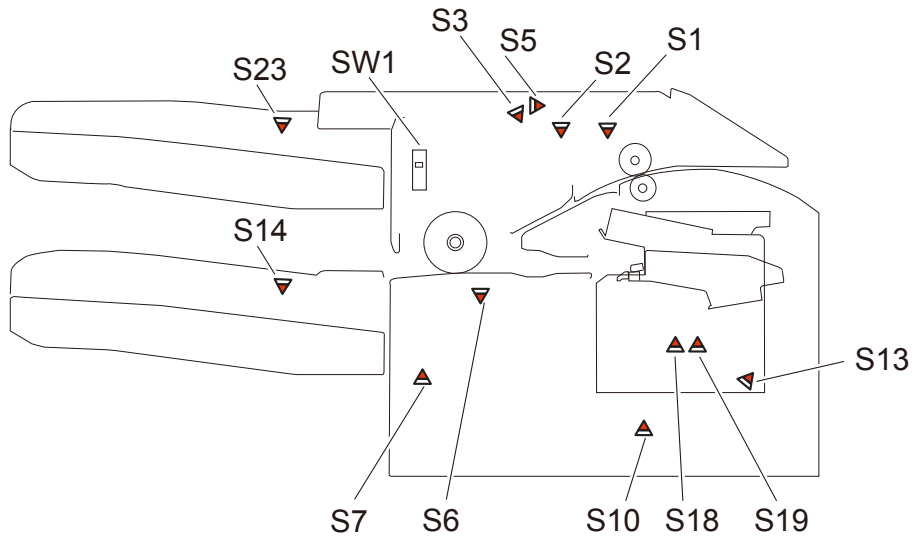
ACC ID	Jam Code	Type	Sensor Name	Sensor ID
01	0001	Delay	Registration sensor	SR1
01	0002	Delay	Registration sensor	SR1
01	0003	Delay	Registration sensor	SR1
01	0004	Stationary	Registration sensor	SR1
01	0005	Delay	Read sensor	SR2
01	0006	Stationary	Read sensor	SR2
01	0007	Delay	Delivery reversal sensor	SR3
01	0008	Stationary	Delivery reversal sensor	SR3
01	0044	Stationary	Registration sensor	SR1
01	0045	Delay	Read sensor	SR2
01	0046	Stationary	Read sensor	SR2
01	0047	Delay	Delivery reversal sensor	SR3
01	0048	Stationary	Delivery reversal sensor	SR3
01	0071	Sequence Error *1	-	-
01	0073	HP error	Release motor HP sensor	SR11
01	0090	Door open	Copyboard Cover Open/Closed Sensor (front)	SR1
01	0091	Door open	Copyboard Cover Open/Closed Sensor (rear)	SR3
01	0092	Door open	Cover open/closed sensor	SR6
01	0093	Door open	Cover open/closed sensor	SR6
01	0094	Residual	Registration Sensor / Read Sensor / Delivery reversal sensor	SR1/SR2/SR3
01	0095	Pickup error	-	-
01	0096	Limited function *3	-	-

T-7-9

*1 The state is recovered by opening and closing the Door, or turning OFF and then ON the power supply.

*2: Jam code generated to prompt a user to remove the original that remains inside the machine when an error occurs during a job and the machine enters limited functions mode. Troubleshooting using this jam code is not possible.

Inner Finisher-F1



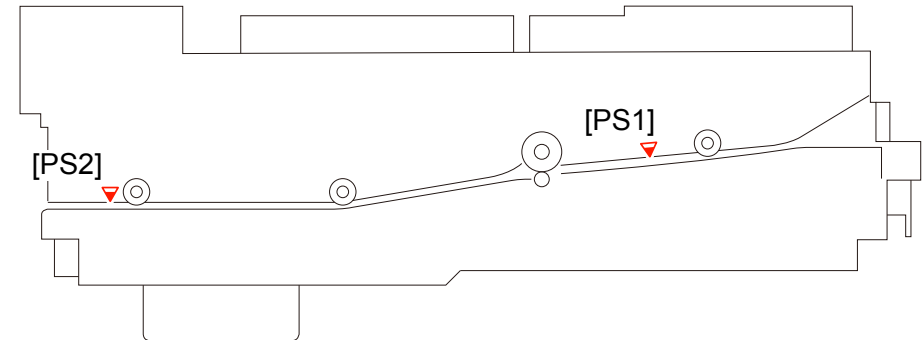
F-7-5

ACC ID	Jam Code	Type	Sensor Name	Sensor ID
02	1001	Delay	Entrance Sensor	S1
02	1101	Stationary	Entrance Sensor	S1
02	1102	Stationary	Processing Tray Sensor	S6
02	1300	Power ON	Entrance Sensor / Processing Tray Sensor	S1/S6
02	1400	Door open	Front cover switch	SW1
02	1500	Staple	Stapler HP sensor	S18/S19
02	1C20	Error	Shift roller HP sensor	S10
02	1C32	Error	Stapler move HP sensor	S14
02	1C40	Error	Stack tray clock sensor	S23
02	1C42	Error	Additional tray clock sensor	S3
02	1C67	Error	Shift roller release sensor	S5
02	1C6F	Error	Entrance roller release /stopper HP sensor	S13
02	1C71	Error	Grip arm sensor	S7
02	1CF7	Other	Gripper unit HP sensor	S1

T-7-10

*1 The state is recovered by opening and closing the Door, or turning OFF and then ON the power supply.

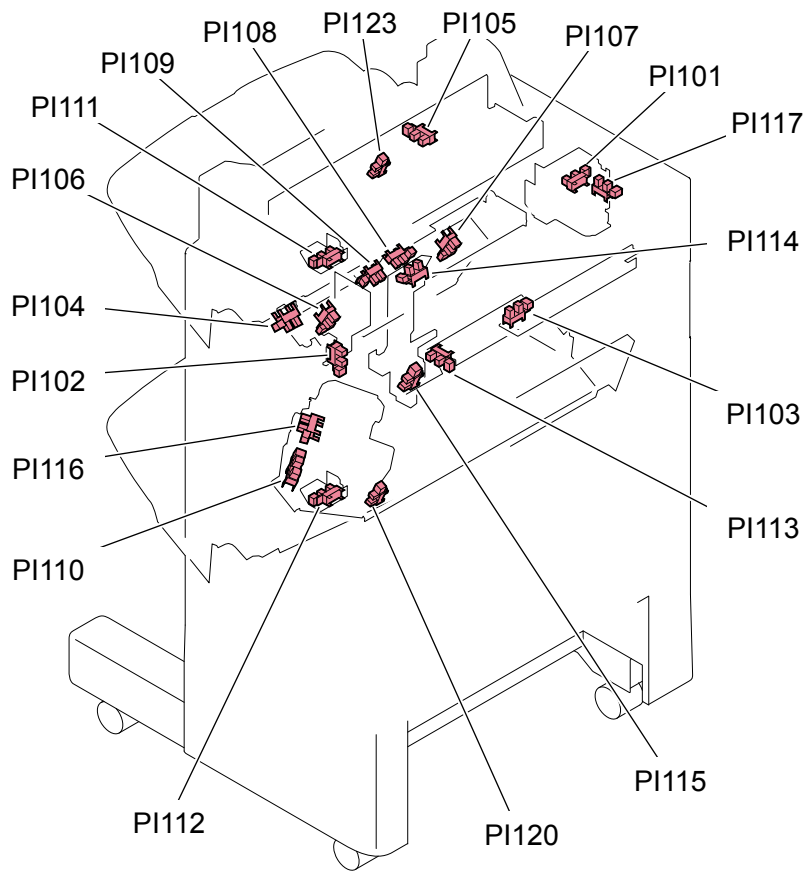
Buffer Pass Unit-K1



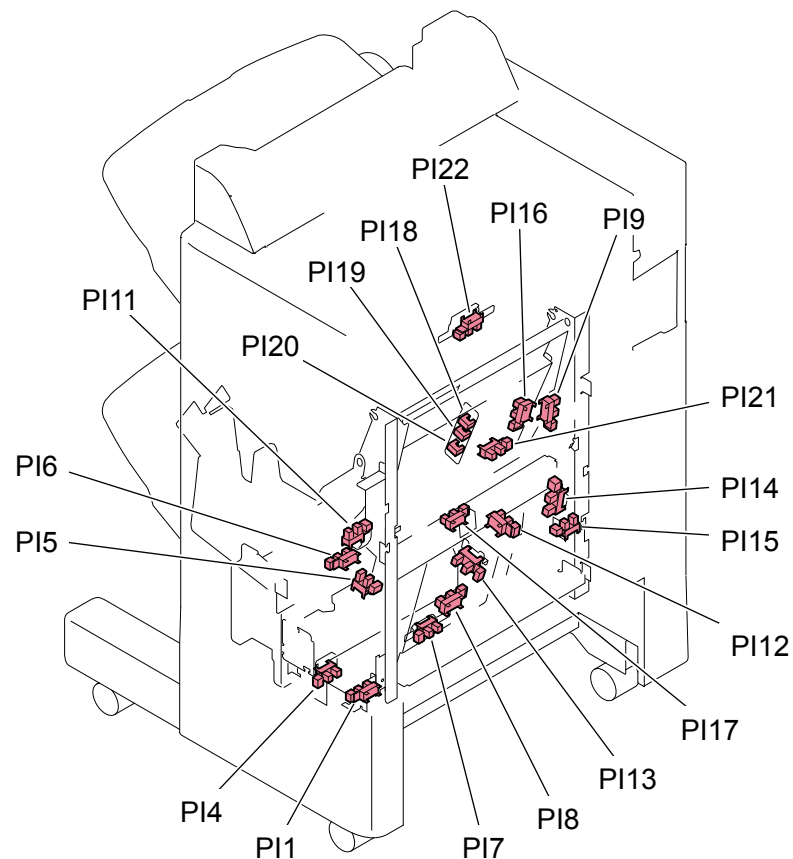
ACC ID	Jam Code	Type	Sensor Name	Sensor ID ^{F-7-6}
00	0111	Delay	Buffer Pass Inlet Sensor	PS1
00	0112	Delay	Buffer Pass Outlet Sensor	PS2
00	0211	Stationary	Buffer Pass Inlet Sensor	PS1
00	0212	Stationary	Buffer Pass Outlet Sensor	PS2

T-7-11

Staple / Booklet Finisher-M1



F-7-7



F-7-8

ACC ID	Jam Code	Type	Sensor Name	Sensor ID
02	1200	Early jam	Inlet sensor	PI103
02	110F	Retry error *	-	-
02	1F2F	Retry error *	-	-
02	1F8F	Retry error *	-	-
02	1002	Delay jam	Punch pass sensor	PCB12
02	1400	Door open	-	-
02	1408	Door open	-	-
02	1F88	Door open	-	-
02	1102	Stationary jam	Punch pass sensor	PCB12
02	1F92	Delay jam	Delivery sensor	PI11
02	1F87	POWER ON	Paper pushing plate motor clock sensor, Vertical pat paper sensor, No.1 paper sensor, No.2 paper sensor, No.3 paper sensor, Saddle inlet sensor	PI1, PI17, PI18, PI19, PI20, PI22
02	1001	Delay jam	Inlet sensor	PI103
02	1101	Stationary jam	Inlet sensor	PI103
02	1301	POWER ON	Inlet sensor	PI103
02	1004	Delay jam	Feed path sensor	PI104
02	1104	Stationary jam	Feed path sensor	PI104
02	1304	POWER ON	Feed path sensor	PI104
02	1FA2	stationary jam	Delivery sensor, Vertical path sensor	PI11, PI17
02	1F91	Delay jam	No.1 paper sensor	PI18
02	1FA1	Stationary jam	No.1 paper sensor, No.2 paper sensor, No.3 paper sensor	PI18, PI19, PI20
02	1F93	Delay jam	Saddle inlet sensor	PI22
02	1FA3	Stationary jam	Saddle inlet sensor	PI22
02	1644	error	Side registration HP sensor	PI63
02	1645	POWER ON	Punch pass sensor	PCB12
02	1F86	Staple jam	Saddle staple	SDL STP
02	1500	Staple jam	stapler	STP

T-7-12

* The state is recovered by opening and closing the Door, or turning OFF and then ON the power supply.

If the same jam is detected regardless of the operation above, the error code is displayed.

Alarm Code

 Alarm Code

Location Code	Alarm Code	Description	Details
00	0227	Detection of error in 24V Power Supply of reader	Error in 24V Power Supply conducted to the reader was detected.
	0246	System error	Contact the service company office
	0247	System error	Contact the service company office
04	0001	Cassette 1 Lifter error	<p>Cause: Error in Lift Motor or Lifter Sensor</p> <p>Measures:</p> <p>1. While Cassette 1 is removed, turn ON the power and then insert Cassette 1. When there is operation sound of the motor</p> <p>1-1. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09/J13) and the Cassette 1 Lifter Sensor (PS12/PS26)</p> <p>2-1. Check if the Cassette 1 Lifter Sensor (PS12/PS26) is installed.</p> <p>3-1. Extend the Sensor Flag of the Cassette 1 Lifter Sensor (PS12/PS26) by approx. 1.5 mm with Plastic Film, etc.</p> <p>4-1. Check the condition of the gear at the host machine side (to see if there is missing or swing with the gear)</p> <p>5-1. Replace the Cassette 1 Lifter Sensor (PS12/PS26)</p> <p>6-1. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09)</p> <p>When there is no operation sound of the motor</p> <p>1-2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller (UN09/J13) and the Cassette 1 Lifter Motor (M14/M23)</p> <p>2-2. Check conduction of the fuse (FU2) of the DC Controller (UN09)</p> <p>3-2. Check the condition of the gear at the host machine side (to see if there is something missing or swing with the gear)</p> <p>4-2. Check the Cassette 1 Lifter Motor (M14/M23)</p> <p>5-2. Replace the DC Controller (UN09)</p>
	0010	Jam left untouched (RDS creates)	

Location Code	Alarm Code	Description	Details
09	0010	Drum memory tag detection error (Y)	Unable to detect the memory tag of the Drum Unit (Y).
	0011	Drum memory tag detection error (M)	Unable to detect the memory tag of the Drum Unit (M).
	0012	Drum memory tag detection error (C)	Unable to detect the memory tag of the Drum Unit (C).
	0013	Drum memory tag detection error (Bk)	Unable to detect the memory tag of the Drum Unit (Bk).
10	0001	Toner out (Bk)	
	0002	Toner out (C)	
	0003	Toner out (M)	
	0004	Toner out (Y)	
	0017	Toner (Y) prior delivery alarm	
	0018	Toner (M) prior delivery alarm	
	0019	Toner (C) prior delivery alarm	
	0020	Toner (Bk) prior delivery alarm	
	0100	Toner bottle replacement completion alarm	
11	0001	Waste Toner Container full level	<p>Movement: A message "The waste toner container is full." is displayed on the Control Panel, and the machine is stopped.</p> <p>Cause: The Waste Toner Counter reaches full.</p> <p>Measures: Clean the Waste Toner Container.</p>
	0010	Display of Waste Toner Container preparation warning	

Location Code	Alarm Code	Description	Details
30	0002	Transfer Charging Assembly leak	
	0025	Tried to apply abnormally great primary transfer voltage at primary transfer ATVC control for yellow.	Error in the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB, Error in the Primary Transfer Roller (ITB Unit)
	0026	Tried to apply abnormally great primary transfer voltage at primary transfer ATVC control for magenta.	1. Check failure of the harness between the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J1001) and the DC Controller PCB (UN09/J205) (open circuit, trapped cable, connector disconnection).
	0027	Tried to apply abnormally great primary transfer voltage at primary transfer ATVC control for cyan.	-> Replace the harness if it is faulty 2. Check connection failure between the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04/J31) and the Primary Transfer Roller (Check that the connection is free from open circuit or GND contact)
	0028	Tried to apply abnormally great primary transfer voltage at primary transfer ATVC control for black.	3. Replace the Primary Transfer High Voltage PCB (UN04) 4. Replace the ITB Unit 5. Replace the DC Controller PCB (UN09). 6. Replace the Primary Transfer Power Supply Unit
31	0008	HDD failure prediction alarm	Movement: HDD failure is expected to occur in a short time due to occurrence of physical error in HDD. It does not occur in the HDD of mirroring configuration. Cause: Error in the S.M.A.R.T. value of HDD Measures: 1. Back up the data stored in HDD. 2. Replace the HDD. 3. Restore the data. S.M.A.R.T. (Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology): Self-diagnosis function built in the HDD. The occurrence rate of reading error, reading and writing speed, the total number of Motor start-up and stop times, the total length of power-on time, etc. are monitored.
33	0006	Drum Unit cooling fan alarm	
	0029	Decurler Fan alarm	Movement: Nothing in particular (Fan stops). Cause: The harness of the Decurler Fan (FM1) is caught or disconnected. Measures: Check the connector connection -> Replace the Decurler Fan (FM1).

Location Code	Alarm Code	Description	Details
34	0001	Auto registration adjustment	Zero (0) was entered in the reading data of auto registration pattern -> Due to misalignment in reading data as a result of misdetection that soil or scar on the belt was detected as pattern
	0002	Auto registration adjustment	When there is abnormal data in 8 or more sets among the 10 auto registration pattern sets -> Due to misalignment in reading data as a result of misdetection that soil or scar on the belt is detected as pattern
	0006	Correct color mismatch alarm	Color displacement is not properly corrected as a result of the drum phase control. Possibly an error in the Drum Phase Sensor
35	0070	Drum Unit (Y) replacement completion alarm	
	0071	Drum Unit (M) replacement completion alarm	
	0072	Drum Unit (C) replacement completion alarm	
	0073	Drum Unit (Bk) replacement completion alarm	
40	0070	Drum Unit (Y) prior delivery alarm	An alarm for requesting a prior delivery is sent to UGW as the value of COPIER > COUNTER > LF > Y-DRM-LF has reached the value set in COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > D-DLV-CL.
	0071	Drum Unit (M) prior delivery alarm	An alarm for requesting a prior delivery is sent to UGW as the value of COPIER > COUNTER > LF > M-DRM-LF has reached the value set in COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > D-DLV-CL.
	0072	Drum Unit (C) prior delivery alarm	An alarm for requesting a prior delivery is sent to UGW as the value of COPIER > COUNTER > LF > C-DRM-LF has reached the value set in COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > D-DLV-CL.
	0073	Drum Unit (Bk) prior delivery alarm	An alarm for requesting a prior delivery is sent to UGW as the value of COPIER > COUNTER > LF > K-DRM-LF has reached the value set in COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > D-DLV-BK.
50	0010	Successive occurrence of separation alarm	Movement: Nothing in particular. Cause: Condition unable to separate 1st sheet of original from the ADF occurs 3 times. Measures: Check rotation of the Pickup Motor -> Check the life of the Pickup Roller -> Check if paper lint is at the Pickup Slot.
	0012	ADF motor Fan alarm	Detect of Fan error

Location Code	Alarm Code	Description	Details
61	0001	No staple (process tray assembly)	Operation : User message is displayed on controller of main unit. Printing operation is suspended when operating staple job during a print job. Recovery method : Replenish with staples.
62	0001	No staple (saddle assembly)	Operation : Print operation is suspended after user message is displayed on controller of main unit. Printing operation is suspended when operating side-staple job during a print job. Recovery method : Replenish with staples.
70	0001	Memory overflow	
	0002	Font memory overflow	
	0003	Micromemory overflow	
	0004	Image memory overflow	
	0005	Pattern memory overflow	
	0006	A hard disk error	
	0007	Detect operation abnormality for the HDD access request	
	0086	Upgrading-related alarm	Upgrading process is failed.
73	0004	LIPS	Overflow of work memory for translator
	0006		Error in configuration acquisition/management
	0007		Memory management error in LIPS
	0008		File management error in LIPS
	0009		Reception data management error
	0010		Page control error
	0011		Macro management error
	0012		Color management error
	0013		Layout control error
	0014		Font management error
	0015		Letter drawing error
	0016		Graphic drawing error
	0017		Image drawing error
	0018		Display error to LCD
	0019		Text mode command error layer error
	0020		Vector mode command error layer error
	0021		Utility execution control error
	0022		Database management error in LIPS
	0023		Menu control error in LIPS
0024		Boot error in LIPS	
0025		When the graphic library is in use for image processing, if the memory allocation is failed.	
0026		Data format error of image mode	

Location Code	Alarm Code	Description	Details
76	0001	Font	No memory for internal font
	0002		Fails to assure the work area to analyze the font that is downloaded at "Resource Download".
	0003		Fails to access the file that stores the font.
	0004		Fails to allocate the FM work memory.
	0005		Fails to analyze the internal font.
	0006		Alignment of font data is wrong.
	0007		Failed to allocate work memory with scaler. There are 3 types depending on where to occur.
	0008		Failed to allocate work memory with scaler. There are 3 types depending on where to occur.
77	0001	PDL	Fails to allocate the memory
	0002		Failure of rendering
	0003		DGL entry invalid
	0005		Other errors
	0006		DLG memory insufficient
	78		0003
	0005	GL	System memory full
79	0001	In-house developed PCL	PCL initialization error
	0002		PCL processing error
	0003		Overflow of work memory for translator
	0004		Download overflow
80	0001	BDL	Admin error
	0003		DataArea error
	0010		Graphics error
	0011		Char error
	0015		Print data cannot process this version.
	0016		Overflow of work memory for translator
	0018		Syntax error
	0019		In case of invalid data format in BDL custom mode.
81	0001	Imaging	Fails to allocate the memory
	0002		Failure of rendering
	0003		Overflow of work memory for translator
	0004		Imaging initialization error
	0005		Imaging processing error

Location Code	Alarm Code	Description	Details
83	0005	CanonPDF	PDF memory full
	0015		PDF data decode error
	0016		PDF print range error
	0017		PDF error
	0018		PDF analysis error Un-supported transparent object exists.
	0020	ESCP	
	0021	I5577	
	0022	HPGL	
	0023	N201	
	84	0001	XPS memory full error
0002		XPS spool full error	
0003		XPS print range error	
0004		XPS document data error	
0005		XPS page data error	
0006		XPS image data error	
0007		XPS font data error	
0008		XPS non-support image error	
0009		XPS rendering error	

T-7-13



Service Mode

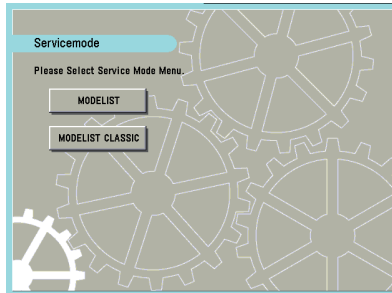
- Overview
- COPIER
- FEEDER
- SORTER
- BOARD

Overview

Instructions on how to use service mode items can be found within the service mode itself. The information explains what items have been added or changed from previous models.

Service Mode Menu

TOP Screen



F-8-1

"MODELIST"

A brand new additional mode in the host machine. A function that can be used as a reference on how to use each item in Service Mode is installed. The new function, which will be described later, is available in MODELIST Mode.

"MODELIST CLASSIC"

This mode is same as the old machine. The new function, which will be described later, is not available in the MODELIST CLASSIC Mode.

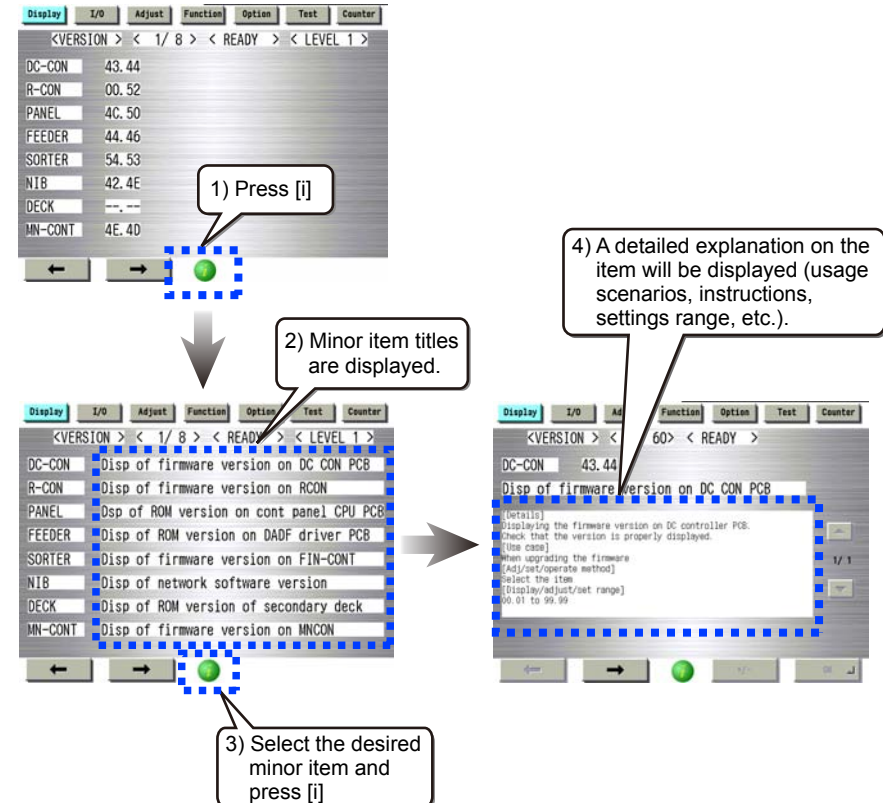
If "MODELIST" or "MODELIST CLASSIC" is pressed, the screen will switch to initial screen for each mode.

Service mode item explanations

Explanatory texts for the initial window, main items, sub items and minor items can be displayed.

Select the desired initial window, main item, sub item or minor item, then press [i] (Information button) to display an explanatory text (hereafter, service mode contents) on the selected item.

E.g., COPIER > DISPLAY > Version window



- The service mode contents can be displayed in J/E/F/I/G/S languages.
- Service mode contents, like system software, can be upgraded by SST.

F-8-2

I/O information enhancement

On the COPIER > I/O, the mode to confirm input output signal of electrical parts used (sensor, motor, fan, etc), makes it easier to look for the intended electrical part.

And the screen will also display the input output signal.

Device classification

Electrical parts classification

1) Press the button.
Which button to press, will depend on which electrical parts intended and its device classification. For instance, if the host machine uses paper pass detection sensor, then press the button on the "COPIER" and "P-Sensor" position.

2) Then the selected electrical parts classification's mark, name, port number and 0/1 content will appear.

3) If the "I" button is pressed, the screen displaying the electrical parts array will appear.

Display I/O Adjust Function Option Test Counter

Dcon Rcon Feeder Sorter Mn-Con Pd-Con <

P001 0000000000000000
P002 0000000000000000
P003 0000000000000000
P004 0000000000000000

P010 Fixing inlet sensor
OC-CON-P001-5 #0 FNo paper A1:paper
P011 Inner delivery sensor
OC-CON-P001-6 #0 FNo paper A1:paper
P019 Secondary post-transfer sensor
OC-CON-P001-7 #0 FNo paper A1:paper
P020 Fixing feed lever sensor
OC-CON-P001-8 #0 FNo paper A1:paper
P024 Front door open sensor (right)
OC-CON-P001-9 #0 FNo paper A1:paper

F-8-3

Display of Error Code/Alarm Code description

The detail description of each code can be viewed on the error code and alarm code occurrence record screen.

ERROR CODE : COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR

Display I/O Adjust Function Option Test Counter

< ERR > < 2/ 7 > < READY > < LEVEL 1 >

No.	DATE	TIME1	TIME2	CODE	DTL	L	P
09	0102	0304	050	E804-0003			
10	----	----	---				
11	0102	0304	050				
12	0102	0304	050				
13	0102	0304	050				
14	0102	0304	0506	E0748	4910	00	00
15	0102	0304	0506	E0804	0002	00	00
16	0102	0304	0506	E0804	0003	00	00

Display of error code description for E804-0003:

TITLE :
Error in primary suction fan
Assumed cause:
When an error is detected on the primary suction fan

1/ 1

DONE

F-8-4

ALARM CODE : COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR

Display I/O Adjust Function Option Test Counter

< ALARM-2 > < 2/ 7 > < READY > < LEVEL 1 >

No.	DATE	TIME1	TIME2	CODE	DTL	CNTR
09	0308	1345	160	E804-0027		
10	0308	1345	160			
11	0308	1345	160			
12	0308	1345	160			
13	0308	1345	160			
14	0308	1345	1600	040046	0000	0
15	0308	1345	1600	040047	0000	0
16	0308	1345	1600	040048	0000	0

Display of error code description for E804-0027:

[Title]
Error in fixing feed motor driver cooling fan
[Assumed cause]
When an error is detected on the fixing feed motor driver cooling fan.

1/ 1

DONE

F-8-5

COPIER > OPTION > BODY, Item Segmentation

On the current machine, there are extremely many items in the COPIER > OPTION > BODY (in related to host machine specification), that it is difficult to reach the intended item.

In order to reach the intended item in shorter time, all items inside the BODY is classified to 15 categories.

Classification	Name	Description
Function switching	FNC-SW	Language, cassette, paper size type, NAVI/DA connection, count-up spec., document size detection, dirt detection level
Display switching/ display timing	DSPLY-SW	UI (User Interface) display related
Image related (fixing)	IMG-FIX	Fixing related
Image related (transfer)	IMG-TR	Primary transfer, secondary transfer, ITB
Image related (developing)	IMG-DEV	Developer related
Image related (laser/ latent image)	IMG-LSR	Laser, latent image related
Image related (reader/ ADF)	IMG-RDR	Reader, ADF image related
Image related (controller, other general items)	IMG-MCON	MN-CON image related, and image related items other than those referred to above.
Image quality/ copy speed	IMG-SPD	Power down sequence
Cleaning	CLEANING	Cleaning of charging unit, drum, transfer roller, ITB, etc.
Environment settings	ENV-SET	Temperature, humidity, environmental heater, condensation, log acquisition
Paper feed (pickup, delivery)	FEED-SW	Stack performance, motor speed adjustment, delivery functions, etc.
Noise reduction	SOUND	Noise related
Network	NETWORK	Network settings, IFAX, SEND, E-RDS, etc.
Customization	CUSTOM	Customization

T-8-1

Security features

To prevent unauthorized access to Service Mode, Password set is enabled.

Related service modes

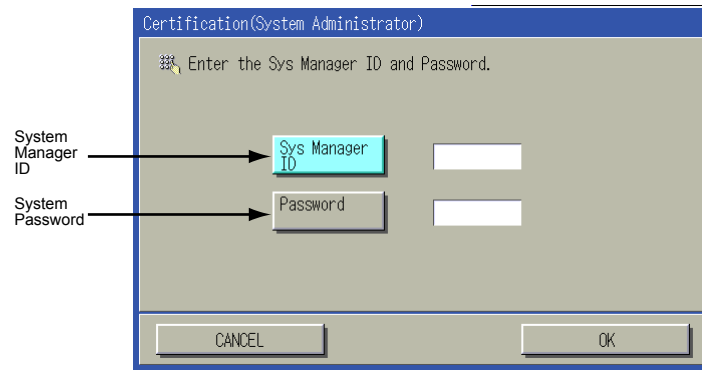
- COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > PSWD-SW (Level1)
Set password type for transition to service mode.
<Setting range>
0: No password (default)
1: Service engineer
2: System administrator and Service engineer.
- COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > SM-PSWD (Level2)
Password for service engineer for transition to service mode.
<Setting range>

To reinforce the security, change the password from a default.

***** (eight digit numeral) [default: 11111111]

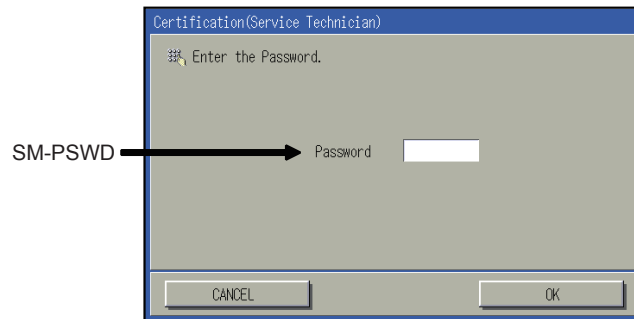
After the above setting, to enter Service Mode, enter password screen will appear.

- 1) Additional Functions > System Settings > System Manager Settings > enter System Manager ID > enter System Password Settings > press OK button.



F-8-6

- 2) After entering the password for service technician (Service mode: COPIER > Option > FNC-SW > SM-PSWD), press OK button.



F-8-7

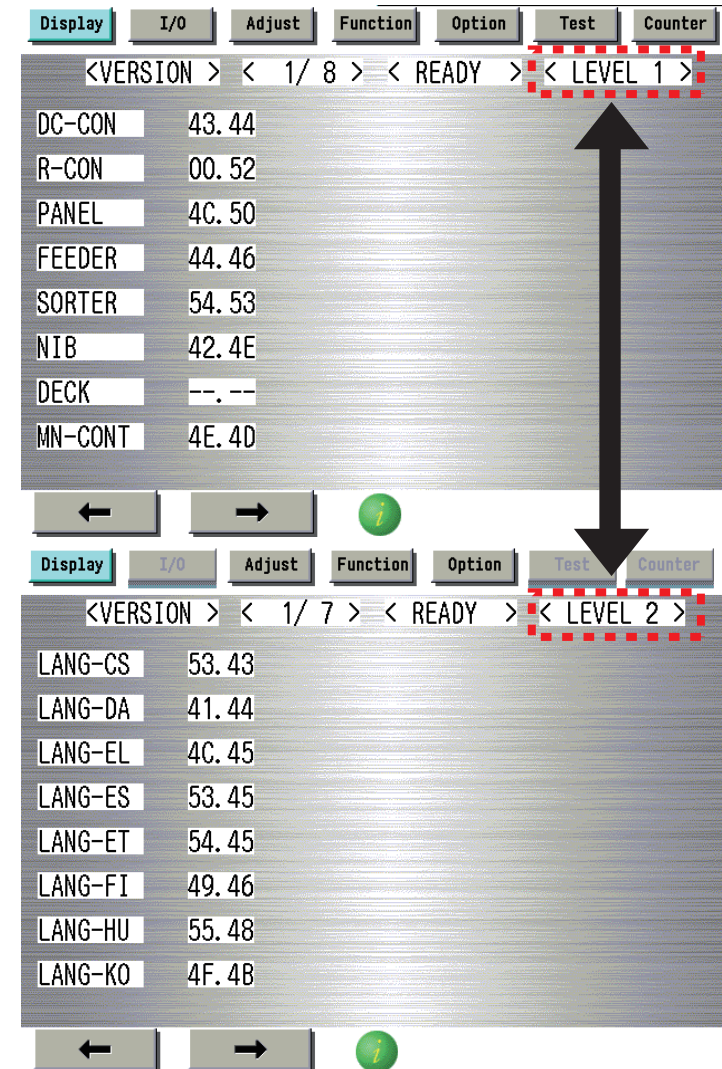
MEMO :

If Service Engineer's password is forgotten, password function is cancelable by using Service Support Tool (SST).

Switching Screen (Level 1 < - > 2)

Switching screens between level 1 and 2 has been made easier.

When level 1 screen is displayed, press <LEVEL 1> in the right upper side of the screen, and it will switch to level 2.



F-8-8

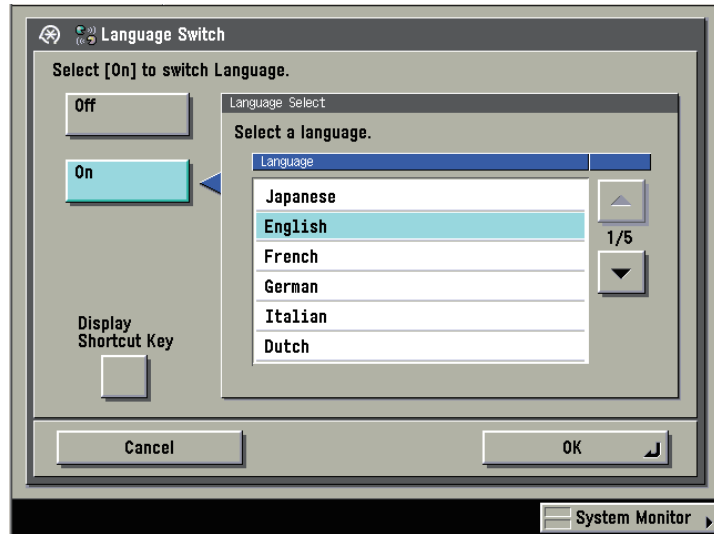
Language switch

The language of the explanatory text displayed in the Service Mode can be switched by performing the below language switch operation in User Mode

The explanatory text can be displayed by installing the Service Mode Content (SCMNT) in HDD.

Service Mode Content (SCMNT) can be installed and upgraded on SST.

Additional Functions > Common Settings > Language Switch



F-8-9

MEMO :

If the Service Mode Content (SMCNT) of the concerned language is not installed, English explanatory text will be displayed.

If English-language Service Mode Content (SMCNT) is not installed either, explanatory text can't be displayed.

Back-up of service mode

In factory setting, adjustments are made for each machine, and adjustment values are written in the service label.

When you replaced the DC controller PCB, or executed the RAM clear function, adjustment values for ADJUST or OPTION return to default. Therefore, when you made adjustments and changed values of the Service Mode in the field, be sure to write down the changed values in the service label. When there is no relevant field in the service label, write down the values in a blank field. The service label is pasted on inner front cover.

The data output of the service data print

Overview

- Data output of service print such as P-PRINT is supported.
- If a service print was printed on paper, the data at the time of printing can be retrieved.
- When a service print is output (e.g. P-PRINT) in service mode, a data for print and a data for file are created in the controller.
- The created data file is saved in the HDD of the machine.
- The created (saved) data is deleted when it is moved to the SST or a USB memory device.
- If multiple service data (e.g. P-PRINT and HIST-PRINT) are stored in the HDD of the machine, they are collectively moved to the SST or the USB memory device.
- Even if the machine has stopped operation due to a no-paper error, data can be moved to the SST or the USB memory device as long as the machine can enter download mode.

NOTE:

- While an error is occurring, data of service print cannot be create.
- When connecting a USB device that operates on an external power supply, the machine needs to be started with the USB device ON. A USB device connected after starting the machine cannot be recognized.

Service Prints and Data File Names That Support File Output

Service Mode	Content
P-PRINT	Output of service mode setting value
HIST-PRT	Output of jam and error history
USER-PRT	Output of user mode list
D-PRINT	Output of service mode (DISPLAY)
ENV-PRT	Inside temp/hmdy & fix roller temp log
PJH-P-1	Detail info of print job history:100 job
PJH-P-2	Detail info of print job history:all job
USBH-PRT	Output of USB device information report

T-8-2

How to Move Service Print Files to a USB Memory Device

Preparation

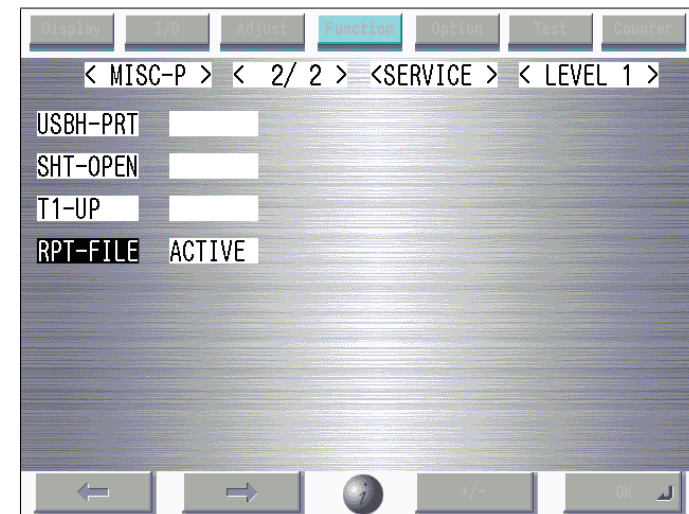
- PC with SST running,
- or
- USB memory device
FAT32 format file system, with no password locks. To display the USB menu, the firmware of the corresponding model needs to have been registered.
A USB memory device where the system software for this machine has been registered using the SST.

Overall flow

1. Selecting RPT-FILE
Select service mode > Copier > Function > MISC-P > RPT-FILE; and then press OK.
2. Generating report file
3. Using SST or USB memory device to collect the report file
Transfer the report data which was collected from the machine to the USB memory device.

operation

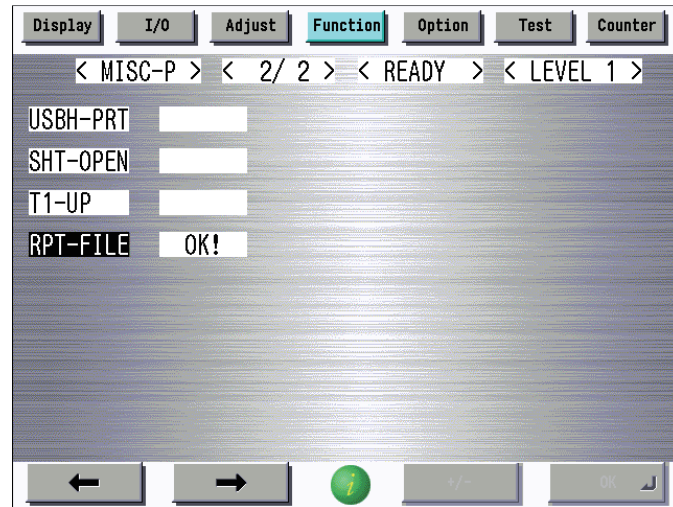
1. Select service mode (Level 1) > Copier > Function > MISC-P > RPT-FILE; and then press "OK".



F-8-10

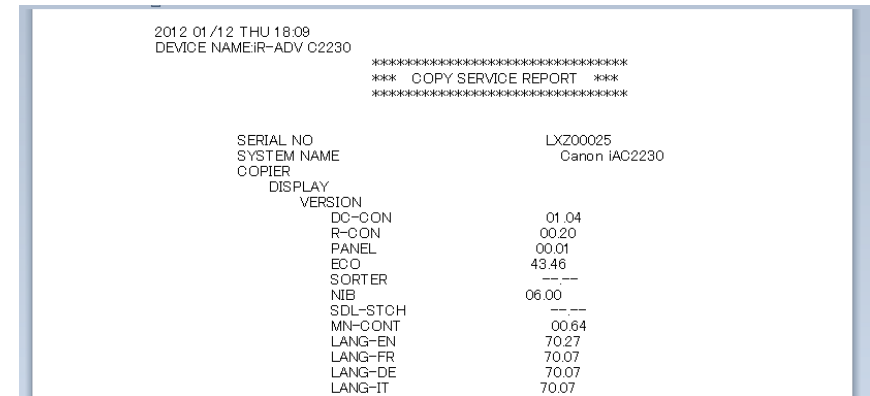
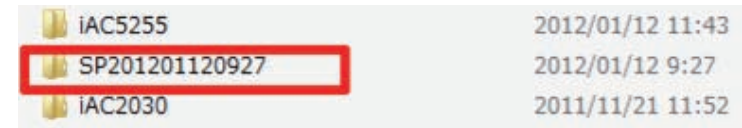
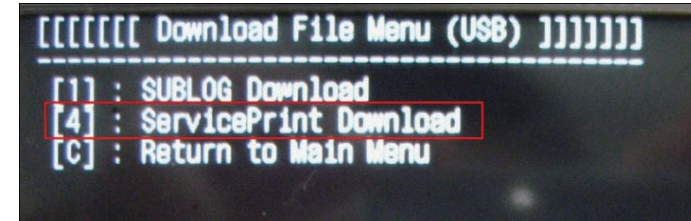
2. Generating report file

After the "ACTIVE" blinks for 3 to 4 minutes, generation of a report file is complete as "OK!" is displayed.



F-8-11

3. Using SST or USB memory device to collect report file

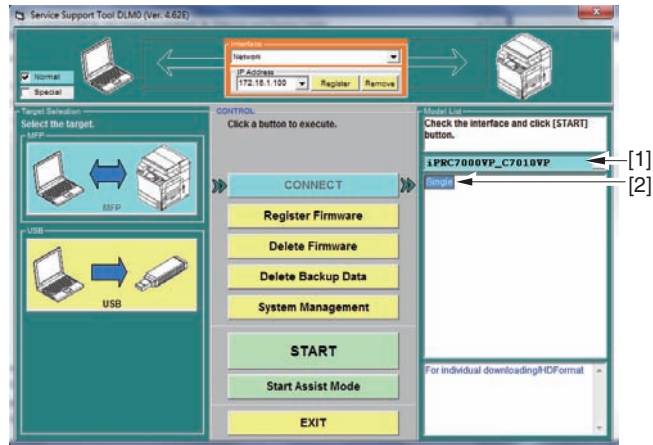


F-8-12

How to Move Service Print Files to a PC using the SST

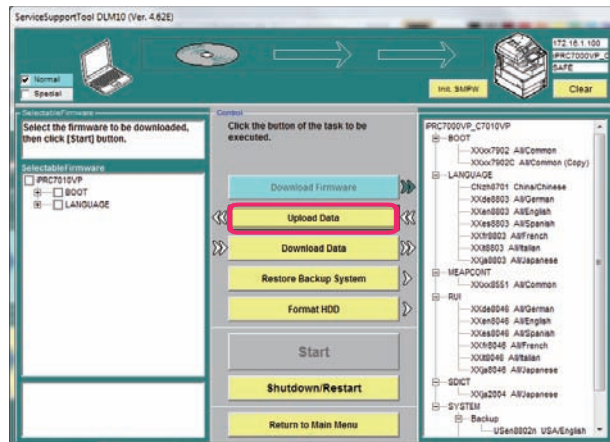
Introduce it in SST Ver.4.6x.

- 1) Start up the SST.
- 2) Select the model [1] and the type of system software [2] ('Single'); then, check the network settings, and click [START].



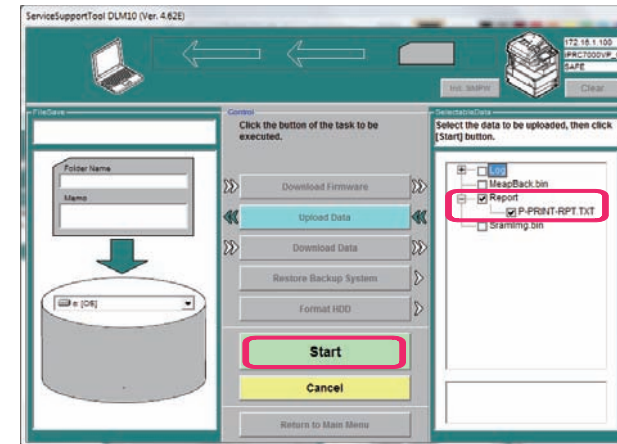
F-8-13

- 3) Click [Upload Data].



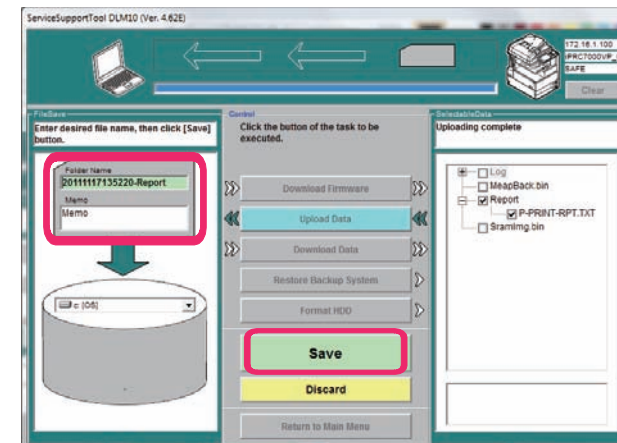
F-8-14

- 4) Select 'P-PRINT-RPT.txt', and click [Start].



F-8-15

- 5) Select the name of the Folder to store and, as necessary, a brief description; then, click [Save].



F-8-16

- 6) Click [OK].

COPIER

 DISPLAY

 VERSION

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
DC-CON		
Display of DCON firmware version		
Lv.1	Details	To display the firmware version of DC Controller PCB.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
R-CON		
Display of RCON firmware version		
Lv.1	Details	To display the firmware version of Reader Controller PCB.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
PANEL		
Dspl of Control Panel CPU PCB ROM version		
Lv.1	Details	To display the ROM version of Control Panel CPU PCB.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ECO		
Display of ECO-ID PCB ROM version		
Lv.1	Details	To display the ROM version of ECO-ID PCB
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SORTER		
Display of FIN-CONT firmware version		
Lv.1	Details	To display the firmware version of Finisher Controller PCB.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
NIB		
Display of network software version		
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of the network software.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SDL-STCH		
Dspl of Saddle Sttch Ctrollr PCB ROM ver		
Lv.1	Details	To display the ROM version of the Saddle Stitcher Controller PCB.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
MN-CONT		
Display of MNCON firmware version		
Lv.1	Details	To display the firmware version of Main Controller PCB.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-EN		
Display of English language file version		
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of English language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
LANG-FR		
Display of French language file version		
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of French language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-DE		
Display of German language file version		
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of German language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-IT		
Display of Italian language file version		
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Italian language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-JP		
Display of Japanese language file ver		
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Japanese language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-CS		
Display of Czech language file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Czech language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-DA		
Display of Danish language file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Danish language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-EL		
Display of Greek language file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Greek language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-ES		
Display of Spanish language file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Spanish language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-ET		
Display of Estonian language file ver		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Estonian language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-FI		
Display of Finnish language file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Finnish language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-HU		
Display of Hungarian language file ver		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Hungarian language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
LANG-KO		Display of Korean language file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Korean language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-NL		Display of Dutch language file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Dutch language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-NO		Display of Norwegian language file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Norwegian language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-PL		Display of Polish language file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Polish language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-PT		Display of Portuguese language file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Portuguese language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-RU		Display of Russian language file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Russian language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-SL		Display of Slovenian language file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovenian language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-SV		Display of Swedish language file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Swedish language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-TW		Dspl of Chinese language file ver: trad
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Chinese language file (traditional).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-ZH		Dspl of Chinese language file ver: smpl
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Chinese language file (simplified).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-BU		Display of Bulgarian language file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Bulgarian language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
LANG-CR		Display of Croatian language file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Croatian language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-RM		Display of Romanian language file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Romanian language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-SK		Display of Slovak language file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovak language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-TK		Display of Turkish language file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Turkish language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-CA		Display of Catalan language file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Catalan language file. “--” is displayed when no file is found.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
FAX1		Display of 1-line FAX PCB ROM version
Lv.1	Details	To display the ROM version of 1-line FAX PCB. “NULL” is displayed if the PCB is not connected.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	ASCII character string (12 digits)
FAX2		Dspl of 2/3/4-line FAX PCB ROM version
Lv.1	Details	To display the ROM version of 2/3/4-line FAX PCB. “NULL” is displayed if the PCB is not connected.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	ASCII character string (12 digits)
IOCS		Display of BIOS version
Lv.1	Details	To display the BIOS version.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
TSP-JLK		Dspl of Image Data Analyzer PCB version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Image Data Analyzer PCB.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-FR		Dspl of COPY appli French file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the French language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
COPY-IT		Dspl of COPY appli Italian file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the Italian language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-DE		Dspl of COPY appli German file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the German language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-ES		Dspl of COPY appli Spanish file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the Spanish language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-ZH		Dspl COPY appli Chinese file ver: smpl
Lv.2	Details	To display the simplified Chinese language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-TW		Dspl of COPY appli Chinese file ver:trad
Lv.2	Details	To display the traditional Chinese language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-KO		Dspl of COPY appli Korean file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Korean language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-CS		Dspl of COPY appli Czech file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Czech language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-DA		Dspl of COPY appli Danish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Danish language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-EL		Dspl of COPY appli Greek file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Greek language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
COPY-ET		Dspl of COPY appli Estonian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Estonian language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-FI		Dspl of COPY appli Finnish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Finnish language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-HU		Dspl of COPY appli Hungarian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Hungarian language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-NL		Dspl of COPY appli Dutch file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Dutch language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-NO		Dspl of COPY appli Norwegian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Norwegian language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-PL		Dspl of COPY appli Polish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Polish language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-PT		Dspl of COPY appli Portuguese file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the Portuguese language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-RU		Dspl of COPY appli Russian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Russian language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-SL		Dspl of COPY appli Slovenian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Slovenian language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
COPY-SV		Dspl of COPY appli Swedish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Swedish language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-ID		Dspl of COPY appli Indonesian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the Indonesian language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-BU		Dspl of COPY appli Bulgarian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Bulgarian language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-CR		Dspl of COPY appli Croatian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Croatian language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-RM		Dspl of COPY appli Romanian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Romanian language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-SK		Dspl of COPY appli Slovak file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Slovak language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-TK		Dspl of COPY appli Turkish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Turkish language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-CA		Dspl of COPY appli Catalan file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Catalan language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
COPY-TH		Dspl of COPY appli Thai file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Thai language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
COPY-VN		Dspl of COPY appli Vietnamese file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the Vietnamese language file version of COPY application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-FR		Dspl of SEND appli French file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the French language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-IT		Dspl of SEND appli Italian file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the Italian language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-DE		Dspl of SEND appli German file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the German language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-ES		Dspl of SEND appli Spanish file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the Spanish language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-ZH		Dspl SEND appli Chinese file ver: smpl
Lv.2	Details	To display the simplified Chinese language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-TW		Dspl of SEND appli Chinese file ver:trad
Lv.2	Details	To display the traditional Chinese language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-KO		Dspl of SEND appli Korean file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Korean language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-CS		Dspl of SEND appli Czech file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Czech language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
SEND-DA		Dspl of SEND appli Danish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Danish language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-EL		Dspl of SEND appli Greek file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Greek language file version of the SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-ET		Dspl of SEND appli Estonian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Estonian language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-FI		Dspl of SEND appli Finnish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Finnish language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-HU		Dspl of SEND appli Hungarian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Hungarian language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-NL		Dspl of SEND appli Dutch file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Dutch language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-NO		Dspl of SEND appli Norwegian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Norwegian language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-PL		Dspl of SEND appli Polish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Polish language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-PT		Dspl of SEND appli Portuguese file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the Portuguese language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
SEND-RU		Dspl of SEND appli Russian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Russian language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-SL		Dspl of SEND appli Slovenian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Slovenian language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-SV		Dspl of SEND appli Swedish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Swedish language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-ID		Dspl of SEND appli Indonesian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the Indonesian language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-BU		Dspl of SEND appli Bulgarian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Bulgarian language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-CR		Dspl of SEND appli Croatian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Croatian language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-RM		Dspl of SEND appli Romanian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Romanian language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-SK		Dspl of SEND appli Slovak file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Slovak language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-TK		Dspl of SEND appli Turkish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Turkish language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
SEND-CA		Dspl of SEND appli Catalan file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Catalan language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-TH		Dspl of SEND appli Thai file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the Thai language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SEND-VN		Dspl of SEND appli Vietnamese file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the Vietnamese language file version of SEND application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-FR		Dspl of useful func intro French file ver
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of French language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-IT		Dspl useful func intro Italian file ver
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Italian language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-DE		Dspl of useful func intro German file ver
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of German language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-ES		Dspl useful func intro Spanish file ver
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Spanish language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-ZH		Useful func intro Chinese file ver: smpl
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of simplified Chinese language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-TW		Useful func intro Chinese file ver: trad
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of traditional Chinese language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
INTRO-KO		Dspl of useful func intro Korean file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Korean language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-CS		Dspl of useful func intro Czech file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Czech language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-DA		Dspl of useful func intro Danish file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Danish language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-EL		Dspl of useful func intro Greek file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Greek language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-ET		Dspl useful func intro Estonian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Estonian language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-FI		Dspl useful func intro Finnish file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Finnish language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-HU		Dspl useful func intro Hungarian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Hungarian language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-NL		Dspl of useful func intro Dutch file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Dutch language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-NO		Dspl useful func intro Norwegian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Norwegian language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
INTRO-PL		Dspl of useful func intro Polish file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Polish language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-PT		Dspl useful func intro Portuguese filever
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Portuguese language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-RU		Dspl useful func intro Russian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Russian language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-SL		Dspl useful func intro Slovenian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovenian language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-SV		Dspl useful func intro Swedish file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Swedish language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-ID		Dspl of useful func intro Indon file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Indonesian language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-BU		Dspl useful func intro Bulgarian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Bulgarian language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-CR		Dspl useful func intro Croatian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Croatian language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-RM		Dspl useful func intro Romanian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Romanian language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
INTRO-SK		Dspl of useful func intro Slovak file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovak language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-TK		Dspl useful func intro Turkish file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Turkish language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-CA		Dspl useful func intro Catalan file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Catalan language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-TH		Dspl useful func intro Thai file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Thai language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
INTRO-VN		Useful func intro Vietnamese file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Vietnamese language file of Introduction to Useful Features application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-FR		Dspl of custom menu French file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of French language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-IT		Dspl of custom menu Italian file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Italian language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-DE		Dspl of custom menu German file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of German language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-ES		Dspl of custom menu Spanish file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Spanish language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
CSTMN-ZH		Dspl custom menu Chinese file ver: simpl
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of simplified Chinese language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-TW		Dspl of custom menu Chinese file ver:trad
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of traditional Chinese language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-KO		Dspl of custom menu Korean file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Korean language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-CS		Dspl of custom menu Czech file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Czech language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-DA		Dspl of custom menu Danish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Danish language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-EL		Dspl of custom menu Greek file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Greek language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-ET		Dspl of custom menu Estonian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Estonian language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-FI		Dspl of custom menu Finnish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Finnish language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-HU		Dspl of custom menu Hungarian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Hungarian language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
CSTMN-NL		Dspl of custom menu Dutch file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Dutch language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-NO		Dspl of custom menu Norwegian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Norwegian language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-PL		Dspl of custom menu Polish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Polish language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-PT		Dspl of custom menu Portuguese file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Portuguese language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-RU		Dspl of custom menu Russian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Russian language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-SL		Dspl of custom menu Slovenian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovenian language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-SV		Dspl of custom menu Swedish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Swedish language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-ID		Dspl of custom menu Indonesian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Indonesian language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-BU		Dspl of custom menu Bulgarian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Bulgarian language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
CSTMN-CR		Dspl of custom menu Croatian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Croatian language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-RM		Dspl of custom menu Romanian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Romanian language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-SK		Dspl of custom menu Slovak file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovak language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-TK		Dspl of custom menu Turkish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Turkish language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-CA		Dspl of custom menu Catalan file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Catalan language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-TH		Dspl of custom menu Thai file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Thai language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
CSTMN-VN		Dspl of custom menu Vietnamese file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Vietnamese language file for custom menu application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-FR		Dspl of accessibility French file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of French language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-IT		Dspl of accessibility Italian file ver
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Italian language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
ACSBT-DE		Dspl of accessibility German file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of German language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-ES		Dspl of accessibility Spanish file ver
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Spanish language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-ZH		Dspl Accessibility Chinese file ver: smpl
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of simplified Chinese language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-TW		Dspl accessibility Chinese file ver:trad
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of traditional Chinese language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-KO		Dspl of accessibility Korean file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Korean language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-CS		Dspl of accessibility Czech file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Czech language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-DA		Dspl of accessibility Danish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Danish language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-EL		Dspl of accessibility Greek file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Greek language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-ET		Dspl of accessibility Estonian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Estonian language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
ACSBT-FI		Dspl of accessibility Finnish file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Finnish language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-HU		Dspl of accessibility Hungarian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Hungarian language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-NL		Dspl of accessibility Dutch file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Dutch language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-NO		Dspl of accessibility Norwegian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Norwegian language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-PL		Dspl of accessibility Polish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Polish language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-PT		Dspl of accessibility Portuguese file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Portuguese language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-RU		Dspl of accessibility Russian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Russian language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-SL		Dspl of accessibility Slovenian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovenian language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-SV		Dspl of accessibility Swedish file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Swedish language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
ACSBT-ID		Dspl of accessibility Indonesian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Indonesian language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-BU		Dspl of accessibility Bulgarian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Bulgarian language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-CR		Dspl of accessibility Croatian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Croatian language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-RM		Dspl of accessibility Romanian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Romanian language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-SK		Dspl of accessibility Slovak file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovak language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-TK		Dspl of accessibility Turkish file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Turkish language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-CA		Dspl of accessibility Catalan file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Catalan language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-TH		Dspl of accessibility Thai file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Thai language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ACSBT-VN		Dspl of accessibility Vietnamese file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Vietnamese language file for Accessibility application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
ERS-FR		Display of ERS French file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of French language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-IT		Display of ERS Italian file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Italian language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-DE		Display of ERS German file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of German language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-ES		Display of ERS Spanish file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Spanish language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-ZH		Display of ERS Chinese file ver:smpl
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of simplified Chinese language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-TW		Display of ERS Chinese file ver:trad
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of traditional Chinese language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-KO		Display of ERS Korean file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Korean language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-CS		Display of ERS Czech file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Czech language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-DA		Display of ERS Danish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Danish language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-EL		Display of ERS Greek file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Greek language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
ERS-ET		Display of ERS Estonian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Estonian language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-FI		Display of ERS Finnish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Finnish language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-HU		Display of ERS Hungarian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Hungarian language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-NL		Display of ERS Dutch file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Dutch language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-NO		Display of ERS Norwegian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Norwegian language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-PL		Display of ERS Polish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Polish language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-PT		Display of ERS Portuguese file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Portuguese language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-RU		Display of ERS Russian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Russian language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-SL		Display of ERS Slovenian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovenian language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-SV		Display of ERS Swedish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Swedish language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
ERS-ID		Display of ERS Indonesian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Indonesian language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-BU		Display of ERS Bulgarian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Bulgarian language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-CR		Display of ERS Croatian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Croatian language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-RM		Display of ERS Romanian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Romanian language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-SK		Display of ERS Slovak file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovak language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-TK		Display of ERS Turkish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Turkish language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-CA		Display of ERS Catalan file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Catalan language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-TH		Display of ERS Thai file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Thai language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
ERS-VN		Display of ERS Vietnamese file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Vietnamese language file for ERS application.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BCT		Display of self diagnosis tool version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of self diagnosis tool.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-TH		Display of Thai language file version

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Thai language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
LANG-VN		Display of Vietnamese language file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Vietnamese language file.
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-FR		Display of BOX appli French file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of French language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-IT		Dspl of BOX appli Italian file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Italian language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-DE		Display of BOX appli German file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of German language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-ES		Dspl of BOX appli Spanish file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Spanish language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-ZH		Dspl of BOX appli Chinese file ver:smpl
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of simplified Chinese language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-TW		Dspl of BOX appli Chinese file ver:trad
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of traditional Chinese language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-KO		Display of BOX appli Korean file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Korean language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-CS		Display of BOX appli Czech file version

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Czech language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
BOX-DA		
Display of BOX appli Danish file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Danish language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-EL		
Display of BOX appli Greek file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Greek language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-ET		
Dspl of BOX appli Estonian file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Estonian language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-FI		
Dspl of BOX appli Finnish file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Finnish language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-HU		
Dspl of BOX appli Hungarian file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Hungarian language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-NL		
Display of BOX appli Dutch file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Dutch language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-NO		
Dspl of BOX appli Norwegian file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Norwegian language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-PL		
Display of BOX appli Polish file version		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Polish language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-PT		
Display of BOX appli Portuguese file ver		
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Portuguese language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
BOX-RU		Dspl of BOX appli Russian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Russian language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-SL		Dspl of BOX appli Slovenian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovenian language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-SV		Dspl of BOX appli Swedish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Swedish language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-ID		Display of BOX appli Indonesian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Indonesian language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-BU		Dspl of BOX appli Bulgarian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Bulgarian language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-CR		Dspl of BOX appli Croatian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Croatian language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-RM		Dspl of BOX appli Romanian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Romanian language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-SK		Display of BOX appli Slovak file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovak language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-TK		Dspl of BOX appli Turkish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Turkish language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
BOX-CA		Dspl of BOX appli Catalan file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Catalan language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-TH		Dspl of BOX appli Thai file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Thai language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
BOX-VN		Dspl of BOX appli Vietnamese file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Vietnamese language file for BOX application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-FR		Display of SC appli French file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of French language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-IT		Dspl of SC appli Italian file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Italian language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-DE		Display of SC appli German file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of German language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-ES		Dspl of SC appli Spanish file version
Lv.1	Details	To display the version of Spanish language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-ZH		Dspl of SC appli Chinese file ver:smpl
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of simplified Chinese language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-TW		Dspl of SC appli Chinese file ver:trad
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of traditional Chinese language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
SC-KO		Display of SC appli Korean file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Korean language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-CS		Display of SC appli Czech file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Czech language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-DA		Display of SC appli Danish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Danish language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-EL		Display of SC appli Greek file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Greek language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-ET		Dspl of SC appli Estonian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Estonian language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-FI		Dspl of SC appli Finnish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Finnish language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-HU		Dspl of SC appli Hungarian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Hungarian language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-NL		Display of SC appli Dutch file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Dutch language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-NO		Dspl of SC appli Norwegian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Norwegian language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
SC-PL		Display of SC appli Polish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Polish language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-PT		Display of SC appli Portuguese file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Portuguese language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-RU		Dspl of SC appli Russian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Russian language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-SL		Dspl of SC appli Slovenian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovenian language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-SV		Dspl of SC appli Swedish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Swedish language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-ID		Display of SC appli Indonesian file ver
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Indonesian language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-BU		Dspl of SC appli Bulgarian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Bulgarian language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-CR		Dspl of SC appli Croatian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Croatian language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-RM		Dspl of SC appli Romanian file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Romanian language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION		
SC-SK		Display of SC appli Slovak file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Slovak language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-TK		Dspl of SC appli Turkish file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Turkish language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-CA		Dspl of SC appli Catalan file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Catalan language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-TH		Dspl of SC appli Thai file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Thai language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99
SC-VN		Dspl of SC appli Vietnamese file version
Lv.2	Details	To display the version of Vietnamese language file for Self Copy application (JAVA UI).
	Use case	When upgrading the firmware
	Display/adj/set range	00.01 to 99.99

T-8-3

■ USER

COPIER > DISPLAY > USER	
SPDTYPE	Dspl of Ctrllr Board engine speed type
Lv.1	Details
	To display the engine speed type (ppm) of Controller Board.
	Use case
	When checking the engine speed type of Controller Board
BRWS-STTS	
Display of service browser ON/OFF	
Lv.1	Details
	To display whether the service browser can be used. If the value is 1, [Service Browser] button is displayed on the service mode initial screen. The value of BRWS-STTS switches whenever COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> BRWS-ACT is executed, but ON/OFF of service browser is enabled after reboot. If the service browser does not start even though the value of BRWS-STTS is 1, turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Use case
	When checking the operation mode of the service browser
	Caution
	The value of BRWS-STTS is linked with COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> BRWS-ACT, but the service browser cannot start even though 1 is displayed unless the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 2 1: ON (Available), 2: OFF (Not available)
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUCNTION> INSTALL> BRWS-ACT

T-8-4

■ ACC-STS

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS	
FEEDER	
Display of DADF connection state	
Lv.1	Details
	To display the connecting state of DADF.
	Use case
	When checking the connection between the machine and DADF
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Not connected, 1: Connected
SORTER	
Connect state of Finisher-related option	
Lv.1	Details
	To display the connecting state of Finisher-related options.
	Use case
	When checking the connection of Finisher-related options
	Display/adj/set range
	Left column (connecting state of Finisher-related options): 1 to 5 1: Without Saddle 2: With Saddle, without Folding Unit 3: With Saddle and Inserter, without Folding Unit 4: With Saddle and Folding Unit, without Inserter 5: With Saddle, Inserter and Folding Unit Right column (connecting state of Finisher-belonged Inserter): 0 to 4 0: no hole, 1: 2-hole, 2: 2/3-hole, 3: 4-hole, 4: 4-hole (SW)
DECK	
Dspl of Paper Deck connection state	
Lv.1	Details
	To display the connecting state of the Paper Deck.
	Use case
	When checking the connection between the machine and the Paper Decks
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 5 0: Not connected, 1: Connected, 2 to 4: Not used, 5: Multi-purpose Tray only
CARD	
Dspl of connection state of Card Reader	
Lv.1	Details
	To display the connecting state of Card Reader.
	Use case
	When checking the connection between the machine and the Card Reader
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: No card is inserted while the Card Reader is connected. (Copy is not available.) 1: Card Reader is not connected, or card is inserted while the Card Reader is connected. (Copy is available.)
RAM	
Display of MNCON PCB memory capacity	
Lv.1	Details
	To display the memory capacity of the Main Controller PCB.
	Use case
	When checking the memory capacity of the machine
	Unit
	MB
COINROBO	
Dspl of Coin Manager connection state	
Lv.1	Details
	To display the connecting state of the Coin Manager.
	Use case
	When checking the connection between the machine and the Coin Manager
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Not connected, 1: Connected

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS		
NIB		Display of Network PCB connection state
Lv.1	Details	To display the connecting state of the Network PCB.
	Use case	When checking the connection between the machine and the Network PCB
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: Not connected, 1: Ethernet PCB connected, 2: Token Ring PCB connected, 3: Ethernet PCB + Token Ring PCB connected
NETWARE		Dspl of NetWare firmware install state
Lv.1	Details	To display the installation state of the NetWare firmware.
	Use case	When checking whether NetWare firmware is installed to the machine
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
SEND		Display of SEND support PCB existence
Lv.1	Details	To display whether there is PCB to support SEND function. SEND function can be used only when the PCB is mounted.
	Use case	When checking the connection between the machine and the PCB that supports SEND function
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Not mounted, 1: Mounted
HDD		Display of HDD model name
Lv.1	Details	To display the model name of HDD.
	Use case	When checking the model name of HDD used on the machine
PCI1		Display of PCI1-connected PCB name
Lv.1	Details	To display the name of the PCB that is connected to PCI1.
	Use case	When checking the name of the PCB that is connected to PCI1
	Display/adj/set range	-: No PCB connected Voice Board: Voice PCB 3DES Board: Encryption PCB 1Gbit-Board: Giga Ethernet PCB
PCI2		Display of PCI2-connected PCB name
Lv.1	Details	To display the name of the PCB that is connected to PCI2.
	Use case	When checking name of the PCB that is connected to PCI2
	Display/adj/set range	-: No PCB connected iSLOT: iSLOT Wireless LAN PCB Voice Board: Voice PCB Voice Board R: Voice Recognition PCB (Display is hidden on this machine.) 3DES Board: Encryption PCB 1Gbit-Board: Giga Ethernet PCB

COPIER > DISPLAY > ACC-STS		
PCI3		Display of PCI3-connected PCB name
Lv.1	Details	To display the name of the PCB that is connected to PCI3.
	Use case	When checking name of the PCB that is connected to PCI3
	Display/adj/set range	-: No PCB connected iSLOT: iSLOT Wireless LAN PCB Voice Board: Voice PCB Voice Board R: Voice Recognition PCB (Display is hidden on this machine.) 3DES Board: Encryption PCB 1Gbit-Board: Giga Ethernet PCB
IA-RAM		Display of MNCON PCB memory(IA) capacity
Lv.1	Details	To display the memory (IA) capacity of the Main Controller PCB.
	Use case	When checking the memory capacity of the Main Controller PCB
	Unit	MB

T-8-5

ANALOG

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG		
TEMP		Display of outside temperature
Lv.1	Details	To display the temperature outside the machine. This is measured by the Environment Sensor 2 that detects the outside air.
	Use case	When checking the temperature outside the machine
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 60
	Unit	deg C
	Appropriate target value	20 to 27
HUM		Display of outside humidity
Lv.1	Details	To display the humidity outside the machine. This is measured by the Environment Sensor 2 that detects the outside air.
	Use case	When checking the humidity outside the machine
	Display/adj/set range	5 to 90
	Unit	%
	Appropriate target value	30 to 70
ABS-HUM		Display of outside moisture amount
Lv.1	Details	To display the absolute moisture amount outside the machine. This is measured by the Environment Sensor 2 that detects the outside air.
	Use case	When checking the moisture amount outside the machine
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 100
	Unit	g
	Appropriate target value	0 to 22
FIX-C		Dspl of Fixing Sleeve center temperature
Lv.1	Details	To display the temperature of the Fixing Sleeve detected by the Main Thermistor 2.
	Use case	When checking the temperature at Fixing Sleeve
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 300
	Unit	deg C
FIX-E		Dspl of Fixing Main Heater temperature
Lv.1	Details	To display the temperature of the Fixing Main Heater detected by the Main Thermistor 1.
	Use case	When checking the temperature of Fixing Main Heater
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 300
	Unit	deg C
FIX-E2		Dspl of Fixing Sub Heater rear edge temp
Lv.1	Details	To display the rear edge temperature of the Fixing Sub Heater detected by the Sub Thermistor 2.
	Use case	When checking the edge temperature of the Fixing Sub Heater
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 300
	Unit	deg C

COPIER > DISPLAY > ANALOG		
TEMP2		Display of estimated inside temperature
Lv.1	Details	To display the estimated temperature inside the machine that is calculated from the outside temperature and elapsed time.
	Use case	When checking the estimated temperature inside the machine
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 100
	Unit	deg C
	Appropriate target value	Room temperature to room temperature + 15 deg C
Related service mode		COPIER> DISPLAY> ANALOG> TEMP
HUM2		Display of estimated inside humidity
Lv.1	Details	To display the estimated relative humidity inside the machine that is calculated from the estimated temperature inside the machine and moisture content outside the machine.
	Use case	When checking the estimated humidity inside the machine
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 100
	Unit	%
	Appropriate target value	30 to 70
Related service mode		COPIER> DISPLAY> ANALOG> ABS-HUM, TEMP2
FIX-E3		Dspl of Fixing Sub Heater front edge temp
Lv.1	Details	To display the front edge temperature of the Fixing Sub Heater detected by the Sub Thermistor 1.
	Use case	When checking the edge temperature of the Fixing Sub Heater
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 300
	Unit	deg C

T-8-6

HV-STS

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-STS		
1ATVC-Y Dspl pry trns paper interval current (Y)		
Lv.2	Details	To display the value of the paper interval current lastly flown on the Primary Transfer Roller (Y) by the primary transfer paper interval ATVC control.
	Use case	When estimating the life of Primary Transfer Roller based on the displayed value
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 65535
	Unit	uA
	Appropriate target value	10 to 500
1ATVC-M Dspl pry trns paper interval current (M)		
Lv.2	Details	To display the value of the paper interval current lastly flown on the M Primary Transfer Roller by the primary transfer paper interval ATVC control.
	Use case	When estimating the life of Primary Transfer Roller based on the displayed value
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 65535
	Unit	uA
	Appropriate target value	10 to 500
1ATVC-C Dspl pry trns paper interval current (C)		
Lv.2	Details	To display the value of the paper interval current lastly flown on the C Primary Transfer Roller by the primary transfer paper interval ATVC control.
	Use case	When estimating the life of Primary Transfer Roller based on the displayed value
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 65535
	Unit	uA
	Appropriate target value	10 to 500
1ATVC-K4 Dspl pry trns ppr intvl crnt (Bk):clr		
Lv.2	Details	To display the value of the paper interval current lastly flown on the Bk Primary Transfer Roller by the primary transfer paper interval ATVC control At full-color jobs.
	Use case	When estimating the life of Primary Transfer Roller based on the displayed value
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 65535
	Unit	uA
	Appropriate target value	10 to 500

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-STS		
2ATVC		Dspl of secondary transfer ATVC current
Lv.2	Details	To display the current lastly flown on the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller by the secondary transfer ATVC control. As the usage of the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller is extended, the value decreases.
	Use case	When estimating the life of Secondary Transfer Roller based on the displayed value
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 65535
	Unit	uA
	Appropriate target value	10 to 500
1-ATVC-Y		Dspl of Y prmry trns ATVC base voltage
Lv.1	Details	To display the base voltage (Vb) derived from Y primary transfer ATVC control. As Vb is closer to 2000, the Primary Transfer Roller is closer to the end of life, so image failure (leopard pattern image or mottled image due to failure at transfer) tends to occur.
	Use case	When estimating the life of Y Primary Transfer Roller
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2000
	Unit	V
1-ATVC-M		Dspl of M prmry trns ATVC base voltage
Lv.1	Details	To display the base voltage (Vb) derived from M primary transfer ATVC control. As Vb is closer to 2000, the Primary Transfer Roller is closer to the end of life, so image failure (leopard pattern image or mottled image due to failure at transfer) tends to occur.
	Use case	When estimating the life of M Primary Transfer Roller
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2000
	Unit	V
1-ATVC-C		Dspl of C prmry trns ATVC base voltage
Lv.1	Details	To display the base voltage (Vb) derived from C primary transfer ATVC control. As Vb is closer to 2000, the Primary Transfer Roller is closer to the end of life, so image failure (leopard pattern image or mottled image due to failure at transfer) tends to occur.
	Use case	When estimating the life of C Primary Transfer Roller
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2000
	Unit	V
1-ATVC-K		Dspl of Bk prmry trns ATVC base voltage
Lv.1	Details	To display the base voltage (Vb) derived from Bk primary transfer ATVC control. As Vb is closer to 2000, the Primary Transfer Roller is closer to the end of life, so image failure (leopard pattern image or mottled image due to failure at transfer) tends to occur.
	Use case	When estimating the life of Bk Primary Transfer Roller
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2000
	Unit	V

COPIER > DISPLAY > HV-STS		
2-ATVC		Dspl of sec transfer ATVC base voltage
Lv.1	Details	To display the base voltage (Vb) derived from secondary transfer ATVC control. As Vb is closer to 6000, the Primary Transfer Roller is closer to the end of life, so image failure (white dots) tends to occur.
	Use case	When estimating the life of Secondary Transfer Roller
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 6000
	Unit	V
1ATVCENV		Dspl pmry trns ATVC abslt moistr cntnt
Lv.1	Details	To display the absolute moisture content at execution of the primary transfer ATVC.
	Use case	At trouble analysis
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 9999
	Unit	g/m ³
2ATVCENV		Dspl sec trns ATVC abslt moistr cntnt
Lv.1	Details	To display the absolute moisture content at execution of the secondary transfer ATVC.
	Use case	At trouble analysis
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 9999
	Unit	g/m ³
Appropriate target value		0 to 4000

T-8-7

■ CCD

COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD		
TARGET-B		Shading target value (B)
Lv.2	Details	To display the shading target value of Blue. Continuous display of 0 (minimum) or FFFF (maximum) is considered a failure of the CCD Unit.
	Use case	At scanned image failure
	Display/adj/set range	0 to FFFF
	Appropriate target value	512 to 2047
TARGET-G		Shading target value (G)
Lv.2	Details	To display the target value of Green. Continuous display of 0 (minimum) or FFFF (maximum) is considered a failure of the CCD Unit.
	Use case	At scanned image failure
	Display/adj/set range	0 to FFFF
	Appropriate target value	512 to 2047
TARGET-R		Shading target value (R)
Lv.2	Details	To display the shading target value of Red. Continuous display of 0 (minimum) or FFFF (maximum) is considered a failure of the CCD Unit.
	Use case	At scanned image failure
	Display/adj/set range	0 to FFFF
	Appropriate target value	512 to 2047
GAIN-OB		Gain level of Img Sensor odd bit(B): frt
Lv.2	Details	To display the Blue gain level adjustment value in odd-numbered bit on CMOS Sensor of Scanner Unit (paper front). Continuous display of upper limit is considered a failure of the Scanner Unit/Reader Controller PCB. When the value is out of the target value range, image failure or E302 (shading error) may have occurred. Identify the cause according to the value.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Reader Controller PCB At scanned image failure
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 143
	Appropriate target value	0 to 143
GAIN-OG		Gain level of Img Sensor odd bit(G): frt
Lv.2	Details	To display the Green gain level adjustment value in odd-numbered bit on CMOS Sensor of Scanner Unit (paper front). Continuous display of upper limit is considered a failure of the Scanner Unit/Reader Controller PCB. When the value is out of the target value range, image failure or E302 (shading error) may have occurred. Identify the cause according to the value.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Reader Controller PCB At scanned image failure
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 143
	Appropriate target value	0 to 143

COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD		
GAIN-OR		Gain level of Img Sensor odd bit(R): frt
Lv.2	Details	To display the Red gain level adjustment value in odd-numbered bit on CMOS Sensor of Scanner Unit (paper front). Continuous display of upper limit is considered a failure of the Scanner Unit/Reader Controller PCB. When the value is out of the target value range, image failure or E302 (shading error) may have occurred. Identify the cause according to the value.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Reader Controller PCB At scanned image failure
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 143
	Appropriate target value	0 to 143
GAIN-EB		Gain level of Img Sensor even bit(B):frt
Lv.2	Details	To display the Blue gain level adjustment value in even-numbered bit on CMOS Sensor of Scanner Unit (paper front). Continuous display of upper limit is considered a failure of the Scanner Unit/Reader Controller PCB. When the value is out of the target value range, image failure or E302 (shading error) may have occurred. Identify the cause according to the value.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Reader Controller PCB At scanned image failure
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 143
	Appropriate target value	0 to 143
GAIN-EG		Gain level of Img Sensor even bit(G):frt
Lv.2	Details	To display the Green gain level adjustment value in even-numbered bit on CMOS Sensor of Scanner Unit (paper front). Continuous display of upper limit is considered a failure of the Scanner Unit/Reader Controller PCB. When the value is out of the target value range, image failure or E302 (shading error) may have occurred. Identify the cause according to the value.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Reader Controller PCB At scanned image failure
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 143
	Appropriate target value	0 to 143

COPIER > DISPLAY > CCD		
GAIN-ER		Gain level of Img Sensor even bit(R):frt
Lv.2	Details	To display the Red gain level adjustment value in even-numbered bit on CMOS Sensor of Scanner Unit (paper front). Continuous display of upper limit is considered a failure of the Scanner Unit/Reader Controller PCB. When the value is out of the target value range, image failure or E302 (shading error) may have occurred. Identify the cause according to the value.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Reader Controller PCB At scanned image failure
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 143
	Appropriate target value	0 to 143
LAMP-CL		Scan Lamp intensity adj VL(color): frt
Lv.2	Details	To display the LED light intensity adjustment value of Scanner Unit (paper front) in color scanning mode.
	Use case	When image failure occurs at front side scanning in color mode
	Display/adj/set range	55 to 275
	Appropriate target value	100 to 275
OFST-CL		Img Sensor offset value (color) [Front]
Lv.2	Details	To display the CMOS Sensor offset value at color scanning.
	Use case	When image failure occurs at front side scanning in color mode
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 116
	Appropriate target value	0 to 116

T-8-8

DPOT

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT	
1TR-DC-Y	Dspl of primary transfer voltage (Y)
Lv.2	Details
	To display the voltage lastly applied to the Primary Transfer Roller (Y).
	Use case
	When transfer failure occurs due to the primary transfer
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 5000
	Unit
	V
	Appropriate target value
	50 to 2000
1TR-DC-M	Dspl of primary transfer voltage (M)
Lv.2	Details
	To display the voltage lastly applied to the Primary Transfer Roller (M).
	Use case
	When transfer failure occurs due to the primary transfer
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 5000
	Unit
	V
	Appropriate target value
	50 to 2000
1TR-DC-C	Dspl of primary transfer voltage (C)
Lv.2	Details
	To display the voltage lastly applied to the Primary Transfer Roller (C).
	Use case
	When transfer failure occurs due to the primary transfer
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 5000
	Unit
	V
	Appropriate target value
	50 to 2000
1TR-DC-K	Dspl of primary transfer voltage (Bk)
Lv.2	Details
	To display the voltage lastly applied to the Primary Transfer Roller (Bk).
	Use case
	When transfer failure occurs due to the primary transfer
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 5000
	Unit
	V
	Appropriate target value
	50 to 2000
CHG-AC-Y	Display of primary charging AC bias (Y)
Lv.2	Details
	To display the primary charging AC bias lastly applied to the Primary Charging Roller (Y).
	Use case
	When the charging failure image occurs
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 3000
	Unit
	V
	Appropriate target value
	1400 to 2400
	Related service mode
	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI > CHACOUTM
CHG-AC-M	Display of primary charging AC bias (M)
Lv.2	Details
	To display the primary charging AC bias lastly applied to the Primary Charging Roller (M).
	Use case
	When the charging failure image occurs
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 3000
	Unit
	V
	Appropriate target value
	1400 to 2400
	Related service mode
	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI > CHACOUTM

COPIER > DISPLAY > DPOT	
CHG-AC-C	Display of primary charging AC bias (C)
Lv.2	Details
	To display the primary charging AC bias lastly applied to the Primary Charging Roller (C).
	Use case
	When the charging failure image occurs
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 3000
	Unit
	V
	Appropriate target value
	1400 to 2400
	Related service mode
	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI > CHACOUTM
CHG-AC-K	Display of primary charging AC bias (Bk)
Lv.2	Details
	To display the primary charging AC bias lastly applied to the Primary Charging Roller (Bk).
	Use case
	When the charging failure image occurs
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 3000
	Unit
	V
	Appropriate target value
	1400 to 2400
	Related service mode
	COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI > CHACOUTM
LPWR-Y	Display of laser power (Y)
Lv.2	Details
	To display Y laser power determined by D-max control. FF display with low image density is considered that the Photosensitive Drum may be nearly the end of life.
	Use case
	When the image density is low
	Display/adj/set range
	00 - FF (hexadecimal)
	Appropriate target value
	60 to FF
LPWR-M	Display of laser power (M)
Lv.2	Details
	To display M laser power determined by D-max control. FF display with low image density is considered that the Photosensitive Drum may be nearly the end of life.
	Use case
	When the image density is low
	Display/adj/set range
	00 - FF (hexadecimal)
	Appropriate target value
	60 to FF
LPWR-C	Display of laser power (C)
Lv.2	Details
	To display C laser power determined by D-max control. FF display with low image density is considered that the Photosensitive Drum may be nearly the end of life.
	Use case
	When the image density is low
	Display/adj/set range
	00 - FF (hexadecimal)
	Appropriate target value
	60 to FF
LPWR-K	Display of laser power (Bk)
Lv.2	Details
	To display Bk laser power determined by potential control. FF display with low image density is considered that the Photosensitive Drum may be nearly the end of life.
	Use case
	When the image density is low
	Display/adj/set range
	00 - FF (hexadecimal)
	Appropriate target value
	60 to FF

T-8-9

DENS

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS		
DENS-Y		
Display of Y developer density TD ratio		
Lv.1	Details	To display TD ratio of Y-color developer density in % (percentage).
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (density failure, fogging) and occurrence of E020
	Display/adj/set range	-7 to 7
	Unit	%
	Appropriate target value	-4.5 to 3.5
	Related service mode	COPIER> DISPLAY> DENS> SGNL-Y
DENS-M		
Display of M developer density TD ratio		
Lv.1	Details	To display TD ratio of M-color developer density in % (percentage).
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (density failure, fogging) and occurrence of E020
	Display/adj/set range	-7 to 7
	Unit	%
	Appropriate target value	-4.5 to 3.5
	Related service mode	COPIER> DISPLAY> DENS> SGNL-M
DENS-C		
Display of C developer density TD ratio		
Lv.1	Details	To display TD ratio of C-color developer density in % (percentage).
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (density failure, fogging) and occurrence of E020
	Display/adj/set range	-7 to 7
	Unit	%
	Appropriate target value	-4.5 to 3.5
	Related service mode	COPIER> DISPLAY> DENS> SGNL-C
DENS-K		
Display of Bk developer density TD ratio		
Lv.1	Details	To display TD ratio of Bk-color developer density in % (percentage).
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (density failure, fogging) and occurrence of E020
	Display/adj/set range	-7 to 7
	Unit	%
	Appropriate target value	-4.5 to 3.5
	Related service mode	COPIER> DISPLAY> DENS> SGNL-K
DENS-S-Y		
Dspl differ from Y patch density tgt VL		
Lv.2	Details	To display difference between the Y-color target patch density at ATR control and the patch density detected by the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (fogging, carrier adherence, low density, etc.)
	Appropriate target value	-350 to 200
DENS-S-M		
Dspl differ from M patch density tgt VL		
Lv.2	Details	To display difference between the M-color target patch density at ATR control and the patch density detected by the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (fogging, carrier adherence, low density, etc.)
	Appropriate target value	-350 to 200

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS		
DENS-S-C		
Dspl differ from C patch density tgt VL		
Lv.2	Details	To display difference between the C-color target patch density at ATR control and the patch density detected by the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (fogging, carrier adherence, low density, etc.)
	Appropriate target value	-350 to 200
DENS-S-K		
Dspl differ from Bk patch density tgt VL		
Lv.2	Details	To display difference between the Bk-color target patch density at ATR control and the patch density detected by the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (fogging, carrier adherence, low density, etc.)
	Appropriate target value	-350 to 200
D-Y-TRGT		
Dspl of ATR ctrl Y patch target density		
Lv.2	Details	To display the target density for Y patch image created by ATR control.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of a problem
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 65535
	Appropriate target value	450 to 640
D-M-TRGT		
Dspl of ATR ctrl M patch target density		
Lv.2	Details	To display the target density for M patch image created by ATR control.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of a problem
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 65535
	Appropriate target value	450 to 640
D-C-TRGT		
Dspl of ATR ctrl C patch target density		
Lv.2	Details	To display the target density for C patch image created by ATR control.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of a problem
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 65535
	Appropriate target value	450 to 640
REF-Y		
Dspl of Y developer density target value		
Lv.2	Details	To display the developer density target value for the ATR Sensor (Y).
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of a problem
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Appropriate target value	50 to 200
REF-M		
Dspl of M developer density target value		
Lv.2	Details	To display the developer density target value for the ATR Sensor (M).
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of a problem
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Appropriate target value	50 to 200
REF-C		
Dspl of C developer density target value		
Lv.2	Details	To display the developer density target value for the ATR Sensor (C).
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of a problem
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Appropriate target value	50 to 200

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS		
REF-K		Dspl of Bk developer density target value
Lv.2	Details	To display the developer density target value for the ATR Sensor (Bk).
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of a problem
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Appropriate target value	50 to 200
DEV-DC-Y		Dspl of developing DC voltage (Y)
Lv.2	Details	To display the latest Y developing DC voltage Vdc.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When image failure occurs due to carrier adherence When fogging appears When fogging is deteriorated
	Display/adj/set range	-1000 to 0
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	-570 to -450
DEV-DC-M		Dspl of developing DC voltage (M)
Lv.2	Details	To display the latest M developing DC voltage Vdc.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When image failure occurs due to carrier adherence When fogging appears When fogging is deteriorated
	Display/adj/set range	-1000 to 0
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	-570 to -450
DEV-DC-C		Dspl of developing DC voltage (C)
Lv.2	Details	To display the latest C developing DC voltage Vdc.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When image failure occurs due to carrier adherence When fogging appears When fogging is deteriorated
	Display/adj/set range	-1000 to 0
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	-570 to -450
DEV-DC-K		Dspl of developing DC voltage (Bk)
Lv.2	Details	To display the latest Bk developing DC voltage Vdc.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When image failure occurs due to carrier adherence When fogging appears When fogging is deteriorated
	Display/adj/set range	-1000 to 0
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	-570 to -450
CHG-DC-Y		Dspl of primary charging DC voltage (Y)
Lv.2	Details	To display the latest primary charging DC voltage of Y color.
	Use case	When low density or fogging occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1000 to 0
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	-870 to -450

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS		
CHG-DC-M		Dspl of primary charging DC voltage (M)
Lv.2	Details	To display the latest primary charging DC voltage of M color.
	Use case	When low density or fogging occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1000 to 0
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	-870 to -450
CHG-DC-C		Dspl of primary charging DC voltage (C)
Lv.2	Details	To display the latest primary charging DC voltage of C color.
	Use case	When low density or fogging occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1000 to 0
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	-870 to -450
CHG-DC-K		Dspl of Pry charge DC voltg (Bk)& gain VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the latest output value of primary charging DC voltage (Bk).
	Use case	When low density or fogging occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1000 to 0
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	-870 to -450
D-K-TRGT		Dspl of ATR ctrl Bk patch target density
Lv.2	Details	To display the Bk patch image target density created by ATR control.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of a problem
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 65535
	Appropriate target value	450 to 640
P-D-P-Y		Dspl of ATR ctrl Y dark current (P-wave)
Lv.2	Details	To display the Y/M color dark current (P-wave) detected by the Patch Sensor (Rear) at ATR control. At low density or fogging deterioration, use this mode to check whether there is a problem in the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	At low density or fogging deterioration
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	50 to 150
	P-D-P-C	
Lv.2	Details	To display the C/Bk color dark current (P-wave) detected by the Patch Sensor (Front) at ATR control. At low density or fogging deterioration, use this mode to check whether there is a problem in the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	At low density or fogging deterioration
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	50 to 150

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS		
P-B-P-Y		Dspl Y drum base intnsty:ATR ctrl(P-wave)
Lv.2	Details	To display the Photosensitive Drum (Y/M) background light intensity (P-wave) detected by the Patch Sensor (Rear) at ATR control. At low density or fogging deterioration, use this mode to check whether there is a problem in the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	At low density or fogging deterioration
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	300 to 650
P-B-P-C		Dspl C drum base intnsty:ATR ctrl(P-wave)
Lv.2	Details	To display the Photosensitive Drum (C/Bk) background light intensity (P-wave) detected by the Patch Sensor (Front) at ATR control. At low density or fogging deterioration, use this mode to check whether there is a problem in the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	At low density or fogging deterioration
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	300 to 650
P-B-S-Y		Dspl Y drum base intnsty:ATR ctrl(S-wave)
Lv.2	Details	To display the Photosensitive Drum (Y/M) background light intensity (S-wave) detected by the Patch Sensor (Rear) at ATR control. At low density or fogging deterioration, use this mode to check whether there is a problem in the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	At low density or fogging deterioration
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Appropriate target value	239 or less
P-B-S-C		Dspl C drum base intnsty:ATR ctrl(S-wave)
Lv.2	Details	To display the Photosensitive Drum (C/Bk) background light intensity (S-wave) detected by the Patch Sensor (Front) at ATR control. At low density or fogging deterioration, use this mode to check whether there is a problem in the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	At low density or fogging deterioration
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
P-D-S-Y		Dspl of ATR ctrl Y dark current (S-wave)
Lv.2	Details	To display the Y/M color dark current (S-wave) detected by the Patch Sensor (Rear) at ATR control. At low density or fogging deterioration, use this mode to check whether there is a problem in the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	At low density or fogging deterioration
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	100 to 200

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS		
P-D-S-C		Dspl of ATR ctrl C dark current (S-wave)
Lv.2	Details	To display the C/Bk color dark current (S-wave) detected by the Patch Sensor (Front) at ATR control. At low density or fogging deterioration, use this mode to check whether there is a problem in the Patch Sensor.
	Use case	At low density or fogging deterioration
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	100 to 200
CONT-M		Dspl Toner Density Sensor (M) ctrl voltg
Lv.2	Details	To display the density detection control voltage of the Toner Density Sensor (M).
	Use case	When checking before clearing RAM data
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	6 to 85
Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> DENS> CONT-M	
CONT-Y		Dspl Toner Density Sensor (Y) ctrl voltg
Lv.2	Details	To display the density detection control voltage of the Toner Density Sensor (Y).
	Use case	When checking before clearing RAM data
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	6 to 85
Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> DENS> CONT-Y	
CONT-C		Dspl Toner Density Sensor (C) ctrl voltg
Lv.2	Details	To display the density detection control voltage of the Toner Density Sensor (C).
	Use case	When checking before clearing RAM data
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	6 to 85
Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> DENS> CONT-C	
CONT-K		Dspl Toner Density Sensor (Bk) ctrl voltg
Lv.2	Details	To display the density detection control voltage of the Toner Density Sensor (Bk).
	Use case	When checking before clearing RAM data
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Unit	V
	Appropriate target value	6 to 85
Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> DENS> CONT-K	

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS		
TNSNS-Y	Dspl of Toner Supply Sensor (Y) voltg VL	
Lv.1	Details	To display the voltage value detected by the Toner Supply Sensor (Y). 1.65V is the default voltage value which judges absence of toner in the Y-color Toner Buffer.
	Use case	When identifying whether the cause is that toner is not supplied from the Toner Container because the Toner Supply Sensor incorrectly detects presence of toner due to toner soiling at low density or E020
	Display/adj/set range	00.00 to 10.00
	Unit	V
	Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> CUSTUM> TNSNS-CL
TNSNS-M	Dspl of Toner Supply Sensor (M) voltg VL	
Lv.1	Details	To display the voltage value detected by the Toner Supply Sensor (M). 1.65V is the default voltage value which judges absence of toner in the M-color Toner Buffer.
	Use case	When identifying whether the cause is that toner is not supplied from the Toner Container because the Toner Supply Sensor incorrectly detects presence of toner due to toner soiling at low density or E020
	Display/adj/set range	00.00 to 10.00
	Unit	V
	Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> CUSTUM> TNSNS-CL
TNSNS-C	Dspl of Toner Supply Sensor (C) voltg VL	
Lv.1	Details	To display the voltage value detected by the Toner Supply Sensor (C). 1.65V is the default voltage value which judges absence of toner in the C-color Toner Buffer.
	Use case	When identifying whether the cause is that toner is not supplied from the Toner Container because the Toner Supply Sensor incorrectly detects presence of toner due to toner soiling at low density or E020
	Display/adj/set range	00.00 to 10.00
	Unit	V
	Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> CUSTUM> TNSNS-CL
TNSNS-K	Dspl of Toner Supply Sensor (Bk) voltg VL	
Lv.1	Details	To display the voltage value detected by the Toner Supply Sensor (Bk). 1.65V is the default voltage value which judges absence of toner in the Bk-color Toner Buffer.
	Use case	When identifying whether the cause is that toner is not supplied from the Toner Container because the Toner Supply Sensor incorrectly detects presence of toner due to toner soiling at low density or E020
	Display/adj/set range	00.00 to 10.00
	Unit	V
	Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> CUSTUM> TNSNS-BK

COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS		
D-Y-LVL	Display of ATR patch form level (Y)	
Lv.2	Details	To display the ATR patch form level of Y color. When numbers other than 1 to 7 are displayed, this is particularly caused by patch error.
	Use case	When judging whether there is an error in the ATR patch form level at E020 occurrence
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Appropriate target value	1 to 7
	Related service mode	COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS > D-Y-TRGT
D-M-LVL	Display of ATR patch form level (M)	
Lv.2	Details	To display the ATR patch form level of M color. When numbers other than 1 to 7 are displayed, this is particularly caused by patch error.
	Use case	When judging whether there is an error in the ATR patch form level at E020 occurrence
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Appropriate target value	1 to 7
	Related service mode	COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS > D-Y-TRGT
D-C-LVL	Display of ATR patch form level (C)	
Lv.2	Details	To display the ATR patch form level of C color. When numbers other than 1 to 7 are displayed, this is particularly caused by patch error.
	Use case	When judging whether there is an error in the ATR patch form level at E020 occurrence
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Appropriate target value	1 to 7
	Related service mode	COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS > D-Y-TRGT
D-K-LVL	Display of ATR patch form level (Bk)	
Lv.2	Details	To display the ATR patch form level of Bk color. When numbers other than 1 to 7 are displayed, this is particularly caused by patch error.
	Use case	When judging whether there is an error in the ATR patch form level at E020 occurrence
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Appropriate target value	1 to 7
	Related service mode	COPIER > DISPLAY > DENS > D-Y-TRGT

T-8-10

MISC

COPIER > DISPLAY > MISC		
ENV-TR		Display of internal environment
Lv.1	Details	To display the environment (moisture content) inside of the device.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of density variation
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 3 1: Low humidity (below 5.90 g/m3), 2: Normal humidity (5.90 g/m3 or higher and below 15.90 g/m3), 3: High humidity (15.90 g/m3 or higher)
LPOWER-Y		Display of laser power (Y)
Lv.2	Details	To display the Y laser power at the latest output. The value is determined by D-max control.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (low density, ghost, etc.)
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
LPOWER-M		Display of laser power (M)
Lv.2	Details	To display the M laser power at the latest output. The value is determined by D-max control.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (low density, ghost, etc.)
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
LPOWER-C		Display of laser power (C)
Lv.2	Details	To display the C laser power at the latest output. The value is determined by D-max control.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (low density, ghost, etc.)
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
LPOWER-K		Display of laser power (Bk)
Lv.2	Details	To display the Bk laser power at the latest output. The value is determined by D-max control.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of image failure (low density, ghost, etc.)
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255

T-8-11

HT-C

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
TGT-A-Y		Dspl of ARCDAT screen A Y-color target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the Y-patch target value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700
TGT-A-M		Dspl of ARCDAT screen A M-color target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the M-patch target value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700
TGT-A-C		Dspl of ARCDAT screen A C-color target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the C-patch target value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700
TGT-A-K		Dspl of ARCDAT screen A Bk-clr target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the Bk-patch target value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700
TGT-B-Y		Dspl of ARCDAT screen B Y-color target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the Y-patch target value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
TGT-B-M		Dspl of ARCDAT screen B M-color target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the M-patch target value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700
TGT-B-C		Dspl of ARCDAT screen B C-color target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the C-patch target value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700
TGT-B-K		Dspl of ARCDAT screen B Bk-clr target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the Bk-patch target value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700
TGT-C-Y		Dspl of ARCDAT screen C Y-color target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the Y-patch target value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700
TGT-C-M		Dspl of ARCDAT screen C M-color target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the M-patch target value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
TGT-C-C		Dspl of ARCDAT screen C C-color target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the C-patch target value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700
TGT-C-K		Dspl of ARCDAT screen C Bk-clr target VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the Bk-patch target value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
	Appropriate target value	0 to 700
SUM-A-Y		Dspl ARCDAT screen A Y-color ctrl differ
Lv.2	Details	To display Y-patch control difference of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
SUM-A-M		Dspl ARCDAT screen A M-color ctrl differ
Lv.2	Details	To display M-patch control difference of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
SUM-A-C		Dspl ARCDAT screen A C-color ctrl differ
Lv.2	Details	To display C-patch control difference of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
SUM-A-K	Dspl ARCDAT screen A Bk-color ctrl differ	
Lv.2	Details	To display Bk-patch control difference of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
SUM-B-Y	Dspl ARCDAT screen B Y-color ctrl differ	
Lv.2	Details	To display Y-patch control difference of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
SUM-B-M	Dspl ARCDAT screen B M-color ctrl differ	
Lv.2	Details	To display M-patch control difference of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
SUM-B-C	Dspl ARCDAT screen B C-color ctrl differ	
Lv.2	Details	To display C-patch control difference of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
SUM-B-K	Dspl ARCDAT screen B Bk-color ctrl differ	
Lv.2	Details	To display Bk-patch control difference of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
SUM-C-Y	Dspl ARCDAT screen C Y-color ctrl differ	
Lv.2	Details	To display Y-patch control difference of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
SUM-C-M	Dspl ARCDAT screen C M-color ctrl differ	
Lv.2	Details	To display M-patch control difference of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
SUM-C-C	Dspl ARCDAT screen C C-color ctrl differ	
Lv.2	Details	To display C-patch control difference of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
SUM-C-K	Dspl ARCDAT screen C Bk-color ctrl differ	
Lv.2	Details	To display Bk-patch control difference of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the displayed value is not in the tolerable range, execute the auto gradation adjustment (reset target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
SGNL-A-Y	Dspl ARCDAT screen A Y-patch current VL	
Lv.2	Details	To display the current Y-patch value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
SGNL-A-M	Dspl ARCDAT screen A M-patch current VL	
Lv.2	Details	To display the current M-patch value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
SGNL-A-C		Dspl ARCDAT screen A C-patch current VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the current C-patch value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
SGNL-A-K		Dspl ARCDAT screen A Bk-patch current VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the current Bk-patch value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
SGNL-B-Y		Dspl ARCDAT screen B Y-patch current VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the current Y-patch value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
SGNL-B-M		Dspl ARCDAT screen B M-patch current VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the current M-patch value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
SGNL-B-C		Dspl ARCDAT screen B C-patch current VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the current C-patch value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
SGNL-B-K		Dspl ARCDAT screen B Bk-patch current VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the current Bk-patch value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
SGNL-C-Y		Dspl ARCDAT screen C Y-patch current VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the current Y-patch value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
SGNL-C-M		Dspl ARCDAT screen C M-patch current VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the current M-patch value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
SGNL-C-K		Dspl ARCDAT screen C Bk-patch current VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the current Bk-patch value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
SGNL-C-C		Dspl ARCDAT screen C C-patch current VL
Lv.2	Details	To display the current C-patch value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs or the value shown is not in the tolerable range, check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1023
DLTA-A-Y		Dspl of ARCDAT screen A Y-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the Y-patch target value and the current value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
DLTA-A-M		Dspl of ARCDAT screen A M-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the M-patch target value and the current value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
DLTA-A-C		Dspl of ARCDAT screen A C-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the C-patch target value and the current value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
DLTA-A-K		Dspl of ARCDAT screen A Bk-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the Bk-patch target value and the current value of screen A in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
DLTA-B-Y		Dspl of ARCDAT screen B Y-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the Y-patch target value and the current value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
DLTA-B-M		Dspl of ARCDAT screen B M-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the M-patch target value and the current value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
DLTA-B-C		Dspl of ARCDAT screen B C-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the C-patch target value and the current value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
DLTA-B-K		Dspl of ARCDAT screen B Bk-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the Bk-patch target value and the current value of screen B in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
DLTA-C-Y		Dspl of ARCDAT screen C Y-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the Y-patch target value and the current value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
DLTA-C-M		Dspl of ARCDAT screen C M-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the M-patch target value and the current value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
DLTA-C-C		Dspl of ARCDAT screen C C-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the C-patch target value and the current value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
DLTA-C-K		Dspl of ARCDAT screen C Bk-density differ
Lv.2	Details	To display the difference between the Bk-patch target value and the current value of screen C in ARCDAT control. When hue variation occurs and the value shown is not in the tolerable range, execute auto gradation adjustment (reset the target value). Check the Patch Sensor or replace the developer if not corrected.
	Use case	When hue variation occurs
	Display/adj/set range	-1023 to 1023
TGT-A-Y2		[Not used]
Lv.2	Details	[Not used]
TGT-A-M2		[Not used]
Lv.2	Details	[Not used]
TGT-A-C2		[Not used]
Lv.2	Details	[Not used]
TGT-A-K2		[Not used]
Lv.2	Details	[Not used]
TGT-B-Y2		[Not used]
Lv.2	Details	[Not used]

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
TGT-B-M2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
TGT-B-C2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
TGT-B-K2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
TGT-C-Y2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
TGT-C-M2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
TGT-C-C2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
TGT-C-K2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-A-Y2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-A-M2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-A-C2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-A-K2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-B-Y2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-B-M2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-B-C2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-B-K2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-C-Y2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-C-M2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-C-C2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SUM-C-K2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-A-Y2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-A-M2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-A-C2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-A-K2	[Not used]	

COPIER > DISPLAY > HT-C		
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-B-Y2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-B-M2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-B-C2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-B-K2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-C-Y2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-C-M2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-C-C2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
DLT-C-K2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-A-Y2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-A-M2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-A-C2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-A-K2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-B-Y2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-B-M2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-B-C2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-B-K2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-C-Y2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-C-M2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-C-C2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	
SGL-C-K2	[Not used]	
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]	

T-8-12



DCON > P001 to P016

Address	bit	Name	Mark	0	1
P001	0	Duplex Sensor	PS31	Paper absent	Paper present
	1	Third Delivery Sensor	PS30	Paper absent	Paper present
	2	Reverse Sensor	PS29	Paper absent	Paper present
	3	Second Delivery Sensor	PS27	Paper absent	Paper present
	4	Cassette 2 Vertical Path Sensor	PS17	Paper absent	Paper present
	5	Second Delivery Tray Full Sensor	PS28	Paper absent	Paper present
	6				
	7	Main Power Switch		ON	
	8	Fixing Disengagement Flag detection signal	PS24	Pressure applied	Pressure released
	9	Fixing safety circuit error signal 4			
	10	Fixing safety circuit error signal 3			
	11	Fixing safety circuit error signal 2			
	12	Fixing Assembly detection signal		Not installed	Installed
	13	AC Driver PCB identification signal_ID0		ID1 and ID0 = 00: 100V / 01: 120V / 10: 230V	
	14	AC Driver PCB identification signal_ID1			
P002	0	Image formation high voltage signal output			Output
	1				
	2	Remote 24V		ON	OFF
	3	ASIC actuating/reset signal		Reset	Operating
	4	Fixing Heater drive signal (MAIN)		OFF	ON
	5	Fixing Heater drive signal (SUB)		OFF	ON
	6	Fixing relay 1 drive signal		OFF	ON
	7	Fixing relay 2 drive signal		OFF	ON
	8	5V detection signal		Not detected	Detected
	9	Primary transfer current		OFF	ON
	10	DC Controller Operation Check LED		Unlit	Lit
	11	Lifter Motor	M14/M23	Stopped	Operating
	12				
	13				
	14				
15					

Address	bit	Name	Mark	0	1
P003	0	Pickup Motor current I0			
	1	Pickup Motor current I1			
	2	Duplex Feed Motor current I0			
	3				
	4	Reverse Motor standby			
	5	Reverse Motor current degradation			
	6	Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Solenoid	SL3	OFF	ON
	7	Cassette 2 Pickup Solenoid	SL5	OFF	ON
	8				
	9	ITB Motor	M2		
	10	Fixing Motor	M17		
	11	Drum Motor	M4		
	12	Developing Motor	M3		
	13	Primary Transfer Disengagement Solenoid	SL1	OFF	ON
	14	Cassette 1 Pickup Solenoid	SL4	OFF	ON
15	Enabling of power supply to the Drum Unit				
P004	0	Reset of Buffer Motor			
	1				
	2				
	3	Enabling of power supply to the Photo Sensor of the Fixing Assembly			
	4	Registration Patch Sensor (rear)	UN44		
	5	Registration Patch Sensor (rear)	UN44		
	6	Registration Patch Sensor (front)	UN43		
	7	Registration Patch Sensor (front)	UN43		
	8				
	9	Detection of 24V supply to the Fixing Motor		24V detected	24V not detected
	10	First Delivery Sensor	PS21	Paper absent	Paper present
	11	Primary transfer disengagement HP detection	SW01	HP detected	Not detected
	12	24V interlock detection		24V detected	24V not detected
	13	Dustproof Shutter Sensor	PS5	Other than HP	HP detected
	14	Waste Toner Container detection signal	SW2	Detected	None
15	First Delivery Paper Full Sensor	PS25	Paper absent	Paper present	

Address	bit	Name	Mark	0	1
P005	0	Cassette 1 Lifter Sensor	PS12/PS26	Lift up not completed	Lift up completed
	1	Cassette 1 Paper Level Sensor	PS14	Paper absent	Paper present
	2	Cassette 2 Paper Level Sensor A	PS18	Paper absent	Paper present
	3	Cassette 2 Paper Level Sensor B	PS19	Paper absent	Paper present
	4	Color Drum HP Sensor input	PS3		
	5	Drum Unit Cooling Fan lock detection	FM7		
	6	Bk Drum HP Sensor input	PS4		
	7				
	8	Fixing Motor speed OK			
	9	Fixing Motor lock detection			
	10				
	11	Arch Sensor 1	PS22		
	12	Arch Sensor 2	PS23		
	13				
	14				
P006	0	Cassette 1 Lifter Sensor	PS12/PS26		
	1	Expansion Delivery Cooling Fan lock detection signal	FM4	Normally rotating	
	2	Buffer Cooling Fan lock detection signal	FM1		
	3				
	4				
	5				
	6				
	7				
	8				
	9	Buffer Inlet Sensor	SR1		
	10	Buffer Outlet Sensor	SR2		
	11				
	12	Buffer Path Decurler HP Sensor	SR4	Engaged	Disengaged
	13	Inner Finisher connection detection		Detected	
	14	External Finisher connection detection		Detected	
15					

Address	bit	Name	Mark	0	1
P007	0	LIVEWAKE signal		Enabled	Disabled
	1				
	2				
	3	Cassette 1 Paper Sensor	PS13	Paper absent	Paper present
	4	Cassette 2 Paper Sensor	PS16	Paper absent	Paper present
	5	Right Door Open/Close Sensor	PS35	Open	Closed
	6	Cassette Right Upper Cover Open/Close Detection Switch	SW18	Closed	Open
	7	Front Cover Open/Close Sensor	PS34	Open	Closed
	8	Toner Supply Motor (Y)	M06	OFF	ON
	9	Toner Container Motor (Y)	M07	OFF	ON
	10	Toner Supply Motor (M)	M08	OFF	ON
	11	Toner Container Motor (M)	M09	OFF	ON
	12	Toner Supply Motor (C)	M10	OFF	ON
	13	Toner Container Motor (C)	M11	OFF	ON
	14	Toner Supply Motor (Bk)	M12	OFF	ON
15	Toner Container Motor (Bk)	M13	OFF	ON	
P008	0				
	1				
	2				
	3				
	4	Multi-purpose Tray Last Paper Sensor	PS11	Paper absent	Paper present
	5	Multi-purpose Tray Paper Sensor	PS10	Paper present	Paper absent
	6	Finisher Communication Line enable detection			
	7	Waste Toner Full Level Detection Switch	SW16	ON	OFF
	8	Buffer Cover interlock		Closed	Open
	9	2/3 delivery signal		Yes	None
	10	Cassette Pedestal signal		Yes	None
	11	Cassette Pedestal ready signal			READY
	12	Toner Container Switch (Y)	SW08	Yes	None
	13	Toner Container Switch (M)	SW09	Yes	None
	14	Toner Container Switch (C)	SW10	Yes	None
15	Toner Container Switch (Bk)	SW11	Yes	None	

Address	bit	Name	Mark	0	1
P009	0				
	1				
	2	Inner Finisher download mode settings		Normal startup	
	3	24V supply to the Inner Finisher		ON	OFF
	4				
	5	Enabling of the Inner Finisher Communication Line		Disabled	Enabled
	6	Enabling of download to Inner Finisher		IPC communication	Download communication
	7	Reset of Decurler Motor			
	8	Third Delivery Motor current I0			
	9	Second Delivery Motor current I0			
	10	First Delivery Motor current I0			
	11	Cassette 2 Pickup Motor current I0			
	12	Buffer Path Feed Motor current I0			
	13	Buffer Path Decurler Motor current I0			
	14	Reset of Cassette 2 Pickup Motor			
15	Cassette 2 Pickup Motor DMODE				
P010	0	Cassette 4 Size Switch A_0	SW103		
	1	Cassette 4 Size Switch A_1	SW103		
	2	Cassette 4 Size Switch A_2	SW103		
	3	Cassette 4 Size Switch A_3	SW103		
	4	Cassette 4 Size Switch B_4	SW104		
	5	Cassette 4 Size Switch B_5	SW104		
	6	Cassette 4 Size Switch B_6	SW104		
	7	Cassette 4 Size Switch B_7	SW104		
	8	Cassette 3 Size Switch A_0	SW101		
	9	Cassette 3 Size Switch A_1	SW101		
	10	Cassette 3 Size Switch A_2	SW101		
	11	Cassette 3 Size Switch A_3	SW101		
	12	Cassette 3 Size Switch B_4	SW102		
	13	Cassette 3 Size Switch B_5	SW102		
	14	Cassette 3 Size Switch B_6	SW102		
15	Cassette 3 Size Switch B_7	SW102			

Address	bit	Name	Mark	0	1
P011	0				
	1				
	2				
	3				
	4				
	5				
	6				
	7	Pedestal Cover Open/Close Sensor	PS101	Open	Closed
	8	Cassette 4 Retry Sensor	PS109	Paper absent	Paper present
	9	Cassette 4 Paper Level Sensor B	PS107	Paper present	Paper absent
	10	Cassette 4 Paper Level Sensor A	PS106	Paper present	Paper absent
	11	Cassette 4 Paper Sensor	PS103	Paper present	Paper absent
	12	Cassette 3 Retry Sensor	PS108	Paper absent	Paper present
	13	Cassette 3 Paper Level Sensor B	PS105	Paper present	Paper absent
	14	Cassette 3 Paper Level Sensor A	PS104	Paper present	Paper absent
15	Cassette 3 Paper Sensor	PS102	Paper present	Paper absent	
P012	0	Cassette 3 Pickup Solenoid	SL101		Pickup Operation
	1	Cassette 4 Pickup Solenoid	SL102		Pickup Operation
	2				
	3				
	4	Cassette 3 Pickup Motor current I0			
	5	Cassette 3 Pickup Motor current I1			
	6	Cassette 4 Pickup Motor current I0			
	7	Cassette 4 Pickup Motor current I1			
	8				
	9	Cassette 4 Motor standby settings		Standby	
	10	Cassette 3 Motor standby settings		Standby	
	11	Cassette 3/4 Motor mode settings		Half speed	Full speed
	12	Switching of Cassette 3/4 Motor current settings			
	13	Enabling of Cassette Pedestal size detection		Disabled	Enabled
	14	Enabling of Cassette Pedestal paper level detection		Disabled	Enabled
15					

Address	bit	Name	Mark	0	1
P013	0	Cassette 2 Size Switch A_0	UN49	OFF	ON
	1	Cassette 2 Size Switch A_1	UN49	OFF	ON
	2	Cassette 2 Size Switch A_2	UN49	OFF	ON
	3	Cassette 2 Size Switch A_3	UN49	OFF	ON
	4	Cassette 2 Size Switch B_4	UN50	OFF	ON
	5	Cassette 2 Size Switch B_5	UN50	OFF	ON
	6	Cassette 2 Size Switch B_6	UN50	OFF	ON
	7	Cassette 2 Size Switch B_7	UN50	OFF	ON
	8	Cassette 1 Size Switch A_0	UN46	OFF	ON
	9	Cassette 1 Size Switch A_1	UN46	OFF	ON
	10	Cassette 1 Size Switch A_2	UN46	OFF	ON
	11	Cassette 1 Size Switch B_3	UN47	OFF	ON
	12	Cassette 1 Size Switch B_4	UN47	OFF	ON
	13	Cassette 1 Size Switch B_5	UN47	OFF	ON
	14	-	-	-	-
15	-	-	-	-	
P014	-	-	-	-	
P015	-	-	-	-	
P016	-	-	-	-	

T-8-13

■ RCON > P001 to P009

Address	bit	Remarks	Code	0	1	
P001	7	-				
	6	24V power supply monitoring	PCB1	ON	OFF	
	5	-				
	4	Disengagement Solenoid	SL1			
	3	-				
	2	Image leading edge signal			Image leading edge	
	1	-				
	0	-				
	P002	7	-			
		6	-			
5		-				
4		-				
3		HP Sensor (interruption)	PS2	OFF	ON	
2		-				
1		CMOS6V power supply control			ON	
0	Original Size Sensor ON			ON		
P003	0 - 7	-				
P004	7	Scanner Unit type		OK	NG	
	6	-				
	5	Reset of Scanner Motor		Reset		
	4	Enabling of Scanner Motor	M1	ENABLE		
	3	Copyboard Size Vertical Scanning Sensor 2	CF2	Original present	Original absent	
	2	Copyboard Size Vertical Scanning Sensor 1	CF1	Original present	Original absent	
	1	Presence/absence of DF		DF model	Copyboard model	
	0	-				
P005	7	Detection of CMOS disconnection				
	6	-				
	5	-				
	4	-				
	3	FAN ON signal	FM1	OFF	ON	
	2	DF Open/Close Sensor 1	PS1	Open	Closed	
	1	DF Open/Close Sensor 2	PS3	Open	Closed	
0	Scanner Motor rotation direction	M1	Back scan direction	Scan direction		

Address	bit	Remarks	Code	0	1
P006	7	-			
	6	-			
	5	-			
	4	-			
	3	-			
	2	-			
	1	Lead Sensor input	SR2	OFF	ON
	0	Registration Sensor input	SR1	OFF	ON
P007	0 - 7	-			
P008	0 - 7	-			
P009	0 - 7	-			
P010	0 - 7	-			

T-8-14

■ FEEDER > P001 to P010

Address	bit	Remarks	Code	0	1
P001	8-15	-			
	7	24V monitoring	PCB1	Supplied	DOWN
	6	-			
	5	Fan alarm	FM1	Locked	Failure
	4	-			
	3	-			
	2	Post-separation 1 Sensor	SR4	Paper present	
	1	-			
P002	8-15	-			
	7	Original Length Sensor 2	SR10		Paper present
	6	Original Length Sensor 1	SR7		Paper present
	5	-			
	4	Disengagement Motor HP Sensor	SR11	Disengaged	
	3	Delivery Reverse Sensor	SR3		Paper present
	2	Original Width Sensor 4	SR15		Paper present
	1	Original Width Sensor 3	SR14		Paper present
P003	8-15	-			
	7	Original Width Sensor 1	SR12		Paper present
	6	-			
	5	Cover Open/Close Sensor	SR6		Open
	4	Document Set Sensor	SR5	Original present	
	3	-			
	2	Stamp Solenoid	SL2		
	1	-			
0	-				

Address	bit	Remarks	Code	0	1
P004	8-15	-			
	7	-			
	6	-			
	5	-			
	4	-			
	3	-			
	2	ADF Motor current 2			
	1	-			
	0	-			
	P005	0-15	-		
P006	8-15	-			
	7	Disengagement Motor enable			Enabled
	6	-			
	5	-			
	4	Registration Clutch	CL2		ON
	3	-			
	2	Pickup Clutch	CL1		ON
	1	-			
	0	Fan	FM1		ON
	P007	8-15	-		
7		-			
6		-			
5		ADF Motor rotation direction			Reverse
4		Enabling of ADF Motor			Enabled
3		-			
2		-			
1		-			
0		-			
P008		8-15	-		
	7	-			
	6	-			
	5	-			
	4	-			
	3	ADF Motor current 1			
	2	ADF Motor current 0			
	1	-			
0	-				
P009	0-15	-			
P010	0-15	-			

T-8-15

Inner Finisher-F1(SORTER>P001 to P056)

Adress	bit	name	Mark	0	1
P001	7	Entrance sensor	S1	ON	OFF
	6	Gripper arm sensor	S13	ON	OFF
	5	-			
	4	-			
	3	-			
	2	-			
	1	-			
	0	-			
P002	7	Gripper unit move motor_CW	M2	CW	CCW
	6	-			
	5	Paper lever drive solenoid	SOL1	OFF	ON
	4	Stapler solenoid	SOL2	OFF	ON
	3	Shift motor	M4	OFF	ON
	2	Shift roller release motor	M5	OFF	ON
	1	Entrance roller release/ stopper HP motor	M6	OFF	ON
	0	Gripper open/ close motor	M7	OFF	ON
P003	7	Feed motor_CW	M3	CW	CCW
	6	Feed motor_clock	M3	OFF	ON
	5	STP move motor_CW	M1	CW	CCW
	4	STP move motor_clock	M1	OFF	ON
	3	STP move motor_PWM	M1	OFF	ON
	2	Feed motor_PWM	M3	OFF	ON
	1	-			
	0	Gripper unit move motor_PWM	M2	OFF	ON
P004	7	-			
	6	-			
	5	-			
	4	-			
	3	Additional tray clock sensor	S23	ON	OFF
	2	Stack tray clock sensor	S14	ON	OFF
	1	Stapler move HP sensor	S10	ON	OFF
	0	Stapler HP sensor	S18	ON	OFF
P005	7	-			
	6	-			
	5	Entrance roller release/ stopper HP sensor	S5	ON	OFF
	4	Gripper unit HP sensor	S7	ON	OFF
	3	Shift roller release sensor	S3	ON	OFF
	2	Shift roller HP sensor	S2	ON	OFF
	1	-			
	0	-			

Adress	bit	name	Mark	0	1
P006	7	Additional tray upper/ Lower limit sensor	S21	OFF	ON
	6	-			
	5	-			
	4	-			
	3	-			
	2	-			
	1	-			
	0	-			
P007	7	-			
	6	-			
	5	-			
	4	-			
	3	-			
	2	-			
	1	-			
	0	Additional tray paper sensor	S22	OFF	ON
P008	7	Shift roller release motor_CW	M5	CW	CCW
	6	-			
	5	Feed motor_CW	M4	CW	CCW
	4	-			
	3	-			
	2	-			
	1	Entrance roller release/ stopper HP motor_CW	M6	CW	CCW
	0	-			
P009	0 - 7	-			
P010	7	-			
	6	-			
	5	-			
	4	-			
	3	Stack tray paper sensor	S15	no paper	paper
	2	Stack tray lower limit sensor	S17	no paper	paper
	1	Stack tray middle sensor	S16	no paper	paper
	0	-			
P011	7	Processing tray sensor	S6	no paper	paper
	6	Stapler safety switch	SW2	OFF	ON
	5	-			
	4	-			
	3	Front fan motor/ Rear fan motor	M8/M9	OFF	ON
	2	-			
	1	-			
	0	-			

Adress	bit	name	Mark	0	1
P012	7	-	-	-	
	6	-	-	-	
	5	Paper surface sensor2	S12	OFF	ON
	4	Paper surface sensor1	S11	OFF	ON
	3	Stapler edging sensor	S19	OFF	ON
	2	Stapler sensor	S20	OFF	ON
	1	-			
	0	Front cover switch	SW1	OFF	ON
P013-P048	0 - 7	-	-	-	
P049-P056	0 - 3	-	-	-	

T-8-16

■ Staple Finisher-M1/Booklet Finisher-M1(SORTER>P001 to P056)

Address	bit	Name	Mark	Remarks	
P001	7	Tray 2 paper surface sensor 2	PI120	0:paper1:nopaper	
	6	-	-	-	
	5	-	-	-	
	4	-	-	-	
	3	Front cover sensor	PI102	0:CLOSE1:OPEN	
	2	-	-	-	
	1	-	-	-	
	0	-	-	-	
	P002-P006	0 - 7	-	-	-
	P007	7	-	-	-
6		-	-	-	
5		-	-	-	
4		-	-	-	
3		Tray 1 shift motor_lock	M107	0:OFF1:lock	
2		-	-	-	
1		-	-	-	
0		Front cover sensor	PI102	0:CLOSE1:OPEN	
P008	7	-	-	-	
	6	-	-	-	
	5	-	-	-	
	4	Inlet sensor	PI103	0:paper1:nopaper	
	3	Swing guide home position sensor	PI105	1:HP	
	2	-	-	-	
	1	-	-	-	
0	-	-	-		
P009	7	Tray 1 paper surface sensor	PI111	0:paper1:nopaper	
	6	-	-	-	
	5	-	-	-	
	4	-	-	-	
	3	-	-	-	
	2	-	-	-	
	1	Tray 2 shift motor_lock	M108	0:OFF1:lock	
	0	Tray 1 paper sensor	PI112	0:paper1:nopaper	
P010	7	DIPSW 1-8 (Finisher Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF	
	6	DIPSW 1-7 (Finisher Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF	
	5	DIPSW 1-6 (Finisher Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF	
	4	DIPSW 1-5 (Finisher Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF	
	3	DIPSW 1-4 (Finisher Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF	
	2	DIPSW 1-3 (Finisher Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF	
	1	DIPSW 1-2 (Finisher Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF	
	0	DIPSW 1-1 (Finisher Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF	

Address	bit	Name	Mark	Remarks
P011	0 - 7	-	-	-
P012	7	Swing height sensor	PI123	0:CLOSE1:OPEN
	6	Gear change home position sensor	PI117	0:HP
	5	Upper cover sensor	PI101	0:CLOSE1:OPEN
	4	Rear end assist guide home position sensor	PI109	0:HP
	3	Processing Tray sensor	PI108	0:paper1:nopaper
	2	Rear aligning plate home position sensor	PI107	0:HP
	1	Front aligning plate home position sensor	PI106	0:HP
	0	-	-	-
P013	7	Tray 2 shift motor	M108	0:OFF1:ON
	6	Tray 2 shift motor_CW	M108	0:CW1:CCW
	5	Inlet roller separation solenoid	SL101	0:OFF1:ON
	4	-	-	-
	3	-	-	-
	2	-	-	-
	1	Entrance feed motor_I1	M101	[P013>1:P013>0][0:0]:Low, [0:1]:MID,[1:0]:High,[1:1]:Max
0	Entrance feed motor_I0	M101		
P014	7	Tray 1 shift motor_enable	M107	0:standby1:enable
	6	Tray 1 shift motor_CW	M107	0:CW1:CCW
	5	Tray 1 shift motor	M107	0:OFF1:ON
	4	Rear end assist motor_enable	M109	0:standby1:enable
	3	Rear end assist motor_enable_I1	M109	[P014>3:P014>2][0:0]:Low, [0:1]:MID,[1:0]:High,[1:1]:Max
	2	Rear end assist motor_enable_I0	M109	
	1	Rear end assist motor_enable_CW	M109	0:CW1:CCW
	0	-	-	-
P015	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	Stapler shift motor_enable	M105	0:standby1:enable
	4	-	-	-
	3	-	-	-
	2	Stack ejection motor_CW	M102	0:CW1:CCW
	1	Swing motor_ampere	M106	0:High1:Low
0	Swing motor_CW	M106	0:CW1:CCW	

Address	bit	Name	Mark	Remarks
P016	7	-	-	-
	6	Rear aligning plate motor	M104	0:CW1:CCW
	5	-	-	-
	4	Rear aligning plate motor	M104	0:High1:Low
	3	-	-	-
	2	Front aligning plate motor_ampere	M103	0:High1:Low
	1	Front aligning plate motor_CW	M103	0:CW1:CCW
	0	-	-	-
P017	7	Stapler alignment interference sensor	PI115	0:paper1:nopaper
	6	Shutter home position sensor	PI114	0:paper1:nopaper
	5	Tray 2 paper sensor	PI113	0:HP
	4	Stapler shift home position sensor	PI110	0:HP
	3	Tray 2 paper surface sensor 1	PI116	0:Interference
	2	-	-	-
	1	-	-	-
	0	-	-	-
P018	7	Stapler shift motor_CW	M105	0:CCW1:CW
	6	Buffer roller separation solenoid	SL102	0:OFF1:ON
	5	Shutter clutch	CL101	0:OFF1:ON
	4	Stack ejection lower roller clutch	CL102	0:OFF1:ON
	3	Buffer rear end holding solenoid	SL104	0:OFF1:ON
	2	1st delivery roller separation solenoid	SL103	0:OFF1:ON
	1	Stapler shift motor_I1	M105	[P018>1:P018>0][0:0]:Low, [0:1]:MID,[1:0]:High,[1:1]:Max
	0	Stapler shift motor_I0	M105	
P019	7	-	-	-
	6	Feed path sensor	PI104	0:paper1:nopaper
	5	-	-	-
	4	-	-	-
	3	Stitcher HP sensor (rear)	SW5	1:HP
	2	Stitcher HP sensor (front)	SW7	1:HP
	1	-	-	-
0	-	-	-	
P020	7	Alignment plate home position sensor	PI5	1:HP
	6	-	-	-
	5	-	-	-
	4	-	-	-
	3	-	-	-
	2	Vertical pat paper sensor	PI17	0:nopaper1:paper
	1	-	-	-
	0	-	-	-

Address	bit	Name	Mark	Remarks
P021	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	-	-	-
	4	-	-	-
	3	-	-	-
	2	-	-	-
	1	Paper pushing plate top position sensor	PI15	0:edge
	0	Paper pushing plate home position sensor	PI14	1:HP
P022	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	-	-	-
	4	-	-	-
	3	-	-	-
	2	-	-	-
	1	-	-	-
	0	Feed motor_CW	M1	0:CCW1:CW
P023	0 - 7	-	-	-
P024	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	No.2 paper deflecting solenoid	SL2	0:OFF1:ON
	4	No.1 paper deflecting solenoid	SL1	0:OFF1:ON
	3	Saddle inlet solenoid	SL5	0:OFF1:ON
	2	Paper folding home position sensor	PI21	0:OFF1:ON
	1	-	-	-
	0	-	-	-
P025	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	-	-	-
	4	-	-	-
	3	-	-	-
	2	Feed motor	M1	0:ON1:OFF
	1	-	-	-
	0	-	-	-
P026	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	-	-	-
	4	-	-	-
	3	Stitcher motor (rear)_CW	M6	0:ON1:OFF
	2	-	-	-
	1	Staple sensor (rear)	SW4	0:OFF1:ON
	0	-	-	-

Address	bit	Name	Mark	Remarks
P027	7	-	-	-
	6	Feed plate contact solenoid	SL4	0:OFF1:ON
	5	Paper folding motor_RV	M2	0:OFF1:ON
	4	-	-	-
	3	-	-	-
	2	Paper positioning plate paper sensor	PI8	0:paper1:nopaper
	1	Paper positioning plate home position sensor	PI7	0:HP
	0	Tray paper sensor	PI6	0:paper1:nopaper
P028	7	Paper pushing plate motor_EN	M8	0:ON1:OFF
	6	Paper pushing plate motor_FWM	M8	0:OFF1:ON
	5	Paper pushing plate motor_RV	M8	0:OFF1:ON
	4	Paper folding motor_FWD	M2	0:OFF1:ON
	3	-	-	-
	2	-	-	-
	1	-	-	-
	0	-	-	-
P029	7	Stitcher motor (rear)_CCW	M6	0:ON1:OFF
	6	-	-	-
	5	-	-	-
	4	Stitcher motor (front)_CW	M7	0:ON1:OFF
	3	Stitcher motor (front)_CCW	M7	0:ON1:OFF
	2	Staple sensor (front)	SW6	1:enable
	1	-	-	-
	0	-	-	-
P030	7	DIPSW 1-8 (Saddle Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF
	6	DIPSW 1-7 (Saddle Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF
	5	DIPSW 1-6 (Saddle Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF
	4	DIPSW 1-5 (Saddle Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF
	3	DIPSW 1-4 (Saddle Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF
	2	DIPSW 1-3 (Saddle Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF
	1	DIPSW 1-2 (Saddle Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF
	0	DIPSW 1-1 (Saddle Controller PCB)	-	0: ON, 1: OFF
P031	7	Saddle inlet sensor	PI22	0:nopaper1:paper
	6	Guide home position sensor	PI13	1:HP
	5	Crescent roller phase sensor	PI12	1:HP
	4	Delivery sensor	PI11	0:paper1:nopaper
	3	Inlet cover sensor	PI9	0:CLOSE1:OPEN
	2	-	-	-
	1	-	-	-
	0	-	-	-
P032-P048	0 - 7	-	-	-
P049-P056	0 - 3	-	-	-

T-8-17



ADJ-XY

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY		
ADJ-X	Adj of img pstn in book mode: vert scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the image reading start position (image lead edge position) in vertical scanning direction. When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label. When the non-image width is larger than the standard value, set the smaller value. When out of original area is copied, set the larger value. As the value is incremented by 1, the image position moves to the trailing edge side by 0.1mm.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range	-50 to 50
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
ADJ-Y	Adj of img position in book mode: horz scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the image reading start position in horizontal scanning direction. When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label. When the non-image width is larger than the standard value, set the smaller value. When out of original area is copied, set the larger value. As the value is incremented by 1, the image position moves to the rear side by 0.1mm.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range	-50 to 50
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY		
ADJ-S	Adj image read start position: horz scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the image reading start position in horizontal scanning direction when black line/white line occurs. When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label. As the value is incremented by 1, the image position moves to the trailing edge side by 0.1mm.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range	-100 to 100
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
ADJ-Y-DF	Adj img pstn in DADF mode:horz scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the image reading start position in horizontal scanning direction at DADF reading. When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label. As the value is incremented by 1, the image position moves to the rear side by 0.1mm.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range	-50 to 50
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
STRD-POS	Adj read pstn in DADF mode	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the reading position at DADF reading. When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range	-100 to 100
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> STRD-POS

COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY	
ADJ-X-MG	Adj image ratio in book mod:vert scan
Lv.1	Details
	To make a fine adjustment of image magnification in vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label. As the value is incremented by 1, the image magnification changes by 0.01%. +: Enlarge -: Reduce
	Use case
	• When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 • When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range
	-50 to 50
	Unit
	%
	Default value
	0

T-8-18

■ CCD

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD	
W-PLT-X	
White level data(X) entry of white plate	
Lv.1	Details
	When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of P-PRINT. When replacing the Copyboard Glass, enter the value of barcode label which is affixed on the glass.
	Use case
	• When replacing the Scanner Unit • When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit • When replacing the Copyboard Glass
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 9999
	Default value
	8271
	Related service mode
	COPIER.> ADJUST> CCD> W-PLT-Y, W-PLT-Z COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT
W-PLT-Y	
White level data(Y) entry of white plate	
Lv.1	Details
	When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of P-PRINT. When replacing the Copyboard Glass, enter the value of barcode label which is affixed on the glass.
	Use case
	• When replacing the Scanner Unit • When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit • When replacing the Copyboard Glass
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 9999
	Default value
	8735
	Related service mode
	COPIER.> ADJUST> CCD> W-PLT-X, W-PLT-Z COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT
W-PLT-Z	
White level data(Z) entry of white plate	
Lv.1	Details
	When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of P-PRINT. When replacing the Copyboard Glass, enter the value of barcode label which is affixed on the glass.
	Use case
	• When replacing the Scanner Unit • When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit • When replacing the Copyboard Glass
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 9999
	Default value
	9418
	Related service mode
	COPIER.> ADJUST> CCD> W-PLT-X, W-PLT-Z COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD	
100-RG	RG color displace correct:100% book mode
Lv.1	Details
	To correct the color displacement (R and G lines) in vertical scanning direction due to the Scanner Unit (paper front) occurs at 100% Book mode. When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Scanner Unit When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range
	-256 to 256
	Unit
	line
	Default value
	0
100-GB	GB color displace correct:100% book mode
Lv.1	Details
	To correct the color displacement (G and B lines) in vertical scanning direction due to the Scanner Unit (paper front) occurs at 100% Book mode. When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Scanner Unit When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range
	-256 to 256
	Unit
	line
	Default value
	0
DFTAR-R	Shading target value [R]
Lv.1	Details
	When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of P-PRINT. When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit (paper front), execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Scanner Unit When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 2047
	Default value
	1159
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2 COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD	
DFTAR-G	Shading target value [G]
Lv.1	Details
	When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of P-PRINT. When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit, execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Scanner Unit When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 2047
	Default value
	1189
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2 COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT
DFTAR-B	Shading target value [B]
Lv.1	Details
	When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of P-PRINT. When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit, execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Scanner Unit When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 2047
	Default value
	1209
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1, DF-WLVL2 COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT
MTF2-M1	MTF value 1 setting: horz scan
Lv.1	Details
	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range
	20 to 80
	Default value
	50
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD		
MTF2-M2		MTF value 2 setting: horz scan
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-M3	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-M4	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-M5	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD		
MTF2-M6		MTF value 6 setting: horz scan
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-M7	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-M8	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-M9	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD		
MTF2-S1		MTF value 1 setting: vert scan
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-S2	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-S3	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-S4	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD		
MTF2-S5		MTF value 5 setting: vert scan
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-S6	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-S7	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	MTF2-S8	
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC

COPIER > ADJUST > CCD		
MTF2-S9		MTF value 9 setting: vert scan
Lv.1	Details	Setting value for MTF filter coefficient calculation. Enter the value of service label on the Reader.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2 When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Display/adj/set range	20 to 80
	Default value	50
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> MTF-CLC
	CCD-CHNG	
Lv.1	Details	Optimal value of the MTF value for the Scanner Unit can be obtained by recalculation as long as the same Scanner Unit is used. Set 1 as the judgment reference because it is necessary to obtain the MTF value separately when the Scanner Unit is replaced.
	Use case	When replacing the Scanner Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT beforehand.
	Default value	0

T-8-19

■ IMG-REG

COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG		
REG-H-Y		Adj Y color write start position: horz scan
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of yellow color image in the horizontal scanning direction in increments of 1 pixel.
	Use case	When yellow color displacement in the horizontal scanning direction occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-128 to 127
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	0
REG-H-C		Adj C color write start psn: horz scan
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of cyan color image in the horizontal scanning direction in increments of 1 pixel.
	Use case	When cyan color displacement in the horizontal scanning direction occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-128 to 127
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	0
REG-H-K		Adj Bk color write start psn: horz scan
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of black color image in the horizontal scanning direction in increments of 1 pixel.
	Use case	When black color displacement in the horizontal scanning direction occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-128 to 127
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	0
REG-HS-Y		Adj Y color write start psn: horz scan
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of yellow color image in the horizontal scanning direction in smaller increments than 1 pixel.
	Use case	When yellow color displacement in the horizontal scanning direction occurs (smaller than 1 pixel)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-128 to 127
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG		
REG-HS-C	Adj C color write start pstn: horz scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of cyan color image in the horizontal scanning direction in smaller increments than 1 pixel.
	Use case	When cyan color displacement in the horizontal scanning direction occurs (smaller than 1 pixel)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-128 to 127
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	0
REG-HS-K	Adj Bk color write start pstn: horz scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of black color image in the horizontal scanning direction in smaller increments than 1 pixel.
	Use case	When black color displacement in the horizontal scanning direction occurs (smaller than 1 pixel)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-128 to 127
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	0
REG-V-Y	Adj Y color write start pstn: vert scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of yellow color image in the vertical scanning direction in increments of 1 pixel.
	Use case	When yellow color displacement in the vertical scanning direction occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 127
	Unit	line
	Default value	0
REG-V-C	Adj C color write start pstn: vert scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of cyan color image in the vertical scanning direction in increments of 1 pixel.
	Use case	When cyan color displacement in the vertical scanning direction occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-128 to 127
	Unit	line
	Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > IMG-REG		
REG-V-K	Adj Bk color write start pstn: vert scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of black color image in the vertical scanning direction in increments of 1 pixel.
	Use case	When black color displacement in the vertical scanning direction occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-128 to 127
	Unit	line
	Default value	0
REG-H-M	Adj M color write start pstn: horz scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of magenta color image in the horizontal scanning direction in increments of 1 pixel.
	Use case	When magenta color displacement in the horizontal scanning direction occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-128 to 127
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	0
REG-V-M	Adj M color write start pstn: vert scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of magenta color image in the vertical scanning direction in increments of 1 pixel.
	Use case	When magenta color displacement in the vertical scanning direction occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-128 to 127
	Unit	line
	Default value	0
REG-HS-M	Fine adj M write start pstn: horz scan	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the write start position of magenta color image in the horizontal scanning direction in smaller increments than 1 pixel.
	Use case	When magenta color displacement in the horizontal scanning direction occurs (smaller than 1 pixel)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-128 to 127
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	0

DENS

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS		
SGNL-Y Adj Y toner dens tgt VL: initialization		
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the offset of the Y-toner density target value to calculate TD ratio at initialization of the Patch Sensor. When the value is increased, TD ratio is decreased so that fogging is alleviated. When the value is decreased, TD ratio is increased so does density, but fogging/scattering occurs.
	Use case	When checking the value before RAM clear and re-enter it after RAM clear
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-36 to 36
	Default value	0
SGNL-M Adj M toner dens tgt VL: initialization		
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the offset of the M-toner density target value to calculate TD ratio at initialization of the Patch Sensor. When the value is increased, TD ratio is decreased so that fogging is alleviated. When the value is decreased, TD ratio is increased so does density, but fogging/scattering occurs.
	Use case	When checking the value before RAM clear and re-enter it after RAM clear
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-36 to 36
	Default value	0
SGNL-C Adj C toner dens tgt VL: initialization		
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the offset of the C-toner density target value to calculate TD ratio at initialization of the Patch Sensor. When the value is increased, TD ratio is decreased so that fogging is alleviated. When the value is decreased, TD ratio is increased so does density, but fogging/scattering occurs.
	Use case	When checking the value before RAM clear and re-enter it after RAM clear
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-36 to 36
	Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS		
SGNL-K Adj Bk toner dens tgt VL: initialization		
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the offset of the Bk-toner density target value to calculate TD ratio at initialization of the Patch Sensor. When the value is increased, TD ratio is decreased so that fogging is alleviated. When the value is decreased, TD ratio is increased so does density, but fogging/scattering occurs.
	Use case	When checking the value before RAM clear and re-enter it after RAM clear
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-36 to 36
	Default value	0
HLMT-PTY Adj Toner Sensor(Y) dens crct upr limit		
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the upper limit of the target density correction (lower limit of TD ratio) of the Toner Sensor (Y). When the value is increased (TD ratio is decreased), fogging/scattering is alleviated.
	Use case	When an image failure (density failure, fogging, carrier adherence, and scattering, etc.) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.
	Display/adj/set range	-5 to 5
	Unit	%
	Default value	0
HLMT-PTM Adj Toner Sensor(M) dens crct upr limit		
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the upper limit of the target density correction (lower limit of TD ratio) of the Toner Sensor (M). As the value is incremented by 1, the lower limit of TD ratio is decreased by 0.5 %. When the value is increased, fogging/scattering is alleviated.
	Use case	When an image failure (density failure, fogging, carrier adherence, and scattering, etc.) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.
	Display/adj/set range	-5 to 5
	Unit	%
	Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS	
HLMT-PTC	Adj Toner Sensor(C) dens crct upr limit
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the upper limit of the target density correction (lower limit of TD ratio) of the Toner Sensor (C). As the value is incremented by 1, the lower limit of TD ratio is decreased by 0.5 %. When the value is increased, fogging/scattering is alleviated.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure (density failure, fogging, carrier adherence, and scattering, etc.) occurs</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Caution</p> <p>Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-5 to 5</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>%</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
LLMT-PTY	Adj Toner Sensor(Y)dens crct lowr limit
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the lower limit of the target density correction (upper limit of TD ratio) of the Toner Sensor (Y). As the value is decremented by 1, the lower limit of TD ratio is increased by 0.5 %. When the value is decreased, density is increased, but fogging/scattering occurs.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure (density failure, fogging, carrier adherence, and scattering, etc.) occurs</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Caution</p> <p>Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-5 to 5</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>%</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
LLMT-PTM	Adj Toner Sensor(M)dens crct lowr limit
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the lower limit of the target density correction (upper limit of TD ratio) of the Toner Sensor (M). As the value is decremented by 1, the lower limit of TD ratio is increased by 0.5 %. When the value is decreased, density is increased, but fogging/scattering occurs.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure (density failure, fogging, carrier adherence, and scattering, etc.) occurs</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Caution</p> <p>Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-5 to 5</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>%</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS	
LLMT-PTC	Adj Toner Sensor(C)dens crct lowr limit
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the lower limit of the target density correction (upper limit of TD ratio) of the Toner Sensor (C). As the value is decremented by 1, the lower limit of TD ratio is increased by 0.5 %. When the value is decreased, density is increased, but fogging/scattering occurs.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure (density failure, fogging, carrier adherence, and scattering, etc.) occurs</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Caution</p> <p>Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-5 to 5</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>%</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
T-SPLY-Y	Adjustment of Y toner supply amount
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>[Not used] To adjust the offset value of Y toner supply amount. When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When E020 occurs frequently</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-3 to 3</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>%</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
T-SPLY-M	Adjustment of M toner supply amount
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>[Not used] To adjust the offset value of M toner supply amount. When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When E020 occurs frequently</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-3 to 3</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>%</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
T-SPLY-C	Adjustment of C toner supply amount
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>[Not used] To adjust the offset value of C toner supply amount. When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When E020 occurs frequently</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-3 to 3</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>%</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS		
T-SPLY-K	Adjustment of Bk toner supply amount	
Lv.2	Details	[Not used] To adjust the offset value of Bk toner supply amount. When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
	Use case	When E020 occurs frequently
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-3 to 3
	Unit	%
	Default value	0
DMAX-Y	Adj D-max ctrl Y color dens target VL	
Lv.2	Details	An image failure might occur because the density target value of the D-max control becomes out of the setting table due to environment change. Adjust the offset of the yellow density target value of D-max control.
	Use case	When any image failure occurs due to environment change
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
DMAX-M	Adj D-max ctrl M color dens target VL	
Lv.2	Details	An image failure might occur because the density target value of the D-max control becomes out of the setting table due to environment change. Adjust the offset of the magenta density target value of D-max control.
	Use case	When any image failure occurs due to environment change
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
DMAX-C	Adj D-max ctrl C color dens target VL	
Lv.2	Details	An image failure might occur because the density target value of the D-max control becomes out of the setting table due to environment change. Adjust the offset of the cyan density target value of D-max control.
	Use case	When any image failure occurs due to environment change
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS		
P-TG-Y	Adj of ATR control Y-color target value	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the offset of the ATR patch target value for Y. When the target value determined upon initialization is changed, density and the TD ratio are also changed. Density is increased when the value is increased, and fogging/scattering is alleviated when the value is decreased.
	Use case	When density failures, fogging, etc. occur
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Make 10 prints of approx. 10% image ratio (ex. COPIER> TEST> PG> TYPE: 16) 20 times. 3) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation> Full Adjust.
	Caution	Execute the Auto Adjust Gradation first to increase the density. If you adjust the offset of the target value, fogging might get worse.
	Display/adj/set range	-4 to 4
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Auto Adjust Gradation> Full Adjust
P-TG-M	Adj of ATR control M-color target value	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the offset of the ATR patch target value for M. When the target value determined upon initialization is changed, density and the TD ratio are also changed. Density is increased when the value is increased, and fogging/scattering is alleviated when the value is decreased.
	Use case	When density failures, fogging, etc. occur
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Make 10 prints of approx. 10% image ratio (ex. COPIER> TEST> PG> TYPE: 16) 20 times. 3) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation> Full Adjust.
	Caution	Execute the Auto Adjust Gradation first to increase the density. If you adjust the offset of the target value, fogging might get worse.
	Display/adj/set range	-4 to 4
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Auto Adjust Gradation> Full Adjust

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS	
P-TG-C	Adj of ATR control C-color target value
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the offset of the ATR patch target value for C. When the target value determined upon initialization is changed, density and the TD ratio are also changed. Density is increased when the value is increased, and fogging/scattering is alleviated when the value is decreased.
	Use case
	When density failures, fogging, etc. occur
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Make 10 prints of approx. 10% image ratio (ex. COPIER> TEST> PG> TYPE: 16) 20 times. 3) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation> Full Adjust.
	Caution
	Execute the Auto Adjust Gradation first to increase the density. If you adjust the offset of the target value, fogging might get worse.
	Display/adj/set range
	-4 to 4
	Default value
	0
	Related user mode
	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Auto Adjust Gradation> Full Adjust
P-TG-K	Adj of ATR control Bk-color target value
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the offset of the ATR patch target value for Bk. When the target value determined upon initialization is changed, density and the TD ratio are also changed. Density is increased when the value is increased, and fogging/scattering is alleviated when the value is decreased.
	Use case
	When density failures, fogging, etc. occur
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Make 10 prints of approx. 10% image ratio (ex. COPIER> TEST> PG> TYPE: 16) 20 times. 3) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation> Full Adjust.
	Caution
	Execute the Auto Adjust Gradation first to increase the density. If you adjust the offset of the target value, fogging might get worse.
	Display/adj/set range
	-4 to 4
	Default value
	0
	Related user mode
	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Auto Adjust Gradation> Full Adjust
DMAX-K	Adj D-max ctrl Bk color dens target VL
Lv.2	Details
	An image failure might occur because the density target value of the D-max control becomes out of the setting table due to environment change. Adjust the offset of the black density target value of D-max control.
	Use case
	When any image failure occurs due to environment change
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 8
	Default value
	0

COPIER > ADJUST > DENS	
HLMT-PTK	Adj Toner Sensor(Bk)dens crct upr limit
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the upper limit of the target density correction (lower limit of TD ratio) of the Toner Sensor (Bk). As the value is incremented by 1, the lower limit of TD ratio is decreased by 0.5 %. When the value is increased, fogging/scattering is alleviated.
	Use case
	When an image failure (density failure, fogging, carrier adherence, and scattering, etc.) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.
	Display/adj/set range
	-5 to 5
	Unit
	%
	Default value
	0
LLMT-PTK	Adj Toner Sensor(Bk)dens crct low limit
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the lower limit of the target density correction (upper limit of TD ratio) of the Toner Sensor (Bk). As the value is decremented by 1, the lower limit of TD ratio is increased by 0.5 %. When the value is decreased, density is increased, but fogging/scattering occurs.
	Use case
	When an image failure (density failure, fogging, carrier adherence, and scattering, etc.) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.
	Display/adj/set range
	-5 to 5
	Unit
	%
	Default value
	0

T-8-21

BLANK

COPIER > ADJUST > BLANK		
BLANK-T Adjustment of leading edge margin		
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the margin on the leading edge of paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is increased toward the center of the paper by 1 pixel (0.0423mm).
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When reducing the margin upon user's request When enlarging the margin for transfer separation/fixing separation
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1000
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	94
BLANK-L Adjustment of left edge margin		
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the margin on the left edge of paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is increased toward the center of the paper by 1 pixel (0.0423mm).
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When reducing the margin upon user's request When enlarging the margin for transfer separation/fixing separation
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1000
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	59
BLANK-R Adjustment of right edge margin		
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the margin on the right edge of paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is increased toward the center of the paper by 1 pixel (0.0423mm).
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When reducing the margin upon user's request When enlarging the margin for transfer separation/fixing separation
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1000
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	59
BLANK-B Adjustment of trailing edge margin		
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the margin on the trailing edge of paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is increased toward the center of the paper by 1 pixel (0.0423mm).
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When reducing the margin upon user's request When enlarging the margin for transfer separation/fixing separation
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1000
	Unit	pixel
	Default value	59

T-8-22

V-CONT

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT		
VCONT-Y Adj of Y color contrast potential		
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the contrast potential for Y. As the value is incremented by 1, the contrast potential changes by 10V. +: Image becomes darker. -: Image becomes lighter. When the value is too large, paper winds around the Fixing Roller or a transfer failure occurs. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value. In principle, the adjustment of the density should be performed in Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Density Adjustment Mode.
	Use case	When adjusting the density of D-max control in the case that an image density failure occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjust.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-5 to 5
	Unit	V
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> VCONT-M, VCONT-C, VCONT-K
	VCONT-M Adj of M color contrast potential	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the contrast potential for M. As the value is incremented by 1, the contrast potential changes by 10V. +: Image becomes darker. -: Image becomes lighter. When the value is too large, paper winds around the Fixing Roller or a transfer failure occurs. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value. In principle, the adjustment of the density should be performed in Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Density Adjustment Mode.
	Use case	When adjusting the density of D-max control in the case that an image density failure occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjust.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-5 to 5
	Unit	V
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> VCONT-Y, VCONT-C, VCONT-K

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT	
VCONT-C	Adj of C color contrast potential
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the contrast potential for C. As the value is incremented by 1, the contrast potential changes by 10V. +: Image becomes darker. -: Image becomes lighter. When the value is too large, paper winds around the Fixing Roller or a transfer failure occurs. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value. In principle, the adjustment of the density should be performed in Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Density Adjustment Mode.
	Use case
	When adjusting the density of D-max control in the case that an image density failure occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjust.
	Caution
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range
	-5 to 5
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> VCONT-Y, VCONT-M, VCONT-K
VCONT-K	Adj of Bk color contrast potential
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the offset of the contrast potential Vcont for Bk. As the value is incremented by 1, the contrast potential changes by 10V. +: Image becomes darker. -: Image becomes lighter. When the value is too large, paper winds around the Fixing Roller or a transfer failure occurs. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value. In principle, the adjustment of the density should be performed in Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Density Adjustment Mode.
	Use case
	When adjusting the density of D-max control in the case that an image density failure occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjust.
	Caution
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range
	-5 to 5
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> VCONT-Y, VCONT-M, VCONT-C

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT	
VBACK-Y	Adj Y color fogging removal potential
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the offset of the fogging removal potential Vback for Y. As the value is incremented by 1, the fogging removal potential changes by 10 V. +: Fogging is alleviated. -: Coarse image, blanking of image edge, and carrier adherence are alleviated. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case
	At the occurrence of Y fogging
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjust.
	Caution
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 3
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> VBACK-M, VBACK-C, VBACK-K
VBACK-M	Adj M color fogging removal potential
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the offset of the fogging removal potential Vback for M. As the value is incremented by 1, the fogging removal potential changes by 10 V. +: Fogging is alleviated. -: Coarse image, blanking of image edge, and carrier adherence are alleviated. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case
	At the occurrence of M fogging
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjust.
	Caution
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 3
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> VBACK-Y, VBACK-C, VBACK-K

COPIER > ADJUST > V-CONT	
VBACK-C	Adj C color fogging removal potential
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the offset of the fogging removal potential Vback for C. As the value is incremented by 1, the fogging removal potential changes by 10 V. +: Fogging is alleviated. -: Coarse image, blanking of image edge, and carrier adherence are alleviated. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case
	At the occurrence of C fogging
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjust.
	Caution
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 3
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> VBACK-Y, VBACK-M, VBACK-K
VBACK-K	Adj Bk color fogging removal potential
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the offset of the fogging removal potential Vback for Bk. As the value is incremented by 1, the fogging removal potential changes by 10 V. +: Fogging is alleviated. -: Coarse image, blanking of image edge, and carrier adherence are alleviated. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case
	At the occurrence of Bk fogging
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjust.
	Caution
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 3
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> V-CONT> VBACK-Y, VBACK-M, VBACK-C

T-8-23

■ PASCAL

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL	
OFST-P-Y	Y density adj at test print reading
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the offset of Y color test print reading signal at Auto Adjust Gradation (Full Adjust). When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label. As the greater value is set, the image after adjustment gets darker.
	Use case
	• When replacing the Scanner Unit • When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range
	-128 to 128
	Default value
	According to the adjustment value of the Reader at factory shipment
OFST-P-M	M density adj at test print reading
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the offset of M color test print reading signal at Auto Adjust Gradation (Full Adjust). When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label. As the greater value is set, the image after adjustment gets darker.
	Use case
	• When replacing the Scanner Unit • When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range
	-128 to 128
	Default value
	According to the adjustment value of the Reader at factory shipment
OFST-P-C	C density adj at test print reading
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the offset of C color test print reading signal at Auto Adjust Gradation (Full Adjust). When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label. As the greater value is set, the image after adjustment gets darker.
	Use case
	• When replacing the Scanner Unit • When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range
	-128 to 128
	Default value
	According to the adjustment value of the Reader at factory shipment

COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL	
OFST-P-K	Bk density adj at test print reading
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the offset of Bk color test print reading signal at Auto Adjust Gradation (Full Adjust). When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label. As the greater value is set, the image after adjustment gets darker.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Scanner Unit When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range
	-128 to 128
	Default value
	According to the adjustment value of the Reader at factory shipment

T-8-24

COLOR

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR	
ADJ-Y	Y color balance adjustment
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the default value of the color balance for Y when the density of Y varies between machines. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. If the value is too large, a transfer failure and/or a fixing failure occurs.
	Use case
	When alleviating the variation of the density between machines upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 8
	Default value
	0
ADJ-M	M color balance adjustment
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the default value of the color balance for M when the density of M varies between machines. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. If the value is too large, a transfer failure and/or a fixing failure occurs.
	Use case
	When alleviating the variation of the density between machines upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 8
	Default value
	0
ADJ-C	C color balance adjustment
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the default value of the color balance for C when the density of C varies between machines. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. If the value is too large, a transfer failure and/or a fixing failure occurs.
	Use case
	When alleviating the variation of the density between machines upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 8
	Default value
	0

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR	
ADJ-K	Bk color balance adjustment
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the default value of the color balance for Bk when the density of Bk varies between machines. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. If the value is too large, a transfer failure and/or a fixing failure occurs.
	Use case
	When alleviating the variation of the density between machines upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 8
	Default value
	0
OFST-Y	Adj of Y bright area dens&color balance
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the bright area density and color balance of Y. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. Lower the value when the background cannot be read correctly because the density of a document is dark and increase the value when the density of a document is light. Lower the value when removal of the background is not performed correctly and a fogging-like image appears. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance in user mode.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the background of a document cannot be read correctly When removal of the background cannot be performed correctly and a fogging-like image appears
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-32 to 32
	Default value
	0
	Related user mode
	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR	
OFST-M	Adj of M bright area dens&color balance
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the bright area density and color balance of M. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. Lower the value when the background cannot be read correctly because the density of a document is dark and increase the value when the density of a document is light. Lower the value when removal of the background is not performed correctly and a fogging-like image appears. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance in user mode.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the background of a document cannot be read correctly When removal of the background cannot be performed correctly and a fogging-like image appears
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-32 to 32
	Default value
	0
	Related user mode
	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance
OFST-C	Adj of C bright area dens&color balance
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the bright area density and color balance of C. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. Lower the value when the background cannot be read correctly because the density of a document is dark and increase the value when the density of a document is light. Lower the value when removal of the background is not performed correctly and a fogging-like image appears. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance in user mode.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the background of a document cannot be read correctly When removal of the background cannot be performed correctly and a fogging-like image appears
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-32 to 32
	Default value
	0
	Related user mode
	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR	
OFST-K	Adj Bk bright area dens&color balance
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the bright area density and color balance of Bk. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. Lower the value when the background cannot be read correctly because the density of a document is dark and increase the value when the density of a document is light. Lower the value when removal of the background is not performed correctly and a fogging-like image appears. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance in user mode.</p> <p>Use case</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the background of a document cannot be read correctly When removal of the background cannot be performed correctly and a fogging-like image appears <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-32 to 32</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related user mode</p> <p>Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance</p>
LD-OFS-Y	Color balance adj of Y low dens area
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the color balance of the low density area of Y. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-8 to 8</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related user mode</p> <p>Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance</p>
LD-OFS-M	Color balance adj of M low dens area
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the color balance of the low density area of M. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-8 to 8</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related user mode</p> <p>Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR	
LD-OFS-C	Color balance adj of C low dens area
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the color balance of the low density area of C. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-8 to 8</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related user mode</p> <p>Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance</p>
LD-OFS-K	Color balance adj of Bk low dens area
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the color balance of the low density area of Bk. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-8 to 8</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related user mode</p> <p>Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance</p>
MD-OFS-Y	Color balance adj of Y mid dens area
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the color balance of the intermediate density area of Y. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-8 to 8</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related user mode</p> <p>Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR		
MD-OFS-M		Color balance adj of M mid dens area
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the intermediate density area of M. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance
MD-OFS-C		Color balance adj of C mid dens area
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the intermediate density area of C. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance
MD-OFS-K		Color balance adj of Bk mid dens area
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the intermediate density area of Bk. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR		
HD-OFS-Y		Color balance adj of Y high dens area
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the high density area of Y. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/ Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance
HD-OFS-M		Color balance adj of M high dens area
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the high density area of M. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/ Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance
HD-OFS-C		Color balance adj of C high dens area
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the high density area of C. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/ Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR		
HD-OFS-K	Color balance adj of Bk high dens area	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the high density area of Bk. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker. This setting is linked with Adjustment/ Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Color Balance
PL-OFS-Y	Clr blnce adj of Y low dens area:PDL	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the low density area of Y at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
PL-OFS-M	Clr blnce adj of M low dens area:PDL	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the low density area of M at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
PL-OFS-C	Clr blnce adj of C low dens area:PDL	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the low density area of C at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR		
PL-OFS-K	Clr blnce adj of Bk low dens area:PDL	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the low density area of Bk at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
PM-OFS-Y	Clr blnce adj of Y mid dens area:PDL	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the intermediate density area of Y at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
PM-OFS-M	Clr blnce adj of M mid dens area:PDL	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the intermediate density area of M at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0
PM-OFS-C	Clr blnce adj of C mid dens area:PDL	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the color balance of the intermediate density area of C at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > COLOR	
PM-OFS-K	Clr blnce adj of Bk mid dens area:PDL
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the color balance of the intermediate density area of Bk at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 8
	Default value
	0
PH-OFS-Y	Clr blnce adj of Y high dens area:PDL
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the color balance of the high density area of Y at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 8
	Default value
	0
PH-OFS-M	Clr blnce adj of M high dens area:PDL
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the color balance of the high density area of M at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 8
	Default value
	0
PH-OFS-C	Clr blnce adj of C high dens area:PDL
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the color balance of the high density area of C at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 8
	Default value
	0
PH-OFS-K	Clr blnce adj of Bk high dens area:PDL
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the color balance of the high density area of Bk at PDL print. As the greater value is set, the image gets darker.
	Use case
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	-8 to 8
	Default value
	0

T-8-25

HV-PRI

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI	
LSUB-YDC	Y Dwnstream Auxiliary Brush DC bias ofst
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the offset value of DC bias applied to the Y-color Downstream Auxiliary Brush. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case
	When an image failure due to the DC bias occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range
	-10 to 10
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	0
LSUB-MDC	M Dwnstream Auxiliary Brush DC bias ofst
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the offset value of DC bias applied to the M-color Downstream Auxiliary Brush. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case
	When an image failure due to the DC bias occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range
	-10 to 10
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	0
LSUB-CDC	C Dwnstream Auxiliary Brush DC bias ofst
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the offset value of DC bias applied to the C-color Downstream Auxiliary Brush. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case
	When an image failure due to the DC bias occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range
	-10 to 10
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	0
LSUB-KDC	BK Dwnstream Auxiliary Brush DC bias ofst
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the offset value of DC bias applied to the BK-color Downstream Auxiliary Brush. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case
	When an image failure due to the DC bias occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range
	-10 to 10
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	0

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI		
USUB-YAC		Adj Y/M/C Upstream Auxlry Brush AC bias
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the AC bias applied to the Y/M/C-color Upstream Auxiliary Brush. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case	When an image failure due to the AC bias occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-2 to 2
	Unit	V
	Default value	0
USUB-KAC		Adj Bk Upstream Auxiliary Brush AC bias
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the AC bias applied to the Bk-color Upstream Auxiliary Brush. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case	When an image failure due to the AC bias occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-2 to 2
	Unit	V
	Default value	0
USUB-YDC		Adj Y/M/C Upstream Auxlry Brush DC bias
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the DC bias applied to the Y/M/C-color Upstream Auxiliary Brush. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case	When an image failure due to the DC bias occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-5 to 5
	Unit	V
	Default value	0
USUB-KDC		Adj Bk Upstream Auxiliary Brush DC bias
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the DC bias applied to the Bk-color Upstream Auxiliary Brush. In a low humidity environment (e.g. winter in North America or Japan), the output may not be changed by increasing the value.
	Use case	When an image failure due to the DC bias occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-5 to 5
	Unit	V
	Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI		
DIS-TGY		Dischg crnt ctrl Y tgt crnt adj:1/1SPD
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the offset of the Y target current at discharge current control in plain paper (1/1 speed).
	Use case	When a image failure (sand-like image) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-10 to 10
	Unit	uA
	Default value	0
DIS-TGM		Dischg crnt ctrl M tgt crnt adj:1/1SPD
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the offset of the M target current at discharge current control in plain paper (1/1 speed).
	Use case	When a image failure (sand-like image) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-10 to 10
	Unit	uA
	Default value	0
DIS-TGC		Dischg crnt ctrl C tgt crnt adj:1/1SPD
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the offset of the C target current at discharge current control in plain paper (1/1 speed).
	Use case	When a image failure (sand-like image) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-10 to 10
	Unit	uA
	Default value	0
DIS-TGK		Dischg crnt ctrl Bktgt crnt adj:1/1SPD
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the offset of the Bk target current at discharge current control in plain paper (1/1 speed).
	Use case	When a image failure (sand-like image) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-10 to 10
	Unit	uA
	Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-PRI		
DIS-TGY2	Dischg crnt ctrl Y tgt crnt adj:1/2SPD	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the offset of the Y target current at discharge current control in plain paper (1/2 speed).
	Use case	When a image failure (sand-like image) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-10 to 10
	Unit	uA
	Default value	0
DIS-TGM2	Dischg crnt ctrl M tgt crnt adj:1/2SPD	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the offset of the M target current at discharge current control in plain paper (1/2 speed).
	Use case	When a image failure (sand-like image) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-10 to 10
	Unit	uA
	Default value	0
DIS-TGC2	Dischg crnt ctrl C tgt crnt adj:1/2SPD	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the offset of the C target current at discharge current control in plain paper (1/2 speed).
	Use case	When a image failure (sand-like image) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-10 to 10
	Unit	uA
	Default value	0
DIS-TGK2	Dischg crnt ctrl Bktgt crnt adj:1/2SPD	
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the offset of the Bk target current at discharge current control in plain paper (1/2 speed).
	Use case	When a image failure (sand-like image) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range	-10 to 10
	Unit	uA
	Default value	0

T-8-26

■ HV-TR

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR			
2TR-TGT1	Sec trns indiv set tgt crnt adj: set 1		
Lv.2	Details	To adjust the target current of secondary transfer for setting 1. Setting 1 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV1, TR-PPR1, TR-CLR1 and TR-DUP1. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set here is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller. When low-voltage mottled image or toner scattering on solid image occurs, increase the current. When high-voltage mottled image or density loss due to excessive transfer occurs, decrease the current. As the value is incremented by 1, the current changes by 2 micro A. +: Increase -: Decrease	
	Use case	When an image failure occurs on all paper types (mottled image, density loss due to excessive transfer, toner scattering on solid image, etc.)	
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.	
	Caution	Increase/decrease the value by 1 while checking the symptom each time.	
	Display/adj/set range	-10 to 10	
	Unit	uA	
	Default value	0	
	Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV1, TR-PPR1, TR-CLR1, TR-DUP1	

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
2TR-TGT2	Sec trns indiv set target currnt: set 2
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the target current of secondary transfer for setting 2. Setting 2 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV2, TR-PPR2, TR-CLR2 and TR-DUP2. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set here is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller. When low-voltage mottled image or toner scattering on solid image occurs, increase the current. When high-voltage mottled image or density loss due to excessive transfer occurs, decrease the current. As the value is incremented by 1, the current changes by 2 micro A. +: Increase -: Decrease
	Use case
	When an image failure occurs on all paper types (mottled image, density loss due to excessive transfer, toner scattering on solid image, etc.)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Increase/decrease the value by 1 while checking the symptom each time.
	Display/adj/set range
	-10 to 10
	Unit
	uA
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV2, TR-PPR2, TR-CLR2, TR-DUP2

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
2TR-TGT3	Sec trns indiv set target currnt: set 3
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the target current of secondary transfer for setting 3. Setting 3 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV3, TR-PPR3, TR-CLR3 and TR-DUP3. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set here is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller. When low-voltage mottled image or toner scattering on solid image occurs, increase the current. When high-voltage mottled image or density loss due to excessive transfer occurs, decrease the current. As the value is incremented by 1, the current changes by 2 micro A. +: Increase -: Decrease
	Use case
	When an image failure occurs on all paper types (mottled image, density loss due to excessive transfer, toner scattering on solid image, etc.)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Increase/decrease the value by 1 while checking the symptom each time.
	Display/adj/set range
	-10 to 10
	Unit
	uA
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV3, TR-PPR3, TR-CLR3, TR-DUP3

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
2TR-TGT4	Sec trns indiv set target currnt: set 4
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the target current of secondary transfer for setting 4. Setting 4 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV4, TR-PPR4, TR-CLR4 and TR-DUP4. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set here is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller. When low-voltage mottled image or toner scattering on solid image occurs, increase the current. When high-voltage mottled image or density loss due to excessive transfer occurs, decrease the current. As the value is incremented by 1, the current changes by 2 micro A. +: Increase -: Decrease
	Use case
	When an image failure occurs on all paper types (mottled image, density loss due to excessive transfer, toner scattering on solid image, etc.)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Increase/decrease the value by 1 while checking the symptom each time.
	Display/adj/set range
	-10 to 10
	Unit
	uA
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV4, TR-PPR4, TR-CLR4, TR-DUP4

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
2TR-TGT5	Sec trns indiv set tgt crnt adj: set 5
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the target current of secondary transfer for setting 5. Setting 5 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV5, TR-PPR5, TR-CLR5 and TR-DUP5. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set here is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller. When low-voltage mottled image or toner scattering on solid image occurs, increase the current. When high-voltage mottled image or density loss due to excessive transfer occurs, decrease the current. As the value is incremented by 1, the current changes by 2 micro A. +: Increase -: Decrease
	Use case
	When an image failure occurs on all paper types (mottled image, density loss due to excessive transfer, toner scattering on solid image, etc.)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Increase/decrease the value by 1 while checking the symptom each time.
	Display/adj/set range
	-10 to 10
	Unit
	uA
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV5, TR-PPR5, TR-CLR5, TR-DUP5

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
2TR-TGT6	Sec trns indiv set target currnt: set 6
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the target current of secondary transfer for setting 6. Setting 6 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV6, TR-PPR6, TR-CLR6 and TR-DUP6. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set here is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller. When low-voltage mottled image or toner scattering on solid image occurs, increase the current. When high-voltage mottled image or density loss due to excessive transfer occurs, decrease the current. As the value is incremented by 1, the current changes by 2 micro A. +: Increase -: Decrease
	Use case
	When an image failure occurs on all paper types (mottled image, density loss due to excessive transfer, toner scattering on solid image, etc.)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Increase/decrease the value by 1 while checking the symptom each time.
	Display/adj/set range
	-10 to 10
	Unit
	uA
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV6, TR-PPR6, TR-CLR6, TR-DUP6

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
2TR-TGT7	Sec trns indiv set target currnt: set 7
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the target current of secondary transfer for setting 7. Setting 7 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV7, TR-PPR7, TR-CLR7 and TR-DUP7. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set here is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller. When low-voltage mottled image or toner scattering on solid image occurs, increase the current. When high-voltage mottled image or density loss due to excessive transfer occurs, decrease the current. As the value is incremented by 1, the current changes by 2 micro A. +: Increase -: Decrease
	Use case
	When an image failure occurs on all paper types (mottled image, density loss due to excessive transfer, toner scattering on solid image, etc.)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Increase/decrease the value by 1 while checking the symptom each time.
	Display/adj/set range
	-10 to 10
	Unit
	uA
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV7, TR-PPR7, TR-CLR7, TR-DUP7

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
2TR-TGT8	Sec trns indiv set target currnt: set 8
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the target current of secondary transfer for setting 8. Setting 8 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV8, TR-PPR8, TR-CLR8 and TR-DUP8. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set here is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller. When low-voltage mottled image or toner scattering on solid image occurs, increase the current. When high-voltage mottled image or density loss due to excessive transfer occurs, decrease the current. As the value is incremented by 1, the current changes by 2 micro A. +: Increase -: Decrease
	Use case
	When an image failure occurs on all paper types (mottled image, density loss due to excessive transfer, toner scattering on solid image, etc.)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Increase/decrease the value by 1 while checking the symptom each time.
	Display/adj/set range
	-10 to 10
	Unit
	uA
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV8, TR-PPR8, TR-CLR8, TR-DUP8

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-PPR1	Sec trns indiv setting paper type: set 1
Lv.2	Details
	To set the paper type (paper weight) for setting 1. Setting 1 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV1, TR-PPR1, TR-CLR1 and TR-DUP1. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT1 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the paper type occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 13 1: Plain paper (65 to 82 g/m2) 2: Thin paper (60 to 64 g/m2) 3: Recycled paper (64 to 82 g/m2) 4: Heavy plain paper (83 to 105 g/m2) 5: Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120 g/m2)/Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163 g/m2) 6: Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220 g/m2) 7: Coated paper 1 (100 to 163 g/m2) 8: Coated paper 2 (164 to 220 g/m2) 9: Envelope 10: Postcard 11: Transparency 12: Tracing paper 13: Special paper (Bond paper/Textured paper/Labels/Punched paper/Washi)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV1, TR-CLR1, TR-DUP1, 2TR-TGT1

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-PPR2	Sec trns indiv setting paper type: set 2
Lv.2	Details
	To set the paper type (paper weight) for setting 2. Setting 2 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV2, TR-PPR2, TR-CLR2 and TR-DUP2. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT2 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the paper type occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 13 1: Plain paper (65 to 82 g/m2) 2: Thin paper (60 to 64 g/m2) 3: Recycled paper (64 to 82 g/m2) 4: Heavy plain paper (83 to 105 g/m2) 5: Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120 g/m2)/Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163 g/m2) 6: Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220 g/m2) 7: Coated paper 1 (100 to 163 g/m2) 8: Coated paper 2 (164 to 220 g/m2) 9: Envelope 10: Postcard 11: Transparency 12: Tracing paper 13: Special paper (Bond paper/Textured paper/Labels/Punched paper/Washi)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV2, TR-CLR2, TR-DUP2, 2TR-TGT2

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-PPR3	Sec trns indiv setting paper type: set 3
Lv.2	Details
	To set the paper type (paper weight) for setting 3. Setting 3 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV3, TR-PPR3, TR-CLR3 and TR-DUP3. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT3 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the paper type occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 13 1: Plain paper (65 to 82 g/m2) 2: Thin paper (60 to 64 g/m2) 3: Recycled paper (64 to 82 g/m2) 4: Heavy plain paper (83 to 105 g/m2) 5: Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120 g/m2)/Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163 g/m2) 6: Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220 g/m2) 7: Coated paper 1 (100 to 163 g/m2) 8: Coated paper 2 (164 to 220 g/m2) 9: Envelope 10: Postcard 11: Transparency 12: Tracing paper 13: Special paper (Bond paper/Textured paper/Labels/Punched paper/Washi)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV3, TR-CLR3, TR-DUP3, 2TR-TGT3

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-PPR4	Sec trns indiv setting paper type: set 4
Lv.2	Details
	To set the paper type (paper weight) for setting 4. Setting 4 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV4, TR-PPR4, TR-CLR4 and TR-DUP4. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT4 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the paper type occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 13 1: Plain paper (65 to 82 g/m2) 2: Thin paper (60 to 64 g/m2) 3: Recycled paper (64 to 82 g/m2) 4: Heavy plain paper (83 to 105 g/m2) 5: Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120 g/m2)/Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163 g/m2) 6: Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220 g/m2) 7: Coated paper 1 (100 to 163 g/m2) 8: Coated paper 2 (164 to 220 g/m2) 9: Envelope 10: Postcard 11: Transparency 12: Tracing paper 13: Special paper (Bond paper/Textured paper/Labels/Punched paper/Washi)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV4, TR-CLR4, TR-DUP4, 2TR-TGT4

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-PPR5	Sec trns indiv setting paper type: set 5
Lv.2	Details
	To set the paper type (paper weight) for setting 5. Setting 5 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV5, TR-PPR5, TR-CLR5 and TR-DUP5. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT5 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the paper type occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 13 1: Plain paper (65 to 82 g/m2) 2: Thin paper (60 to 64 g/m2) 3: Recycled paper (64 to 82 g/m2) 4: Heavy plain paper (83 to 105 g/m2) 5: Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120 g/m2)/Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163 g/m2) 6: Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220 g/m2) 7: Coated paper 1 (100 to 163 g/m2) 8: Coated paper 2 (164 to 220 g/m2) 9: Envelope 10: Postcard 11: Transparency 12: Tracing paper 13: Special paper (Bond paper/Textured paper/Labels/Punched paper/Washi)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV5, TR-CLR5, TR-DUP5, 2TR-TGT5

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-PPR6	Sec trns indiv setting paper type: set 6
Lv.2	Details
	To set the paper type (paper weight) for setting 6. Setting 6 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV6, TR-PPR6, TR-CLR6 and TR-DUP6. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT6 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the paper type occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 13 1: Plain paper (65 to 82 g/m2) 2: Thin paper (60 to 64 g/m2) 3: Recycled paper (64 to 82 g/m2) 4: Heavy plain paper (83 to 105 g/m2) 5: Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120 g/m2)/Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163 g/m2) 6: Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220 g/m2) 7: Coated paper 1 (100 to 163 g/m2) 8: Coated paper 2 (164 to 220 g/m2) 9: Envelope 10: Postcard 11: Transparency 12: Tracing paper 13: Special paper (Bond paper/Textured paper/Labels/Punched paper/Washi)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV6, TR-CLR6, TR-DUP6, 2TR-TGT6

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-PPR7	Sec trns indiv setting paper type: set 7
Lv.2	Details
	To set the paper type (paper weight) for setting 7. Setting 7 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV7, TR-PPR7, TR-CLR7 and TR-DUP7. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT7 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the paper type occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 13 1: Plain paper (65 to 82 g/m2) 2: Thin paper (60 to 64 g/m2) 3: Recycled paper (64 to 82 g/m2) 4: Heavy plain paper (83 to 105 g/m2) 5: Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120 g/m2)/Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163 g/m2) 6: Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220 g/m2) 7: Coated paper 1 (100 to 163 g/m2) 8: Coated paper 2 (164 to 220 g/m2) 9: Envelope 10: Postcard 11: Transparency 12: Tracing paper 13: Special paper (Bond paper/Textured paper/Labels/Punched paper/Washi)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV7, TR-CLR7, TR-DUP7, 2TR-TGT7

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-PPR8	Sec trns indiv setting paper type: set 8
Lv.2	Details
	To set the paper type (paper weight) for setting 8. Setting 8 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV8, TR-PPR8, TR-CLR8 and TR-DUP8. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT8 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the paper type occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 13 1: Plain paper (65 to 82 g/m ²) 2: Thin paper (60 to 64 g/m ²) 3: Recycled paper (64 to 82 g/m ²) 4: Heavy plain paper (83 to 105 g/m ²) 5: Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120 g/m ²)/Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163 g/m ²) 6: Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220 g/m ²) 7: Coated paper 1 (100 to 163 g/m ²) 8: Coated paper 2 (164 to 220 g/m ²) 9: Envelope 10: Postcard 11: Transparency 12: Tracing paper 13: Special paper (Bond paper/Textured paper/Labels/Punched paper/Washi)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV8, TR-CLR8, TR-DUP8, 2TR-TGT8
TR-ENV1	Sec trns indiv setting environment:set 1
Lv.2	Details
	To set the environment (absolute moisture content) for setting 1. Setting 1 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV1, TR-PPR1, TR-CLR1 and TR-DUP1. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT1 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the environment occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 3 1: Low humidity (Absolute moisture content: 5.8 g/m ³ and less) 2: Normal humidity (5.9 to 15 g/m ³) 3: High humidity (15.1 g/m ³ and more)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-PPR1, TR-CLR1, TR-DUP1, 2TR-TGT1

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-ENV2	Sec trns indiv setting environment:set 2
Lv.2	Details
	To set the environment (absolute moisture content) for setting 2. Setting 2 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV2, TR-PPR2, TR-CLR2 and TR-DUP2. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT2 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the environment occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 3 1: Low humidity (Absolute moisture content: 5.8 g/m ³ and less) 2: Normal humidity (5.9 to 15 g/m ³) 3: High humidity (15.1 g/m ³ and more)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-PPR2, TR-CLR2, TR-DUP2, 2TR-TGT2
TR-ENV3	Sec trns indiv setting environment:set 3
Lv.2	Details
	To set the environment (absolute moisture content) for setting 3. Setting 3 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV3, TR-PPR3, TR-CLR3 and TR-DUP3. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT3 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the environment occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 3 1: Low humidity (Absolute moisture content: 5.8 g/m ³ and less) 2: Normal humidity (5.9 to 15 g/m ³) 3: High humidity (15.1 g/m ³ and more)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-PPR3, TR-CLR3, TR-DUP3, 2TR-TGT3

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-ENV4	Sec trns indiv setting environment:set 4
Lv.2	Details
	To set the environment (absolute moisture content) for setting 4. Setting 4 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV4, TR-PPR4, TR-CLR4 and TR-DUP4. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT4 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the environment occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 3 1: Low humidity (Absolute moisture content: 5.8 g/m3 and less) 2: Normal humidity (5.9 to 15 g/m3) 3: High humidity (15.1 g/m3 and more)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-PPR4, TR-CLR4, TR-DUP4, 2TR-TGT4
TR-ENV5	Sec trns indiv setting environment:set 5
Lv.2	Details
	To set the environment (absolute moisture content) for setting 5. Setting 5 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV5, TR-PPR5, TR-CLR5 and TR-DUP5. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT5 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the environment occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 3 1: Low humidity (Absolute moisture content: 5.8 g/m3 and less) 2: Normal humidity (5.9 to 15 g/m3) 3: High humidity (15.1 g/m3 and more)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-PPR5, TR-CLR5, TR-DUP5, 2TR-TGT5

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-ENV6	Sec trns indiv setting environment:set 6
Lv.2	Details
	To set the environment (absolute moisture content) for setting 6. Setting 6 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV6, TR-PPR6, TR-CLR6 and TR-DUP6. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT6 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the environment occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 3 1: Low humidity (Absolute moisture content: 5.8 g/m3 and less) 2: Normal humidity (5.9 to 15 g/m3) 3: High humidity (15.1 g/m3 and more)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-PPR6, TR-CLR6, TR-DUP6, 2TR-TGT6
TR-ENV7	Sec trns indiv setting environment:set 7
Lv.2	Details
	To set the environment (absolute moisture content) for setting 7. Setting 7 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV7, TR-PPR7, TR-CLR7 and TR-DUP7. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT7 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case
	When an image failure that differs due to the environment occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 3 1: Low humidity (Absolute moisture content: 5.8 g/m3 and less) 2: Normal humidity (5.9 to 15 g/m3) 3: High humidity (15.1 g/m3 and more)
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-PPR7, TR-CLR7, TR-DUP7, 2TR-TGT7

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR		
TR-ENV8		Sec trns indiv setting environment:set 8
Lv.2	Details	To set the environment (absolute moisture content) for setting 8. Setting 8 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV8, TR-PPR8, TR-CLR8 and TR-DUP8. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT8 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case	When an image failure that differs due to the environment occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 3 1: Low humidity (Absolute moisture content: 5.8 g/m3 and less) 2: Normal humidity (5.9 to 15 g/m3) 3: High humidity (15.1 g/m3 and more)
	Default value	1
	Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-PPR8, TR-CLR8, TR-DUP8, 2TR-TGT8
TR-CLR1		Sec trns indiv setting color mode: set 1
Lv.2	Details	To set B&W/color for setting 1. Setting 1 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV1, TR-PPR1, TR-CLR1 and TR-DUP1. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT1 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case	When an image failure that differs due to the color mode occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 2 1: Color mode, 2: B&W mode
	Default value	1
	Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV1, TR-PPR1, TR-DUP1, 2TR-TGT1

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR		
TR-CLR2		Sec trns indiv setting color mode: set 2
Lv.2	Details	To set B&W/color for setting 2. Setting 2 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV2, TR-PPR2, TR-CLR2 and TR-DUP2. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT2 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case	When an image failure that differs due to the color mode occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 2 1: Color mode, 2: B&W mode
	Default value	1
	Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV2, TR-PPR2, TR-DUP2, 2TR-TGT2
TR-CLR3		Sec trns indiv setting color mode: set 3
Lv.2	Details	To set B&W/color for setting 3. Setting 3 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV3, TR-PPR3, TR-CLR3 and TR-DUP3. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT3 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case	When an image failure that differs due to the color mode occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 2 1: Color mode, 2: B&W mode
	Default value	1
	Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV3, TR-PPR3, TR-DUP3, 2TR-TGT3
TR-CLR4		Sec trns indiv setting color mode: set 4
Lv.2	Details	To set B&W/color for setting 4. Setting 4 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV4, TR-PPR4, TR-CLR4 and TR-DUP4. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT4 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.
	Use case	When an image failure that differs due to the color mode occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 2 1: Color mode, 2: B&W mode
	Default value	1
	Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV4, TR-PPR4, TR-DUP4, 2TR-TGT4

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-CLR5	Sec trns indiv setting color mode: set 5
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set B&W/color for setting 5. Setting 5 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV5, TR-PPR5, TR-CLR5 and TR-DUP5. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT5 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs due to the color mode occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 2 1: Color mode, 2: B&W mode</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV5, TR-PPR5, TR-DUP5, 2TR-TGT5</p>
TR-CLR6	Sec trns indiv setting color mode: set 6
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set B&W/color for setting 6. Setting 6 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV6, TR-PPR6, TR-CLR6 and TR-DUP6. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT6 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs due to the color mode occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 2 1: Color mode, 2: B&W mode</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV6, TR-PPR6, TR-DUP6, 2TR-TGT6</p>
TR-CLR7	Sec trns indiv setting color mode: set 7
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set B&W/color for setting 7. Setting 7 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV7, TR-PPR7, TR-CLR7 and TR-DUP7. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT7 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs due to the color mode occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 2 1: Color mode, 2: B&W mode</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV7, TR-PPR7, TR-DUP7, 2TR-TGT7</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-CLR8	Sec trns indiv setting color mode: set 8
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set B&W/color for setting 8. Setting 8 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV8, TR-PPR8, TR-CLR8 and TR-DUP8. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT8 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs due to the color mode occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 2 1: Color mode, 2: B&W mode</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV8, TR-PPR8, TR-DUP8, 2TR-TGT8</p>
TR-DUP1	Sec trns indiv setting feed side: set 1
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the feed side for setting 1. Setting 1 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV1, TR-PPR1, TR-CLR1 and TR-DUP1. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT1 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs on the 1st/2nd side occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 3 1: 1-sided, 2: Auto 2-sided, 3: Multi-purpose Tray 2-sided</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV1, TR-PPR1, TR-CLR1, 2TR-TGT1</p>
TR-DUP2	Sec trns indiv setting feed side: set 2
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the feed side for setting 2. Setting 2 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV2, TR-PPR2, TR-CLR2 and TR-DUP2. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT2 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs on the 1st/2nd side occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 3 1: 1-sided, 2: Auto 2-sided, 3: Multi-purpose Tray 2-sided</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV2, TR-PPR2, TR-CLR2, 2TR-TGT2</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-DUP3	Sec trns indiv setting feed side: set 3
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the feed side for setting 3. Setting 3 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV3, TR-PPR3, TR-CLR3 and TR-DUP3. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT3 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs on the 1st/2nd side occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 3 1: 1-sided, 2: Auto 2-sided, 3: Multi-purpose Tray 2-sided</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV3, TR-PPR3, TR-CLR3, 2TR-TGT3</p>
TR-DUP4	Sec trns indiv setting feed side: set 4
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the feed side for setting 4. Setting 4 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV4, TR-PPR4, TR-CLR4 and TR-DUP4. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT4 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs on the 1st/2nd side occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 3 1: 1-sided, 2: Auto 2-sided, 3: Multi-purpose Tray 2-sided</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV4, TR-PPR4, TR-CLR4, 2TR-TGT4</p>
TR-DUP5	Sec trns indiv setting feed side: set 5
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the feed side for setting 5. Setting 5 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV5, TR-PPR5, TR-CLR5 and TR-DUP5. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT5 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs on the 1st/2nd side occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 3 1: 1-sided, 2: Auto 2-sided, 3: Multi-purpose Tray 2-sided</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV5, TR-PPR5, TR-CLR5, 2TR-TGT5</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-DUP6	Sec trns indiv setting feed side: set 6
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the feed side for setting 6. Setting 6 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV6, TR-PPR6, TR-CLR6 and TR-DUP6. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT6 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs on the 1st/2nd side occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 3 1: 1-sided, 2: Auto 2-sided, 3: Multi-purpose Tray 2-sided</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV6, TR-PPR6, TR-CLR6, 2TR-TGT6</p>
TR-DUP7	Sec trns indiv setting feed side: set 7
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the feed side for setting 7. Setting 7 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV7, TR-PPR7, TR-CLR7 and TR-DUP7. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT7 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs on the 1st/2nd side occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 3 1: 1-sided, 2: Auto 2-sided, 3: Multi-purpose Tray 2-sided</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV7, TR-PPR7, TR-CLR7, 2TR-TGT7</p>
TR-DUP8	Sec trns indiv setting feed side: set 8
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the feed side for setting 8. Setting 8 is the combination condition of environment, paper type (paper weight), color mode and feed side that are set in TR-ENV8, TR-PPR8, TR-CLR8 and TR-DUP8. When this condition is satisfied, the target current that is set in 2TR-TGT8 is applied to the Secondary Transfer Outer Roller.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure that differs on the 1st/2nd side occurs (mottled image/density loss due to excessive transfer/toner scattering on solid image)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 3 1: 1-sided, 2: Auto 2-sided, 3: Multi-purpose Tray 2-sided</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-ENV8, TR-PPR8, TR-CLR8, 2TR-TGT8</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
1TR-TGY	Adj of prmry trns ATVC Y target current
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the offset of the target current for Y upon primary transfer ATVC control. As the value is incremented by 1, the offset is increased by 1micro A. Increase the value if spotty mark or mottled image occurs. Decrease the value if leopard pattern image occurs. The setting is enabled in an environment set by COPIER > OPTION > IMG-TR > TRENVSWS.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure due to the primary transfer occurs</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-10 to 10</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>uA</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> OPTION> IMG-TR> TRENVSWS</p>
1TR-TGM	Adj of prmry trns ATVC M target current
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the offset of the target current for M upon primary transfer ATVC control. As the value is incremented by 1, the offset is increased by 1 micro A. Increase the value if spotty mark or mottled image occurs. Decrease the value if leopard pattern image occurs. The setting is enabled in an environment set by COPIER > OPTION > IMG-TR > TRENVSWS.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure due to the primary transfer occurs</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-10 to 10</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>uA</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> OPTION> IMG-TR> TRENVSWS</p>
1TR-TGC	Adj of prmry trns ATVC C target current
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the offset of the target current for C upon primary transfer ATVC control. As the value is incremented by 1, the offset is increased by 1 micro A. Increase the value if spotty mark or mottled image occurs. Decrease the value if leopard pattern image occurs. The setting is enabled in an environment set by COPIER > OPTION > IMG-TR > TRENVSWS.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure due to the primary transfer occurs</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-10 to 10</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>uA</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> OPTION> IMG-TR> TRENVSWS</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
1TR-TGK1	Pmry trns ATVC Bk target current (B&W)
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the offset of the target current for Bk upon primary transfer ATVC control in B&W mode. As the value is incremented by 1, the offset is increased by 1 micro A. Increase the value if spotty mark or mottled image occurs. Decrease the value if leopard pattern image occurs. The setting is enabled in an environment set by COPIER > OPTION > IMG-TR > TRENVSWS.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure due to the primary transfer occurs</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-10 to 10</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>uA</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> OPTION> IMG-TR> TRENVSWS</p>
1TR-TGK4	Pmry trns ATVC Bk target current (clr)
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the offset of the target current for Bk upon primary transfer ATVC control in full color mode. As the value is incremented by 1, the offset is increased by 1 micro A. Increase the value if spotty mark or mottled image occurs. Decrease the value if white spots occur. The setting is enabled in an environment set by COPIER > OPTION > IMG-TR > TRENVSWS.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure due to the primary transfer occurs</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by -/+ key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-10 to 10</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>uA</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> OPTION> IMG-TR> TRENVSWS</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-COEF	Ppr type for sec trns low limit bias adj
Lv.1	Details
	To set paper type to which the offset of secondary transfer lower limit bias is applied. The offset value is set in TR-MLT.
	Use case
	When the secondary transfer failure occurs in a high temperature and high humidity environment
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 14 1: Plain paper (65 to 82 g/m2) 2: Thin paper (60 to 64 g/m2) 3: Recycled paper (64 to 82 g/m2) 4: Heavy plain paper (83 to 105 g/m2) 5: Heavy paper 1 (106 to 120 g/m2)/Heavy paper 2 (121 to 163 g/m2) 6: Heavy paper 3 (164 to 220 g/m2) 7: Coated paper 1 (100 to 163 g/m2) 8: Coated paper 2 (164 to 220 g/m2) 9: Envelope 10: Postcard 11: Transparency 12: Tracing paper 13: Special paper (Bond paper/Textured paper/Labels/Punched paper/Washi) 14: All paper types
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-MLT
FIX-T2	ON/OFF of sec trns bias fixation mode
Lv.1	Details
	To set ON/OFF of secondary transfer bias fixation mode. In secondary transfer bias fixation mode, the secondary transfer bias derived from the paper leading edge constant voltage control is applied to middle and trailing edge of a paper. Set 1 when a transfer failure occurs with significantly moistened media or low resistive paper.
	Use case
	When a secondary transfer failure occurs with moistened media or low resistive paper
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0

COPIER > ADJUST > HV-TR	
TR-MLT	Adj secondary transfer lower limit bias
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the offset value of secondary transfer lower limit bias applied to the specified paper type. The paper type subject to application is set in TR-COEF.
	Use case
	When the secondary transfer failure occurs in a high temperature and high humidity environment
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	-20 to 20
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> TR-COEF

T-8-27

FEED-ADJ

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ	
REGIST	Adj of registration start timing: 1/1 speed
Lv.1 Details	To adjust the timing to turn ON the Registration Motor at 1/1 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the leading edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm. +: Top margin becomes larger. (An image moves downward.) -: Top margin becomes smaller. (An image moves upward.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
Use case	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-50 to 50
Unit	mm
Default value	0
ADJ-C1	Cassette1 write start pstn in horz scan
Lv.1 Details	To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction when feeding paper from the Cassette 1. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
Use case	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-100 to 100
Unit	mm
Default value	0
ADJ-C2	Cassette2 write start pstn in horz scan
Lv.1 Details	To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction when feeding paper from the Cassette 2. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
Use case	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-100 to 100
Unit	mm
Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ	
ADJ-C3	Cassette 3 write start pstn in horz scan
Lv.1 Details	To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction when feeding paper from the Cassette 3. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
Use case	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-100 to 100
Unit	mm
Default value	0
ADJ-C4	Cassette 4 write start pstn in horz scan
Lv.1 Details	To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction when feeding paper from the Cassette 4. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
Use case	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-100 to 100
Unit	mm
Default value	0
ADJ-MF	Write start pstn in horz scan: MP tray
Lv.1 Details	To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction when feeding paper from the Multi-purpose Tray. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
Use case	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-100 to 100
Unit	mm
Default value	0

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ	
ADJ-C1RE	Write start position in horz scan:Cst1 2nd
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for 2nd side when feeding paper from the Cassette 1. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.</p> <p>+ : Left margin becomes larger (An image moves to the right.) - : Left margin becomes smaller (An image moves to the left.)</p> <p>When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-100 to 100</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
ADJ-C2RE	Write start pstn in horz scan:Cst2 2nd
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for 2nd side when feeding paper from the Cassette 2. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.</p> <p>+ : Left margin becomes larger (An image moves to the right.) - : Left margin becomes smaller (An image moves to the left.)</p> <p>When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-100 to 100</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
ADJ-C3RE	Write start pstn in horz scan:Cst3 2nd
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for 2nd side when feeding paper from the Cassette 3. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.</p> <p>+ : Left margin becomes larger (An image moves to the right.) - : Left margin becomes smaller (An image moves to the left.)</p> <p>When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-100 to 100</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ	
ADJ-C4RE	Write start pstn in horz scan:Cst4 2nd
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for 2nd side when feeding paper from the Cassette 4. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.</p> <p>+ : Left margin becomes larger (An image moves to the right.) - : Left margin becomes smaller (An image moves to the left.)</p> <p>When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-100 to 100</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
ADJ-MFRE	Write start pstn in horz scan:MPTray 2nd
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for 2nd side when feeding paper from the Multi-purpose Tray. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.</p> <p>+ : Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) - : Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.)</p> <p>When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-100 to 100</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
REG-THCK	Register start timing adj: 1/2 speed
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the top margin by changing the timing to turn ON the Registration Motor at 1/2 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.</p> <p>+ : Top margin becomes larger. (An image moves downward.) - : Top margin becomes smaller. (An image moves upward.)</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When adjusting the leading edge margin</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-50 to 50</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ	
REG-DUP1	Rgst start timing adj: Plain, 2nd side
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the top margin by changing the timing to turn ON the Registration Motor when feeding the second side of plain paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.</p> <p>+ : Top margin becomes larger. (An image moves downward.) - : Top margin becomes smaller. (An image moves upward.)</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When adjusting the leading edge margin</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-50 to 50</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
REG-DUP2	Rgst start timing adj: Heavy, 2nd side
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the top margin by changing the timing to turn ON the Registration Motor when feeding the second side of heavy paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.</p> <p>+ : Top margin becomes larger. (An image moves downward.) - : Top margin becomes smaller. (An image moves upward.)</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When adjusting the leading edge margin</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-50 to 50</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
REG-SPD	Speed adjustment of Registration Motor
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the 1/1 speed of the Registration Motor. As the value is incremented by 1, the speed is increased by 0.2%.</p> <p>+ : The speed is increased. - : The speed is decreased.</p> <p>As the value is reduced, blur image around 40 to 45mm of the trailing edge is alleviated.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When color displacement in vertical scanning direction occurs since the part is close to the end of life</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-5 to 5</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>%</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ	
REG-LEFT	Adj of img write start pstn in horz scan
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the image write start position in the horizontal scanning direction. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin on the left edge of paper is increased by 0.1 mm.</p> <p>+ : Left margin becomes larger (An image moves to the right.) - : Left margin becomes smaller (An image moves to the left.)</p> <p>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-50 to 50</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
REG-MFH1	Register start timing adj: MP Tray, Heavy3
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the top margin by changing the timing to turn ON the Registration Motor when feeding heavy paper 3 at 1/2 speed from the Multi-purpose Tray. As the value is incremented by 1, the top margin is increased by 0.1mm.</p> <p>+ : Top margin becomes smaller. (An image moves upward.) - : Top margin becomes larger. (An image moves downward.)</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When adjusting the leading edge margin</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-50 to 50</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

T-8-28

MISC

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC		
SEG-ADJ		
Set criteria for text/photo: front side		
Lv.1	Details	To set the judgment level of text/photo original in Text/Photo/Map mode. As the value is increased, the original tends to be detected as a photo document, and as the value is decreased, the original tends to be detected as a text document.
	Use case	When adjusting the classification level of text and photo in Text/Photo/Map mode
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-4 to 4
	Default value	0
K-ADJ		
Set criteria for black text: front side		
Lv.1	Details	To set the judgment level of black characters at text processing. As the value is increased, the text tends to be detected as black.
	Use case	When preferring the text to be judged as black
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-3 to 3
	Default value	0
ACS-ADJ		
Set criteria for B&W/color in ACS:front		
Lv.1	Details	To set the judgment level of B&W/color original in ACS mode. As the value is increased, the original tends to be detected as a B&W document, and as the value is decreased, the original tends to be detected as a color document.
	Use case	When adjusting the color detection level in ACS mode
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-3 to 3
	Default value	0
ACS-EN		
Set judgment area in ACS mode:front side		
Lv.2	Details	To set the judgment area in ACS mode. As the greater value is set, the judgment area is widened.
	Use case	When adjusting the judgment area in ACS mode
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-2 to 2
	Default value	1

COPIER > ADJUST > MISC		
ACS-CNT		
Set jdgmt pixel count area in ACS:front		
Lv.2	Details	To set the area which counts the pixel to judge the color presence in ACS mode. As the greater value is set, the judgment area is widened.
	Use case	When adjusting the area which counts the pixel to judge the color presence in ACS mode
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-2 to 2
	Default value	0
ACS-EN2		
Set ACS mode jdgmt area in DADF mode		
Lv.2	Details	To set the judgment area in ACS mode at DADF reading. As the greater value is set, the judgment area is widened.
	Use case	When adjusting the judgment area in ACS mode at DADF reading
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-2 to 2
	Default value	1
ACS-CNT2		
Set ACS jdgmt pixel count area in DADF		
Lv.2	Details	To set the area which counts the pixel to judge the color presence in ACS mode at DADF reading. As the greater value is set, the judgment area is widened.
	Use case	When adjusting the area which counts the pixel to judge the color presence in ACS mode at DADF reading
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-2 to 2
	Default value	0
SH-ADJ		
Adjustment of sharpness		
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the sharpness of the following images which are set in the user mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Image to be read in the copyboard reading mode Image on the first side of a document to be read in the reverse-path duplex stream reading mode As the greater value is set, the image gets sharper. If the value is too large, moire is likely to occur in an output image of COPY and SEND.
	Use case	When moire frequently occurs on images of COPY and SEND output
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	-3 to 3
	Default value	0

T-8-29

 FUNCTION

 INSTALL

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL		
STIR-4		
		Stirring of all color developer
Lv.1	Details	To stir developer in the Developing Assemblies of 4 colors (Y/M/C/Bk).
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> At installation of the machine At occurrence of an image failure When using the Drum Unit that has been left outside of the machine (especially in an HH environment) for a long period of time
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Required time	90 sec
SPLY-H-Y		
		Toner initial supply to Y Hopper Unit
Lv.1	Details	To automatically supply toner to the Y-Hopper Unit. After execution, the operation is performed by opening and closing the Front Door.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When E020-00B1 or E020-0060 occurred When Y -Color density occurred When replacing or cleaning the Y-Hopper Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Required time	Approx. 45 seconds
SPLY-H-M		
		Toner initial supply to M Hopper Unit
Lv.1	Details	To automatically supply toner to the M-Hopper Unit. After execution, the operation is performed by opening and closing the Front Door.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When E020-01B1 or E020-0160 occurred When M-color density occurred When replacing or cleaning the M-Hopper Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Required time	Approx. 45 seconds
SPLY-H-C		
		Toner initial supply to C Hopper Unit
Lv.1	Details	To automatically supply toner to the C-Hopper Unit. After execution, the operation is performed by opening and closing the Front Door.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When E020-02B1 or E020-0260 occurred When C-color density occurred When replacing or cleaning the C-Hopper Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Required time	Approx. 45 seconds

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL		
		Toner initial supply to Bk Hopper Unit
Lv.1	Details	To automatically supply toner to the Bk-Hopper Unit. After execution, the operation is performed by opening and closing the Front Door.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When E020-03B1 or E020-0360 occurred When Bk-color density occurred When replacing or cleaning the Bk-Hopper Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Required time	Approx. 45 seconds
STRD-POS		
		Scan position auto adj in DADF mode
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the DADF scanning position automatically.
	Use case	At DADF installation/uninstallation
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Set a paper for stream reading position adjustment, and then close the DADF. 2) Select the item, and then press OK key. The operation automatically stops after the adjustment. 3) Write the value displayed by COPIER>ADJUST>ADJ-XY>STRD-POS in the service label.
	Caution	Write the adjusted value in the service label.
	Display/adj/set range	At normal termination: OK, At abnormal termination: NG
	Required time	Approx. 10 seconds
	Related service mode	COPIER> ADJUST> ADJ-XY> STRD-POS
CARD		
		Card number setting
Lv.1	Details	To set the card number to be used for Card Reader. A series of numbers from the entered number to the number of cards specified by CARD-RNG can be used.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> At installation of the Card Reader After replacement of the HDD
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the number, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	The card management information (department ID and password) is initialized.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2001
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> CARD-RNG

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL		
AINR-OFF		ON/OFF warm-up rotn deact:dor open/close
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to disable the warm-up rotation when opening and closing the door. By selecting 1, printing can be executed without auto adjustment at warm-up rotation when analyzing the cause of a problem.
	Use case	When printing and checking without auto adjustment at warm-up rotation when analyzing the cause of a problem
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF (warm-up rotation enabled), 1: ON (warm-up rotation disabled)
	Default value	0
E-RDS		Set use/no use of Embedded-RDS function
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to use the Embedded-RDS function.
	Use case	When using Embedded-RDS
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Be sure to use E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR as a set.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Function not used, 1: Function used (All the counter information is sent.)
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR
RGW-PORT		Set port number of Sales Co's server
Lv.1	Details	To set the port number of the sales company's server to be used for Embedded-RDS.
	Use case	When using Embedded-RDS
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Be sure to use E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR as a set.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 65535
	Default value	443
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, COM-TEST, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL		
COM-TEST		Dspl connect result w/ Sales Co's server
Lv.1	Details	To display the result of the connection test with the sales company's server.
	Use case	When using Embedded-RDS
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Be sure to use E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR as a set.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When connection is completed: OK, When connection is failed: NG
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-LOG, RGW-ADR
COM-LOG		Dspl connect error w/ Sales Co's server
Lv.1	Details	To display error information when the connection with the sales company's server failed.
	Use case	When using Embedded-RDS
	Adj/set/operate method	Display only
	Caution	Be sure to use E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR as a set.
	Display/adj/set range	Year, date, time, error code, error detail information (maximum 128 characters)
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, RGW-ADR
RGW-ADR		URL setting of Sales Company's server
Lv.1	Details	To set the URL of the sales company's server to be used for Embedded-RDS.
	Use case	When using Embedded-RDS
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select the URL. 2) Enter the URL, and then press OK key. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	- Do not use Shift-JIS character strings. - Be sure to use E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG and RGW-ADR as a set.
	Display/adj/set range	URL
	Default value	https://a01.ugwdevice.net/ugw/agentif010
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG
CNT-DATE		Set counter send start date to SC server
Lv.1	Details	To set the year, month, date, hour and minute to send counter information to the sales company's server. This is displayed only when the Embedded-RDS third-party extended function is available.
	Use case	When the Embedded-RDS third-party expanded function is available
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	YYYYMMDDHHMM (12 digits) YYYY: Year, MM: Month, DD: Date, HH: Hour, MM: Minute
	Default value	000000000000

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL	
CNT-INTV	Set counter send interval to SC server
Lv.1	Details
	To set the interval of sending counter information to the sales company's server in a unit of one hour. This is displayed only when the Embedded-RDS third-party extended function is available.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When restarting the potential control after executing COPIER> OPTION> IMG-FIX> PO-CNT. When D-max control conditions are changed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 168 (= 1 week)
	Unit
	hour
	Default value
	24
BRWS-ACT	ON/OFF of service browser
Lv.1	Details
	To set ON/OFF of service browser. ON/OFF of service browser switches whenever the main power switch is turned OFF/ON after execution. If connection with the UGW server is successful, "OK!" is displayed. If "NG!" is displayed, execute a communication test using COM-TEST. The setting is enabled after reboot. Whether the service browser is ON or OFF can be checked in COPIER> DISPLAY> USER> BRWS-STSTS (1: ON, 2: OFF).
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When using the service browser At operation check
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	After execution, turn OFF/ON the main power switch. After reboot, be sure to check the usage status in COPIER> DISPLAY> USER> BRWS-STSTS.
	Display/adj/set range
	At normal termination: OK!, At abnormal termination: NG!
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> COM-TEST COPIER> DISPLAY> USER> BRWS-STSTS
CDS-CTL	Setting of country/area when CDS is used
Lv.1	Details
	To set the country/area to enable the CDS.
	Use case
	Use this item to switch countries when obtaining firmware from another country due to the distance to the location server.
	Display/adj/set range
	CA (Canada), LA (Latin America), HK (Hong Kong) and the country/area specified in COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> CONFIG.
	Default value
	It differs according to the location.
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> CONFIG
HD-CRYP	Exe HDD Encrypt Board ini install mod
Lv.1	Details
	To automatically execute operation necessary for initial installation of the HDD Encryption Board. By turning OFF the main power switch after execution, the HDD Encryption Board can be installed.
	Use case
	At installation of the HDD Encryption Board

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL	
RDSHDPOS	Auto adj of Reader shading position
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the shading position automatically.
	Use case
	When replacing the CCD unit.
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Required time
	Less than 10 seconds
BIT-SVC	ON/OFF of Web Service for eRDS
Lv.1	Details
	To set ON/OFF of Web Service for eRDS. When OFF is set, authentication information from eRDS cannot be obtained.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0:OFF 1:ON
	Default value
	1

T-8-30

■ CCD

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD	
DF-WLVL1	White level adj in book mode: color
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the white level for copyboard scanning automatically by setting the paper which is usually used by the user on the Copyboard Glass.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Copyboard Glass When replacing the CCD Unit When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Set paper on the Copyboard Glass. 2) Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Be sure to execute DF-WLVL2 in a row.
	Display/adj/set range
	During operation: ACTIVE, When the operation finished normally: OK!
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL2
DF-WLVL2	White level adj in DADF mode: color
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust the white level for DADF scanning automatically by setting the paper which is usually used by the user on the DADF.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Copyboard Glass When replacing the CCD Unit When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Set paper on the DADF. 2) Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Be sure to execute this item after DF-WLVL1.
	Display/adj/set range
	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1 COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFTAR-R, DFTAR-G, DFTAR-B
DF-LNR	Deriving of DADF front/back linearity
Lv.1	Details
	To derive the front/back side linearity characteristics in the use of DADF based on the scanning data of the DADF complex chart (No. 2, No. 10).
	Use case
	When replacing the Reader Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the value of the reader's service label. (under COPIER> ADJUST> CCD) 2) Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
MTF-CLC	Deriving of MTF filter coefficient
Lv.1	Details
	To derive the MTF filter coefficient to be set for ASIC based on the MTF value of the DADF complex chart.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the CCD Unit When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Related service mode
	COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> MTF2-M1 to M9, MTF2-S1 to S9
	Supplement/memo
	The scanning data of the DADF complex chart is indicated in the label of the Scanner Unit (DADF/Reader).

T-8-31

■ CLEANING

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEANING	
TBLT-CLN	Toner ejection and ITB cleaning
Lv.1	Details
	To forcibly consume toner by forming solid color band on the ITB 10 times. In addition, remove the solid color band by ITB cleaning control.
	Use this mode when Y/M/C-toner is deteriorated due to significantly low printing frequency of color image.
	In the case that only ITB cleaning is needed, execute it in user mode (Settings/Registration> Adjustment/Maintenance> Maintenance> Clean Inside Main Unit).
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When ITB cleaning failure occurs When toner is deteriorated due to low printing frequency of color image
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	During operation: ACTIVE, When the operation finished normally: OK!
	Related user mode
	Settings/Registration> Adjustment/Maintenance> Maintenance> Clean Inside Main Unit
DRM-ALL	All-color Photosensitive Drum cleaning
Lv.1	Details
	To clean the Photosensitive Drum for all colors.
	Use case
	When image failure (fogging) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!

T-8-32

PANEL

COPIER > FUNCTION > PANEL		
LCD-CHK		
Check of LCD Panel dot missing		
Lv.1	Details	To check whether there is a missing dot on the LCD Panel of the Control Panel.
	Use case	When replacing the LCD Panel
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Check that the LCD Panel lights up in the order of white, black, red, green and blue. 3) Press STOP key to terminate checking.
LED-CHK		
Check of Control Panel LED		
Lv.1	Details	To check whether the LED on the Control Panel lights up.
	Use case	When replacing the LCD Panel
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Check that the LED lights up in the order. 3) Terminate checking with LED-OFF.
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> PANEL> LED-OFF
LED-OFF		
End check of Control Panel LED		
Lv.1	Details	To terminate checking of the LED on the Control Panel.
	Use case	During execution of LED-CHK
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> PANEL> LED-CHK
KEY-CHK		
Check of key entry		
Lv.1	Details	To check the key input on the Control Panel.
	Use case	When replacing the LCD Panel
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select the item and press the key on the Control Panel. 2) Check that the input value is displayed. 3) Release the selection to terminate checking.
TOUCHCHK		
Adj of coordinate pstn of Touch Panel		
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the coordinate position on the Touch Panel of the Control Panel.
	Use case	When replacing the LCD Panel
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Press the 9 "+" in sequence.

T-8-33

PART-CHK

COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK		
FAN		
Specification of operation Fan		
Lv.1	Details	To specify the Fan to operate.
	Use case	When replacing the Fan/checking the operation
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 10 1: 3 Way Unit Cooling Fan (FM4) 2: Drum Unit Cooling Fan (FM7) 3 to 10: Not used
	Default value	1
Related service mode		
COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> FAN-ON		
FAN-ON		
Operation check of Fan		
Lv.1	Details	To start operation check of the Fan specified by FAN.
	Use case	When replacing the Fan/checking the operation
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Required time	1 minute
Related service mode		
COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> FAN		
MTR		
Specification of operation Motor		
Lv.1	Details	To specify the Motor to operate.
	Use case	When replacing the Motor/checking the operation
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 23 1: Cassette 1 Pickup Motor (M15) 2: Shutter Motor (M5) 3: Fixing Outlet Motor (M18) 4: Duplexing Feed Motor (M19) 5: Third Delivery Motor (M22) 6: Second Delivery Motor (M20) 7: Fixing Motor (M17) 8: Cassette 2 Pickup Motor (M16) 9: Cassette 3 Pickup Motor (M101) 10: Cassette 4 Pickup Motor (M102) 11: Drum Motor (M4) * 12: Developing Motor (M3) 13: ITB Motor (M2) * 14 to 21: Not used 22: Scanner Motor (M1) 23: Not used Motors with asterisk mark operate simultaneously.
	Default value	1
Related service mode		
COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> MTR-ON		

COPIER > FUNCTION > PART-CHK		
MTR-ON		Operation check of Motor
Lv.1	Details	To start operation check of the Motor specified by MTR. The operation automatically stops after operation of 5 seconds.
	Use case	When replacing the Motor/checking the operation
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution	While the Toner Container Drive Motor is active, be sure to remove the Toner Container. Otherwise, toner leakage may occur in the machine.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Required time	1 minute
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> MTR
SL		Specification of operation Solenoid
Lv.1	Details	To specify the Solenoid to operate.
	Use case	When replacing the Solenoid/checking the operation
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 10 1: Cassette 1 Pickup Solenoid (SL4) 2: Cassette 2 Pickup Solenoid (SL5) 3: Cassette 3 Pickup Solenoid (SL101) 4: Cassette 4 Pickup Solenoid (SL102) 5: Manual Feed Pickup Solenoid (SL3) 6: Primary Transfer Disengagement Solenoid (SL1) 7: First Delivery Flapper Solenoid (SL6) 8: Second Delivery Flapper Solenoid (SL7) 9: Third Delivery Flapper Solenoid (SL8) 10: Registration Shutter Solenoid (SL2)
	Default value	1
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> SL-ON
	SL-ON	
Lv.1	Details	To start operation check for the Solenoid specified by SL. The operation stops after "ON for 0.5 sec" => "OFF for 10 sec" => "ON for 0.5 sec" => "OFF for 10 sec" => "ON for 0.5 sec".
	Use case	When replacing the Solenoid/checking the operation
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Required time	1 minute
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> PART-CHK> SL

T-8-34

■ CLEAR

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR		
ERR		Clear of error code
Lv.1	Details	To clear error codes (E000, E001, E002, E003, E717, E719).
	Use case	At error occurrence
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
DC-CON		RAM clear of DC Controller PCB
Lv.1	Details	To clear the RAM data of the DC Controller PCB.
	Use case	When clearing the RAM data of the DC Controller PCB
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Before execution of this item, be sure to output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT. After execution, enter necessary setting values. The RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.
Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT	
R-CON		RAM clear of Reader Unit
Lv.1	Details	To clear the RAM data of the Reader Unit.
	Use case	When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Before execution of this item, be sure to output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT. After execution, enter necessary setting values. The RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT
JAM-HIST		Clear of jam history
Lv.1	Details	To clear the jam history.
	Use case	When clearing the jam history
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
ERR-HIST		Clear of error code history
Lv.1	Details	To clear the error code history.
	Use case	When clearing the error code history
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
PWD-CLR		Clear of system administrator password
Lv.1	Details	To clear the password of the system administrator set in the user mode.
	Use case	When clearing the password of the system administrator
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR	
ADRS-BK	Clear of address book
Lv.1	Details
	To clear the address book data.
	Use case
	When clearing the address book data
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	The address book data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.
CNT-MCON	Clear of Main Controller service counter
Lv.1	Details
	To clear the service counter counted by the Main Controller PCB.
	Use case
	When clearing the service counter counted by the Main Controller PCB
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Related service mode
	COPIER> COUNTER
CNT-DCON	Clear of DC Controller service counter
Lv.1	Details
	To clear the service counter counted by the DC Controller PCB.
	Use case
	When clearing the service counter counted by the DC Controller PCB
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
OPTION	Clear of service mode setting VL(OPTION)
Lv.1	Details
	To return the value specified in service mode (OPTION) to the default value (value at the time of RAM clear).
	Use case
	When returning the service mode settings (OPTION) to the default values
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Before execution of this item, be sure to output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT. After execution, enter necessary setting values. This item is executed for the data on the Main Controller PCB, DC Controller PCB and Reader Controller PCB.
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT
MMI	Clear of user mode setting value
Lv.1	Details
	To clear the user mode setting values (excluding values for Control Panel, common settings, and FAX).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Common Settings Timer Settings Adjustment/Cleaning Report Settings System Settings Copy Settings Communications Settings Printer Settings
	Use case
	When clearing various setting values of user mode
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	The setting value is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR	
MN-CON	RAM clear of MNCON PCB SRAM Board
Lv.1	Details
	To clear the RAM data of the Main Controller PCB SRAM Board. All data on the SRAM Board is initialized.
	Use case
	When clearing the RAM data of the Main Controller PCB SRAM Board
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. The machine is automatically rebooted. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Address Book, Forwarding Settings, Settings/Registration (Preferences), Adjustment/Maintenance, Function Settings, Set Destination, Management Settings, TPM Settings, etc. are deleted. Since the file management information is initialized, images on the HDD cannot be read. Before execution of this item, be sure to output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT. After execution, enter necessary setting values. The RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON. If this item is executed while a login application other than Default Authentication is activated, any symptom occurs. (e.g. The login screen is not displayed.) In this case, switch the login application to Default Authentication once.
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT
CARD	Clear of card ID-related data
Lv.1	Details
	To clear the data related to the card ID (department).
	Use case
	When clearing the data related to the card ID
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	The value is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR	
CA-KEY	Deletion of CA certificate and key pair
Lv.2	Details
	To simultaneously delete the CA certificate and key pair which are additionally registered by the user.
	Use case
	When a service person replaces/discards the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Check that OK is displayed. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unless this item is executed at the time of replacement/discard of the device, the CA certificate and key pair which are additionally registered by the user remain in the HDD, which is a problem in terms of security. Do not execute this item carelessly because the CA certificate and key pair which are additionally registered are deleted when it is executed. If they are deleted mistakenly, they need to be again registered by the user. If no CA certificate and key pair are additionally registered, the machine condition becomes the same as the one at the time of factory shipment. When NG is displayed in 2), there is a possibility that deletion was not executed. In this case, surely execute the deletion by initializing the HDD, etc.
	Display/adj/set range
	At normal termination: OK!, At abnormal termination: NG
	Supplement/memo
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The CA certificate is used in the MEAP application with E-RDS and SSL client connection, and the key pair is used in the SSL function of IPP, RUI and MEAP. When the main power switch is turned OFF/ON, the CA certificate and key pair which were registered at the time of factory shipment are decompressed from the archive (/BOOTDEV/KCMNG), and become available in the E-RDS/SSL function.
ERDS-DAT	Initialization of E-RDS SRAM data
Lv.1	Details
	To initialize the SCM value of the Embedded-RDS stored in the SRAM. SCM values are ON/OFF of E-RDS, server's port number, server's SOAP URL, and communication schedule with the server (how often the data is acquired), etc. The value set by COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, RGW-PORT, RGW-ADR, COM-LOG is cleared.
	Use case
	When upgrading the Bootable in the E-RDS environment
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	The method of using the SRAM in E-RDS differs depending on the Bootable version. Therefore, unless the SRAM data is cleared at the time of version upgrade, data inconsistency occurs.
	Display/adj/set range
	At normal termination: OK!, At abnormal termination: NG
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> E-RDS, RGW-PORT, RGW-ADR, COM-LOG

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR	
KEY-CLR	Encrypt key clear of HDD Encrypt Board
Lv.2	Details
	To clear the encryption key of the HDD Encryption Board (Security Kit) for replacement. Processing is executed at the time of replacement of the encryption board, and a new encryption key is generated.
	Use case
	When replacing the encryption key for the HDD Encryption Board
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Check that OK is displayed. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Since all data in the HDD becomes unavailable when executing this item, be sure to initialize the HDD after turning OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	At normal termination: OK!, At abnormal termination: NG
REG-CLR	Clear of image position correction value
Lv.2	Details
	To clear the value when the correction value that is adjusted by image position correction control becomes a faulty value due to some reasons. When color displacement cannot be corrected by image position correction control, clear the correction value and turn OFF/ON the machine or execute "Quick Adjust" and "Auto Correct Color Mismatch" in user mode so that image position correction is executed again.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When color displacement cannot be corrected by image position correction control When a failure occurs in correction in an oblique direction
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Related user mode
	Settings/Registration> Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Auto Adjust Gradation> Quick Adjust Settings/Registration> Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Auto Correct Color Mismatch
USBM-CLR	Initialize USB MEAP priority rgst info
Lv.1	Details
	To initialize the registered ID data retained in the OS field by calling the API provided by the OS.
	Use case
	When a failure occurs in USB MEAP priority registration
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
JV-CACHE	Cache clear of JAVA application
Lv.1	Details
	To clear the cache information used by JAVA application.
	Use case
	When initializing the JAVA application
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
FXTX-CLR	Clearing fax job information
Lv.1	Details
	To clear fax job information stored on SRAM. Use this mode to restore from E611-0001.
	Use case
	When E611-0001 occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR		
LANG-CLR		Uninstallation of language files
Lv.2	Details	To uninstall the language files other than Japanese and English files. After execution, the machine automatically enters the download mode.
	Use case	When installing a new language file while there are 7 installed language files
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Select the firmware in which the necessary language is included by SST, and perform downloading.
	Caution	The language files are not uninstalled if a language file is not installed by SST after the execution of this service mode. When installing the language file to the host machine, the language files other than the file selected by SST are deleted. (Japanese and English files will be kept.)
	Supplement/memo	Screen is displayed in English after the execution, so switch the language.
FIN-MCON		Clearing Finisher information
Lv.1	Details	To clear the Finisher information which the Main Controller retains. After execution, set the Delivery Tray again in user mode (Settings/Registration> Function Settings> Common> Paper Output Settings> Output Tray Settings).
	Use case	When switching to another type of Finisher in the field
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Related user mode	Settings/Registration> Function Settings> Common> Paper Output Settings> Output Tray Settings

T-8-35

■ MISC-R

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R		
SCANLAMP		Light-up check of LED
Lv.1	Details	To light up the LED for 3 seconds.
	Use case	When replacing the LED
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Required time	3 seconds
RD-SHPOS		Moving to Reader Scanner Unit fix pstn
Lv.2	Details	To move the Reader Scanner Unit to the position where it is fixed when moving. When moving the Reader after installation, the Reader Scanner Unit may move and get damage. By moving the Scanner Unit to the specified position and securing it in place with a screw before moving, damage can be prevented.
	Use case	When moving the Reader after installation
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Be sure to move the Scanner Unit to the fixing position and secure it in place with a screw when moving the Reader after installation. Otherwise, the Scanner Unit may get damage.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Required time	bit of seconds

T-8-36

MISC-P

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P		
P-PRINT		
Output of service mode setting value		
Lv.1	Details	To print the service mode setting value.
	Use case	Before executing the CLEAR service mode, etc.
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
HIST-PRT		
Output of jam and error history		
Lv.1	Details	To print the jam history and error history.
	Use case	When printing the jam/error history
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
TRS-DATA		
Moving memory reception data to Inbox		
Lv.2	Details	To move the data received in memory to Inbox.
	Use case	When moving the data received in memory to Inbox
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
USER-PRT		
Output of user mode list		
Lv.1	Details	To print the user mode list.
	Use case	When printing the user mode list
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
LBL-PRNT		
Output of service label		
Lv.1	Details	To print the service label.
	Use case	When printing the service label
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Place A4/LTR paper in Cassette 1. 2) Select the item, and then press OK key.
D-PRINT		
Output of service mode (DISPLAY)		
Lv.1	Details	To output items displayed by DISPLAY in the service mode . Items output by P-PRINT, LBL-PRNT and HIST-PRT and ALARM are excluded.
	Use case	When checking items in DISPLAY
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
ENV-PRT		
Inside temp/hmdy & fix roller temp log		
Lv.1	Details	To print the data of temperature and humidity in the machine/ temperature of the surface of the Fixing Roller as logs.
	Use case	When grasping information of temperature in the machine/fixing temperature for trouble analysis
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
PJH-P-1		
Detail info of print job history:100 job		
Lv.1	Details	To print the print job history for the latest 100 jobs with detailed information. In the case of less than 100 jobs, the history of all print jobs is printed.
	Use case	When printing the print job history with detailed information
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Supplement/memo	Output the print job history with detailed information which is not displayed/printed in the job history screen under "System Monitor>Print>Log>Printer" and in the report of the print job history.

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P		
PJH-P-2		
Detail info of print job history:all job		
Lv.1	Details	To print the history of all print jobs stored in the machine with detailed information (for maximum 5000 jobs). The difference between PJH-P-1 and this item is only the number of jobs printed.
	Use case	When printing the print job history with detailed information
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Supplement/memo	Output the print job history with detailed information which is not displayed/printed in the job history screen under "System Monitor>Print>Log>Printer" and in the report of the print job history.
USBH-PRT		
Output of USB device information report		
Lv.1	Details	To output information of the connected USB device in the form of a report.
	Use case	When outputting USB device information in the form of a report
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
SHT-OPEN		
Exe of Dustproof Glass cleaning mode		
Lv.1	Details	To open the Y, M, C, Bk Dustproof Shutters to clean the Dustproof Glass of the Laser Scanner Unit. When the Dustproof Glass is stained, set 1 to clean it with glass cleaning stick. When service mode is completed, the setting value is automatically returns to 0 at the time of opening and closing the door.
	Use case	When missing image occurs due to the stained Dustproof Glass
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
T1-UP		
Execution of all ITB disengagement mode		
Lv.1	Details	To disengage the ITB from the Photosensitive Drums of all colors to prevent making small cuts on the ITB when removing and then installing the Drum Unit/ITB. When service mode is completed, the setting value is automatically returns to 0 at the time of opening and closing the door.
	Use case	When removing and then installing/replacing the Drum Unit/ITB
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
RPT-FILE		
Saving of service report as a file		
Lv.1	Details	To save various service reports in HDD as a file. The saved files can be obtained using PC to which SST has been installed or USB memory after starting the machine in download mode.
	Use case	When obtaining the service report as a file instead of printout
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Supplement/memo	File size: Approx. 1 MB at a maximum

T-8-37

SYSTEM

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM	
DOWNLOAD	Shift to download mode
Lv.1	Details
	To make the machine enter the download mode and wait for a command. Perform downloading by SST.
	Use case
	At upgrade
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Perform downloading by SST.
	Caution
	Do not turn OFF the power before HOLD is displayed.
	Display/adj/set range
	When waiting for a command: STAND-BY/STNDBY, In communication: CONNECTED, Communication terminated: HOLD
	Supplement/memo
	SST: Service Support Tool
CHK-TYPE	Specify HD-CLEAR/HD-CHECK partition No.
Lv.1	Details
	To specify the partition number of the HDD to execute HD-CLEAR/HD-CHECK.
	Use case
	When executing HD-CLEAR/HD-CHECK
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 65535 HDD Model 0: All partitions(Only as for the executable field), 1: The system-related area, 2: SWAP (temporary file / memory alternative area), 3: MEAP-related area, 4: Disabled, 5: Image and document-related area, 6: PDL-related area, 7: Image log-related area, 8: PDL spool-related area, 9: General application temporary area, 10: SEND-related area, 11: General application-related area, 12: Update-related area, 13: License-related area, 14: Debug-related area, 15 to 65535: Not used * If 1, 2, 4, or 13 is selected, nothing is cleared by executing HD-CLEAR. * If 5 or 7 is selected, HD-CLEAR and HD-CHECK are executed simultaneously. * If one of 8, 9, 11, 12, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.
	Flash Model 0: All partitions(Only as for the executable field), 1: System area (initial startup program, etc.), 2: System area (system program/for update), 3: System area (system program, initial data, etc.), 4: Disabled, 5: Image and document-related area, 6: MEAP-related area, 7: PDL-related area, 8: General application-related area, 9: SEND-related area, 10: General application-related area, 11: License-related area, 12: Debug-related area, 13: Update-related area, 14: System setting value (service mode, etc.) storage area, 15 to 65535: Not used * If 1, 2, 3, 4, or 11 is selected, nothing is cleared by executing HD-CLEAR. * If one of 8, 10, 12, 13, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> HD-CLEAR, HD-CHECK

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM	
HD-CHECK	HDD file system check
Lv.1	Details
	To execute HDD file system check.
	Use case
	After executing CHK-TYPE
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter 1, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Be sure to execute this item after CHK-TYPE.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Not executed 1: File system check of the area specified in CHK-TYPE at next startup
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> CHK-TYPE
HD-CLEAR	Initialization of specified partition
Lv.1	Details
	To initialize the partition specified by CHK-TYPE at next startup.
	Use case
	When initializing the HDD partition
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter 1, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Be sure to execute this item after CHK-TYPE.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Not executed, 1: Initialized at next startup
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> CHK-TYPE
CDS-UPDT	Start-up of CDS application
Lv.1	Details
	To activate the application to access to CDS.
	Use case
	When executing the following operations using CDS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firmware update • Installation of MEAP application • Enabling of the iR options
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
DSRAMBUP	Backup of DC Controller PCB SRAM
Lv.2	Details
	To back up the setting data in SRAM of the DC Controller PCB.
	Use case
	When replacing the DC Controller PCB for troubleshooting at the time of trouble occurrence
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	During operation, the setting data changes by manual or automatic adjustment. When backup data which has been left for a long period of time is restored, it is overwritten by the old setting data and the new data is deleted.
	Display/adj/set range
	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> DSRAMRES

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM		
DSRAMRES		
Restore of DC Controller PCB SRAM		
Lv.2	Details	To restore the setting data which has been backed up in SRAM of the DC Controller PCB.
	Use case	When replacing the DC Controller PCB for troubleshooting at the time of trouble occurrence
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution	During operation, the setting data changes by manual or automatic adjustment. When backup data which has been left for a long period of time is restored, it is overwritten by the old setting data and the new data is deleted.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> DSRAMBUP
RSRAMBUP		
Backup of Reader Controller PCB SRAM		
Lv.2	Details	To back up the setting data in SRAM of the Reader Controller PCB.
	Use case	When replacing the Reader Controller PCB for troubleshooting at the time of trouble occurrence
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution	During operation, the setting data changes by manual or automatic adjustment. When backup data which has been left for a long period of time is restored, it is overwritten by the old setting data and the new data is deleted.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMRES
RSRAMRES		
Restore of Reader Controller PCB SRAM		
Lv.2	Details	To restore the setting data which has been backed up in SRAM of the Reader Controller PCB.
	Use case	When replacing the Reader Controller PCB for troubleshooting at the time of trouble occurrence
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution	During operation, the setting data changes by manual or automatic adjustment. When backup data which has been left for a long period of time is restored, it is overwritten with new setting data and the old data is deleted.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, When operation finished normally: OK!
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> RSRAMBUP
R-REBOOT		
Reboot of host machine: remote		
Lv.1	Details	To reboot the host machine by remote control via RUI.
	Use case	When rebooting the host machine by remote control

T-8-38

■ DBG-LOG

COPIER > FUNCTION > DBG-LOG		
LOG2USB		
Storage of debug log to USB memory		
Lv.1	Details	To store a set of debug logs to USB memory at the error occurrence. A type of log to be collected is set in LOG-TRIG. If there is a debug log which is automatically stored, it is archived at this time. Required time differs according to the device conditions and volume of log data.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of a problem
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Install the USB memory. 2) Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wait until the machine recognizes the USB memory (approx. 10 sec.). • During the data transfer ("ACTIVE" display), do not turn OFF the power/remove the USB memory/use the screen for operations.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK!, At abnormal termination: NG
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> DBG-LOG> LOG-TRIG
LOG2SRVR		
Transfer of debug log to server		
Lv.1	Details	To transfer a set of debug logs to FTP server using network at the error occurrence. A type of log to be collected is set in LOG-TRIG. If there is a debug log which is automatically stored, it is archived at this time. Address and account of the FTP server can be set by reading the operation setting file from the USB memory in LOG-TRIG.
	Use case	When analyzing the cause of a problem
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Caution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Be sure to set the account of the machine to the FTP server beforehand. • During the data transfer ("ACTIVE" display), do not turn OFF the power/use the screen for operations.
	Display/adj/set range	During operation: ACTIVE, At normal termination: OK!, At abnormal termination: NG
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> DBG-LOG> LOG-TRIG
LOG-TRIG		
Set of debug log storage condition		
Lv.1	Details	To set the conditions (timing, types, etc.) to automatically store the debug logs (stored as an archive file). By reading the operation setting file of the setting value from the Main Controller, the conditions written in the file are set. When setting a new condition is necessary, read the operation setting file provided by R&D from the USB memory.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When changing the conditions of debug log to automatically store • When setting a new condition
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> DBG-LOG> LOG2USB, LOG2SRVR

COPIER > FUNCTION > DBG-LOG		
HIT-STS	Display of debug log state	
Lv.1	Details	To display whether archive file of the debug log which was matched with the conditions set in LOG-TRIG exists or not.
	Use case	When checking the debug log automatically stored
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	At normal state: OK, At failure occurrence: --
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> DBG-LOG> LOG-TRIG
SYSLOG	Setting of syslog function	
Lv.1	Details	To set the syslog function. When ON is set, sublog on the main CPU side of the Main Controller is output to the HDD/syslog server. "sublog" can be collected by LOG2USB or LOG2SRVR.
	Use case	When R&D considers that setting the syslog function is necessary at problem analysis
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999 0: OFF
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> DBG-LOG> LOG2USB, LOG2SRVR
DEFAULT	Reset of debug log setting	
Lv.1	Details	To clear all debug log settings, log files, etc. and return to the state before debug log collection operation.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When returning the device in which analyzing the cause of a problem was completed When resetting the debug log settings
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
LOG-DEL	Clear of debug log	
Lv.2	Details	To delete the debug log file. The debug log setting is not reset.
	Use case	When clearing the debug log
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
HIT-STS2	Display of debug log state w/ string	
Lv.2	Details	To display whether archive file of the debug log including character strings specified in LOG-TRIG exists or not.
	Use case	When checking the debug log automatically stored
	Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	At normal state: OK, At failure occurrence: --
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> DBG-LOG> LOG-TRIG

T-8-39





COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW		
MODEL-SZ	Fixed magnifictn & DADF orgnl dtct size	
Lv.1	Details	To set the fixed magnification ratio display and the original detection size with DADF. It is set automatically at the time of installation of the Reader according to the location.
	Use case	Upon user's request When Chinese paper (8K paper, 16K paper) is used
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: AB configuration (6R5E) for Japan, 1: Inch configuration (5R4E) for North/Middle/South America, 2: A configuration (3R3E) for Europe, 3: AB/Inch configuration (6R5E) for Asia, Oceania, South America
	Default value	The value differs according to the location.
	Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW > MODELSZ2 COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW > KSIZE-SW COPIER> OPTION> CST > CST-K-SW
SCANSLCT	ON/OFF of scan area calculate function	
Lv.2	Details	To set ON/OFF of the function to calculate scanning area from the specified paper size. When the paper size is larger than the original size, selecting ON reduces productivity because the scanning area gets larger.
	Use case	When matching the scanning area with the paper size
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF (calculated from the detected original size) 1: ON (calculated from the specified paper size)
	Default value	0
DH-SW	ON/OFF of auto D-half control	
Lv.2	Details	To set ON/OFF of auto D-half control. When 0 (D-half control is OFF.) is set, ARCDT-SW becomes 1 (ARCDAT control is OFF.).
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When D-half-related failure occurs/when identifying the cause of D-half-related failure Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Be sure to set the value back to 1 (ON) after servicing.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	1
	Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> ARCDT-SW

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW		
SENS-CNF		Setting of original detection size
Lv.2	Details	To set original detection size according to AB configuration/Inch configuration/A configuration. Select 1 (Inch configuration) for Inch configuration/A configuration machine.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the CCD Unit When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: AB configuration, 1: Inch configuration
	Default value	0
CONFIG		Set country/area/lang/location/ppr size
Lv.1	Details	To set the country/region, language, location, paper size configuration for multiple system software in HDD.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select the setting item. 2) Switch with +/- key, and then press OK key. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	XX YY.ZZ.AA XX: Country/region JP: Japan, US: USA, GB: Great Britain, FR: France, DE: Germany, IT: Italy, AU: Australia, SG: Singapore, NL: Netherlands, KR: Korea, CN: China, TW: Taiwan, ES: Spain, SE: Sweden, PT: Portugal, NO: Norway, DK: Denmark, FI: Finland, PL: Poland, HU: Hungary, CZ: Czech Republic, SI: Slovenia, GR: Greece, EE: Estonia, RU: Russia, SK: Slovakia, RO: Romania, HR: Croatia, BG: Bulgaria, TR: Turkey, TH: Thailand, VN: Vietnam YY: Language (Fixed; e.g. ja: Japanese) ZZ: Location (Fixed; e.g. 00: CANON) AA: Paper size configuration (00: AB configuration, 01: Inch configuration, 02: A configuration, 03: Inch/AB configuration)
	Default value	The value differs according to the location.
	Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> MODEL-SZ
W-SCNR		Setting of Reader Unit installation
Lv.1	Details	To set installation of the Reader Unit. 1 (installed) is automatically selected once the Reader Unit is detected at the start of the machine.
	Use case	When installing/removing the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
	Default value	According to the setting at shipment

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW		
ORG-LGL	Special paper size set in DADF mode: LGL	
Lv.2	Details	To set the size of special paper (LGL configuration) that cannot be recognized in DADF stream reading mode.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upon user's request When picking up special paper size original from DADF
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 10 0: LEGAL-R, 1: FOOLSCAP-R, 2: OFICIO-R, 3: FOLIO-R, 4: Australian FOOLSCAP-R, 5: Ecuador OFICIO-R, 6: Bolivia OFICIO-R, 7: Argentine OFICIO-R, 8: Argentine LEGAL-R, 9: Government LEGAL-R, 10: Mexico OFICIO-R
	Default value	0
ORG-LTR	Special paper size set in DADF mode: LTR	
Lv.2	Details	To set the size of special paper (LTR configuration) that cannot be recognized in DADF stream reading mode.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upon user's request When picking up special paper size original from DADF
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: LETTER, 1: EXECUTIVE, 2: Argentine LETTER, 3: Government LETTER
	Default value	0
ORG-LTRR	Spcl ppr size set in DADF: LTRR: Reader	
Lv.2	Details	To set the size of special paper (LTR-R configuration) that cannot be recognized in DADF stream reading mode.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upon user's request When picking up special paper size original from DADF
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: LTR-R, 1: OFICIO-R, 2: Ecuador-OFICIO
	Default value	0
ORG-LDR	Spcl ppr size set in DADF: LDR: Reader	
Lv.2	Details	To set the size of special paper (LDR configuration) that cannot be recognized in DADF stream reading mode.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upon user's request When picking up special paper size original from DADF
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: LEDGER-R, 1: Argentine LETTER
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW		
ORG-B5	Special paper size set in DADF mode: B5	
Lv.2	Details	To set the size of special paper (B5) that cannot be recognized in DADF stream reading mode.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upon user's request When picking up special paper size original from DADF
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: B5, 1: Korean government office paper
	Default value	0
INTROT-1	Set ATR ctrl patch density dtct interval	
Lv.1	Details	To set execution interval of patch density detection executed at ATR control. By changing the setting value, execution intervals at last rotation and at paper interval are changed. Decrease the value if E020 error occurs frequently. As the execution frequency is increased, correction accuracy for density variation is increased. Since patch density detection is linked with low duty toner ejection, lowering of density can be prevented by increasing the frequency. When the value is increased, downtime can be reduced because of decrease of execution frequency, but an image failure might occur.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When E020 error occurs frequently Upon user's request (decrease downtime)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-2 to 2 -2: Not executed at last rotation and at paper interval -1: Every 50 sheets at last rotation, every 100 sheets at paper interval 0: Every 100 sheets at last rotation, every 200 sheets at paper interval 1: Every 150 sheets at last rotation, every 300 sheets at paper interval 2: Every 200 sheets at last rotation, every 400 sheets at paper interval * Converted with 5% duty per sheet
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW	
INTROT-2	Set of auto adjustment execute interval
Lv.1	Details
	To set the paper interval to execute auto adjustment (D-max control, D-half control). As the value is incremented by 1, the paper interval is increased by 1 sheet. If a new Drum Unit whose number of fed sheets is 1000 or less is installed, the interval is 250 sheets at a maximum.
	Use case
	When matching the use environment of the user.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Increasing the number of sheets (widening the interval) causes higher frequency of image failure.
	Display/adj/set range
	10 to 2000
	Unit
	sheet
	Default value
	500
DMAX-SW	Setting of D-max control timing
Lv.2	Details
	To set the D-max control execution timing. When the density variation is not within the requested range at continuous output of a large volume of papers (long job length), set 2.
	Use case
	When the density variation is not within the requested range at continuous output of a large volume of papers
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 2 0: Not used, 1: At last rotation, 2: At paper interval with 1/1 speed and last rotation
	Default value
	1
MODELSZ2	Ppr size dtct global support in bookmode
Lv.2	Details
	To set ON/OFF for global support of document size detection in copyboard reading mode.
	Use case
	Upon user's request (mixed media original with AB/Inch configuration)
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not use this at the normal service. The Document Size Sensor (Photo Sensor) is additionally required to correctly detect the document size when the original consists of mixed media (AB/Inch configuration).
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Detected with detection size according to location, 1: Detected with AB/Inch mixed media.
	Default value
	The value differs according to the location.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW	
SVMD-ENT	Setting of entry method to service mode
Lv.2	Details
	To set the way to get in service mode to prevent information leak.
	Use case
	As needed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: [Settings/Registration] - Pressing [2] and [8] at the same time - [Settings/Registration] 1: [Settings/Registration] - Pressing [4] and [9] at the same time - [Settings/Registration]
	Default value
	0
FXWRNLVL	Set Fixing Film life display thresholdVL
Lv.2	Details
	To set the threshold value to display the life of Fixing Film. This item is enabled when the value at the following is set to "1" (default: 0): COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> FXMSG-SW (ON/OFF of Fixing Assembly replacement message) The life judgment counter is stored in the DC Controller. It is not possible to change or check the counter value.
	Use case
	To prevent the fixing failure caused by the continuous use of Fixing Film that exceeds the life.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 3 0: Warning is hidden. 1: Warning is displayed when the counter for life judgment reaches the specified value. 2 to 3: Not used
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> FXMSG-SW
KSIZE-SW	Set of Chinese paper (K-size) support
Lv.2	Details
	To set to detect/display the Chinese paper (K size paper: 8K, 16K).
	Use case
	When using K size paper
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Go through the following: COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > MODEL-SZ; and if MODEL-SZ is "0: AB configuration", this mode is enabled.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Not supported, 1: Supported
	Default value
	JP:0, USA:0, EUR:0, AU:0, CN:1, KR:0, TW:0, ASIA:0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> MODEL-SZ COPIER> OPTION> CST> CST-K-SW
	Supplement/memo
	8K paper: 270 x 390 mm, 16K paper: 270 x 195 mm
ORG-B4	Not use
Lv.2	Details
	Not use

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW	
PDF-RDCT	PDF reduction set at forwarding
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to reduce the image for transmission when converting the image received by IFAX into PDF for e-mail/file transmission.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Following the current setting, 1: Image reduction
	Default value
	0
SJB-UNW	Reserve upper limit of secure print job
Lv.2	Details
	To set the upper limit for the number of reserved jobs in secure print job.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 2 0: 50 jobs, 1: 90 jobs, 2: No limit
	Default value
	1
CARD-RNG	Card number setting (department number)
Lv.2	Details
	To set the number of cards (departments) that can be used with the Card Reader.
	Use case
	When setting the number of cards (departments)
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 1000
	Default value
	1000
ARCDT-SW	ON/OFF of ARCDAT control
Lv.1	Details
	To set ON/OFF of ARCDAT control. When 1 is set, the ARCDAT control is not executed. When the hue variation occurs in the case of failure value displayed in COPIER> DISPLAY> HT-C, turn OFF the ARCDAT control once and check the hue. If hue variation is alleviated, analyze the cause of ARCDAT control error (developer, Patch Sensor, etc.). When 1 (ARCDAT control is OFF.) is set, DH-SW becomes 0 (D-half control is OFF.).
	Use case
	When hue variation occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Make sure to set 0 again when ARCDAT control recovers. If inputting a job during D-half control at last rotation while the setting is 1, "Waiting to print..." might be displayed.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: ON, 1: OFF
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> DISPLAY> HT-C COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> DH-SW

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW	
SJOB-CL	Set of scan job canceling by logout
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to cancel the scan job in operation by logout of the user.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The job in scanning operation cannot be canceled. Cancel by logout is kept in the log.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	Scan job: A job after the scanning operation is completed.
USB-RCNT	Auto connect set at USB device disconnect
Lv.2	Details
	To set to enable/disable automatic connection when the USB device is disconnected. With the setting to disable automatic connection, USB device cannot be used if disconnecting and then connecting the USB device. To enable connection again, the power needs to be turned OFF/ON. With the setting to enable automatic connection, connect again after disconnecting, and then connecting the USB device again.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	With the setting to enable automatic connection, disconnecting of 1 area makes automatic connection of all USB devices if there is USB hub.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: No automatic connection, 1: Automatic connection
	Default value
	0
UNLMTBND	Over 400 binders print job support set
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to support print job that exceeds 400 binders. With the setting to support, the machine makes print by sharing binders according to job attribution. Select "1: Not supported" if the user does not print job* with large quantity of binders.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Automatic setting (when the print server is not connected: no support; When the print server is connected: supported) 1: Not supported
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	* : A job that requires finishing (such as stapling) in one job. Does not apply in the case of executing finishing with multiple sets of output.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW	
MIBCOUNT	Scope range set of Charge Counter MIB
Lv.2	Details
	To set the range of counter information that can be obtained as MIB (Management Information Base).
	Use case
	For customization
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 2 0: All charge counters are obtained, 1: Only displayed counter* is obtained, 2: All charge counters are not obtained * : Counter specified by the following: COPIER > OPTION > USER > COUNTER 1 to 6
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> USER> COUNTER1 to 6
CNTR-SW	Init of parts counter replacement timing
Lv.1	Details
	To return the estimated life of parts counter to the initial value.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0: Returned to the initial value
	Default value
	0
W/RAID	Not Use
Lv.1	Details
	Not Use
PSWD-SW	Password type set to enter service mode
Lv.1	Details
	To set the type of password that is required to enter when getting into service mode. 2 types are available: one for "service technician" and the other for "system administrator + service technician". When selecting the type for "system administrator + service technician", enter the password for service technician after the password entry by the user's system administrator.
	Use case
	Upon request from the user who concerns security
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 2 0: No password, 1: Service technician, 2: System administrator + service technician
	Default value
	0
SM-PSWD	Password setting for service technician
Lv.2	Details
	To set password for service technician that is used when getting into service mode.
	Use case
	When password is required to get into service mode
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Be sure to select 1 or 2 with PSWD-SW in advance.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 99999999
	Default value
	11111111
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> PSWD-SW

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW	
RPT2SIDE	Set of report 1sided/2-sided output
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to use 1-sided or 2-sided for report output of service mode.
	Use case
	When making 2-sided report output to reduce the number of output pages
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: 1-sided, 1: 2-sided
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT
BRWS-FAV	Set of service browser favorite register
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to allow registration of favorites in the browser for service. When 1 is set, favorites in the browser for service can be edited, and any URLs can be accessed.
	Use case
	When service engineers edit favorites in the browser for service
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value
	0
PSCL-MS	Set auto gradation adj operation: heavy
Lv.1	Details
	To set at which speed (1/1 speed, 1/2 speed, or 1/3 speed) PASCAL control and D-half control are executed at auto gradation adjustment. When "2" is set, they are executed for the lastly used speed only. Required time for auto gradation adjustment is short while it takes time to switch to other speed. This is suitable for the users who frequently use a specific paper type. When "3" is set, they are executed for all speeds simultaneously. Required time for auto gradation adjustment is long (approx. 3 minutes) while it is quick to switch to other speed. This is suitable for the users who use various paper types.
	Use case
	When setting the speed according to the materials used by the user
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	2 to 3 2: Lastly used speed, 3: All speeds
	Default value
	2

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW		
INVALPDL		Disable of PDL license
Lv.1	Details	To disable the registered PDL license. When "1: Disabled" is set, PDL is disabled even if a PDL license is registered. This is set to the machines installed at convenience stores, which do not allow PDL to be used.
	Use case	When prohibiting the use of PDL
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Registered PDL license is enabled, 1: Disabled
	Default value	0
IMGCNTPR		Setting of image quality mode
Lv.1	Details	To set the image quality mode. The counter priority mode is applied when 1 is set, and the image quality priority mode is applied when 0 is set.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Image quality priority mode, 1: Counter priority mode
	Default value	0
CDS-FIRM		Set to allow firmware update by admin
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to permit update of the firmware by user (administrator). When "1: Enabled" is set, Updater can be activated from the user mode.
	Use case	When allowing the administrator to update the firmware
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	EUR: 1, Other: 0
CDS-MEAP		Set to allow MEAP install by admin
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to permit the user (administrator) to install MEAP applications and enable iR options from CDS. When "1: Enabled" is set, Updater can be activated from the user mode.
	Use case	When allowing the administrator to install MEAP applications and enable iR options from CDS
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	1
	Supplement/memo	CDS: Contents Delivery System

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW		
CDS-UGW		Set to allow firmware update from UGW
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to permit update of the firmware from the UGW server. When "1: Enabled" is set, Updater accepts the operation from the UGW server in cooperation with CDS.
	Use case	When allowing update of the firmware from the UGW server
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	0
	Supplement/memo	CDS: Contents Delivery System
LOCLFIRM		Set to allow firmware update by file
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to permit the user (administrator) to update the firmware from the remote UI using a local file. This update is executed as a measure for vulnerability in emergency situations.
	Use case	When allowing the administrator to update the firmware using a file
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	1
RSHDW-SW		ON/OFF of remote shutdown
Lv.1	Details	A shared multi-function machine is not likely to be shut down at power failure. Set ON/OFF of the remote shutdown function to prevent accident. When "1: ON" is set, the machine can be shut down from the remote shutdown menu displayed in the remote UI.
	Use case	When preventing an accident at specified power-off time.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	1
	Supplement/memo	
MC-FANSW		Setting of Controller Fan control
Lv.1	Details	To set full speed/half speed to fan control of the Controller Fan 1 and 2. When "1: Full speed" is set, the heat exhaust efficiency is enhanced.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When HDD damage occurs multiple times When the machine is installed in high temperature environment in which HDD damage is likely to occur
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Half speed, 1: Full speed
	Default value	0
	Supplement/memo	

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW	
SDLMTWRN	ON/OFF cpcty warn dspl at E-mail/I-Fax TX
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to display the warning message when sending data that exceeds the upper limit value for the transmission data size via E-mail/I-Fax.
	Use case
	For customization
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0
	Related user mode
	Function Settings> Send> E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> Maximum Data Size for Sending
PRE-CURL	ON/OFF of curl alleviation mode: Heavy
Lv.1	Details
	To set ON/OFF of curl alleviation mode for heavy paper, etc. When 1 is set, the initial rotation is extended and the paper intervals become wider. As a result, paper curl can be alleviated, but productivity decreases.
	Use case
	When heavy paper is curled
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Be sure to get approval from the user by telling that productivity decreases.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0
AUTO-OUT	ON/OFF of jammed ppr auto ejctn function
Lv.1	Details
	To set ON/OFF of jammed paper auto ejection function. When 1 is set, jammed paper is not delivered to the ejection position, but it stays at the current position at jam occurrence.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When user feels unnecessary of jammed paper auto ejection When location of jammed paper is necessary to analyze the cause of a problem
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: ON, 1: OFF
	Default value
	0
JLK-PWSC	ON/OFF of PCAM password auth doc scan
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to scan the PCAM password authentication document with the MEAP application.
	Use case
	When scanning the PCAM password authentication document
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW	
FAX-INT	Set FAX RX print interruption oprtn mode
Lv.2	Details
	To set the mode performing interruption operation of FAX reception print automatically.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Normal, 1: Interruption operation mode
	Default value
	0
PDL-Z-LG	Setting of draw algorithm
Lv.1	Details
	To switch the draw algorithm of the iR C Series and the iR-ADV C Series to obtain output the user expects. When 0 (FURUYA mode) is set, image is output as displayed on the screen by the new algorithm adopted from the iR-ADV C Series. Pseudo outline (boundary for processing divided graphics separately) occurred with the iR C Series does not occur. However, when PDL job with special data structure is sent, output the user expects may not be obtained. When 1 (FLAG mode) is set, the draw algorithm adopted by the conventional iR C Series is used. Output equivalent to that of the iR C Series can be obtained; however, draw-related phenomenon occurred with the series occurs.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Do not use setting value 2 and 3.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 3 0: FURUYA mode, 1: FLAG mode, 2,3: For R&D use
	Default value
	0
CDS-LVUP	Set to allow CDS periodical update
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to allow the user (administrator) to use the periodical update function linked with CDS. When 1 is set, the periodical update function can be used from user mode.
	Use case
	When allowing the user to use the periodical update function
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value
	1: Europe, 0: Other than Europe
	Supplement/memo
	CDS:Content Delivery System

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW		
AMSOFFSW		Disabling AMS mode
Lv.1	Details	(1) AMS license which is an iR option is installed. (2) AMS-supported Login application is activated.. Normally, when the conditions (1) and (2) are satisfied, it enters AMS mode automatically. Use this mode when preferring to disable AMS mode.
	Use case	When preferring to disable AMS mode
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Press Counter button, and check that "ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM" is displayed on the Device Configuration screen. 2) Set the service mode to 1. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. 4) Check that AMS is disabled. Press Counter button, and check that "ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM" is not displayed on the Device Configuration screen.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	0
	Supplement/memo	AMS: ACCESS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM
CPR-SW		Clr displc crct frqcy adj:temp chng
Lv.1	Details	If a specific temperature change is seen from the previous control, the color displacement correction control is executed again. By changing this temperature variation range, the frequency of executing the color displacement correction control is set. Usually, set "0" which balances image quality and productivity. When 1 is set, the temperature variation range becomes narrowed, so the frequency of executing the color displacement correction control is increased. The color displacement can be reduced, but the downtime is increased. When 2 is set, the temperature variation range becomes widened, so the frequency of executing the color displacement correction control is decreased. The downtime can be reduced, but the color displacement occurs.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When preventing the color displacement due to a temperature change When preventing an increase in downtime due to a temperature change
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Be sure to get approval from the user by telling that the downtime is increased if image quality is prioritized, and the color displacement is increased if productivity is prioritized.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: Normal, 1: Quality priority, 2: Productivity priority
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW		
D-MAX-DAY		D-max exe frqcy switch ON/OFF
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to switch the frequency to execute the D-max control after a specified number of sheets is fed. Set 1 when increasing the frequency to execute D-max control after making a large number of outputs.
	Use case	When density varies at the time of making a large number of outputs
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
UA-OFFSW		ON/OFF of unified auth function
Lv.1	Details	To set ON/OFF of the Unified Authentication function. Set the value to 0 when not preferring to use the Unified Authentication function because of security concern.
	Use case	Upon user's request (not to use the Unified Authentication function)
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: ON, 1: OFF
	Default value	0
MIB-NVTA		RFC-compatible character string MIB write
Lv.1	Details	As default, MIB object which NVT-ASCII can be written exists in order to link with LUI entry value. This violates RFC order, so a problem like garbled 2-byte characters may occur in the SNMP monitoring system, such as the 3rd vendor's MPS. Whether non-RFC-compatible character strings are written in MIB can be set using this mode. When 1 is set, only the character strings which are strictly compatible with RFC are written. (Writing operation is executed from the SNMP manager.) LUI is not linked.
	Use case	Upon user's request (operation with RFC-compatible system)
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: Compatible in a conventional manner, 1: RFC-compatible, 2 to 3: Not used
	Default value	0
	Supplement/memo	RFC: Document of Internet-related technical standards NVT-ASCII: Network Virtual Terminal-ASCII

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW	
SVC-RUI	Enabling of RUI function for servicing
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set whether to enable the RUI function for servicing (not provided to end users). When 0 is set, the RUI function is disabled. When setting the value other than 0, RUI function is enabled. The value entered becomes password to use the RUI function.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When preferring to use the import function of background image file of main menu</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (other than 0), and then press OK key.</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
LCDSFLG	Enabling of local CDS server
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set whether to use the local CDS server. When CDS-FIRM is 1, this setting is enabled.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When using the local CDS server</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CDS-FIRM</p>
SELF-CHK	Set high voltg error condtn detect func
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the high voltage error condition detection function.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 15 0:Not Detect, 1:Detect, 2 to 15:Not Use</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
NO-LGOUT	Display/hide of logout button
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set whether to display or hide [Logout] button. When 0 is set, [Logout] button is displayed on the screen, and logout with the ID key is enabled. (Normal) When 1 is set, [Logout] button is not displayed, and logout with the ID key is disabled.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Upon user's request (for customization, etc.)</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 1 0: Display, 1: Hide</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
T-DLV-BK	Set of Bk-toner level displaying alarm
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the Bk-toner level to display "absence of toner" message.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When changing the timing to notify the end of life according to the usage status</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Caution</p> <p>Since toner level is calculated based on the developing supply count, some errors may occur.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 40</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>USA:15 , Other:10</p>

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW	
T-DLV-CL	Set Y/M/C-toner level displaying alarm
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the Y/M/C-toner level to display absence of toner message.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When changing the timing to notify the end of life according to the usage status</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Caution</p> <p>Since toner level is calculated based on the developing supply count, some errors may occur.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 40</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>USA:15 , Other:10</p>
D-DLV-BK	Set Bk Drum auto delivery alarm timing
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the timing to notify the auto delivery alarm of the Bk Drum.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When changing the timing to notify the end of life according to the usage status</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>50 to 200</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>%</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>100</p>
D-DLV-CL	Set Y/M/C Drum auto delvry alarm timing
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the timing to notify the auto delivery alarm of the Y/M/C Drum.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When changing the timing to notify the end of life according to the usage status</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>50 to 200</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>%</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>100</p>
JM-ERR-D	Handling 0CAx jam as an error: DCON
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To display 0CAF jam as the error E996-0CAF. By handling the jam as an error, the machine stops, so that loss of the log can be prevented. Be sure to enable the service mode at the user's site where 0CAF jam occurs. After that, if the error E996-0CAF occurs, the log which has been backed up can be obtained.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When obtaining a log at the occurrence of 0CAF jam</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0: Display as a jam, 1: Display as an error</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW	
JM-ERR-R	Handling 0071 jam as an error: RCON
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To display 0071 jam as the error E996-0071. By handling the jam as an error, the machine stops, so that loss of the log can be prevented. Be sure to enable the service mode at the user's site where 0071 jam occurs. After that, if the error E996-0071 occurs, the log which has been backed up can be obtained.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When obtaining a log at the occurrence of 0071 jam</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0: Display as a jam, 1: Display as an error</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > JM-ERR-D</p>

T-8-40

■ DSPLY-SW

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW		
UI-COPY		Display/hide of copy screen
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the copy function.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	1
UI-BOX		Display/hide of Inbox screen
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the Inbox function.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: No Inbox function (Storing is not available even with PDL to Inbox.) 1: Inbox function is active 2: Inbox function is active (with limitation; Storing is available with PDL to Inbox despite no display on the Control Panel/remote UI)
	Default value	1
	Related user mode	Preferences> Display Settings> Store Location Display Settings> Mail Box The setting value is changed to 2 when turning OFF the foregoing user mode, and the value is changed to 1 when turning ON the mode at power-off/on. As the setting value of this service mode is changed, the setting value of the foregoing user mode is also changed.
UI-SEND		Display/hide of send screen
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the SEND function.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	1
UI-FAX		Display/hide of FAX screen
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the FAX function.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	1

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW	
T-LW-LVL	Dspl timing of toner level warning mssg
Lv.2	Details
	To set the threshold value of residual toner in the hopper. When the residual toner level becomes lower than the threshold, a warning message of "Toner is low. Replacement not yet needed." is displayed on the Control Panel.
	Use case
	When changing the timing to display the toner level warning message
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	5 to 100
	Unit
	%
	Default value
	10
NWERR-SW	OFF/ON of network-related error display
Lv.2	Details
	To set OFF/ON of network-related error message display. When setting "0: OFF" while the machine is not connected to network, the error message "Check the network connection." is not displayed.
	Use case
	When using the machine as a copy machine
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	1: Normal model, 0: Self-copy model
FXMSG-SW	ON/OFF of Fixing Assembly replace mssg
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to display the message prompting the replacement of Fixing Assembly on the Control Panel when the life judgment counter reaches the specified value. When FXMSG-SW is 1 and COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> FXWRNLVL is 1 (default: 0), the life of Fixing Assembly is detected. When the Fixing Assembly reaches the end of life, the Fixing Assembly replacement message: "Prepare new fixing roller. Call service representative." is displayed. When the message is displayed, go through the following procedure. 1) After turning OFF the main power switch, replace the Fixing Film Unit+Pressure Roller and Fixing Assembly. 2) After turning ON the main power switch, execute COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> CNT-DCON. 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Use case
	When detecting the life of Fixing Assembly
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	1
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> FXWRNLVL COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> CNT-DCON

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW	
ANIM-SW	Screen switch set from MEAP to warning
Lv.2	Details
	To set to enable/disable switching from MEAP screen to the error/jam screen.
	Use case
	When not preferring to display the warning screen in the case of an error/jam/alarm
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0: Enabled
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	If just disabling the switch with MEAP-DSP, the screen is switched to the standard screen in the case of an error/jam/alarm.
UI-PRINT	Display/hide of print job screen
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to display or hide the print job screen.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	1
UI-RSCAN	Display/hide of remote scan screen
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to display or hide the remote scan screen on the Control Panel.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	1
UI-WEB	Display/hide of Web browser screen
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to display or hide the Web browser screen.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	1
TNR-WARN	ON/OFF of toner error message
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to display the toner error message screen.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Display, 1: Hide
	Default value
	USA: 1, Other: 0
	Related service mode
	COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > T-LW-LVL

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW		
HPFL-DSP		Set hvy, prntr 1200dpi dedicated mod dis
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display heavy paper and printer 1200dpi dedicated mode on Auto Adjust Gradation screen at the time of Full Adjust.
	Use case	When executing Full Adjust with heavy paper and printer 1200dpi dedicated mode
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: OFF 1: Plain / Heavy 2: Standard / For Printer 1200dpi 3: Standard(Thin) / Standard(Heavy) / For Printer 1200dpi
	Default value	0
RMT-CNSL		ON/OFF of MEAP console screen
Lv.1	Details	Selecting "1: ON" enables to obtain log for Function Composer on console screen.
	Use case	When obtaining log for Function Composer
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
UI-SBOX		ON/OFF of Advanced Box screen display
Lv.2	Details	To set ON/OFF of the Advanced Box screen on the Control Panel.
	Use case	When not displaying the Advanced Box screen on the Control Panel
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	EUR: 0, Other: 1
UI-MEM		ON/OFF of memory media screen display
Lv.2	Details	To set ON/OFF of the memory media screen display on the Control Panel.
	Use case	When not displaying the memory media screen on the Control Panel
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW		
UI-NAVI		Dspl/hide of introduce to useful features
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide "Introduction to Useful Features" in the main menu.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	1
UI-MOBP		Not Use
Lv.2	Details	Not Use
ITB-DSP		ON/OFF of init after ITB rplce:user mode
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display "ITB" on Initialization screen after replacing parts in user mode. When allowing the user to replace the ITB, set 1.
	Use case	When allowing the user to replace the ITB
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Maintenance> Initialize After Replacing Parts> ITB
FXU-DSP		ON/OFF init after Fx Ass'y rplce:use mod
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display "Fixing Unit" on Initialization screen after replacing parts in user mode. When allowing the user to replace the Fixing Assembly, set 1.
	Use case	When allowing the user to replace the Fixing Assembly
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Maintenance> Initialize After Replacing Parts> Fixing Unit
PUMF-DSP		Init afr MP Tray Pckup Rol rplce:usemod
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display "Ppr. Feed Roller & Separation Pad of MP Tray" on Initialization screen after replacing parts in user mode. When allowing the user to replace the Pickup Roller/Separation Pad of Multi-purpose Tray, set 1.
	Use case	When allowing the user to replace the Pickup Roller/Separation Pad of Multi-purpose Tray
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Maintenance > Initialize After Replacing Parts> Ppr. Feed Roller & Separation Pad of MP Tray

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW		
PUC1-DSP		Init afr Casstt1 Pckup Rol rplce:usemod
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display "Ppr. Feed Roller & Separation Pad of Drawer 1" on Initialization screen after replacing parts in user mode. When allowing the user to replace the Pickup Roller/Separation Pad of Cassette 1, set 1.
	Use case	When allowing the user to replace the Pickup Roller/Separation Pad of Cassette 1
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Maintenance > Initialize After Replacing Parts> Ppr. Feed Roller & Separation Pad of Drawer 1
PUC2-DSP		Init afr Casstt2 Pckup Rol rplce:usemod
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display "Paper Feed Rollers (x 2) of Drawer 2" on Initialization screen after replacing parts in user mode. When allowing the user to replace the Pickup Rollers of Cassette 2, set 1.
	Use case	When allowing the user to replace the Pickup Rollers of Cassette 2
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Maintenance > Initialize After Replacing Parts> Paper Feed Rollers (x 2) of Drawer 2
PUC3-DSP		Init afr Casstt3 Pckup Rol rplce:usemod
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display "Paper Feed Rollers (x 2) of Drawer 3" on Initialization screen after replacing parts in user mode. When allowing the user to replace the Pickup Rollers of Cassette 3, set 1.
	Use case	When allowing the user to replace the Pickup Rollers of Cassette 3
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Maintenance > Initialize After Replacing Parts> Paper Feed Rollers (x 2) of Drawer 3

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW		
PUC4-DSP		Init afr Casstt4 Pckup Rol rplce:usemod
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display "Paper Feed Rollers (x 2) of Drawer 4" on Initialization screen after replacing parts in user mode. When allowing the user to replace the Pickup Rollers of Cassette 4, set 1.
	Use case	When allowing the user to replace the Pickup Rollers of Cassette 4
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Maintenance > Initialize After Replacing Parts> Paper Feed Rollers (x 2) of Drawer 4
UI-CUSTM		ON/OFF of Quick Menu screen display
Lv.2	Details	To set ON/OFF of the Quick Menu screen on the Control Panel.
	Use case	When not displaying the Quick Menu screen on the Control Panel
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	1
CLN-SEL		Set of condensation prev main unit clean
Lv.1	Details	To set the effect of cleaning inside the main unit for condensation prevention. When 0 is set, cleaning inside the main unit is not executed. When 1 to 3 is set, an item for condensation prevention is displayed in user mode, and the level of effect of cleaning inside the main unit can be set. As the value is larger, the effect is increased because ITB cleaning is executed more frequently, but toner consumption and cleaning time are increased. In the case of installation in a low temperature and high humidity environment (in winter), ask for the user's opinion and configure the setting.
	Use case	When condensation occurs in a low temperature and high humidity environment
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: OFF 1: ON (small effect, low toner consumption) 2: ON (moderate effect, moderate toner consumption) 3: ON (large effect, high toner consumption)
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW		
USER-DSP		Display/hide of SSO-H login user name
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display the name of the user who logs in using MEAP authentication (SSO-H) on the screen of the Control Panel (upper left area).
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: Hide, 1: Display "display name", 2: Display "user name"
	Default value	0
	Supplement/memo	MEAP authentication (SSO-H): local authentication and server authentication using the Single Sign On-Hybrid MEAP application.
SDTM-DSP		Display/hide of auto shutdown time
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display or hide "Auto Shutdown Time" in user mode.
	Use case	When switching to display or hide auto shutdown time
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	EUR: 1 , Other: 0
DRM-WARN		Dspl/hide of Drum Unit replacement mssg
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display the Drum Unit replacement message on the status area of LUI 7 days later that the life of the drum reached the specified value (%).
	Use case	When there is no need to notify the replacement timing of the drum to the user
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER>OPTION>FNC-SW>D-DLV-BK COPIER>OPTION>FNC-SW>D-DLV-CL
WT-WARN		Dspl/hide of Wst Toner Cntner prep mssg
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display the preparation warning message of the Waste Toner Container on the status area of LUI.
	Use case	When there is no need to notify the preparation timing of the Waste Toner Container to the user
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	1
	Related service mode	COPIER > OPTION > CUSTUM > EXT-TBOX

T-8-41

■ IMAG-FIX

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX		
NEGA-GST		ON/OFF of pre-exposure operation
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to execute pre-exposure operation at warm-up rotation/paper interval when ghost due to negatively charged drum occurs.
	Use case	When ghost due to negatively charged drum occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Be sure to get approval from the user in advance by telling that productivity decreases.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: OFF, 1: ON (at warm-up rotation only), 2: Not used
	Default value	0
AUTO-DH		ON/OFF of proc auto adj at warm-up rotn
Lv.1	Details	To set ON/OFF of process auto adjustment (D-max/D-half control) at warm-up rotation.
	Use case	When density varies at the time of making a large number of outputs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: OFF, 1: ON (HH environment only), 2: ON (all environments)
	Default value	1
FX-S-TMP		Img form start temp: plain ppr, 1/1 SPD
Lv.1	Details	To set the offset of image formation start temperature for plain paper (including thin paper, plain paper 2, plain paper 3) at 1/1 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 5 deg C.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a fixing failure occurs at the leading edge of paper When uneven gloss occurs in the area that is 76 mm from the leading edge
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-2 to 2 -2: -10 deg C, -1: -5 deg C, 0: 0 deg C, 1: 5 deg C, 2: 10 deg C
	Unit	deg C
	Default value	0
TMP-TBL2		Fixing control temp: heavy ppr, 1/2 SPD
Lv.1	Details	To set the offset of fixing control temperature for heavy paper/extra-long heavy paper at 1/2 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 3 deg C. Increase the value when a fixing failure occurs. Decrease the value when hot offset occurs.
	Use case	When hot offset/fixing failure occurs on heavy paper 1/2
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-3 to 3
	Unit	3 deg C
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX	
TMP-TBL3	[Not used]
Lv.1 Details	[Not used]
TMP-TBL4	Fixing control temp: plain ppr, 1/2 SPD
Lv.1 Details	To set the offset of fixing control temperature for plain paper (including thin paper, plain paper 2, plain paper 3) at 1/2 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 3 deg C. Increase the value when a fixing failure occurs. Decrease the value when hot offset occurs.
Use case	When hot offset/fixing failure occurs on plain paper
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-3 to 3
Unit	3 deg C
Default value	0
TMP-TBL5	Fixing control temp: transparency
Lv.1 Details	To set the offset of fixing control temperature for transparency. As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 3 deg C. Increase the value when a fixing failure occurs. Decrease the value when hot offset occurs.
Use case	When hot offset/fixing failure occurs on transparency
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-3 to 3
Unit	3 deg C
Default value	0
TMP-TBL6	Fixing control temp: envelope
Lv.1 Details	To set the offset of fixing control temperature for envelope at 1/1 and 1/2 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 3 deg C. Increase the value when a fixing failure occurs. Decrease the value when hot offset occurs.
Use case	When hot offset/fixing failure occurs on envelope
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-3 to 3
Unit	3 deg C
Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX	
FXS-TMP2	Img form start temp: heavy ppr, 1/2 SPD
Lv.1 Details	To set the offset of image formation start temperature and 2-step startup judgment temperature for heavy paper/extra-long heavy paper at 1/2 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 5 deg C.
Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a fixing failure occurs at the leading edge of paper When uneven gloss occurs in the area that is 76 mm from the leading edge
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-2 to 2 -2: -10 deg C, -1: -5 deg C, 0: 0 deg C, 1: +5 deg C, 2: +10 deg C
Unit	5 deg C
Default value	0
FXS-TMP3	[Not used]
Lv.2 Details	[Not used]
Default value	0
FXS-TMP4	Img form start temp: plain ppr, 1/2 SPD
Lv.1 Details	To set the offset of image formation start temperature and 2-step startup judgment temperature for plain paper (including thin paper, plain paper 2 and plain paper 3) at 1/2 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 5 deg C.
Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a fixing failure occurs at the leading edge of paper When uneven gloss occurs in the area that is 76 mm from the leading edge
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-2 to 2 -2: -10 deg C, -1: -5 deg C, 0: 0 deg C, 1: +5 deg C, 2: +10 deg C
Unit	5 deg C
Default value	0
FXS-TMP5	Image formation start temp: transparency
Lv.1 Details	To set the offset of image formation start temperature for transparency. As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 5 deg C.
Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a fixing failure occurs at the leading edge of paper When uneven gloss occurs in the area that is 76 mm from the leading edge
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	-2 to 2 -2: -10 deg C, -1: -5 deg C, 0: 0 deg C, 1: +5 deg C, 2: +10 deg C
Unit	5 deg C
Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX	
FXS-TMP6	Image formation start temp: envelope
Lv.1	Details
	To set the offset of image formation start temperature for envelope at 1/1 and 1/2 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 5 deg C.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a fixing failure occurs at the leading edge of paper When uneven gloss occurs in the area that is 76 mm from the leading edge
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	-2 to 2 -2: -10 deg C, -1: -5 deg C, 0: 0 deg C, 1: +5 deg C, 2: +10 deg C
	Unit
	5 deg C
	Default value
	0
FLYING	ON/OFF of flying start temperature ctrl
Lv.2	Details
	To set ON/OFF of flying start temperature control. When "1" is set, the flying start temperature control is not executed. This is more life-conscious for Fixing Assembly compared to "0".
	Use case
	When preferring to extend the life of Fixing Assembly. However, setting of "1" does not mean that the life of Fixing Assembly is always extended.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	When "1" is set, FCOT/FPOT is reduced.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: ON, 1: OFF
	Default value
	0
FIXMIXBD	Setting of media mixed mode
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether image quality or productivity to be prioritized when media are mixed. When the value is increased, downtime is increased because of prioritizing image quality. When the value is decreased, downtime is decreased, but uneven gloss might occur.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the fixing failure occurs in media mixed condition. When decreasing downtime in media mixed situation
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value and press the OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	-2 to 2
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-FIX	
PRE-FXRL	Pressure Roller soiling prevention mode
Lv.2	Details
	To set ON/OFF of Pressure Roller soiling prevention mode when feeding calcium carbonate paper. When 1 is set, the paper intervals become wider and temperature of the Pressure Roller is increased. As a result, soiling on the Pressure Roller is reduced, but productivity decreases.
	Use case
	Upon user's request (prevention of soiled Pressure Roller)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Be sure to get approval from the user by telling that productivity decreases.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0
TMP-TB11	Fixing control temperature:Recycled ppr
Lv.1	Details
	To set the offset of fixing control temperature for recycled paper (64 to 82 g/m2). As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 3 deg C. Increase the value when a fixing failure occurs. Decrease the value when fixing offset occurs.
	Use case
	When offset/fixing failure occurs on recycled paper
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	-3 to 3
	Unit
	deg C
	Default value
	0
FXS-TM11	Image formation start temp: recycled ppr
Lv.1	Details
	To set the offset of image formation start temperature for recycled paper (64 to 82 g/m2). As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 5 deg C.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a fixing failure occurs at the leading edge of paper When uneven gloss occurs in the area that is 76 mm from the leading edge
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	-2 to 2
	Unit
	deg C
	Default value
	0

T-8-42

IMG-TR

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-TR	
ITB-TYPE	[Not used]
TRDATENV	Pry trn tgt crmnt crct ev setting: R&D
Lv.1 Details	To set the environment to execute the primary transfer target current correction after a specified number of sheets is fed. Check the use environment from COPIER> DISPLAY> MISC> ENV-TR. Set the number of sheets to be fed for correction by TRDAYCNT and set the correction value by TRDAYTGT.
Use case	When density varies at the time of making a large number of outputs
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
Display/adj/set range	0 to 4 0: OFF, 1: Low humidity environment, 2: Normal humidity environment, 3: High humidity environment, 4: All environments
Default value	0
Related service mode	COPIER> DISPLAY> MISC> ENV-TR COPIER> OPTION> IMG-TR> TRDAYCNT, TRDAYTGT
TRDAYCNT	Pry trn tgt crmnt crct fed sht set:R&D
Lv.1 Details	To set the number of sheets to be fed for executing the primary transfer target current correction. Set the environment for correction by TRDATENV and set the correction value by TRDAYTGT.
Use case	When density varies at the time of making a large number of outputs
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: OFF 1: Correction for 500 sheets is executed after 500 sheets are fed. 2: Correction for 1000 sheets is executed after 1000 sheets are fed. 3: Both 1 and 2 are executed.
Default value	0
Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> IMG-TR> TRDAYENV, TRDAYTGT

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-TR	
TRENVSW	Pry trn ATVC tgt crmnt adj ev set: R&D
Lv.1 Details	To set the environment to adjust the target current offset at the primary transfer ATVC control. Check the use environment from COPIER> DISPLAY> MISC> ENV-TR. Set the offset value from COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> 1TR-TGY, 1TR-TGM, 1TR-TGC, 1TR-TGK1, 1TR-TGK4.
Use case	When a ghost image due to transfer failure occurs
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
Display/adj/set range	0 to 7 0: All environments, 1: Low humidity environment, 2: Normal environment, 3: High humidity environment, 4: Low humidity environment + Normal humidity environment, 5: Low humidity environment + High humidity environment, 6: Normal humidity environment + High humidity environment, 7: OFF
Default value	0
Related service mode	COPIER> DISPLAY> MISC> ENV-TR COPIER> ADJUST> HV-TR> 1TR-TGY, 1TR-TGM, 1TR-TGC, 1TR-TGK1, 1TR-TGK4
TRDAYTGT	Pry trn tgt crmnt crct VL adj: For R&D
Lv.1 Details	To adjust the offset correction value of the primary transfer target current correction after a specified number of sheets is fed. Set the environment for correction by TRDATENV and set the number of sheets to be fed by TRDAYCNT.
Use case	When density varies at the time of making a large number of outputs
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
Display/adj/set range	-5 to 5
Unit	uA
Default value	0
Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> IMG-TR> TRDAYENV, TRDAYCNT
T2TOPDIV	Ppr lead edge V:thin ppr sprtn error,R&D
Lv.1 Details	When the second side of the thin paper winds around the ITB, sometimes a jam occurs due to the secondary transfer separation failure. In this case, if the value is set to either 1, 2 or 3, the voltage of the leading edge on the second side is decreased, so the force which the thin paper winds around the ITB gets weakened.
Use case	When a jam occurs due to the separation failure on the second side of thin paper
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
Caution	Do not use this at the normal service.
Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: OFF, 1: Weak separation, 2: Medium separation, 3: Strong separation
Default value	0

IMG-DEV

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-DEV	
DEVL-VTH	Set toner ejectn image duty threshold VL
Lv.2	Details
	To set the threshold value of the image duty, which is the condition to perform the low duty toner ejection sequence. As the value is larger, coarseness is decreased, but productivity is lowered and toner consumption is increased. As the value is smaller, productivity and toner consumption are improved, but coarseness is worsened.
	Use case
	When printing low duty (low image ratio) images, • graininess (coarseness) or low density occurs • low productivity or high toner consumption is pointed out by the user
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Caution
	Do not use this when the machine is operating correctly.
	Display/adj/set range
	-1 to 2 -1: -1 %, 0: 0 %, 1: +2 %, 2: +4 %(The maximum threshold value is 6%.)
	Default value
	0
DV-RT-LG	ON/OFF of Drum Unit first idle rotation
Lv.2	Details
	To set ON/OFF of idle rotation of the Drum Unit to be performed first time for the day. Although idle rotation is not performed in the normal operation to extend the life of Drum Unit, execute it for 60 seconds when any problem (image failure, etc.) occurs.
	Use case
	When an image failure occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON (60 seconds)
	Default value
	0
ADJ-VPP	Adj of dev AC bias Vpp: 1/1 SPD
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust Vpp of the developing AC bias at 1/1 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, Vpp changes by 0.5 kV. Decrease the value when fogging/bias leak/low density/white spots occurs.
	Use case
	When an image failure (carrier adherence, low density, ghost, etc.) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjust.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 17 1: 1.00 kVpp, ..., 14: 1.65 kVpp, 15: 1.70 kVpp, 16: 1.75 kVpp, 17: For R&D
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	16

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-DEV	
DMX-OF-Y	Adjustment of Y-color D-max target density
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the target density of D-max control in case that density of solid area on Y-color image is not appropriate even performing auto gradation adjustment. Increase the value when the density is low and decrease the value when the density is high.
	Use case
	When density of solid area is not appropriate even performing auto gradation adjustment
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. 3) Execute full adjustment of auto gradation adjustment.
	Display/adj/set range
	-3 to 3
	Default value
	0
DMX-OF-M	Adjustment of M-color D-max target density
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the target density of D-max control in case that density of solid area on M-color image is not appropriate even performing auto gradation adjustment. Increase the value when the density is low and decrease the value when the density is high.
	Use case
	When density of solid area is not appropriate even performing auto gradation adjustment
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. 3) Execute full adjustment of auto gradation adjustment.
	Display/adj/set range
	-3 to 3
	Default value
	0
DMX-OF-C	Adjustment of C-color D-max target density
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the target density of D-max control in case that density of solid area on C-color image is not appropriate even performing auto gradation adjustment. Increase the value when the density is low and decrease the value when the density is high.
	Use case
	When density of solid area is not appropriate even performing auto gradation adjustment
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. 3) Execute full adjustment of auto gradation adjustment.
	Display/adj/set range
	-3 to 3
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-DEV	
DMX-OF-K	Adjustment of Bk-color D-max target density
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the target density of D-max control in case that density of solid area on Bk-color image is not appropriate even performing auto gradation adjustment. Increase the value when the density is low and decrease the value when the density is high.
	Use case
	When density of solid area is not appropriate even performing auto gradation adjustment
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch. 3) Execute full adjustment of auto gradation adjustment.
	Display/adj/set range
	-3 to 3
	Default value
	0
ADJ-VPPN	Adj of dev AC bias Vpp: 1/2 SPD
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust Vpp for the developing AC bias at 1/2 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, Vpp changes by 0.5 kV. Decrease the value when fogging/bias leak/low density/white spots occurs.
	Use case
	When fogging, bias leakage, low-density image, or no image occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjust.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 17 1: 1.00 kVpp, ..., 14: 1.65 kVpp, 15: 1.70 kVpp, 16: 1.75 kVpp, 17: For R&D
	Unit
	V
	Default value
	7

T-8-44

■ IMG-LSR

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-LSR	
PR-SUBRL	ON/OFF of Auxiliary Roller ejectn ctrl
Lv.2	Details
	To set ON/OFF of Auxiliary Roller ejection control. When ghost image (Bk) occurs, set 1. Auxiliary Roller ejection control is executed with A3 or larger size paper intervals, so the ghost image (Bk) is improved.
	Use case
	When ghost image (Bk) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0
PR-SUBBR	Brush ejctn ctrl exe intvl at high duty
Lv.2	Details
	To set the paper interval to execute the brush ejection control for high duty image at last rotation. When additionally executing the brush ejection control which is executed at last rotation at high duty, ghost image can be alleviated. If short paper interval to execute this control is set, the alleviation of ghost image is highly expected, but productivity decreases. This is executed for all colors.
	Use case
	When ghost image occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Be sure to get approval from the user by telling that productivity decreases.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 2 0: 100 sheets, 1: 50 sheets, 2: 1 sheet * Converted with 6% duty per sheet
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	Brush ejection control: Control to eject toner accumulated in the Auxiliary Brush in order to enhance the effect of collecting the remaining toner which was not transferred
PRI-CLN	ON/OFF of cleaning for foggy image
Lv.2	Details
	To set ON/OFF of cleaning for foggy image. When 1 is set, foggy image which occurs since the parts are close to the end of life can be alleviated, but productivity decreases. This is executed for all colors.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not use this at the normal service. Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division. Upon user's request (alleviation of foggy image) When alleviating foggy image which occurs since the parts are close to the end of life
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Be sure to get approval from the user by telling that productivity decreases.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 2 0: OFF, 1: ON, 2: Not used
	Default value
	0

T-8-45

IMG-RDR

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR	
DFDST-L1	DADF mode dust dtct level adj: ppr intvl
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust dust detection level with dust detection correction control that is executed at paper interval in DADF mode. Reduce the value in the case of frequent display of cleaning instruction at the time of dust detection. As the value is smaller, the dust is less detected. Increase the value in the case of black lines. As the value is larger, the small dust is more likely detected.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When black line occurs due to dust Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	When increasing the value too much, the cleaning instruction screen may appear too often since even small dust that will not be appeared on the image can be detected. When reducing the value too much, black lines may appear on the image.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 255
	Default value
	200
	Supplement/memo
	Black lines can appear on the image if there is dust. With dust detection correction control, the image is corrected to prevent black lines once dust is detected.
DFDST-L2	DADF mode dust dtct level adj: after job
Lv.1	Details
	To adjust dust detection level with dust detection correction control that is executed after the job is completed in DADF mode. Reduce the value in the case of frequent display of cleaning instruction at the time of dust detection. As the value is smaller, the dust is less detected. Increase the value in the case of black lines. As the value is larger, the small dust is more likely detected.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When black line occurs due to dust Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	When increasing the value too much, the cleaning instruction screen may appear too often since even small dust that will not be appeared on the image can be detected. When reducing the value too much, black lines may appear on the image.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 255
	Default value
	200
	Supplement/memo
	Black lines can appear on the image if there is dust. With dust detection correction control, the image is corrected to prevent black lines once dust is detected.

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-RDR	
DSC-LINE	Disable of noncontinuous line detection
Lv.1	Details
	To disable the detection of noncontinuous lines. Set the value to 1 if an original is not printed because thin lines on the original are detected as dust by dust detection control in ADF stream reading mode.
	Use case
	When thin lines on an original are not printed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled
	Default value
	0

T-8-46

IMG-MCON

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON		
PASCAL		
Use/no use of auto gradation adj data		
Lv.1	Details	To set to use/not to use the gradation adjustment data gamma LUT that is generated by auto gradation adjustment (Full/Quick Adjust) control. Selection is available as to whether to use gamma LUT at the time of image formation.
	Use case	When PASCAL-related failure occurs/when identifying the cause of PASCAL-related failure
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: Initial LUT is used. (Automatic gradation adjustment is not used.) 1: Auto gradation adjustment is used. 2 to 3: Not used
	Default value	1
SCR-SLCT		
Halftone process in Photo Printout mode		
Lv.2	Details	To set halftone process (error diffusion, screen 2 types) in Photo Printout mode when making a copy. Change the setting if the copy image has a problem with the initial setting (Low screen ruling). Select 0 (error diffusion) in the case of moire (suitable for character reproduction). Select 2 (High screen ruling) in the case of rough dots.
	Use case	When moire image or rough dots occurs on copy image
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: Error diffusion, 1: Low screen ruling, 2: High screen ruling
	Default value	1
	Related user mode	Function Settings> Copy> Photo Printout Mode
TMC-SLCT		
Setting of error diffusion coefficient		
Lv.2	Details	To set coefficient to be used for error diffusion process. Specify according to the level of granularity and dot stability.
	Use case	At error diffusion processing
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: Small granularity/low dot stability 1: Small granularity/low dot stability (color mode), Large granularity/high dot stability (B&W mode) 2: Large granularity/high dot stability
	Default value	2

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON		
PRN-FLG		Select of image area flag (PDL image)
Lv.2	Details	To set the image area flag for the image processing which is performed when a PDL image fails to be compressed at a specified compression rate. If an image fails to be compressed at a specified compression rate, the following operations are performed as default: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Processing to prioritize reproduction of text Replacing Bk color to black plain color Set 1 when moire occurs or jaggy is significant. Set 2 when not preferring to replace Bk color with black plain color.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When moire occurs or jaggy is significant in case of printing an image containing many halftone dots or photos When avoiding to replace Bk color with black plain color
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	This setting trades off with reproducibility of text.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: High screen ruling, gray compensation LUT 1: Error diffusion, gray compensation LUT 2: High screen ruling, normal LUT
	Default value	0
	SCN-FLG	
Lv.2	Details	To set the image area flag for the image processing which is performed when a scanned image fails to be compressed at a specified compression rate. If an image fails to be compressed at a specified compression rate, processing to prioritize reproduction of text is performed by default. Set 1 when an image contains many halftone photos. Set 2 when an image contains many printed photos.
	Use case	When copying an image which contains many halftone dots and photos
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	This setting trades off with reproducibility of text.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: Text 1: Halftone photo image 2: Printed photo
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON		
TNR-DWN		Setting of toner deposit amount
Lv.2	Details	To set the toner deposit amount on the gradation area and text area. By reducing the toner deposit amount when toner scatters or paper winds around the Fixing Assembly in the case of full color, the symptom can be decreased, but the hue might change.
	Use case	When a full color image is blurred due to toner scattering, etc. When paper winds around the Fixing Assembly
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Hue might change depending on the setting.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 5 0: Gradation area 210%, Text area 180% (Normal) 1: 180%, 165% 2: 160%, 150% 3: 160%, 150% (Thin paper only) 4: 160%, 150% (2-sided thin paper print only) 5: 160%, 150% (Transparency only)
	Default value	0
TMIC-BK		ON/OFF of TMIC Bk_LUT end edge correct
Lv.2	Details	To set ON/OFF of the trailing edge adjustment of Bk_LUT for PDL and for copy which are used by TMIC. When the trailing edge adjustment is set to ON, the density of the high density area becomes high, and consequently text and thin lines become clear. While an image becomes clear, the hue of the gradation area of photos, etc. is changed.
	Use case	When thin lines are partly missing or characters are faded
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: ON for PDL, OFF for copy 1: OFF for PDL, OFF for copy 2: ON for PDL, ON for copy 3: OFF for PDL, ON for copy
	Default value	0
DH-MODE		Set ptch data at D-half except full crct
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to use the high-density patch data that has been scanned by D-half control of full correction at the time of D-half control other than full correction.
	Use case	At image adjustment
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Used, 1: Not used
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON		
REPORT-Z		Set of report print image processing
Lv.1	Details	To set the image processing which is performed when printing a report.
	Use case	When there is a request for image improvement
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: Equivalent to PDL text mode (Black text is reproduced with 4 colors. Error diffused image. The hue of the photo area is more vivid than 2.) 1: Equivalent to PDL photo mode (Black text is reproduced with 4 colors. Screen processed image.) 2: Equivalent to scanned text mode (Black text is reproduced with black plain color. Error diffused image. The hue of the photo area might be different from 0.) 3: Equivalent to scanned photo mode (Black text is reproduced with black plain color. Screen processed image.)
	Default value	0
IFXEML-Z		Set clr iFAX,mail rcv print img process
Lv.1	Details	To set the image processing which is performed when printing color iFAX or received mail.
	Use case	When there is a request for image improvement
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: Equivalent to PDL text mode (Black text is reproduced with 4 colors. Error diffused image. The hue of the photo area is more vivid than 2.) 1: Equivalent to PDL photo mode (Black text is reproduced with 4 colors. Screen processed image.) 2: Equivalent to scanned text mode (Black text is reproduced with black plain color. Error diffused image. The hue of the photo area might be different from 0.) 3: Equivalent to scanned photo mode (Black text is reproduced with black plain color. Screen processed image.)
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON		
BMLNKS-Z	Set BMLinkS reception print img process	
Lv.1	Details	To set the image processing which is performed when printing received BMLinkS.
	Use case	When there is a request for image improvement
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: Equivalent to PDL text mode (Black text is reproduced with 4 colors. Error diffused image. The hue of the photo area is more vivid than 2.) 1: Equivalent to PDL photo mode (Black text is reproduced with 4 colors. Screen processed image.) 2: Equivalent to scanned text mode (Black text is reproduced with black plain color. Error diffused image. The hue of the photo area might be different from 0.) 3: Equivalent to scanned photo mode (Black text is reproduced with black plain color. Screen processed image.)
	Default value	0
	Supplement/memo	BMLinkS (Business Machine Linkage Service): An integrated network OA device interface
REDU-CNT	Set toner deposit amount limit at clr adj	
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to limit the toner deposit amount at color adjustment (color balance, fine adjustment of density). When 1 is set, the color adjustment value is reflected to an image precisely, but toner scattering in the Transfer Assembly and Fixing Assembly might occur, and paper might wind around the Fixing Assembly.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upon user's request When reflecting the color adjustment value to an image precisely
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	When 1 is set, toner scattering in the Transfer Assembly and Fixing Assembly might occur, and paper might wind around the Fixing Assembly.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Toner deposit amount is limited to the specified amount. 1: Toner deposit amount is not limited.
	Default value	1
Related user mode	Adjustment/Maintenance> Adjust Image Quality> Density Adjustment Mode	

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON		
VP-ART	Setting of line art processing	
Lv.2	Details	To make a setting for outline processing for line art on scalable PDF. In the outline processing, a binary image outline is extracted in the field which is recognized as line art, and is converted into vector data. Specify whether to convert the binary image outline into vector data or to recognize it as one line (as a thin line). For the thin line, the line width can be specified. Change this value when you want to obtain an output of a wide-width line as one line rather than as an outline (when you want to prioritize edit operation as a line rather than image quality).
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99
	Default value	1
VP-TXT	Setting of character vectorization	
Lv.2	Details	To make a setting of vector conversion processing for text on scalable PDF. In the vector conversion processing, a binary image outline is extracted in the field which is recognized as text, and is converted into vector data. In regular vector conversion, function approximation is not used for small text because the image quality is not changed. When the value is changed, function approximation processing is executed for small text, which realizes smooth text although the image quality is changed. Change this value when you want to prioritize smoothness in small text.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99
	Default value	1

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON	
PASCL-TY	Paper setting for auto gradation adj
Lv.2	Details
	Auto gradation adjustment is normally executed with the recommended paper specified for each location. However, if you want to change the paper type, use this setting to change the paper type.
	Use case
	When executing the auto gradation adjustment using a paper other than the recommended paper type
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Do not change the setting in the normal operation.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 3 1: CS-814 (Except for USA and EU. Mainly for Japan) 2: Hammermill (For USA) 3: Mondi (For EU)
	Default value
	The value differs according to the location.
AST-SEL	Adj of advanced smoothing effect
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the smoothing effect which is set in the advanced smoothing UI. Set 3 if no smoothing effect is obtained even though Strong is set in the advanced smoothing UI. Set 0 if too much effect is obtained even though Weak is set in the advanced smoothing UI.
	Use case
	When image failures (jaggy, moire) occur
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 3
	Default value
	2
	Supplement/memo
	AST: Advanced Smoothing Technology
REGM-SEL	Adj of fine-line density correction
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the line and text density which is set in the thin line density adjustment UI. Set 4 if density is too low even though +2 is set in the thin line density adjustment UI. Set 0 if density is too high even though -2 is set in the thin line density adjustment UI.
	Use case
	When line and text adjusted by thin line density adjustment is too dark or too light in the case of 1200 dpi print
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 4
	Default value
	2
	Supplement/memo
	REGM-SEL: REos GaMma SElect

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON	
SCR-SW	Set of low screen ruling dither
Lv.1	Details
	To set the dithering method for low screen ruling. When changing the value, confirm the change by setting "1: Low screen ruling" in COPIER> TEST> PG> TXPH.
	Use case
	Upon user's request (Dot dithering is used)
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Execute Auto Adjust Gradation (Full Adjust).
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Line dithering, 1: Dot dithering
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> TEST> PG> TXPH
ERS-SEL1	Set 1200 dpi ERS process:PS Expsn Kit
Lv.1	Details
	To change the ERS processing when the hue of patterned graphics is changed according to phase in the case of making 1200-dpi output with the PS Expansion Kit installed. The processing is changed only for graphics and images, and ERS weighting processing is performed to characters even if the setting is changed. Set 1 when the aforementioned symptom occurs. Set 3 if the proportion of small characters is distorted after 1 is set. Set 5 if the color of graphics is not stabilized after 1 or 3 is set. In this setting, however, a thin line of a single line disappears.
	Use case
	When the hue is changed according to phase when making 1200-dpi output
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 7 The following processing are performed to graphics and images respectively: 0: Max skipping, simple skipping 1: ERS (average), simple skipping 2: ERS (average), ERS (average) 3: ERS (weighting), simple skipping 4: ERS (weighting), ERS (weighting) 5: Simple skipping, simple skipping 6, 7: Not used
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-MCON		
ERS-SEL2	Set 1200 dpi ERS process: print server	
Lv.1	Details	To change the ERS processing when the hue of patterned graphics is changed according to phase in the case of making 1200-dpi output through connection to the print server. Set 1 when the aforementioned symptom occurs. Set 3 if the proportion of small characters is distorted after 1 is set. Set 5 if the color of graphics is not stabilized after 1 or 3 is set. In this setting, however, a thin line of a single line disappears.
	Use case	When the hue is changed according to phase when making 1200-dpi output
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 5 The following processing are performed to characters, graphics, and images respectively: 0: ERS (weighting), Max skipping, simple skipping 1: ERS (average), ERS (average), simple skipping 2: ERS (average), ERS (average), ERS (average) 3: ERS (weighting), ERS (weighting), simple skipping 4: ERS (weighting), ERS (weighting), ERS (weighting) 5: ERS (weighting), simple skipping, simple skipping
	Default value	0
BGE-OFS	Fine adj of background adjustment level	
Lv.2	Details	To make a fine adjustment of the background adjustment (background removal) level which can be set manually. Break up the adjustment values into smaller ones when user does not satisfy with the default adjustment values.
	Use case	When color fogging occurs on the output image when copying yellowed blank paper as an original
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Since the background color is set to be washed out with this mode, not only the background of yellowed blank paper, but also other light colors (light blue, etc.) are washed out.
	Display/adj/set range	-15 to 15
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Copy> Options> Density> Background Density

T-8-47

IMG-SPD

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-SPD	
FX-D-TMP	Set small ppr down sequence start temp
Lv.1	Details
	To set temperature to start the down sequence control to small size paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the temperature is increased by 2 deg C from the initial setting temperature.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When uneven gloss occurs at paper edge When improving productivity
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	-4 to 4 -4: -8 deg C, -3: -6 deg C, -2: -4 deg C, -1: -2 deg C, 0: 0 deg C, 1: 2 deg C, 2: 4 deg C, 3: 6 deg C, 4: 8 deg C
	Unit
	deg C
	Default value
	0
FIX-ROT	Idle rotn end temp after small ppr feed
Lv.1	Details
	When feeding the small size paper following the large size paper on the Fixing Assembly, the temperature at both edges of Fixing Film is higher than the center. To prevent the fixing offset or paper wrinkle, it idles until the temperature becomes the specified value after the small size paper is fed. This item is to set the temperature to finish the idle rotation. When the value is increased, downtime is increased because of prioritizing image quality. When the value is decreased, downtime is decreased, but uneven gloss occurs.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When uneven gloss occurs at paper edge When improving productivity
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	-2 to 2
	Unit
	deg C
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > IMG-SPD	
MXSPDSEL	SPD/Q'ty priority in mixed width:Reader
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to give priority to speed or image quality when feeding the paper with different width. When "0: Image quality priority" is set, idle rotation is performed at different width mixed print and the number of registration is increased so that the image quality can be maintained while the productivity is reduced. When "1: Speed priority" is set, the productivity does not reduce while skew may occur even same width.
	Use case
	When skew occurs at different width mixed print
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Image quality priority, 1: Speed priority
	Default value
	1
ARC-INT1	Set of ARCDAT interruption interval
Lv.2	Details
	To set the number of sheets as the intervals at which ARCDAT control is executed. When the number of sheets reaches the specified value, ARCDAT control is executed by interrupting an ongoing job. If the value is too large, the density of image becomes different before and after the interruption. If the value is too small, the productivity is lowered.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	10 to 500
	Unit
	sheet
	Default value
	80
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> ARC-INT2
ARC-INT2	Set ARCDAT exe interval: last rotation
Lv.2	Details
	To set the number of sheets which ARCDAT control is not executed, from the start of a job. ARCDAT control which is supposed to be executed during the specified number of sheets is executed at last rotation of the previous job. Since the number of interruptions during a job is reduced, the productivity is enhanced. However, the number of times of ARCDAT control executed at last rotation might be increased depending on the print conditions.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Do not set a larger value than ARC-INT1.
	Display/adj/set range
	10 to 500
	Unit
	sheet
	Default value
	50
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> IMG-LSR> ARC-INT1

T-8-48

CLEANING

COPIER > OPTION > CLEANING	
OHP-PTH	Set of ITB clean transp threshold value
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the number of sheets for ITB cleaning interval to be executed when feeding transparency. When a large number of transparencies is fed, surface active agent adheres to the ITB, and the blade bounds in small motions. As a result, an image failure occurs. At last rotation of the job with more than specified number of sheets, execute ITB cleaning (not executed when 0 is set). As the value is incremented by 1, the number of sheets for cleaning interval at last rotation is increased by 1 sheet. When using the transparency that tends to cause the adherence of surface active agent, decrease the value so that the image failure can be alleviated. When the value is increased, the downtime and the toner consumption can be reduced; however, image failure may occur.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When an image failure occurs due to lowering of the transfer efficiency</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 30 0: No ITB cleaning</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>sheet</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEANING> TBLT-CLN</p>
ITBB-TMG	Setting of ITB cleaning sheet interval
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the paper interval to execute the ITB cleaning. As the value is increased, downtime and toner consumption amount are reduced while an image failure may occur due to soiled ITB.</p> <p>Use case</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the density varies dramatically When decreasing downtime <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 10 0: Not executed</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>100 sheets</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

T-8-49

ENV-SET

COPIER > OPTION > ENV-SET	
ENVP-INT	Temp, humid & Fix Film temp log get cycle
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the cycle to obtain log of the temperature and humidity inside the machine and the surface temperature of the Fixing Film. As the value is incremented by 1, the cycle is increased by 1 minute. Obtained log can be displayed by selecting the following: COPIER > DISPLAY > ENVRNT</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>At trouble analysis</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 480</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>min</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>60</p> <p>Related service mode</p> <p>COPIER> DISPLAY> ENVRNT</p>
DRY-CISU	ON/OFF of condensation prevention mode
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set ON/OFF of condensation mode. When droplets are appeared on the Scanner Unit due to condensation and image failure or E225 occurs, set "1: ON". By selecting 1, the Scanner Unit (paper front) stops the fan for 15 seconds and the Scanner Unit (paper back) lights LED for 30 seconds from the next startup.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When droplets are appeared on the Scanner Unit due to condensation and image failure or E225 occurs</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 1 0: OFF (Normal mode), 1: ON (Anti-condensation mode)</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

T-8-50

FEED-SW

COPIER > OPTION > FEED-SW	
EVLP-SPD	Envelope feeding speed setting
Lv.1	Details
	To set the envelope feeding speed. Operation (1) By feeding an envelope at 1/2 speed in the case of a high humidity environment, the glue flap may adhere at the time of fixing. As a result of that, the envelope may not be opened. By setting to 1/1 speed, adhesion can be prevented, but fixing might be deteriorated in a low temperature environment. Because paper interval is widened at 1/1 speed, productivity is not changed. Operation (2) Because fixing arch control is not executed, it is effective to prevent envelope from getting wrinkles.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a glue flap of envelope adheres When wrinkles occurs on envelope
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the setting of 1/1 speed is selected in a low temperature environment, a fixing failure may occur. When the setting of 1/1 speed is selected, the image expands slightly and the characters are faded, therefore COPIER > OPTION > FEED-SW > ENVP-FS also needs to be adjusted appropriately.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 3 0: Normal mode (1/2 speed) for both portrait and landscape 1: Portrait => wrinkle prevention mode (1/1 speed), Landscape => normal mode (1/1 speed) 2: Portrait => wrinkle prevention mode (1/1 speed), Landscape => normal mode (1/2 speed) 3: Portrait => normal mode (1/2 speed), Landscape => normal mode (1/1 speed)
	Default value
	Japan: 0, Other: 2
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> FEED-SW > EVLP-FS
	Supplement/memo
	Since the paper intervals are widened at 1/1 speed, the productivity remains the same.

COPIER > OPTION > FEED-SW	
EVLP-FS	Setting of fixing speed with envelop
Lv.2	Details
	To set fixing speed when feeding envelope. As the value is incremented by 1, the fixing speed changes by 0.1%. Decrease the value when fine line displacement occurs on trailing edge of envelop, and increase the value when wrinkles occur.
	Use case
	When fine line displacement or wrinkles occur on trailing edge while feeding envelop
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Caution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This setting is enabled when envelopes are printed in portrait at 1/1 speed (1 or 2 is selected in COPIER > OPTION > FEED-SW > EVLP-SPD). The setting is disabled when envelopes are printed at 1/1 speed or in landscape. Increase/decrease the value a little at a time while checking the symptom each time. When the value is changed greatly, even if either fine line displacement or wrinkles is improved, the other may persist.
	Display/adj/set range
	-20 to 20
	Unit
	%
	Default value
	Japan: 0, Other: -7
	Related service mode
	COPIER > OPTION > FEED-SW > EVLP-SPD
OUT-SPD	Delivery trailing edge acceleration mode
Lv.1	Details
	When ejecting heavy paper 1/2/3 and coated paper 1/2 to the Inner 2-way Tray, the trailing edge of paper is not delivered to the tray appropriately, so the following paper is delivered under the preceding paper. As a result, a stacking failure may occur. When 1 is set, the trailing edge of paper to be ejected at 1/2 speed is accelerated to 1/1 speed in case of the following conditions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When heavy paper 1/2/3 and coated paper 1/2 are delivered to the Inner 2-way Tray The first side of paper at duplex printing is not accelerated. When installing the Inner Finisher, the speed is not accelerated.
	Use case
	When a stacking failure occurs due to inappropriate delivery of the trailing edge of paper to the Inner 2-way Tray
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > FEED-SW	
DCL-FACE	Selection of decurler control:1-/2-sided
Lv.2	Details
	To select the print side to which decurler control for correcting curl is applied.
	Use case
	Use this mode when degree of downward curl is large and the delivery stackability is low or misalignment occurs with Finisher. Set 1 if the degree of downward curl is too large at the time of 2-sided printing. Set 2 if downward curl occurs at the time of both 1-sided and 2-sided printing. Set 2 if it is obvious that decurler control causes the occurrence of wrinkles.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 2 0: Decurler control is executed for both 1-sided and 2-sided jobs (default) 1: Decurler control is executed only for 1-sided job 2: Decurler control is not executed
	Default value
	0
DCL-ADJ	Adjustment of decurl correction level
Lv.2	Details
	To adjust the curl correction level by decurl control, and to select the paper type for correction.
	Use case
	Use this mode when degree of upward curl is large and the delivery stackability is low or misalignment occurs with Finisher. Set the setting value 2 only when checking the effect of the correction on heavy paper.
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 2 0: Set low correction level for all paper types (default) 1: Set low correction level for heavy paper 3, 1-sided coated paper 2, 2-sided coated paper 2, transparency, label, envelope, postcard and 4 on 1 postcard, and set high correction level for other paper types 2: Set high correction level for all paper types
	Default value
	0

T-8-51

NETWORK

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
RAW-DATA	Setting of received data print mode
Lv.2	Details
	To set print mode for the received image data. This item is used to identify the cause whether it's due to image data or image processing in the case of trouble with received image.
	Use case
	When received image trouble occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Be sure to set the value back to "0: normal print operation" after recovering from the trouble.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Normal print operation, 1: Print with original data without image processing
	Default value
	0
IFAX-LIM	No. of max print lines at IFAX reception
Lv.2	Details
	To set the maximum number of lines for e-mail text to be printed when receiving IFAX. Setting of this item can prevent endless printing of the attached file data in the case of receiving an error e-mail or failure in interpretation of the context. Selecting 0 prints the header/footer in 1 sheet when receiving e-mail text without attached file.
	Use case
	When preventing endless print in the case of failure in reception
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 999 0: E-mail text not printed, 999: Unlimited
	Default value
	500
SMTPTXPN	Setting of SMTP TX port number
Lv.2	Details
	To set SMTP transmission port number.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 65535
	Default value
	25
SMTPRXPN	Setting of SMTP reception port number
Lv.2	Details
	To set SMTP reception port number.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 65535
	Default value
	25

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
POP3PN	Setting of POP3 reception port number
Lv.2	Details
	To set POP3 reception port number.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 65535
	Default value
	110
FTPTXPN	Specification of SEND port (FTP) number
Lv.2	Details
	To specify address port (FTP) number for SEND.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 65535
	Default value
	21
STS-PORT	ON/OFF of TOT sync status comctn port
Lv.2	Details
	To set ON/OFF for Inquiry/Response (sync)-mode status communication port with T.O.T. Select "1: ON" in the case of connecting the PC and the machine with the cross cable while Service NAVI is used.
	Use case
	When the Service NAVI is used
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> CMD-PORT
	Supplement/memo
	T.O.T: TUIF over TCP. Communication protocol to be used for communication with the built-in application (UI) and the internal application such as COPY/ SEND/ BOX, etc. (Canon's own protocol).
CMD-PORT	ON/OFF TOTasync command comctn port
Lv.2	Details
	To set ON/OFF for asynchronous command communication port with T.O.T. Select "1: ON" in the case of connecting the PC and the machine with the cross cable while Service NAVI is used.
	Use case
	When the Service NAVI is used
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> STS-PORT
	Supplement/memo
	T.O.T: TUIF over TCP. Communication protocol to be used for communication with the built-in application (UI) and the internal application such as COPY/ SEND/ BOX, etc. (Canon's own protocol).

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
NS-CMD5	Limit CRAM-MD5 auth method at SMTP auth
Lv.2	Details
	To restrict use of CRAM-MD5 authentication method at the time of SMTP authentication.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated.
NS-GSAPI	Limit GSSAPI auth method at SMTP auth
Lv.2	Details
	To restrict use of GSSAPI authentication method at the time of SMTP authentication.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated.
NS-NTLM	Limit NTLM auth method at SMTP auth
Lv.2	Details
	To restrict use of NTLM authentication method at the time of SMTP authentication.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated.

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
NS-PLNWS	Limit clear text auth at SMTP auth encry
Lv.2	Details
	To restrict use of PLAIN/LOGIN authentication, which is clear text, at the time of SMTP authentication under the environment where the communication packet is encrypted.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated.
NS-PLN	Limit plain txt auth at SMTPauth noency
Lv.2	Details
	To restrict use of PLAIN/LOGIN authentication, which is plain text, at the time of SMTP authentication under the environment where the communication packet is not encrypted.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated.
NS-LGN	Limit LOGIN authentication at SMTP auth
Lv.2	Details
	To restrict use of LOGIN authentication at the time of SMTP authentication.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: SMTP server-dependent, 1: Not used
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated.

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
MEAP-PN	HTTP port No.setting of MEAP application
Lv.2	Details
	To set HTTP port number of MEAP application.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Do not specify port 8080 when the Print Server is connected. Otherwise, you cannot browse the device RUI in which MEAP authentication application is running (Port 8080 is reserved for redirection of EFI controller to the iR side.)
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 65535
	Default value
	8000
CHNG-STTS	Set of TOT status connection port number
Lv.2	Details
	To set the port number for status connection with T.O.T.
	Use case
	When the Service NAVI is used
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 65535
	Default value
	20010
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> STS-PORT
CHNG-CMD	Set of TOT command connection port No.
Lv.2	Details
	To set the port number for command connection with T.O.T.
	Use case
	When the Service NAVI is used
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 65535
	Default value
	20000
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> CMD-PORT
MEAP-SSL	HTTPS port setting of MEAP
Lv.2	Details
	To set the port of HTTPS server in the case of using SSL with HTTP of MEAP.
	Use case
	When specifying the setting of HTTPS port for MEAP
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 65535
	Default value
	8443
LPD-PORT	Setting of LPD port number
Lv.2	Details
	To set the LPD port number.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 65535
	Default value
	515
	Supplement/memo
	LPD port: Network port for TCP/IP communication when making prints through network.

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
WUEV-SW	Setting of sleep notification execution
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to notify the sleep mode to the application (imageWARE, etc) on the network when shifting to/recovering from the sleep mode.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Notified, 1: Not notified
	Default value
	0
WUEV-INT	Setting of sleep notification interval
Lv.2	Details
	To set the interval of sleep notification.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	This is active when COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> WUEV-SW is set to 0: Notified.
	Display/adj/set range
	60 to 65535
	Unit
	sec
	Default value
	600
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> WUEV-SW
WUEV-POT	Port number setting for sleep notice
Lv.2	Details
	To set port number of the PC to notify the sleep mode.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	This is active when COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> WUEV-SW is set to 0: Notified.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 65535
	Default value
	11427
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> WUEV-SW
WUEV-RTR	Setting of sleep notification range
Lv.2	Details
	To set the number of available routers to the target for sleep notification.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	This is active when COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> WUEV-SW is set to 0: Notified.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 254
	Default value
	3
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> WUEV-SW

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
WUEN-LIV	Recovery time setting after sleep notice
Lv.2	Details
	To set the time from the sleep start from network without job assignment until the mode is shifted to the sleep mode.
	Use case
	When setting the startup time after sleep notification
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 600
	Unit
	sec
	Default value
	15
DHCP-12	ON/OFF of DHCP-option 12 request
Lv.2	Details
	To set ON/OFF of inquiry on the host name (Option 12) which uses Option 55 of DHCP. Selecting OFF can prevent DHCP packet from including Option 12 or Option 81 under the packet-monitoring network environment.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	1
	Supplement/memo
	DHCP: Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DHCP-81	ON/OFF IPaddress dynamic chng in DHCP-81
Lv.2	Details
	To set ON/OFF for dynamic change of IP address by Option 81 of DHCP. Selecting OFF can prevent DHCP packet from including Option 12 or Option 81 under the packet-monitoring network environment. Selecting ON enables dynamic change of IP address by Option 81 of DHCP in the case that the dynamic DNS setting is ON in user mode.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Be sure to set ON for the dynamic DNS setting in user mode to enable dynamic change of IP address.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	1
	Supplement/memo
	DHCP: Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
IFX-CHIG	Set operation by IFAX recv mail content
Lv.1	Details
	To set the number of characters for the IFAX received mail content, so that the mail is not printed/forwarded when the characters in the text is less than the number of specified characters. This machine can output blank paper because some senders send e-mail text consists of linefeed codes only. In such case, specify 2 (number of characters) so that there will be no output of blank paper. In the case of specifying any number other than 0, header/footer is printed/forwarded in 1 sheet only if the e-mail (body) text is less than the specified value while no TIFF file is attached. As the value is incremented by 1, the number of target characters in e-mail body text is increased by 1 character.
	Use case
	When reducing print of blank paper due to e-mail received by IFAX.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Be sure to get approval from the user by telling that there will be no print of e-mail (body) text if the number of characters is less than the specified value.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 999 0: E-mail (body) text is not ignored.
	Unit
	char
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	1 Japanese Kanji character is calculated as 2 bytes, and the control codes (such as linefeed code, etc) are included in the number of characters.
DNSTRANS	Setting of DNS transfer priority
Lv.1	Details
	To set priority order of the protocol (IPv4/IPv6) to be used for DNS query. In the case of using both IPv6 and IPv4 while the DNS server supports IPv4, it takes time because of timeout when executing DNS query with priority on IPv6. Giving priority on query by IPv4 can shorten the time.
	Use case
	When it takes time to execute DNS query with priority on IPv6 because the DNS server supports IPv4
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: IPv4, 1: IPv6
	Default value
	1

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
PROXYRES	Setting of proxy response to Windows
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to provide proxy response or return the device status when an inquiry is received via Windows while the device is in sleep mode.
	Use case
	When executing status response for query from Windows correctly
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: No proxy response, 1: Proxy response
	Default value
	1
WOLTRANS	Setting of sleep recovery protocol
Lv.1	Details
	To set the protocol for recovery from sleep mode according to the value of WOL (Wake On LAN) trans. Reception of a specific network packet is one of the requirements for the device to recover from sleep mode. When the number of network protocols supported by the device increases, the types of network packets which activate recovery from sleep mode vary. However, there is a possibility that the existing network protocol is actually used. Select the type of network packet which activates recovery from sleep mode according to the environment where the device is used.
	Use case
	When selecting protocol for sleep recovery
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 3 1: WSD and SNMP, 2: WSD and CPCA, 3: CPCA and SNMP
	Default value
	1
802XTOUT	Set of IEEE802.1X authentication timeout
Lv.1	Details
	To set timeout value for IEEE802.1X authentication. If the device executes 802.1X authentication, change the wait time for response from the authentication server.
	Use case
	When response from the authentication server is slow/fast
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	10 to 120
	Unit
	sec
	Default value
	30
IKERETRY	Setting of IKE retry times
Lv.1	Details
	To set the number of retries in the case of no response from the communication target at the time of IKE packet transmission.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 3
	Default value
	1
	Supplement/memo
	IKE: Internet Key Exchange

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
SPDALDEL	Initialization of SPD value
Lv.2	Details
	To initialize all the SPD values that is under management. SPD values can be initialized without clearing SRAM.
	Use case
	At the time of SPD value mismatch when IPSec Board is added
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF and then ON the main power supply.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	SPD: Database that manages SA (Security Association). SPD value is managed when IPSec Board is used. Normally, SRAM needs to be cleared in the case of mismatch in SPD value.
NCONF-SW	ON/OFF of Network Configurator function
Lv.1	Details
	To set ON/OFF of Network Configurator function. If the user does not use the function, select OFF to prevent remote attack through network.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	1
	Supplement/memo
	Network Configurator function is a function to be used for communication with NetSpot Device Installer, etc., and the network setting can be changed from the remote.
IKEINTVL	Setting of IKE retry interval
Lv.1	Details
	To set retry interval in the case of no response from the communication target at the time of IKE packet transmission.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	1 to 10
	Unit
	sec
	Default value
	5
	Supplement/memo
	IKE: Internet Key Exchange
IPSDEBLV	Setting of IPSec debug level
Lv.2	Details
	For R&D use
	Default value
	9999

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
SP-LINK	Mode setting at 1W sleep
Lv.1	Details
	Switch to execute 10base-T standby as default to realize the standby power 1W in sleep mode.
	Use case
	When shifting to sleep mode after negotiation (same as conventional machines)
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Shift to sleep mode with 10base-T 1: Shift to sleep mode after negotiation
	Default value
	0
AFS-JOB	Set of FAX server job reception port
Lv.1	Details
	To set the reception port of the fax server to which a fax client sends jobs.
	Use case
	When changing the job reception port of the fax server
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 65535
	Default value
	20317
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> AFC-EVNT
AFC-EVNT	Set of FAX client event reception port
Lv.1	Details
	To set the event notification reception port of a fax client.
	Use case
	When changing the event notification reception port of a fax client
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 65535
	Default value
	29400
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> AFS-JOB
ILOGMODE	Setting of IP address block mode
Lv.1	Details
	To set all protocols or TCP/UDP/ICMP unicast as the target of IP block. When 0 is set, the machine responds to ARP, ICMP multicast and broadcast which have no direct relation, and consequently the number of logs is increased. When 1 is set, the machine filters TCP, UDP and ICMP unicast only.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 3 0: All protocols support mode 1: TCP/UDP/ICMP unicast support mode 2, 3: Not used
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
ILOGKEEP	Set of IP address block log hold time
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the retention time from the log time of IP block. When access is made again from a same IP address which was blocked before, if it is within the retention time of the previous log, its log is not recorded. If access is frequently made from a same IP address, the log record of the UI might be filled with its logs. If the user considers that a single log for a same IP address is enough, set the longer retention time.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Upon user's request</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 48 0: 1 minute (special mode) 1 to 48: 1 hour to 48 hours</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>1</p>
IPTBROAD	Set to allow broad/multi cast TX
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set whether to permit transmission of broadcast packets and multicast packets. Transmission of broadcast packets and multicast packets is permitted without specifying an exception address. It is permitted within the device even if it is rejected in the default setting of the IPv4/v6 transmission filter. Set "1: Disabled" when the user does not want to send them.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Upon user's request</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 5 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled, 2 to 5: Not used</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
PFWFTPRT	Set of RST reply at IP filter FTP SEND
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>When FTP SEND is executed using an IP filter by which packets from a specific remote PC are rejected, SYN is returned to the port 113 if the PC supports authentication of the FTP port 113. However, since the IP filter blocks the packets, the block logs are increased and the performance is lowered. When 1 is set, RST is returned to the port 113 without blocking packets.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When executing FTP SEND against the OS which supports authentication of the FTP port 113 while the IP filter is enabled</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
PRNIPBLK	ON/OFF of IP range setting function
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set ON/OFF of IP range setting function (only at reception and print job). When 1 is set, the following are displayed in the user mode. Preferences> Network > TCP/IP Settings > IPv4 Settings > IP Address Range Settings Preferences> Network > TCP/IP Settings > IPv6 Settings > IP Address Range Settings</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When using the IP address block function</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p> <p>Related user mode</p> <p>Preferences> Network > TCP/IP Settings > IPv4 Settings > IP Address Range Settings Preferences> Network > TCP/IP Settings > IPv6 Settings > IP Address Range Settings</p>
IPMTU	Setting of MTU size of network packet
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To change MTU size of network packet. Use this item when performing communications between locations (such as SEND) connected with Ethernet in a field environment where MTU black hole problem occurs.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When MTU black hole problem occur</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>1 to 10 1: 600 bytes, 2: 700 bytes, ..., 9: 1400 bytes, 10: 1500 bytes</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>byte</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>10</p> <p>Supplement/memo</p> <p>MTU: A unit of transmission showing the maximum value of data which can be sent per 1 transfer (1 frame) in a network MTU black hole: A problem which occurs when ICMP packet is being filtered by firewall, etc. (Since the message does not reach the sender, the sender is not aware of the packet being lost, which then results in time-out.)</p>

COPIER > OPTION > NETWORK	
DDNSINTV	Set of DDNS periodical update interval
Lv.1	Details
	The registered contents are deleted in an environment where the DNS server settings are deleted at intervals. To set the interval of DDNS periodical update for not deleting the registered contents.
	Use case
	When the DNS server settings are deleted at intervals
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 48 0: No periodical update, 1: 1-hour interval, 2: 2-hour interval, ..., 47: 47-hour interval, 48: 48-hour interval
	Unit
	hour
	Default value
	24
	Supplement/memo
	DDNS (Dynamic Domain Name System): A system to dynamically register and manage the IP addresses which are dynamically allocated and their host names
NWLOGINT	Set ntwrk trigger log acquisition intvl
Lv.2	Details
	To set the interval to obtain network trigger log. When network-related error occurs, information of sublog only may not be sufficient enough. To grasp the network status to proceed investigation and analysis, change the interval to obtain network trigger log according to the environment where an error occurs.
	Use case
	When a network-related error occurs
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 20 0: 30 minutes, 1: 10 seconds, 2: 30 seconds, 3: 1 minute, 4 to 20: Not used
	Default value
	0

T-8-52

CUSTOM

COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM	
TEMP-TBL	Fixing control temp: plain ppr, 1/1 SPD
Lv.1	Details
	To set the offset of fixing control temperature for plain paper (including thin paper, plain paper 2, plain paper 3) at 1/1 speed. As the value is incremented by 1, the control temperature is increased by 3 deg C. Increase the value when a fixing failure occurs. Decrease the value when hot offset occurs.
	Use case
	When hot offset/fixing failure occurs on plain paper at 1/1 speed
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	-3 to 3
	Unit
	deg C
	Default value
	0
SC-L-CNT	Set large paper jdgmt reference at scan
Lv.1	Details
	To set the judgment reference of the scan counter as to which to use B4 or LTR to determine large size. The threshold is determined by the combination with the setting of B4-L-CNT. SC-L-CNT=0, B4-L-CNT=0: paper exceeding B4 is determined as large size, paper with B4 or smaller is determined as small size. SC-L-CNT=0, B4-L-CNT=1: paper with B4 or larger is determined as large size, paper smaller than B4 is determined as small size.
	Use case
	As needed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: B4 size, 1: LTR size
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> USER> B4-L-CNT
ABK-TOOL	Allow access from address book mntc tool
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to accept import from the address book maintenance tool.
	Use case
	When executing import from the address book maintenance tool
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	Address book maintenance tool: Tool provided from CMJ.

COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM		
FAN-ROT	Setting of fan control at condensation	
Lv.2	Details	To set fan control when condensation occurs. When 1 is set, fan control is switched according to the temperature.
	Use case	When condensation occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: Normal, 1: Condensation prevention mode, 2: Not used
	Default value	0
EXT-TBOX	Set Wst Toner Cntner preparation warn tmng	
Lv.1	Details	As the value is changed, display timing of the Waste Toner Container preparation warning is changed in increment of approx. 1000 counts at 5% duty. By changing the setting value, timing of the alarm code "11-0010" that occurs simultaneously with the display of the Waste Toner Container preparation warning message is also changed.
	Use case	When changing the Waste Toner Container preparation warning timing
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	The count may not reach 1000 when the duty is high. Toner leak may occur when changing the setting value drastically.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 9 0: -4000 , 1: -3000 , --- , 4: 0 , --- , 8: +4000 , 9: +5000
	Unit	Approx. 1000 counts at 5% duty
	Default value	4
	Related service mode	COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > WT-WARN
	Supplement/memo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The counter is advanced by 1 with a small size and by 2 with a large size. With the default setting (setting value: 4), the Waste Toner Container preparation warning is displayed after counting up approx. 9000 counts at 5% duty from the point that the weight detection is ON.

COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM		
USEUPTNR	Set Toner Container use-up mode	
Lv.1	Details	When empty toner in the Hopper Unit is detected at the toner level detection, the Toner Container Motor is driven to supply toner from the Toner Container. If the status is not changed to "with toner" even after the motor is driven for 65 seconds, it is judged as empty toner in the Toner Container. For the last 55 seconds of 65-second motor drive, the Toner Container Motor is driven without allowing any job reception. During this operation, downtime (Motor drive noise continues independently of the job.) occurs. The downtime can be decreased by setting shorter time (default: 55 seconds) to supply toner without allowing any job reception, but the residual toner level in the Toner Container is increased.
	Use case	Upon user's request (to decrease downtime)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Be sure to get approval from the user in advance by telling that the residual toner level is increased if the setting is changed.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 4 YMC: 0: 20 seconds, 1: 40 seconds, 2: 55 seconds, 3: 55 seconds, 4: 55 seconds Bk: 0: 20 seconds, 1: 40 seconds, 2: 55 seconds, 3: 70 seconds, 4: 85 seconds
	Default value	2
FAN-POST	Set of fan operation at droplet mark	
Lv.2	Details	When Expansion Delivery Kit-C1 is used and 2-sided print is made after printing on moistened paper, droplet mark may occur on the image of the 2nd side. When 1 to 3 is set, 3 Way Unit Cooling Fan is operated for the specified period of time before making 2-sided print, and moisture in the feed path is ejected. "Printing" is displayed while the fan is operated.
	Use case	When an image failure (droplet mark) occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Be sure to get approval from the user in advance by telling that the downtime occurs according to the setting value.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 3 0: OFF, 1: 15 seconds, 2: 30 seconds, 3: 60 seconds
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM		
TNSNS-CL	Set Tonr Supply Sensr(Y/M/C)threshold VL	
Lv.2	Details	To set the threshold value when the Toner Supply Sensor (Y/M/C) of the Toner Buffer judges presence/absence of toner. The Toner Supply Sensor detects presence of toner incorrectly due to toner soiling, low density or E020 occurs. In this case, set 1. As the threshold value is small, absence of toner is more likely detected. With this setting, toner is surely supplied, but remaining toner in the Toner Container is increased.
	Use case	When low density or E020 occurs due to incorrect detection by the Toner Supply Sensor
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Before setting, be sure to check the current voltage value in COPIER> DISPALY> DENS> TNSNS-Y/M/C to see the effects by changing the threshold value.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: 1.65 V , 1: 1.20 V
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER> DISPLAY> DENS> TNSNS-Y, TNSNS-M, TNSNS-C COPIER> OPTION> CUSTOM> TNSNS-BK
TNSNS-BK	Set Tonr Supply Sensr (Bk) threshold VL	
Lv.2	Details	To set the threshold value when the Toner Supply Sensor (Bk) of the Toner Buffer judges presence/absence of toner. The Toner Supply Sensor detects presence of toner incorrectly due to toner soiling, low density or E020 occurs. In this case, set 1. As the threshold value is small, absence of toner is more likely detected. With this setting, toner is surely supplied, but remaining toner in the Toner Container is increased.
	Use case	When low density or E020 occurs due to incorrect detection by the Toner Supply Sensor
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Before setting, be sure to check the current voltage value in COPIER> DISPALY> DENS> TNSNS-K to see the effects by changing the threshold value.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: 0.7 V , 1: 0.5 V
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER> DISPLAY> DENS> TNSNS-K COPIER> OPTION> CUSTOM> TNSNS-CL

COPIER > OPTION > CUSTOM		
ATR12-SW	ON/OFF of ppr intvl ATVC ctrl: 1/2 speed	
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to execute the ATR control between papers at 1/2 speed. When the density variation is not within the requested range at continuous output of a large volume of papers (long job length) with 1/2 speed (heavy paper, coated paper, etc.), set 1. Both at 1/1 speed and 1/2 speed, specify the execution timing of paper interval ATR control in INTROT-1.
	Use case	When the density variation is not within the requested range at continuous output of a large volume of papers with 1/2 speed
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> INTROT-1
RDEV-SP1	For R&D	
RDEV-SP2	For R&D	
RDEV-SP3	For R&D	
RDEV-SP4	For R&D	
RDEV-SP5	For R&D	
RDEV-SP6	For R&D	
RDEV-SP7	For R&D	
RDEV-SP8	For R&D	

T-8-53

USER

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
COPY-LIM		
Setting of upper limit for copy		
Lv.1	Details	To set the upper limit value for copy.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 9999
	Default value	999
SLEEP		
Setting of auto sleep function		
Lv.1	Details	To set ON/OFF of auto sleep function.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	1
	Related user mode	Preferences> Timer/Energy Settings> Auto Sleep Time
SIZE-DET		
ON/OFF of original size detect function		
Lv.2	Details	To set ON/OFF of original size detection function.
	Use case	Upon user's request (glare of the scan lamp, etc)
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	1
COUNTER1		
Display of software counter 1		
Lv.1	Details	To display counter type for software counter 1 on the Counter Check screen.
	Use case	Upon user/dealer's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Display only. No change is available.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 999 0: Not registered
	Default value	The value differs according to the location.
COUNTER2		
Setting of software counter 2		
Lv.1	Details	To set counter type for software counter 2 on the Counter Check screen.
	Use case	Upon user/dealer's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 999 0: Not registered
	Default value	The value differs according to the location.

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
COUNTER3		
Setting of software counter 3		
Lv.1	Details	To set counter type for software counter 3 on the Counter Check screen.
	Use case	Upon user/dealer's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 999 0: Not registered
	Default value	The value differs according to the location.
COUNTER4		
Setting of software counter 4		
Lv.1	Details	To set counter type for software counter 4 on the Counter Check screen.
	Use case	Upon user/dealer's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 999 0: Not registered
	Default value	The value differs according to the location.
COUNTER5		
Setting of software counter 5		
Lv.1	Details	To set counter type for software counter 5 on the Counter Check screen.
	Use case	Upon user/dealer's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 999 0: Not registered
	Default value	0
COUNTER6		
Setting of software counter 6		
Lv.1	Details	To set counter type for software counter 6 on the Counter Check screen.
	Use case	Upon user/dealer's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 999 0: Not registered
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
DATE-DSP		Setting of data/time display format
Lv.2	Details	To set date/time display format according to the country or region. After the display format is set with this mode, the order of date is reflected to the followings: Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > Date/Time Settings, and report output.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: YYMM/DD, 1: DD/MYY, 2: MM/DD/YY
	Default value	The value differs according to the location.
	Related user mode	Preferences> Timer/Energy Settings> Date/Time Settings
MB-CCV		Control card usage limit for Mail Box
Lv.2	Details	To restrict use of control card for Mail Box.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Unlimited, 1: Limited
	Default value	1
CONTROL		Charge setting of PDL job
Lv.1	Details	To set charge count transmission of PDL job to the connecting charging management device (coin manager or non-Canon-made control card).
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: No charge, 1: Charge
	Default value	0
B4-L-CNT		Count setting of B4 size
Lv.1	Details	To set B4 count with software counter 1 to 8 as to whether B4 is counted as large size or small size. Selecting 1 counts B4 or larger size paper as large size while paper smaller than B4 size as small size.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Small size, 1: Large size
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> CUSTOM> SC-L-CNT

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
TRY-STP		Stop setting at finisher tray full
Lv.2	Details	To set to stop/continue output at the time of tray full detection of the Finisher.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: At tray full detection, 1: Height detection only
	Default value	0
MF-LG-ST		Dspl/hide of long strip mode
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the [Long Original] button. When 1 is set, [Long Original] button is displayed in Copy > Options screen and the long strip paper becomes available.
	Use case	Upon user's request. (use of long strip original or long strip paper)
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	Long strip paper is ejected from Secondary Delivery Mouth (excluding delivery from Inner Finisher).
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Copy> Options
CNT-DISP		Display/hide of serial No.
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the serial No. on the Counter Check screen.
	Use case	When setting to display/hide serial No. on the Counter Check screen
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Display, 1: Hide
	Default value	0
COPY-JOB		Setting of copy job reservation
Lv.1	Details	To set to enable/disable copy job reservation when the Card Reader/ Coin Manager is used.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
OP-SZ-DT		Orgnl size dtct ON/OFF at copyboard open
Lv.2	Details	To set ON/OFF of original size detection while the Copyboard is opened. When "0: OFF" is set, enter original size manually from the Control Panel. When "1: ON" is set, original size is detected automatically.
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
HDCR-DSP		Setting of HDD complete delete method
Lv.2	Details	To set the deletion method of HDD data complete deletion function.
	Use case	When switching the deletion method in HDD data complete deletion mode
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 4 1: 1-time deletion with 0 data, 2: 1-time deletion with random data, 3: 3-time deletion with random data, 4: DOD
	Default value	1
	Supplement/memo	HDD data complete deletion function: a function to completely delete data in HDD by overwriting with 0 (null) data or random data to the file data when logically deleting file on HDD (deleting management information data).
P-CRG-LF		ON/OFF of Drum Unit life warning
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display a warning when the Drum Unit reaches its life. When 1 is set, a warning message is displayed when it reaches 95% of its life.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
CPRT-DSP		ON/OFF of [Print Charge Log] button
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display the [Print Charge Log] button to print the charge logs on the charge log screen in user mode. When "1: ON" is set, the button is displayed in Management Settings> Charge Management> Charge Log Screen.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0
	Related user mode	Management Settings> Charge Management> Charge Log

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
PCL-COPY		Set of PCL COPIES command control method
Lv.2	Details	To set the binder control method of COPIES command with PCL. Select whether to use the control method of Canon-made PCL or use the same control method of non-Canon-made PCL.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 65535 0: Control method of Canon-made PCL (following the value of COPIES command that is specified for each page to control on a page basis) 1: Control method of non-Canon-made PCL (handling the value of COPIES command, which is specified for page 1 at the time of Collate mode, as bind figure while the value of COPIES command for the next page or later is invalid. Same control applies as Canon-made PCL at the time of Non Sorted mode) 2 to 65535: For future use
	Default value	0
CNT-SW		Set default dis items on charge counter
Lv.1	Details	To set default display items of the charge counter on the Counter Check screen.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Counter 1 - Total 1: 101 Counter 2 - Total (Black 1): 108 Counter 3 - Copy (Full Color + Single Color/1): 232 Counter 4 - Print (Full Color + Single Color/1): 324 1: Counter 1 - Total 2: 102 Counter 2 - Copy (Full Color + Single Color/2): 231 Counter 3 - Total A (Full Color + Single Color/2): 148 Counter 4 - Copy (Black 2): 222 Counter 5 - Total A (Black 2): 133
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
PRJOB-CP		Set count TX at RX/report print
Lv.2	Details	To set to enable/disable a page-basis count pulse transmission to the charging management device at the time of reception print or report print.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: No transmission, 1: Transmission
	Default value	0
	Supplement/memo	Charge management device: Coin Manager, Non-Canon-made control card
DFLT-CPY		Setting of color mode for copy
Lv.1	Details	To set the default color mode for copy operation.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: Based on Auto/ACS/Printer Driver settings, 1: Color mode, 2: B/W mode
	Default value	EUR:2 , Others:0
	Related user mode	Function Settings> Copy> Select Color Settings for Copy> Use Auto (Color/Black)
DFLT-BOX		Set of color mode for box print
Lv.1	Details	To set the default color mode for box print operation.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: Based on Auto/ACS/Printer Driver settings, 1: Color mode, 2: B/W mode
	Default value	EUR: 2, Other: 0
	Related user mode	Function Settings> Copy> Select Color Settings for Copy> Use Auto (Color/Black)
DOC-REM		Dspl/hide of original removal message
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to display or hide the message to remove original when scanning with DADF without opening/closing DADF after scanning with the copyboard.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
DPT-ID-7		Password entry set at dept ID reg/auth
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to require a password entry at the time of registration/authentication of department ID. With the setting to require entry, entry of 7-digit password is required as well as entry of department ID.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Department ID only, 1: 7-digit (password) entry
	Default value	0
RUI-RJT		Connct set at invalid auth from remoteUI
Lv.2	Details	To set to disconnect HTTP port when the machine receives invalid authentication from remote UI 3 times.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Continued connection, 1: Disconnected
	Default value	0
CTM-S06		Set of password delete from export file
Lv.2	Details	To set to delete password for file transmission address from export file. With the setting to delete password, the password of file transmission target is deleted at the time of export of address book data from remote UI.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Upon user's request • When avoiding information leak
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Password is retained, 1: Password is deleted.
	Default value	1
FREG-SW		Dspl/hide of MEAP counter free rgst area
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the free register area of MEAP counter for SEND
	Use case	At trouble analysis
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not use this at the normal service. • Take necessary action in accordance with the instructions from the Quality Support Division.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
IFAX-SZL	Setting of IFAX send size limit
Lv.2	Details
	To set for restricting data size at the time of IFAX transmission that does not go through the server. With the setting to restrict the data size, there will be #830 error in the case of sending data that exceeds the upper limit value. In the case that the data goes through the server, the size of transmission data is always restricted.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Limited, 1: Not limited (Restriction applies when data goes through the server.)
	Default value
	1
	Related user mode
	Function Settings> Send> E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> Maximum Data Size for Sending
	Supplement/memo
	Specify the upper limit value for transmission data size in user mode.
IFAX-PGD	Set page split TX at IFAX Simple mode TX
Lv.2	Details
	To set to enable/disable split-data transmission on a page basis in the case that the transmission size in IFAX Simple mode exceeds the upper limit value.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	In the case to enable split-data transmission, be sure to get approval from the user by explaining the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No guarantee for page order on the reception side There is a possibility of interruption of other received jobs between pages
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value
	0
	Related user mode
	Function Settings> Send> E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> Maximum Data Size for Sending
	Supplement/memo
	Specify the upper limit value for transmission data size in user mode.

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
MEAPSAFE	Setting of MEAP safe mode
Lv.2	Details
	To set safe mode for MEAP platform. MPSF is displayed on the Control Panel in safe mode. In safe mode, MEAP application is stopped while just the system application, which starts with initial state, is activated. This mode enables obtaining log for cause analysis of MEAP failure.
	Use case
	Perform system recovery processing when MEAP platform fails to be activated due to resource confliction between MEAP applications, service registration or use order
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Normal mode, 1: Safe mode
	Default value
	0
PRNT-POS	Not use
Lv.2	Details
	Not use
AFN-PSWD	Access limit setting to user mode
Lv.2	Details
	To set to restrict password entry when accessing to the user mode. With this setting is enabled, password entry of system administrator is required after pressing Settings/Registration key.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Password is not required, 1: Password is required
	Default value
	0
PTJAM-RC	Auto reprint setting at PDL print jam
Lv.2	Details
	To set to automatically restart printing after jam recovery that occurs with PDL print.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Not automatically reprinted, 1: Automatically reprinted
	Default value
	1

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
PDL-NCSW	Card mngm setting for PDL print job
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set to make PDL print job to be subject to card management by the Card Reader. With the setting to enable this mode, PDL print is available only when the card ID of the card inserted to the Card Reader matches the department ID.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Upon user's request</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 1 0: PDL print is available with no card inserted. 1: PDL print is available only when the card ID matches the department ID when the card is inserted.</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
PS-MODE	Compatible mode setting at PS usage
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set the image processing at PS print. Although the same line width is set, it may differ depending on the drawing position. By setting the setting value to 8, line widths which vary depending on the drawing position can be uniformed.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>At replacement</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 65535 0 to 7: Spare 8: Strokeadjustment is enabled. 9 to 65535: Spare</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
CNCT-RLZ	Setting of connection serialize function
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>Connection serialize is a function to assure job grouping function of imageWARE Output Manager Select Edition V1.0. The setting to enable this mode can avoid job rearrangement because the machine does not receive job data from other connection until it completes job data reception from the current connection.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Upon user's request</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
COUNTER7	Setting of software counter 7
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set counter type for software counter 7 on the Counter Check screen.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Upon user's request</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 999 0: Not registered</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
COUNTER8	Setting of software counter 8
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To set counter type for software counter 8 on the Counter Check screen.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>Upon user's request</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 999 0: Not registered</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
2C-CT-SW	Set of color counter at 2-color mode
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set whether to use the mono color counter or full color counter for count-up in 2-color mode.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When supporting 2-color mode</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 1 0: Mono color counter, 1: Full color counter</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0(Japan)/1(Other)</p>
JA-FUNC	ON/OFF of job archive function
Lv.2	<p>Details</p> <p>To set ON/OFF of job archive function.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When using the job archive function</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</p> <p>Caution</p> <p>Changing this mode is not available in service mode, but only reference is available. This mode can be set only with the MEAP program that supports job archive.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
JA-JOB	Setting of job archive target job
Lv.2	Details
	To set the job type subject to job archive. With the job archive function enabled, archive operation is executed when executing the target job.
	Use case
	When using the job archive function
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Changing this mode is not available in service mode, but only reference is available. This mode can be set only with the MEAP program that supports job archive.
	Display/adj/set range
	0: N/A, 3: Limited to FAX/IFAX, 0xFFFFFFFF: All jobs
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER > OPTION > USER > JA-FUNC
JA-RESTR	Setting of job archive limit items
Lv.2	Details
	To set restriction items for job archive specification. With job archive function enabled, follow the setting to execute operation to restrict specification.
	Use case
	When using the job archive function
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Changing this mode is not available in Service Mode, but reference is available (in Service mode). This mode is available only with the MEAP program that supports job archive.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON 32 specification restrictions with Bit definition Bit0: Function to obtain image file (0: OFF, 1:ON) Bit1: Function to compose form registration (0: OFF, 1: ON) Bit2: Function to edit document (0:OFF, 1: ON)
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER > OPTION > USER > JA-FUNC
LDAP-SW	Retrieval condition set for LDAP server
Lv.1	Details
	To set the condition to search e-mail address, etc. from LDAP server.
	Use case
	When specifying condition to search e-mail address, etc. from LDAP server
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 5 0: Includes the next, 1: Not include the next, 2: Equivalent to the next, 3: Not equivalent to the next, 4: Starts with the next, 5: Finishes with the next
	Default value
	4

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
FROM-OFF	Deletion of mail sender's address
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to delete the sender's address (From) at the time of e-mail transmission.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Retained, 1: Deleted
	Default value
	0
DOM-ADD	Additional entry of mail destn domain
Lv.2	Details
	To set to automatically add the domain specified in user mode to the sending address (To) entered at the time of e-mail transmission. If specifying "xxx.com" as a domain in user mode in advance, just entering "aaa" enables to display "aaa@xxx.com" when sending e-mail.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Not added, 1: Added
	Default value
	0
SPEAKER	Display/hidden to switch speaker/headphone
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to display or hide "Speaker/Headphone Switch" on the "Voice Navigation Settings" screen in user mode.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	0
	Related user mode
	Settings/Registration> Voice Navigation Settings
	Supplement/memo
	"Voice Navigation Settings" in user mode is displayed only when the Voice Guidance Kit is installed.
FILE-OFF	File send prohibition to entered address
Lv.1	Details
	To set to prohibit address entry at the time of file transmission. File transmission is not available by entering the address because of no display of "File" on the transmission screen. The addresses already registered in the Address Book can be used.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	To restrict addresses for transmission, be sure to manually delete them because the addresses registered in the Address Book can be used.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
MAIL-OF	Mail send prohibition to entered address	
Lv.1	Details	To set to prohibit address entry at the time of e-mail transmission. E-mail transmission is not available by entering the address because of no display of "E-Mail" on the transmission screen. The addresses already registered in the Address Book can be used.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	To restrict addresses for transmission, be sure to manually delete them because the addresses registered in the Address Book can be used.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled
	Default value	0
IFAX-OF	IFAX send prohibition to entered address	
Lv.1	Details	To set to prohibit address entry at the time of I-Fax transmission. IFAX transmission is not available by entering the address because of no display of "I-Fax" on the transmission screen. The addresses already registered in the Address Book can be used.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	To restrict addresses for transmission, be sure to manually delete them because the addresses registered in the Address Book can be used.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled
	Default value	0
LDAP-DEF	Initial condtn set of LDAP server search	
Lv.1	Details	To set initial condition for search target attribute that is specified at the time of LDAP server Details search.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 6 0: Name, 1: E-mail, 2: FAX, 3: Organization, 4: Organization unit, 5: No registration 1 (any setting), 6: No registration 2 (any setting)
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER > OPTION > USER > LDAP-SW

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
FREE-DSP	Display/hide of charge disable screen	
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the Use Charge Management screen for switching between charge and no charge. The hardware switch for switching charge/no charge in the Coin Manager enables the mode in which all the services are available for free (store manager mode) by temporarily releasing the charging system. Even without the hardware switch, the mode can be switched with the software switch when it is set to display the Use Charge Management screen in Settings/Registration.
	Use case	When enabling all the services to be provided for free by temporarily releasing the charging system
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
TNRB-SW	Setting of Toner Cntner counter display	
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the Toner Container counter on the Counter Check screen.
	Use case	When showing the Toner Container counter to the user
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: Hide, 1: Display (Toner Container counter only), 2: Display (Toner Container counter + ejection counter)
	Default value	0
CLR-TIM	Set of HDD Encry Kit data delete timing	
Lv.2	Details	To set the timing to completely delete the data when HDD Encryption Kit is used. Selecting 0 may reduce the job processing speed because page data that has been already processed is deleted while the other job is in process, causing overload to CPU and HDD access. Selecting 1 improves the job processing speed because the process is executed after a job is completed.
	Use case	Upon request to improve the job processing speed
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: During job process, 1: After the job is completed
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
JA-FORMT	Display of job archive record format
Lv.2	Details
	To display the format of images for job archives recorded in jobs other than FAX reception and IFAX reception, etc. Whether the images processed by Packet JPEG are recorded in Packet JPEG, or converted into Raster JPEG and then recorded is displayed. Only display is available in service mode. The setting is available only in the MEAP applications which support job archiving.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Packet JPEG, 1: Raster JPEG
	Default value
	0
HDCR-DSW	Dspl/hide of HDD complete delete ON/OFF
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to display or hide "Hard Disk Data Complete Deletion" in user mode. With this setting, HDD data complete deletion function is available with ON/OFF button on the screen.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	1
	Related user mode
	Management Settings> Data Management> HDD Data Complete Deletion> Hard Disk Data Complete Deletion
SNMP-COA	Inside comty name SNMPaccess limit:admin
Lv.2	Details
	To restrict SNMP access by the community name (administrator right) that is kept internally. This machine internally retains the community name (administrator right) other than the SNMP community name that is specified in user mode. Canon-made utility software, such as NetSpot, uses this community name. Because of security concern, select 0/1 in the case to restrict SNMP access with the internal community name.
	Use case
	When restricting SNMP access with the community name (administrator right) that is retained internally
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 2 0: OFF, 1: Read only, 2: Read/Write
	Default value
	1

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
BWCL-DSP	ON/OFF of color/B&W selection screen
Lv.2	Details
	[Not used] To set whether to display the color/B&W selection screen to select the default of the color mode.
	Use case
	When displaying the color mode default selection screen
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0
SCALL-SW	Display/hide of repair request button
Lv.1	Details
	[Not used] (For expansion) To set whether to display or hide the repair-request button on the Control Panel.
	Use case
	When the sales company supports service by the repair-request button
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	0
SCALLCMP	Set of repair request complete notice
Lv.1	Details
	[Not used] (For expansion) With this setting enabled, a notification of repair completion is sent to UGW server to clear the repair-request status that is retained internally.
	Use case
	Service technician uses this mode after completing repair
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1
	Default value
	0
USBH-DSP	Display/hide of USB host usage
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to display "Preferences > External Interface > USB Settings > Use USB Host". By selecting "1: Display", whether to use USB host on USB setting screen can be selected.
	Use case
	When switching to display or hide "Use USB Host" on USB setting screen
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
USBM-DSP	Dspl/hide of USB ex-memory device driver
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to display "Preferences > External Interface > USB Settings > Use MEAP Driver for USB External Device". By selecting "0: Hide", the item is not displayed, and the user administrator cannot change the setting of the MEAP driver for the USB external memory device.
	Use case
	When prohibiting the user administrator to change the setting of "Use MEAP driver for USB external device", set 0 after the specified setting is completed.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	1
USBI-DSP	Dspl/hide of USB input device driver set
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to display "Preferences > External Interface > USB Settings > Use MEAP Driver for USB Input Device". By selecting "0: Hide", the item is not displayed, and the user administrator cannot change the setting of the MEAP driver for the USB input device.
	Use case
	When prohibiting the user administrator to change the setting of "Use MEAP Driver for USB Input Device", set 0 after the specified setting is completed.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	1
CTCHKDSP	Display/hide of counter print
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to display or hide "Print List" on the Counter Check screen. Model name, model number information, counter check date and counter information can be output as a total count management report.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	1

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
USBR-DSP	Dspl/hide of USB infrared device driver
Lv.2	Details
	To set whether to display "Preferences > External Interface > USB Settings > Use MEAP Driver for USB Infrared Device."
	Use case
	When prohibiting the user administrator to change the setting of "Use MEAP Driver for USB Infrared Device," set 0 after the specified setting is completed.
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	0
POL-SCAN	Dspl/hide of Rights Management Server set
Lv.1	Details
	When "1: Display" is set, the Rights Management Server function screen is displayed. While the Rights Management Server function is a standard feature, it is possible to hide if not necessary.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value
	1: Japan, 0:Others
JA-SBOX	Setting of linking with Advanced Box: SAM
Lv.2	Details
	To set the link with Advanced Box when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, linking with Advanced Box is enabled.
	Use case
	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value
	0
JA-DFAX	Setting of direct fax transmission: SAM
Lv.2	Details
	To set the direct fax transmission when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, the direct fax transmission is enabled.
	Use case
	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
JA-REP	Setting of TX Report with image: SAM	
Lv.2	Details	To set the TX Report with image when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, the TX Report with image is enabled.
	Use case	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	0
JA-FREP	Setting of Fax TX Report with image: SAM	
Lv.2	Details	To set the Fax TX Report with image when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, the Fax TX Report with image is enabled.
	Use case	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	0
JA-BOX	Setting of Inbox document operation: SAM	
Lv.2	Details	To set the operation for Inbox document at the time of iW SAM. When 1 is set, the Inbox document can be operated.
	Use case	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	0
JA-FORM	Setting of image composition: SAM	
Lv.2	Details	To set the image composition when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, the image composition is enabled.
	Use case	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	0
JA-PREV	Setting of preview page deletion: SAM	
Lv.2	Details	To set whether a page is deleted from the scan preview screen at the time of iW SAM. When 1 is set, a page is deleted from the scan preview screen.
	Use case	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
JA-PULL	Setting of network scan: SAM	
Lv.2	Details	To set the network scan when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, the network scan is enabled.
	Use case	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	0
JA-PDLB	Set of printer driver multi box save: SAM	
Lv.2	Details	To set whether a document can be simultaneously saved to multiple Inboxes from the printer driver at the time of iW SAM. When 1 is set, a document can be saved to multiple Inboxes from the printer driver.
	Use case	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	0
JA-JOBK	Setting of job merge allowance: SAM	
Lv.2	Details	To set whether merging jobs is allowed when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, jobs can be merged.
	Use case	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	0
JA-JDF	Setting of JDF: SAM	
Lv.2	Details	To set the use of JDF when iW SAM is enabled. When 1 is set, JDF can be used.
	Use case	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
JA-RUI	Setting of Inbox document access: SAM
Lv.2	Details
	To set the Inbox document access from remote UI at the time of iW SAM When 1 is set, accessing to the Inbox document from remote UI is enabled.
	Use case
	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value
	0
JA-WEB	Setting of Inbox document upload: SAM
Lv.2	Details
	To set the Inbox document upload with the Web browser at the time of iW SAM. When 1 is set uploading to the Inbox document with the Web Browser is enabled.
	Use case
	When the operation restriction is cleared at the time of iW SAM
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	Default value
	0
CSTHT-SW	ON/OFF of Cassette Heater
Lv.1	Details
	To set ON/OFF of the Cassette Heater. Because the host machine cannot detect ON/OFF of the Cassette Heater hardware switch, temperature around the Process Cartridge becomes higher than the predictive value when the switch is ON. To correct the predictive value, set the service mode according to ON/OFF of the Cassette Heater at the time of installation.
	Use case
	At installation (set according to ON/OFF of the Cassette Heater)
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > USER	
EXP-CRYP	Confidential encrypt ON/OFF:add book exprt
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to encrypt the confidential part (password part) in the Address Book when exporting the address book and device settings via RUI. When 0 is set, the confidential part in the address book is exported without encryption.
	Use case
	When there is a need to export password without encryption because of operation and tool
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	Be sure not to allow the user to execute export without encryption because of security concern. Be sure to get approval from the user in advance by telling that the security decreases without encryption.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	1
EZY-SCRIP	ON/OFF of secure print simple auth
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to conduct secure print by simple authentication. When 1 is set, secured print, encryption secured print and inbox print are received, but the normal print jobs are cancelled. If the password "3758211" is entered at job sending, authentication by entering the password on the Control Panel is not required. If the password is not entered at job sending, authentication by entering the password on the Control Panel is necessary at job output. In addition, the following selection is added as auto deletion time of secure job: 10 minutes, 20 minutes, 30 minutes
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0
DMN-MTCH	ON/OFF of secure print domain judgment
Lv.1	Details
	To set whether to display only the job which matches the domain in the "My Job Status" screen of the secure print. When 1 is set, only the job which matches the user name and domain name is displayed in the "My Job Status" screen, so the job which does not match the domain is not displayed.
	Use case
	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	1

COPIER > OPTION > USER		
SMD-EXPT		Setting of export target data: remote UI
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to export "service mode data" from remote UI. When 1 is set, "service mode data" is displayed as the target data of export on remote UI. When installing more than 1 machine at the same time, the same service mode data can be registered.
	Use case	When installing more than 1 machine at the same time
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
	Supplement/memo	If selecting "service mode data" as the target data of export on remote UI after setting SMD-EXPT to 1, service mode data can be exported.
SNDSTREN		Set of setting delete afr scan and send
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to delete the transmission settings except for the address after transmission from the "Scan and Send" screen.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Delete, 1: Retain
	Default value	JP:1 , Others:0
FAXSTREN		Set of setting delete afr fax transmit
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to delete the transmission settings except for the address after transmission from the "Fax" screen.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Delete, 1: Retain
	Default value	JP:1 , Others:0

T-8-54

■ CST

COPIER > OPTION > CST		
U1-NAME		Dspl/hide of ppr name in ppr size groupU1
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide paper name at paper size group U1 detection.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
U2-NAME		Dspl/hide of ppr name in ppr size groupU2
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide paper name at paper size group U2 detection.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
U3-NAME		Dspl/hide of ppr name in ppr size groupU3
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide paper name at paper size group U3 detection.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
U4-NAME		Dspl/hide of ppr name in ppr size groupU4
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide paper name at paper size group U4 detection.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
CST2-P1		Setting of Cassette 2 paper size
Lv.1	Details	To set the paper size used in Cassette 2.
	Use case	When setting the paper size for the Cassette 2
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: A5R, 1: STMTR
	Default value	USA: 1, Other: 0
	Related UI menu	Preferences> Paper Settings> A5R/STMTR Paper Selection

COPIER > OPTION > CST		
CST2-P2		Setting of Cassette 2 paper size
Lv.1	Details	To set the paper size used in Cassette 2.
	Use case	When setting the paper size for the Cassette 2
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: B5, 1: EXEC
	Default value	USA: 1, Other: 0
	Related UI menu	Preferences> Paper Settings> B5/EXEC Paper Selection
CST3-P1		Setting of Cassette 3 paper size
Lv.1	Details	To set the paper size used in Cassette 3.
	Use case	When setting the paper size for the Cassette 3
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: A5R, 1: STMTR
	Default value	USA: 1, Other: 0
	Related UI menu	Preferences> Paper Settings> A5R/STMTR Paper Selection
CST3-P2		Setting of Cassette 3 paper size
Lv.1	Details	To set the paper size used in Cassette 3.
	Use case	When setting the paper size for the Cassette 3
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: B5, 1: EXEC
	Default value	USA: 1, Other: 0
	Related UI menu	Preferences> Paper Settings> B5/EXEC Paper Selection
CST4-P1		Setting of Cassette 4 paper size
Lv.1	Details	To set the paper size used in Cassette 4.
	Use case	When setting the paper size for the Cassette 4
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: A5R, 1: STMTR
	Default value	USA: 1, Other: 0
	Related UI menu	Preferences> Paper Settings> A5R/STMTR Paper Selection
CST4-P2		Setting of Cassette 4 paper size
Lv.1	Details	To set the paper size used in Cassette 4.
	Use case	When setting the paper size for the Cassette 4
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: B5, 1: EXEC
	Default value	USA: 1, Other: 0
	Related UI menu	Preferences> Paper Settings> B5/EXEC Paper Selection

COPIER > OPTION > CST		
CST1-U1		Set Cst1 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry1
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 1 used in Cassette 1.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 1
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 37 0 to 23: Not used, 24: FLSC, 25: A-FLS, 26: OFI, 27: E-OFI, 28: B-OFI, 29 to 33: Not used, 34: G-LGL, 35: Not used, 36: A-OFI, 37: M-OFI
	Default value	0
CST1-U2		Set Cst1 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry2
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 2 used in Cassette 1.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 1
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 32 0 to 29: Not used, 30: A-LTRR, 31: Not used, 32: G-LTRR
	Default value	0
CST1-U3		Set Cst1 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry3
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 3 used in Cassette 1.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 1
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 29 0 to 28: Not used, 29: A-LTR
	Default value	0
CST1-U4		Set Cst1 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry4
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 4 used in Cassette 1.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 1
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 31 0 to 30: Not used, 31: G-LTR
	Default value	0
CST2-U1		Set Cst2 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry1
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 1 used in Cassette 2.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 2
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 42 0 to 23: Not used, 24: FLSC, 25: A-FLS, 26: OFI, 27: E-OFI, 28 to 29: Not used, 30: A-LTRR, 31 to 33: Not used, 34: G-LGL, 35: Not used, 36: A-OFI, 37: M-OFI, 38 to 41: Not used, 42: FA4
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > CST		
CST2-U2		Set Cst2 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry2
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 2 used in Cassette 2.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 2
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 32 0 to 31: Not used, 32: G-LTRR
	Default value	0
CST2-U3		Set Cst2 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry3
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 3 used in Cassette 2.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 2
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 31 0 to 28: Not used, 29: A-LTR, 30: Not used, 31: G-LTR
	Default value	0
CST2-U4		Set Cst2 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry4
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 4 used in Cassette 2.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 2
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 28 0 to 27: Not used, 28: B-OFI
	Default value	0
CST3-U1		Set Cst3 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry1
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 1 used in Cassette 3.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 3
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 42 0 to 23: Not used, 24: FLSC, 25: A-FLS, 26: OFI, 27: E-OFI, 28 to 29: Not used, 30: A-LTRR, 31 to 33: Not used, 34: G-LGL, 35: Not used, 36: A-OFI, 37: M-OFI, 38 to 41: Not used, 42: FA4
	Default value	0
CST3-U2		Set Cst3 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry2
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 2 used in Cassette 3.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 3
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 32 0 to 31: Not used, 32: G-LTRR
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > CST		
CST3-U3		Set Cst3 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry3
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 3 used in Cassette 3.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 3
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 31 0 to 28: Not used, 29: A-LTR, 30: Not used, 31: G-LTR
	Default value	0
CST3-U4		Set Cst3 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry4
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 4 used in Cassette 3.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 3
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 28 0 to 27: Not used, 28: B-OFI
	Default value	0
CST4-U1		Set Cst4 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry1
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 1 used in Cassette 4.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 4
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 42 0 to 23: Not used, 24: FLSC, 25: A-FLS, 26: OFI, 27: E-OFI, 28 to 29: Not used, 30: A-LTRR, 31 to 33: Not used, 34: G-LGL, 35: Not used, 36: A-OFI, 37: M-OFI, 38 to 41: Not used, 42: FA4
	Default value	0
CST4-U2		Set Cst4 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry2
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 2 used in Cassette 4.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 4
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 32 0 to 31: Not used, 32: G-LTRR
	Default value	0
CST4-U3		Set Cst4 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry3
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 3 used in Cassette 4.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 4
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 31 0 to 28: Not used, 29: A-LTR, 30: Not used, 31: G-LTR
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > CST		
CST4-U4		Set Cst4 area-spec stdrd size ppr ctgry4
Lv.1	Details	To set the area-specific standard size paper category 4 used in Cassette 4.
	Use case	When setting area-specific standard size paper for the Cassette 4
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 28 0 to 27: Not used, 28: B-OFI
	Default value	0
CST-K-SW		Set of EXEC/16K size support: Cassette 1
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to support EXEC or 16K size (K-size paper) by the Cassette 1.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: EXEC, 1: 16K
	Default value	0
	Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> KSIZE-SW
C1-MODEL		Setting of Cassette 1 capacity
Lv.2	Details	There are 2 types of Cassette 1 according to the capacity: 520 sheets model and 250 sheets model. However, electrical identification is not possible. When clearing RAM data of the DC Controller PCB, set which model (250 sheets or 520 sheets) the Cassette 1 is.
	Use case	When clearing RAM data of the DC Controller PCB
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: 520 sheets, 1: 250 sheets
	Default value	0

T-8-55

■ ACC

COPIER > OPTION > ACC		
COIN		Setting of charge management
Lv.1	Details	To set charging management method.
	Use case	At installation of Coin Manager
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	In case of setting "3", if "0 to 2" is changed to "3", the following items are automatically set. After making a change, even though "3" is set to "0 to 2" again, they will not be restored. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • COPIER> OPTION> USER> CONTROL, AFN-PSWD = 1 • COPIER> OPTION> NETWORK> DA-CNCT = 1 • COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> UI-BOX, UI-SEND, UI-FAX = 0 • IE Settings> IE Function Priority = ON • Preferences> Network> TCP/IP Settings> IPv4 Settings> IP Address Range Settings> RX/Print Range: Permit IPv4 Address = ON • Preferences> Network> TCP/IP Settings> IPv6 Settings> IP Address Range Settings> RX/Print Range: Permit IPv6 Address = ON • Preferences> Network> TCP/IP Settings> FTP Print Settings> Use FTP Printing = OFF • Preferences> Network> TCP/IP Settings> IPP Print Settings = ON • Preferences> Network> SMB Server Settings> SMB Printer Settings> Use SMB =ON • Function Settings> Send> E-Mail/I-Fax Settings> Communication Settings> SMTP RX, POP = OFF <p>In case of setting "4", if "0 to 2" is changed to "4", the following items are automatically set. After making a change, even though "4" is set to "0 to 2" again, they will not be restored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • COPIER> OPTION> USER> AFN-PSWD = 1 • COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> UI-BOX, UI-SEND, UI-FAX, UI-RSCAN, UI-EPRNT, UI-HOLD = 0 • Management Settings>Device Management> Display Log=OFF
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 7 0: No charge 1: Charge with Coin Manager 2: Charge with remote counter 3: Charge with DA (only in Japan) 4: Charge with this machine itself 5: New SC mode 6: External charge mode 6 7: External charge mode 7
	Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > ACC	
Related service mode	COPIER> OPTION> USER> CONTROL COPIER> OPTION> DSPLY-SW> UI-BOX, UI-SEND, UI-FAX COPIER> OPTION> ACC> PDL-THR
Related user mode	Function Settings > Send > E-Mail/I-Fax Settings > Communication Settings Preferences> Network > TCP/IP Settings > DNS Settings > FTP Print Settings Preferences> Network > TCP/IP Settings > DNS Settings > IPP Print Settings
Supplement/memo	Control card can be used with "0: No charge". DA: Digital Accessory
CARD-SW	Screen set when Coin Manager connected
Lv.1	
Details	To set coin or card that the user is urged to insert on the Control Panel when the Coin Manager is connected.
Use case	Upon user's request
Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
Default value	0
SC-TYPE	Set of Coin Manager supported machine
Lv.2	
Details	To set the machine that supports the Coin Manager.
Use case	Upon user's request
Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Machine installed in convenience stores, 1: Self-operated copy machine
Default value	0
OUT-TRAY	Set of Third Delivery Tray installation
Lv.1	
Details	To set whether the Third Delivery Tray is installed. When the Third Delivery Tray is installed, set "1".
Use case	When installing the Third Delivery Tray
Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > ACC	
CC-SPSW	Support setting of control card I/F
Lv.2	
Details	To set support level for control card (CCIV/CCV) interface. To keep processing performance of printer engine, select "1: Priority on speed". To correctly stop the output by the upper limit number of sheets, select "2: Priority on upper limit number of sheets".
Use case	Upon user's request (when connecting to the external counter management system using the control card interface)
Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
Caution	With priority on speed, output cannot be correctly stopped by the upper limit number of sheets. With priority on the upper limit number of sheets, processing performance of the printer engine is decreased depending on pickup location.
Display/adj/set range	0 to 2 0: No support, 1: Priority on speed, 2: Priority on upper limit number of sheets
Default value	0
UNIT-PRC	Setting of Coin Manager currency unit
Lv.2	
Details	To set currency unit to be handled with Coin Manager
Use case	At installation of Coin Manager
Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
Display/adj/set range	0 to 6 0: Japanese yen, 1: Euro, 2: Pound, 3: Swiss Franc. 4: Dollar, 5: No currency unit (no fractional unit), 6: No currency unit (with fractional unit)
Default value	0
IN-TRAY	Set of Second Delivery Tray installation
Lv.1	
Details	To set whether the Second Delivery Tray is installed. When the Second Delivery Tray is installed, set "1".
Use case	When installing the Second Delivery Tray
Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
Default value	0

COPIER > OPTION > ACC	
MIN-PRC	Set of Coin Manager minimum price
Lv.1	Details
	To set the minimum amount to be handled with Coin Manager. Enter 10 when specifying 10 Japanese yen as the minimum amount to be handled with the Coin Manager that supports Japanese yen. In the case to specify 1 to 4 (Euro/Pound/Swiss Franc/Dollar) by going through the following: COPIER> OPTION> ACC > UNIT-PRC, entry is in fractional unit. Entry of 50 indicates 50 cents (\$ 0.50).
	Use case
	At installation of Coin Manager
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	This mode is enabled when selecting 4 for the following: COPIER > OPTION > ACC > COIN.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 9999
	Default value
	10
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN, UNIT-PRC
	Supplement/memo
	As for the charging amount, it causes an error if specifying the value that is smaller than the minimum currency unit with Settings/Registration mode.
MAX-PRC	Set of Coin Manager maximum price
Lv.1	Details
	To set the maximum amount to be handled with Coin Manager. Enter 8800 when specifying 8800 Japanese yen as the maximum amount to be handled with the Coin Manager that supports Japanese yen. In the case to specify 1 to 4 (Euro/Pound/Swiss Franc/Dollar) by going through the following: COPIER> OPTION> ACC> UNIT-PRC, entry is in fractional unit. Entry of 50 indicates 50 cents (\$ 0.50).
	Use case
	At installation of Coin Manager
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	This mode is enabled when selecting 4 for the following: COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 9999
	Default value
	8800
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN, UNIT-PRC
	Supplement/memo
	As for charging amount, it causes an error if specifying the value that is larger than the maximum currency unit with Settings/Registration mode.

COPIER > OPTION > ACC	
MIC-TUN	Manual adj of voice recognize microphone
Lv.1	Details
	To manually adjust the sound receiving level (sensitivity) of the connected voice recognition microphone. Microphone sensitivity is automatically tuned in user mode; however, adjust it manually as needed.
	Use case
	When the sensitivity of microphone is not improved by auto tuning
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 255
	Default value
	128
	Related user mode
	Preferences> Accessibility> Voice Navigation Settings> Tune Microphone
SRL-SPSW	Setting of Serial I/F Kit support
Lv.1	Details
	To set the support level of the Serial Interface Kit. To keep processing performance of printer engine, select "1: Priority on speed". To correctly stop the output by the upper limit number of sheets, select "2: Priority on upper limit number of sheets".
	Use case
	At installation of Serial Interface Kit
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	With priority on speed, output cannot be correctly stopped by the upper limit number of sheets. With priority on the upper limit number of sheets, processing performance of the printer engine is decreased depending on pickup location.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 2 0: No support, 1: Priority on speed, 2: Priority on upper limit number of sheets
	Default value
	0
PDL-THR	Normal PDL print set in ex-charge mode
Lv.2	Details
	To set the normal PDL print process when the external charge mode 6/7 is set in COIN. When "0" is set, a job is canceled. When "1" is set, a job is executed.
	Use case
	When executing normal PDL print in external charge mode
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Cancel, 1: Execute
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> ACC> COIN

COPIER > OPTION > ACC		
C2-EXIST		Presence/absence of 2nd Cst Pedestal
Lv.1	Details	To set whether the 2nd Cassette Pedestal is installed or not. If the Cassette Pedestal is added to the model without the 2nd Cassette Pedestal, set 1.
	Use case	When adding to install the 2nd Cassette Pedestal
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
	Default value	0 (Model without the 2nd Cassette Pedestal) / 1 (Model with the 2nd Cassette Pedestal)
CR-TYPE		Setting of Card Reader
Lv.1	Details	To set the model of the Card Reader. Set 1 in the case of connecting the Card Reader-C1. It operates even 0 is set, but recognition rate decreases.
	Use case	When connecting the Card Reader-C1
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Card Reader-F1, 1: Card Reader-C1
	Default value	0

T-8-56

■ INT-FACE

COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE		
NWCT-TM		Timeout setting of network connection
Lv.2	Details	To set the time to keep network connection between this machine and the PC application (keep-alive setting). As the value is incremented by 1, the time is increased by 1 minute.
	Use case	When using PC application
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 5
	Unit	min
	Default value	5
	Supplement/memo	Expected PC application: Network print application, E-mail function, cascade copy, MEAP network application, etc.

T-8-57

LCNS-TR

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
ST-SEND	Installation state dspl of SEND function
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of SEND function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether SEND function is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-SEND. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-SEND.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	Flash Model :0 HDD Model :1
TR-SEND	Trns license key dspl of SEND function
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use SEND function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-SEND. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-SEND.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-ENPDF	Installation state dspl of Encryption PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Encryption PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Encryption PDF is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-ENPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-ENPDF.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-ENPDF	Trns license key dspl of Encryption PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Encryption PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-ENPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-ENPDF.
	Caution
	This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
ST-SPDF	Installation state dspl of Searchable PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Searchable PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Searchable PDF is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-SPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-SPDF.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-SPDF	Trns license key dspl of Searchable PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Searchable PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-SPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-SPDF.
	Caution
	This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-EXPPDF	Instal state of Encry PDF + Searchbl PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Encryption PDF + Searchable PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Encryption PDF + Searchable PDF is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-EXPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-EXPDF.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-EXPPDF	Trns lcns key of Encry PDF+Searchbl PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Encryption PDF + Searchable PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-EXPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-EXPDF.
	Caution
	This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed for Japan.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
ST-PDFDR	Install state dspl of Direct Print PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Direct Print PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Direct Print PDF is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-PDFDR. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PDFDR.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-PDFDR	Trns lcns key dspl of Direct Print PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Direct Print PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-PDFDR. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PDFDR.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-SCR	Install state dspl of Encry Secure Print
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Encrypted Secure Print when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Encrypted Secure Print is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-SCR. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-SCR.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-SCR	Trns license key dspl of Encry Secure Pnt
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Encrypted Secure Print when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-SCR. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-SCR.
	Caution
	This mode is enabled when there is "3DES+USH-H" Board.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
ST-BRDIM	Install state dspl: PCL Barcode Printing
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Barcode Printing for PCL when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Barcode Printing for PCL is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-BRDIM. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-BRDIM.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-BRDIM	Trns lcns key dspl: PCL Barcode Printing
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Barcode Printing for PCL when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-BRDIM. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-BRDIM.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-VNC	Install state dspl of Remote Oprtr Soft
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Remote Operators Software when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Remote Operators Software is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-VNC. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-VNC.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-VNC	Trns lcns dspl of Remote Operators Soft
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Remote Operators Software when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-VNC. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-VNC.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
ST-WEB	Install state dspl of Web Access Software	
Lv.2	Details	To display installation state of Web Access Software when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	When checking whether Web Access Software is installed
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-WEB. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-WEB.
	Display/adj/set range	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value	0
TR-WEB	Trns license key dspl of Web Access Soft	
Lv.2	Details	To display transfer license key to use Web Access Software when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-WEB. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-WEB.
	Display/adj/set range	24 digits
ST-HRPDF	Install state dspl of High Compress PDF	
Lv.2	Details	To display installation state of High Compression PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	When checking whether High Compression PDF is installed
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-HRPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-HRPDF.
	Display/adj/set range	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value	1
TR-HRPDF	Trns lcns key dspl of High Compress PDF	
Lv.2	Details	To display transfer license key to use High Compression PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-HRPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-HRPDF.
	Display/adj/set range	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
ST-TRSND	Install state dspl of Trial SEND function	
Lv.2	Details	To display installation state of Trial SEND function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	When checking whether Trial SEND function is installed
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-TRSND. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-TRSND.
	Display/adj/set range	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value	0
TR-TRSND	Trns lcns key dspl of Trial SEND function	
Lv.2	Details	To display transfer license key to use Trial SEND function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-TRSND. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-TRSND.
	Display/adj/set range	24 digits
ST-WTMRK	Install state dspl of Secure Watermark	
Lv.2	Details	To display installation state of Secure Watermark when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	When checking whether Secure Watermark is installed
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-WTMRK. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-WTMRK.
	Display/adj/set range	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value	0
TR-WTMRK	Trns license key dspl of Secure Watermark	
Lv.2	Details	To display transfer license key to use Secure Watermark when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-WTMRK. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-WTMRK.
	Display/adj/set range	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
ST-TSPDF	Install state dspl of Time Stamp PDF: JP
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Time Stamp PDF (JP only) when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Time Stamp PDF (JP only) is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-TSPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-TSPDF.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-TSPDF	Trns lcns key dspl of Time Stamp PDF: JP
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Time Stamp PDF (JP only) when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-TSPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-TSPDF.
	Caution
	This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-USPDF	Install state dspl of Dgtl User Sign PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Digital User Signature PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Digital User Signature PDF is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-USPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-USPDF.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-USPDF	Trns lcns key dspl of Dgtl User Sign PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Digital User Signature PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-USPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-USPDF.
	Caution
	This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
ST-DVPDF	Install state dspl of Device Sign PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Device Signature PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Device Signature PDF is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-DVPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-DVPDF.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-DVPDF	Trns lcns key dspl of Device Sign PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Device Signature PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-DVPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-DVPDF.
	Caution
	This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-SCPDF	Install state dspl of Trace & Smooth PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Trace & Smooth PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Trace & Smooth PDF is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-SCPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-SCPDF.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-SCPDF	Trns lcns key dspl of Trace & Smooth PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Trace & Smooth PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-SCPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-SCPDF.
	Caution
	This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
ST-AMS	Install state dspl of Access Management System
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Access Management System when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Access Management System is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-AMS. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-AMS.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-AMS	Trns lcns key dspl of Access Management System
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Access Management System when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-AMS. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-AMS.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-ERDS	Install state dspl: E-RDS 3rd Pty Expsn
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of E-RDS 3rd Party Expansion when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether E-RDS 3rd Party Expansion is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-ERDS. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-ERDS.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	E-RDS 3rd Party Expansion: A function to send charge counter to the third party's charge server.
TR-ERDS	Trns lcns key dspl: E-RDS 3rd Pty Expsn
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use E-RDS 3rd Party Expansion when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-ERDS. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-ERDS.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
	Supplement/memo
	E-RDS 3rd Party Expansion: A function to send charge counter to the third party's charge server.

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
ST-PS	Install state display of PS function
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of PS function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether PS function is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-PS. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PS.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-PS	Transfer license key dspl of PS function
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use PS function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-PS. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PS.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-PCL	Install state display of PCL function
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of PCL function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether PCL function is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-PCL. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PCL.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-PCL	Transfer license key dspl of PCL function
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use PCL function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-PCL. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PCL.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-PSLI5	Install state dspl:PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX: JP
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX function (JP only) when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX function (JP only) is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-PSLI5. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSLI5.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
TR-PSLI5	Trns lcns key dsp:PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX: JP	
Lv.2	Details	To display transfer license key to use PS/LIPS4/LIPS LX function (JP only) when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-PSLI5. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSLI5.
	Display/adj/set range	24 digits
ST-LIPS5	Install state dsp:LIPS LX/LIPS4 func: JP	
Lv.2	Details	To display installation state of LIPS LX/LIPS4 function (JP only) when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	When checking whether LIPS LX/LIPS4 function (JP only) is installed
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-LIPS5. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-LIPS5.
	Display/adj/set range	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value	0
TR-LIPS5	Trns lcns key dsp:LIPS LX/LIPS4 func: JP	
Lv.2	Details	To display transfer license key to use LIPS LX/LIPS4 function (JP only) when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-LIPS5. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-LIPS5.
	Display/adj/set range	24 digits
ST-LIPS4	Install state display of LIPS4 func: JP	
Lv.2	Details	To display installation state of LIPS4 function (JP only) when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	When checking whether LIPS4 function (JP only) is installed
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-LIPS4. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-LIPS4.
	Display/adj/set range	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value	0
TR-LIPS4	Trns license key dsp of LIPS4 func: JP	
Lv.2	Details	To display transfer license key to use LIPS4 function (JP only) when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-LIPS4. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-LIPS4.
	Display/adj/set range	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
ST-PSPCL	Install state dsp of PS/PCL function	
Lv.2	Details	To display installation state of PS/PCL function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	When checking whether PS/PCL function is installed
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-PSPCL. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSPCL.
	Display/adj/set range	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value	0
TR-PSPCL	Transfer license key dsp of PS/PCL func	
Lv.2	Details	To display transfer license key to use PS/PCL function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-PSPCL. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSPCL.
	Display/adj/set range	24 digits
ST-PCLUF	Install state dsp of PCL/UFR II function	
Lv.2	Details	To display installation state of PCL/UFR II function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	When checking whether PCL/UFR II function is installed
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-PCLUF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PCLUF.
	Display/adj/set range	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value	0
TR-PCLUF	Trns license key dsp of PCL/UFR II func	
Lv.2	Details	To display transfer license key to use PCL/UFR II function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing HDD When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-PCLUF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PCLUF.
	Display/adj/set range	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
ST-PSLIP	Install state dspl of PS/LIPS4 func: JP
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of PS/LIPS4 function (JP only) when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether PS/LIPS4 function (JP only) is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-PSLIP. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSLIP.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-PSLIP	Trns license key dspl of PS/LIPS4 func:JP
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use PS/LIPS4 function (JP only) when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	• When replacing HDD • When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-PSLIP. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSLIP.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-PSPCU	Install state dspl of PS/PCL/UFR II func
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of PS/PCL/UFR II function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether PS/PCL/UFR II function is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-PSPCU. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSPCU.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-PSPCU	Trns lcns key dspl of PS/PCL/UFR II func
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use PS/PCL/UFR II function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	• When replacing HDD • When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-PSPCU. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-PSPCU.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
ST-LXUFR	Install state dspl of UFR II function
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of UFR II function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether UFR II function is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-LXUFR. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-LXUFR.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	1
TR-LXUFR	Trns license key dspl of UFR II function
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use UFR II function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	• When replacing HDD • When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-LXUFR. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-LXUFR.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-HDCR2	Install state dspl:HDD Init All Data/Set
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of HDD Initialize All Data/Settings when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether HDD Initialize All Data/Settings is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-HDCR2. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-HDCR2.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-HDCR2	Trns lcns key dspl:HDD Init All Data/Set
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use HDD Initialize All Data/Settings when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	• When replacing HDD • When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-HDCR2. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-HDCR2.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-MOBIL	Not Support
Lv.2	Details
	Not Support
TR-MOBIL	Not Support
Lv.2	Details
	Not Support

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
ST-JBLK	Install state dspl of Document Scan Lock
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Document Scan Lock when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Document Scan Lock is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-JBLK. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-JBLK.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-JBLK	Trns lcns key dspl of Document Scan Lock
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Document Scan Lock when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	• When replacing HDD • When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-JBLK. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-JBLK.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-AFAX	Installation state dspl of Remote Fax
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Remote Fax when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Remote Fax is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-AFAX. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-AFAX.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-AFAX	Transfer license key dspl of Remote Fax
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Remote Fax when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	• When replacing HDD • When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-AFAX. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-AFAX.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-REPDF	Install state dspl:Reader Extensions PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Reader Extensions PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Reader Extensions PDF is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-REPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-REPDF.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR	
TR-REPDF	Trns lcns key dspl:Reader Extensions PDF
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Reader Extensions PDF when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	• When replacing HDD • When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-REPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-REPDF.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-OOXML	Install state dspl of Office Open XML
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Office Open XML when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Office Open XML is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-OOXML. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-OOXML.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-OOXML	Trns lcns key dspl of Office Open XML
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Office Open XML when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	• When replacing HDD • When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-OOXML. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-OOXML.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits
ST-XPS	Install state dspl of Direct Print XPS
Lv.2	Details
	To display installation state of Direct Print XPS when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	When checking whether Direct Print XPS is installed
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-XPS. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-XPS.
	Display/adj/set range
	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value
	0
TR-XPS	Trns lcns key dspl of Direct Print XPS
Lv.2	Details
	To display transfer license key to use Direct Print XPS when transfer is disabled.
	Use case
	• When replacing HDD • When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select ST-XPS. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-XPS.
	Display/adj/set range
	24 digits

COPIER > OPTION > LCNS-TR		
ST-2600	Instal state dspl: IEEE2600.1 scrty func	
Lv.2	Details	To display installation state of the IEEE2600.1 security function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	When checking whether the IEEE2600.1 security function is installed
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-2600. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-2600.
	Display/adj/set range	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value	0
TR-2600	Trn lcns key dspl: IEEE2600.1 scrty func	
Lv.2	Details	To display transfer license key of the IEEE2600.1 security function when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When replacing HDD • When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-2600. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-2600.
	Display/adj/set range	24 digits
ST-HDDOP	Install state dspl of HDD option	
Lv.2	Details	To display installation state of HDD option when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	When checking whether HDD option is installed
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-HDDOP. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-HDDOP.
	Display/adj/set range	When operation finished normally: OK!
	Default value	0
TR-HDDOP	Trns lcns key dspl of HDD option	
Lv.2	Details	To display transfer license key to use HDD option when transfer is disabled.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When replacing HDD • When replacing the device
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select ST-HDDOP. 2) Enter 0, and then press OK key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-HDDOP.
	Display/adj/set range	24 digits

T-8-58



COPIER > TEST > PG		
TYPE		Test print
Lv.1	Details	To execute the test print.
	Use case	At trouble analysis
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. Test print is executed.
	Caution	Be sure to return the value to 0 after the test print output.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 100 0: Image from CCD (normal print) 1 to 3: For R&D use 4: 16 gradations 5: Halftone for all areas 6: Grid 7 to 9: For R&D use 10: MCYBk horizontal line 11: For R&D use 12: YMCKBk 64 gradations 13: For R&D use 14: Full color 16 gradations 15 to 100: For R&D use
	Default value	0
	TXPH	Setting of test print image mode
Lv.1	Details	To set the image mode at the time of test print output. This mode is enabled for test print only.
	Use case	At trouble analysis
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 14 0: Error diffusion 1: Low screen ruling (approx. 133 to 190 lines) 2: High screen ruling (approx. 200 to 268 lines) 3 to 4: Not used 5: Error diffusion (with trailing edge adjustment) 6: High screen ruling (with trailing edge adjustment) 7 to 8: Not used 9: 1/2 speed, low screen ruling (approx. 133 to 190 lines) 10: 1/2 speed, high screen ruling (approx. 200 to 268 lines) 11 to 13: Not used 14: 1/2 speed, high screen ruling (with trailing edge adjustment)
	THRU	Image correction table use at test print
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to use the image correction table at the time of test print output.
	Use case	At trouble analysis
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Used, 1: Not used

COPIER > TEST > PG		
	DENS-Y	Adj of Y color density at test print
Lv.1	Details	To adjust Y color density when performing test print (TYPE=5). As the value is increased, the density becomes higher.
	Use case	At test print (TYPE=5)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Default value	128
	DENS-M	Adj of M color density at test print
Lv.1	Details	To adjust M color density when performing test print (TYPE=5). As the value is increased, the density becomes higher.
	Use case	At test print (TYPE=5)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Default value	128
	DENS-C	Adj of C color density at test print
Lv.1	Details	To adjust C color density when performing test print (TYPE=5). As the value is increased, the density becomes higher.
	Use case	At test print (TYPE=5)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Default value	128
	DENS-K	Adj of Bk color density at test print
Lv.1	Details	To adjust Bk color density when performing test print (TYPE=5). As the value is increased, the density becomes higher.
	Use case	At test print (TYPE=5)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 255
	Default value	128
	COLOR-Y	Y color output setting at test print
Lv.1	Details	To make a setting of Y color output for test print. The setting is applied to all types. When setting "COLOR-Y" to 1 and other items to "0", a single Y color is output.
	Use case	At test print
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Not output, 1: Output
	Default value	1

COPIER > TEST > PG		
COLOR-M		M color output setting at test print
Lv.1	Details	To make a setting of M color output for test print. The setting is applied to all types. When setting "COLOR-M" to 1 and other items to "0", a single M color is output.
	Use case	At test print
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Not output, 1: Output
	Default value	1
	COLOR-C	
Lv.1	Details	To make a setting of C color output for test print. The setting is applied to all types. When setting "COLOR-C" to 1 and other items to "0", a single C color is output.
	Use case	At test print
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Not output, 1: Output
	Default value	1
	COLOR-K	
Lv.1	Details	To make a setting of Bk color output for test print. The setting is applied to all types. When setting "COLOR-K" to 1 and other items to "0", a single Bk color is output.
	Use case	At test print
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Not output, 1: Output
	Default value	1
	F-M-SW	
Lv.1	Details	To set for the output in full color/monochrome color with PG.
	Use case	When separating (identifying) the cause whether it's due to color or monochrome.
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Full color, 1: Monochrome color
	Default value	0

COPIER > TEST > PG		
PG-PICK		Setting of test print pickup cassette
Lv.1	Details	To set the pickup cassette for test print output.
	Use case	At trouble analysis At test print output
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 8 1: Cassette1, 2: Cassette2, 3: Cassette3, 4: Cassette4, 5: Not use, 6: Multi-purpose Tray, 7 to 8: Not used
	Default value	1
	2-SIDE	
Lv.1	Details	To set 1-sided/2-sided print for PG output.
	Use case	At trouble analysis
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: 1-sided, 1: 2-sided
	Default value	0
PG-QTY		Setting of PG output quantity
Lv.1	Details	To set the number of sheets for PG output.
	Use case	At trouble analysis
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	1 to 999
	Unit	sheet
Default value	1	

T-8-59

NETWORK

COPIER > TEST > NETWORK	
PING	Network connection check
Lv.1	To check connection between this machine and TCP/IP network.
Details	To check connection between this machine and TCP/IP network.
Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When checking network connection at the time of installation At network connection failure
Adj/set/operate method	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Turn OFF the main power switch. Connect the network cable to this machine, and then turn ON the main power switch. Inform the system administrator at user's site that installation of this machine is complete, and ask for network setting. Ask the system administrator to check the network connection, and check the remote host address of PING transmission target. Select the item and enter the remote host address, and then press OK key and Start key. OK: Connection is normal. Checking procedure is complete. NG: Connection failed. Go to step 6) if the cable connection is OK. In case of cable connection failure, connect again and then go to step 5). Select the item and enter loopback address, and then press OK key and Start key. OK: TCP/IP setting of this machine is normal. Go to step 7) to check NIC. NG: TCP/IP setting of this machine has failure. Go to step 3) to check the setting again. Select the item and enter the local host address, and then press OK key. OK: Network setting of this machine and NIC are normal. Inform the system administrator that the trouble is due to network environment and ask for countermeasure. NG: Connection failure/fault with NIC. Check connection of NIC/replace NIC.
Display/adj/set range	0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255 At normal state: OK At failure occurrence: NG
BML-DISP	Set System Monitor scrn: BMLinks support
Lv.2	To set whether to only display the device configuration in the System Monitor screen when supporting BMLinks. When the setting is switched, the Status and Log are not displayed.
Details	To set whether to only display the device configuration in the System Monitor screen when supporting BMLinks. When the setting is switched, the Status and Log are not displayed.
Use case	When supporting BMLinks
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Ordinary System Monitor screen 1: Screen in which only the device configuration is displayed
Default value	0

COPIER > TEST > NETWORK	
IPV6-ADR	Setting of PING send address (IPv6)
Lv.1	To set the IPv6 address to send PING. When PING is sent to this address by COPIER> TEST> NETWORK> PING-IP6, the network connection condition in the IPv6 environment can be checked.
Details	To set the IPv6 address to send PING. When PING is sent to this address by COPIER> TEST> NETWORK> PING-IP6, the network connection condition in the IPv6 environment can be checked.
Use case	When IPv6 network is connected
Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
Caution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter a consistent character string as an address of IPv6. Enter an address within 39 characters including hexadecimal numbers (0 to 9, a to f) and a separator (:).
Related service mode	COPIER> TEST> NETWORK> PING-IP6
PING-IP6	PING transmission to IPv6 address
Lv.1	To send PING to the address specified by IPV6-ADR. The network connection condition in the IPv6 environment can be checked.
Details	To send PING to the address specified by IPV6-ADR. The network connection condition in the IPv6 environment can be checked.
Use case	When IPv6 network is connected
Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
Related service mode	COPIER> TEST> NETWORK> IPV6-ADR
IPSECPOL	Polling test of IPSec Encryption Board
Lv.1	To execute polling test of IPSec Encryption Board. To check whether a hardware failure has occurred.
Details	To execute polling test of IPSec Encryption Board. To check whether a hardware failure has occurred.
Use case	When checking whether a hardware failure has occurred to the IPSec Encryption Board
Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	At normal state: OK At failure occurrence: NG (0: The board cannot be recognized. 1: An error occurred to the result.)
IPSECINT	Interrupt test of IPSec Encryption Board
Lv.1	To execute the interrupt test of IPSec Encryption Board. To check whether a hardware failure has occurred.
Details	To execute the interrupt test of IPSec Encryption Board. To check whether a hardware failure has occurred.
Use case	When checking whether a hardware failure has occurred to the IPSec Encryption Board
Adj/set/operate method	Select the item, and then press OK key.
Display/adj/set range	At normal state: OK At failure occurrence: NG (0: The board cannot be recognized. 1: An error occurred to the result.)

T-8-60




COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL		
SERVICE1		Service-purposed total counter 1
Lv.1	Details	To count up when the paper is delivered outside the machine. Large size: 1, small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.
	Use case	When checking the counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
SERVICE2		Service-purposed total counter 2
Lv.1	Details	To count up when the paper is delivered outside the machine. Large size: 2, small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.
	Use case	When checking the counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
COPY		Total copy counter
Lv.1	Details	To count up when the paper is delivered outside the machine. Large size: 1, small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.
	Use case	When checking the counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
PDL-PRT		PDL print counter
Lv.1	Details	To count up when the paper is delivered outside the machine according to the charge counter at PDL print. Large size: 1, small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.
	Use case	When checking the counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
FAX-PRT		FAX reception print counter
Lv.1	Details	To count up when the paper is delivered outside the machine according to the charge counter at FAX reception. Large size: 1, small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.
	Use case	When checking the counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
BOX-PRT		[Not used]
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
RPT-PRT		Report print counter
Lv.1	Details	To count up when the paper is delivered outside the machine according to the charge counter at report print. Large size: 1, small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.
	Use case	When checking the counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999

COPIER > COUNTER > TOTAL		
2-SIDE		2-sided copy/print counter
Lv.1	Details	To count up when the paper is delivered outside the machine according to the charge counter at 2-sided copy/print. Large size: 1, small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.
	Use case	When checking the counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
SCAN		Scan counter
Lv.1	Details	To count the number of scan operations according to the charge counter when the scanning operation is complete. Large size: 1, small size: 1
	Use case	When checking the counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999

T-8-61

PICK-UP

COPIER > COUNTER > PICK-UP		
C1		Cassette 1 pickup total counter
Lv.1	Details	Large size: 1, Small size: 1
	Use case	When checking the Pickup counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	sheet
C2		Cassette 2 pickup total counter
Lv.1	Details	Large size: 1, Small size: 1
	Use case	When checking the Pickup counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	sheet
C3		Cassette 3 pickup total counter
Lv.1	Details	Large size: 1, Small size: 1
	Use case	When checking the Pickup counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	sheet
C4		Cassette 4 pickup total counter
Lv.1	Details	Large size: 1, Small size: 1
	Use case	When checking the Pickup counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	sheet
MF		Multi-purpose Tray pickup total counter
Lv.1	Details	Large size: 1, Small size: 1
	Use case	When checking the Pickup counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	sheet
2-SIDE		2-sided pickup total counter
Lv.1	Details	Large size: 1, Small size: 1
	Use case	When checking the Pickup counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	sheet

T-8-62

FEEDER

COPIER > COUNTER > FEEDER		
FEED		DADF original pickup total counter
Lv.1	Use case	When checking the total counter of original pickup by DADF
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	sheet
DFOP-CNT		DADF hinge open/close counter
Lv.1	Use case	When checking the DADF hinge open/close counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time

T-8-63

JAM

COPIER > COUNTER > JAM		
TOTAL		Printer total jam counter
Lv.1	Details	Printer total jam counter
	Use case	When checking the total jam counter of printer
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time
FEEDER		Feeder total jam counter
Lv.1	Details	Feeder total jam counter
	Use case	When checking the total jam counter of feeder
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time
SORTER		Finisher total jam counter
Lv.1	Details	Finisher total jam counter
	Use case	When checking the total jam counter of finisher
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time
2-SIDE		Duplex Unit jam counter
Lv.1	Details	Duplex Unit jam counter
	Use case	When checking the jam counter of Duplex Unit
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time
MF		Multi-purpose Tray jam counter
Lv.1	Details	Multi-purpose Tray jam counter
	Use case	When checking the jam counter of Multi-purpose Tray
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time
C1		Cassette 1 pickup jam counter
Lv.1	Details	Cassette 1 pickup jam counter
	Use case	When checking the jam counter of machine's Cassette 1
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time
C2		Cassette 2 pickup jam counter
Lv.1	Details	Cassette 2 pickup jam counter
	Use case	When checking the jam counter of machine's Cassette 2
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time
C3		Cassette 3 pickup jam counter
Lv.1	Details	Cassette 3 pickup jam counter
	Use case	When checking the jam counter of machine's Cassette 3
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time

COPIER > COUNTER > JAM		
C4		Cassette 4 pickup jam counter
Lv.1	Details	Cassette 4 pickup jam counter
	Use case	When checking the jam counter of machine's Cassette 4
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time

T-8-64

MISC

COPIER > COUNTER > MISC		
T-SPLY-Y		Y toner supply counter
Lv.1	Details	Number of Y color toner supply blocks. Counted for every one rotation of Toner Stirring Screw.
	Use case	When checking the usage status of toner
	Unit	block
	Default value	0
T-SPLY-M		M toner supply counter
Lv.1	Details	Number of M color toner supply blocks. Counted for every one rotation of Toner Stirring Screw.
	Use case	When checking the usage status of toner
	Unit	block
	Default value	0
T-SPLY-C		C toner supply counter
Lv.1	Details	Number of C color toner supply blocks. Counted for every one rotation of Toner Stirring Screw.
	Use case	When checking the usage status of toner
	Unit	block
	Default value	0
T-SPLY-K		Bk toner supply counter
Lv.1	Details	Number of Bk color toner supply blocks. Counted for every one rotation of Toner Stirring Screw.
	Use case	When checking the usage status of toner
	Unit	block
	Default value	0
ALLPW-ON		Number of DCON PCB power-on times
Lv.1	Details	Number of power-on times (Non-all-night Power Unit). To count up when power is turned ON (Non-all-night Power Unit).
	Use case	When checking the usage status of the product
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time
ST-NDL		Staple needle counter (finisher)
Lv.1	Details	To count the use of the staple needle.
	Use case	When checking the usage status of the staple needle.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time

COPIER > COUNTER > MISC		
ENT-PTH		Entrance paper path counter (finisher)
Lv.1	Details	Entrance paper path counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	sheet
TRAY-CHA		Tray change counter (finisher)
Lv.1	Details	Tray change counter
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time
SDL-NDL		Saddle staple needle counter
Lv.1	Details	To count the use of the Saddle staple needle.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Unit	time
SUC-A-Y		For R&D
Lv.2	Details	For R&D
SUC-A-M		For R&D
Lv.2	Details	For R&D
SUC-A-C		For R&D
Lv.2	Details	For R&D
SUC-A-K		For R&D
Lv.2	Details	For R&D

T-8-65

JOB

COPIER > COUNTER > JOB		
DVPAPLEN		For R&D
Lv.1	Use case	For R&D
DVRUNLEN		For R&D
Lv.1	Use case	For R&D

T-8-66

DRBL-1

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
TR-BLT		ITB parts counter
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
	2TR-ROLL	
Lv.1	Details	Secondary Transfer Outer Roller 1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
	PT-DRM	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
	C1-PU-RL	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
C1-SP-RL		Cassette1 Separation Roller prts counter
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
	C2-SP-RL	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
	C2-FD-RL	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
	M-FD-RL	
Lv.1	Details	Multi-purpose Tray Feed Roller 1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
M-SP-PD	Multi-purpose Tray Sprtn Pad prts cnter	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
FX-UNIT	Fixing Assembly parts counter	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
WST-TNR	Waste Toner Container parts counter	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
PT-DR-Y	Drum Unit (Y) parts counter	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-1		
PT-DR-M	Drum Unit (M) parts counter	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
PT-DR-C	Drum Unit (C) parts counter	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
REG-RL	Cassette 1 Pickup Unit parts counter	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
R-DOOR	Right Door Unit parts counter	
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0

T-8-67

DRBL-2

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2	
DF-PU-RL	Pickup Roller Unit prts cntr: DADF
Lv.1	Details
	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case
	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method
	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 99999999
	Unit
	sheet
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	Regardless of the read mode (1-sided/2-sided), the counter is advanced every time a sheet is fed.
DF-SP-PD	Separation Pad parts counter: DADF
Lv.1	Details
	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case
	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method
	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 99999999
	Unit
	sheet
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	Regardless of the read mode (1-sided/2-sided), the counter is advanced every time a sheet is fed.
LNT-TAPE	Fd Guide(Dust Colct Tape)prts cntr:DADF
Lv.1	Details
	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case
	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method
	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 99999999
	Unit
	sheet
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	Regardless of the read mode (1-sided/2-sided), the counter is advanced every time a sheet is fed.

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2	
STAMP	Stamp parts counter: DADF
Lv.1	Details
	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case
	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method
	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 99999999
	Unit
	sheet
	Default value
	0
DF-HNG-L	Left Hinge parts counter: All Reader
Lv.1	Details
	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case
	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method
	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 99999999
	Unit
	time
	Default value
	0
	Supplement/memo
	The counter is advanced every time it is opened/closed.
C3-SP-RL	Cassette3 Separation Roller prts counter
Lv.1	Details
	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case
	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method
	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 99999999
	Default value
	0
C3-FD-RL	Cassette3 Feed Roller parts counter
Lv.1	Details
	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case
	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method
	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 99999999
	Default value
	0

COPIER > COUNTER > DRBL-2		
C4-SP-RL		Cassette4 Separation Roller prts counter
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
C4-FD-RL		Cassette4 Feed Roller parts counter
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
FIN-STPR		Stapler parts counter
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0
SDL-STPL		Saddle stitcher staple counter (finisher)
Lv.1	Details	1st line: Total counter value from the previous replacement 2nd line: Estimated life
	Use case	When checking the consumption level of parts/replacing the parts
	Adj/set/operate method	To clear the counter value: Select the item, and then press Clear key. To change the estimated life: Select the item, enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	Clear the counter value after replacement.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 99999999
	Default value	0

T-8-68

■ T-CNTR

COPIER > COUNTER > T-CNTR		
YELLOW		Y Toner Container counter
Lv.1	Use case	When checking the consumption volume of Toner Container
	Details	
MAGENTA		M Toner Container counter
Lv.1	Use case	When checking the consumption volume of Toner Container
	Details	
CYAN		C Toner Container counter
Lv.1	Use case	When checking the consumption volume of Toner Container
	Details	
BLACK		Bk Toner Container counter
Lv.1	Use case	When checking the consumption volume of Toner Container
	Details	

T-8-69

■ V-CNTR

COPIER > COUNTER > V-CNTR		
TOTAL		Video count total counter
Lv.1	Details	To display distribution of total video count for each color. Small size: 1, Large size: 1
	Use case	When checking distribution of video count
YELLOW		Video count Y counter
Lv.1	Details	To display distribution of total video count for each color. Small size: 1, Large size: 1
	Use case	When checking distribution of video count
MAGENTA		Video count M counter
Lv.1	Details	To display distribution of total video count for each color. Small size: 1, Large size: 1
	Use case	When checking distribution of video count
CYAN		Video count C counter
Lv.1	Details	To display distribution of total video count for each color. Small size: 1, Large size: 1
	Use case	When checking distribution of video count
BLACK		Video count Bk counter
Lv.1	Details	To display distribution of total video count for each color. Small size: 1, Large size: 1
	Use case	When checking distribution of video count

T-8-70

■ V2-CNTR

COPIER > COUNTER > V2-CNTR		
TOTAL		Video count total counter
Lv.1	Details	To display distribution of total video count for each color. Small size: 1, Large size: 2
	Use case	When checking distribution of video count
YELLOW		Video count Y counter
Lv.1	Details	To display distribution of total video count for each color. Small size: 1, Large size: 2
	Use case	When checking distribution of video count
MAGENTA		Video count M counter
Lv.1	Details	To display distribution of total video count for each color. Small size: 1, Large size: 2
	Use case	When checking distribution of video count
CYAN		Video count C counter
Lv.1	Details	To display distribution of total video count for each color. Small size: 1, Large size: 2
	Use case	When checking distribution of video count
BLACK		Video count Bk counter
Lv.1	Details	To display distribution of total video count for each color. Small size: 1, Large size: 2
	Use case	When checking distribution of video count

T-8-71

■ LF

COPIER > COUNTER > LF		
Y-DRM-LF		Display of Drum Unit (Y) life
Lv.1	Details	To display how much the Drum Unit (Y) is close to the end of life in % (percentage). When a new part is set, the value becomes 0%.
	Use case	When checking the life of Drum Unit
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 999
	Unit	%
M-DRM-LF		Display of Drum Unit (M) life
Lv.1	Details	To display how much the Drum Unit (M) is close to the end of life in % (percentage). When a new part is set, the value becomes 0%.
	Use case	When checking the life of Drum Unit
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 999
	Unit	%
C-DRM-LF		Display of Drum Unit (C) life
Lv.1	Details	To display how much the Drum Unit (C) is close to the end of life in % (percentage). When a new part is set, the value becomes 0%.
	Use case	When checking the life of Drum Unit
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 999
	Unit	%
K-DRM-LF		Display of Drum Unit (Bk) life
Lv.1	Details	To display how much the Drum Unit (Bk) is close to the end of life in % (percentage). When a new part is set, the value becomes 0%.
	Use case	When checking the life of Drum Unit
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 999
	Unit	%

T-8-72

FEEDER

 DISPLAY

FEEDER > DISPLAY		
FEEDSIZE		Dspl of original size detected by DADF
Lv.1	Details	To display the original size detected by DADF.
	Use case	At original size detection error
TRY-WIDE		Distance of Original Width Detect Slider
Lv.1	Details	To display the distance between the Original Width Detection Sliders.
	Use case	At original size detection error
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 2970
	Unit	mm

T-8-73

 ADJUST

FEEDER > ADJUST		
DOCST		Adj of DADF img lead edge margin: front
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the margin at the leading edge of the image for DADF scanning. Execute when the output image after DADF installation is dislocated. Enter the value of service label when Scanner Unit is replaced/RAM data of Reader Unit is cleared. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin at the leading edge of the image is decreased by 0.1mm. (The image moves in the direction of the leading edge of the sheet.)
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When installing DADF • When replacing the Scanner Unit • When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	When setting an extreme value, the error E302 (shading error) may occur.
	Display/adj/set range	-50 to 50
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
	LA-SPEED	
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the image magnification in vertical scanning direction for DADF scanning. As the value is incremented by 1, the image is reduced by 0.1% in vertical scanning direction. (The feeding speed increases, and the image is reduced.) When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit, enter the value of service label.
	Use case	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When installing DADF • When replacing the Scanner Unit • When clearing the RAM data of the Reader Unit
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-30 to 30
	Unit	%
	Default value	0

T-8-74


FUNCTION

FEEDER > FUNCTION	
MTR-CHK	Specifying DADF Operation Motor
Lv.1	Details
	To specify the DADF Motor to operate. The motor is activated by MTR-ON.
	Use case
	At operation check
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 9 0: ADF Motor (M1), 1: Release Motor (M2), 2 to 9: Not used
	Related service mode
	FEEDER> FUNCTION> MTR-ON
TRY-A4	Adj of DADF Tray width detect ref 1: A4
Lv.1	Details
	To automatically adjust the paper width detection reference point 1 for the DADF Tray. (A4)
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Original Width Volume (VR) When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data (R-CON)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
TRY-A5R	Adj of DADF Tray width detect ref 2: A5R
Lv.1	Details
	To automatically adjust the paper width detection reference point 2 for the DADF Tray. (A5R)
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Original Width Volume (VR) When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data (R-CON)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
TRY-LTR	Adj of DADF Tray width detect ref 1: LTR
Lv.1	Details
	To automatically adjust the paper width detection reference point 1 for the DADF Tray. (LTR)
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Original Width Volume (VR) When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data (R-CON)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.
TRY-LTRR	Adj of DADF Tray width detect ref2: LTRR
Lv.1	Details
	To automatically adjust the paper width detection reference point 2 for the DADF Tray. (LTRR)
	Use case
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When replacing the Original Width Volume (VR) When replacing the Main Controller PCB 2/clearing RAM data (R-CON)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Select the item, and then press OK key.

FEEDER > FUNCTION	
FEED-CHK	Specifying DADF individual feed mode
Lv.1	Details
	To specify the feed mode for DADF. Feed operation is activated by FEED-ON.
	Use case
	At operation check
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 3 0: 1-sided pickup/delivery operation 1: 2-sided pickup/delivery operation 2: 1-sided pickup/delivery operation (with stamp) 3: 2-sided pickup/delivery operation (with stamp)
	Related service mode
	FEEDER> FUNCTION> FEED-ON
CL-CHK	Specifying DADF Operation Clutch
Lv.1	Details
	To specify the DADF Clutch to be operated. The Clutch is activated by CL-ON.
	Use case
	At operation check
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Pickup Clutch (CL1), 1: Registration Clutch (CL2)
	Related service mode
	FEEDER> FUNCTION> CL-ON
CL-ON	Operation check of DADF Clutch
Lv.1	Details
	To start operation check for the Clutch specified by CL-CHK.
	Use case
	At operation check
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. The clutch operates for approximately 5 seconds and automatically stops. 2) Press OK key. The operation check is completed.
	Caution
	Press OK key again after execution. It stops automatically after approx. 5 sec; however, it does not finish unless OK key is pressed (STOP screen does not appear.)
	Related service mode
	FEEDER> FUNCTION> CL-CHK
FAN-CHK	Specifying DADF Operation Fan
Lv.1	Details
	To specify the DADF Fan to be operated. The fan is activated by FAN-ON.
	Use case
	At operation check
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: Fan (FM1), 1: Not used
	Related service mode
	FEEDER> FUNCTION> FAN-ON

FEEDER > FUNCTION	
FAN-ON	Operation check of DADF Fan
Lv.1	Details
	Use case
	Adj/set/operate method
	Caution
	Related service mode
SL-CHK	Specifying DADF Operation Solenoid
Lv.1	Details
	Use case
	Adj/set/operate method
	Display/adj/set range
	Related service mode
SL-ON	Operation check of DADF Solenoid
Lv.1	Details
	Use case
	Adj/set/operate method
	Caution
	Related service mode
MTR-ON	Operation check of motor
Lv.1	Details
	Use case
	Adj/set/operate method
	Caution
	Related service mode

FEEDER > FUNCTION	
ROLL-CLN	Rotation of DADF Rollers
Lv.1	Details
	Use case
	Adj/set/operate method
FEED-ON	Operation check of DADF individual feed
Lv.1	Details
	Use case
	Adj/set/operate method
	Related service mode

T-8-75

SORTER

ADJUST

SORTER > ADJUST		
CLCT-SB		Adjusting the switchback amount
Lv.1	Details	Adjust the switchback amount when the paper is delivered to the processing tray.
	Use case	When the paper stack fault occurs at the processing tray by influence of the curl amount.
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-50 to 50
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
STP-F1		Adjusting front staple position (45deg)(A4)
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the one front staple position on the A4 size paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the staple position moves to the rear side by 0.49 mm.
	Use case	When misalignment occurs at the front staple position on A4R size paper
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-6 to 6
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
STP-F2		Adj front staple position (45deg)(LTR)
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the one front staple position on the LTR size paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the staple position moves to the rear side by 0.49 mm.
	Use case	When misalignment occurs at the front staple position on LTR size paper
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-6 to 6
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
STP-R1		Adjusting rear staple position (45deg)(A4)
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the one rear staple position on the A4 size paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the staple position moves to the rear side by 0.49 mm.
	Use case	When misalignment occurs at the rear staple position on A4 size paper
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-6 to 6
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0

SORTER > ADJUST		
STP-R2		Adjusting rear staple position (45deg)(LTR)
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the one rear staple position on the LTR paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the staple position moves to the rear side by 0.49 mm.
	Use case	When misalignment occurs at the rear staple position on LTR size paper
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-6 to 6
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
STP-2P		Adjusting front/rear 2-staple position
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the front/rear 2-staple position on Finisher. As the value is incremented by 1, the staple position moves by 0.1mm. +: Toward front -: Toward rear
	Use case	When the front/rear 2-staple position is displaced
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-25 to 25
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
SDL-STP		Adjust of saddle staple position
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the staple position for saddle stitching. As the value is incremented by 1, the staple position moves downward by 0.5 mm.
	Use case	When misalignment occurs at the fold position and the staple position for saddle stitching
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-3 to 3
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
SDL-ALG		Adjust of saddle alignment position
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the travel length of the Alignment Plate for saddle stitching. As the value is incremented by 1, the alignment position moves in the push-in direction by 0.5 mm.
	Use case	When misalignment occurs during the saddle stitching
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0

SORTER > ADJUST	
ST-ALG1	Adj Stacker A4 size alignment position
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the A4 size paper alignment position. As the value is incremented by 1, the travel length of the Alignment Plate is increased by 0.42mm.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When misalignment occurs in A4 size paper</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-10 to 10</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
ST-ALG2	Adjusting the Stacker Alignment Position(LTR)
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the LTR size paper alignment position. As the value is incremented by 1, the travel length of the Alignment Plate is increased by 0.42mm.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When misalignment occurs in LTR size paper</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-10 to 10</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
STP-F3	Adj A4R front stpl position (Less than 45 deg)
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the one front staple position on the A4R size paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the staple position moves to the rear side by 0.49mm.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When misalignment occurs at the front staple position on A4R size paper</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-6 to 6</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
STP-F4	Adj LTRR front stpl position (Less than 45 deg)
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the one front staple position on the LTRR size paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the staple position moves to the rear side by 0.49mm.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When misalignment occurs at the front staple position on LTRR size paper</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-6 to 6</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

SORTER > ADJUST	
STP-R3	Adjusting A4R rear stpl position(Less than 45 deg)
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the one rear staple position on the A4R size paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the staple position moves to the rear side by 0.49mm.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When misalignment occurs at the rear staple position on A4R size paper</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-6 to 6</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
STP-R4	Adj LTRR rear staple position (Less than 45 deg)
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the one rear staple position on the LTRR size paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the staple position moves to the rear side by 0.49mm.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When misalignment occurs at the rear staple position on LTRR size paper</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-6 to 6</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
SW-UP-RL	Adj of Swing Roller falling position
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the Swing Roller down position. As the value is incremented by 1, the Swing Roller down position moves downward by 0.2mm.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When paper fails to be transported to the Processing Tray and misalignment occurs</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>-17 to 33</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>
PRCS-RET	Adj Process Tray return amount
Lv.1	<p>Details</p> <p>To adjust the pull-back amount of the paper on the Processing Tray. As the value is incremented by 1, the pull-back amount is decreased by 1.4mm.</p> <p>Use case</p> <p>When the paper is bent in the Processing Tray</p> <p>Adj/set/operate method</p> <p>Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.</p> <p>Display/adj/set range</p> <p>0 to 5</p> <p>Unit</p> <p>mm</p> <p>Default value</p> <p>0</p>

SORTER > ADJUST		
UP-CL		Setting of upward curl prev mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when upward curl occurs on the paper delivered to the Stack Tray, and paper leaning due to the curl occurs.
	Use case	When upward curl occurs on the paper delivered to the Stack Tray, and paper leaning due to the curl occurs
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0
DW-CL		Setting downward curl prev mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when downward curl occurs on the paper delivered to the Stack Tray, and papers are not stacked accurately.
	Use case	When downward curl occurs on the paper delivered to the Stack Tray, and papers are not stacked accurately
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0
THC-CL		Setting heavy ppr curl prev mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when upward curl occurs at the time of heavy paper delivery. When 1 is set, the amount of Stack Tray descension for stack delivery increases. The paper surface detection is performed for every sheet, not for every 5 sheets.
	Use case	When upward curl occurs at the time of heavy paper delivery
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0
THC-PUSH		Setting heavy ppr out prev mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when the already stacked paper is pushed out at the time of heavy paper delivery. When 1 is set, the Stack Tray moves down temporarily before the heavy paper is delivered to the Processing Tray if the leading sheet is heavy paper.
	Use case	When the already stacked paper is pushed out at the time of heavy paper delivery
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0

SORTER > ADJUST		
OFST-STC		Set poor offset stack prev mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when paper is not appropriately stacked in the small-size offset mode. When 1 is set, buffer operation is not performed in the small-size offset mode.
	Use case	When paper is not appropriately stacked in the small-size offset mode
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0
THN-STC		Set poor thin ppr stack prev mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when thin paper is not appropriately stacked. When 1 is set, the stacking condition of thin paper improves.
	Use case	When thin paper is not appropriately stacked
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0
STP-P-CH		Set staple stack displace prev mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when the paper on the top is misaligned in the staple delivery mode. When 1 is set, paper stack alignment operation is executed twice immediately before stapling.
	Use case	When the paper on the top is misaligned in the staple delivery mode
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0
TRY-NIS		Set tray switch noise reduct mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when the operation noise at the time of switching the Stack Tray is loud. When 1 is set, the Stack Tray rise operation becomes slow.
	Use case	When the operation noise at the time of switching the Stack Tray is loud
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0

SORTER > ADJUST		
TRY-SU		Set tray switching speedup mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when the Stack Tray switching time is long. When 1 is set, the Stack Tray rise speed becomes fast.
	Use case	When the Stack Tray switching time is long
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0
FIN-NIS		Set tray drive noise reduct mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when the Finisher operation noise is loud. When 1 is set, the initial Finisher operation is minimized.
	Use case	When the Finisher operation noise is loud
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0
1SHT-SHF		Set 1-sheet Offset+Collate
Lv.1	Details	Setting the value to 1 enables 1-sheet stack shift sorting.
	Use case	When the 1-sheet shift sort enabled mode is necessary.
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0
SDL-SWCH		Saddle stack capacity switch mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when increasing the stacking capacity for saddle stitching. When 1 is set, the stacking capacity increases over the upper limit.
	Use case	When increasing the stacking capacity for saddle stitching
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0
SDL-ALM		Set sddl full stack alarm mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when disabling the stack full alarm for saddle stitching.
	Use case	When disabling the stack full alarm for saddle stitching
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: ON,1: OFF
	Default value	0

SORTER > ADJUST		
SFT-AMT1		Adjusting shift amount of Shft Roll (front)
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the front shift amount of the Shift Roller. As the value is incremented by 1, the Shift Roller moves toward the guide by 0.1 mm.
	Use case	When the front shift amount of the paper is inappropriate
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-50 to 50
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
SFT-AMT2		Adjusting shft amount of Shift Roll(Rear)
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the rear shift amount of the Shift Roller. As the value is incremented by 1, the Shift Roller moves toward the guide by 0.1 mm.
	Use case	When the rear shift amount of the paper is inappropriate
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-50 to 50
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
STP-NTN		Adj of Staple Needle pitch (A4)
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the pitch between needles for 2-point stapling. As the value is incremented by 1, the pitch between needles becomes wider by 0.27 mm.
	Use case	When the pitch between needles for 2-point stapling is inappropriate
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-8 to 8
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
INSTP-F1		Adjust of front staple position
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the paper pull-in amount of the Gripper at the time of front 1-point stapling. As the value is incremented by 1, the paper pull-in amount is increased by 0.1 mm.
	Use case	When misalignment occurs at the front staple position
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-50 to 50
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0

SORTER > ADJUST		
INSTP-R1		Adjust of rear staple position
Lv.1	Details	To adjust the paper pull-in amount of the Gripper at the time of rear 1-point stapling. As the value is incremented by 1, the paper pull-in amount is increased by 0.1 mm.
	Use case	When misalignment occurs at the rear staple position
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	-50 to 50
	Unit	mm
	Default value	0
THN-STCL		Setting the Poor Stacking of Large/Thin Paper Prevention Mode
Lv.1	Details	Set 1 when large/thin paper is not appropriately stacked. When 1 is set, the stacking condition of large/thin paper improves.
	Use case	When large/thin paper is not appropriately stacked.
	Adj/set/operate method	After inputting value, press the OK key.
	Default value	0
DSTP-F1		Adjusting the front staple position in 2-stapling mode
Lv.1	Details	Adjust the front staple position in the middle 2-stapling mode. Incrementing the value by 1 shifts the front stapling position to the paper edge side by 0.1 mm.
	Use case	When the middle 2-staple position is displaced between the front and rear stapling positions.
	Adj/set/operate method	After inputting value, press the OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 33
	Default value	0

T-8-76

FUNCTION

SORTER > FUNCTION		
FIN-CON		FIN-Controller PCB RAM clear
Lv.1	Details	To execute the RAM clear of Finisher Controller PCB to delete all the adjustment contents and counter information.
	Use case	When clearing RAM data of the Finisher Controller
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Select the item, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Output the service mode setting values by P-PRINT before execution. After execution, enter the necessary setting values. RAM clear is executed after the main power is turned OFF/ON.
	Related service mode	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> P-PRINT

T-8-77

OPTION

SORTER > OPTION		
MD-SPRTN		Set restriction at Finisher error:Staple
Lv.1	Details	To set whether to stop the machine when an error occurs at Finisher.
	Use case	When preferring to run the machine at Finisher error
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution	When "1" is set, staple operation or alignment operation is not executed. Set "0" normally.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Normal, 1: Function restriction
	Default value	0
BUFF-SW		ON/OFF of buffer operation
Lv.1	Details	To set ON/OFF of buffer operation in the Finisher. When misalignment occurs, set 1. When 1 is set, alignment performance is improved, but productivity decreases.
	Use case	When misalignment of paper stack occurs (misalignment of 3 sheets at the lowest part of the stack in case of the side stitch, and 3 sheets at the middle of the stack in case of saddle stitch)
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution	When the buffer operation is set to OFF, productivity decreases.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF,1: ON
	Default value	0
	Supplement/memo	This setting can be also made with DIP switch of the Finisher. For details, refer to the Service Manual for Finisher.
PRCS-SP1		Change of paper stack speed for buffered paper
Lv.1	Details	When the value is changed to 1, the paper stack speed becomes fast in the sort or staple mode.
	Use case	When the alignment failure occurs in the sort or staple mode. (Paper does not reach to the process tray stopper)
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch..
	Caution	When this mode is activated, the productivity goes down.
	Default value	1
STCR-DWN		Set occasional misalign prev mode
Lv.1	Details	When misalignment in feed direction occurs at approx. every 30 sheets for thin/plain paper (105g/m2 and less), set 1.
	Use case	When misalignment in feed direction occurs occasionally for thin/plain paper
	Adj/set/operate method	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: ON,1: OFF
	Default value	0

SORTER > OPTION	
CURL-HVY	ON/OFF of finisher curl alleviation mode
Lv.1	Details
	To set ON/OFF of curl alleviation mode for heavy paper, etc. at the Finisher. When 1 is set, curl of heavy paper 1/2/3 and coated paper 1/2 can be alleviated, but productivity decreases. When setting 1, adjust the fixing temperature control of the target paper type in COPIER> OPTION> IMG-FIX, and also set the curl alleviation mode on the host machine to ON.
	Use case
	When the stackability of the tray decreases due to paper curl
	Adj/set/operate method
	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Caution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Be sure to get approval from the user in advance by telling that productivity decreases. When ON is set, also set COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> PRE-CURL to ON.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	COPIER> OPTION> IMG-FIX> TMP-TBL4
PRCS-SP3	Change of paper stack speed for non-buffer mode: Finisher
Lv.1	Details
	When the value is changed to 1, the paper stack speed becomes slow in the non-buffer mode.
	Use case
	When the alignment failure occurs with the plain/thin paper. (Paper is spent to the process tray stopper more than required.)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Caution
	When setting this mode, the feeding speed of non-buffered paper to the Process Tray is changed, so it may be necessary to readjust the Process Tray pull-back amount (SORTER> ADJUST> PRCS-RET).
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 8 0: 700mm/s 1: 650mm/s 2: 600mm/s 3: 550mm/s 4: 500mm/s 5: 450mm/s 6 to 8: 450mm/s
	Default value
	0
	Related service mode
	SORTER > ADJUST > PRCS-RET

SORTER > OPTION	
NSRT-STC	Poor non-sort delivery stack prev mode:Finisher
Lv.1	Details
	When newspapers delivered with a non-type mode do not stack appropriately, set it. When is set, the stacking condition of the paper delivered with non-sort mode is improved.
	Use case
	When the paper delivered with non-sort mode is not appropriately stacked
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value, and then press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0 to 2 0 :eject to a stack tray in the non-sort mode. 1: In a non-sort mode, the both sides print paper does eject via a processing tray. 2: In a non-sort mode, the one side / both sides print paper does eject via a processing tray.
	Default value
	0
THN-TRSW	Change of the delivery tray for small width paper
Lv.1	Details
	When the value is changed to 1, the outlet of the thin paper (less than width direction 139.6mm) is forced on the tray of the main body.
	Use case
	When the delivery stationary jam occurs with the thin paper delivered to the 1st/2nd trays. (Thin paper: less than papper wight 63g/m2 and less than paper width direction 139.6mm)
	Adj/set/operate method
	Enter the setting value and press OK key.
	Display/adj/set range
	0: Delivery to the UI setting 1: Delivery to the tray of the main body
	Default value
	0

T-8-78

BOARD

OPTION

BOARD > OPTION		
MENU-1		Hide/dspl of printer setting menu level 1
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the level 1 of printer setting menu.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
MENU-2		Hide/dspl of printer setting menu level 2
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the level 2 of printer setting menu.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
MENU-3		Hide/dspl of printer setting menu level 3
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the level 3 of printer setting menu.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
MENU-4		Hide/dspl of printer setting menu level 4
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the level 4 of printer setting menu.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0
SURF-OFF		UFR board function ON/OFF
Lv.1	Details	To set ON/OFF of the function according to the SURF board connection status.
	Use case	When removing the SURF Board
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Default value	0

BOARD > OPTION		
TR-DSP		Hide/dspl of toner reduction function
Lv.2	Details	To set whether to display or hide the toner reduction function.
	Use case	Upon user's request
	Adj/set/operate method	1) Enter the setting value, and then press OK key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
	Display/adj/set range	0 to 1 0: Hide, 1: Display
	Default value	0

T-8-79

9

Installation

- How to Check this Installation Procedure
- Checking before Installation:
- Table of Options Combination:
- Checking the Contents
- Unpacking
- Installation Procedure

How to Check this Installation Procedure

Description on the parts included in the package

The parts with a diagonal line in the contents list will not be used.

When Using the Parts Included in the Package

A symbol is described on the illustration in the case of using the parts included in the package of this product.



Packaged Item

F-9-1

Symbols in the Illustration

The frequently-performed operations are described with symbols in this procedure.

Screw



Tighten



Remove

Connector



Connect



Disconnect

Harness



Secure



Free

Claw



Insert



Remove



Push



Plug in



Turn on

Checking instruction



Check



Visual Check



Sound Check

F-9-2

Checking before Installation:

Following shows requirements for the installation site.

Therefore, it is desirable to see the installation site in advance before bringing in the machine to the user's site.

Checking Power Supply

- 1) There must be a power outlet properly grounded and rated as indicated (+, -10%) for exclusive use by the machine.

Checking the Installation Environment

- 1) The environment of the installation site must be in the range as shown below. Avoid installation near the faucet, water boiler, humidifier or refrigerator.
Guaranteed range for operation/image Temperature: 15.0 to 30.0 deg C, Humidity: 5 to 80%
- 2) The machine must not be installed near a source of fire or in an area subject to dust or ammonium gas. If the area is exposed to direct rays of the sun, provide curtains to the window.
- 3) Be sure to provide adequate ventilation of the room to keep the work environment comfortable. Room odor can be bothering when running the machine for a long time in a poorly-ventilated room although the ozone amount generated while running this equipment does not harm human health.

Points to Note Before Installation

Take note of the following points when installing the host machine.

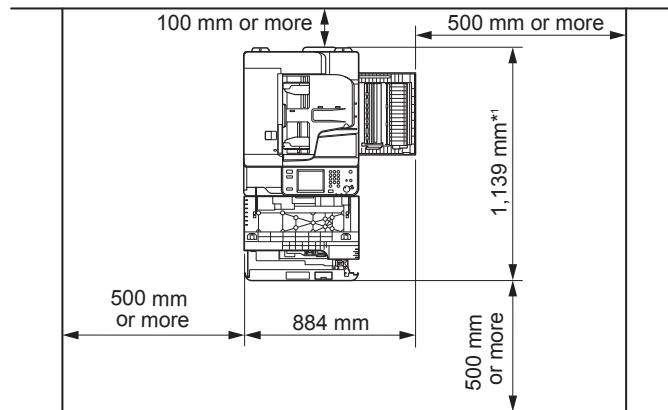
- 1) Moving the host machine from a cool place to a warm place can generate condensation, causing moisture beads on the metal surface. Using the host machine while the machine is condensed can cause image failure. Therefore, when moving the machine from a cool place to a warm place to install, unpack the host machine and leave it for 2 hours or more before the installation work so that the machine becomes used to the room temperature.
- 2) Weight of the machine is approx. 92kg (the host machine with 2 cassettes + ADF). Be sure to perform the work in accordance with the standard to handle a heavy load in each country. In addition, be sure to keep the machine leveled when lifting it.

Checking Installation Space

- 1) The foot of this equipment should be in contact with the floor. This equipment should be kept on the level.
- 2) The machine must be away from the wall by 100mm or more to secure a sufficient space to operate the machine.

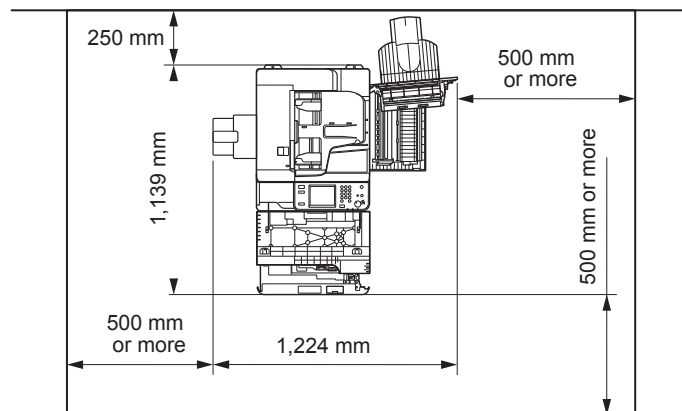
The following measures are for the imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2230

- When no optional products are attached:



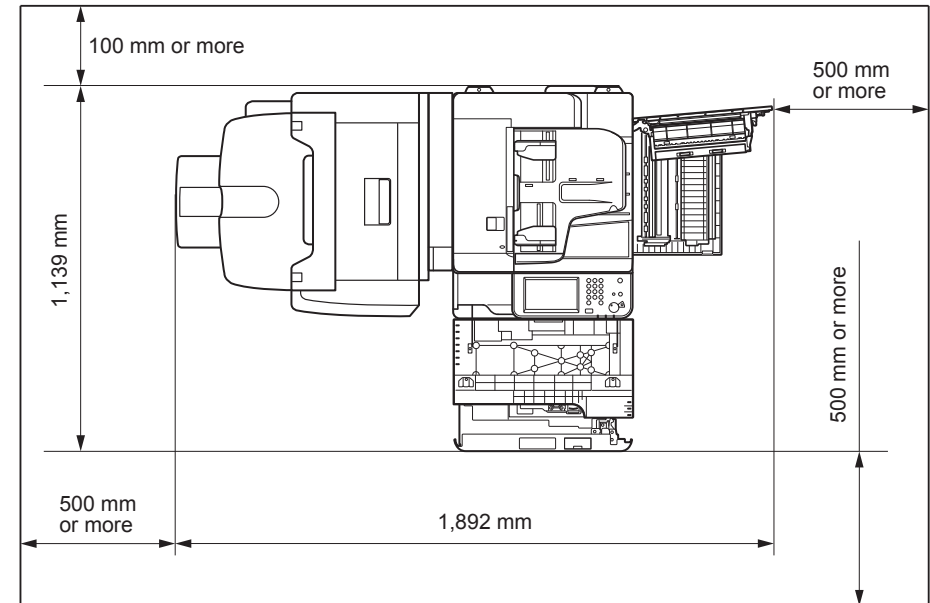
F-9-3

- When the Inner Finisher-F1 and Copy Tray-J1 are attached:



F-9-4



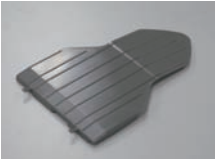
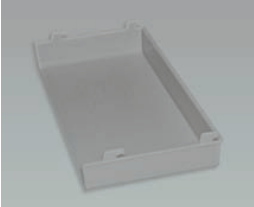
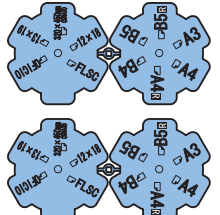







- When the Booklet Finisher-M1 and Buffer Pass Unit-K1 are attached:







F-9-5

- 3) To install the host machine, install it in a well-ventilated place. Especially when there are multiple host machines, be sure to locate the machine where the machine is free from direct exhaust of other machines. Be sure to keep the machine away from the air-inlet duct which is used for ventilation of the room.

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Handle Covers X 4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Right Lower Cover X 1 Use only when the Cassette Pedestal is not installed 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Reverse Trailing Edge Guide X 1 Included in the model with 3 Way Unit only 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Service Book Holder x 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Size Plates X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Cleaning Position Label 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Copy Prohibition Label 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Hinge Caution Label 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Hinge Caution Label 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Power Supply Cable 120V 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Power Supply Cable 230V 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Power Supply Cable 230V Australia Only 

[11] [12] [13]: The connector has a different shape depending on locations. Use the correct power cable to match the location / area of installation.

<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Toner Container (Y/M/C/Bk) X 1 Korea Only 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Envelope pickup Mount X 1 Included in non-Korea models 	<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Envelope pickup Mount X 1 Included in non-Korea models 
<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Cord Guide X1 220V /230V Only 		

F-9-7

The numbers of labels differ from location to location. See the following table.

	North America	Australia	Korea	Taiwan	Singapore/ Latin America
Cleaning Position Label	1	1	-	1	1
Copy Prohibition Label	3	2	-	1	2
Hinge Caution Label 1	1	-	-	1	-
Hinge Caution Label 2	3	-	-	1	-

T-9-1

'-' is NONE

<CD/Guides>

Check the contents against the following

	North America	Australia	Korea	Taiwan	Singapore/ Latin America
e-Manual	1	1	1	1	1
Setup Guide	1	1	1	1	1
Basic Operation Guide	1	1	1	1	1
UFR II User Software	1	1	1	1	1
Drum Unit Warranty	1	-	-	-	-
iW EMC CD	1	-	-	-	-
iW MC CD	-	1	-	1	1 *1
Before Using This Machine	1	1	1	1	1
AMS Kit Software / Manual CD	1	-	-	-	-
Main Unit Warranty	-	-	1	-	-
Notice for Envelope Attachment for MP Tray	1	1	-	1	1

T-9-2

'-' is NONE

*1 It is not included in Merchandise Code 5904B005AA.

Table of Options Combination:

Combination of the Options installing to the Right Side of the Host Machine

NOTE:

- Following table shows the combination of options to be installed at the right side of the host machine.
- Refer to the table below to install the options described in the table. Be sure to check the combination before the installation work.

	Utility Tray	Voice Operation Kit	Voice Guidance	Copy Card Reader
Utility Tray	-	No	No	Yes
Voice Operation Kit	No	-	No	Yes
Voice Guidance Kit	No	No	-	Yes
Copy Card Reader	Yes	Yes	Yes	-

T-9-3

Yes: installation is available

No: installation is not available

Unpacking

1) Unpack the host machine.

NOTE:

When installing the host machine and the options at the same time, install the options first by following the procedure below for better workability.

1. Installing the Cassette Pedestal (Refer to Installation Procedure for the Cassette Pedestal.)
2. Installing the DADF (if it is an option) (Refer to Installation Procedure for the DADF.)
3. Installing the host machine

NOTE:

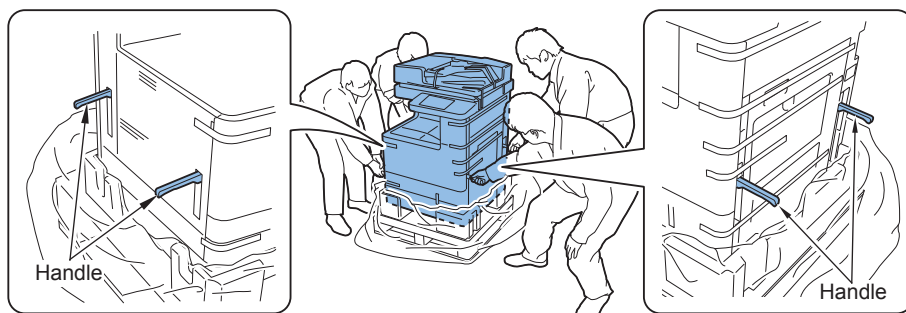
In the case of installation in European region, refer to the Printer Model (for Europe) Installation Procedure.



2) Holding the 4 handles on the left and right sides, lift the main body down from pallet.

⚠ CAUTION:

- He maximum weight of the machine including the approx. 92kg (the host machine with 2 cassettes + ADF). Be sure to work with 4 or more people when lifting it.
- In addition, be sure to keep the machine leveled when lifting it.
- Because the center of gravity will be placed at rear, be careful not to loose balance when lifting it.



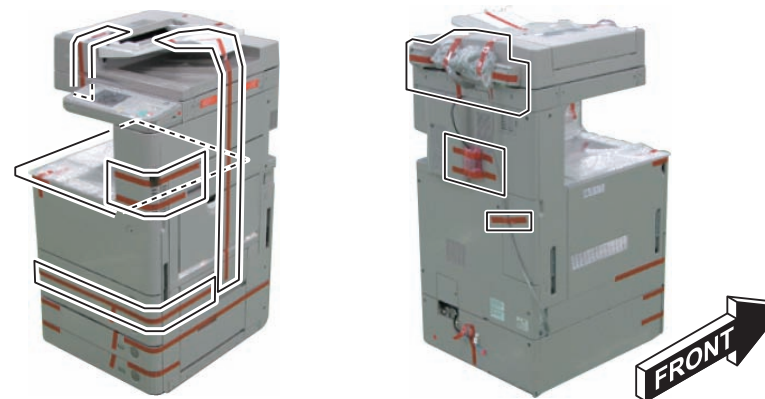
F-9-8



3) Remove the tapes on the exterior of the host machine.

CAUTION:

- Be sure to remove the tapes on the Cassette and Reader in later step.
- Be sure not to remove the Scanner System Fixation Screw until installation of the scanner.



F-9-9



4) Open the ADF, and remove the cushioning material.



F-9-10



5) Close the ADF.

- 6) Open the Front Cover, and remove the Drum Unit Protection Member.



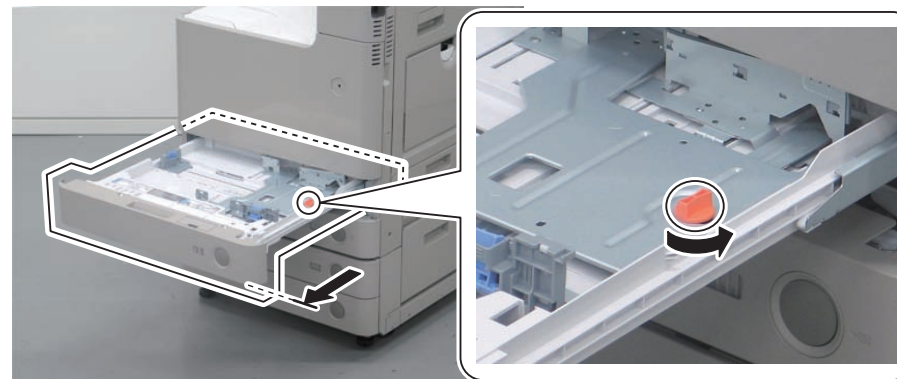
F-9-11

- 7) Close the Front Cover.
- 8) To prevent the cap from falling off, do not remove the tape of the Waste Toner Container.



F-9-12

- 9) Press the Cassette Release button, and pull out the Cassette 1.
- 10) Remove the Lifter Retainer Member while rotating it in the direction of the arrow.



F-9-13

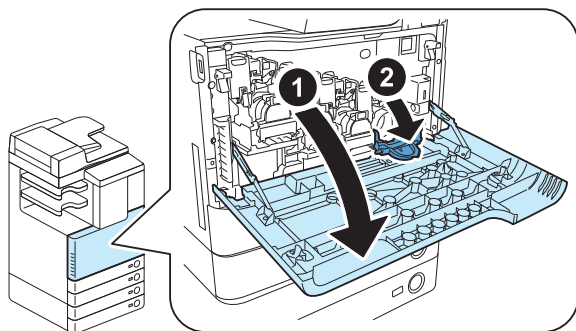
- 11) Return the Cassette 1 to its original position.
- 12) Press the Cassette Release button, pull out the Cassette 2, and remove the tapes material from the cassette.
- 13) Return the Cassette 2 to its original position.

Installation Procedure

Installing the Toner Container



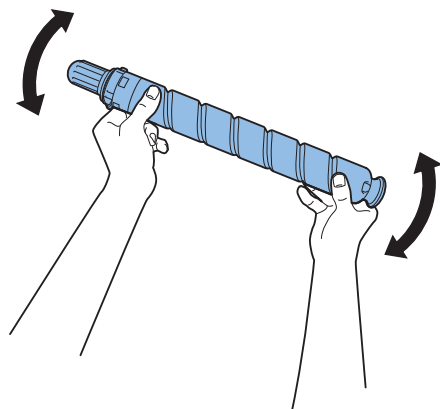
- 1) Open the Front Cover.
- 2) Open the Toner Replacement Cover.



F-9-14



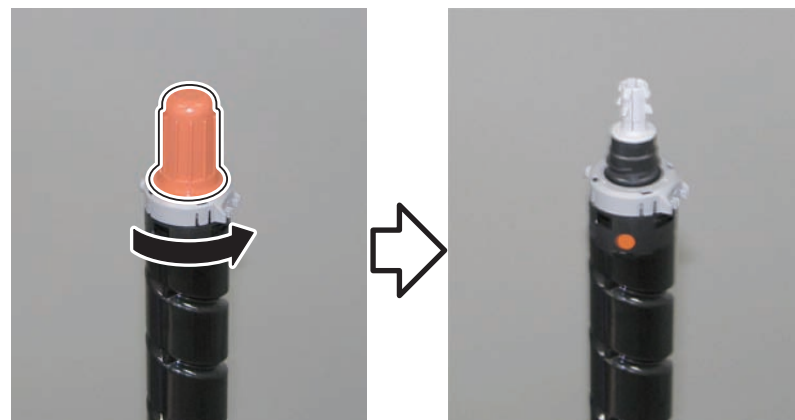
- 3) Unpack the Toner Container.
- 4) Hold the Toner Container with both hands, and shake it approx. 10 times.



F-9-15



- 5) Remove the Protection Cap of the Toner Container while rotating it in the direction of the arrow.



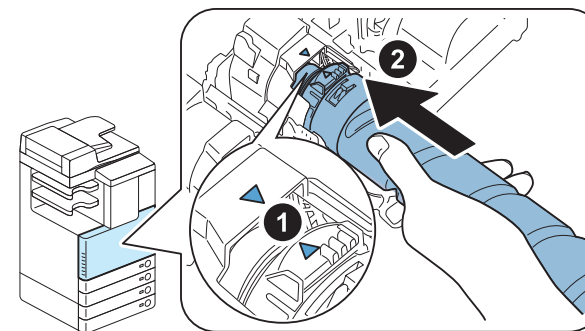
F-9-16



- 6) Align the arrow marked on the ring near the end of the Toner Container with the arrow marked at the Toner Container Inlet of the host machine as shown in the figure.
- 7) Insert the Toner Container until it stops.

NOTE:

Be sure to insert the Toner Container horizontally while putting hand on the bottom of it until approx. half of it is inserted.



F-9-17

- 8) Close the Toner Replacement Cover.
- 9) Repeat steps 2 to 8 to install the Toner Container of each color in the same way.
- 10) Close the Front Cover.

Scanner Installation

- 1) Remove the 2 Scanner System Fixation Screws.

NOTE:
Be sure to keep the Scanner System Fixation Screws in a safe place for moving the machine.



F-9-18

Setting the Environment Heater Switch

NOTE:
This work is necessary only if the Environment Heater Switch is included.

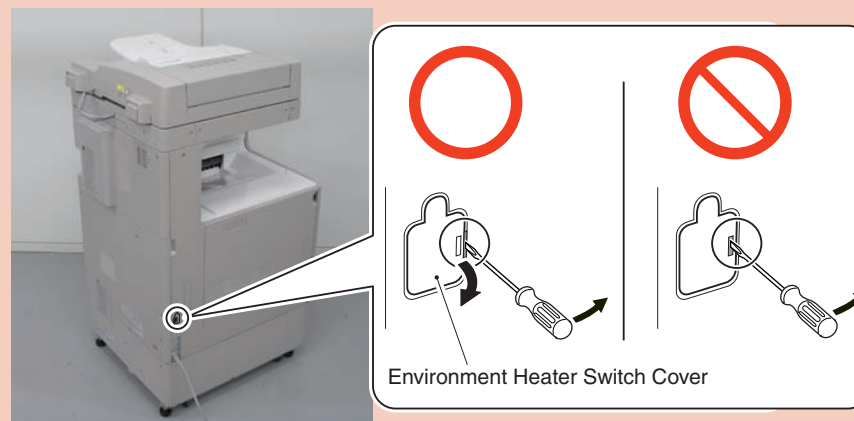
- 1) Remove the Environment Heater Switch Cover, and check that the Environment Heater Switch is ON. When it is OFF, turn it ON.



F-9-19

CAUTION:

When removing the Environment Heater Switch Cover, do not insert a screwdriver in the oval hole.



F-9-20

- 22) Install the Environment Heater Switch Cover.

Turning ON the Power

-
- 1) Connect the power plug to the outlet.
 - 2) Remove the Protection Sheet on the Control Panel.
 - 3) Turn ON the main power switch.

NOTE:

- Toner supply and initialization of the Developing Assembly and the Drum are automatically performed.
- When toner supply is completed, the operation stops. (Approx. 4 minutes)
- It is possible to perform "Installing the Others", "Securing the Host Machine", and "Setting the Cassette" while supplying toner.

- 4) Execute the following Service Mode to make the Cassette Heater recognized. In Service Mode (Level1),
 - Select : COPIER > OPTION > USER > CSTHT-SW > "1".
- 5) In Service Mode (Level1) > COPIER > OPTION > CST , check that the value appropriate for the location is selected for CST-K-SW. (0:EXEC , 1:16K)

Turning OFF the Main Power

-
- 1) Open the Switch Cover and turn OFF the main power switch.
 - 2) Check that the control panel display and the main power lamp are OFF, and then disconnect the power plug.

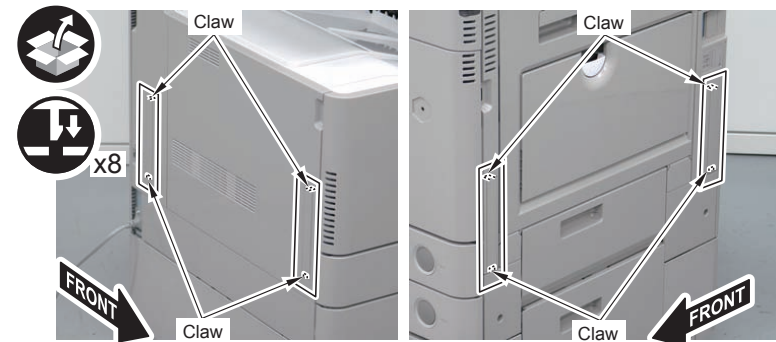
Installing the Others

- 1) In the case of not installing the Cassette Pedestal, install the Right Lower Cover.



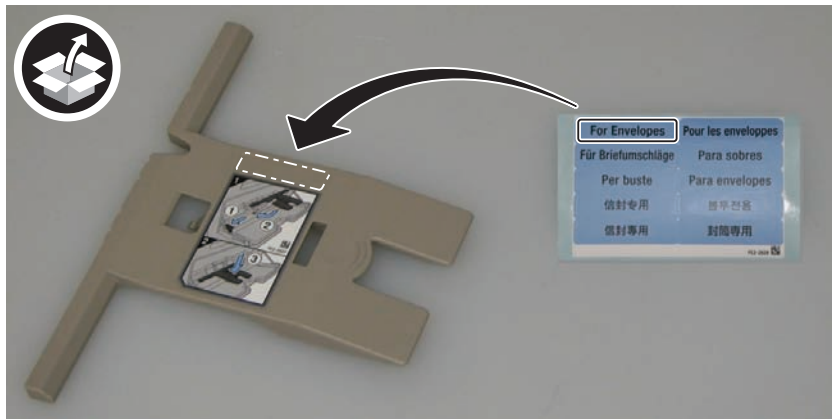
F-9-21

- 2) Install the 4 Handle Covers.
- 2 Claw each



F-9-22

- 3) Affix the Envelope Pickup Mount Label of the appropriate language on the Envelope Pickup Mount as shown in the figure.



F-9-23

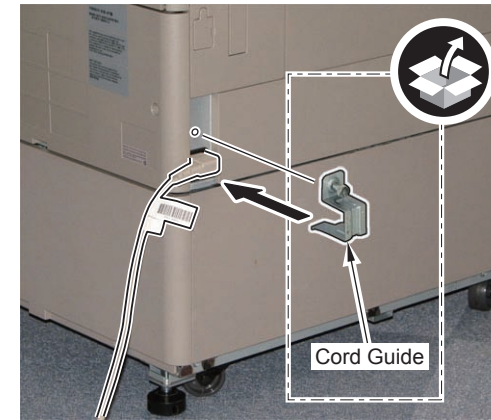
- 4) Install the Service Book Holder.
- 4 Hooks

NOTE:
At installation, be sure that a click sound is heard.



F-9-24

- 5) Install the Cord Guide.



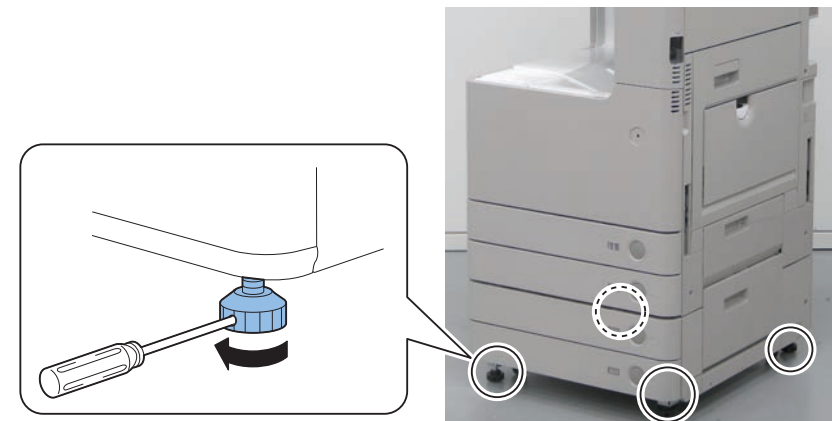
F-9-25

Securing the Host Machine

<In the Case of the Machine with Cassette Pedestal>

- 1) Move the main body to the installation position, and secure it in place by turning the 4 adjusters of the Cassette Pedestal with a screwdriver.

NOTE:
Securing of the adjuster is not earthquake resistant.



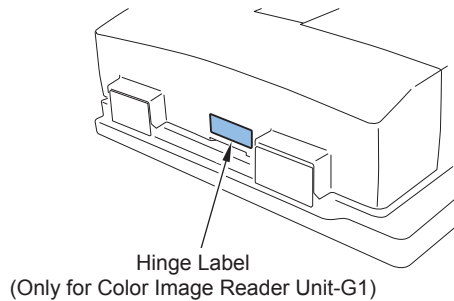
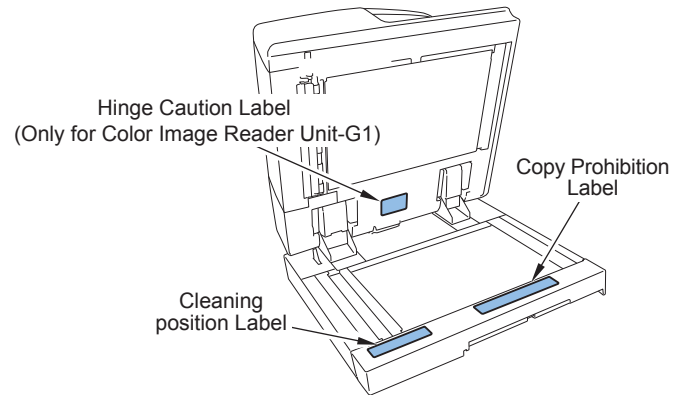
F-9-26

Affixing the Label



1) Affix the labels according to the location over the existing ones.

- Cleaning Position Label
- Copy Prohibition Label
- Hinge Caution Label (Color Image Reader Unit-G1)
- Hinge Label (Color Image Reader Unit-G1)



F-9-27

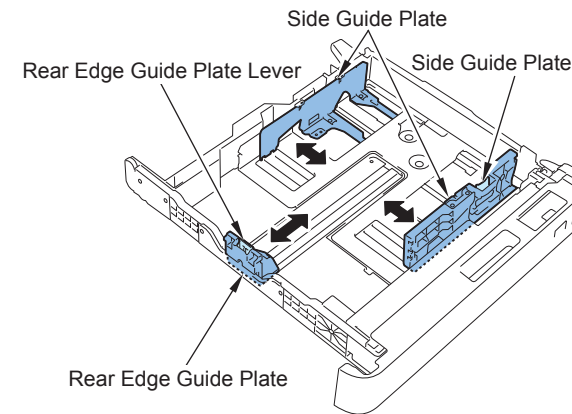
Setting the Cassette



NOTE:

The illustrations show the case of the Cassette 2 as an example. The Cassette 1 can be set in the same way.

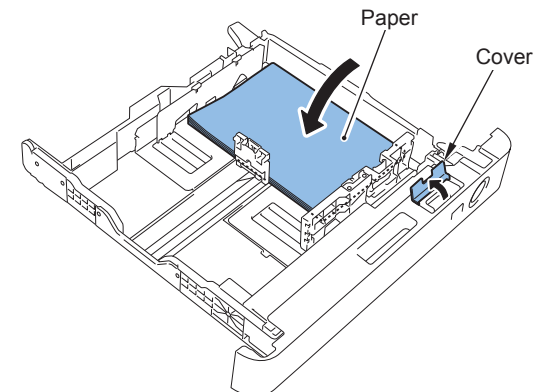
- 1) Press the Cassette Release button, pull out the Cassette.
- 2) Hold the lever of the Side Guide Plate, and adjust the plate to the specified size.
- 3) Hold the lever of the Trailing Edge Guide Plate, and adjust the plate to the specified size.



F-9-28

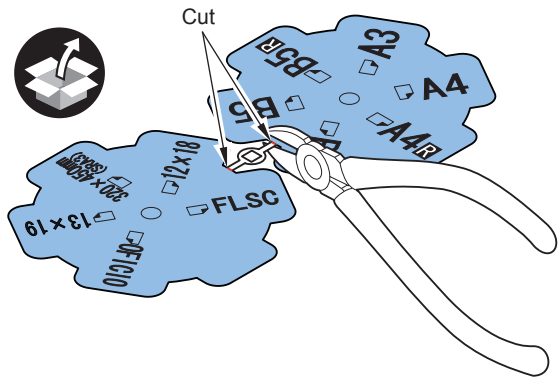


- 4) Place paper and open the cover at insertion area of the Size Plate.



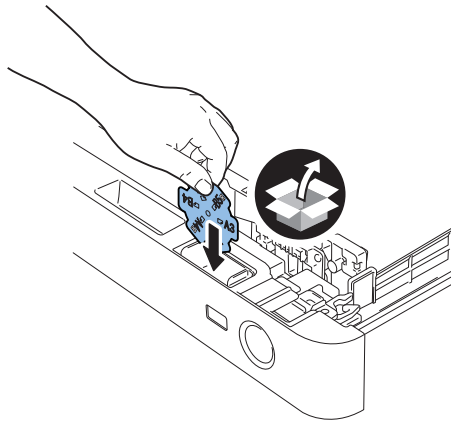
F-9-29

- 5) Cut the 2 places of the Size Plates with nippers.



F-9-30

- 6) Set the Size Plate according to the size of papers being set.
(Lump the Size Plates not in use together and store them at the rear.)



F-9-31

- 7) Close the cover at insertion area of the Size Plate, and insert the cassette.
8) Set the other cassette in the same way.
9) In the case that the Cassette Pedestal is installed, set the cassettes of it in the same way.

NOTE:
Paper size settings are automatically recognized.

Auto Gradation Adjustment

-
- 1) Clean the Copyboard Glass surface of the main body.
 - 2) Place A3, A4, 11x17, or LTR size paper in the cassette. (Refer to the cassette setting.)
 - 3) Select Settings/Registration > Adjustment /Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjustment.
 - 4) Select the source of paper for test print, and press OK.
 - 5) After that, follow the direction on the screen of the Control Panel.

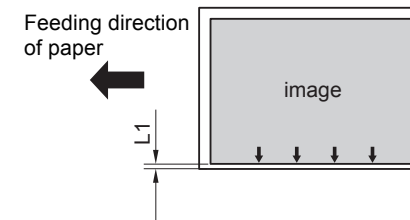
Image Position Adjustment

NOTE:

The second side of the 2-sided copy mentioned later means the second side in the image formation order.
With this equipment, the second side in the image formation order at the time of 2-sided copy/print is equivalent to the first side of the original.

Margin Adjustment (1st side;)

-
- 1) Print from the Cassette 1 and 2, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.



F-9-32

<In Case of Out of Range>>

Cassette 1

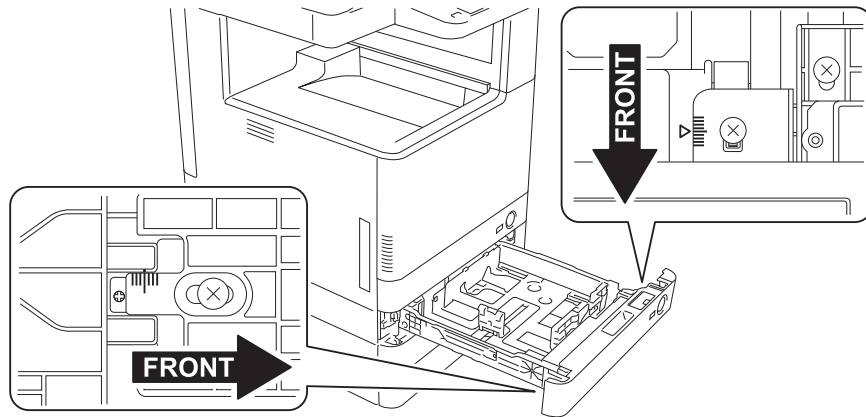
-
- 2) Change the left edge margin adjustment value for the 1st side of the Cassette 1.
 - As the value of COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C1 in Service Mode (Level) is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.
 - 3) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.
 - 4) Print from the Cassette 1, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.
 - 5) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.
 - ADJ-C1

Cassette 2



2) Pull out the cassette2.

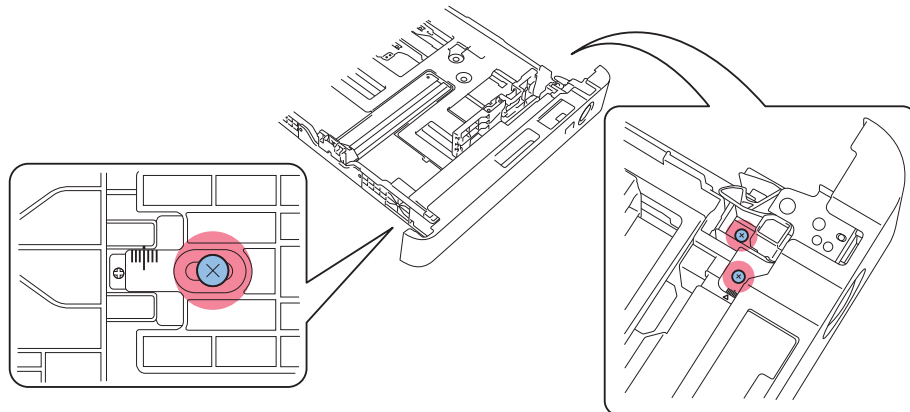
3) Check the values of the scale on the 2 Adjustment Plates.



F-9-33



4) Loosen the 3 Fixation Screws.

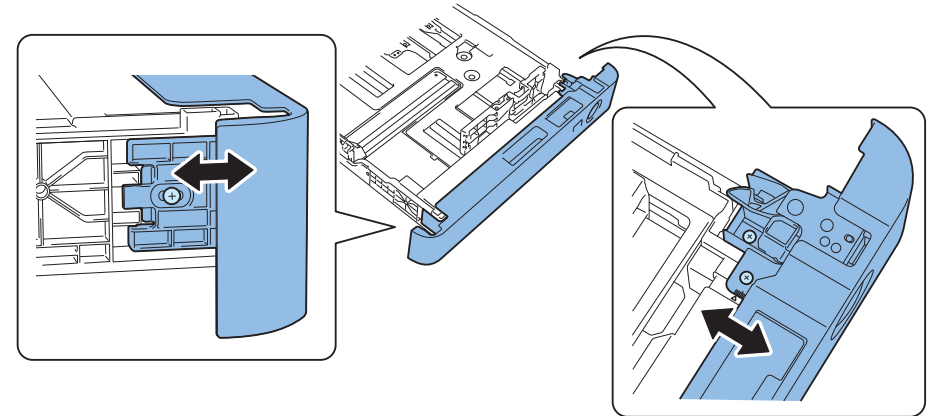


F-9-34

5) Move the Adjustment Plates back and forth according to the scale values checked in step 3. As the Adjustment Plate is moved toward the rear by 1 scale, the left edge margin is decreased by 1mm.

NOTE:

When moving the scales, be sure to move the same amount of the value for the 2 points.



F-9-35



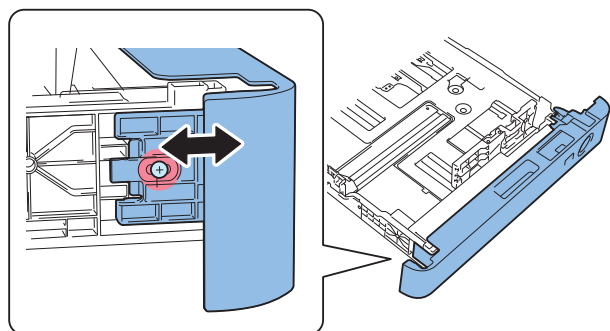
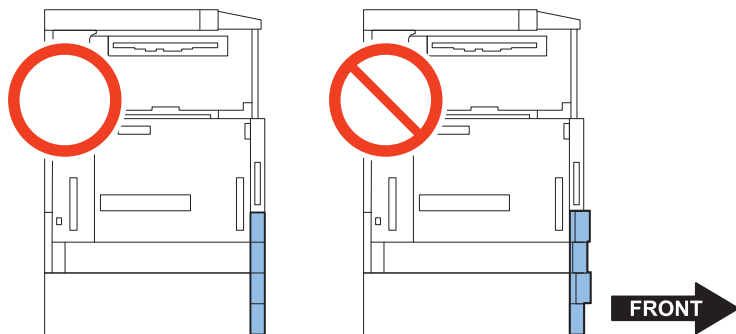
6) Tighten the Fixation Screws.



7) Return the cassette to its original position.

NOTE:

When the cassette positions are uneven due to the mechanical adjustment, adjust them by loosening the screw at left side.



F-9-36

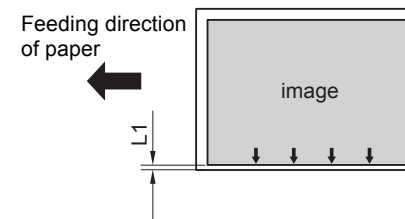


8) Print from the Cassette 2, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5mm +/- 1.5mm.

Margin Adjustment (2nd side)



1) Execute duplex printing from the Cassette 1, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5 +/- 2.0mm.



F-9-37



2) If the margin is not within the range, change the left edge margin adjustment value for the 2nd side of the Cassette 1.

- As the value of Service Mode (Level1) COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C1RE is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

3) Enter the value same as the left edge margin adjustment value for the 2nd side of the Cassette 1 to the side registration adjustment value for the 2nd side of the Cassette 2.

- Service Mode (Level1) COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C2RE

4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.

5) Execute duplex printing from the Cassette 2, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5 +/- 2.0mm.

6) If the margin is not within the range, change the left edge margin adjustment value for the 2nd side of the Cassette 2.

- As the value of Service Mode (Level1) COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C2RE is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

7) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.

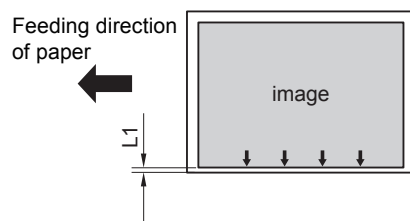
- ADJ-C1RE

- ADJ-C2RE

8) Get out from service mode.

Multi-purpose Tray Margin Adjustment (1st side: mechanical adjustment)

-
- 1) Set papers in the Multi-purpose Tray.
 - 2) Print from the Multi-purpose Tray, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.

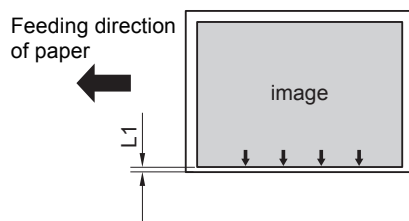


F-9-38

-
- 3) If the margin is not within the range, change the left edge margin adjustment value for the 1st side of the Multi-purpose Tray.
As the value of COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-MF in Service Mode (Level1) is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.
 - 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.
 - 5) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.
• ADJ-MF

Multi-purpose Tray Margin Adjustment (2nd side)

-
- 1) Execute duplex printing from the Multi-purpose Tray, and check that the left edge margin for the 2nd side is within $L1 = 2.5 \pm 2.0$ mm.

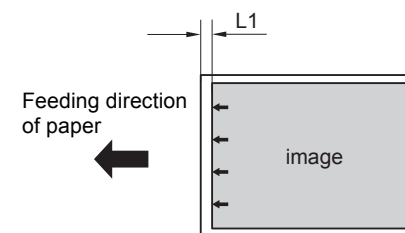


F-9-39

-
- 2) If the margin is not within the range, change the left edge margin adjustment value for the 2nd side of the Multi-purpose Tray.
As the value of COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-MFRE in Service Mode (Level1) is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.
 - 3) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.
 - 4) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.
• ADJ-MFRE

Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side)

-
- 1) Print from the Cassette 1, and check that the leading edge margin is $L1 = 4.0 \pm 1.5 \pm 1.0$ mm.
If the margin is not within the range, execute the adjustment by following the procedure below.



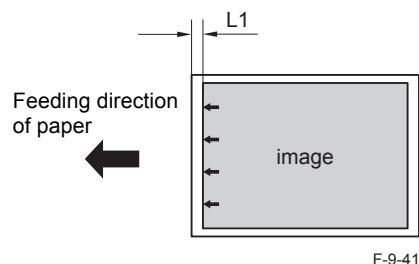
F-9-40

-
- 2) Select Service Mode (Level1) > COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REGIST.
 - 3) Make adjustment by changing the setting value. (As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.)
 - 4) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.
 - 5) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.
• REGIST

Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (2nd side)



- 1) Execute duplex printing from the Cassette 1, and check that the leading edge margin for the 2nd side is $L1=4.0 +1.5/-1.0$ mm. If the margin is not within the range, execute the adjustment by following the procedure below.



- 2) Select Service Mode (Level1) > COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-DUP1.
 3) Make adjustment by changing the setting value. (As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.)
 4) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.
 5) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.
- REG-DUP1

Checking the Network Connection

Overview

If the user's network environment is TCP/IP, use the Ping function to check that the network setting is properly performed.

If the user's network environment is IPX/SPX or Apple Talk, there is no need to check the network environment.

Checking the Network Connection

CAUTION:

Be sure to use the network cable with Category 5e or higher. In addition, a sealed type (STP cable) is recommended.

Using the non-shield type can affect the peripheral electrical equipment through the network cable.



- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Connect the network cable to the Host Machine and turn ON the main power switch.
- 3) Inform the system administrator at the installation site that installation of the Host Machine is complete, and then, ask for the network setting.

NOTE:

Network setting cannot be executed unless logging in as an administrator. Factory default password is as follows.

- System administration division ID: 7654321
- System administration password: 7654321

CAUTION:

To perform the network setting, the following Additional Functions items must be set "ON".

- [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [Change network settings/ check connection]
- [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Setting] > [IPv4 setting] > [Use IPv4]

- 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power.

■ Operation Procedure Using Ping

CAUTION:

To execute Ping command with the Windows Vista-installed PC, set OFF the firewall, or execute Ping command from the Windows Vista-installed PC to the Host Machine.



- 1) Select the following: [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [TCP/IP setting] > [IPv4 setting] > [PING command]
- 2) Enter the IP address with the numeric keypad on the Control Panel and press "Execute" key. "Response from the host" is displayed if Ping command is succeeded while "no response from the host" is displayed if failed.

■ Checking by the Remote Host Address

Using the remote host address to execute Ping can check whether connection to the network is enabled or not.

Remote host address: IP address of PC terminal connected/running on TCP/IP network environment that connects to this equipment.



- 1) Inform the system administrator about checking of the network connection using Ping.
- 2) Confirm the remote host address with the system administrator.
- 3) Enter the remote host address to Ping.
 - The network is properly connected if the message say "Response from the host".
 - The network is not properly connected if the message say "No response from the host", therefore, execute the following troubleshooting.

● Network Troubleshooting

■ Checking Connection of the Network Cable



To check whether the network cable is properly connected to the Ethernet Port.

■ Operation Procedure Using Ping



- 1) Ask the network administrator at the user's site to write down the IP address of the PC that is connected to the network.
- 2) [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Setting] > [IPv4 setting] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address of the PC with the numeric keypad and press Execute key.
 - The network is properly connected if the message say "Response from the host".
 - If the message say "No response from the host", check the following.

NOTE:

The IP address of the PC can be checked by the following procedure: Select the following on a Windows PC: Start > Program > Accessory > Command Prompt; and enter "ipconfig" and press Enter key to display information of the IP address.

■ Checking the Network Setting of the Host Machine



- 1) Select the following: [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Setting] > [IPv4 setting] > [IP address setting]; and write down the address in the IP address field.
- 2) Select the following: [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Setting] > [IPv4 setting] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address.
 - The IP address specified in the Host Machine is correct if the message say "Response from the host".
 - If the message say "No response from the host", check the following.

NOTE:

When setting the address by manually input, set the Subnet Mask by following the instruction of the administrator.

■ Checking Network Function on the Main Controller

Check with the loopback address.



- 1) Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Network > TCP/IP Settings > IPv4 Settings > PING command, enter the IP address "127.0.0.1" with the numeric keypad, and then press "Start" key.
- 2) When "Response from the host." is displayed, network function of the Main Controller operates normally.
 - When "No response from the host." is displayed, the network function of the Main Controller is failed.
 - Replace the Main Controller with a properly operating one, and check the connection.

How to Check this Installation Procedure

Description on the parts included in the package

The parts with a diagonal line in the contents list will not be used.

When Using the Parts Included in the Package

A symbol is described on the illustration in the case of using the parts included in the package of this product.



Packaged Item

F-9-42

Symbols in the Illustration

The frequently-performed operations are described with symbols in this procedure.

Screw



Tighten



Remove

Connector



Connect



Disconnect

Harness



Secure



Free

Claw



Insert



Remove



Push



Plug in



Turn on

Checking instruction



Check



Visual Check



Sound Check

F-9-43

Checking before Installation

Following shows requirements for the installation site.

Therefore, it is desirable to see the installation site in advance before bringing in the machine to the user's site.

Checking Power Supply

- 1) There must be a power outlet properly grounded and rated as indicated (+, -10%) for exclusive use by the machine.

Checking the Installation Environment

- 1) The environment of the installation site must be in the range as shown below. Avoid installation near the faucet, water boiler, humidifier or refrigerator.
Guaranteed range for operation/image Temperature: 15.0 to 30.0 deg C, Humidity: 5 to 80%
- 2) The machine must not be installed near a source of fire or in an area subject to dust or ammonium gas. If the area is exposed to direct rays of the sun, provide curtains to the window.
- 3) Be sure to provide adequate ventilation of the room to keep the work environment comfortable. Room odor can be bothering when running the machine for a long time in a poorly-ventilated room although the ozone amount generated while running this equipment does not harm human health.

Points to Note Before Installation

Take note of the following points when installing the host machine.

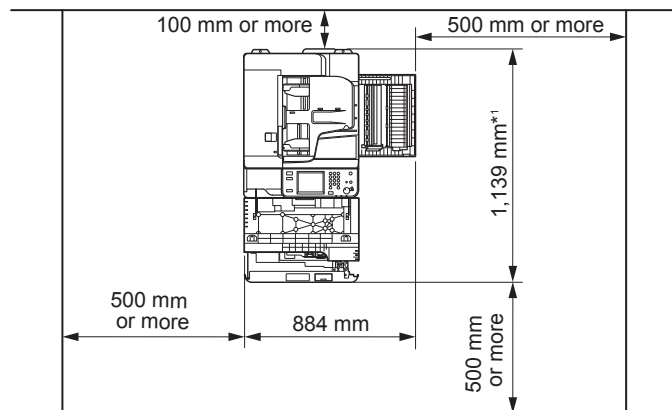
- 1) Moving the host machine from a cool place to a warm place can generate condensation, causing moisture beads on the metal surface. Using the host machine while the machine is condensed can cause image failure. Therefore, when moving the machine from a cool place to a warm place to install, unpack the host machine and leave it for 2 hours or more before the installation work so that the machine becomes used to the room temperature.
- 2) Weight of the machine is approx. 92kg (the host machine with 2 cassettes + ADF). Be sure to perform the work in accordance with the standard to handle a heavy load in each country. In addition, be sure to

Checking Installation Space

- 1) The foot of this equipment should be in contact with the floor. This equipment should be kept on the level.
- 2) The machine must be away from the wall by 100mm or more to secure a sufficient space to operate the machine.

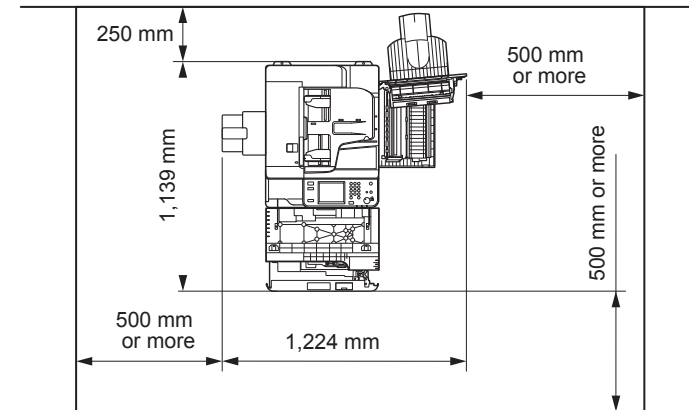
The following measures are for the imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2230i

- When the Color Image Reader Unit-G1 is attached :



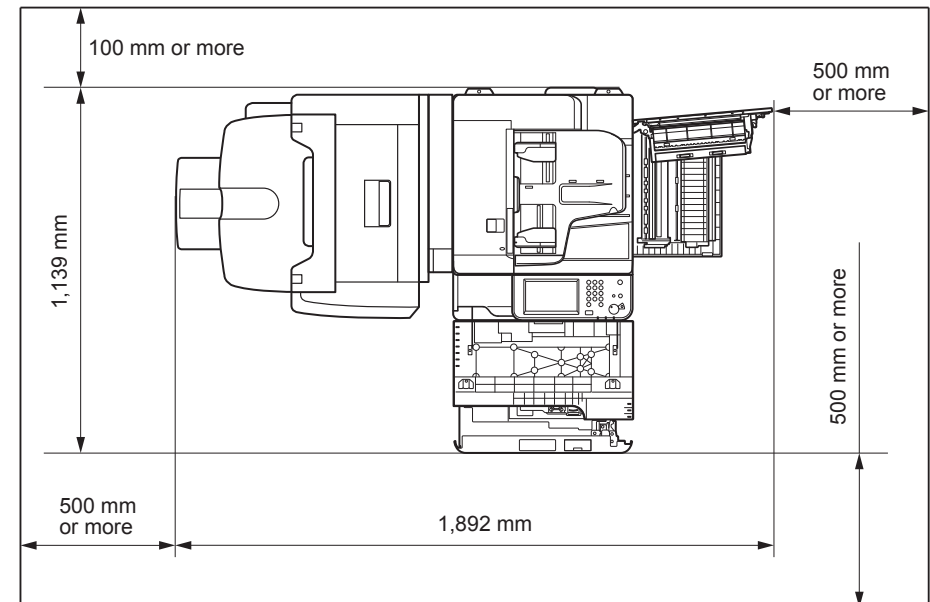
F-9-44

- When the Color Image Reader Unit-G1, Inner Finisher-F1 and Copy Tray-J1 are attached :



F-9-45



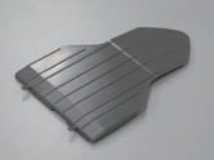
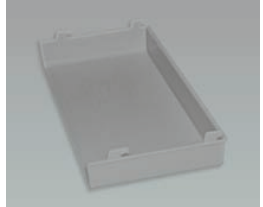
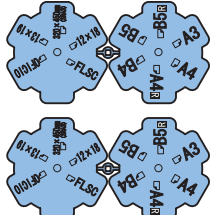



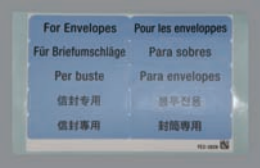

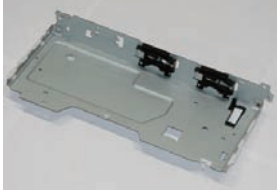
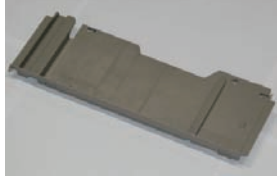
- When the Color Image Reader Unit-G1, Booklet Finisher-M1 and Buffer Pass Unit-K1 are attached :






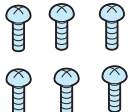
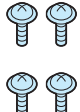

F-9-46

- 3) To install the host machine, install it in a well-ventilated place. Especially when there are multiple host machines, be sure to locate the machine where the machine is free from direct exhaust of other machines. Be sure to keep the machine away from the air-inlet duct which is used for ventilation of the room.

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Handle Covers X 4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Right Lower Cover X 1 Use only when the Cassette Pedestal is not installed 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Reverse Trailing Edge Guide X 1 Included in the model with 3 Way Unit only 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Service Book Holder x 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Size Plates X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Power Supply Cable X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Waste Toner Box X 11 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Envelope pickup Mount X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Envelope pickup Mount Label X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Control Panel Unit X1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Control Panel Support Plate X1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Rail Cover of the Control Panel X1 

F-9-47

<input type="checkbox"/> [13] UI Cable Guide X1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] USB Mounting Plate X1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Lail Stopper X2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Screw (Bind;M4x6) X6 	<input type="checkbox"/> [17] Screw (TP;M3x6) X4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [18] Cord Guide X1 

F-9-48

NOTE:
A Waste Toner Container is included in the package, but is not used in the installation procedure.

<CD/Guides>

Check the contents against the following

	imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2220i/ C2220L	imageRUNNER ADVANCE C2230i/ C2225i
e-Manual	3	3
Users Guide	1	1
UFR II User Software	1	1
PCL User Software	-	1
iW MC CD-ROM	-	1
Notice for Envelope Attachment for MP Tray	1	1

T-9-4

Table of Options Combination:

Combination of the Options installing to the Right Side of the Host Machine

NOTE:

- Following table shows the combination of options to be installed at the right side of the host machine.
- Refer to the table below to install the options described in the table. Be sure to check the combination before the installation work.

	Utility Tray	Voice Operation Kit	Voice Guidance	Card Reader
Utility Tray	-	No	No	Yes
Voice Operation Kit	No	-	No	Yes
Voice Guidance Kit	No	No	-	Yes
Card Reader	Yes	Yes	Yes	-

Yes: installation is available

No: installation is not available

T-9-5

Points to Note at Installation

If the machine is used as a copier model, follow the Installation Procedure included in the package of the Reader Unit to install it, and then install the Toner Container.

If the machine is used as a copier model, "Printer Cover-D2" is required.

Unpacking



1) Unpack the host machine.

NOTE:

When installing the host machine and the options at the same time, install the options first by following the procedure below for better workability.

1. Installing the Cassette Pedestal (Refer to Installation Procedure for the Cassette Pedestal.)
2. Installing the Printer Cover-D2 (if it is an option) (Refer to Installation Procedure for the Printer Cover-D2.)
3. Installing the host machine

NOTE:

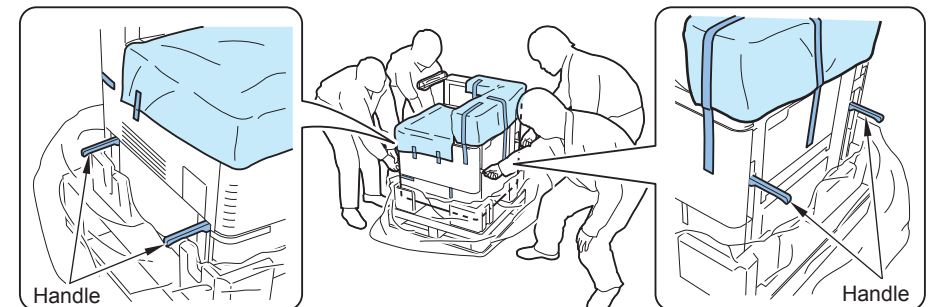
When installing the host machine and the USB Device Port at the same time, install the USB Device Port before installing the Control Panel.



2) Holding the 4 handles on the left and right sides, lift the main body down from pallet.

CAUTION:

- The maximum weight of the machine including the approx. 92kg (the host machine with 2 cassettes + ADF). Be sure to work with 4 or more people when lifting it.
- In addition, be sure to keep the machine leveled when lifting it.
- Because the center of gravity will be placed at rear, be careful not to lose balance when lifting it.



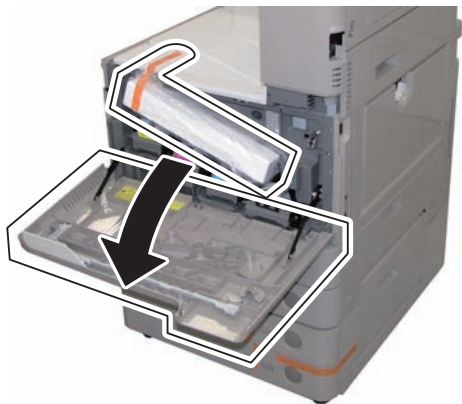
F-9-49

- 3) Remove the tapes on the exterior of the host machine.

CAUTION:

Be sure to remove the tapes on the Cassette in later step.

- 4) Open the Front Cover, and remove the Drum Unit Protection Member.



F-9-50

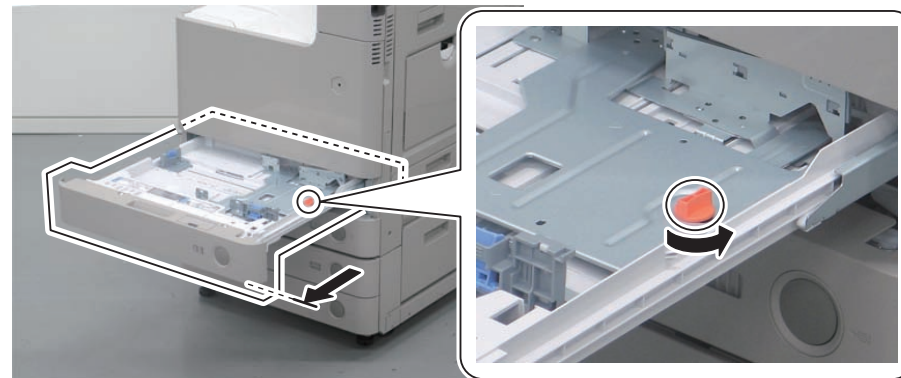
- 5) Close the Front Cover.

- 6) To prevent the cap from falling off, do not remove the tape of the Waste Toner Container.



F-9-51

- 7) Press the Cassette Release button, and pull out the Cassette 1.
- 8) Remove the Lifter Retainer Member while rotating it in the direction of the arrow.



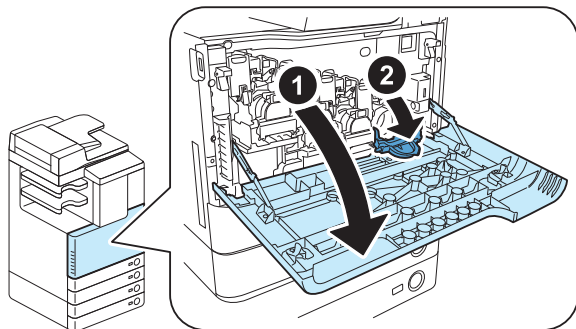
F-9-52

- 9) Return the Cassette 1 to its original position.
- 10) Press the Cassette Release button, pull out the Cassette 2, and remove the tapes material from the cassette.
- 11) Return the Cassette 2 to its original position.

Installation Procedure_Printer Model (for Europe)

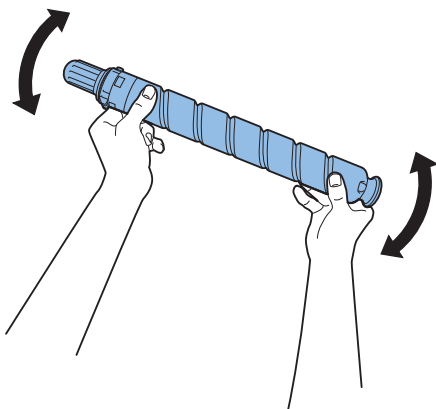
Installing the Toner Container

-
- 2) Open the Front Cover.
- 3) Open the Toner Replacement Cover.



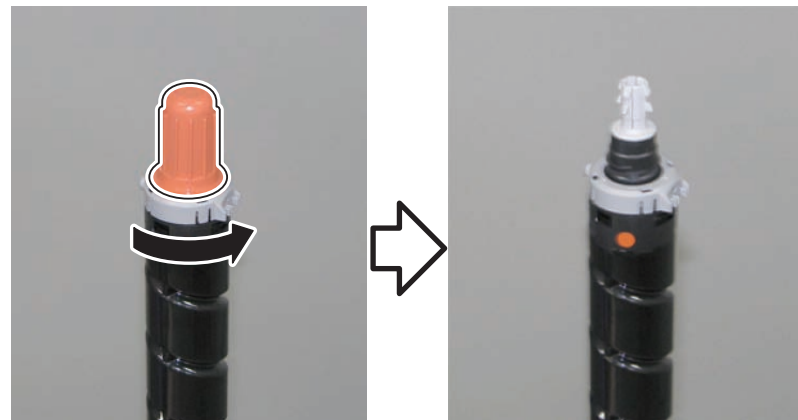
F-9-53

-
- 4) Unpack the Toner Container.
-
- 5) Hold the Toner Container with both hands, and shake it approx. 10 times.



F-9-54

-
- 6) Remove the Protection Cap of the Toner Container while rotating it in the direction of the arrow.

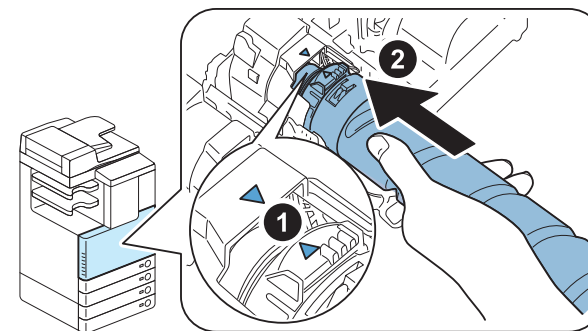


F-9-55

-
- 7) Align the arrow marked on the ring near the end of the Toner Container with the arrow marked at the Toner Container Inlet of the host machine as shown in the figure.
- 8) Insert the Toner Container until it stops.

NOTE:

Be sure to insert the Toner Container horizontally while putting hand on the bottom of it until approx. half of it is inserted.



F-9-56

-
- 9) Close the Toner Replacement Cover.

-
- 10) Repeat steps 2 to 8 to install the Toner Container of each color in the same way.
- 11) Close the Front Cover.

Turning ON the Power

-
- 1) Connect the power plug to the outlet.
- 2) Remove the Protection Sheet on the Control Panel.
- 3) Turn ON the main power switch.

NOTE:

- Toner supply and initialization of the Developing Assembly and the Drum are automatically performed.
- When toner supply is completed, the operation stops. (Approx. 4 minutes)
- It is possible to perform "Installing the Others", "Securing the Host Machine", and "Setting the Cassette" while supplying toner.

- 4) Execute the following Service Mode to make the Cassette Heater recognized. In Service Mode (Level1),
Select COPIER > OPTION > USER > CSTHT-SW > "1".
- 5) In Service Mode (Level1) > COPIER > OPTION > CST , check that the value appropriate for the location is selected for CST-K-SW. (0:EXEC , 1:16K)

Turning OFF the Main Power

-
- 1) Open the Switch Cover and turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Check that the control panel display and the main power lamp are OFF, and then disconnect the power plug.

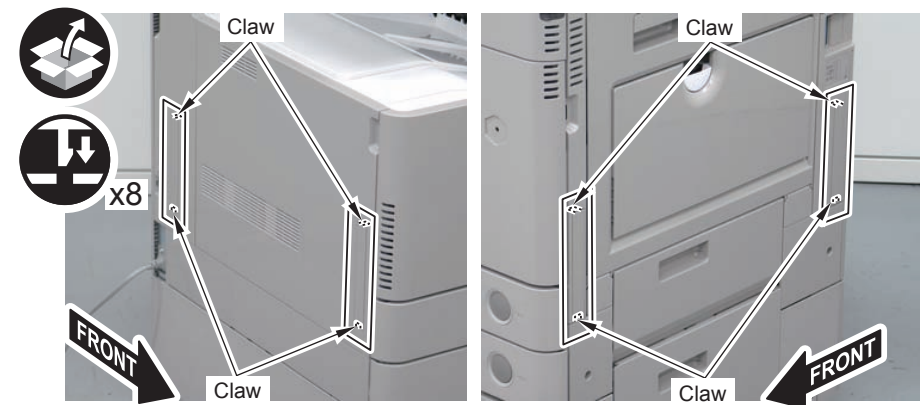
Installing the Others

-
- 1) In the case of not installing the Cassette Pedestal, install the Right Lower Cover.



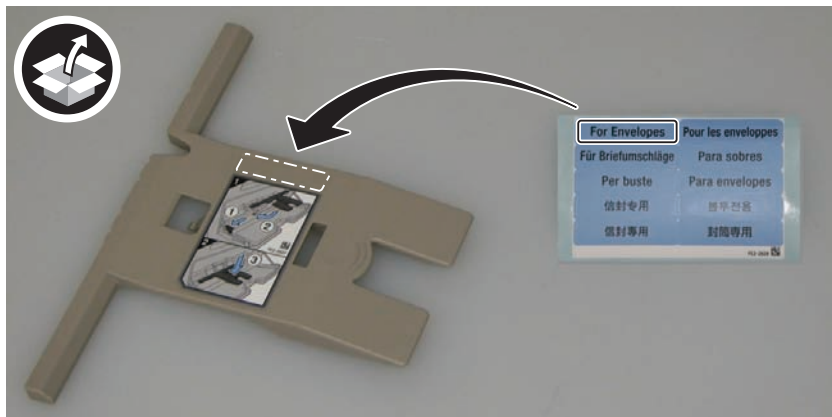
F-9-57

-
- 2) Install the 4 Handle Covers.
- 2 Claw each



F-9-58

- 3) Affix the Envelope Pickup Mount Label of the appropriate language on the Envelope Pickup Mount as shown in the figure.



F-9-59

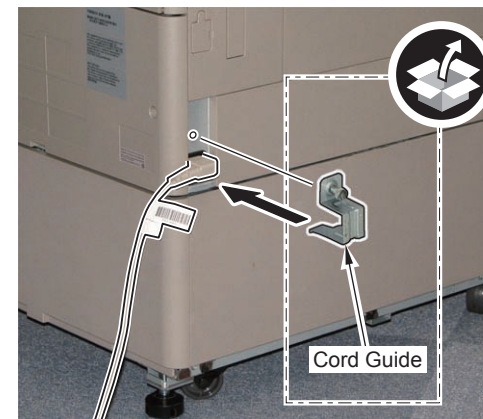
- 4) Install the Service Book Holder.
- 4 Hooks

NOTE:
At installation, be sure that a click sound is heard.



F-9-60

- 5) Install the Cord Guide.



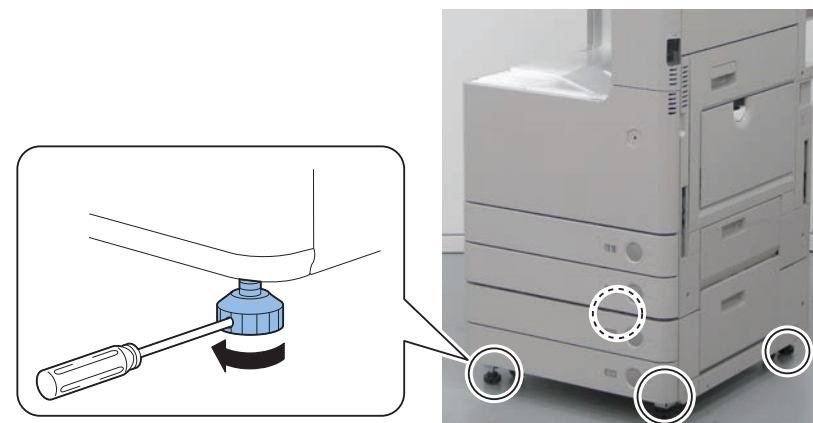
F-9-61

Securing the Host Machine

<In the Case of the Machine with Cassette Pedestal>

- 1) Move the main body to the installation position, and secure it in place by turning the 4 adjusters of the Cassette Pedestal with a screwdriver.

NOTE:
Securing of the adjuster is not earthquake resistant.



F-9-62

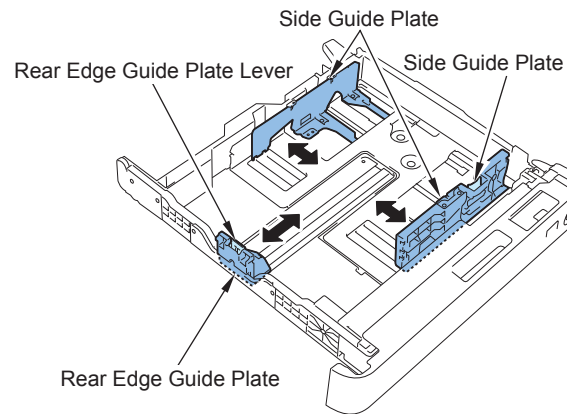
Setting the Cassette



NOTE:

The illustrations show the case of the Cassette 2 as an example. The Cassette 1 can be set in the same way.

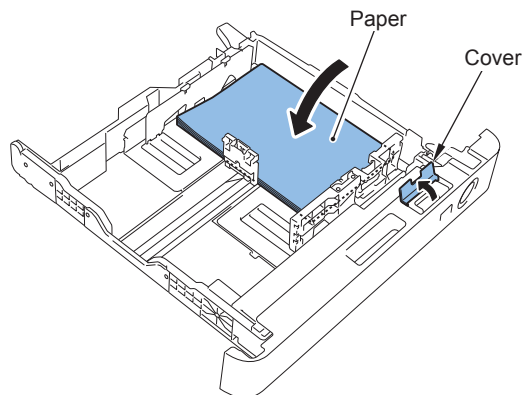
- 1) Press the Cassette Release button, pull out the Cassette.
- 2) Hold the lever of the Side Guide Plate, and adjust the plate to the specified size.
- 3) Hold the lever of the Trailing Edge Guide Plate, and adjust the plate to the specified size.



F-9-63



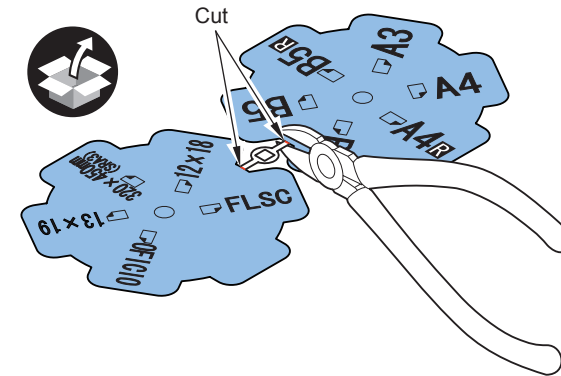
- 4) Place paper and open the cover at insertion area of the Size Plate.



F-9-64



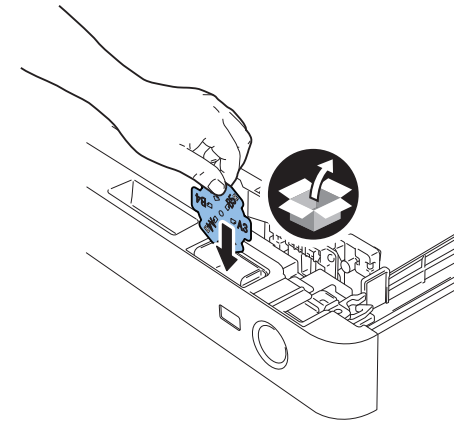
- 5) Cut the 2 places of the Size Plates with nippers.



F-9-65



- 6) Set the Size Plate according to the size of papers being set.
(Lump the Size Plates not in use together and store them at the rear.)



F-9-66



- 7) Close the cover at insertion area of the Size Plate, and insert the cassette.
- 8) Set the other cassette in the same way.
- 9) In the case that the Cassette Pedestal is installed, set the cassettes of it in the same way.

NOTE:

Paper size settings are automatically recognized.

Auto Gradation Adjustment

- 1) Clean the Copyboard Glass surface of the main body.
- 2) Place A3, A4, 11x17, or LTR size paper in the cassette.(Refer to the cassette setting.)
- 3) Select Settings/Registration > Adjustment /Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Auto Adjust Gradation > Full Adjustment.
- 4) Select the source of paper for test print, and press OK.
- 5) After that, follow the direction on the screen of the Control Panel.

Image Position Adjustment

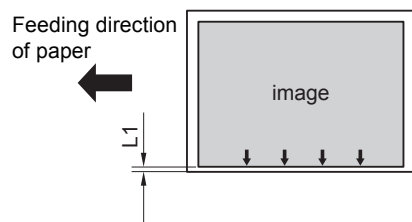
NOTE:

The second side of the 2-sided copy mentioned later means the second side in the image formation order.

With this equipment, the second side in the image formation order at the time of 2-sided copy/print is equivalent to the first side of the original.

Margin Adjustment (1st side;)

- 1) Print from the Cassette 1 and 2, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.



F-9-67

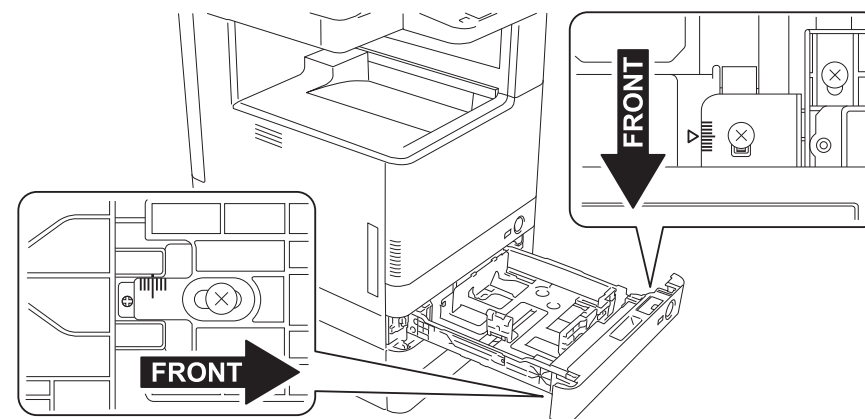
<In Case of Out of Range>>

Cassette 1

- 2) Change the left edge margin adjustment value for the 1st side of the Cassette 1.
 - As the value of COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C1 in Service Mode (Level1) is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.
- 3) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.
- 4) Print from the Cassette 1, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.
- 5) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.
 - ADJ-C1

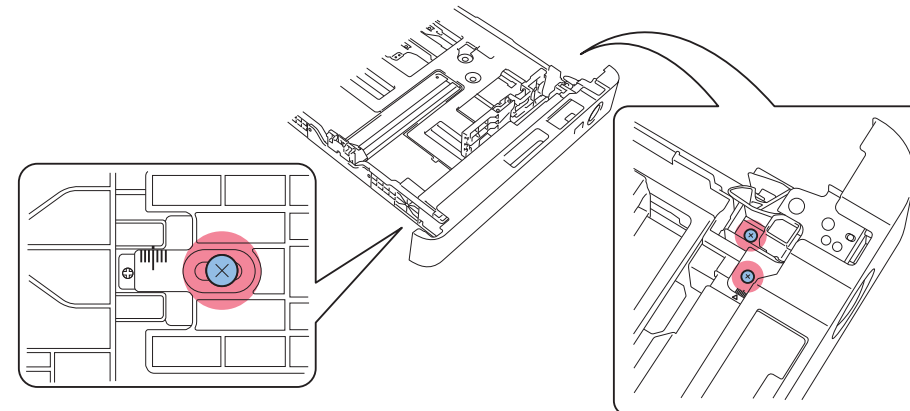
Cassette 2

- 2) Pull out the cassette2.
- 3) Check the values of the scale on the 2 Adjustment Plates.



F-9-68

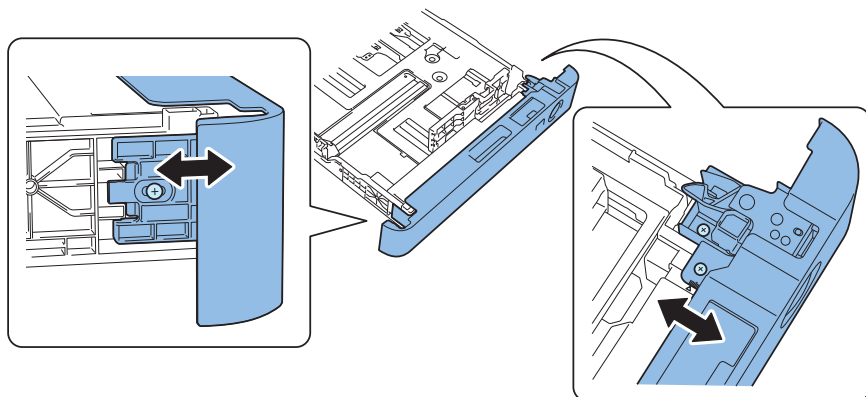
- 4) Loosen the 3 Fixation Screws.



F-9-69

- 5) Move the Adjustment Plates back and forth according to the scale values checked in step 3. As the Adjustment Plate is moved toward the rear by 1 scale, the left edge margin is decreased by 1mm.

NOTE:
When moving the scales, be sure to move the same amount of the value for the 2 points.

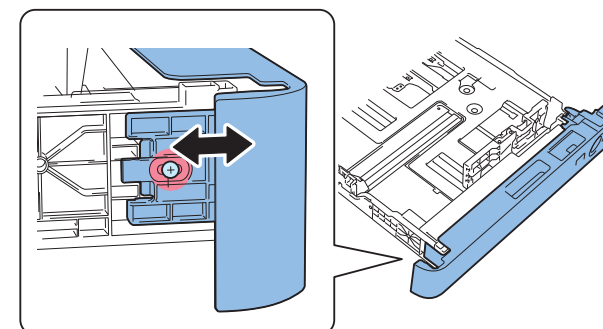
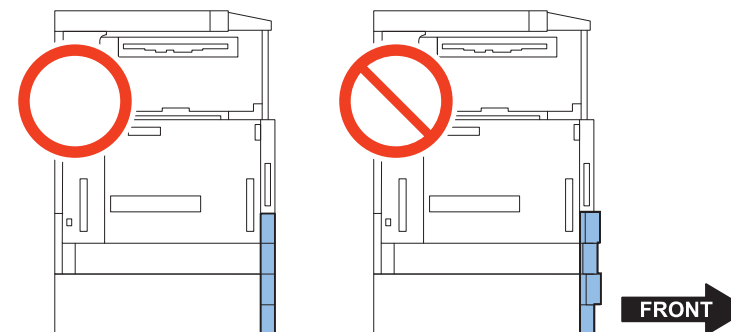


F-9-70

- 6) Tighten the Fixation Screws.

- 7) Return the cassette to its original position.

NOTE:
When the cassette positions are uneven due to the mechanical adjustment, adjust them by loosening the screw at left side.



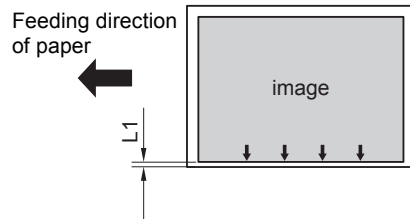
F-9-71

- 8) Print from the Cassette 2, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5mm +/- 1.5mm.

Margin Adjustment (2nd side)



- 1) Execute duplex printing from the Cassette 1, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5 +/- 2.0mm.



F-9-72

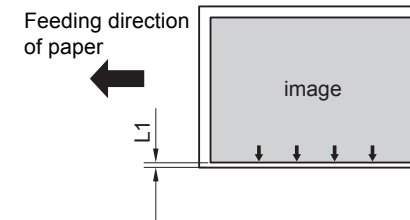


- 2) If the margin is not within the range, change the left edge margin adjustment value for the 2nd side of the Cassette 1.
 - As the value of Service Mode (Level1) COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C1RE is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.
- 3) Enter the value same as the left edge margin adjustment value for the 2nd side of the Cassette 1 to the side registration adjustment value for the 2nd side of the Cassette 2.
 - Service Mode (Level1) COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C2RE
- 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.
- 5) Execute duplex printing from the Cassette 2, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5 +/- 2.0mm.
- 6) If the margin is not within the range, change the left edge margin adjustment value for the 2nd side of the Cassette 2.
 - As the value of Service Mode (Level1) COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-C2RE is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.
- 7) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.
 - ADJ-C1RE
 - ADJ-C2RE
- 8) Get out from service mode.

Multi-purpose Tray Margin Adjustment (1st side: mechanical adjustment)



- 1) Set papers in the Multi-purpose Tray.
- 2) Print from the Multi-purpose Tray, and check that the left edge margin is within 2.5 +/- 1.5mm.



F-9-73

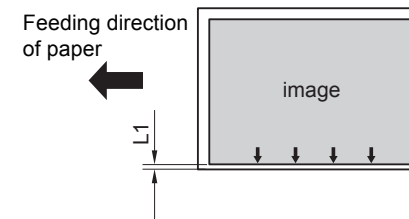


- 3) If the margin is not within the range, change the left edge margin adjustment value for the 1st side of the Multi-purpose Tray.
 - As the value of COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-MF in Service Mode (Level1) is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.
- 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.
- 5) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.
 - ADJ-MF

Multi-purpose Tray Margin Adjustment (2nd side)



- 1) Execute duplex printing from the Multi-purpose Tray, and check that the left edge margin for the 2nd side is within L1 = 2.5 +/- 2.0mm.



F-9-74



2) If the margin is not within the range, change the left edge margin adjustment value for the 2nd side of the Multi-purpose Tray.

As the value of COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-MFRE in Service Mode (Level1) is incremented by 1, the left edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.

3) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.

4) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.

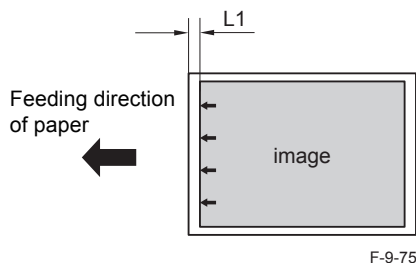
- ADJ-MFRE

Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side)



1) Print from the Cassette 1, and check that the leading edge margin is $L1=4.0 +1.5/-1.0$ mm.

If the margin is not within the range, execute the adjustment by following the procedure below.



2) Select Service Mode (Level1) > COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REGIST.

3) Make adjustment by changing the setting value. (As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.)

4) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.

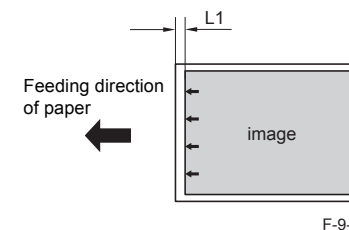
5) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.

- REGIST

Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (2nd side)



1) Execute duplex printing from the Cassette 1, and check that the leading edge margin for the 2nd side is $L1=4.0 +1.5/-1.0$ mm. If the margin is not within the range, execute the adjustment by following the procedure below.



2) Select Service Mode (Level1) > COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REG-DUP1.

3) Make adjustment by changing the setting value. (As the value is incremented by 1, the leading edge margin is decreased by 0.1mm.)

4) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.

5) Write down the new adjustment value in the service label.

- REG-DUP1

Checking the Network Connection

Overview

If the user's network environment is TCP/IP, use the Ping function to check that the network setting is properly performed.

If the user's network environment is IPX/SPX or Apple Talk, there is no need to check the network environment.

Checking the Network Connection

CAUTION:

Be sure to use the network cable with Category 5e or higher. In addition, a sealed type (STP cable) is recommended.

Using the non-shield type can affect the peripheral electrical equipment through the network cable.



- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Connect the network cable to the Host Machine and turn ON the main power switch.
- 3) Inform the system administrator at the installation site that installation of the Host Machine is complete, and then, ask for the network setting.

NOTE:

Network setting cannot be executed unless logging in as an administrator.
Factory default password is as follows.

- System administration division ID: 7654321
- System administration password: 7654321

CAUTION:

To perform the network setting, the following Additional Functions items must be set "ON".

- [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [Change network settings/check connection]
- [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Setting] > [IPv4 setting] > [Use IPv4]



- 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power.

Operation Procedure Using Ping

CAUTION:

To execute Ping command with the Windows Vista-installed PC, set OFF the firewall, or execute Ping command from the Windows Vista-installed PC to the Host Machine.



- 1) Select the following: [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [TCP/IP setting] > [IPv4 setting] > [PING command]
- 2) Enter the IP address with the numeric keypad on the Control Panel and press "Execute" key. "Response from the host" is displayed if Ping command is succeeded while "no response from the host" is displayed if failed.

Checking by the Remote Host Address

Using the remote host address to execute Ping can check whether connection to the network is enabled or not.

Remote host address: IP address of PC terminal connected/running on TCP/IP network environment that connects to this equipment.



- 1) Inform the system administrator about checking of the network connection using Ping.
- 2) Confirm the remote host address with the system administrator.
- 3) Enter the remote host address to Ping.
 - The network is properly connected if the message say "Response from the host".
 - The network is not properly connected if the message say "No response from the host", therefore, execute the following troubleshooting.

Network Troubleshooting

Checking Connection of the Network Cable



To check whether the network cable is properly connected to the Ethernet Port.

Operation Procedure Using Ping



- 1) Ask the network administrator at the user's site to write down the IP address of the PC that is connected to the network.
- 2) [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Setting] > [IPv4 setting] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address of the PC with the numeric keypad and press Execute key.
 - The network is properly connected if the message say "Response from the host".
 - If the message say "No response from the host", check the following.

NOTE:

The IP address of the PC can be checked by the following procedure:
Select the following on a Windows PC: Start > Program > Accessory > Command Prompt; and enter "ipconfig" and press Enter key to display information of the IP address.

Checking the Network Setting of the Host Machine



- 1) Select the following: [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Setting] > [IPv4 setting] > [IP address setting]; and write down the address in the IP address field.
- 2) Select the following: [Additional Functions] > [Configuration] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Setting] > [IPv4 setting] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address.
 - The IP address specified in the Host Machine is correct if the message say "Response from the host".
 - If the message say "No response from the host", check the following.

NOTE:

When setting the address by manually input, set the Subnet Mask by following the instruction of the administrator.

Checking Network Function on the Main Controller

Check with the loopback address.



- 1) Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Network > TCP/IP Settings > IPv4 Settings > PING command, enter the IP address "127.0.0.1" with the numeric keypad, and then press "Start" key.
- 2) When "Response from the host." is displayed, network function of the Main Controller operates normally.
 - When "No response from the host." is displayed, the network function of the Main Controller is failed.
 - Replace the Main Controller with a properly operating one, and check the connection.

When Relocating the Machine

When relocating this machine by truck or by other means for some reasons after installing the machine, perform the following procedure.

CAUTION:

In case of relocating the machine while it is mounted on the Cassette Pedestal, do not hold the grips of the machine to lift when, for example, passing over a difference in level of the floor. Holding the grips of the machine when lifting will result in separation of the machine from the Cassette Pedestal. Be sure to hold the Cassette Pedestal to lift the machine.



- 1) Turn OFF the main power.
- 2) Disconnect the power plug of the host machine.
- 3) If the Cassette Pedestal is installed, turn the 4 adjusters of the Cassette Pedestal with a screwdriver to lift them from the floor.



- 4) Secure the Scanner Unit with the Scanner System Fixation Screws that have been kept in a safe place since installation.



F-9-77



- 5) Put a sheet of paper on the Copyboard Glass.



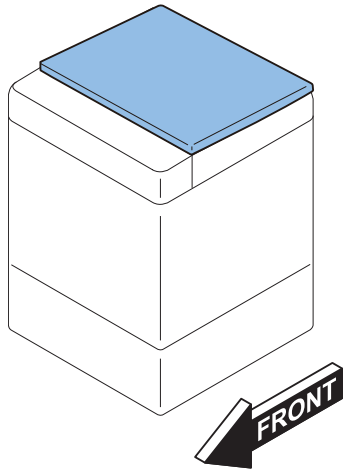
- 6) After turning ON the power, make a copy. If dots image in whole or white dots image in whole occurs, refer to Troubleshooting in chapter 6 and perform a remedy.

Printer Cover-D2

Points to Note at Installation

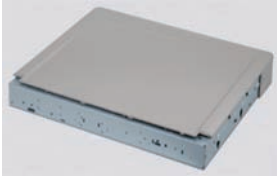



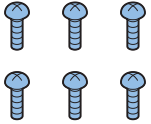
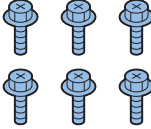

- The Printer Top Cover and the Printer Top Front Cover are secured with tapes, Be careful not to drop them when removing the tapes.
- Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.

Installation Outline Drawing



F-9-78

Checking Components

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Printer Top Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Printer Top Front Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Reader Left Cover X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Reader Right Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screws (Binding; M4x6) X 6 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screws (RS ; M3x8.5) X 6 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] USB Port Seal X 1 		

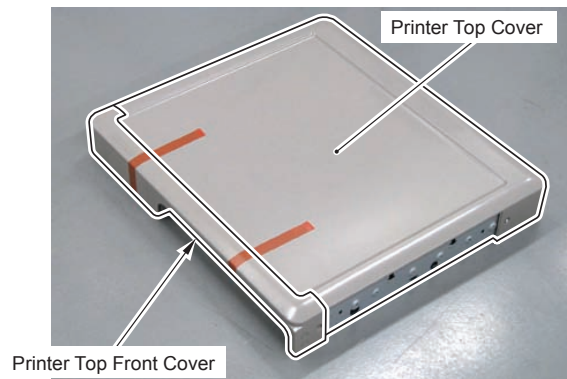
F-9-79

Installation Procedure

- 1) Remove tapes on the Printer Cover.

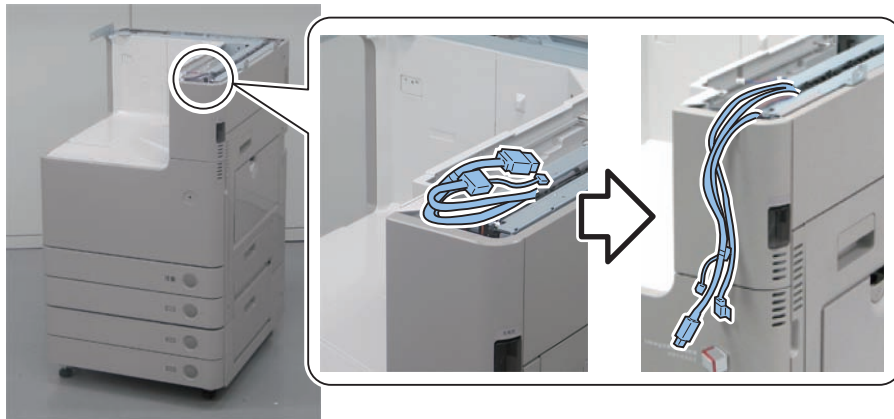
CAUTION:

- The Printer Top Cover and the Printer Top Front Cover are secured with tapes, Be careful not to drop them when removing the tapes.



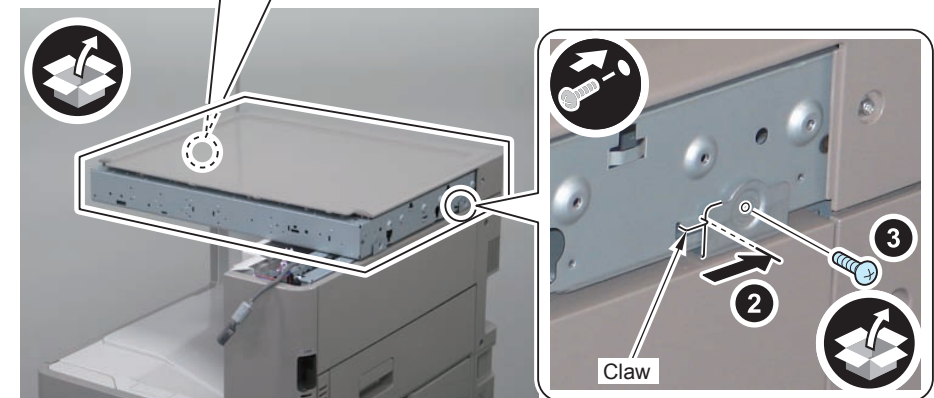
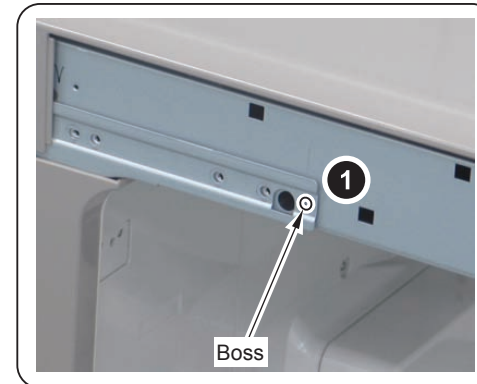
F-9-80

- 2) Pull out the 3 cables of the main body from the part shown in the figure.



F-9-81

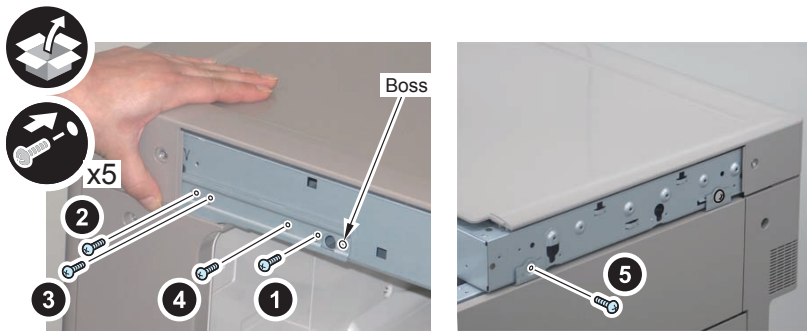
- 3) Install the Printer Top Cover.
• 1 Boss
4) Push the claw against the main body to install the Printer Top Cover.
• 1 Screw (Binding; M4x6) (packed with the Printer Cover)



F-9-82

- 5) Fix the Printer Top Cover while pushing it from above.
 - 1 Boss
- 6) Secure the Printer Top Cover.
 - 5 Screws (Binding; M4x6) (packed with the Printer Cover)

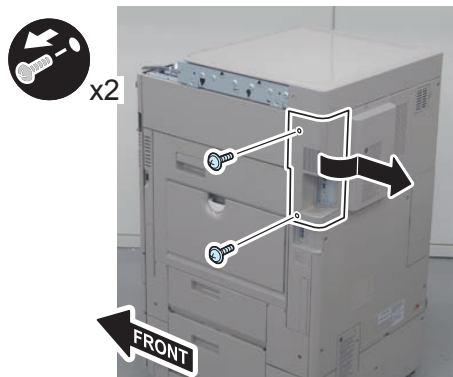
NOTE:
The screws should be tightened in the order specified below. Be sure to tighten the screws in the order from 1 to 5 in the figure.



F-9-83

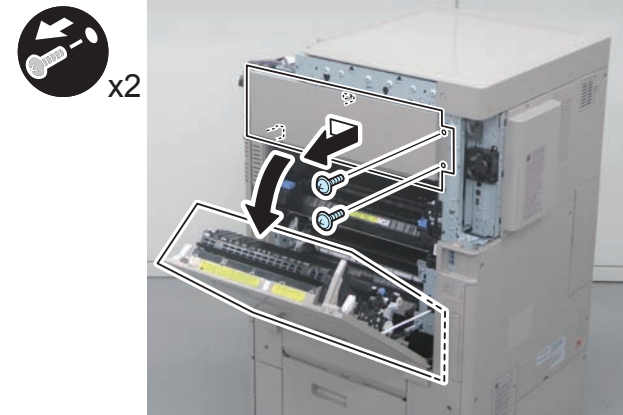
- 7) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover Unit.
 - 2 Screws

NOTE:
If the 3 Way Unit is installed, open the Right Lower Cover and the Right Upper Cover.



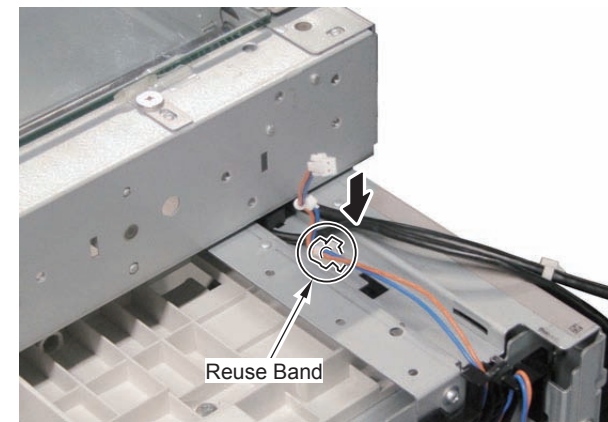
F-9-84

- 8) Open the Right Lower Cover and remove the Right Upper Cover.
 - 2 Screws
 - 2 Hook



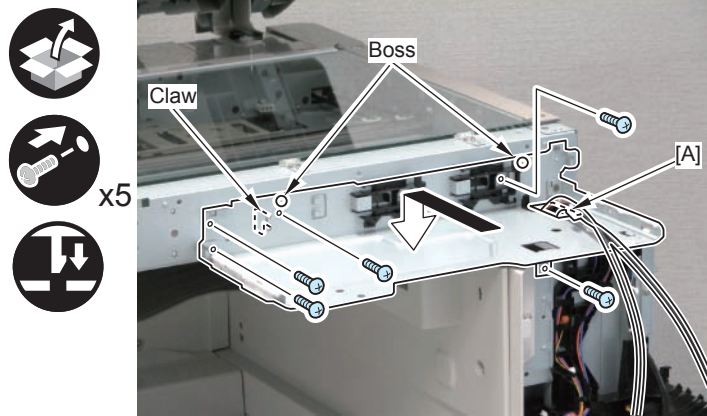
F-9-85

- 9) Close the Right Lower Cover.
- 10) Install the Harness to the host machine.
 - 1 Reuse Band



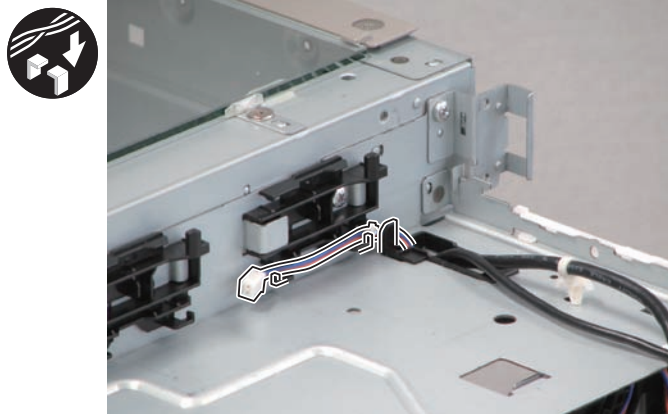
F-9-86

- 11) 112) Put the 2 cables and the harness through the [A] part and connect them to the Control Panel Support Plate.(packed with the machine)
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Claw
- 5 Screws (Binding; M4x6) (packed with the machine)



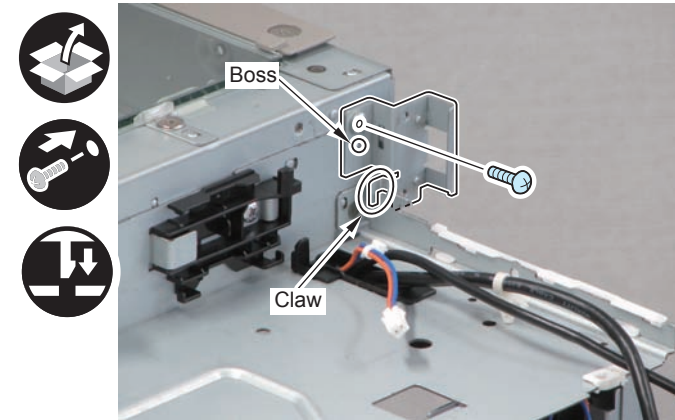
F-9-87

- 13) 214) Installing the Harness to the Cable Guide.



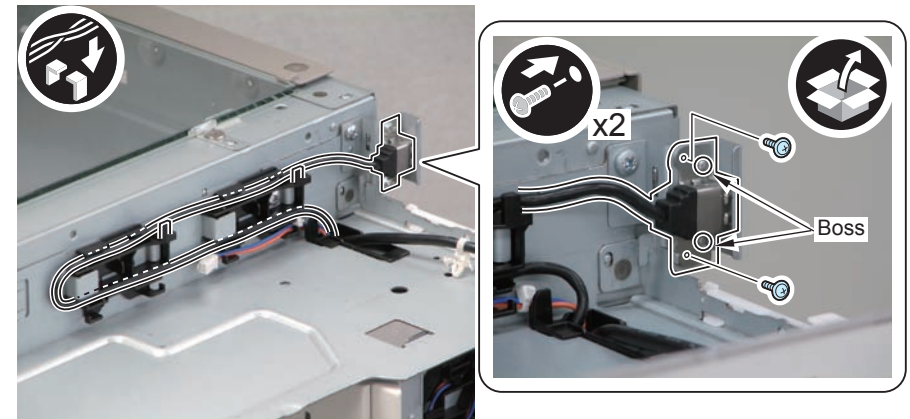
F-9-88

- 15) 316) Install the USB Mounting Plate (packed with the machine).
- 1 Boss
- 1 Claw
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x6) (packed with the machine)



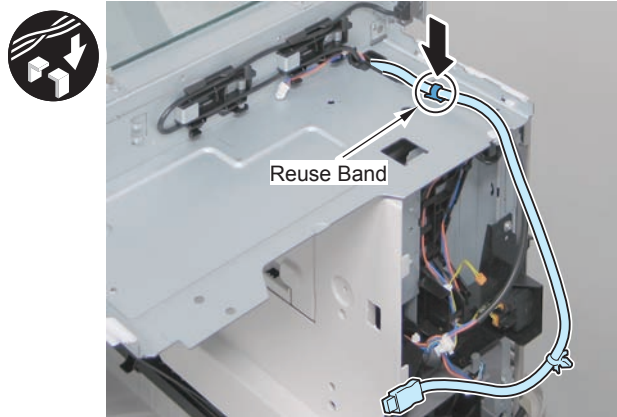
F-9-89

- 17) 418) Connect the USB Cable, and route it along the Cable Guide.
- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x6) (packed with the machine)



F-9-90

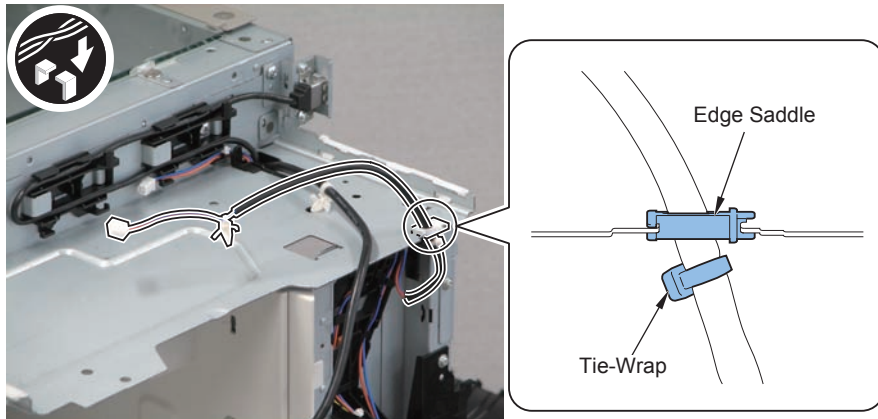
- 19) 520) Connect the HDMI Cable to the Control Panel Support Plate.
- 1 Reuse Band



F-9-91

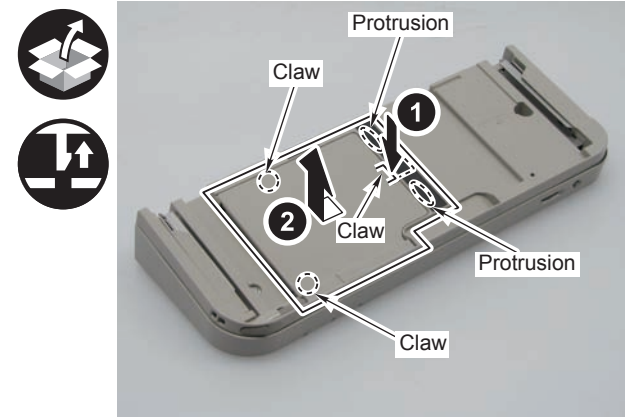
- 21) 622) Secure the harness in place using the Edge Saddle.

NOTE:
Be sure to secure it so that the tie-wrap is under the Edge Saddle.



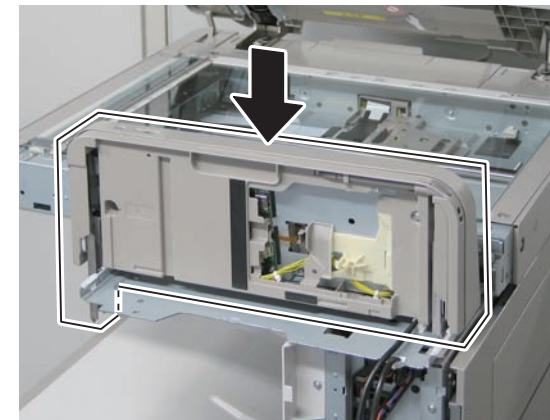
F-9-92

- 23) 724) Remove the Control Panel lower cover. (The Control Panel; packed with the machine)
- 3 Claws
- 2 Protrusions



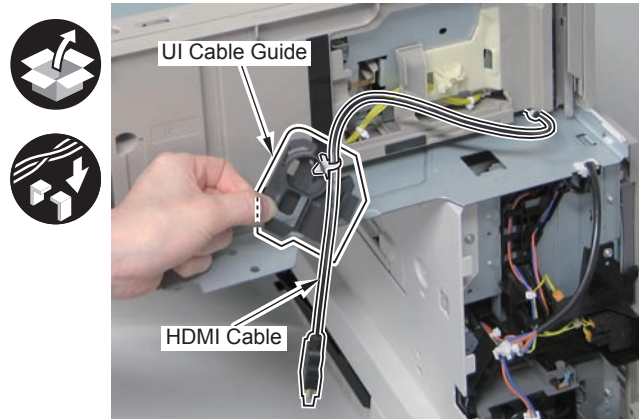
F-9-93

- 25) 826) Place the Control Panel on the Control Panel Support Plate.



F-9-94

- 27) 928) Fit the HDMI Cable to the UI Cable Guide. (packed with the machine)
- 1 Reuse Band

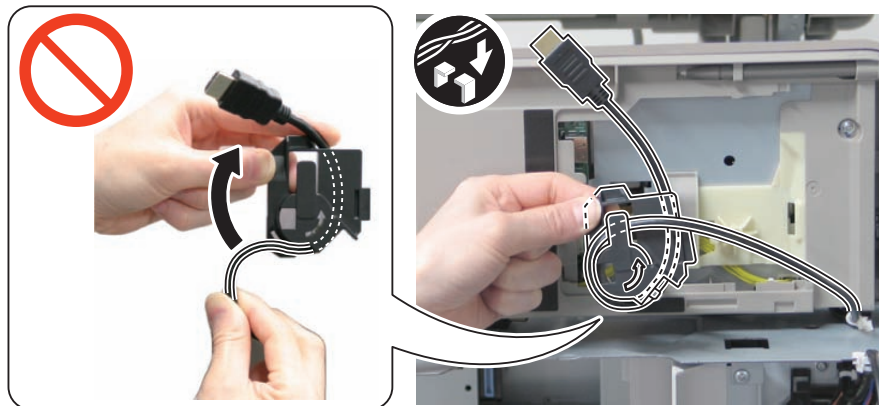


F-9-95

- 2029) Rotate the UI Cable Guide in the direction of the arrow and wind the HDMI cable.

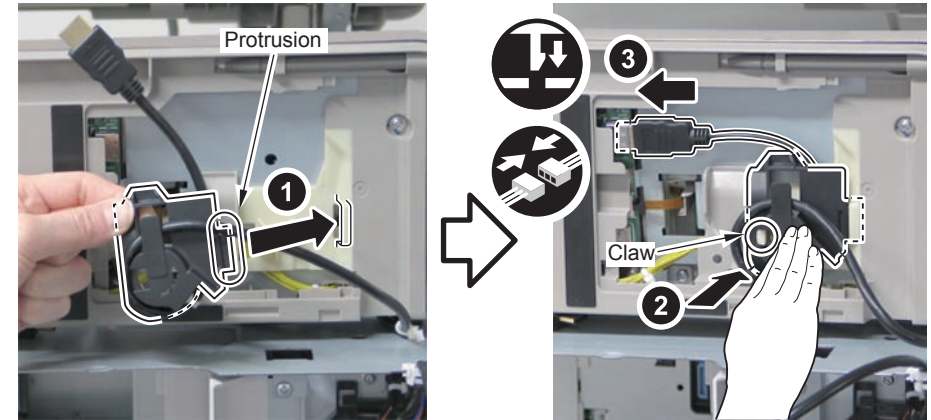
CAUTION:

Be sure not to wrap the HDMI Cable in the opposite direction of the arrow.
Reason: The HDMI Cable is twisted, causing open circuit.



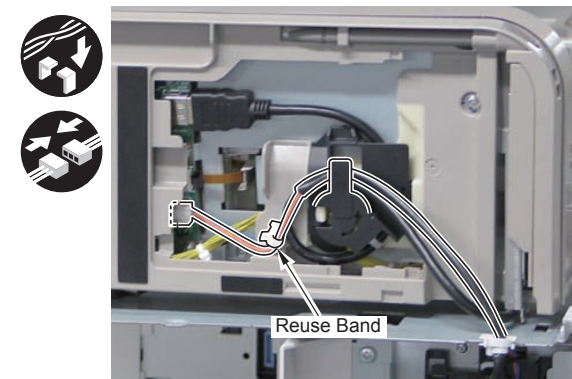
F-9-96

- 30) 131) Install the UI Cable Guide to the Control Panel, and connect the HDMI Cable.
- 1 Protrusion
- 1 Claw
- 1 Connector



F-9-97

- 32) 233) Connect the Control Panel Power Supply Cable.
- 1 Reuse Band
- 1 Connector



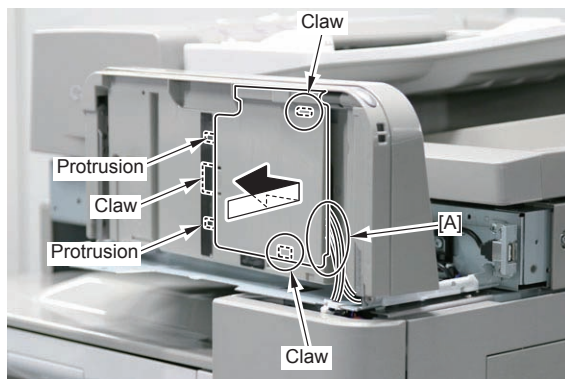
F-9-98

□ 2334) Install the Control Panel Left Cover removed in the Step 29) in the direction of the arrow.

- 3 Claws
- 2 Protrusions

CAUTION:

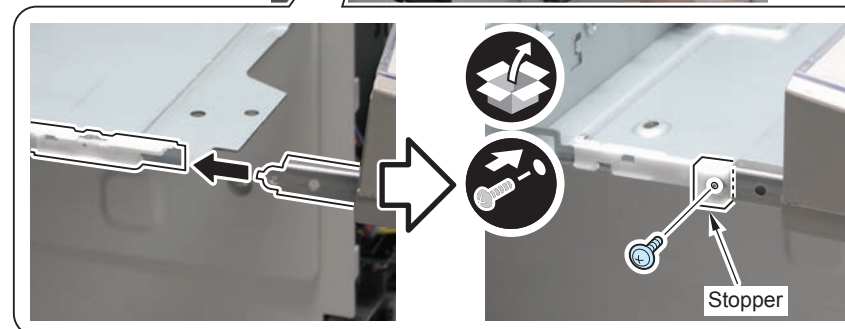
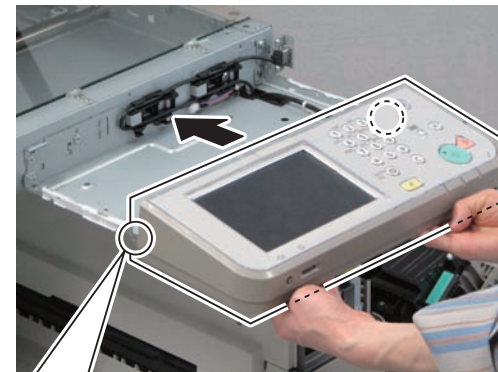
- Avoid pinching the harness at the [A] area.
- Make sure that the claw is securely fit.



F-9-99

□ 35) 436) Align the rail of the Control Panel with the rail of the Control Panel Support Plate, and install one stopper each on the left and the right side. (2 stoppers : packed with the machine)

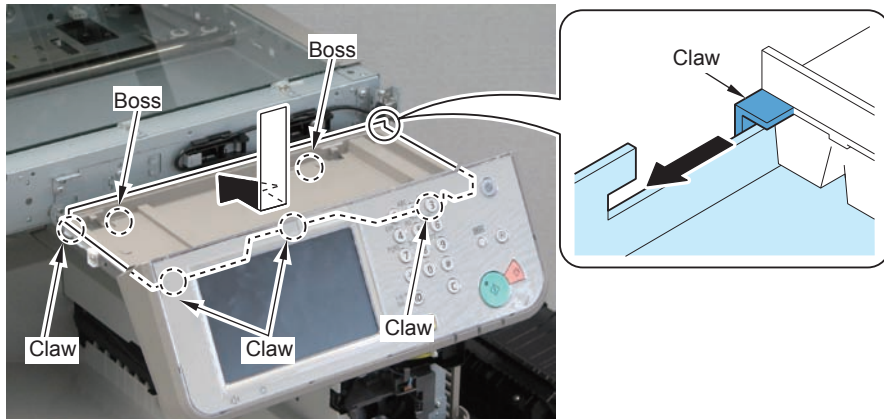
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x6) (packed with the machine)



F-9-100

- 37) 538) Pull the Control Panel toward the front, and install the Rail Cover of the Control Panel. (packed with the machine)
- 2 Bosses
 - 5 Claws

NOTE:
Insert the protrusion of the cover in the direction of the arrow.



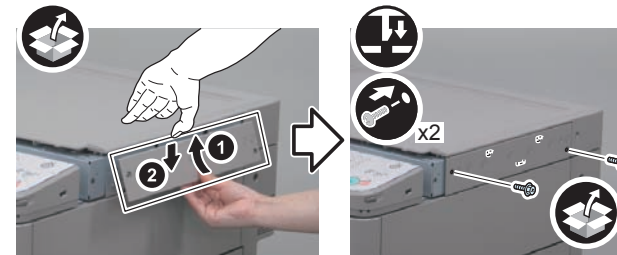
F-9-101

- 39) 640) Install the removed covers.
- Right Upper Cover (2 Screws)
 - Right Lower Cover
 - Right Upper Sub Cover Unit (2 Screws)

- 27) Install the Reader Right Cover with the Printer Upper Cover slightly lifted.
- 3 Claws
 - 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M3x8.5) (packed with the Printer Cover)

CAUTION:

Be careful not to lift the Printer Upper Cover too high when installing the Reader Right Cover.

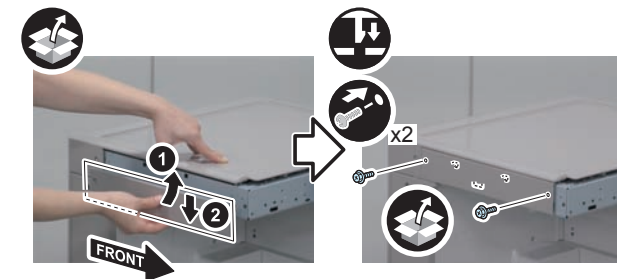


F-9-102

- 28) Install the Reader Left Cover with the Printer Upper Cover slightly lifted.
- 3 Claws
 - 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M3x8.5) (packed with the Printer Cover)

CAUTION:

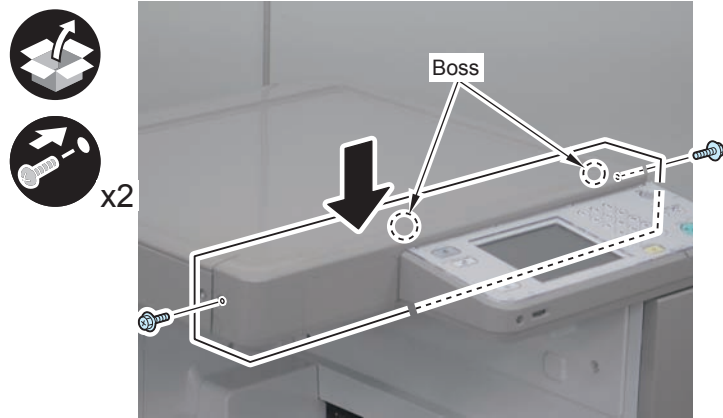
Be careful not to lift the Printer Upper Cover too high when installing the Reader Left Cover.



F-9-103

□
29) Install the Printer Top Front Cover

- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M3x8.5) (packed with the Printer Cover)



F-9-104

Platen Cover Type S

Points to Note at Installation

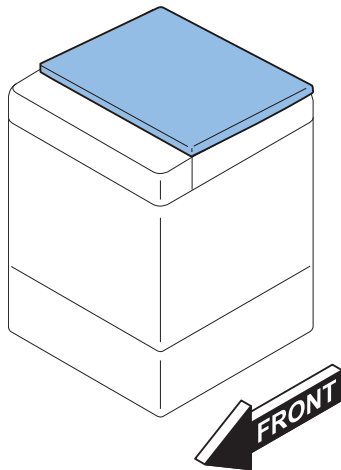
Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power switch is OFF.

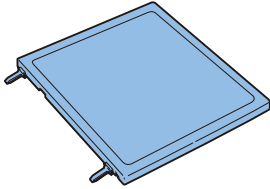

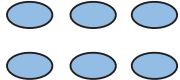

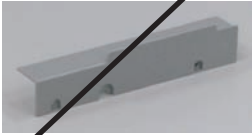
- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Installation Outline Drawing



F-9-105

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Copyboard Cover Unitx1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] ADF Cable Seal X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Face Seal X 6 Use 4 of them 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Screw (Binding Round End; M4x8) X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Reader Cable Cover X 1 	

F-9-106

Installation Procedure

- 1) Remove the Reader Cable Cover.
- 2 Screws



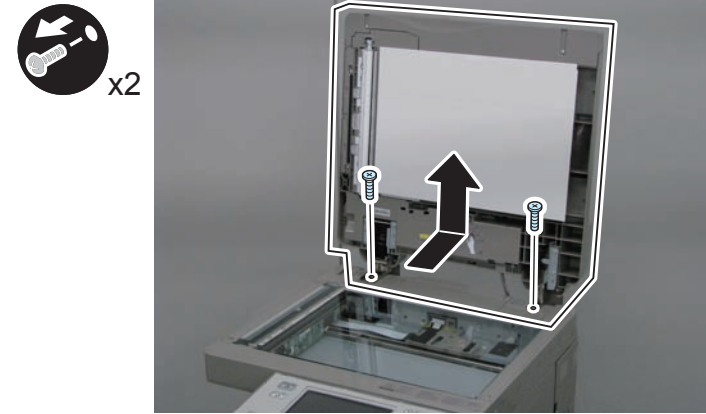
F-9-107

- 2) Disconnect the 2 connectors.
- 3) Disconnect the Grounding Wire.



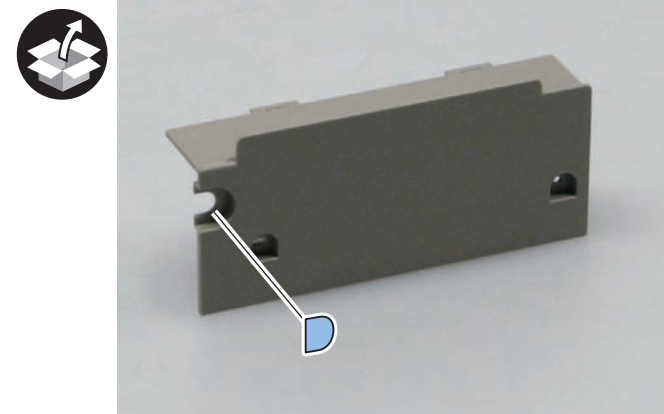
F-9-108

- 4) Open the DADF.
- 5) Remove the DADF.
- 2 Screws (The removed Screws will not be used.)



F-9-109

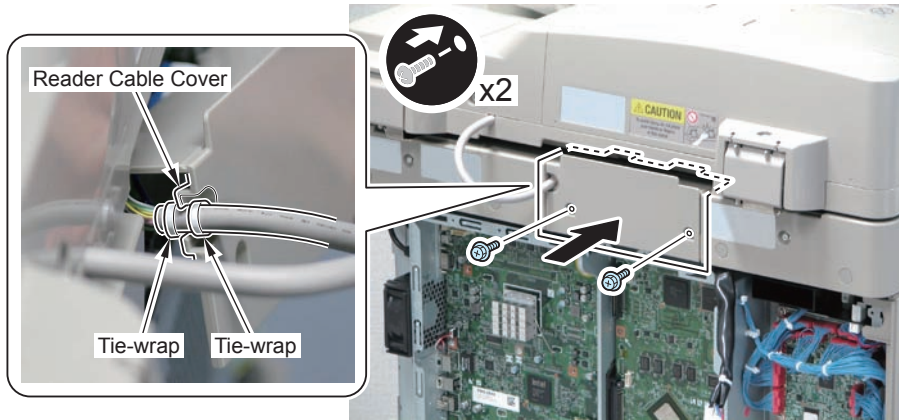
- 6) Affix the ADF Cable Seal to the Reader Cable Cover included in the package.



F-9-110

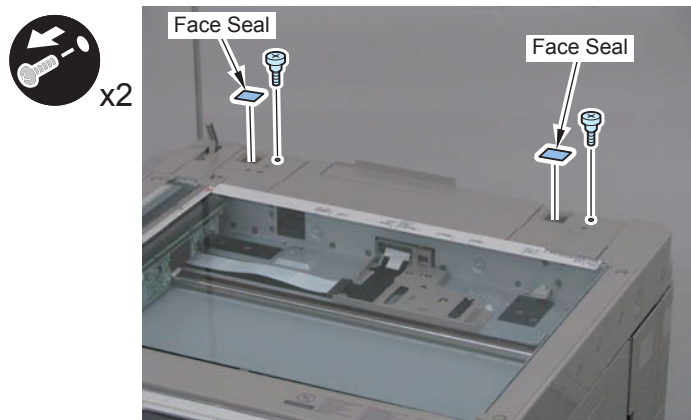
- 7) Install the Reader Cable Cover removed in step 1. (2 Screws)

CAUTION: Points to Note at Installation
Install between 2 tie-wraps.



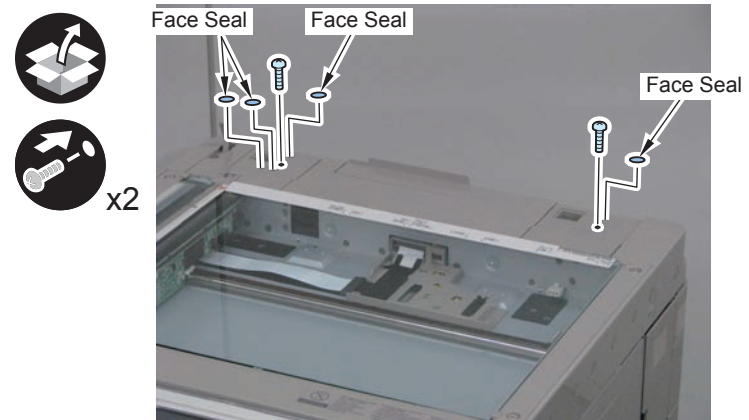
F-9-111

- 8) Remove the 2 Stepped Screws. (The removed Stepped Screws will not be used.)
- 9) Remove the 2 Face Seals. (The removed Face Seals will not be used.)



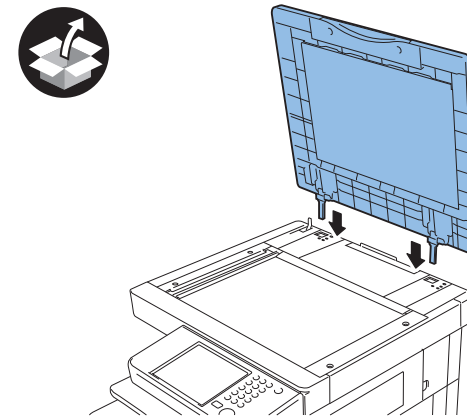
F-9-112

- 10) Tighten the 2 screws (Binding Round End; M4x8).
- 11) Affix the 4 Face Seals.



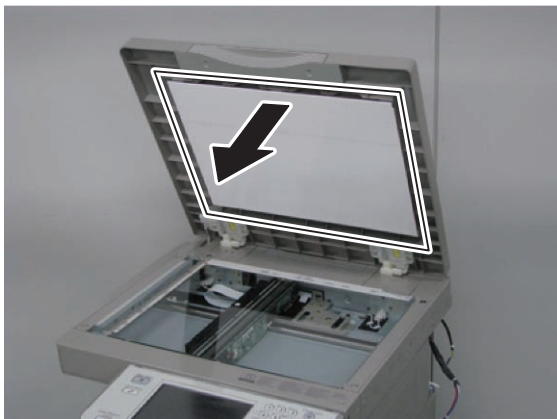
F-9-113

- 12) Install the Copyboard Cover Unit.



F-9-114

- 13) Remove the White Plate.



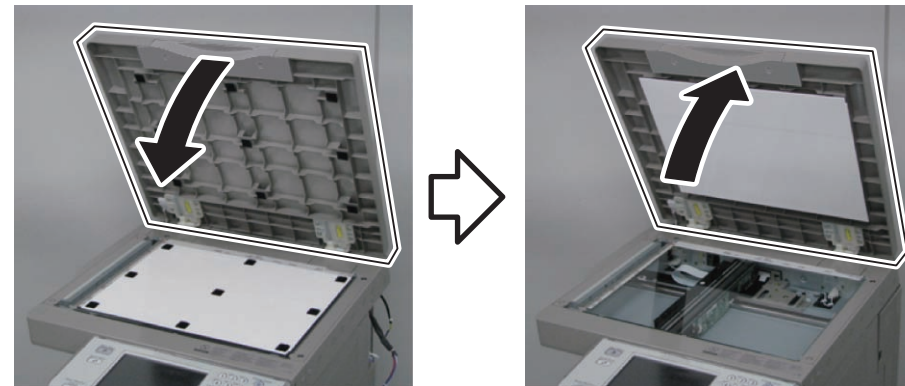
F-9-115

- 14) Place the White Plate on the Copyboard Glass by aligning it with the Index Sheet.



F-9-116

- 15) Close the Copyboard Cover, and then open it again.

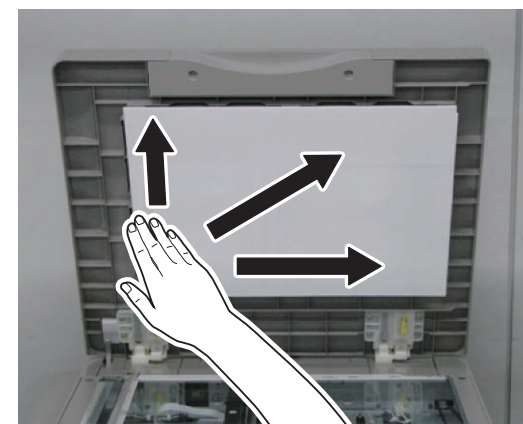


F-9-117

- 16) Press the White Plate upward as shown in the figure below.

CAUTION:

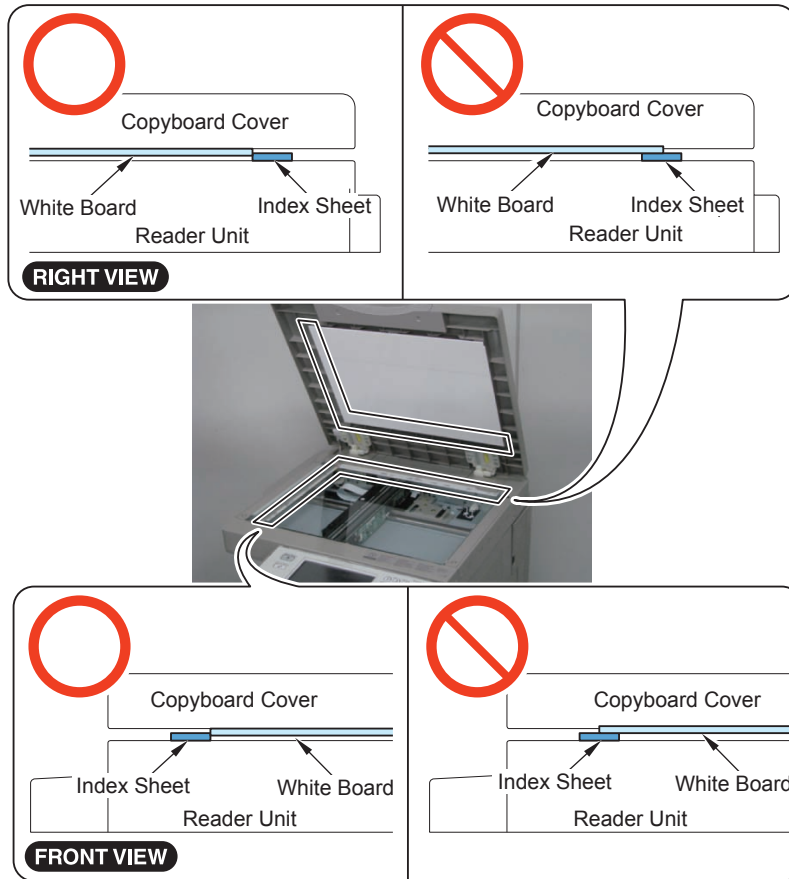
If the White Plate is pressed downward, it is placed on the Index Sheet, so be sure to press it upward.



F-9-118

- 17) With the Copyboard Cover closed, check that the White Plate is not placed on the Index Sheet as shown in the figures.

CAUTION:
Be sure that there is no gap between the White Plate and the Index Sheet. As a guide, it should be 0.3 mm or less.



F-9-119

- 18) Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.
- 19) Turn ON the main power switch.

Inner 2way Tray-F1

Points to Note at Installation

- Be sure to install this equipment after installing the 3 Way Unit.
- Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power switch is OFF

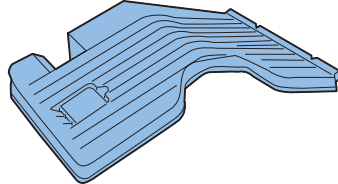
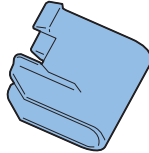

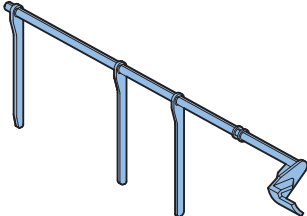
- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Installation Outline Drawing



F-9-120

Checking the contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Inner 2-way Tray X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Insert Pin X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Second Delivery Full Detection Lever X 1 

F-9-121

Installation procedure

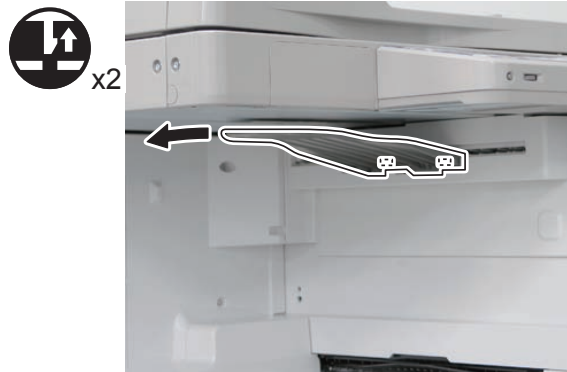
NOTE:

When installing the 3 Way Unit simultaneously, skip steps 1 and steps 2.



1) Remove the Reverse Trailing Edge Guide.

- 2 Claws



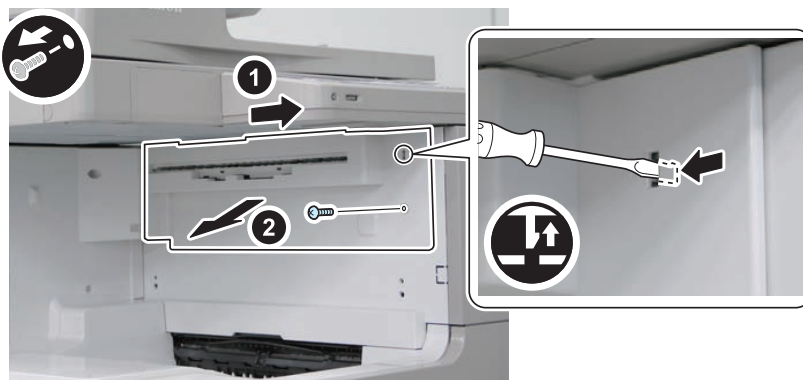
F-9-122



2) Remove the Second Delivery Cover.

(The removed Delivery Cover and screws are no longer used.)

- 1 Screw
- 1 Claw



F-9-123



3) Open the Right Lower Cover and the Right Upper Cover.



F-9-124

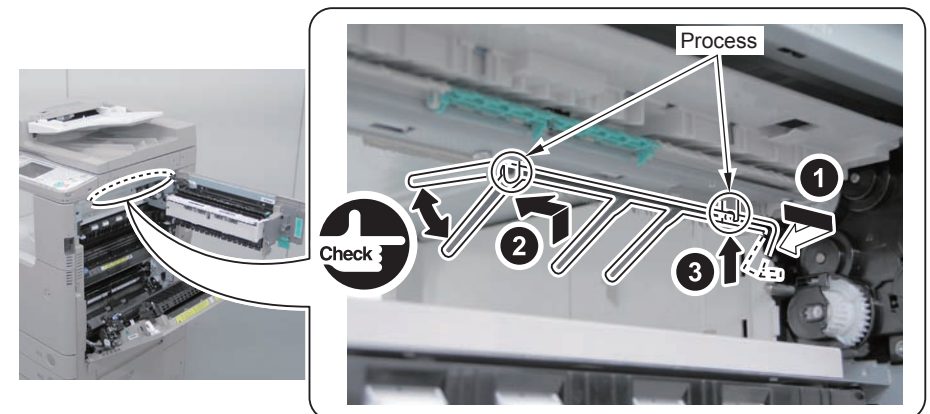


4) Install the Second Delivery Full Detection Lever in the directions of the arrows and fit it to the two protrusions.

- 2 Process

CAUTION:

- Check that the 2 protrusions are fitted properly.
- After installation, be sure to check that it moves smoothly in the direction of the arrow.



F-9-125

- 5) Close the Right Upper Cover and the Right Lower Cover.
- 6) Install the Reverse Trailing Edge Guide removed in step 1.
 - 2 Claws

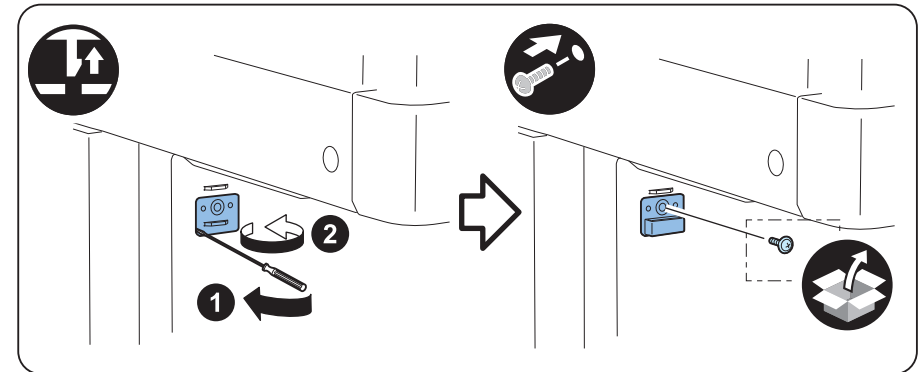
NOTE:

When installing the 3 Way Unit simultaneously, install the Reverse Trailing Edge Guide included in the package of the 3 Way Unit.



F-9-126

- 7) Remove the one claw of the Inner 2-way Tray Support Member from the equipment using a flat-blade screwdriver.
- 8) Turn over and install the Inner 2-way Tray Support Member.
 - Screw (TP; M3x6)

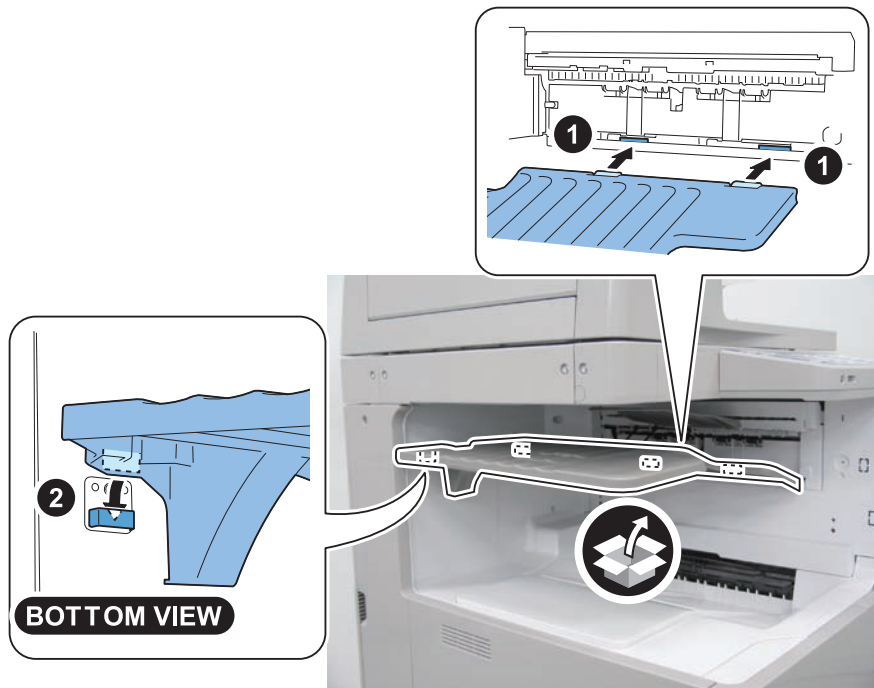


F-9-127

- 9) Insert the Inner 2-way Tray into the 2 slots of the Delivery Assembly. Hook it to the slots of the Inner 2-way Tray Support Member.

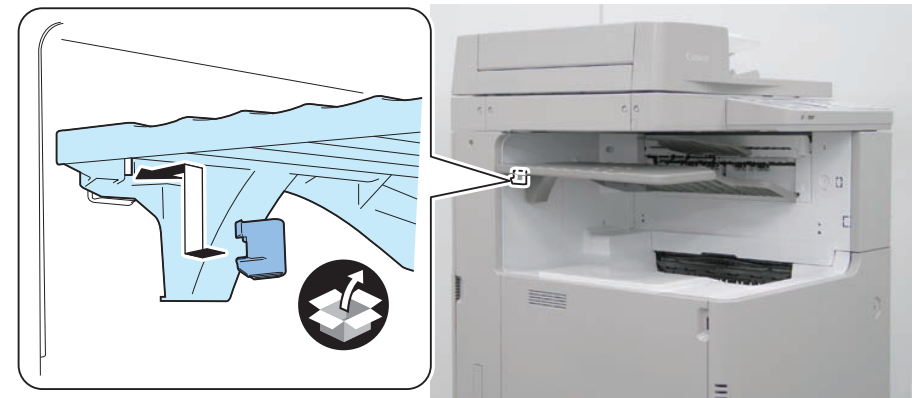
NOTE:
When the Inner 2-way Tray is inserted into the Inner 2-way Tray Support Member, the boss is inserted into the Inner Rear Cover 1.

CAUTION:
Be sure to check that the Inner 2-way Tray is inserted into the Inner 2-way Tray Support Member.



F-9-128

- 10) Install the Inner 2-way Tray to the Inner 2-way Tray Support Member by inserting the insert pin into the insertion hole of the Inner 2-way Tray.



F-9-129

- 11) Connect the power plug to the outlet.

● Checking after Installation

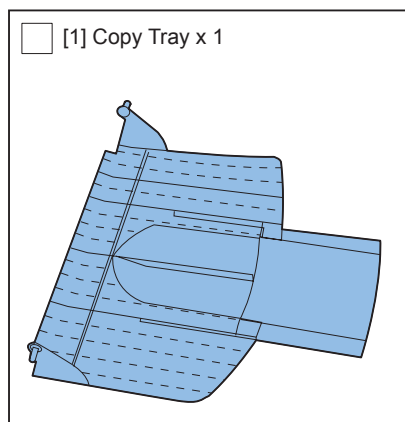
- 1) Turn ON the main power switch.
- 2) Enter Service Mode (Level 1).
- 3) Select : COPIER > OPTION > ACC > IN-TRAY and register "1".
- 4) Turn OFF and then ON the main power.
- 5) Select [Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Common] > [Paper Output Settings] and check that [Output Tray Settings] has been added.
- 6) Select Tray B for copy, and conduct a test copy.
- 7) Check that the copy has been delivered to the Inner 2-way Tray.
- 8) Change the tray setting according to the user's request.

Copy Tray-J1

Points to Note at Installation

Be sure to install this equipment after installing the 3 Way Unit.

Checking the contents



F-9-130

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power switch is OFF

- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Installation procedure

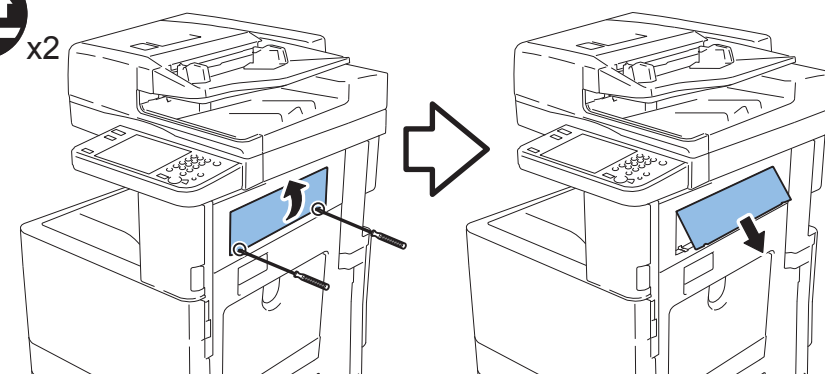


- 1) Remove the Right Delivery Frame Cover with flat-blade screwdriver.

- 2 Claws



x2



F-9-131

-
- 2) Install the Copy Tray.
- 2 Claws



F-9-132

-
- 3) Connect the Power Plug into the outlet.
- 4) Open the switch cover and turn ON the Main Power Switch.

● Checking after Installation

-
- 1) Service Mode (level 1).
 - 2) Select: [COPIER] > [Option] > [ACC] > [OUT-TRAY] and register "1".
 - 3) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
 - 4) Select: [Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Common] > [Paper Output Settings] and check that [Delivery Tray Settings] menu is added.
 - 5) Select either tray A or B to copy, and perform test copy.
 - 6) Check that the output paper has been delivered to the Copy Tray.
 - 7) Change the tray setting according to the user's request.

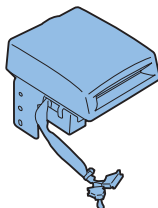


Card Reader-F1/Copy Card Reader Attachment-B3

Points to Note at Installation

- Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.
- To install the Card Reader-F1, the Card Reader Mounting Kit-B3 is required.
- When installing the equipment, see the 'Combination Table of Accessory Installation'.
- If using together with the IR-ADV COIN MGR ATT, install the machine first.
- The following options cannot be used in combination with each other.
 - Serial Interface Kit
 - Copy Control Interface Kit

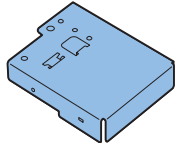
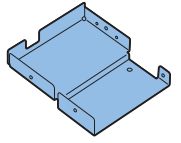

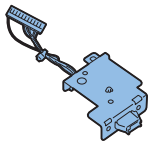
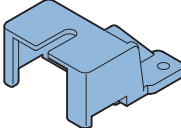

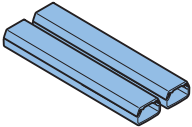






Checking the Contents

Copy Card Reader-F1

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Card Reader Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (RS tight; M4x10) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Toothed washer X 1 
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

F-9-133

Copy Card Reader Attachment-B3

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Card Reader Mounting Plate (front) Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Card Reader Mounting Plate (rear) Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Card Reader Mounting Plate (lower) Unit X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Card Reader Relay Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Connector Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Card Reader External Relay Harness X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Cord Guide X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] PCB Spacer X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Wire Saddle X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 5 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (TP; M3x12) X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (TP; M4x12) X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Screw (Binding; M4x6) X 4 		

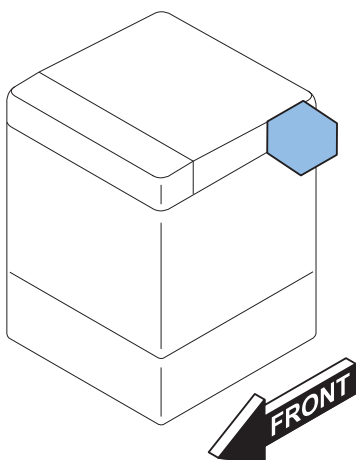
F-9-134

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power is OFF.

- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Installation Outline Drawing



F-9-135

Installation Procedure

CAUTION:

After installing the Copy Card Reader-F1, input the card number to be used in service mode (level 1) on this equipment: COPIER > Function > INSTALL > CARD; otherwise the card cannot be recognized even though it is inserted.

Removing the Covers

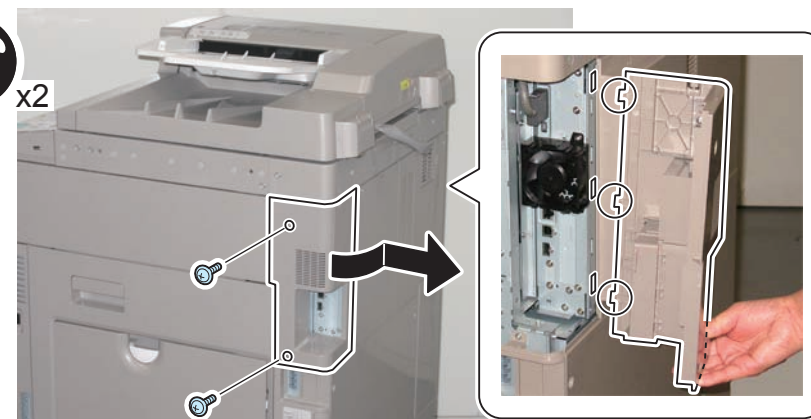


1) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.

- 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 14. of "Installing the Card Reader".)
- 3 Claws



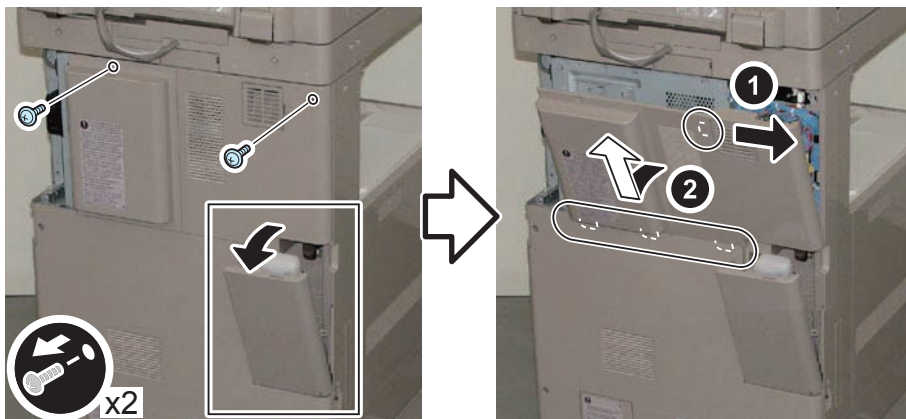
x2



F-9-136

-
- 2) Remove the 2 screws on the Rear Upper Cover 1 and the HDD Cover, and remove the covers by opening the Waste Toner Cover.

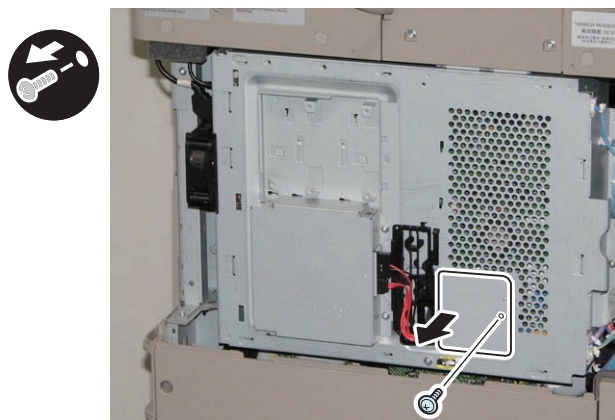
- 2 Screws
- 4 Claws



F-9-137

-
- 3) Remove the small cover of the Controller Box Cover.

- 1 Screw

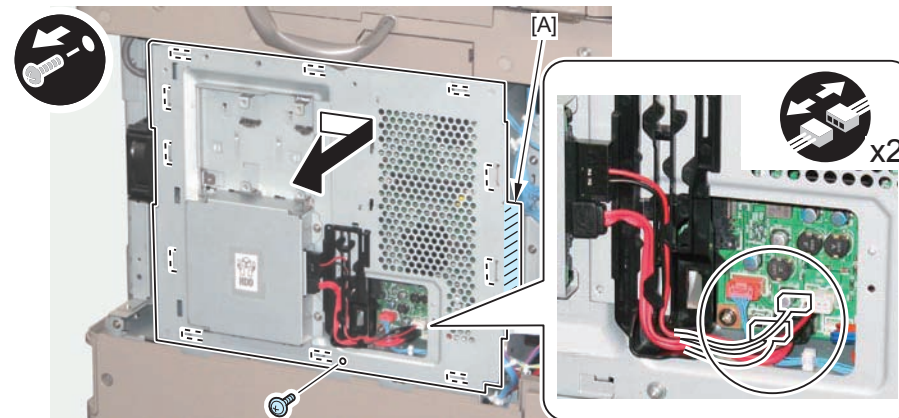


F-9-138

-
- 4) Remove the 2 Connectors. (for the HDD model)
- 5) Remove the Controller Cover by holding [A] part.
- 1 Screw

CAUTION:

When handling the hard disc, be careful not to vibrate or drop it.

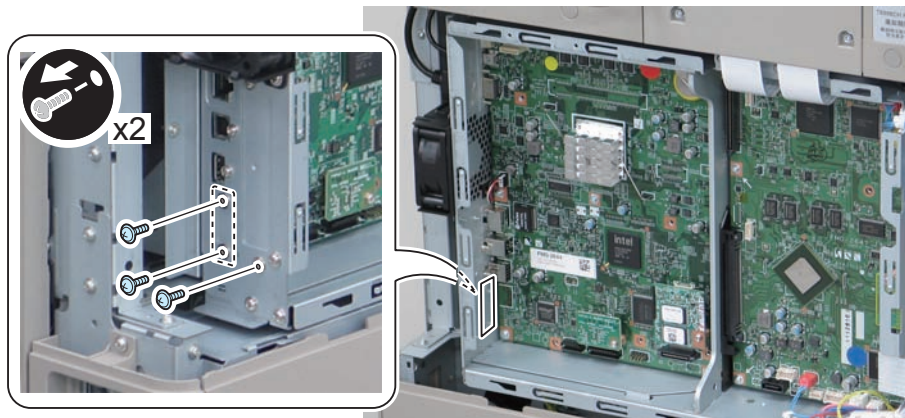


F-9-139

■ Installing the Card Reader



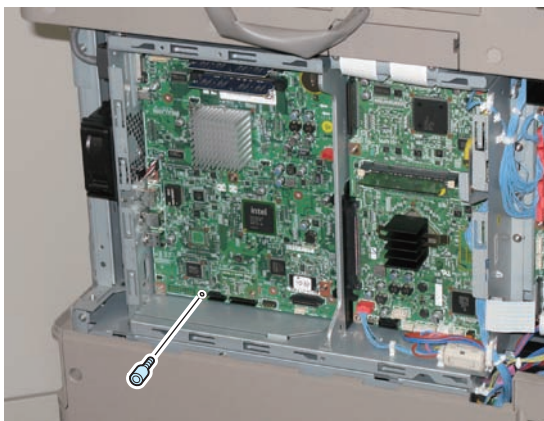
- 1) Remove the Face Plate. (The removed Face Plate will not be used)
 - 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 4.)
- 2) Remove the Screw. (The removed screws will be used in step 4.)



F-9-140



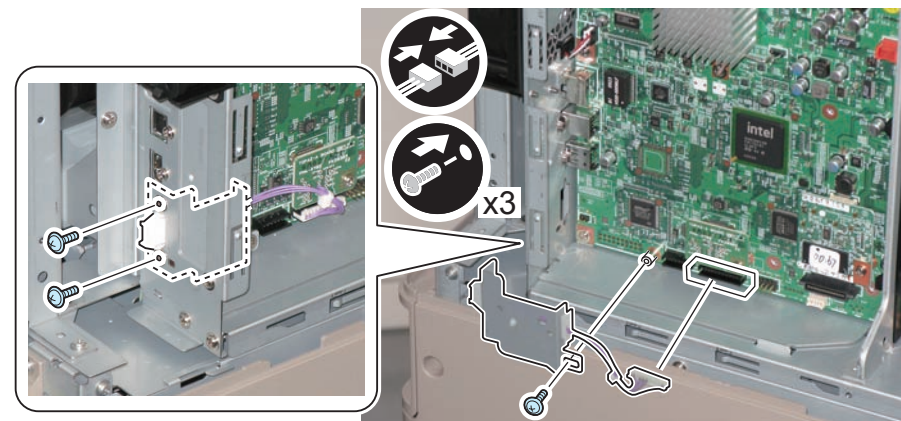
- 3) Install the Card Spacer.



F-9-141



- 4) Install the Card Reader Reply Unit.
 - 3 Screws (Use the screws removed in step 1 and step 2.)
 - 1 Connector



F-9-142

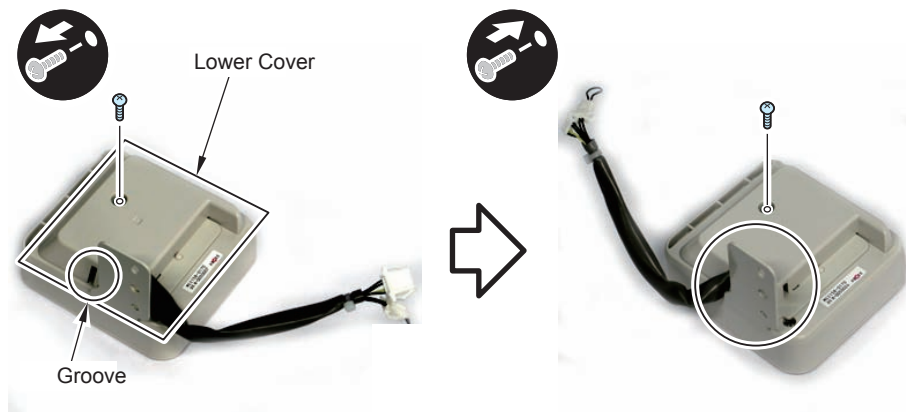


- 5) Return the covers to their original position.
 - Controller Cover (1 Screw)
 - The small cover of the Controller Box Cover (1 Screw)
 - HDD Cover and Rear Upper Cover 1 (2 Screws)
 - Waste Toner Cover

- 6) Remove the Lower Cover of the Card Reader Unit, and change the position of the cable.

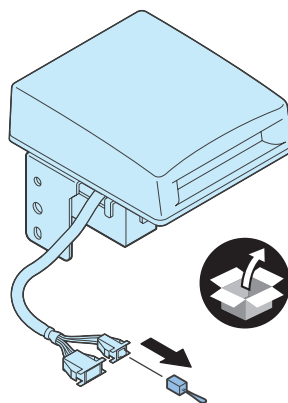
- 1 Screw

- 7) Install the Lower Cover of the Card Reader Unit.



F-9-143

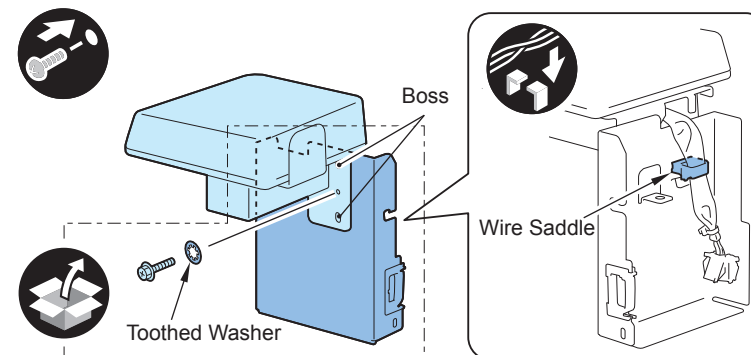
- 8) Remove Short Connector from the connector of the Card Reader Unit. (The removed Short Connector will not be used.)



F-9-144

- 9) Install the Card Reader Unit to the Card Reader Mounting Plate (Front).

- 1 Toothed Washer
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (RS Tightening; M4x10)
- 1 Wire Saddle



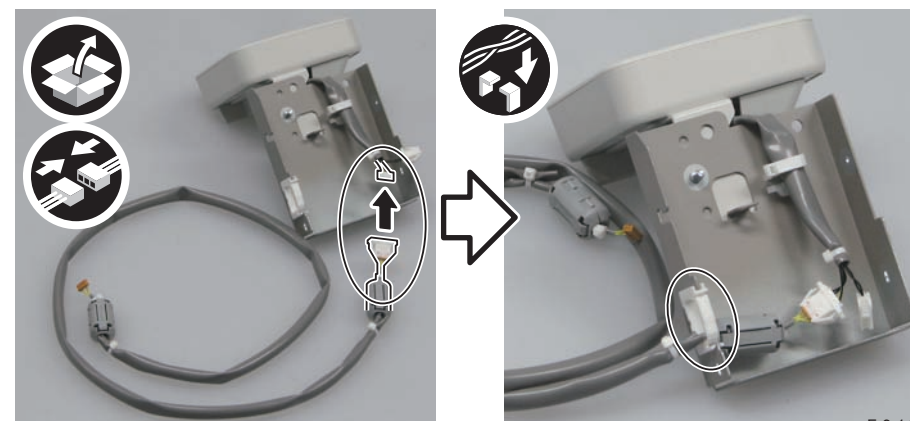
F-9-145

- 10) Connect the Card Reader External Relay Harness to the connector of the Card Reader Unit.

- 1 Connector
- 1 Edge Saddle

CAUTION:

Be sure that the core is inside the Edge Saddle.



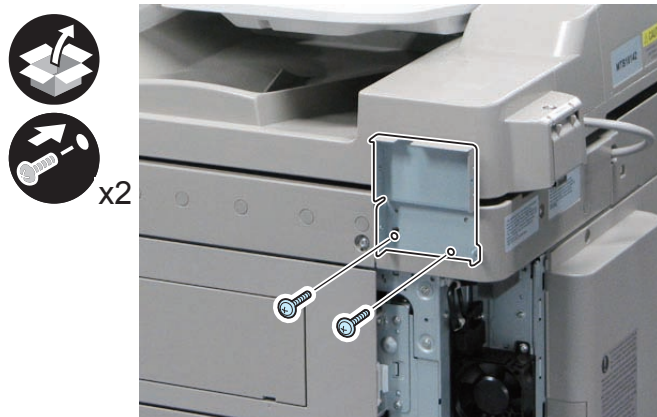
F-9-146

- 11) Remove the Face Seal and 1 Screw from the right side of Reader . (The removed Face Seal and Sarew will not be used.)



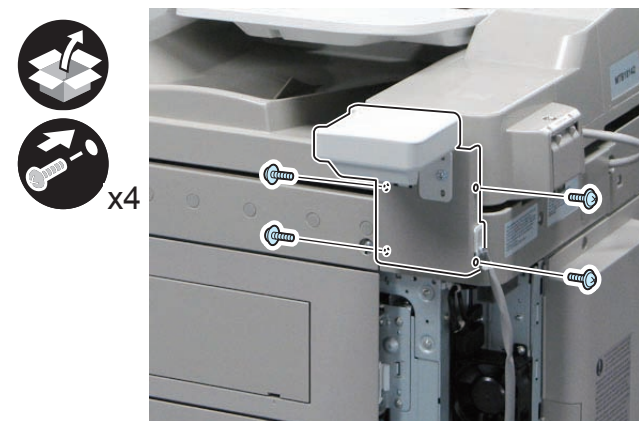
F-9-147

- 12) Install the Card Reader Mounting Plate (rear) Unit to the host machine.
• 2 Screws (TP; M3x12)



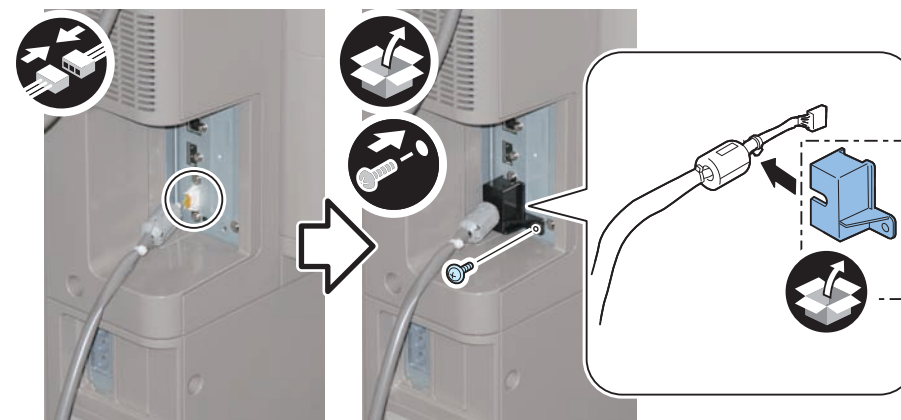
F-9-148

- 13) Install the Card Reader Mounting Plate (front) Unit to the Card Reader Mounting Plate (rear) Unit .
• 4 Screws (TP; M3x6)



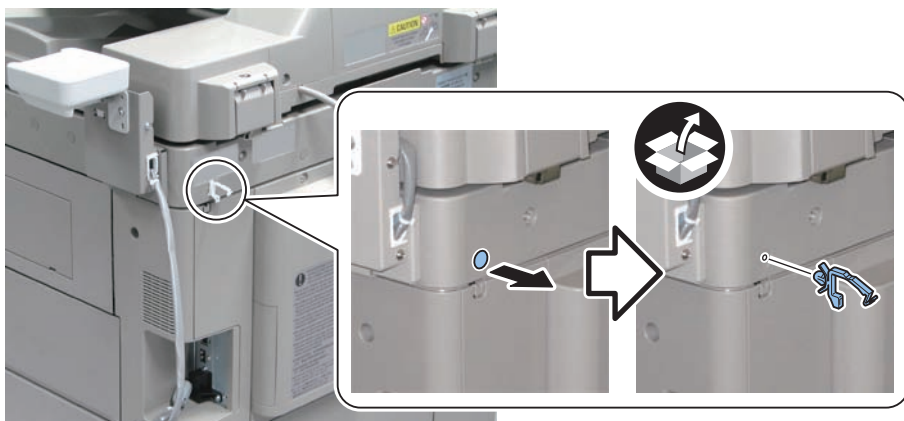
F-9-149

- 14) Return the Right Upper Sub Cover to its original position (2 Screws).
15) Connect the connector of the Card Reader External Relay Harness to the host machine, and install the Connector Cover.
• 1 Screw (TP; M3x6)



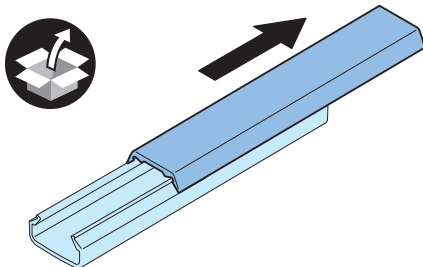
F-9-150

- 16) Remove the Face Seal from the Reader Rear Cover, and install the Wire Saddle. (The removed Face Seal will not be used.)
- 1 Wire Saddle



F-9-151

- 17) Remove the covers of 2 Cord Guides.

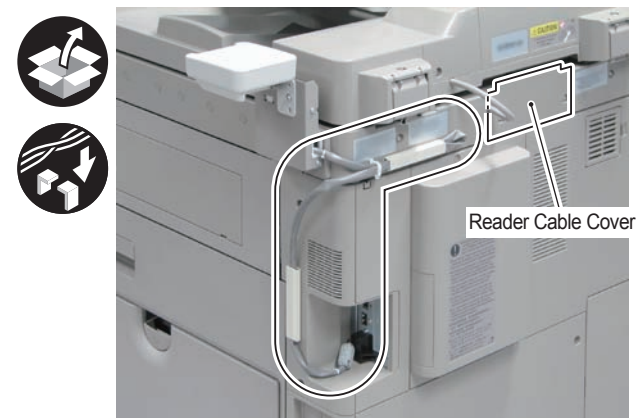


F-9-152

- 18) Remove the release paper from the Cord Guides, and affix the guides to the 2 areas indicated in the figure.
- 19) Put the Card Reader External Relay Harness through the Cord Guides, and install the covers of the guides.
- 1 Wire Saddle

CAUTION:

Do not affix the cord guide on the Reader Cable Cover.



F-9-153

- 20) Connect the power plug to the outlet.
- 21) Turn ON the main power switch.

Checking after Installation



- 1) Enter Service Mode, and set the model of the Card Reader.
 - Service Mode (level 1): COPIER > Option > ACC > CR-TYPE
 - In the case of Card Reader-C1, select "1".
 - In the case of Copy Card Reader-F1, check that "0" is selected.

NOTE:

Upon user's request, number of cards (departments) can be changed. This setting change must be performed before performing step 2.

- Select Service Mode (level 2) > COPIER > Option > FNC-SW > CARD-RNG, and set any value.
- Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.
- After that, perform from step 1.



- 2) Enter Service Mode (level 1) > COPIER > Function > INSTALL > CARD, and enter the card number to be used (1 to 2001).
 - Enter the smallest card number to be used by a user.
 - From the entered card number, 1000 cards can be used.
- 3) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.
- 4) Insert a card which card number has been registered, and check that the machine moves to standby condition.

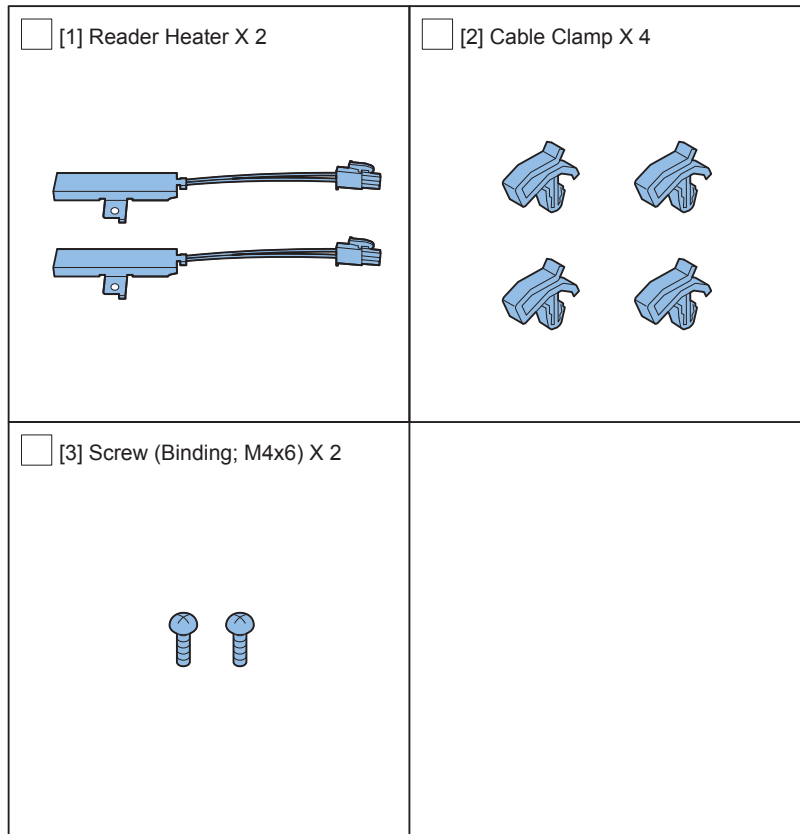
NOTE:

When changing number of cards (departments) upon user's request after specifying the setting, specify the following settings. In such a case, the department ID counter information is reset.

- Select Service Mode (level 1) > COPIER > Function > CLEAR > CARD.
- Select Service Mode (level 2) > COPIER > Option > FNC-SW > CARD-RNG, and set any value.
- Select Service Mode (level 1) > COPIER > Function > INSTALL > CARD, and enter the card number to be used (1 to 2001).
- Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.
- After that, perform from step 1.

Reader Heater Unit-J1 Installation Procedure

Checking the Contents



F-9-154

Points to Note Before Installation

- When installing the equipment, see the 'Combination Table of Accessory Installation'
- Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.

Turning Main Power OFF

Check that the main power is OFF.

- 1) Turning off the Main Power Supply Switch of the Host Machine.
- 2) Check that the display on the Control Panel and the Main Power Supply Lamp are turned off before disconnecting the outlet.

Installation Outline Drawing

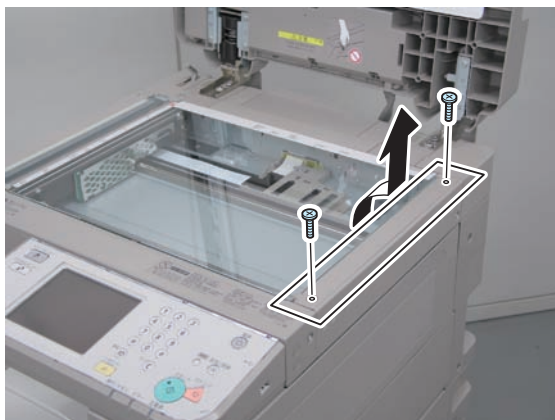


F-9-155

Installation Procedure



- 1) Open the ADF or Copyboard Cover.
 - 2) Remove the Reader right retainer cover.
- 2 Screws



F-9-156



- 3) Remove the copy board glass.

CAUTION:

When removing the copyboard glass, be sure not to get your fingers touched with the glass surface or the backside of the white plate. In case the glass is soiled, clean it with lint-free paper.



F-9-157



F-9-158



- 4) Pull the rear side of the Drive Belt in the direction of the arrow to move the Scanner Box to the center.



F-9-159



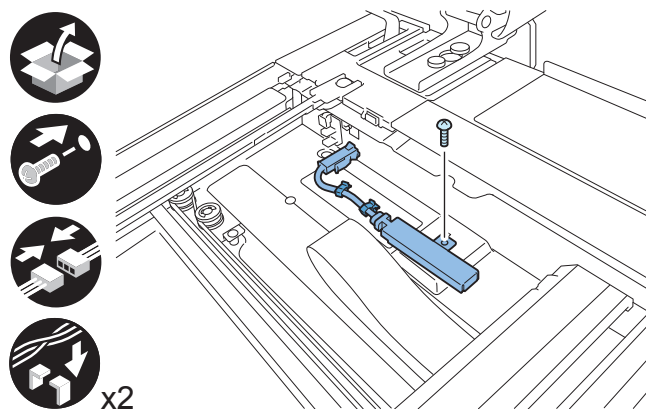
5) Install the Reader Heater.

- 1 Connector
- 1 Screw (Binding;M4x6)

6) Attach the 2 Cable Clamps, and secure the Reader Heater.

CAUTION:

Hold down the harness of the Reader Heater to prevent it from interfering the Scanner Box.



F-9-160



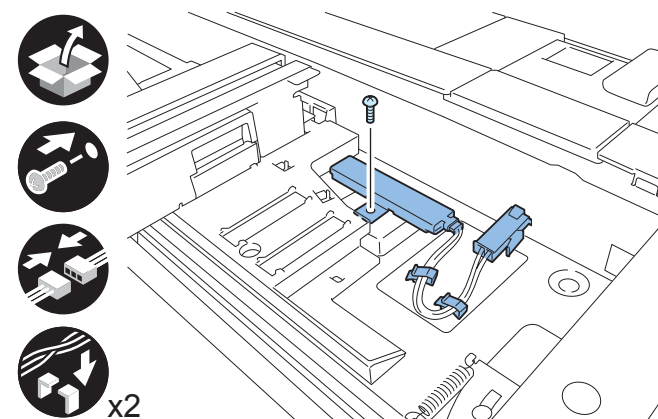
7) Install the Reader Heater.

- 1 Connector
- 1 Screw (Binding;M4x6)

8) Attach the 2 Cable Clamps, and secure the Reader Heater.

CAUTION:

Hold down the harness of the Reader Heater to prevent it from interfering the Scanner Box.



F-9-161



9) Install the removed cover.

- Copy Board Glass
- Reader Right Retainer Cover (2 Screws)
- ADF or Copyboard Cover

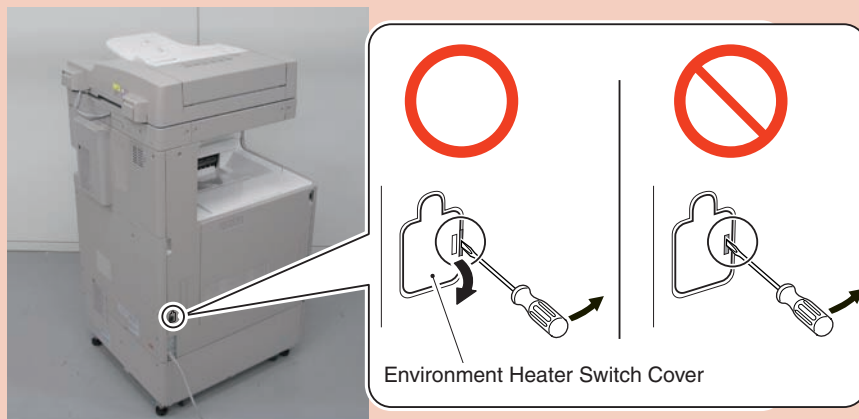
- 10) Remove the Environment Heater Switch Cover, and check that the Environment Heater Switch is ON. When it is OFF, turn it ON.



F-9-162

CAUTION:

When removing the Environment Heater Switch Cover, do not insert a screwdriver in the oval hole.

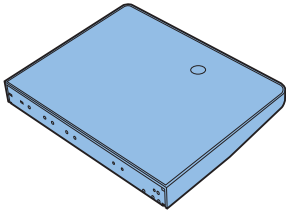
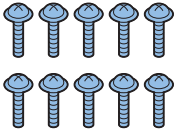
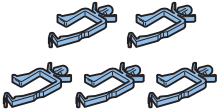
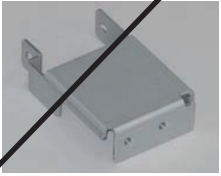




F-9-163

- 11) Install the Environment Heater Switch Cover.

Utility Tray-A2

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Utility Tray Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (TP; M4x8) X 10 Use 7 of them 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Wire Saddle X 5 The parts using to install the keyboard 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Keyboard Table Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (TP; M4x10) X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (TP; M4x14) X 4 

F-9-164

Points to Note when Installing

- When installing the equipment, see the 'Combination Table of Accessory Installation'.
- Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power is OFF.

- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

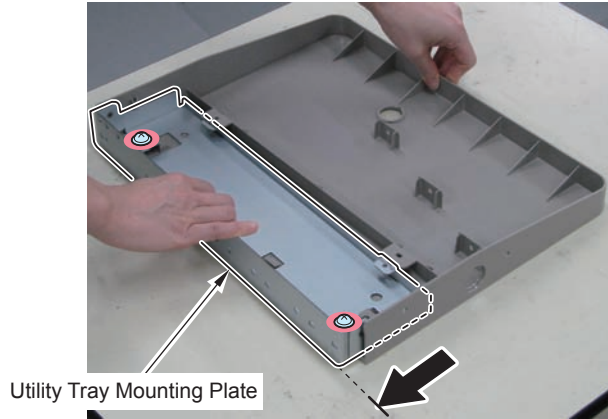
Installation Outline Drawing



F-9-165

Installation Procedure

- 1) Loosen the 2 screws, and move the Utility Tray Mounting Plate in the direction of the arrow until it stops.

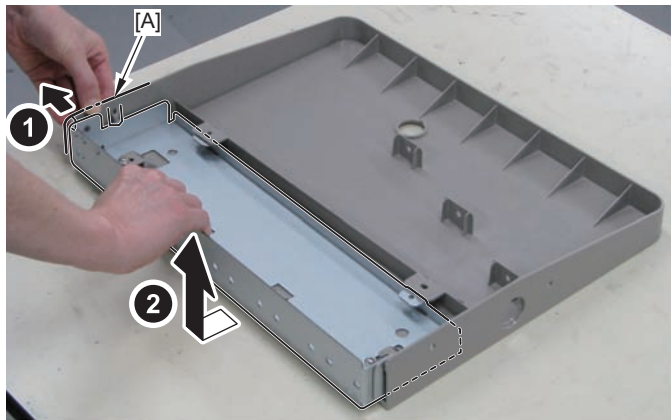


F-9-166

□

CAUTION:
Be sure not to pull the [A] part of the Utility Tray too much.

- 2) While pulling the [A] part of the Utility Tray, remove the Utility Tray Mounting Plate.
 - Utility Tray (The removed Utility Tray will be used in step 5)
 - Utility Tray Mounting Plate (The removed Utility Tray Mounting Plate will be used in step 4)



F-9-167

- 3) Remove the 5 Face Seals from the Reader Right Cover. (The removed Face Seals will not be used)

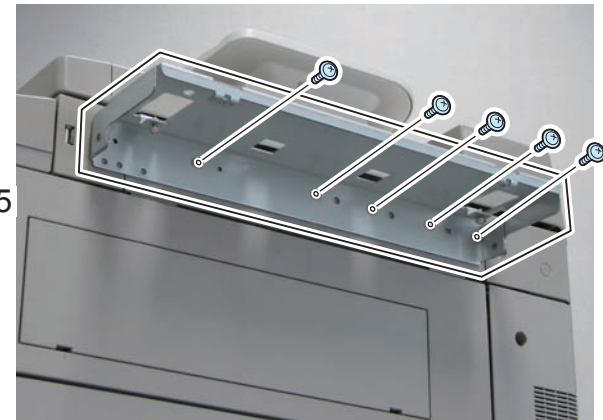


F-9-168

- 4) Install the Utility Tray Mounting Plate. (Use the Utility Tray Mounting Plate removed in step 2)
 - 5 Screws (TP; M4x8)



x5

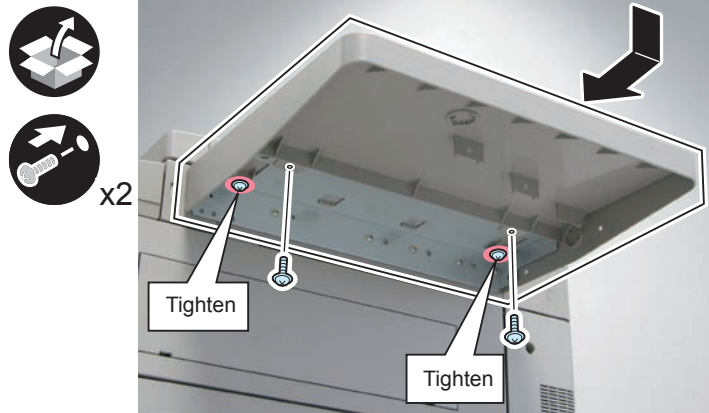


F-9-169



5) Install the Utility Tray.(Use the Utility Tray removed in step 2)

- 2 Screws (TP; M4x8)
- 2 Screws (Tighten the screws loosened in step 1)

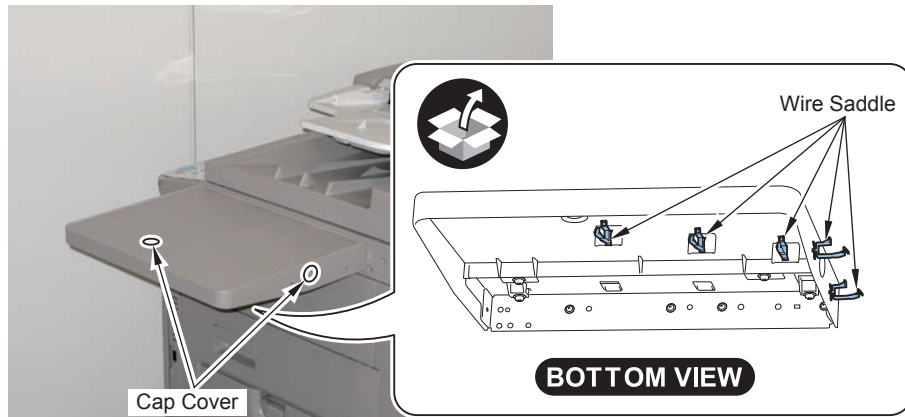


F-9-170

When Installing the USB Keyboard



- 1) Remove the 2 Cap Covers. (The removed Cap Covers will not be used)
- 2) Install the 5 Wire Saddles.



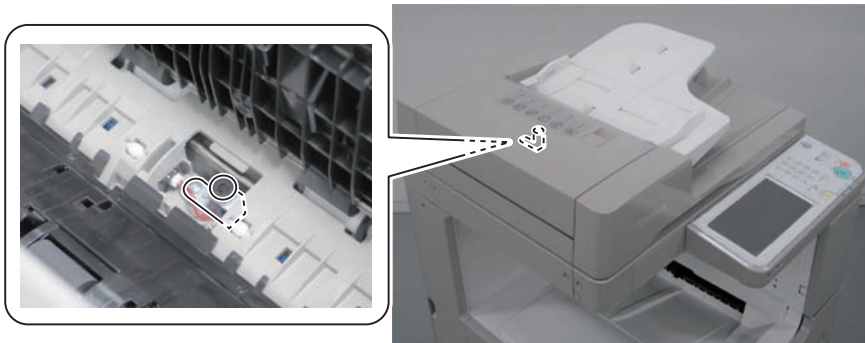
F-9-171

Stamp Unit-B1

Points to Note at Installation

- In order to enable the stamp function, it is necessary to enable the SEND function (Color Universal Send Kit).
- Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.

Installation Outline Drawing



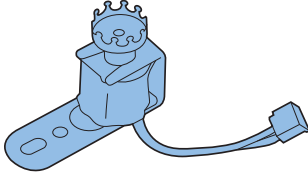
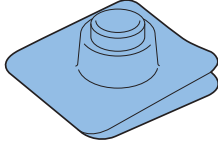


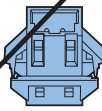
F-9-172

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power switch is OFF

- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

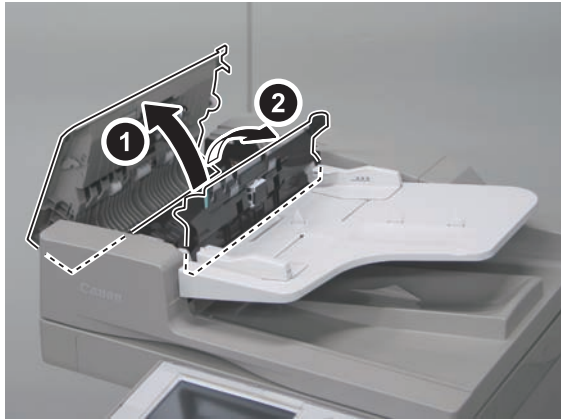
Checking the contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Stamp Solenoid X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Stamp Ink Cartridge X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Screw (P Tightening; M3x12) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Relay connector X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Relay connector X 1 	

F-9-173

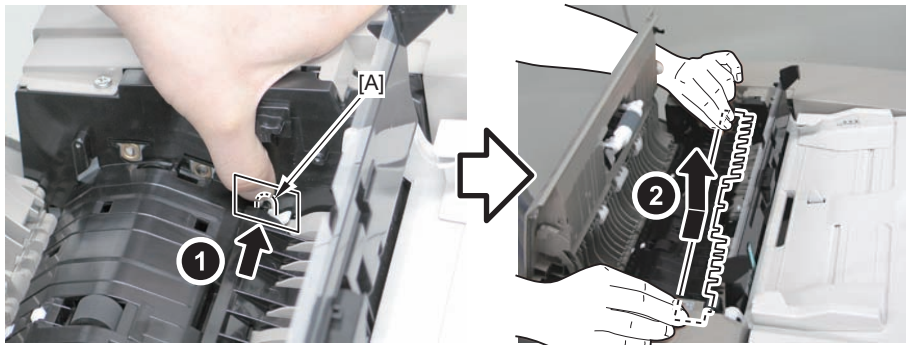
Installation procedure

- 1) Open the Feeder Cover and the Middle Cover.



F-9-174

- 2) Remove the Delivery Guide while pushing the hook [A] in the direction of the arrow.

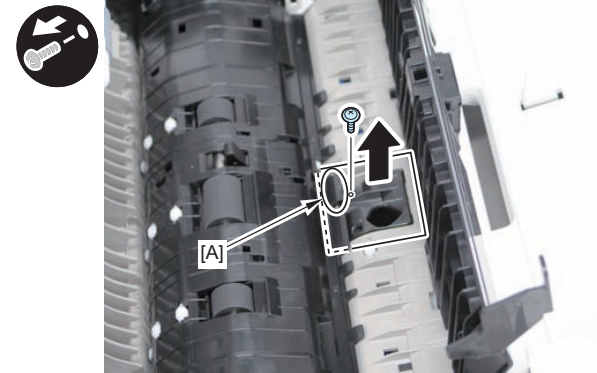


F-9-175

- 3) Remove the Stamp Cover.
 - 1 Screw

CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the Feed Guide with a screwdriver when removing the screw.

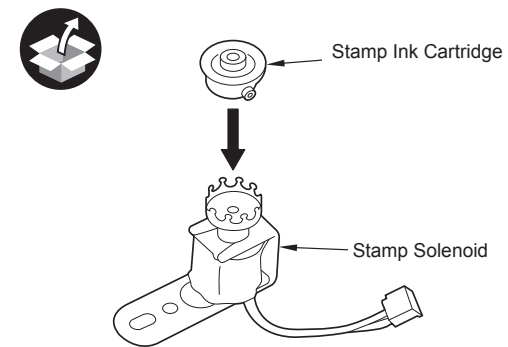


F-9-176

- 4) Install the Stamp Ink Cartridge to the Stamp Solenoid.

CAUTION:

Be sure to push the Stamp Ink Cartridge in until it clicks.

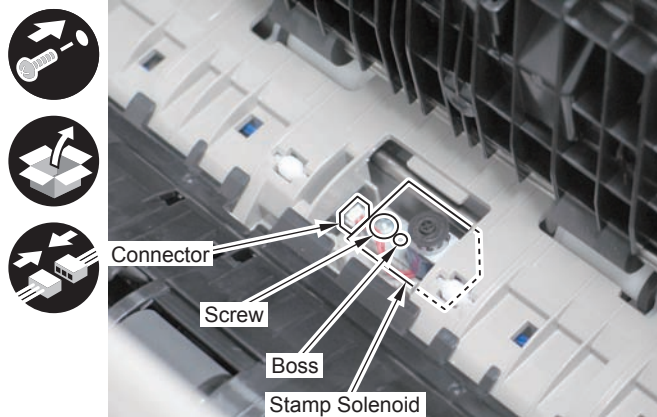


F-9-177



5) After installing the Stamp Solenoid, connect the connector on the Stamp Solenoid side to the connector on the host machine side.

- 1 Screw (P Tightening; M3x12)
- 1 Boss



F-9-178



6) Return the removed covers to their original positions.

- Stamp Cover 1 Screw
- Delivery Guide
- Middle Cover
- Feeder Cover

Operation Check

Be sure to perform the following procedure for operation check of the Stamp Unit.

- 1) Turn ON the main power switch.
- 2) Press "Finished Stamp" key.
 - [Scan and Send] or [Fax] > [Other Function] > [Finished Stamp]
- 3) Put an original in the Feeder, perform a send test, and check that a stamp is printed on the original.

Voice Operation Kit-C2

Points to Note when Installing

- The Color Image Reader is necessary to operate this equipment.
- When installing the equipment, see the 'Combination Table of Accessory Installation'.
- Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power is OFF.

- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power is OFF.


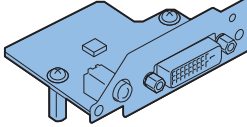
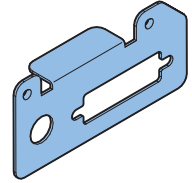
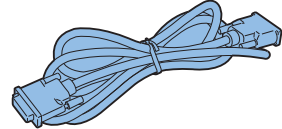
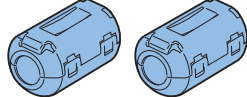
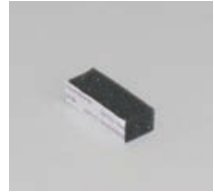
- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Installation Outline Drawing

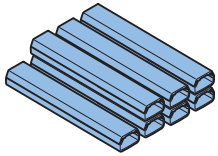


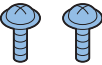


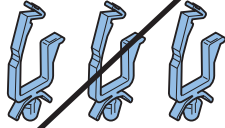
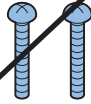


F-9-179

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Speaker Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Voice Operation Board Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Support Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] DVI Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Ring Core X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Cable Face Seal X 1 

F-9-180

<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Cord Guide X 7 Use 6 of them 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Card Spacer X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Screw (Bind;M4x14) X 2 Use 1 of them 
<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (Bind;M3x14) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Ring Core X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Wire Saddle X 3 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Screw (Bind;M4x20) X 2 	(This section is crossed out with a diagonal line)

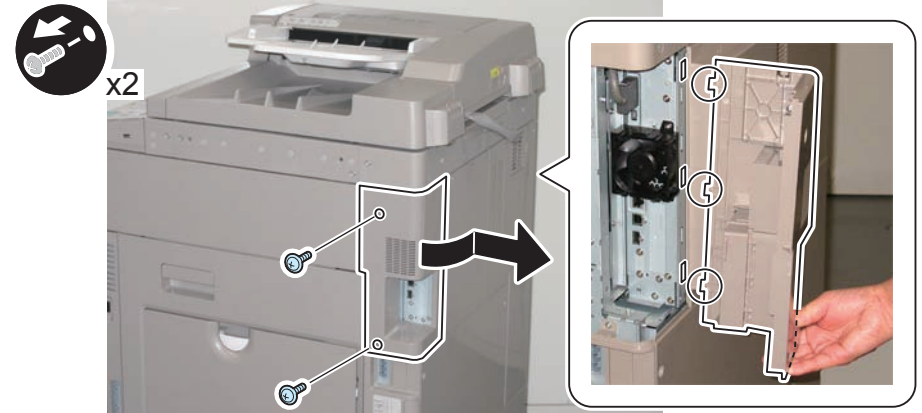
F-9-181

<CD/Guides>

- FCC/IC Instruction Sheet
- Voice Guidance kit Users
- Voice Guidance Guide CD-ROM

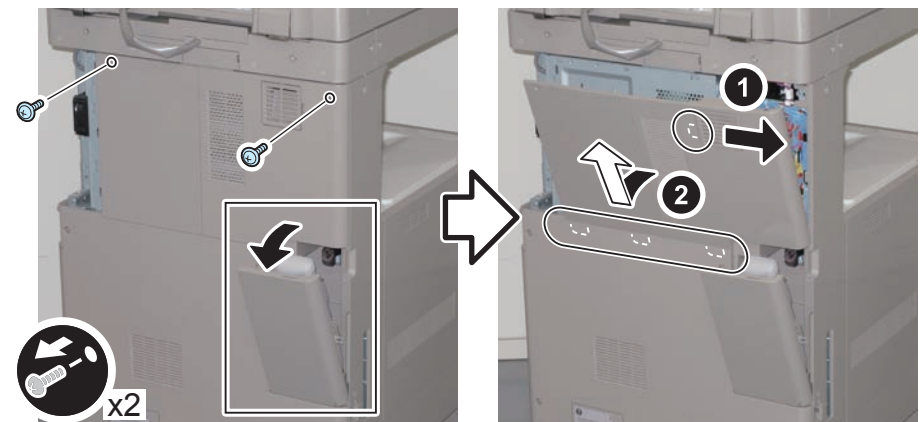
Installation Procedure

- 1) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
 - 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 18.)
 - 3 Claws



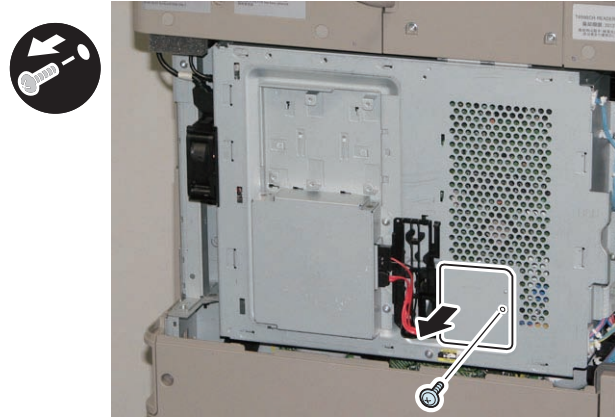
F-9-182

- 2) Remove the 2 screws on the Rear Upper Cover, and remove the covers by opening the Waste Toner Cover.
 - 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 9.)
 - 4 Claws



F-9-183

- 3) Remove the small cover of the Controller Box Cover. (for the HDD model)
- 1 Screw

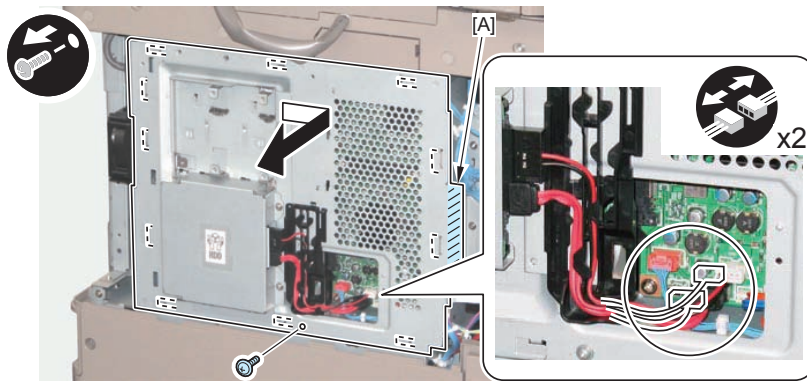


F-9-184

- 4) Remove the Controller Cover by holding [A] part.
- 1 Screw (The removed screw will be used in step 9.)
 - 2 Connectors (for the HDD model)

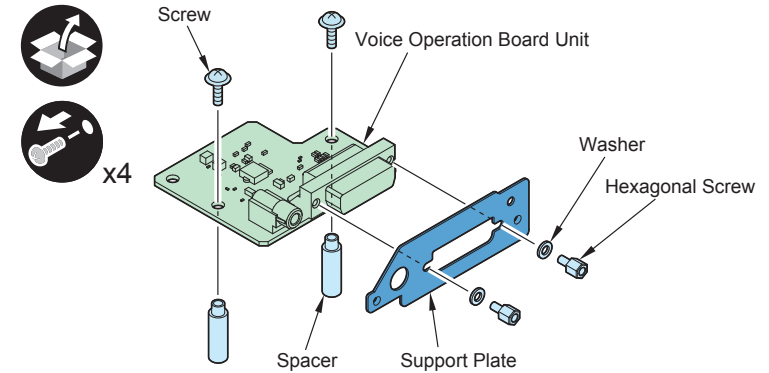
CAUTION:

When handling the hard disc, be careful not to vibrate or drop it.



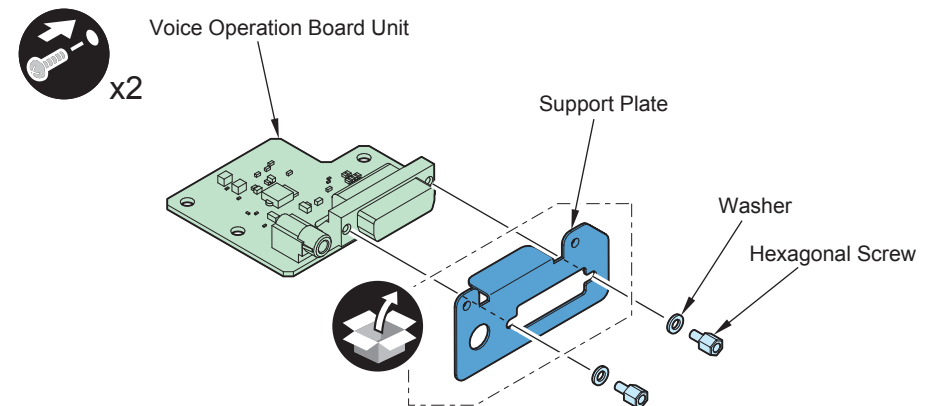
F-9-185

- 5) Remove the Support Plate and the Spacer from the Voice Operation Board Unit.
- 2 Hexagon Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 7.)
 - 2 Washers (The removed washers will be used in step 7.)
 - 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 8.)
 - 2 Spacers (The removed Spacers will not be used.)



F-9-186

- 6) Install the Support Plate included in the package.
- 2 Hexagon Screws (Use the screws removed in step 4.)
 - 2 Washers (Use the washers removed in step 4.)

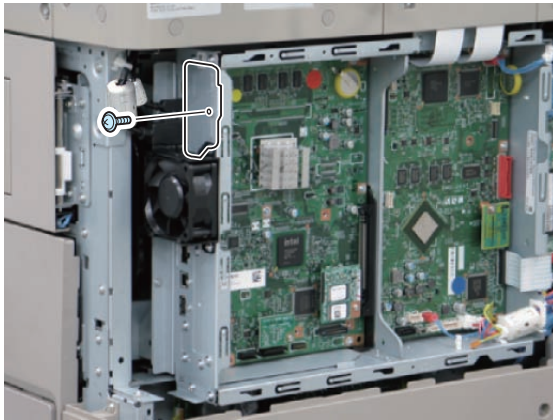


F-9-187



7) Remove the Face Plate.

- 1 Face Plate (The removed Face Plate will not be used.)
- 1 Screw (The removed screw will not be used.)



F-9-188



8) Install the Card Spacer.



F-9-189

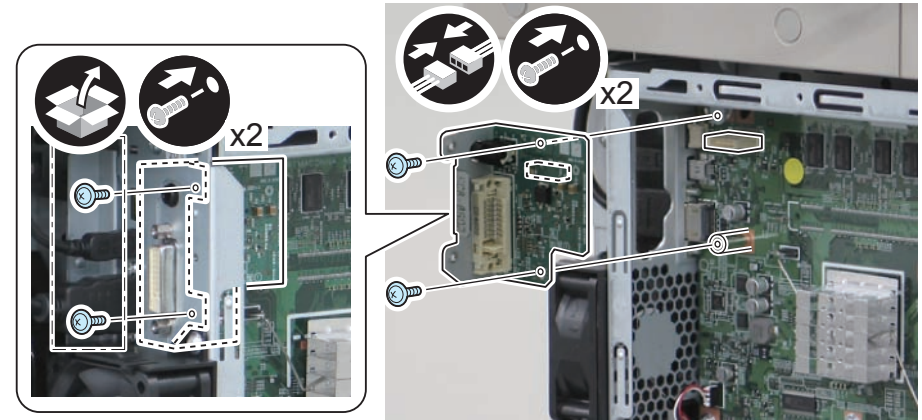


9) Install the Voice Operation Board Unit.

- 2 Screws (Use the screws removed in step 4.)
- Connector
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x6)

NOTE:

Check that the connector is connected properly.



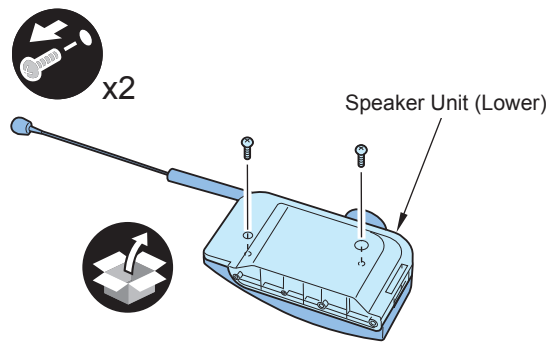
F-9-190



10) Return the covers to their original position.

- Controller Cover 1 Screw
- 2 Connectors (for the HDD model)
- Small Cover of the Controller Box Cover (for the HDD model) 1 Screw
- Rear Upper Cover 2 Screws
- Waste Toner Cover

- 11) Remove the Speaker Unit (Lower) from the Speaker Unit.
 • 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 14.)



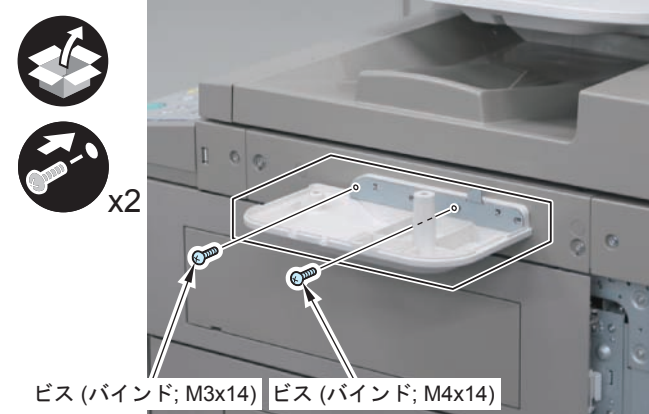
F-9-191

- 12) Remove the Face Seals from the Reader Right Cover.
 • 2 Face Seals (The removed Face Seals will not be used.)



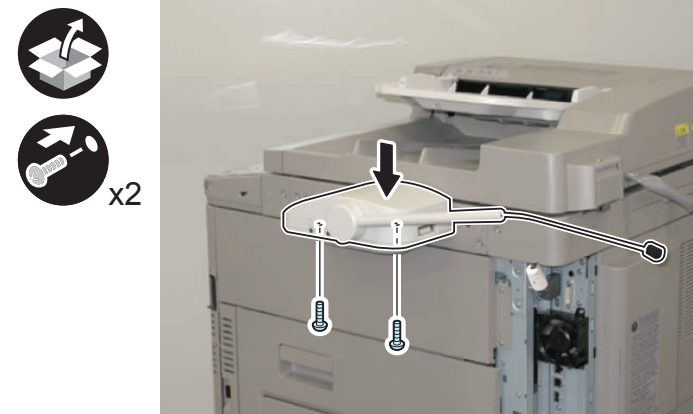
F-9-192

- 13) Install the Speaker Unit (Lower).
 • 2 Screws (Binding; M4x14)



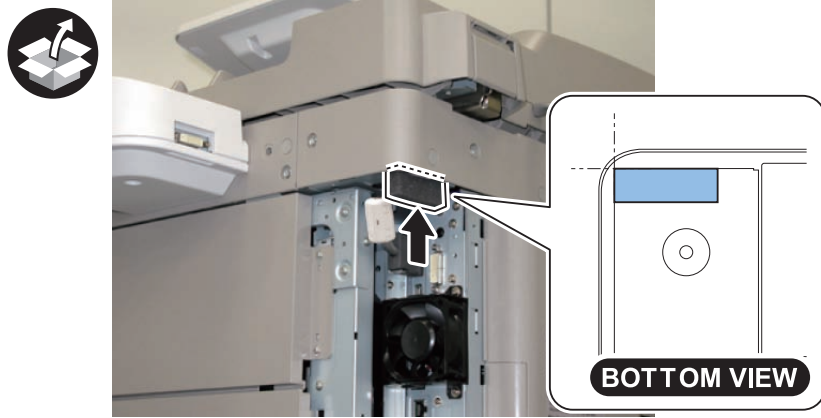
F-9-193

- 14) Install the Speaker Unit (Upper).
 • 2 Screws (Use the screws removed in step 11.)



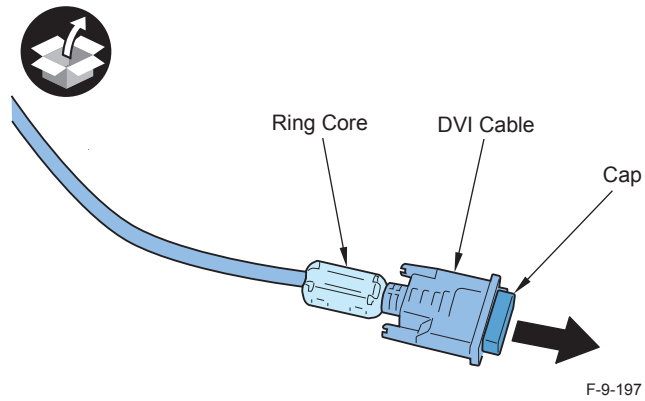
F-9-194

- 15) Affix the Cable Face Seal.



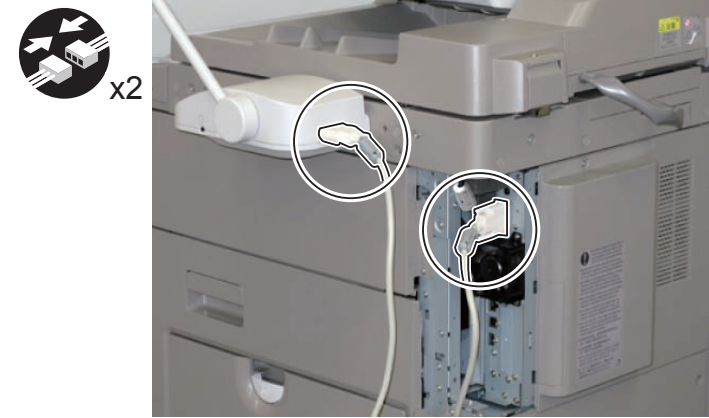
F-9-195

- 16) Install the Ring Cores to both ends of the DVI Cable, and remove the cap.



F-9-197

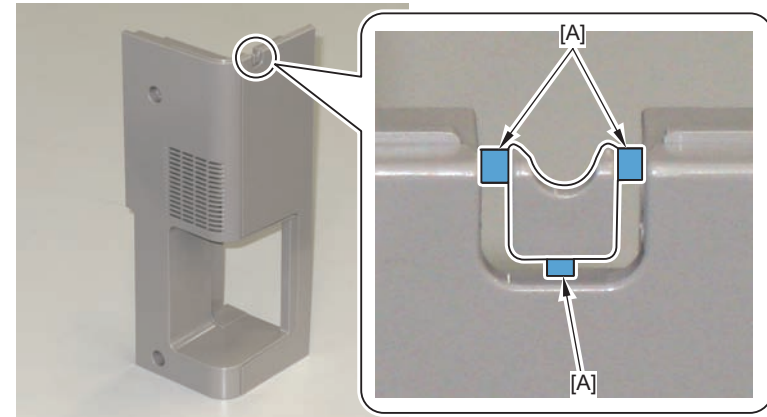
- 17) Connect the DVI Cable to 2 points.



F-9-198

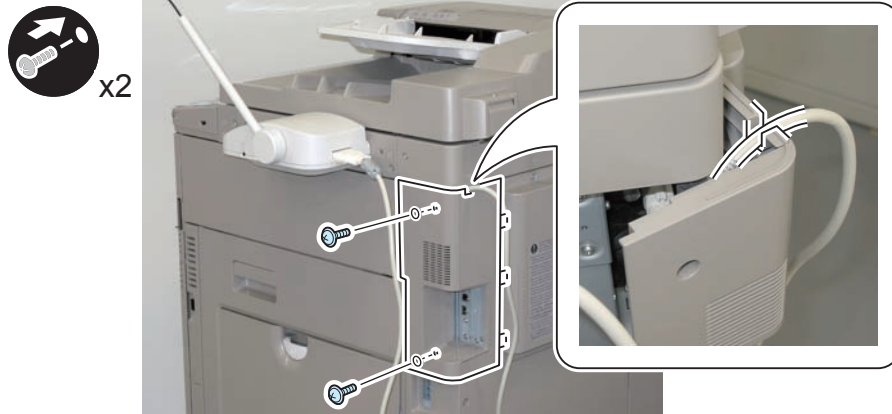
- 18) Cut off [A] part of the Right Upper Sub Cover with nippers.

NOTE:
When cutting off the part, be sure not to make burrs.



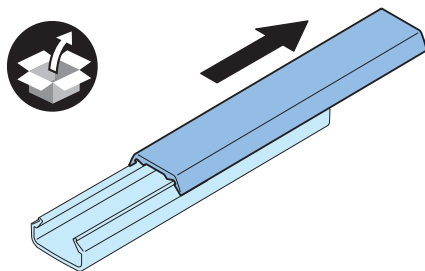
F-9-199

- 19) Put the DVI Cable through the cut-off of the Right Upper Sub Cover, and install the cover.
- 2 Screws (Use the screws removed in step 1.)
 - 3 Claws



F-9-200

- 20) Remove the covers of 6 Cord Guides.



F-9-201

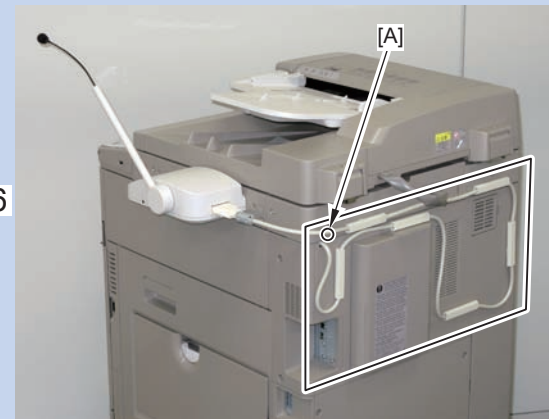
- 21) Remove the release paper from the Cord Guides, and affix the guides to the 6 areas indicated in the figure.
- 22) Put the DVI Cable through the Cord Guides, and install the covers of the guides.



F-9-202

NOTE:

In the case of simultaneous installation with the Card Reader-C1, do not install the Cord Guide to the [A] part because the Wire Saddle (included in the package of the Card Reader) needs to be installed.



F-9-203

Checking after Installation

NOTE:

When changing the settings upon user's request, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions from the user administrator.



- 1) Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.
- 2) Turn ON the main power switch.
- 3) Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings > Use Voice Navigation, and check that the setting is ON.
- 4) Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings > Voice Navigation at Startup, and check that "Select Mode at Startup" is set.
- 5) Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings, and check that "Tune Microphone" is displayed.
- 6) To make the setting value effective, turn OFF/ON the main power of the Host Machine.

Operation Check

■ When Starting to Use



- 1) Press "Reset" key or the Voice Recognition button for more than 3 seconds.
- 2) In "Select the Voice Navigation type." on the Control Panel screen, select "Manual + Vocal Mode", "Vocal Mode" or "Manual Mode", and press OK.
- 3) Once the indication on the screen is framed in red, the "Voice Operation Kit" becomes enabled.

NOTE:

When "Manual Mode" is selected in "Select the Voice Navigation type.", nothing happens by pressing the Voice Recognition button.

■ When Stopping to Use



- 1) Press "Reset" key or the Voice Recognition button for more than 3 seconds.

USB Device Port-E2/Multimedia Reader/Writer-A2

Points to Note at Installation

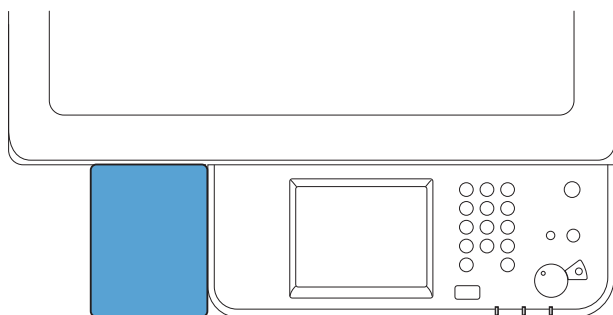
- Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.
- When installing the Inner Finisher or the Buffer Pass simultaneously, be sure to install this equipment first.
- If the Inner Finisher or the Buffer Pass is installed, this equipment cannot be installed unless it is removed. For details of installation procedure, refer to the Service Manual.
- When installing the Multimedia Reader/Writer, the USB Device Port must be installed beforehand.
- The Multimedia Reader/Writer cannot be used in combination with the Card Reader (sales company's option)

Check Item when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power switch is OFF.

- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
- 2) Be sure that Control Panel Display and the Main Power lamp are both turned OFF, and then disconnect the power plug

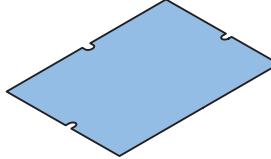
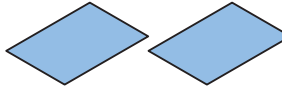
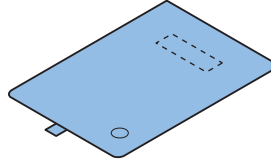
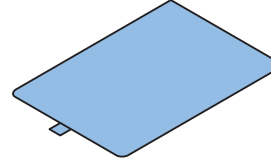
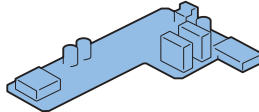

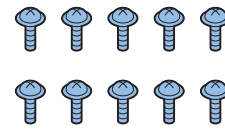
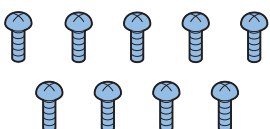
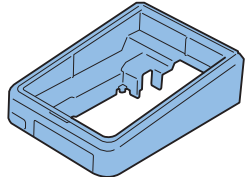

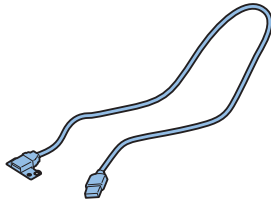

Installation Outline Drawing






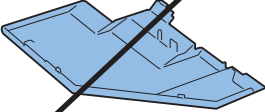
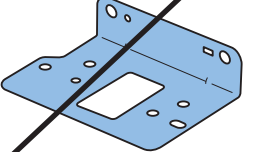

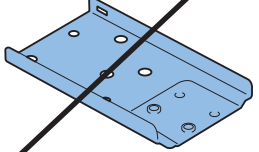
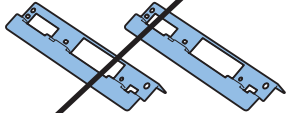
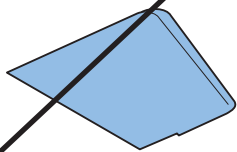
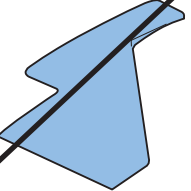
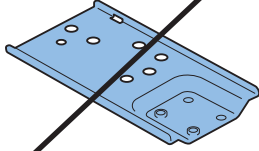
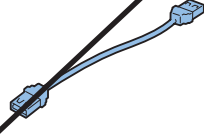
F-9-204

Checking the Contents

USB Device Port-E2

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] DP Fireproof Sheet X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Cushion X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] DP Sheet (for Japan) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] DP Sheet (for Europe) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] DP Board X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (RS tight; M3×8.5) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Screw (TP Round End; M3×6) X 10 Use 5 of them 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Screw (Bind; M4×6) X 9 	<input type="checkbox"/> [9] DP Upper Cover Unit X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [10] DP Lower Cover Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] DP USB Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] DP Mounting Plate B X 1 

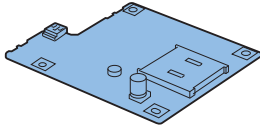
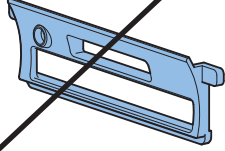
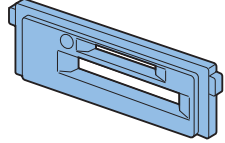

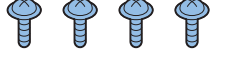

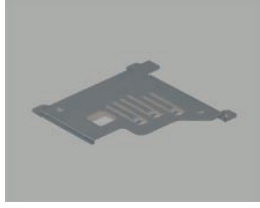
F-9-205

<input type="checkbox"/> [13] DP Support Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] DP Cable Guide Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [15] DP Bottom Cover X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [16] DP Bottom Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [17] DP Support Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [18] DP Mounting Reinforcing Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [19] DP Mounting Plate W X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [20] DP Shield Plate X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [21] Paper Feed Sheet W X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [22] Paper Feed Sheet P X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [23] DP Mounting Plate P X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [24] USB Cable X 1 

<CD/Guides>
 • FCC/IC Instruction Sheet

F-9-206

■ Multimedia Reader/Writer-A2

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Multimedia Card Slot X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Card Slot X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Card Slot X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] USB Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Multimedia Label X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Slot Holder X 1 		

<CD/Guides>
 • FCC/IC Instruction Sheet

F-9-207

Installation Procedure

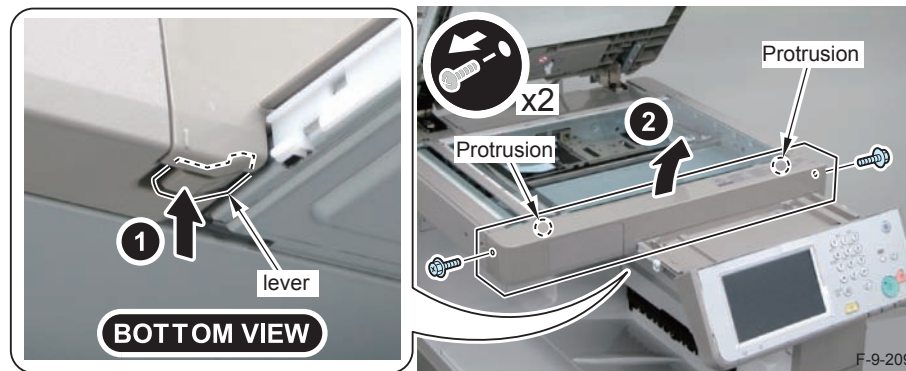
Installing the USB Device Port

- 1) Move the Control Panel in the direction of the arrow, and open the ADF.



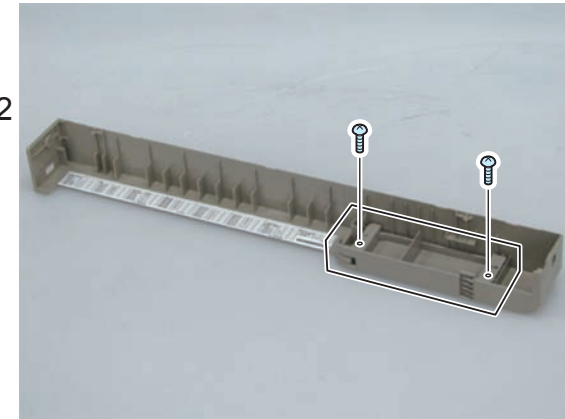
F-9-208

- 2)
 - [For ADF model]
 - Push the lever, and remove the Reader Front Cover.
 - 2 Screws
 - 2 Protrusions
 - [For printer model]
 - Push the lever, and remove the Printer Top Front Cover.
 - 2 Screws
 - 2 Protrusions



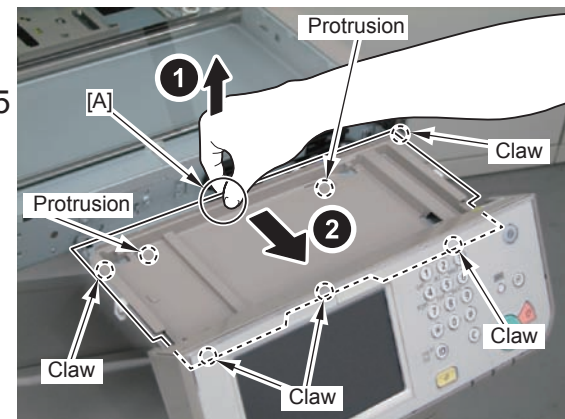
F-9-209

- 3) Remove the Reader Front Cover (Small). (The removed Reader Front Cover (Small) will not be used.)
 - 2 Screws



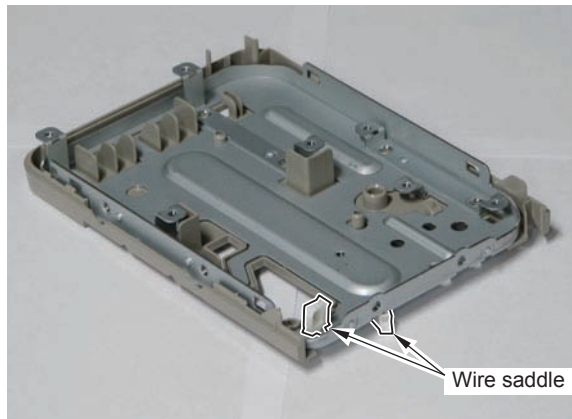
F-9-210

- 4) Hold the [A] part of the Control Panel Base Cover and remove it in the direction of the arrow.
 - 2 Protrusions
 - 5 Claws



F-9-211

- 5) Remove the 2 Wire Saddles from the DP Lower Cover Unit. (The removed Wire Saddles will not be used.)

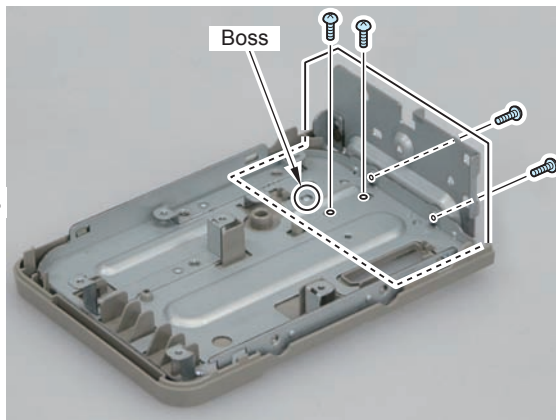


F-9-212

- 6) Install the DP Mounting Plate to the DP Lower Cover Unit.
- 1 Boss
 - 4 Screws (Binding; M4x6)



x4

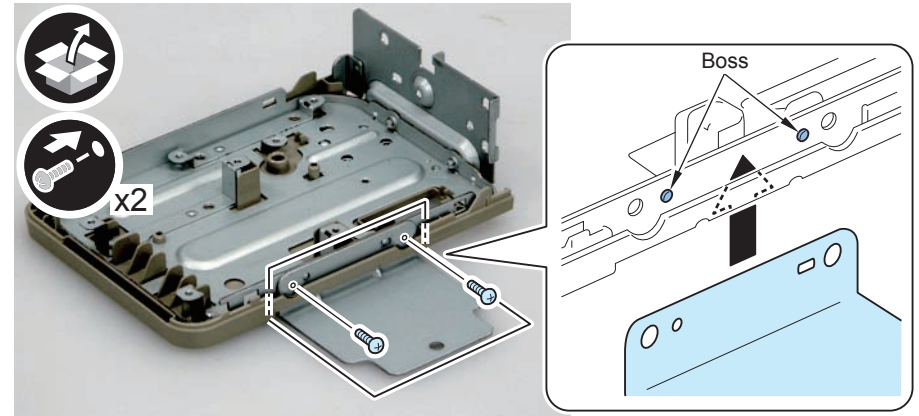


F-9-213

- 7) Install the DP Support Plate to the DP Lower Cover Unit.
- 2 Bosses
 - 2 Screws (Binding; M4x6)



x2

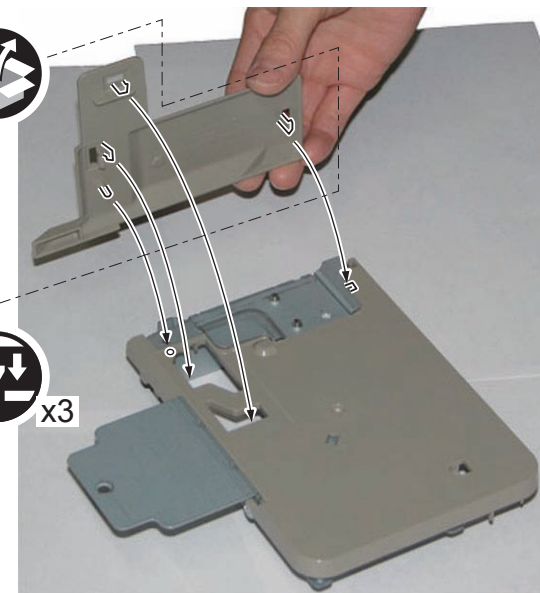


F-9-214

- 8) Install the DP Bottom Cover B.
- 3 Claws
 - 1 Boss

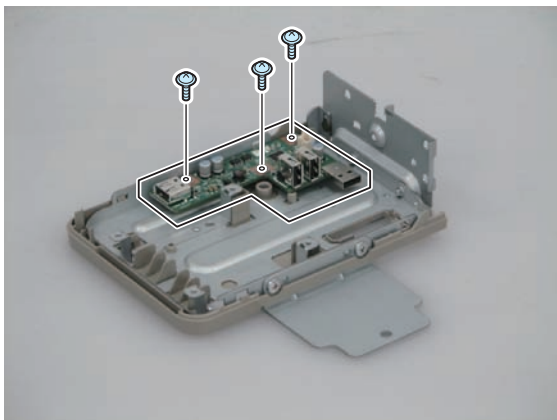


x3



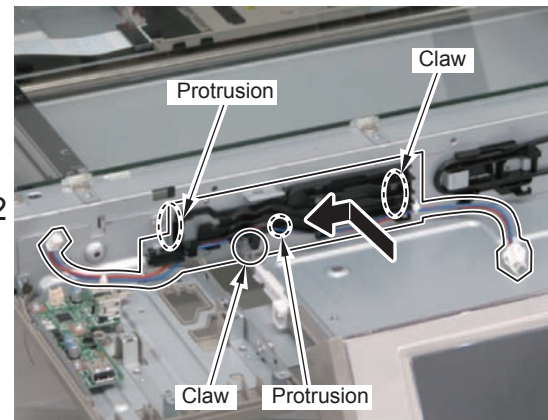
F-9-215

- 9) Install the DP Board.
- 3 Screws (TP; M3x6)



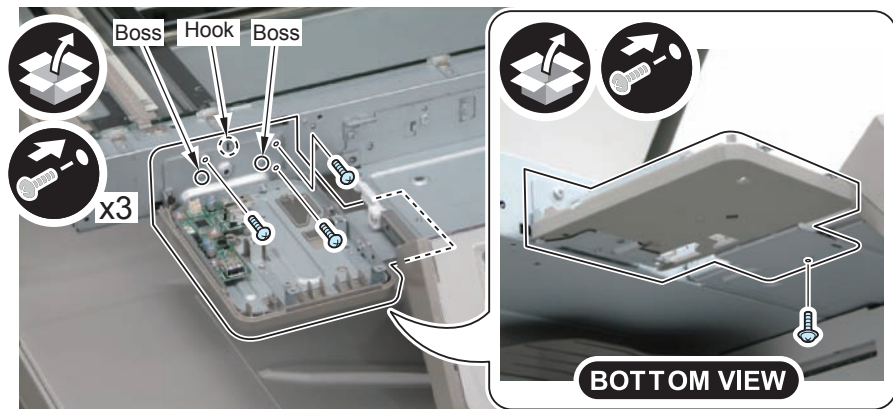
F-9-216

- 11) Install the Relay Guide in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 Claws
- 2 Protrusions



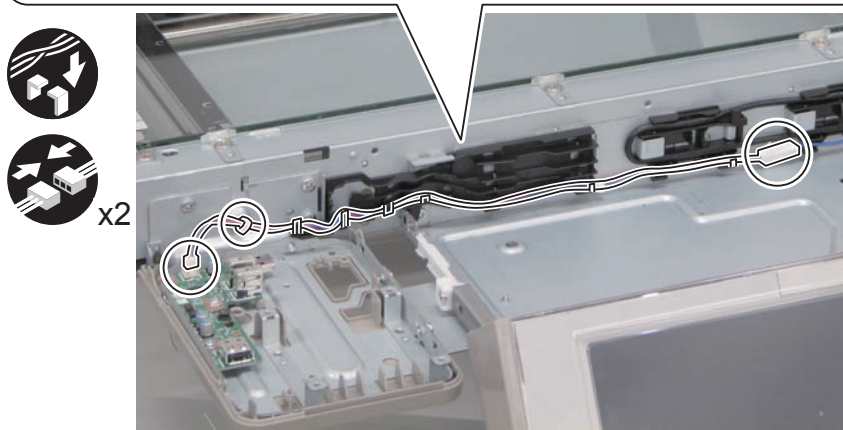
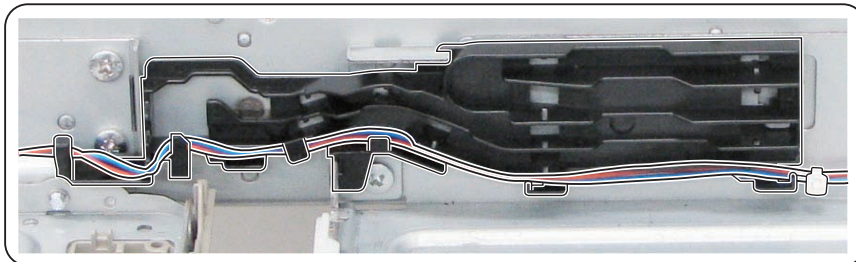
F-9-218

- 10) Install the DP Lower Cover Unit.
- 1 Hook
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x6)
- 3 Screws (Binding; M4x6)



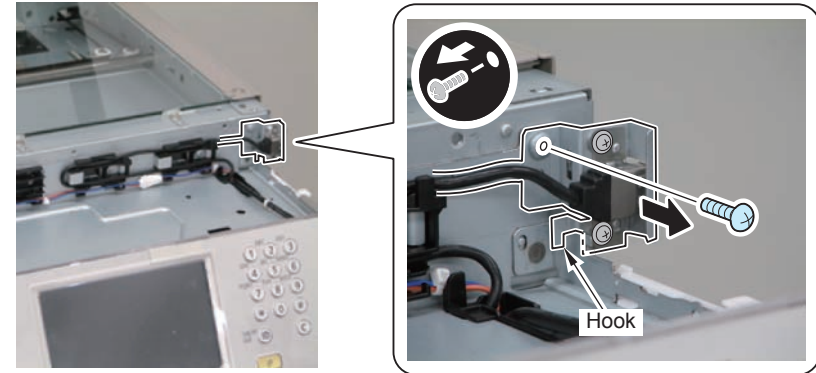
F-9-217

- 12) Route the harness as shown in the figure, and connect it to the Harness Guide.
- 2 Connectors
 - 1 Reuse Band



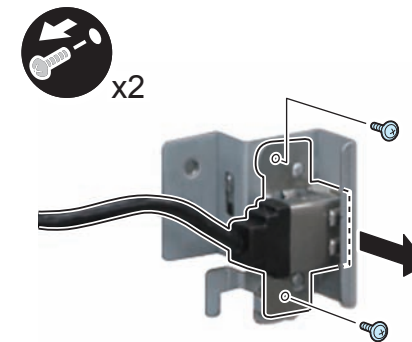
F-9-219

- 13) Remove the USB Mounting Plate.
- 1 Screw (The removed screw will be used in step 17.)
 - 1 Hook



F-9-220

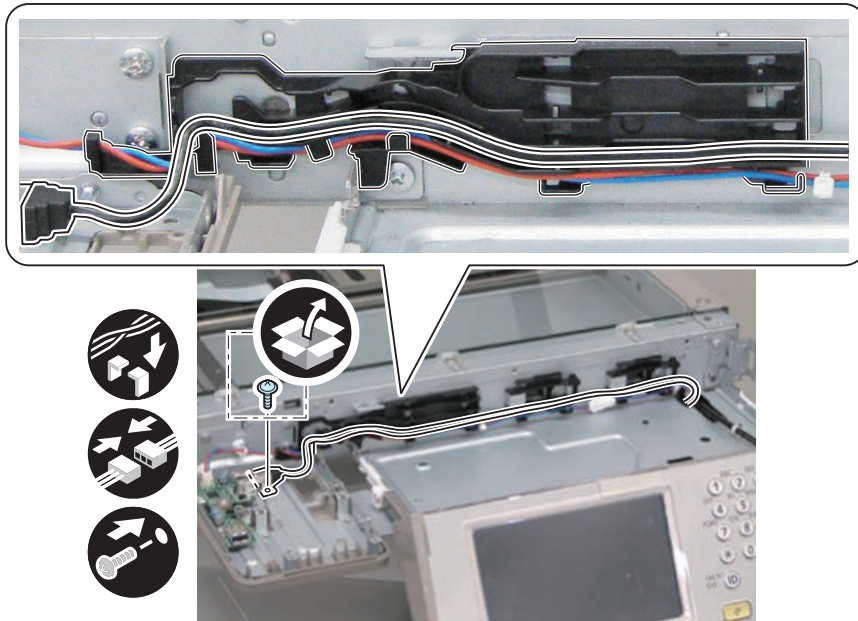
- 14) Remove the USB Cable.
- 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 16.)



F-9-221

□ 15) Route the USB Cable, which was disconnected in step 14, as shown in the figure.

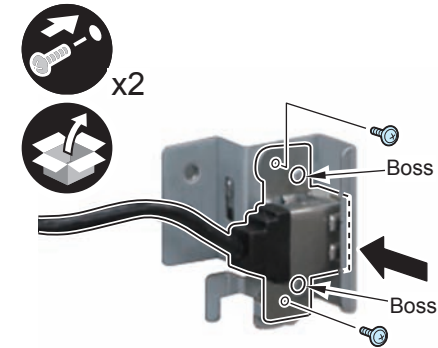
- 1 Connector
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x6)
- Guide



F-9-222

□ 16) Connect the DP USB Cable to the USB Mounting Plate removed in the previous step.

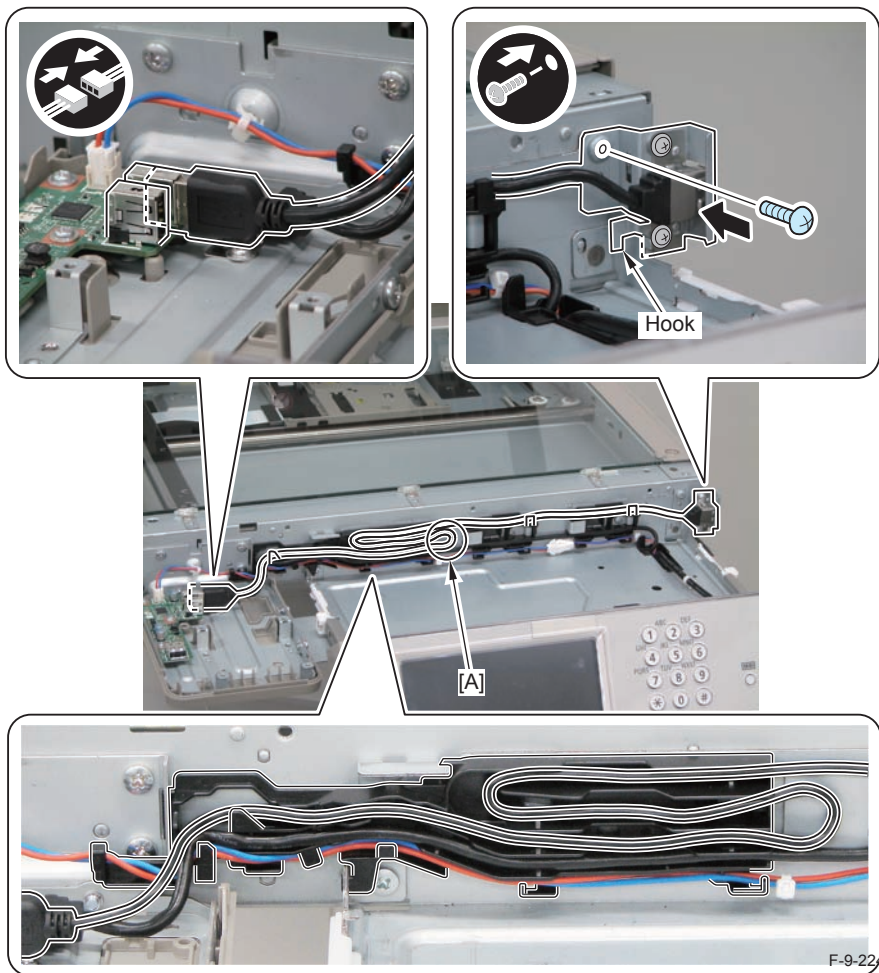
- 2 Bosses
- 2 Screws (Use the screws removed in step 14.)



F-9-223

- 17) Connect the DP USB Cable mentioned in step 16.
 - 1 Connector
 - 1 Screw (The screw removed in step 13.)
 - Guide

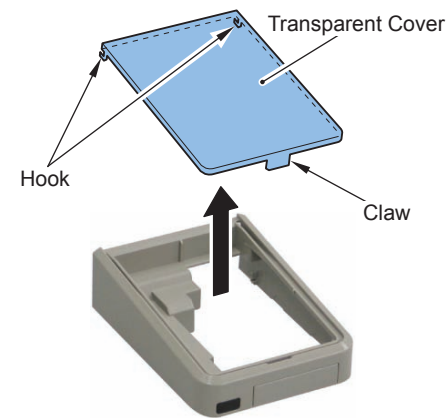
NOTE:
Adjust the length of the cable in the [A] part.



CAUTION:
In the following work, the installation procedure varies between "Installing the Card Reader" and "Installing the Multimedia Reader/Writer-A2". Refer to "Installing the Card Reader" or "Installing the Multimedia Reader/Writer-A2" when installing.

■ Installing the Card Reader

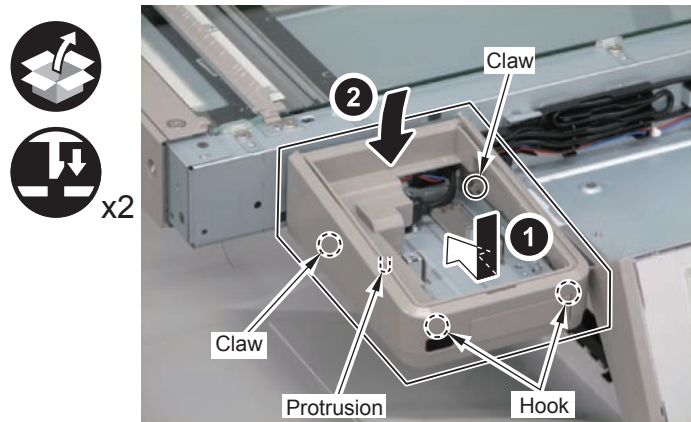
- 1) Remove the Transparent Cover.
 - 1 Claw
 - 2 Hooks



F-9-225

- 2) Install the DP Upper Cover in the direction of the arrow.

- 1 Protrusion
- 2 Hooks
- 2 Claws



F-9-226

- 3) Install the Card Reader and place the cable as shown in the figure.

NOTE:
Work the cable to make sure that the Transparent Cover fits securely in step 3.



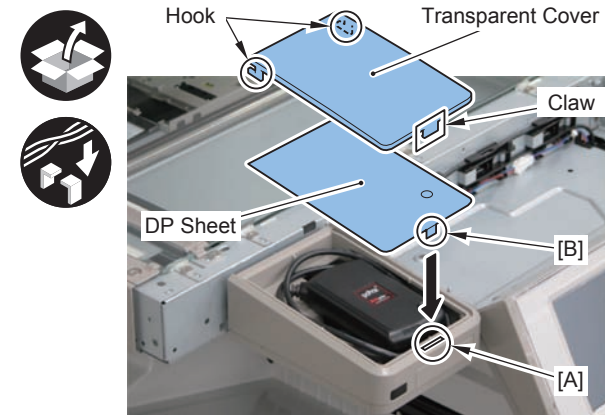
F-9-227

- 4) Place the Card Reader, and install the DP Sheet (for Europe) and the Transparent Cover.

- 2 Hooks
- 1 Claw

NOTE:

- Insert the DP Sheet (for Europe) to the [A] area with the illustration side facing up and by inserting bending the bent bar code area [B] and the claw.
- Be sure that the Transparent Cover is installed properly.



F-9-228

- 5) Remove the Protection Sheet on the Transparent Cover.

- 6) Return the Control Panel Base Cover its original position.

- 7)

[For ADF model]

Install the Reader Front Cover. (2 Screws)

[For printer model]

Install the Printer Top Front Cover. (2 Screws)

- 8)

Return the Control Panel to its original position.

- 9)

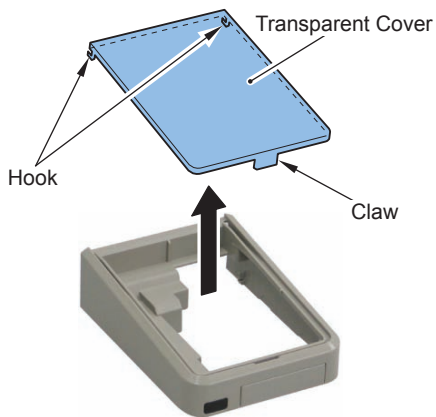
Close the ADF.

Installing the Multimedia Reader/Writer-A2

NOTE:

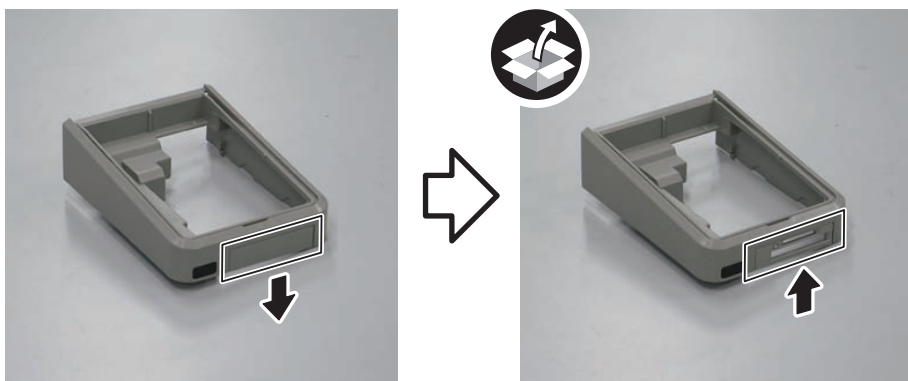
- When installing the Multimedia Reader/Writer, the USB Device Port must be installed beforehand.
- The Multimedia Reader/Writer cannot be used in combination with the Card Reader (sales company's option).

- 1) Remove the Transparent Cover.
 - 1 Claw
 - 2 Hooks



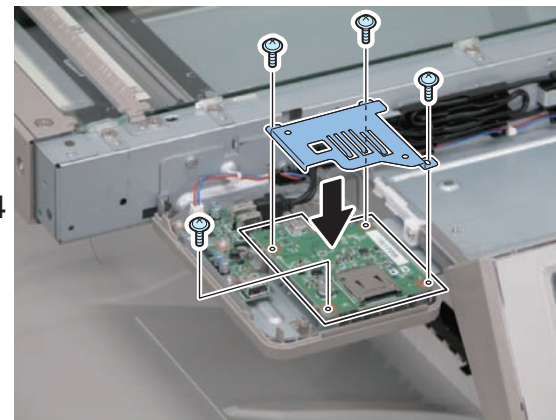
F-9-229

- 2) Remove the Card Slot (closed) from the DP Upper Cover and attach the Card Slot.



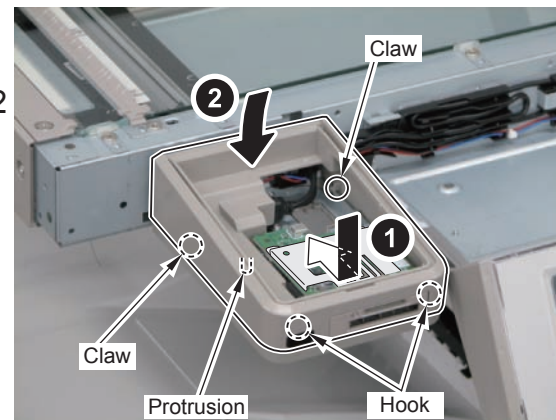
F-9-230

- 3) Install Multimedia Card Slot and Slot Holder together.
 - 4 Screws (TP; M3x6)



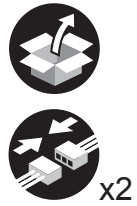
F-9-231

- 4) Install the DP Upper Cover in the direction of the arrow.
 - 2 Hooks
 - 1 Protrusion
 - 2 Claws



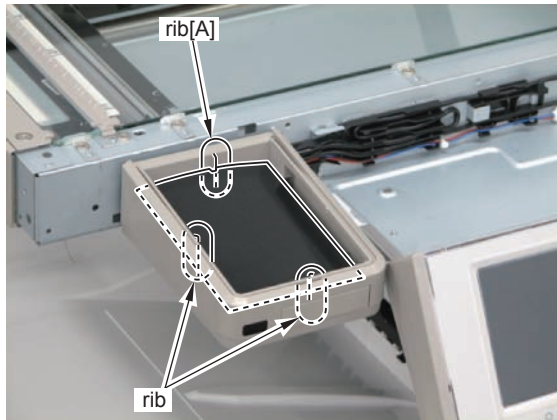
F-9-232

□ 5) Connect the USB Cable.



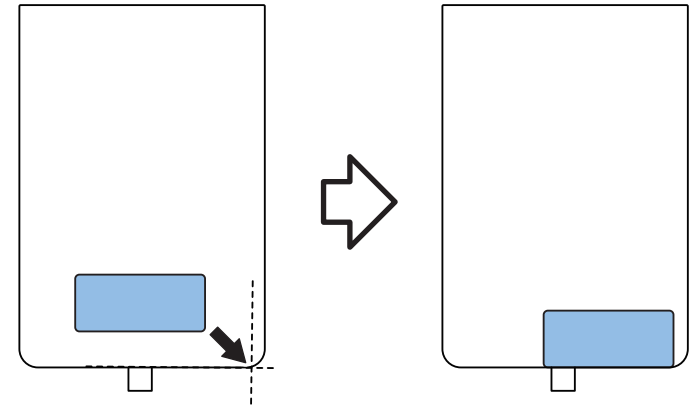
F-9-233

□ 6) Remove the release sheet of the DP Fireproof Sheet, and affix the sheet by aligning the 3 ribs and pushing it against the rib [A].



F-9-234

□ 7) Affix the Multimedia Label to the back side of the DP Sheet (for Europe) as shown in the figure.



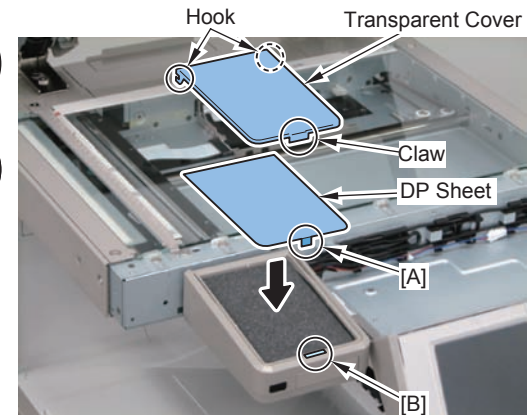
F-9-235

□ 8) Install the DP Sheet (for Europe) and the Transparent Cover.

- 2 Hooks
- 1 Claw

NOTE:

- Be sure that the Transparent Cover is installed properly.
- Be sure that the [A] part is fitted in the [B] part.



F-9-236

9) When installing the USB Device Port simultaneously, Remove the Protection Sheet on the Transparent Cover.

10) Return the Control Panel Base Cover its original position.

11)
[For ADF model]

Install the Reader Front Cover. (2 Screws)

[For printer model]

Install the Printer Top Front Cover. (2 Screws)

12) Return the Control Panel to its original position.

13) Close the ADF.

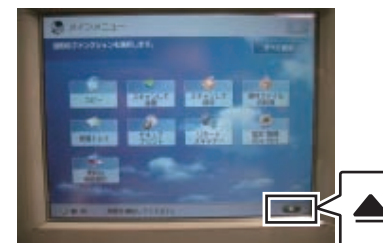
Operation Check [Multimedia Reader/Writer-A2

NOTE:

- To the Multimedia Reader/Writer, Memory Media of the SC Card, Memory Stick, and CF Card can be connected. With one of the 3 types of Memory Media, perform the operation check 1 through 3.
- When changing the settings upon user's request, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions from the user administrator.

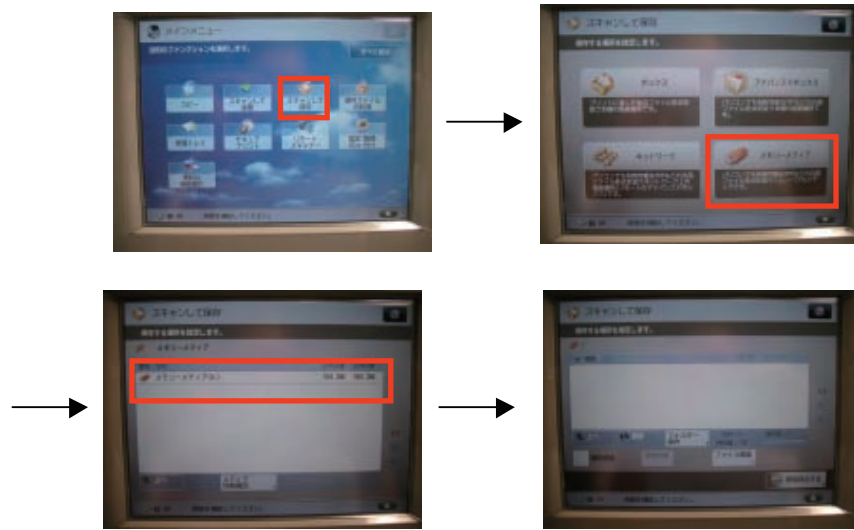
Writing Check

- 1) Select "1" for the following service mode (level 2).(Default value "0")
CPIER > Option > DSPLY-SW > UI-MEM
- 2) To make the setting value effective, turn OFF/ON the main power of the Host Machine.
- 3) Mount the Memory Media to the Multimedia Card Reader/Writer. (Check that the Mount Mark is indicated in the bottom right.)



F-9-237

- 4) Make the following selection:[Scan and Store] > [Memory Media] > [Memory Media (A:)]



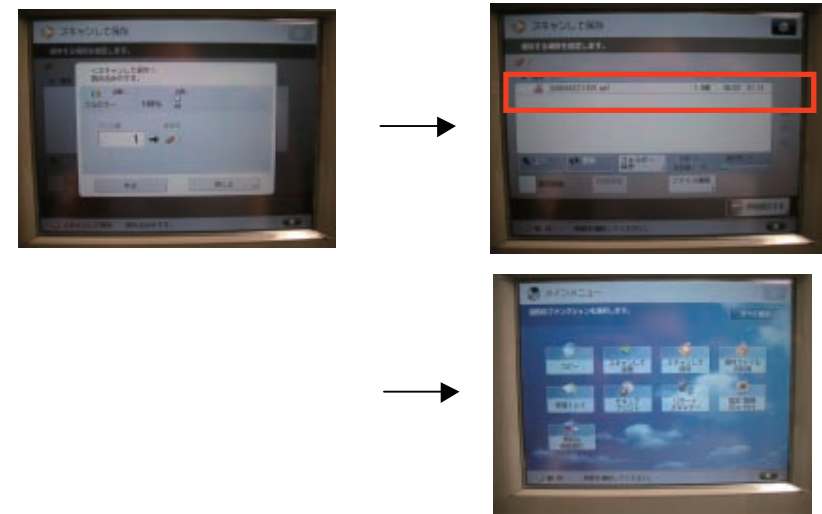
F-9-238

- 5) Set originals to ADF (or Copyboard), and press the [Scan] button. Then, press the Start button on the Control Panel..



F-9-239

- 6) After the completion of original reading, check that the data is stored in the media. After that, press the [Main Menu] button on the Control Panel.



F-9-240

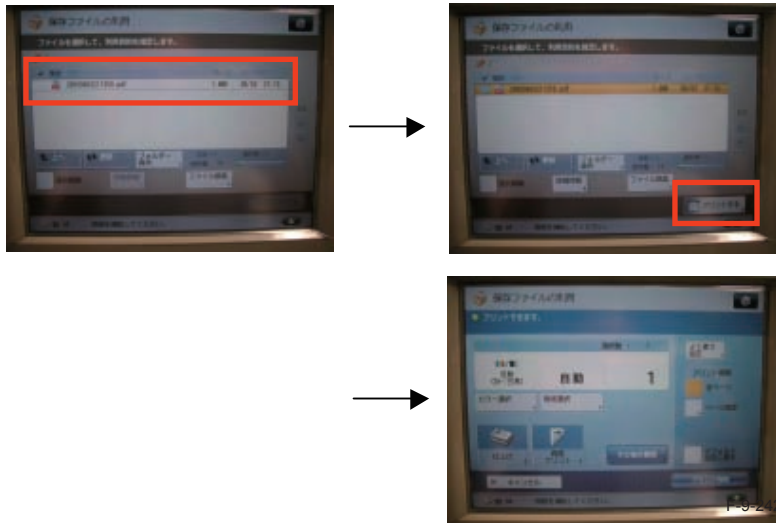
■ Reading Check

- 1) Make the following selection from Main Menu: [Access Stored Files] > [Memory Media] > [Memory Media(A:)]



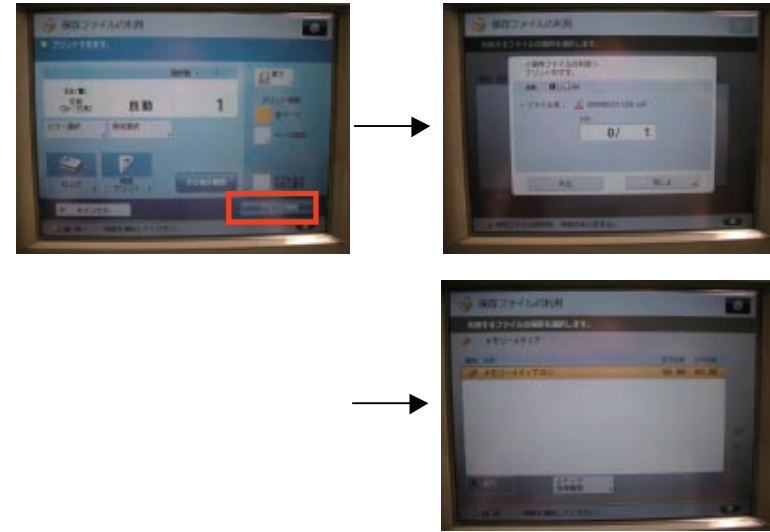
F-9-241

- 2) Select the files stored in step 6 of "Writing Check" and in step 1 of "Reading Check", and then press the [Print] button,



F-9-242

- 3) Press the [Start Printing] button, and print the file. Then check that the file is printed correctly.



F-9-243

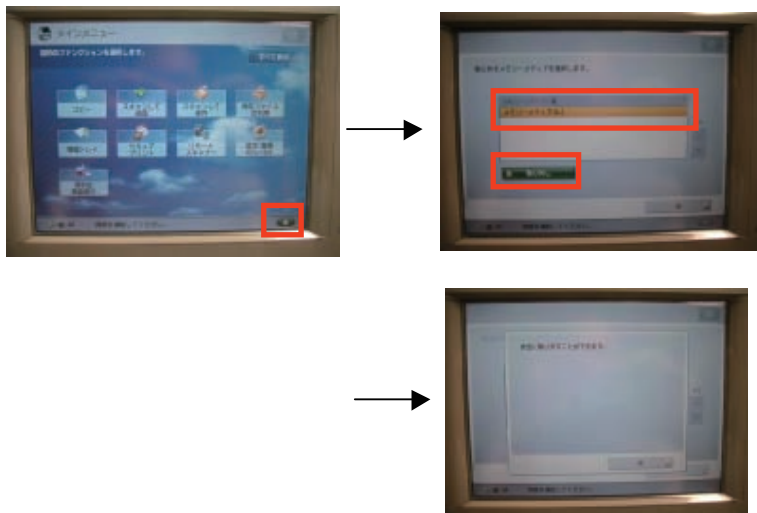
- 4) Press the [Main Menu] button on the Control Panel.



F-9-244

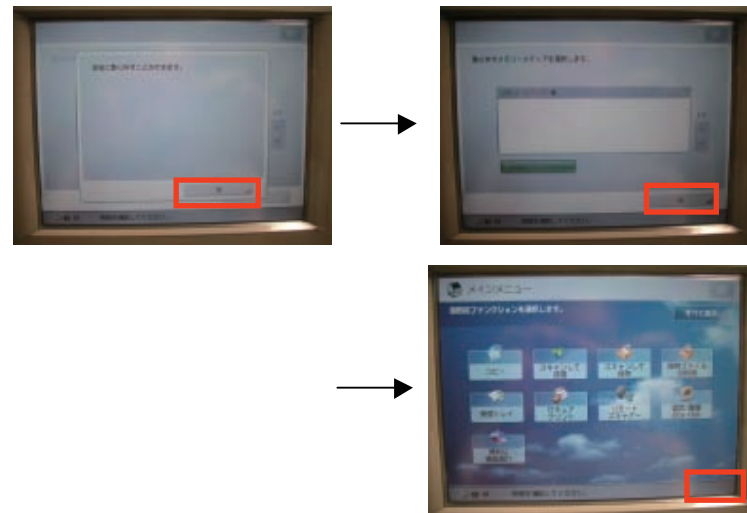
Memory Media Removal

- 1) Press the [Mount Mark] in the bottom right. Then, select the memory media to be removed, and press the [Remove] button.



F-9-245

- 2) Press the [OK] button. Then, check that the Mount Mark is not indicated in the bottom right on the Main Menu screen.



F-9-246

Voice Guidance Kit-F2

Points to Note when Installing

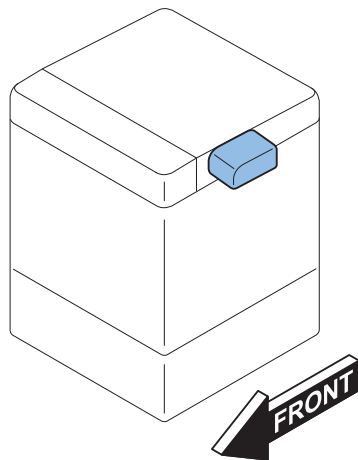
- The Color Image Reader is necessary to operate this equipment.
- When installing the equipment, see the 'Combination Table of Accessory Installation'.
- Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power is OFF.

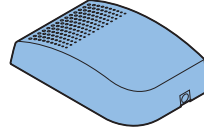
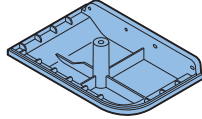
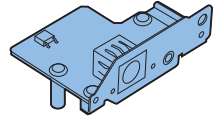
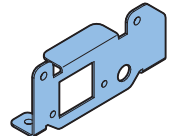
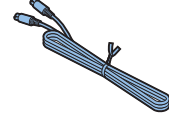
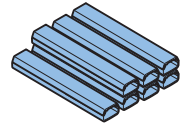
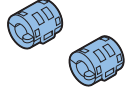







- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Installation Outline Drawing



F-9-247

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Speaker Unit (Upper) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Speaker Unit (Lower) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Voice Guidance Board Unit X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Support Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Speaker Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Cord Guide X 7 Use 3 of them 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Ring Core X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Cable Face Seal X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Card Spacer X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (Bind; M3x16) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (Bind; M4x6) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (TP; M3x6) X 4 Use 2 of them 
<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Screw (Bind; M4x16) X 2 Use 1 of them 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Screw (Bind; M4x20) X 2 	

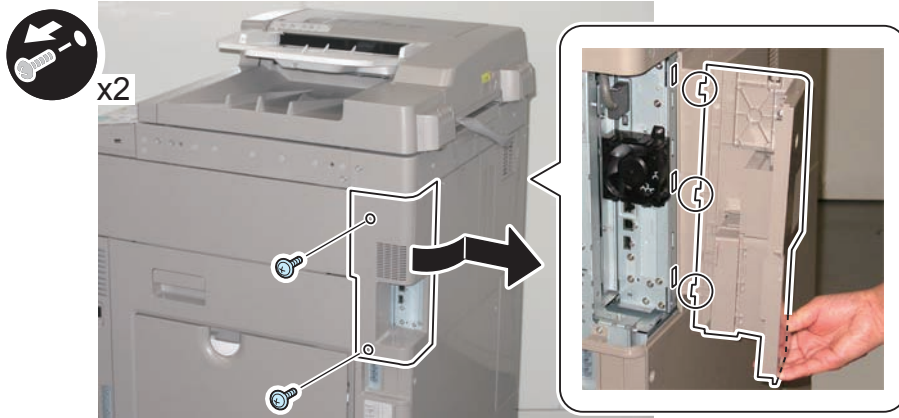
<CD/Guides>

- Voice Guidance Kit Users Guide
- Voice Guidance Guide CD
- FCC/IC Instruction Sheet

F-9-248

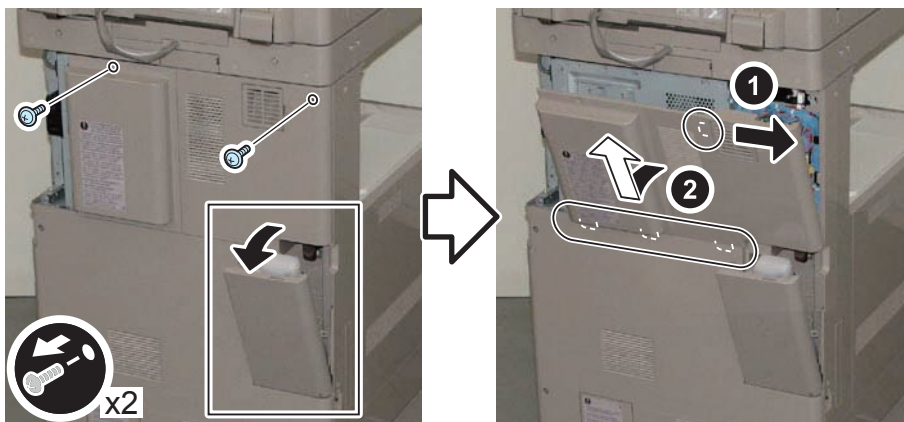
Installation Procedure

-
- 1) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
 - 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 18)
 - 3 Claws



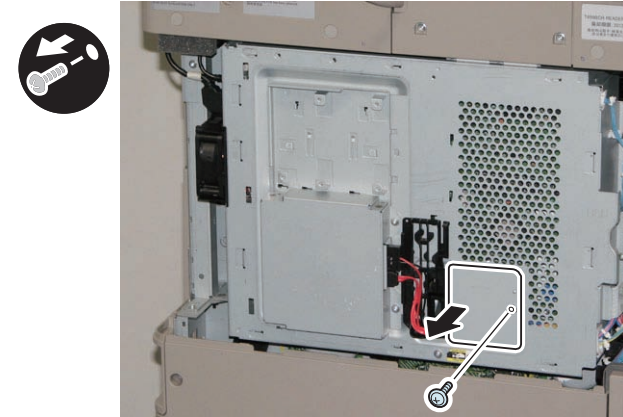
F-9-249

-
- 2) Remove the 2 screws on the Rear Upper Cover 1 and the HDD Cover, and remove the covers by opening the Waste Toner Cover.
 - 2 Screws
 - 4 Claws



F-9-250

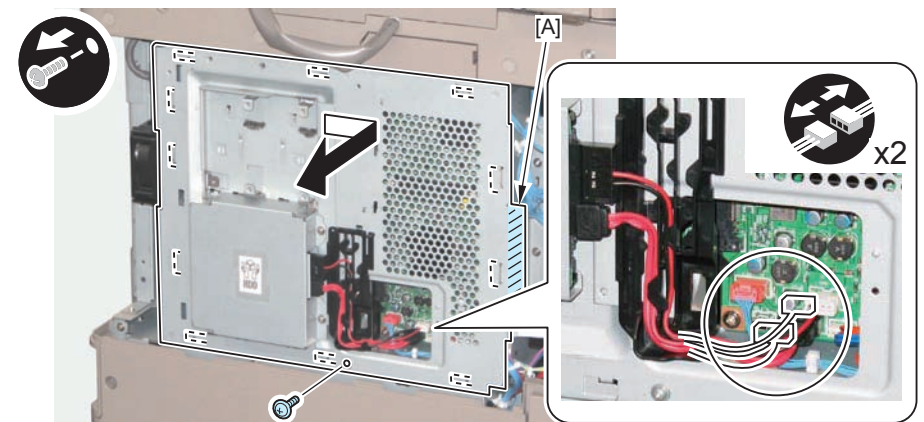
-
- 3) Remove the small cover of the Controller Box Cover.
 - 1 Screw



F-9-251

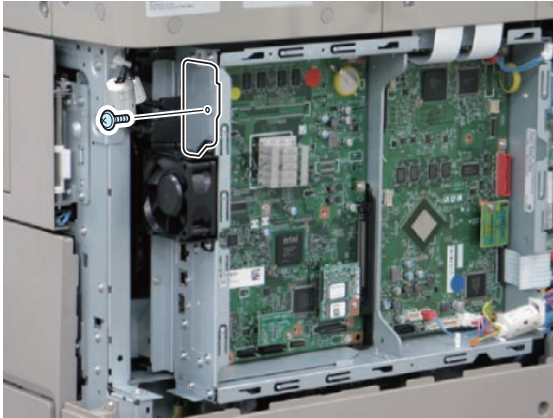
-
- 4) Remove the Controller Cover by holding [A] part.
 - 1 Screw
 - 2 Connectors (for the HDD model)

CAUTION:
When handling the hard disc, be careful not to vibrate or drop it.



F-9-252

- 5) Remove the Face Plate. (The removed Face Cover and screw will not be used).
- 1 Screw



F-9-253

- 6) Install the Card Spacer.

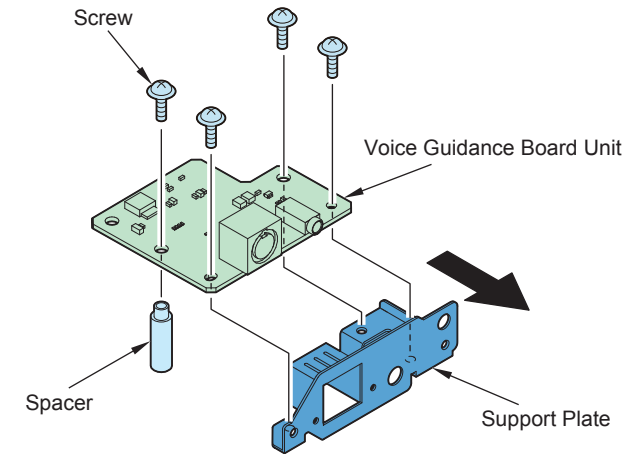


F-9-254

- 7) Remove the Support Plate and the Spacer from the Voice Guidance Board Unit.
- 4 Screws (The removed 2 screws will be used in step 8, and the other 2 screws will be used in step 9)
 - 1 Spacer (The removed Spacer will not be used).



x4

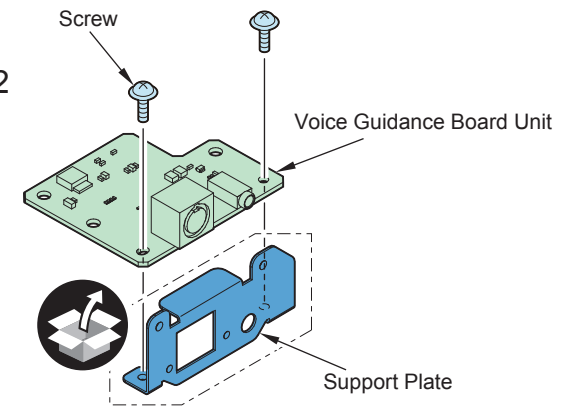


F-9-255

- 8) Install the Support Plate included in the package.
- 2 Screws (Use the screws removed in step 7)



x2



F-9-256

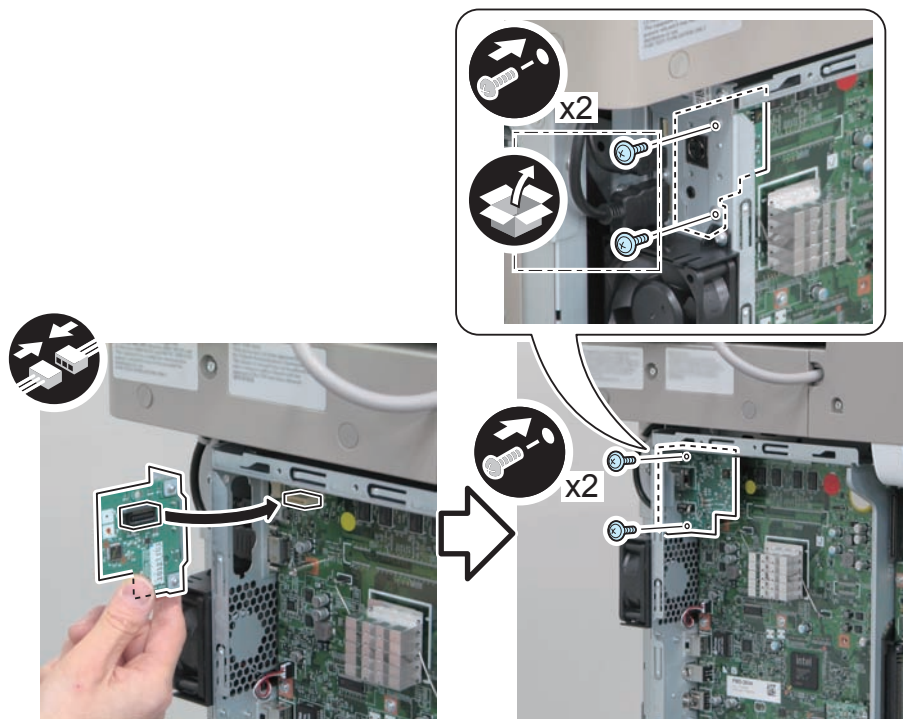


9) Install the Voice Guidance Board Unit.

- 2 Screws (Use the screws removed in step 7)
- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x6)

NOTE:

Check that the connector is connected properly.



F-9-257



10) Return the covers to their original position.

- Controller Cover (1 Screw)
- The small cover of the Controller Box Cover (1 Screw)
- HDD Cover and Rear Upper Cover 1 (2 Screws)
- Waste Toner Cover



11) Remove the Face Seal from the Reader Right Cover.

- 2 Face Seals (The removed Face Seal will not be used)

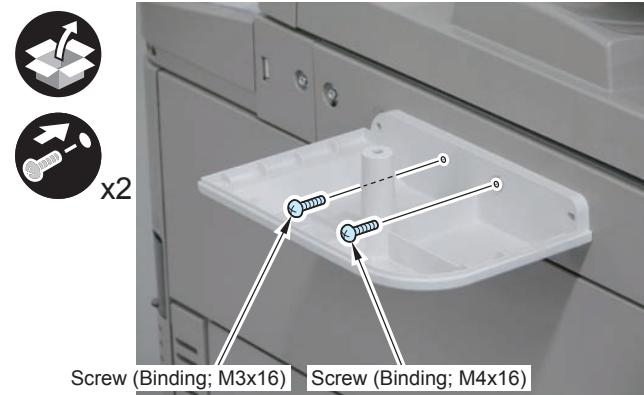


F-9-258



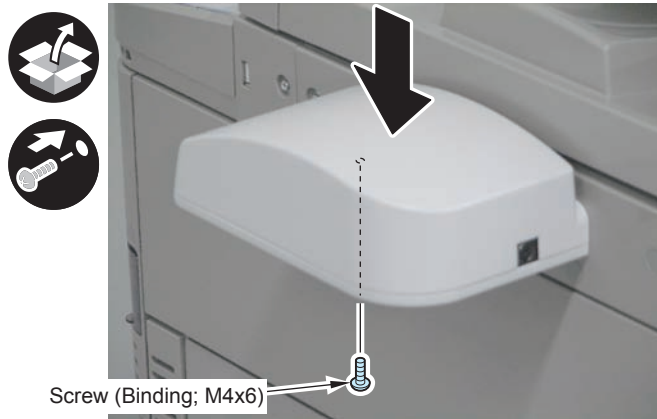
12) Install the Speaker Unit (Lower).

- 1 Screw (Binding; M3x16)
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x16)



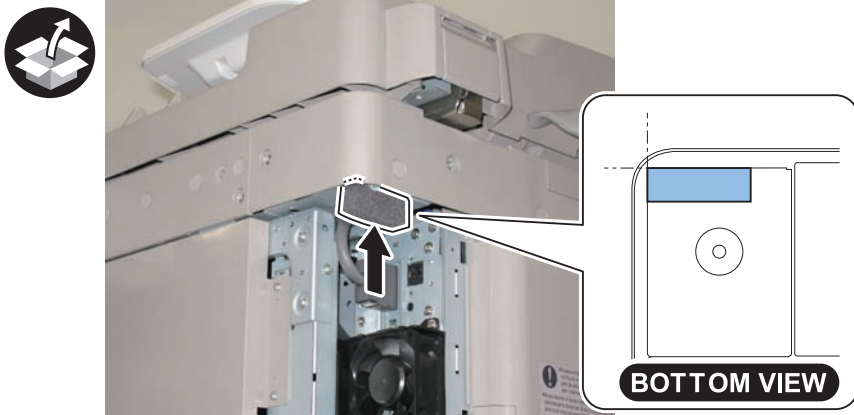
F-9-259

- 13) Install the Speaker Unit (Upper).
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x6)



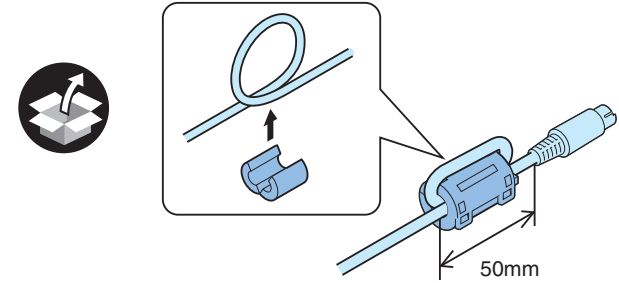
F-9-260

- 14) Affix the Cable Face Seal.



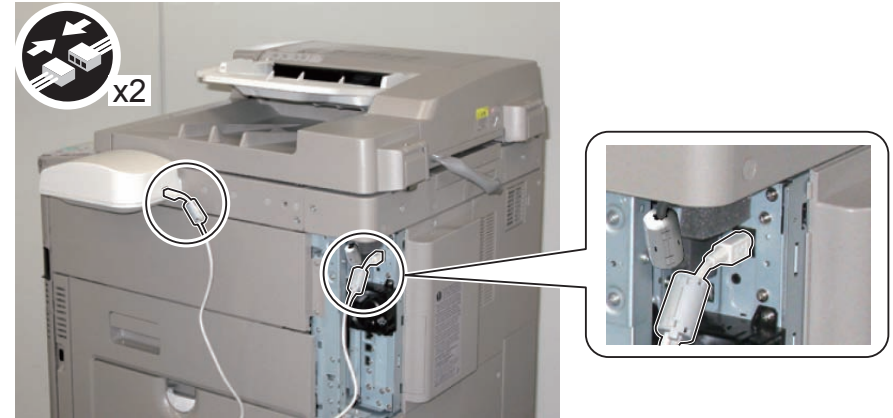
F-9-261

- 15) Install the Ring Cores to both ends of the Speaker Cable.



F-9-262

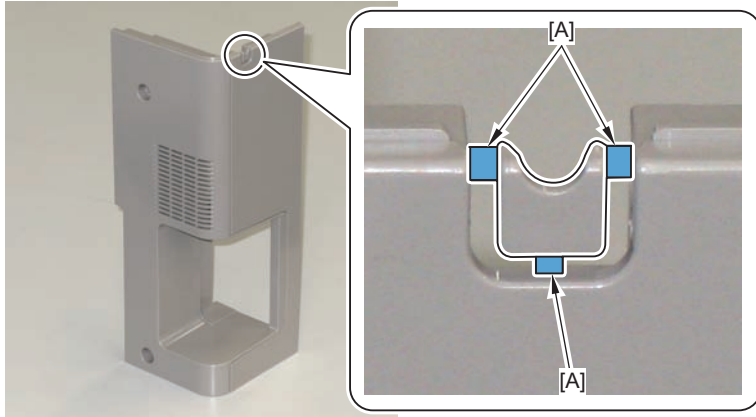
- 16) Connect the Speaker Cable to 2 points.



F-9-263

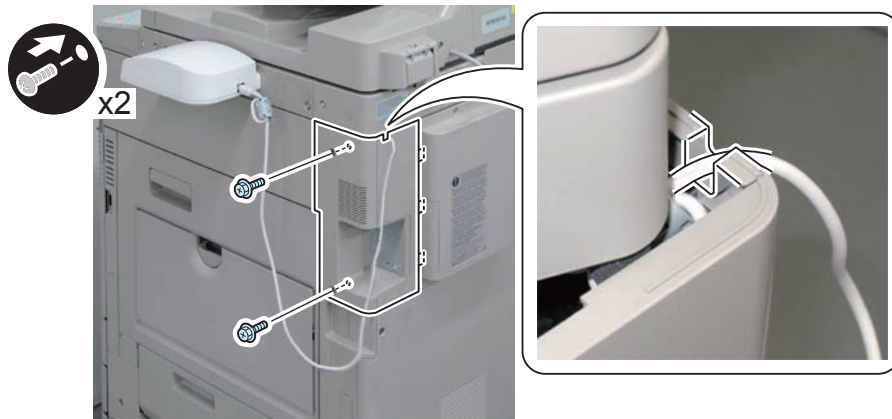
- 17) Cut off [A] part of the Right Upper Sub Cover with nippers.

NOTE:
When cutting off the part, be sure not to make burrs.



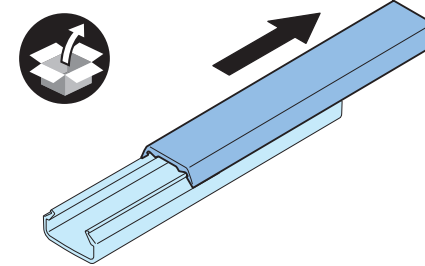
F-9-264

- 18) Put the Speaker Cable through the cut-off of the Right Upper Sub Cover, and return the cover to its original position.
- 2 Screws (Use the screws removed in step 1)



F-9-265

- 19) Remove the covers of 3 Cord Guides.



F-9-266

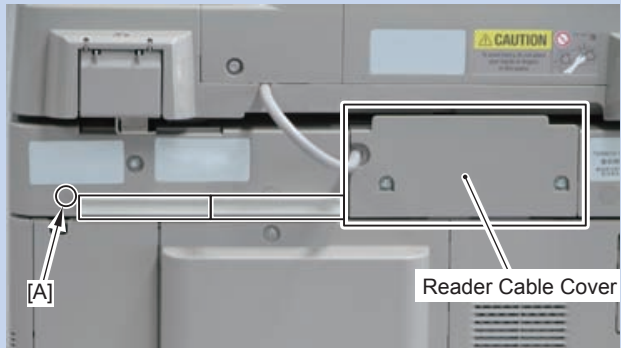
- 20) Remove the release paper from the Cord Guides, and affix the guides to the 3 areas indicated in the figure.
- 21) Put the Speaker Cable through the Cord Guides and install the covers of the guides.



F-9-267

NOTE:

- In the case of simultaneous installation with the Card Reader-C1, do not install the Cord Guide to the [A] part because the Wire Saddle (included in the package of the Card Reader) needs to be installed.
- Do not affix the cord guide on the Reader Cable Cover.



F-9-268

Checking the Settings

NOTE:

When changing the settings upon user's request, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions from the user administrator.



- 1) Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.
- 2) Turn ON the main power switch.
- 3) Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings > Use Voice Navigation, and check that the setting is ON.
- 4) Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings, and check that "Voice Guide from Speakers" is displayed.
- 5) To make the setting value effective, turn OFF/ON the main power of the Host Machine.

Operation Check

■ When Using



- 1) Press "Reset" key for more than 3 seconds.
- 2) Press "Main Menu" on the Control Panel.
- 3) Once the indication on the screen is framed in red, the "Voice Guidance Kit" becomes enabled.

■ When Stopping to Use



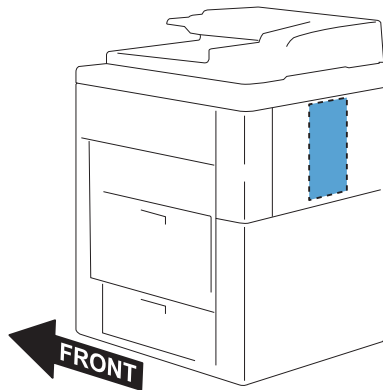
- 1) Press "Reset" key for more than 3 seconds.

Document Scan Lock-Kit

Points to Note at Installation

- To enable the function of Image Data Analyzer Board, it is necessary to install the license which comes with the product.
- Be sure to ask users to install the license after the installation.
- Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.

Installation Outline Drawing



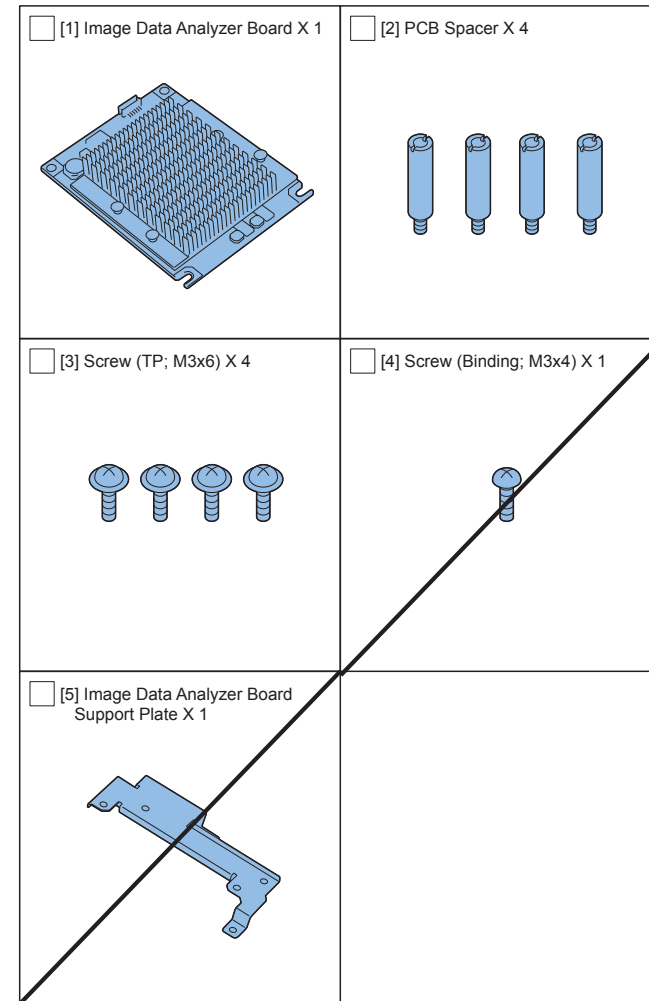
F-9-269

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power is OFF.

- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Checking the Contents



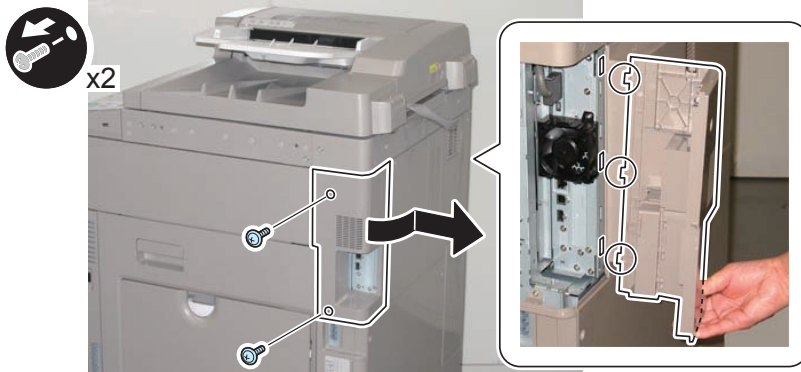
F-9-270

< CD/Guides >

- License Access Number Certificate
- Document Scan Code Analyzer for MEAP CD
- FCC/IC sheet (only for USA/Europe)
- Notice for Delivered Installation sheet

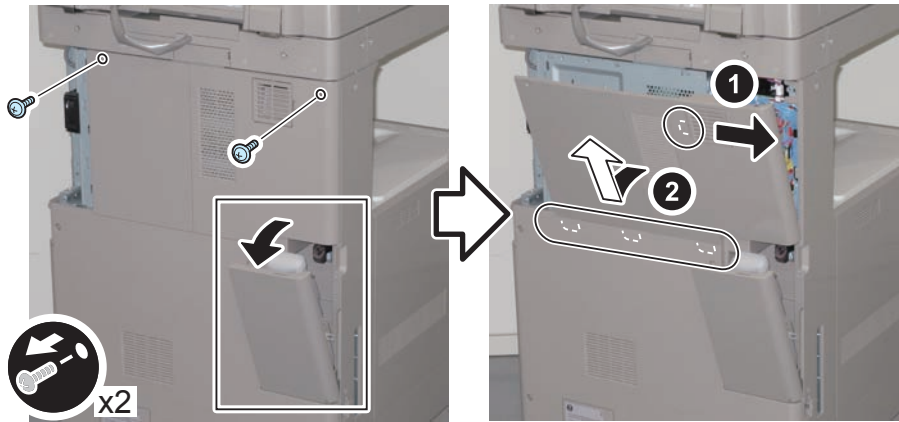
Installation Procedure

- 1) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
 - 2 Screws
 - 3 Claws



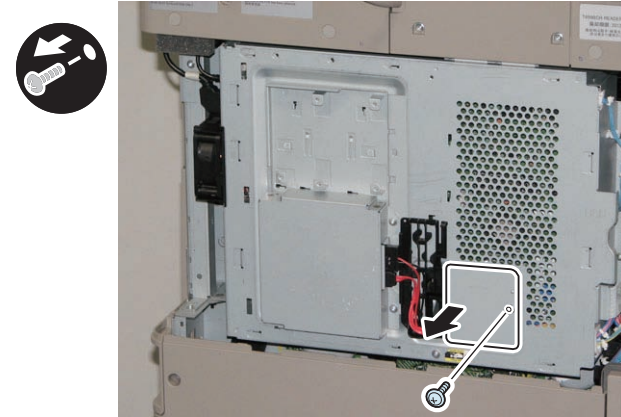
F-9-271

- 2) Remove the 2 screws on the Rear Upper Cover, and remove the covers by opening the Waste Toner Cover.
 - 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 9.)
 - 4 Claws



F-9-272

- 3) Remove the Small Cover of the Controller Box Cover. (Only when an HDD is installed)
 - 1 Screw



F-9-273

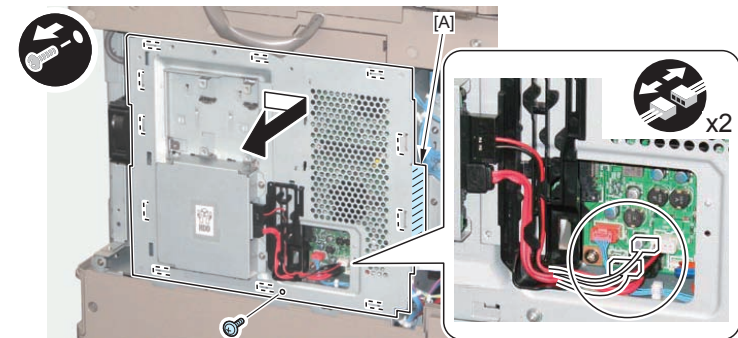
- 4) Remove the Controller Box Cover.
 - 1 Screw
 - 2 Connectors (Only when an HDD is installed)

CAUTION:

When handling the HDD, be careful not to vibrate or drop it.

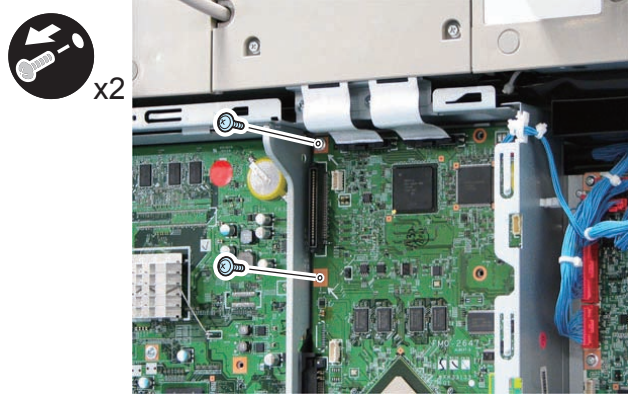
NOTE:

Be sure to hold the [A] part and slide the cover in the direction of the arrow.



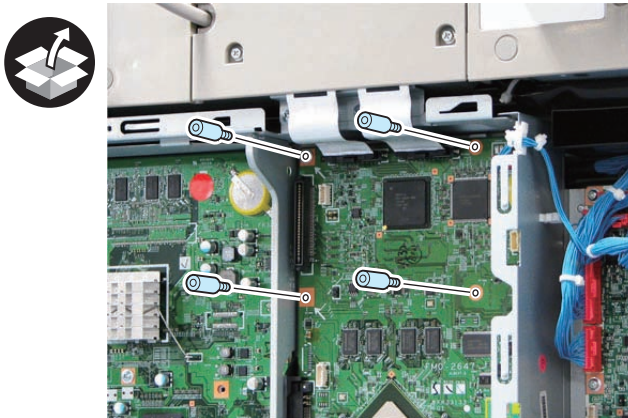
F-9-274

- 5) Remove the 2 screws. (The removed screws will not be used.)



F-9-275

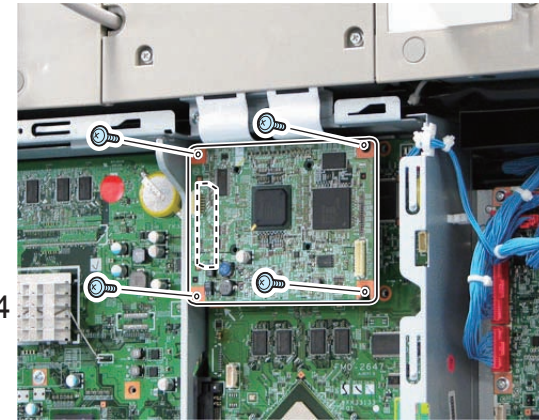
- 6) Install the 4 PCB Spacers.



F-9-276

- 7) Install the Image Data Analyzer Board.

- 1 Connector
- 4 Screws (TP; M3x6)



F-9-277

- 8) Return the covers to their original position.

- Controller box Cover (1 Screw)
- 2 Connectors (Only when an HDD is installed)
- Small Cover of the Controller Box Cover (Only when an HDD is installed) (1 Screw)
- Rear Upper Cover (2 Screws)
- Waste Toner Cover.
- Right Upper Sub Cover (2 Screws)

● Checking after Installation

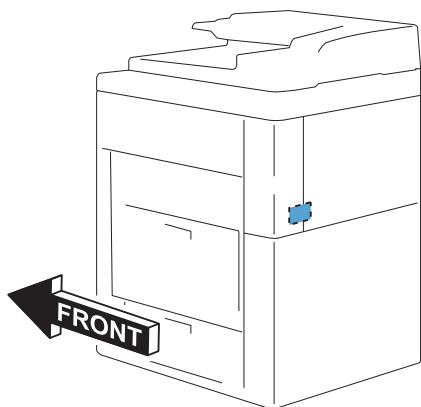
-
- 1)»Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.
 - 2)»Turn ON the main power switch.
 - 3)»Ask users to install license.
 - 4)»Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
 - 5)»Press the counter check key on the control panel.
 - 6)»Press [Check Device Configuration].
 - 7)»Check that "Image Data Analyzer Board" is displayed in option field.

Serial Interface KIT-K1/Copy Control Interface KIT-A1

Points to Note at Installation

- To use this equipment with the Expansion Bus-F1, IP Sec Board-B2 and wireless LAN Board-B1, be sure to install the Serial Interface Kit-K1 or Copy Control Interface Kit-A1 beforehand.
- [Serial Interface Kit-K1] and [Control Interface Kit-A1] cannot be used concurrently.
- If the desired model is not described in this document, refer to the installation procedure of the host machine to be connected.

Installation Outline Drawing



F-9-278

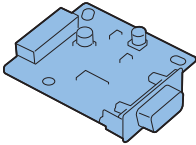

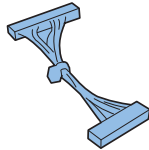
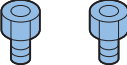

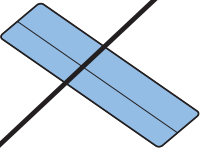
Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power switch is OFF.

- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
- 2) Be sure that Control Panel Display and Main Power Lamp are both turned OFF, and then disconnect the power plug.

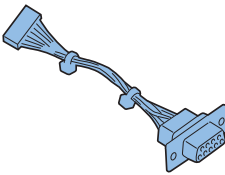
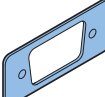

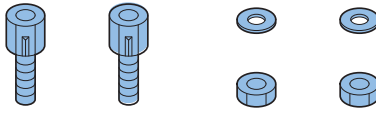
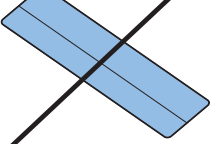
Checking the Contents

Serial Interface KIT-K1

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Serial RS Conversion Board X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] PCB Spacer X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] RS Conversion Cable X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Hexagonal Screw X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Washer X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] IA Harness Protection Sheet X 1 

F-9-279

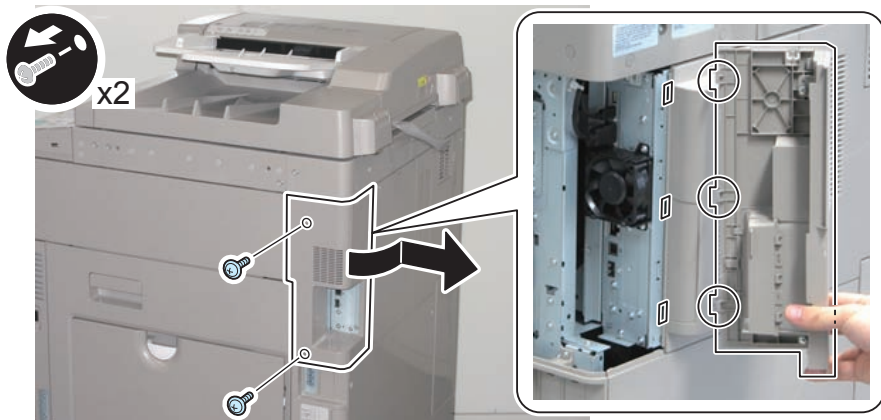
Copy Control Interface KIT-A1

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] CC-VI Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] D-SUB Support Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Washer (large) X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Hexagonal Screw (Washer (Small) ,Nut) X 2 Do not use a Nut 		<input type="checkbox"/> [5] IA Harness Protection Sheet X 1 

F-9-280

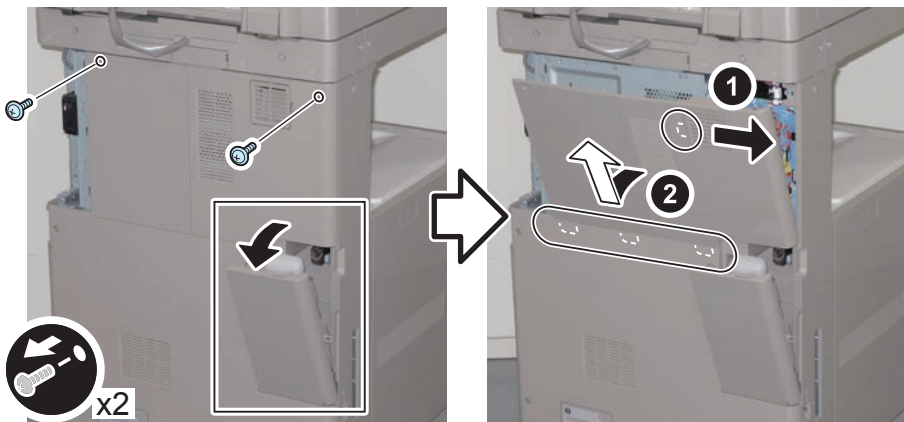
Installation Procedure

- 1) Remove the Right Upper Sub Cover.
 - 2 Screws
 - 3 Claws



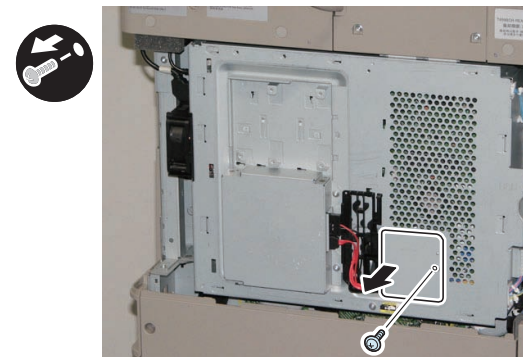
F-9-281

- 2) Remove the 2 screws on the Rear Upper Cover, and remove the covers by opening the Waste Toner Cover.
 - 4 Claws



F-9-282

- 3) Remove the Small Cover of the Controller Box Cover. (Only when an HDD is installed)
 - 1 Screw



F-9-283

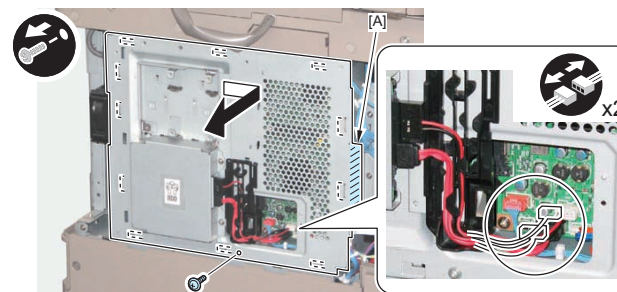
- 4) Remove the Controller Box Cover.
 - 2 Screws (Only when an HDD is installed)
 - 1 Screw

CAUTION:

When handling the HDD, be careful not to vibrate or drop it.

NOTE:

Be sure to hold the [A] part and slide the cover in the direction of the arrow.



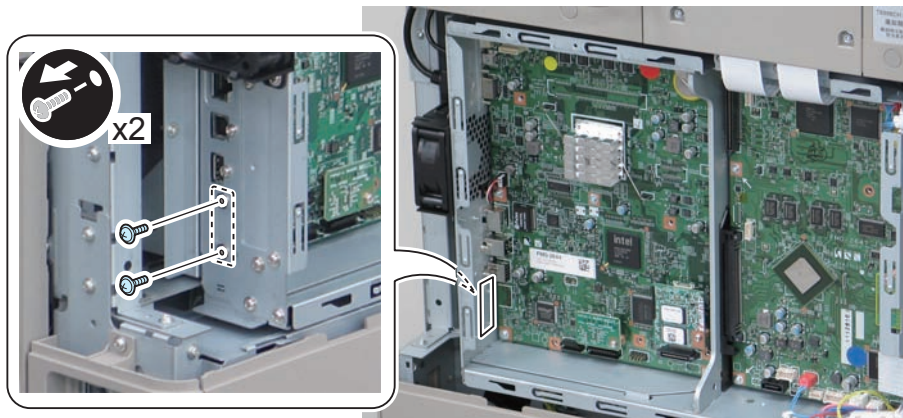
F-9-284

When Installing the Serial Interface Kit-K1



1) Remove the Face Plate. (The removed Face Plate will not be used.)

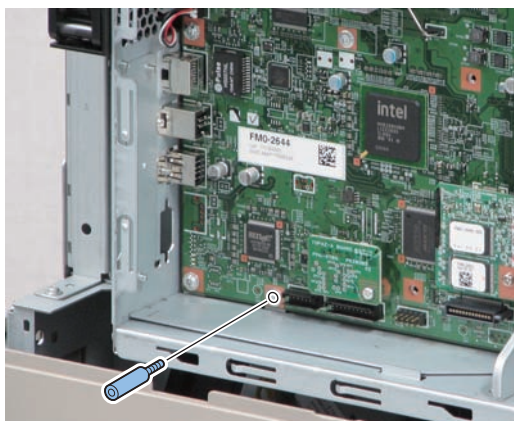
- 2 Screws (One of the removed screws will be used in step 4, and the other will not be used.)



F-9-285



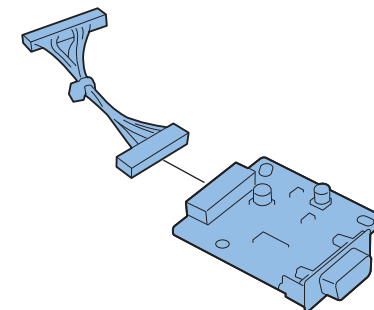
2) Install the PCB Spacer.



F-9-286



3) Connect the RS Conversion Cable to the Serial RS Conversion Board.



F-9-287

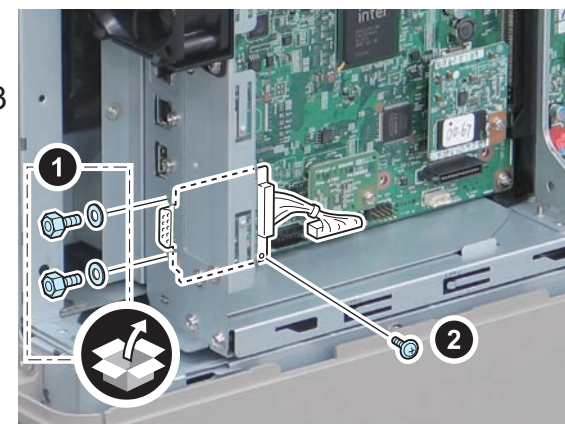


4) Install the Serial RS Conversion Board.

- 2 Hexagon Screws
- 2 Washers
- 1 Screw (Use one of the screws removed in step 1.)
- 1 Connector



x3



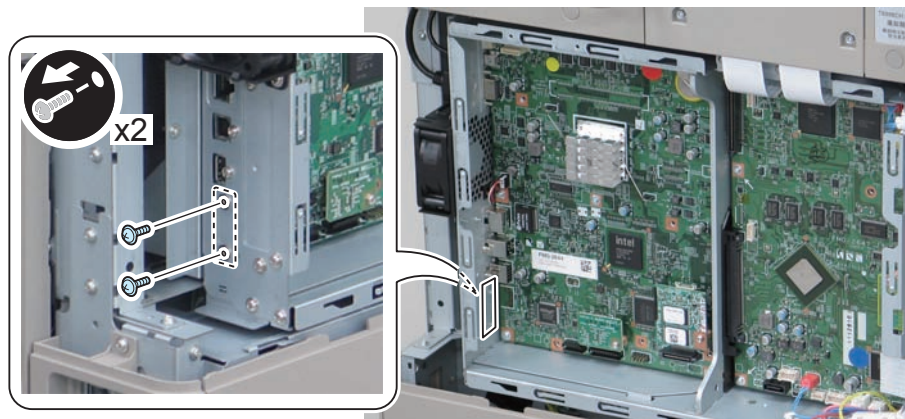
F-9-288

When Installing the Copy Control Interface Kit-A1



1) Remove the Face Plate. (The removed Face Plate will not be used.)

- 2 Screws (The removed screws will not be used.)



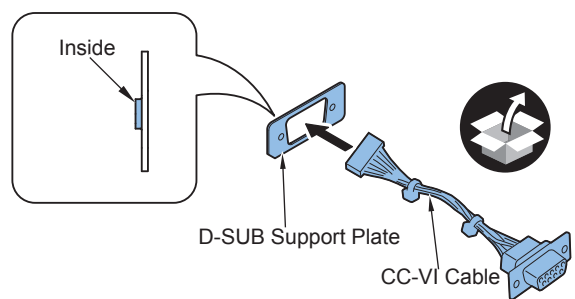
F-9-289



2) Put the CC-VI Cable through the D-SUB Support Plate.

CAUTION:

Install the extruded side of the D-SUB Support Plate as shown in the figure.

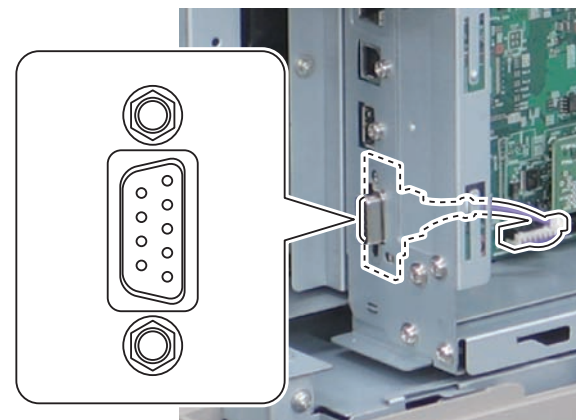


F-9-290

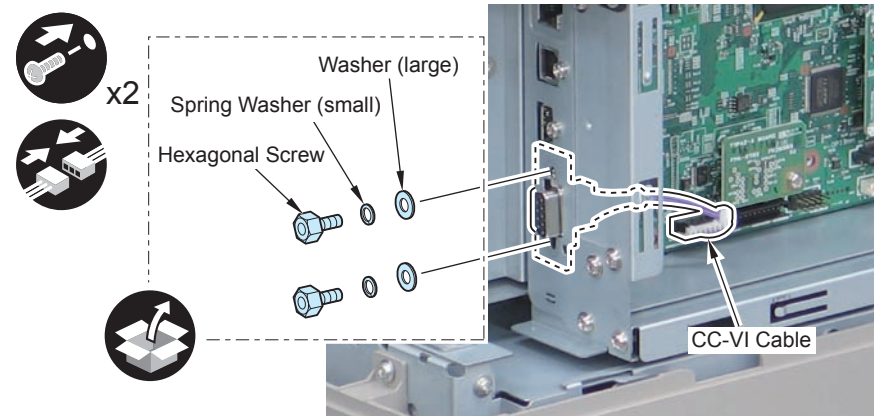


3) Connect the CC-VI Cable to the Main Controller PCB.

- 2 Hexagon Screws (Nuts will not be used.)
- 2 Spring Washers (Small)
- 2 Washers (Large)
- 1 Connector



F-9-291



F-9-292

After Installation



1) Return the covers to their original position.

- Controller Box Cover (1 Screw)
- 2 Connectors (Only when an HDD is installed)
- Small Cover of the Controller Box Cover (Only when an HDD is installed) (1 Screw)
- Rear Upper Cover (2 Screws)
- Waste Toner Box
- Right Upper Sub Cover (2 Screws)



2) Connect the power plug to the outlet.

3) Turn ON the main power switch.

Combination of HDD Options

HDD When installing the HDD options (3 products indicated below), refer to the pages indicated in the following table.

- 2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2
- HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3
- Removable HDD Kit-AE1

CAUTION:

After installing the HDD Data Encryption Kit, the system software must be install.

Reference Pages in the Manual According to Product Combination

Title.	Combination of Product	Reference Pages
TYPE-1	2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2	p. 9-115
TYPE-2	HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3	p. 9-123
TYPE-3	Removable HDD Kit-AE1	p. 9-132
TYPE-4	Removable HDD Kit-AE1 /HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3	p. 9-143

T-9-6

Points to Note Regarding Data Backup/Export

Before performing work that will result in the loss of data, inform the system administrator of the inevitable loss, asking him to make a backup or export of important data items.

Backup or export work must not be performed by the service person because of security considerations.

In this Installation Procedure, a series of backup or export procedures are described for reference.

[List of Data to be Deleted]

Data to be Deleted	Availability of Backup
Information registered in the Address Book	Yes
Settings made from the Settings/Registration screen	Yes *1
Forwarding Settings	Yes
License files for MEAP applications	Yes
MEAP applications	No
Data saved using MEAP applications	Yes *2
Favorite Settings registered in the Copy and Mail Box functions	No
Scan modes registered in the Send Function	No
Unsent documents (documents waiting to be sent with the Delayed Send mode)	No
Image forms stored in the Superimpose Image	Yes
MEAP SMS (Service Management Service) password (the password will return to its default password if it was changed)	No
Job logs	No
User authentication information registered in the Local Device Authentication user authentication system of SSO-H (Single Sign-On H)	Yes
Registration information for the Network Place	No
Key Pair and Server Certificate	No
Log information for the IP address/MAC address restriction settings	No
Password that is protected by TPM	Yes *3
Encryption key that is protected by TPM	No
Information for Web browser settings	Yes *4
Quick Menu Information	Yes

T-9-7

*1 Can only be backed up using the Remote UI.

*2 Depending on the MEAP application.

*3 You may not be able to back up, depending on the type of the password.

*4 Only the stored Favorite Settings can be backed up.

[List of Data that can be backed up]

Data that can be backed up	Reference
Address Book	See the "e-Manual > Remote UI".
Settings/Registration settings	
Device Settings	
Printer Settings	
Paper Information	
Image forms stored in the Superimpose Image	
Quick Menu Information	
Favorite Settings for Web browser	See the e-Manual > Web Access. (You can select this if web browser (Option) is installed.)
License files for MEAP applications	For information on downloading license files, see the "e-Manual > MEAP".
Data saved by MEAP applications	Data saved by MEAP applications may be able to be backed up, depending on the MEAP application. See the documentation included with the MEAP application.
SSO-H (Single Sign-On H) user authentication information	see the "e-Manual > MEAPI".

T-9-8

CAUTION: Work to Perform After Installing the Kit

- If you have logged on to the machine using a login service, such as SSO-H (Single Sign-On H) before using this product, you must select the login service again using SMS (Service Management Service) after restarting the machine. For more information on using SMS, see the e-Manual > MEAP.

Making a Backup of the Data (reference only)

The data items that have been backed up may be restored when the HDD Data Encryption & Mirroring Kit-C Series has been installed.

These data items are property of the user, and the restoration work must be performed by the system administrator.

The method of restoration is described in the Users Guide. See Table T-1-2/T-1-4 (Data to be backed up) in Points to Note About Installation of the Installation Procedure.

■ Procedure for Import/Export ALL of User Settings

Following data can be batch exported.

- Address Book
- Settings/Registration settings
- Device Settings (Forwarding Settings, Address List, Favorite Settings)
- Printer Settings
- Paper Information
- Image forms stored in the Superimpose Image
- Quick Menu Information

1) Access the URL given below, and then access Remote UI.

[http://\[IP address of the device\]/](http://[IP address of the device]/)

If the system administrator ID and password are set, a dialog box to enter the user name and password appears. Enter the system administrator ID in User Name and the password in Password, and then click [Administrator Login].

2) Select [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [Data Management] > [Import/Export ALL] > [Export].

3) Select items to export.

CAUTION:

When exporting only specific items, this may cause setting information relating to multiple items to lose its relations and cause setting details to be switched. In this case, export all related items simultaneously.

4) Enter the password into [Encryption Password] and click on [Start Exporting].

5) Click [Check Status].

6) Check the batch export result.

■ Backup of MEAP Application

When a MEAP application has been installed, the data and license that the MEAP application retains will be deleted. If no MEAP application is installed, there is no need to make a backup. If a MEAP application has a backup function, make a backup of the data peculiar to the MEAP application using this function. With regard to the license, there is a need to stop all applications from SMS (Service Management Service), invalidate the license, and download the invalid license file.

The overview of procedures for stop of MEAP applications, Disabling of the license, and download of an Disabled license file is described below. For more information, see the MEAPSMS Administrator Guide

■ Stop of MEAP Applications, Disabling, Download of Disabled License Files and Uninstallation

- 1) Select the URL given below and access SMS.
[http://\[IP address of the device\]:8000/sms/](http://[IP address of the device]:8000/sms/)
 The default password is MeapSmsLogin. If a user has changed the password, ask the user to change the password again after the use of this product is started.

CAUTION:

The default password is MeapSmsLogin. If a user has changed the password, ask the user to change the password again after the use of this product is started.

- 2) Click [MEAP Application Management].
- 3) Click [Stop] button of the application you want to stop on the MEAP Application Management page.
- 4) Check the status of MEAP Application is [Stop],
- 5) Click on the name of applications to disable.
- 6) Click [License Control], and then click [Disable].
- 7) Click [Yes] in a confirmation window for disabling the license.
- 8) Return to the MEAP Application Management page and click on the appropriate application names.
- 9) Click [License Management] on the Application/License Information page.
- 10) Click [Download].

- 11) Following the instructions on the window, specify the location to save the file. Set a distinctive name for the disabled license file so that you can recognize it for which application. After you download the disabled license file to your PC, click [Delete]. Click [Yes] in a confirmation window for license deletion.
- 12) Return to the MEAP Application Management page, click [Uninstall] button of the application you want to uninstall. Click [Yes] in a confirmation window for uninstallation. If there are several applications, repeat the procedures 1) to 7).
- 13) After the use of this product is started, re-install the application using an application file (jar file) of each application from SMS and the disabled license file (lic file).

■ User Authentication Information Registered by SSO-H (Single Sign-ON Hybrit)

In the case that the MEAP login application has been changed to SSO-H, there is a need to make a backup of the user authentication information.

- 1) Access the URL given below.
[http://\[IP address of the device\]:8000/sso/](http://[IP address of the device]:8000/sso/)
- 2) Login with the user name and password registered as an administrator in SSO-H.
 The default administrator user name and password are as follows:
 User Name: Administrator
 Password: password
- 3) Click [User Control].
- 4) Put a checkmark to Select All, and then click [Export].
- 5) Leave the file format and character code as defaults and click [Start Export].
- 6) Following the instructions on the window, specify the location to save the file and click [Save].

TYPE-1: 2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2 Installation Procedure







Points to note before installation

CAUTION:

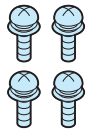
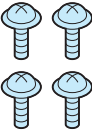

- When handling the HDD, be careful not to vibrate or drop it.
- Be sure to prepare a USB memory for upgrading created with SST.
- In the case of installing the HDD, be sure to back up the data in the flash memory by way of precaution.
- Be sure to perform license registration after installing the HDD.
 - In the case of registering using LMS (License Management System), be sure to obtain a license key in advance.
 - In the case of registering using CDS (Contents Delivery System), be sure that internet connection is available.
- Be sure to delete the data on the flash memory after installing HDD.
 - [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [Data Management] > [Delete Old Data]

Checking the Contents

2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Hard Disc X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Expansion HDD Unit X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Signal Cable (FK2-9248) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Power Cable (FK2-9239) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] HDD Cable Holder X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] HDD Cover X 1 

F-9-293

<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Screw (W Sems ; M3x4) X 4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Screw (TP ; M3x6) X 4 
<input type="checkbox"/> [10] HDD Shield Cover X 1 	

F-9-294

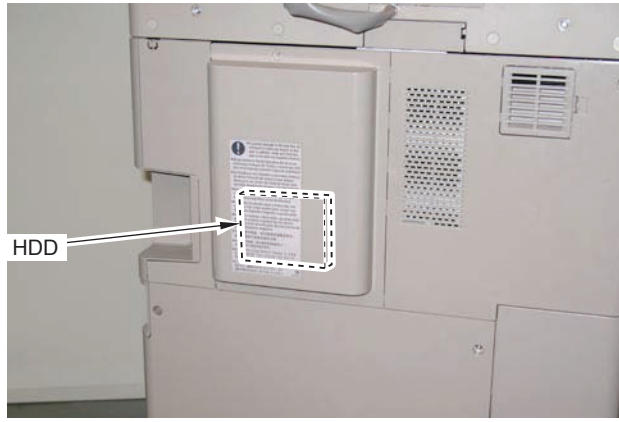
<CD/Guide>

- License Access Number Certificate Data

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

- Check that the main power is OFF.
- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
 - 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Installation Outline Drawing



F-9-295

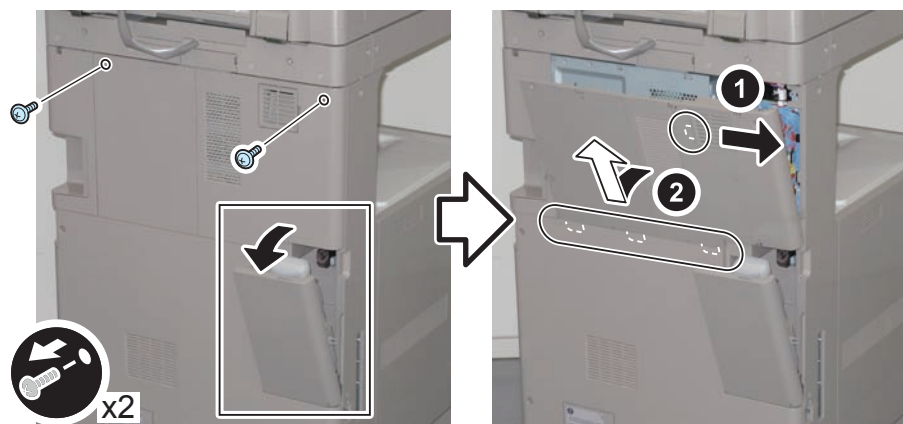
Installation Procedure

Removing the Covers



- 1) Remove the 2 screws securing the Rear Upper Cover 1 and the Rear Upper Cover 2. (The removed screws will be used in step 6 of "Installing the Covers".)
- 2) Open the Waste Toner Cover.
- 3) Remove the Rear Upper Covers (Rear Upper Cover 1 and Rear Upper Cover 2) in the directions of the arrows (The removed cover will be used in step 4 of "Installing the Covers".).

- 4 Claws

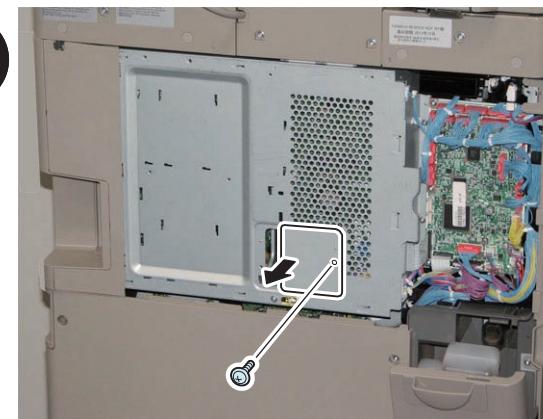


F-9-296



- 4) Remove the small cover of the Controller Box Cover. (The removed cover will be used in step 3 of "Installing the Covers".)

- 1 Screw



F-9-297

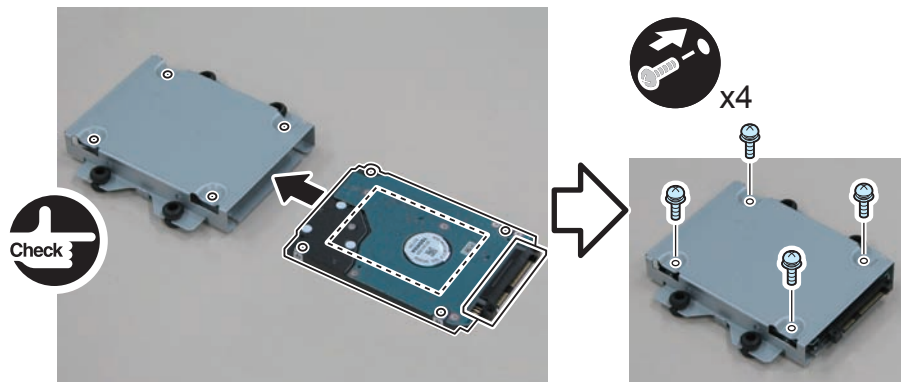
Installing the HDD



- 1) Install the HDD to the Expansion HDD Unit.
 - 4 Screws (W Sems; M3x4)

NOTE:

Be sure to insert the HDD with its label side down and its connector in the direction as shown in the figure, and align its 4 screw holes with those of the Expansion HDD Unit.



F-9-298



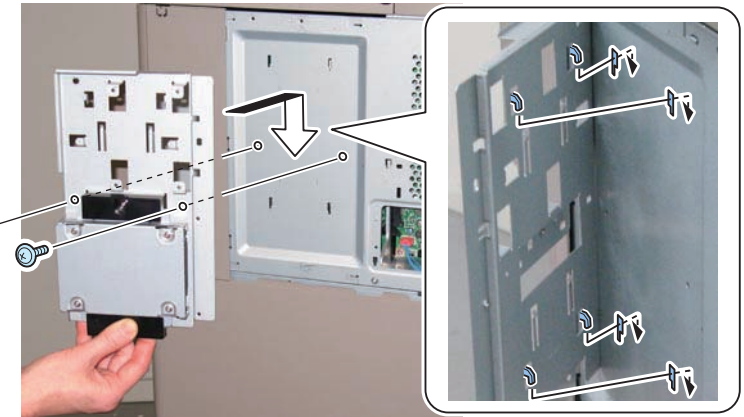
- 2) Install the Expansion HDD Unit.
 - 4 Claws
 - 2 Screws (TP; M3x6)



x4



x2



F-9-299



- 3) Install the HDD Cable Holder.
 - 3 Hooks
 - 1 Boss

CAUTION:

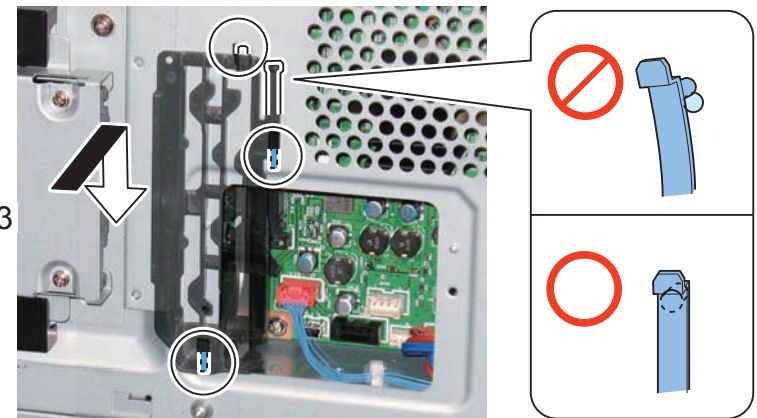
Be sure that the boss is fitted properly.



x3



Check

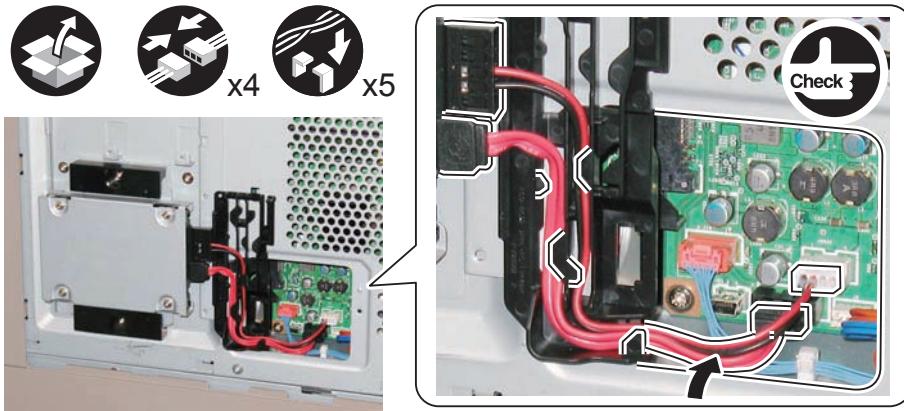


F-9-300

-
- 4) Secure the Signal Cable (FK2-9248) and the Power Cable (FK2-9239) with the HDD Cable Holder.
- 4 Connectors

CAUTION:

If there is extra slack of the cables, be sure to tuck them in the Controller Box.



F-9-301

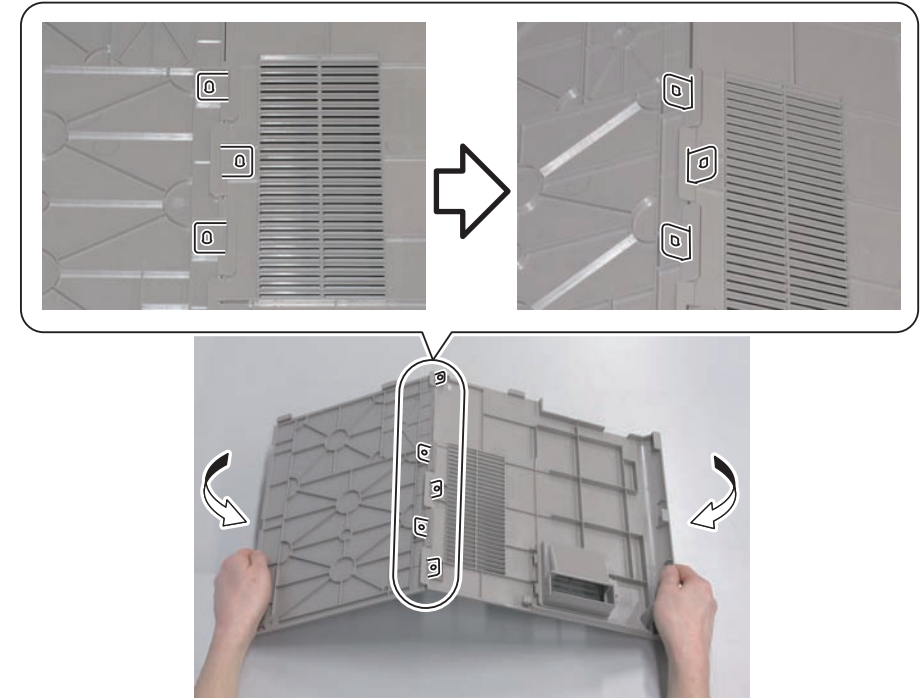
-
- 5) Install the HDD Shield Cover.
- 8 Claws
 - 2 Screws (TP; M3x6)



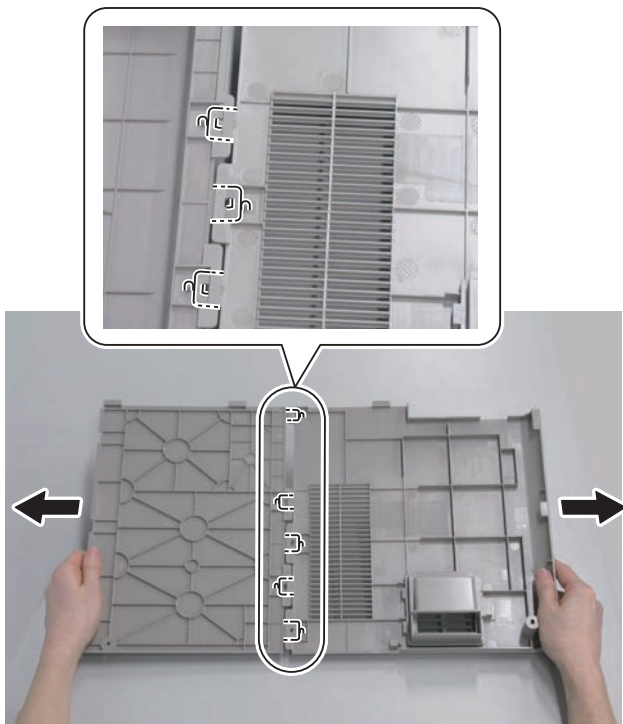
F-9-302

Installing the Covers

-
- 1) Separate the Rear Upper Cover 1 and the Rear Upper Cover 2 by bending them to release the 5 bosses. (The separated Rear Upper Cover 2 will not be used.)



F-9-303



F-9-304

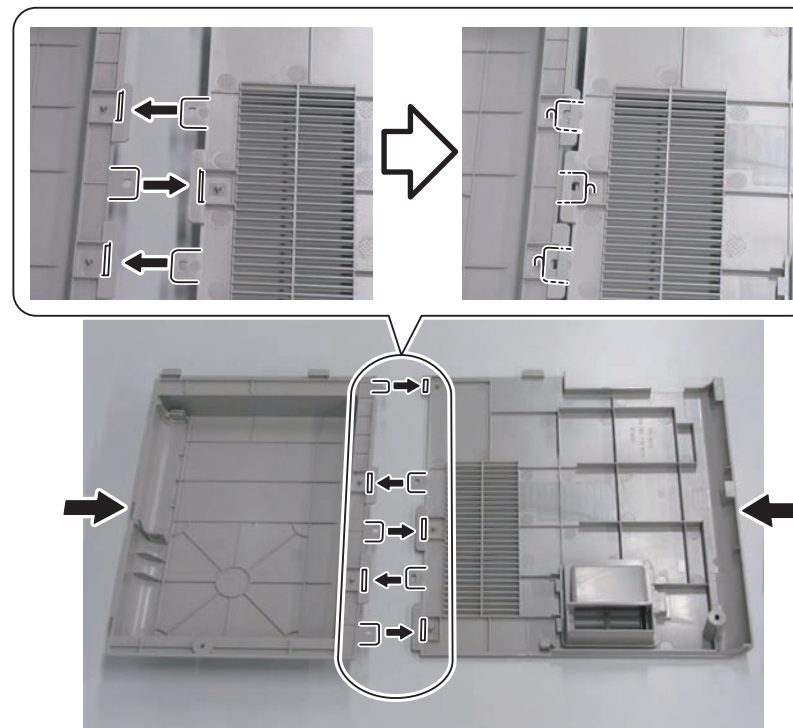


2) Join the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1.

- 5 bosses



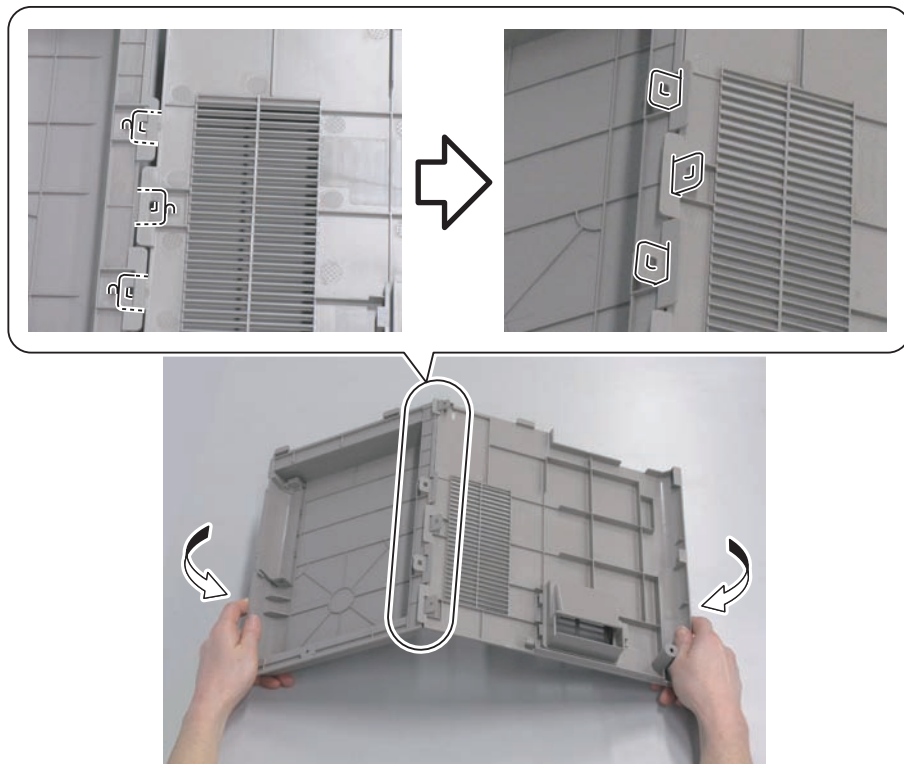
2-1) Put the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1 on a desk and insert the claws keeping them on the same level.



F-9-305



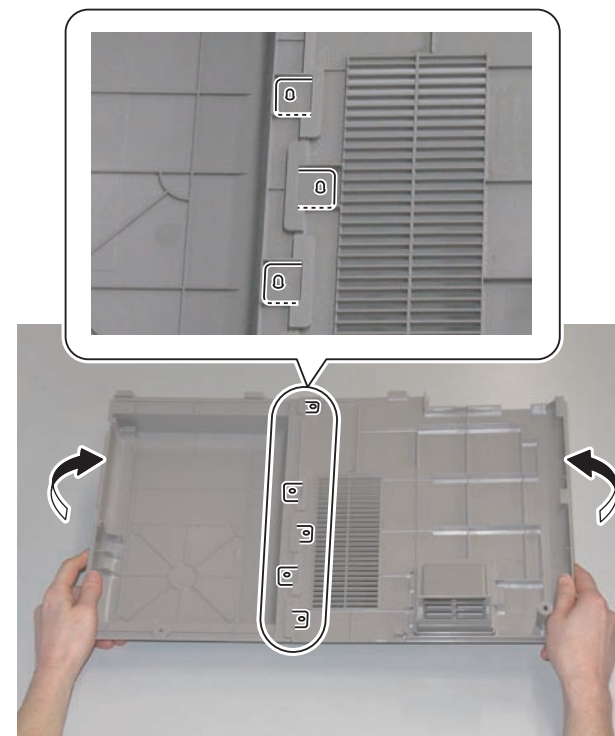
2-2) Bend the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1 to further insert the claws.



F-9-306



2-3) Flatten the bent HDD Cover and Rear Upper Cover 1 to fit the claws into the 5 bosses.



F-9-307



- 3) Install the small cover of the Controller Box Cover (1 Screw).
- 4) Install the Rear Upper Cover (Rear Upper Cover 1 and HDD Cover).
- 5) Close the Waste Toner Cover.
- 6) Tighten the screws securing the Rear Upper Cover 1 and HDD Cover. (Use the 2 screws removed in "Removing the Covers" step 1.)

Setting after Installation



- 1) Connect the power plug to the outlet.
- 2) Turn ON the main power switch.
- 3) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch by following the message.
- 4) Perform license registration.

In the case of LMS (License Management System)

- Write down the serial number of the machine.
- Refer to the license access number certificate, and obtain a license key from LMS (License Management System).
- Register the license key.

[Settings/Registration] > [Management Setting] > [License/Other] > [Register License]

In the case of CDS Contents Delivery System)

- Enter the license access number in Register/Update Software of Settings/Registration to perform automatic registration.
- 5) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
 - 6) Delete the data on the flash memory.
- [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings]> [Data Management]> [Delete Old Data]

Checking after Installation



- 1) Check that the HDD is recognized.
 - Select [service mode (level 1) > COPIER > Display > ACC_STS > HDD], and check that the manufacturer's name and the model number are displayed.
- 2) Check that the license is registered.
 - Select Check Counter > Device Configuration Information, and check that "HDD" is displayed

TYPE-2: HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3 Installation Procedure:

Points to Note at Installation

CAUTION:

- When installing this equipment, be sure that HDD is installed.
- Be sure to install this equipment after installing the option HDD.
- When installing the option HDD, be sure to install it by referring to "2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2 Installation Procedure".
- When handling the HDD, be careful not to vibrate or drop it.
- Be sure to prepare a USB memory for upgrading created with SST.
- In the case of installing the HDD, be sure to back up the data in the flash memory by way of precaution.
- Be sure to perform license registration after installing the HDD.
 - In the case of registering using LMS (License Management System), be sure to obtain a license key in advance.
 - In the case of registering using CDS (Contents Delivery System), be sure that internet connection is available.
- If only HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3 is installed later, the data on the HDD will be erased. Be sure to back up/export the data as necessary.
- Be sure to delete the data on the flash memory after installing HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3.
 - Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Delete Old Data

Points to Note when Unpacking HDD Data Encryption & Mirroring Kit

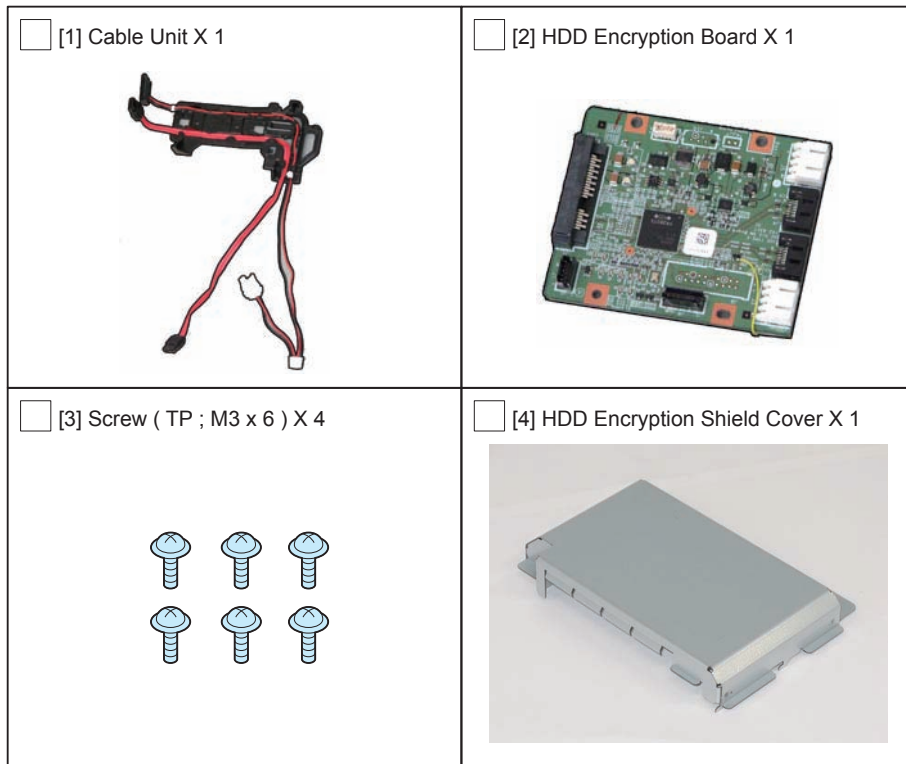
CAUTION:

A security sticker is attached to the kit package to indicate that the package has not been opened. Check to see that the package has not been opened in any way and the sticker is not torn.

If the package appears to have been opened or the sticker is torn, check to make sure that the user has done so intentionally.

Checking the Contents

HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3



F-9-308

<CD/Guides>

- HDD Data Encryption Kit-C Series User Documentation CD
- HDD Data Encryption Kit Notice

Setting Before Turning OFF the Power

CAUTION:

Be sure to turn OFF the main power after executing this service mode setting.

Turning OFF the main power without executing service mode causes "E602-5001 (procedure error before installing the HDD Encryption Board)" to occur when turning ON the main power after installing the Encryption Board.

When this error occurs, the machine needs to be returned again to the initial state in which no Encryption Board is installed.

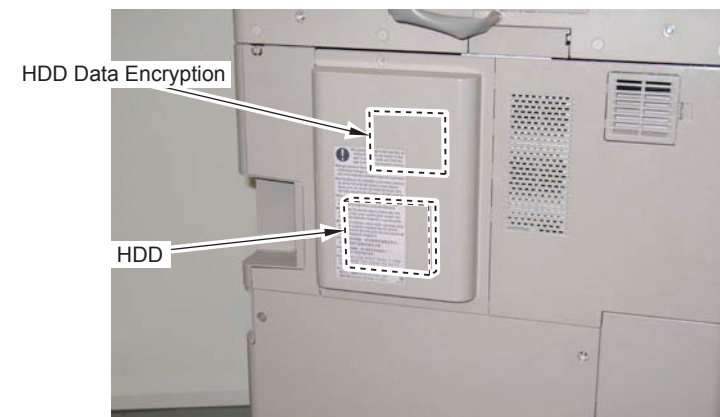
- 1) Execute the following service mode (level 1).
COPIER > Function > INSTALL > HD-CRYP

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power is OFF.

- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Installation Outline Drawing



F-9-309

Installation Procedure

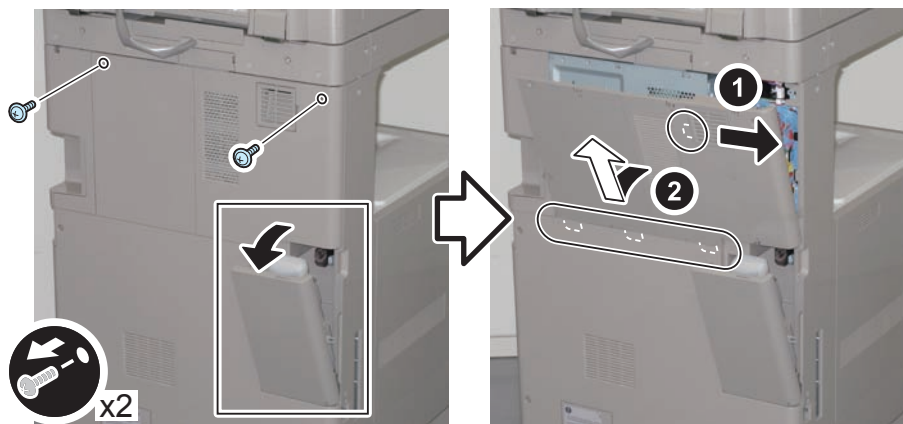
CAUTION:

- When installing this equipment, be sure that HDD is installed.
- Be sure to install this equipment after installing the option HDD.
- When installing the option HDD, be sure to install it by referring to "2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2 Installation Procedure".

Removing the Covers



- 1) Remove the 2 screws of the Rear Upper Cover 1 and the Rear Upper Cover 2. (The removed screws will be used in step 6 of "Installing the Covers".)
 - 2) Open the Waste Toner Cover.
 - 3) Remove the Rear Upper Covers (Rear Upper Cover 1 and Rear Upper Cover 2) in the direction of the arrow. (The removed covers will be used in step 4 of "Installing the Covers".)
- 4 Claws



F-9-310



- 4) Remove the small cover of the Controller Box Cover. (The removed covers will be used in step 3 of "Installing the Covers".)
- 1 Screw (The removed Screw will be used in step 3 of "Installing the Covers".)

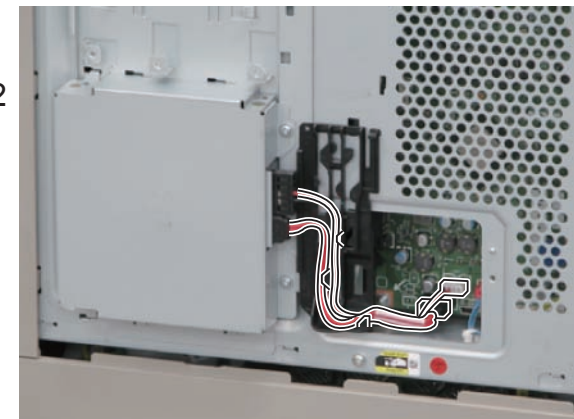


F-9-311

Installing the HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3



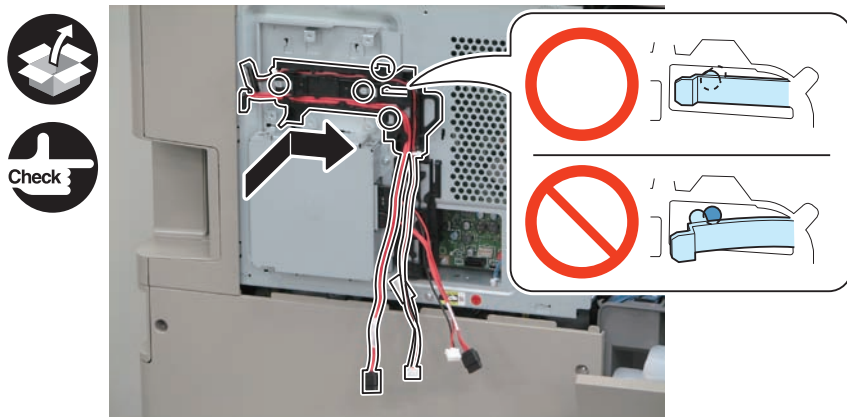
- 1) Disconnect the Signal Cable and the Power Cable, and free them from the Cable Holder.
- 2 Connectors



F-9-312

- 2) Install the Cable Unit.
- 2 Claws of the Cable Unit
 - 2 Claws of the HDD Mount Frame
 - 1 Boss

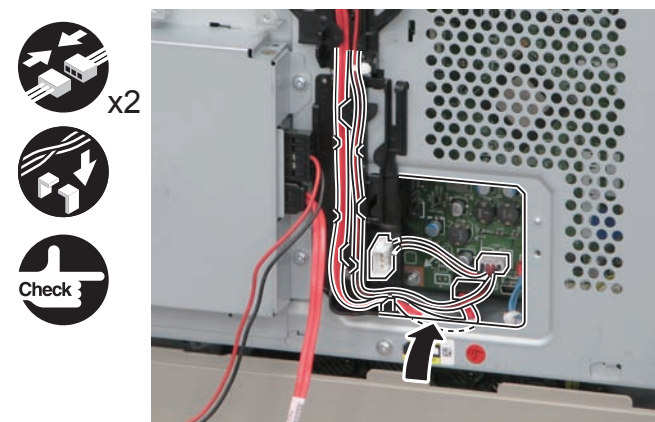
CAUTION:
Be sure that the boss is fitted properly.



F-9-313

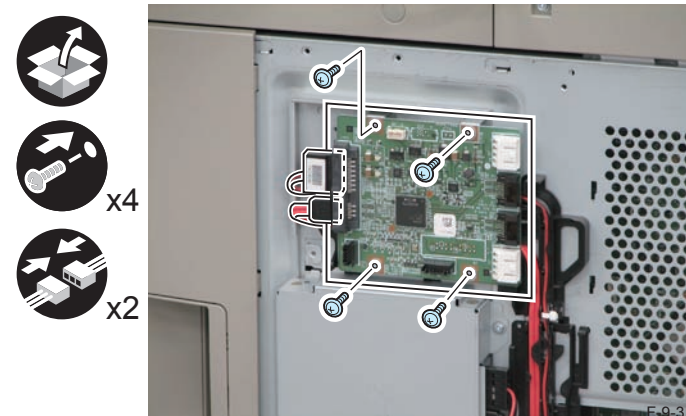
- 3) Insert the Relay Connector of the Power Cable (FK2-9246) into the HDD Cable Holder.
- 4) Connect the connectors of the 2 cables (FK2-9246, FK2-9247) of the Cable Unit, and secure the cables with the HDD Cable Holder.
- 2 Connectors

CAUTION:
If there is extra slack of the cables, be sure to tuck them in the Controller Box.



F-9-314

- 5) Install the HDD Encryption Board.
- 4 Screws (TP; M3x6)
- 6) Connect the 2 connectors (FK2-9246, FK2-9247) to the HDD Encryption Board.

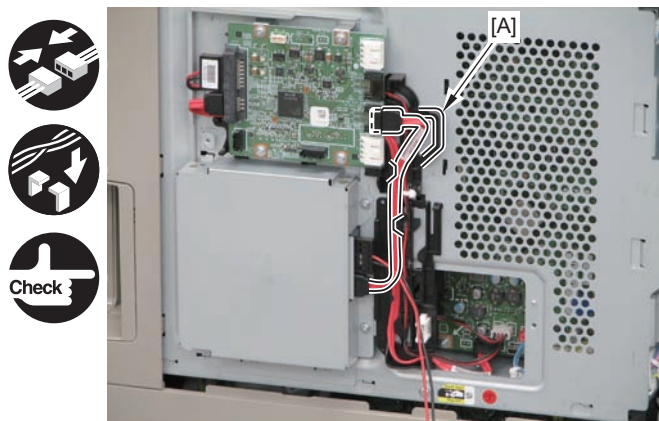


F-9-315

- 7) Connect the Signal Cable removed in step 1 to the connector of the Encryption Board, and secure it with the HDD Cable Holder.
- 1 Connector

NOTE:
Put the Signal Cable in the left line of the holder and connect it to the connector of the HDD Encryption Board.

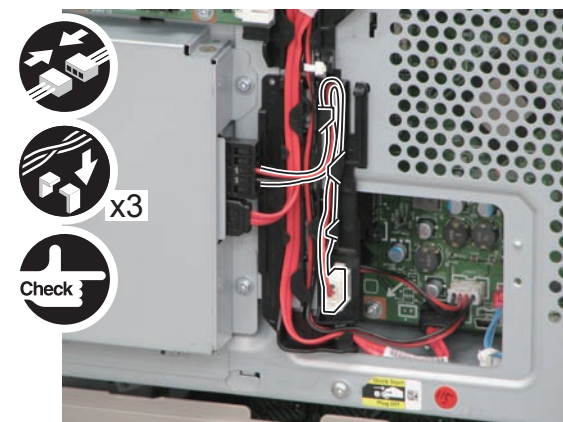
CAUTION:
Be sure that the cable of the connector does not protrude from the [A] part in order to prevent the cable from being trapped.



F-9-316

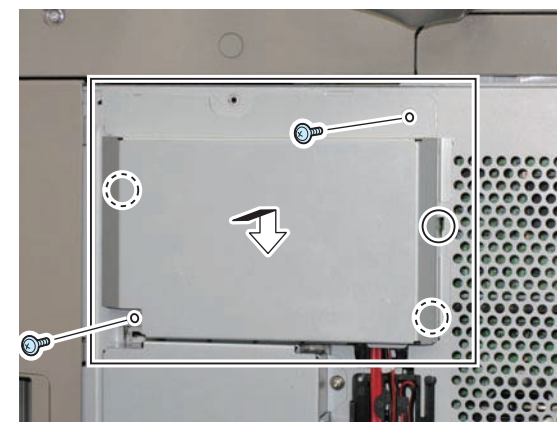
- 8) Connect the Power Cable disconnected in step 1 to the Relay Connector, and secure it with the HDD Cable Holder.
- 1 Connector

NOTE:
Put the Power Cable up and then down through the right line of the guide and connect it to the Power Cable Connector.



F-9-317

- 9) Install the Encryption Shield Cover.
- 3 Claws
 - 2 Screws (TP; M3x6)



F-9-318

Installing the Covers

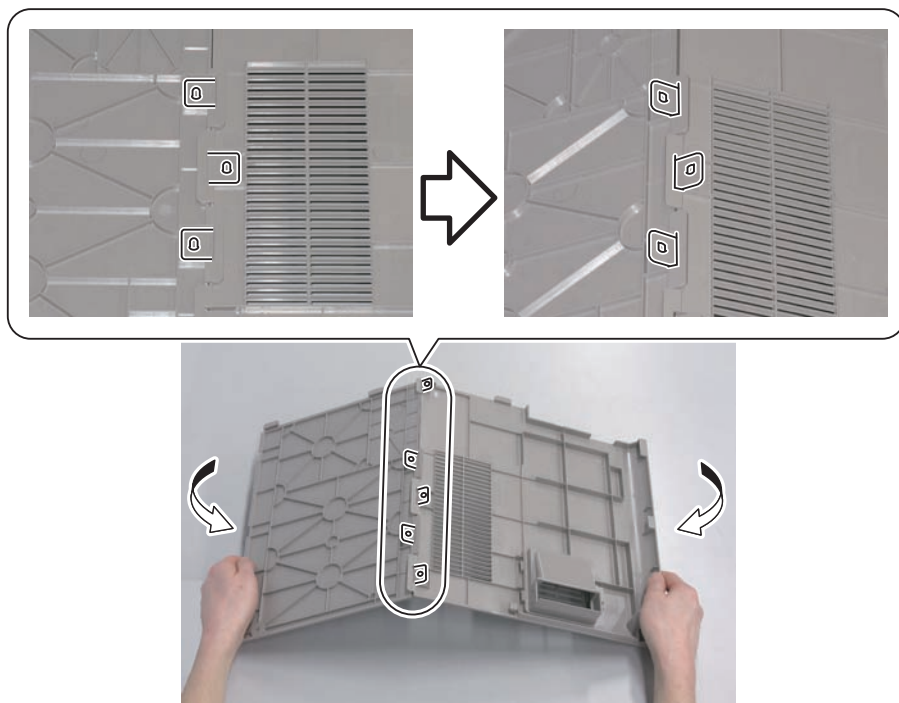
CAUTION:

Points to note when installing the covers: Steps 1 and 2 of "Installing the Covers".

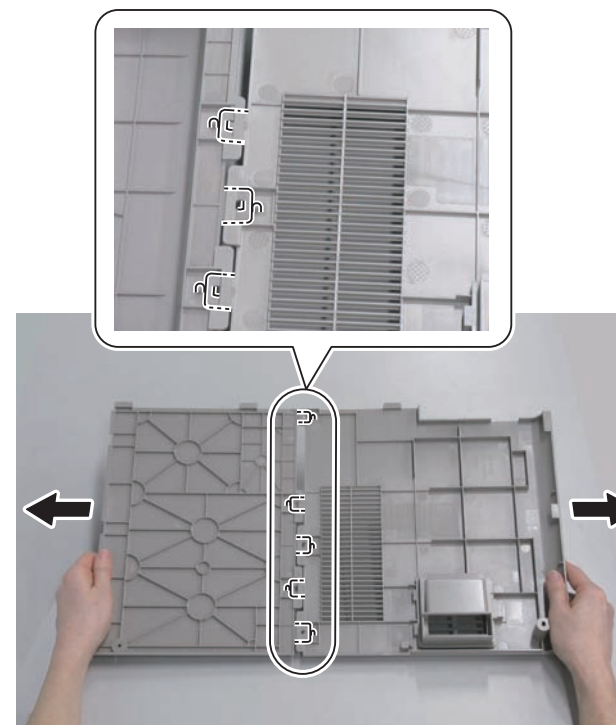
- In the case of HDD model, it is not necessary to perform steps 1 and 2 of "Installing the Covers".
- If the Option HDD (2.5 inch, 80GB HDD-E2) has been installed, perform steps 1 and 2 of "Installing the Covers".



- 1) Separate the Rear Upper Cover 1 and the Rear Upper Cover 2 by bending them to release the 5 bosses. (The separated Rear Upper Cover 2 will not be used.)



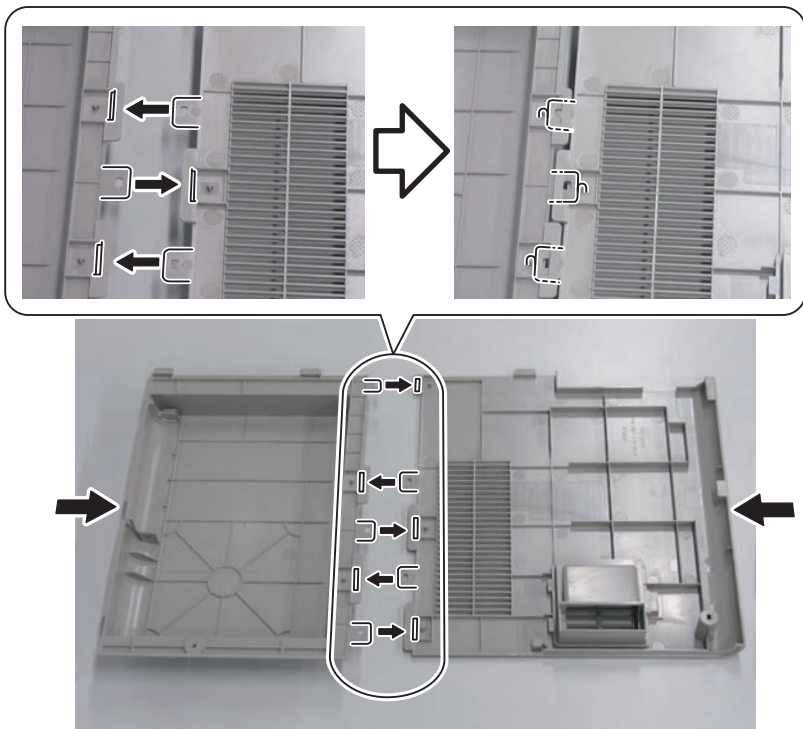
F-9-319



F-9-320

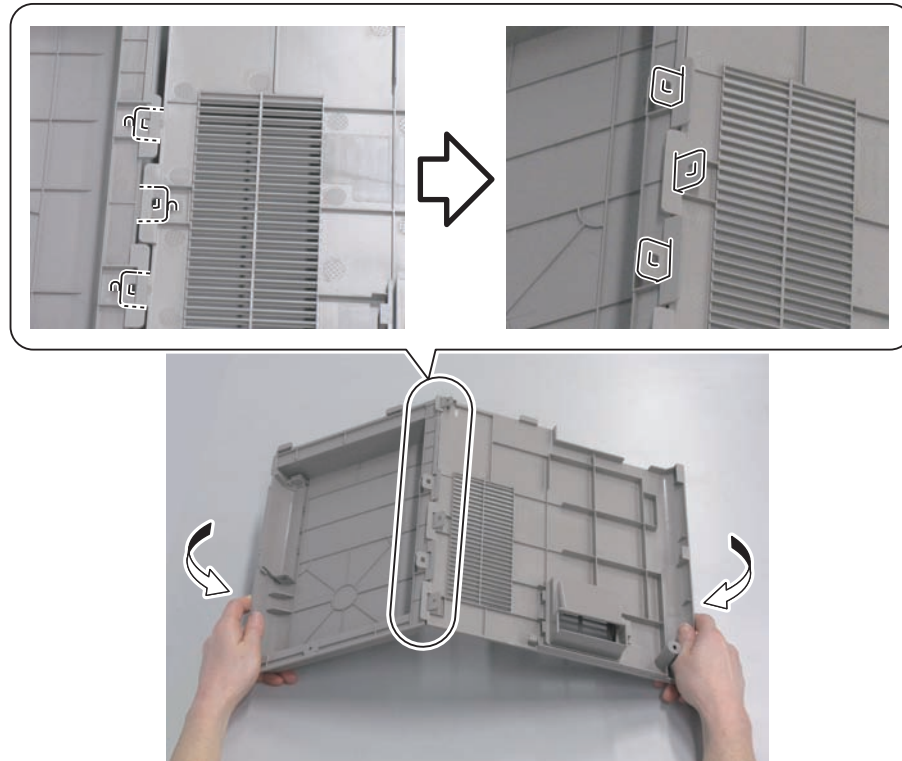
- 2) Join the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1.
- 5 bosses

- 2-1) Put the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1 on a desk and insert the claws keeping them on the same level.



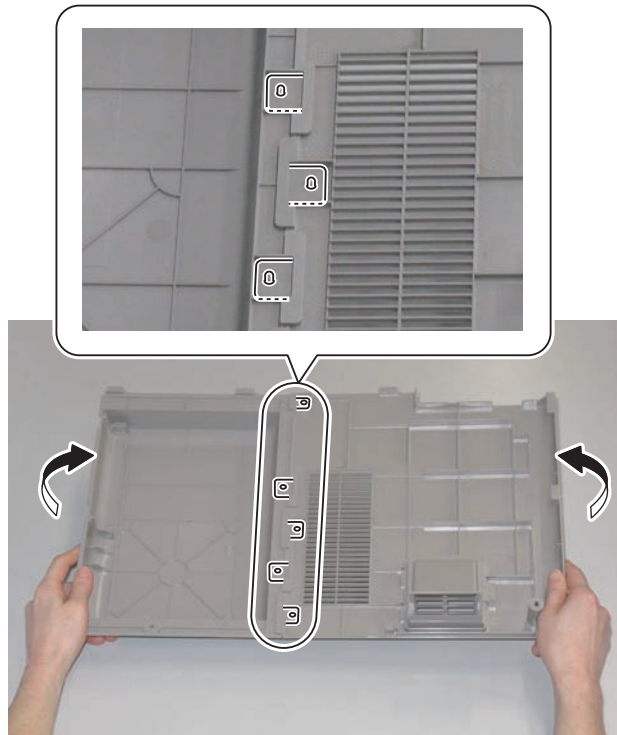
F-9-321

- 2-2) Bend the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1 to further insert the claws.



F-9-322

- 2-3) Flatten the bent HDD Cover and Rear Upper Cover 1 to fit the claws into the 5 bosses.



F-9-323

- 3) Install the small cover of the Controller Box Cover (1 Screw).
 4) Install the Rear Upper Cover (Rear Upper Cover 1 and HDD Cover).
 5) Close the Waste Toner Cover.
 6) Tighten the screws securing the Rear Upper Cover 1 and HDD Cover. (Use the 2 screws removed in "Removing the Covers" step 1.)

Setting after Installation

-
- 1) Connect the power plug to the outlet.
 - 2) Turn ON the main power switch.
 - 3) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch by following the message.
 - 4) Perform license registration.
- In the case of LMS (License Management System)
- Write down the serial number of the machine.
 - Refer to the license access number certificate, and obtain a license key from LMS (License Management System).
 - Register the license key.
 [Settings/Registration] > [Management Setting] > [License/Other] > [Register License]
- In the case of CDS Contents Delivery System)
- Enter the license access number in Register/Update Software of Settings/Registration to perform automatic registration.
- 5) Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
 - 6) Delete the data on the flash memory.
- [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [Data Management] > [Delete Old Data]

Checking after Installation

-
- 1) Check that the HDD is recognized.
 - Select [service mode (level 1) > COPIER > COPIER > ACC_STS > HDD], and check that the manufacturer's name and the model number are displayed.
 - 2) Check that the license is registered.
 - Select Check Counter > Device Configuration Information, and check that "HDD" is displayed.
 - 3) Check that the HDD Data Encryption is recognized.
 - Select Check Counter > Check Device Configuration > Option, and check that "HDD Data Encryption" is displayed.
 - A key mark should be displayed at the lower left of the Touch Panel Display.
 - 4) Check the version of the HDD Data Encryption Kit.
 - Select Check Counter > Check Device Configuration, and check that "Canon MFP Security Chip '2.00' or '2.01' " is displayed.

After Installing the Encryption Kit



- 1) Connect the power plug to the outlet.
- 2) Turn ON the main power switch.
- 3) E602-0001 occurs.
- 4) Turn OFF the main power, and start up 2+8.
- 5) Insert the USB memory for upgrading created with SST.
- 6) Press a key according to the instruction on the screen of the Control Panel.
 - [4]: Clear/Format > [1]: Disk Format > [0] > Please hit any key > [C]: Return to Main Menu > [Reset]: Start Shutdown sequence > [0]
- 7) Check that the Control Panel screen has become blank. Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
- 8) The HDD is initialized, and then the machine is started up.
- 9) Delete the data on the flash memory.
 - [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [Data Management] > [Delete Old Data]

TYPE-3: Removable HDD Kit-AE1 Installation Procedure

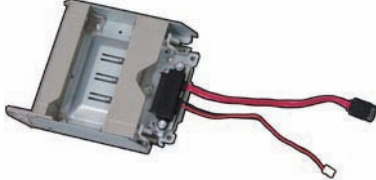
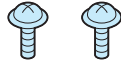



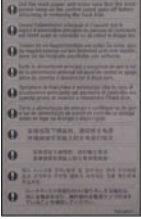


Points to Note at Installation

CAUTION:

- When installing this equipment, be sure that HDD is installed.
- Be sure to install this equipment after installing the option HDD.
- When installing the option HDD, be sure to install it by referring to "2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2 Installation Procedure".
- When handling the HDD, be careful not to vibrate or drop it.
- Be sure to prepare a USB memory for upgrading created with SST.
- In the case of installing the HDD, be sure to back up the data in the flash memory by way of precaution.
- Be sure to perform license registration after installing the HDD.
 - In the case of registering using LMS (License Management System), be sure to obtain a license key in advance.
 - In the case of registering using CDS (Contents Delivery System), be sure that internet connection is available.
- If only HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3 is installed later, the data on the HDD will be erased. Be sure to back up/export the data as necessary.
- Be sure to delete the data on the flash memory after installing HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3.
 - Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Delete Old Data

Checking the Contents

Removable HDD Kit-AE1

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD Slot Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (TP ; M3x6) X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Plug_Connector X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] HDD Case X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (P Tightening ; M3x10) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] HDD Warning Label X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] HDD Case Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] HDD Discriminate Label 

F-9-324

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power is OFF.

- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Installation Outline Drawing



F-9-325

Installation Procedure

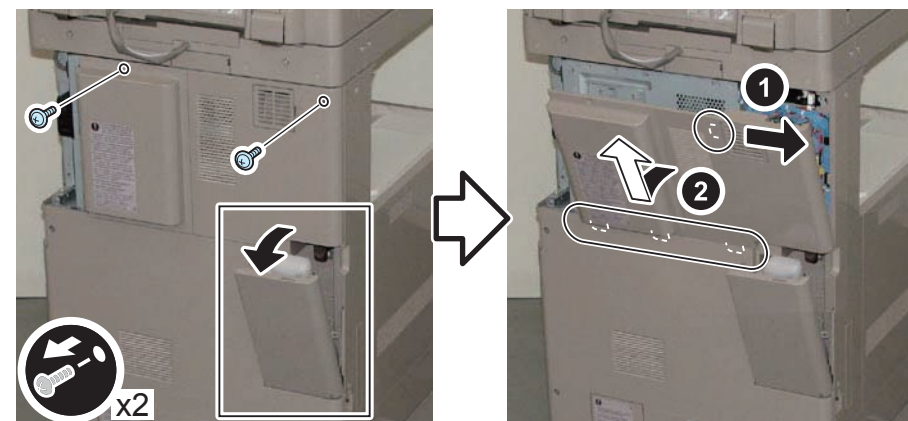
CAUTION:

- When installing this equipment, be sure that HDD is installed.
- Be sure to install this equipment after installing the option HDD.
- When installing the option HDD, be sure to install it by referring to "2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2 Installation Procedure".

Removing the Covers



- 1) Remove the 2 screws securing the Rear Upper Cover 1 and the HDD Cover. (The removed screws will be used in step 7 of "Installing the Covers".)
 - 2) Open the Waste Toner Cover.
 - 3) Remove the Rear Upper Covers (Rear Upper Cover 1 and HDD Cover) in the direction of the arrow. (The removed covers will be used in step 5 of "Installing the Covers".)
- 4 Claws



F-9-326

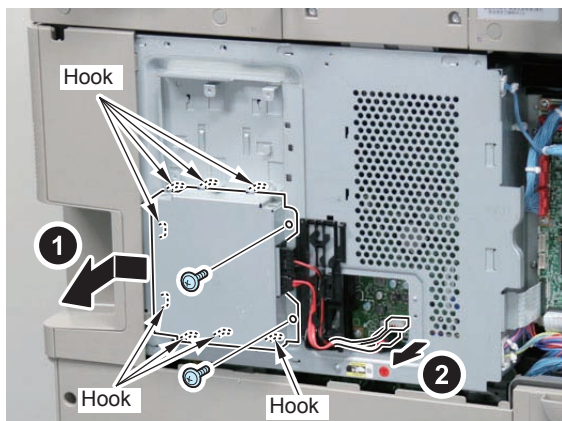
- 4) Remove the small cover of the Controller Box Cover. (The removed covers will be used in step 4 of "Installing the Covers".)
- 1 Screw



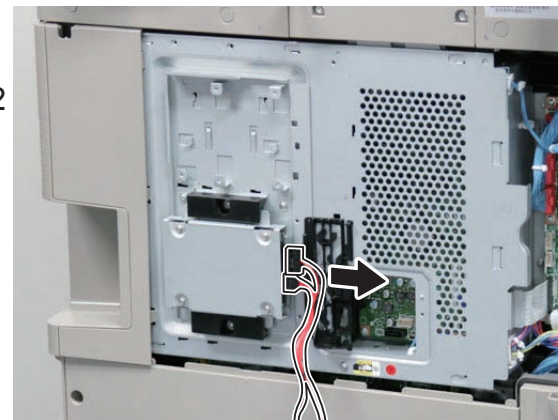
F-9-327

■ Installing the Removable HDD Kit

- 1) Remove the HDD Shield Cover. (The removed HDD Shield Cover will not be used.)
- 2 Screws
 - 8 Hooks
- 2) Disconnect the Power Cable and the Signal Cable, and free them from the HDD Cable Holder.

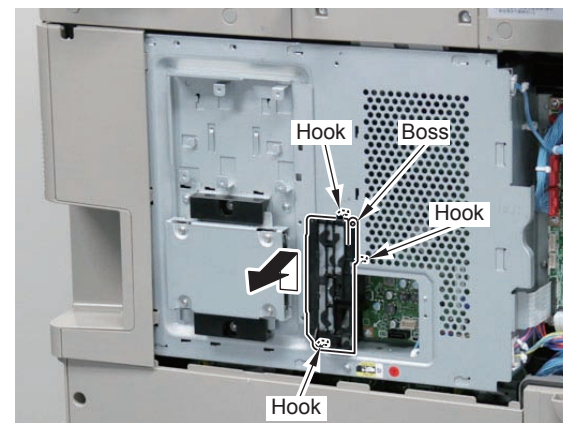


- 3) Disconnect the Power Cable and the Signal Cable from the HDD.



F-9-328

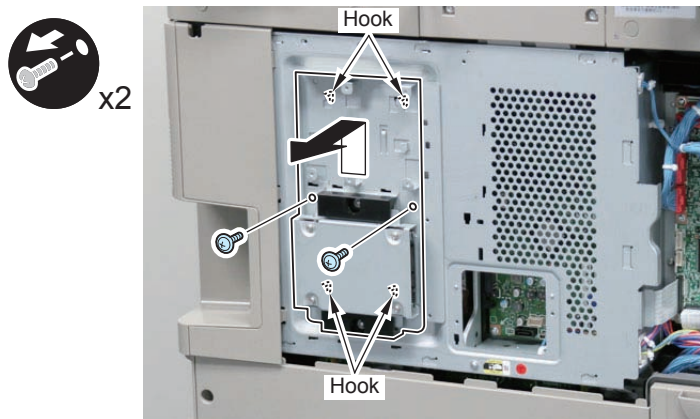
- 4) Remove the HDD Cable Holder.
- 1 Boss
 - 3 Hooks



F-9-329

- 5) Remove the Expansion HDD Unit.

- 4 Hooks
- 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 14.)



F-9-330

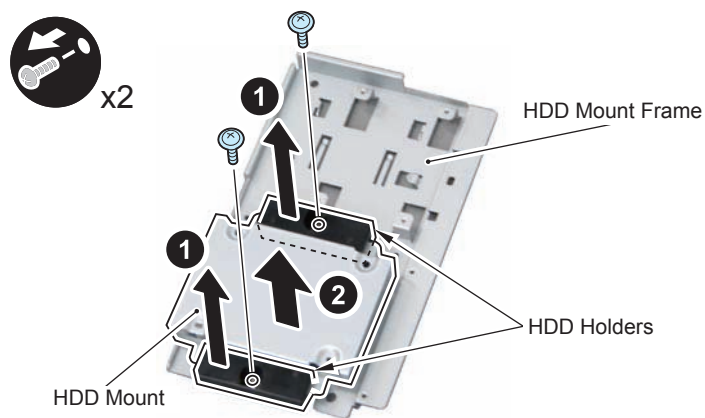
- 6) Remove the 2 HDD Holders and the HDD Mount from the Expansion HDD Unit (included with the HDD).

(The removed 2 HDD Holders will not be used.)

(The removed HDD Mount will be used in step 7.)

(The remaining HDD Mount Frame will be used in step 14.)

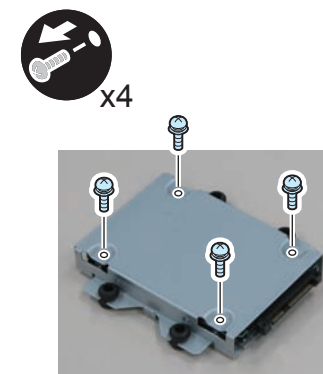
- 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 16.)



F-9-331

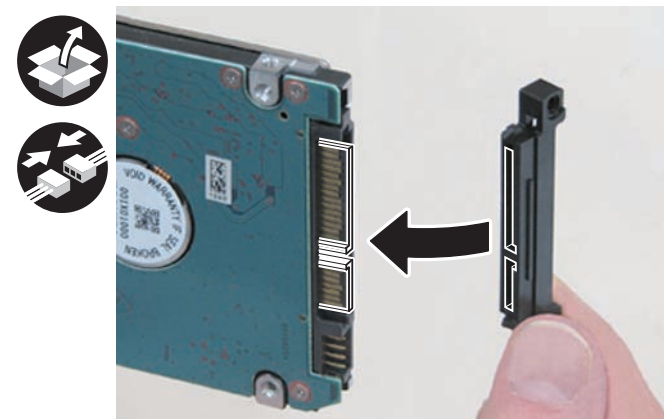
- 7) Remove the screws of the HDD Mount.

- 4 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 9.)



F-9-332

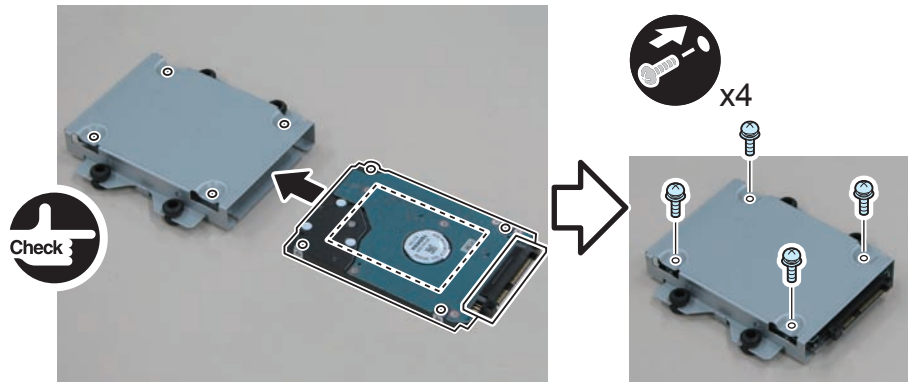
- 8) Connect the Plug Connector to the Hard Disc.



F-9-333

- 9) Install the hard disc to the HDD Mount.
 - 4 Screws (W Sems; M3x4) (Use the screws removed in step 7.)

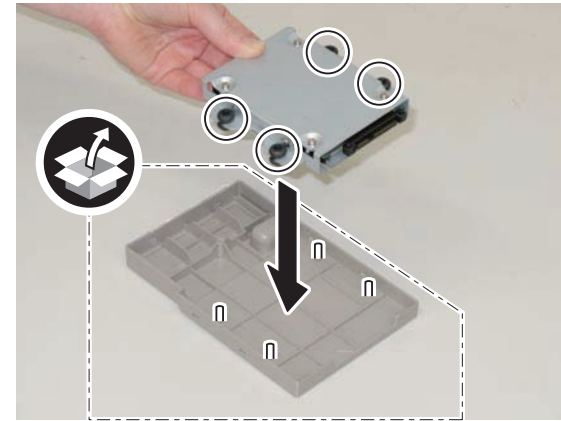
メモ :
Be sure to insert the HDD with its label side down and its connector in the direction as shown in the figure, and align its 4 screw holes with those of the Expansion HDD Unit.



F-9-334

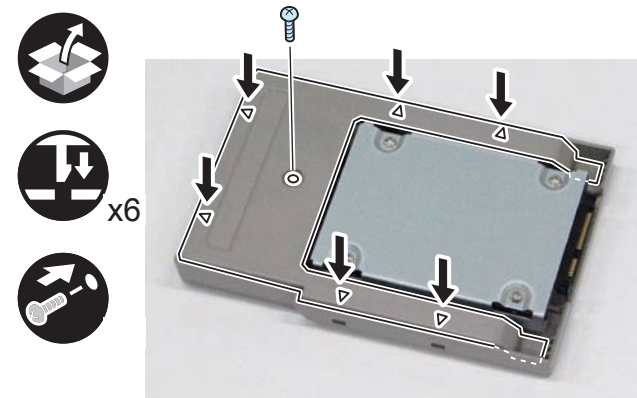
- 10) Install the HDD Unit to the HDD Case.
 - 4 Bosses

CAUTION:
When installing the HDD Unit, be sure to keep the screwed side up.



F-9-335

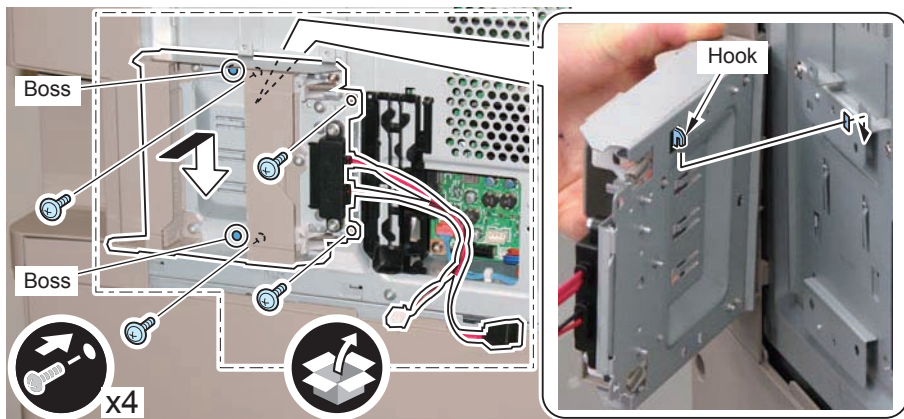
- 11) Install the HDD Case Cover by pushing in the 6 claws marked with triangles.
 - 1 Screw (P Tightening; M3x10)



F-9-336

□ 16) Install the HDD Slot Unit.

- 1 Hook
- 2 Bosses
- 4 Screws (Use the 2 screws removed in step 6 and the 2 screws (TP; M3x6) included in the package of the Removable HDD Kit.)

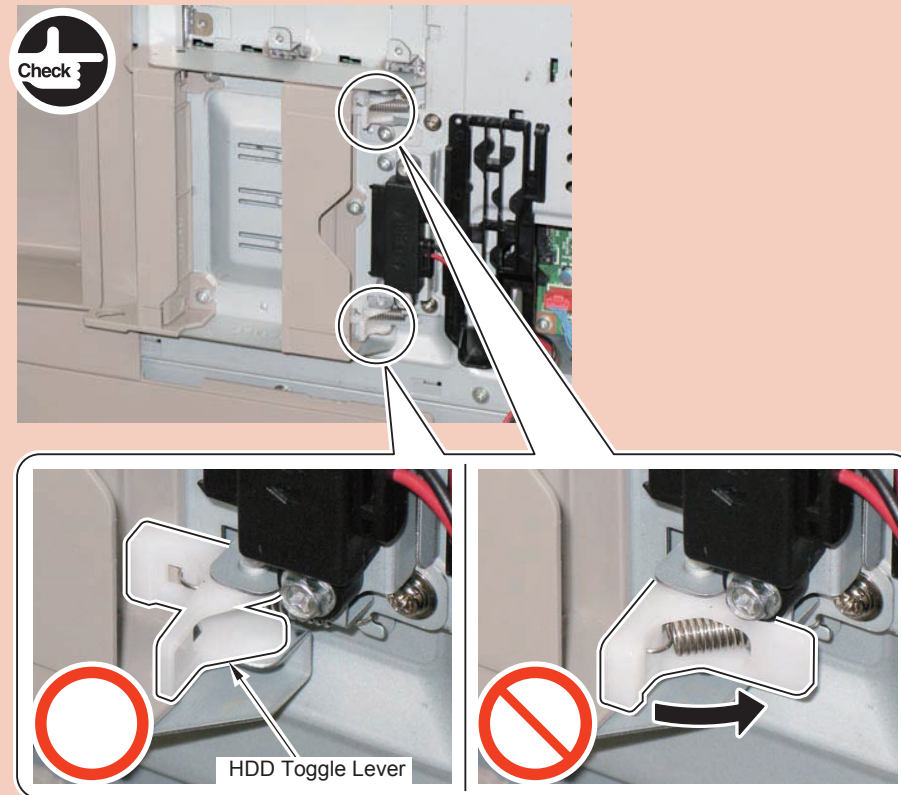


F-9-339

CAUTION:

Set the HDD Toggle Lever in the correct position as shown in the figure, and check that the HDD Case can be inserted all the way and installed properly.

Unless the HDD Toggle Lever is in the correct position, the HDD Case cannot be installed.

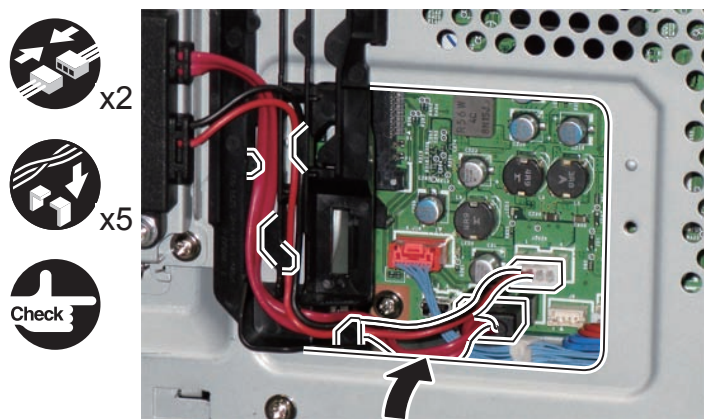


F-9-340

-
- 17) Connect the Signal Cable and the Power Cable to the connectors, and secure them with the HDD Cable Holder.
- 2 Connectors

CAUTION:

If there is extra slack of the cables, be sure to tuck them in the Controller Box.



F-9-341

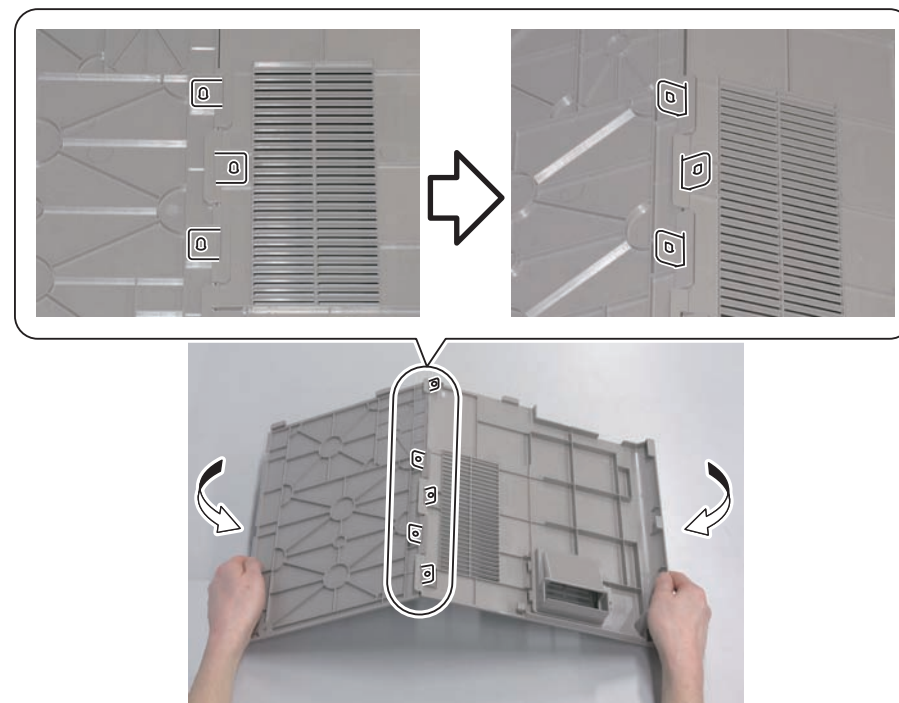
■ Installing the Covers

CAUTION:

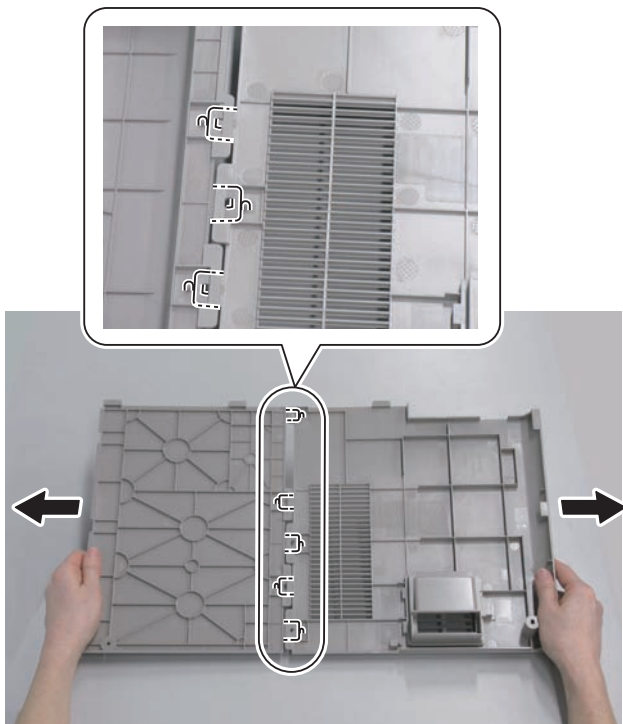
Points to note when installing the covers: Steps 1 and 2 of "Installing the Covers".

- In the case of HDD model, it is not necessary to perform steps 1 and 2 of "Installing the Covers".
- If the Option HDD (2.5 inch, 80GB HDD-E2) has been installed, perform steps 1 and 2 of "Installing the Covers".

-
- 1) Separate the Rear Upper Cover 1 and the Rear Upper Cover 2 by bending them to release the 5 bosses. (The separated Rear Upper Cover 2 will not be used.)



F-9-342



F-9-343

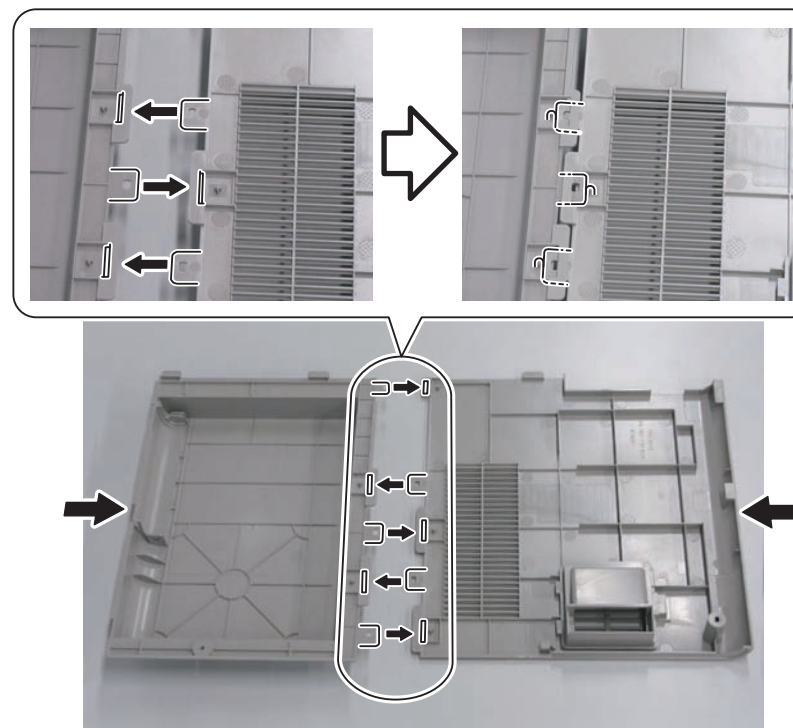


2) Join the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1.

- 5 bosses



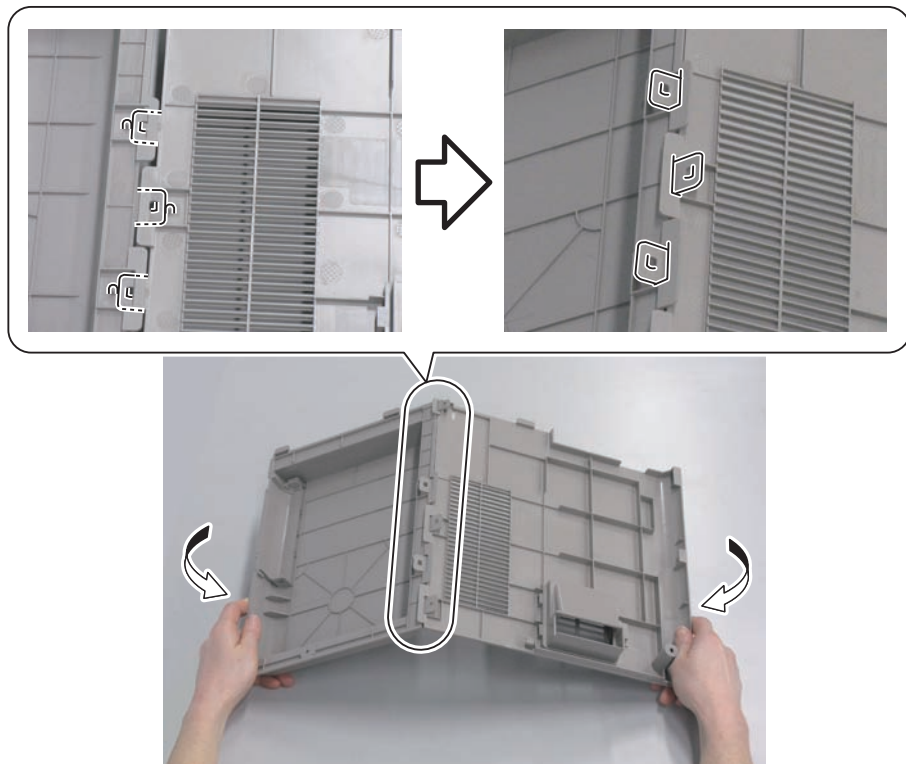
2-1) Put the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1 on a desk and insert the claws keeping them on the same level.



F-9-344



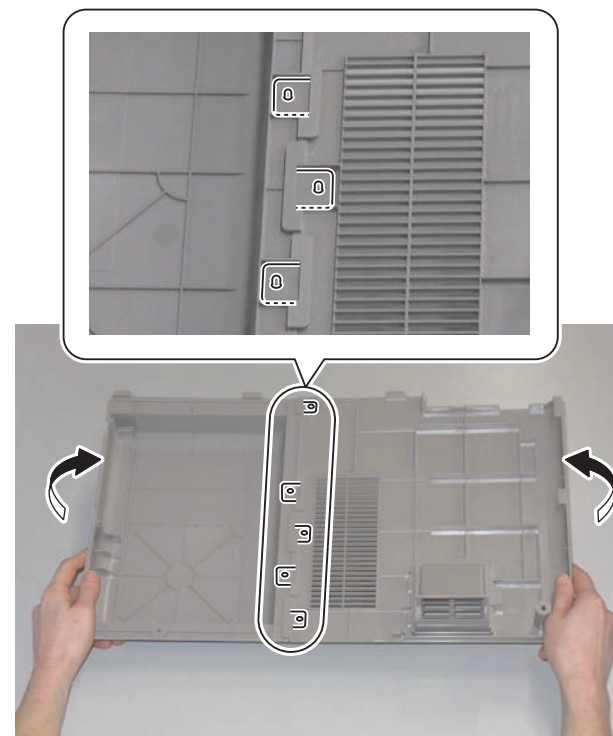
2-2) Bend the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1 to further insert the claws.



F-9-345



2-3) Flatten the bent HDD Cover and Rear Upper Cover 1 to fit the claws into the 5 bosses.

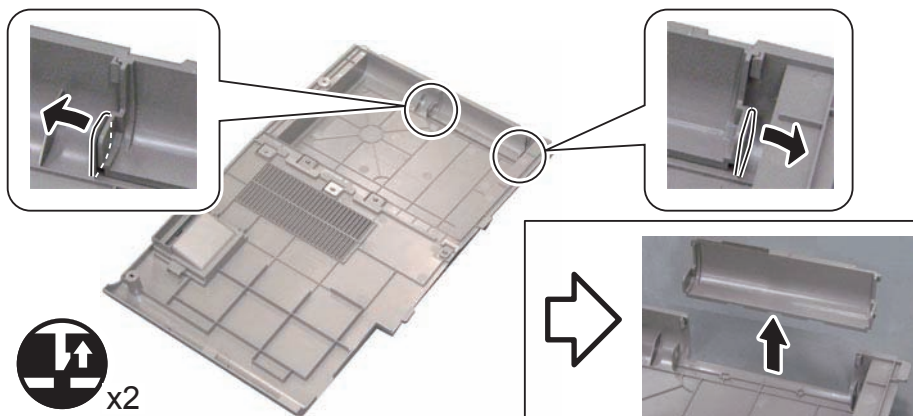


F-9-346



3) Remove the Slot Cover from the HDD Cover. (The removed Slot Cover will not be used.)

- 2 Claws



F-9-347



- 4) Install the small cover of the Controller Box Cover (1 Screw).
- 5) Install the Rear Upper Cover (Rear Upper Cover 1 and HDD Cover).
- 6) Close the Waste Toner Cover.
- 7) Tighten the screws securing the Rear Upper Cover 1 and HDD Cover. (Use the screws removed in "Removing the Covers" step 1.)

Installing the Removable HDD



- 1) Install the HDD Case to the HDD Slot Unit.



F-9-348



- 2) Be sure to request the user to padlock the removable HDD to discourage theft.
Setting after Installation

Checking after Installation



- 1) Connect the power plug to the outlet.
- 2) Turn ON the main power switch.
- 3) Check that the HDD is recognized.
Select [service mode (level 1) > COPIER > Display > ACC_STS > HDD], and check that the manufacturer's name and the model number are displayed.
- 4) Check that the license is registered.
Select Check Counter > Device Configuration Information, and check that "HDD" is displayed.

TYPE-4: Removable HDD Kit-AE1/HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3 Installation Procedure

Points to Note at Installation

CAUTION:

- When installing this equipment, be sure that HDD is installed.
- Be sure to install this equipment after installing the option HDD.
- When installing the option HDD, be sure to install it by referring to "2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2 Installation Procedure".
- When handling the HDD, be careful not to vibrate or drop it.
- Be sure to prepare a USB memory for upgrading created with SST.
- In the case of installing the HDD, be sure to back up the data in the flash memory by way of precaution.
- Be sure to perform license registration after installing the HDD.
 - In the case of registering using LMS (License Management System), be sure to obtain a license key in advance.
 - In the case of registering using CDS (Contents Delivery System), be sure that internet connection is available.
- If only HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3 is installed later, the data on the HDD will be erased. Be sure to back up/export the data as necessary.
- Be sure to delete the data on the flash memory after installing HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3.
 - Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Delete Old Data

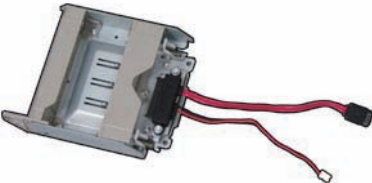
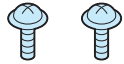





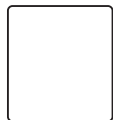
Points to Note when Unpacking HDD Data Encryption & Mirroring Kit

CAUTION:

- A security sticker is attached to the kit package to indicate that the package has not been opened. Check to see that the package has not been opened in any way and the sticker is not torn.
- If the package appears to have been opened or the sticker is torn, check to make sure that the user has done so intentionally.

Checking the Contents


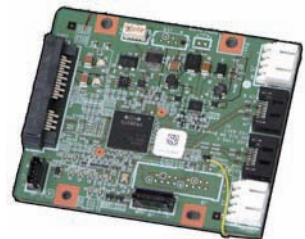
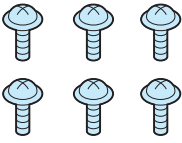
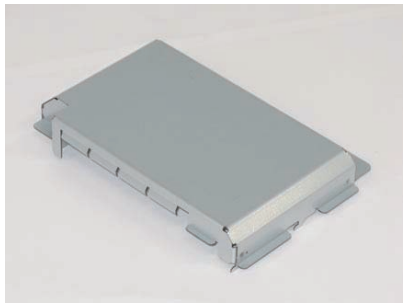
Removable HDD Kit-AE1

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] HDD Slot Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (TP ; M3x6) X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Plug_Connector X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] HDD Case X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (P Tightening ; M3x10) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] HDD Warning Label X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] HDD Case Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] HDD Discriminate Label 

F-9-349

Checking the Contents

HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Cable Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] HDD Encryption Board X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Screw (TP ; M3 x 6) X 4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] HDD Encryption Shield Cover X 1 

F-9-350

<CD/Guides>

- HDD Data Encryption Kit-C Series User Documentation CD
- HDD Data Encryption Kit Notice

Setting Before Turning OFF the Power

CAUTION:

- Be sure to turn OFF the main power after executing this service mode setting.
- Turning OFF the main power without executing service mode causes "E602-5001 (procedure error before installing the HDD Encryption Board)" to occur when turning ON the main power after installing the Encryption Board.
- When this error occurs, the machine needs to be returned again to the initial state in which no Encryption Board is installed.

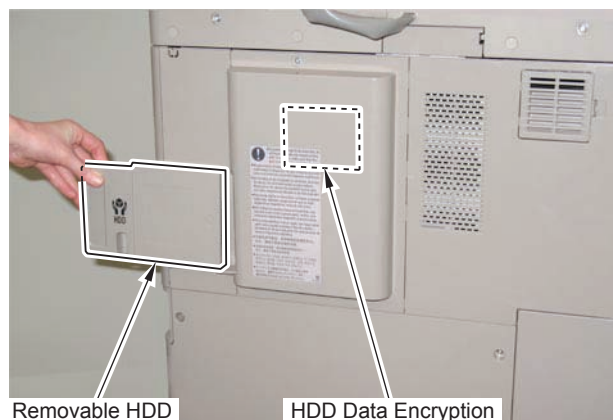
- 1) Execute the following service mode (level 1).
COPIER > Function > INSTALL > HD-CRYP

Check Items when Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power is OFF.

- 1) Turn OFF the main power switch.
- 2) Be sure that display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power supply are turned off, then disconnect the power plug.

Installation Outline Drawing



F-9-351

Installation Procedure

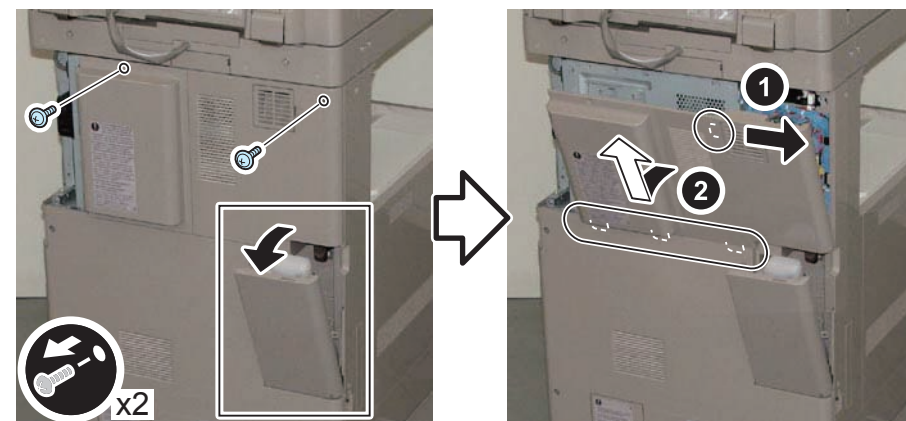
CAUTION:

- When installing this equipment, be sure that HDD is installed.
- Be sure to install this equipment after installing the option HDD.
- When installing the option HDD, be sure to install it by referring to "2.5inch/80GB HDD-E2 Installation Procedure".

Removing the Covers



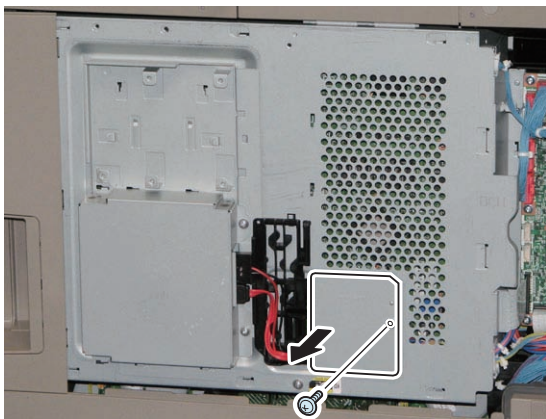
- 1) Remove the 2 screws securing the Rear Upper Cover 1 and the HDD Cover. (The removed screws will be used in step 7 of "Installing the Covers".)
 - 2) Open the Waste Toner Cover.
 - 3) Remove the Rear Upper Covers (Rear Upper Cover 1 and HDD Cover) in the directions of the arrows. (The removed covers will be used in step 5 of "Installing the Covers".)
- 4 Screws



F-9-352

- 4) Remove the small cover of the Controller Box Cover. (The removed covers will be used in step 4 of "Installing the Covers".)

- 1 Screw

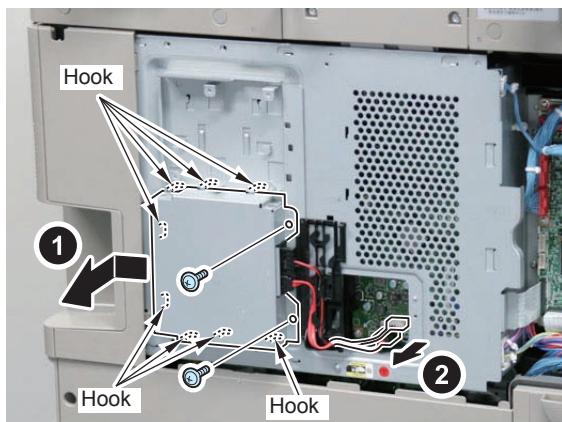


F-9-353

- 5) Remove the HDD Shield Cover. (The removed HDD Shield Cover will not be used.)

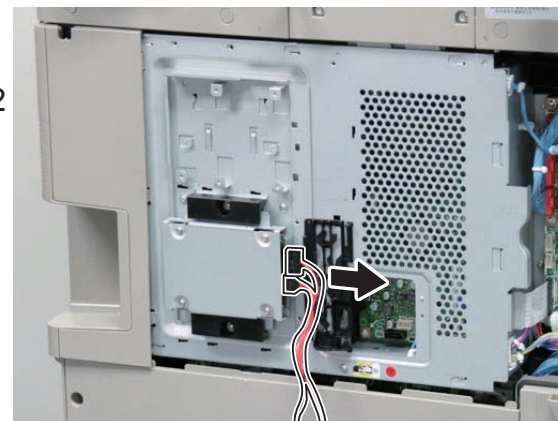
- 2 Screws
- 8 Hooks

- 6) Disconnect the Power Cable and the Signal Cable, and free them from the HDD Cable Holder.



F-9-354

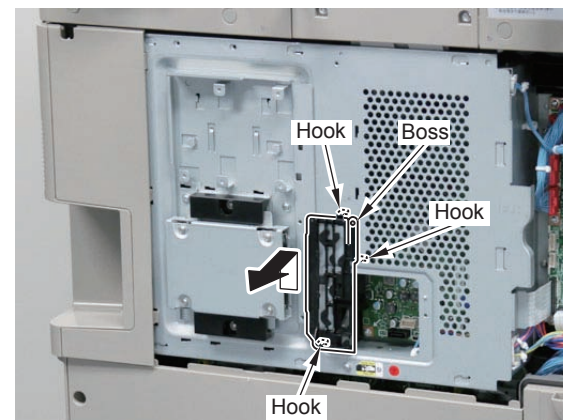
- 7) Disconnect the Power Cable and the Signal Cable from the HDD.



F-9-355

- 8) Remove the HDD Cable Holder. (The removed HDD Cable Holder will be used in step 10 of "Installing the Removable HDD Kit".)

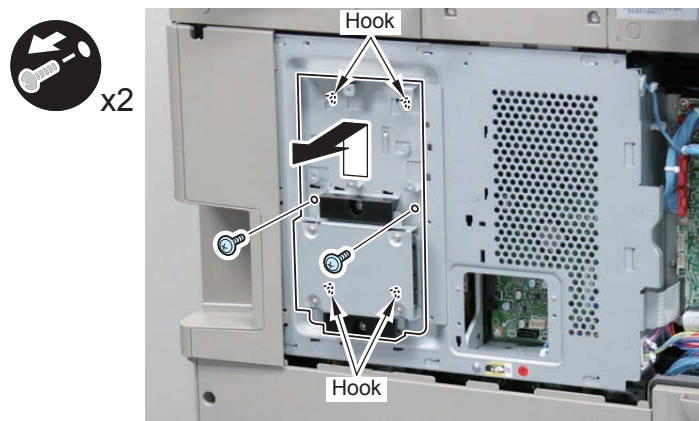
- 1 Boss
- 3 Hooks



F-9-356

- 9) Remove the Expansion HDD Unit.

- 4 Hooks
- 2 Screws



F-9-357

■ Installing the Removable HDD Kit

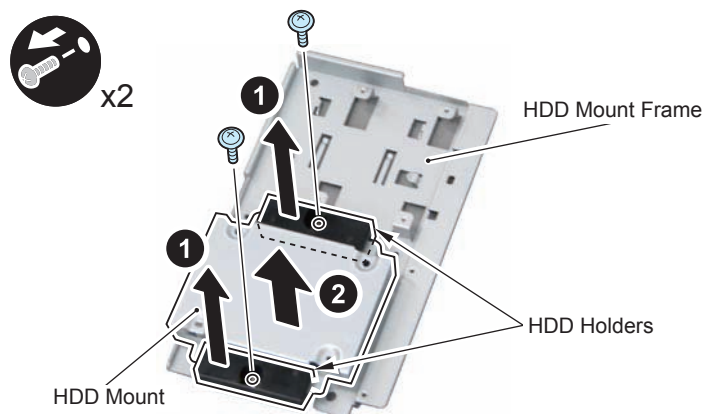
- 1) Remove the 2 HDD Holders and the HDD Mount from the Expansion HDD Unit (included with the HDD).

(The removed 2 HDD Holders will not be used.)

(The remaining HDD Mount Frame will be used in step 2.)

(The remaining HDD Mount Frame will be used in step 9.)

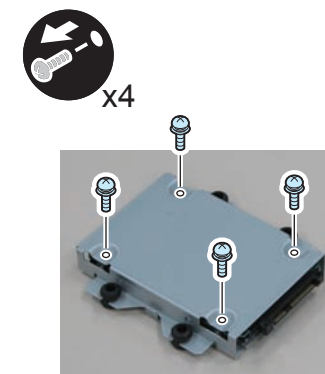
- 2 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 11.)



F-9-358

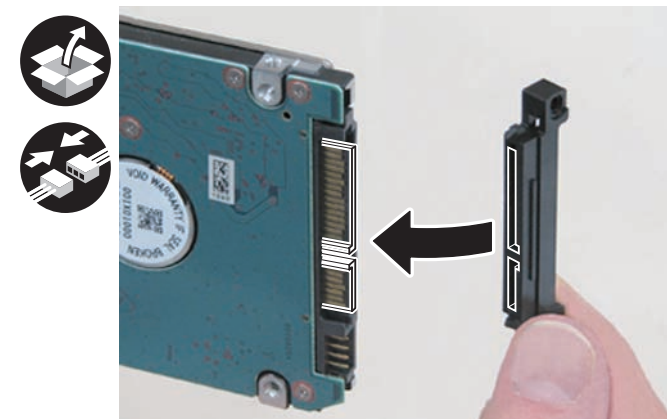
- 2) Remove the screws of the HDD Mount.

- 4 Screws (The removed screws will be used in step 4.)



F-9-359

- 3) Connect the Plug Connector to the Hard Disc.

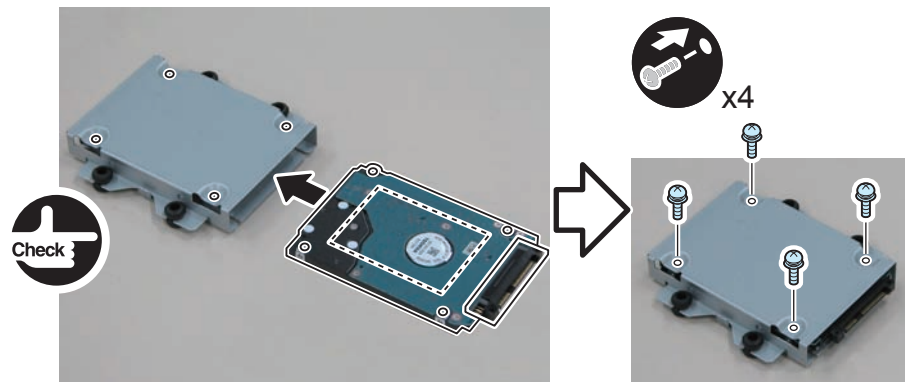


F-9-360

- 4) Install the hard disc to the HDD Mount.
- 4 Screws (W Sems; M3x4) (Use the screws removed in step 2.)

NOTE:

When installing the hard disc, be sure to keep the side from which the screws were tightened in step 4 up.

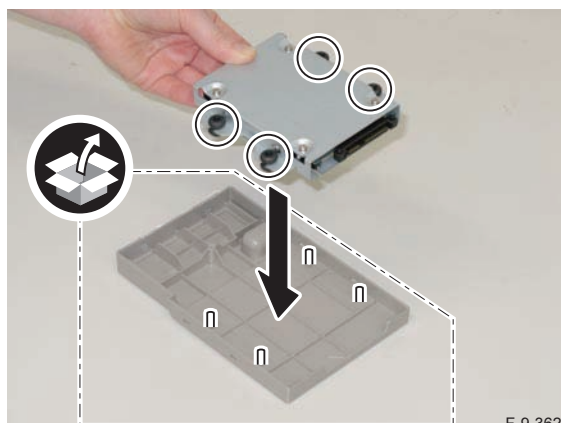


F-9-361

- 5) Install the HDD Unit to the HDD Case.
- 4 Bosses

NOTE:

When installing the HDD Unit, be sure to keep the screwed side up.

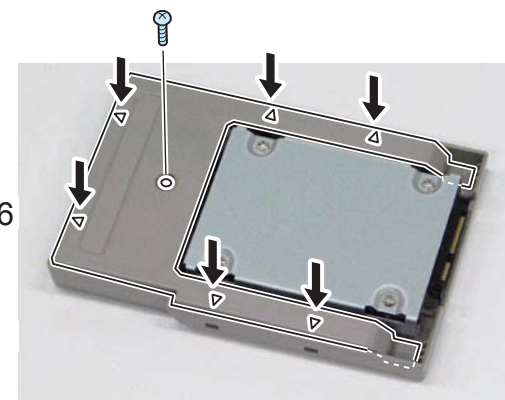


F-9-362

- 6) Install the HDD Case Cover by pushing in the 6 claws marked with triangles.
- 1 Screw (P Tightening; M3x10)



x6



F-9-363

- 7) Affix the HDD Warning Label in the appropriate language, aligning the label with the groove.

CAUTION:

Be sure to affix the HDD Warning Label in the direction as shown in the figure.

- 8) Affix the HDD Identification Label, aligning it with the groove.

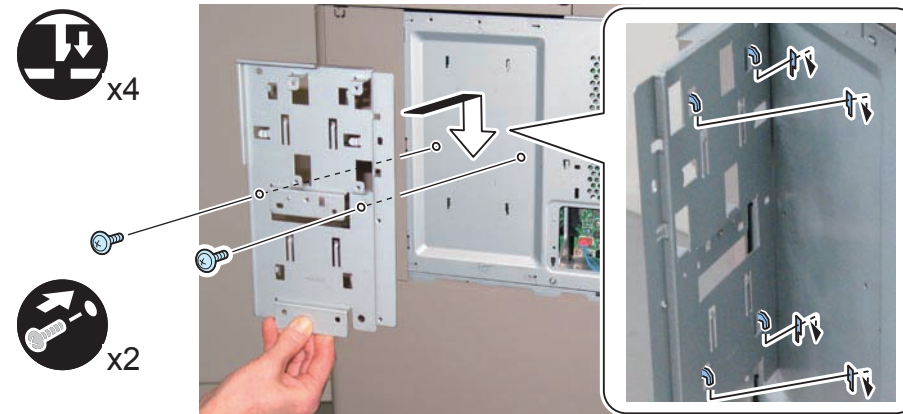
CAUTION:

Be sure to write down the serial number on the HDD Identification Label in order to show from which machine it was removed and prevent it from being installed to another machine.



F-9-364

- 9) Install the remaining HDD Mount Frame separated in step 1 to the host machine.
- 4 Claws
 - 2 Screws (TP; M3x6) (Use the screws removed in step 9 of "Removing the Covers".)

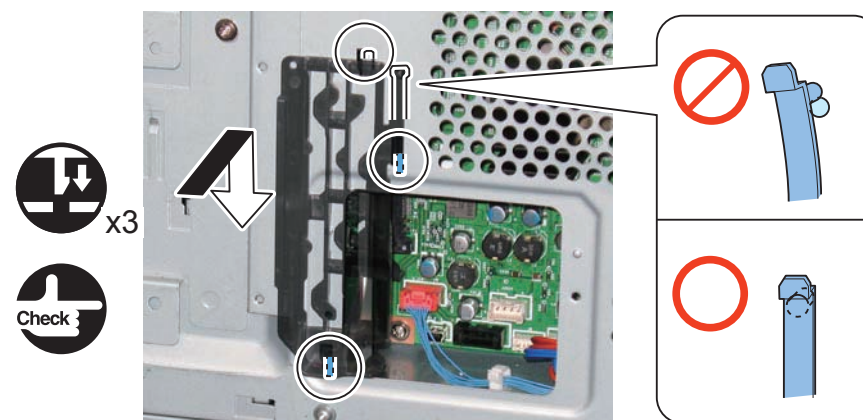


F-9-365

- 10) Install the HDD Cable Holder removed in [step 8](#) of "Remove the Cover".
- 3 Hooks
 - 1 Boss

CAUTION:

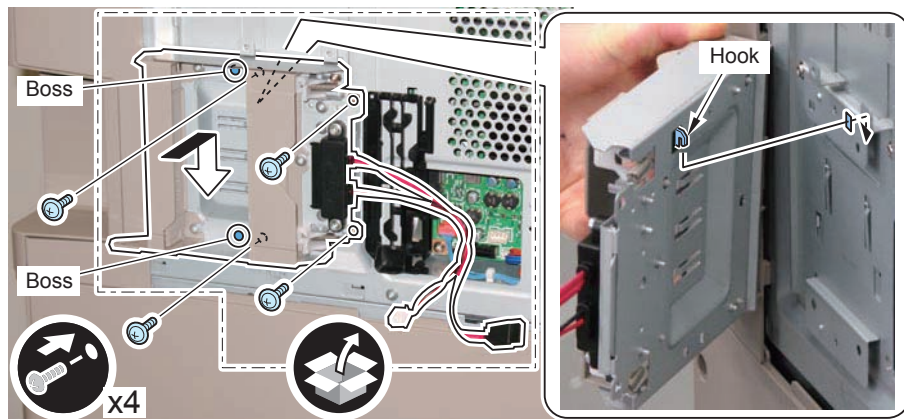
Be sure that the boss is fitted properly.



F-9-366

□ 11) Install the HDD Slot Unit.

- 1 Hook
- 2 Bosses
- 4 Screws (Use the 2 screws removed in step 1 and the 2 screws (TP; M3x6) included in the package of the .)

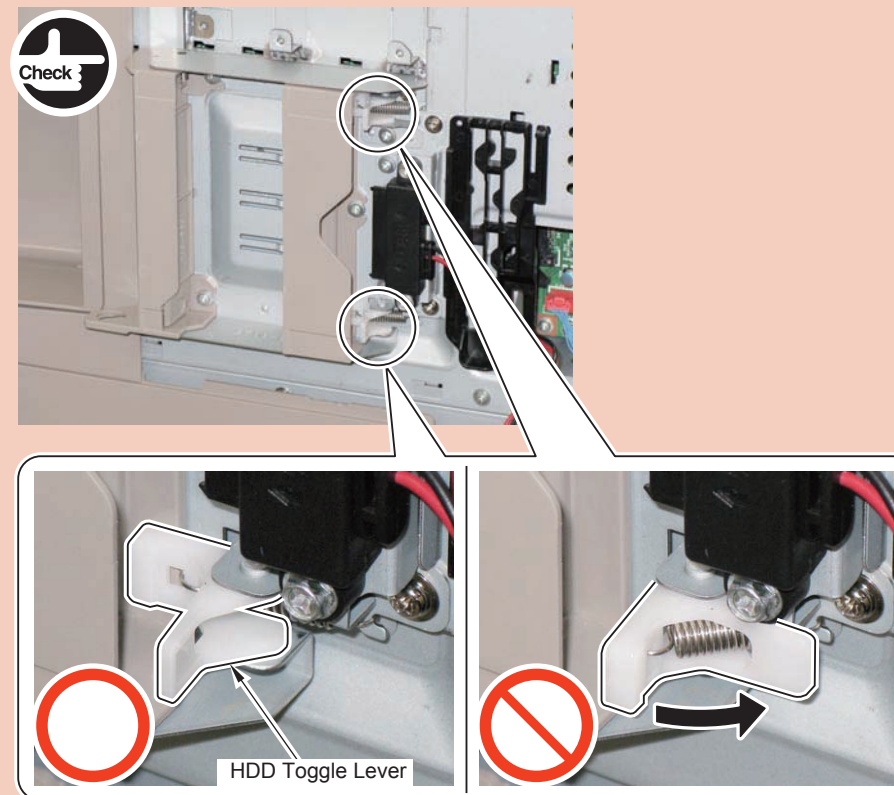


F-9-367

CAUTION:

Set the HDD Toggle Lever in the correct position as shown in the figure, and check that the HDD Case can be inserted all the way and installed properly.

Unless the HDD Toggle Lever is in the correct position, the HDD Case cannot be installed.

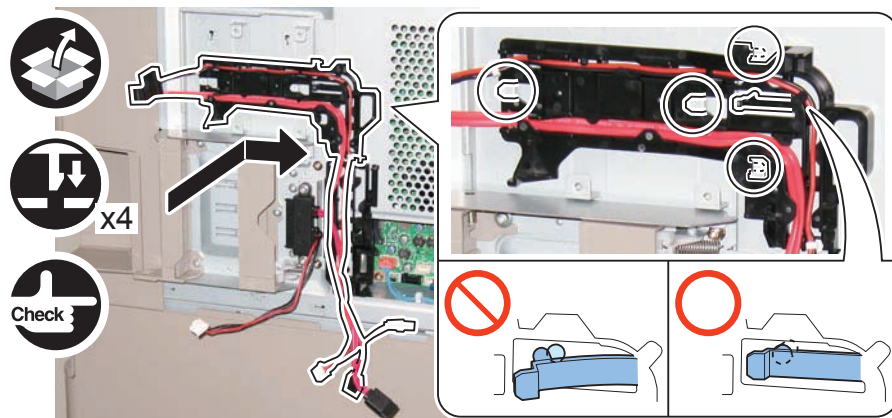


F-9-368

- 12) Install the Cable Unit.
- 2 Claws of the Cable Unit
 - 2 Claws of the HDD Mount Frame
 - 1 Boss

CAUTION:

Be sure that the boss is fitted properly.

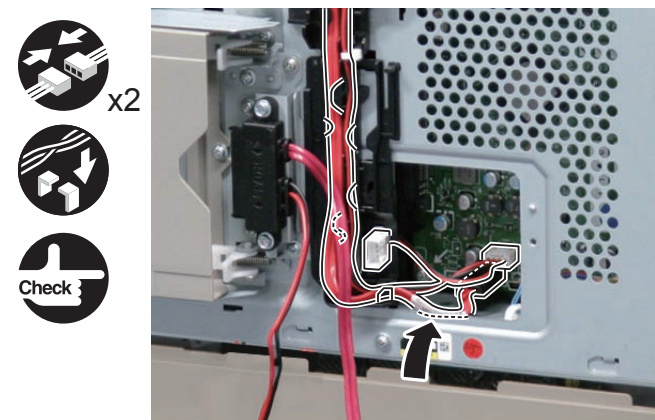


F-9-369

- 13) Insert the Relay Connector of the Power (FK2-9246) Cable into the HDD Cable Holder.
- 14) Connect the connectors of the 2 cables (FK2-9246, FK2-9247) of the Cable Unit, and secure the cables with the HDD Cable Holder.
- 2 Connectors

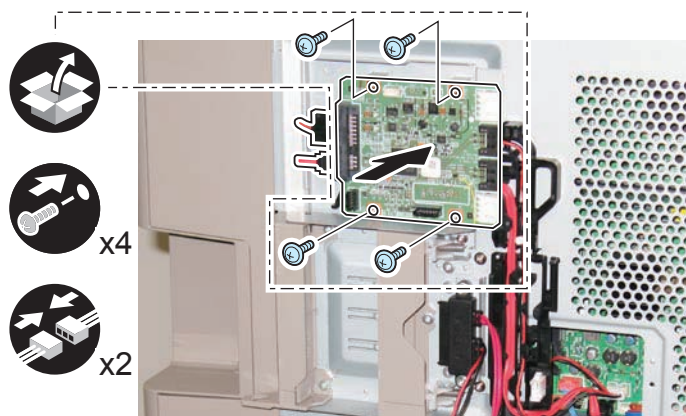
CAUTION:

If there is extra slack of the cables, be sure to tuck them in the Controller Box.



F-9-370

- 15) Install the HDD Encryption Board.
- 4 Screws (TP; M3x6) (included with the HDD Data Encryption Kit-C3)
- 16) Connect the 2 connectors ((FK2-9246, FK2-9247)) to the HDD Encryption Board.



F-9-371

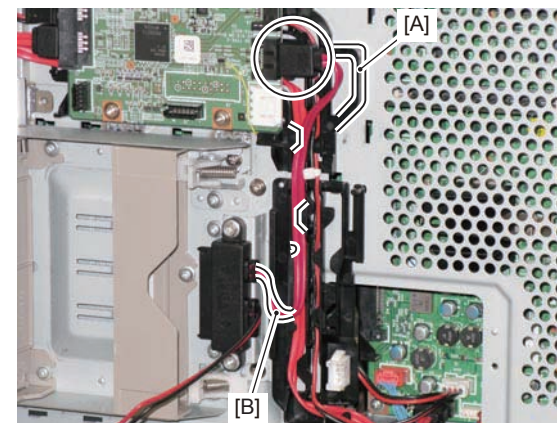
- 17) Connect the connector of the Signal Cable of the HDD Slot Unit, and secure the cable with the HDD Cable Holder..
- 1 Connector

NOTE:

Put the Signal Cable in the left line of the holder and connect it to the connector of the HDD Encryption Board.

CAUTION:

- Be sure that the cable of the connector does not protrude from the [A] part in order to prevent the cable from being trapped.
- If the Signal Cable is too long, leave the slack at the [B] part.

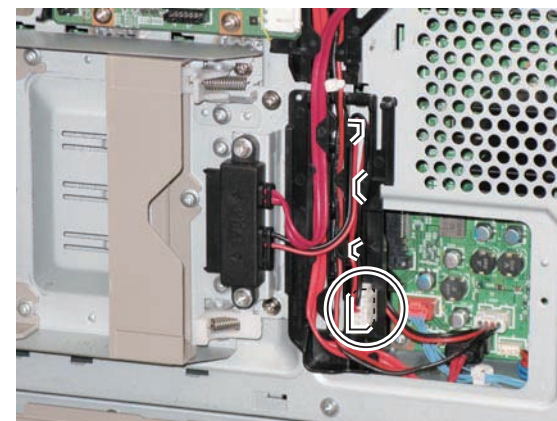


F-9-372

- 18) Connect the connector of the Power Cable of the HDD Slot Unit, and secure the cable with the HDD Cable Holder.
- 1 Connector

NOTE:

Put the Power Cable up and then down through the right line of the guide and connect it to the Power Cable Connector.



F-9-373

- 19) Install the Encryption Shield Cover.

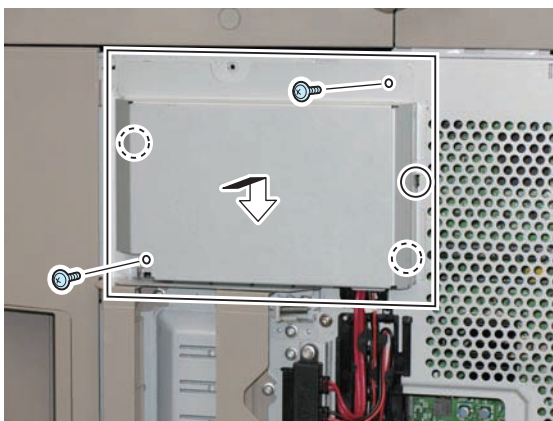
- 3 Claws
- 2 Screws (TP; M3x6)



x2



x3



F-9-374

■ Installing the Covers

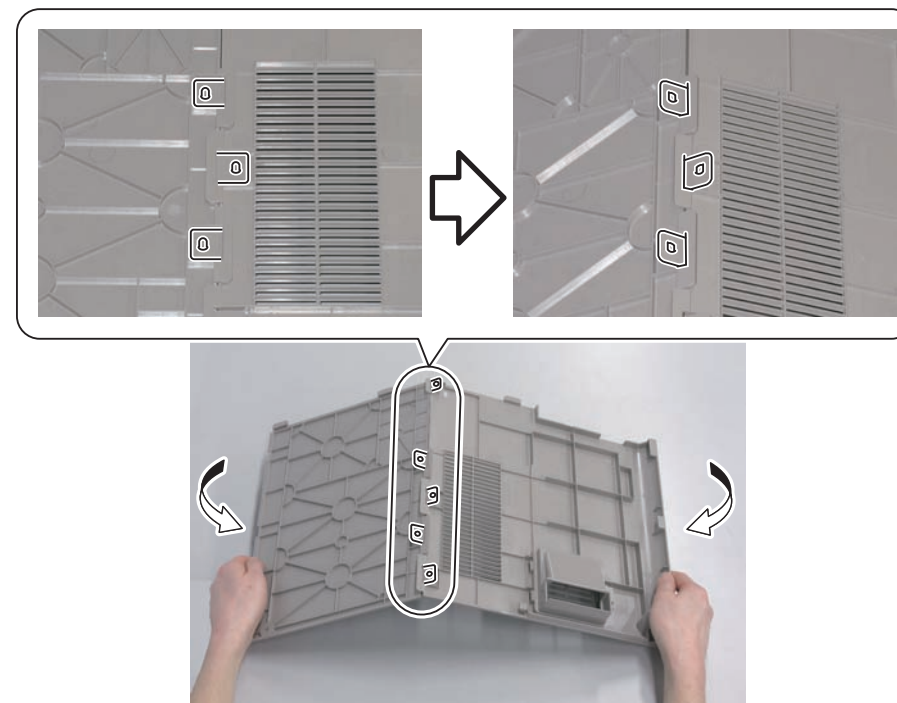
CAUTION:

Points to note when installing the covers: Steps 1 and 2 of "Installing the Covers".

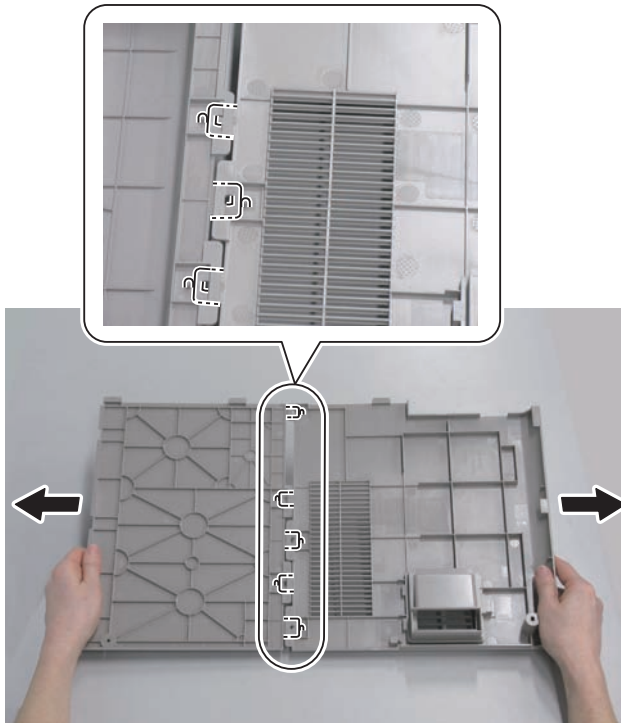
- In the case of HDD model, it is not necessary to perform steps 1 and 2 of "Installing the Covers".
- If the Option HDD (2.5 inch, 80GB HDD-E2) has been installed, perform steps 1 and 2 of "Installing the Covers".



- 1) Separate the Rear Upper Cover 1 and the Rear Upper Cover 2 by bending them to release the 5 bosses. (The separated Rear Upper Cover 2 will not be used.)



F-9-375



F-9-376

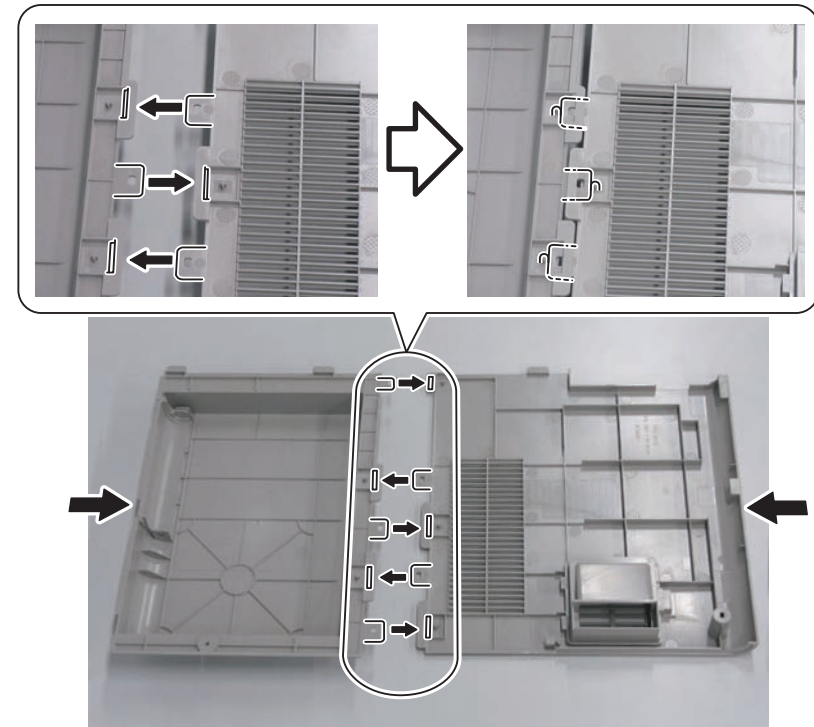


2) Join the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1.

- 5 bosses

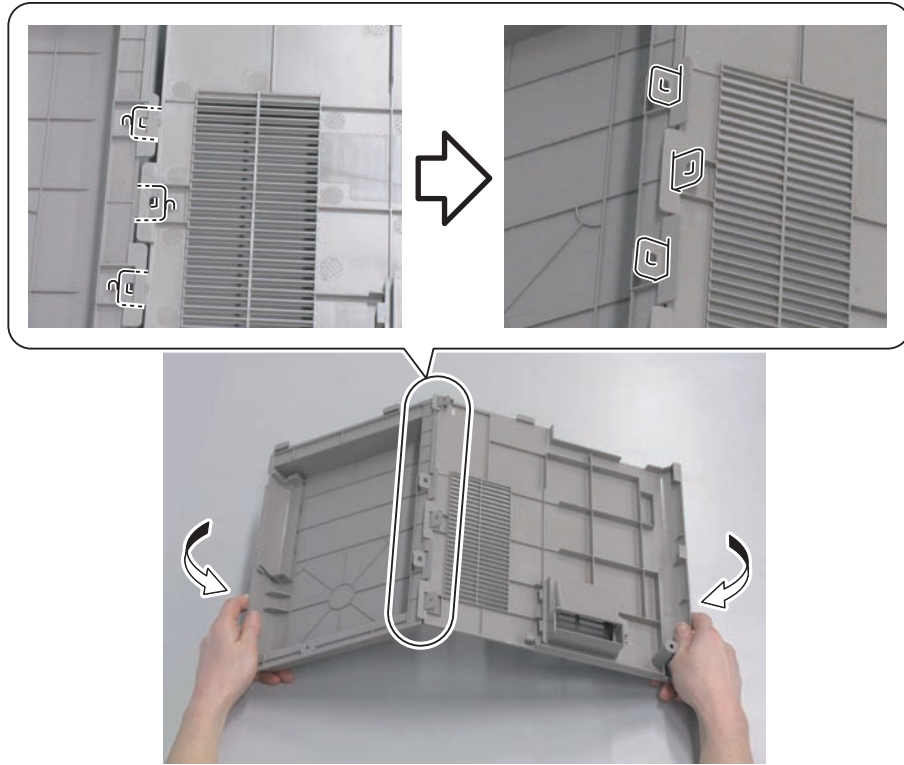


2-1) Put the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1 on a desk and insert the claws keeping them on the same level.



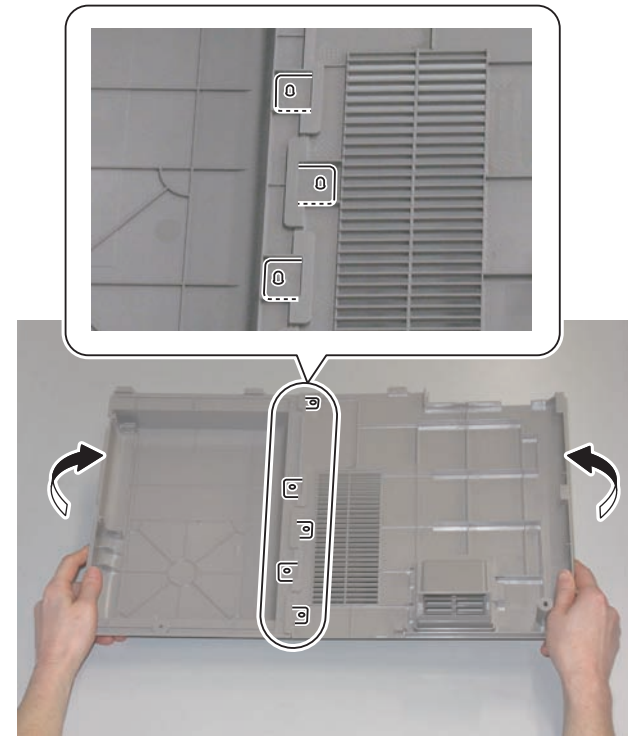
F-9-377

- 2-2) Bend the HDD Cover and the Rear Upper Cover 1 to further insert the claws.



F-9-378

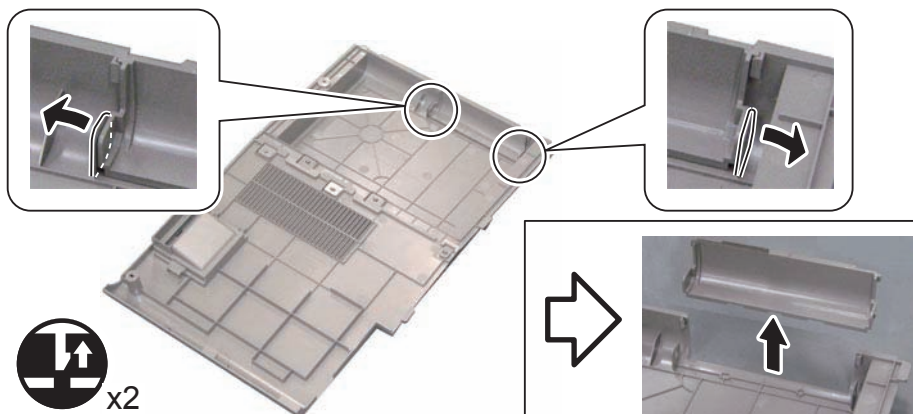
- 2-3) Flatten the bent HDD Cover and Rear Upper Cover 1 to fit the claws into the 5 bosses.



F-9-379

- 3) Remove the Slot Cover from the HDD Cover. (The removed Slot Cover will not be used.)

- 2 Claws



F-9-380

- 4) Install the small cover of the Controller Box Cover (1 Screw).
- 5) Install the Rear Upper Cover (Rear Upper Cover 1 and HDD Cover).
- 6) Close the Waste Toner Cover.
- 7) Tighten the screws securing the Rear Upper Cover 1 and HDD Cover. (Use the screws removed in "Removing the Covers" step 1.)

Installing the Removable HDD

- 1) Install the HDD Case to the HDD Slot Unit.



F-9-381

- 2) Be sure to request the user to padlock the removable HDD to discourage theft.

Setting after Installation/After Installing the Encryption Kit



- 1) Connect the power plug to the outlet.
- 2) Turn ON the main power switch.
- 3) E602-0001 occurs.
- 4) Turn OFF the main power, and start up 2+8.
- 5) Insert the USB memory for upgrading created with SST.
- 6) Press a key according to the instruction on the screen of the Control Panel.
 - [4]: Clear/Format > [1]: Disk Format > [0] > Please hit any key > [C]: Return to Main Menu > [Reset]: Start Shutdown sequence > [0]
- 7) Check that the Control Panel screen has become blank. Then, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.
- 8) The HDD is initialized, and then the machine is started up.
- 9) Delete the data on the flash memory.
 - Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Delete Old Data

Checking after Installation



- 1) Check that the HDD is recognized.
 - Select [service mode (level 1) > COPIER > Display > ACC_STS > HDD], and check that the manufacturer's name and the model number are displayed.
- 2) Check that the license is registered.
 - Select Check Counter > Device Configuration Information, and check that "HDD" is displayed
- 3) Check that the HDD Data Encryption is recognized.
 - Select Check Counter > Check Device Configuration > Option, and check that "HDD Data Encryption" is displayed.
 - A key mark should be displayed at the lower left of the Touch Panel Display.
- 4) Check the version of the HDD Data Encryption Kit.
 - Select Check Counter > Check Device Configuration, and check that "Canon MFP Security Chip '2.00' or '2.01' " is displayed.

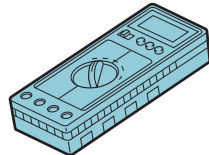
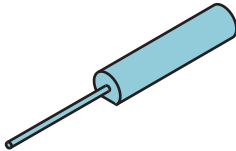
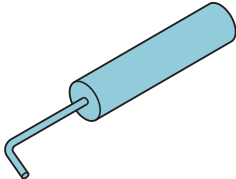

Appendix

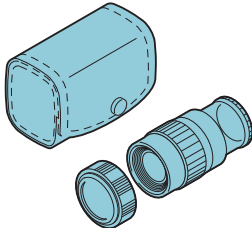
- Service Tools
- Backup Data
- Detail of HDD partition
- Soft counter specifications

Service Tools

Special Tools

In addition to the standard tools set, the following special tools are required when servicing the machine:

Tool name	Tool No.	Ctgr	Appearance	Remarks
Digital multimeter	FY9-2002	A		Used as a probe extension when making electrical checks.
Tester extension pin	FY9-3038	A		
Tester extension pin (L-shaped)	FY9-3039	A		Use for electrical checks.
CA-7 test Sheet	FY9-9323	A		Used for adjusting/checking images.

Tool name	Tool No.	Ctgr	Appearance	Remarks
Loupe	CK-0056	B		Used for checking images.

Reference: Category

T-10-1

A: Must be kept by each service engineer.

B: Must be kept by each group of about five engineers.

C: Must be kept by each workshop

Solvents and Oils

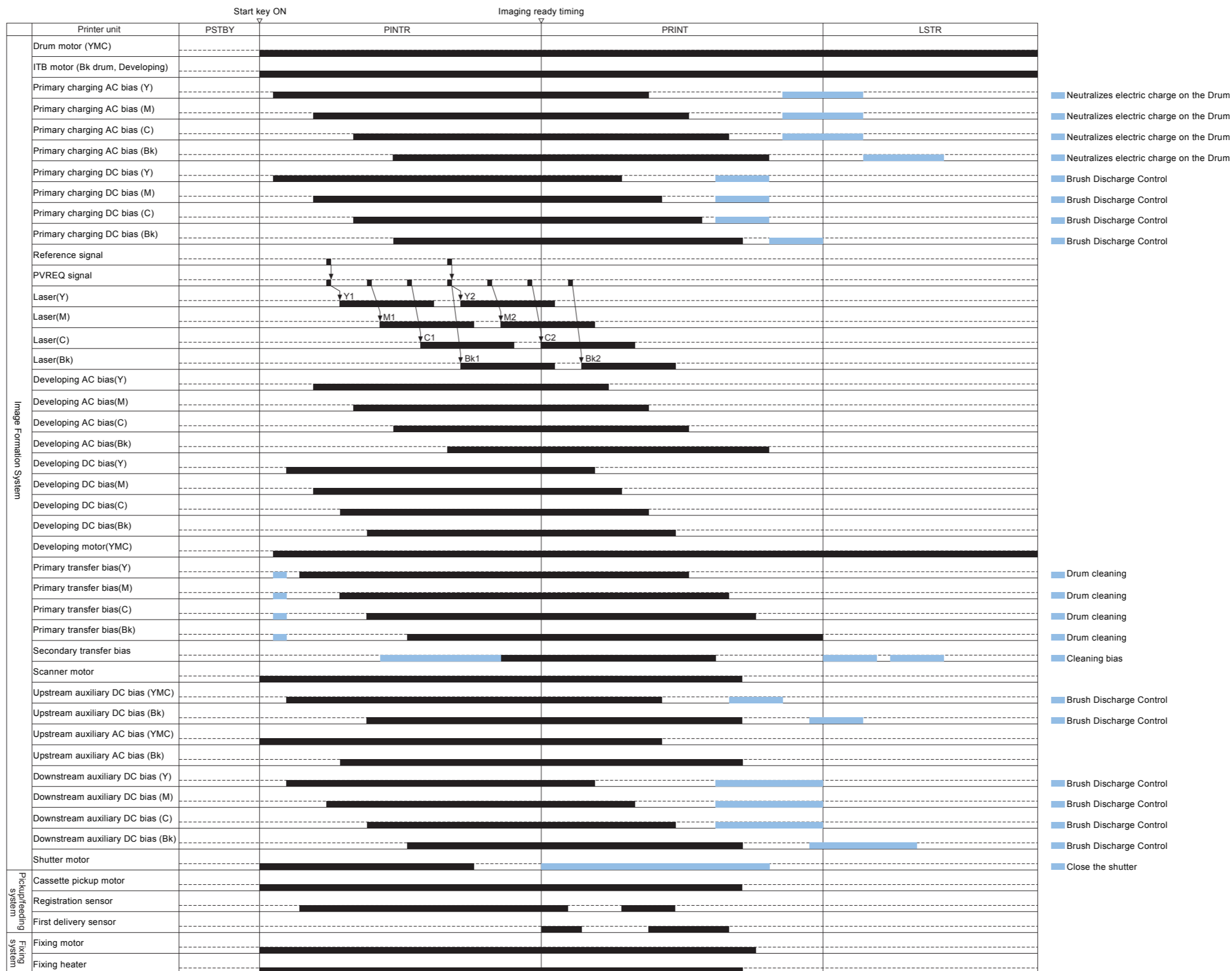
Item	Uses	Composition	Remarks
Alcohol	Cleaning; e.g., glass, plastic, rubber; external covers.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fluoride-family hydrocarbon • Alcohol • Surface activating • Water 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not bring near fire. • Procure locally. • Substitute: IPA(isopropy alcohol)
Lubricating oil	Lubrication; e.g., scanner rail.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Silicone oil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tool No: FY9-6011 (50 cc)
Conducting grease	Lubrication; e.g., edge of secondary transfer roller, drum heater sliding area.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fluorine poly wthyl 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tool No: FY9-6021(20 g)

T-10-2

General Timing Chart

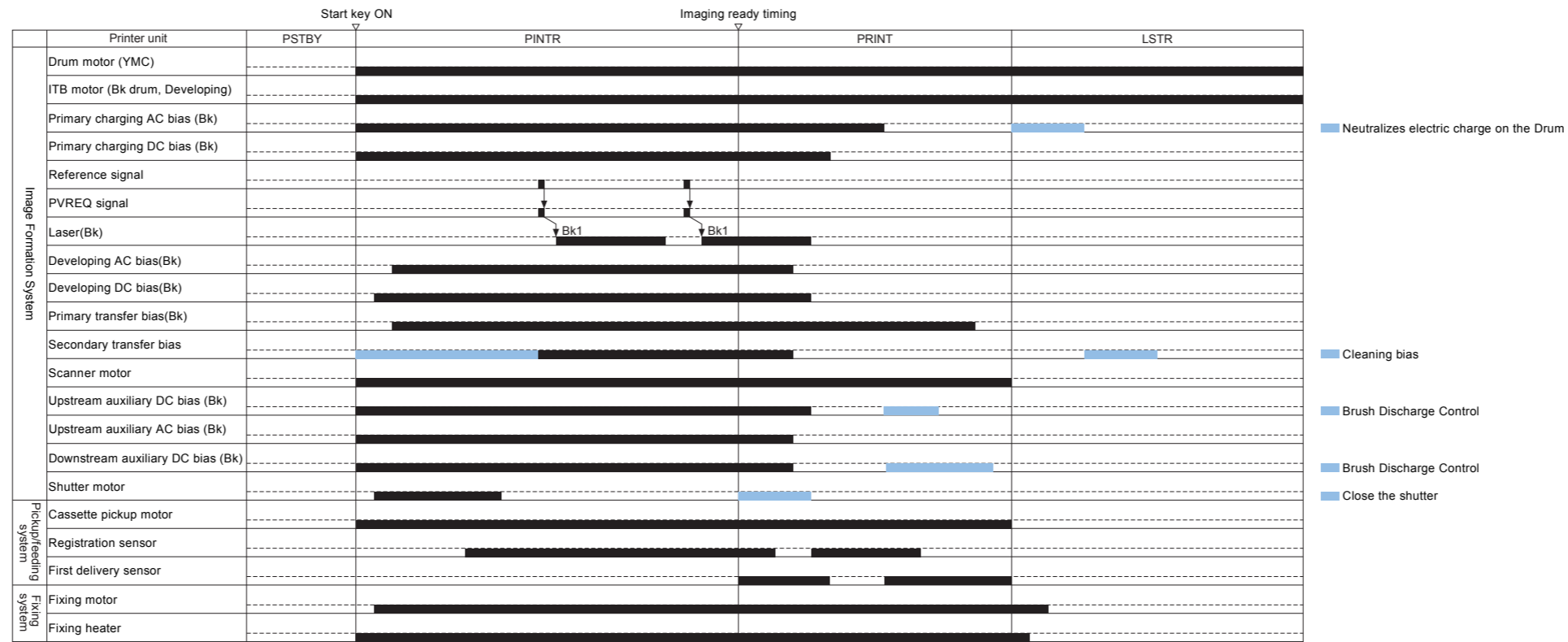
General Timing Chart

A4 single-sided 2 prints full color



F-10-1

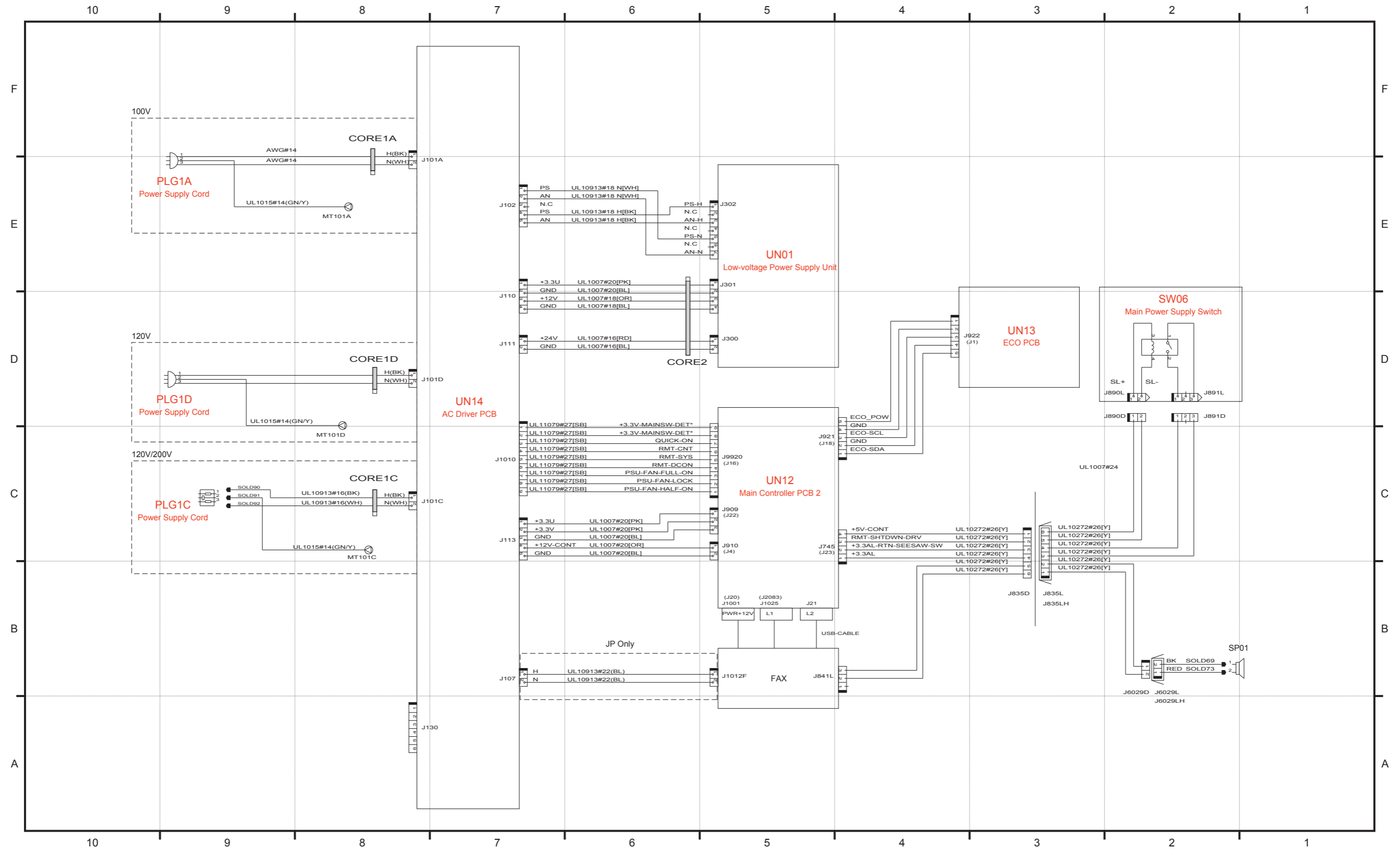
A4 single-sided 2 prints Bk color



F-10-2

General Circuit Diagram

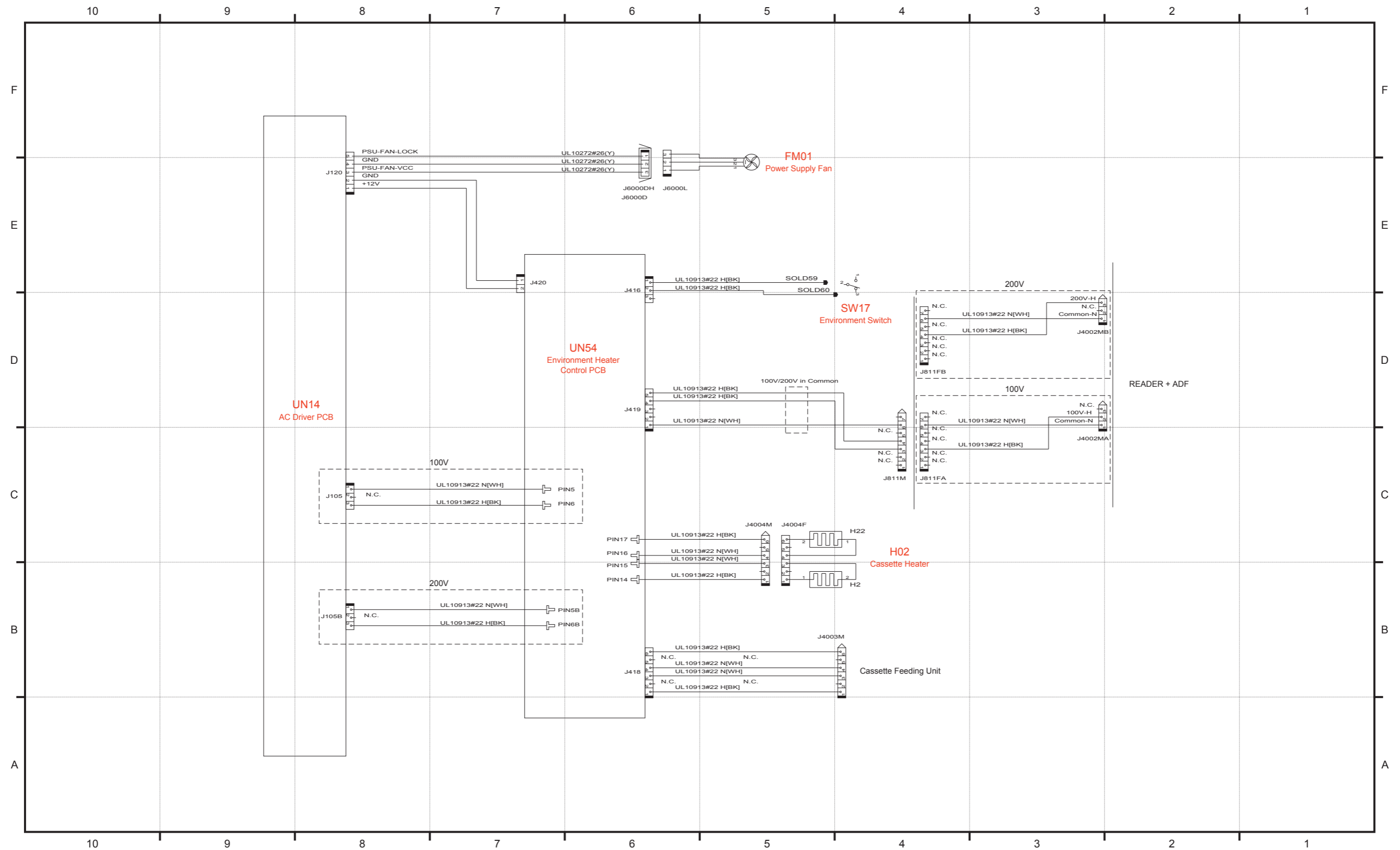
General Circuit Diagram(1/18)



General Circuit Diagram(2/18)

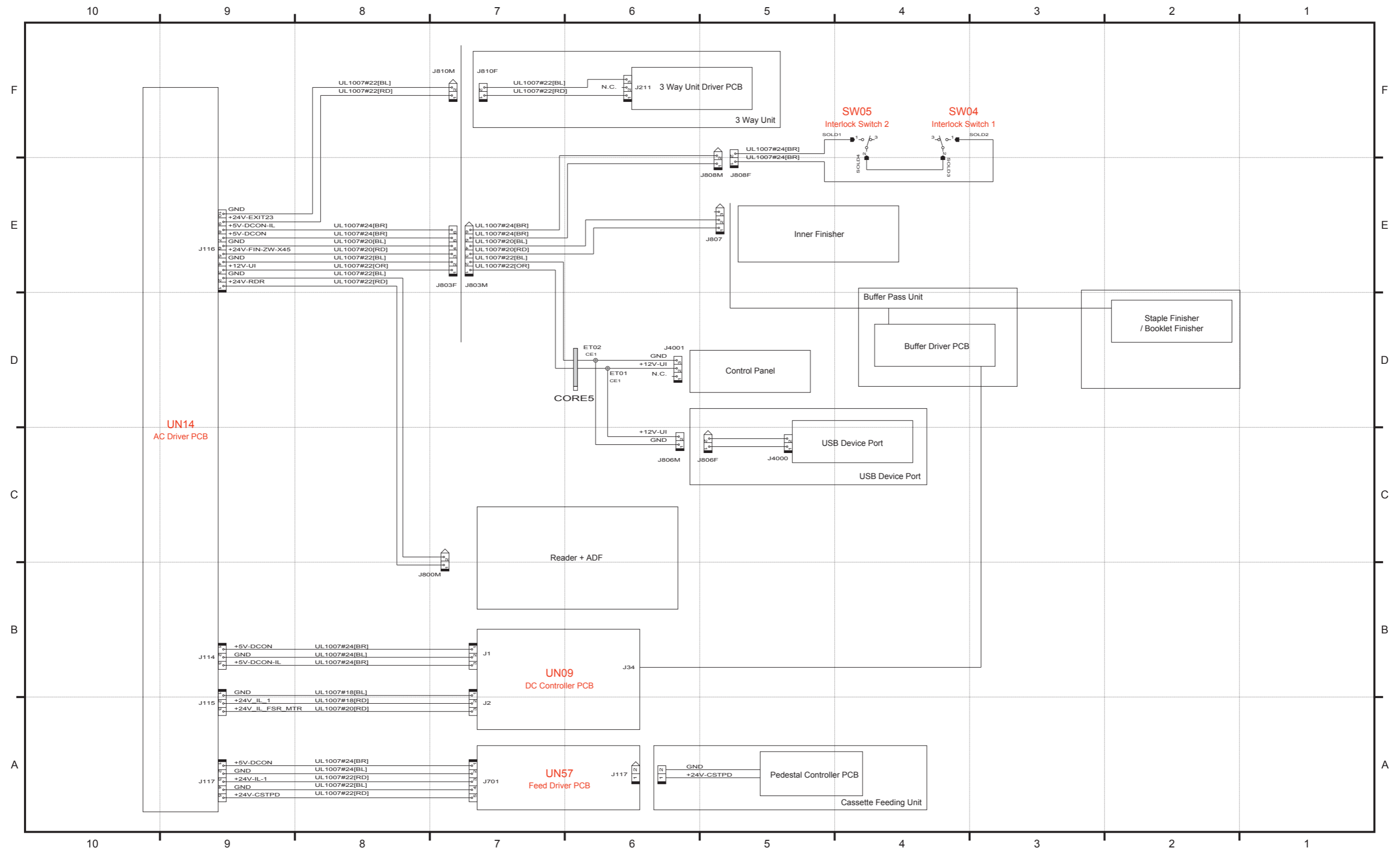
Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(2/18)

Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(2/18)

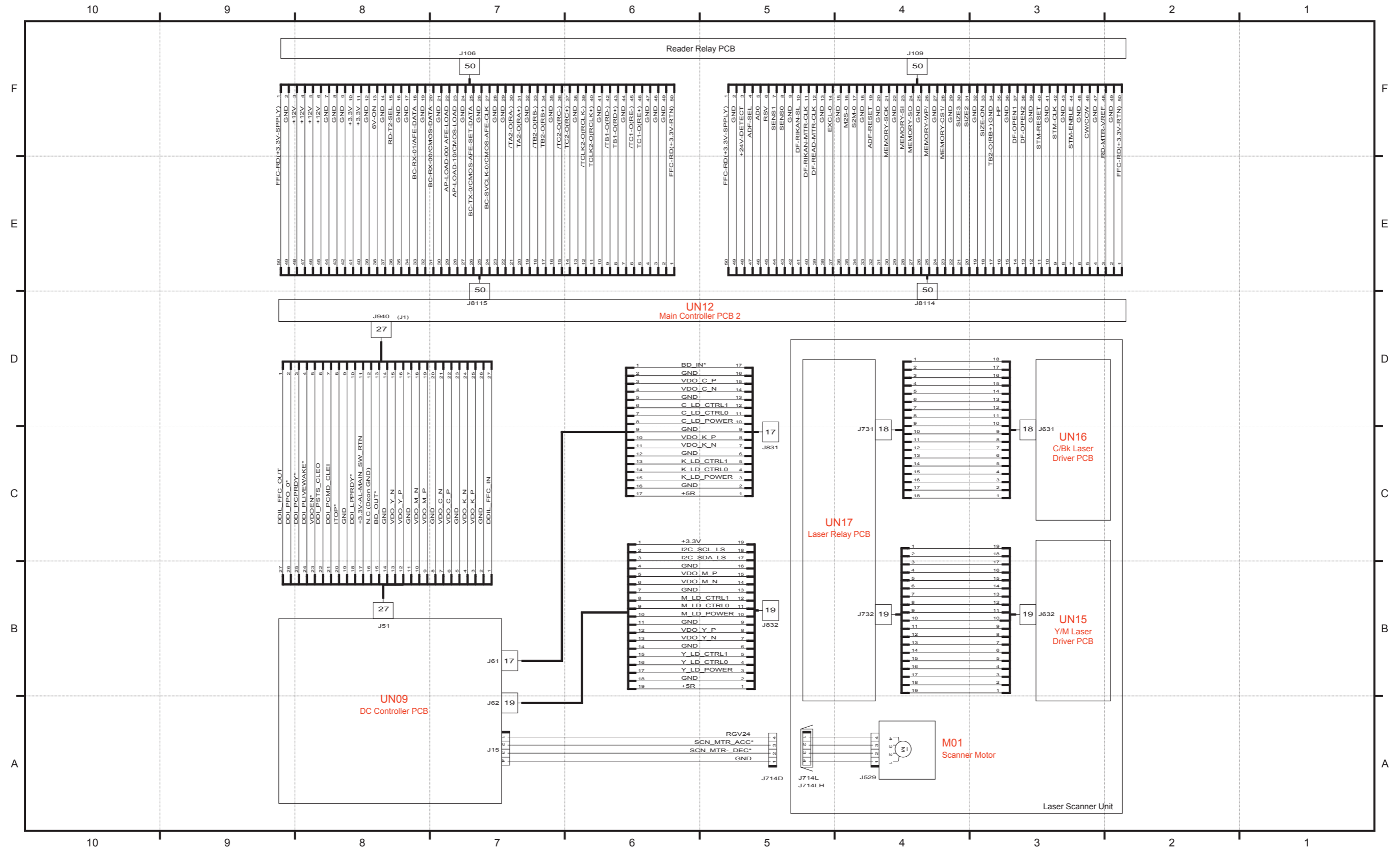


General Circuit Diagram(3/18)

Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(3/18)

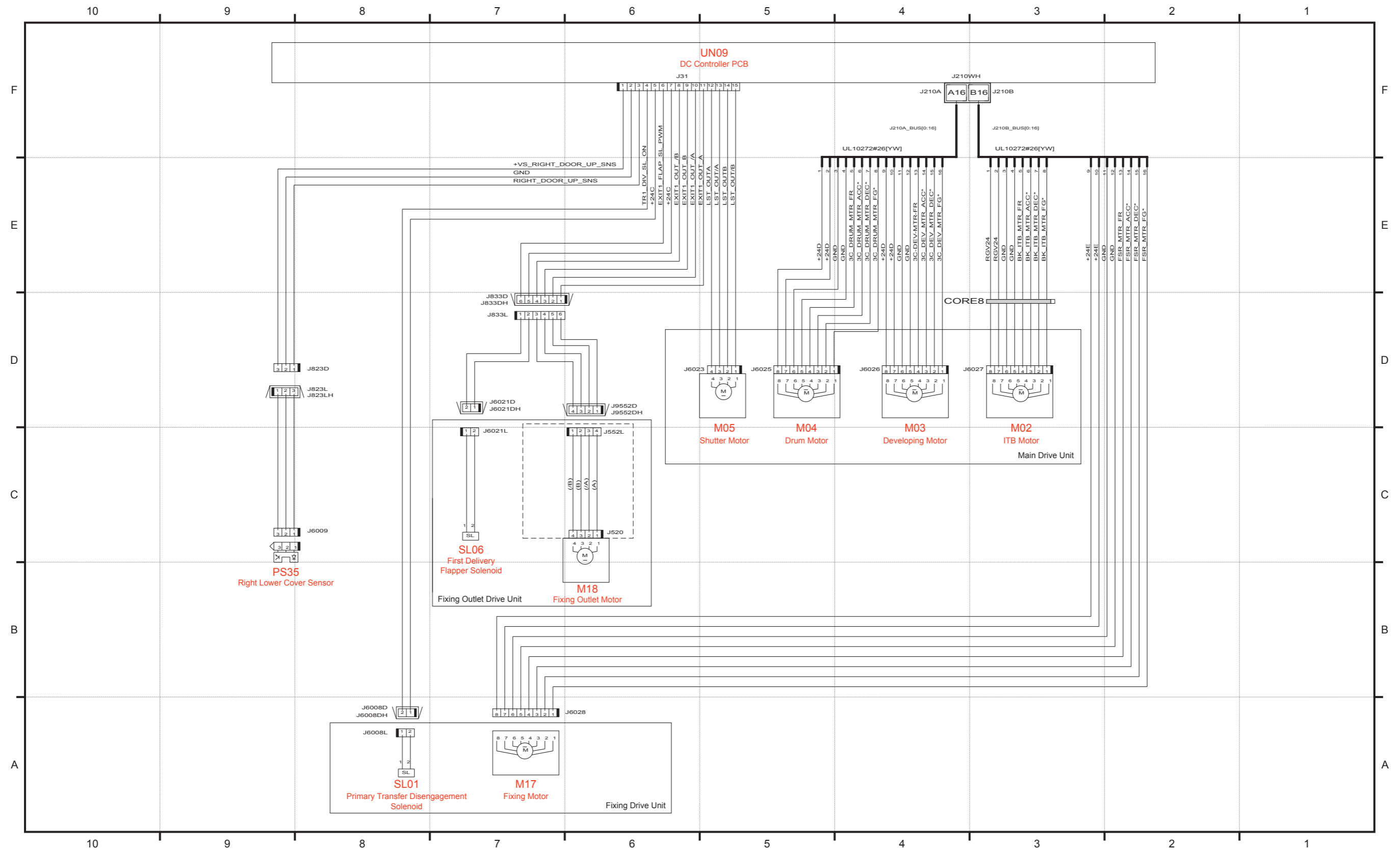


Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(3/18)



General Circuit Diagram(6/18)

Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(6/18)

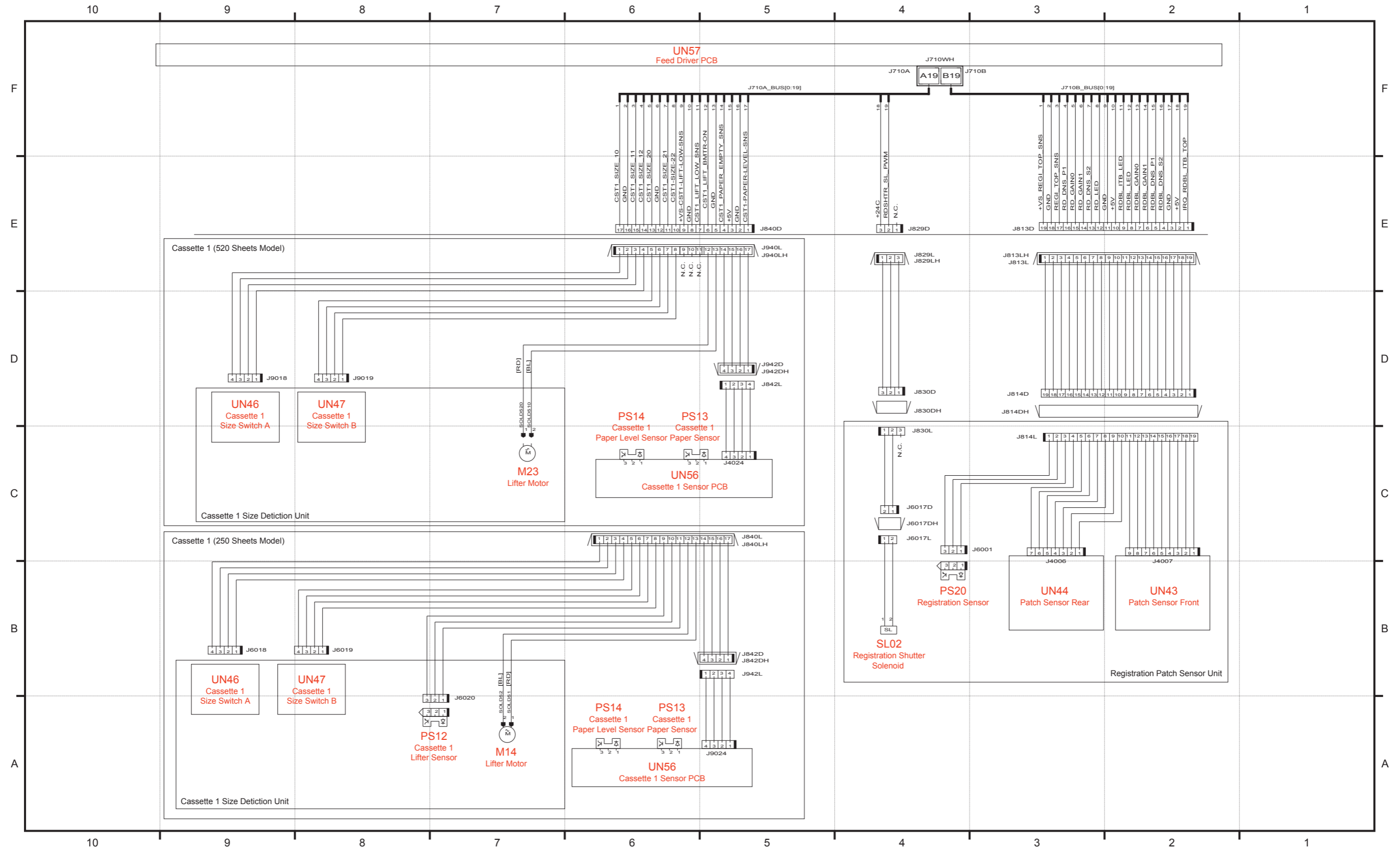


Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(6/18)

General Circuit Diagram(9/18)

Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(9/18)

Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(9/18)

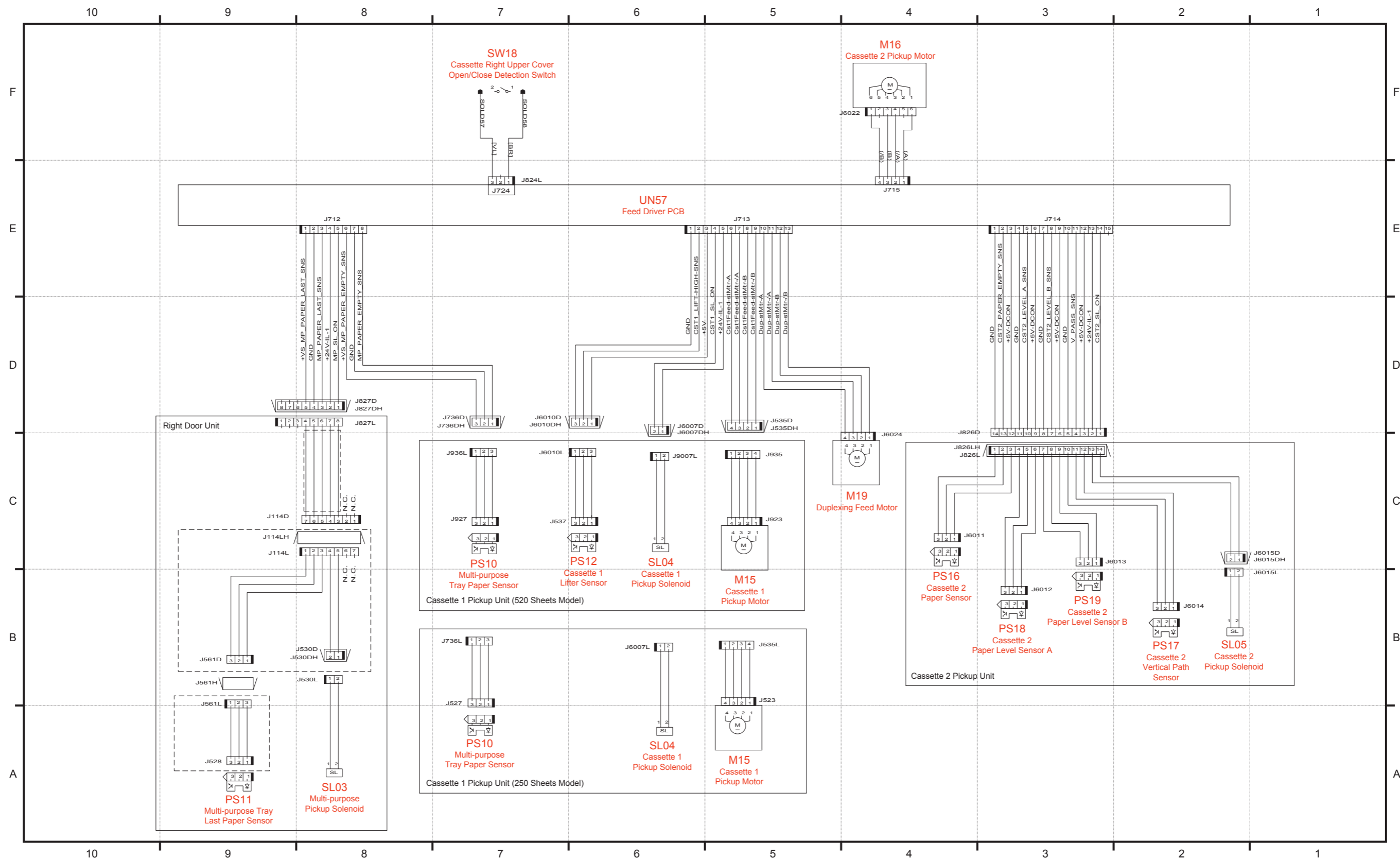


P.9

F-10-11

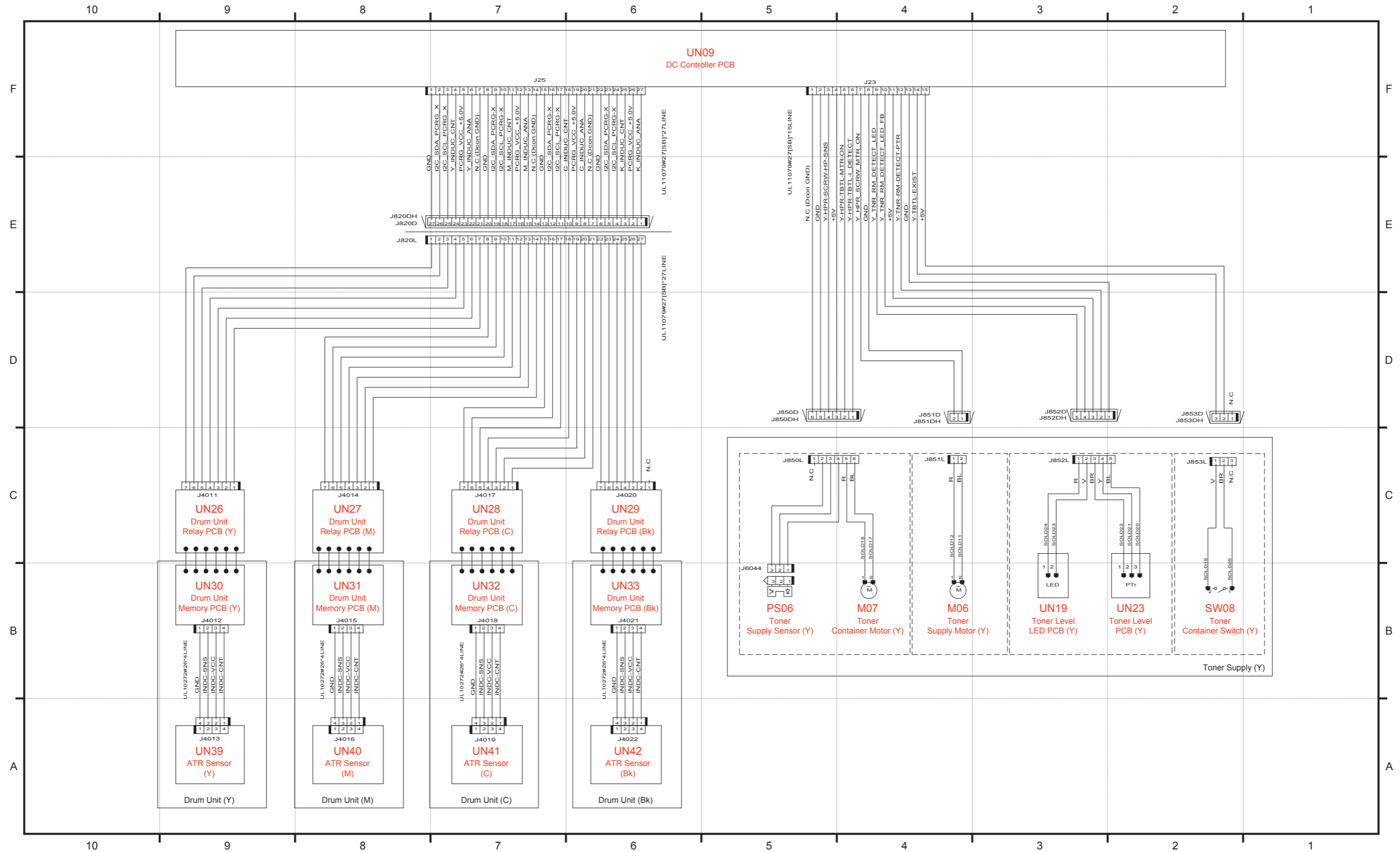
General Circuit Diagram(10/18)

Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(10/18)



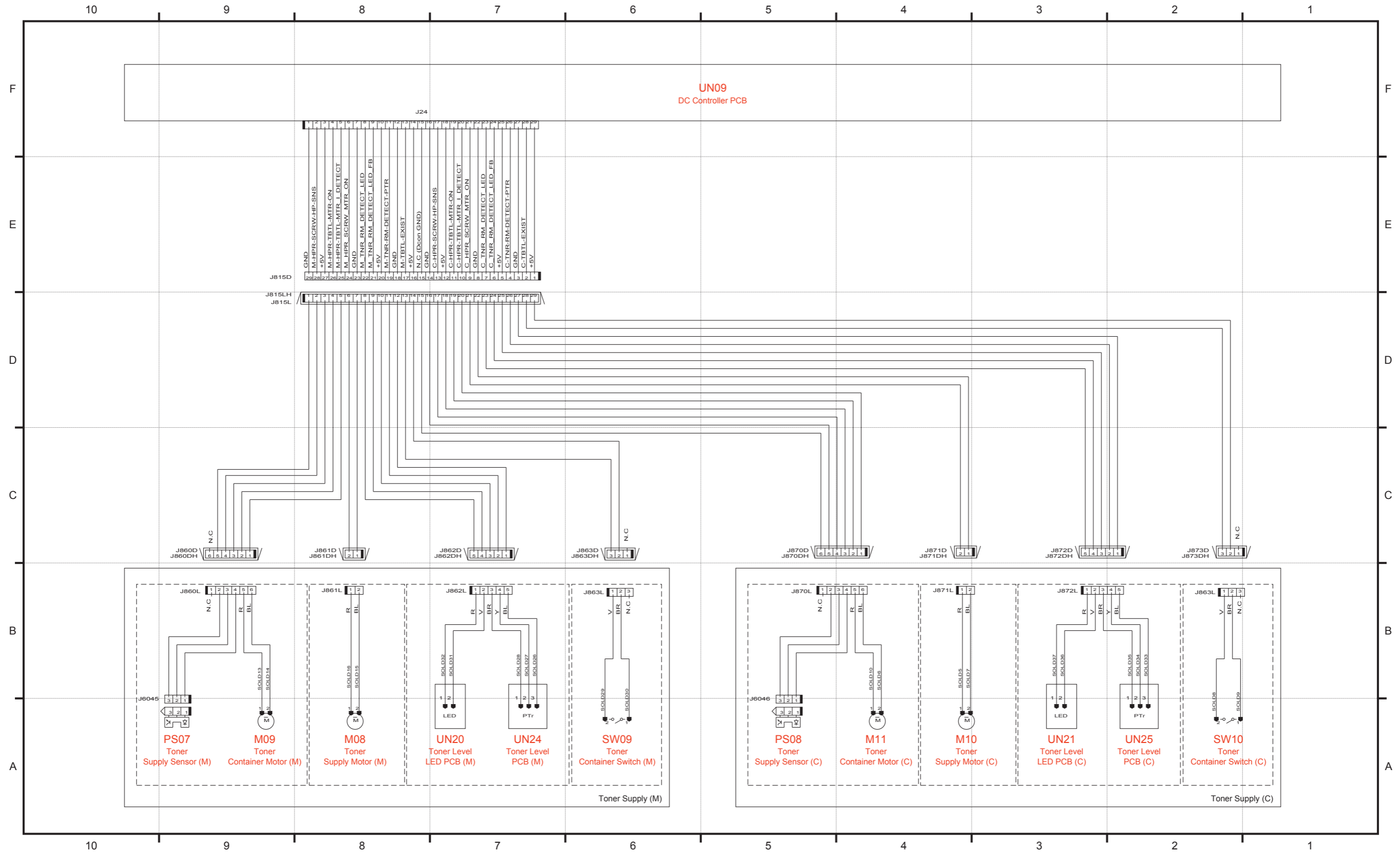
Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(10/18)

General Circuit Diagram(11/18)



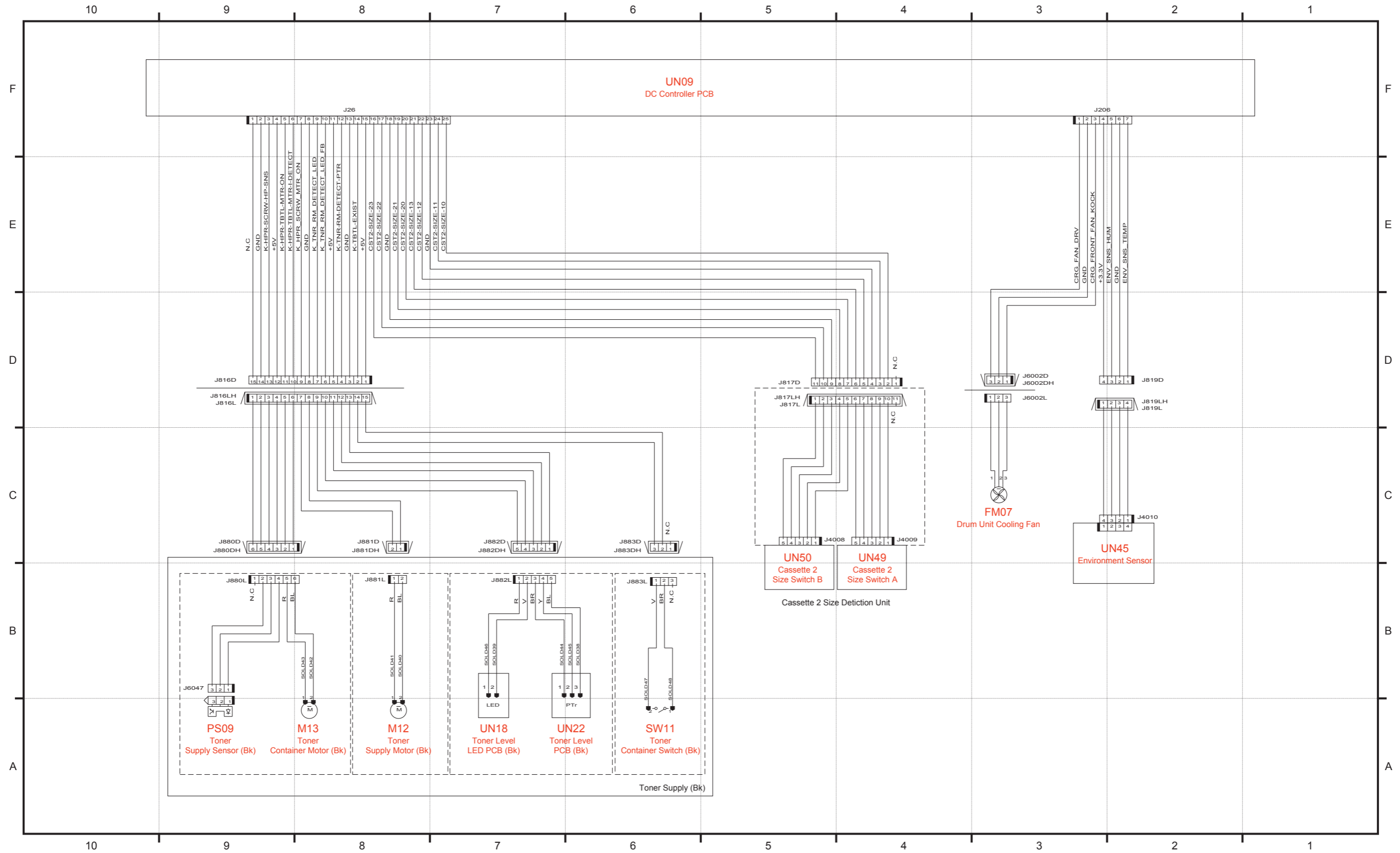
Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(11/18)

General Circuit Diagram(12/18)



Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(12/18)

General Circuit Diagram(13/18)

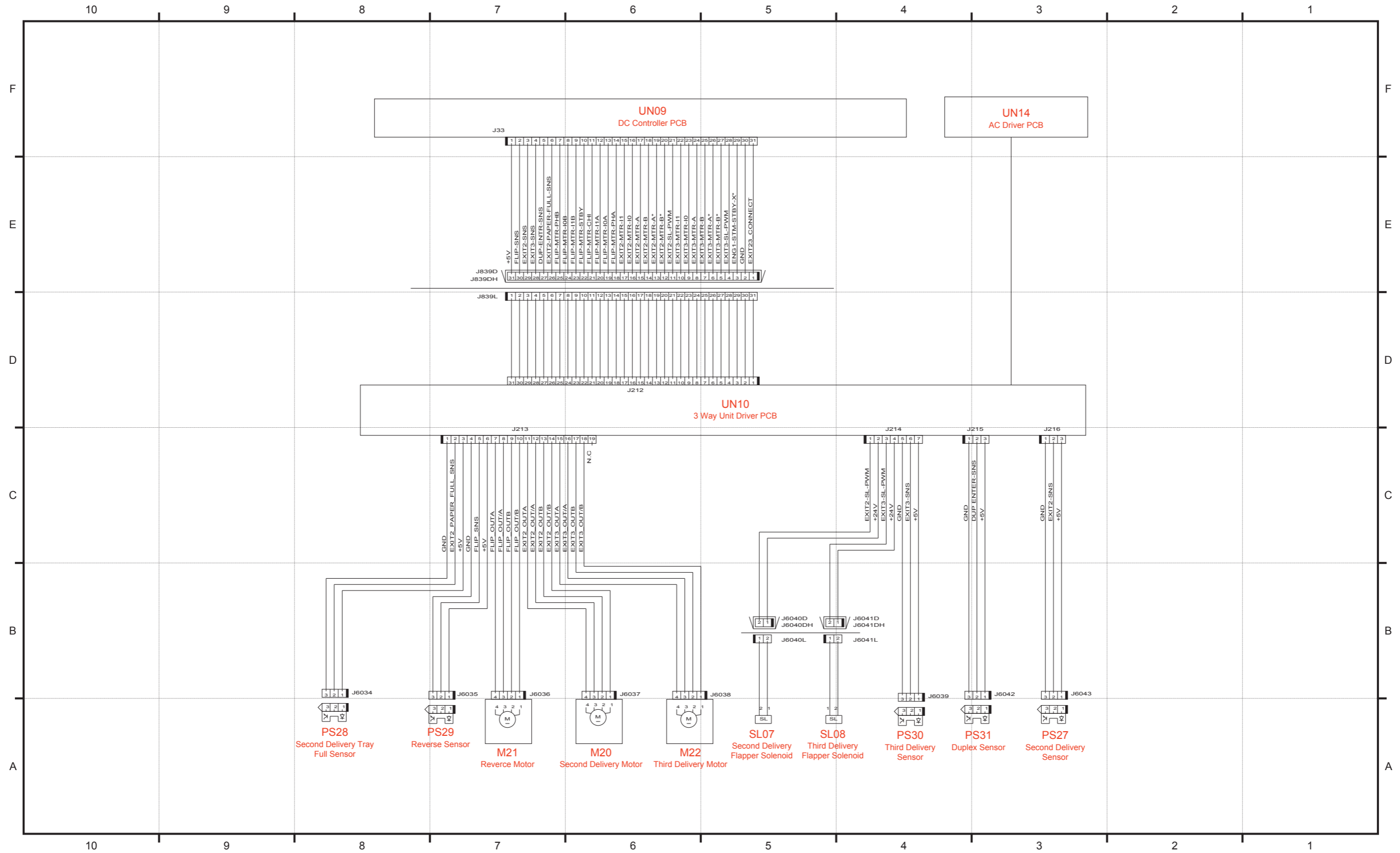


Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(13/18)

Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(13/18)

General Circuit Diagram(14/18)

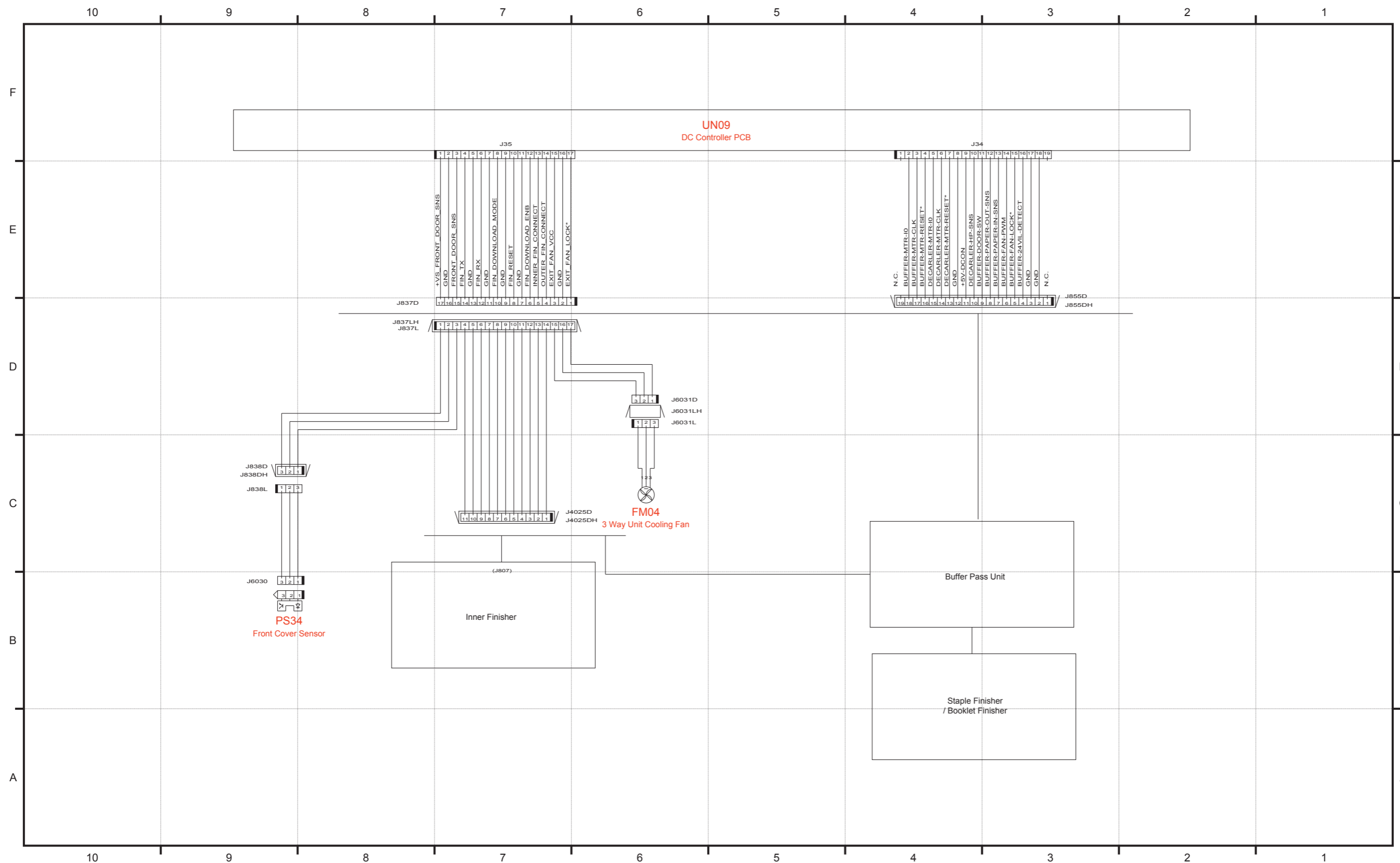
Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(14/18)



Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(14/18)

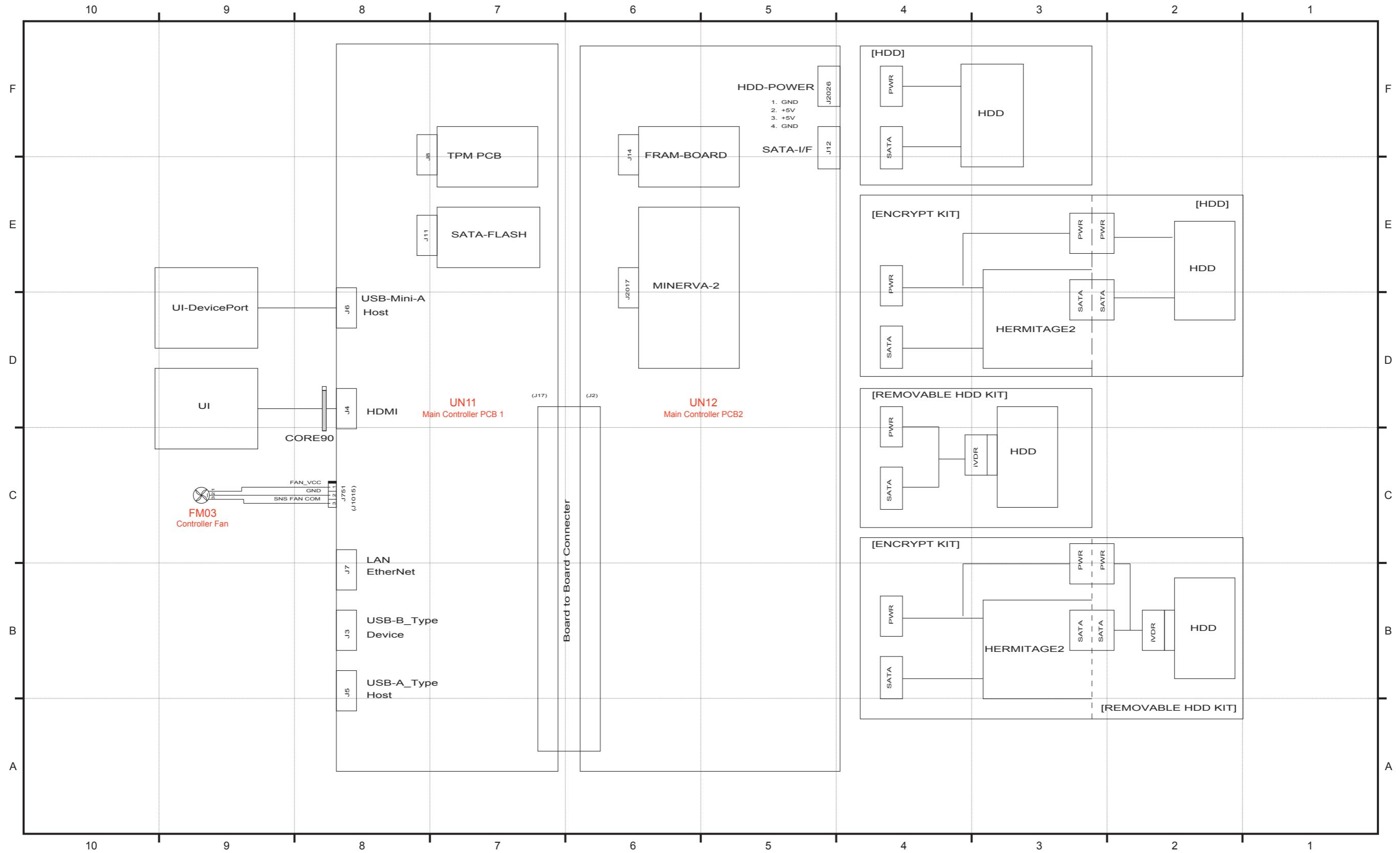
General Circuit Diagram(15/18)

Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(15/18)



Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(15/18)

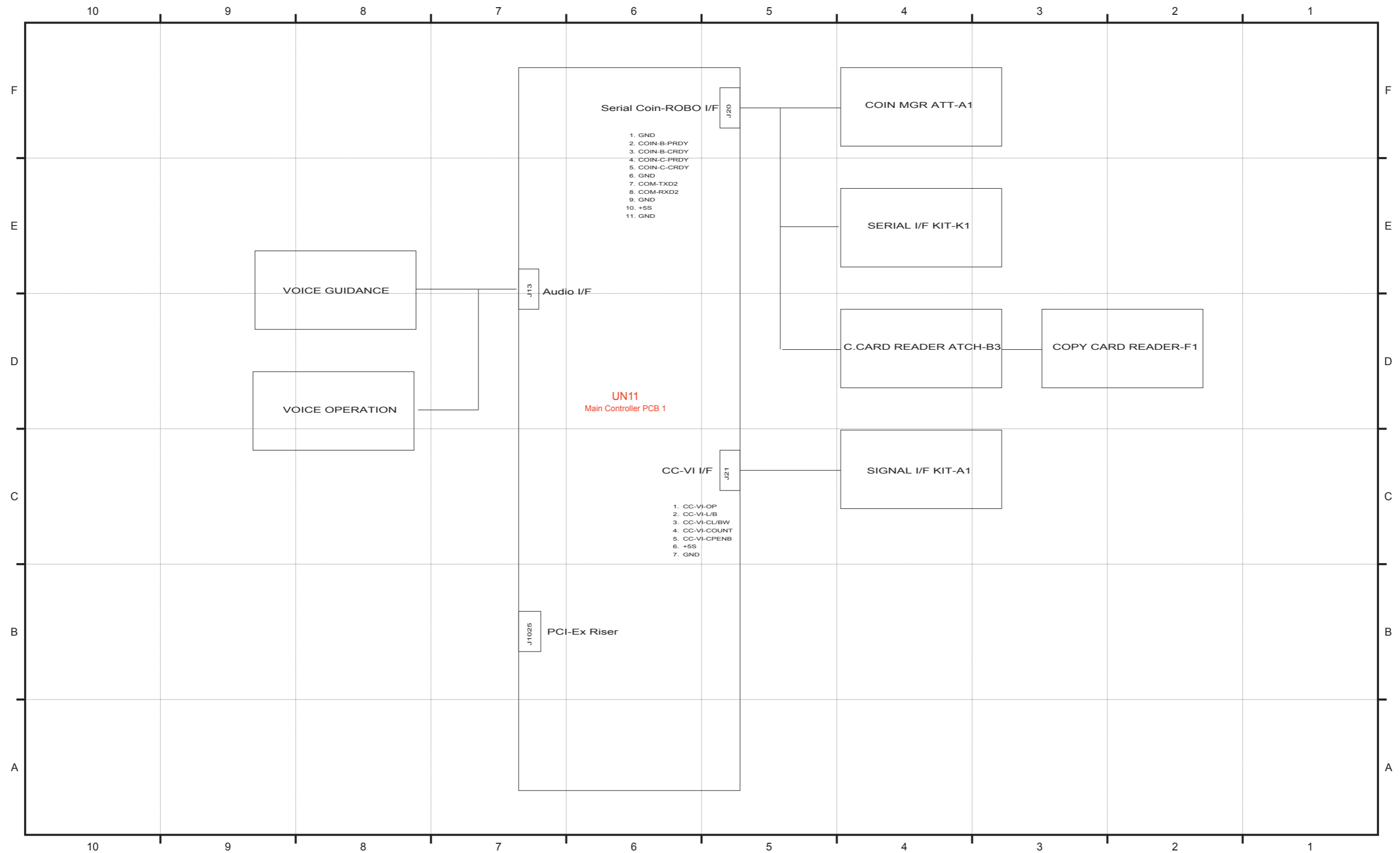
General Circuit Diagram(16/18)



Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(16/18)

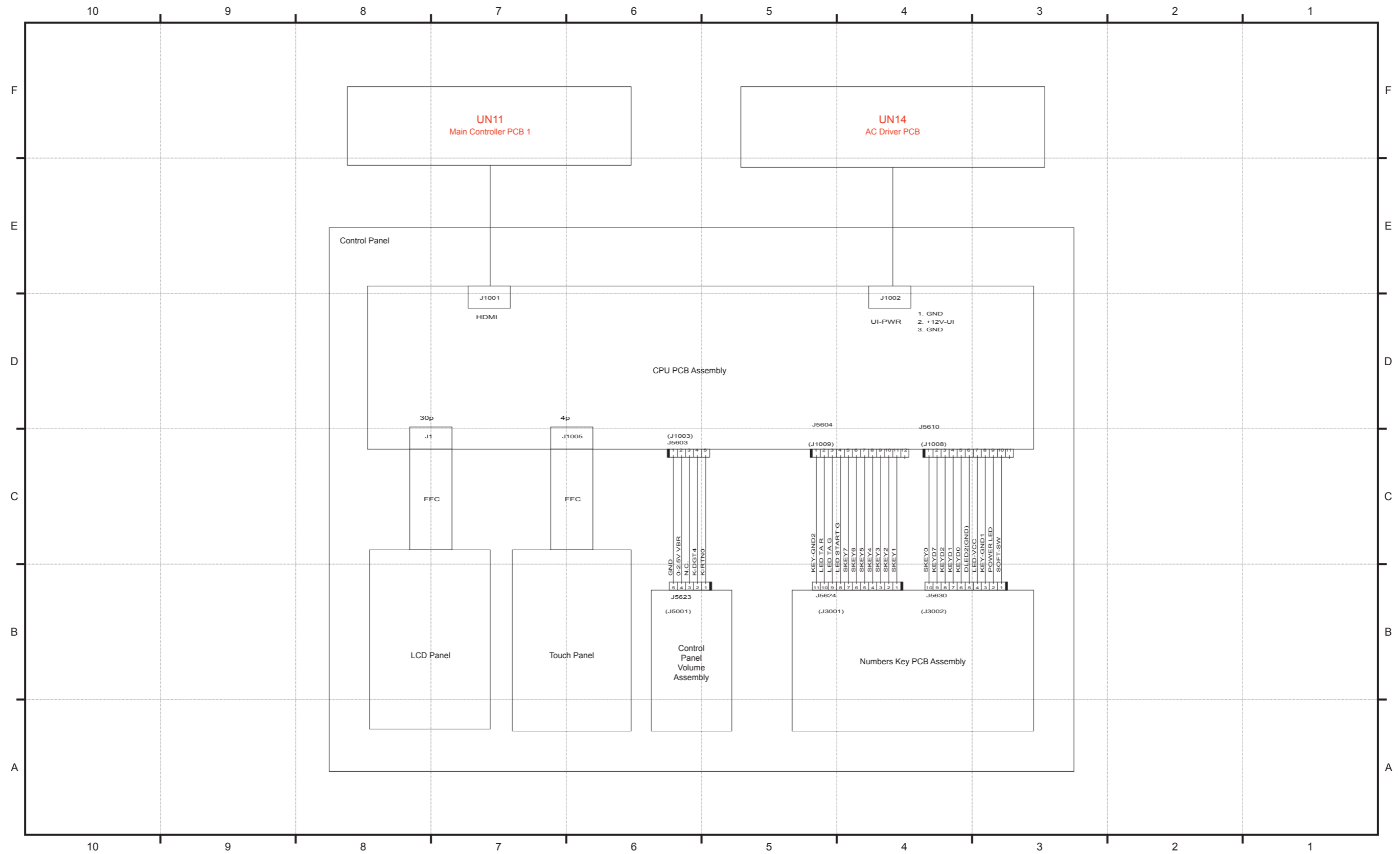
General Circuit Diagram(17/18)

Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(17/18)



Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(17/18)

General Circuit Diagram(18/18)



Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(18/18)

Appendix > General Circuit Diagram > General Circuit Diagram(18/18)

Backup Data

Appendix > Backup Data

Appendix > Backup Data

Data	Location	Replacement							CLEAR						Backup by User			Backup by Service			Remarks						
		When Replacing HDD / Executing AllFormat	When Replacing Flash / Executing AllFormat	Main PCB Replacing When Main PCB 1	Main PCB Replacing When Main PCB 2	DC Cont-roller PCB	Reader Cont-roller PCB	Replace the TPM PCB	User function				Function		Service function		Yes / No	Method	Location to be stored	Yes / No		Method	Location to be stored				
									Initialize All Data / Settings	Settings/Registration > Function Settings			Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR				Function > CLEAR				Function > CLEAR	Back-up	Re-store	
										Copy > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Common Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Fax Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize															Printer Settings > Custom Settings > Initialize
Address List	SRAM Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Clear	-	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	Yes (*1)	USB memory device	-	*1 Data can be backed up and restored from the RESTORE menu in service mode. If backup data has been exported to the USB memory device, only restoration can be performed from Download Menu (USB).
Forwarding Settings	SRAM Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	Clear	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	Clear	-	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	Yes (*1)	USB memory device	-	
Settings / Registration																											
Preferences	Flash	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear	Clear	Clear(*2)	-	-	-	Yes (*3)	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	No	-	-	*2 The following settings are deleted. Preferences > Paper Settings > Register Envelope Drawer Preferences > Paper Settings > B5/EXEC Paper Selection Preferences > Paper Settings > A5R/STMTR Paper Selection *3 Preferences > Timer/Energy Settings > [Adjust Time]/[Date/Time Settings] is excluded.
Adjustment/Maintenance	Flash	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	No	-	-	

Data	Location	Replacement								CLEAR						Backup by User			Backup by Service			Remarks						
		When Replacing HDD / Executing AllFormat	When Replacing Flash / Executing AllFormat	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 1	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 2	DC Controller PCB	Reader Controller PCB	Replace the TPM PCB	Initialize All Data / Settings	User function				Service function						Yes / No	Method		Location to be stored	Yes / No Back-up	Method	Location to be stored		
										Settings/Registration > Function Settings				Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR								Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR
										Copy > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Common Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Fax Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Printer Settings > Custom Settings > Initialize	MN-CONT	MMI	DC-CON	R-CON	ADRS-BK	JV-CASHE									
Function Settings	Flash	-	Clear	-	-	Clear	-	-	Clear	Clear	Clear	Clear	-	Clear	Clear	Clear (*4)	Clear (*5)	-	-	Yes (*6)	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	No	-	-	*4 The following settings are deleted. Function Settings > Common > Paper Feed Settings > Paper Drawer Auto Selection On/Off Function Settings > Common > Paper Feed Settings > Feed Method Switch *5 The following settings are deleted. Function Settings > Common > Scan Settings > Scanner Noise Settings Function Settings > Common > Scan Settings > Timing to Raise Feeder Tray Function Settings > Common > Scan Settings > Streak Prevention *6 The following data cannot be backed up. Function Settings > Common > Print Settings > Register Form Function Settings > Receive/Forward > Common Settings > Set Fax/I-Fax Inbox	
Set Destination	Flash	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	No	-	-		
Management Settings	Flash	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	Yes (*7)	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	No	-	-	*7 The following setting can be backed up and restored as the department ID by using the remote UI (block of Export/Import). User Management > Department ID Management > Page Totals	
Printer Settings	Flash	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI (individual export/import) block is not included in the target.	PC	No	No	-	-		
Set Paper Information	Flash	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	No	-	-		
Setting items for each menu in Main Menu (Copy, Scan and Send, Fax, Scan and Store, Access Stored Files, Fax/I-Fax Inbox)																												
Favorite Settings	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	Yes (*8)	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	Yes	Yes (*9)	SST, Download Menu(Flash board /USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB	*8 In the case of export to the same model, data can be backed up and restored as "Favorite Settings". *9 In the case of export to a different model, the favorite settings of Copy and Box are not reflected. As for Send, the favorite settings are reflected even in the case of export to a different model.

Data	Location	Replacement							CLEAR						Backup by User			Backup by Service			Remarks						
		When Replacing HDD / Executing AllFormat	When Replacing Flash / Executing AllFormat	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 1	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 2	DC Controller PCB	Reader Controller PCB	Replace the TPM PCB	Initialize All Data / Settings	User function				Service function						Yes / No		Method	Location to be stored	Yes / No Back-up	Method	Location to be stored	
										Settings/Registration > Function Settings				Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR								Function > CLEAR
										Copy > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Common Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Fax Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Printer Settings > Custom Settings > Initialize	MN-CONT	MMI	DC-CON	R-CON	ADRS-BK	JV-CASHE								
Default Settings	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	No	-	-	Yes	Yes (*10) (*11)	SST, Download Menu(Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB	*10 If start-up in download mode in safe mode is available in the event of an HDD failure, it is assumed that Meapback can be backed up using SST in some cases. In that case, the data can be recovered with the information of Meapback maintained normally after installation of the system after replacement of the HDD, starting the machine in download mode in safe mode, and restoring the backup data. *11 Excluding the logs, if backup data has been exported to the USB memory device, only restoration can be performed from Download Menu (USB).		
Shortcut settings for "Options"	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	No	-	-	Yes	Yes (*10)	SST, Download Menu(Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB			
Previous Settings	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	No	-	-	Yes	Yes (*10)	SST, Download Menu(Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB			
Setting items for Quick Menu																											
Button Size information	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	Yes	Yes (*1) (*12)	SST, Download Menu(Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB	*12 If start-up in download mode in safe mode is available in the event of an HDD failure, it is assumed that Meapback can be backed up using SST in some cases. In that case, the data can be recovered with the information of Meapback maintained normally after installation of the system after replacement of the HDD, starting the machine in download mode in safe mode, and restoring the backup data.		
Wallpaper Setting	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	Yes	Yes (*1) (*12)	SST, Download Menu(Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB			

Data	Location	Replacement								CLEAR						Backup by User			Backup by Service			Remarks					
		When Replacing HDD / Executing AllFormat	When Replacing Flash / Executing AllFormat	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 1	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 2	DC Cont-roller PCB	Reader Cont-roller PCB	Replace the TPM PCB	Initialize All Data / Settings	User function				Service function						Yes / No	Method		Location to be stored	Yes / No Back-up	Method Re-store	Location to be stored	
										Settings/Registration > Function Settings				Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR								Function > CLEAR
										Copy > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Common Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Fax Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Printer Settings > Custom Settings > Initialize	MN-CONT	MMI	DC-CON	R-CON	ADRS-BK	JV-CASHE								
Button information in Quick Menu	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	Yes	Yes (*1) (*12)	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB		
Restrict Quick Menu	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	Yes	Yes (*1) (*12)	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB		
Setting items for Main Menu																											
Button settings in Main Menu	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	Yes (*1)	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB		
Button settings on the top of the screen	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	Yes (*1)	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB		
Wallpaper Setting for Main Menu	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	Yes (*1)	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB		
Other settings for Main Menu	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	Yes (*1)	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB		
Access Stored Files																											
Image forms stored in the Form Composition mode	HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	No	No	-	-		
Web browser settings																											

Data	Location	Replacement								CLEAR						Backup by User			Backup by Service			Remarks								
		When Replacing HDD / Executing AllFormat	When Replacing Flash / Executing AllFormat	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 1	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 2	DC Controller PCB	Reader Controller PCB	Replace the TPM PCB	Initialize All Data / Settings	User function				Service function						Yes / No	Method		Location to be stored	Yes / No	Method	Location to be stored				
										Settings/Registration > Function Settings				Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR								Function > CLEAR	Yes / No	Method	Location to be stored
										Copy > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Common Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Fax Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Printer Settings > Custom Settings > Initialize	MN-CONT	MMI	DC-CON	R-CON	ADRS-BK	JV-CASHE											
Web Access setting information	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Yes (*13)	Remote UI (block of Export/Import)	PC	Yes	No	-	-	*13 In the cases of using means excluding block of Export in the remote UI, only "Web Access Favorites" can be backed up.					
MEAP settings																														
MEAP application	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	No	-	-	Yes	Yes	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB					
License files for MEAP applications	Flash	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	Yes	SMS	PC	Yes	Yes	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB					
User authentication information registered in the Local Device Authentication user authentication system of SSO-H (Single Sign-On H)	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	Yes	SSO-H or iWEMC (+User Management Plug-in)	PC	Yes	Yes	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB					
Data saved using MEAP applications	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	Yes (*14)	-	-	Yes	Yes	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB	*14 Only when the MEAP applications have a backup function				
SMS (Service Management Service) password of MEAP	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear (*15)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	No	-	-	Yes	Yes	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (Meap back)	PC / USB	*15 Since the password is TPM-encrypted and saved, password backed up after all data/settings have been initialized cannot be restored. When all data/settings have been initialized, initialize the password using a switch license for password initialization. [Reference] Since TPM encryption key is updated when all data/settings are initialized, the password which was backed up cannot be read.				
Universal data settings																														

Data	Location	Replacement								CLEAR						Backup by User			Backup by Service			Remarks					
		When Replacing HDD / Executing AllFormat	When Replacing Flash / Executing AllFormat	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 1	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 2	DC Controller PCB	Reader Controller PCB	Replace the TPM PCB	Initialize All Data / Settings	User function				Service function						Yes / No	Method		Location to be stored	Yes / No Back-up	Method	Location to be stored	
										Settings/Registration > Function Settings				Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR								Function > CLEAR
										Copy > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Common Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Fax Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Printer Settings > Custom Settings > Initialize	MN-CONT	MMI	DC-CON	R-CON	ADRS-BK	JV-CASHE								
Unsent documents (documents waiting to be sent with the Delayed Send mode)	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear (*16)	-	-	-	-	No	-	-	No	No	-	-	(*16) The jobs and documents where Address Book has been used are deleted.	
Job logs	Flash /HDD	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	No	-	-	No	No	-	-		
Key Pair and Server Certificate in Certificate Settings in TCP/IP Settings in Network Settings in System Settings (from the Additional Functions screen)	Flash	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	No	-	-	No	No	-	-		
Auto Adjust Gradation setting values	Flash	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	No	-	-	Yes	Yes	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB) (*17)	PC / USB	(*17) If a USB memory device is connected, you can choose between backup inside the machine or backup outside the machine.	
PS font	HDD	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	No	-	-	No	No	-	-		
Key information to be used for encryption when TPM is OFF	SRAM (MCON2)	-	Clear(*18)	-	Clear(*19)	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear (*19)	Clear (*19)	-	-	-	-	No (*20)	-	-	Yes	Yes	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB)	PC / USB	*18 If the backup key information in the Flash Board is lost, it is automatically recovered from the key in the SRAM (MCON2). *19 If the key information in the SRAM (MCON2) is lost, it is automatically recovered from the backup key in the Flash Board. In the case of simultaneous replacement of the Flash Board and the Main Controller PCB 2, the key information is not automatically recovered. *20 No means is available to back up externally.

Data	Location	Replacement								CLEAR						Backup by User			Backup by Service			Remarks					
		When Replacing HDD / Executing AllFormat	When Replacing Flash / Executing AllFormat	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 1	Main PCB When Replacing Main PCB 2	DC Controller PCB	Reader Controller PCB	Replace the TPM PCB	Initialize All Data / Settings	User function				Service function						Yes / No	Method		Location to be stored	Yes / No Back-up	Method	Location to be stored	
										Settings/Registration > Function Settings				Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR	Function > CLEAR								Function > CLEAR
										Copy > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Common Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Send > Fax Settings > Change Default Settings > Initialize	Printer Settings > Custom Settings > Initialize	MN-CONT	MMI	DC-CON	R-CON	ADRS-BK	JV-CASHE								
Key and settings information to be used for encryption when TPM is ON	SRAM (MCON2) Flash TPM Board	-	Clear(*21)	-	Clear(*21)	-	-	Clear	Clear (*23)	-	-	-	-	Clear (*22)	Clear (*22)	-	-	-	-	Yes (*24)	Settings/Registration mode (Management Settings > Data Management > TPM Settings)	USB memory device	Yes	Yes	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB)	PC	*21 An error code is displayed when "ON" is displayed for the TPM setting. After all data/settings are initialized after restart, select "ON" for the TPM setting to enable the TPM setting. *22 If the TPM key information in the SRAM of the HDD or the Main Controller PCB 2 is lost, the key information in the SRAM is automatically recovered from the backup of the common key in the HDD. Then the internal state of TPM setting changes to "ON". However, the display on the UI remains "OFF", therefore the TPM setting needs to be manually changed to "ON". *23 The TPM setting changes to "OFF" when all the data/settings have been initialized. *24 Only backup in preparation for a TPM PCB failure is possible. Moreover, data cannot be restored to other machines where the TPM setting is set to "ON".
Service Mode																											
Service Mode setting values (MN-CON)	Flash	-	Clear	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI (block of Export/Import) Only when ON is selected in COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT (*25)	PC	Yes	Yes	SST, Download Menu (Flash board/USB)	PC / USB	*25 SramImg, DSRAMBUP, and RSRAMBUP can be backed up collectively. Only when ON is selected in COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT, the service mode setting values can be backed up and restored from the RUI. As for the service mode setting values, they can also be backed up to the HDD of the machine or a connected USB memory device by making the setting on the service mode top screen. The settings made in Settings/Registration are included in the target of collective backup, but there are some exceptions. For details, refer to the list of items excluded from DCM backup in the next sheet.
Service Mode setting values (DC-CON)	SRAM (DC-CON)	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT (*25)	PC	Yes	Yes	Service Mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DSRAMBUP)	HDD/USB	
Service Mode setting values (R-CON)	SRAM (R-CON)	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-		PC	Yes	Yes	Service Mode (COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > RSRAMBUP)	HDD/USB	

"Flash" means that Flash model or HDD model stores the data.
 "Flash/HDD" means that Flash model stores the data in Flash and HDD model stores it in HDD.
 The data that there is "HDD" only at the time of HDD model.
 The data of "SRAM+Flash" and "SRAM+Flash/HDD" are partly maintained by management information in SRAM, so SRAM Clear means that the data are eliminated.

Detail of HDD partition

Flash model

Partition name	CHK-TYPE	Description	Format
Whole Flash memory	0	Whole Flash memory	CHK-TYPE=" 5" ," 6" ," 7" ," 8" ," 9" ," 10" ," 12" ," 13" ," 14" , are formatted at same time
	1	System area (initial startup program, etc.)	Disabled
	2	System area (system program/for update)	Disabled
	3	System area (system program, initial data, etc.)	Disabled
-	4	Disabled	Disabled
FSTDEV	5	Image and document-related area	Enabled
APL_MEAP	6	MEAP-related area	Enabled
PDLDEV	7	PDL-related area	Enabled
TMP_GEN	8	General application temporary area	Enabled (* If one of 8, 10, 12, 13, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.)
APL_SEND	9	SEND-related area	Enabled
APL_GEN	10	General application-related area	Enabled (* If one of 8, 10, 12, 13, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.)
APL_KEEP	11	License-related area	Disabled
DBG_LOG	12	Debug-related area	Enabled (* If one of 8, 10, 12, 13, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.)
UPDATE	13	Update-related area	Enabled (* If one of 8, 10, 12, 13, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.)
CONVDEV	14	System setting value (service mode, etc.) storage area	Enabled (* If one of 8, 10, 12, 13, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.)

T-10-4

HDD model

Partition name	CHK-TYPE	Description	HDD Format
Flash/HDD			
Whole data storage	0	Whole data storage	CHK-TYPE=" 3" ," 5" ," 6" ," 7" ," 8" ," 9" ," 10" ," 11" ," 12" ," 14" ,, are formatted at same time
SYSDEV	1	The system-related area	Disabled
SWAP	2	SWAP (temporary file / memory alternative area)	Disabled
APL_MEAP	3	MEAP-related area	Enabled
-	4	Disabled	Disabled
FSTDEV	5	Image and document-related area	Enabled (* If 5 or 7 is selected, HD-CLEAR and HD-CHECK are executed simultaneously.)
PDLDEV	6	PDL-related area	Enabled
FSTCDEV	7	Image log-related area	Enabled (* If 5 or 7 is selected, HD-CLEAR and HD-CHECK are executed simultaneously.)
TMP_PSS	8	PDL spool-related area	Enabled (* If one of 8, 9, 11, 12, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.)
TMP_GEN	9	General application temporary area	Enabled (* If one of 8, 9, 11, 12, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.)
APL_SEND	10	SEND-related area	Enabled
APL_GEN	11	General application-related area	Enabled (* If one of 8, 9, 11, 12, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.)
UPDATE	12	Update-related area	Enabled (* If one of 8, 9, 11, 12, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.)
APL_KEEP	13	License-related area	Disabled
DBG_LOG	14	Debug-related area	Enabled (* If one of 8, 9, 11, 12, or 14 is selected, HD-CLEAR or HD-CHECK is executed all of them.)

T-10-5

APL_GEN Details of universal data

Category	Data
Settings / Registration	Preferences
	Adjustment/Maintenance
	Function Settings
	Set Destination
	Management Settings
	Printer Settings
	Paper Information Settings
Setting items for each menu in Main Menu	Button settings in Main Menu
	Button settings on the top of the screen
	Wallpaper Setting for Main Menu
	Other settings for Main Menu

Category	Data
Setting for Advance Box	Registration information of Network Place
Setting for Web Access	Web Access Setting information
Setting for Universal Data	Unsent document (which is set timer transmission or reservation transmission)
	Job log information
	Key and server certificate which are registered in Management Settings>Device Settings>Certificate Setting
	Auto Adjust Gradation setting values

T-10-6

Soft counter specifications

Soft counter specifications

The numbers entered for software counters are classified as follows:

No.	Counter Details
000 to 099	Remote copy
100 to 199	Total
200 to 299	Copy
300 to 399	Print
400 to 499	Copy and print
500 to 599	Scan
600 to 699	Box
700 to 799	Reception print
800 to 899	Report print
900 to 999	Transmission

T-10-7

Meanings of symbols in tables

- L: Large size (larger than B4 size)
- S: Small size (smaller than B4 size)
- S: Small size (smaller than B4 size)

It can be changed by the service mode (COPIER > OPTION > USER > B4_L_CNT) so that the paper larger than B4 size can be counted as large size paper.

- Copy: Local copy + remote copy
- Copy A: Local copy + remote copy + box print
- Print: PDL print + report print + box print
- Print A: PDL print + report print
- Scan: Black and white scan + color scan

No.	Counter Details
002	Remote copy (full color 1)
003	Remote copy (full color 2)
004	Remote copy (mono color 1)
005	Remote copy (mono color 2)
006	Remote copy (black and white 1)
007	Remote copy (black and white 2)
008	Remote copy (full color / large)
009	Remote copy (full color / small)
010	Remote copy (mono color / large)
011	Remote copy (mono color / small)
012	Remote copy (black and white / large)
013	Remote copy (black and white / small)
014	Remote copy (full color + mono color / large)
015	Remote copy (full color + mono color / small)
016	Remote copy (full color + mono color 2)
017	Remote copy (full color + mono color 1)
018	Remote copy (full color / large / double sided)
019	Remote copy (full color / small / double sided)
020	Remote copy (mono color / large / double sided)
021	Remote copy (mono color / small / double sided)
022	Remote copy (black and white / large / double sided)
023	Remote copy (black and white / small / double sided)
071	Toner bottle black
072	Toner bottle yellow
073	Toner bottle magenta
074	Toner bottle cyan
081	Toner bottle black + Remove the toner bottle black
082	Toner bottle yellow + Remove the toner bottle yellow
083	Toner bottle magenta + Remove the toner bottle magenta
084	Toner bottle cyan + Remove the toner bottle cyan
091	1/10 Toner bottle black
092	1/10 Toner bottle yellow
093	1/10 Toner bottle magenta
094	1/10 Toner bottle cyan
101	Total 1
102	Total 2
103	Total (large)
104	Total (small)
105	Total (full color2)
106	Total (full color2)
108	Total (black and white 1)
109	Total (black and white 2)
110	Total (mono color /large)
111	Total (mono color /small)
112	Total (black and white /large)

No.	Counter Details
113	Total (black and white /small)
114	Total 1(double sided)
115	Total 2(double sided)
116	large (double sided)
117	small (double sided)
118	Total (mono color 1)
119	Total (mono color 2)
120	Total (full color /large)
121	Total (full color /small)
122	Total (full color +mono color /large)
123	Total (full color +mono color /small)
124	Total (full color +mono color 2)
125	Total (full color +mono color 1)
126	Total A1
127	Total A2
128	Total A (large)
129	Total A (small)
130	Total A (full color 1)
131	Total A (full color 2)
132	Total A (black and white 1)
133	Total A (black and white 2)
134	Total A (mono color /large)
135	Total A (mono color /small)
136	Total A (black and white /large)
137	Total A (black and white /small)
138	Total A 1(double sided)
139	Total A 2(double sided)
140	large A (double sided)
141	small A (double sided)
142	Total A (mono color 1)
143	Total A (mono color 2)
144	Total A (full color /large)
145	Total A (full color /small)
146	Total A (full color +mono color /large)
147	Total A (full color +mono color /small)
148	Total A (full color +mono color 2)
149	Total A (full color +mono color 1)
150	Total B1
151	Total B2
152	Total B (large)
153	Total B (small)
154	Total B (full color 1)
155	Total B (full color 2)
156	Total B (black and white 1)
157	Total B (black and white 2)

No.	Counter Details
158	Total B (mono color /large)
159	Total B (mono color /small)
160	Total B (black and white /large)
161	Total B (black and white /small)
162	Total B1 (double sided)
163	Total B2 (double sided)
164	largeB (double sided)
165	smallB (double sided)
166	Total B (mono color 1)
167	Total B (mono color 2)
168	Total B (full color /large)
169	Total B (full color /small)
170	Total B (full color +mono color /large)
171	Total B (full color +mono color /small)
172	Total B (full color +mono color 2)
173	Total B (full color +mono color 1)
201	Copy (Total 1)
202	Copy (Total 2)
203	Copy (large)
204	Copy (small)
205	Copy A (Total 1)
206	Copy A (Total 2)
207	Copy A (large)
208	Copy A (small)
209	Local copy (Total 1)
210	Local copy (Total 2)
211	Local copy (large)
212	Local copy (small)
213	Remote copy (Total 1)
214	Remote copy (Total 2)
215	Remote copy (large)
216	Remote copy (small)
217	Copy (full color 1)
218	Copy (full color 2)
219	Copy (mono color 1)
220	Copy (mono color 2)
221	Copy (black and white 1)
222	Copy (black and white 2)
223	Copy (full color /large)
224	Copy (full color /small)
225	Copy (mono color /large)
226	Copy (mono color /small)
227	Copy (black and white /large)
228	Copy (black and white /small)
229	Copy (full color +mono color /large)

No.	Counter Details
230	Copy (full color +mono color /small)
231	Copy (full color +mono color /2)
232	Copy (full color +mono color /1)
233	Copy (full color /large/double sided)
234	Copy (full color /small/double sided)
235	Copy (mono color /large/double sided)
236	Copy (mono color /small/double sided)
237	Copy (black and white /large/double sided)
238	Copy (black and white /small/double sided)
245	Copy A (full color 1)
246	Copy A (full color 2)
247	Copy A (mono color 1)
248	Copy A (mono color 2)
249	Copy A (black and white 1)
250	Copy A (black and white 2)
251	Copy A (full color /large)
252	Copy A (full color /small)
253	Copy A (mono color /large)
254	Copy A (mono color /small)
255	Copy A (black and white /large)
256	Copy A (black and white /small)
257	Copy A (full color +mono color /large)
258	Copy A (full color +mono color /small)
259	Copy A (full color +mono color 2)
260	Copy A (full color +mono color 1)
261	Copy A (full color /large/double sided)
262	Copy A (full color /small/double sided)
263	Copy A (mono color /large/double sided)
264	Copy A (mono color /small/double sided)
265	Copy A (black and white /large/double sided)
266	Copy A (black and white /small/double sided)
273	Local copy (full color 1)
274	Local copy (full color 2)
275	Local copy (mono color 1)
276	Local copy (mono color 2)
277	Local copy (black and white 1)
278	Local copy (black and white 2)
279	Local copy (full color /large)
280	Local copy (full color /small)
281	Local copy (mono color /large)
282	Local copy (mono color /small)
283	Local copy (black and white /large)
284	Local copy (black and white /small)
285	Local copy (full color +mono color /large)
286	Local copy (full color +mono color /small)

No.	Counter Details
287	Local copy (full color +mono color 2)
288	Local copy (full color +mono color 1)
289	Local copy (full color /large/double sided)
290	Local copy (full color /small/double sided)
291	Local copy (mono color /large/double sided)
292	Local copy (mono color /small/double sided)
293	Local copy (black and white /large/double sided)
294	Local copy (black and white /small/double sided)
301	Print (Total 1)
302	Print (Total 2)
303	Print (large)
304	Print (small)
305	Print A(Total 1)
306	Print A(Total 2)
307	Print A(large)
308	Print A(small)
309	Print (full color 1)
310	Print (full color 2)
311	Print (mono color 1)
312	Print (mono color 2)
313	Print (black and white 1)
314	Print (black and white 2)
315	Print (full color /large)
316	Print (full color /small)
317	Print (mono color /large)
318	Print (mono color /small)
319	Print (black and white /large)
320	Print (black and white /small)
321	Print (full color +mono color /large)
322	Print (full color +mono color /small)
323	Print (full color +mono color /2)
324	Print (full color +mono color /1)
325	Print (full color /large /double sided)
326	Print (full color /small/double sided)
327	Print (mono color /large /double sided)
328	Print (mono color /small/double sided)
329	Print (black and white /large /double sided)
330	Print (black and white /small/double sided)
331	PDLPrint (Total 1)
332	PDLPrint (Total 2)
333	PDLPrint (large)
334	PDLPrint (small)
335	PDLPrint (full color 1)
336	PDLPrint (full color 2)
339	PDLPrint (black and white 1)

No.	Counter Details
340	PDLPrint (black and white 2)
341	PDLPrint (full color /large)
342	PDLPrint (full color /small)
345	PDLPrint (black and white /large)
346	PDLPrint (black and white /small)
351	PDLPrint (full color /large /double sided)
352	DLPrint (full color /small/double sided)
355	PDLPrint (black and white /large /double sided)
356	PDLPrint (black and white /small/double sided)
401	Copy + print (full color /large)
402	Copy + print (full color /small)
403	Copy + print (black and white/large)
404	Copy + print (black and white/small)
405	Copy + print (black and white2)
406	Copy + print (black and white1)
407	Copy + print (full color +mono color /large)
408	Copy + print (full color +mono color /small)
409	Copy + print (full color +mono color /2)
410	Copy + print (full color +mono color /1)
411	Copy + print (large)
412	Copy + print (small)
413	Copy + print (2)
414	Copy + print (1)
415	Copy + print (mono color /large)
416	Copy + print (mono color /small)
417	Copy + print (full color /large/double sided)
418	Copy + print (full color /small/double sided)
419	Copy + print (mono color /large/double sided)
420	Copy + print (mono color /small/double sided)
421	Copy + print (black and white/large/double sided)
422	Copy + print (black and white/small/double sided)
501	Scan (Total 1)
502	Scan (Total 2)
503	Scan (large)
504	Scan (small)
505	Black and white Scan (Total 1)
506	Black and white Scan (Total 2)
507	Black and white Scan (large)
508	Black and white Scan (small)
509	Color scan (Total 1)
510	Color scan (Total 2)
511	Color scan (large)
512	Color scan (small)
601	Box print (Total 1)
602	Box print (Total 2)

No.	Counter Details
603	Box print (large)
604	Box print (small)
605	Box print (full color 1)
606	Box print (full color 2)
607	Box print (mono color 1)
608	Box print (mono color 2)
609	Box print (black and white 1)
610	Box print (black and white 2)
611	Box print (full color /large)
612	Box print (full color /small)
613	Box print (mono color /large)
614	Box print (mono color /small)
615	Box print (black and white /large)
616	Box print (black and white /small)
617	Box print (full color +mono color /large)
618	Box print (full color +mono color /small)
619	Box print (full color +mono color 2)
620	Box print (full color +mono color 1)
621	Box print (full color /large/double sided)
622	Box print (full color /small/double sided)
623	Box print (mono color /large/double sided)
624	Box print (mono color /small/double sided)
625	Box print (black and white /large/double sided)
626	Box print (black and white /small/double sided)
701	Reception print (Total 1)
702	Reception print (Total 2)
703	Reception print (large)
704	Reception print (small)
705	Reception print (full color 1)
706	Reception print (full color 2)
709	Reception print (black and white 1)
710	Reception print (black and white 2)
711	Reception print (full color /large)
712	Reception print (full color /small)
715	Reception print (black and white /large)
716	Reception print (black and white /small)
721	Reception print (full color /large/double sided)
722	Reception print (full color /small/double sided)
725	Reception print (black and white /large/double sided)
726	Reception print (black and white /small/double sided)
743	Network Print(Total 1)
744	Network Print(Total 2)
745	Network Print(large)
746	Network Print(small)
747	Network Print(full color 1)

No.	Counter Details
748	Network Print(full color 2)
749	Network Print(black and white 1)
750	Network Print(black and white 2)
751	Network Print(full color/large)
752	Network Print(full color/small)
753	Network Print(mono color /large)
754	Network Print(black and white/small)
755	Network Print(full color /large/double sided)
756	Network Print(full color /small/double sided)
757	Network Print(black and white /large/double sided)
758	Network Print(black and white /small/double sided)
759	Mobile Print(Total 1)
760	Mobile Print(Total 2)
761	Mobile Print(large)
762	Mobile Print(small)
763	Mobile Print(full color 1)
764	Mobile Print(full color 2)
765	Mobile Print(black and white 1)
766	Mobile Print(black and white 2)
767	Mobile Print(full color/large)
768	Mobile Print(full color/small)
769	Mobile Print(black and white /large)
770	Mobile Print(black and white/small)
771	Mobile Print(full color /large/double sided)
772	Mobile Print(full color /small/double sided)
773	Mobile Print(black and white /large/double sided)
774	Mobile Print(black and white /small/double sided)
801	Report print (Total 1)
802	Report print (Total 2)
803	Report print (large)
804	Report print (small)
805	Report print (full color 1)
806	Report print (full color 2)
809	Report print (black and white 1)
810	Report print (black and white 2)
811	Report print (full color /large)
812	Report print (full color /small)
815	Report print (black and white /large)
816	Report print (black and white /small)
821	Report print (full color /large /double sided)
822	Report print (full color /small /double sided)
825	Report print (black and white /large /double sided)
826	Report print (black and white /small /double sided)
915	Transmission scan total 2(color)
916	Transmission scan total 2(black and white)

No.	Counter Details
917	Transmission scan total 3(color)
918	Transmission scan total 3(black and white)
921	Transmission scan total 5(color)
922	Transmission scan total 5(black and white)
929	Transmission scan total 6(color)
930	Transmission scan total 6(black and white)
937	Box scan (color)
938	Box scan (black and white)
939	Remote scan (color)
940	Remote scan (black and white)
945	Transmission scan / E-mail (color)
946	Transmission scan / E-mail (black and white)
959	Media Scan (Color)
960	Media Scan (black and white)
961	Application Scan(Total 1)
962	Application Black and white Scan(Total 1)
963	Application Color Scan(Total 1)

T-10-8